

THE NOBLE AND IOYOUS BOOK ENTYTLED
LE MORTE DARTHUR

NOTWYTHSTONDYNG IT TREATETH OF THE BYRTH/
LYF / AND ACTES OF THE SAYD KYNG ARTHUR / OF
HIS NOBLE KNYGHTES OF THE ROUNDE TABLE /
THEYR MERUAYLLOUS ENQUESTES AND ADUEN-
TURES / THACHYEUYNG OF THE SANGREAL / & IN
THENDE THE DOLOROUS DETH & DEPARTYNG OUT
OF THYS WORLD OF THEM AL / WHICHE BOOK WAS
REDUCED IN TO ENGLYSSHE BY

SYR THOMAS MALORY KNYGHT

[Carton's Preface]

After that I had accomplyfshed and fynyffhed dyuers
 hystoryes as wel of contemplacyon as of other hysto-
 ryal and worldly actes of grete conquerours & pryn-
 ces / And also certeyn bookes of enfaumples and doctryne /
 Many noble and dyuers gentylmen of thys royaume of Eng- 5
 lond camen and demaunded me many and oftymes / wherefore
 that I haue not do made & enprynte the noble hystorye of the
 faynt greal / and of the moost renommed crysten kyng / Fyrft
 and chyef of the thre best crysten and worthy / kyng Arthur /
 whyche ought moost to be remembred emonge vs englyfhe 10
 men tofore al other crysten kynges / For it is notoyrly knowen
 thorough the vnyuerfal world / that there been ix worthy & the
 best that euer were / That is to wete thre paynims / thre Iewes
 and thre crysten men / As for the paynims they were tofore the
 Incarnacyon of Cryft / whiche were named / the fyrft Hector 15
 of Troye / of whome thyfstorye is comen bothe in balade and
 in prose / The second Alyfaunder the grete / & the thyrd Iulyus
 Cezar Emperour of Rome of whome thyfstoryes ben wel kno
 and had / And as for the thre Iewes whyche also were tofore
 thyncarnacyon of our lord of whome the fyrft was Duc Io- 20
 sue whyche brought the chyldren of Ifrahel in to the londe of
 byhefte / The second Dauyd kyng of Iherusalem / & the thyrd
 Iudas Machabeus of thefe thre the byble reherceth al theyr no-
 ble hystoryes & actes / And fythe the fayd Incarnacyon haue
 ben thre noble crysten men stalled and admytted thorough the 25
 vnyuerfal world in to the nombre of the ix beste & worthy / of
 whome was fyrft the noble Arthur / whos noble actes I pur-
 pose to wryte in thys present book here folowyng / The second
 was Charlemayn or Charles the grete / of whome thyfstorye is
 had in many places bothe in frenfhe and englyfhe / and the 30
 thyrd and laft was Godefray of boloyne / of whos actes & lyf
 I made a book vnto the excellent prynce and kyng of noble me-
 morye kyng Edward the fourth / the fayd noble lentylnen
 Instantly requyred me temprynte thyfstorye of the fayd noble
 kyng and conquerour kyng Arthur / and of his knyghtes 35
 wyth thyfstorye of the faynt greal / and of the deth and endyng
 of the fayd Arthur / Affermyng that I ouzt rather tenprynte
 his actes and noble feates / than of godefroye of boloyne / or

only the other eyght / confyderyng that he was a man borne
wythin this royaume and kyng and Emperour of the fame /
And that there ben in frensshe dyuers and many noble volum-
es of his actes / and also of his knyghtes / To whome I
5 answerd / that dyuers men holde oppynyon / that there was
no fuche Arthur / and that alle fuche bookes as been maad of
hym / ben fayned and fables / by cause that somme crony-
cles make of hym no mencyon ne remembre hym noo thyng
ne of his knyghtes / wherto they answerd / and one in specyal
10 sayd / that in hym that shold say or thynke / that there was ne-
uer fuche a kyng callyd Arthur / myght wel be aretted grete
folye and blyndenesse / For he sayd that there were many euy-
dences of the contrarye / Fyrst ye may see his sepulture in the
monasterye of Glaftyngburye / And also in polycronycon in
15 the v book the fyxte chappytre / and in the feuenth book the
xxiij chappytre / where his body was buryed and after foun-
den and translated in to the sayd monasterye / ye shal se also
in thyftorye of bochas in his book de casu principum / parte of
his noble actes / and also of his falle / Also galfrydus in
20 his brutyshe book recounteth his lyf / and in dyuers places
of Englund / many remembraunces ben yet of hym and shall
remayne perpetuely / and also of his knyghtes / Fyrst in the
abbey of westmestre at saynt Edwardes shryne remaineth the
prynte of his seal in reed Waxe clofed in beryll / In whych is
25 wryton Patricius Arthurus / Britannie / Gallie / Germanie /
dacie / Imperator / Item in the castel of douer ye may see Gau-
wayns skulle / & Cradoks mantle . At wynchester the rounde
table / in other places Launcelottes swerde and many other
thynges / Thenne al these thynges confydered there can no man
30 resonably gaynsaye but there was a kyng of thys lande na-
med Arthur / For in al places crysten and hethen he is re-
puted and taken for one of the ix worthy / And the fyrst of
the thre Crysten men / And also he is more spoken of beyonde
the see moo bookes made of his noble actes than there be in
35 englund as wel in duche ytalyen spaynysshe and grekysshe as
in frensshe / And yet of record remaine in wytnesse of hym in
wales in the toune of Camelot the grete stons & meruayl-
lous werkys of yron lyeng vnder the grounde & ryal vautes

which dyuers now lyuyng hath seen / wherfor it is a meruayl
 why he is nomore renomd in his owne contreye / sauf onelye
 it accordeth to the worde of god / whyche sayth that no man is
 accept for a prophete in his owne contreye / Theñe al these thyn-
 ges forsayd alledged I coude not wel denye / but that there was 5
 fuche a noble kyng named arthur / and reputed one of the ix
 Worthy / & fyrst & chyef of the cristen men / & many noble volu-
 mes be made of hym & of his noble knyghtes in frensishe which
 I haue seen & redde beyonde the see / which been not had in our
 maternal tongue / but in walfishe ben many & also in frensishe / 10
 & somme in englysshe but no wher nygh alle / wherfore fuche as
 haue late ben drawn oute bryefly in to englysshe / I haue after
 the symple connyng that god hath sente to me / vnder the
 fauour and correctyon of al noble lordes and gentylmen en-
 prysed to enprynte a book of the noble hystories of the sayd 15
 kyng Arthur / and of certeyn of his knyghtes after a cople
 vnto me delyuerd / whyche cople Syr Thomas Malorye dyd
 take oute of certeyn bookes of frensishe and reduced it in to
 Englysshe / And I accordyng to my cople haue doon sette it
 in enprynte / to the entente that noble men may see and lerne 20
 the noble actes of chyualrye / the lentyll and vertuous dedes
 that somme knyghtes vsed in tho dayes / by whyche they came
 to honour / and how they that were vycious were punysshed
 and ofte put to shame and rebuke / humbly byfeyhyng al no-
 ble lordes and ladyes wyth al other estates of what estate 25
 or degree they been of / that shal see and rede in this sayd book
 and werke / that they take the good and honest actes in their
 remembraunce / and to folowe the same / Wherin they shalle
 fynde many Ioyous and playfaunt hystories / and noble &
 renomd actes of humanyte / gentylnesse and chyualryes / 30
 For herein may be seen noble chyualrye / Curtosye / Humanyte /
 frendlynesse / hardynesse / loue / frendshyp / Cowardyse / Mur-
 dre / hate / vertue / and synne / Doo after the good and leue
 the euyl / and it shal brynge you to good fame and renom-
 mee / And for to passe the tyme thys booke shal be plefaunte 35
 to rede in / but for to gyue fayth and byleue that al is trewe
 that is conteyned herin / ye be at your lyberte / but al is wry-
 ton for our doctryne / and for to beware that we falle not to

vyce ne fynne / but texerfyfe and folowe vertu / by whyche we
may come and atteyne to good fame and renomme in thys
lyf / and after thys shorte and transytorye lyf to come vnto
euerlastyng blyffe in heuen / the whyche he graunte vs that
5 reygne in heuen the bleffyd Trynyte

THenne to procede forth in thys sayd book / whyche I
dyrecte vnto alle noble prynces / lordes and ladyes /
gentylmen or gentylwymmen that desyre to rede or here
redde of the noble and loyous hyforye of the grete conque-
10 rour and excellent kyng . Kyng Arthur / somtyme kyng of
thys noble royalme / thenne callyd brytaygne / I wylliam
Caxton fymple perfone present thys book folowyng / Whyche I
haue enpryfed tenprynte / And treateth of the noble actes / fe-
ates of armes of chyualrye / prowesse / hardynesfe / humanyte
15 loue / curtosye / and veray gentylnesse / wyth many wonder-
ful hyforyes and adventures / And for to vnderfonde bry-
effly the contente of thys volume / I haue deuyded it in to xxj
bookes / and euery book chapytred as here after shal by god-
des grace folowe / The fyrst book shal treatate how Vtherpen-
20 dragon gate the noble conquerour kyng Arthur and conteyn-
neth xxviij chappytres / The second book treateth of Balyn
the noble knyght and conteyneth xix chappytres / The thyrde
book treateth of the maryage of kyng Arthur to quene gue-
neuer wyth other maters and conteyneth fyftene chappytres /
25 The fourth book how Merlyn was affotted / and of warre
maad to kyng Arthur / and conteyneth xxix chappytres /
The fyfthe book treateth of the conquete of Lucius themperour
and conteyneth xij chappytres / The fyxthe book treateth of
Syr Launcelot and fyr Lyonel and meruayllous adventu-
30 res and conteyneth xvij chappytres / The feuenth book treateth
of a noble knyght called fyr Gareth and named by fyr kaye
Beaumayns and conteyneth xxxvj chappytres / The eyght
book treateth of the byrthe of Syr Tryfram the noble knyght
and of hys actes / and conteyneth xli chappytres /
35 The ix book treateth of a knyght named by Syr kaye le cote
male taylle and also of Syr Tryfram and conteyneth xliiij

chapytres / The x book treateth of fyr Trystram & other mer-
uayllous adventures and conteyneth lxxxviij chappytres /
The xj book treateth of fyr Launcelot and fyr Galahad and
conteyneth xiiij chappytres / The xij book treateth of fyr Laun-
celot and his ma~~nd~~ and conteyneth xiiij chappytres / The 5
xiiij book ~~how~~ how galahad came fyrst to kyng Arthurs
courte and the quest how the fangreall was begonne and con-
teyneth xx Chapytres / The xiiij boook treateth of the queste
of the fangreal & conteyneth x chapytres / The xv book treateth
of fyr launcelot & conteyneth vj chapytres / The xvj book trea- 10
teth of Syr Bors & fyr Lyonel his brother and conteyneth
xviij chapytres / The xviij book treateth of the fangreal and
conteyneth xxij chapytres / The xvij book treateth of Syr
Launcelot and the quene and conteyneth xxv chapytres / The
xix book treateth of quene Gueneuer and Launcelot and con- 15
teyneth xiiij chapytres / The xx book treateth of the pyetous
deth of Arthur and conteyneth xxij chapytres / The xxj book
treateth of his laft departyng / and how fyr Launcelot came
to reuenge his dethe and conteyneth xiiij chapytres / The somme
is xxj bookes whyche conteyne the somme of v hondred & vij 20
chapytres / as more playnly shal folowe hereafter /

iiij

**¶ The table or rubryſſe of the contente of chapytres ſhortly
of the fyrſt book of kyng Arthur /**

- Fyrſt how vtherpendragon ſente for the duke of cornewayl &
Igrayne his wyf & of their departyng ſodeynly ageyn ca primo
How Vtherpendragon made warre on the duke of cornewayl
and how by the moyane of Merlyn he laye by the duchefſe &
5 gate Arthur Capitulo ij
Of the byrthe of kyng arthur and of his nourytur / & of the
deth of kyng vtherpendragon / and how Arthur was choſen
kyng and of wondres and meruaylles of a ſwerde taken out
of a ſtone by the fayd Arthur capitulo iij iiij & v
10 How kyng arthur pulled oute the ſwerde dyuers tymes vj
How kyng arthur was crowned & how he made offycers vij
How kyng Arthur helde in wales at a pentecoſt a grete feſt
and what kynges and lordes came to his feſte viij
Of the fyrſt warre that kyng Arthur had and how he wanne
15 the felde Capitulo ix
How Merlyn counceyllid kyng arthur to fende for kyng ban
& kyng bors & of theyr counceyl taken for the warre x
Of a grete tornoye made by kyng arthur & the ij kynges ban
and bors and how they wente ouer the ſee Capitulo xj
20 How xj kynges gadred a grete hooft ayenſt kyng Arthur xij
Of a dreame of the kyng wyth the hondred knyghtes xiiij
How the xj kynges wyth theyr hooft fought ayenſt arthur &
his hooft and many grete feates of the warre capitulo xiiij
Yet of the ſame batayll Capitulo xv
25 Yet more of the ſaid batayl & how it was ended by merlyn xvij
How Kyng Arthur kyng ban & kyng bors reſcowed Kyng
Leodegraunce and other Incydentes xvij
How Kyng arthur rode to Garlyon and of his dreame / & how
he ſawe the queſtyng beeft capitulo xix
30 How kyng Pellynore took arthurs hors & folowed the ques-
tyng beeft and how Merlyn mette wyth Arthur xx
How vlfyus apeched quene Igrayne Arthurs moder of trea-
ſon / and how a knyght came and deſyred to haue the deth of
hys mayſter reuengyd capitulo xxj
35 How gryſlet was made knyght & luſted with a knyzt xxij

How xij knyghtes came from Rome & axed truage for thys
 londe of arthur / and how arthur faught wyth a Knyght xxij
 How Merlyn faued Arthurs lyf & threwe an enchauntement
 vpon Kyng Pellynore and made hym to flepe xxiiij
 How Arthur by the meane of Merlyn gate Excalybur hys 5
 fwerde of the lady of the lake Capitulo xxv
 How tydynges cam to arthur that kyng ryons had ouercome
 xj kynges & how he defyred arthus berde to purfyl his mantel
 Capitulo xxvij ¶ How al the chyldren were sente fore / that
 were borne on may day . & how Mordred was faued xxvij 10

¶ The second book

Of a damoyfel whyche came gyrde wyth a fwerde for to fynde
 a man of fuche vertue to drawe it oute of the scabard ca primo
 How balen arayed lyke a poure Knyght pulled out the fwerde
 whyche afterward was cause of his deth capitulo ij
 How the lady of the lake demaunded the Knyztes heed that 15
 had wonne the fwerde / or the maydens hede iij
 How merlyn tolde thaduenture of this damoyfel capitulo iiij
 How balyn was purfyewed by fyr Launceor Knyght of Ire-
 londe / and how he lusted and flewe hym v
 How a damoyfel whiche was loue to Launceor flewe hyr self 20
 for loue / and how balyn mette wyth his brother balan vj
 How a dwarfe repreuyd Balyn for the deth of Launceor / &
 how Kyng Marke of Cornewayl founde them and maad a
 tombe ouer them capitulo vij
 How Merlyn prophecied that two the best Knyghtes of the 25
 world shold fyght there / whyche were Syr Launcelot and
 fyr Trystram Capitulo viij
 How balyn and his broder by the counceyl of Merlyn toke
 Kyng ryons and brought hym to Kyng Arthur ix
 How Kyng arthur had a bataylle ayenst Nero and Kyng 30
 loth of orkeney / and how Kyng loth was deceyued by merlyn
 and how xij Kynges were slayne capitulo x
 Of the entyrement of xij Kynges / & of the prophecie of mer-
 lyn / how balyn shold gyue the dolorous stroke xj
 How a sorouful knyzt cam tofore arthur & how balyn fet hym 35
 & how that Knyght was slayn by a Knyght Inuyfyble xij
 How balyn & the damoyfel mette wyth a Knyght whych was

- in lyke wyfe slayn / & how the damoyfel bledde for the custom
of a castel Capitulo xiiij
- Ho balyn mette wyth that knyght named garlon at a feest &
there he slewe hym to haue his blood / to hele therwith the sone
5 of his hooft Capitulo xiiij
- How Balyn fought wyth kyng Pelham / & how his swerde
brake / and how he gate a spere wherewith he smote the dolo-
rous stroke capitulo xv
- How balyn was delyuerd by Merlyn / and fauyd a knyght
10 that wold haue slayn hym self for loue capitulo xvj
- How that knyght slewe his loue & a knyght lyeng by hyr / &
after how he slewe hym self wyth his owne swerde / & how ba-
lyn rode toward a castel where he lost his lyf Capitulo xviij
- How balyn mette wyth his brother balen & how eche of theym
15 slewe other vnknownen tyl they were wounded to deth xvij
- How merlyn buried hem bothe in one tōbe / & of balyns swerd
capitulo xix ¶ **Thre folowen the chapytres of the thyrd book**
- How kyng arthur took a wyf and wedded gueneuer dought-
ter to leodegran kyng of the londe of Camelerd wyth whome
20 he had the rounde table Capitulo primo
- How the knyghtes of the rounde table were ordeyned & theyr
fyeges bleffyd by the bysshop of caunterburye capitulo ij
- How a poure man rydyng vpon a lene mare / and desyred of
kyng Arthur to make his sone knyght Capitulo iiij
- 25 How fyr Tor was knowen for sone of kyng Pellynore / and
how Gawayn was made knyght capitulo iiij
- How atte feste of the Weddyng of kyng arthur to gueneuer
a Whyte herte came in to the halle & thyrti couple houndes / &
how a brachet pynched the herte whiche was taken awaye v
- 30 How fyr Gawayn rode for to fetch ageyn the herte / & how ij
brethern fought eche ageynst other for the herte Capitulo vj
- How the herte was chaced in to a castel and there slayn / and
how Gauwayn slewe a lady Capitulo vij
- How iiij knyghtes faught ayenst sir gawayn & gaheryse & how
35 they were ouercom & her lyues faued atte request of iiij ladyes
capitulo viij ¶ How fyr Tor rode after the knyght wyth the
brachet & of his aduenture by the waye capitulo ix
- How fyr Tor fonde the brachet wyth a lady / & how a knyght

- How Arthur accorded the two brethern / and delyuerd the xx
 knyghtes / & how fyr Accolons deyed capitulo xij
- How Morgan wold haue slayn fyr vryens hyr husbond / &
 how fyr Ewayn hir sone faued hym Capitulo xiiij
- 5 How quene Morgan le fay made grete sorowe for the deth of
 accolon / & how she stale awaye the scawbard fro arthur xiiij
- How Morgan le fay faued a knyght that shold haue be drow-
 ned / & how kyng Arthur retorned home ageyn capitulo xv
- How the damoyfel of the lake faued Kynge Arthur from a
 10 mantel which shold haue brente hym capitulo xvj
- How fyr Gawayn & fyr Ewayn mette with xij fayr damoy-
 felles / & how they compleyned on fyr Marhaus ca xvij
- How fyr Marhaws lusted with fyr Gawayn & fyr Ewayn
 and ouerthrewe them bothe capitulo xvij and xix
- 15 How fyr Marhaus fyr Gawayn & fyr Ewayn mette the da-
 moyfelles & eche of them toke one capitulo xx
- How a knyght & a dwarf stroof for a lady capitulo xxj
- How kyng Pelleas suffred hym self to be taken prysoner by
 cause he wolde haue a syght of his lady / & how fyr Gawayn
 20 promysed hym for to gete to hym the loue of his lady xxij
- How fyr Gawayn came to the lady Ettard and laye by hyr
 & how fyr Pelleas fonde them slepyng capitulo xxiiij
- How fyr Pelleas loued nomore ettard by the moyan of the
 damoyfel of the lake whome he loued euer after ca xxiiij
- 25 How fyr marhaus rode with the damoyfel and how he came to
 the duke of the south marchis Capitulo xxv
- How fyr Marhaus faught wyth the duke and his vj sones
 and made them to yelde them capitulo xxvj
- How fyr Ewayn rode wyth the damoyfel of lx yere of age / &
 30 how he gate the prys at tornoyeng capitulo xxvij
- How fyr Ewayn fau3t with ij kny3tes & ouercam hem xxviiij
- How at the yeres ende alle thre knyghtes wyth theyr thre da-
 moyfelles metten at the fontayne capitulo xxix

¶ Of the fyfthe book the chapytres folowen

- How xij aged Ambassyatours of rome came to kyng Arthur
 35 to demaunde truage for brytayne capitulo primo
- How the kynges and lordes promysed to kyng Arthur ayde
 and helpe ageynst the Romainys capitulo ij

affaylled hym for the fayd brachet capitulo	x
How syr Tor ouercame the knyght / and how he lofth ys heed at the requeste of a lady capitulo	xj
How kyng pellenore rode after the lady and the knyght that ladde her awaye / & how a lady defyred helpe of hym and how 5 he faught wyth ij knyghtes for that lady of whome he slewe that one at the fyrst stroke capitulo	xij
How kyng Pellynore gate the lady & brought hyr to Came- lot to the courte of kyng arthur capitulo	xijj
How on the waye he herde two knyghtes as he laye by nyght 10 in a valeye & of other aduentures capitulo	xiiij
How whan he was comen to Camelot he was sworne vpon a book to telle the trouthe of his queste capitulo	xv

¶ There folowen the chapytres of the fourth book

How merlyn was affotted & dooted on one of the ladies of the lake / and how he was shytted in a roche vnder a stone and 15 there deyed capitulo	primo
How v kynges came in to this londe to warre ayenst kyng Ar- thur / & what counceyl arthur had ayenst them capitulo	ij
How kyng arthur had adoo with them & ouerthrewe them & slewe the v kynges & made the remenaunte to flee	iiij 20
How the batayl was fynnysshed or he came / & how the kyng founded an abbay where the batayl was capitulo	iiijj
How syr Tor was made knyght of the rounde table and how badgemagus was dyspleased capitulo	v
How kyng Arthur / kyng Vryens & Syr Accolon of gaule 25 chaced an hert & of theyr meruayllous aduenture	vj
How Arthur took vpon hym to fyght to be delyuerd oute of pryson / & also for to delyuer twenty knyghtes that were in pryson Capitulo	vij
How accollon fonde hym self by a welle / & he toke vpon hym 30 to doo bataylle ayenst Arthur capitulo	vijj
Of the bataylle bytwene kyng Arthur & Accolon	ix
How kyng arthurs swerde that he faught wyth brake / & how he recouerd of accolon his owne swerde excalibur and ouer- came his enemye Capitulo	x 35
How accolon confessyd the treason of Morgan le fay Kyng arthurs syster & how she wold haue doon flee hym ca	xj

How kyng Arthur helde a parlement at yorke & how he ordey- ned how the royaume shold be gouerned in his absence	iiij
How kyng Arthur beyng shypped & lyeng in his caban had a meruayllous dreame / & of the expofycion therof capitulo	iiij
How a man of the contreye tolde to hym of a meruayllous ge- aunte / & how he faught & conquerd hym Capitulo	v
How kyng Arthur fente fyr gawayn & other to lucius / & how they were affaylled & efscaped wyth worfhyp Capitulo	vj
How Lucius fente certeyn efpyes in a buffhement for to haue taken hys knyghtes beyng pryfonners / and how they were letted capitulo	vij
How a fenatour tolde to Lucius of their dyscomfytur / & alfo of the grete batayl betwene Arthur & Lucius capitulo	vij
How Arthur after he had achyeued the batayl ayenft the Ro- mayns entred in to almayn & fo in to ytalye Capitulo	ix 15
Of a bataylle doon by Gauwayn ayenft a farafyn / whiche af- ter was yelden & became cryften Capitulo	x
How the Sarafyns came oute of a wode for to refcowe their beeftys / and of a grete bataylle Capitulo	xj
How fyr Gauwayn retorned to kyng Arthur wyth his pry- foners / And how the kyng wanne a Cyte / and how he was crowned emperour capitulo	xij

¶ There folowen the chappytres of the vj book

How fyr Launcelot and fyr Lyonel departed fro the courte for to feek auentures / and how fyr Lyonel lefte hym flepyng and was taken Capitulo	primo 25
How fyr Ector folowed for to feek fyr Launcelot / & how he was taken by fyr Turquyne Capitulo	ij
How iiij quenes fonde Launcelot flepyng / & how by enchaun- tement he was taken & ledde in to a castel capitulo	iiij
How fyr Lancelot was deliuerd by the meane of a damofel	iiij 30
How a knyght founde fyr Launcelot lyeng in his lemmans bedde / & how fyr Launcelot faught with the knyght ca	v
How fyr Launcelot was receyued of kyng bagdemagus dough- ter / & he made his complaynte to hir fader Capitulo	vj
How fyr Launcelot byhaued hym in a tournement / & how he mette wyth fyr Turquyn ledyng fyr Gaheris capitulo	vij
How fyr Launcelot & fyr Turquyn faught to gyders ca	vij

- How fyr Turquyn was slayn / & how fyr Launcelot bad fyr
gaheris delyuer al the pryfoners capitulo ix
- How fyr Launcelot rode with the damoyfel & flewe a knyght
that distressid al ladyes / & also a vylayn þ^t kept a bridge x
- 5 How fyr launcelot flewe ij geauntes & made a castel free xj
- How fyr Launcelot rode dysguysed in Syr kayes harnoys / &
how he smote down a knyght Capitulo xij
- How fyr Launcelot Iufted ayenft four kny3tes of the rounde
table and ouerthrewe theym capitulo xiiij
- 10 How fyr Launcelot folowed a brachet in to a castel where he
fonde a dede knyght & how he after was requyred of a damoy-
fel to hele hir brother capitulo xiiij
- How fir Launcelot cam in to the chapel peryllous & gate there
of a dede corps a pyece of the cloth & a fwerde capitulo xv
- 15 How fyr Launcelot at the request of a lady recouerd a fawcon
by whiche he was deceyued capitulo xvj
- How fyr Launcelot ouertoke a knyght which chafed hys wyf
to haue sleyn hyr / & how he fayd to hym capitulo xvij
- How fyr Launcelot came to kyng arthurs court / & how there
20 were recounted al his noble feates & actes capitulo xviiij

¶ Here folowen the chappytres of the tenenth boook

- How beaumayns came to kyng arthurs courte & demaunded
thre petycyons of kyng Arthur Capitulo primo
- How fyr Launcelot & fyr Gauwayn were wroth by caufe fyr
kaye mocqued beaumayns / & of a damoyfel whyche defyred
25 a knyght to fyght for a lady Capitulo ij
- How beawmayns defyred the batayl / & how it was graunted
to hym / & how he defyred to be made knyzt of fir Launcelot iij
- How beaumayns departed & how he gate of fyr Kaye a spere
and a shelde / and how he Iufted and faughte wyth Syr
30 Launcelot Capitulo iiij
- How beaumayns tolde to fyr Launcelot his name and how he
was dubbed knyght of Syr Launcelot / and after ouertooke
the damoyfel Capitulo v
- How beaumayns fought & flewe ij knyghtes at a passage vj
- 35 How beaumayns faught with the knyght of the blacke laun-
des / & faught with hym tyl he fyl down & deyed capitulo vij
- How the brother of the knyght that was slayn mette wyth

beaumayns / & fau3t with beaumayns tyl he wos yelden	viiij
How the damoyfel euer rebuked beaumayns / & wold not suf-	
fre hym to fyt at hir table / but callyd hym kychyn boye	ix
How the iij brother callyd the rede knyght Iufted & faughte	
ayenft beaumayns / & how beaumayns ouercame hym ca	x 5
How fyr beaumayns fuffred grete rebukes of the damoyfel / &	
he fuffred it pacyently capitulo	xj
How beaumayns faughte wyth Syr Perfaunt of ynde / and	
made hym to be yelden capitulo	xij
Of the godelye comynycacyon bytwene fyr Perfaunt & beau-	10
mayns / & how he tolde hym that his name was fyr gareth	xiiij
How the lady that was byfyeged had worde fro hyr fyfter	
how fhe had brought a knyght to fyght for hyr / and what	
bataylles he had achyeued Capitulo	xiiiij
How the damoyfel & beaumayns came to the fyege / & came to	15
a Sykamor tree / & there beaumayns blewe an horne / & thenne	
the kny3t of the rede laundes cam to fyght wyth hym ca	xv
How the two knyghtes mette to gyders and of their talkyng	
and how they began theyr batayl Capitulo	xvj
How after longe fyghtyng beaumayns ouercame the knyght	20
& wold haue flayn hym / but atte request of the lordes he fa-	
ued his lyf & made hym to yelde hym to the lady cap?	xvij
How the kny3t yelded hym / & how beaumayns made hym to	
goo vnto kyng arthurs court & to crye fir lancelot mercy	xviiij
How Beaumayns came to the lady . & whan he came to the	25
caftel / the yates were clofed ageynft hym / & of the wordes that	
the lady fayd to hym Capitulo	xix
How fyr beaumayns rode after to recfowe his dwarfe / and	
came in to the caftel where he was capitulo	xx
How fyr gareth otherwyfe callyd beaumayns cam to þe prefence	30
of his lady & how they toke acqueyntance / & of their loue	xxj
How at nyght cam an armed knyght & faught with fir gareth	
& he fore hurt in the thyghe smote of the knyghtes heed ca	xxij
How the fayd knyght came ageyn the next nyght & was be-	
heded ageyn / & how at the fefte of pentecoft al the kny3tes that	35
fyr gareth had ouercome cam & yelded hem to kyng arthur	xxiiij
How kyng Arthur pardoned them / and demaunded of them	
where fyr Gareth was Capitulo	xxiiiij

	How the quene of Orkeney came to this feste of pentecoste / & fir gawayn & his brethern cam to aske hir bleffynge	xxv xxvj
	How kyng Arthur sente for the lady Lyonas / & how she lete crye a tournoye at hir castel / where as came many knyghtes	
5	Capitulo	xxvij
	How kyng Arthur wente to the tornoyment with his knyghtes / and how the lady receyued hym worshypfully / & how the knyghtes encountred Capitulo	xxviij
	How the knyghtes bare them in the batayl capitulo	xxix
10	Yet of the sayd tornoyment capitulo	xxx
	How fyr Gareth was espyed by the herowdes / and how he escaped oute of the felde capitulo	xxxj
	How fyr Gareth came to a castel where he was wel lodged & he lusted with a knyght & flewe hym Capitulo	xxxij
15	How fyr Gareth fought wyth a knyght that helde within his castel xxx ladyes & how he flewe hym capitulo	xxxiiij
	How fyr gawayn & fyr Gareth fought eche ayenst other / and how they knewe eche other by the damoyfel Lynet ca	xxxiiij
	How fyr Gareth knowleched that they loued eche other to	
20	kyng Arthur / & of thappoyntement of their weddyng	xxxv
	Of the grete ryalte & what offycers were made at the feste of the weddyng & of the lustes at the feest Capitulo	xxxvj
	¶ Here folowen the chappytres of the eyght book	
	How fyr Trystram de Lyones was borne and how his moder deyed at his byrthe / wherfore she named hym Tristram primo	
25	How the stepmoder of fyr Trystram had ordeyned poyson for to haue poysened fyr Trystram Capitulo	ij
	How Syr Trystram was sente in to Fraunce and had one to gouerne hym named Gouvernayle / and how he lernyd to harpe / hawke and hunte capitulo	iiij
30	How fyr Marhaus came out of Irelande for to aske trewage of Cornewayle or ellys he wold fyght therefor capitulo	iiij
	How Trystram enterprysed the bataylle to fyght for the trewage of Cornwayl / & how he was made knyght Capitulo	v
	How Syr Trystram arryued in to the Ilond for to furnyshe the bataylle wyth fyr Marhaus Capitulo	vj
35	hoow fyr Tristram faught ayenst Syr Marhaus & achyeued his batayl / & how fyr Marhaus fledde to his shyppe ca	vij

How Syr Marhaus after that he was arryued in Irelande dyed of the stroke that fyr Tryfram had gyuen to hym / and how Tryfram was hurte capitulo	viiij
How fyr Tryfram was put to the kepyng of la bele yfoude fyrst for to be helyd of hys wounde Capitulo	ix 5
How fyr Tryfram wanne the degree at a tornoyment in Ire- londe / & there made palomydes to bere no harnoys in a yere	x
How the quene espyed that fyr Triftram had slayn hir broder fyr Marhaus by his fwerde & in what leopardye he was	xj
How Syr Tryfram departed fro the kyng & la bele Ifoude out of Irelande for to come in to cornewayl capitulo	xij 10
How fyr Tryfram and Kyng Marke hurted eche other for the loue of a knyghtes wyf capitulo	xiiij
How fyr Tryfram laye wyth the lady. and how her husbond faught wyth fyr Tryfram Capitulo	xiiij 15
How fyr bleoberis demaunded the fayrest lady in kyng marks court whom he toke awaye & how he was fouzten with	xv
How fyr Tryfram faught wyth two knyghtes of the rounde table capitulo	xvj
How Syr triftcum faught with fyr bleoberis for a lady / and how the lady was put to choyse to whome she wold goo	xvij 20
How the lady forsoke fyr triftram & abode with Syr bleoberis and how she defyred to goo to hyr husbond ca	xviiij
How kyng mark sent fyr tryfram for la bele Ifoude toward Ireland & how by fortune he arryued in to englund	xix 25
How kyng Anguyfthe of Irelande was somoned to come to Kyng Arthurs courte for treafon Capitulo	xx
How fyr Tryfram rescowed a chylde fro a knyght / and how gouernayle tolde hym of Kyng Anguyfthe ca	xxj
How fyr tryfram faught for fyr anguyfthe & ouercame hys aduerfarye & how his aduerfarye wold neuer yelde hym	xxij 30
How fyr blamor defyred tryfram to flee hym / & how fyr trif- tram spared hym & how they took appoyntement	xxiiij
How fyr triftram demaunded la bele Ifoude for kynge mark & how fyr tryfram & Ifoude dronken the loue drynke	xxiiij 35
How fyr Triftram & Ifoude were in pryfon / & how he faughte for hir beaute / & smote of another ladyes hede capitulo	xxv
How fyr Tryfram faught wyth fyr breunor / and atte laste	

	fmote of his hede Capitulo	xxvj
	How fyr galahad faught wyth fyr Triftram / & how fyr trif-	
	tram yelded hym & promyfed to felaushyp with lancelot	xxvij
	How fyr Launcelot mette with fyr Carados beryng awaye fir	
5	gawayn / & of the rescows of fyr Gawayn Capitulo	xxviiij
	Of the weddyng of Kyng Marke to la bele Ifoude / and of	
	brangwayn hyr mayde and of Palamydes	xxix
	How Palamydes demaunded quene Ifoude / & how lambegus	
	rode after to rescowe hyr / and of thescape of Ifoude	xxx
10	How fyr Tryftram rode after Palamydes and how he fonde	
	hym and faught wyth hym / and by the moyne of Ifoude the	
	batayl feced Capitulo	xxxj
	How fyr Tryftram brought quene Ifoude home / and of the de-	
	bate of kyng Marke and Syr Tryftram capitulo	xxxij
15	How fyr Lamerok Iufted wyth xxx knyghtes / & fyr Trif-	
	tram atte requeste of kyng mark fmote his hors down	xxxiiij
	How fyr Lamerok fente an horne to kyng Marke in despyte	
	of fyr Tryftram / And how fyr Tryftram was dryuen in to	
	a chapel capitulo	xxxiiij
20	How Syr triftram was holpen by his men / & of quene Ifoude	
	which was put in lazarootte / & how trifrā was hurt	xxxv
	How fyr Tryftram ferued in warre the kyng howel of bry-	
	tayn and flewe hys aduerfarye in the felde	xxxvj
	How fyr Suppynabyles tolde fyr Tryftram how he was deffa-	
25	med in the courte of kyng Arthur / & of fyr lamerok	xxxvij
	How fyr Tryftram and his wyf arryued in wales and how	
	he mette there wyth fyr Lamerok Capitulo	xxxviij
	How fyr Tryftram faught wyth Syr Nabon / and ouercame	
	hym / and made fyr Lamerok lord of the yle	xxxix
30	How fyr Lamerok departed fro fyr Tryftram / & how he mette	
	wyth fyr frolle and after wyth fyr Launcelot capitulo	xl
	How fyr Lamerok flewe fyr frolle / and of the curtoyse fygh-	
	tyng wyth fyr belleaunce hys brother Capitulo	xlj

¶ There folowen the chapytres of the ix book

	How a yonge man came in to the courte of kyng arthur / and	
35	how fyr Kaye called hym in fcorne la cote male tayle	primo
	How a damoyfel came in to the courte & defyred a knyght to	
	take on hym an enquest which la cote male tayle emprised	ij

How le cote male tayle ouerthrewe fyr Dagonet the Kynges fole / and of the rebuke that he had of the damoyfel ca	iiij
How le cote male tayle fought ayenft an hondred knyghtes / & how he effcaped by the meane of a lady Capitulo	iiiij
How fyr Launcelot cam to the courte and herde of la cote male tayle / and how he folowed after hym / and how la cote male tayle was pryfoner Capitulo	v
How fyr Launcelot faught wyth vj knyghtes / & after wyth fyr bryan / and how he delyuerd the pryfonners	vj
How fyr Launcelot mette wyth the damoyfel named maledy- faunt / and named hyr the damoyfel bien pensfaunt	vij
How le cote male tayle was taken pryfoner / & after rescowed by fyr launcelot / & how fyr launcelot ouercam iiij brethern viij	viiij
How Syr Launcelot maad le cote mayle lord of the castel of Pendragon & after was made knyght of the rounde table	ix 15
How la bele Ifoude sente letters to fyr Trystram by hir mayde brangwayn and of dyuers auentures of fyr Trystram	x
How fyr Triftram mette with fyr lamerok de gales / and how they faught & after accorded neuer to fyght to gyders	xj
How fyr palomydes folowed the queftyng beeft & smote doun fyr Trystram and fyr Lamerock wyth one spere Capitulo	xij 20
How fyr lamerok mette wyth fyr Melleagaunce / & faught to gydre for the beaulte of dame Gueneuer capitulo	xiiiij
How Syr Kaye mette wyth Syr Trystram / and after of the fhame spoken of the knyghtes of Cornewayl / and how they Iusted capitulo	xv 25
How Kyng Arthur was brought in to the forest peryllous / & how fyr Trystram faued his lyf capitulo	xvj
How fyr Trystram came to la bele Ifoude / & how kehydyous began to loue bele Ifoude & of a letter that triftram fonde	xvij 30
How fyr Triftram departed fro tyntagyl & how he sorowed & was fo longe in a forest tyl he was out of his mynde	xviiiij
How fyr Trystram fowfed dagonet in a welle / & how Pala- mydes sente a damoyfel to feche Trystram / and how palamydes mette wyth Kyng Mark capitulo	xix 35
How it was noyfed how fyr Trystram was dede and how la bele Ifoude wolde haue flayn hyr felf capitulo	xx
How kyng Mark fonde fyr Trystram naked and made hym	xvj

- to be borne home to tyntagyl and how he was there known by
a brachet capitulo xxj
- How Kyng Marke by thauys of his counceyl bannysshed
fyr Tryfram oute of Cornewayl the terme of x yere xxij
- 5 How a damoyfel fouzght helpe to helpe sir laūcelot ayenst xxx
knyghtes / & how fyr tryfram faught with them ca xxiiij
- How fyr Tryfram & fyr Launcelot came to a lodgyng where
they must lufte wyth two knyghtes capitulo xxiiij
- How fyr Tryfram lufsted wyth fyr Kaye and fyr Sagramor
10 le defyrous / and how fyr Gawayn tordned Syr Tryfram fro
Morgan le fay Capitulo xxv
- How fyr Tryfram and fyr Gauwayn rode to haue foughten
ayenst the xxx knyghtes / but they durst not come oute xxvj
- How damoyfel brangwayn fonde tryfram flepyng by a welle
15 & how she delyuerd letters to hym fro bele Ifoude ca xxvij
- How fyr Tryfram had a falle of fyr Palomydes / and how
Launcelot ouerthrewe two knyghtes capitulo xxviij
- How fyr Launcelot lufsted with Palomydes and ouerthrewe
hym / & after he was assaylled with xij knyghtes xxix
- 20 How fyr Tryfram byhaued hym the fyrst day of the tourne-
ment / and there he had the prys Capitulo xxx
- How fyr Tryfram retourned ayenst kyng arthurs partye by
cause he sawe fyr Palomydes on that partye capitulo xxxj
- How Syr Tryfram fonde Palomydes by a welle / & broughte
25 hym wyth hym to his lodgyng Capitulo xxxij
- How fyr Tryfram smote doun fyr Palomydes / and how he
lufsted wyth kyng Arthur and other feates xxxiiij
- How fyr Launcelot hurte fyr Tryfram / and how after fyr
Tryfram smote doun fyr Palomydes capitulo xxxiiij
- 30 How the prys of the thyrd day was gyuen to Syr Launcelot
and fyr Launcelot gaf it to fyr Tryfram ca xxxv
- How Palomydes came to the castel where fyr Tryfram was
And of the queste that fyr Launcelot & x knyghtes made for
fyr Tryfram Capitulo xxxvj
- 35 How fyr Tryfram / fyr Palomydes / and Syr dynadan were
taken and put in pryson Capitulo xxxvij
- How Kyng marke was fory for the good renommee of fyr
Trifram / fomme of arthurs knyghtes lufsted wyth knyghtes

of Cornewayl Capitulo	xxxviiij
Of the treason of kyng Marke / and how fyr Gaheris smote hym down / and Andred / his cofyn capitulo	xxxix
How after that fyr Trystram / fyr Palomydes / and fyr Dynadan had be longe in pryfon / they were delyuerd ca	xl 5
How fyr Dynadan rescowed a lady fro fyr breuse fauns pyte & how fyr Trystram receyued a shelde of Morgan le fay	xlj
How fyr Trystram took wyth hym the shelde / and also how he slewe the paramour of Morgan le fay capitulo	xliij
How Morgan le fay buried hyr paramour / and how fyr trif- tram preyfed fyr Launcelot and hys kynne ca	xliij
How fyr Trystram at a tornoyment bare the shelde that Morgan le fay delyuerd to hym capitulo	xliiij

¶ Here folowen the chapytres of the tenth book

How fyr Trystram lusted and smote down Kyng Arthur / by- cause he tolde hym not the cause why he bare that shelde ca	j 15
How fyr Trystram faued fyr Palomydes lyf / & how they promyfed to fyght to gyder wythin fourtenyght capitulo	ij
How fyr Trystram fought a stronge knyght that had smy- ton hym down & many other knyghtes of the rounde table	iiij
How fyr Trystram smote down fyr Sagramor le defyrous / & fyr Dodynas le sauage capitulo	iiij
How fyr Trystram mette at the perron wyth fyr Launcelot / & how they faught to gyder vnknewen Capitulo	v
How fyr Launcelot brought fyr Trystram to the courte / and of the Ioye that the kyng and other made for the comyng of fyr Trystram Capitulo	vj
How for despyte of fyr Trystram kyng Mark came wyth ij knyghtes in to england and how he slewe one of the knygh- tes Capitulo	vij
How the kyng came to a fontayne where he fonde fyr Lame- rock complaynyng for the loue of Kyng lots wyf	viiij
How kyng marke / fyr Lamerok / and fyr dynadan came to a castel / and how Kyng Marke was knowen there capitulo	ix
How fyr Berlufes mette wyth Kyng marke / and how Syr dynadan toke his partye ca	x
¶ How kyng marke mocked fyr dynadan / & how they mette wyth vj knyghtes of the rounde table	xj
¶ How the vj knyghtes sente sir dagonet to Iuste with	

	kyng marke & how Kyng marke refused hym ca	xij
	How fyr Palomydes by aduenture mette kyng Marke fleyn	
	& how he ouerthrewe dagonet / and other knyghtes	xiiij
	How kyng marke & fyr Dynadan herde fyr palomydes ma-	
5	kyng grete sorowe & mornyng for la bele Ifoude	xiiij
	How the kyng had flayn amant wrongfully tofore kyng	
	arthur / & fyr launcelot fette kyng marke to kyng arthur	xv
	How fyr dynadan tolde fyr palamydes of the batayl betwene	
	Syr Launcelot and fyr Trystram Capitulo	xvj
10	How fyr Lamerok Iufted wyth dyuers knyghtes of the caf-	
	tel / wherin was Morgan le fay capitulo	xvij
	How fyr Palamydes wold haue Iufted for fyr Lamerock	
	wyth the knyghtes of the castel Capitulo	xviij
	How fyr Lamerock Iufted wyth fyr Palomydes and hurte	
15	hym greuoufly capitulo	xix
	How it was tolde fyr Launcelot that Dagonet chaced kyng	
	marke / & how a knyght ouerthrewe hym & vj knyghtes	xx
	How Kyng Arthur lete do crye a Iuftes / & how fyr Lamo-	
	rak came in and ouerthrewe fyr Gawayn & many other	xxj
20	How Kyng Arthur made Kyng marke to be accorded with fyr	
	Trystram & how they departed toward Cornewayll	xxij
	How fyr Percyuale was made knyght of kyng arthur / and	
	how a dombe mayde fpack & brouzt hym to the roude table	xxiij
	How fyr Lamerock laye wyth king lots wyf / and how fyr	
25	Gaheris flewe hir whiche was his owne moder ca	xxiiij
	How fyr agrauayn & fyr Mordred mette wyth a knyght fle-	
	yng / and how they bothe were ouerthrowen and of Syr Dyna-	
	dan Capitulo	xxv
	How Kyng Arthur / the quene & Launcelot receyued letters	
30	oute of Cornewayle / & of the anfuer ageyn ca	xxvj
	How Syr Launcelot was wrothe wyth the letter that he re-	
	ceyued from kyng Marke / and of Dynadan whiche made a	
	laye of kyng Marke capitulo	xxvij
	How Syr Trystram was hurte / and of a warre maad to	
35	Kynge Marke / And of Syr Trystram how he promysed to	
	refcowe hym Capitulo	xxviij
	How fyr Trystram ouercame the batayl / & how Elyas defy-	
	red a man to fyght body for body capitulo	xxix

How fyr Elyas & fyr Trystram faught to gyder for the tru- age / & how fyr trystram flewe Elyas in the felde	xxx
How at a grete feste that kyng Marke made / an harper came and fange the lay that dynadan had made capitulo	xxxj
How kyng Marke flewe by treafon his brother bowdyn for good feruyce that he had done to hym Capitulo	xxxij 5
How anglydes boudyns wyf escaped with hir yonge sone ali- faunder le orphelyn & came to the castel of arondel	xxxiiij
How anglydes gaf the bloody doblet to alyfaunder hir sone the fame day that he was made knyzt & the charge withal	xxxiiij 10
How it was tolde to kyng marke of Alyfaunder . and how he wold haue flayn fyr Sadok for sauynge of his lyf	xxxv
How fyr Alyfaunder wanne the pryce at a tournoyment and of Morgan le fay / And how he faught wyth Syr Maulgryn and flewe hym capitulo	xxxvj 15
How quene Morgan le fay had alyfaunder in hyr castel / and how she heelyd his woundes capitulo	xxxvij
How Alyfaunder was delyuerd fro the quene Morgan le fay by the moyane of a damoyfel capitulo	xxxviiij
How alyfaunder mette wyth alys la beale pylgrym / and how he Iufted wyth two knyghtes / And after of hym and of Syr Mordred capitulo	xxxix 20
How sir galahalt dyd do crye a Iuftes in furlufe / & quene gue- neuers knyghtes shold Iufte ayenft all that wold come	xL
How fyr Lancelot fought in the tournoyment / & how fyr pa- lomydes dyd armes there for a damoyfell Ca	xlj 25
How fyr Galahault & fyr Palomydes faught to gyder / and of fyr dynadan and fyr Galahault Capitulo	xliij
How fyr archade appeled fyr Palamydes of treafon & how fyr palamydes flewe hym Capitulo	xliij 30
Of the thyrd day & how fyr Palomydes Iufted wyth fyr La- merok and other thynges capitulo	xliiij
Of the iiij day & of many grete feates of armes ca	xlvi
Of the v day & how fyr Lamerok byhaued hym ca	xlviij
How palamydes fought wyth Corfabryn for a lady / & how Palamydes flewe corfabryn	xlviij 35
Of the vj day & what was thenne doon ca	xlviij
Of the vij batayll / and how Syr Launcelot beyng defguyfed	xlviij

	lyke a mayde fmote doun fyr dynadan capitulo	xl ix
	How by trefon fyr Triftram was brought to a tournoymnt for to haue be flayn / and how he was put in pryson	L
	How Kyng Marke lete do counterfete letters from the pope	
5	& how fyr Percyual delyuerd fyr Triftram oute of pryson	lj
	How fyr Tryftram & la bele Ifoude came in to englond / & how fyr Launcelot brought them to Ioyous garde capitulo	lij
	How by the counceyl of bele yfoude Tryftram rode armed and how he mette wyth fyr Palomydes capitulo	liij
10	Of fyr Palomydes and how he mette wyth fyr bleoberys & wyth fyr Ector and of fyr Percyuale Capitulo	liiij
	How fyr Tryftram mette wyth fyr dynadan & of their deuy- fes & what he sayd to fyr Gauwayns brethern	lv
	How fyr Tryftram fmote doun fyr agrauayn & fyr gaheris &	
15	how fyr Dynadan was fente fore by la bele Ifoude	lvj
	How fyr Dynadan mette wyth fyr Tryftram / & wyth Iustying wyth fyr Palamydes fyr Dynadan knewe hym	lvij
	How they approched the castel Lonazep and of other deuyfes of the deth of fyr Lamerok Capitulo	lviiij
20	How they came to humberbanke / & how they fonde a shyppe there wherin laye the body of Kyng Hermaunce	lix
	How fyr Tryftram wyth his felawfhyp came and were with an hoost whyche after faught wyth Syr Tryftram and other maters capitulo	lx
25	How Palamydes wente for to fyght wyth two brethern for the deth of kyng Hermaunce Capitulo	lxj
	The cotype of the letter wryton for to reuenge the kynges deth and how fyr palamydes faught for to haue the bataylle	lxij
	Of the preparacyon of fyr Palamydes & the ij brethern that	
30	fhould fyght wyth hym Capitulo	lxiiij
	Of the batayl betwene fyr Palamydes & the two brethern and how the two brethern were flayn capitulo	lxiiiij
	How fyr Tryftram and fyr Palamydes mette Breuce fauns pyte and how Syr Triftram and la beale yfoude wente vnto	
35	Lonazep Capitulo	lxv
	How fyr Palamydes Iusted wyth fyr Galyhodyn / & after wyth fyr Gawayn & fmote them doun	lxvj
	How fyr Tryftram & his felawfhyp cam vnto the tournement	

of loneȝep and of dyuers Iuftes and maters capitulo	lxvij
How fyr Tryftram and hys felauſhyp Iufted & of the noble feates that they dyd in that tournoyeng	lxviij
How fyr Tryftram was vnhorſed & ſmyten down by fyr laun- celot / & after that fyr Triftram ſmote down kyng arthur	lxix 5
How fyr Tryftram chaunged his harnoys & it was al reed and how he demenyd hym and how Syr Palamydes ſlewe Launcelottes hors Capitulo	lxx
How fyr Launcelot ſayd to fyr Palamydes / & how the prys of that day was gyuen to fyr Palamydes	lxxj 10
How fyr dynadan prouoked fyr Tryftram to do wel	lxxij
How kyng Arthur & fyr Launcelot came to ſee la bele yfoude & how Palamydes ſmote down kyng arthur Capitulo	lxxiij
How the ſecond day Palamydes forſoke fyr Tryftram / and wente to the contrarye partye ayenſt hym capitulo	lxxiiij 15
How fyr Tryftram departed out of the felde & awaked Sir Dynadan and chaunged his araye in to blacke ca	lxxv
How fyr Palamydes chaunged his ſhelde & armour for to hurte ſir triftram / & how fyr Launcelot dyd to ſir triftram	lxxvj
How fyr Tryftram departed wyth la bele Ifoude / & how Pa- lomydes folowed and excuſed hym capitulo	lxxvij 20
How kyng arthur and fyr Launcelot came in to theyr pauely- ons as they fatte at ſouper / and of Palomydes	lxxviij
How fyr Tryftram and fyr Palamydes dyd the nexte day and how kyng Arthur was vnhorſed capitulo	lxxix 25
How fyr Tryftram torned to kyng Arthurs fyde / and how Syr Palomydes wolde not capitulo	lxxx
How fyr bleoberis & fyr Ector reported to quene Gueneuer of the beaute of la bele Ifoude capitulo	lxxxj
How Palomydes complayned by a welle / & how Epynogris came and fonde hym / and of theyr bothe ſorowes	lxxxij 30
How fyr palomydes brouȝt to fyr epynogris his lady / & how ſir palomydes & fyr ſafer were aſſayled ca	lxxxiiij & lxxxiiij
How fyr Tryftram made hym redy to reſcowe Syr Palomydes but fyr Launcelot reſcowed hym or he came capitulo	lxxxv 35
How fyr Tryftram and fyr Launcelot wyth palomydes came to Ioyous garde / of Palomydes and fyr Tryftram ca	lxxxvj
How there was a day ſette bytwene fyr Tryftram and Syr	

palomydes for to fyght / & how sir trystram was hurte lxxxvij
 How fyr palomydes kepte his day for to haue foughten / but
 fyr Trystram myght not come / & other thynges ca lxxxviij

¶ There folowen the chapytres of the xi book

How Syr Launcelot rode on his aduenture / & how he helpe a
 5 dolorous lady fro hyr payne / and how that he faught wyth a
 dragon capitulo primo
 How fyr Launcelot came to Pelles / and of the fangreal / and
 how he begate galahad on Elayn kyng pelles douzter ij
 How Syr Launcelot was dyspleasyd whan he knewe that he
 10 had layen by Elayn / & how she was delyuerd of galahad iij
 How fyr bors came to dame Elayn & fawe galahad / & how
 he was fedde wyth the fangreal capitulo iiij
 How fyr bors made fyr pedyuer to yelde hym / & of meruayl-
 lous aduentures that he had & how he achyeued them ca v
 15 How fyr bors departed / & how fyr Launcelot was rebuked of
 the quene Gueneuer / and of his excuse capitulo vj
 How dame Elayn galahads moder came in grete estate to ca-
 melot / and how Launcelot byhaued hym there Capitulo vij
 How dame bryfen by enchauntement brought fyr Launcelotte
 20 to Elayns bedde / & how quene gueneuer rebuked hym viij
 How dame Elayn was commaunded by quene Gueneuer to
 voyde the courte / & how fyr Launcelot becam madde ix
 What forowe quene gueneuer made for Syr Launcelot / & how
 he was fought by knyghtes of his kynne Capitulo x
 25 How a seruante of fyr Aglouals was slayn / & what ven-
 geaunce fyr aglouale & fyr Percyuale dyd therfore xj
 How fyr Percyuale departed secretelye fro his brother / & how
 he lofed a knyght bounden with a chayne & other thynges xij
 How fyr Percyuale mette wyth sir Ector / & how they faught
 30 longe and eche had almoost slayne other capitulo xiiij
 How by myracle they were bothe made hole by the comyng of
 the holy vessel of Sangreal Capitulo xiiij

¶ There folowen the chapytres of the xij book

How fyr Launcelot in hys madnes took a swerde & faughte
 with a knyght and after lepte in to a bedde capitulo primo
 35 How fyr Launcelot was caryed in an hors lytter / & after fyr
 Launcelot rescowed fyr blyaunte his hooft Capitulo ij

How fyr Launcelot faught ayenfte a bore & flewe hym / & how he was hurte / & brought to an hermytage capitulo	iij
How fyr Launcelot was knowen by dame Elayn / and was borne in to a chambre & after helyd by the fangreal	iiij
How fyr Launcelot after that he was hole & had his mynde 5 he was afhamed / and how that Elayn defyred a castel for hym capitulo	v
How fyr Launcelot came in to the Ioyous yle / & there he named hym self le chyualer malfet capitulo	vj
Of a grete tournoyeng in the Ioyous yle / and how fyr Percy- uale and Syr Ector came thyder and fyr Percyuale fought wyth hym capitulo	vij
How eche of them knewe other / & of their curtoysye / & how his brother Ector came to hym / and of theyr Ioye	viiij
How fyr bors & fyr Lyonel came to kyng brandegore / & how 15 fyr bors toke his sone helyne le blank & of fir launcelot	ix
How fyr Launcelot wyth fyr Percyuale & fyr ector came to the courte / and of the grete Ioye of hym capitulo	x
How la bele yfoude counceyllled fyr Tryftram to goo vnto the courte to the grete fefte of Pentecofte capitulo	xj 20
How fyr Tryftram departed vnarmed and mette with fyr Palomydes / and how they fmote eche other / and how Palomydes forbare hym capitulo	xij
How Syr Tryftram gate hym harnoys of a Knyght whyche was hurte & how he ouerthrewe fyr Palomydes	xiiij 25
How fyr Tryftram and fyr Palamydes fought longe to gyders / and after accorded / and fyr Tryftram maad hym to be cryftened Capitulo	xiiij

¶ There folowen the chapytres of the xiij book

How at the vygyle of the fefte of Pentecofte entred in to the halle before Kyng Arthur a damoyfel / and defyred fyr launcelot for to come and dubbe a knyght / and how he wente wyth hyr capitulo	primo
How the letters were founde wryton in the fyege peryllous & of the meruayllous aduenture of the fwerde in a fone	ij
How fyr Gawayn affayed to drawe oute the fwerde / & how 35	

	an olde man brought in galahad capitulo	iiij
	How the olde man broght Galahad to the fyege peryllous & fette hym therin / & how al the knyghtes meruaylled	iiij
	How Kyng Arthur shewed the stone houyng on the water	
5	to Galahad and how he drewe oute the fwerde	v
	How kyng Arthur had al the knyghtes to gyder for to Iuste in the medowe befyde wyncheſter or they departed	vj
	How the quene defyred to fee Galahad / & after al the knyghtes were replenyſhed wyth the holy fangreal / & how all they	
10	auowed the enqueſte of the ſame capitulo	vij
	How grete forowe was made of the kyng and ladyes for the departyng of the knyghtes / & how they departed	viiij
	How Galahad gate hym a ſhelde / and how they ſpedde that prefumed to take down the ſayd ſhelde capitulo	ix
15	How Galahad departed with the ſhelde / and how Kyng enelake had receyued thys ſhelde of Ioseph of armathye	x
	How Ioseph made a croſſe on the whyte ſhelde with his blode & how galahad was by a monke brought to a tombe	xj
	Of the meruayle that fyr Galahad ſawe & herde in the tombe	
20	and how he made melyas knyght Capitulo	xij
	Of thaduenture that Melyas had / & how Galahad reuenged hym / and how melyas was caryed in to an abbey	xiiij
	How Galahad departed / & how he was commaunded to goo to the caſtel of maydens to deſtroye the wycked cuſtome	xiiij
25	How fyr Galahad faught wyth the knyghtes of the caſtel & deſtroyed the wycked cuſtome capitulo	xv
	How fyr Gawayn came to thabbey for to folowe Galahad / & how he was ſhryuen to an heremyte capitulo	xvj
	How fyr Galahad mette with fyr Launcelot & with fyr Percyuale / and fmote hem down and departed fro them	xvij
30	How fyr Launcelot halfe ſlepyng and halfe wakyng ſawe a ſeek man borne in a lytter / and how he was heled by the fangreal capitulo	xviiij
	How a voys ſpake to fyr Launcelot / & how he fonde his hors	
35	& his helme borne awaye / & after wente a fote	xix
	How fyr Launcelot was ſhryuen & what forowe he made / & of good enſamples whyche were ſhewed to hym ca	xx

¶ There folowen the chapytres of the giiiiij book

How fyr Percyuale came to a reclufe and asked hyr counceyl / & how she tolde hym that she was hys aunte ca	primo
How Merlyn lykened the rounde table to the world / and how the knyghtes that shold achyeue the fangreal shold be knowen Capitulo	ij 5
How fyr Percyuale came in to a monasterye where he fonde Kyng Enelake whyche was an olde man capitulo	iiij
How fyr Percyuale sawe many men of armes beryng a dede knyght and how he fauggt ageynst them capitulo	iiij
How a yeman defyred hym to gete ageyn an hors / and how Syr Percyualles hakenay was slayn / and how he gate an hors capitulo	v
Of the grete daunger that fyr Percyual was in by hys hors and how he sawe a serpent and a Lyon fyght	vj
Of the aduyfyon that fyr percyual sawe / and how hys aduyfyon was expowned / and of hys Lyon Capitulo	vij 15
How fyr Percyuale sawe a shyppe comyng to hym warde / & how the lady of the shyppe tolde hym of hir disherytaunce	viiij
How fyr Percyual promysed hir helpe & how he requyred hir of loue / and how he was faued fro the fende ca	ix 20
How Syr Percyual for penaunce roof hym self thorough the thyghe / and how she was knowen for the deuyl	x

¶ Here folowth the xv book whyche is of fyr Launcelot

How Syr Launcelot came in to a chapel where he fonde deed in a whyte sherte a man of relygyon / of on hondred wynter olde capitulo	primo 25
Of a dede man how men wold haue hewen / and it wolde not be / & how fyr Launcelot toke the hayr of the dede man	ij
Of an aduyfyon that fyr Launcelot had / and how he tolde it to an heremyte / and defyred counceyll of hym capitulo	iiij
How the heremyte expowned to fyr Launcelot his aduyfyon & tolde hym that fyr Galahad was hys sone capitulo	iiij 30
How fyr Launcelot lusted wyth many knyghtes / & he was taken Capitulo	v
How fyr Launcelot tolde hys aduyfyon to a woman / & how she expowned it to hym capitulo	vj 35

¶ There folowen the chapytres of the xvj book

- How fyr Gawayn was nyghe wery of the queste of fangreal
and of his meruayllous dreame capitulo primo
- Of the advyfyon of fyr Ector / and how he Iufted wyth fyr
Ewayn le auoultres hys fworne brother ca ij
- 5 How fyr Gawayn & fyr Ector cam to an hermytage to be con-
fessyd & how they tolde to the hermyte theyr aduyfions iij
- How the heremyte expowned theyr aduyfyon Capitulo iiij
- Of the good counceyl that the heremyte gaf to them v
- How Syr Bors mette wyth an heremyte / and how he was
10 confessyd to hym and of his penaunce enioyned to hym vj
- How fyr bors was lodged wyth a lady and how he took on
hym for to fyght ageynst a champyon for hyr lande vij
- Of a vyfyon whyche Syr bors had that nyght / and how he
faught and ouercame hys aduerfarye capitulo viij
- 15 How the lady was reftored to hyr londes by the bataylle of
fyr Boors / and of his departyng / and how he mette fyr Ly-
onel taken and beten wyth thornes / and alfo a mayde which
fhold haue ben deuoured Capitulo ix
- How fyr boors lefte to rescowe his brother. & rescowed the da-
20 moyfel / & how it was tolde hym that lyonel was dede x
- How fyr boors tolde his dreame to a preest / whiche he had dre-
med & of the counceyl that the preest gaf to hym xj
- How the deuyll in a womans lykenes wold haue had Syr
bors to haue layen by hir / & how by goddes grace he efcaped xij
- 25 Of the holy comynycacyon of an abbot to Syr boors / and how
the abbot counceyllled hym capitulo xiiij
- How fyr boors mette wyth his brother fyr Lyonel / and how
fyr Lyonel wolde haue flayn fyr boors capitulo xiiij
- How fyr Colgreuaunce fought ayenft fyr Lyonel for to faue
30 fyr boors / and how the heremyte was flayn ca xv
- How fyr Lyonel flewe Syr Colgreuaunce / and how after he
wold haue flayn fyr boors capitulo xvj
- How there came a voys whyche charged fyr bors to touche not
hym and of a cloude that came bytwene them capitulo xvij

¶ There folowen the chapytres of the xvij book

[leaf 14 verso]

How fyr Galahad faught at a turnement / and how he was knownen of fyr gawayn & of fyr ector de marris capitulo	j
How fyr Galahad rode with a damoyfel / & came to the fhyp where as fyr boors and fyr Percyuale were in capitulo	ij
How fyr Galahad entryd in to the fhyp / & of a fayr bedde therin wyth other meruayllous thynges / & of a fwerde	5 iij
Of the meruaylles of the fwerde & of the scaubard	iiij
How Kyng Pelles was smyton thorough bothe thyes by cause he drewe the fwerde / & other meruayllous hystories	v
How Salomon toke dauyds fwerde by the counceyl of hys wyf / and of other maters meruayllous Capitulo	10 vj
A wonderful tale of kyng Salamon & his wyf	vij
How Galahad and hys felowes came to a castel / and how they were foughten wyth al / & how they flewe theyr aduerfaries and other maters capitulo	15 viiij
How the iij knyghtes wyth Percyuales fyfter came in to the wafte forest / & of an herte & iiij Lyons and other thynges	ix
How they were defyred of a ftraūge custom / which they wolde not obeye / wherfore they faught & flewe many knyghtes	x
How Percyuales fyfter bledde a dyffhe ful of blood for to hele a lady wherfore ſhe dyed / and how that the body was put in a fhyppe Capitulo	20 xj
How Galahad and percyuale fonde in a castel many tombes of maydens that had bledde to dethe capitulo	xij
How Syr Launcelot entred in to the fhyppe where fyr Percyuales fyfter laye deed / and how he mette wyth Syr Galahad hys sone capitulo	25 xiiij
How a knyght brought to fyr Galahad an hors / & bad hym come from his fader fyr Launcelot capitulo	xiiij
How Launcelot was tofore the dore of the chambre / wherin the holy fangreal was capitulo	30 xv
How fyr Launcelot had layen xiiij dayes & as many nyghtes as a dede man & other dyuers maters capitulo	xvj
How fyr Launcelot retorned toward logres and of other adventures whyche he ſawe in the waye capitulo	35 xvij
How Galahad came to Kyng Mordrayns / and of other maters and adventures Capitulo	xviiij
How fyr Percyuale and fyr boors mette wyth fyr Galahad	

& how they came to the castel of carbonek & other maters	xix
How Galahad & his felowes were fedde of the holy fangreal	
& how our lord apperyd to them and other thynges	xx
How Galahad enoynted wyth the blood of the spere the	
5 maymed kyng and of other aduentures capitulo	xxj
How they were fedde wyth the fangreal whyle they were in	
pryson / & how Galahad was made kyng capitulo	xxij
Of the forowe that Percyuale and boors made whan galahad	
was dede & of Percyuale how he dyed & other maters	xxiij

¶ There folowen the chapytres of the xviij book

10 Of the Ioye of Kyng Arthur and the quene had of thachy- eument of the fangreal / and how Launcelot fyl to hys olde loue ageyn capitulo	primo
How the quene comaunded fyr Launcelot to auoyde the court and of the forowe that Launcelot made capitulo	ij
15 How at a dyner that the quene made there was a knyght en- poyfoned whyche fyr Mador layed on the quene	iiij
How fyr Mador appeched the quene of treason / & there was no knyght wold fyght for hyr at the fyrft tyme	iiij
How the quene requyred fyr Boors to fyght for hyr / & how	
20 he graunted vpon condycyon / and how he warned fyr Laun- celot therof capitulo	v
How at the day fyr boors made hym redy for to fyght for the quene / & whan he shold fyzt how another dyscharged hym	vj
How fyr Launcelot fought ayenst fyr mador for the quene / &	
25 how he ouercame fyr Mador & dyscharged the quene	vij
How the trouthe was knowen by the mayden of the lake / and of dyuers other maters Capitulo	viiij
How fyr Launcelot rode to astolat / & receyued a fleue to bere vpon his helme at the requeste of a mayde capitulo	ix
30 How the tornoye began at Wynchester and what Knyghtes were at the Iustes and other thynges capitulo	x
How sir Launcelot and fyr Lauayn entred in the felde ayenst them of kyng Arthurs court / & how launcelot was hurte	xj
How fyr Launcelot & fyr Lauayn departed oute of the felde	
35 and in what Ieopardye Launcelot was capitulo	xij

How Launcelot was brought to an hermyte for to be helyd of his wounde and of other maters capitulo	xiiij
How fyr Gawayn was lodged wyth the lord of astolat / & there had knowlege that hit was Syr Launcelot that bare the rede fleue Capitulo	xiiiij 5
Of the forowe that fyr boors had for the hurte of Launcelot and of the angre that the quene had by cause Launcelot bare the fleue capitulo	xv
How Syr boors fought launcelot & fonde hym in the hermytage / & of the lamentacion bytwene them Capitulo	xvj 10
How fyr Launcelot armed hym to assaye yf he myght bere armes & how his woundes breft oute ageyn capitulo	xvij
How fyr boors retorned & tolde tydynges of fyr Launcelot / & of the tournoye and to whome the prys was gyuen	xviiij
Of the grete lamentacyn of the fayr made of astolat whan Launcelot shold departe & how she dyed for his loue	xix
How the corps of the mayde of astolat arryued tofore kyng arthur and of the buryeng / and how fyr Launcelot offryd the masse peny capitulo	xx
Of grete Iuftes doon alle a crystemasse / and of a grete Iuftes and tournoye ordeyned by Kyng Arthur / and of Syr Launcelot Capitulo	xxj 20
How Launcelot after that he was hurt of a gentylwoman came to an hermyte and of other maters capitulo	xxij
How fyr Launcelot byhaued hym at the Iuftes / and other men also capitulo	xxiiij 25
How Kyng arthur meruaylled moche of the Iustyng in the felde and how he rode & fonde fyr Launcelot capitulo	xxiiiij
How trewe loue is lykened to fommer Capitulo	xxv

¶ Here folowen the chapytres of the xij book

How quene gueneuer rode on mayeng with certeyn knyghtes of the rounde table and clad al in grene capitulo	primo 30
How fyr Mellyagraunce toke the quene & al hyr knyghtes whyche were fore hurte in fyghtyng capitulo	ij
How fyr Launcelot had word how the quene was taken / & how fyr mellyagraunce layed a buffhement for launcelot	iiij 35

- How fyr Launcelots hors was flayn / & how fyr Launcelot rode in a carte for to rescowe the quene Capitulo iiij
- How fyr Mellyagraunce requyred foryeuenes of the quene / & how she appeased fyr Launcelot and other maters v
- 5 How fyr Launcelot came in the nyght to the quene and laye wyth hyr / and how fyr Melyagraunce appeched the quene of trefon capitulo vj
- How fyr Launcelot answerd for the quene / and waged bataylle ayenft fyr melyagraunce / and how fyr Launcelot was
- 10 taken in a trappe Capitulo vij
- How fyr Launcelot was delyuerd out of pryfon by a lady & toke a whyt courser and came for to kepe hys day viij
- How fyr Launcelot cam the same tyme that fyr mellyagraunce abode hym in the felde and dreffyd hym to bataylle ix
- 15 How fyr Vrre came in to arthurs courte for to be heled of his woundes / & how kyng arthur wold begyn to handle hym x
- How Kyng arthur handled fyr Vrre / and after hym many other knyghtes of the rounde table capitulo xj
- How fyr Launcelot was comanded by arthur to handle hys
- 20 woundes & anone he was al hool / & how they thanked god xij
- How there was a party made of an hondred knyghtes ayenft an hondred knyghtes / and of other maters capitulo xiiij

¶ Here foloweth the book of the pyteous bystorie whyche is of the morte or dethe of kyng Arthur / and the chapytres of the twenty book

- How fyr Agrauayn & fyr mordred were befyr vpon fyr Gawayn for to dysclofe the loue bytwene Syr Launcelot & quene
- 25 Gueneuer Capitulo primo
- How fyr Agrauayn dysclofed theyr loue to kyng Arthur / & how Kyng Arthur gaf them lycence to take hym ij
- How fyr Launcelot was espyed in the quenes chambre / and how Syr Agrauayn and Syr Mordred came wyth twelue
- 30 knyghtes to flee hym Capitulo iij
- How fyr Launcelot slewe fyr colgreuance & armed hym in his harnoys & after slewe fyr agrauayn & xij of his felawes iiij
- How Syr Launcelot came to fyr bors & tolde hym how he had

spedde & in what aduerture he na. ben / & how he escaped	v
Of the counceyl and aduys whiche was taken by fyr Launcelot and by hys frendes for to faue the quene Capitulo	vj
How fyr mordred rode hastely to the Kyng / to telle hym of thaffray & deth of fyr agrauayn & the other knyghtes	vij 5
How fyr Launcelot and hys kynnesmen rescowed the quene from the fyre and how he flewe many knyghtes	viiij
Of the forowe & lamentacyon for the dethe of his neuwes & other good knyghtes / & also for the quene hys wyf	ix
How Kyng Arthur at the requeste of fyr Gawayn concluded to make warre ayenst fyr Launcelot / and layed fyege to his castel called Ioyous garde capitulo	x
Of the comynycacyon bytwene kyng Arthur & fyr Launcelot and how Kyng Arthur repreuyd hym capitulo	xj
How the cofyns & kynnesmen of fyr Launcelot excyted hym to goo oute to batayl / and how they made them redy	xij 15
How fyr Gawayn lusted and smote down fyr Lyonel / and how fyr Launcelot horfed kyng Arthur ca	xiiij
How the Pope sent down his bulles to make pees / & how fyr Launcelot brought the quene to kyng Arthur	xiiij 20
Of the delyueraunce of the quene to the kyng by fyr launcelot & what langage fyr Gawayn had to fyr Launcelot	xv
Of the comynycacyon bytwene fyr Gawayn and fyr Launcelot wyth moche other langage capitulo	xvj
How fyr Launcelot departed fro the kyng & fro Ioyous garde ouer see warde and what knyghtes wente wyth hym	xvij 25
How fyr Launcelot passed ouer the see / & how he made grete lordes of the knyghtes that wente wyth hym capitulo	xviiij
How kyng arthur & fyr Gawayn made a grete hooft redy to go ouer see to make warre on fyr Launcelot capitulo	xix 30
What message fyr Gawayn sente to fyr Launcelot / & kyng Arthur layed fyege to benwyck and other maters	xx
How fyr launcelot & fyr Gawayn dyd batayl togyder / and how fyr Gawayn was ouerthrowen and hurte capitulo	xxj
Of the forowe that kyng arthur made for the warre / & of an other batayl where also fyr Gawayn had the werse	xxij 35

¶ Here folowen the chapytres of the xxj booke

- How Syr Mordred prefumea & toke on hym to be kyng of englond / & wold haue maryed the quene his faders wyf ca j
 How after that kyng arthur had tydynges / he retorned and came to douer where fyr Mordred mette hym to lette his lankyng / and of the deth of Syr Gawayn Capitulo ij
 How after fyr Gawayns ghooft apperyd to kynge arthur & warned hym that he shold not fyght that day capitulo iij
 How by myfadventure of an adder the batayl began / where Mordred was slayn and arthur hurte to the deth iiij
 10 How Kyng arthur comanded to caste his sward excalybur in to the water / & how he was delyuerd to ladyes in a barge v
 How fyr bedwere fonde hym on the morne deed in an hermytage / and how he abode there wyth the hermyte capitulo vj
 Of thoppynyng of fomme men of the deth of kynge arthur / & 15 how quene Gueneuer made hir a nonne in almesburye vij
 How whan fyr Launcelot herde of the deth of kyng arthur & of fyr Gawayn and other maters came in to englond viij
 How fyr Launcelot departed to seche the quene Gueneuer and how he fonde hir at almesburye capitulo ix
 20 How Syr Launcelot came to thermytage where tharchebysshop of caunterburye was / & how he toke thabyte on hym x
 How fyr Launcelot wente wyth his feuen felowes to amesburye / & fonde there quene Gueneuer deed / whom they brought to glastyngburye capitulo xj
 25 How fyr Launcelot began to sekene / & after dyed / whos body was borne to Ioyous garde for to be buryed capitulo xij
 How fyr Ector fonde fyr launcelot hys brother dede / and how Constantyn reygned next after Arthur / and of the ende of thys book capitulo xiiij

¶ Explicit the table

¶ Capitulum primum



It befel in the dayes of Vther pendragon when
 he was kyng of all Englonde / and fo regned
 that there was a myzty duke in Cornewail
 that helde warre ageynst hym long tyme / And
 the duke was called the duke of Tyntagil / and 5
 fo by meanes kyng Vther fend for this duk / charging hym
 to bryng his wyf with hym / for she was called a fair lady /
 and a paffyng wyfe / and her name was called Igrayne /
 So whan the duke and his wyf were comyn vnto the kyng
 by the meanes of grete lordes they were accorded bothe / the ky- 10
 nge lyked and loued this lady wel / and he made them grete
 chere out of mefure / and defyred to haue lyen by her / But she
 was a paffyng good woman / and wold not affente vnto the
 kyng / And thenne she told the duke her husband and faid
 I fuppose that we were fente for that I fhold be difhonoured 15
 Wherfor husband I counceille yow that we departe from hens
 fodenly that we maye ryde all nyghte vnto oure owne caftell /
 and in lyke wyfe as she faide fo they departed / that neyther
 the kyng nor none of his counceill were ware of their depart-
 tyng Also foone as kyng Vther knewe of their departyng soo 20
 fodenly / he was wonderly wrothe / Thenne he called to hym his
 pryuy counceille / and told them of the fodeyne departyng of
 the duke and his wyf /

¶ Thenne they auyfed the kyng to fend for the duke and
 his wyf by a grete charge / And yf he wille not come at yo- 25
 ur fomōs / thenne may ye do your beft / thenne haue ye caufe to
 make myghty werre vpon hym / Soo that was done and the
 meffagers hadde their anfvers / And that was thys fhortly /
 that neyther he nor his wyf wold not come at hym /
 Thenne was the kyng wonderly wroth / And thenne the kyng 30
 fente hym playne word ageyne / and badde hym be redy and
 fuffe hym and garnyffhe hym / for within xl dayes he wold
 fetche hym oute of the byggeft caftell that he hath /

¶ Whanne the duke hadde thys warnyng / anone he wente
 and furnyffhed and garnyffhed two ftronge Caftels of his 35
 of the whiche the one hyght Tyntagil / & the other caftel hyzt

Terrabyl / So his wyf Dame Igrayne he putte in the castell
of Tyntagil / And hym self he putte in the castel of Terrabyl
the whiche had many yffues and pofternes oute / Thenne in
alle hafte came Vther with a grete hooft / and leyd a syege a-
5 bout the castel of Terrabil / And ther he pyght many pael-
yons / and there was grete warre made on bothe partyes / and
moche peple flayne / Thenne for pure angre and for grete lo-
ue of fayr Irayne the kyng Vther felle feke / So came to the
kyng Vther Syre Vlfius a noble knyght / and asked the
10 kyng why he was feke / I shall telle the faid the kyng / I
am feke for angre and for loue of fayre Igrayne that I may
not be hool / wel my lord faid Syre Vlfius / I shal feke Mer-
lyn / and he shalle do yow remedy that youre herte shalbe ple-
afyd / So Vlfius departed / and by aduenture he mette Mer-
15 lyn in a beggars aray / and ther Merlyn asked Vlfius who-
me he foughte / and he faid he had lytyl ado to telle hym / Well
faide Merlyn / I knowe whome thou fekest / for thou fekest
Merlyn / therfore feke no ferther / for I am he / and yf kyng
Vther wille wel rewarde me / and be sworne vnto me to ful-
20 fille my defyre that shall be his honour & profite more thā myn
for I shalle caufe hym to haue alle his defyre / Alle this wyll
I vndertake faid Vlfius that ther shalle be nothyng refona-
ble / but thow shalt haue thy defyre / well faid Merlyn / he shall
haue his entente and defyre / And therfore faide Merlyn / ryde
25 on your wey / for I wille not be long behynde

Capitulum Secundum

THenne Vlfius was glad and rode on more than a
paas tyll that he came to kyng Vtherpendragon / and
told hym he had met with Merlyn / where is he faid the kyng
fir faid Vlfius he wille not dwelle long / ther with al Vlfius
30 was ware where Merlyn stood at the porche of the paelions
dore / And thenne Merlyn was bounde to come to the kyng
Whan kyng Vther sawe hym he faid he was welcome / fyr fa-
id Merlyn I knowe al your hert euery dele / so ye wil be sworn
vnto me as ye be a true kyng enoynted to fulfille my defyre
35 ye shal haue your defyre / thenne the kyng was sworne vpon
the iiij euuāgelistes / Syre faid Merlyn this is my defyre / the
first nyzt þ^t ye shal lye by Igrayne ye shal gete a child on her &

whan that is borne that it shal be delyuerd to me for to nourish the there as I wille haue it / for it shal be your worship / & the childis auaille as mykel as the child is worth / I wyll wel faid the kyng as thou wilt haue it / Now make you redy faid Merlyn this nyght ye shalle lye with Igrayne in the castel of Tyntigayll / & ye shalle be lyke the duke her husband Vlkyus shal be lyke Syre Braftias / a knyghte of the dukes And I will be lyke a knyghte that hyghte Syr Iordanus a knyghte of the dukes / But wayte ye make not many questions with her nor her men / but saye ye are diseased and soo hye yow to bedde / and ryse not on the morne tyll I come to yow / for the castel of Tyntygaill is but x myle hens / soo this was done as they deuysed / But the duke of Tyntigail aspyed hou the kyng rode fro the syege of tarabil / & therfor that nyghte he yssued oute of the castel at a posterne for to haue distresfid the kynges hooft / And so thorowe his owne yssue the duke hym self was slayne or euer the kyng cam at the castel of Tyntigail / so after the deth of the duke kyng Vther lay with Igrayne more than thre houres after his deth / and begat on her that nyg3 arthur / & on day cam Merlyn cā to the kyng / & bad hym make hym redy / & so he kist the lady Igrayne and departed in all hast / But whan the lady herd telle of the duke her husbād and by all record he was dede or euer kyng Vther came to her thenne she merueilled who that myghte be that laye with her in lykenes of her lord / so she mourned pryuely and held hir pees / Thenne alle the barons by one assent prayd the Kyng of accord betwixe the lady Igrayne and hym / the kyng gaf hem leue / for fayne wold he haue ben accorded with her / Soo the kyng put alle the trust in Vlkyus to entrete bitwene them so by the entrete at the last the kyng & she met to gyder / Now we doo well faid Vlkyus / our kyng is a lusty knyghte and wyueles / & my lady Igrayne is a passyng fair lady / it were grete ioye vnto vs all and hit myghte please the kyng to make her his quene / vnto that they all well accordyd and meued it to the kyng / And anone lyke a lusty knyghte / he assentid therto with good wille / and so in alle haste they were maryed in a mornynge with grete myrthe and Ioye /

And Kyng Lott of Lowthean and of Orkenay thenne

wedded Margawfe that was Gaweyns moder / And kynge
 Nentres of the land of Garlot wedded Elayne / Al this was
 done at the request of kynge Vther / And the thyrd fyfter mor-
 gan lesey was put to scole in a nonnery / And ther she lerned
 5 so moche that she was a grete Clerke of Nygromancye / And
 after she was wedded to kynge Vryens of the lond of Gore
 that was Syre Ewayns le blaunche maynys fader /

Capitulum tercium

THeñe quene Igrayne waxid dayly gretter & gretter / fo
 it befel after within half a yere as kyng Vther lay by
 10 his quene he asked hir by the feith she ouzt to hym whos was
 the child within her body / thēne she fore abaffhed to yeue
 anfuer / Desmaye you not said the kyng but telle me the tro-
 uthe / and I shall loue you the better by the feythe of my body
 Syre faide she I shalle telle you the trouthe / the same nyghte
 15 þ^t my lord was dede the houre of his deth as his knyghtes record
 ther came in to my castel of Tyntigaill a man lyke my lord in
 speche and in countenance / and two knyghtes with hym in
 lykenes of his two knyghtes barcias and Iordans / & soo I
 went vnto bed with hym as I ouzt to do with my lord / & the sa-
 20 me nyght as I shal answer vnto god this child was begoten
 vpon me / that is trouthe faide the kynge as ye fay / for it was
 I my self that cam in the lykenesse / & therfor desmay you not
 for I am fader to the child / & ther he told her alle the cause /
 how it was by Merlyns counceil / thenne the quene made gre-
 25 te ioye whan she knewe who was the fader of her child / Sone
 come merlyn vnto the kyng / & said fyr ye must puruey yow /
 for the nourisshyng of your child / as thou wolt said the kyng
 be it / wel said Merlyn I knowe a lord of yours in this land
 that is a passyng true man & a feithful / & he shal haue
 30 nourisshyng of your child / & his name is sir Ector / & he is a
 lord of fair lyuelode in many partyes in Englund & walys / &
 this lord sir ector lete hym be sent for / for to come & speke with
 you / & defyre hym your self as he loueth you that he will put
 his owne child to nourisshyng to another woman / and that
 35 his wyf nourisshe yours / And whan the child is borne lete it
 be delyuerd to me at yōder pryuy posterne vncrystned / So like

as Merlyn deuysed it was done / And whan fyre Ector was
 come / he made fyaūce to the kyng for to nouriffhe the child ly-
 ke as the Kyng defyred / and there the kyng graunted fyr ec-
 tor grete rewardys / Thenne when the lady was delyuerd the
 kyngge commaunded ij knyghtes & ij ladyes to take the child 5
 bound in a cloth of gold / & that ye delyuer hym to what pou-
 re man ye mete at the pofterne yate of the castel / So the child
 was delyuerd vnto Merlyn / and fo he bare it forth vnto Syre
 Ector / and made an holy man to cryften hym / and named
 hym Arthur / and fo fir Ectors wyf nouryffhed hym with her 10
 owne pappe / Thenne within two yeres kyng Vther felle feke
 of a grete maladye / And in the meane whyle hys enemyes
 Vfurpped vpon hym / and dyd a grete bataylle vpon his men /
 and flewe many of his peple / Sir faid Merlyn ye may not lye
 fo as ye doo / for ye must to the feld though ye ryde on an hors 15
 lyttar / for ye fhall neuer haue the better of your enemyes / but
 yf your perfone be there / and thenne fhall ye haue the vyctory
 So it was done as Merlyn had deuysed / and they caryed the
 kyngge forth in an hors lyttar with a grete hooft towarde his
 enemyes / And at faynt Albons ther mette with the kyngge a 20
 grete hooft of the north / And that day Syre Vlfius and fir
 Bracias dyd grete dedes of armes / and kyng Vthers men o-
 uercome the northeryn bataylle and flewe many peple & putt
 the remenaunt to flight / And thenne the kyng retorned vnto
 london and made grete ioye of his vyctory / And thēne he fyll 25
 paffyng fore feke / fo that thre dayes & thre nyghtes he was fe-
 cheles / wherfore alle the barons made grete forow and aiked
 Merlyn what counceill were beft / There nys none other reme-
 dye faid Merlyn but god wil haue his wille / But loke ye al
 Barons be bifore kyngge Vther to morne / and god and I 30
 fhalle make hym to fpeke / So on the morne alle the Barons
 with merlyn came to fore the kyng / thēne Merlyn faid aloud
 vnto kyng Vther / Syre shall your fone Arthur be kyng after
 your dayes of this realme with all the appertenaunce / thenne
 Vtherpendragon torned hym and faid in herynge of them alle 35
 I gyue hym gods bliffing & myne / & byd hym pray for my
 foule / & righteuoufly & worshipfully that he clayme þe croune
 pon forfeiture of my bleffing / & therwith he yelde vp the ghofst &

thenne was he enterid as longed to a kyng / wherfor the que-
 ne fayre Igrayne made grete sorowe and alle the Barons /
 Thenne stood the reame in grete ieopardy long whyle / for eue-
 ry lord that was myghty of men maade hym stronge / and ma-
 5 ny wende to haue ben kyng / Thenne Merlyn wente to the ar-
 chebiffhop of Caunterbury / and counceilled hym for to fende
 for alle the lordes of the reame / and alle the gentilmen of ar-
 mes that they shold to london come by Criftnas vpon payne of
 curfyng / And for this cause þ^t Ihū that was borne on that
 10 nyghte that he wold of his grete mercy shewe some myracle /
 as he was come to be kynge of mankynde for to shewe fomme
 myracle who shold be rightwys kynge of this reame / So the
 Archebiffhop by the aduys of Merlyn fend for alle the lordes
 and gentilmen of armes that they shold come by cryftmasse
 15 euen vnto london / And many of hem made hem clene of her lyf
 that her prayer myghte be the more acceptable vnto god / Soo
 in the gretteft chirch of london whether it were Powlis or not
 the Frensshe booke maketh no mencyon / alle the estates were
 longe or day in the chirche for to praye / And whan matyns &
 20 the first masse was done / there was fene in the chircheynd a-
 yēft the hyghe aulter a grete stōne four square lyke vnto a mar-
 bel stōne / And in myddes therof was lyke an Anuyld
 of stele a foot on hyghe / & theryn stak a fayre swerd naked
 by the poynt / and letters there were wryten in gold aboute
 25 the swerd that saiden thus / who so pulleth oute this swerd of
 this stōne and anuyld / is rightwys kynge borne of all En-
 lond / Thenne the peple merueilled & told it to the Archebiffhop
 I commande said tharchebiffhop that ye kepe yow within your
 chirche / and pray vnto god still that no man touche the swerd
 30 tyll the hyghe masse be all done / So whan all masses were done
 all the lordes wente to beholde the stōne and the swerd / And
 whan they sawe the scripture / som assayed fuche as wold haue
 ben kyng / But none myght stēre the swerd nor meue hit He
 is not here said the Archebiffhop that shall encheue the swerd
 35 but doubte not god will make hym knowen / But this is my
 counceill said the archebiffhop / that we lete puruey x knyghtes
 men of good fame / & they to kepe this swerd / so it was ordey-
 deynd / & thēne ther was made a crye / þ^t euery mā shold assay }

wold for to wyne the fwerd / And vpon newe yeerfday the
 barons lete maake a Iuftes and a tournament / that alle kny-
 zes that wold Iufte or tourneye / there myzt playe / & all this
 was ordeyned for to kepe the lordes to gyders & the comyns / for
 the Archebiffhop trusted / that god wold make hym knowe 5
 that fhold wyne the fwerd / So vpon newe yerefday whan
 the feruyce was done / the barons rode vnto the feld / fome to Iuf-
 te / & fom to torney / & fo it happed that fyre Ector that had gre-
 te lyuelode aboute london rode vnto the Iuftes / & with hym ro-
 de fyr kaynus his sone & yong Arthur that was hys nourif- 10
 fhed broder / & fyr kay was made knyzt at al halowmas afore
 So as they rode to y^e Iuftes ward / fir kay loft his fwerd for
 he had lefte it at his faders lodgyng / & fo he prayd yong Ar-
 thur for to ryde for his fwerd / I wyll wel faid Arthur / & ro-
 de faft after y^e fwerd / & whan he cam home / the lady & al were 15
 out to fee the Iouftyng / thenne was Arthur wroth & faide to
 hym felf / I will ryde to the chircheyard / & take the fwerd with
 me that ftycketh in the ftone / for my broder fir kay fhall not be
 without a fwerd this day / fo whan he cam to the chircheyard
 fir Arthur alizt & tayed his hors to the ftyle / & fo he wente to 20
 the tent / & found no knyzes there / for they were atte Iuf-
 tyng & fo he handled the fwerd by the handels / and liztly & fierfly
 pulled it out of the ftone / & took his hors & rode his way vn-
 tyll he came to his broder fir kay / & delyuerd hym the fwerd / &
 as fone as fir kay 1. the fwerd he wift wel it was the fwerd 25
 of the ftone / & fo he 1. to his fader fyr Ector / & faid / fyre / loo
 here is the fwerd of the ftone / wherfor I muft be kyng of thys
 land / when fyre Ector beheld the fwerd / he retorned ageyne &
 cam to the chirche / & there they alizte al thre / & wente in to the
 chirche / And anon he made fir kay fwere vpon a book / how 30
 he came to that fwerd / Syr faid fir kay by my broder Arthur
 for he brought it to me / how gate ye this fwerd faid fir Ector
 to Arthur / fir I will telle you when I cam home for my bro-
 ders fwerd / I fond no body at home to delyuer me his fwerd
 And fo I thought my broder fyr kay fhold not be fwerdles 35
 & fo I cam hyder egerly & pulled it out of the ftone withoute
 ony payn / found ye ony knyzes about this fwerd feid fir ector
 Nay faid Arthur / Now faid fir Ector to Arthur I vnderftade

ye must be kyng of this land / wherfore I / sayd Arthur and
 for what caufe / Sire faide Ector / for god wille haue hit foo
 for ther shold neuer man haue drawen oute this swerde / but
 he that shal be rightwys kyng of this land / Now lete me see
 5 whether ye can putte the swerd ther as it was / and pulle hit
 oute ageyne / that is no maystry said Arthur / and foo he put it
 in the stone / wherwith alle Sir Ector assayed to pulle oute the
 swerd and faylled

¶ Capitulum sextum

Now assay said Syre Ector vnto Syre kay / And a-
 10 non he pulled at the swerd with alle his myghte / but
 it wold not be / Now shal ye assay said Syre Ector to Arthur
 I wyll wel said Arthur and pulled it out easily / And ther-
 with alle Syre Ector knelyd doune to the erthe and Syre
 Kay / Allas said Arthur myne own dere fader and broder why
 15 knele ye to me / Nay nay my lord Arthur / it is not so I was
 neuer your fader nor of your blood / but I wote wel ye are of
 an hygher blood than I wende ye were / And thenne Syre Ec-
 tor told hym all how he was bitaken hym for to nourisshe hym
 And by whoos commandement / and by Merlyns delyueraunce
 20 ¶ Thenne Arthur made grete doole whan he vnderstood that
 Syre Ector was not his fader / Sir said Ector vnto Arthur
 woll ye be my good & gracious lord when ye are kyng / els we-
 re I to blame said arthur for ye are the man in the world that
 I am most be holdyng to / & my good lady and moder your wyf
 25 that as wel as her owne hath fostred me and kepte / And yf
 euer hit be goddes will that I be kyng as ye say / ye shall de-
 fyre of me what I may doo / and I shalle not faille yow / god
 forbede I shold faille yow / Sir said Sire Ector / I will aske
 no more of yow / but that ye wille make my sone your foster
 30 broder Syre Kay Senceall of alle your landes / That shalle be
 done said Arthur / and more by the feith of my body that neuer
 man shalle haue that office but he whyle he and I lyue / There
 with all they wente vnto the Archebissshop / and told hym how
 the swerd was encheued / and by whome / and on twelfth day
 35 alle the barons cam thyder / and to assay to take the swerd who
 that wold assay / But there afore hem alle ther myghte none
 take it out but Arthur / wherfor ther were many lordes wroth

And faide it was grete fhamē vnto them all and the reame to be ouer gouernyd with a boye of no hyghe blood borne / And so they fell oute at that tyme that it was put of tyll Candemas / And thenne alle the barons shold mete there ageyne / but alwey the x knyghtes were ordeyned to watche the swerd day 5 & nyȝt / & so they sette a paulione ouer the stōne & þ^e swerd & fyue alwayes watched / Soo at Candalmasse many moo grete lordes came thyder for to haue wonne the swerde / but there myghte none preuaille / And right as Arthur dyd at Criftmasse / he dyd at Candelmasse and pulled oute the swerde e- 10 asely wherof the Barons were fore agreued and put it of in delay till the hyghe feste of Eester / And as Arthur sped afore / so dyd he at Eester / yet there were some of the grete lordes had indignacion that Arthur shold be kynge / and put it of in a delay tyll the feest of Pentecoste / Thenne the Archebiffhop 15 of Caunterbury by Merlyns prouydence lete purueye thenne of the best knyghtes that they myghte gete / And fuche knyghtes as Vtherpendragon loued best and moost trusted in his dayes / And fuche knyghtes were put aboute Arthur as fyr Bawdewyn of Bretayn / fyre kaynes / fyre Vlſyus / fyre bar- 20 fias / All these with many other were alweyes about Arthur day and nyghte till the feste of Pentecost

¶ Capitulum septimum

ANd at the feste of pentecost alle maner of men assayed to pulle at the swerde that wold assay / but none myghte preuaille but Arthur / and pulled it oute afore 25 all the lordes and comyns that were there / wherfore alle the comyns cryed at ones we wille haue Arthur vnto our kyng we wille put hym nomore in delay / for we alle see that it is goddes wille that he shalle be our kynge / And who that holdeth ageynst it we wille flee hym / And therwith all they kne- 30 lyd at ones both ryche and poure / and cryed Arthur mercy by cause they had delayed hym soo longe / and Arthur foryaf hem / and took the swerd bitwene both his handes / and offred it vpon the aulter where the Archebiffhop was / and so was he made knyghte of the best man that was there / And so anon 35

was the coronacyon made / And ther was he fworne vnto his lordes & the comyns for to be a true kyng to stand with true Iustyce fro thens forth the dayes of this lyf / Also theñe he made alle lordes that helde of the croune to come in / and to do fer-
 5 uyce as they oughte to doo / And many complayntes were made vnto sir Arthur of grete wronges that were done syn the dethe of kyng Vther / of many londes that were bereued lordes knyghtes / ladyes & gentilmen / wherfor kyng Arthur maade the londes to be yeuen ageyne to them that oughte hem /
 10 ¶ Whanne this was done that the kyng had stabliffhed alle the countreyes aboute london / thenne he lete make Syr kay fencial of Englund / and sir Baudewyn of Bretayne was made Constable / and sir Vlfius was made chamberlayn / And sire Brastias was maade wardeyn to wayte vpon the northe fro
 15 Trent forwardes for it was þ^t tyme þ^e most party the kynges enemyes / But within fewe yeres after Arthur wan alle the north scotland / and alle that were vnder their obeissaunce / Also walys a parte of it helde ayenst Arthur / but he ouercam hem al as he dyd the remenaunt thurgh the noble prowesse
 20 of hym self and his knyghtes of the round table

¶ Capitulum octauum

THenne the kyng remeued in to walys / and lete crye a grete feste that it shold be holdyn at Pentecost after the incoronacion of hym at the Cyte of Carlyon / vnto the fest come kyng Lott of Lowthean / and of Orkeney / with
 25 fyue C knyghtes with hym / Also ther come to the feste kyng Vryens of gore with four C knyghtes with hym ¶ Also ther come to that feest kyng Nayntres of garloth with feuen C knyghtes with hym / Also ther came to the feest the kyng of Scotland with fixe honderd knyghtes with hym / and he
 30 was but a yong man / Also ther came to the feste a kyng that was called the kyng with the honderd knyghtes / but he and his men were passyng wel bifene at al poyntes. Also ther cam the kyng of Cardos with fyue honderd knyghtes / And kyng Arthur was glad of their comynge / for he wende that al the
 35 kynges & knyghtes had come for grete loue / and to haue done hym worship at his feste / wherfor the kyng made grete ioye / and sente the kynges and knyghtes grete presentes / But

[leaf 22 verso]

the kynges wold none receyue / but rebuked the messagers
 shamefully / and said they had no ioye to receyue no yestes of
 a berdles boye that was come of lowe blood / and sente hym
 word / they wold none of his yestes / But that they were co-
 me to gyue hym yestes with hard fwerdys betwixt the neck 5
 and the sholders / And therfore they came thyder / so they told
 to the messagers playnly / for it was grete shame to all them
 to see fuche a boye to haue a rule of soo noble a reame as this
 land was / With this ansuer the messagers departed & told
 to kyng Arthur this ansuer / wherfor by the aduys of his ba- 10
 rons he took hym to a strong towre with / v / C good men with
 hym / And all the kynges afore said in a maner leyde a fyege
 tofore hym / but kyng Arthur was well vytailled / And with-
 in xv dayes ther came Merlyn amonge hem in to the Cyte of
 Carlyon / thenne all the kynges were passyng gladde of Mer- 15
 lyn / and asked hym for what cause is that boye Arthur made
 your kyng / Syres said Merlyn / I shalle telle yow the cause
 for he is kyng Vtherpendragons sone borne in wedlok gotten
 on Igrayne the dukes wyf of Tyntigail / thenne is he a bas-
 tard they said al / nay said Merlyn / After the deth of the du- 20
 ke more than thre houres was Arthur begoten / And xiiij da-
 yes after kyng Vther wedded Igrayne / And therfor I pre-
 ue hym he is no bastard / And who saith nay / he shal be kyng
 and ouercome alle his enemyes / And or he deye / he shalle be
 long kyng of all Englonde / and haue vnder his obeyssaunce 25
 Walys / yreland and Scotland / and moo reames than I will
 now reherce / Some of the kynges had merueyl of Merlyns
 wordes and demed well that it shold be as he said / And som
 of hem lough hym to scorn / as kyng Lot / and mo other cal-
 led hym a wytche / But thenne were they accorded with Mer- 30
 lyn that kyng Arthur shold come oute and speke with the
 kynges / and to come fauf and to goo fauf / fuche furaunce ther
 was made / So Merlyn went vnto kyng Arthur / and told
 hym how he had done / and badde hym fere not but come oute
 boldly and speke with hem / and spare hem not / but anfuere 35
 them as their kyng and chyuetayn / for ye shal ouercome hem
 all whether they wille or nylle /

¶ Capitulum ix

Thenne kynge Arthur came oute of his tour / and had
 vnder his gowne a Iefferaunte of double maylle / and
 ther wente with hym the Archebiffshop of Caunterbu-
 ry / and fyr Baudewyn of Bretayne and fyr kay / and fyre
 5 Braftias / thefe were the men of mooft worfhip that were with
 hym / And whan they were mette / there was no mekenes but
 floute wordes on bothe fydes / but alweyes kynge Arthur an-
 fuerd them and faid / he wold make them to bowe and he lyued
 wherfore they departed with wrath / and kynge Arthur badde
 10 kepe hem wel / and they bad the kynge kepe hym wel / Soo the
 kynge retorned hym to the toure ageyne and armed hym and
 alle his kny3tes / what will ye do faid Merlyn to the kynges
 ye were better for to ftynte / for ye fhalle not here preuaille tho-
 ugh ye were x fo many / be we wel auyfed to be aferd of a dre-
 15 me reder faid kyng Lot / with that Merlyn vanyffhed awaye /
 and came to Kynge Arthur / and bad hym fet on hem fierfly / &
 in the mene whyle there were thre honderd good men of the beft
 that were with the kynges / that wente ftreyghte vnto kynge
 Arthur / and that comforted hym gretely / Syr faid Merlyn to
 20 Arthur / fyghte not with the fwerde ye had by myracle /
 til that ye fee ye go vnto the wers / thenne drawe it out and do
 your beft / So forth with alle kynge Arthur fette vpon hem in
 their lodgyng / And fyre Bawdewyn fyre Kay and fyr Braf-
 tias flewe on the right hand & on the lyfte hand that it was
 25 merueylle / and alweyes Kynge Arthur on horfback leyd on
 with a fwerd and dyd merueillous dedes of armes that ma-
 ny of the kynges had grete ioye of his dedes and hardyneffe /
 Thenne Kynge Lot brake out on the bak fyde / and the kyng
 with the honderd knyghtes and kyng Carados / and fette on
 30 Arthur fierfly behynde hym / with that Syre Arthur torned
 with his knyghtes / and fmote behynd and before / and euer fir
 Arthur was in the formeft prees tyl his hors was flayne vn-
 dernethe hym / And therwith kynge lot fmote doune kyng Ar-
 thur / With that his four knyghtes receyued hym and fet hym
 35 an horfback / theñe he drewe his fwerd Excalibur / but it was
 fo bryght in his enemyes eyen / that it gaf light lyke xxx tor-
 chys / And therwith he put hem on bak / and flewe moche peple
 And thenne the comyns of Carlyon aroos with clubbis and

stauns and slewe many knyghtes / but alle the kynges helde them to gyders with her knyghtes that were leste on lyue / and so fled and departed / And Merlyn come vnto Arthur / and counceilled hym to folowe hem no further ¶ Ca / r

SO after the feste and iourneye kyng Arthur drewe 5
hym vnto london / and soo by the counceil of Merlyn
the kyng lete calle his barons to couceil / for Merlyn
had told the kyng that the fixe kynges that made warre vpon hym wold in al haste be awroke on hym & on his landys
wherfor the kyng asked counceil at hem al / they coude no coun- 10
ceil gyue but said they were bygge ynough / ye saye wel said
Arthur / I thanke you for your good courage / but wil ye al
that loveth me speke with Merlyn ye knowe wel that he hath
done moche for me / and he knoweth many thynges / & whan
he is afore you / I wold that ye prayd hym hertely of his best 15
aunse / Alle the barons sayd they wold pray hym and desyre
hym / Soo Merlyn was fente for & fair desyred of al the barons
to gyue them best counceil / I shall say you said Merlyn
I warne yow al / your enemyes are passyng strong for yow /
and they are good men of armes as ben on lyue / & by thys 20
tyme they haue goten to them four kynges mo / and a myghty
duke / and onlesse that our kyng haue more chyualry with
hym than he may make within þ^e boundys of his own reame
and he fyghte with hem in batail / he shal be ouercome & slayn
what were best to doo in this cause said al the barons / I shal 25
telle you said Merlyn myne aduys / there ar two bretheren beyond
the see / & they be kynges bothe and merueillous good men
of her handes / And that one hyghte Kyng Ban of Benwic
And that other hyght Kyng Bors of gaule that is Fraunce
And on these two Kynges warrith a myghty man of men 30
the Kyng Claudas / and stryeth with hem for a castel / and
grete werre is betwixt them / But this Claudas is so myghty
of goodes wherof he geteth good Knyztes that he putteth these
two kynges moost parte do the werse / wherfor this is my coun-
ceil that our kyng and fouerayne lord sende vnto the kynges 35
Ban and Bors by two trusty knyghtes with letters wel
deuyfed / that and they wil come and see kyng Arthur and
his courte / & so helpe hym in his warrys that he wil be sworne

vnto them to helpe them in their warrys ageynst kynge Claudas / Now what saye ye vnto this counceill said Merlyn / thys is wel counceilled said the kynge & alle the Barons / right fo in alle haste ther were ordeyned to goo two knyghtes on the
5 message vnto the two kynges / Soo were there made letters in the plefaunt wyfe accordyng vnto kyng Arthurs desyre / Vl-fyus and Braftias were made the messagers / & fo rode forth wel horfed and wel armed / and as the gyse was that tyme & fo passed the see & rode toward the cyte of Benwyck / and
10 there byfydes were viij knyghtes that aspyed them / And at a strayt passage they mette with Vl-fyus & Braftias / & wold haue taken hem prysoners / so they prayd hem that they myght passe / for they were messagers vnto kyng Ban & Bors sent from kynge Arthur / therfor said the viij knyghtes ye shalle
15 dye or be prysoners / for we ben knyghtes of kyng Claudas And therwith two of them dresfid their sperys / and Vl-fyus and Braftias dresfid their speres and ranne to gyder with grete raundon / And Claudas knyghtes brack their speres / and ther to hylde and bare the two knyghtes out of her sadels
20 to the erthe / and so leste hem lyeng and rode her wayes / And the other sixe knyghtes rode afore to a passage to mete wyth hem ageyne / and so Vl-fyus & Braftias smote other two doun And so past on her wayes / And at the fourth passage there mette two for two / and bothe were leid vnto the erthe / so ther
25 was none of the viij knyghtes but he was fore hurte or bryfed And whan they come to Benwick it fortuneth ther were both kynges Ban and Bors / And whan it was told the kynges that there were come messagers / there were sente vnto them ij knyghtes of worship / the one hyghte Lyonfes lord of the co-
30 untry of payarne and Sir phariaunce a worshipful knyght Anone they asked from whens they came / and they said from kynge Arthur kyng of Englonde / so they took them in theyre armes and made grete ioye eche of other / But anon as the ij kynges wist they were messagers of Arthurs / ther was ma-
35 de no taryenge / but forthwith they spak with the knyghtes / & welcomed hem in the feythfullest wyfe / & said / they were most welcome vnto them before alle the kynges lyuyng / and ther with they kyft the letters & delyuerd hem / And whan Ban

and Bors vnderstood the letters / thenne were they more wel
 come than they were before / And after the haft of the letters /
 they gaf hem this anſuer that they wold fulfille the deſyre of
 kyng Arthurs wrytyng & Vlſyus & Braſtias tary there as
 longe as they wold / they ſhold haue ſuche chere as myghte be 5
 made them in tho marchys / Thenne Vlſyus & Braſtias told
 the kyng of the aduētūre at their paſſages of the eyghte kny-
 tes / Ha A ſaid Ban and Bors they were my good frendes
 I wold I had wyſt of hem they ſhold not haue eſcaped ſo
 So Vlſyus & Braſtias had good chere and grete yeſtes as 10
 moche as they myghte bere away / and hadde their anſuere by
 mouthe and by wrytyng that tho two Kynges wold come
 vnto Arthur in all the haft that they myzte / So the two Kny-
 tes rode on a fore / and paſſed the ſee / and come to their lord
 and told hym how they had ſpedde / wherof Kyng Arthur 15
 was paſſyng gladde / At what tyme ſuppoſe ye / the ij Kynges
 wol be here / Syr ſaid they afore all halowmaſſe / Thenne the
 kyng lete puruey for a grete feſte / and lete crye a grete luſ-
 tes / And by all halowmaſſe the two kynges were come ouer
 the ſee with thre honderd knyghtes wel arayed both for the pees 20
 and for the werre / And kyng Arthur mette with hem x my-
 le oute of london / and ther was grete ioye as coude be thouzt
 or made / And on al halowmaſſe / at the grete feſte ſate in the
 halle the thre kynges / and fyre kay ſencial ſerued in the halle
 And Syr lucas the bottelere that was duke Corneus ſone / & 25
 ſir gryſlet that was the ſone of Cardol / theſe iij knyghtes had
 the rule of alle the ſeruyſe that ſerued the kynges / And anon
 as they had waſſhen & ryſen / al knyghtes that wold luſte ma-
 de hem redy / by than they were redy on horſbak there were vij
 C knyghtes / And Arthur Ban and Bors with the Archebiſ- 30
 ſhop of Caunterbury / and fyre Ector kays fader they were in
 a place couerd with clothe of gold lyke an halle with ladyes
 and gentilwymmen for to behold who dyd beſt and theron to
 giue Iugement

¶ Capitulum xi

ANd kyng Arthur and the two Kynges lete departe 35
 the vij C knyghtes in two partyes And there were iij
 C knyghtes of the reame of Benwick and of gau-
 le turned on the other ſyde than they dreſſid her ſheldes / and

beganne to couche her speres many good knyghtes / So Gryf-
 let was the first that mette with a knyghte one ladynas and
 they mett so egerly that al men hadde wonder / And they foo
 faughte that her sheldes felle to pyeces / and hors and man
 5 felle to the erthe / And bothe the frensshe knyghte and the En-
 glysshe knyghte lay so longe that alle men wend they had ben
 dede / Whan lucas the botteler sawe Gryflet foo lye / he horfed
 hym ageyne anon / and they two dyd merueillous dedes of ar-
 mes with many bachelers / Also fyre kay came oute of an en-
 10 buffement with fyue knyghtes with hym / and they fixe smote
 other fixe doune / But fyr kay dyd that day merueillous
 dedes of armes / that ther was none dyd so wel as he that day
 Thenne ther come ladynas & Graffian two knyghtes of fra-
 unce / and dyd passynge wel that all men preyfed them /
 15 Thenne come there Syre placidas a good knyghte and mette
 with fyr kay and smote hym doune hors and man / wherfore
 Syre gryflet was wrothe and mette with Syre placidas foo
 harde that hors and man felle to the erthe / But whan the / v /
 knyghtes wyft that fyr kay had a falle they were wrothe out
 20 of wyt / And therwith eche of them / v / bare doune a knyghte /
 Whanne kyng Arthur and the two kynges sawe hem begyn
 waxe wrothe on bothe partyes / they lepte on smale hakeneis /
 and lete crye that all men shold departe vnto their lodgyng
 And so they wente home and vnarmed them and so to euen-
 25 songe and foupper / And after the thre kynges wente in to a
 gardyn / and gaf the pryce vnto fyre kay and to lucas the bot-
 telere / and vnto Syre Gryflet / And thenne they wente vnto
 counceil / and with hem gwenbaus the brother vnto fyr Ban
 & Bors a wyse Clerk / and thyder went Vlffus and Braf-
 30 tias and Merlyn / And after they had ben in counceill / they
 wente vn to bedde / And on the morne they herde masse and to
 dyner / and so to their counceille and made many argumentis
 what were best to doo / At the last they were concluded / that
 Merlyn shold goo with a token of kyng Ban and that was
 35 a rynge vnto his men and kynge Bors and Gracian & pla-
 cididas sholde goo ageyne and kepe their castels and her coun-
 treyes / as for kynge Ban of Benwick and kynge Bors of
 Gaules had ordeyned hem / and so passed the see and came to

Benwyck / And whan the peple sawe kyng Bans ryng &
 gracion and placidas they were glad / and asked how the kyn-
 ges ferd / and made grete ioye of their welfare and cordyng /
 and accordyng vnto the fouerayne lordes defyre / the men of
 warre made hem redy in al haft possyble / soo that they were xv 5
 M on hors and foot / and they had grete plente of vytaylle
 with hem by Merlyns prouysyon / But gracion and placidas
 were leste to furnyssh and garnyssh the castels for drede of
 kynge Claudas / ryght so Merlyn passed the see wel vytailled
 bothe by water and by land / And whan he came to the see / he 10
 sente home the foote men ageyne and took no mo with hym /
 but x M men on horbak the moost parte men of armes and so
 shpypped and passed the see in to Englonde / and loded at Do-
 uer / and thorow the wytte of Merlyn he had the hooft North-
 ward the pryuyest wey that coude be thoughte vnto the foreist 15
 of Bedegrayne / and there in a valey he lodged hem secretly /
 ¶ Thenne rode Merlyn vnto Arthur and the two kynges &
 told hem how he had sped / wherof they had grete merueylle /
 that man on erthe myghte spede so soone / and goo and come
 So Merlyn told them x M were in the forest of Bedegrayne 20
 wel armed at al poyntes / thenne was there no more to saye /
 but to horbak wente all the hooft as Arthur had afore pur-
 ueyed / So with xx M he passed by nyghte and day / but ther
 was made siche an ordenaunce afore by Merlyn that ther shold
 no man of werre ryde nor go in no countrey on this syde trent 25
 water / but yf he had a token from kynge Arthur / where tho-
 row the kynges enemyes durste not ryde as they dyd to fore
 to aspye

¶ Capitulum xij

ANd soo within a lytel space the thre kynges came vn-
 to the Castel of Bedegrayne / and fond there a pas- 30
 syng fayr selauship and wel be sene / wherof they had
 grete ioye / and vytaille they wanted none / This was the
 cause of the northeren hooft that they were rered for the despyte
 and rebuke the fyx kynges had at Carlyon / And tho vj kyn-
 ges by her meanes gate vnto hem fyue other kynges / And 35
 thus they beganne to gadre theyr peple ¶ And how
 they sware that for wele nor woo they shold not leue other /

tyl they had destroyed Arthur / and thenne they made an oth
 The fyrst that beganne the othe was the duke of Candebenet /
 that he wold brynge with hym v M men of armes the which
 were redy on horsbak / Thenne fware kyng Brandegoris of
 5 stranggore that he wold brynge v M men of armes on hors-
 bak / Thenne fware kyng Claryuaus of Northumberland he
 wold brynge thre thousand men of armes / thenne fware the
 kyng of the C knyghtes that was a passyng good man and
 a yonge that he wold brynge four thousand men of armes on
 10 horsbak / thenne ther swore kyng Lott a passyng good knyzt
 and fyre Gawayns fader that he wold brynge v M men of
 armes on horsbak / Also ther swore kyng Vryence that was
 fyr Vwayns fader of the lond of gore and he wold brynge
 vj M men of armes on horsbak / Also ther swore kyng Idres
 15 of Cornewallle that he wold brynge v M men of armes on
 horsbak / Also ther swore kyng cardelmans to brynge v M mē
 on horsbak / Also ther swore kyng Agwyfaunce of Ireland to
 brynge v M men of armes on horsbak / Also ther swore kyng
 Nentres to brynge v M men of armes on horsbak / Also there
 20 swore kyng Carados to brynge v M of armes on hors-
 bak / Soo her hool hooft was of clene men of armes on horsbak
 fyfty thousand and a foot x thousand of good mennes body-
 es / thenne were they soone redy and mounted vpon hors and
 sente forth their fore rydars / for these xj kynges in her wayes
 25 leyde a fyege unto the castel of Bedegrayne / and so they depar-
 ted and drewe toward Arthur and lefte fewe to abyde at the
 fyege for the castel of Bedegrayne was holden of kyng Ar-
 thur / and the men that were thereyn were Arthurs

¶ Capitulum xiii

30 **S**Oo by Merlyns aduys ther were sente fore rydars to
 skumme the Countreye / & they mette with the fore ry-
 dars of the north / and made hem to telle whiche wey the hooft
 cam / and thenne they told it to Arthur / and by kyng Ban
 and Bors counceill they lete brenne and destroye alle the con-
 trey afore them there they shold ryde / ¶ The kyng with the
 35 honderd knyghtes mette a wonder drewe two nyghtes a fore
 the bataille / that ther blewe a grete wynde & blewe doun her cas-
 tels and her townes / and after that cam a water and bare hit

all away / Alle that herd of the sweuen said / it was a token of
 grete batayll / Thenne by counceill of Merlyn whan they wist
 whiche wey the xj kynges wold ryde and lodge that nyghte
 At mydnyght they sette vpon them as they were in theyr pa-
 uelyons / But the scout watche by her hooft cryed lordes att 5
 armes for here be your enemyes at your hand

¶ Capitulum xiiii

Thenne kynge Arthur and kynge Ban and Kynge
 Bors with her good and trusty knyghtes fet on hem
 so fyrfly that he made them ouer throwe her paelions on her
 hedys / but the xj kynges by manly prowesse of armes tooke 10
 a fayre champayne / but there was slayne that morowe tyde x
 M good mennys bodyes / And so they had afore hem a strong
 passaye yet were they fyfty M of hardy men / Thenne it drewe
 toward day / now shalle ye doo by myne aduys said Merlyn
 vnto the thre kynges I wold that kynge Ban and kynge 15
 Bors with her fellowship of x M men were put in a wood he-
 re befyde in an enbushment and kepe them preuy / and that
 they be leid or the lyght of the daye come / and that they stere
 not tyll ye and your knyghtes haue foughte with hem longe
 And whanne hit is daye lyght dresse your bataille euen afore 20
 them and the passage that they may see alle your hooft / For
 thenne wyl they be the more hardy when they see yow but a-
 bout xx M / and cause hem to be the gladder to suffre yow and
 youre hooft to come ouer the passage / All the thre kynges and
 the hoole barons sayde that Merlyn said passyngly wel / and 25
 it was done anone as Merlyn had deuysed / Soo on the morn
 whan eyther hooft sawe other / the hooft of the north was well
 comforted / Thenne to Vlfius and Braftias were delyuerd
 thre thousand men of armes / and they sette on them fyrfly
 in the passage / and slewe on the ryght hand and on the lyft 30
 hand that it was wonder to telle /

¶ Whanne that the enleuen kynges sawe that there was so fe-
 we a fellowship dyd suche dedes of armes they were ashamed
 and sette on hem agayne fyrfly / and ther was fyr Vlfius
 hors slayne vnder hym / but he dyd merueylously well on 35
 foote /

¶ But the Duke Eustace of Cambenet

and Kyngge Claryaunce of Northumberland / were alweye
 greuous on Vlſyus / thenne Braſtias ſawe his ſelawe ferd
 ſo with al / he ſmote the duke with a ſpere that hors & man fell
 doune / that ſawe kyng Claryaunce and retorned vnto Braſ-
 5 tias / and eyther ſmote other ſoo that hors & man wente to the
 erthe / and ſo they lay long aſtonyed / & their hors knees braſt
 to the hard bone / Thenne cam Syr kay the ſencyal with fyxe
 ſelawes with hym / and dyd paſſyng wel / with that cam the
 xj kynges / and ther was Gryflet put to the erthe hors & man
 10 and lucas the bottelere hors and man by kyngge Brandego-
 rys and kyng Idres & kyng Agwyſaunce / thēne waxed the
 medle paſſyng hard on bothe partyes / whan fyre kay ſawe
 Gryflet on foote / he rode on kyng Nentres & ſmote hym down
 and lad his hors vnto fyr gryflet & horfed hym ageyne / Al-
 15 ſo fyr kay with the ſame ſpere ſmote down kyng Lott / & hurt
 hym paſſyng fore / that ſawe the kyng with the C knyȝtes and
 ran vnto fyr kay and ſmote hym doune and toke his hors / &
 gaf hym kyng Lott wherof he ſaid gramercy / whan fyr Gryf-
 let ſawe fyr kay & lucas the bottelere on foote / he tooke a ſharp
 20 ſpere grete and ſquare / and rode to pynel a good man of ar-
 mes / and ſmote hors and man doune / And thenne he tooke
 his hors / and gaf hym vnto fyr kay / Thenne kyngge Lot ſaw
 kyng Nentres on foote / he ranne vnto Melot de la roche / & ſmo-
 te hym doune hors and man & gaf kyng Nentres the hors &
 25 horfed hym ageyne / Alſo the kyng of the C knyȝtes ſawe ky-
 nge Idres on foot thenne he ran vnto Gwymyart de bloy and
 ſmote hym doune hors and man & gaf kyngge Idres the hors
 & horfed hym ageyne / & kyng Lot ſmote down Claryaunce de
 la foreiſt ſauage & gaf the hors vnto duke Euſtace / And ſo
 30 whanne they had horfed the kynges ageyne they drewe hem
 al xj kynges to gyder and ſaid they wold be reuenged of the
 dommage that they had taken that day / The meane whyle cam
 in fyr Ector with an egyr countenaunce / and found Vlſyus
 and Braſtias on foote in grete perylle of deth that were ſow-
 35 le defoyled vnder horſſeet / Thenne Arthur as a lyon ranne vn-
 to kyngge Cradelment of North walys / and ſmote hym tho-
 rowe the lyfte ſyde that the hors and the kyngge fylle doune /
 And thenne he tooke the hors by the rayne / and ladde hym

vnto Vlſyus & ſaid haue this hors myn old frend / for gre-
te nede haſt thou of hors / gramercy ſaid Vlſyus / thenne fyre
Arthur dyd ſo merueillouſly in armes that all men had won-
dyr / Whan the kyng with the C knyghtes ſawe kyng Cradel-
ment on foote / he ranne vnto fyre Ector that was wel horſed 5
fyr kayes fader / and ſmote hors and man doune / and gaf the
hors vnto the kyng / and horſed hym ageyne / and when kyng
Arthur ſawe the kyng ryde on fyr Ectors hors he was wroth
and with his ſwerd he ſmote the kyng on the helme / that a
quarter of the helme and ſhelde fell doune / and ſo the ſwerd 10
carf doune vnto the hors neck / and ſo the kyng & the hors fell
doune to the ground / Thenne fyr kay cam vnto fyr Morgano-
re ſencial with the kyng of the C knyghtes & ſmote hym down
hors and man / and lad the hors vnto his fader fyre Ector /
thenne fyr Ector ranne vnto a knyght hyghte lardans / & ſmo- 15
te hors & man doune / & lad the hors vnto fyr Braſtias that
grete nede had of an hors and was gretely deſoyled / whan
Braſtias beheld lucas the botteler that lay lyke a dede man
vnder the horſe feet / and euer fyr Gryſlet dyd merueillouſly
for to reſcowe hym / and there were alweyes xiiij knyghtes on 20
fyr lucas / & thenne Braſtias ſmote one of hem on the helme /
that it wente to the teeth / & he rode to another and ſmote hym
that the arme flewe in to the feld / Thēne he wente to the third
and ſmote hym on the ſhoulder that ſhoulder and arme flewe in
the feld / And whan Gryſlet ſawe reſcows / he ſmote a kny- 25
ght on the tempils that hede & helme wente to the erthe / and
gryſlet took the hors of that knyght & lad hym vnto fyr lu-
cas / & bad hym mounte vpon the hors & reuenge his hurtes /
For Braſtias had ſlayne a knyghte to fore & horſed gryf-

let /

¶ Capitulum xv

30

Henne lucas ſawe kyng Agwyſaunce that late hadde
ſlayne Morys de la roche / and lucas ran to hym with
a ſhort ſpere that was grete / that he gaf hym ſuche a falle that
the hors felle down to the erthe / Alſo lucas found there on fo-
te bloyas de la flaundres and fyr Gwynas ij hardy knyghtes 35
& in that woodenes that lucas was in / he flewe ij bachelers &
horſed hem ageyn / thēne waxid the batail poſſyng hard on both
partyes / but arthur was glad þ^t his knyghtes were horſed ayene

& thēne they foughte to gyders that the noyse and fowne rang
 by the water & the wood / wherfor kyng Ban and kyng bors
 made them redy and drefsyd theyr sheldes and harneys / and
 they were so couragious that many Knyghtes shoke & beuerd
 5 for egrenes / All this whyle lucas and Gwynas & bryaunte
 & Bellyas of Flaundrys helde strong medle ayenst vj kyn-
 ges / that was Kyng Lott / kyng Nentres / kyng Brandego-
 rys / Kyng Idres / kyng Vryens & kyng Agwyfaunce / Soo
 with the helpe of fyre kay & of fyr gryflet / they helde these vj
 10 kynges hard that vnnethe they had ony power to defend them
 But whan fyr Arthur sawe the batail wold not be endyd
 by no maner / he ferd wood as a lyon / & stered his hors here
 & there on the right hand & on the lyft hand. that he stynte not
 tyl he had slayne xx kny3tes / Also he wounded kyng Lot fo-
 15 re on the sholder and made hym to leue that ground / for fyre
 kay & gryflet dyd with kyng Arthur there grete dedes of ar-
 mes / Thenne Vlffys and Braffias & fir Ector encountred
 ageynst the duke Eustace & kyng Cradelment & kyng Cradel-
 māt and kyng Claryaunce of Northumberland & kyng Ca-
 20 rados & ageynst the kyng with the C kny3tes / So these kny3-
 tes encountred with these kynges that they made them to auoy-
 de the grounde / thēne Kyng Lott made grete dool for his dom-
 magis & his felawes / & said vnto the x kynges but yf ye wil
 do as I deuyse we shalle be slayn & destroyed / lete me haue the
 25 kyng with the C Kny3tes & kyng Agwyfaunce & kyng I-
 dres and the duke of Canbenec / & we v Kynges wol haue
 xv M men of armes with vs & we wille go on parte / wyle ye
 vj Kynges holde medle with xij M / & we see that ye haue
 fou3ten with hem long thēne will we come on fyerfly / & ellys
 30 shall we neuer matche hem said kyng Lot but by this meane
 So they departed as they here deuyfed / & vj kynges made her
 party strong ageynst Arthur and made grete warre longe /
 In the meane whyle brake the enbusshement of Kyng Ban
 and kyng bors and Lyonfes and Pharyaunce had the ad-
 35 uant garde / and they two knyghtes mette with kyng Idres
 and his felauship / and there began a grete medele of brekyng
 of speres and smytynge of swerdys with fleyng of men and
 horses / And kyng Idres was nere at difcomforture

That sawe Agwyfaunce the kynge and put lyonfes and phary-
 aunce in poynte of dethe / for the duke of Canbenek came on
 with all with a grete felaufhip / soo thefe two knyghtes were
 in grete daunger of their lyues that they were fayn to retorne
 but alweyes they refcowed hem felf and their felaufhip mer- 5
 ueilloufly / Whan kynge Bors sawe tho knyghtes put on bak
 it greued hym fore / thēne he cam on fo faft that his felaufhip
 femed as blak as Inde / whan kyng Lot had afpyed kynge
 bors / he knewe hym wel / thenne he faid O Ihefu defende vs frō
 deth & horryble maymes / for I fee wel we ben in grete perylle 10
 of dethe / for I fee yonder a kynge one of the moft worfhipful-
 left men & one of the beft knyghtes of the world ben enclyned
 vnto his felaufhip / what is he faid the kynge with the C kny-
 tes / it is faid kyng Lot kyng bors of gaule / I merueile how
 they come in to this countreye without wetyng of vs all 15
 It was by Merlyns auyfe faid the knyghte / As for hym fa-
 yd kynge Carados / I wylle encountre with kynge bors / and
 ye wil refcowe me whan myfter is / go on faid they al / we wil
 do all that we may / thenne kyng Carados & his hooft rode on a
 foft pace tyl that they come as nyghe kynge Bors as bowe 20
 draughte / thenne eyther bataill lete their hors renne as faft as
 they myghte / And Bleoberys that was godfon vnto kynge
 Bors he bare his chyef ftandard / that was a paffynge good
 knyghte / Now fhall we fee faid kyng Bors hou thefe northe-
 ren bretons can bere the armes / & kyng Bors encountred with 25
 a knyght / and fmote hym thorow out with a fpere that he fel
 dede vnto the erthe / and after drewe his fwerd & dyd mer-
 ueillous dedes of armes that all partyes had grete wōder ther-
 of / & his knyghtes failled not but dyd their part / & kyng Ca-
 rados was fmyten to the erthe / With that came the kyng with 30
 the C knyghtes & refcued kyng Carados myztely by force of ar-
 mes / for he was a paffyng good knyght of a kynge / & but a
 yong man

¶ Capitulum xvi

Y than come in to the feld kynge Ban as fyers as a
 lyon with bandys of grene / & therupon gold / Ha a fa- 35
 id kyng Lot we muft be difcomfyte / for yonder I fee the moſte
 valyaunt knyght of the world / and the man of the moſt re-
 noume / for fuche ij bretheren as is kyng Ban & kyng bors ar

not lyuynge / wherfore we must nedes voyde or deye / And but
 yf we auoyde manly and wyfely / ther is but dethe / whanne
 kynge Ban came in to the bataill / he cam in so fierfly / that the
 strokes redounded ageyne fro the woode and the water / wher-
 5 for kynge Lott wepte for pyte and doole that he sawe so ma-
 ny good knyghtes take theyr ende / But thorowe the grete for-
 ce of kyng Ban they made both the Northeren bataylles that
 were departed / hurtled to gyders for grete drede / and the thre
 kynges & their knyghtes flewe on euer that it was pyte on to
 10 behold that multitude of the people that fledde / But kynge
 Lott and Kynge of the honderd knyghtes & kynge Morgano-
 re gadred the peple to gyders passyng knyghtly / and dyd gre-
 te prowesse of armes / and helde the bataill all that daye lyke
 hard / ¶ Whanne the kynge of the honderd knyghtes beheld the
 15 grete damage that kynge Ban dyd / he threft vnto hym wyth
 his hors and smote hym on hye vpon the helme a grete stroke
 and stonyed hym fore / Thenne kynge Ban was wroth with
 hym / and folowed on hym fyerfly / the other sawe that / and
 cast vp his sheld & spored his hors forward / But the stro-
 20 ke of kynge Ban felle doune and carfe a cantel of the sheld /
 and the swerd fode doune by the hauberk behynde his back / &
 cut thorow the trappere of stele / and the hors euen in two pye-
 ces that the swerd felte the erthe / Thenne the kynge of the C
 knyghtes voyded the hors lyghtly and with his swerd he bro-
 25 ched the hors of kyng Ban thorow and thorow / with that
 kynge Ban voyded lyghtly from the deede hors / and thenne
 kynge Ban smote at the other so egrely / and smote hym on
 the helme that he felle to the erth / Also in that yre he feld kyng
 Morganore and there was grete slaughter of good knyghtes
 30 and moche peple / by than come in to the prees kynge Arthur /
 and fond Kynge Ban stondynge among dede men and dede
 hors fyghtynge on foote as a wood lyon / that ther came no-
 ne nyghe hym as fer as he myght reche with his swerd / but he
 caughte a greuous buffet wherof Kynge Arthur had grete py-
 35 te / And Arthur was so bloody that by his shelde ther myght
 no man knowe hym / for all was blood and braynes on his
 swerd / And as Arthur loked by hym he sawe a knyght that
 was passyngly wel horfed / and therwith fyre Arthur ranne

to hym / and smote hym on the helme that his fwerd wente
vnto his teeth / and the knyght fanke doune to the erthe dede / &
anon Arthur tooke the hors by the rayne and ladde hym vnto
kynge Ban & said fair broder / haue this hors / for ye haue
grete myfter thereof & me repenteth fore of your grete dammage 5
Hit shall be soone reuengid said Kyng Ban / for I truste in
god myn eure is not fuche but some of them may fore repente
thys / I wol wel said Arthur / for I see your dedes full actual
Neuertheles I myghte not come at yow at that tyme / But
whanne Kyng Ban was mounted on horfbak / thenne there 10
beganne newe bataill the whyche was fore and hard / and pas-
syng grete slaughter / And so thurgh grete force Kyng Ar-
thur / Kyng Ban and Kyng Bors made her knyghtes a lit-
tel to with drawe them / But alwey the xj Kynges with her
chyualrye neuer turned bak / and so withdrewe hem to a lytil 15
woode / and so ouer a lytil ryuer / & there they rested hem / for
on the nyghte they myghte haue no rest on the feld / And thē-
ne the xj kynges and knyghtes put hem on a hepe all to gy-
ders as men adrad and out of alle comforte / but ther was no
man myghte passe them / they helde hem so hard to gyders bothe 20
behynde and before that kyng Arthur had merueille of their
dedes of armes and was passyng wrothe / A fyr Arthur sa-
id kyng Ban and kyng Bors blame hem noughte / For
they doo as good men oujt to doo / For by my feith said kyng
Ban / they are the best fyghtyng men and knyghtes of moost 25
prowesse that euer I sawe or herd speke of / And tho xj kyn-
ges are men of grete worship / And yf they were longyng vn-
to yow / there were no kyng vnder the heuen hadde fuche xj
knyghtes and of fuche worship / I may not loue hem said Ar-
thur / they wold destroye me / that wote we wel said kyng 30
Ban and Kyng Bors / for they are your mortal enemyes /
and that hath ben preued afore hand / And this day they haue
done theire parte / and that is grete pyte of theire wilfulnes
Thenne alle the xj kynges drewe hem to gyder / And thenne sa-
id kyng Lott / lordes ye must other wayes than ye do / or els 35
the grete losse is behynde / ye may see what peple we haue lost /
and what good men we lese / by cause we waytte alweyes on
these foote men / and euer in fauyng of one of the foote men

we lese x horfmen for hym / therfore this is myne aduys / lete
 vs put our foote men from vs / for it is nere nyghte / For the
 noble Arthur wille not tary on the foote men / for they maye
 faue hym self / the woode is nerehand / And whan we horfmen
 5 be to gyders / loke eueryche of yow kynges lete make suche or-
 dinaunce that none breke vpon payne of dethe / And who that
 feeth ony man dresse hym to flee / lightly that he be slayne / for
 it is better that we flee a coward than thorow a coward alle
 we to be slayne / How saye ye said kynge Lott / anfuere me all
 10 ye kynges / it is wel said quod kynge Nentres / so said the ky-
 nge of the honderd knyghtes / the fame saide the kynge Cara-
 dos and kyng Vryence / so dyd kynge Idres and kyng bran-
 degorys / and so dyd kyng Cradulmas and the duke of Cā-
 debenet / the fame said kyng Claryaunce & kyng Agwyfaunce
 15 and sware they wold neuer faille other neyther for lyf nor
 for dethe / And who so that fledde but did as they dyd shold
 be slayne / Thenne they amended their harneys and ryghted
 their sheldes and tooke newe sperys and sette hem on their
 thyes and stode stille as hit had ben a plombe of wood /

¶ Capitulum xviij

20 **W**Hanne Syre Arthur and kynge ban and bors by-
 helde the mand all her knyghtes they preyed hem mo-
 che for their noble chere of chyualrye for the hardyest fyghters
 that euer they herd or sawe / with that there dresyd hem a xl
 noble knyghtes and saide vnto the thre kynges / they wold
 25 breke their bataille / these were her names Lyonfes / pharyaunce
 Vlfyus / braftias / Ector / kaynes / lucas the bottelere / Gryflett
 la fyse de dieu / mariet de la roche / Gwynas de bloy / briāt de la
 foreyft faueage / bellaus / Moryans of the castel maydyns / flā-
 nedreus of the castel of ladyes / Annecians that was kynge
 30 bors godfone a noble knyght / ladynas de la rouse / Emeraufe
 Caulas / Gracyens le casteleyn / one bloyse de la caase / and fyre
 Colgreueaunce de gorre / all these knyghtes rode on afore with
 sperys on their thyes / and spored their horses myghtely as
 the horses myghte renne / And the xj kynges with parte of her
 35 knyghtes ruffched with their horses as fast as they myghte with
 their speres / & ther they dyd onboth partyes merueillous dedes
 of armes / soo came in to the thycke of the prees Arthur ban &

bors & flewe doune right on both handes that her horfes went
 in blood vp to the fytlokys / But euer the xj Kynges and
 their hooftes was euer in the vyfage of Arthur / wherfore Ban
 and Bors had grete merueille confyderyng the grete flauz-
 ter that there was / but at the laft they were dryuen abak ouer 5
 a lytil ryuer / with that came Merlyn on a grete black hors /
 and faid vnto arthur thou haft neuer done / haft thou not do-
 ne ynough / of thre fcore thoufand this day haft thou lefte on
 lyue but xv M / and it is tyme to faye ho for god is wrothe
 with the that thou wolt neuer haue done / for yonder xj kyn- 10
 ges at this tyme will not be ouerthrowen / but and thou tary
 on them ony lenger / thy fortune wille torne and they fhall en-
 creace / And therfor withdrawe yow vnto your lodgyng and
 reftes you as foone as ye may and rewarde your good knyghtes
 with gold and with fyluer / for they haue wel deferued hit / 15
 there may no rycheffe be to dere for them / for of fo fewe men as
 ye haue ther were neuer men dyd more of prowefse than they
 haue done to day / for ye haue matched this day with the beft
 fyghters of the world / that is trouthe faid kyng Ban and
 bors / Also faid Merlyn / withdrawe yow where ye lyft / For 20
 this thre yere I dar vndertake they fhalle not dere yow / And
 by than ye fhalle here newe tydynges / And thenne Merlyn fa-
 id vnto arthur / thefe xj kynges haue more on hand than they
 are ware of / for the Sarafyns are loded in their countreyes mo
 than xl M that brenne and flee / and haue leid fyege att the 25
 caftel Wandefborow and make grete deftruction / therfore drede
 yow not this thre yere / ¶ Also fyre al the goodes that ben
 goten at this bataill lete it be ferched / And whanne ye haue
 it in your handys lete it be gyuen frely vnto thefe two kynges
 Ban and Bors that they may rewarde theyr knyghtes with 30
 all / And that fhalle caufe ftraungers to be of better wyll to do
 yow feruyfe at nede / Also ye be able to reward youre owne
 knyghtes of your owne goodes whan fomeuer it lyketh you
 It is wel faid qd Arthur And as thou haft deuyfed fo fhall
 it be done / whanne it was delyuerd to Ban & Bors they gaf 35
 the goodes as frely to their knyghtes as frely as it was yeuen
 to them / Thenne Merlyn took his leue of Arthur and of the
 ij kynges for to go and fee his mayfter Bleyfe that dwelde

in Northumberland / and so he departed and cam to his maister that was passyng glad of his comynge / & there he tolde / how Arthur and the two kynges had sped at the grete batayll / and how it was ended / and told the names of euery kyng and knyght of worship that was there / And soo Bleyfe wrote the bataill word by word as Merlyn told hym how it began / & by whome / and in lyke wyse how it was endyd / And who had the werre / All the bataills that were done in arthurs dayes / merlyn dyd his maister Bleyfe do wryte / Also he did do wryte all the bataills that euery worthy knyght dyd of arthurs Courte / After this Merlyn departed from his mayster and came to kyng Arthur that was in the castel of Bedegrayne / that was one of the castels that stondyn in the forest of Sherewood / And Merlyn was so disguysed that kyng Arthur knewe hym not for he was al be furred in black shepe skynnes and a grete payre of bootes / and a bowe and arrowes in a ruffet gowne / and broughte wild gyse in his hād and it was on the morne after candelmas day / but kyng Arthur knewe hym not / Syre said Merlyn vnto the kyng / Wil ye gyue me a yeste / wherfor said kyng Arthur shold I gyue the a yeste chorle / Sir said Merlyn ye were better to gyue me a yeste that is not in your hand than to lese grete rycheffe / for here in the same place there the grete bataill was is grete tresour hyd in the erthe / who told the so chorle said Arthur / Merlyn told me so said he / thenne Vlfius and Braffias knew hym wel ynough and smyled / Syre said these two knyghtes It is Merlyn that so speketh vnto yow / thenne kyng arthur was gretely abasshed and had merueyll of Merlyn / & so had kyng Ban and kyng Bors / and soo they had grete dysport at hym / Soo in the meane whyle there cam a damoyfel that was an erlys doughter his name was Sanam / and her name was Lyonors a passyng fair damoyfel / and so she cam thyder for to dohomage as other lordes dyd after the grete bataill / And kyng Arthur sette his loue gretely vpon her and so dyd she vpon hym / and the kyng had adoo with her / and gat on her a child / his name was Borre that was after a good knyghte and of the table round / thenne ther cam word that the kyng Ryence of Northen walys maade grete werre on

kyng Lodegreance of camlyard / for the whiche thyng arthur was wroth for he loued hym wel and hated kyng Ryence / for he was alwey ageynst hym / So by ordenaunce of the thre kynges that were sente home vnto Benwyck / alle they wold departe for drede of kyng Claudas and pharyaunce and Antemes and Grafians and lyonfes / payarne with the leders of tho that shold kepe the kynges landys

¶ Capitulum xviii

ANd thenne kyng Arthur and kyng Ban & kyng Bors departed with her felaufhip a xx M and came within vj dayes in to the countrey of Cmyliarde and there rescowed kyng Lodegreance and flewe ther moche people of kyng Ryence vnto the nombre of x M men and put hym to flyghte / And thenne had these thre kynges grete chere of kyng Lodegreance / that thanked them of their grete goodnesse that they wold reuenge hym of his enemyes / and there hadde Arthur the fyrst fyght of gweneuer the kynges doughter of Camlyard / and euer after he loued her / After they were weddyd as it telleth in the booke / Soo breuely to make an ende / they took theyr leue to goo in to theyre owne Countreyes for kyng Claudas dyd grete destruction on their landes / Thenne said Arthur I wille goo with yow / Nay said the kynges ye shalle not at this tyme / for ye haue moche to doo yet in these landes / therfore we wille departe / and with the grete goodes that we haue gotten in these landes by youre yestes we shalle wage good knyghtes & withstande the kyng Claudas mayce / for by the grace of god and we haue nede we wille sende to yow for youre focour / And yf ye haue nede sende for vs / and we wille not tary by the feythe of our bodyes / Hit shalle not faide Merlyn nede that these two kynges come ageyne in the wey of werre / But I knowe wel kyng Arthur maye not be longe from yow / for within a yere or two ye shalle haue grete nede / And thenne shalle he reuenge yow on youre enemyes as ye haue done on his / For these xj kynges shal deye all in a day by the grete myghte and prowesse of armes of ij valyaunt knyghtes as it telleth after / her names ben Balyn le Saueage and Balan his broder that ben merueillous good knyghtes as ben ony lyuyng / **¶** Now torne we to the xj

kynges that retorned vnto a cyte that hyghte Sorhaute / the
 whiche cyte was within kynge Vryens / and ther they refres-
 shed hem as wel as they myght / and made leches ferche theyr
 woundys and sorowed gretely for the dethe of her peple / with
 5 that ther came a messager and told how ther was comen in to
 their landes people that were laules as wel as farafyns a xl
 M / and haue brent & slayne al the peple that they may come
 by withoute mercy / and haue leyd fyege on the castel of wā-
 disborow / Allas sayd the xj kynges here is forow vpon forou
 10 And yf we had not warryd ageynst Arthur as we haue do-
 ne / he wold soone reunge vs / as for kyng Lodegryaunce he lo-
 ueth Arthur better. than vs / And as for kyng Ryence / he hath
 ynough to doo with Lodegreans / for he hath leyd fyege vnto
 hym / Soo they consentyd to gyder to kepe alle the marches of
 15 Cornewayle / of walys and of the northe / soo fyrst they putte
 kynge Idres in the Cyte of Nauntys in Brytayne with iiij
 thousand men of armes / to watche bothe the water and the
 land / Also they put in the cyte of Wyndesfan kynge Nauntres
 of garlott with four thousand knyghtes to watche both on wa-
 20 ter and on lond / Also they had of other men of werre moo
 than eyght thousand for to fortyfye alle the fortresses in the
 marches of Cornewayle / Also they put moo knyghtes in alle
 the marches of walys and scotland with many good men of
 armes / and soo they kepte hem to gyders the space of thre yere
 25 And euer alyed hem with myghty kynges and dukes and
 lordes / And to them felle kynge Ryence of North walys / the
 whiche was a myghty man of men & Nero that was a mygh-
 ty man of men / And all this whyle they furnysshed hem and
 garnysshed hem of good men of armes and vytaille and of
 30 alle maner of abyement that pretendith to the werre to auen-
 ge hem for the bataille of Bedegrayne / as it telleth in the book
 of auentures folowyng

Capitulum xix

† Hēne after the departyng of kyng Ban and of kyng
 Bors kynge Arthur rode vnto Carlyon / And thyder
 35 cam to hym kyng Lots wyf of Orkeney in maner of a messa-
 ge / but she was sente thyder to aspye the Courte of kynge Ar-
 thur / and she cam rychely bifene with her four sones / gawayn

Gaherys / Agrauaynes / and Gareth with many other knygh-
 tes and ladyes / for she was a possynge fayr lady / wherfore
 the kyng cast grete loue vnto her / and defyred to lye by her / so
 they were agreed / and he begate vpon her Mordred / and she
 was his fyfter on the moder syde Igrayne / So ther she rested 5
 her a moneth and at the last departed / Thenne the kyng dre-
 med a merueillous dreame wherof he was fore adrad / But al
 this tyme kyng Arthur knewe not that kyng Lots wyf was
 his fyfter / Thus was the dreame of Arthur / hym thought ther
 was come in to this land Gryffons and Serpentes / And 10
 hym thoughte they brente and flough alle the peple in the lād
 And thenne hym thoughte / he faughte with hem / and they dyd
 hym passynge grete harme / and wounded hym ful fore / but at
 the last he slewe hem / Whanne the kyng awaked / he was pas-
 synge heuy of his dreame / and so to put it oute of thoughtes / 15
 he made hym redy with many knyghtes to ryde on huntynge /
 As soone as he was in the forest / the kyng sawe a grete hert
 afore hym / this herte wille I chace said kyng Arthur / And
 so he spored the hors / and rode after longe / And so by fyne for-
 ce ofte he was lyke to haue smyten the herte / where as the ky- 20
 nge had chaced the herte soo long that his hors had losse hys
 brethe and fylle doune dede / Thenne a yoman fette the kyng
 another hors / So the kyng sawe the herte enbusshed and his
 hors dede / he fette hym doune by a fontayne and there he fell in
 grete thoughtes / And as he satte so hym thoughte he herd a 25
 noyse of houndes to the somme of xxx / And with that the ky-
 nge sawe comyng toward hym the straunkest best that euer he
 sawe or herd of / so the best wente to the welle and drank / and
 the noyse was in the bestes bely lyke vnto the questyng of xxx
 coupyl houndes / but alle the whyle the beest dranke there was 30
 no noyse in the bestes bely / and therwith the best departed with
 a grete noyse / wherof the kyng had grete merueyll / And so he
 was in a grete thoughte / and therwith he fell on slepe / Ryght
 so ther came a knyght a foote vnto Arthur / and sayd knyght
 full of thought and slepy / telle me yf thou sawest a straunge 35
 best passe this waye / Suche one sawe I said kyng Arthur /
 that is past two myle / what wold ye with the best said arthur
 Syre I haue folowed that best long tyme / and kyld myne

hors / so wold god I had another to folowe my queft / ryzte
 fo came one with the kynges hors / and whan the knyght fa-
 we the hors / he prayd the kyng to yeue hym the hors / for I
 haue folowed this queft this xij moneth / and other I shal en-
 5 cheue hym or blede of the beft blood of my body / Pellinore that
 tyme kyng folowed the queftynge beft / and after his deth sir
 Palamydes folowed hit

¶ Capitulum xx

SYr knyghte faid the kyng leue that queft / and fuffre
 me to haue hit / and I wyll folowe it another xij mo-
 10 neth / A foole faid the knyghte vnto Arthur / it is in
 veyne thy defyre / for it shalle neuer ben encheued but by me /
 or my next kyn / there with he fterte vnto the kynges hors and
 mounted in to the fadel / and faid gramercy this hors is myn
 owne / wel faid the kyng thow mayft take myn hors by force
 15 but and I myzte preue the whether thow were better on horf-
 bak or I / wel faid the knyght feke me here whan thow wolt
 and here nygh this wel thow shalt fynde me / and soo paffyd
 on his weye / thenne the kyng fat in a study and bad his men
 fetch his hors as fafte as euer they myghte / Ryght soo came
 20 by hym Merlyn lyke a child of xiiij yere of age and falewed
 the kyng / and asked hym why he was so penyfy / I may wel
 be penyfy fayd the kyng / for I haue fene the merueyllefyzt
 that euer I fawe / that knowe I wel faid Merlyn as wel as
 thy felf and of all thy thoughtes / but thow art but a foole to
 25 take thought / for it wylle not amend the / Also I knowe what
 thow arte / and who was thy fader / and of whome thow were
 begoten / kyng Vtherpendragon was thy fader / and begat the
 on Igrayne / that is fals faid kyng Arthur / how sholdest thou
 knowe it / for thow arte not so old of yeres to knowe my fa-
 30 der / yes fayd Merlyn I knowe it better than ye or ony man
 lyuyng / I wille not bileue the faid Arthur and was wroth
 with the child / Soo departed Merlyn and came ageyne in
 the lykenes of an old man of iiij fcore yere of age / wherof the
 kyng was ryght glad / for he femed to be ryghte wyfe
 35 Thenne faide the old man why are ye so fad / I maye wel be
 heuy faid Arthur for many thynges / Also here was a chyld
 and told me many thynges that me femeth / he shold not kno-
 we / for he was not of age to knowe my fader / yes faid the old

man / the child told yow trouthe / and more wold he haue
 tolde yow and ye wolde haue suffred hym / But ye haue do-
 ne a thyng late that god is displeasyd with yow / for ye ha-
 ue layne by your syfter / and on her ye haue gotten a chyld /
 that shalle destroye yow and all the knyghtes of your realme 5
 What are ye said Arthur that telle me these tydynges / I am
 Merlyn / and I was he in the chilles lykenes / A sayd kyng
 Arthur ye are a merueillous man / but I merueylle moche /
 of thy wordes that I mote dye in bataille / Merueylle not fa-
 id Merlyn / for it is gods wyll youre body to be punysshed for 10
 your fowle dedes / but I may wel be sory said Merlyn / for I
 shalle dye a shameful deth / to be put in the erthe quyck / and ye
 shall dye a worshipful deth / And as they talked this / cam one
 with the kynges hors / and so the kyng mounted on his hors
 and Merlyn on another and so rode vnto Carlyon / & anone 15
 the kyng asked Ector and Vlkyus how he was bigoten / &
 they told hym Vtherpendragon was his fader & quene Igra-
 yn his moder / thenne he sayd to Merlyn I wylle that my mo-
 der be sente for that I may speke with her / And yf she faye so
 her self / thēne wylle I byleue hit / In all hast the quene was 20
 sente for / and she cam & broughte with her Morgan le fay her
 doughter that was as fayre a lady as ony myghte be / & the
 kyng welcomed Igrayne in the best maner /

RYght foo cam Vlkyus & faide **¶ Capitulum xxj**
 openly that the kyng and all myzt here that were fe- 25
 sted that day / ye are the falsest lady of the world and
 the most traitresse vnto the kynges perfon / Beware faide Ar-
 thur what thow saist / thow spekest a grete word / I am wel wa-
 re said Vlkyus what I speke / & here is my gloue to preue hit
 vpon ony man that will seye the contrary / that this quene I- 30
 grayne is caufar af your grete damage / & of your grete werre
 For and she wold haue vtterd it in the lyf of kyng Vtherpē-
 dragon of the byrthe of yow / and how ye were begoten ye had
 neuer had the mortal werrys that ye haue had for the moost
 party of your barons of your realme knewe neuer whos sone 35
 ye were / nor of whome ye were begoten / & she that bare yow of
 her body shold haue made it knowen openly in excusyng of her
 worship & yours / & in lyke wyse to alle the reame / wherfor I

preue her fals to god and to yow and to al your realme and
 who wyll saye the contrary I wyll preue it on his body
 Thenne spak Igrayne and sayd I am a woman and I may
 not fyghte / but rather than I shold be dishonoured / ther wold
 5 some good man take my quarel // More she sayd / Merlyn know-
 weth wel and ye fyr Vlſyus how kynge Vther cam to me in
 the Caſtel of Tyntagaill in the lykenes of my lord that was
 dede thre houres to fore / and therby gat a child that nyght vp-
 on me / And after the xiiij day kynge Vther wedded me / and
 10 by his commaundement whan the child was borne it was de-
 lyuerd vnto Merlyn and nouriſhed by hym / and ſo I ſawe
 the child neuer after / nor wote not what is his name / for I
 knewe hym neuer yet / And there Vlſyus ſaide to the quene
 Merlyn is more to blame than ye / wel I wote ſaid the quene
 15 I bare a child by my lord kyng Vther / but I wote not where
 he is become / thenne Merlyn toke the kynge by the hand ſa-
 yeng / this is your moder / and therwith fyr Ector bare wytnes
 how he nouriſhed hym by Vthers commaundement / And ther-
 with kynge Arthur toke his moder quene Igrayne in his ar-
 20 mes and kyft her / and eyther wepte vpon other / And thenne
 the kyng lete make a feſt that laſted eyght dayes / Thenne on
 a day ther come in the courte a ſquyer on hors back ledynge a
 knyght before hym wounded to the dethe / and told hym how
 ther was a knyght in the foreſt had rered vp a paulione by
 25 a well and hath ſlayne my mayſter a good knyght / his na-
 me was mylis / wherfor I byſeche yow that my mayſter maye
 be buryed / and that ſomme knyzt maye reuenge my mayſters
 deth / thenne the noyſe was grete of that knyghtes dethe in the
 Court / and euery man ſaid his aduys / thenne came Gryffett
 30 that was but a ſquyer / and he was but yonge of the age of
 the kyng Arthur / ſoo he beſoughte the kyng for alle his ſeruys
 that he had done hym to gyue the ordre of knyghthode

¶ Capitulum xxiij

THou arte full yong and tendyr of age ſayd Arthur
 for to take ſo hyghe an ordre on the / Sir ſaid gryffet
 35 I byſeche yow make me knyzt / Syr ſaid Merlyn it were gre-
 te pyte to leſe Gryffet / for he wille be a paſſynge good man /
 whanne he is of age / abydynge with yow the terme

me of his lyf / And yf he auenture his body with yonder knyght at the fontayne it is in grete peryll yf euer he come ageyne / for he is one of the best knyghtes of the world / and the strēgyft man of armes / wel faid Arthur / so at the desyre of gryflet the kynge made hym knyght / Now faid Arthur vnto fyre 5
 Gryflet / Sythen I haue made yow knyghte thow must yeue me a gyfte / what ye will faid Gryflet / thou shalt promyse me by the feythe of thy body whan thou hast lusted with the knyght at the fontayne / whether it falle ye be on foote or on horfbak / that ryght so ye shal come ageyne vnto me withoute ma- 10
 kynge ony more debate / I wyll promyse yow faid Gryflet as yow desyre / Thenne toke Gryflet his hors in grete haste / & dresfyd his sheld and toke a spere in his hand / and so he rode a grete wallop tyll he cam to the fontayne / and ther by he sawe a ryche pauelion / and ther by vnder a clothe stode a fayr hors 15
 wel fadeler and brydeled / and on a tree a shelde of dyuerse colours and a grete spere / Thenne Gryflet smote on the sheld with the bott of his spere that the shylde felle doune to the ground / with that the knyght cam oute of the pauelione / & sayd fair knyght why smote ye doune my sheld / for I wil luste 20
 with yow faid gryflet / it is better ye doo not sayd the knyghte for ye are but yong and late made knyght / and your myghte is nothyng to myn / as for that faide Gryflet I wyll luste with yow / that is me loth faid the knyght / but sythen I muste nedes I wille dresse me therto / of whens be ye sayd the knyghte 25
 fyre I am of Arthurs courte / So the two knyghtes ranne to gyder that gryflets spere al to sheuered / and ther with all he smote Gryflet thorowe the shelde & the lyfte fyde / and brake the spere that the troncheon stak in his body / that hors and knyghte fylle doune

¶ Capitulum xxiij 30

Than the knyght sawe hym lye soo on the ground / he alyght and was passynge heuy / for he wende he had slayne hym / and thenne he unlaced his helme and gate hym wynde / and so with the troncheon he set hym on his hors and gate him wynde / and so bytoke hym to god / and feid he had a 35
 myghty hert and yf he myght lyue he wold preue a passynge good knyght / & so fyr Gryflet rode to the court where grete doole

was made for hym / But thorowe good leches he was heled /
and faued / Ryght so cam in to the Courte xij knyghtes & were
aged men / and they cam from themperour of Rome / & they af-
ked of Arthur truage for this realme / other els themperour
5 wold destroye hym & his land / wel said kyng Arthur ye are
messagers / therfor ye may say what ye wil other els ye shold
dye therfore / But this is myn anfuer I owe themperour noo
truage nor none will I hold hym / but on a fayr felde I shall
yeue hym my truage that shal be with a sharp spere / or els
10 with a sharp swerd / & that shal not be long by my faders fou-
le Vtherpendragon / & therwith the messagers departed passyn-
gly wroth / & kyng arthur as wroth / for in euyl tyme cam they
thenne / for the kyng was passyngly wroth for the hurte of sir
Gryflet / & soo he commaunded a pryuy man of his chambre /
15 that or hit be day his best hors and armour with all that lon-
geth vnto his persone be withoute the cyte or to morowe daye
Ryght so or to morow day he met with his man and his hors
and so mounted vp and dresid his sheld / & toke his spere
and bad his chamberlayne tary there tyll he came ageyne /
20 And so Arthur roode a softe paas tyll it was day / & thenne
was he ware of thre chorles chacynge Merlyn / and wold ha-
ue slayne hym / thenne the kyng rode vnto them / and bad them
flee chorles / thenne were they aferd whan they sawe a knyght
and fled / O Merlyn said Arthur / here haddeest thou be slayne
25 for all thy craftes had I not byn / Nay said Merlyn not soo
for I coude faue my self and I wold / and thou arte more
nere thy deth than I am for thow gost to the deth ward & god
be not thy frend / So as they wente thus talkyng / they came
to the fontayne / and the ryche paelione there by hit / thenne
30 kyng Arthur was ware where sat a knyght armed in a cha-
yer / Syr knyght said Arthur / for what cause abydest thou here
that ther maye no knyght ryde this wey but yf he Iuste wyth
the said the kyng / I rede the leue that custome said Arthur
This customme saide the knyght haue I vfed and wille vse
35 magre who faith nay / & who is greued with my custome / lete
hym amende hit that wol / I wil amende it said Arthur / I shal
defende the said the knyght / anon he toke his hors & dresid his
shylde & toke a spere & they met so hard either in others sheldes

that al to sheuered their sperys / ther with anone Arthur pul-
 led oute his fwerd / nay not so said the knyght / it is fayrer fay-
 yd the knyzt that we tweyne renne more to gyders with sharp
 sperys / I wille wel said Arthur and I had ony mo sperys 5
 I haue ynow said the knyzt / so ther cam a squyer and brouzt
 in good sperys / and Arthur chose one & he another / so they spo-
 red their horfes & cam to gyders with al the myghtes / that ey-
 ther brak her speres to her handes / thenne Arthur sette hand on
 his fwerd / nay feid the knyght / ye shal do better / ye are a paf- 10
 fyng good Iuster as euer I mette with al / & ones for the loue
 of the hyghe ordre of kny3thode lete vs Iuste ones ageyn / I af-
 sente me said Arthur / anone there were brought two grete spe-
 rys / and euery knyght gat a spere / and therwith they ranne
 to gyders that Arthurs spere al to sheuered / But the other 15
 knyghte hyt hym so hard in myddes of the shelde / that horse &
 man felle to the erthe / and ther with Arthur was egre & pul-
 led oute his fwerd / and said I will assay the fyr knyghte on
 foote / for I haue lost the honour on horsbak / I will be on hors-
 bak said the knyght / thenne was Arthur wrothe and dressid 20
 his sheld toward hym with his fwerd drawn / whan the kny-
 ght sawe that / he a lyghte / for hym thought no worship to ha-
 ue a knyght at fuche auaille he to be on horsbak and he on foot
 and so he alyght & dressid his sheld vnto Arthur & ther begā
 a strong bataille with many grete strokes / & soo hewe with her 25
 fwerdes that the cantels flewe in the felde / and moche blood
 they bledde bothe / that al the place there as they faught was
 ouer bledde with blood / and thus they fought long and rested
 hem / and thenne they wente to the batayl ageyne / and so hurt-
 led to gyders lyke two rammes that eyther felle to the erthe 30
 So at the last they smote to gyders that both her fwerdys met
 euen to gyders / But the fwerd of the knyght smote kyng ar-
 thurs fwerd in two pyeces / wherfor he was heuy / thenne said
 the knyghte vnto Arthur / thow arte in my daunger whether
 me lyft to saue the or flee the / and but thou yelde the as ouer-
 come and recreaunt / thow shalt deye / as for deth said kyng ar- 35
 thur welcome be it whan it cometh / But to yelde me vnto the
 as recreaunt I had leuer dye than to be soo shamed / And
 ther with al the kynge lepte vnto Pellinore & tooke hym by

the myddel and threwe hym doune and raced of his helme /
 Whan the knyght felt that / he was adrad / for he was pas-
 synge bygge man of myghte / and anone he broughte Arthur
 vnder hym / and reaced of his helme and wold haue smyten of
 5 his hede /

¶ Capitulum xxiii

THer with all came Merlyn and sayd knyghte / hold
 thy hand / For and thou flee that knyghte thou put-
 test this reame in the gretteft dammage that euer was
 reame / For this knyght is a man of more worship than thou
 10 wotest of / Why / who is he said the knyghte / it is kyng Arthur
 Thenne wold he haue slayn hym for drede of his wrathe / and
 heue vp his swerd / and therwith Merlyn cast an enchaunte-
 ment to the knyghte that he felle to the erthe in a grete slepe /
 Thenne Merlyn tooke vp kyng Arthur and rode forth on the
 15 knyghtes hors / Allas said Arthur what hast thou done merlyn
 hast thou slayne this good knyghte by thy craftes / there ly-
 ueth not soo worshipful a knyghte as he was / I had leuer
 than the stynte of my land a yere that he were on lyue / care ye
 not sayd Merlyn / for he is holer than ye / for he is but on slepe
 20 and will awake within thre houres / I told you said Merlyn
 what a knyghte he was / Here had ye be slayn had I not ben
 Also ther lyueth not a bygger knyght than he is one / and he
 shal here after do yow ryght good seruyse & his name is Pel-
 linore / and he shal haue two fones that shal be passyng good
 25 men fauf one / they shalle haue no felawe or prowesse and of
 good lyuyng / and her names shal be Persyual of walys / &
 Lamerak of walis / & he shal telle yow the name of your own
 sone bygoten of your fyfter that shal be the destruction of alle

this royaume

¶ Capitulum xxv

RYghte so the kyng and he departed & wente vn tyl an
 30 ermyte that was a good man and a grete leche / Soo
 the heremyte serched all his woundys & gaf hym good salues
 so the kyng was there thre dayes & thenne were his woundes
 wel amendyd that he myght ryde and goo / & so departed / & as
 35 they rode Arthur said I haue no swerd / no force said Merlyn
 here by is a swerd that shalle be yours and I may / Soo they
 rode tyl they came to a lake the whiche was a fayr water / and
 brood / And in the myddes of the lake Arthur was ware of

an arme clothed in whyte samyte / that held a fayr fwerd in
 that hand / loo faid Merlyn yonder is that fwerd that I spak
 of / with that they fawe a damoifel goyng vpon the lake / what
 damoyfel is that faid Arthur / that is the lady of the lake faid
 Merlyn / And within that lake is a roche / and theryn is as
 5 fayr a place as ony on erthe and rychely befene / and this da-
 moyfell wylle come to yow anone / and thenne speke ye fayre
 to her that she will gyue yow that fwerd / Anone with all ca-
 me the damoyfel vnto Arthur / and falewed hym / and he her a-
 geyne / Damoyfel faid Arthur / what fwerd is that / that yon- 10
 der the arme holdeth aboue the water / I wold it were myne /
 for I haue no fwerd / Syr Arthur kyng faid the damoyfell /
 that fwerd is myn / And yf ye will gyue me a yefte whan
 I aske it yow / ye shal haue it by my feyth faid Arthur / I
 will yeue yow what yefte ye will aske / wel faid the damoifel 15
 go ye into yonder barge / & rowe your self to the fwerd / and
 take it / and scaubart with yow / & I will aske my yefte whan
 I see my tyme / So fyr Arthur & merlyn alyght & tayed the-
 ir horfes to two trees / & so they went in to the ship / & whanne
 they came to the fwerd that the hand held / fyre Arthur toke 20
 it vp by the handels / & toke it with hym / & the arme & the hād
 went vnder the water / & so come vnto the lond & rode forth / &
 thēne fyr Arthur fawe a ryche paelion / what fygnifyeth yō-
 der paelion / þ^t is þ^e knyghtes paelion seid merlyn þ^t ye fouzt
 with laft / fyr Pellinore / but he is out / he is not there / he hath a- 25
 doo with a knyght of yours that hyght Egglame / & they ha-
 ue fouzten to gyder / but al the laft Egglame fledde and els
 he had ben dede / & he hath chaced hym euen to Carlyon / and we
 shal mete with hym anon in the hygh wey / that is wel sayd /
 faid Arthur / now haue I a fwerd / now wille I wage bata- 30
 ill with hym & be auenged on hym / fir ye shal not so faid Mer-
 lyn / for the knyght is wery of fyghtyng & chacyng so that ye
 shal haue no worship to haue a do with hym / Also he will not
 be lyztly matched of one knyzt lyuyng / & therfor it is my co-
 unceil / lete hym passe / for he shal do you good seruyse in shorte 35
 tyme & his fones after his dayes / Also ye shal see that day in
 short space ye shal be rízt glad to yeue him your sifter to wedde
 Whan I see hym I wil doo as ye aduyse sayd Arthur

Thenne fyre Arthur loked on the fwerd / and lyked it paf-
 fyngel wel / whether lyketh yow better fayd Merlyn the fuerd
 or the fcaubard / Me lyketh better the fwerd fayd Arthur / ye
 are more vnwyfe fayd Merlyn / for the fcaubard is worth x
 5 of the fwerdys / for whyles ye haue the fcaubard vpon yow
 ye fhalle neuer lefe no blood / be ye neuer fo fore wounded ther-
 for kepe wel the fcaubard alweyes with yow / fo they rode vn-
 to Carlyon / and by the way they met with fyr Pellinore / but
 Merlyn had done fuche a crafte / that pellinore fawe not Ar-
 10 thur / and he pafte by withoute ony wordes / I merueylle fayd
 Arthur that the knyght wold not fpeke / fyr faid Merlyn / he
 fawe yow not / for and he had fene yow ye had not lyghtly
 departed / Soo they come vnto Carlyon / wherof his knygh-
 tes were paffyngel glad / And whanne they herd of his auen-
 15 tures / they merueilled that he wold ieoparde his perfone foo
 al one / But alle men of worfhip faid it was mery to be vnder
 fuche a chyuetayne that wolde put his perfone in auenture as
 other poure knyghtes dyd /

¶ Capitulum xxviij

THis meane whyle came a meffager from kynge Ry-
 20 ons of Northwalys / And kynge he was of all Ire-
 land and of many Iles / And this was his meffage gre-
 tyngel wel kynge Arthur in this manere wyfe fayenge / that
 kynge Ryons had difcomfyte and ouercome xj kynges / and
 eueryche of hem did hym homage / and that was this / they gaf
 25 hym their berdys clene flayne of / as moche as ther was / wher
 for the meffager came for kyng Arthurs berd / For kyng Ry-
 ons had purfyled a mantel with kynges berdes / and there
 lacked one place of the mantel / wherfor he fente for his berd
 or els he wold entre in to his landes / and brenne and flee / &
 30 neuer leue tyl he haue the hede and the berd / wel fayd Arthur
 thow haft faid thy meffage / the whiche is the moft vylaynous
 and lewdeft meffage that euer man herd fente vnto a kynge /
 Also thow mayft fee / my berd is ful yong yet to make a pur-
 fyl of hit / But telle thow thy kynge this / I owe hym none
 35 homage / ne none of myn elders / but or it be longe to / he fhall do
 me homage on bothe his kneys / or els he fhall lefe his hede by
 the feith of my body / for this is the moft fhamefulleſt meffage

that euer I herd speke of / I haue aspyed / thy kyng met neuer yet with worshipful man / but telle hym / I wyll haue his hede withoute he doo me homage / thenne the messager departed

¶ Now is there ony here said Arthur that knoweth kyng Ryons thenne anfuerd a knyght that hyght Naram / Syre I knowe the kyng wel / he is a passyng good man of his body / as fewe ben lyuyng / and a passyng prowde man / and fir doubte ye not / he wille make warre on yow with a myghty puyssaunce / wel said Arthur I shall ordeyne for hym in short tyme

¶ Capitulum xxviii

THēne kyng arthur lete sende for al the childrē born on may day begotē of lordes & born of ladyes / for Merlyn told kyng Arthur that he that shold destroye hym / shold be borne in may day / wherfor he sent for hem all vpon payn of deth and so ther were founde many lordes fones / and all were sente vnto the kyng / and soo was Mordred sente by kyng Lotts wyf / and all were put in a ship to the see / and some were iiij wekes old and some lasse / And so by fortune the shyp drofe vnto a castel and was al to ryuen and destroyed the most part sauf that Mordred was cast vp and a good man fonde hym / and nourysshed hym tyl he was xiiij yere olde / & thenne he brought hym to the Court / as it reherceth afterward toward the ende of the deth of Arthur / So many lordes and barons of this reame were displeasyd / for her children were so lost / and many put the wyte on Merlyn more than on Arthur / so what for drede and for loue they helde their pees / But whanne the messager came to kyng Ryons / thenne was he woode oute of mesure and purueyed hym for a grete hoost as it rehercyth after in the book of Balyn le faueage that foloweth next after / how by aduenture Balyn gat the swerd

¶ Explicit liber primus

¶ Incipit liber secundus



After the dethe of Vtherpendragon regned Arthur his sone / the whiche had grete werre in his dayes for to gete al Englonde in to his hand / For there were many kynges within the realme of Englonde and in walys / Scotland and Cornewaille / Soo it befelle on a tyme / whanne kyng Arthur

was at London ther came a knyght and tolde the kynge ty-
 dynges how that the kynge Ryons of Northwalys had rered
 a grete nombre of peple / and were entryd in to the land and
 brente and flewe the kynges true liege peple / yf this be true fa-
 5 id Arthur / it were grete shame vnto myn estate / but that he we-
 re myghtely withstand / it is trouthe sayd the knyghte / for I
 fawe the hooft my self / wel faide the kynge / lete make a crye /
 that all the lordes knyghtes and gentylmen of armes shold
 drawe vnto a castel called Camelot in tho dayes / and ther the
 10 kynge wold lete make a counceil general and a grete Iustes
 So whan the kynge was come thyder with all his baronage
 and lodged as they semed best / ther was come a damoifel the
whiche was fente on message from the grete lady lylle of aue-
lyon / And whan she came bifore kynge Arthur / she told from
 15 whome she came / and how she was sent on message vnto hym
 for these causes Thenne she lete her mantel falle that was ry-
 chely furred / And thenne was she gyrd with a noble swerd
 wherof the kynge had merueill / and said Damoyfel for what
 cause are ye gyrd with that swerd / it bifemeth yow not /
 20 Now shall I telle yow said the damoyfel / This swerd that I
 am gyrd with al doth me grete forowe and comberaunce / for I
 may not be delyuerd of this swerd / but by a knyghte / but he
 must be a passyng good man of his handes and of his dedes
 and withoute vylonye or trecherye and withoute treason / And
 25 yf I maye fynde fuche a knyghte that hath all these vertues /
 he may drawe oute this swerd oute of the sheathe / for I haue
 ben at kyng Ryons / it was told me ther were passyng good
 knyghtes / and he and alle his knyghtes haue assayed it and
 none can spede / This is a grete merueill said Arthur / yf this
 30 be sothe / I wille my self assaye to drawe oute the swerd / not
 presumynge vpon my self that I am the best knyghte / but
 that I will begynne to drawe at your swerd in gyuyng exam-
 ple to alle the Barons that they shall assay euerychone after
 other whan I haue assayed it / Thenne Arthur toke the swerd
 35 by the sheathe and by the gyrdel and pulled at it egrely / but
 the swerd wold not oute / ¶ Sire seid the damoyfell ye ne-
 de not to pulle half so hard / for he that shall pulle it out shal
 do it with lytel myghte / ye say wel said Arthur / Now assaye

ye al my barons / but beware ye be not defoyled with shame tre-
 chery ne gyle / thenne it wille not auaylle fayd the damoyfell /
 for he must be a clene knyght withoute vylony and of a gentil
 strene of fader fyde and moder fyde / Moost of all the barons of
 the round table that were there at that tyme assayed alle by 5
 rewe / but ther myght non spede / wherfor the damoyfel made
 grete forow oute of mesure and fayd Allas I wende in this
 Courte had ben the best knyghtes withoute trechery or trefon /
 By my feythe fayth Arthur here are good knyghtes as I de-
 me as ony ben in the world / but theyr grace is not to helpe 10
 yow / wherfor I am displeasyd

¶ Capitulum ij

THenne felle hit soo that tyme / ther was a poure kny-
 ght with kyng Arthur / that had byn prysoner with
 hym half a yere & more for sleynge of a knyghte / the
 whiche was cofyn vnto kyng Arthur / the name of this kny- 15
 ght was called Balen / and by good meanes of the barons
 he was delyuerd oute of pryson / for he was a good man na-
 med of his body / and he was borne in northumberland / and
 soo he wente pryuely in to the Courte / and fawe this aduen-
 ture / werof hit reysed his herte / and wolde assaye it as other 20
 knyghtes dyd / but for he was poure and pourely arayed he
 put hym not ferre in prees / But in his herte he was fully af-
 fured to doo as wel yf his grace happed hym as ony knyght
 that there was / And as the damoyfel toke her leue of Arthur
 and of alle the barons so departyng / this knyght Balen cal- 25
 led vnto her and fayd Damoyfel I praye yow of your cur-
 tosy / fuffre me as wel to assay as these lordes though that I
 be so pourely clothed / in my herte me semeth I am fully affu-
 red as somme of these other / And me semeth in my herte to
 spede ryght wel / The damoyfel beheld the poure knyght / and 30
 fawe he was a lykely man / but for his poure arrayment she
 thoughte he shold be of no worship withoute vylonye or tre-
 chery / And thēne she fayd vnto the knyght / sir it nedeth not to
 put me to more payn or labour / for it semeth not yow to spe-
 de there as other haue failed / A fayr Damoyfel said Balen 35
 worthynes and good tatches and good dedes are not only in
 arrayment / but manhood and worship is hyd within mans
 persone and many a worshipful knyghte is not knowen vn-

to alle people / and therefore worship and hardynesse is not in
arayment / By god sayd the damoyfel ye fay sothe / therfor ye
shal affaye to do what ye may / Thenne Balen took the swerd
by the gyrdel and shethe / and drewe it out easly / and when
5 he loked on the swerd hit pleasyd hym moche / thenne had the
kyng and alle the barons grete merueille that Balen hadde
done that aventure / many knyghtes had grete despyte of Ba-
len / Certes said the damoyfel / this is a passyng good knyght
and the best that euer I found and moost of worship with-
10 oute trefon / trechery or vylony / and many merueylles shalle he
do / Now gentyl and curtois knyght yeue me the swerd ayene
nay said Balen / for this swerd wyll I kepe but it be taken
from me with force / wel faide the damoyfel ye are not wyfe to
kepe the swerd from me / for ye shalle flee with the swerd the
15 best frende that ye haue and the man that ye moste loue in the
world / and the swerd shalle be your destruction / I shal take
the aduventure sayd Balen that god wille ordeyne me / but the
swerd ye shalle not haue at this tyme by the feythe of my bo-
dy / ye shalle repente hit within short tyme sayd the damoyfel /
20 For I wold haue the swerd more for your auaylle than for
myne / for I am passyng heuy for your sake / For ye wil not
byleue that swerd shal be youre destruction / and that is grete
pyte / with that the damoyfel departed makynge grete sorowe /
Anone after Balen sente for his hors and armour / and soo
25 wold departe fro the Courte and toke his leue of kyng Ar-
thur / nay sayd the kyng I suppose ye wyll not departe so li-
tely fro this felauship / I suppose ye are displeased that I ha-
ue shewed yow vnkyndenes / Blame me the lasse / for I was
mys fenformed ageynst yow / but I wende ye had not ben suche
30 a knyght as ye are of worship and prowesse / and yf ye wyll
abyde in this courte among my felauship / I shalle so auaun-
ce yow as ye shalle be pleased / god thanke your hyhenes said
Balen / your bounte and hyhenes may no man preysse half to
the valewe / but at this tyme I must nedes departe / bysechyng
35 yow alwey of your good grace / Truly said the kyng I am
ryght wrothe for your departyng / I pray yow faire knyghte /
that ye tary not long / and ye shal be ryght welcome to me / &
to my barons / and I shalle amende all myffe that I haue

done ageynst yow / god thanke your grete lordship said Balen / and therwith made hym redy to departe / Thenne the moost party of the knyghtes of the round table fayd that Balen did not this aventure al only by myghte but by wytchecraft

¶ Capitulum Tercium

THe meane whyle that this knyght was makyng hym 5
redy to departe / there came in to the Court a lady that
hyght the lady of the lake / And she came on horsback rychely
byfene / and falewed kynge Arthur / and there asked hym a
yefte that he promysed her whan she gaf hym the fwerd / that
is sothe said Arthur / a gyfte I promysed yow / but I haue 10
forgoten the name of my fwerd that ye gaue me / The name
of it said the lady is Excalibur that is as moche to say as cut
stele / ye faye wel said the kynge / Aske what ye wil and ye
shall haue it / and hit lye in my power to yeue hit / wel fayd
the lady / I aske the heede of the knyghte that hath wonne 15
the fwerd / or els the damoyfels heede that broughte hit / I
take no force though I haue bothe their hedes / for he slewe my
broder a good knyghte and a true / and that gentilwoman was
caufar of my faders deth / Truly said kynge Arthur I maye
not graunte neyther of her hedes with my worship / therfor af- 20
ke what ye wille els / and I shall fulfille your defyre / I wil
aske none other thyng said the lady / whan Balyn was redy
to departe he sawe the lady of the lake that by her menes had
slayne Balyns moder and he had foughte her thre yeres / and
whan it was told hym that she asked his hede of kynge Ar- 25
thur he went to her streyte and said euyl be you foude / ye wold
haue my hede / and therefore ye shall lese yours / and with hys
fwerd lyghtly he smote of hir hede before kynge Arthur / al-
las for shame fayd Arthur why haue ye done so / ye haue sha-
med me and al my Courte / for this was a lady that I was 30
be holden to / and hyther she came vnder my fauf conduyte / I
shalle neuer foryeue you that trespas / Sir said Balen me for-
thynketh of your displeasyr / for this same lady was the vn-
truest lady lyuyng / and by enchauntement and forffery she
hath ben the destroyer of many good knyghtes / and she was 35
caufer that my moder was brente thorow her falskede and tre-
chery / what cause soo euer ye had said Arthur ye shold haue

forborne her in my presence / therfor thynke not the contrary ye
 shalle repente it / for fuche another despyte had I neuer in my
 Courte / therfor withdrawe yow oute of my Courte in al haft
 that ye may / Thenne Balen toke vp the heed of the lady and
 5 bare it with hym to his hoftry / and there he met with his squy-
 er that was fory he had displeasyd kyng Arthur / and so they
 rode forth oute of the town / Now said Balen we must depar-
 te / take thow this hede and bere it to my frendys / and telle hem
 how I haue sped / and telle my frendys in Northumberland
 10 that my most foo is deed / Also telle hem how I am oute of pry-
 son / and what auēture befelle me at the getyng of this swerd
 Allas said the squyar ye are gretely to blame for to displease
 kyng Arthur / as for that said Balen I wylle hyhe me in al
 the haft that I may to mete with kynge Ryons and destroye
 15 hym eyther els or dye therfor / and yf it may happe me to wyn-
 ne hym / thenne wille kynge Arthur be my good and gracious
 lord / where shall I mete with yow saide the squyer / in kynge
 Arthurs Court said Balen / so his squyer and he departed
 at that tyme / thenne kynge Arthur and alle the Court made
 20 grete doole and had shame of the deth of the lady of the lake

Athenne the kyng buryed her rychely ¶ **Capitulum iiii**
 T that tyme ther was a knyghte / the whiche was the
 kynges sone of Ireland and his name was Launce-
 or / the whiche was an orgulous knyzt / and counted hym self
 25 one of the best of the Courte / and he had grete despyte at Ba-
 len for the encheuyng of the swerd that ony shold be acoun-
 ted more hardy or more of prowesse / and he asked kynge Ar-
 thur yf he wold gyue hym leue to ryde after Balen and to re-
 uenge the despyte that he had done / Doo your best said Arthur
 30 I am right wroth said Balen I wold he were quyte of the
 despyte that he hath done to me and to my Courte / Thenne this
 Launceor wente to his hoftry to make hym redy / In the meane
 whyle cam Merlyn vnto the Court of kyng Arthur and there
 was told hym the aduenture of the swerd and the deth of the
 35 lady of the lake / Now shall I saye yow said Merlyn / this sa-
 me damoyfel that here standeth that broughte the swerde vnto
 your Court / I shalle telle yow the cause of her comynge / she
 was the falsest damoyfel that lyueth / say not so said they / She

hath a broder a passyng good knyght of prowesse and a ful true man / and this damoyfel loued another knyght that helde her to peramour / and this good knyght her broder mett with the knyght that held her to peramour and flewe hym by force of his handes / whan this fals damoyfel vnderstood thys / she 5 wente to the lady lyle of Auelione / and befought her of help / to be auengyd on her owne broder

A ¶ Capítulum quintum

And so this lady lyle of Auelion toke her this swerd that she broughte with her / and told there shold noo man pulle it oute of the sheathe but yf he be one of the 10 best knyghtes of this reame / and he shold be hard and ful of prowesse / and with that swerd he shold flee her broder / this was the cause that the damoyfel came in to this Courte / I knowe it as wel as ye / wolde god she had nat comen in to thys Courte / but she came neuer in felauship of worship to do go- 15 od but alweyes grete harme / and that knyght that hath encheued the swerd shal be destroyed by that swerd / for the whiche wil be grete dommage / for ther lyueth not a knygt of more prowesse than he is / and he shalle do vnto yow my lord Arthur grete honour and kyndenesse / and it is grete pyte he shall not endure 20 but a whyle / for of his strengthe and hardynesse I knowe not his matche lyuynge / Soo the knyght of Irelande armed hym at al poyntes / and dresseid his shelde on his sholder and mounted vpon horsback and toke his spere in his hand / and rode after a grete paas as moche as his hors myght goo / and 25 within a lytel space on a montayne he had a fyghte of Balyn / and with a lowde voys he cryed abyde knyght / for ye shal abyde whether ye will or nyll / and the sheld that is to fore you shalle not helpe / whan Balyn herd the noyse / he tourned his hors fyerfly / and saide faire knyghte what wille ye with me / 30 wille ye Iuste with me / ye saide the Iryfhe knyghte / therfor come I after yow / parauenture saide Balyn it had ben better to haue hold yow at home / for many a man weneth to putte his enemy to a rebuke / and ofte it falleth to hym self / of what courte be ye sente fro saide Balyn / I am come fro the Courte of 35 kynge Arthur sayd the knyghte of Irlond / that come hyder for to reuenge the despyte ye dyd this day to kyng arthur

and to his courte / wel said Balyn / I fee wel I muſt haue
 adoo with yow that me forthynketh for to greue kyng arthur
 or ony of his courte / and your quarel is ful ſymple ſaid Ba-
 lyn vnto me / for the lady that is dede / dyd me grete domma-
 5 ge or els wold I haue ben lothe as ony knyghte that lyueth
 for to flee a lady / Make yow redy ſayd the knyght launceor /
 and dreſſe yow vnto me / for that one ſhalle abyde in the feld
 thenne they toke their ſperes / and cam to gyders as moche as
 their horſes myght dryue / and the Iryſſhe knyght ſmote Ba-
 10 lyn on the ſheld that alle wente ſheuers of his ſpere / & Ba-
 lyn hyt hym thorough the ſheld / and the hauberk peryſſhed / &
 ſo percyd thurgh his body and the hors crope / and anon tor-
 ned his hors fyrſly and drewe oute his ſwerd and wyſte
 not that he had ſlayn hym / and thenne he ſawe hym lye as a
 15 dede corps

¶ Capitulum vi

T Henne he loked by hym and was ware of a damoyſel
 that came ryde ful faſt as the hors myghte ryde on a
 fayr palfroy / and whan ſhe aſpyed that launceor was
 ſlayne / ſhe made forowe oute of meſure and ſayd O Balyn
 20 two bodyes thou haſt ſlayne and one herte and two hertes in
 one body / and two foules thou haſt loſt / And therwith ſhe toke
 the ſwerd from her loue that lay ded and fylle to the ground
 in a ſwowne / And whan ſhe aroos ſhe made grete dole out of
 meſure / the whiche forowe greued Balyn paſſyngly fore / and
 25 he wente vnto her for to haue taken the ſwerd oute of her hād
 but ſhe helde it ſo faſt / he myghte not take it oute of her hand
 onles he ſhold haue hurte her / and ſodenly ſhe fette the pomell
 to the ground / and roſe her ſelf thorow the body / whan balyn
 aſpyed her dedes he was paſſynge heuy in his herte and aſha-
 30 med that ſo fair a damoyſell had deſtroyed her ſelf for the loue
 of his deth / Allas ſaid Balyn me repēteth fore the deth of this
 knyght for the loue of this damoyſel / for ther was moche true
 loue betwixe them bothe / and for forowe myght not lenger be-
 hold hym but torned his hors and loked toward a grete foreſt
 35 and ther he was ware by the armes of his broder Balan / and
 whan they were mette they putte of her helmes and kyſſed to
 gyders and wepte for ioye and pyte / Thenne Balan ſayd / I

lytel wende to haue met with yow at this fodayne auenture / I
 am ryght glad of your delyueraunce and of youre dolorous
 pryfonement / for a mā told me in the castel of four stones that
 ye were delyuerd / & that man had fene you in the court of ky-
 nge Arthur / & therfor I cam hyder in to this countrey / for he 5
 re I supposed to fynde you / anon the knyzt balyn told his bro-
 der of his aduenture of the fwerd & of the deth of the lady of
 the lake / & how kyng arthur was displeafyd with hym wher-
 for he sente this knyzt after me that lyeth here dede / & the dethe
 of this damoyfel greueth me fore / so doth it me faid Balan / but 10
 ye must take the aduenture that god will ordeyne yow / Tru-
 ly faid Balyn I am ryght heuy that my lord Arthur is dis-
 pleafyd with me / for he is the moost worshipful knyght that
 regneth now on erthe / & his loue will I gete or els I wil put
 my lyf in auenture / for the kyng Ryons lyeth at a fyege atte 15
 castel Tarabil & thyder will we drawe in all haft to preue our
 worship & prowesse vpon hym / I wil wel faid Balan that we
 do & we wil helpe eche other as bretheren ouzt to do / ¶ **Ca vij**

N Ow go we hens faid balyn & wel be we met / the me-
 ne whyle as they talked ther cam a dwarf from the cy- 20
 te of camelot on horfbak as moche as he myght & foud
 the dede bodyes / wherfor he made grete dole & pulled out his he-
 re for sorou & faide which of you knyztēs haue done this dede /
 where by askest thou it faid balan / for I wold wete it faid the
 dwarfe / it was I faid balyn that flewe this knyght in my de- 25
 fendaūt for hyder he cam to chaace me & other I must flee hym
 or he me / & this damoyfel flewe her self for his loue whiche re-
 penteth me / & for her sake I shal owe al wymmen the better lo-
 ue / Allas faid the dwarf thow haft done grete dommage vnto
 thy self / for this knyght that is here dede was one of the most 30
 valyaunts men that lyued / and trust wel balyn the kynne of
 this knyght wille chace yow thorowe the world tyl they haue
 slayne yow / As for that sayd Balyn I fere not gretely / but
 I am ryght heuy that I haue displeafyd my lord kyng ar-
 thur for the deth of this knyght / Soo as they talked to gy- 35
 ders there came a kynge of Cornewaille rydyng / the whiche
 hyghte kynge Mark / ¶ And whanne he sawe these two body-
 es dede and vnderstood hou they were dede by the ij knyghtes

about faide / thenne maade the kynge grete forowe for the true
 loue that was betwix them / & said I wil not departe tyl I haue
 on this erthe made a tombe / and there he pyght his paelions
 and foughte thurgh alle the countrey to fynde a tombe / and in
 5 a chirche they found one was fair and ryche / & thenne the ky-
 nge lete put hem bothe in the erthe & put the tombe vpon hem /
 and wrote the names of them bothe on the tombe / How here ly-
 eth launceor the kynges sone of Irlond that at his owne re-
 quest was slayne by the handes of balyn / & how his lady co-
 10 lombe and peramoure slewe her self with her loues swerd for
 dole and forowe

¶ Capitulum viij

THe mene whyle as this was a doying / in cam merlyn
 to kyng mark seyng alle his doynge said / Here shalle
 be in this fame place the grettest bataille betwixt two
 15 knyghtes that was or euer shal be / and the truest louers / and
 yet none of hem shalle flee other / and there Merlyn wrote her
 names vpon the tombe with letters of gold that shold fyghte
 in that place / whos names were Launcelot de lake / and Tryf-
 tram / thow art a merueillous man faide kynge Marke vnto
 20 Merlyn that spekest of fuche merueilles / thou art a boyfous
 man and an vnlykely to telle of fuche dedes / what is thy na-
 me said kynge Marke / at this tyme said Merlyn I will not
 telle / but at that tyme whan syr Trystram is taken with his
 fouerayne lady / thenne ye shalle here and knowe my name / &
 25 at that tyme ye shal here tydynges that shal not please yow /
 Thenne said merlyn to balyn thou hast done thy self grete hurt
 by cause that thou fauest not this lady that slewe her self that
 myght haue faued her & thow woldest / by the feyth of my body
 fayd balyn I myght not faue her for she slewe her self sodenly
 30 Me repenteth faide Merlyn by cause of the dethe of that lady
 thou shalt stryke a stroke most dolorous that euer man stroke
 excepte the stroke of oure lorde / for thou shalt hurte the truest
 knyzt & the man of most worship that now lyueth / & thorow
 that stroke iij kyngdoms shal be in grete pouerte mysere & wret-
 35 chidnes xij yere / & the knyzt shal not be hool of that woūd ma-
 ny yeres / thēne merlyn toke his leue of balyn & balen said yf
 I wist it were soth that ye say I shold do fuche peryllous dede
 as that I wold flee my self to make the a lyar / therwith merlyn

vanysshed away sodenly / and thenne balyn and his broder to-
 ke her leue of kyng Mark / fyrst said the kyng telle me yo-
 ur name / fyr said Balen ye may see he bereth two swardes ther
 by ye may calle hym the knyght with the two swardes & soo
 departed kyng marke vnto camelot to kyng Arthur & balyn 5
 toke the way toward kyng Ryons / and as they rode to gyder
 they mett with Merlyn desguysed / but they knewe hym not /
 whyder ryde yow said Merlyn / we haue lytel to do saide the ij
 knyghtes to telle the / but what is thy name said Balen at this
 tyme said Merlyn I will not telle it the / it is euyl sene said 10
 the knyghtes that thou art a true man that thou wolt not tel-
 le thy name / as for that sayd Merlyn / be hit / as it be may I
 can telle yow wherfor ye ryde this way for to mete kyng Ry-
 ons but it will not auaille you without ye haue my counceill
 A said Balyn ye are Merlyn we wyl be rulyd by your cou- 15
 ceill / come on said Merlyn ye shal haue grete worship & loke
 that ye do knyghtely for ye shal haue grete nede / as for that sa-
 id Balen drede yow not we will do what we may /

¶ Capitulum ix

T Henne Merlyn lodged them in a wode amonge leuys
 besyde the hyhe way & toke of the brydels of their hor- 20
 ses & put hem to gras & leid hem down to reste hem tyll
 it was nyhe mydnyzt / Thenne Merlyn badde hem ryse / & make
 hem redy / for the the kyng was nygh them that was stolen a-
 way from his hooft with a iij score horses of his best knyghtes &
 xx of hem rode to fore to warne the lady de Vance that the ky- 25
 ng was comyng / for that nyzt kyng Ryons shold haue layn
 with her / whiche is the kyng said Balyn / abyde said Merlyn
 here in a streyte way ye shal mete with hym & therwith he she-
 wed Balyn & his broder where he rode / anon balyn & his bro-
 der mette with the kyng & smote hym doune & wounded hym 30
 fyrstly & leid hym to the ground / & there they slewe on the ry-
 ght hand & the lyfte hand & slewe moo than xl of his men / &
 the remenaunt fled / thenne went they ageyne to kyng Ryons
 & wold haue slayn hym had he not yelded hym vnto her grace
 Thenne said he thus knyghtes ful of prowesse flee me not / for 35
 by my lyf ye may wyne / & by my dethe ye shalle wyne noo
 thyng / Thenne sayd these two knyghtes ye say sothe & trouth

and fo leyð hym on on hors lyttar / with that Merlyn was
 vanyfshed and came to kyng Arthur afore hand & told hym
 how his moft enemy was taken and difcomfyted / by whome
 faid kyng Arthur / by two knyghtes faid Merlyn that wold
 5 pleafe your lordſhip / and to morowe ye ſhalle knowe what
 knyghtes they are / Anone after cam the knyght with the two
 fwerdes and balan his broder / and brought with hem kyng
 Ryons of Northwalys and there delyuerd hym to the porters
 and charged hem with hym / & ſoo they two retorned ageyne
 10 in the daunying of the day / kyng Arthur cam thenne to kyng
 Ryons and faid Syr kyng ye are welcome / by what auen-
 ture come ye hyder / fyr faid kyng Ryons I cam hyther by an
 hard auenture / who wanne yow faid kyng Arthur / fyre faid
 the kyng the knyght with the two fwerdes & his broder whi-
 15 che are two merueillous knyghtes of prowefſe / I knowe hem
 not ſayd arthur but moche I am beholden to them / A faid mer-
 lyn I ſhal telle yow it is balen that encheued the fwerd & his
 broder balan a good knyght / ther lyueth not a better of pro-
 weſſe & of worthyneſſe / and it ſhal be the gretteſt dole of hym
 20 that euer I knewe of knyght / for he ſhalle not long endure /
 Allas faide kyng Arthur that is grete pyte for I am moche
 beholdyng vnto hym / & I haue yll deſerued it vnto hym for his
 kyndenes / nay faid Merlyn he ſhal do moche more for yow /
 and that ſhal ye knowe in haſt / but fyr are ye purueyed faid
 25 Merlyn for to morne the hooſte of Nero kyng Ryons broder
 wille ſette on yow or none with a grete hooſt and therfor ma-
 ke yow redy for I wyl departe from yow

¶ Capitulum x

THenne kyng Arthur made redy his hooſt in x batails
 and Nero was redy in the felde afore the caſtel Ta-
 30 rabil with a grete hooſt / & he had x batails with many mo pe-
 ple than Arthur had / Thenne Nero had the vaward with the
 mooſt party of his peple / & merlyn cam to kyng lot of the yle
 of Orkeney / and helde hym with a tale of prophecye til Nero
 and his peple were deſtroyed / & ther fyr kay the ſencyal dyd
 35 paſſyngly wel that the dayes of his lyf the worſhip went ne-
 uer frō hym & ſir heruys de reuel did merueillous dedes with

with kyng Arthur / and kyng Arthur slewe that daye xx
 knyghtes & maymed xl / At that tyme cam in the knyghte with
 the two fwerdys and his broder Balan / But they two did
 so merueillously that the kyng and alle the knyghtes mer-
 ueilled of them / and alle they that behelde them said they we- 5
 re sente from heuen as aungels or deuyls from helle / & kyng
 Arthur said hym self they were the best knyghtes that euer he
 sawe / for they gaf suche strokes that all men had wonder of hem
 In the meane whyle came one to kyng Lott and told hym /
 whyle he taryed there nero was destroyed and slayne with al 10
 his peple / Allas sayd kyng Lot I am ashamed / for by my
 defeaute ther is many a worshipful man slayne / for and we
 had ben to gyders there hadde ben none hooft vnder the heuen
 that had ben abel for to haue matched with vs / This fayter
 with his prophecie hath mocked me / Al that dyd Merlyn for 15
 he knewe wel that and kyng Lot had ben with his body there
 at the fyrst bataille / kyng Arthur had be slayne / and alle his
 peple destroyed / & wel Merlyn knewe the one of the kynges
 shold be dede that day / & loth was Merlyn that one of them both
 sholde be slayne / But of the twayne / he had leuer kyng Lotte 20
 had be slayne than kyng Arthur / Now what is best to doo
 sayd kyng Lot of Orkeney whether is me better to treate with
 kyng Arthur or to fyghte / for the gretter party of oure pe-
 ple are slayne / and destroyed / Syr said a knyght set on arthur
 for they are wery and forfoughten and we be fresshe / As for 25
 me sayd kyng Lot I wolde euery knyght wolde do his parte
 as I wold do myn / And thenne they auanced baners and
 smoten to gyders and al to sheuered their speres / and arthurs
 knyghtes with the helpe of the knyght with two fwerdes &
 his broder balan put kyng lot & his hooft to the werre / But 30
 alweyes kyng Lot helde hym in the foremost frunte & dyd mer-
 ueillous dedes of armes / for alle his hooft was borne vp by
 his handes for he abode al knyghtes / allas he myght not endu-
 re the whiche was grete pyte that so worthy a knyght as he was
 one shold be ouermatched that of late tyme afore hadde ben a 35
 knyght of kyng Arthurs & wedded the syster of kyng arthur
 & for kyng Arthur lay by kyng lots wyf the whiche was ar-
 thurs syster & gat on her Mordred / therfor kyng lot held ayest

Arthur / So ther was a knyght that was called the knyghte
 with the straunge beeste / and at that tyme his ryght name
 was called Pellinore / the whiche was a good man of pro-
 wesse / and he smote a myghty stroke att kyng Lot as he fo-
 5 ught with all his enemyes / and he fayled of his stroke / and
 smote the hors neck that he fylle to the grounde with kyng lot
 And therwith anon Pellinore smote hym a grete stroke tho-
 row the helme & hede vnto the browes & thenne alle the hoofte
 of Orkeney fled for the deth of kyng Lot / and there were
 10 slayn many moders fones / But kyng Pellinore bare the wy-
 tte of the deth of kyng Lot / wherfore fyr Gawayne reuenged
 the deth of his fader the x yere after he was made knyght and
 slewe kyng Pellinore with his owne handes / Also there we-
 re slayne at that bataille xij kynges on the fyde of kyng Lot
 15 with Nero / and alle were buried in the chirche of faynt Ste-
 uyns in Camelot / and the remenaunt of knyghtes and of o-
 ther were buried in a grete roche

¶ Capitulum xj

SO at the enterement cam kyng Lots wyf Morgause
 with her foure fones Gawayne / Agrauayne / Gaherys
 20 and Gareth / Also ther came thyder kyng Vryens fyr
 Ewayns fader and Morgan le fay his wyf that was kyng
 Arthurs fyfter / Alle these cam to the enterement / but of alle
 these xij kynges kyng Arthur lete make the tombe of kyng
 Lot passyng rychely / and made his tombe by his owne / and
 25 thenne Arthur lete make xij ymages of laton and couper / &
 ouer gylt hit with gold in the fygne of xij kynges / & echon
 of hem helde a tapyr of wax that brent day and nyzt / & kyng
 Arthur was made in fygne of a fygure standynge aboue hem
 with a swerd drawen in his hand / and alle the xij fygures had
 30 countenaunce lyke vnto men that were ouercome / All this ma-
 de Merlyn by his subtyl crafte and ther he told the kyng whā
 I am dede / these tapers shalle brenne no lenger / and soone af-
 ter the aduentures of the Sangrayll shalle come among yow
 and be encheued / Also he told Arthur how Balyn the wor-
 35 shipful knyght shal gyue the dolourous stroke / wherof shalle
 falle grete vengeance / O where is Balen & Balan & Pelli-
 nore saide kyng Arthur / as for Pellinore sayd Merlyn / he
 wyl mete with yow soone /

¶ And as for Balyn

he wille not be longe from yow / but the other broder wil departe ye shalle see hym no more / By my feyth said Arthur they are two merueyllous knyghtes / and namely Balyn passeth of prowesse of ony knyghte that euer I found / for moche be holden I am vnto hym / wold god he wold abyde with me / 5
 Syr sayd Merlyn loke ye kepe wel the scaubard of Excalibur / for ye shalle lese no blood whyle ye haue the scauberd vpon yow though ye haue as many woundes vpon yow as ye may haue / Soo after for grete trust Arthur betoke the scauberd to Morgan le fay his syster / and she loued another knyght better than her husband kyng Vryens or kyng Arthur And she wold haue had Arthur her broder slayne / And ther for she lete make another scauberd lyke it by enchauntement and gaf the scauberd Excalibur to her loue / and the knyghtes name was called Accolon that after had nere slayne kyng arthur / After this Merlyn told vnto kyng Arthur of the prophycy / that there shold be a grete batail besyde Salysbury and Mordred his owne sone sholde be ageynste hym / Also he tolde hym that Basdemegus was his cosyn and germayn vnto kyng Vryence

¶ Capitulum xij. 20

WYthin a daye or two kyng Arthur was somewhat feke / and he lete pytche his paelione in a medowe / & there he leyd hym doune on a paylet to slepe / but he myght haue no rest / Ryght so he herd a grete noyse of an hors and therwith the kyng loked oute at the porche of the paelione / 25
 and sawe a knyght comynge euen by hym makynge grete dole Abyde fair syr said Arthur / & telle me wherfor thou makest this sorowe / ye maye lytel amend me said the knyghte and soo passed forthe to the castel of Melyot / Anone after ther cam balen / and whan he sawe kyng Arthur / he alyght of his hors / 30
 and cam to the kyng on foote / and salewed hym / by my hede saide Arthur ye be welcome / Sire ryght now cam rydynge this way a knyght makynge grete moorne / for what cause I can not telle / wherfor I wold desyre of yow of your curtosye and of your gentylnesse to fetch ageyne that knyght / eyther 35
 by force or els by his good wil / I wil do more for your lordship than that said balyn / and so he rode more than a paas and found the knyght with a damoyfel in a forest & said sir knyzt

ye must come with me vnto kynge Arthur for to telle hym of
 your forow / that wille I not / sayd the knyghte / for hit wylle
 scathe me gretely / and now do yow none auaylle / fyr sayd Balyn
 I pray yow make yow redy for ye must goo with me / or els
 5 I must fyghte with yow and brynge yow by force / and that
 were me loth to doo / wylle ye be my waraunt said the knyght
 and I goo with yow / ye faide Balyn or els I wylle deye
 therfore / And so he made hym redy to go with Balyn / and
 lefte the damoyfel styll / And as they were euen afore kynge
 10 Arthurs paulione / there came one inuyfybel and smote thys
 knyghte that wente with Balyn thorow oute the body wyth
 a spere / Allas sayd the knyght I am slayne vnder youre cō-
 duyt with a knyght called Garlon / therfor take my hors that
 is better than yours and ryde to the damoyfel and folowe the
 15 quest that I was in / as she wylle lede yow and reuenge my
 deth whan ye may / That shalle I doo sayd Balyn / and that
 I make vowe vnto knyghthode / and so he departed from thys
 knyghte with grete forowe / Soo kyng Arthur lete berye thys
 knyght rychely / and made a mensyon on his tombe / how there
 20 was slayne Herlews le berbeus / and by whome the trechery
 was done the knyght garlon / But euer the damoyfel bare the
 truncheon of the spere with her that fyr Harlews was sla-
 yn with al

¶ Capitulum xiiij

SO Balyn and the damoyfel rode in to a forest / & ther
 25 met with a knyght that had ben on huntynge / and
 that knyght asked Balyn for what cause he made so grete so-
 rowe / me lyft not to telle yow faide Balyn / Now faide the
 knyghte and I were armed as ye be I wolde fyghte wyth
 yow / that shold lytel nede sayd Balyn / I am not aferd to
 30 telle yow / and told hym alle the cause how it was A sayd the
 knyght is this al / Here I ensure yow by the feithe of my bo-
 dy neuer to departe from yow whyle my lyf lasteth / & soo they
 wente to the hoftry and armed hem / and so rode forth with ba-
 lyn / And as they came by an heremytage euen by a Chyrche
 35 yerd / ther cam the knyghte garlon inuyfybel and smote thys
 knyghte Peryn de mountebeliard thurgh the body with a spe-
 re / Allas faide the knyghte I am slayne by this traytoure

knyghte that rydeth Inuyfible / Allas faid balyn it is not the
 fyrst despyte he hath done me / and there the heremyte and Ba-
 lyn beryed the knyght vnder a ryche stone and a tombe royal
 And on the morne they fond letters of gold wryten / how
 fyr Gaweyn shalle reuenge his faders deth kynge Lot / on the 5
 kynge Pellinore / Anone after this balyn and the damoyfel
 rode tyl they came to a castel and there balyn alyghte / and he
 and the damoyfel wende to goo in to the castel / and anone as
 balyn came within the castels yate the portecolys fylle doune
 at his bak / and there felle many men about the damoyfel / and 10
 wold haue slayne her / whan balyn sawe that / he was fore a-
 greued / for he myghte not helpe the damoyfel / thanne he
 wente vp in to the toure and lepte ouer wallys in to the
 dyche / and hurte hym not / and anone he pulled oute his fuerd
 and wold haue fouzten with hem / and they all sayd nay they 15
 wold not fyghte with hym / for they dyd no thyng but thold
 custome of the castel / and told hym how her lady was feke / &
 had layne many yeres / and she myghte not be hole but yf she
 had a dyffhe of fyluer ful of blood of a clene mayde & a kyn-
 ges doughter / and therfore the custome of this castel is / there 20
 shalle no damoyfel passe this way but she shal blede of her blo-
 od in a fyluer dyffhe ful / wel faid Balyn she shal blede as mo-
 che as she may blede / but I wille not lese the lyf of her why-
 les my lyf lasteth / & soo balyn made her to blede by her good
 will / but her blood halpe not the lady / and so he & she rested 25
 there al nyght / & had there ryght good chere / and on the morn
 they passed on their wayes / And as it telleth after in the fan-
 graylle that fyre Percyualis syster halpe that lady with her
 blood wherof she was dede

¶ Capitulum xiiij

THenne they rode thre or foure dayes and neuer mette 30
 with aduenture / and by happe they were lodged with
 a gentyll man that was a ryche man and well at ease / And
 as they sat at her fouper balyn herd ouer complayne greuouf-
 ly by hym in a chayer / what is this noyse faid balen / forsothe
 faid his hoost I wylle telle yow / I was but late att a Iust- 35
 ynge / and there I Iusted with a knyghte that is broder vn-
 to kynge Pellam / and twyes fmote I hym doune / & thenne

he promysed to quyte me on my best frynde / and so he wound-
 ded my sone that can not be hole tyll I haue of that knyghtes
 blood / and he rydeth alwey Inuyfyble / but I knowe not his
 name / A sayd Balyn / I knowe that knyght / his name is
 5 Garlon / he hath slayne two knyghtes of myn in the same ma-
 ner / therfor I had leuer mete with that knyght than alle the
 gold in this realme / for the despyte he hath done me / wel said
 his oofte I shalle telle yow kynge Pellam of lyftyneyse hath
 made do crye in all this countrey a grete feest that shal be with-
 10 in these xx dayes / & no knyght may come ther but yf he bryn-
 ge his wyf wyth hym / or his peramour / & that knyghte youre e-
 nemy and myn ye shalle see that daye / Thenne I behote yow
 sayd Balyn parte of his blood to hele youre sone with alle /
 we wille be forward to morne sayd his ooft / So on the morne
 15 they rode all thre toward Pellam / and they had xv dayes Io-
 urney or they cam thyder / and that same day began the greete
 feest / and soo they alyght and stabled theyr horses / and went
 in to the Castel / but balyns ooft myght not be lete in by cause
 he had no lady / thenne Balyn was wel receyued & brought
 20 vnto a chamber and vnarmed hym / and there were brought
 hym robes to his pleasyr / and wold haue had Balen leue
 his sward behynde hym / Nay sayd Balen that doo I not for
 it is the customme of my Countrey a knyghte alweyes to ke-
 pe his wepen with hym and that customme wylle I kepe / or
 25 els I wyll departe as I cam / thenne they gaf hym leue to we-
 re his sward / and so he wente vnto the castel / and was sette
 amonge knyghtes of worship and his lady afore hym / Soo-
 ne balyn asked a knyght / is ther not a knyghte in this court
 whos name is Garlon / yonder he goth sayd a knyght / he with
 30 the blak face / he is the merueyllest knyght that is now lyuyng
 for he destroyeth many good knyghtes / for he goth Inuyfyble
 A wel said Balen is that he / thēne balyn auysed hym long
 yf I flee hym here I shall not scape / And yf I leue hym now
 perauentur I shalle neuer mete with hym ageyne at suche a
 35 steuen / and moche harme he wille doo and he lyue / Ther with
 this Garlon aspyed that this Balen behelde hym / and then-
 ne he came and smote Balyn on the face with the bak of his
 hand / and sayd knyght why beholdest thou me so for shame

therfor ete thy mete and doo that thou cam for / Thow sayst fo-
the said Balyn / this is not the fyrst despyte that thou hast do-
ne me / and therfor I will doo that I cam for and rose vp fy-
erfly and claue his hede to the sholders / gyue me the truncheon
sayd Balyn to his lady where with he slewe your knyghte / 5
anone she gaf it hym / for alwey she bare the troncheon with her
And therwith Balyn smote hym thurgh the body / and sayd
openly with that truncheon thou hast slayn a good knyghte /
and now it stycketh in thy body / And thenne Balyn called
vnto hym his hooft / sayenge / now may ye fetch blood ynough 10
to hele your sone with all /

Capitulum xv

NNone all the knyghtes aroos from the tabyl for to fet
on Balyn / and kyng Pellam hym self aroos vp fy-
erfly / & sayd knyzt hast thou slayn my broder / thou
shalt dye therfor or thou departe / wel said balen do it your self 15
yis sayde kyng pellā / ther shall no mā haue ado with the / but
my self for the loue of my broder / Thenne kyng Pellam cauzt
in his hand a grym wepen and smote egrely at balyn / but ba-
lyn put his swerd betwixe his hede and the stroke / and ther-
with his swerd breft in sonder / And whan balyn was wepen- 20
les he ranne in to a chamber for to seke somme wepen / and soo
fro chamber to chamber / and no wepen he coude fynde / and al-
weyes kyng Pellam after hym / And at the last he entryd
in to a chambyr that was merueillously wel dyzte and ryche-
ly / and a bedde arayed with clothe of gold the rycheft that my- 25
ghte be thought / and one lyenge theryn / and therby stode a
table of clene gold with four pelours of fyluer / that bare vp
the table / and vpon the table stood a merueillous spere straun-
gely wrought / And whan balyn sawe that spere / he gat it in
his hand and torned hym to kyng Pellam / and smote hym 30
passyngly fore with that spere that kyng Pellam felle doune
in a swoune / and therwith the castel roofe and wallys brake
and fylle to the erthe / and balyn felle doune so that he myghte
not stere foote nor hand / And so the moost parte of the castel
that was falle doune thorough that dolorous stroke laye vpon 35
Pellam and balyn thre dayes

¶ Capitulum xvi

THenne Merlyn cam thyder and toke vp Balyn and
gat hym a good hors for his was dede / and bad hym
ryde oute of that countrey / I wold haue my damoyfel
fayd balyn / Loo sayd Merlyn where she lyeth dede & kynge
5 Pellam lay so many yeres fore wounded / and myght neuer
be hole tyl Galahad / the haute prynce heled hym in the quest of
the Sangraille / for in that place was part of the blood of our
lord Ihesu cryst that Ioseph of Armathe broughte in to this
lond / and ther hym self lay in that ryche bed / And that was
10 the same spere that Longeus smote oure lorde to the herte / and
kynge Pellam was nyghe of Ioseph kynne / and that was
the moost worshipful man that lyued in tho dayes / and gre-
te pyte it was of his hurte / for thorow that stroke torned to
grete dole tray and tene / Thenne departed Balyn from Mer-
15 lyn and sayd in this world we mete neuer nomore / Soo
he rode forth thorowe the fayr countreyes and Cytees & fond
the peple dede slayne on euery fyde / and alle that were on ly-
ue cryed O balyn thow hast caused grete dommage in these cō-
trayes for the dolorous stroke thow gauest vnto kynge Pellā
20 thre countreyes are destroyed / and doubte not but the vengeaun-
ce wil falle on the at the last / whanne Balyn was past tho
contrayes he was passyng fayne / so he rode eyzt dayes or he met
with auenture / And at the last he came in to a fayr forest in
a valey and was ware of a Toure / And there besyde he fawe
25 a grete hors of werre tayed to a tree / and ther besyde satte a
fayr knyght on the ground and made grete mornynge and he
was a lykely man and a wel made / Balyn sayd God faue
yow why be ye so heuy / telle me and I wylle amende it and
I may to my power / Syr knyghte said he ageyne thow doest
30 me grete gryef / for I was in mery thoughtes and now thou
puttest me to more payne / Balyn wente a lytel from hym / &
loked on his hors / thenne herd Balyn hym saye thus / a fair
lady why haue ye broken my promyse / for thow promysed me
to mete me here by none / and I maye curse the that euer ye
35 gaf me this sward / for with this sward I flee my self / and
pulled it oute / and therwith Balyn sterte vnto hym & took
hym by the hand / lete goo my hand sayd the knyght or els I
shal flee the / that shal not nede said balyn / for I shal promyse

yow my helpe to gete yow your lady / and ye wille telle me
 where she is / what is your name sayd the knyght / myn name
 is Balyn le faueage / A fyr I knowe yow wel ynough ye
 are the knyght with the two fwerdys and the man of moost
 prowesse of your handes lyuyng / what is your name sayd ba- 5
 len / my name is garnyshe of the mount a poure mans sone /
 But by my prowesse and hardynesse a duke hath maade me
 knyght / and gaf me landes / his name is duke Hermel / and
 his doughter is she that I loue and she me as I demed / hou
 fer is she hens sayd Balyn / but xj myle said the knyghte 10
 Now ryde we hens sayde these two knyghtes / so they rode mo-
 re than a paas tyll that they cam to a fayr castel wel wallyd
 and dyched / I wylle in to the castel sayd Balen / and loke
 yf she be ther / Soo he wente in and ferched fro chamber to chā-
 bir / and fond her bedde but she was not there / Thenne Balen 15
 loked in to a fayr lital gardyn / and vnder a laurel tre he sawe
 her lye vpon a quylt of grene famyte and a knyght in her ar-
 mes fast halfynge eyther other and vnder their hedes graffe &
 herbes / whan Balen sawe her lye so with the fowlest knyghte
 that euer he sawe and she a fair lady / thenne Balyn wente 20
 thurgh alle the chambers ageyne and told the knyghte how
 he fond her as she had slepte fast / and so brought hym in the
 place there she lay fast slepyng

¶ Capítulum xviij

ANd whan Garnyshe beheld hir so lyeng for pure forou
 his mouth and nose braft oute on bledynge and with 25
 his fwerd he smote of bothe their hedes / and thenne he maade
 forowe oute of mesure and sayd O Balyn / Moche sorow haft
 thou brought vnto me / for haddeft thou not shewed me that
 fyght I shold haue passed my sorow / forsoth said balyn I did
 it to this entent that it sholde better thy courage / and that ye 30
 myght see and knowe her falskede / and to cause yow to leue
 loue of suche a lady / god knoweth I dyd none other but as
 I wold ye dyd to me / Allas said garnyshe now is my forou
 doubel that I may not endure / Now haue I slayne that I
 moost loued in al my lyf / and therwith sodenly he roofe hym 35
 self on his own fwerd vnto the hyltys / when balen sawe that

he dresseid hym thens ward / left folke wold say he had slayne
 them / and so he rode forth / and within thre dayes he cam by a
 croffe / & theron were letters of gold wrytē that said / it is not
 for no knyght alone to ryde toward this Castel / thēne sawe he
 5 an old hore gentylman comyng toward hym that sayd Ba-
 lyn le Saueage thow passyft thy bandes to come this waye /
 therfor torne ageyne and it will auaille the / and he vanysshed
 away anone / and soo he herd an horne blowe as it had ben the
 dethe of a best / That blast said Balyn is blowen for me / For
 10 I am the pryse and yet am I not dede / anone with al he sa-
 we an hondred ladyes and many knyghtes that welcommed
 hym with fayr semblaunt and made hym passyng good chere /
 vnto his fyght and ledde hym in to the castel / and ther was
 daunfynge and mynstralsye and alle maner of Ioye / Then-
 15 ne the chyef lady of the castel said / knyghte with the two fuer-
 dys ye must haue adoo and Iuste with a knyght hereby that
 kepeth an Iland / for ther may no man passe this way but he
 must Iuste or he passe / that is an vnhappy customme said Ba-
 lyn that a knyght may not passe this wey / but yf he Iuste / ye
 20 shalle not haue adoo but with one knyghte sayd the lady /
 Wel sayd Balyn syn I shalle therto I am redy but traueil-
 lyng men are ofte wery and their horses to / but though my
 hors be wery / my hert is not wery / I wold be fayne ther my
 deth shold be / Syr said a knyght to Balyn / me thynketh your
 25 sheld is not good / I wille lene yew a byggar / therof I pray
 yow / and so he tooke the sheld that was vnknownen and lefte
 his owne and so rode vnto the Iland / and put hym and his
 hors in a grete boote / and whan he came on the other syde / he
 met with a damoyfel / and she said / O knyght balyn why haue
 30 ye lefte your owne sheld / allas ye haue put your self in grete
 daunger / for by your sheld ye shold haue ben knownen / it is gre-
 te pyte of yow as euer was of knyght / for of thy prowesse &
 hardynes thou hast no felawe lyuyng / Me repenteth said ba-
 lyn that euer I cam within this Countrey / but I maye not
 35 torne now ageyne for shame and what auenture shalle falle
 to me be it lyf or dethe I wille take the aduenture that shalle
 come to me & / thenne he loked on his armour / & vnderstood he
 was wel armed / and therwith bleffid hym and mounted

vpon his hors

¶ Capitulum xviii

THenne afore hym he sawe come rydyng oute of a castel a knyght and his hors trapped all reed and hym self in the same colour / whan this knyghte in the reed beheld Balyn hym thought it shold bee his broder Balen by 5
cause of his two swerdys / but by cause he knewe not his sheld he demed it was not he / And so they auentryd theyr speres & came merueillously fast to gyders / and they smote other in the sheldes / but theire speres and theire cours were soo bygge that it bare doune hors & man that they lay bothe in a swoun 10
But balyn was bryfed fore with the falle of his hors / for he was very of trauaille / And Balan was the fyrst that rose on foote and drewe his swerd and wente toward Balyn / and he aroos and wente ageynst hym / But balan smote balyn fyrste / and he put vp his shelde and smote hym thorow 15
the shelde and tamed his helme / thenne Balyn smote hym ageyne with that vnhappy swerd and wel nyghe had fellyd his broder Balan / and so they fought ther to gyders tyl theyr brethes faylled / thenne Balyn loked vp to the castel and sawe the Towres stand ful of ladyes / Soo they went vnto 20
bataille ageyne and wounded eueryche other dolefully / and thenne they brethed oftymes / and so wente vnto bataille that alle the place there as they fought was blood reed / And att that tyme ther was none of them bothe but they hadde eyther smyten other feuen grete woundes so that the lest of them myzt 25
haue ben the dethe of the myghtyest gyaunt in this world / Thenne they wente to batail ageyn so merueillously that doute it was to here of that bataille for the grete blood shedyng
And their hawberkes vnnailed that naked they were on euery fyde / Atte last balan the yonger broder withdrewe hym a 30
lytel & leid hym doune / Thenne said balyn le Sauage what knyghte arte thou / for or now I found neuer no knyzt that matched me / my name is said he balan broder vnto the good knyght balyn / Allas sayd balyn that euer I shold see this day / and therwith he felle backward in a swoun / Thenne ba- 35
lan yede on al four feet and handes and put of the helme of his broder and myght not knowe hym by the vyfage / it was so ful hewen and bledde / but whan he awoke he sayd O balan

my broder thow hast slayne me and I the / wherefore alle the
 wyde world shalle speke of vs bothe / ¶ Allas sayd Balan
 that euer I sawe this day that thorow myshap I myght not
 knowe yow / for I aspyed wel your two swerdys / but by cau-
 5 fe ye had another shild I demed ye had ben another knygt
 Allas saide Balyn all that maade an vnhappy knyght in the
 castel / for he caused me to leue myn owne shelde to our bothes
 destruction / and yf I myzt lyue I wold destroye that castel
 for ylle customes / that were wel done said Balan / For I
 10 had neuer grace to departe fro hem syn that I cam hyther / for
 here it happed me to flee a knyght that kepte this Iland / &
 syn myght I neuer departe / and nomore shold ye broder & ye
 myght haue slayne me as ye haue and escaped your self with
 the lyf / Ryght so cam the lady of the Toure with iiij knygh-
 15 tes and vj ladyes and vj yomen vnto them and there she herd
 how they made her mone eyther to other and sayd we came
 bothe oute of one tombe that is to say one moders bely / And
 so shalle we lye bothe in one pytte / So Balan prayd the lady
 of her gentylneffe for his true seruyse / that she wold burye
 20 them bothe in that same place there the bataille was done / and
 she graunted hem with wepyng it shold be done rychely in the
 best maner / Now wille ye sende for a preeft that we may recey-
 ue our sacrament and receyue the bleffid body of our lord Ihe-
 su cryst / ye said the lady it shalle be done / and so she sente for a
 25 preeft and gaf hem her ryghtes / Now sayd balen whan we are
 buried in one tombe and the menfyon made ouer vs / how ij
 bretheren flewe eche other / there wille neuer good knyght nor
 good man see our tombe but they wille pray for our soules / &
 so alle the ladyes and gentylwymen wepte for pyte / Thenne
 30 anone Balan dyed but Balyn dyed not tyl the mydnyghte
 after / and so were they buried bothe / and the lady lete make
 a menfyon of Balan how he was ther slayne by his broders
 handes / but she knewe not balyns name /

¶ Capitulum xix

IN the morne cam Merlyn and lete wryte balyns na-
 35 me on the tombe with letters of gold / that here lyeth
 balyn le Saeage that was the knygt with the two swerdes

and he that smote the dolorous stroke / Also Merlyn lete make there a bedde / that ther shold neuer man lye therin / but he wente oute of his wytte / yet Launcelot de lake fordyd that bed thorow his noblesse / and anone after Balyn was dede / merlyn toke his fwerd / and toke of the pomel and fet on an other pomel / so merlyn bad a knyght that stode afore hym handeld that fwerd / and he assayed / and he myght not handle hit Thenne Merlyn lough / why laugh ye said the knyghte / this is the cause said Merlyn / ther shalle neuer man handle this fuerd but the best knyght of the world / and that shalle be fyr Launcelot or els Galahad his sone / and Launcelot with this fuerd shalle flee the man that in the world he loued best that shalle be fyr Gawayne / Alle this he lete wryte in the pomel of the fwerd / Thenne Merlyn lete make a brydge of yron & of stele in to that Iland / and it was but half a foote brode / & there shalle neuer man passe that brydge nor haue hardynes to goo ouer / but yf he were a passyng good man and a good knyght withoute trechery or vylonye / Also the scaubard of Balyns fwerd Merlyn leste it on this fyde of the Iland that galahad shold fynde it / Also merlyn lete make by his subtyl- te that Balyns fwerd was put in a marbel stone standyng vp ryght as grete as a mylle stone / and the stone houed al weyes aboue the water and dyd many yeres / and so by aduē- ture it swam doun the streme to the Cyte of Camelot that is in englysshe wynchestre / & that same day galahad the haute pryn- ce came with kyng Arthur / and soo galahad broughte wyth hym the scaubard and encheued the fwerde / that was there in the marbel stone / houynge vpon the water / And on whytson- day he encheued the fwerd as it is reherced in the book of Sāc grayll / Soone after this was done Merlyn came to kyng Ar- thur and told hym of the dolorous stroke that Balyn gaf to kyng Pellam / and how Balyn and Balan foughte to gyders the merueillous batail that euer was herd of / and how they were buryed bothe in one Tombe / Allas said kyng Arthur / this is the grettest pyte that ouer I herd telle of two knyghtes / for in the world I knowe not suche two knyghtes /

¶ Thus endeth the tale of Balyn and of Balan two bretheren born in northüberlād good kniȝtes / ¶ Sequitur iij liber

¶ Capitulum primum

IN the begynnyng of Arthur after he was chosen kyng by aduētūre and by grace for the most party of the barons knewe not that he was Vther pendragons sone / But as Merlyn made it
 5 openly knowen / But yet many kynges & lordes helde grete werre ayenst hym for that cause / But wel Arthur ouercame hem alle / for the mooſte party the dayes of his lyf he was ruled moche by the counceyl of Merlyn / Soo it fell on a tyme kyng Arthur ſayd vnto Merlyn / my barons wille lete
 10 me haue no reſt but nedes I muſte take a wyf / and I wylle none take / but by thy counceyll and by thine aduys / it is wel done ſaid Merlyn / that ye take a wyf / for a man of your bounte and nobleſſe ſhold not be without a wyf / Now is ther ony that ye loue more than another / ye ſaid kyng Arthur / I loue
 15 gweneuer the kynges doughter Lodegrean of the land of Camelerd / the whiche holdeth in his hows the table round that ye told he had of my fader Vther / And this damoyſel is the moſt valyaunt and fayreſt lady that I knowe lyuyng or yet that euer I coude fynde / Syre ſayd Merlyn as of her beaute
 20 and fayrenes ſhe is one of the fayreſt on lyue / But and ye loued her not ſo wel as ye doo / I ſhold fynde yow a damoyſel of beaute and of goodeneſſe that ſhold lyke yow & pleaſe yow and your herte were not fette / But there as a mans herte is fet / he wylle be lothe to retorne / that is trouthe ſaid kyng
 25 Arthur / but Merlyn warned the kyng couertly that gweneuer was not holfome for hym to take to wyf / for he warned hym that launcelot ſhold loue her and ſhe hym ageyne / and ſo he torned his tale to the auentures of Sancgreal / Thenne merlyn deſyred of the kyng for to haue men with hym that ſhold
 30 enquire of gweneuer / and ſo the kyng graunted hym / & Merlyn wente forth vnto kyng Lodegrean of Camyllerd / & told hym of the deſyre of the kyng that he wold haue vnto his wyf Gweneuer his doughter / that is to me ſayd kyng Lodegreans the beſt tydynges that euer I herd that ſo worthy a kyng of
 35 prowefſe and nobleſſe wille wedde my doughter / And os for my landes I wylle gyue hym wyf I it myght pleaſe hym /

[leaf 50 verso]

but he hath londes ynowe / hym nedeth none / but I shalle fende
 hym a gyfte shalle please hym moche more / for I shalle gyue
 hym the table round / the whiche Vtherpendragon gaue me / &
 whan it is ful complete / ther is an C knyghtes & fyfty / And
 as for on C good knyghtes I haue my self / but I fawte / 1 / 5
 for so many haue ben slayne in my dayes / and so Ladegreans
 delyuerd his doughter Gweneuer vnto Merlyn / and the table
 round with the C knyghtes / and so they rode freffhly with gre-
 te royalte / what by water and what by land / tyl that they
 came nyghe vnto london 10

¶ Capitulum Secundum

WHanne kyng Arthur herd of the comyng of gwene-
 uer and the C knyghtes with the table round / thenne
 kyng Arthur maade grete Ioye for her comyng / and
 that ryche prefente / and said openly this fair lady is passyng
 welcome vnto me / for I haue loued her longe / And therefore 15
 ther is nothyng so lyef to me / And these knyghtes with the
 round table pleafen me more than ryght grete rycheffe / And in
 alle hast the kyng lete ordeyne for the maryage and the Co-
 ronacyon in the moost honorable wyse that coude be deuysed
 Now Merlyn said kyng Arthur / goo thow and aspye me in 20
 al this land I knyghtes whiche ben of most prowesse & wor-
 ship / within short tyme merlyn had founde fuche knyghtes that
 shold fulfyllen xx & xiiij knyghtes but no mo he coude fynde
 Thenne the Bisskop of Caunterbury was fette and he bleffid
 the syeges with grete Royalte and deuoycyon / and there fette 25
 the viij and xx knyghtes in her syeges / and whan this was
 done / Merlyn said fayr fyrs ye must al aryse and come to ky-
 ng Arthur for to doo hym homage / he will haue the better wil
 to mayntene yow / and so they arofe and dyd their homage / &
 when they were gone / merlyn fond in euery syeges letters of 30
 gold that told the knyghtes names that had fytten therin /
 But two syeges were voyde / And so anone cam yong gawayn
 & asked the kyng a yeste Aske said the kyng / & I shal graunte
 it yow / fyr I aske that ye will make me knygt / that same day
 ye shall wedde faire Gweneuer / I will do it with a good wil 35
 said kyng arthur & do vnto yow all the worship that I may /
 for I must by reson ye ar myn neuw my fusters sone / ¶ Ca iij

FOrth with alle ther cam a poure man in to the Courte
and broughte with hym a fayre yonge man of xviiij
yere of age rydyng vpon a lene mare / and the poure
man asked all men that he met / where shal I fynde kyng ar-
thur / yonder he is sayd the knyghtes / wylt thou any thyng
with hym / ye sayd the poure man / therfor I cam hyder / anone
as he came before the kyng he salewed hym and sayd O kyng
Arthur the floure of all knyghtes and kynges I byfeche Ihe-
su faue the / Syr it was told me that at this tyme of your ma-
ryage ye wolde yeue any man the yeste that he wold aske /
oute excepte that were vnrefonable / that is trouthe said the ky-
nge fuche cryes I lete make / and that will I holde so it apay-
re not my realme nor myne estate / ye say wel and graciously
said the poure man / Syre I aske no thyng els but that ye wil
make my sone here a knyghte / it is a grete thyng thou askest
of me said the kyng / what is thy name said the kyng to the po-
ure man / fyr my name is Aryes the Cowherd / whether cometh
this of the or of thy sone said the kyng / Nay fyre said Aryes /
this defyre cometh of my sone and not of me / For I shal telle
yow I haue xiiij sones / & alle they will falle to what laboure
I put them & wille be ryght glad to doo labour / but this child
wylle not laboure for me for any thyng that my wyf or I may
doo / but alweyes he wille be shotyng or castyng dartes /
and glad for to see batailles and to behold knyghtes / And
alweyes day and nyghte he defyeth of me to be made a knyght
what is thy name sayd the kyng vnto the yonge man / Syre
my name is Tor / the kyng beheld hym fast / and sawe he was
passyngly wel vyfaged and passyngly wel made of his yeres
Wel said kyng Arthur vnto Aryes the Cowherd fetch al thy
sones afore me that I may see them / and so the poure man did
and al were shapen moche lyke the poure man / But Tor was
not lyke none of hem al in shap ne in contenance / for he was
moche more than any of hem / Now said kyng Arthur vnto the
Cowherd / where is the swerd he shalle be made knyght with
al / it is here sayd Tor / take it oute of the sheathe sayd the ky-
nge / and requyre me to make yow a knyght
Thenne Tor alyght of his mare and pulled oute his swerd
knelyng and requyryng the kyng / that he wold maake

hym knyght / & that he myghte be a knyght of the table round
 As for a knyzt I will make yow / & therwith smote hym in
 the neck with the fwerd fayēg be ye a good knyzt / & so I pray
 to god so ye may be / & yf ye be of prowesse and of worthy-
 nesse ye shalle be a knyght of the table round / Now Merlyn 5
 fayd Arthur fay wether this Tor shall be a good knyghte /
 or no / ye fyre he ought to be a good knyght / for he is comen
 of as good a man as ony is on lyue / and of kynges blood
 how so fyr fayd the kyng / I shalle telle yow fayd Merlyn /
 This poure man Aryes the cowherd is not his fader / he is no 10
 thyng syb to hym / for kyng Pellinore is his fader / I suppose
 nay said the Cowherd / fetch the wyf afore me said merlyn /
 and she shalle not say nay / anon the wyf was fet which was
 a fair houswyf / and there she answered Merlyn ful womanly /
 and there she told the kyng and Merlyn that whan she was 15
 a maide & went to mylke kyen / ther met with her a sterne kny-
 ght / & half by force he had my maidenhede / & at that tyme he bi-
 gat my sone Tor / & he toke away from me my greyhound that
 I had that tyme with me / & faide that he wold kepe the grey-
 hound for my loue / A said the Cowherd I wende not thys / 20
 but I may bileue it wel / for he had neuer no tatches of me / sir
 said Tor vnto Merlyn dishonoure not my moder / fyr said mer-
 lyn it is more for your worship than hurte / for your fader is
 a good man & a kyng / & he may ryght wel auaunce you and
 your moder / for ye were begoten or euer she was wedded / that 25
 is trouthe said the wyf / hit is the lasse gryef vnto me said the
 Cowherd

¶ Capitulum Quartum

SO on the morne kyng Pellinore cam to the Court of
 kyng Arthur / whiche had grete ioye of hym and told
 hym of Tor / how he was his sone / and how he hadde 30
 made hym knyght at the request of the Cowherd / Whan Pel-
 linore beheld Tor / he pleasyd hym moche / so the kyng made ga-
 wayne knyght / but Tor was the fyrst he made at the feest /
 What is the cause said kyng Arthur that there ben two places
 voyde in the fyeges / Syre said Merlyn / ther shalle no man fyt 35
 in tho places / but they shall be of moost worship / But in
 the sege perillous there shall no man fytt therin but one / and
 yf ther be ony so hardy to doo it he shall be destroyed / & he that

shalle fyttre there shalle haue no felawe / And therwith Merlyn tooke kynge Pellinore by the hand / and in the one hand next the two feges and the fege peryllous he said in open audience this is your place and best ye are worthy to fyttre there
 5 in of ony that is here / there at fat fyr gawayne in grete enuy & told Gaherys his broder / yonder knyghte is put to grete worship / the whiche greueth me fore / for he flewe our fader kynge Lot / therfor I wille flee hym said Gauayne with a fwerd / that was sente me that is passyng trechaunt / ye shall not foo
 10 said Gaherys at this tyme / For at this tyme I am but a squyer / and whan I am made knyght / I wol be auenged on hym and therfor broder it is best ye suffre tyl another tyme that we may haue hym oute of the Courte / for & we dyd so / we shold trouble this hyhe feest / I wyl wel said gauayn as ye wylle /

¶ Capitulum quintum

15 **T** Henne was the hyghe feest made redy / and the kynge was wedded att Camelott vnto Dame Gweneuer in the chirche of saynt steuyns with grete solempnyte / And as euery man was set after his degree / Merlyn wente to alle the knyghtes of the round table / and bad hem fyttre styll that none of hem remeue / for ye shalle see a straunge and a merueilous aduenture / Ryght so as they sat ther came rennyng in a whyte hert in to the halle and a whyte brachet next hym and
 20 xxx couple of black rennyng houndes cam after with a grete crye / and the hert went aboute the table round as he went by other boordes / the whyte brachet boot hym by the buttoke & pulled oute a pees / where thurgh the herte lepte a grete lepe / and ouerthrewe a knyght that sat at the boord fyde / and therwith the knyght aroos & toke vp the brachet / & so went forth oute of the halle & toke his hors & rode his wey with the brachet / right
 30 so anone cam in a lady on a whyte palfrey & cryed aloude for the kyng Arthur / Syre suffre me not to haue this despyte for the brachet was myn that the knyght lad awaye / I maye not doo therwith said the kynge
 ¶ With this there came a knyght rydyng al armed on a grete hors / and tooke the lady
 35 dy away with hym with force / and euer she cryed and made grete dole / whanne she was gone the kynge was glad for she

made fuche a noyse / Nay said merlyn / ye may not leue this ad-
 vētures so lyghtely / For these adventures must be brought a-
 gayne or els it wold be disworship to yow and to your feest
 I wyll said the kyng that al be done by your aduys / Then-
 ne faide merlyn lete calle fyr gauayne / for he must brynge a- 5
 geyne the whyte herte / Also fyr ye must lete calle Syre Tor /
 for he must brynge ageyne the brachet / and the knyght or els
 flee hym / Also lete calle kyng Pellinore for he must brynge a-
 geyne the lady and the knyght or els flee hym / and these thre
 knyghtes shalle doo merueillous auētures or they come ageyn 10
 Thenne were they called al thre as it reherceth afore / and eue-
 ryche of hem toke his charge / and armed them surely / But sir
 gauayne had the fyrst request / and therefore we wille begynne
 at hym /

¶ Capitulum vi

Syre gauayne roode more than a paas and gaheryfe his 15
 broder that roode with hym in stede of a squyer to doo
 hym feruyse / Soo as they rode they sawe two knyghtes
 fyghte on horsbak passyng fore / so fyr gauayn & his broder ro-
 de betwixe them / and asked them for what cause they foughte
 so / the one knyght ansuerd and sayd / we fyghte for a symple 20
 mater / for we two be two bretheren born & begoten of one man
 & of one woman / allas said sir gauayn why do ye so / fyr said
 the eldar / ther cam a whyte hert this way this day & many hou-
 des chaced hym / & a whyte brachet was alwey next hym / and
 we vnderstood it was auenture made for the hyhe feest of ky- 25
 nge Arthur / and therefore I wold haue gone after to haue
 wonne me worship / and here my yonger broder said he wolde
 go after the herte / for he was better knyght than I / And for
 this cause we felle at debate / & so we thouzt to preue whiche of
 vs bothe was better knyzt / This is a symple cause said sir ga- 30
 uayn / vncouth mē ye shold debate with al & no broder with bro-
 der / therfor but yf ye wil do by my couceil I wil haue ado with
 yow / that is ye shal yelde you vnto me / & that ye go vnto kyng
 Arthur and yelde yow vnto his grace / sir knyzt said the ij bre-
 theren we are forfoughten & moche blood haue we losse thorow 35
 our wilfulnesse / And therefore we wolde be loth to haue adoo
 with yow / thenne do as I will haue yow said sir gauayne /

we wille agree to fulfyll your wylle / But by whom shalle
 we faye that we be thyder fente / ye maye fay / by the knyzt that
 foloweth the quest of the herte that was whyte / Now what is
 your name sayd gauayne / Sorlouse of the forest said the eldar
 5 & my name is sayde the yonger Bryan of the forest and foo
 they departed and wente to the kynges Court / and Syr ga-
 uayne on his quest / and as gauayne folowed the herte by the
 crye of the houndes euen afore hym ther was a grete Ryuer /
 and the hert swamme ouer / and as fyr gauayne wold folo-
 10 we after / ther stode a knyght ouer the other fyde and sayd /
 Syre knyghte come not ouer after this herte / but yf thou wilt
 Iuste with me / I wille not faille as for that said sir gauayn
 to folowe the quest that I am in / and soo maade his hors to
 fwymme ouer the water / and anone they gat their speres /
 15 and ranne to gyder ful hard / but fyre gauayne smote hym
 of his hors / and thenne he torned his hors & bad hym yelde
 hym / Nay sayd the knyght not so though thou haue the bet-
 ter of me on horsbak / I pray the valyaunt knyght alyghte a
 foote and matche we to gyders with fwerdes / what is youre
 20 name said sir gauayne / Alardyn of the Ilys said the other /
 thenne eyther dresseid her sheldes and smote to gyders / but sir
 gauayne smote hym so hard thorow the helme that it went to
 the braynes and the knyght felle doune dede / A said Gaheryse
 that was a myghty stroke of a yonge knyght /

¶ Capitulum Septimum

25 **T**Hēne Gauayne and Gaheryse rode more than a paas
 after the whyte herte / and lete flyppe at the herte there
 couple of greyhoundes / and so they chace the herte in to a cas-
 tel / and in the chyef place of the castel they slewe the hert / fyr
 gauayne and gaheryse folowed after / Ryght foo there came a
 30 knyght oute of a chamber with a fwerd drawe in his hand
 and slewe two of the greyhoundes euen in the syghte of fyre
 gauayne / and the remenaunte he chaced hem with his fwerd
 oute of the castel / And whan he cam ageyne he sayd / O my
 whyte herte / me repenteth that thou art dede / for my fouerayne
 35 lady gaf the to me / and euyll haue I kepte the / and thy deth

[leaf 53 verso]

fhalle be dere bought and I lyue / and anone he wente in to
 his chamber and armed hym / and came oute fyrfly / & there
 mette he with fyr gauayne / why haue ye slayne my houndes
 said fyr gauayn / for they dyd but their kynde / and leuer I
 had ye had wroken your angre vpon me than vpon a dom best 5
 thow faist trouthe said the knyght I haue auengyd me on thy
 houndes and so I wille on the or thow goo / Thenne fyr Ga-
 uayne alyght afoote and drestid his shelde and stroke to gy-
 ders myghtely / and clafe their sheldes and stoned their helmes
 and brak their hawberkes that the blood ranne doune to their 10
 feet / Atte last fyr gauayne smote the knyght so hard that he
 felle to the erthe / and thenne he cryed mercy / and yelded hym
 and befought hym as he was a knyghte and gentylman / to
 faue his lyf / thow shalt dye said fir gauayne for sleynge of my
 houndes / I wille make amendys said the knyght vnto my po- 15
 wer / Syr gauayne wold no mercy haue but vnlayd his hel-
 me to haue stryken of his hede / Ryght soo came his lady oute
 of a chamber and felle ouer hym / and soo he smote of her hede
 by myfaunture / Allas saide Gaheryse that is fowle and sha-
 mefully done / that shame shal neuer from yow / Also ye shold 20
 gyue mercy vnto them that aske mercy / for a knyght without
 mercy is withoute worship / Syr gauayne was so stonyed of
 the deth of this fair lady / that he wiste not what he dyd / and
 said vnto the knyght aryse I wille gyue the mercy / nay nay
 said the knyght / I take no force of mercy now / for thou hast 25
 slayne my loue and my lady that I loued best of alle er-
 ly thyng / Me fore repentith it said fyr gauayn / for I thought
 to stryke vnto the / But now thow shalt goo vnto kyng Ar-
 thur and telle hym of thyne aduentures and how thow arte o-
 uercome by the knyghte that wente in the queste of the whyte 30
 herte / I take no force said the knyght whether I lyue or I dye
 but so for drede of deth he swore to goo vnto kyng Arthur / &
 he made hym to bere one greyhound before hym on his hors and
 another behynde hym / what is your name said fir gauayn or
 we departe / my name is said the knyght Ablamor of the ma- 35
 rise / soo he departed toward Camelot

¶ Capitulum Octauum

A Nd fyr gauayne went in to the castel and made hym
redy to lye there al nyght / and wold haue vnarmed
hym / what wylle ye doo fayd gaheryse / wylle ye vn-
arme yow in this Countrey / ye may thynke ye haue many e-
5 nemyes here / they had not fooner fayd that word but ther cā
four knyghtes wel armed and affayled fyr gauayne hard
and said vnto hym thou newe made knyght thou hast shamed
thy knyghthode / for a knyght withoute mercy is dishonoured
Also thou hast slayne a fayr lady to thy grete shame to the
10 worldes ende / and doubte thou not thou shalt haue grete ne-
de of mercy or thou departe from vs / And therwith one of
hem smote fyr gauayne a grete stroke that nygh he felle to the
erthe / and gaheryse smote hym ageyne fore / and soo they were
on the one syde and on the other / that fyr gauayne and gahe-
15 ryse were in ieopardy of their lyues / and one with a bowe an
archer smote fyr gauayne thurȝ the arme that it greued hym
wonderly fore / And as they shold haue ben slayne / there cam
four fair ladyes / and befought the knyghtes of grace for fyre
gauayne / and goodely atte request of the ladyes they gaf fyr
20 gauayne and gaheryse their lyues / & made hem to yelde them
as prysoners / thenne gauayne and gaheryse made grete dole /
Allas fayd fyre gauayne myn arme greueth me fore / I am
lyke to be maymed and so made his complaynt pytously / er-
ly on the morow ther cam to fyr gauayne one of the four la-
25 dyes / that had herd alle his complaynte and said fyr knyȝte
what chere / not good said he it is your owne defaulte fayd the
lady / for ye haue doone a passyng fowle dede in the sleynge
of the lady / the whiche will be grete vylany vnto yow / But
be ye not of kyng Arthurs kyn faide the lady / yes truly
30 fayd fyr gauayne / what is your name faide the lady / ye must
telle it me or ye passe / my name is gauayne the kyng Lott of
Orkeney sone / and my moder is kyng Arthurs syster / A
thenne are ye neuewe vnto kyng Arthur fayd the lady / and
I shalle so speke for yow that ye shall haue conduyte to go to
35 kyng Arthur for his loue / and soo she departed / and told
the foure knyghtes how their prysoner was kyng Arthurs
neuewe / and his name is fyr gauayne kyng Lots sone of
Orkeney / and they gaf hym the hertes hede by cause it was in

his quest / ¶ Thenne anone they delyuerd fyr Gauayne vnder
 this promyse that he shold bere the dede lady with hym in this
 maner / The hede of her was hanged aboute his neck and the
 hole body of hyr lay before hym on his hors mane / Ryght soo
 rode he forth vnto Camelot / And anone as he was come mer- 5
 lyn defyred of kyng Arthur þ^t Syre Gauayne shold be sworne
 to telle of alle his auentures / and how he slewe the lady / and
 how he wold gyue no mercy vnto the knyght / where thurgh
 the lady was slayne / Thenne the kynge and the quene were
 gretely displeasyd with fyr gauayn for the sleynge of the la- 10
 dy / And ther by ordenaunce of the quene ther was set a quest
 of ladyes on fyr gauayn / and they Iuged hym for euer why-
 le he lyued to be with all ladyes & to fyzte for her quarels / &
 that euer he shold be curteys / & neuer to refuse mercy to hym /
 that asketh mercy / Thus was gauayne sworne vpon the four 15
 euuangelystes that he shold neuer be ageynst lady ne gentil-
 woman / but yf he fought for a lady / and his aduersary fouzt
 for another / And thus endeth the auenture of fyr gauayn that
 he dyd at the maryage of kyng Arthur Amen

¶ Capitulum ix

THan Syre Tor was redy he mounted vpon his hors- 20
 bak / and rode after the knyght with the brachet / so as
 he rode he mette with a dwarf fodenly / that smote hys
 hors on the hede with a staf / that he wente backward his spere
 lengthe / why dost thou so said fyre Tor / for thou shalt not pas-
 se this way / but yf thou Iuste with yonder knyghtes of the pa- 25
 uelions / Thenne was Tor ware where two paelions were / &
 grete sperys stood oute / and two sheldes henge on trees by the
 paelions / I may not tary said fyr Tor / for I am in a quest
 that I must nedes folowe / thou shalt not passe said the dwarf
 and therwith alle he blewe his horne / thenne ther cam one ar- 30
 med on horsbak / and dresyd his shelde / and cam fast toward
 Tor / and he dresid hym ageynst hym / and so ranne to gyders
 that Tor bare hym from his hors / and anone the knyght yeld
 hym to his mercy / But fyr I haue a felawe in yonder pael-
 ione that wille haue adoo with yow anone / he shall be welcome 35
 said fyr Tor / Thenne was he ware of another knyght comyng
 with grete raundon / and eche of them dresid to other / that

merueille it was to see / but the knyght smote fyre Tor a grete stroke in myddes of the shelde that his spere all to sheuered And fyr Tor smote hym thurgh the sheld by lowe of the sheld and it wente thorow the coost of the knyzt / but the stroke fle-
 5 we hym not / And therwith fyr Tor alyght & smote hym on the helme a grete stroke / and therwith the knyght yelded hym and befought hym of mercy / I wille wel said fyr Tor / But thou and thy felawe must goo vnto kynge Arthur / and yelde yow prysoners vn to hym / by whome shall we say are we thy-
 10 der sente / ye shall say by the knyght that wente in the quest of the knyght that wente with the brachet / Now what be your ij names said fyr Tor / my name is sayd the one Sire Felot of Langduk / & my name is said the other Sir Petypase of wynchylse / Now go ye forth saide fyre Tor and god spede yow &
 15 me / Thenne cam the dwarf and saide vnto fyr Tor / I praye yow gyue me a yeste / I wylle wel said fyr Tor / aske / I aske no more saide the dwarf / but that ye wille suffre me to doo yow feruyse / for I will ferue no more recreaunt knyghtes / Take an hors said fyr Tor and ryde on with me / I wote ye
 20 ryde after the knyght with the whyte brachet / and I shalle brynge yow there he is said the dwerf / And soo they rode thorow oute a forest / and at the last they were ware of two paelions euen by a pryory with two sheldes / And the one shyld was enewed with whyte / and the other shelde was reed

¶ Capitulum 1

25 **T**Her with fyr Tor alyghte and toke the dwarf his glayue / and soo he cam to the whyte paelione / and sawe thre damoyfels lye in it / and one paylet slepyng / & so he wente to the other paelione / and found a lady lyeng slepyng ther in / But ther was the whyte brachet that bayed at her fast / and
 30 therwith the lady yede oute of the paelione & all her damoyfels / But anone as fyr Tor aspyed the whyte brachet / he took her by force and took her to the dwerf / what / wille ye so sayd the lady take my brachet from me / ye sayd fyr Tor / this brachet haue I fought from kynge Arthurs Courte hyder / well
 35 said the lady / knyght ye shalle not go fer with her / but that ye shalle be mette and greued / I shall abyde what auenture that

cometh by the grace of god / and so mounted vpon his hors /
 and passed on his way towarde Camelot / but it was so nere
 nyght he myȝt not passe but lytel ferther / knowe ye ony lod-
 gyng said Tor I knowe none said the dwarf / but here besy-
 des is an hermytage / and there ye muste take lodgyng as ye 5
 fynde / And within a whyle they cam to the heremytage & took
 lodgyng / and was there gras otys and breed for their horses
 soone it was sped / and full hard was their souper but there
 they rested hem al nyght tyl on the morne / and herd a masse
 deuoutely / and tooke their leue of the heremyte / and fyre Tor 10
 prayed the heremyte to pray for hym / he sayd he wold and be-
 tooke hym to god / And soo mounted vpon horsbak and rode
 towardes Camelot a long whyle / with that they herd a knyȝte
 calle lowde that came after hem / and he sayd knyghte abyde / &
 yelde my brachet that thou took from my lady / Syr Tor retor- 15
 ned ageyne / and behelde hym how he was a femely knyghte
 and wel horsed and wel armed at al poyntes / thenne Syre
 Tor dresyd his shelde and took his spere in his handes and
 the other cam fyerfly vpon hym / and smote bothe hors & man
 to the erthe / anone they aroos lyghtely and drewe her fwerdes 20
 as egrely as lyons and put their sheldes afore them and smo-
 te thorow the sheldes that the cantels felle of bothe parties /
 Also they tamyd their helmes that the hote blood ranne oute /
 and the thyck maylles of their hawberkes they carfe and rose
 in fonder that the hote blood ranne to the erthe / and both they 25
 had many woundes and were passyng wery / But fyr Tor as-
 pyed that the other knyght faynted / and thenne he sewed fast
 vpon hym and doubled his strokes and garte hym go to the
 erthe on the one fyde / thenne Syre Tor bad hym yelde hym /
 that wille I not said Abilleus whyle my lyf lasteth and the 30
 soule is within my body onles that thou wilt yeue me the bra-
 chet / that wyll I not doo sayd fyre Tor / for it was my quest
 to brynge ageyne thy brachet / the or bothe /

¶ Capítulum xi

Wyth that cam a damoyfel rydyng on a palfrey as fast
 as she myȝt dryue and cryed with a lowde voys vnto 35
 Syre Tor / what wille ye with me sayd fyr Tor / I byseche the

faid the damoyfel for kyng Arthurs loue / gyue me a yefte / I
rekyre the gentyl knyght as thow arte a gentilman / Now
faid Tor Afke a yefte and I wille gyue it yow / gramercy
faid the damoyfel / Now I afke the hede of the fals knyght A-
5 belleus / for he is the moofte outragious knyght that lyueth &
the gretteft murtherer / I am loth feid fyr Tor of that gyfte I
haue gyuen yow / lete hym make amendys in that he hath tre-
fpaced vnto yow / now faid the damoyfel he may not / for he fle-
we myn owne broder afore myn owne eyen that was a better
10 knyght than he / and he hadde had grace / and I kneled half
an houre afore hym in the myre for to faue my broders lyf that
had done hym no dammage but fought with hym by auentu-
re of armes / and fo for al that I coude do / he froke of his hede
wherfore I rekyre the as thow arte a true knyght to gyue
15 me my yefte or els I fhall fhame the in al the Court of kyng
Arthur / for he is the falfeft knyght lyuyng and a grete def-
troyer of good knyghtes / Thenne whan Abelleus herd this / he
was more aferd / and yelded hym and asked mercy / I maye
not now faide fyr Tor / but yf I fhould be founde fals of my
20 promeffe / for whyle I wold haue taken you to mercy / ye wold
none afke but yf ye had the brachet ageyn that was my queft
And therwith he tooke of his helme / and he aroos and fled /
and fyr Tor after hym and fmote of his hede quyte / ¶ Now
fyr faid the damoyfel / it is nere nyght / I pray yow come & lod-
25 ge with me here at my place / it is here faft by / I will wel faid
fyr Tor / for his hors and he had ferd euyll fyn they departed
from Camelot / and soo he rode with her and had paffyng go-
od chere with her / and fhe hadde a paffyng fair old knyght to
her husband that made hym paffyng good chere and wel ea-
30 fyd bothe his hors and he / and on the morne he herd his maffe
and brake his faft and tooke his leue of the knyghte and of
the lady that befought hym to telle hym his name / Truly he fa-
id my name is fyr Tor that was late made knyght / and this
was the fyrft quefte of armes that euer I dyd to bryng a-
35 geyn that this knyght Abelleus toke away fro kyng arthurs
courte / O fayr knyght faid the lady and her husband / and ye
come here in oure marches / come and fee oure poure lodgyng /
and it fhalle be alweyes at your commaundement / Soo fyre

Tor departed and came to Camelot on the thyrdde day by none / and the kyng & the quene & alle the Courte was passyng fayne of his comyng and made grete ioye that he was come ageyne / for he wente from the Court with lytel focour / but as kyng Pellinore his fader gaf hym an old courfer / and kyng 5 Arthur gaf hym armour and a swerd / and els had he none other focour / but rode so forthe hym self alone / And thenne the kyng and the quene by merlyns aduys made hym to fwere to telle of his auentures / and soo he told and made pryuees of his dedes as it is afore reherced / wherfor the kyng and the quene made hym grete ioye / nay nay faide Merlyn these ben but Iapes to that he shalle doo / for he shalle preue a noble knyght of prowesse as good as ony is lyuyng and gentyl and curteis & of good tatches and passyng true of his promesse / and neuer shalle outrage where thorow Merlyns wordes kyng Arthur 15 gaf hym an erldome of londes that felle vnto hym / and here endeth the quest of Syr Tor kyng Pellinors fone

¶ Capitulum xij

THenne kyng Pellinore armed hym and mounted vpon his hors and rode more than a paas after the lady that the knyzt ladde away / And as he rode in a forest 20 he sawe in a valey a damoyfel fitte by a welle and a wounded knyght in her armes / and Pellenore sawed her / And whan she was ware of hym she cryed ouer lowde / helpe me knyghte for crystes sake kyng Pellinore & he wold not tarye he was so eger in his quest / and euer she cryed an C tymes after help 25 Whanne she sawe he wold not abyde / she prayd vnto god to sende hym as moche nede of help as she had / and that he myzt fele it or he dyed / Soo as the book telleth the knyght there dyed that there was wounded / wherfor the lady for pure sorowe flewe her self with his swerd / As kyng Pellinore rode in 30 that valey he met with a poure man a labourer / Sawest thou not faide Pellinore a knyghte rydyng and ledyng awaye a lady / ye said the man / I sawe that knyght and the lady that made grete dole / And yonder bynethe in a valey ther shal ye see two paelions and one of the knyktes of the paelions 35

chalengyd that lady of that knyght and fayd she was his
cofyn nere / wherfor he shold lede her no ferther / And soo they
waged bataill in that quarel / the one saide he wold haue her
by force / and the other said he wold haue the rule of her by
5 caufe he was her kynnesman and wold lede her to her kyn / for
this quarel he lefte them fyghtyng / And yf ye wille ryde a
paas ye shalle fynde them fyghtyng / and the lady was beleft
with the two squyers in the paelions / god thanke the fayd
kynge Pellenore / Thenne he rode a wallop tyll he had a fyght
10 of the two paelions and the two knyghtes fyghtyng / anon
he rode vnto the paelions / and sawe the lady that was his
quest / and fayd fayre lady ye must goo with me vnto the co-
urt of kynge Arthur / Syr knyght said the two squyers that
were with her yonder are two knyghtes that fyghte for thys
15 lady / goo thyder and departe them / and be agreed with hem / &
thenne may ye haue her at your pleasyr / ye say wel fayd kyng
Pellenore / And anone he rode betwixt them and departed hem
and asked hem the causes why that they fought / Sir knyght
said the one / I shalle telle yow / this lady is my kynneswo-
20 man nygh myn aunes doughter / And whan I herd her com-
playne that she was with hym maulgre her hede / I waged ba-
taille to fyghte with hym / Syre knyght fayd the other whoos
name was Hontzlake of wentland / and this lady I gat by
my prowesse of armes this day at Arthurs courte / that is vn-
25 truly said / said kynge Pellenore / for ye cam in fodenly ther as
we were at the hyghe feest and tooke away this lady or any
man myght make hym redy and therefore hit was my quest to
brynge her ageyne and yow bothe / or els the one of vs to aby-
de in the felde / therfor the lady shalle goo with me / or I wille
30 dye for it / for I haue promysed hit kynge Arthur / And ther-
for fyghte ye no more / for none of yow shalle haue no parte
of her at this tyme / And yf ye lyst to fyzte for her / fyzte with
me / and I wille defende her / wel said the knyghtes make you
redy / and we shalle affaile yow with al our power / And as
35 kynge Pellenore wold haue put his hors fro them fyr Hontz-
lake rooffe his hors thorow with a fwerd and said / Now art
thow on foote as wel as we are / whan kynge Pellinore af-
pyed that his hors was slayne / lyztely he lepte from his hors /

and pulled oute his swerd / and put his sheld afore hym /
and sayde knyghte kepe wel thy heede / for thow shalt haue a
buffet for the sleynge of my hors / So kyng Pellenore gaf hym
fuche a stroke vpon the helme that he clafe the hede doune to the
chynne that he fylle to the erthe dede

5

¶ Capitulum xiiij

ANd thenne he torned hym to the other knyghte that was
fore wounded / but whan he sawe the others buffet / he
wold not fyghte / but kneled doune and sayd take
my cofyn the lady with yow at youre request / and I requyre
yow as ye be a true knyghte / put her to no shame nor vylony / 10
What sayd kyng Pellenore wylle ye not fyghte for her / no
fyr sayd the knyghte I wylle not fyghte with fuche a knyghte
of prowesse as ye be / wel said Pellenore / ye fay wel / I pro-
myse yow she shall haue no vylony by me as I am true kny-
ght / but now me lacketh an hors said Pellenore / but I wylle 15
haue hontzlaques hors / ye shalle not nede sayd the knyght / for
I shalle gyue yow fuche an hors as shalle please yow / so that
ye wille lodge with me / for it is nere nyghte / I wille wel sa-
yd kyng Pellenore abyde with yow al nyghte / and there he
hadde with hym ryght good chere / and faryd of the best with 20
passynge good wyne and had mery rest that nyghte / And on
the morne he herd a masse and dyned / And thenne was bro-
ughte hym a fayre bay courser / and kyng Pellenors sadel
fette upon hym / Now what shalle I calle yow said the knyght
in as moche as ye haue my cofyn at your desyre of your quest 25
Syr I shalle telle yow my name is kyng Pellenore of the I-
lys and knyghte of the table round / Now I am glad said
the knyght that fuche a noble man shalle haue the rule of my
cofyn / Now what is your name said Pellenore / I pray yow
telle me / Syr my name is fyr Meliot of Logurs / and this la- 30
dy my cofyn hyght Nymue / and the knyghte that was in the
other pauelione is my sworne broder a passynge good knyghte
and his name is Bryan of the Ilys / and he is ful loth to do
wronge and ful lothe to fyghte with ony man / but yf he be fo-
re fouzt on / so that for shame he may not leue it / It is merueil 35

said Pellinore that he wille not haue adoo with me / fyr he wil
 not haue adoo with no man but yf it be at his request / Bryn-
 ge hym to the Courte said Pellenore one of these dayes / Syr
 we wyll come to gyders / and ye shalle be welcome said Pel-
 5 linore to the Courte of kynge Arthur / and gretely allowed
 for your comynge and so he departed with the lady / & brouzt
 her to Camelot / Soo as they rode in a valey it was ful of sto-
 nes / and there the ladyes hors stumbled and threwe her down
 that her arme was fore bryfed and nere she swowned for pa-
 10 yne / Allas fyr fayd the lady myn arme is oute of lythe wher
 thorow I must nedes reſte me / ye ſhal wel ſaid kyng Pelli-
 nore / and ſo he alyzt vnder a fayr tree where was fayr graſſe
 and he put his hors therto / and ſo leyd hym vnder the tree /
 and ſlepte tyl it was nyghe nyght / And whan he awoke / he
 15 wold haue ryden / Sir ſaid the lady it is ſo derke that ye may
 as wel ryde backward as forward / ſoo they abode ſtyll & made
 there their lodgyng / Thenne fyr Pellenore put of his armour
 thēne a lytel afore mydnyzt they herd the trottyng of an hors
 be ye ſtyll ſaid kyng Pellenore / for we ſhalle here of ſomme a-

20 **A** uenture **¶ Capitulum xiiii**
 Nd ther with he armed hym / ſo ryght euen afore hym
 ther met two knyghtes / the one cam froward Came-
 lot / and the other from the northe / and eyther ſalewed other /
 what tydynges at Camelot fayd the one / by my hede ſaide the
 25 other ther haue I ben & aſpyed the courte of kynge Arthur
 And ther is ſuche a ſelaufhip they may neuer be broken / and
 wel nyghe al the world holdeth with Arthur / for there is the
 flour of chyualrye / Now for this cauſe I am rydyng in to the
 north to telle our chyuetayns of the ſelaufhip that is withhol-
 30 den with kyng Arthur / as for that ſaid the other knyght I ha-
 ue brought a remedy with me that is the gretteſt poyſon that
 euer ye herd ſpeke of & to Camelot wyll I with it / for we ha-
 ue a frend ryght nyghe kyng Arthur and wel cheryſhed that
 ſhal poyſone kynge Arthur / for ſo he hath promyſed oure chy-
 35 uetayns & receyued grete yeſtes for to do it / Beware ſaid the
 other knyght of Merlyn / for he knoweth all thynges by the
 deuyls craſte / therfore wille I not lete it ſaid the knyghte / &
 ſo they departed in fonder / Anone after Pellenore maade hym

redy and his lady rode toward Camelot / And as they
 cam by the wel there as the wounded knyght was and the la-
 dy / there he fond the knyghte and the lady eten with lyons
 or wylde beestes al fauf the hede / wherfor he made grete forowe
 and wepte passyng fore and said Allas her lyf myghte I 5
 haue faued / but I was so fyers in my quest therfore I wold
 not abyde / wherfore make ye suche doole said the lady / I wote
 not said Pellinore / but my herte morneth fore of the deth of her
 for she was a passyng fayr lady and a yonge / Now wylle ye
 doo by myne aduys said the lady / take this knyghte and lete 10
 hym be buryed in an heremytage / and thenne take the ladyes
 hede and bere it with yow vnto Arthur / Soo kyng Pellinore
 took this dede knyght on his sholders / and broughte hym to
 the heremytage and charged the heremyte with the corps / that
 feruyse shold be done for the foule / and take his harneys for 15
 your payne / it shalle be done said the heremyte as I wille an-

A

fuer vnto god

¶ Capitulum xv

Nd ther with they departed and cam there as the he-
 de of the lady lay with a fair yelow here that greued
 kyng Pellinore passyngly fore whan le loked on hit / for mo- 20
 che he cast his herte on the vyfage / And soo by none they came
 to Camelot / and the kyng and the quene were passyng fayn
 of his comyng to the Courte / And there he was made to swe-
 re vpon the four euuangelystes to telle the trouth of his quest
 from the one to the other / A fyr Pellinore sayd quene Gwe- 25
 neuer ye were gretely to blame that ye faued not this ladyes
 lyf / Madame said Pellinore ye were gretely to blame and ye
 wold not faue your owne lyf & ye myzt / but fauf your plea-
 fir I was so furyous in my quest that I wold not abyde / & that
 repenteth me & shal the dayes of my lyf / Truly saide Merlyn 30
 ye ouzt fore to repente it / for that lady was your own douzter
 begoten on the lady of the rule / & that knyght that was dede
 was her loue / and shold haue wedded her / and he was a ry-
 ght good knyght of a yonge man and wold haue preued a
 good man / & to this court was he comyng & his name was fir 35
 Myles of the laūdys / & a knyzt cam behynde hym / & slewe him
 with a spere & his name is Lorayne le faueage a fals knyzt
 & a coward / & she for grete sorow & dole slewe her self with

his fwerd / and her name was Eleyne / And by cause ye wold
 not abyde and helpe her / ye shalle see youre best frende faylle
 yow whan ye be in the gretteft distresse that euer ye were / or
 shalle be / And that penaunce god hath ordeyned yow for that
 5 dede / that he that ye shalle most truste to of ony man alyue / he
 shalle leue yow ther ye shalle be slayne / Me forthynketh said
 kynge Pellinore that this shalle me betyde but god may for-
 doo wel desteny / Thus whan the quest was done of the why-
 te herte / the whiche folowed fyr gawayne and the quest of the
 10 brachet folowed of fyr Tor Pellenors sone / & the quest of the
 lady that the knyghte tooke aweye / the whiche kyng Pellinre
 at that tyme folowed / Thenne the kyng stablysshed all his kny-
 ghtes and gaf them that were of londes not ryche / he gaf them
 londes / and charged hem neuer to doo outragyoufyte nor mor-
 15 dre / and alweyes to flee treason / Also by no meane to be cru-
 el / but to gyue mercy vnto hym that asketh mercy vpon payn
 of forfeiture of their worship and lordship of kyng Arthur for
 euermore / and alweyes to doo ladyes / damoyfels / and gen-
 tylwymmen socour vpon payne of dethe / Also that no man ta-
 20 ke noo batails in a wrongful quarel for noo lawe ne for noo
 worldes goodes / Vnto this were all the knyghtes fworne of
 the table round both old and yong / And euery yere were they
 fworne at the hyghe feest of Pentecost

¶ Explicit the weddyng of kynge Arthur

¶ Sequitur quartus liber ¶ Capitulum Primum

25 **S**Oo after these questys of Syr Gawyne / Syre
 Tor / and kynge Pellinore / It felle so that Mer-
 lyn felle in a dottage on the damoifel that kyng
 Pellinore broughte to the Courte / and she was o-
 ne of the damoyfels of the lake that hyzte Ny-
 neue / But Merlyn wold lete haue her no rest but alweyes he
 30 wold be with her / And euer she maade Merlyn good chere tyl
 she had lerned of hym al maner thyng that she desyred and
 he was affoted vpon her that he myghte not be from her / Soo
 on a tyme he told kyng Arthur that he sholde not dure longe
 but for al his craftes he shold be put in the erthe quyck and

so he told the kynge many thynges that shold befall / but alle
 wayes he warned the kynge to kepe wel his swerd and the
 scaubard / for he told hym how the swerd and the scaubard
 shold be stolen by a woman from hym that he most trusted /
 Also he told kynge Arthur that he shold mysse hym / yet had 5
 ye leuer than al your landes to haue me ageyne / A sayd the
 kynge / syn ye knowe of your aduenture puruey for hit / and
 put away by your crates that myfaenture / Nay said Merlyn
 it wylle not be / soo he departed from the kynge / And within a
 whyle the damoyfel of the lake departed / and Merlyn wente 10
 with her euermore where some euer she wente / And oftymes
 merlyn wold haue had her pryuely away by his subtile craf-
 tes / thenne she made hym to swere that he shold neuer do none
 enchauntement vpon her yf he wold haue his wylle / And so
 he sware / so she and Merlyn wente ouer the see vnto the land 15
 of Benwyck there as kynge Ban was kynge that had gre-
 te warre ageynst kynge Claudas / and there Merlyn spake
 with kynge Bans wyf a fair lady and a good / and her na-
 me was Elayne / and there he sawe yonge Launcelot / there the
 quene made grete forowe for the mortal werre þ^t kyng claudas 20
 made on her lord and on her landes / Take none heuyneffe said
 Merlyn / for this fame child within this xx yere shall reuenge
 yow on kynge Claudas that all Crystendom shalle speke of it
 And this fame child shalle be the moost man of worship of
 the world / and his fyrst name is galahad / that knowe I 25
 wel said Merlyn / And syn ye haue confermed hym Launce-
 lot / that is trouthe said the quene / his fyrst name was Gala-
 had / O Merlyn said the quene shalle I lyue to see my sone
 suche a man of prowesse / ye lady on my parel ye shal see hit /
 and lyue many wynters after / And soo sone after the lady 30
 and Merlyn departed / and by the waye Merlyn shewed her
 many wondres / and cam in to Cornewaille / And alweyes
 Merlyn lay aboute the lady to haue her maydenhode / and she
 was euer passyng wery of hym / and fayne wold haue ben
 delyuerd of hym / for she was aferd of hym by cause he was a 35
 deuyls sone / and she coude not beskyfte hym by no meane /
 ¶ And soo on a tyme it happed that Merlyn shewed to her
 in a roche where as was a greete wonder / and wroughte by

enchantement that wente vnder a grete stone / So by her sub-
 tyle wyrchynghe she maade Merlyn to goo vnder that stone to
 lete her wete of the merueilles there / but she wroughte so ther
 for hym that he came neuer oute for alle the crafte he coude doo /
 5 And so she departed and lefte Merlyn /

¶ Capitulum Secundum

ANd as kynge Arthur rode to Camelot / and helde ther
 a grete feest with myrthe and Ioye / so soone after he re-
 turned vnto Cardoylle / and ther cam vnto Arthur newe ty-
 dynges that the kynge of Denmarke and the kynge of Ire-
 10 land that was his broder and the kynge of the vale and the
 kynge of Soleyse / and the kynge of the yle of Longtayne al
 these fyue kynges with a grete hooft were entrid in to the lād
 of kynge Arthur and brente and flewe clene afore hem / both
 Cytees and castels that it was pyte to here / ¶ Allas sayd
 15 Arthur yet had I neuer reſte one monethe ſyn I was crow-
 ned kyng of this land / Now ſhalle I neuer reſte tyl I me-
 te with tho kynges in a fayre feld / that I make myn auowe
 for my true lyege peple ſhalle not be deſtroyed in my default-
 te / goo with me who wille and abyde who that wille / thenne
 20 the kynge lete wryte vnto kynge Pellenore and prayd hym in
 alle haſte to make hym redy with fuche peple as he myght ly3-
 tlyeſt rere and hye hym after in al haſt / All the Barons we-
 re pryuely wrothe / that the kynge wold departe ſo ſodenly but
 the kynge by no meane wold abyde / but made wrytyng vn-
 25 to them that were not there / and bad them hye after hym fu-
 che as were not at that tyme in the Courte / Thenne the kynge
 came to quene gweneuer and ſayd lady make yow redy / for
 ye ſhall goo with me / for I may not longe myſſe yow / ye ſhal
 cauſe me to be the more hardy / what auenture ſo beſalle me / I
 30 wille not wete my lady to be in no ieopardy / Sire ſaid ſhe I
 am at your commaundement / and ſhalle be redy what tyme ſo
 ye be redy / So on the morne the kynge and the quene departed
 with fuche ſelaufhip as they hadde / and came in to the Northe
 in to a foreſt beſyde humber and there lodged hem
 35 ¶ Whanne the word & tydyng came vnto the fyue kynges

[leaf 60 verso]

aboue fayd that Arthur was befyde humber in a foreste there
 was a knyght broder vnto one of the fyue kynges that gaf
 hem this counceille / ye knowe wel that fyre Arthur hath the
 floure of Chyualrye of the world with hym as it is preued
 by the grete bataille he dyd with the xj kynges / And therfor 5
 hye vnto hym nyghte and daye tyl that we be nyghe hym / for
 the lenger he taryeth the bygger he is / and we euer the waiker
 And he is so couragious of hym self that he is come to the fel-
 de with lytel peple / And therefore lete vs set vpon hym or day
 and we shalle flee doune of his knyghtes ther shal none esca- 10
 pe

¶ Capitulum Tercium

WN to this counceille thefe fyue kynges affented / and
 so they passed forth with her hooft thorow Northwalis
 and came vpon Arthur by nyghte and fett vpon his
 hooft as the kynge and his knyghtes were in their paelions 15
 kynge Arthur was vnarmed / and had leid hym to rest with
 hys quene Gweneuer / Sir said fyr kaynus it is not good we
 be vnarmed / we shalle haue no nede said fyre Gawayne and
 Syr Gryflet that laye in a lytel paelione by the kynge /
 With that they herd a grete noyse and many cryed trefon tre- 20
 fon / Allas said kynge Arthur we ben bitrayed / Vnto armes
 felawes thenne he cryed / so they were armed anone at al po-
 yntes / Thenne cam ther a wounded knyghte vnto the kynge &
 faide fyr faue your self and my lady the quene for our hooft
 is destroyed and moche peple of ours slayne / Soo anone the 25
 kynge and the quene and the thre knyghtes took her horfes &
 rode toward humber to passe ouer it / and the water was so ro-
 ugh that they were aferd to passe ouer / Now may ye chefe fayd
 kynge Arthur whether ye wille abyde and take the aduentur
 on this fyde / for and ye be taken / they wille flee yow / It were 30
 me leuer sayd the quene to dye in the water than to falle in
 your enemyes handes & there be slayne / And as they stode soo
 talkyng / fyr kaynus sawe the fyue kynges comynge on horf-
 bak by hem self alone with her speres in her handes euen toward
 hem / loo said fyr kaynus yonder be the fyue kynges / lete vs go 35
 to them and matche hem / that were folly sayd sire gawayne /
 for we are but thre and they ben fyue that is trouthe said fyre
 Gryflet / No force said fyr kay I wille vndertake for two of

them / and thenne may ye thre vndertake for the other thre / and
 ther with al fyr kay lete his hors renne as fast as he myghte
 and strake one of them thorow the shelde / and the body a fa-
 dom that the kynge felle to the erthe stark dede / That sawe fyr
 5 Gawayne and ranne vnto another kyng so hard that he smote
 hym thurgh the body / And ther with all kyng Arthur ran
 to another / and smote hym thurgh the body with a spere that
 he fylle to the erthe dede / Thenne fyr Gryflet ranne vnto the iiij
 kyng and gaf hym fuche a falle that his neck brake / Anone
 10 fyr kay ranne vnto the fyfthe kynge and smote hym so hard
 on the helme that the stroke clafe the helme and the hede to the
 erthe / that was wel stryken sayd kynge Arthur / and wor-
 shipfully haft thow hold thy promesse / therfor I shal honou-
 re the / whyle that I lyue / and ther with all they fet the que-
 15 ne in a barge in to humber / but alweyes quene gweneuer pra-
 yfed fyr kay for his dedes / and sayd what lady that ye loue /
 and she loue yow not ageyne she were gretely to blame / and
 amonge ladyes said the Quene I shalle bere youre noble fa-
 me / for ye spak a grete word and fulfilled it worshipfully
 20 and therwith the quene departed / Thenne the kyng and the
 thre knyghtes rode in to the forest / for there they supposyd to he-
 re of them that were escaped / and there he fond the most par-
 ty of his peple / and told hem all how the fyue kynges were
 dede / and therefore lete vs hold vs to gyders tyll it be day / and
 25 whan their hooft have aspyed that their chyuetayns be slayn
 they wille make fuche dole that they shalle not mowe helpe hem
 self / and ryght so as the kynge said / so it was / for whan they
 fonde the fyue kynges dede / they made fuche dole that they fell
 fro their horses / Ther with all cam kyng Arthur but with a fe-
 30 we peple and flewe on the lyfte hand and on the ryght hand
 that wel nyhe ther escaped no man / but alle were slayne to the
 nombre of xxx M / And whan the bataille was all ended the
 kynge kneled doune and thanked god mekely / and thenne
 he sente for the quene and soone she was come / and she maade
 35 grete Ioye of the ouercomynge of that bataille

¶ Capitulum iiij

THere with alle came one to kynge Arthur / and told
 hym that kyng Pellinore was within thre myle with
 a grete hooft / and he said / go vnto hym and lete hym
 vnderstande how we haue spedde / Soo within a whyle kynge
 Pellinore cam with a grete hooft / and salewed the peple and 5
 the kyng / and ther was grete ioye made on euery syde / Then-
 ne the kyng lete ferche how moche people of his party ther was
 slayne / And ther were founde but lytel past two honderd men
 slayne and viij knyghtes of the table round in their paulions
 Thenne the kyng lete rere and deuyse in the same place there 10
 as the batail was done a faire abbeye and endowed it wyth
 grete lyuelode and lete it calle the Abbey of la beale aduentu-
 re / but whanne somme of them cam in to their Countreyes ther
 of the fyue kynges were kynges and told hem how they were
 slayne / ther was made grete dole / And alle kynge Arthurs 15
 enemyes as the kyng of Northwales and the kynges of the
 North wyfte of the bataille they were passyng heuy / and soo
 the kyng retorned vnto Camelot in hast / And whan he was
 come to Camelot / he called kynge Pellinore vnto hym & sayd
 ye vnderstand wel that we haue losse viij knyghtes of the best 20
 of the table round / and by your aduys we wille chese viij a-
 geyne of the best we may fynde in this Courte / Syr said Pel-
 linore / I shal counceille yow after my conceyte the best / there
 are in your Courte ful noble knyghtes bothe of old & yonge
 And therfor by myn aduys ye shal chese half of the old and 25
 half of the yonge / whiche be the old said kyng Arthur / Syre
 said kynge Pellinore me semeth that kynge Vryence that hath
 wedded your syster Morgan le fay and the kyng of the lake
 and syr Heruyse de reuel a noble knyght / and syr galagars
 the iiij / this is wel deuysed said kyng Arthur and right soo 30
 shal it be / Now whiche are the four yong knyghtes said Arthur
 Syre saide Pellinore the fyrst is syr Gawayne your neuewe
 that is as good a knyght of his tyme / as ony is in this lād
 And the second as me semeth best is fyre Gryflet le fyfe the
 dene that is a good knyght and ful desyrous in armes / and 35
 who may see hym lyue he shal preue a good knyght / And
 the thyrd as me semeth is wel to be one of the knyghtes of the
 round table syr kay the fenefcha for many tymes he hath done

ful worshipfully / And now at your last bataille he dyd full
honourably for to vndertake to flee two kynges / By my hede
said Arthur he is best worthy to be a knyght of the rounde ta-
ble of ony that ye haue reherced / and he had done no more pro-
5 weffe in his lyf dayes

¶ Capitulum Quintum

Now said kynge Pellenore I shalle putte to yow two
knyghtes / and ye shalle chese whiche is moost worthy /
that is Syr Bagdemagus and fyr Tor my sone /
But by cause Syre Tor is my sone I may not prayse hym /
10 but els and he were not my sone / I durst saye that of his a-
ge ther is not in this land a better knyghte than he is nor of
better condicions and lothe to doo ony wronge / and loth to ta-
ke ony wronge / By my hede said Arthur he is a passyng go-
od knyght / as ony ye spak of this day that wote I wel fa-
15 id the kyng / for I haue fene hym preued but he seyth lytyll
and he doth moche more / for I knowe none in al this courte &
he were as wel borne on his moder fyde as he is on your fyde
that is lyke hym of prowesse and of myghte / And therfor I
wille haue hym at this tyme and leue fyr Bagdemagus tyll
20 another tyme / Soo whan they were so chofen by the assente of
alle the barons / Soo were there founden in her fyeges euery
knyghtes names that here are reherced / and so were they fet in
their fyeges / wherof fyr Bagdemagus was wonderly wrothe
that fyr Tor was auaunced afore hym / and therefore sodenly
25 he departed from the Courte and toke his squyer with hym / &
rode longe in a forest tyll they came to a crosse and there alyzt
and sayd his prayers deuoutely / The meane whyle his squyer
founde wryten vpon the crosse that Bagdemagus shold ne-
uer retorne vnto the Courte ageyne / tyll he had wonne a kny-
30 tes body of the round table body for body / lo fyr said his squy-
er / here I fynde wrytyng of yow / therfor I rede yow retorne
ageyne to the Courte / that shalle I neuer said Bagdemagus
by men speke of me grete worship / and that I be worthy to
be a knyghte of the round table / and soo he rode forthe / And
35 ther by the way he founde a braüche of an holy herbe that was
the fygne of the Sancgraill / and no knyght founde fuche to-
kens but he were a good lyuer / So as sir Bagdemagus rode

to see many adventures / it happed hym to come to the roche / ther
 as the lady of the lake had put Merlyn vnder the stone / and
 there he herde hym make grete dole / wherof fyre Bagdemagus
 wold haue holpen hym and wente vnto the grete stone / and
 he was so heuy that an C men myght not lyfte hyt vp / whan 5
 Merlyn wyfte he was there he bad leue his labour / for al was
 in vayne / for he myght neuer be holpen but by her that put hym
 ther / and so Bagdemagus departed and dyd many auentu-
 res and preued after a full good knyght / and came ageyne
 to the Courte and was made knyght of the round table / So 10
 on the morne ther felle newe tydynges and other auentures

¶ Capítulum Sextum

THenne it befelle that Arthur and many of his knygh-
 tes rode on huntynge in to a grete forest / and it hap-
 ped kyng Arthur / kyng Vryens and fyr Accolon of gaulle
 folowed a grete herte for they thre were wel horfed / and soo 15
 they chaced so fast that within a whyle they thre were thenne
 x myle from her felaufhip / And at the last they chaced so fore
 that they slewe theyr hores vnderne the them / thenne were they
 al thre on foote / and euer they sawe the herte afore them pas-
 syng wery and enbuffed / What wille we doo said kyng ar-
 thur we are hard bestad / lete vs goo on foote said kyng Vry-
 ens tyl we may mete with some lodgyng / Thenne were they
 ware of the herte that lay on a grete water banke / and a bra-
 chet bytyng on his throte and mo other houndes cam after /
 Thenne kyng Arthur blewe the pryse and dyghte the herte / 25
 Thenne the kyng loked aboute the world / and sawe afore
 hym in a grete water a lytel ship al apparailled with fylke
 doune to the water / and the ship cam ryghte vnto hem and lā-
 ded on the sandes / Thenne Arthur wente to the banke & loked
 in / and sawe none erthely creature therin / Sirs said the kyng 30
 come thens / and lete vs see what is in this ship / Soo they
 wente in al thre and founde hit rychely behanged with clothe
 of fylke / By thenne it was derke nyghte / and there sodenly
 were aboute them an C torches sette vpon alle the fydes of the
 ship bordes and it gaf grete lyghte / And ther with all there 35

cam out twelue fayr damoyfels and falewed kyng Arthur
 on her knees and called hym by his name / and sayd he was
 rygght welcome / and fuche chere as they had he shold haue of
 the best / the kyng thanked hem fayre / There with all they lad
 5 the kyng and his two felawes in to a faire chambre / and ther
 was a clothe leyd rychely bysene of al that longed vnto a ta-
 bel / and there were they serued of al wynes and metes that
 they coude thynke / of that the kyng had grete merueille / for
 he ferd neuer better in his lyf as for one souper / And so when
 10 they had souped at her leyser / kyng Arthur was ledde vnto a
 chamber / a rycher besene chamber sawe he neuer none / and soo
 was kyng Vryens serued / and ledde in to fuche another chā-
 byr / and fyr Accolon was ledde in to the thyrd chamber pas-
 syng rychely and wel bysene / and so were they layde in the-
 15 ire beddes easly / And anone they felle on slepe / and slepte
 merueilloufly fore all the nyght / And on the morowe kyng
 Vryens was in Camelott abed in his wyues armes Morgan
 le fay / And whan he awoke / he had grete merueyle / how he
 cam there / for on the euen afore he was two dayes Iourney frō
 20 Camelot / And whan kyng Arthur awoke he found hym self
 in a derke pryson herynge aboute hym many complayntes of
 woful knyghtes

¶ Capitulum Septimum

What are ye that soo complayne said kyng Arthur /
 we ben here xx knyghtes prysoners sayd they / & some
 25 of vs haue layne here seuē yere and somme more and somme
 laffe / for what cause sayd Arthur / we shalle telle yow said the
 knyghtes / this lord of this castel his name is fyr Damas / &
 he is the falsest knyght that lyueth / and ful of treason / and a
 very coward as ony lyueth / and he hath a yonger broder a
 30 good knyghte of prowesse / his name is fyr Ontzlake / and
 this traytour Damas the elder broder wylle gyue hym noo
 parte of his lyelode / But as fyre Ontzlake kepeth thorow
 prowesse of his handes / and so he kepeth from hym a ful fair
 maner and a ryche and therin fyre Ontzlake dwelleth wor-
 35 shipfully / and is wel biloued of al peple / & this fyre Damas
 our maister is as euyl beloued for he is without mercy / and

he is acoward / and grete werre hath ben betwyxe them bothe /
but Ontzlake hath euer the better / and euer he profereth fyre
Damas to fyghte for the lyuelode body for body / but he wylle
not doo / other els to fynde a knyghte to fyghte for hym / Vnto
that fyr Damas hath graunted to fynde a knyghte / but he is 5
so euyl byloued and hated / that there nys neuer a knyghte
wylle fyghte for hym / And whan Damas sawe this that ther
was neuer a knyght / wold fyghte for hym / he hath daily layn
a wayte with many knyghtes with hym / and taken alle the
knyghtes in this countrey to see and aspye her auentures / he 10
hath taken hem by force and broughte hem to his pryson / and
so he tooke vs feueratly as we rode on oure auentures / & many
good knyghtes haue dyed in this pryson for hongre to the nom-
bre of xviij knyghtes / And yf ony of vs alle that here is or
hath ben wold haue foughten with his broder Ontzlake / he 15
wold haue delyuerd vs / but for by cause this Damas is so
fals and so ful of treason we wold neuer fyghte for hym to
dye for it / And we be soo lene for hongre that vnnethe we
may stande on oure feete / god delyuer yow for his mercy sayd
Arthur / Anone there with alle ther cam a damoyfel vnto 20
Arthur / and asked hym what chere / I can not say sayd he / fir
sayd she and ye wylle fyghte for my lord ye shal be delyuerd
oute of pryson / and els ye escape neuer the lyf / Now sayd
Arthur that is hard / yet had I leuer to fyghte with a kny-
ght than to dye in pryson / With this said Arthur I may be de- 25
lyuerd and alle these prysoners I wylle doo the batail / yes
said the damoyfel / I am redy sayd Arthur and I had hors
and armour / ye shalle lacke none said the damoyfel / Me semeth
damoyfel I shold haue sene yow in the Courte of Arthur /
Nay said the damoyfel I cam neuer there / I am the lordes do- 30
ughter of this castel / yet was she fals for she was one of the
damoyfels of Morgan le fay / Anone she wente vnto fyr Da-
mas and told hym how he wold doo bataille for hym / and so
he sente for Arthur / And whan he cam he was wel coloured
and wel made of his lymmes / that al knyghtes that sawe hym 35
said it were pyte that suche a knyghte shold dye in pryson / soo
fyr Damas and he were agreed that he shold fyghte for hym
vpon this couenaunt that all other knyghtes shold be delyuerd

And vnto that was fyr Damas fworne vnto Arthur / and
also to doo the bataille to the vttermest / And with that all the
xx knyghtes were brought oute of the derke pryson in to the
halle and delyuerd / and so they all abode to see the bataille

¶ Capitulum Octauum

5 **N**ow torne we vnto Accolon of Gaulle that whanne he
awoke / he found hym self by a depe welle syde within
half a foote in grete perylle of dethe / And there cam oute of
that fontayne a pype of syluer / and oute of that pype ranne
water all on hyhe in a stone of marbel / whan fyre Accolon fa-
10 we this / he blessing hym and sayd Ihesu saue my lorde kyng
Arthur and kynge Vryens / for these damoyfels in this ship
haue bitrayed vs / they were deuyls and noo wymmen / And
yf I may escape this misaventure / I shalle destroye all where
I may fynde these fals damoyfels that vsen enchaüementys /
15 ¶ Ryght with that ther cam a dwarf with a grete mouthe &
a flat nose and fawed fyre Accolon and said how he came
from Quene Morgan le fay / and she greteth yow wel / and
byddeth yow be of strong herte / for ye shal fyzte to morne with
a knyghte at the houre of pryme / And therefore she hath sente
20 yow here Excalibur Arthurs swerd and the scaubard / and
she byddeth yow as ye loue her that ye doo batail to the vt-
termest without ony mercy lyke as ye had promysed her whā
ye spake to gyder in pryete / And what damoyfel that bryn-
geth her the knyghtes hede whiche ye shal fyghte with al / she
25 wille make her a quene / Now I vnderstand yow wel sayd
Accolon / I shalle holde that I haue promysed her now I ha-
ue the swerd / whan sawe ye my lady Quene Morgan le fay
Ryghte late sayd the dwarf / thenne Accolon tooke hym in
his armes / and said recommaunde me vnto my lady Quene /
30 and telle her all shal be done that I haue promysed her / and
els I wille dye for hit / Now I suppose said Accolon she hath
made alle these craftes and enchaunement for this bataille /
ye may wel bileue it said the dwarf / Ryzt so there cam a kny-
ghte and a lady with fyxe squyers / and fawed Accolon /
35 and prayd hym for to aryse and come and reste hym at his

maner / and so Accolon mounted vpon a voyde hors / & wente
 with the knyghte vnto a fayre maner by a pryory / and there
 he had passyng good chere / Thenne fyr Damas sente vnto his
 broder fyr Ontzelake / and badde make hym redy by to morne
 at the houre of pryme / and to be in the felde to fyghte wyth a 5
 a good knyght / for he had founden a good knyght that was redy
 to doo bataill at all poyntes / whan this word cam vnto fyr
 Ontzelake / he was passyng heuy / for he was wounded a ly-
 tel to fore thorow bothe his thyes with a spere / and made gre-
 te dole / But as he was wounded he wold haue taken the ba- 10
 taille on hand / Soo it happed at that tyme by the meanes of
 Morgan le fay Accolon was with fyr Ontzelake lodged / and
 whan he herd of that bataille and how Ontzelake was wou-
 ded / he sayd that he wold fyghte for hym by cause Morgan le
 fey had sente hym Excalibur and the shethe for to fyzte with 15
 the knyght on the morne / This was the cause fyr Accolon to-
 ke the bataille on hand / thenne fyre Ontzelake was passyng
 glad / and thāked fyr Accolon with alle his herte that he wold
 do so moche for hym / & ther with al fyr Ontzelake sente word
 vnto his broder fyre Damas / that he had a knygte þ^t for hym 20
 shold be redy in the felde by the houre of pryme / Soo on the
 morne fyr Arthur was armed and wel horfed / and asked
 fyr Damas whan shalle we to the felde / fyr said fyr Damas
 ye shalle here masse / and so Arthur herd a masse / And whan
 masse was done / there cam a squyer on a grete hors & asked 25
 fyr Damas yf his knyght were redy / for oure knyght is redy
 in the felde / Thenne fyre Arthur mounted vpon horsbak / &
 there were alle the knyghtes and comyns of that countrey / &
 so by alle aduyses ther were chofen xij good men of the coun-
 trey for to wayte vpon the two knyghtes / And ryght as Ar- 30
 thur was on horsbak / ther cam a damoisel from Morgan le fey
 and broughte vnto fyr Arthur a fwerd lyke vnto Excalibur /
 and the scaubard / and sayd vnto Arthur Morgan le fey fen-
 deth here your fwerd for grete loue / and he thanked her / & wen-
 de it had ben so / but she was fals / for the fwerd and the scau- 35
 bard was counterfeet & brutyll and fals

¶ Capitulum ix

ANd thenne they dresfyd hem on bothe partyes of the
felde / & lete their horses renne so fast that eyther smote
other in the myddes of the shelde / with their speres he-
de / that bothe hors and man wente to the erthe / And thenne
5 they sterte vp bothe / and pulled oute their swerdys / the mea-
ne whyle that they were thus at the bataille cam the damoyfel
of the lake in to the felde / that put Merlyn vnder the stone / &
she cam thydder for loue of kynge Arthur / for she knewe how
Morgan le fay had soo ordeyned / that kynge Arthur shold
10 haue ben slayne that daye / and therfor she cam to saue his lyf
And so they went egrely to the bataille / and gaf many grete
strokes / but alweyes Arthurs swerd bote not lyke Accolon
swerd / But for the most party euery stroke that Accolon gaf
he wounded fore Arthur / that it was merueylle he stode / And
15 alweyes his blood fylle from hym fast / whan Arthur beheld
the ground so fore bebledde he was defmayed / and thenne he de-
med treason that his swerd was chaunged / for his swerd
boote not styl as it was wonte to do / therfor he dredde hym so
re to be dede / for euer hym semed that the swerd in Accolons
20 hand was Excalibur / for at euery stroke that Accolon stroke
he drewe blood on Arthur / Now knyghte said Accolon vnto
Arthur kepe the wel from me / but Arthur ansuerd not age-
yne / and gaf hym fuche a buffet on the helme that he made hym
to stoupe nygh fallynge doune to the erthe / Thenne fyr Acco-
25 lon withdrew hym a lytel / and cam on with Excalibur on
hyghe / and smote fyr Arthur fuche a buffet that he felle nyhe
to the erthe / Thenne were they wroth bothe / and gaf eche other
many fore strokes / but alweyes fyr Arthur lost so moche blo-
od that it was merueille he stode on his feet / but he was soo
30 ful of knyghthode that knyghtly he endured the payne / And
fyr Accolon lost not a dele of blood / therfor he waxt passynge
lyghte / and fyr Arthur was passynge feble / and wende very-
ly to haue dyed / but for al that he made countenaunce as tho-
ugh he myghte endure / and helde Accolon as shorte as he my-
35 ght / But Accolon was so bolde by cause of Excalibur that he
waxed passynge hardy / But alle men that beheld hym sayd
they sawe neuer knyghte fyghte so wel as Arthur dyd confy-
deryng the blood that he bled / Soo was all the peple sory for

hym / but the two bretheren wold not accorde / thenne alweyes
 they fought to gyders as fyers knyghtes / and fyre Arthur
 withdrewe hym a lytel for to reſte hym / and fyre Accolon cal-
 led hym to bataille and ſaid it is no tyme for me to ſuffre the
 to reſte / And therwith he cam fyerſly vpon Arthur / and fyre 5
 Arthur was wrothe for the blood that he had loſt / and ſmote
 Accolon on hyhe vpon the helme ſoo myztely that he made hym
 nyhe to falle to the erthe / And therwith Arthurs ſwerd braſt
 at the croſſe and felle in the graſſe amonge the blood and the
 pomel and the ſure handels he helde in his handes / When fyr ar- 10
 thur ſawe that / he was in grete fere to dye / but alweyes he hel-
 de vp his ſhelde and loſt no ground nor bated no chere /

¶ Capitulum x

THenne fyre Accolon beganne with wordes of treaſon
 and ſayd knyghte thow arte ouercome / and maxſte
 not endure and alſo thow arte wepenles / and thow haſt loſte 15
 moche of thy blood / and I am ſul lothe to flee the / therfor yel-
 de the to me as recreaunt / Nay ſaide fyre Arthur I maye not
 ſo / for I haue promyſed to doo the bataille to the vttermoſt by
 the feythe of my body whyle me laſteth the lyf / and therfor I
 had leuer to dye with honour than to lyue with ſhame / And 20
 yf it were poſſyble for me to dye an C tymes I had leuer to
 dye ſo ofte / than yelde me to the / for though I lacke wepen / I
 ſhalle lacke no worſhip / And yf thow flee me wepenles that
 ſhalle be thy ſhame / wel ſayd Accolon as for the ſhame I wyl
 not ſpare / Now kepe the from me for thow arte but a dede mā 25
 And therwith Accolon gaf hym ſuche a ſtroke that he felle ny-
 ghe to the erthe / and wolde haue had Arthur to haue cryed
 hym mercy / But fyre Arthur preſſed vnto Accolon with his
 ſheld / and gaf hym with the pomel in his hand ſuche a buſ-
 fet that he went thre ſtrydes abak / whan the damoiſel of the la- 30
 ke beheld arthur / how ful of prowefſe his body was & the fals
 trefon that was wrouzt for hym to haue had hym ſlayn ſhe had
 grete pyte that ſo good a knyzt & ſuche a mā of worſhip ſhold
 ſo be deſtroyed / And at the next ſtroke fyr Accolon ſtroke hym
 ſuche a ſtroke that by the damoyſels enchauntement the ſwerd 35
 Excalibur felle oute of Accolons hande to the erthe / And
 therwith alle Syre Arthur lyghtely lepte to hit / and gate hit

in his hand / and forthwith al he knewe that it was his fuerd
 Excalibur / & fayd thow haft ben from me al to long / & moche
 dommage haft thow done me / & ther with he aspyed the scau-
 bard hangynge by his fyde / and sodenly he sterte to hym and
 5 pulled the scaubard from hym and threwe hit fro hym as fer
 as he myghte throwe hit / O knyghte faide Arthur this daye
 haft thow done me grete dommage with this fwerd / Now are
 ye come vnto your dethe / for I shalle not waraunt yow but
 ye shalle as wel be rewarded with this fwerde or euer we de-
 10 parte as thow haft rewarded me / for moche payne haue ye ma-
 de me to endure / and moche blood haue I lost / And therwith
 fyr Arthur ruffhed on hym with alle his myghte and pulled
 hym to the erthe / and thēne ruffhed of his helme / and gaf hym
 suche a buffet on the hede that the blood cam oute at his eres /
 15 his nose & his mouthe / Now wylle I flee the said Arthur /
 Slee me ye may wel said Accolon and it please yow / for ye ar
 the best knyghte that euer I fonde / and I fee wel that god is
 with yow / But for I promysed to do this batail said Acco-
 lon to the vttermest and neuer to be recreaunt whyle I lyued
 20 therfore shal I neuer yelde me with my mouthe / but god doo
 with my body what he wyll / ¶ Thenne fyr Arthur remembrid
 hym and thoughte he shold haue sene this knyghte / Now telle
 me said Arthur or I wylle flee the / of what cōtrey art thou
 and of what courte / Syre knyghte sayd fyr Accolon I am of
 25 the courte of kynge Arthur / & my name is Accolon of gaulle
 Thenne was Arthur more desmayed than he was before hand
 For thenne he remembryd hym of his syster Morgan le fay /
 and of the enchaument of the ship / O fyre knyghte sayd he
 I pray yow telle me who gaf yow this fwerd and by whom
 30 ye had it /

¶ Capitulum xi

Thenne fyre Accolon bethouzte hym and said wo worth
 this fwerd / for by hit haue I gotten my dethe / it may
 wel be / said the kynge / Now fyre said Accolon I wil
 telle yow this fwerd hath ben in my kepynge the moost party
 35 of this twelue moneth / And Morgan le fay kynge Vryens
 wyf sente it me yester daye by a dwerf to this entente that I
 shold flee kynge Arthur her broder / For ye shall vnderstand

entente to flee kyng Arthur her broder / for ye shal vnderstand
 kyng Arthur is the man in the world that she moost hateth
 by cause he is moost of worship and of prowesse of ony of her
 blood / Also she loueth me oute of mesure as paramour / and I
 her ageyne / And yf she myghte brynge aboute to flee Arthur 5
 by her craftes / she wold flee her husband kyng Vryens ly-
 ghtely / And thenne hadde she me deuysed to be kyng in this
 land / and soo to regne / and she to be my quene / but that is
 now done faide Accolon / for I am sure of my dethe wel sayd
 fyre Arthur / I fele by yow ye wold haue ben kyng in this 10
 land / It had ben grete dommage to haue destroyed your lord
 sayd Arthur / it is trouthe said Accolon / but now I haue told
 yow trouthe / wherfore I praye yow telle me of whens ye are
 and of what courte / O Accolon sayd kyng Arthur now I
 lete the wete / that I am kyng Arthur to whome thou haste 15
 done grete dommage / Whanne Accolon herd that / he cryed on
 lowde fayre swete lord haue mercy on me / for I knewe not
 yow / O fyr Accolon sayd kyng Arthur mercy shalt thou
 haue / by cause I fele by thy wordes at this tyme / thou know-
 west not my persone / But I vnderstand wel by thy wordes 20
 that thou hast agreed to the dethe of my persone / and therfore
 thou arte a traytour / but I wyte the the lasse / for my fyter
 Morgan le fay by her fals craftes made the to agree and con-
 sente to her fals lustes / but I shalle be fore auengyd vpon
 her and I lyue that alle Crystendome shalle speke of it / god 25
 knoweth / I haue honoured her and worshipped her more than
 alle my kynne / and more haue I trusted her than myn owne
 wyf and alle my kynne after /

¶ Thenne fyr Arthur called the kepars of the felde and said
 Syrs cometh hyder / for here are we two knyghtes that haue 30
 foughten vnto a grete dommage vnto us both / and lyke echone
 of vs to haue slayne other / yf it had happed soo / And hadde
 ony of vs knowen other / here had ben no bataille / nor stroke
 stryken

¶ Thenne al a lowde cryed Accolon
 vnto alle the knyghtes and men that were thēne there gadred 35
 to gyder / and sayd to them in this manere / O lordes this noble
 knyghte that I haue foughten with all / the whiche me fore
 repenteth is the mooste man of prowesse of manhode and of

worship in the world / for it is hym self kynge Arthur our al
ther liege lord & with myshap and with mysaüeture have I do-
ne this bataill with the kyng and lord that I am holden with
all

¶ Capitulum xij

- 5 **T** Henne alle the peple felle doune on her knees and cry-
ed kynge Arthur mercy / mercy shalle ye haue sayd
Arthur / here maye ye see what auentures befallen oftyme of
erraunte knyghtes how that I haue foughten with a knyght
of myn owne vnto my grete dommage and his bothe /
- 10 But fyrs by cause I am fore hurte and he bothe / and I had
grete nede of a lytel rest / ye shalle vnderstande the oppynyon
betwixe yow two bretheren as to the fyre Damas / for whom
I haue ben champion and wonne the feld of this knyghte /
yet wylle I luge by cause ye fyre Damas are called an orgu-
15 lous knyghte and full of vylony and not worthe of prowesse
of youre dedes / therfor I wylle that ye gyue vnto your bro-
der alle the hole manoir with the appertenaüce vnder thys for-
me / that sir Ontzelake hold the manoir of yow / and yerely to
gyue yow a palfrey to ryde vpon / for that wylle become yow
20 better to ryde on than vpon a courser / Also I charge the fyre
Damas vpon payne of deth / that thow neuer destresse no kny-
tes erraunte that ryde on their aduenture / And also that thow
restore these xx knyghtes that thow hast longe kepte prysoners
of all their harneis that they be content for / and yf any of hem
25 come to my court and complayne of the / by my hede thou shalt
dye therefore / Also fyre Ontzelake as to yow by cause ye are
named a good knyghte and ful of prowesse and true and
gentyll in all your dedes this shalle be youre charge I wylle
gyue yow that in al goodely haste ye come vnto me and my
30 courte and ye shalle be a knyghte of myne / and yf your dedes
be there after I shall so proferre yow by the grace of god that
ye shalle in shorte tyme be in ease for to lyue as worshipfully
as your broder fyre Damas / God thanke your largeness of
your goodenes & of your bounte / I shall be from hens forward
35 at all tymes at your commaundement / For syr said syr Ontze-
lake as god wold as I was hurte but late with an aduen-
tures knyght thurgh both my thyes that greued me fore / & els

had I done this bataille with yow / god wold fayd Arthur
 it had ben so / for thenne had not I ben hurte as I am / I
 shalle telle you the cause why / for I had not ben hurte as I
 am hadde not ben myne owne swerd / that was stolen from
 me by treason / And this bataille was ordeyned afore hand to 5
 haue slayne me / and so it was brouzte to the purpos by fals
 treason and by fals enchauntement / Allas said fyr Ontzela-
 ke that is greeete pyte that euer soo noble a man as ye are of
 your dedes and prowesse / that ony man or woman myzt fyn-
 de in their hertes to worche ony treason ageynst yow / I shalle 10
 reward them said Arthur in short tyme by the grace of god
 Now telle me said Arthur how fer am I from Camelot / fyr ye
 are two dayes iourney ther fro / I wold fayn be at some pla-
 ce of worship said fyr Arthur that I myghte rešte me / Syre
 said fyr Ontzelake / here by is a ryche abbey of your elders fou- 15
 dacyon of Nonnes but thre myle hens / So the kynge took his
 leue of alle the peple / and mounted vpon horsbak / and fir Ac-
 colon with hym / And whan they were come to the Abbaye / he
 lete fetche leches and ferche his woundes and Accolons bothe /
 but fyr Accolon dyed within four dayes / for he had bled soo 20
 moche blood that he myghte not lyue / but kyng Arthur was
 wel recouerd / Soo whan Accolon was dede / he lete fende hym
 on a horsbere with fyxe knyghtes vnto Camelot / and said / be-
 re hym to my fyfter Morgan le fay / and fay that I fende her
 hym to a prefente / and telle her I haue my swerd Excalibur 25
 and the scaubard / soo they departed with the body

¶ Capitulum xiii

THe meane whyle Morgan le fay hadde wend kyng
 Arthur had been dede / soo on a day she aspyed kyng
 Vryens lay in his bedde slepyng / thenne she called vnto her a
 mayden of her counceyll / & said go fetche me my lordes swerd 30
 for I sawe neuer better tyme to flee hym than now /

¶ O Madame said the damoyfel / and ye flee my lord ye can
 neuer escape / Care not yow said Morgan le fay / for now I
 see my tyme in the whiche it is best to doo hit / And therfor hye
 the fast and fetche me the swerd / Theñe the damoifel departed 35

fonde fyre Vwayne slepynge vpon a bedde in another chamber
 soo she wente vnto fyre Vwayne and awaked hym / and badde
 hym aryse and wayte on my lady youre moder / for she wille
 flee the kynge your fader slepynge in his bedde / for I goo to
 5 fetcche his fwerd / wel said fyr Vwayne go on your waye / and
 lete me dele / Anone the damoyfel brought Morgan the fwerd
 with quakyng handes / and lyghtely took the fwerd / & pul-
 led it out / and wente boldely vnto the beddes fyde / and away-
 ted how and where she myght sle hym best / And as she lyfte
 10 vp the fwerd to smyte / fyr Vwayne lepte vnto his moder and
 caughte her by the hand and sayd A fende what wilt thou do
 And thou were not my moder with this fwerd I shold smy-
 te of thy hede / A sayd fyr Vwayn men faith that Merlyn was
 begoten of a deuylle / but I may faye an erthely deuylle bare
 15 me / O fayre sone Vwayne haue mercy vpon me / I was temp-
 ted with a deuylle / wherfore I crye the mercy / I wylle neuer
 more doo soo and faue my worship and discouer me not / On
 this couenaunt said fyr Vwayne I wille forgyue it yow / soo
 ye wille neuer be aboute to doo fuche dedes / Nay sone said she / &
 20 that I make yow affurance /

¶ Capitulum xiiii

T Henne came tydynges vnto Morgan le fay that Ac-
 colon was dede / and his body brought vnto the chirche
 And how kynge Arthur had his fwerd ageyne /
 But whanne Quene Morgan wyfte that Accolon was dede /
 25 she was soo sorouful that nere hir herte to braft / But by cause
 she wold not it were knowen / oute ward she kepte her counte-
 ce **naun** / & maade no semblaunt of sorowe / But wel she wyfte
 and she abode tyll her broder Arthur cam thyder / there shold
 no gold goo for her lyf
 30 ¶ Thenne she wente vnto Quene Gweneuer / and asked her
 leue to ryde in to the countreye / ye maye abyde sayde Quene
 Gweneuer tyll youre brother the kynge come home / I maye
 not sayde Morgan le fay / for I haue fuche hasty tydynges /
 that I may not tary / wel saide Gueneuer ye maye departe

whanne ye wille / Soo erly on the morne or hit was daye she
 tooke her hors and rode alle that daye and moofte parte of the
 nyghte / And on the morn by none she cam to the same Abbay
 of Nonnes / where as lay kyng arthur / & she knowyng he was
 there she asked where he was / And they anfuerd how he had
 leyd hym in his bed to slepe / for he had had but lytel reſte theſe 5
 thre nyghtes / Wel ſaid ſhe I charge yow that none of yow
 awake hym tyl I doo / and thenne ſhe alyghte of her hors / &
 thoughte for to ſtele away Excalibur his ſwerd / and ſoo ſhe
 wente ſtreighte vnto his chamber / And noo man durſte dyſ- 10
 obeye her commaundement / and there ſhe fond Arthur a ſlepe
 in his bedde and Excalibur in his ryght hand naked / Whan
 ſhe ſawe that ſhe was paſſyng heuy that ſhe myghte not co-
 me by the ſwerd withoute ſhe had awaked hym / and thenne
 ſhe wyſt wel ſhe had ben dede / Thenne ſhe tooke the ſcaubard 15
 and wente her wey on horſbak / whan the kynge awoke and
 myſſed his ſcaubard / he was wrothe / and he asked who had
 ben there / and they ſaid his ſyſter quene Morgan had ben ther
 and had put the ſcaubard vnder her mantel and was gone /
 Allas ſayd Arthur falſly ye haue watched me / Syre ſayd 20
 they alle we durſte not diſobeye your ſyſters commaundement
 A ſaid the kynge lete ſetche the beſt hors maye be founde / And
 byd ſyre Ontzlake arme hym in al haſt / and take another go-
 od hors and ryde with me / Soo anone the kynge and Ontze-
 lake were wel armed / and rode after this lady / and ſoo they 25
 cam by a croſſe and found a Cowherd / and they asked the
 poure man yf ther cam ony lady rydyng that way / Syre
 ſaid this poure man / ryght late cam a lady rydyng with a xl
 horſes / and to yonder foreſt ſhe rode / Thenne they ſpored their
 horſes / and folowed faſt / And within a whyle Arthur had 30
 a fyghte of Morgan le fay / thenne he chaced as faſt as he my-
 ghte / whanne ſhe aſpyed hym ſolowyng her / ſhe rode a gretter
 paas thorowe the foreſt tyl ſhe cam to a playne / And whanne
 ſhe ſawe ſhe myghte not eſcape ſhe rode vnto a lake ther by / &
 ſayd what ſoo euer come of me / my broder ſhall not haue this 35
 ſcaubard / And thenne ſhe lete throwe the ſcaubard in the de-
 peſt of the water ſoo it ſanke / for it was heuy of gold and pre-
 cious ſtones

¶ Thenne ſhe rode in to a valeye

where many grete stones were / And whan she sawe she muste
 be ouertake she shope her self hors and man by enchauntemēt
 vnto a grete marbyl stone / Anone with al cam Syr Arthur /
 and fyr Ontzelake where as the kynge myght knowe his fyf-
 5 ter and her men / and one knyght from another / A sayd the
 kynge here may ye see the vengeaunce of god / & now am I
 sory that this myfauenture is befallē / & thenne he loked for the
 scaubard / but it wold not be founde / so he retorned to the Ab-
 beye there he came fro / So whan Arthur was gone / she torned
 10 alle in to the lykenesse as she and they were before / and sa-
 yd fyrs now may we goo where we wylle /

¶ Capitulum xv

THenne said Morgan sawe ye Arthur my broder / ye fa-
 id her knyghtes ryght wel / and that ye shold haue
 founde and we myghte haue stered from one stede / for by his
 15 armyuestal contenaunce he wold haue caused vs to have fled
 I byleue yow said Morgan / Anone after as she rode she met
 a knyght ledyng another knyzt on his hors before hym boun-
 de hand and foote blyndefeld to haue drowned hym in a fon-
 tayne / whan she sawe this knyzt so boude / she asked hym what
 20 wylle ye doo with that knyght / lady said he I wylle drowne
 hym / for what cause she asked / for I fonde hym with my wyf
 and she shalle haue the same dethe anone / that were pyte sayd
 Morgan le fay / Now what saye ye knyzt is it trouthe þ^t he fa-
 ith of yow she said to the knyght that shold be drowned / nay
 25 truly madame he seith not ryght on me / Of whens be ye sayd
 Morgan le fay and of what cowntre / I am of the Courte of
 kynge Arthur / and my name is Manassen cosyn vnto Acco-
 lon of gaulle / ye fay wel said she / and for the loue of hym ye
 shalle be delyuerd / and ye shalle haue your aduersary in the
 30 same caas ye be in / So Manessen was lofed & the other kny-
 ght bounde / And anone Manessen vnarmed hym and armed
 hym self in his harneis / and soo mounted on horsbak / and the
 knyght afore hym and soo threwe hym in to the fontayne and
 drowned hym / And thenne he rode vnto Morgan ageyne / &
 35 asked yf she wold ony thyng vnto kynge Arthur / Telle hym
 that I rescued the / not for the loue of hym but for the loue of
 Accolon / and telle hym I fere hym not whyle I can make me

and them that ben with me in lykenes of stones / And lete
 hym wete I can doo more whan I fee my tyme / And
 so she departed in to the countrey of Gorre / and there was she
 rychely receyued / and maade her castels and townes passyng
 stronge / for alweyes she drad moche kyng Arthur / Whanne 5
 the kyng had wel rested hym at the Abbey he rode vnto Ca-
 melot / and fonde his quene and his barons ryght glad of his
 comynge / And whan they herd of his straunge auentures as
 is afore reherced / they alle hadde merueille of the falshe-
 dede of Morgan le fay / many knyghtes wysshed her brent / thenne cam 10
 Manessen to courte and told the kyng of his auenture / well
 said the kyng she is a kynde syster / I shalle soo be auengid
 on her and I lyue / that alle Crystendome shalle speke of hit /
 So on the morne ther cam a damoysel from Morgan to the ky-
 nge and she brought with her the rycheft mantel that euer was 15
 sene in that Courte / for it was fette as ful of precious stones
 as one myght stand by another / and there were the rycheft sto-
 nes that euer the kyng sawe / And the damoyfel saide youre
 syster sendeth yow this mantel / and desyreth that ye shold ta-
 ke this gyfte of her / And in what thyng she hath offended you 20
 she wille amende it at youre owne pleasur / whan the kyng be-
 held this mantel it pleasyd hym moche / but he said but lytel

¶ Capitulum xvi

Wyth that came the damoyfel of the lake vnto the kyng
 and said fyr I must speke with yow in pryuyte / fay
 on said the kyng what ye wille / Syr sayd the damoyfel put 25
 not on yow this mantel tyl ye haue sene more / and in no wy-
 se lete it not come on yow nor on no knyghte of yours tyl ye
 commaunde the brynger thereof to put it vpon her / wel said ky-
 nge Arthur / It shalle be done as ye counceille me / And thenne
 he said vnto the damoyfel that cam fro his syster / damoysel this 30
 mantel that ye haue brought me I wille see it vpon yow / fyr
 she said / it wille not biseme me to were a kynges garment / by
 my hede said Arthur / ye shalle were it or it come on my bak or
 ony mans that here is / and so the kyng made it to be putt vp-
 on her / And forth with al she felle doune dede / and neuer more 35

spake word after and brente to coles / Theinne was the kyng
 wonderly wrothe more than he was to fore hand / and fayd
 vnto kynge Vryens my fyfter your wyf is alwey aboute to
 bytraye me / and wel I wote outhur ye or my neuewe youre
 5 fone is of counceille with her to haue me destroyed / But as for
 yow said the kyng to kynge Vryens I deme not gretely that
 ye be of her counceill / For Accolon confessyd to me by his own
 mouth that she wold haue destroyed yow as wel as me ther
 for I hold yow excused / But as for your fone Syr Vwa-
 10 yn I hold hym suspect / therfore I charge yow put hym oute
 of my courte / So fyr Vwayne was discharged / And whanne
 Syr Gawayne wyft that he made hym redy to go with hym / &
 said who so bannyssheth my cosyn germayn / shal bannysshe me
 Soo they two departed / and rode in to a grete forest / and soo
 15 they came to an Abbay of Monkes / and ther were wel lodged
 But whanne the kynge wyft that fyr Gawayne was depar-
 ted from the Courte / ther was made grete forowe amonge alle
 the estates / Now sayd Gaherys Gawayns broder we haue lost
 two good knyghtes for the loue of one / So on the morne they
 20 herd their maffes in the abbay / and so they rode forth tyl that
 they came to a grete forest / thenne was fyr Gawayne ware in
 a valey by a turret xij fayre damoyfels / and two knyghtes ar-
 med on grete horses / and the damoyfels wente to and fro by a
 tree / And thenne was fyr Gawayne ware how ther henge a
 25 whyte shelde on that tree / And euer as the damoyfels cam by
 it / they spytte vpon it / and some threwe myre vpon the sheld /

¶ Capitulum xviij

THenne fyr Gawayne and fyr Vwayne wente and sa-
 lewed them / and asked why they dyd that despyte to
 the shelde / Syrs faiden the damoyfels / we shalle telle yow /
 30 There is a knyght in this couñtre that oweth this whyte sheld
 and he is a passyng good man of his handes / but he hateth al
 ladyes and gentylwymmen / and therfor we doo alle this des-
 pyte to the shelde / I shal say yow said fyr gawayne / hit byse-
 meth euylle a good knyghte to despyse all ladyes and gentil
 35 wymmen / And parauentur though he hate yow he hath somme

And parauenture he loueth in somme other places ladyes and
 gentylwymmen / and to be loued ageyne / and he be fuche a mā
 of prowesse as ye speke of / Now what is his name / fyr sayd
 they / his name is Marhaus the kynges sone of Ireland I
 knowe hym wel sayd fyre Vwayne / he is a passyng good 5
 knyght as ony is on lyue / for I sawe hym ones preued at a
 Iustes where many knyghtes were gadered / and that tyme
 ther myghte no man withstande hym / A fayd fyr Gawayne
 Damoyfels me thynketh ye are to blame / for hit is to suppose /
 he that henge that sheld ther / he wille not be longe ther fro / & 10
 thenne may tho knyghtes matche hym on horsbak / and that
 is more your worship than thus / For I wille abyde no len-
 ger to see a knyghtes sheld dishonoured / And therwith fyre
 Vwayne and Gawayne departed a lytel fro them / And then-
 ne were they ware where fyre Marhaus cam rydyng on a gre- 15
 te hors streyghte toward them / And whanne the xij damoy-
 fels sawe fyr Marhaus they fled in to the turret as they we-
 re wylde so that somme of them felle by the wey / Thenne the
 one of the knyghtes of the Toure dresyd his shelde and said
 on hyghe fyr Marhaus defende the / and soo they ranne to gy- 20
 ders that the knyzt brake his spere on Marhaus / & Marhaus
 smote hym so hard that he brake his neck and the hors back /
 That sawe the other knyght of the turret and dresyd hym to-
 ward Marhaus / and they mette so egrely to gyders that the
 knyght of the Turret was soone smyten doune hors and man 25
 stark dede /

¶ Capitulum xviij

ANd thenne fyre Marhaus rode vnto his shelde / and sa-
 we how it was defowled / and sayd of this despyte I
 am a parte auengyd / But for her loue that gaf me this why-
 te shelde I shalle were the / and hange myn where thow was 30
 and soo he hanged it aboute his neck / Thenne he rode streyght
 vnto fyr Gawayn and to fyr Vwayne / and asked them what
 they dyd there / They anfuerd hym that they cam from kynge
 Arthurs courte for to see auentures / wel sayd fyre Marhaus
 here am I redy an auentures knyghte that wille fulfyll ony 35

aduenture that ye wylle defyre / And soo departed fro them /
 to fetche his raunge / lete hym goo feid fyr Vwayn vnto fyre
 Gawayne / for he is a passynge good knyghte as ony is ly-
 uynge / I wold not by my wille that ony of vs were matched
 5 with hym / Nay said sir Gawayne not so / it were shame to vs
 were he not assayed were he neuer soo good a knyghte / wel
 said fyr Vwayne I wylle assaye hym afore yow / for I am
 more weyker than ye / And yf he smyte me doune / thenne may
 ye reuenge me / soo these two knyghtes cam to gyders with gre-
 10 te raundon that fyr Vwayne smote fyr Marhaus that his spe-
 re brafte in pyeces on the shelde / and Syre Marhaus smote
 hym so fore that hors and man he bare to the erthe / and hurte
 fyre Vwayne on the lyfte syde / Thenne fyr Marhaus torned
 his hors and rode toward Gawayne with his spere / and when
 15 fyr Gawayne sawe that / he dressid his sheld / and they auen-
 tryd their speres / and they cam to gyders with alle the myzte
 of their horses / that eyther knyght smote other so hard in myd-
 des of theyr sheldes / but fyr Gawayns spere brak / but sir mar-
 haus spere helde / And therwith fyre Gawayne and his hors
 20 ruffhed doune to the erthe / And lyghtly fyre Gawayne rose on
 his feet / and pulled out his sward / and dressyd hym toward
 fyr Marhaus on foote / and fyr marhaus sawe that / and pul-
 led oute his sward / and beganne to come to fyr Gawayne on
 horsbak / Syre knyght said fyr gawayn alyzte on foote or els
 25 I wylle flee thy hors / gramercy sayd fyr Marhaus of youre
 gentylnef ye teche me curtosye / for hit is not for one knyzt to
 be on foote / and the other on horsbak / & therwith fyr Mar-
 haus sette his spere ageyne a tree and alyghte and tayed his
 hors to a tree / and dressid his shelde / and eyther cam vnto o-
 30 ther egerly / and smote to gyders with her swardes that her shel-
 des flewe in cantels / and they bryfed their helmes and their
 hauberkes and wounded eyther other / but Syre gawayne fro
 it passed ix of the klok waxed euer stronger and stronger /
 for thenne hit cam to the houre of noone & thryes his myghte
 35 was encreaced / Alle this aspyed fyr Marhaus and had grete
 wonder how his myghte encreaced / and so they wounded other
 passynge fore / And thenne whan it was past noone / and whan
 it drewe toward euensonge fyre gawayns strengthe febled &

waxt passyngge faynte that vnnethes he myght dure ony lenger / and fyr Marhaus was thenne bygger and bygger / fyre knyght said fyr Marhaus / I haue wel felt that ye are a passyngge good knyghte and a merueyllous man of myghte as euer I felt ony / whyle hit lasteth / And oure quarels are not grete / and therfor it were pyte to doo yow hurte / for I fele ye are passyngge feble / A said fyr Gawayn gentyl knyghte ye say the word that I shold say / And therwith they took of their helmes / and eyther kyssed other / and there they fwore to gyders eyther to loue other as bretheren / And fyr Marhaus prayd fyr gawayn to lodge with hym that nyghte / And so they toke their horses / and rode toward fyr Marhaus hous / And as they rode by the wey / fyr knyghte said fyr gawayne I haue merueylle that so valyaunt a man as ye be loue no ladyes ne damoyfels / Syre sayd fyr marhaus they name me wrongfully tho that gyue me that name / but wel I wote it ben the damoyfeles of the Turret that so name me and other sliche as they be / Now shalle I telle yow for what cause I hate them / For they be forcereffes and enchaunters many of them / & be a knyzt neuer so good of his body and ful of prowesse as man may be / they wille make hym a stark coward to haue the better of hym / and this is the pryncipal cause that I hate them & to al good ladyes and gentyl wymmen I owe my seruysse as a knyght ouzte to do / As the book reherceth in frensh thether were many knyghtes that ouermatched fyr gawayne for alle the thryes myghte that he had / Syr Launcelot de lake / fyr Trystrams / fyr Bors de ganys / fyr Percuualle / fyr Pellias & fyr Marhaus / these fixe knyghtes had the better of fyr gawayn Thenne within a lytel whyle they cam to fyr Marhaus place / whiche was in a lytel pryory / and there they alyghte and ladedys and damoyfels vnarmed them / and hastily loked to their hurtes / for they were all thre hurte / and so they had all thre good lodgyngge with fyr Marhaus and good chere / for whan he wyft that they were kyng Arthurs syster fones / he maade them al the chere that lay in his power / and so they foiourned there a vij nyghte / and were wel eafyd of their woundes and at the last departed / Now said fyre Marhaus we wylle not departe soo lyztely / for I wylle brynge you thorow the forest

And rode daye by day wel a feuen dayes or they fond ony a-
 uenture / At the last they cam in to a grete forest that was na-
 med the countreye and foreste of Arroy and the countrey of
 straunge auentures / In this countrey fayd fyr Marhaus cam
 5 neuer knyghte fyn it was crystened / but he fonde straunge
 auentures / and soo they rode / and cam in to a depe valey ful
 of stones / and ther by they sawe a fayr streame of water / abo-
 ue ther by was the hede of the streame a fayr fontayne / & thre
 damoyfels fyttynge therby / And thenne they rode to them / and
 10 eyther fawed other / and the eldest had a garland of gold
 aboute her hede / and she was thre score wynter of age / or more
 and her here was whyte vnder the garland / The second da-
 moyfel was of thyrty wynter of age with a ferkelet of gold
 aboute her hede / The thyrd damoyfel was but xv yere of age /
 15 and a garland of floures aboute her hede / when these knygh-
 tes had soo beholde them / they asked hem the cause why they
 sat at that fontayne / we be here fayd the damoyfels for thys
 cause / yf we may see ony erraunt knyghtes to teche hem vnto
 straunge auentures / and ye be thre knyghtes that seken auen-
 20 tures and we be thre damoyfels / and therfore eche one of yow
 must chese one of vs / And whan ye haue done soo / we wyll
 lede yow vnto thre hyhe wayes / and there eche of yow shal che-
 se a wey and his damoyfel with hym / And this day twelue
 monethe ye must mete here ageyn / and god sende yow your ly-
 25 ues / and there to ye must plyzte your trouthe / this is wel fa-
 id fayd fyr Marhaus

¶ Capitulum xx

Now shalle eueryche of vs chese a damoyfel / I shalle
 telle yow fayd fyre Vwayne I am the yongest and
 moost weykeft of yow bothe / therfor I wyl haue the eldest da-
 30 moyfel / for she hath fene moche and can best helpe me whan I
 haue nede / for I haue moost nede of helpe of yow bothe / Now
 said fyr Marhaus I wyll haue the damoyfel of thyrty wyn-
 ter age for she falleth best to me / wel fayd fyre gawayne / I
 thanke yow for ye haue lefte me the yongest and the fayrest /
 35 and she is moost leuest to me / Thenne euery damoyfel tooke her

[leaf 72 verso]

knyght by the raynes of his brydel / and broughte him to the
 thre wayes / and there was their othe made to mete at the fon-
 tayne that day twelue moneth and they were lyuynge / and
 soo they kyft and departed / and eueryche knyghte sette his la-
 dy behynd hym / and fyr Vwayne took the wey that lay west 5
 And fyr Marhaus took the wey that lay fouth / and fyr ga-
 wayne took the weye that laye northe / Now wyll we begyn-
 ne at fyr gawayne that helde that wey tyll that he cam vnto a
 fayre manoir where dwellyd an old knyghte & a good houf-
 holder / and there fyr Gawayn asked the knyght yf he knewe 10
 ony auentures in that countrey / I shalle shewe yow somme to
 morne sayd the old knyghte / and that merueyllous / Soo on
 the morne they rode in to the forest of aduentures tyl they cam
 to a launde / and ther by they fond a croffe / and as they sto-
 de and houed / ther cam by them the fayrest knyght and the fe- 15
 melyest man that euer they sawe / makynge the grettest dole
 that euer man made / And thenne he was ware of fyr gawa-
 yn and sawed hym and praid god to sende hym moche wor-
 ship / As to that said fyr gawayn gramercy / Also I praye to
 god that he send yow honour and worship / A said the kny- 20
 ghte I may laye that on fyde / for sorowe and shame cometh
 to me after worship /

¶ Capitulum xxi

ANd ther with he passed vnto the one fyde of the laun-
 de / And on the other fyde sawe fyr Gawayne & kny-
 tes that houed styll and make hem redy with her sheldes and 25
 speres ageynst that one knyght that cam by fyr gawayn /
 Thenne this one knyght auntryd a grete spere / and one of
 the x knyghtes encountred with hym / but this woful knyght
 smote hym so hard that he felle ouer his hors taylle / So this
 fame dolorous knyzt serued hem al / that at the left way he smo- 30
 te doune hors and man / and alle he dyd with one spere / and
 soo whan they were all x on fote / they wente to that one kny-
 ght / and he stode stene styll / and suffred hem to pulle hym dou-
 ne of his hors / and bound hym hande and foote / and tayed
 hym vnder the hors bely / and so ledde hym with hem / O Ihesu 35

sayd fyr gawayne this is a dooleful fyghte / to see the yonder
knyghte so to be entreted / and it semeth by the knyght that he
suffreth hem to bynde hym soo / for he maketh no resyſtence / Noo
ſaid his hooſt that is trouthe / for and he wold they al were to
5 weyke soo to doo hym / Syr ſaid the damoyfel vnto fyr Gawa-
yn / me ſemeth hit were your worſhip to helpe that dolorous
knyghte / for me thynketh he is one of the beſt knyghtes that
euer I ſawe / I wold doo for hym ſayd fyre gawayn but hit
ſemeth he wylle haue no helpe / thenne ſayd the damoyfel me
10 thynketh ye haue no luſte to helpe hym / Thus as they talked
they ſawe a kny3te on the other ſyde of the launde al armed
ſauf the hede / And on the other ſyde ther cam a dwerf on horf-
bak all armed ſauf the hede with a grete mouthe / and a ſhorte
noſe / And whan the dwerf came nyghe he ſaid where is the la-
15 dy ſhold mete vs here / and ther with all ſhe came forth out of
the wood / And thenne they began to ſtryue for the lady / For
the knyghte ſayd he wold haue her / & the dwerf ſaid he wold
haue her / Wylle we doo wel ſayd the dwerf / yonder is a kny-
ht at the croſſe / lete vs put it bothe vpon hym / and as he de-
20 meth ſo ſhalle it be / I wylle wel ſaid the knyght / and ſo they
wente all thre vnto fyre gawayn and told hym wherfor they
ſtrofe / wel fyrs ſaid he wylle ye put the mater in my hand / ye
they ſayd both / Now damoyfel ſayd fyr gawayn ye ſhal ſtande
betwixe them both / and whether ye lyft better to go to / he ſhal
25 haue yow / And whan ſhe was ſette bitwene them both ſhe left
the knyghte and wente to the dwerf / and the dwerf took her
and wente his waye ſyngyng / and the knyghte wente hys
wey with grete mornyng / Thenne cam ther two knyghtes all
armed and cryed on hyghe Syre gawayn / knyghte of kyng
30 Arthurs make the redy in al haſt and luſte with me / soo they
ranne to gyders that eyther felle doune / and thenne on foote
they drewe their fwerdes and dyd ful actually / the mene why-
le the other knyghte wente to the damoyfel / and asked her /
why ſhe abode with that knyghte / and yf ye wold abyde with
35 me / I wylle be your feythful knyghte and with yow wylle
I be ſaid the damoyfel / for with fyr Gawayn I may not ſyn-
de in myn herte to be with hym / For now here was one kny3t
ſcomfyte x knyghtes / And at the laſte he was cowardly led

away / and therefore lete vs two goo whylest they fyghte / and
 fyre Gawayne fought with that other knyght longe / but at the
 last they accorded both / And thenne the knyght prayd fyr ga-
 wayn to lodge with hym that nyghte / Soo as fyre Gawayn
 wente with this knyghte he asked hym what knyghte is he in 5
 this countrey that smote doune the ten knyghtes / for whan he
 had done so manfully he suffred hem to bynde hym hand and
 foote / and soo ledde hym away / A sayd the knyghte that is the
 best knyght I trowe in the world / and the moost man of pro-
 wesse / and he hath be serued soo as he was ēne more than x 10
 tymes / and his name hyghte fyr Pelleas / and he loueth a gre-
 te lady in this countrey and her name is Ettard / and so when
 he loued her there was cryed in this country a greete Iustes
 thre dayes / And alle the knyghtes of this countrey were there
 and gentylwymmen / And who that preued hym the best kny- 15
 ght shold haue a passyng good fwerd and a Serklet of gold
 and the ferklet the knyght shold gyue hit to the fayrest lady
 that was at the Iustes / And this knyghte fyre Pelleas was
 the best knyghte that was there / and there were fyue honderd
 knyghtes / but there was neuer man that euer fyre Pelleas 20
 met with al / but he stroke hym doune or els from his hors /
 And euery day of thre dayes he strake doune twenty knygh-
 tes / therefore they gaf hym the pryse / & forthe with all he wente
 there as the lady Ettard was / and gaf her the ferklet / & said
 openly / she was the fayrest lady that ther was / & that wold 25
 he preue vpon any knyghte that wold say nay / ¶ Ca xxi]

ANd soo he chose her for his souerayne lady / & neuer to
 loue other but her / but she was so proude that she had
 scorne of hym and sayd that she wold neuer loue hym
 thouȝ he wold dye for her / wherfor al ladyes and gentylwym- 30
 men hadde scorne of her that she was so proude / for there were
 fayrer than she / & ther was none that was ther but & sir Pel-
 leas wold haue proferd hem loue they wold haue loued hym
 for his noble prowesse / & so this knyȝt promysed the lady et-
 tard to folowe her in to this cōtrey / & neuer to leue her tyl she 35
 loued hym / & thus he is here the moost party nyghe her and lod-
 ged by a pryory / and euery weke she sendeth knyghtes to fyȝte
 with hym / And whan he hath put hem to the wers than wylle

he suffre hem wyfully to take hym pryfoner by cause he wold
haue a fyghte of this lady / And alweyes she doth hym grete
despyte / for some tyme she maketh her knyghtes to taye hym to
his hors taylle and some to bynd hym vnder the hors bely

5 Thus in the moost shamefullest wyse that she can thynke he is
broughte to her / And alle she doth hyt for to cause hym to leue
this countreie and to leue his louynge / But all this can not
make hym to leue / for and he wold haue foughte on foote
he myghte haue had the better of the ten knyghtes as wel on
10 foote as on horsbak / Allas sayd fyr gawayn it is grete pyte
of hym / And after this nyghte I wylle seke hym to morowe
in this forest to doo hym alle the helpe I can / So on the mor-
ne fyr gawayne tooke his leue of his hooft fyre Carados and
rode in to the forest / And at the last he mette with fyr Pelle-
15 as makynge grete moone oute of mesure / so eche of hem fawed
other / and asked hym why he made suche sorowe / And as it
is aboute rehersed / fyre Pelleas told fyre Gawayne / but alwe-
yes I suffre her knyghtes to fare soo with me as ye sawe yef-
terdaye in truste at the last to wyne her loue / for she knoweth
20 wel alle her knyghtes shold not lyghtely wyne me / and
me lyfte to fyghte with them to the vttermost / Wherefore and
I loued her not so fore I hadde leuer dye an honderd tymes /
and I myght dye soo ofte rather than I wold suffre that des-
pyte / but I truste she wylle haue pyte vpon me at the laste /
25 for loue causeth many a good knyght to suffre to haue his en-
tent / but allas I am vnfortunate / And ther with he maade soo
grete dole & sorowe that vnnethe he myghte holde hym on hors-
back

¶ Now sayd fyre gawayne leue your mor-
nyng and I shalle promyse yow by the feythe of my body
30 to doo alle that lyeth in my power to gete yow the loue of yo-
ur lady / and ther to I wylle plyte yow my treuthe / A sayd
fyr Pelleas of what Courte are ye telle me I praye yow my
good frend / And thenne fyr gawayne sayd I am of the co-
urte of kynge Arthur / and his fusters sone / and kynge Lott
35 of Orkeney was my fader / and my name is fyre Gawayne /
And thenne he sayd my name is Syre Pelleas borne in the
Iles / and of many Iles I am lord / and neuer haue I lo-
ued lady nor damoyfel tyl now in an vnhappy tyme / and fyr

knyghte fyn ye are foo nyghe cofyn vnto kynge Arthur and
 a kynges sone / therfor bytraye me not but helpe me / for I may
 neuer come by her but by somme good knyghte / for she is in a
 stronge castel here fast by within this four myle / and ouer all
 this countrey she is lady of / And so I may neuer come to her
 prefence / but as I suffre her knyghtes to take me / and but yf I
 dyd so that I myghte haue a fyghte of her I had ben dede long
 or this tyme / and yet fayre word had I neuer of her / but whā
 I am brought to fore her she rebuketh me in the fowleſt man-
 ner / And thenne they take my hors and harneis and putten
 me oute of the yates / and she wylle not suffre me to ete nor
 drynke / and alweyes I offre me to be her pryſoner / but that
 she wylle not suffre me / for I wold defyre no more what pay-
 nes ſo euer I had / ſoo that I myzte haue a fyghte of her day-
 ly / wel ſayd fyr gawayne / Al this ſhalle I amende and ye
 wylle do as I ſhal deuyſe / I wylle haue your hors and yo-
 ur armour / and ſo wylle I ryde vnto her caſtel and telle her
 that I haue ſlayne yow / and ſoo ſhal I come withynne her
 to cauſe her to cheryſhe me / And thenne ſhalle I do my true
 parte that ye ſhalle not faylle to haue the loue of her

20

¶ Capitulum xxiii

ANd there with fyr Gawayne plyghte his trouthe vn-
 to fyr Pelleas to be true and feythful vnto hym / ſoo
 eche one plyghte their trouthe to other / and ſoo they chaunged
 horſes and harneis / and ſire Gawayn departed / and came to
 the caſtel where as ſtoode the pauelions of this lady withoute
 the yate / And as ſoone as Ettard had aſpyed fyr Gawayn
 ſhe fledde in toward the caſtel / fyr Gawayn ſpak on hyghe /
 and badde her abyde / for he was not fyre Pelleas / I am ano-
 ther knyghte that haue ſlayne fyr Pelleas / doo of youre hel-
 me ſaid the lady Ettard that I maye ſee your vyſage / And
 ſoo whan ſhe ſawe that it was not fyr Pelleas / ſhe made hym
 alyghte / and ledde hym vnto her caſtel / and asked hym feyth-
 fully / whether he had ſlayne fyr Pelleas / and he ſayd her ye /
 and told her his name was fyre gawayn of the courte of ky-
 nge Arthur and his ſyſter ſone / Truly ſayd ſhe that is grete
 pyte for he was a paſſyng good knyghte of his body / but

[leaf 75]

h ij

of al men on lyue I hated hym moost / for I coude neuer be
 quyte of hym / And for ye haue slayne hym / I shalle be your
 woman and to doo any thyng that myghte please yow / Soo
 she made fyr Gawayne good chere / Thenne fyr gawayn sayd
 5 that he loued a lady / and by no meane she wold loue hym /
 She is to blame sayd Ettard and she wylle not loue yow /
 for ye that be soo wel borne a man and suche a man of pro-
 wesse / there is no lady in the world to good for yow / wylle
 ye sayd fyre Gawayne promyse me to doo alle that ye maye
 10 by the feythe of youre body to gete me the loue of my lady / ye
 fyre sayd she / and that I promyse yow by the feythe of my
 body / Now sayd fyre Gawayne it is your self that I loue so
 wel / therfore I praye yow hold your promyse / I maye not
 chese sayd the lady Ettard / but yf I shold be forsworne / and
 15 soo she graunted hym to fulfyll alle his desyre /

¶ Soo it was thenne in the moneth of May that she and fyre
 Gawayn wente oute of the castel and souped in a paelione /
 and there was made a bedde / and there fyre gawayne and the
 lady Ettard wente to bedde to gyders / and in another pael-
 20 ione she layd her damoyfels / and in the thyrd paelione she
 leyd parte of her knyghtes / for thenne she had no drede of fyr
 Pelleas / And there fyre gawayn lay with her in that pael-
 ione two dayes and two nyghtes / And on the thyrd day in
 the mornyng erly fyr Pelleas armed hym / for he hadde neuer
 25 slepte syn fyr Gawayn departed from hym / for fyr Gawayne
 had promysed hym by the feythe of hys body to come to hym
 vnto his paelione by that pryory within the space of a daye
 and a nyghte

¶ Thenne fyre Pelleas moun-
 ted vpon horfbak / and cam to the paelions that stode without
 30 the castel / and fonde in the fyrst paelione thre knyghtes in
 thre beddes / and thre squyers lyggyng at theire feet / thenne
 wente he to the seconde paelione & fond four gentyl wymmen
 lyenge in four beddes / & thenne he yede to the thyrd paelion
 & fond fyr gawayn lyggyng in bedde with his lady Ettard
 35 & eyther clyppying other in armes / and whan he sawe that his
 herte wel nyghe braft for sorow / & said Allas that euer a knyzt
 shold be founde so fals / and thēne he took his hors & myzt not
 abyde no lenger for pure sorowe / And whanne he hadde ryden

nyghe half a myle he torned ageyne and thoughte to flee hem
 bothe / And whanne he sawe hem bothe soo lye slepyng faste /
 vnnethe he myght holde hym on horsbak for forowe / and sayd
 then to hym self / though this knyght be neuer soo fals I wyl
 neuer flee hym slepyng / For I wylle neuer destroye the hy- 5
 gh ordre of knyghthode / and therwith he departed ageyne
 And or he hadde ryden half a myle he retorned ageyne / and
 thoughte thenne to flee hem bothe / makynge the gretteft forou
 that euer man made / And whanne he came to the paelions /
 he tayed his hors vnto a tree / and pulled oute his sward na- 10
 ked in his hand / and wente to them there as they lay / and
 yet he thought it were shame to flee them slepyng / and layd
 the naked sward ouerthwart bothe their throtes / and soo to-
 oke his hors and rode his awaye

¶ And whanne fyre Pelleas came to his paelions he told 15
 his knyghtes and his squyers how he had sped / and sayd
 thus to them for your true and good seruyse ye haue done me
 I shall gyue you alle my goodes / for I wylle goo vnto my
 bedde and neuer aryse vntyl I am dede / And whan that I
 am dede / I charge yow that ye take the herte oute of my body 20
 and bere it her betwyxe two syluer dyffhes / and telle her how
 I sawe her lye with the fals knyght Syr Gawayne / Ryght
 soo fyr Pelleas vnarmed hym selfe and wente vnto his bedde
 makynge merueyllous dole and forowe /

¶ Thenne fyre Gawayne and Ettard awoke of her slepe / & 25
 fonde the naked sward ouerthwart theire throtes / thenne she
 knewe wel it was fyr Pelleas sward / Allas sayd she to sir
 Gawayne ye haue bitrayed me and fyr Pelleas bothe / for ye
 told me ye had slayne hym / and now I knowe wel it is not
 soo he is on lyue / And yf fyre Pelleas had ben as vncurteis 30
 to yow as ye haue ben to hym ye hadde bene a dede knyghte /
 but ye haue deceyued me and bytrayd me falsly / that al la-
 dyes and damoyfels may beware by yow and me / And ther
 with fyr gawayn made hym redy / and wente in to the forest /
 Soo it happed thenne that the damoyfel of the lake Nymue 35
 mette with a knyghte of fyr Pelleas that wente on his foote
 in the forest makynge grete dole / and she asked hym the cause
 And soo the woful knyghte told her how his mayster and

lorde was bitrayed thurgh a knyghte and a lady / and how
 he wyl neuer aryse oute of his bed tyl he be dede / Brynge me
 to hym sayd she anone / and I wyl waraunt his lyf he shal
 not dye for loue / and she that hath caused hym so to loue / she
 5 shalle be in as euyl plyte as he is or it be long to / for it is no
 Ioy of fuche a prowde lady that wylle haue no mercy of fuche
 a valyaunt knyght / anone that kny3te broughte her vnto hym
 And whan she sawe hym lye in his bedde / she thoughte she fa-
 we neuer so lykely a knyght / and ther with she threwe an en-
 10 chaument vpon hym / and he felle on slepe / And ther why-
 le she rode vnto the lady Ettard / and charged no man to a-
 wake hym tyl she came ageyne / Soo within two houres she
 broughte the lady Ettard thydder / and both ladyes fonde hym
 on slepe / loo sayd the damoyfel of the lake ye oughte to be asha-
 15 med for to murdre fuche a knyght / And therwith she threwe
 fuche an enchaument vpon her that she loued hym fore / that
 wel nyghe she was oute of her mynde / O lord Ihesu faide the
 lady Ettard / how is it befallen vnto me / that I loue now hym
 that I haue moost hated of ony man alyue / that is the ryght
 20 wys Iugement of god sayd the damoyfel / And thenne anone
 fyr Pelleas awaked and loked vpon Ettard / And whan he
 sawe her / he knewe her / & thēne he hated her more than ony wo-
 man alyue / and said away traitresse come neuer in my sy3t
 And whan she herd hym say so / she wepte and made grete fo-
 25 rou oute of mesure

¶ Capitulum xxiiii

Syre knyghht Pelleas sayd the damoyfel of the lake / ta-
 ke your hors / and come forthe with me oute of this co-
 untrey / and ye shal loue a lady that shal loue yow / I wylle
 wel said fyr Pelleas / for this lady Ettard hath done me gre-
 30 te despyte and shame / and there he told her the begynnyng
 and endynge / And how he had purposed neuer to haue arysen
 tyll that he hadde ben dede / And now fuche grace god hath fente
 me / that I hate her as moche as euer I loued her thanked
 be our lord Ihesus / Thanke me sayde the damoyfel of the lake

[leaf 76 verso]

anone fyre Pellas armed hym and tooke his hors and commaunded his men to brynge after his paelions and his stufte where the damoyfel of the lake wold assigne / foo the lady Ettard dyed for forowe / and the damoyfel of the lake reioysed fyr Pellas and loued to gyders durynge their lyf dayes

¶ Capitulum xxv

Now torne we vnto fyr Marhaus that rode with the damoyfel of xxx wynter of age fouthard / and foo they cam in to a depe forest / and by fortune they were nyg-
ted / and rode longe in a depe way / and at the last they came 10
vnto the courtelage / and there they asked herborow / but the mā of the courtelage wold not lodge them for no treatyce that they coude treate / but thus moche the good man sayd / and ye will take the aduenture of youre lodgyng / I shal brynge you there ye shalle be lodged / what auenture is that that I shal haue / 15
for my lodgyng sayd fyr Marhaus / ye shalle wete whan ye come there sayd the good man / fyr what auenture so it be bryng me thyder I pray the sayd fyr Marhaus / for I am wery / my damoyfel and my hors / So the good man wente and opened the gate / and within an houre he broughte hym vnto a fayre 20
castel / and thenne the poure man called the porter / and anon he was lete in to the castel / & foo he told the lord how he brougt hym a knyght erraunt and a damoyfel that wold be lodged with hym / lete hym in said the lord / it may happen he shalle repente that they toke their lodgyng here / So fyr Marhaus was 25
lete in with torche lyghte / and there was a goodely fyghte of yonge men that welcomed hym / And thenne his hors was ledde in to the stable / and he and the damoyfel were broughte in to the halle / and there stode a myghty duke and many goodely men about hym / thēne this lord asked hym what he hy- 30
ghte / and fro whens he cam / and with whome he dwelt / fyre he said I am a knyghte of kynge Nrthurs and knyght of the table round / and my name is fyre Marhaus / and borne I am in Irland / And thenne sayd the duke to hym / that me fore repenteth / the caufe is this / for I loue not thy lord / nor 35

none of thy felawes of the table round / And therfor ease thy
 felf this nyghte as wel as thow mayst / for as to morne I &
 my fixe sonnes shal matche with yow / Is ther no remedy but
 that I must haue a doo with yow and your vj fones at ones
 5 fayd fyr Marhaus / No fayd the duke for this cause I maade
 myn auowe / for fyr gawayne flewe my feuen sonnes in a re-
 counter / therfore I made myn auowe / there shold neuer knyzt
 of kynge Arthurs court lodge with me or come there as I my-
 ght haue adoo with hym / but that I wold haue a reuengyng
 10 of my sonnes dethe / what is your name said fyr Marhaus I
 requyre yow telle me and it please yow / wete thow wel I am
 the duke of fouth marchys / A fayd fir Marhaus I haue herd
 faye that ye haue ben longe tyme a grete foo vnto my lord ar-
 thur and to his knyghtes / that shalle ye fele to morne said the
 15 duke / Shalle I haue adoo with yow fayd fyr Marhaus / ye
 fayd the duke / therof shalt thow not chese / and therefore take
 yow to your chambre and ye shalle haue all that to yow long-
 geth / So fyr Marhaus departed and was led to a chamber /
 and his damoyfel was led vnto her chamber / And on the morn
 20 the duke fente vnto fyre Marhaus and bad make hym redy /
 And so fyr Marhaus arose and armed hym / and thenne ther
 was a masse songe afore hym and brake his fast / and so mou-
 ted on horfback in the courte of the castel there they shold doo
 the batail / So ther was the duke al redy on horfbak clene ar-
 25 med and his syxe sonnes by hym / and eueryche had a spere
 in his hand / and foo they encountred where as the duke and
 his two fones brak theyr speres vpon hym / but fir Marhaus
 helde vp his spere and touched none of them /

¶ Capitulum xxvj

30 **T**Henne cam the foure fones by couple / and two of them
 brake their speres / and soo dyd the other two / And
 alle this whyle fyre marhaus touched hem not / Thenne fir mar-
 haus . ranne to the duke / and smote hym with his spere that
 hors and man felle to the erthe / And so he serued his fones /
 And thenne fyr Marhaus alyghte doune and bad the duke

[leaf 77 verso]

yelde hym or els he wold flee hym / And thenne some of his
 fones recouerd / and wold haue fet vpon fyr Marhaus / then-
 ne fyr Marhaus sayd to the duke feace thy fones or els I will
 doo the vttermest to yow all / Thenne the duke sawe he myghte
 not escape the deth he cryed to his fones and charged them to
 yelde them to fyr Marhaus / And they kneled al doune / and
 put the pomels of their fwerdes to the knyght / and soo he re-
 ceuyed them / And thenne they halp vp their fader / and soo
 by their comynal assente promysed to fyr Marhaus neuer to be
 foes vnto kyng Arthur / and therupon at whytfontyde after
 to come he and his fones and putte them in the kynges grace
 Thenne fyr Marhaus departed and within two dayes his da-
 moyfel brought hym where as was a grete tornement that the
 lady de Vawfe had cryed / And who that dyd best shold ha-
 ue a ryche ferklet of gold worthe a thousand befauntes / And
 there fyr Marhaus dyd so nobly that he was renommed / & had
 somtyme doune fourty knyghtes / and soo the ferklet of gold
 was rewarded hym / Thenne he departed fro them with grete
 worship / And soo within feuen nyghtes his damoyfel brought
 hym to an erles place / his name was the erle Fergus / that af-
 ter was fyre Trystrams knyghte / and this Erle was but a
 yonge man / and late come in to his landes / and there was a
 gyant fast by hym that hyzte Taulurd / and he had another
 broder in Cornewaille that hyghte Taulas that fyr Trystram
 slewe whanne he was oute of hys mynde / So this Erle maade
 his complaynte vnto fyre Marhaus that there was a gyaunt
 by hym that destroyed al his londes / & how he durst nowhere
 ryde nor goo for hym / Syr sayd the knyghte whether vsfeth he
 to fyghte on horsbak or on foote / nay sayd the erle there maye
 no hors bere hym / Wel said fyr marhaus thenne wille I fygh-
 te with hym on foote / Soo on the morne fyr Marhaus prayd
 the erle that one of his men myghte brynge hym where as the
 gyaūt was / and so he was / for he sawe hym fytted vnder a tree
 of hoolly / and many clubbes of Iron and gyfarms about hym
 Soo thys knyghte dresfid hym to the gyant puttyng his sheld
 afore hym / and the gyant toke an Iron clubbe in his hande / &
 at the fyrste stroke he clafe fyre Marhaus shelde in ij pyeces /
 And there he was in grete peryl / for the gyant was a wyly

fyghter / but atte laft fyr Marhaus fmote of his rygth arme
 aboute the elbowe / thēne the gyant fledde and the knyght after
 hym / and foo he drofe hym in to a water / but the gyant was
 foo hyghe that he myghte not wade after hym / And thenne fir
 5 Marhaus made the erle Fergus man to fetcche hym ftones / &
 with tho ftones the knyghte gaf the gyaunt many fore knoc-
 kes / tyl at the laft he made hym falle doune in to the water / &
 fo was he there dede / thēne fyr Marhaus wēte vnto the gyants
 caftel / and there he delyuerd xxiiij ladyes and twelue kny3-
 10 tes oute of the gyants pryfon / and there he had grete rycheffe
 withoute nombre / foo that the dayes of his lyf he was neuer
 poure man / thenne he retorned to the erle Fergus / the whiche
 thanked hym gretely / and wold haue gyuen hym half his lā-
 des but he wold none take / Soo fyr Marhaus dwellyd with
 15 the erle nyghe half a yere / for he was fore bryfed with the gy-
 aunt / and at the lafte he took his leue / And as he rode by the
 way / he mette with fyr gawayne and fyr Vwayne / and fo by
 aduenture he mette with foure knyghtes of Arthurs courte /
 the fyrft was fyr Sagramore defyrus / fyr Ozanna / fyr Do-
 20 dynas le faueage / and fyre felot of lyftynoyfe / and there fyr
 Marhaus with one fpere fmote doune thefe foure knyghtes /
 and hurte them fore / Soo he departed to mete at his day afore
 fette

¶ Capitulum xxviij

Now tourne we vnto fyr Vwāyne that rode westwarde
 25 with his damoyfel of thre fcore wynter of age / and
 ſhe broughte hym there as was a turnement nyghe the marche
 of walys / and at that tornement fyre Vwayne fmote doune
 xxx knyghtes / therfore was gyuen hym the pryfe / and that
 was a gerfaukon / and a whyte ſtede trapped with clothe of
 30 gold / Soo thenne fyr Vwayn dyd many ſtraunge auentures
 by the meanes of the old damoyfel / and fo ſhe broughte hym
 to a lady that was called the lady of the roche / the which was
 moche curtois / So there were in the countrey two kny3tes that
 were bretheren / and they were called two peryllous knygh-
 35 tes / the one knyghte hyght fyre Edward of the reed caftel / &

the other fyr Hue of the reed castel / And these two bretheren
 had difheryted the lady of the roche of a Baronry of landes
 by their extorfion / And as this knyzt was lodged with this
 lady she made her compleynt to hym of these two knyghtes /
 Madame sayd fyr Vwayne / they are to blame / for they doo a- 5
 geynst the hyghe ordre of knyghthode & the othe that they ma-
 de / And yf hit lyke yow I wille speke with hem by cause I
 am a knyghte of kynge Arthurs / and I wylle entrete them
 with fayreneffe / And yf they wylle not I shalle doo bataille
 with them and in the deffense of youre ryghte / gramercy sayd 10
 the lady / and there as I maye not acquyte yow / god shalle /
 Soo on the morne the two knyghtes were sente for / that they
 shold come thyder to speke with the lady of the roche / and we-
 te ye wel they fayled not / for they cam with an C hors / But
 whan this lady sawe them in this maner foo bygge / she wold 15
 not suffre fyr Vwayne to goo oute to them vpon no surete ne
 for no fayr langage / but she made hym speke with them ouer a
 toure / but fynally these two bretheren wold not be entreated
 and anfuerd that they wold kepe that they had / wel said fyr
 Vwayne / thenne wylle I fyghte with one of yow / and pre- 20
 ue that ye doo this lady wronge / that wille we not said they
 For and we doo bataille we two wyl fyghte with one knyzt
 at ones / and therefore yf ye wille fyghte foo we wille be redy
 at what houre ye wille assigne / And yf ye wyne vs in bata-
 ille the lady shal haue her landes ageyne / ye fay wel sayd fir 25
 Vwayne / therfor make yow redy so that ye be here to morne in
 the defence of the ladyes ryght

¶ Capitulum xxviii

SO was there fykerneffe made on both partyes that no
 treason shold be wrought on neyther partye / soo thenne
 the knyghtes departed and made hem redy / and that nyghte 30
 fyr Vwayn had grete chere / And on the morne he arose erly
 and herd masse and brake his fast / and soo he rode vnto the
 playn withoute the gates where houed the two bretheren a-
 bydyng hym / Soo they rode to gyders passyng fore that fyre
 Edward and fyr Hue brake their speres vpon fyr Vwayne 35

And fyr Vwayne smote fyre Edward that he felle ouer his
hors and yet his spere braſt not / And thenne he ſpored his
hors and came vpon fyr Hue and ouerthrewe hym / but they
foone recouerd and dreſſid their ſheldes and drewe their ſuer-
5 des and bad fyr Vwayne alyghte and doo his bataill to the
vttermoſt / Thenne fyr Vwayn deuoyded his hors ſodenly / &
put his ſhelde afore hym and drewe his ſwerde / and ſoo they
dreſſyd to gyders and eyther gaf other ſuche ſtrokes / & there
theſe two bretheren wounded fyr Vwayne paſſyng greuouſly
10 that the lady of the roche wende he ſhold haue dyed / And thus
they fought to gyders fyue houres as men raged oute of rea-
ſon / And at the laſte fyr Vwayne ſmote fyre Edward vpon
the helme ſuche a ſtroke that his ſwerd kerued vnto his canel-
bone / and thenne fyr Hue abated his courage / but fyr Vwa-
15 yn preſſed faſt to haue ſlayne hym / That ſawe fyr Hue he kne-
led doune and yelde hym to fyr Vwayne and he of his gentil-
neſſe receyued his ſwerd and took hym by the hand & went
in to the caſtel to gyders / thenne the lady of the roche was paſ-
fyng glad and the other broder made grete ſorowe for his bro-
20 ders dethe / thenne the lady was reſtored of al her landes / and
fyr Hue was commaunded to be at the Courte of kyng Ar-
thur at the next feſt of penthecoſt / So fir Vwayn dwelt with
the lady nyghe half a yere / for it was longe or he myghte be ho-
le of his grete hurtes / and ſoo whan it drewe nygh the terme
25 day that fyr gawayn fyr Marhaus and fyre Vwayne ſhold
mete at the croſſe way / thenne euery knyght drewe hym thy-
der to holde his promyſe that they had made / & fyr Marhaus
and fyr Vwayne broughte their damoyfels with them / but fir
Gawayn had loſt his damoyfel as it is afore reherced

Capitulum xxix

30 **R**Yght ſoo at the twelue monethes ende they mette alle
thre knyghtes at the fontayne and their damoiſels but
the damoyfel that fyr gawayn had coude ſaye but lytel wor-
ſhip of hym / ſoo they departed from the damoyfels and roode

thurgh a grete forest / and there they mette with a messager
that cam fro kynge Arthur that foughte them wel nyhe a
xij moneth thorou oute al Englonde / walys and Scotland /
and charged yf euer he myght fynde fyre Gawayn and fyre
Vwayn to brynge hem to the courte ageyne / And thenne we- 5
re they al gladde / and foo prayd they fyre Marhaus to ryde
with hem to the kynges courte / And foo within twelue dayes
they cam to Camelot / and the kynge was passyng glad of the-
ir comynge and foo was alle the Courte / thenne the kyng ma-
de hem to fwere vpon a book to telle hym alle theire aduentures 10
that had befallē hem that twelue monethe and foo they dyd /
And there was sir Marhaus wel knowen / for ther were kny-
ghtes that he had matched afore tyme / and he was named o-
ne of the best knyghtes lyuyng / Ageyne the feest of pentecost
cam the damoyfel of the lake and broughte with hir fyr Pelle- 15
as / and at that hyhe feest there was grete Iustyng of knygh-
tes / and of al knyghtes that were at that Iustes / fyr Pelle-
as had the pryse / and fyr Marhaus was named the next / but
fyr Pelleas was foo stronge / there myght but fewe knyghtes
fytte hym a buffēt with a spere / And at that next feest sir pel- 20
leas and fyr marhaus were made knyghtes of the table rōūd
For there were two seges voyde / for two knyghtes were slayn
that twelue moneth / and grete ioye had kynge Arthur of sire
Pelleas and of sire Marhaus / but Pelleas loued neuer after
sire Gawayne but as he spared hym for the loue of kyng ar- 25
thur / But oftymes at Iustes and turnementes sire Pelleas
quyte sire Gawayn / for so it reherceth in the book of Frensishe /
Soo sire Trystram many dayes after faughte with sire Mar-
haus in an yland / and there they dyd a grete bataylle / but at
the last sire Trystram slewe hym / foo sire Trystram was woū- 30
ded that vnnethe he myght recouer and lay at a nonnery halfe
a yere / and sire Pelleas was a worshipful knyghte / & was o-
ne of the four that encheued the fancgreal / and the damoyfel of
the lake made by her meanes that neuer he had adoo with sire
launcelot de lake / for where sire launcelot was at ony Iustes / 35
or ony tornement / she wold not suffre hym be there that daye /
but yf it were on the fyde of sire launcelot /

¶ Explicit liber quartus

¶ Incipit liber quintus

A
5
 Hanne kyng Arthur had after longe werre re-
 sted / and helde a Ryal feest and table rounde
 with his alyes of kynges / prynces / and noble
 knyghtes all of the round table / there came in to
 his halle he fyttynge in his throne Ryal xij aū-
 cyen men / berynge eche of them a braunche of Olyue in token
 that they cam as Embassatours and messagers fro the Empe-
 rour Lucyus / whiche was called at that tyme / Dictatour or
 procurour of the publyke wele of Rome / whiche sayde messa-
10
 gers after their entryng & comyng in to the presence of kyng
 Arthur dyd to hym theyr obeyssaūce in makyng to hym reue-
 rence said to hym in this wyse / The hyghe & myghty Emperour
 Lucyus sendeth to the kyng of Bretayne gretynge / cōmaūdyng
 the to knoueleche hym for thy lord / and to sende hym the trua-
15
 ge due of this Royamme vnto thempyre / whiche thy fader and
 other to fore thy precessours haue paid as is of record / And
 thou as rebelle not knowynge hym as thy fouerayne withhol-
 dest and reteyneft contrary to the statutes and decrees maade
 by the noble and worthy Iulius Cezar conquerour of this
20
 Royame / and fyrst Emperour of Rome / and yf thou refuse
 his demaunde and commaundement / knowe thou for certayne
 that he shal make stronge werre ageynst the / thy Royames &
 londes / and shall chaftyse the and thy subgettys / that it shal be
 ensamble perpetuel vnto alle kynges and prynces / for to denye
25
 their truage vnto that noble empyre whiche domyneth vpon the
 vnyuerfal world / Thenne whan they had shewed theffecte of
 their message / the kyng commaunded them to withdrawe them
 And said he shold take auyce of counceyll and gyue to them
 an ansuere / Thenne somme of the yonge knyghtes heryng this
30
 their message wold haue ronne on them to haue slayne them
 fayenge that it was a rebuke to alle the knyghtes there beyng
 present to suffre them to saye so to the kyng / And anone the

[leaf 8o verso]

kyng commaunderd that none of them vpon payne of dethe to myffaye them ne doo them ony harme / and commaūded a knyghte to brynge them to their lodgyng / and fee that they haue alle that is necessary and requyfyte for them / with the best chere / and that noo deyntee be spared / For the Romayns ben grete lordes / and though theyr message please me not ne my court yet I must remembre myn honour / ¶ After this the kyng lete calle alle his lordes and knyghtes of the round table to counceyl vpon this mater / and defyred them to saye their aduys / thenne fyr Cador of Cornewaile spacke fyrste and sayd 10 Syre this message lyketh me wel / for we haue many dayes rested vs and haue ben ydle / and now I hope ye shalle make sharp warre on the Romayns where I doubte not we shal gete honour / I byleue wel sayd Arthur that this mater pleafeth the wel / but these anfuers may not be anfuerd / for the dema- 15 unde greueth me fore / For truly I wyl neuer paye truage to Rome / wherfore I pray yow to counceylle me / I haue vnderstande that Bellinus and Brenius kynges of Bretayne haue had thempyre in their handes many dayes / And also Constantyn the sone of Heleyne / whiche is an open euydence that 20 we owe noo trybute to Rome / but of ryght we that ben defcended of them haue ryght to clayme the tytyle of thempyre /

¶ Capitulū Secūndū

THenne anfuerd kyng Anguyffhe of Scotland / Syr ye oughte of ryght to be aboue al other kynges / for vnto yow is none lyke ne pareylle in Crystendome / of knyght- 25 hode ne of dygnyte / & I counceylle you neuer to obey the Romayns / for whan they regned on vs / they destressyd oure elders / and putte this land to grete extorcions & taylles / wherfore I make here myn auowe to auenge me on them / and for to strengthe youre quarel I shal furnyffhe xijM good men of warre and wage them on my costes / whiche shal awayte on yow with my self whan it shal please yow / and the kyng of lytel Bretayne graunted hym to the same xxxM / wherfor kyng Arthur thanked them / And thenne euery man

agreed to make warre / and to ayde after their power / that is
to wete the lord of westwalis promysed to brynge xxx M men
And fyr Vwayne / fyre Ider his sone with their cosyns pro-
mysed to brynge xxx M / thenne fyre launcelot with alle other
5 promysed in lyke wyfe euery man a grete multytude / ¶ And
whan kynge Arthur vnderstood theire courages and good
wylles / he thanked them hertely / and after lete calle themba-
fatours to here theire anfuere / And in prefence of alle his lor-
des and knyghtes he sayd to them in thys wyfe / I wylle that
10 ye retorne vnto your lord and procurour of the comyn wele for
the Romainys / and faye ye to hym Of his demaunde and com-
maundement I fette nothyng / And that I knowe of no tru-
age ne trybute that I owe to hym / ne to none erthely prynce /
Cryften ne hethen / but I pretende to haue and occupye the fo-
15 ueraynte of thempyre / wherin I am entytled by the ryght of
my predeceffours fomtyme kynges of this lond / and faye to
hym that I am delybered and fully concluded to goo wyth
myn armye with strengthe and power vnto Rome by the gra-
ce of god to take possession in thempyre / and subdue them that
20 ben rebelle / wherfore I commaunde hym and alle them of Ro-
me that incontynent they make to me their homage or to knou-
leche me for their Emperour and gouernour vpon payne that
shal ensiewe / And thenne he commaunded his treforer to gy-
ue to them grete and large yestes / and to paye alle theyr dif-
25 pencys / and assygned fyre Cadour to conueye them oute of the
land / and soo they took theire leue and departed / and tooke
theyr shyppynge at Sandwyche / and passed forthe by flaun-
drys / Almayn / the montayns / and all ytalye vntyl they cam
vnto Lucius / And after the reuerence made / they made relacy-
30 on of their anfuer lyke as ye to fore haue herd / whan thempe-
rour Lucyus had wel vnderstonde theyre credence / he was fore
meued as he had ben al araged / & sayd / I had supposd that
Arthur wold haue obeyed to my commaundement / and haue
serued yow hym self / as hym wel byfemed or ony other kyng
35 to doo / O fyre sayd one of the fenatours late be fuche vayn wor-
des / for we late yow wete that I and my felawes were ful
fore aferd to beholde his countenance / I fere me ye haue made
a rodde for your self / for he entendeth to be lord of this empyre

whiche fore is to be doubted yf he come / for he is al another mā
 than ye wene / and holdeth the most noble courte of the world
 alle other kynges ne prynces maye not compare vnto his no-
 ble mayntene / On newe yeres daye we fawe hym in his estate
 whiche was the ryallest that euer we fawe / for he was ferued 5
 at his table with ix kynges / and the noblest felauship of other
 prynces lordes and knyghtes that ben in the world / and eue-
 ry knyghte approued and lyke a lord and holdeth table rōūd
 And in his persone the mooft manly man that lyueth / and is
 lyke to conquere alle the world / for vnto his courage it is to 10
 lytel / wherfore I aduyse yow to kepe wel youre marches and
 straytes in the montayns / For certaynly he is a lord to be do-
 ubted / Wel sayd Lucius bifore Eester I suppose to passe the
 moūtayns and foo forth in to fraunce / and there byreue hym
 his londes with Ianeweyes and other myghty warryours of 15
 Tuskane and lombardye / And I shall sende for them all that
 ben subgettys and alyed to thēpyre of Rome to come to myn
 ayde / and forthwith sente old wyse knyghtes vnto these coun-
 trayes folowyng / fyrste to ambage and arrage / to Alyfaun-
 drye / to ynde . to hermonye / where as the ryuer of Eufrates ren- 20
 neth in to Asye / to Auffryke / and Europe the large / to erta-
 yne and Elamyne to Arabye / Egypte and to damaske / to da-
 myete and Cayer / to Capadoce / to tarce / Turkye / pounce / and
 pampoylle / to Surrye and gallacye / And alle these were sub-
 gette to Rome and many moo / as Grece / Cypres / Macydone 25
 Calabre / Cateland / portyngale with many thousandes of spay-
 nardys / Thus alle these kynges / dukes / and admyrals affem-
 bled aboute Rome with xvj kynges attones with grete mul-
 titude of peple / whan themperour vnderstood their comyng / he
 made redy his Romainys / and alle the people bytwene hym & 30
 Flaundres

¶ Alfo he hadde gotten wyth
 hym fyfty Geaunts whiche had ben engendred of fendys
 And they were ordeyned to garde his persone / and to breke
 the frounte of the bataylle of kynge Arthur /
 And thus departed fro Rome and came doune the montayns 35
 for to destroye the londes that Arthur had conquerd and cam
 vnto Coleyne / and bysegged a Castel there by / and wanne it
 soone and stuffed hit with two honderd farafyns or Infydeles

and after destroyed many fayr countrees / whiche Arthur had
 wonne of kyng Claudas / And thus Lucius cam with alle
 his hooft whiche were disperplyd lx myle in brede / and com-
 maunded them to mete with hym in Burgoyne / for he purpo-
 5 sed to destroye the Royame of lytyl Bretayne /

Capítulo tercio

Now leue we of Lucius the emperour and speke we of
 kyng Arthur / that commaunded alle them of his re-
 tenue to be redy atte vtas of hyllary for to holde a parlement
 at yorke / And at that parlement was concluded to areste alle
 10 the nauye of the lond and to be redy within xv dayes at sand-
 wyche / and there he shewed to his armye how he purposed to
 conquere thempyre whiche he ought to haue of ryght / And the-
 re he ordeyned two gouernours of his Royame that is to say
 Syre Bawdewyn of Bretayne for to counceille to the best and
 15 fyr Constantyn sone to fyre Cador of Cornewaylle / whiche af-
 ter the dethe of Arthur was kyng of this Royamme / And in
 the presence of alle his lordes he refyned the rule of the roya-
 me and Gweneuer his quene to them / wherfore fyre launcelot
 was wrothe / for he lefte fyre Trystram with kynges marke for
 20 the loue of beal Ifoulde / Thenne the quene Gweneuer made gre-
 te sorowe for the departynge of her lord and other / and fwoun-
 ned in fuche wyse that the ladyes bare her in to her chambre
 Thus the kyng with his grete armye departed leuyng the que-
 ne and Royamme in the gouernaunce of fyre Bawduyn and
 25 Constantyn / And whan he was on his hors / he sayd with an
 hyhe voys yf I dye in this iourney I wyl that fyre Constan-
 tyn be myn heyer and kyng crowned of this royame as next
 of my blood / And after departed and entred in to the see atte
 Sandwyche with alle his armye with a greete multitude of
 30 shyppes / galeyes / Cogges / and dromoundes / sayllynge on the
 see /

¶ Capitulum iiij

ANd as the kyng laye in his caban in the shyp / he fyll
 in a slomerynge and dremed a merueyllous dreame /
 hym semed that a dredeful dragon dyd drowne moche of his
 peple / and he cam fleyng oute of the west / and his hede was
 enameled with asure / and his sholders shone as gold / his be- 5
 ly lyke maylles of a merueyllous hewe / his taylle ful of tat-
 ters / his feet ful of fyne fable / & his clawes lyke fyne gold
 And an hydous flamme of fyre flewe oute of his mouthe /
 lyke as the londe and water had flammed all of fyre / After
 hym semed there came oute of thoryent / a grymly bore al blak 10
 in a clowde / and his pawes as bygge as a post / he was rug-
 ged lokyng roughly / he was the foulest beest that euer man
 sawe / he rored and romed foo hydously that it were merueill
 to here / Thenne the dredeful dragon auauunced hym and cam in
 the wynde lyke a fawcon gyuyng grete strokes on the bore / 15
 and the bore hytte hym ageyne with his gryfly tuskes / that
 his breft was al bloody / and that the hote blood made alle the
 fee reed of his blood /

Thenne the dragon flewe away al on an hey3te / and come dou-
 ne with fuche a swough and smote the bore on the rydge whi- 20
 che was x foote large fro the hede to the taylle / and smote the
 bore all to powdre bothe fleshe and bonys / that it flutteryd al
 abroad on the see / And therewith the kyng awoke anone / and
 was sore abasshed of this dreame / And sente anone for a wyse
 philosopher / commaundyng to telle hym the fygnifycacion of 25
 his dreame / Syre sayd the philosopher / the dragon that thow
 dremedest of / betokeneth thyn owne persone that fayllest here / &
 the colours of his wynges ben thy Royames that thow haste
 wonne / And his taylle whiche is al to tattered fygnifyeth the
 noble knyghtes of the round table

¶ And the 30
 bore that the dragon slough comyng fro the clowdes / betokeneth
 some tyraunt that tormenteth the peple / or else thow arte lyke
 to fyghte with somme Geaunt thy self / beyng horryble and ab-
 homynable whoos pere ye sawe neuer in your dayes / wherfore

of this dredeful dreame doubte the no thyng / but as a Conquerour come forth thy self / Thenne after this soone they had fyghte of londe and faylled tyl they arryued atte Barflete in Flaundes / and whanne they were there he fond many
 5 of his grete lordes redy / as they had ben commaunded to awa-
 yte vpon hym

¶ Capitulum v

THenne came to hym an hufbond man of the countrey / and told hym how there was in the countre of Constantyn befyde Bretayne a grete gyaunt whiche hadde
 10 flayne murthered and deuoured moche peple of the countreye and had ben susteyned seuen yere with the children of the comyns of that land / in soo moche that alle the children ben alle flayne and destroyed / and now late he hath taken the duchesse of Bretayne as she rode by with her meyne / and hath ledde her
 15 to his lodgyng whiche is in a montayne for to rauysse and lye by her to her lyues ende / and many people folowed her moo than v C / but alle they myghte not rescowe her / but they lefte her shrykyng and cryenge lamentably / wherfore I suppose that he hath slayn her in fulfyllynge his fowle lust of le-
 20 chery / She was wyf vnto thy Cosyn fyre Howel / whome we calle ful nyhe of thy blood / Now as thow a ryghtful kynge haue pyte on this lady / and reuenge vs al as thow arte a noble conquerour / ¶ Alas fayd kynge Arthur / this is a grete meschyf / I had leuer than the best Royame that I haue /
 25 that I hadde ben a forlonge way to fore hym for to haue rescowed that lady / ¶ Now felawe fayd kynge Arthur canst thou brynge me there as thys gyaunt haunteth / ye fyre fayd the good man / loo yonder where as thow seest the two grete fyres / there shalt thou fynde hym / and more trefour
 30 than I suppose is in al Fraunce / whanne the kynge hadde vnderstanden this pyteous caas / he retorned in to his tente / ¶ Thenne he callyd to hym fyre kaye and fyre Bedewere / & commaunded them secretely to make redy hors and harneis for hym self and them tweyne / For after euenfonge he wold
 35 ryde on pylgremage with them two only vnto saynt Mychels

mounte / And thenne anone he maad hym redy / and armed
 hym at alle poyntes / and tooke his hors and his sheld /
 And soo they thre departed thens and rode forthe as faste as
 euer they myzt tyl that they cam to the forlond of that mount
 And there they alyghted / and the kynge commaunded them 5
 to tarye there / for he wold hym self goo vp in to that mounte
 And soo he ascended up in to that hylle tyl he came to a grete
 fyre / and there he fonde a careful wydowe wryngynge her han-
 des and makynge grete forowe fyttynge by a graue newe ma-
 de / And thenne kynge Arthur folewed her / and demaunded 10
 of her wherfore she made fuche lamentacion / to whome she an-
 fuerd and sayd Syre knyghte speke softe / for yonder is a de-
 uyll yf he here the speke / he wylle come and destroye the / I
 hold the vnhappy what doost thou here in this mountayne /
 For yf ye were fuche fyfty as ye be / ye were not able to ma- 15
 ke refystence ageynst this deuyll / here lyeth a ducheffe deede the
 whiche was the fayrest of alle the world wyf to fyre Howel /
 duc of Bretayne / he hath murthred her in forcyng her / and
 has flytte her vnto the nauyl / ¶ Dame sayd the kynge / I
 came fro the noble Conqueroure kynge Arthur for to treate 20
 with that tyraunt for his lyege peple / Fy on fuche treatys fa-
 yd she / he setteth not by the kynge ne by no man els / But
 and yf thou haue broughte Arthurs wyf dame Gweneuer /
 he shalle be gladder than thou haddeft gyuen to hym half fra-
 unce / Beware approche hym not to nygh / for he hath vaynquyf- 25
 shed xv kynges / and hath maade hym a cote ful of precious
 stones enbrowdred with theyre berdes / whiche they sente hym
 to haue his loue for sauacion of theyr peple at this laste Cry-
 stemasse / And yf thou wylt / speke with hym at yonder grete
 fyre at souper / wel sayd Arthur I wyll accomplyshe my mes- 30
 sage for al your ferdful wordes / and wente forth by the creast
 of that hylle / and sawe where he satte atte souper gnawynge
 on a lymme of a man / bekyng his brode lymmes by the fyre
 and brecheles / and thre fayr damoyfels tornynge thre broches
 wheron were broched twelue yonge children late borne lyke 35
 yonge byrdes ¶ Whanne kynge Arthur beheld that
 pyteous fyte / he had grete compassion on them so that his hert

bledde for forowe / and hayled hym fayeng in this wyfe he that
alle the world weldeth gyue the shorte lyf & shameful dethe /
And the deuyll haue thy foule / why hast thou murthred the-
se yonge Innocent children / and murthred this ducheſſe / Ther-
5 fore aryſe and dreſſe the thou gloton / For this day ſhall thou
dye of my hand / Thenne the gloton anone ſtarte vp and tooke
a grete clubbe in his hand / and ſmote at the kynge that his
coronal fylle to the erthe / and the kynge hytte hym ageyn that
he carf his bely and cutte of his genytours / that his guttes &
10 his entraylles fylle doune to the ground / thenne the gyaunt
threwe away his clubbe / and caught the kynge in his armes
that he cruſſhyd his rybbes / Thenne the thre maydens knelyd
doune and callyd to Cryſt for helpe and comforte of Arthur
And thenne Arthur weltred and wrong / that he was other
15 whyle vnder and another tyme aboue / And ſo weltryng and
walowyng they rolled doune the hylle / tyl they came to the
fee marke / and euer as they foo weltred / Arthur ſmote hym
with his daggar / and it fortunod they came to the place / whe-
re as the two knyghtes were and kepte Arthurs hors / then-
20 ne when they ſawe the kynge faſt in the gyaunts armes / they
came and loſed hym / And thenne the kynge commaunded fyr
kaye to ſmyte of the gyaunts hede / and to ſette it vpon a trun-
cheon of a ſpere / and bere it to fyre howel / and telle hym that
his enemy was ſlayne / and after late this hede be bounden to
25 a barbycan that alle the peple may ſee and behold hit / and go
ye two up to the montayn / and fetch me my ſheld / my fuerd
and the clubbe of yron / And as for the trefour take ye it / for
ye ſhalle fynde there good oute of nombre / So I haue the ker-
tyl and the clubbe I deſyre no more / This was the fyrſt gy-
30 aunt that euer I mette with / fauf one in the mount of Arabe /
whiche I ouercame / but this was gretter and fyrſer / Thenne
the knyghtes ſette the clubbe and the kyrtyl / and ſome of the
trefour they took to them ſelf / and retorned ageyne to the hoſt
And anone this was knowen thurgh alle the countrey / wher
35 for the peple came and thanked the kynge / And he ſayd a-
geyne yeue the thanke to god / and departe the goodes among
yow / And after that kynge Arthur ſayd and commaunded
his Cofyn howel that he ſhold ordeyne for a chirche to be bylded

on the same hylle in the worship of faynte Mychel / ¶ And
 on the morne the kynge remeuyd with his grete bataylle / and
 came in to Champayne and in a valeye / and there they pyght
 their tentys / and the kynge beyng set at his dyner / ther cam
 in two messagers / of whome that one was Marchal of fraunce 5
 and sayd to the kyng that themperour was entryd in to fra-
 unce / and had destroyed a grete parte and was in Burgoyne
 and had destroyed and made grete slaughter of peple & brente
 townes and borowes / wherfor yf thou come not hastely / they
 must yelde vp their bodyes and goodes / 10

¶ Capitulum sextum

THenne the kynge dyd doo calle fyre Gawayne / fyre
 Borce / fyr Lyonel and fyre Bedwere / and comma-
 unded them to goo frayte to fyre Lucius / and faye ye
 to hym that hastely he remeue oute of my land / And yf he wil
 not / bydde hym make hym redy to bataylle and not distresse the 15
 poure peple / Thenne anone these noble knyghtes dresyd them
 to horsbak / And whanne they came to the grene wood / they fa-
 we many paelions sette in a medowe of fylke of dyuerse co-
 lours besyde a ryuer / And themperours paelione was in the
 myddle with an egle displayed aboue / To the whiche tente 20
 our knyghtes rode toward / and ordeyned fyr Gawayn and
 fyre Bors to doo the message / And leste in a buffhement fyre
 Lyonel / and fyre Bedwere / And thenne fyre Gawayn and
 fyr Borce dyd their message / and commaunded Lucius in Ar-
 thurs name to auoyde his lond / or shortly to adresse hym to ba- 25
 taylle / To whome Lucius anfuerde and sayd ye shalle retorne
 to your lord and faye ye to hym that I shall subdue hym and
 alle his londes / Thenne fyre Gawayn was wrothe and sayde
 I hadde leuer than alle Fraunce fyghte ageynst the / and
 foo hadde I faide fyr Borce leuer than alle Bretayne or bur- 30
 goyne

¶ Thenne a knyght named fyre Gaynus
 nyghe cofyn to the Emperour sayde / loo how these Bretons ben
 ful of pryde and boost / and they bragge as though they bare
 up alle the worlde / Thenne fyre Gawayne was fore greued

with theſe wordes / and pulled oute his ſwerd and ſmote of
 his hede / And therewith torned theyr horſes and rode ouer wa-
 ters and thurgh woodes tyl they came to theyre buſſhement /
 where as fyr Lyonel and fyr Bedeuer were houyng / The ro-
 5 mayns folowed faſt after on horſbak and on foote ouer a chā-
 payn vnto a wood / thenne fyre Boors torned his hors / and
 ſawe a knyghte come faſt on / whome he ſmote thurgh the bo-
 dy with a ſpere that he fylle dede doune to the erthe / thenne cam
 Callyburne one of the ſtrengest of pauye and ſmote doun ma-
 10 ny of Arthurs knyghtes / And whan fyr Bors ſawe hym do
 ſoo moche harme he adreſſyd toward hym & ſmote hym thur-
 the breſt that he fylle doune dede to the erthe / Thenne fyr Fel-
 denak thought to reuenge the dethe of gaynus vpon fyre Ga-
 wayn / but fyre gawayn was ware therof and ſmote hym on
 15 the hede / whiche ſtroke ſtynted not tyl it came to his breſte /
 And thenne he retorned and came to his felawes in the buſ-
 ſhement / And there was a recountre / for the buſſhement brake
 on the Romainys / and flewe and hewe doune the Romainys
 and forced the Romainys to flee and retorne / whome the no-
 20 ble knyghtes chaced vnto theyr tentes / Thenne the Romainys
 gadred more peple / and alſo foote men cam on / and ther was
 a neue bataille and ſoo moche peple that fyr Bors and fyr
 Berel were taken / but whan fyre gawayn ſawe that / he tooke
 with hym fyre Idrus the good knyght and ſayd he wold ne-
 25 uer ſee kyng Arthur but yf he reſcued them / and pulled out
 galatyn his good ſwerd / and folowed them that ledde tho ij
 knyghtes awaye / and he ſmote hym that lad fyre Bors / and
 took fyr Bors fro hym and delyuerd hym to his felawes /
 And fyre Idrus in lyke wyſe reſcowed fyre Berel / thenne
 30 beganne the bataill to be grete that oure knyghtes were in grete
 Ieopardy / wherfore fyre Gawayn ſente to kyng Arthur for ſo-
 cour and that he hye hym for I am fore wounded / and that
 oure pryſoners may paye good oute of nombre / And the meſ-
 ſager came to the kyng and told hym his meſſage / And anon
 35 the kyng dyd doo aſſemble his armye / but anone or he depar-
 ted the pryſoners were comen / and fyre gawayn and his fe-
 lawes gate the felde and put the Romainys to flyght / and af-
 ter retorned and came with their ſelaufſhip in ſuche wyſe / that

no man of worship was lofte of them / fauf that fyr Gawayn was fore hurte / Thenne the kynge dyd do ranfacke his woundes and comforted hym / And thus was the begynnynge of the fyrft iourney of the brytons and Romyans / and ther were flayne of the Romyans moo than ten thoufand / and grete 5 ioye and myrthe was made that nyghte in the hooft of kynge Arthur / And on the morne he fente alle the pryfoners in to parys vnder the garde of fyre launcelot with many knyghtes & of fyr Cador

¶ Capitulum vij

Now torne we to the Emperour of Rome whiche aspy- 10 ed that thefe pryfoners fhould be fente to Parys / and anone he fente to leye in a buffhement certayne knyghtes and prynces with fyxtty thoufand men for to refcove his knyghtes and lordes that were pryfoners / And fo on the morne as Launcelot and fyre Cador chyuetayns and gouernours of all 15 them that conueyed the pryfoners as they fhoulde paffe thurgh a wode fyr Laūcelot fente certayne knyghtes tefpye yf ony were in the woodes to lette them / And whanne the faid knyghtes cam in to the wood / anone they aspyed and fawe the grete enbuffhement / and retorned and told fyr Laūcelot that ther lay 20 in a wayte for them thre fcore thoufand Romyans / And thenne fyr Launcelot with fuche knyghtes as he hadde and men of warre to the nombre of x M put them in araye and met wyth them and foughte with them manly / and flewe and dretenchid many of the Romyans / and flewe many knyghtes & ad- 25 myrals of the party of the Romyans and farafyns / ther was flayne the kynge of lylle and thre grete lordes Aladuke / herawde and heryngdale / but fyr Launcelot fought foo nobly that no man myght endure a froke of his hande / but where he came he fhewed his prowefse and myght / for he flewe doune ryght 30 on euery fyde / And the Romyans and farafyns fledde from hym as the fheep fro the wulf or fro the lyon / and putt them alle that abode alyue to flyght / And fo longe they fouzte that tydynges came to kynge Arthur / And anone he graythed hym and came to the bataille / and fawe his knyghtes how they had 35

vaynquyffhed the bataylle / he enbraced them knyght by kny3te
 in his armes and faid ye be worthy to welde all your honour
 and worship / there was neuer kynge fauf my self that had so
 noble knyghtes / Syre fayd Cadour there was none of vs fail-
 5 led other / but of the prowesse and manhode of fyre Launcelot
 were more than wonder to telle / and also of his cofyns whi-
 che dyd that daye many noble feates of werre / And also fyre
 Cadour tolde who of his knyghtes were flayne / as fyr beriel &
 other fyr Morys and fyr Maurel two good knyghtes / then-
 10 ne the kynge wepte and dryed his eyen with a keuerchyef / &
 fayd your courage had nere hand destroyed yow / For though
 ye had retorned ageyne / ye had loſt no worship / For I calle
 hit foly / knyghtes to abyde whan they be ouermatched / Nay
 fayd Launcelot and the other / For ones shamed maye neuer
 15 be recouerd

¶ Capitulum viiij

Now leue we kynge Arthur and his noble knyghtes
 whiche had wonne the felde / and had brought theyre
 pryfoners to parys / and ſpeke we of a ſenatour whiche eſca-
 ped fro the bataille / and came to Lucius themperour & fayd to
 20 hym / Syre emperour I aduſe the for to withdrawe the / what
 doſt thou here / thou ſhalt wynne noo thyng in theſe marches
 but grete ſtrokes oute of al meſure / For this day one of Ar-
 thurs knyghtes was worth in the batayll an honderd of ours
 Fy on the ſayd Lucius thou ſpekeſt cowardly / for thy wor-
 25 des greue me more than alle the loſſe that I had this day / and
 anone he fende forth a kynge whiche hyghte fyr leomye with a
 grete armye / and badde hym hye hym faſt to fore / and he wold
 folowe haſtely after / kynge Arthur was warned pryuely / &
 ſente his peple to Seſſoyne / and toke vp the townes & caſtels
 30 fro the Romainys / Thenne the kyng commaunded fyr Cadour to
 take the rereward / & to take with hym certayne knyghtes of
 the round table / and fyre Launcelot / fyre Bors / fyr kay / fyre
 Marrok with fyre Marhaus ſhalle awayte on our perſone /
 Thus the kynge Arthur diſperplyd his hooft in dyuerſe par-
 35 tyes / to thende that his enemyes ſhold not eſcape / whanne the

Emperour was entryd in to the vale of Seffoyne / he myghte
fee where kynge Arthur was enbatailled and his baner dyf-
played / and he was byfette round aboute with his enemyes /
that nedes he must fyghte or yelde hym / for he myght not flee /
But sayd openly vnto the Romayns / fyrs I admonefte you 5
that this day ye fyghte and acquyte yow as men / and remem-
bre how Rome domyneth and is chyef and hede ouer alle the
erthe and vnyuersal world / and suffre not these bretons thys
day to abyde ageynste vs / & ther with he dyd commaunde hys
trōpettes to blowe the bloody fownes in fuche wyfe that the gro- 10
und trembled and dyndled / Thenne the batails approuched
and shoue and showted on bothe fydes and grete strokes were
smyten on bothe fydes / many men ouerthrowen / hurte / & slayn
and grete valyaunces / prowesses and appertyces of werre we-
re that day shewed / whiche were ouer long to recounte the no- 15
ble feates of euery man / For they shold conteyne an hole vo-
lume / But in especyal kynge Arthur rode in the bataille ex-
hortyng his knyghtes to doo wel / and hym self dyd as no-
bly with his handes as was possyble a man to doo / he drewe
oute Excalibur his swerd / and awayted euer where as the ro- 20
mayns were thyckest and moost greued his peple / and anone
he adressyd hym on that parte and hewe and flewe doune ryȝt
and rescued his peple / and he flewe a grete gyaunt named ga-
lapas / whiche was a man of an huge quantyte and heyghte
he shorted hym and smote of bothe his legges by the knees / fa- 25
yenge Now arte thou better of a fyfe to dele with / than thou
were / and after smote of his hede / there fyre gawayn foughte
nobly and flewe thre admyrales in that bataill / And so dyd
alle the knyghtes of the round table / Thus the bataill bitwe-
ne kynge Arthur and Lucius themperour endured longe / Lu- 30
cius had on his fyde many sarafyns / whiche were slayn / and
thus the bataille was grete / and ofttydes that one party was
at a fordele and anone at an afterdele / whiche endured so longe
tyl at the last kyng Arthur aspyed / where Lucius themperour
fought / and dyd wonder with his owne handes / And anon he 35
rode to hym / And eyther smote other fyersly / and atte last Lu-
cyus smote Arthur thwart the vyfage / and gaf hym a large
wound / And whanne kyng Arthur felte hym self hurte / anon

he smote hym ageyne with Excalibur that it clefted his hede fro
 the fomette of his hede / and stynted not tyl it cam to his breſte
 And thenne themperour fylle doune dede / and there ended his
 lyf / And whan it was knowen that themperour was ſlayne
 5 anone alle the Romainys with all their hooft put them to fly-
 ght / and kyng Arthur with alle his knyghtes folowed the
 chaas / and ſlewe doune ryght alle them that they myghte at-
 teyne / And thus was the vyctory gyuen to kyng Arthur &
 the tryumphe / and there were ſlayne on the party of Lucius
 10 moo than an hondred thouſand / And after kyng Arthur dyd
 doo ranfacke the dede bodyes / and dyd doo burye them that were
 ſlayne of his retenue euery man accordynge to theſtate & de-
 gree that he was of / And them that were hurte he lete the ſur-
 gyens doo ſerche their hurtes and woundes / and commaun-
 15 ded to ſpare no ſalues ne medecynes tyl they were hole /
 Thenne the kyng rode ſtrayte to the place where themperour lu-
 cius lay dede / and with hym he fond ſlayne the Sowdan of
 Surrey / the kyng of Egypte and of Ethyope / whiche we-
 re two noble kynges with xvij other kynges of dyuerſe regy-
 20 ons / and alſo fyxty ſenatours of Rome al noble men / whome
 the kyng dyd do bawme and gomme with many good gomme-
 mes aromatyke / and after dyd do cere them in fyxty fold of ce-
 red clothe of Sendale / and leyde them in cheſtyes of leed / by ca-
 uſe they ſhold not chauffe ne ſauoure / and vpon alle theſe bo-
 25 dyes their ſheldes with their armes and baners were ſette / to
 thende they ſhold be knowen of what country they were / and
 after he fonde thre Senatours whiche were on lyue to whome
 he ſayde / for to ſaue your lyues I wylle that ye take theſe dede
 bodyes / and carye them with yow vnto grete Rome / and pre-
 30 ſente them to the poteſtate on my behalve ſhewynge hym my let-
 ters / and telle them that I in my perſone ſhal haſtely be atte
 Rome / And I ſuppoſe the Romainys ſhalle beware how they
 ſhal demaunde ony trybute of me / And I commaunde yow to
 ſaye whan ye ſhal come to Rome to the poteſtate and all the
 35 councelle and Senate / that I ſende to them theſe dede bodyes
 for the trybute that they haue demaunded / And yf they be not
 content with theſe / I ſhal paye more at my comynge / for other
 trybute owe I none / ne none other wylle I paye / And me

thynketh this suffyseth for Bretayne / Irlond and al Alma-
 yne with germanye / And ferthermore I charge yow to faye
 to them / that I commaunde them vpon payne of theyre hedes ne-
 uer to demaunde trybute ne taxe of me ne of my londes
 Thenne with this charge and commaundement the thre Sena- 5
 tours afore fayd departed with alle the fayd dede bodyes le-
 ynge the body of Lucius in a carre couerd with tharmes of the
 Empyre al alone / And after alwey two bodyes of kynges in
 a charyot / and thenne the bodyes of Senatours after them
 and soo wente toward Rome / and shewed theyr legacyon & 10
 message to the potestate and Senate / recountyng the bataylle
 done in Fraunce / and how the feld was lost and moche peo-
 ple & Innumerable slayne / wherfore they aduyfed them in no
 wyfe to meue no more warre ageynste that noble conqueroure
 Arthur / For his myght and prowesse is most to be doubted 15
 feen the noble kynges and grete multytude of knyghtes of
 the round table / to whome none erthely prynce may compare /

¶ Capitulo nono

Now torne we vnto kynge Arthur and his noble kny-
 ghtes whiche after the grete bataylle acheued ageynste
 the Romainys / entryd in to Lorayne braban and Flaundres 20
 and fythen retorned in to hault Almayn / and so ouer the mō-
 tayns in to lombardye / and after in to Tuskanie / wherin was
 a Cyte / whiche in no wyfe wold yelde them self ne obeye / wher-
 fore kynge Arthur biseged it / and lay longe aboute hit / and
 gaf many assaultes to the Cyte / And they within deffended 25
 them valyauntly / Thenne on a tyme the kynge called fyr flo-
 rence a knyght / and fayd to hym they lacked vytaylle / and
 not ferre from hens ben grete forestes and woodes / wherin ben
 many of myn enemyes with moche bestyayl / I wyl that thou
 make the redy and goo thyder in foreyeng / and take with the 30
 fyr Gawayn my neuw / Syre wyffhard / fyre Clegys / Syre
 Cleremond and the Captayn of Cardef with other / & brynge
 with yow alle the beeftes that ye there can gete / And anone
 these knyghtes made them redy / and rode ouer holtys & hyllys
 thurgh forestes and woodes / tyl they cam in to a fayr medow 35

ful of fayre floures and graffe / And there they rested them &
 theyr horses alle that nyghte / And in the spryngynge of the
 day in the next morne / fyre Gawayn took his hors and stale
 away from his felauship to seke some aduentures / And anon
 5 he was ware of a man armed walkynge his hors easyly by
 a wodes fyde / and his sheld laced to his sholdre fyttynge on
 a stronge courser withoute ony man sauyng to a page berynge a
 myghty spere . The knyght bare in his sheld thre gryffons of
 gold in fable charbuncle the chyef of syluer / whan fyre Ga-
 10 wayn aspyed this gay knyght / he fewtryd his spere and rode
 strait to hym / and demaunded of hym from whens that he was
 that other answered and sayd he was of Tuscane / and dema-
 unded of fyre gawayn / what profyft thou proude knyghte
 the so boldly / here getest thou no praye / thou mayst proue whā
 15 thou wylt / for thou shalt be my prysoner or thou departe /

¶ Thenne sayd gawayn / thou auauntest the gretely and spe-
 kefst proude wordes / I couceylle the for alle thy boost that thou
 make the redy / and take thy gere to the / to fore gretter game
 falle to the

¶ Capitulum x

20 **T** Henne they took theyr speres and ranne eche at other
 with alle the myghte they had / and smote eche other
 thurgh their sheldes in to theyr sholders / wherfore anone they
 pulled oute their swardes / and smote grete strokes that the fy-
 re sprange oute of their helmes / Thenne fyre gawayne was al
 25 abashed and with galatyn his good sward he smote thurgh
 shelde and thycke hauberke made of thyck maylles and al to
 ruffhed and brake the precious stones / and made hym a large
 wounde / that men myghte see bothe lyuer and long / Thenne gro-
 ned that knyght / and adressyd hym to fyr Gawayn / & with
 30 an awke stroke gaf hym a grete wound and kytte a vayne /
 whiche greued gawayn fore / and he bledde fore / ¶ Thenne the
 knyghte sayd to fyre Gawayn / bynde thy wounde or thy blee
 chaunge / for thou bybledest al thy hors and thy fayre armes /
 For alle the Barbours of Bretayne shal not conne staunche
 35 thy blood / For who someuer is hurte with this blade he shalle

neuer be staunched of bledynge / Thenne anfuerd gawayn hit
 greueth me but lytyl / thy grete wordes shalle not feare me ne
 lasse my courage / but thou shalt fuffre tene and forow or we
 departe / but telle me in haſt who maye ſtaunche my bledynge /
 That may I doo ſayd the knyght yf I wylle / And ſo wyl 5
 I yf thou wylt focoure and ayde me that I maye be cryſtned
 and byleue on god / And therof I requyre the of thy man-
 hode / and it ſhalle be grete meryte for thy ſoule I graunte ſa-
 id Gawayne ſo god helpe me tacomplyſſhe alle thy deſyre /
 But fyrſt telle me what thou foughteſt here thus allone / and 10
 of what londe and legeaunce thou arte of / Syre he ſayd my na-
 me is Pryamus / and a grete prynce is my fader / and he hath
 ben rebelle vnto Rome and ouer ryden many of theyr londes /
 My fader is lyneally deſcended of Alyfaunder and of hec-
 tor by ryght lygne / And duke Iofue and Machabeus were of 15
 oure lygnage / I am ryght enherytour of Alyfaunder and au-
 fryke and alle the oute yles / yet wyl I byleue on thy lord
 that thou byleueſt on / And for thy laboure I ſhalle yeue the
 trefour ynough / I was ſoo elate and hauteyn in my hert that
 I thought no man my pere ne to me ſemblable / I was fente 20
 in to this werre with ſeuē ſcore knyghtes / and now I haue
 encountred with the whiche haſt gyuen to me of fyghtyng my
 fylle / wherefore fyr knyghte I pray the to telle me what thou
 arte / I am no knyght ſayd gawayn / I haue ben brought vp
 in the garderoſe with the noble kynge Arthur many yeres for 25
 to take hede to his armour and his other araye / and to poyn-
 te his paltockes that longen to hym ſelf / At yole laſt he made
 me yoman and gaf to me hors and harneys and an honderd
 pound in money / And yf fortune be my frend / I doubte not /
 but to be wel auaunced and holpen by my lyege lord / A fa- 30
 yd Pryamus / yf his knauys be ſo kene and fyers / his kny-
 tes ben paſſyng good / Now for the kynges loue of heuen whe-
 ther thou be a knaue or a knyghte telle thou me thy name /
 By god ſayd fyre Gawayn / Now wyl I ſaye the ſothe / my
 name is fyre gawayn and knowen I am in his courte and in 35
 his chambre / and one of the knyghtes of the round table / he
 dubbed me a duke with owne hand / Therfore grutche not
 yf this grace is to me fortunēd / hit is the goodneſſe of god

that lente to me my strengthe / Now am I better pleasyd sayd
Pryamus than thou haddest gyuen to me al the prouynce and
parys the ryche / I had leuer to haue ben torn with wylde hor-
fes / than any varlet had wonne fuche loos / or any page or pry-
ker shold haue had prys on me / But now fyre knyghte I
warne the / that here by is a duke of Lorayne with his armye
and the noblest men of Dolphyne and lordes of lombardye /
with the garneson of godard / and farafyns of Southland y-
nombred lx M of good men of armes / wherfor but yf we
10 hye vs hens / it wylle harme vs bothe / for we ben fore hurte / ne-
uer lyke to recouer / but take hede to my page that he no horne
blowe / For yf he doo ther ben houynge fast by an C kny-
tes awaytynge on my perfone / and yf they take the / ther shal
no raunfon of gold ne syluer acquyte the / Thenne fyre gawa-
15 yne rode ouer a water for to saue hym / And the knyghte folo-
wed hym / and soo rode forthe tyl they came to his felawes /
whiche were in the medowe / where they had ben al the nyghte
Anone as fyre wychard was ware of fyre gawayn and sawe
that he was hurte / he ranne to hym soroufully wepynge / and
20 demaunded of hym who had soo hurte hym / and gawayn told
how he had foughten with that man / and eche of them hadde
hurte other / and how he had salues to hele them / but I can tel-
le yow other tydynges / that soone we shal haue adoo with ma-
ny enemyes / Thenne fyre pryamus and fyre gawayn alygh-
25 ted / and lete theire horses grafe in the medowe and vnarmed
them / And thenne the blood ranne fresshly fro theyre woun-
des / And pryamus toke fro his page a vyolle ful of the four
waters that came oute of paradys / and with certayne baume
enoynted theyr woundes / and weffhe them with that water / &
30 within an houre after / they were both as hole as euer they we-
re / And thenne with a trompet were they alle assembled to co-
unceylle / And there pryamus told vnto them / what lordes and
knyghtes had sworne to rescowe hym / and that without faille
they shold be affailed with many thousandes / wherfor he coun-
35 ceilled them to withdrawe them / Thenne fyre gawayn sayd it
were grete shame to them to auoyde withoute ony strokes /
Wherfore I aduyse to take oure armes and to make vs redy
to mete with these farafyns and mysbyleuyng men / and wyth

the helpe of god we shal ouerthrowe them and haue a fayre day on them / And fyre Florens shall abyde styll in thys felde to kepe the stale as a noble knyghte / and we shal not forsake yonder felawes / Now sayd Pyramus seasse your wordes / for I warne yow ye shal fynde in yonder woodes many peryllo- 5 us knyghtes / they wylle put forthe beestes to calle yow on / they be out of nombre / and ye are not past vij C whiche ben ouer fewe to fyght with soo many / Neuertheles sayd fyr gawayn we shal ones encountre them / and see what they can do and the beste shalle haue the vyctory 10

¶ Capitulo xi

THenne fyre Florence callyd to hym fyre florydas with an honderd knyghtes and droofe forth the herde of be- stes / Thenne folowed hym vij honderd men of armes / and fyr Feraunt of spayne on a fayr stede came spryngynge oute of the woodes / and came to fyre Florence and axyd hym why he 15 fledde / Thenne fyre Florence took his spere / and rode ageynste hym / and smote hym in the forhede and brake his necke bone / Thenne all thother were meued / and thought to auenge the dethe of fyr Feraunt / and smote in emonge them / and there was grete fyghte and many slayne and leyd doune to gro- 20 unde / and fyr Florence with his C knyghtes alwey kepte the stale and foughte manly / ¶ Thenne whan Pryamus the good knyght perceyued the grede fyght / he wente to fyre Gawayn / and badde hym that he shold goo and socoure his felausship / whiche were fore bystad with their enemyes / Syr gre- 25 ue yow not sayd fyre Gawayn / For theyr gree shall be theirs I shall not ones meue my hors to them ward / but yf I see mo than ther ben / For they ben stronge ynough to matche them / & with that he sawe an erle called fyre Ethelwold and the duk of duchemen cam lepyng out of a wood with many thousādes 30 & pryamus knyghtes / & cam straye vn to the bataylle / thēne sir gawayn comforted his knyghtes / and bad them not to be abasshed / for al shal be ours / thēne they began to wallope & mette with their enemyes / there were mē slayn & ouerthrowen on euery

fyde / Thenne threstyd in amonge them the knyghtes of the table round / and smote doune to the erthe alle them that wythstode them / in foo moche that they made them to recuyelle & flee / By god sayd fyre Gawayn this gladeth my herte / for now
 5 ben they lasse in nombre by xx M / Thenne entryd in to the bataylle Iubaunce a geaunt / and fought and slewe doune ryght and distressyd many of our knyghtes / emonge whome was slayne fyre Gherard a knyght of walys / Thenne oure knyghtes toke herte to them / and slewe many farafyns / And thenne
 10 came in fyr Priamus with his penon / and rode with the knyghtes of the round table / and fought so manfully that many of their enemyes lost theyr lyues / And ther fyr Pryamus slewe the Marquys of Moyfes land / and fyre gawayn with his felawes so quytte hem that they had the feld / but in that
 15 stoure was fyr Chestelayne a chyld and ward of fyre Gawayne slayne / wherfore was moche forou made / and his deth wes foone auengyd / Thus was the bataille ended and many lordes of lombardye and farafyns left dede in the feld /

¶ Thenne fyre florence and fyre Gawayne herberowed fullyr
 20 theyr peple / and token grete plente of bestyal of gold & syluer and grete trefour and rycheffe and retorned vnto kyng Arthur whiche lay styl at the fyege / And whanne they came to the kyng / they presented theyr pryfoners and recounted theyre aduentures / and how they had vaynquysshed theyre ene-
 25 myes

¶ Capitulum xii

Now thanked be god sayd the noble kyng Arthur / But what maner man is he that standeth by hym self hym semed no pryfoner / Syre sayd Gawayne this is a good man of armes / he hath matched me / but he is yolden vnto god
 30 and to me for to bycome Crysten . had not he haue be we shold neuer haue rotorned / wherfor I pray yow that he may be baptyfed / for ther lyueth not a nobler man ne better knyght of his handes / thenne the kyng lete hym anon be crystned / and dyd doo calle hym his fyrste name Pryamus / and made hym a du-
 35 ke and knyghte of the table round ¶ And thenne anon the kyng lete do crye assaulte to the cyte / and there was reynge of laddres brekyng of wallys and the dyche fylled /

that men with lytel payne myzt entre in to the cyte / thēne cam
 out a ducheſſe / & Claryſyn the counteſſe with many ladyes &
 damoyfels / and knelyng bifore kyng Arthur requyred hym
 for the loue of god to receyue the cyte / & not to take it by affa-
 ulte for thenne ſhold many gyltles be ſlayne / thēne the kyng 5
 aualyd his vyſer with a meke & noble cōūtenaūce / & ſaid ma-
 dame ther ſhal none of my ſubgettys myſdoo you ne your ma-
 ydens / ne to none that to yow longen / but the duke ſhal abyde
 my Iugement / thenne anone the kyng commaunded to leue the
 affault / & anon the dukes oldeſt ſone brought out the keyes / & 10
 knelyng delyuerd them to the kyng / & byſouzt hym of grace / &
 the kyng ſeaſed the toun by aſſent of his lordes / & toke the duc
 & ſent hym to dower there for to abyde pryſoner terme of his lyf
 & aſſigned certayn rentes for the dower of the ducheſſe & for
 her children / Thenne he made lordes to rule tho londes & lawes 15
 as a lord ought to do in his owne countrey / & after he took his
 iourney toward Rome / & ſent ſir Florys & ſyr florydas to fore
 with v C men of armes / & they cam to the cyte of vrbyne & leid
 there a buſſhement there as them ſemed moſt beſt for them / & ro-
 de to fore the toun / where anon yſſued oute moche peple & ſkar- 20
 muſhed with the fore rydars / thēne brake out the buſſhement &
 wan the brydge & after the toun / & ſet vpon the wallis the kyn-
 ges baner / thēne cam the kyng vpon an hille & ſawe the Cyte
 & his baner on the wallys / by whiche he knewe that the Cyte
 was wonne / & anone he ſente & commaunded that none of his 25
 lyege men ſhold defoule ne lygge by no lady / wyf / ne maide / &
 whan he cam in to the cyte / he paſſid to the caſtel / and comforted
 them that were in forou / & ordeyned ther a captayn a knyzt of
 his own cōūtre / & whan they of Melane herd that thylk cyte
 was wōne / they ſent to kyng Arthur grete ſōmes of money / & 30
 beſouzt hym as their lord to haue pyte of them / promyſyng to be
 his ſubgettys for euer / & yelde to hym homage & fealte for the
 lādes of pleſaūce & pauye / peterſaynt & the port of tremble / &
 to gyue hym yerly a melyon of gold al his lyf tyme / thēne he
 rydeth in to Tuſkane & wynneth tounes & caſtels & waſted al 35
 in his way that to hym wil not obeye / & ſo to ſpolute & viterbe
 & fro thens he rode in to the vale of vycecoūte among the vynes
 And fro thens he ſente to the ſenatours to wete / whether they

wold knowe hym for theyr lord / But foone after on a fater-
day came vnto kynge Arthur alle the fenatours that were left
on lyue / and the noblest Cardynals that thenne dwellyd in
Rome / And prayd hym of pees / and profered hym ful large
5 And byfought hym as gouernour to gyue lycence for vj we-
kes for to assemble alle the Romainys / And thenne to crowne
hym Emperour with creme as it bylongeth to so hyhe astate / I
assente sayd the kynge lyke as ye haue deuysed / and at cry-
stemas there to be crowned / and to holde my round table with
10 my knyghtes as me lyketh / And thenne the fenatours maade
redy for his Intronyfacyon / And at the day appoynted as the
Romaunce telleth he came in to Rome / and was crouned em-
perour by the popes hand with all the ryalte that coude be ma-
de / And sudgeterned there a tyme / and establysshed all his lon-
15 des from Rome in to Fraunce / and gaf londes and royaumes
vnto his seruantes and knyghtes to eueryche after his desert
in fuche wyse that none complayned ryche ne poure / & he gaf
to fyre Pryamus the duchye of Lorayne / and he thanked hym
and sayd he wold serue hym the dayes of his lyf / and after
20 made dukes and erles / and made euery man ryche / Thenne
after this alle his knyghtes and lordes assembled them afore
hym / and sayd bleffyd be god your warre is fynnysshed and
your conquest acheued / in soo moche that we knowe none soo
grete ne myghty that dar make warre ageynst yow / wherfore
25 we byfeche you to retorne homeward / and gyue vs lycence to
goo home to our wyues / fro whome we haue ben longe / and
to reste vs / for your Iourney is fynnysshed with honour & wo-
ship / Thenne sayd the kyng / ye saye trouthe / and for to temp-
te god it is no wyfedome / And therfore make you redy and
30 retorne we in to Englund / Thenne there was truffyng of har-
neis and bagage and grete caryage / And after lycence gyuen
he retorned and commaunded that noo man in payne of dethe
shold not robbe ne take vytaylle / ne other thyng by the way
but that he shold paye therfore / And thus he came ouer the see
35 and loded at sandwyche / ageynste whome Quene Gweneuer
his wyf came and mette hym / and he was nobly receyued of
alle his comyns in euery cyte and burgh / and grete yestes
presented to hym at his home comyng to welcome hym with /

¶ Thus endeth the fyfthe booke of the conqueste that kynge Arthur hadde ageynste Lucius the Emperoure of Rome / and here foloweth the fyrth book whiche is of fyr Launcelot du lake

¶ Capitulum primum



Oone after that kyng Arthur was come / fro rome in to Englonde / thenne alle the knyghtes of the table round reforted vnto the kyng / & made many Iustes & turnementes / & some there were that were but knyghtes whiche encreaced so in armes and worship that they passed alle their felawes in prowesse and noble dedes / and that was wel preued on many But in especyall it was preued on fyre launcelot du lake / for in al turnementys and Iustes and dedes of armes both for lyf and deth he passed al other knyghtes / and at no tyme he was neuer ouercome / but yf it were by treson or enchauntement / so fyr Launcelot encreaced soo merueyllously in worship / and in honour / therfor is he the fyrst knyght that the frensche book maketh mencyon of after kynge Arthur came fro rome / wherfore quene gweneuer had hym in grete fauour aboue al other knyghtes . and in certayne he loued the quene ageyne aboue al other ladyes damoyfels of his lyf / And for her he dyd many dedes of armes and faued her from the fyre thorou his noble chyualry / Thus fyre launcelot rested hym longe with play & game / And thenne he thought hym self to preue hym self in straunge auentures / thenne he hadde his neuewe fyre Lyonel for to make hym redy / for we two wylle seke aduentures / So they mounted on their horses armed at al ryghtes / and rode in to a depe forest & soo in to a depe playne / ¶ And thenne the weder was hote about noone / and fyre launcelot had grete lust to slepe / Thenne fyr lyonel aspyed a grete Appyl tree that stode by an hedge / & said broder yonder is a fayre shadowe / there maye we reste vs on oure horses / hit is wel faide faire broder said fyr launcelot / for this viij yere I was not so slepy as I am now / and so they there alyghted & tayed their horses vnto fondry trees / and so fyr launcelot layd hym doune vnder an appyl tree / and his helme he layd vnder his hede / And Syre

lyonel waked whyle he slepte / Soo fyre launcelot was a fle-
 pe passynge fast / And in the mene whyle there came thre kny-
 ghtes rydyng as faste fleyng as euer they myghte ryde
 And there folowed hem thre but one knyghte / And whanne
 5 fyr lyonel sawe hym / hym thought he sawe neuer soo grete a
 knyghte nor soo wel farynge a man neyther soo wel appa-
 rilled vnto al ryghtes / Soo within a whyle this strong knyzt
 had ouertaken one of these knyghtes / and there he smote hym
 to the cold erth that he lay styll / And than he rode vnto the se-
 10 cond knyght / and smote hym soo that man and hors felle do-
 une / And thenne streyghte to the thyrdde knyghte he rode and
 smote hym behynde his hors ars a spere length / And thenne
 he alyghte doune arayned his hors on the brydel & bonde
 alle the thre knyghtes fast with the raynes of their owne bry-
 15 dels / Whan fyr lyonel sawe hym doo thus / he thought to assay
 hym / & made hym redy & styly / and pryuely he took his hors &
 thoughte not for to awake fyr launcelot / And whan he was
 mounted vpon his hors / he ouertoke this strong knyght / & bad
 hym torne / and the other smote fyr lyonel so hard that hors &
 20 man he bare to the erthe / & so he alyght down & bound hym fast
 and threwe hym ouerthwart his owne hors / and soo he ferued
 hem al foure / & rode with hem away to his owne castel / And
 whan he came there he garte vnarme them & bete hem with thor-
 nys al naked / & after put hem in a depe pryson where were ma-
 25 ny mo knyghtes that made grete doloure

¶ Capitulum secundum /

WHan fyre Ector de marys wyf that fyre laūcelot was
 past out of the court to seke aduentures he was wroth
 with hym self / & made hym redy to seke fyre laūcelot / & as he
 had ryden long in a grete forest he mette with a man was ly-
 30 ke a foster / Fayre felaw said fyre Ector knowest thou in thys
 countrey ony aduentures that ben here nyghe hand / Syr sayd
 the foster / this countrey knowe I wel . and here by within thys
 myle / is a stronge manoir and wel dyked / & by that manoir
 on the lyfte hand there is a faire fourde for horses to drynke
 35 of / and ouer that fourde there groweth a fayr tree / and theron
 hangen many fayre sheldes that welded somtyme good knygh-
 tes / & atte hoole of the tree hangeth a bacyn of coper & latoen /

and ftryke vpon that bacyn with the but of thy fpere thryes /
 And foone after thou fhalt here newe tydynges / And ellys
 haft thou the fayreft grace that many a yere had euer knyght
 that paffed thorou this forest / gramercy fayd fyre Ector / and
 departed / and came to the tree and fawe many fayre fheldes 5
 And amonge them he fawe his broders fheld fyr Lyonel and
 many moo that he knewe that were his felawes of the round
 table / the whiche greued his herte / and promyfed to reuenge
 his broder / Thenne anone fyr Ector bete on the bacyn as he we-
 re wood / and thenne he gaf his hors drynke at the fourde / & 10
 ther came a knyghte behynd hym / and bad hym come oute of
 the water and make hym redy / and fyre Ector anone torned
 hym fhortly and in fewter caft his fpere and fmote the other
 knyghte a grete buffet that his hors torned twyes aboute /
 This was wel done faid the ftrong knyzt / & knyztly thou haft 15
 ftryken me / And therwith he ruffhed his hors on fyre Ector /
 and cleyzte hym vnder his ryght arme & bare hym clene out
 of the fadel / and rode with hym away in to his owne halle / &
 threwe hym doune in myddes of the floore / the name of thys
 knyghte was fyre Turquyne / than he faid vnto fyre Ector for 20
 thou haft done this day more vnto me than any knyghte dyd
 thefe xij yeres / Now wille I graunte the thy lyf fo thou wilt
 be fworn to be my pryfoner all thy lyf dayes / Nay faid fir Ec-
 tor / that wylle I neuer promyfe the / but that I will do myne
 auauntage / That me repenteth fayd fyre Turquyne / and then- 25
 ne he garte to vnarme hym and bete hym with thornys all na-
 ked / and fythen putte hym doune in a depe dungeon where he
 knewe many of his felawes / But whan fyre Ector fawe fyr
 lyonel thenne made he grete forowe / Allas broder fayd fir Ec-
 tor / where is my broder fyre Launcelot / Fayre broder I lefte 30
 hym on flepe whan that I from hym yode vnder an appel tree
 and what is become of hym I can not telle yow / Allas faid
 the knyghtes / but fyre launcelot helpe vs we may neuer be de-
 lyuerd / for we knowe now noo knyght that is able to matche
 oure mayfter Turquyn

35

¶ Capitulum tercium

Now leue we these knyghtes prysoners and speke we
 of fyre Launcelott du lake that lyeth vnder the Appyl
 Tree slepynge / euen aboute the noone there come
 by hym foure quenes of grete estate / And for the hete shold
 5 not nyhe hem there rode foure knyghtes aboute hem / and bare a
 clothe of grene fylke on foure speres betwixe them and the
 sonne / And the quenes rode on foure whyte mules

¶ Thus as they rode they herde by them a grete hors grymly
 neye / thenne were they ware of a slepynge knyghte that laye
 10 alle armed vnder an appyl tree / anone as these quenes loked
 on his face / they knewe it was fyre launcelot / Thenne they by-
 ganne for to stryue for that knyghte / euerychone sayd they
 wold haue hym to her loue / ¶ We shalle not stryue sayd Mor-
 gan le fay that was kynge Arthurs syster / I shalle putte an
 15 enchauntement vpon hym / that he shalle not awake in fyxe
 owres / And thenne I wylle lede hym away vnto my castel /
 And whanne he is surely within my hold / I shalle take the
 enchauntement from hym / And thenne lete hym chese whyche
 of vs he wylle haue vnto peramour / ¶ Soo thys enchaunte-
 20 ment was caste vpon fyre Launcelot / And thenne they leyd
 hym vpon his shelde / and bare hym foo an horsback betwixt
 two knyghtes / and brought hym vnto the castel charyot / and
 there they leyd hym in a chambyr cold / and att nyghte they
 sente vnto hym a fayre damoyfel with his souter redy dyght
 25 By that the enchauntement was past / And whan she came
 she falewed hym / and asked hym what chere / I can not faye
 fayre damoyfel said fyre Launcelot / for I wote not how I cam
 in to this castel / but it be by an enchauntement / Syre sayd she
 ye must make good chere / And yf ye be fuche a knyghte as it is
 30 sayd ye ben / I shalle telle you more to morne by pryme of the
 daye / Gramercy fayre damoyfel sayd fyre Launcelot of youre
 good wyl I requyre yow / And foo she departed / And there
 he laye alle that nyght withoute comforte of ony body

¶ And on the morne erly came these foure quenes passyng-
 35 ly wel byfene / Alle they byddyng hym good morne / and he
 them ageyne / ¶ Syre knyghte the foure quenes sayd thou
 must vnderstande thou arte our prysoner / and we here knowe
 the wel that thou arte fyre Launcelot du laake / kynge Bans

sone / And by cause we vnderstande your worthynes that thou
 arte the noblest knyght lyuyng / And as we knowe wel ther
 can no lady haue thy loue but one / and that is quene Gwene-
 uer / and now thou shalt lose her for euer and she the / and ther-
 fore the behoueth now to chese one of vs four / I am the quene 5
 Morgan le fay quene of the land of Gorre / and here is the
 quene of Northgalys and the quene of Eestland / and the que-
 ne of the oute yles / ¶ Now chese one of vs whiche thou wylt
 haue to thy peramour / for thou mayst not chese or els in thys
 pryson to dye / This is an hard caaas sayd fyre Launcelot that 10
 eyther I muste dye or els chese one of yow / yet had I leuer
 to dye in this pryson with worship than to haue one of you to
 my peramour maugre my hede / And therefore ye be anfuerd I
 wylle none of yow for ye be fals enchauntresses / And as for
 my lady dame Gweneuer / were I at my lyberte as I was / 15
 I wold preue hit on you or on yours / that she is the trueest
 lady vnto her lord lyuyng / Wel sayd the quenes / is this yo-
 ur anfuere that ye wylle reffuse vs / ye on my lyf sayd fyr laū-
 celot / reffused ye ben of me / Soo they departed and lefte hym
 there alone that made grete forowe

20

¶ Capitulum quartum

RYght so at the noone came the damoyfel vnto hym with
 his dyner / and asked hym what chere / truly fayre da-
 moyfel sayd fyre Launcelot in my lyf dayes neuer so ylle / fir
 she sayd that me repentest / but and ye wylle be reulyd by me /
 I shal help you out of this distresse / and ye shal haue no sha- 25
 me nor vylony soo that ye hold me a promyse / fayre damoyfel
 I wil graunte yow / and fore I am of these quenes forcereffes
 aferd / for they haue destroyed many a good knyght / fyre sayd
 she that is sothe and for the renome and bounte that they here
 of you / they wold haue your loue / and fir they sayne / your na- 30
 me is fyre Launcelot du laake the floure of knyghtes / & they
 be passyng wrothe with yow that ye haue reffused hem / But
 fyre and ye wold promyse me to helpe my fader on tewsdaye
 next comynge / that hath made a turnement betwixe hym and

the kynge of Northgalys / for the laft tewesdaye past my fader
 loft the felde thorough thre knyghtes of Arthurs courte / And
 ye wyll be there on tewesday next comyng / and helpe my fader
 to morne or pryme by the grace of god I fhalle delyuer yow
 5 clene / Fayre mayden fayd fyr launcelot telle me what is your
 faders name / and thenne fhall I gyue you an anfuer / Syre
 knyghte she fayd / my fader is kyng Bagdemagus that was
 foule rebuked at the laft turnement / I knowe your fader wel
 faid fyre launcelot for a noble kyng and a good knyghte /
 10 And by the feythe of my body ye fhalle haue my body redy to
 doo your fader and you feruyfe at that day / Syre she fayd gra-
 mercy / and to morne awayte ye be redy by tymes and I fhall
 be she that fhall delyuer you / and take you your armour and
 your hors shelde and spere / And here by within this x myle is
 15 an Abbey of whyte monkes / there I praye you that ye me a-
 byde / and thyder fhall I brynge my fader vnto you / alle thys
 fhall be done faide fyre Launcelot as I am true knyghte / and
 foo she departed and came on the morne erly / and found hym
 redy / thenne she brought hym oute of twelue lockes & brougt
 20 hym vnto his armour / & whan he was clene armed / she brou-
 ght hym vntyl his owne hors / and lyghtely he fadled hym
 and toke a grete spere in his hand / and foo rode forth / and fa-
 yd fayre damoyfel I fhall not faile you by the grace of god /
 And foo he rode in to a grete foreft all that day / and neuer co-
 25 ude fynde no hyghe waye / and foo the nyght felle on hym / and
 thenne was he ware in a flade of a paelione of reed fendel /
 By my feythe fayd fyre launcelot in that paelione wil I lod-
 ge alle this nyghte / and foo there he alyghte doune and tayed
 his hors to the paelione / and there he vnarmed hym / and
 30 there he fond a bedde / and layd hym theryn / and felle on flepe
 fadly

¶ Capitulum v

THenne within an houre there came the knyghte to who-
 me the paelione ought / And he wende that his lemā
 had layne in that bedde / and foo he laid hym doune befyde fyr
 35 Launcelot / and toke hym in his armes and beganne to kyffe

hym / And whanne fyre launcelot felte a rough berd kyffyng
hym / he starte oute of the bedde lyghtely / and the other knyzt
after hym / and eyther of hem gate their fwerdes in their han-
des / and oute at the paelione dore wente the knyghte of the
paelione / and fyre launcelot folowed hym / and ther by a ly- 5
tyl flake fyr launcelot wounded hym fore nyghe vnto the deth
And thenne he yelded hym vnto fyre launcelot / and so he graū-
ted hym so that he wold telle hym why he came in to the bedde
Syre sayd the knyght the paelione is myn owne / and there
thys nyght I had assygned my lady to haue slepte with me 10
And now I am lykely to dye of this wounde / that me repen-
teth sayd Launcelot of youre hurte / but I was adrad of tre-
fon / for I was late begyled / and therfore come on your way
in to your paelione and take your rest / And as I suppoſe I
shal ſtaunche your blood / and ſoo they wente bothe in to the 15
paelione / And anone fyre launcelot ſtaunched his blood /
There with al came the knyghtes lady / that was a paſſyng
fayre lady / And whanne ſhe aſpyed that her lord Belleus
was fore wounded ſhe cryed oute on fyre launcelot / and ma-
de grete dole oute of meſure / Pees my lady and my loue ſaid 20
Belleus / for this knyght is a goood man and a knyght ad-
uenturous / and there he told her all the cauſe how he was wou-
ded / And whan that I yolde me vnto hym / he leſte me goode-
ly and hath ſtaunched my blood / Syre ſayd the lady I re-
quyre the telle me what knyght ye be / and what is youre na- 25
me / Fayr lady he ſayd / my name is fyre launcelot du lake / ſoo
me thought euer by your ſpeche ſayd the lady / for I haue ſe-
ne yow ofte or this / and I knowe you better than ye wene /
¶ But now and ye wold promyſe me of your curtoſy for the
harmes that ye haue done to me and to my lord Belleus that 30
whanne he cometh vnto Arthurs courte for to cauſe hym to be
made knyghte of the rouūd table / for he is a paſſyng good man
of armes and a myghty lord of landes of many oute yles /
¶ Fayre lady ſaid fyr launcelot lete hym come vnto the cou-
rte the next hye feſt / and loke that ye come with hym / and I 35
shal doo my power / and ye preue you doughty of your handes
that ye ſhalle haue your deſyre ¶ So thus within a whyle as
they thus talked the nyghte paſſed / and the daye ſhone / and

thenne fyre launcelot armed hym / and took his hors / and they taught hym to the Abbaye and thyder he rode within the space of two owrys

¶ Capitulum tertium /

ANd foone as fyre launcelott came withyn the Abbeye
 5 yarde / the doughter of kynge Bagdemagus herd a grete hors goo on the paument / And she thenne aroos and yede vnto a wyndowe / and there she sawe fyr launcelot / and anone she made men fast to take his hors from hym / & lete lede hym in to a stabyl / and hym self was ledde in to a fayre chamber /
 10 and vnarmed hym / and the lady sente hym a longe goune / & anone she came her self / And thēne she made launcelot passyng good chere / and she sayd he was the knyzt in the world was mooft welcome to her / Thenne in al haste she sente for her fader Bagdemagus that was within xij myle of that Abbay and
 15 afore euen he came with a fayre felaufhip of knyghtes wyth hym / And whanne the kynge was alyghte of his hors he yode streyte vnto fyr launcelots chamber / and there he fond hys doughter / and thenne the kyng enbraced fyr Launcelot in hys armes / and eyther made other good chere / Anone fyre launcelot made his complaynt vnto the kynge how he was bytrayed
 20 And how his broder fyre lyonel was departed from hym / he nyft not where / and how his doughter had delyuerd hym out of pryson / therfor whyle I lyue I shal doo her seruyse and al her kynred / Thenne am I sure of youre helpe sayd the kynge
 25 on tewesday next comynge / ye fyr sayd fyr launcelot / I shalle not faylle yow / for foo I haue promysed my lady your doughter / But fyre what knyghtes be they of my lord Arthurs that were with the kynge of Northgalys / and the kyng sayd it was fyre madore de laporte / and fyr Mordred and fyr galaytyne that al fur fared my knyghtes / for ageynst hem thre
 30 I nor my knyghtes myghte bere no strengthe / Syre sayde fyre launcelot as I here fay that the turnement shal be here within this thre myle of this abbay / ye shal sende vnto me thre knyghtes of yours suche as ye trust and loke that the thre knyghtes
 35 haue al whyte sheldes & I also & no paynture on the sheldes / & and we four will come out of a lytel wood in myddes of both

partyes / and we shalle falle in the frounte of oure enemyes &
 greue hem that we may / And thus shal I not be knowen what
 knyght I am / Soo they took their rest that nyght / and thys
 was on the sonday / and soo the kyng departed / and sente vnto
 fyre launcelot thre knyghtes with the four whyte sheldes 5
 And on the teweſday they lodged hem in a lytyl leued wood
 beſyde there the turnement ſhold be / And there were ſcaffoldis
 and holes that lordes and ladyes myghte beholde and to gy-
 ue the pryſe / Thenne came in to the feld the kyng of Northga-
 lys with eyght ſcore helmes / And thenne the thre knyghtes of 10
 Arthur ſtode by them ſelf / ¶ Thenne cam in to the feld kyng
 Bagdemagus with four ſcore of helmys / And thenne they ſe-
 wtryd their ſperys / and cam to gyders with a grete daſſhe / &
 there were ſlayn of knyghtes at the fiſt recountre xij of kyng
 Bagdemagus parte / and ſyx of the kyng of Northgalys par- 15
 ty / and kyng Bagdemagus party was ferre ſette a back /

¶ Capitulum ſeptimum

Wyth that came fyr Launcelot du lake and he threſte in
 with his ſpere in the thyckeſt of the prees / and there he
 ſmote doune with one ſpere fyue knyghtes / and of foure of
 hem he brake their backes / And in that throng he ſmote doune 20
 the kyng of Northgalys / and brake his thyne in that falle /
 Alle thys doyng of fyre Launcelot ſawe the thre knyghtes of
 Arthurs / Yonder is a ſhrewde geſt ſayd fyre Madore de la port
 therfore haue here ones at hym / ſoo they encountred / and fyre
 Launcelot bare hym doune hors and man / ſoo that his ſholder 25
 wente oute of lyth / Now beſalleth it to me to iuſte ſayd Mor-
 dred / for fyr Mador hath afore falle / Syre Launcelot was wa-
 re of hym / and gate a grete ſpere in his hand / and mette hym
 and fyr Mordred brake a ſpere vpon hym / and fyre launce-
 lot gaf hym ſuche a buffet that the arſſon of his ſadel brake / & 30
 ſoo he flewe ouer his hors taylle that his helme butte in to the
 erthe a foote and more that nyhe his neck was broken / & there
 he lay longe in a ſwoune / ¶ Thenne came in fyr Gahalantyne
 with a grete ſpere / and Launcelot ageynſt hym with al theyre
 ſtrength that they myzt dryue that both her ſperes to braſt euen 35

to their handes / and thenne they flang out with their fwerdes
and gaf many a grym froke / Thenne was fyr launcelot wroth
oute of mefure / and theñe he fmote fyr galahantyne on the hel-
me that his nofe brafte oute on blood and eerys and mouthe
5 bothe / and ther with his hede henge lowe / And therwith his
hors ranne away with hym / and he felle doune to the erthe /
Anone there with al fyre launcelot gate a greete fpere in hys
hand / And or euer that grete fpere brake / he bare doune to the
erthe xvj knyghtes fome hors and man / and fome the man &
10 not the hors / & there was none but that he hyt furely he bare no-
ne armes that day / And thenne he gate another grete fpere &
fmote doune twelue knyghtes / and the mooft party of hem ne-
uer throfe after / And thēne the kny3tes of the kyng of north-
galys wold lufte nomore / And there the gree was was gyuen to
15 kyng Bagdemagus / So eyther party departed vnto his ow-
ne place / and fyr launcelot rode forth with kyng Bagdema-
gus vnto his caftel / and there he had paffynge good chere both
with the kyng and with his doughter / and they profred hym
grete yeftes / And on the morne he took his leue / and told the
20 kyng that he wold goo and feke his broder fyre Lyonel that
wente from hym whan that he flepte / fo he toke his hors / and
betaught hem alle to god / And there he fayd vnto the kynges
doughter yf ye haue nede any tyme of my feruyfe I praye you
lete me have knoueleche / and I fhall not faylle you as I am
25 true knyght / and fo fyr launcelot departed / and by aduenture
he came in to the fame forest / there he was take fleepyng / And in
the myddes of an hyhe way he mette a damoyfel rydyng on a
whyte palfroy / and there eyther falewed other / Fayre damoy-
fel faid fyre launcelot knowe ye in this countray any aduen-
30 tures / fyre knyghte fayd that damoyfel / here are aduentures
nere hand / and thou durft preue hem / why fhould I not pre-
ue aduentures faid fyre launcelot for that caufe come I hyder /
Wel fayd ſhe thou ſemeſt wel to be a good knyght / And yf
thou dare mete with a good knyght / I fhall brynge the where
35 is the beſt knyght / and the myghtyeſt that euer thou fond / fo
thou wylt telle me what is thy name / and what knyght thou
arte / damoyfel as for to telle the my name I take no grete for-
ce / Truly my name is fyre laūcelot du lake / fyre thou byſemyſt

wel / here ben aduentures by that fallen for the / for here by du-
elleth a knyght that wylle not be ouermatched for no man I
knowe but ye ouermatche hym / & his name is fyre Turquyne
And as I vnderstand he hath in his pryson of Arthurs co-
urte good knyghtes thre score and foure / that he hath wonne 5
with his owne handes / But whan ye haue done that Iourney
ye shal promyse me as ye are a true knyght for to go with me
and to helpe me / and other damoyfels that are distreſsid day-
ly with a fals knyghte / All your entente damoyfel and desyre
I wylle fulfyll / soo ye wyl brynge me vnto this knyghte 10
Now fayre knyght come on your waye / and soo she broughte
hym vnto the fourde and the tre where henge the bacyn / So fir
launcelot lete his hors drynke / and fythen he bete on the bacyn
with the butte of his spere so hard with al his myzt tyl the bot-
tom felle oute / and longe he dyd soo but he sawe noo thyng 15
Thenne he rode endlong the gates of that manoyre nyghe half
an houre / And thenne was he ware of a grete knyzt that dro-
fe an hors afore hym / and ouerthwarte the hors there lay an
armed knyght bounden / And euer as they came nere and ne-
re / fyre launcelot thouzt he shold knowe hym / Thenne fir laun- 20
celot was ware that hit was fyre gaherys Gawayns broder a
knyghte of the table round / Now fayre damoyfel sayd fir la-
uncelot / I see yonder cometh a knyght fast bounden that is a
felawe of myne / and broder he is vnto fyr gawayne / And att
the fyrſt begynnyng I promyse yow by the leue of god to re- 25
ſcowe that knyght / But yf his mayſter ſytte better in the ſa-
del I ſhal delyuer alle the pryſoners that he hath oute of daun-
ger / for I am ſure he hath two bretheren of myne pryſoners
with hym / By that tyme that eyther had ſene other / they gryp-
ped theyr ſperes vnto them / Now fayre knyghte ſayd fyr la- 30
uncelot / put that wounded knyghte of the hors / and lete hym
reſte a whyle / and lete vs two preue oure ſtrengthes / For as
it is enformed me thou doeſt and haſt done grete deſpyte and
ſhame vnto knyghtes of the round table / and therfor now de-
fende the / And thow be of the table round ſayd Turquyne I 35
deſyre the and alle thy ſelaſhip / that is ouermoch ſayd / ſa-
yd fyre launcelot

¶ Capitulum viii

And thēne they put theyr speres in the restys / & cam to
 gyders with her horses as fast as they myght renne /
 And eyther smote other in myddes of theyre sheldes that bothe
 theyre horse backs brafte vnder them / and the knyghtes were
 5 bothe astonyed / and as soone as they myghte auoyde theyre
 horses / they took theire sheldes afore them / and drewe oute her
 swerdes / and came to gyder egerly / and eyther gaf other ma-
 ny stronge strokes / for there myght neyder sheldes nor harneis
 hold theyr strokes / And soo within a whyle they hadde bothe
 10 grymly woundes / and bledde passynge greuoufly / Thus they
 ferd two houres or mo trasynge and rasynge eyther other where
 they myght hytte ony bare place / Thenne at the last they were
 bretheles bothe / and stode lenyng on theyre swerdes / Now fe-
 lawe sayd fyr Turquyne hold thy hand a whyle / and telle
 15 me what I shal aske the / Say on thenne Turquyne sayd thou
 arte the byggest man that euer I mette with al / and the beste
 brethed / and lyke on knyzt that I hate aboue al other kny-
 ghtes / so be hit that thou be not he I wyl lyghtly accorde with
 the / & for thy loue I wil delyuer al the prysoners that I haue
 20 that is thre score and foure / soo thou wylt telle me thy name /
 And thou and I we wyl be felawes to gyders and neuer to
 fayle the whyle that I lyue / it is wel sayd / sayd fyr launce-
 lot / but fythen hit is soo that I may haue thy frendship what
 knyght is he that thou soo hatest aboue al other / Feythfully sa-
 25 yd fyr Turquyne his name is fyre launcelot du lake / for he fle-
 we my broder fyr Caradus at the dolorous toure that was one
 of the best knyghtes on lyue / And therefore hym I excepte of
 al knyghtes / for may I ones mete with hym / the one of vs
 shal make an ende of other I make myn auowe / And for fir
 30 launcelots sake I haue slayne an C good knyghtes / and as
 many I haue maymed al vtterly that they myght neuer af-
 ter helpe them self / and many haue dyed in pryson / and yet ha-
 ue I thre score and foure / and al shal be delyuerd so thou wilt
 telle me thy name / so be it that thou be not fyre launcelot /
 35 ¶ Now see I wel sayd fyre launcelot that suche a man I my-
 ghte be I myght haue peas / and suche a man I myghte be

that ther shold be warre mortal betwyxte vs / and now fyre
 knyghte at thy request I wyl that thou wete and knowe that
 I am Launcelot du lake kynge Bans sone of Benwyck / &
 very knyghte of the table round / And now I defye the and
 doe thy best / A sayd Turquyne / launcelot / thou arte vnto me 5
 moost welcome that euer was knyghte / for we shalle neuer de-
 parte tyl the one of vs be dede / Thenne they hurtled to gyders
 as two wilde bulles rosshynge and lasshyng with their sheldes
 and swerdes that somtyme they felle bothe ouer theyr noses
 / Thus they foughte styll two houres and more / and neuer 10
 wolde haue reste / and fyre Turquyn gaf fyre launcelot many
 woundes / that alle the ground there as they foughte was
 al bespeckled with blood

¶ Capitulum ix

THenne at the last fyr Turquyn waxed faynte / and
 gaf somewhat a bak / and bare his shelde lowe for wery- 15
 nesse / That aspyed fyre Launcelot / and lepte upon hym fyrfly
 and gate hym by the Bauowre of his helmet / and plucked
 hym doune on his knees / And anone he racyd of his helme /
 and smote his neck in sondyr / And whanne fyre launcelot had
 done this / he yode vnto the damoyfel and sayd / damoyfel I am 20
 redy to goo with yow where ye wylle haue me / but I haue no
 hors / Fayre fyre sayd she / take this wounded knyghtes hors
 and sende hym in to this manoyr and commaunde hym to de-
 lyuer alle the prysoners / Soo fyr launcelot wente vnto Gahe-
 ryes and praid hym not to be agreued for to leue hym his hors 25
 Nay fayr lord said Gaheryes I wyll that ye take my hors atte
 your owne commaundement / for ye houe bothe saued me and
 my hors / & this day I saye ye are the best knyghte in the worlde
 For ye haue slayne this daye in my fyghte the myztest man
 & the best knyghte excepte yow that euer I sawe / & fore fyre 30
 said Gaheryes I pray you telle me your name / Syre my name
 is fyr launcelot du lake that ouzte to helpe you of ryghte
 for kyng arthurs sake / & in especial for my lord sir gawayns
 sake your owne dere broder / & whan that ye come within yon-
 der manayr / I am sure ye shal fynde ther many knyghtes of the 35
 round table / for I haue sene many of their sheldes that I knowe

on yonder tree / there is kayes shelde / & fir braundeles sheld /
 and fyr Marhaus sheld and fyre Galyndes shelde and fyre
 Bryan de lyftnoyfe sheld and fyr Alydukes sheld with ma-
 ny mo that I am not now auyfed of / and also my two brethe-
 5 ren sheldes fyre Ector de marys and fyr Lyonel / wherfore I
 pray yow grete them al from me / and say that I bydde them
 take fuche stufte there as they fynd / and that in ony wyfe my
 bretheren goo vnto the courte and abyde me there tyl that I
 come / for by the feest of pentecost I cast me to be there / for as at
 10 this tyme I must ryde with this damoyfel for to faue my pro-
 myse / and foo he departed from Gaheryfe / & Gaheryfe yede in to
 the manore / and ther he fond a yoman porter kepyng ther ma-
 ny keyes / Anone with al fyre gaheryfe threwe the porter vnto
 the ground / and toke the keyes from hym / and hastily he ope-
 15 ned the pryson dore / and there he lete oute all the prysoners /
 and euery man losed other of their boundes / And whan they
 sawe fyre Gaheryfe / alle they thanked hym / for they wend that
 he was wounded / Not foo sayd Gaheryfe / hit was launcelot
 that slewe hym worshipfully with his owne handes / I sawe
 20 it with myn owne eyen / and he greteth you al wel / and pra-
 yeth you to haste you to the courte / And as vnto fyr Lyonel
 and Ector de marys he prayeth yow to abyde hym at the court
 That shalle we not doo says his bretheren / we wyll fynde hym
 and we may lyue / So shal I sayd fyr kay fynde hym or I
 25 come at the courte as I am true knyghte / Thenne alle the kn-
 yghtes fought the hous there as the armour was / and thenne
 they armed hem / and euery knyght fonde his owne hors / &
 al thet euer longed vnto hym / And whan this was done ther
 cam a foster with foure horses lade with fatte veneson / A none
 30 fyr kay sayd / here is good mete for vs for one meale / for we
 had not many a day no good repast / And so that veneson
 was rosted baken and soden / and so after souper somme abode
 there al that nyghte / But fyre Lyonel and Ector de marys
 and fyre kay rode after fyre launcelot to fynde hym yf they
 35 myghte

¶ Capitulum Decimum

Now torne we vnto fyre launcelot that rode with the damoyfel in a fayre hyghe waye / fyr sayd the damoyfel / here by this way haunteth a knyght that destreſſyd al ladyes and gentylwymmen / And at the leest he robbeth them or lyeth by them / what ſaid fir launcelot is he a theef & a knyght & a rauyſher of wymmen / he doth ſhame vnto the ordre of knyghthode / and contrary vnto his othe / hit is pyte that he lyueth / But fayr damoyfel ye ſhal ryde on afore your ſelf / and I wylle kepe my ſelf in couerte / And yf that he trouble yow or diſtreſſe yow / I ſhalle be your reſcowe and lerne hym to be ruled as a knyghte / Soo the mayde rode on by the way a ſoft ambelynge paas / And within a whyle cam oute that knyght on horſbak oute of the woode / and his page with hym / & there he put the damoyfel from her hors / and thenne ſhe cryed / With that came launcelot as faſt as he myghte tyl he came to that knyght / ſayenge / O thou fals knyght and traytour vnto knyghthode / who dyd lerne the to dyſtreſſe ladyes and gentylwymmen / whanne the knyghte ſawe fyre launcelot thus rebukynge hym / he anſuerd not / but drewe his ſwerd and rode vnto fyre launcelot / and fyre launcelot threwe his ſpere fro hym / and drewe oute his ſwerd / and ſtrake hym fuche a buffet on the helmet that he claſe his hede and neck vnto the throte Now haſt thou thy payement that long thou haſt deſerued / that is trouthe ſayd the damoyfel / For lyke as fyr Turquyne watched to deſtroye knyghtes / ſoo dyde this knyght attende to deſtroye and dyſtreſſe ladyes damoyfels and gentylwymmen / & his name was fyre Perys de foreyſt ſaueage / Now damoyfel ſayde fyre launcelot wylle ye ony more ſeruyſe of me / Nay fyre ſhe ſayd at this tyme / but almyghty Iheſu perſerue you where ſomeuer ye ryde or goo / for the curteyſt knyghte thou arte and mekeſt vnto all ladyes and gentylwymmen that now lyueth / But one thyng fyre knyghte me thynketh ye lacke / ye that are a knyghte wyueles that ye wyl not loue ſome mayden or gentylwoman / for I coude neuer here ſay that euer ye loued ony of no maner degree and that is grete pyte / but hit is noyſed that ye loue quene Gueneuer / and that ſhe hath ordeyned by enchaument that ye ſhal neuer loue none other / but her / ne none other damoyfel ne lady ſhall reioyſe you / wherfor

many in this land of hyghe estate and lowe make grete so-
 rowe / ¶ Fayre damoyfel sayd fyr launcelot I maye not war-
 ne peple to speke of me what it pleafeth hem / But for to be a
 wedded man / I thynke hit not / for thenne I muft couche with
 5 her / and leue armes and turnementys / batayls / and aduentu-
 res / And as for to fay for to take my plesaunce with peramo-
 urs that wylle I refuse in pryncypal for drede of god / For
 knyghtes that ben auenturous or lecherous shal not be happy
 ne fortunate vnto the werrys / for outhen they shalle be ouerco-
 10 me with a fymplyer knyghte than they be hem self / Outhen els
 they shal by vnhap and her curfydnes flee better men than
 they ben hem self / And soo who that vfeth peramours shalle be
 vnhappy / and all thyng is vnhappy that is aboute hem / And
 soo fyre Launcelot and she departed / And thenne he rode in a
 15 depe forest two dayes and more / and had strayte lodgyng /
 Soo on the thyrdde day he rode ouer a longe brydge / and there
 starte vpon hym sodenly a passyng foule chorle / and he smote
 his hors on the nose that he torned aboute / & asked hym why
 he rode ouer that brydge withoute his lycence / why shold I not
 20 ryde this way sayd fyr launcelot / I may not ryde befyde / thou
 shall not chese sayd the chorle and lasshyd at hym with a gre-
 te clubbe shod with yron / Thenne fyre launcelot drewe his suerd
 and put the stroke abak / and clafe his hede vnto the pappys /
 At the ende of the brydge was a fayre village / & al the peple
 25 men and wymmen cryed on fyre launcelot / and sayd A wers
 dede dydest thou neuer for thy self / for thou hast slayn the chyef
 porter of oure castel / fyr launcelot lete them say what they wold
 And streyghte he wente in to the castel / And whanne he cam
 in to the castel he alyghte / and teyed his hors to a ryng on
 30 the walle / And there he sawe a fayre grene courte / and thyder
 he dressyd hym / For there hym thought was a fayre place to
 fyghte in / Soo he lokked aboute / and sawe moche peple in do-
 res and wyndowes that sayd fayr knyghte thou arte vnhap-
 py

¶ Capitulum xi

¶ Capitulum xij

ANone with al cam there vpon hym two grete gyaunts
 wel armed al fauf the hedes with two horryble club-
 bes in theyr handes / Syre Launcelot put his fhield afore hym
 and put the froke aweye of the one gyaunt / and with his
 fwerd he clafe his hede a fondre / Whan his felaw fawe that / he 5
 ran away as he were wood / for fere of the horryble frokes / &
 laūcelot after hym with al his myzt & fmote hym on the fhoulder /
 and clafe hym to the nauel / Thenne fyre launcelot went in
 to the halle / and there came afore hym thre fcore ladyes and 10
 damoyfels / and all kneled vnto hym / and thanked god & hym
 of their delyueraunce . For fyre fayd they / the moofte party of
 vs haue ben here this feuen yere their pryfoners / and we haue
 worched al maner of fylke werkes for oure mete / and we are
 al grete gentylwymmen borne / and bleffyd be the tyme knyzte
 that euer thou be borne / For thou haft done the mooft worfhip 15
 that euer dyd knyght in this world / that wyl we bere recorde
 and we al pray you to telle vs your name / that we maye telle
 our frendes who delyuerd vs oute of pryfon / Fayre damoyfel
 he fayd / my name is fyre launcelot du lake / A fyre fayde they
 al / wel mayft thou be he / for els faue your felf / as we demed / 20
 there myghte neuer knyght haue the better of thefe two gyaunts
 / for many fayre knyghtes haue affayed hit / and here haue
 ended / and many tymes haue we wyffhed after yow / and
 thefe two gyaunts dredde neuer knyghte but you / Now maye
 ye faye fayd fyr launcelot vnto youre frendes how & who hath 25
 delyuerd you / and grete them al from me / and yf that I come
 in any of your marches / fhewe me fuche chere as ye haue caufe
 and what trefour that there in this caftel is I gyue it you for a
 reward for your greuaunce / And the lorde that is owner of
 this caftel I wold he receyued it as is ryght / Fayre fyre faide 30
 they / the name of this caftel is Tyntygayl / & a duke oughte
 it fomtyme that had wedded fair Igrayn / & after wedded her V-
 therpendragon / & gate on her Arthur / wel faide fir launcelot I
 vnderftande to whome this caftel longeth / and foo he departed
 from them / and bytaughte hem vnto god ¶ And thenne 35
 he mounted vpon his hors & rode in to many ftraunge & wyld

countreies and thorou many waters and valeyes and euyl
 was he lodged / And at the lasfe by fortune hym happend a-
 ageynft a nyghte to come to a fayr courtelage / & therin he fond
 an old gentylwoman that lodged hym with good wyl / and
 5 there he had good chere for hym and his hors / And whan ty-
 me was his ooft brought hym in to a fayre garet ouer the ga-
 te to his bedde / There fyre Launcelot vnarmed hym & fette hys
 harneys by hym / and wente to bed / and anone he felle on flepe /
 So foone after ther cam one on horfback / & knocked at the ga-
 10 te in grete hafte / and whan fyr launcelot herd this / he arofe vp
 and loked oute at the wyndowe / & fawe by the mone lyghte
 thre knyghtes cam rydyng after that one man / and al thre laf-
 fhed on hym at ones with fwerdes / & that one knyzt tourned
 on hem knyztly ageyne / and deffended hym / Truly faide fyre
 15 launcelot yonder one knyzte fhall I helpe / for it were fhame for
 me to fee thre knyktes on one / And yf he be flayne I am partne-
 ner of his deth / & ther with he took his harneis / and went out
 at a wyndowe by a fhete doune to the four knyktes / & thenne
 fyr launcelot fayd on hyghe / torne you knyghtes vnto me and
 20 leue your fyghtyng with that knyght / And thenne they alle
 thre lefte fyr kay / and torned vnto fyr launcelot / and there be-
 ganne grete bataylle / for they alyghte al thre / and ftrake ma-
 ny grete ftrokes at fyr launcelot / and affayled hym on eue-
 ry fyde / Thenne fyre kay drefsid hym for to haue holpen fyre
 25 Launcelot / nay fyre fayd he I wylle none of your helpe / ther-
 for as ye wylle haue my helpe / lete me alone with hem / Syre
 kay for the pleafyre of the knyghte fuffred hym for to doo hys
 wylle / and soo ftode on fyde / And thenne anon within vj ftro-
 kes / fyre launcelot had ftryken hem to the erthe
 30 ¶ And thenne they al thre cryed fyre knyghte we yelde vs
 vnto you as man of myght makeles / As to that faid fyr laū-
 celot I will not take your yeldyng vnto me / But fo that ye
 wylle yelde you vnto fyr kay the Senefchal on that couena-
 unt I wyl faue your lyues and els not / ¶ Fayre knyghte
 35 fayd they that were lothe to doo / For as for fyr kay / we
 chaced hym hyder / and had ouercome hym had not ye ben /
 therfor to yelde vs vnto hym it were no refon / wel as to that
 faid laūcelot / auyfe you wel / for ye may chefe whether ye wyll

dye or lyue / for and ye be yolden it shal be vnto fyr kay /
¶ Fayre knyght thenne they sayd in fauyng of oure lyues
 we wylle doo as thou commaundys vs / Thenne shal ye sayd
 fyre launcelot on whytsonday nexte comyng go vnto the courte
 of kynge Arthur / and there shal ye yelde you vnto quene Gue- 5
 neuer / and put you al thre in her grace and mercy / and saye
 that fir kay sente you thyder to be her prysoners / Syre they said
 it shalle be done by the feythe of oure bodyes / and we ben ly-
 uyng / and there they swore euery knyghte vpon his fwerd /
 And so fir launcelot suffred hem soo to departe / And thenne fir 10
 launcelot knocked at the yate with the pomel of his fwerd /
 and with that came his ooft / and in they entred fir kay and he
 Syre sayd his hooft I wende ye had ben in youre bedde / so I
 was / sayd fire launcelot / But I arofe and lepte oute atte my
 wyndowe for to helpe an old felawe of myne / And so whanne 15
 they came nyghe the lyghte / fir kay knewe wel / that it was fir
 launcelot / and ther with he kneled doune and thanked hym of
 al his kyndenesse that he had holpen hym twyes from the deth
 Syre he sayd I haue no thyng done but that me ought for to
 doo / and ye are welcome / and here shal ye repose yow and ta- 20
 ke your rest / Soo whan fir kay was vnarmed / he asked after
 mete / soo there was mete fette hym / and he ete strongly / And
 whan he hadde souped they went to theyr beddes and were lod-
 ged to gyders in one bedde / On the morne fir launcelot arofe er-
 ly / and lefte fyre kay slepyng / and fir launcelot toke fire ka- 25
 yes armour and his shelde and armed hym / and so he wente to
 the stable / and toke his hors and toke his leue of his ooft / and
 soo he departed / Thenne soone after arofe fyr kay and myssed
 fir launcelot / And thenne he aspyed that he had his armoure
 and his hors / Now by my feythe I knowe wel that he wylle 30
 greue some of the courte of kynge Arthur . For on hym knygh-
 tes wylle be bolde / and deme that it is I / and that wyll begyle
 them / And by cause of his armoure and shelde I am fure I
 shal ryde in pees / And thenne soone after departed fir kay &
 thanked his hooft

35

¶ Capitulum xij

Now torne we vnto fyre launcelot that had ryden long
 in a grete forest / and at the last he came in to a lowe co-
 untray ful of fayre Ryuers and medowes / And a-
 fore hym he sawe a longe brydge / and thre paelions stode ther
 5 on of fylke and fendel of dyuers hewe / And withoute the pa-
 uelions henge thre whyte sheldes on truncheons of sperys / &
 grete longe sperys stode vpryght by the paelions / and at eue-
 ry paelions dore stode thre fresshe squyers / and foo fyre laun-
 celot passed by them and spake no worde / whan he was paste
 10 the thre knyghtes sayden hym that hit was the proud kay / he
 weneth no knyght foo good as he / and the contrary is ofty-
 me preued / By my feythe sayd one of the knyghtes / his na-
 me was fyre gaunter / I wylle ryde after hym / & assaye hym /
 for alle his pryde / and ye may beholde how that I spede / Soo
 15 this knyght fyre Gaunter armed hym / and henge his shelde
 vpon his sholder / and mounted vpon a grete hors / and gate
 his spere in his hand / and wallopt after fyre launcelot / and
 whanne he came nyghe hym / he cryed Abyde thou proude kny-
 ght fyr kay / for thou shalt not passe quyte / Soo fyr launcelot
 20 torned hym / and eyther feutryd their speres / and came to gy-
 ders with alle theyr myghtes / and fyre Gaunters spere brake
 but fyre launcelot smote hym doune hors and man / and whan
 fyr gaunter was at the erthe / his bretheren sayd echone to o-
 ther yonder knyght is not fyre kay / for he is bygger than he /
 25 I dare laye my heed sayd fyre Gylmere yonder knyghte hath
 slayne fyr kay and hath taken his hors and his harneis / whe-
 ther it be foo or no sayd fyr Raynold the thyrd broder / lete vs
 now goo mounte vpon oure horses and rescowe our broder fir
 Gaunter vpon payne of dethe / we alle shal haue werke ynou3
 30 to matche that knyght / for euer me semeth by his perfone it is
 fyre Launcelot / or fyr Trystram / or fyr Pelleas the good kny-
 ght / Thenne anon they toke theyr horses and ouertook fyr la-
 uncelot / and fyre gylmere put forth his spere / and ranne to fir
 launcelot / and fyre launcelot smote hym doune that he lay in a
 35 swoune / Syre knyght sayd fyr Raynold thou arte a strong
 man / and as I suppose thou hast slayne my two bretheren /
 for the whiche rasyth my herte fore ageynst the / And yf I my-
 ght with my worship I wold not haue a doo with yow but

nedes I must take parte as they doo / And therfor knyghte he
 sayd / kepe thy self / And soo they hurtled to gyders with alle
 theyr myghtes / and al to sheuered bothe theyre speres / And
 thenne they drewe her swardes and lasshyd to gyder egerly /
 Anone there with aroos fyre Gaüter / and came vnto his bro- 5
 der fyre gylmere / and bad hym aryse and helpe we oure bro-
 der fyr Raynold that yonder merueyllously matched yonder
 good knyght / There with alle they lepte on theyr horses & hurt-
 led vnto fyre launcelot / ¶ And whanne he sawe them come / he
 smote a fore stroke vnto fyr Raynold that he felle of his hors 10
 to the ground / And thenne he stroke to the other two brethe-
 ren / and at two strokes he strake them doune to the erthe /
 With that sir Raynold beganne to starte vp with his heede al
 bloody / and came streyte vnto fyre launcelot / Now late he sayd
 sir launcelot / I was not ferre from the whan thou were maade 15
 knyght sir Raynold / and also I knowe thou arte a good
 knyght / and lothe I were to flee the / Gramercy sayd fyr ray-
 nold as for your goodnes / And I dare saye as for me and
 my bretheren we wyl not be lothe to yelde vs vnto you / with
 that we knewe your name / for wel we knowe ye are not fire 20
 kay / As for that be it as it be maye / for ye shal yelde yow vn-
 to dame gweneuer / and loke that ye be with her on whytsonday
 and yelde you vnto her as prysoners / and saye that fyre kay
 sente yow vnto her / thenne they swore hit shold be done / and so
 passed forthe fire launcelot / and echone of the bretheren halpe 25
 other as wel as they myght

¶ Capitulum xiii

Soo sir launcelot rode in to a depe forest / and ther by in
 a flade / he sawe four knyghtes houyng vnder an oke /
 and they were of Arthurs courte / one was sir Sagramour le
 defyrus and Ector de marys / and sir Gawayn and sir Vwa- 30
 yne / Anone as these four knyghtes had aspyed sir Launcelot
 they wend by his armes it hadde ben sir kay / Now by my fe-
 ythe sayd sir Sagramour / I wylle preue sir kayes myghte / &
 gate his spere in his hand / and came toward sir launcelot
 Ther with sir launcelot was ware and knewe hym wel / and 35

feutryd his spere ageynst hym / and smote fyre Sagamore so
 fore that hors and man felle bothe to the erthe / Lo my felaus
 sayd he yonder ye may see what a buffet he hath / that knyzt is
 moche bygger than euer was fyre kay / Now shal ye see what
 5 I may doo to hym / Soo fyr Ector gate his spere in his hand
 and wallopte toward fyre Laūcelot / and fyre Launcelot smote
 hym thorou the shelde & sholder that man and hors went to
 the erthe / and euer his spere held / By my feythe sayd sir V-
 wayne yonder is a strong knyghte / and I am sure he hath sla-
 10 yne fyr kay / And I see by his grete strengthe it wyll be hard
 to matche hym / And there with al fyre Vwayne gate his spe-
 re in his hand and rode toward fyre Launcelot / and fyr laun-
 celot knewe hym wel / and soo he mette hym on the playne / &
 gafe hym fuche a buffette that he was afonyed / that longe he
 15 wyft not where he was / Now see I wel sayd fyre gawayne
 I must encoūtre with that knyzt / Thenne he dressid he his sheld
 and gate a good spere in his hand / and fyre launcelot kne-
 we hym wel / and thenne they lete renne theyr horses with all
 theyr myghtes / and eyther knyght smote other in myddes of
 20 the shelde / But fyre gawayns spere to braft / and fyre launcelot
 charged so fore vpon hym that his hors reuerfed vp so doune
 And moche sorowe had fyre gawayn to auoyde his hors / and
 so fyre launcelot passed on a paas and smyled and said god
 gyue hym ioye that this spere made / for there came neuer a bet-
 25 ter in my hand / Thenne the four knyghtes wente echone to o-
 ther and comforted eche other / what saye ye by this gest sayd
 fyre Gawayne / that one spere hath feld vs al foure / we com-
 maunde hym vnto the deuyll they sayd al / for he is a man of
 grete myght / ye may wel saye it / sayd fyre gawayne / that he is
 30 a man of myght / for I dare lay my hede it is fyre Launcelot
 I knowe it by his rydyng / Lete hym goo sayd fyre Gawayn
 for whan we come to the courte than shal we wete / and then-
 ne had they moche sorowe to gete theyr horses ageyne

¶ Capitulum xiiij

35 **N**ow leue we there & speke of fyr Launcelot that rode a
 grete whyle in a depe forest where he saw a black brachet

[leaf 102 verso]

sekyng in maner as it had ben in the feaute of an hurt dere /
And ther with he rode after the brachet and he fawe lye on the
ground a large feaute of blood / And thenne fyre launcelot
rode after / And euer the Brachet loked behynd her / and soo
she wente thorou a grete mareyse / and euer fyre launcelot folo- 5
wed / And thenne was he ware of an old manoyr / and thy-
der ranne the brachet / and soo ouer the brydge / Soo fyre laun-
celot rode ouer that brydge that was old and feble / and whan
he cam in myddes of a grete halle ther he fawe lye a dede kny-
ght that was a semely man / and that brachet lycked his wo- 10
undes / and there with al came oute a lady wepyng & wryn-
gyng her handes / And thenne she fayd / O knyghte to moche
forowe hast thou broughte me / Why faye ye soo fayd fyre laun-
celot / I dyd neuer this knyghte no harme / for hyther by feau-
te of blood this Brachet broughte me / And therfor fayre la- 15
dy be not displeased with me / for I am ful fore agreued of
your greuaunce / Truly fyre she fayd I trowe hit be not ye that
hath slayne my husband / for he that dyd that dede is fore wo-
unded / & he is neuer lyckly to recouer / that shal I ensure hym /
What was your husbandes name fayd fyre launcelot / Syre fayd 20
she / his name was called fyre Gylbert the bastard one of the
best knyghtes of the world / and he that hath slayne hym I
knowe not his name / Now god fende you better comforte fa-
yd fyre launcelot / and soo he departed and wente in to the fo-
rest ageyne / and there he met with a damoyfel / the whiche kne- 25
we hym wel / and she fayd on loude wel be ye fond my lord
And now I requyre the on thy knyghthode helpe my brother
that is fore wounded / and neuer stynteth bledyng / for this day
he fought with fyre gylbert the bastard & flewe hym in playn
bataylle / and there was my broder fore wounded / and there is 30
a lady a forcereffe that duelleth in a castel here befyde / and this
day she told me / my broders woundes shold neuer be hole tyl I
coud fynde a knyght that wold go in to the chappel peryllous / &
ther he shold fynde a sward and a blody clothe that the wound-
ed knyght was lapped in / and a pyece of that clothe & sward 35
shold hele my broders woundes so that his woundes were fer-
ched with the swerde and the clothe / This is a merueyllous
thyng she fayd fyre launcelot / but what is your broders name /

Syre the fayd / his name was fyre Melyot de logurs / that me
 repenteth faid fyre launcelott / for he is a felawe of the table
 round / and to his helpe I wylle doo my power / Thenne fyre
 fayd the / folowe euen this hyhe waye / and it wyl brynge you
 5 vnto the chappel peryllous / And here I shalle abyde tyl god
 send you here ageyne / and but you spede I knowe no kny3te
 lyuynge that may encheue that aduenture

¶ Capitulum xv

RYght soo fyr Launcelot departed / And whan he cam
 vnto the chappel peryllous / he alyghte doune / and te-
 10 yed his hors vnto a lytyl gate / and as soone as he was with
 in the chirche yard / he sawe on the frount of the chappel many
 fayre ryche sheldes torned vp so doune / and many of the shel-
 des fyre launcelot had fene knyghtes bere byfore hand / wyth
 that he sawe by hym there stonde a xxx greete knyghtes more
 15 by a yarde than ony man that euer he had fene / and all tho
 greued and gnafted at fyre launcelot / And whan he sawe
 theyr countenaunce he dred hym fore / and soo putte his shelde
 afore hym / and toke his fwerd redy in his hand redy vnto ba-
 taylle / and they were al armed in black harneis redy with her
 20 sheldes and her fwerdes drawen / And whan fyr Launcelot
 wold haue gone thorou oute them / they scateryd on euery sy-
 de of hym / and gaf hym the way / and ther with he waxed al
 bold / and entred in to the chappel / and thenne he sawe no ly-
 ght / but a dymme lamp brennynge / and thenne was he ware
 25 of a corps hyllid with a clothe of fylke / Thenne fyre Launce-
 lot stouped doune / and cutte a pyece away of that clothe / and
 thenne it ferd vnder hym as the erthe had quaked a lytel /
 there with al he feryd / And thenne he sawe a fayre fwerd lye
 by the dede knyghte / and that he gate in his hand and hyed
 30 hym oute of the chapel / Anone as euer he was in the chappel
 yarde / alle the knyghtes spak to hym with a grymly voys / and
 fayd knyghte fyr launcelot leye that fwerd from the or ellys
 thou shalt dye / whether that I lyue or dye sayd fyr launcelot
 with noo grete word gete ye hit ageyne / therfor fyghte for it
 35 and ye lyft / Thenne ryght soo he passed thorou out them / and

by yonde the chappel yarde ther mette hym a fayre damoyfel &
fayd fyr launcelot leue that fwerd behynde the / or thou wil
dye for it / I leue it not fayd fyr launcelot for no treatys /
No fayd she and thou dydest loue that fwerd / quene gwene-
uer shold thou neuer see / thenne were I a foole and I wold 5
leue this fwerd fayd launcelot / Now gentyl knyghte fayde
the damoyfel / I requyre the to kyffe me but ones / Nay fayd
fyr launcelot that god me forbede / wel fyr fayd she / and thou
haddest kyffed me / thy lyf dayes had ben done / but now alas
she said I haue losfe al my labour / for I ordeyned this chap- 10
pel for thy sake / and for fyre gawayne / And ones I had fyr
Gawayne within me / and at that tyme he foughte with that
knyghte that lyeth there dede in yonder chappel fyre Gylbert
the bastard . and at that tyme he smote the lyfte hand of of sir
Gylbert the bastard / And fyre Launcelot now I telle the / I 15
haue loued the this feuen yere / but there may no woman ha-
ue thy loue but quene Gweneuer / But fythen I maye not
reioyce the to haue thy body on lyue I had kepte no more ioye
in this world / but to haue thy body dede / Thenne wold I ha-
ue baumed hit and serued hit / and soo haue kepte it my lyfe 20
dayes / and dayly I shold haue clypped the / and kyffed the in
despyte of Quene Gweneuer / ye fayre wel fayd fyr launcelot
Ihesu preferue me from your subtyl craftes / And ther with al
he took his hors and soo departed from her / And as the book sa-
yth whan fyr launcelot was departed she took suche sorow that 25
she dyed within a fourteen nyghte / and her name was Hella-
wes the forcereffe lady of the castel Nygramous / Anone fyre
launcelot mette with the damoyfel fyre Melyotis syster / And
whan she sawe hym she clapped her handes / and wepte for ioye
And thenne they rode vnto a castel there by where lay fyr Me- 30
lyot / And anone as fyre launcelot sawe hym / he knewe hym /
but he was passynge pale as the erthe for bledyng / whan fyre
Melyot sawe fyre launcelot he kneled vpon his knees and cry-
ed on hyghe / O lord fyr launcelot helpe me / Anone fyre laun-
celot lepte vnto hym and touched his woundes with fyr Gyl- 35
bertes swerde / And thenne he wyped his woundes with a part
of the bloody clothe that sir gylbert was wrapped in / and anon
an holer man in his lyf was he neuer / And thenne ther was

grete ioye bytwene hem / and they made fyr launcelot all the chere that they myghte / and soo on the morne fyre launcelot toke his leue / and badde fyre Melyot hye hym to the courte of my lord Arthur / for it draweth nyhe to the feest of pentecoste / and
 5 there by the grace of god ye shal fynde me / and therwith they departed /

¶ Capitulum xvi

ANd soo fyre Launcelot rode thorou many straunge countreyes ouer marys and valeyes tyl by fortune he came to a fayre castel / and as he paste beyonde the castel / hym
 10 thought he herde two bellys ryngge . And thenne was he ware of a Faucon came fleyngge ouer his hede toward an hyghe elme / and longe lunys aboute her feet / and she flewe vnto the elme to take her perche / the lunys ouer cast aboute a bough / And whanne she wold haue taken her flyghte / she henge by the leg-
 15 ges fast / and fyre launcelot sawe how he henge / and byheld the fayre faucon perygot / & he was fory for her / The meane whyle came a lady oute of the castel and cryed on hyghe O launcelot launcelot as thou arte floure of alle knyghtes helpe me to gete my hauke / for and my hauke be lost / my lord wyl destroye me / for I kepte the hauke and she flypped from me / and
 20 yf my lord my husband wete hit / he is soo hasty that he wyll flee me / What is your lordes name sayd sir Launcelot / sir she said his name is sire Phelot a knyghte that longeth vnto the the kynge of Northgalys / wel fayre lady syn that ye knowe my
 25 name and requyre me of knyghthode to helpe yow I wyll doo what I may to gete your hauke / and yet god knoweth I am an ylle clymber and the tree is passyngge hyghe / and fewe bowes to helpe me with alle / And ther with sir launcelot alyzte and teyed his hors to the same tree / and prayd the lady to
 30 vnarme hym / And soo whan he was vnarmed / he put of alle his clothes vnto his sherte and breche / and with myghte & force he clamme vp to the faucon / and teyed the lunys to a grete rotten boyse / and threwe the hauke doune and it with alle / Anone the lady gate the hauke in her hand / and there with al
 35 came oute fyre phelot oute of the greuys fodenly / that was her

husband al armed / and with his naked fwerd in his hand
 and sayd O knyghte launcelot now haue I fond the as I
 wold and stode at the bole of the tree to flee hym / A lady fayd
 fyre Launcelot why haue ye bytrayed me / She hath done
 fayd fyre Phelot but as I commaunded her / and therfor ther 5
 nys none other boote but thyne houre is come that thou muste
 dye / That were shame vnto the fayd fyre launcelot thou an armed
 knyghte to flee a naked man by treason / thou getest none
 other grace sayd fyre phelot and therefor helpe thy self and
 thou canst / Truly sayde fyre launcelot that shal be thy shame / 10
 but syn thou wylt doo none other / take myn harneys with the
 and hange my fwerde vpon a bough that I maye gete hit / &
 thenne doo thy best to flee me and thou canst / Nay nay said sir
 Phelot / for I knowe the better than thou wenest / therfor thou
 getest no wepen and I may kepe you ther fro / Allas said sir 15
 launcelot that euer a knyghte shold dye wepenles / And ther
 with he wayted aboue hym and vnder hym / and ouer his hede
 he fawe a rownspeyk a bygge bough leueles / and ther with
 he brake it of by the body / And thenne he came lower & away-
 ted how his owne hors stode / and sodenly he lepte on the fer- 20
 ther fyde of the hors froward the knyghte / And thenne sir phe-
 lot lashed at hym egerly wenyng to haue slayne hym / But
 fyr Launcelot putte awaye the stroke with the rounspeyk / and
 ther with he smote hym on the one fyde of the hede that he felle
 doune in a fwounne to the ground / Soo thenne fyre launcelot 25
 took his fwerd oute of his hand and stroke his neck fro the
 body / Thenne cryed the lady / Allas why hast thou slayne my
 husband / I am not causer sayd fyre launcelot / for with fals-
 hede ye wold haue had slayne me with treson / and now it is
 fallen on you bothe / And thenne she souned as though she 30
 wold dye / And ther with al fyre launcelot gate al his armour
 as wel as he myght / and put hit vpon hym for drede of
 more resorte / for he dredde that the knyghtes castel was soo nygh
 And soo as foone as he myght he took his hors and departed
 and thanked god that he had escaped that aduenture 35

¶ Capitulum xviij

SOo fyre launcelot rode many wylde wayes thorou out
mareys and many wylde wayes / And as he rode in
a valey he sawe a knyght chacynge a lady with a naked
fwerd to haue slayn her / And by fortune as this knyght
5 shold haue slayne thys lady she cryed on fyr Launcelot and
prayd hym to rescowe her / Whan fyre launcelot sawe that me-
schyef / he took his hors and rode bytwene them / sayeng knyghte
fy for shame / why wolt thou flee this lady / thou dost shame vn-
to the and alle knyghtes / what haste thou to doo betwyx me &
10 my wyf / sayd the knyght / I wylle flee her maugre thy hede /
that shalle ye not sayd fyr launcelot / for rather we two wylle
haue adoo to gyders / Syre Launcelot sayd the knyght thow
doest not thy part / for this lady hath bytrayed me / hit is not
so sayd the lady / truly he sayth wronge on me / And for by ca-
15 use I loue and cherysshe my cosyn germayne / he is Ialous
betwixe hym and me / And as I shalle answere to god three
was neuer synne betwyxe vs / But sir sayd the lady as thou
arte called the worshipfullest knyghte of the world I requyre
the of true knyghthode kepe me and saue me / For what som-
20 euer ye saye he wyl flee me / for he is withoute mercy / haue ye
no doubte sayd launcelot it shal not lye in his power / Syr sayd
the knyghte in your fyghte I wyl be ruled as ye wylle
haue me / And soo sir launcelot rode on the one fyde and she on
the other / he had not ryden but a whyle / but the knyghte badde
25 sir Launcelot torne hym and loke behynde hym / and sayde fyre
yonder come men of armes after vs rydyng / And soo sir la-
uncelot torned hym and thoughte no treafon / and there wyth
was the knyghte and the lady on one fyde / & sodenly he swap-
ped of his ladyes hede / And whan fyr Launcelot hadde aspy-
30 ed hym what he had done / he sayd and called hym traytour
thou hast shamed me for euer / and sodenly sir launcelot alyzte
of his hors and pulled oute hrs fwerd to flee hym / and there
with al he felle flat to the erthe / and grypped sir launcelot by
the thyes and cryed mercy / Fy on the sayd sir launcelot thow
35 shameful knyght thou mayst haue no mercy / and therfor aryse
and fyghte with me / nay sayde the knyghte I wyl neuer
aryse tyl ye graunte me mercy / Now wyl I profer the fayr fa-
id launcelot I wyl vnarme me vnto my sherte / and I wylle

haue nothyng vpon me / but my fherte and my fwerd and my hand / And yf thou canst flee me / quyte be thou for euer / nay fir faid Pedyuere that wille I neuer / wel faid fir Launcelott take this lady and the hede / and bere it vpon the / and here fhalt thou fwere vpon my fwerd to bere it alweyes vpon thy back 5 and neuer to reſte tyl thou come to quene Gueneuer / Syre fayd he that wylle I doo by the feithe of my body / Now faid launcelot telle me what is your name / fir my name is Pedyuere / In a ſhameful houre were thou borne faid launcelot / Soo Pedyuere departed with the dede lady and the hede / and fond 10 the quene with kynge Arthur at wynchefſtre / and there he told alle the trouthe / Syre knyzt faid the quene this is an horryble dede and a ſhameful / and a grete rebuke vnto fire launcelott But not withſtondynge his worſhip is not knowen in many dyuerſe countreyes / but this ſhalle I gyue you in penaunce 15 make ye as good ſkyfte as ye can ye ſhal bere this lady with you on horſbak vnto the pope of Rome / and of hym receyue your penaunce for your foule dedes / and ye ſhalle neuer reſte one nyghte there as ye doo another / and ye goo to ony bedde the dede body ſhal lye with you / this othe there he made and foo departed / And as it telleth in the frenſſhe book / whan he cam to Rome / the pope badde hym goo ageyne vnto quene Gueneuer and in Rome was his lady beryed by the popes commaundement / And after this fir Pedyuere felle to grete goodneſſe / & 25 was an holy man and an heremyte

¶ Capitulum xviij

Now torne we vnto fir launcelot du lake that came home two dayes afore the feeft of Pentecoſt / and the kyng and alle the courte were paſſynge fayne of his comynge / And whanne fire Gawayne / fir Vwayne / fire Sagamore / fir Ector de marys ſawe fire Launcelot in Kayes armour / thenne 30 they wiſt wel it was he that ſmote hem doune al with one ſpere / Thenne there was laughyng and ſmylyng amonge them / and euer now and now came alle the Knyghtes home that fir Turquyn hadde pryſoners and they alle honoured and worſhipped fyre launcelot / ¶ Whanne fire Gaheryes herd them 35

speke / he said / I sawe alle the bataille from the begynnyng to
 the endynge / and there he told kyng Arthur alle how it was
 and how fyre Turquyn was the strongest knyghte that euer
 he sawe excepte fyre launcelot / there were many knyghtes bare
 5 hym record nyghe thre score / Thenne fyr kay told the kyng /
 how fyr launcelot had rescowed hym whan he shold haue ben
 slayne / and how he made the knyghtes yelde hem to me / and
 not to hym / And there they were al thre / and bare record / and
 by Ihesu said fyr kay by cause fyr launcelot took my harneis
 10 and leste me his / I rode in good pees / and no man wold ha-
 ue adoo with me / ¶ Anone there with alle ther came the thre
 knyghtes that fought with fyre launcelot at the longe brydge
 And there they yelded hem vnto fyr kay / and fyr kay forfoke
 hem and said he foughte neuer with hem / but I shall ease yo-
 15 ur herte said fyr kay / yonder is fyr launcelot that ouercam you
 whan they wyft that / they were glad / And thenne fyr Mely-
 ot de logrys came home / and told the kyng how fyr launcelot
 had faued hym fro the dethe / and all his dedes were knowen
 how foure quenes forcereffes had hym in pryson / and how he
 20 was delyuerd by kyng Bagdemagus doughter / Also there
 were told alle grete dedes of armes that fyr launcelot dyd
 betwixe the two kynges / that is for to saye the kyng of north-
 galys and kyng Bagdemagus Alle the trouthe fyr Gaha-
 lantyne dyd telle / and fyre Mador de la porte and fyre Mor-
 25 dred / for they were at that fame turnement / ¶ Thenne cam in
 the lady that knewe fyr launcelot whan that he wounded fyr
 Bellyus at the paelione / And there atte request of fyr laū-
 celot fyr Bellyus was made knyghte of the round table /
 And soo at that tyme fyr launcelot had the gretteft name of
 30 ony knyghte of the world / and most he was honoured of hye
 and lowe

¶ Explicit the noble tale of fyr Launcelot du lake whiche is
 the vj book

¶ Here foloweth the tale of fyr Gareth of Orkeney that was
 called Beaumayns by fyr kay and is the seuenth book

¶ Capitulum primum



Han Arthur held his round table moost plenour / it fortunèd that he commaunded that the hyhe feest of Pentecost shold be holden at a cyte and a Castel the whiche in tho dayes was called kynke kenadonne vpon the fondes that 5 marched nyghe walys / ¶ Soo euer the kyng hadde a custome that at the feest of Pentecost in especyal afore other feestes in the yere he wold not goo that daye to mete vntyl he had herd or sene of a grete merueyille / And for that custome alle manner of straunge aduentures came before Arthur as at that fe- 10 eft before alle other feestes / And soo sire Gawayne a lytyl to fore none of the daye of Pentecost aspyed att a wyndowe thre men vpon horsbak and a dwarf on foote / and soo the thre men alighte and the dwarf kepte their horses / and one of the thre men was hyher than the other tweyne by a foote and a half 15 Thenne sir Gawayne wente vnto the kyng and fayd / sire go to your mete / for here at the hande comen straunge aduentures So Arthur wente vnto his mete with many other kynges / And there were all the knyghtes of the round table only tho that were prysoners or slayn at a recountre / thenne at the hy- 20 he feest euermore they shold be fulfilled the hole nombre of an C and fyfty / for thenne was the round table fully compliffhed Ryght soo cam in to the halle two men wel bisene and ryche- ly / and vpon their sholders there lened the goodlyest yong man & the fairest that euer they al sawe / & he was large and long 25 and brode in the sholders & wel vyfaged / and the fayrest and the largeft handed that euer man sawe / but he ferd as though he myght not goo nor bere hym self / but yf he lened vpon their sholders / Anon as Arthur sawe hym there was made pees & rome / & ryght so they yede with hym vnto the hyghe deyfe with- 30 out sayeng of ony wordes / thenne this moche yong man pulled hym a bak and easly stretched vp streyghte / sayeng kyng Arthur god you blisse and al your fair felauship / and in especial the felauship of the table rounde / And for thys cause I am come hyder to praye you and requyre you to gyue me thre 35 yestes / and they shalle not be vnresonably asked / but that ye may worshipfully and honorably graunte hem me / and to you

no grete hurte nor losse / And the fyrst done and gyfte I wil
 aske now / and the other two yestes I wylle aske this daye
 twelue moneth / where someuer ye hold your hyghe feest / Now
 aske sayd Arthur / and ye shalle haue your askyng

5 ¶ Now fyre this is my petycyon for thys feest / that ye wylle
 gyue me mete and drynke suffycyauntly for this twelue mo-
 neth / and at that day I wylle aske myn other two yestes

¶ My fayr sone sayd Arthur aske better I counceille the for
 this is but a fymple askynge / for my herte geueth me to the
 10 gretely that thou arte come of men of worshyp / and gretely
 my confayte fayleth me / but thou shalt preue a man of ryghte
 grete worship / Syre he sayd / ther of be as it be may I haue af-
 ked that I wylle aske / wel sayd the kyng ye shal haue me-
 te & drynke ynou3 / I neuer deffended þt none / nother my fren-
 15 de ne my foo / But what is thy name I wold wete / I can
 not telle you sayd he / that is merueylle sayd the kyng / that
 thou knowest not thy name / and thou arte the goodlyest yong
 man one that euer I sawe / Thenne the kyng betook hym to fir
 kay the steward / and charged hym that he shold gyue hym
 20 of al maner of metes and drynkes of the best / and also that
 he hadde al maner of fyndynge as though he were a lordes so-
 ne / that shal lytel nede sayd fyr kay to doo fuche cost vpon hym
 For I dare undertake he is a vylayne borne / and neuer will
 make man / for and he had come of gentylmen he wold haue
 25 axed of you hors and armour / but fuche as he is so he asketh
 And fythen he hath no name / I shall yeue hym a name that
 shal be Beaumayns that is fayre handes / and in to the kechen
 I shalle brynge hym / and there he shal haue fatte broweys
 euery day þt he shall be as fatte by the twelue monethes ende
 30 as a porke hog / ryght soo the two men departed and belefte
 hym to fyr kay / that scorned hym and mocked hym ¶ **Ca ij**

T Here at was fir Gawayn wroth / & in especyal fir la-
 uncelot bad fir kay leue his mockyng / for I dare laye
 my hede he shall preue a man of grete worship / lete be /
 35 said fir kay / it may not be by no reafon / for as he is / so he hath
 asked / Beware said fyre Launcelot / so ye gafe the good kny3t
 Brewnor fyre Dynadamys broder a name / and ye called
 hym la cote male tayle / and that tourned you to anger after-

ward / As for that sayd fyr kay this fhall neuer preue none
 fuche / For fyr Brewnor defyred euer worship and thys defy-
 reth breed & drynke / & brothe vpon payne of my lyf he was
 foftered vp in fome abbay / and how fomeuer it was they fay-
 led mete and drynke / and foo hyther he is come for his suf- 5
 tenaunce

¶ And foo fyre kay badde gete hym a
 place and fytte doune to mete / foo Beaumayns wente to the
 halle dore / and fette hym doune amonge boyes and laddys / &
 there he ete fadly / And thenne fyre launcelot after mete badde
 hym come to his chamber / And there he shold haue mete and 10
 drynke ynough / And foo dyd fyre Gawayne / but he reffused
 hem al / he wold doo none other / but as fyr kay commaunded
 hym for no profer / But as touchynge fyre Gawayn he hadde
 refon to profer hym lodgyng mete and drynke / for that profer
 came of his blood / for he was nere kynne to hym than he wyft 15
 But that as fyre launcelot dyd was of his grete gentylnes
 and curtosye

¶ Soo thus he was putte in to the
 kechyn and laye nyghtly as the boyes of the kechen dyd /
 And foo he endured alle that twelue moneth / and neuer dif-
 pleafyd man nor chylde / but alweyes he was meke & mylde / 20
 But euer whanne that he fawe ony Iuftynge of knyghtes /
 that wold he fee and he myght / And euer fyre launcelot wold
 gyue hym gold to fpende and clothes / and foo dyd fyre Ga-
 wayne / and where there were ony mayftries done / there atte
 wold he be / and there myghte none caft barre nor ftone to hym 25
 by two yerdys / Thenne wold fyre kay faye how lyketh yow
 my boye of the kechyn / foo it pafte on tyl the feeft of Whyt-
 fonyde / And at that tyme the kynge helde hit att Carlyon in the
 mooft royalleft wyfe that myghte be / lyke as he dyd yerly /
 But the Kynge wold no mete ete vpon the whyyfonday vn- 30
 tyl he herd fome aduentures / Thenne cam ther a fquyer to the
 Kyng / and faid / fyre ye maye goo to your mete / for here cometh
 a damoyfel with fome ftraunge aduentures / thenne was the
 Kynge gladde and fette hym doune / ¶ Ryghte foo ther came
 a damoyfel in to the halle and falewed the Kynge and prayd 35
 hym of focour / for whome sayd the Kynge what is the aduen-
 ture / ¶ Syre fhe sayd I haue a lady of grete worfhip and
 renomme / and fhe is byfeged with a tyraunte fo that fhe may

not oute of her castel / And by cause here are callyd the noblest knyghtes of the world / I come to you to praye you of focour / What heteth your lady and where dwelleth she / & who is he / & what is his name that hath byfeged her / fyre kyng she
 5 faide / as for my ladyes name that shall not ye knowe for me as at this tyme / but I lete you wete she is a lady of grete worship and of grete landes / And as for the tyraunt that byfyegeth her and destroyeth her landes he is called the rede knyght of the reed laundes / I knowe hym not sayd the kyng / Syre
 10 said fyre Gawayne / I knowe hym wel for he is one of the perillouft knyghtes of the world / men saye that he hath seuen mennys strengthe / and from hym I escaped ones ful hard / with my lyf / Fayre damoyfel sayd the kyng there ben knyghtes here wolde doo her power for to rescowe your lady / but by
 15 cause ye wylle not telle her name nor where she dwelleth / therfor none of my knyghtes that here be now shal goo with yow by my wylle / thenne must I speke further sayd the damoyfel

W

¶ Capitulum iij

Yth these wordes came before the kyng Beaumayns whyle the damoyfel was ther / & thus he said fyr Kyng
 20 god thanke you I haue ben this xij monethe in your kechyn and haue hadde my ful sustenaunce and now I will aske my two yestes that ben behynde / Aske vpon my peryl said the kyng / Syre this shal be my two gyftes / fyrst that ye wil graunte me to haue this aduenture of the damoyfel / for hit belon-
 25 geth vnto me / thou shalt haue hit sayd the kyng I graunte it the / thenne fyr this is the other yest / that ye shal bydde Launcelot du lake to make me knyzt for of hym I wil be made knyght and els of none / And whanne I am paste I praye yow lete hym ryde after me and make me Knyght / whan I requyre
 30 hym / Al this shal be done sayd the Kyng / Fy on the sayde the damoyfel / shalle I haue none but one that is your kechyn page / thenne was she wrothe and toke her hors and departed / And with that there cam one to Beaumayns and told hym his hors and armour was come for hym / and there was the
 35 dwarf come with all thyng that hym neded in the rycheft manner / ther at al the court had moche merueill from whens cam al þ^t

MISSING PAGE

MISSING PAGE

the greece and talowe that thou gaynēt in kyng Arthurs ke-
 chyn / weneft thou fayd ſhe that I alowe the for yonder knyȝt
 that thou kylleſt / Nay truly / for thou fleweſt hym vnhappely
 and cowardly / therfor torne ageyn bawdy kechyn page / I kno-
 we the wel / for fyre kay named the Beaumayns / what arte 5
 thou but a luſke and a torner of broches and a ladyl weſſher
 Damoyfel fayd Beaumayns ſaye to me what ye wylle / I
 wylle not goo from you what ſomeuer ye ſay / for I haue vn-
 tertake to kyng Arthur for to acheue your aduenture / and ſo
 ſhal I fynyſſhe it to the ende / eyther I ſhal dye therfore / Fy 10
 on the kechyn knaue wolt thou fynyſſhe myn aduenture / thou
 ſhalt anone be met with al / that thou woldeſt not for alle the
 brothe that euer thou foupeſt ones loke hym in the face / I ſhal
 affaye ſayd Beaumayns / Soo thus as they rode in the wo-
 ode / ther came a man fleynge al that euer he myghte / whether 15
 wolt thou ſayd Beaumayns / O lord he ſaid / helpe me / for he-
 re by in a flade are fyxe theues that haue taken my lord and
 bounde hym / ſoo I am aferd leſt they wyl flee hym / Brynge
 me thyder ſaid Beaumayns / and ſoo they rode to gyders vntyl
 they came there as was the knyghte bounden / and thenne 20
 he rode vnto hem / and ſtrake one vnto the dethe / and thenne an
 other / and at the thyrd ſtroke he ſlewe the thyrdde theef / and
 thenne the other thre fledde / And he rode after hem / and he o-
 uertook hem / and thenne tho thre theues tourned ageyne and
 affayled Beaumayns hard / but at the laſt he ſlewe them / & re- 25
 torned and vnbounde the knyghte / And the knyght thanked
 hym / and prayd hym to ryde with hym to his caſtel there a ly-
 tel befyde / and he ſhold worſhipfully rewarde hym for his go-
 od dedes / Syr ſayd Beaumayns I wille no reward haue /
 I was this day made knyghte of noble fyr launcelot / & ther- 30
 for I wylle no reward haue / but god rewarde me / And alſo
 I muſt folowe this damoyfel / And whan he came nyghe her
 ſhe bad hym ryde fro her / for thou ſmellyſt al of the kechyn /
 Weneft thou that I haue Ioye of the / for al this dede that thou
 haſt done nys but myſhappen the / But thou ſhalt ſee a ſyghte 35
 ſhal make the torne ageyne and that lyghtly / Thenne the ſa-
 me knyght whiche was reſcowed of the theues rode after that
 damoyfel and prayed her to lodge with hym alle that nyghte
 And by cauſe it was nere nyght / the damoyfel rode with hym

to his castel / and there they had grete chere / and at foupper the
 knyght sat fyr Beaumayns afore the damoifel / Fy fy said she
 fyr knyghte ye are vncurtoys to sette a kechyn page afore me
 hym byfemeth better to stycke a fwyne than to fyttre afore a da-
 5 moyfel of hyhe parage / thenne the knyght was ashamed atte
 her wordes / and took hym vp / and sette hym at asyde bord /
 and sette hym self afore hym / and soo al that nyght they had
 good chere and mery reffe /

¶ Capitulum sextum

ANd on the morn the damoifel & he took their leue & than-
 10 ked the knyght / and soo departed / and rode on her
 way / vntyl they came to a grete forest / And there was a grete
 ryuer and but one passage / and ther were redy two knyghtes
 on the ferther syde to lette them the passage / what saist thou sa-
 yd the damoyfel / wylt thou matche yonder knyghtes or torne
 15 ageyne / Nay sayd fyr Beaumayns I wyl not torne ageyn
 and they were fyxe mo / And ther with al he rasshyd in to the
 water / and in myddes of the water eyther brake their speres
 vpon other to their handes / and thenne they drewe their fwer-
 des / and smote egerly at other / And at the last fyr Beauma-
 20 yns smote the other vpon the helme that his hede stonyed / and
 there with alle he felle doune in the water / and there was he
 drowned / And thēne he sporyd his hors vpon the londe / whe-
 re the other knyghte felle vpon hym / and brake his spere / and
 soo they drewe theyr fwerdes / and foughte longe to gyders
 25 At the laste fyre Beaumayns clafe his helme and his heede
 doune to the sholders / and soo he rode vnto the damoyfel & bad
 her ryde forth on her way / Allas she sayd that euer a kechen
 page shold haue that fortune to destroye suche two douzty kn-
 yghtes / thou wenest thou hast done doughtely that is not soo /
 30 For the fyrste knyghte his hors stumbled / and there he was
 drowned in the water / and neuer it was by thy force / nor by
 thy myght / And the last knyghte by myshap thou camyft be-
 hynde hym and myshappely thou slewe hym / Damoyfel sayd
 Beaumayns ye maye saye what ye wyl / but with whom som-
 35 euer I haue a doo with al I truste to god to serue hym or he

departe / And therfor I recke not what ye say foo that I may
 wynne youre lady / Fy fy foule kechen knaue thou shalt see
 knyghtes that shal abate thy boost / Fayre damoyfel gyue me
 goodly langage / and thenne my care is past / for what knygh-
 tes someuer they be / I care not ne I doubte hem not / Also fa- 5
 yd she I saye it for thyne auayle / yet mayst thou torne ageyne
 with thy worship / for and thou folowe me / thou arte but fla-
 yne / for I see alle that euer thou doost is but by myfaenture /
 and not by prowesse of thy handes / wel damoyfel ye may say
 what ye wylle / but where someuer ye goo I wylle folowe you 10
 Soo this Beaumayns rode with that lady tyl euenfong tyme
 and euer she chyde hym and wold not reste / And they cam
 to a black launde / and there was a black hauthorne / & theron
 henge a blak baner / and on the other syde there henge a black
 shelde / and by hit stode a black spere grete and longe / and a 15
 grete black hors couerd with fylke / and a black stone fast by

¶ Capitulum septimum

THer sat a knyghte al armed in black harneis / and
 his name was þ^e knyzt of the blak laude / thēne þ^e da-
 moyfel whanne she sawe that knyghte she badde hym flee doun
 that valey for his hors was not fadeler / Gramercy sayd Be- 20
 aumayns / for alweyes ye wold haue me a coward / with that
 the black knyghte / whanne she came nyghe hym spak / & sayd
 damoyfel haue ye broughte this knyghte of kynge Arthur to
 be your champyon / Nay fayr knyghte sayd she / this is but a
 kechyn knaue that was fedde in kynge Arthurs kechyn for 25
 almesse / Why cometh he sayd the knyghte in suche aray / hit is
 shame that he bereth you company / fyr I can not be delyuerd
 of hym sayd she / for with me he rydeth maugre myn hede / god
 wold that ye shold put hym from me / outhur to flee hym and
 ye may / for he is an vnhappy knaue / and unhappely he hath do- 30
 ne this day / thorou myfhappe I sawe hym flee two knyghtes
 at the passage of the water / and other dedes he dyde beforne ry-
 ght merueyllous and thorou unhappynes / that merueyllled
 me sayd the black knyghte that ony man that is of worshyp
 wylle haue adoo with hym / they knowe hym not sayd the da- 35
 moyfel / And for by cause he rydeth with me / they wene that he

be some man of worship borne / that may be / sayd the blak knyghte / how be it as ye say that he be no man of worshyp he is a ful lykely persone / and ful lyke to be a stronge man / but thus moche shal I graunte you sayd the black knyghte / I
5 shal putte hym doune vpon one foote / and his hors and hys harneys he shal leue with me / for it were shame to me to doo hym any more harme / Whanne fyre Beaumayns herd hym saye thus / he sayd fyre knyghte thou art ful large of my hors and my harneys / I lete the wete it coste the noughte / & whether hit lyketh the or not this launde wyll I passe maulgre
10 thyn hede / And hors ne harneys getest thou none of my / but yf thou wynne hem with thy handes / and therfor lete see what thou canst doo / Sayst thou that sayd the black knyghte / now yelde thy lady fro the / for it befemeth neuer a kechyn page to
15 ryde with fuche a lady / Thou lyeft sayd Beaumayns I am a gentyl man borne and of more hyghe lygnage than thou / & that wyl I preue on thy body / Thenne in grete wrathe they departed with theyr horfes / and came to gyders as hit had ben the thonder / and the black knyghtes spere brake / and Beaumayns threste hym thorou bothe his sydes / and there with his
20 spere brak / and the truncheon lefte styll in his syde / But neuertheles the black knyght drewe his suerd / and smote many eger strokes and of grete myghte / and hurte Beaumayns ful fore / But at the laste the black knyghte within an houre
25 and an half he felle doune of his hors in swoune / and there he dyed / And thenne Beaumayns sawe hym soo wel horfed and armed / thenne he alyghte doune and armed hym in his armour / and soo took his hors and rode after the damoyfel /
Whanne she sawe hym come nyghe / she sayd away kechyn knaue oute of the wynde / for the smelle of thy baudy clothes greueth me / Allas she sayd that euer fuche a knaue shold by myfhap flee soo good a knyghte as thou hast done / but alle thys
30 is thyn vnhappynes / But here by is one shal paye the alle thy payment / and therefore yet I counceylle the / flee / it may happen me sayd Beaumayns to be beten or slayne / but I warne you fayre damoyfel I wyll not flee away / nor leue your company for al that ye can say / for euer ye say that they wil kille me or bete me / but how someuer hit happeneth I escape / and

they lye on the groũd / And therfore it were as good for you
to hold you styll thus al day rebukynge me / for aweye wille I
not tyl I see the vttermest of this Iourneye / or els I wyll
be slayne / outhr truly beten / therfore ryde on your waye / For
folowe you I wille what someuer happen

5

¶ Capitulum octauum

THus as they rode to gyders they sawe a knyght come
dryuend by them al in grene bothe his hors & his har-
neis / And whanne he came nyghe the damoyfel he af-
ked her / is that my broder the black Knyzte that ye haue bro-
ught with yow / Nay nay she sayd this vnhappy kechen knaue 10
hath slayne your broder thorou unhappynesse / Allas sayd the
grene knyghte that is grete pyte that soo noble a knyghte as
he was shold soo unhappely be slayne / and namely of a kna-
ues hand as ye say that he is / a traytour sayd the grene kny-
ghte thou shalt dye for sleynge of my broder / he was a ful no- 15
ble knyghte and his name was fyr Pereard / I defye the fa-
id Beaumayns / for I lete the wete I slewe hym knyghtely
and not shamefully / There with al the grene knyghte rode vn-
to an horne that was grene / and hit henge vpon a thorne / and
there he blewe thre dedely motys / and there came two damoyfels 20
and armed hym lyghtely / And thenne he took a grete hors /
and a grene shelde and a grene spere / And thenne they ranne
to gyders with al their myghtes and brake their speres vnto
their handes / And thenne they drewe their swerdes / and gaf
many fadde strokes / and either of them wounded other ful yll 25
And at the last at an ouerthwart Beaumayns with his ho-
rs strake the grene knyghtes hors vpon the fyde that he felle to
the erthe / And thenne the grene knyghte auoyded his hors
lightly / and dresseid hym vpon foote / That sawe Beaumayns
And there with al he alighte and they rasshed to gyders ly- 30
ke two myghty kempys a longe whyle / and fore they bledde
bothe / with that cam the damoyfel / and said my lord the gre-
ne knyghte / why for shame stande ye soo longe fyghtyng with
the kechyn knaue / Allas it is shame that euer ye were made
knyghte to see fuche a ladde to matche fuche a knyghte / as the 35

wede ouer grewe the corne / There with the grene knyght was
ashamed / and there with al he gaf a grete stroke of myghte &
clafe his shelde thorou / Whan Beaumayns sawe his shelde clo-
uen a fonder / he was a lytel ashamed of that stroke and of her
5 langage / And thenne he gaf hym fuche a buffet vpon the hel-
me that he felle on his knees / And soo fodenly Beaumayns
pulled hym vpon the ground grouelynge / And thenne the
grene knyghte cryed hym mercy / and yelded hym vnto fyre
Beaumayns / and prayd hym to flee hym not / Al is in vayn
10 said Beaumayns for thou shalt dye but yf this damoyfel that
came with me praye me to saue thy lyf / and ther with al he vn-
laced his helme lyke as he wold flee hym / Fy vpon the false
kechen page / I wyll neuer pray the to saue his lyf / for I will
neuer be soo moche in thy daunger / Thenne shalle he deye sayde
15 Beaumayns / Not soo hardy thou bawdy knaue sayd the da-
moyfel / that thou flee hym / Allas sayd the grene knyghte suf-
fre me not to dye for a fayre word may saue me / Fayr knyzt
said the grene knyghte saue my lyf / & I wyl foryeue the / the
dethe of my broder / and for euer to become thy man / and xxx
20 knyghtes that hold of me for euer shal doo you seruyse / In
the deuyls name sayd the damoyfel that fuche a bawdy kechen
knaue shold haue the and thyrtty knyghtes seruyse / Syr kn-
yght said Beaumayns alle this auaylleth the not / but yf my
damoyfel speke with me for thy lyf / And therwith al he ma-
25 de a femblaunt to flee hym / lete be sayd the damoyfel thou bau-
dy knaue / flee hym not / for and thou do / thou shalt repente it
Damoyfel said Beaumayns your charge is to me a pleasyr
and at your commaundement his lyf shal be faued / & els not
Thenne he said sir Knyghte with the grene armes I releace the
30 quyte at this damoyfels request / for I wylle not make her
wrothe / I wille fulfyll al that she chargeth me / And thenne
the grene knyghte kneled doune / and dyd hym homage with
his swerd / thenne said the damoifel me repenteth grene kny-
ghte of your dommage / and of youre broders dethe the black
35 knyghte / for of your helpe I had grete myfter / For I drede
me fore to passe this forest / Nay drede you not sayd the grene
knyghte / for ye shal lodge with me this nyghte / and to morne
I shalle helpe you thorou this forest / Soo they tooke theyre

horfes and rode to his manoyr whiche was fast there befyde

¶ Capitulum ix

ANd euer she rebuked Beaumayns and wold not suf-
 fre hym to fyttre at her table / but as the grene knyghte
 took hym and fat hym at a fyde table / Merueylle me thynketh
 faid the grene knyght to the damoyfel why ye rebuke this no- 5
 ble knyghte as ye doo / for I warne you damoyfel he is a full
 noble knyght / and I knowe no knyght is abel to matche hym
 therfor ye doo grete wrong to rebuke hym / for he shal do yow
 ryght good feruyse / for what someuer he maketh hym felf / ye
 shalle preue at the ende that he is come of a noble blood and 10
 of kynges lygnage / Fy fy faid the damoifel it is shame for
 you to saye of hym fuche worship / Truly faid the grene knygt
 it were shame for me to sey of hym ony disworship / for he hath
 preued hym felf a better knyght than I am / yet haue I mett
 with many knyghtes in my dayes / and neuer or this tyme ha- 15
 ue I fond no knyght his matche / and so that nyghte they ye-
 de vnto rest / and al that nyght the grene knyght commaunded
 thyrtty knyghtes pryuely to watche Beaumayns for to kepe
 hym from al treason / And soo on the morne they al arofe and
 herd their masse and brake theyr fast / and thenne they tooke 20
 their horfes / and rode on their waye / and the grene knyghte
 conueyed hem thorou the forest / and there the grene Knyghte
 faid my lord Beaumayns I & these thyrtty knyghtes shal
 be alweye at your somons both erly and late at your callyng
 and whether that euer ye wille fende vs / it is wel faid / fayd 25
 Beaumayns / whanne that I calle vpon you / ye must yelde
 you vnto kynge Arthur and all your knyghtes / yf that ye so
 commaunde vs / We shal ben redy at all tymes faid the grene
 knyght / Fy fy vpon the in the deuyls name faide the damoyfel
 that ony good knyghtes shold be obedyent vnto a kechyn kna- 30
 ue / Soo thenne departed the grene Knyghte and the damoy-
 fel / And thenne she faid vnto Beaumayns why folowest thou
 me thou kechyn boye / caste away thy shelde and thy spere / and
 flee awaye / yet I counceille the by tymes or thou shalt fay ry-
 ght soone Allas for were thou as wyzte as euer was wade 35

or Laūcelot / Trystram / or the good knyghte fyr lamaryk thou shalt not passe a paas here that is called the paas perillous / Damoyfel said Beaumayns who is aferd lete hym flee / for it were shame to torne ageyne sythen I haue ryden foo longe
 5 with yow / wel said the damoyfel ye shal sone whether ye wyll or not

¶ Capitulum x

SOo within a whyle they sawe a toure as whyte as o-ny snowe wel matchecold al aboute / and doubel dyked / And ouer the toure gate there henge a fyfty sheldes of
 10 dyuerse colours / and vnder that toure there was a fayr medow And therin were many knyghtes and squyers to behold scalfoldes and paelions / for there vpon the morn shold be a grete turnement / and the lord of the toure was in his castel and loked out at a wyndowe / and sawe a damoyfel / a dwarf and
 15 a knyzt armed at al poyntes / So god me helpe said the lord with þ^t knyzt wyll I Iuste / for I see that he is a kniȝt arraūt & foo he armed hym and horsed hym hastely / And whanne he was on horsbak with his shelde and his spere / it was al rede bothe his hors and his harneis / and alle that to hym lon-
 20 geth / And whanne that he came nyghe hym he wende it hadde ben his broder the black knyghte / And thenne he cryed a loude broder what doo ye in these marches / nay nay sayd the damoyfel / it is not he / this is but a kechyn knaue that was brought vp for almesse in kyng Arthurs courte / Neuertheles sayd
 25 the reed knyghte I wylle speke with hym or he departe / A sayd the damoyfel this knaue hath kylled thy broder / and fyre kay named hym Beaumayns / and this hors and this harneis was thy broders the black knyghte / Also I sawe thy broder the grene knyghte ouercome of his handes / Now maye ye
 30 be reuenged vpon hym / for I may neuer be quyte of hym

¶ With this eyther knyghtes departed in sondre / and they cam to gyder with alle their myght / and eyther of their horses fell to the erthe / and they auoyded their horses / and put their sheldes afore them and drewe their swerdes / and either gaf other
 35 sadde stokes / now here / now there / rasyng / tracyng / foynynge and hurlynge lyke two bores the space of two houres / And thenne she cryed on hyhe to the rede knyghte / Allas thou noble

reed knyghte / thynke what worship hath folowed the / lete neuer a kechyn knaue endure the foo longe as he doth / Thenne the reed knyght waxed wrothe and doubled his strokes and hurte Beaumayns wonderly fore that the blood ranne doune to the ground that it was wonder to see that stronge bataille / 5
Yet at the last fyre Beaumayns strake hym to the erthe / and as he wold haue slayne the reed knyghte he cryed mercy fayeng Noble knyghte flee me not / and I shall yelde me to the with fyfty knyghtes with me that be at my commaundement And I forgyue the al the despyte that thou hast done to me / 10
and the dethe of my broder the black knyghte / All this auailleth not said Beaumayns / but yf my damoyfel praye me to faue thy lyf / And therewith he maade semblaunt to stryke of his hede / Lete be thou Beaumayns flee hym not / for he is a noble knyghte / and not foo hardy vpon thyne hede but thou faue 15
hym / Thenne Beaumayns badde the reed knyghte stand vp and thanke the damoyfel now of thy lyf / ¶ Thenne the reed knyght praid hym to see his castel / and to be there al nyghte Soo the damoyfel thenne graunted hym / and there they had mery chere / But alweyes the damoyfel spak many foule wordes vnto Beaumayns wherof the reed knyght had grete merueylle / and alle that nyghte the reed knyghte maade thre score knyghtes to watche Beaumayns that he shold haue no shame nor vylony / And vpon the morne they herd masse and dyned / and the reed knyghte came before Beaumayns with 25
his thre score knyghtes / and there he profered hym his homage and feaute at al tymes he and his knyghtes to doo hym feruyse / I thanke you said Beaumayns / but this ye shalle graunte me / whanne I calle vpon you to come afore my lord kynge Arthur and yelde you vnto hym to be his knyghtes / 30
Syr said the reed knyghte I wille be redy and my felauship at your fomons / So fyr Beaumayns departed and the damoyfel and euer she rode chydyng hym in the fowlest manere /

¶ Capitulum xi

DAmoyfel said Beaumayns ye are vncurteis so to re-
 buke me / as ye doo / for me semeth I haue done you
 good feruyse / and euer ye threate me I shal be betyn
 with knyghtes that we mete / but euer for al your boost they
 5 lye in the dust or in the myre / and therfor I pray you rebuke
 me no more / And whan ye see me beten or yolden as recreaūt
 thenne may ye bydde me goo from you shamefully / but fyrste
 I lete you wete I wylle not departe from you / for I were
 werse than a foole and I wold departe from you all the why-
 10 le that I wyne worship / wel said she / ryght soone ther shall
 mete a knyght shal paye the alle thy wages / for he is the most
 man of worship of the world excepte kyng Arthur / I will
 wel said Beaumayns / the more he is of worship / the more
 shalle be my worship to haue adoo with hym / Thenne anone
 15 they were ware / where was afore them a Cyte ryche and fayre
 And betwixe them and the Cyte a myle and a half there
 was a fayre medowe that semed newe mowen / and therin we-
 re many paelions fayre to beholde / Lo said the damoyfel yon-
 der is a lord that oweth yonder cyte / and his custome is whan
 20 the weder is fayr to lye in this medowe to luste and torneye /
 And euer there ben aboute hym fyue honderd knyghtes & gen-
 tilmen of armes / and there ben alle maner of games that ony
 gentylman can deuyse / That goodly lord saide Beaumayns
 wold I fayne see / thou shalt see hym tyme ynough saide the
 25 damoyfel / and soo as she rode nere she aspyed the paelione /
 where he was / Loo sayd she seest thou yonder paelione that is
 al of the coloure of Inde and al maner of thynges that there
 is aboute men and wymmen / and horses trapped / sheldes and
 speres were all of the colour of Inde and his name is sir per-
 30 fant of Inde the moost lordlyest knyghte that euer thou lokest
 on / Hit may wel be said Beaumayns / but be he neuer so sto-
 ute a knyghte in this felde / I shalle abyde tyl that I see hym
 vnder his shelde / A foole said she thou were better flee by ty-
 mes / why sayd Beaumayns and he be suche a knyghte as ye
 35 make hym he wylle not sette vpon me with alle his men / or
 with his / v / C knyghtes / For and ther come no more but one

at ones / I shall hym not fayle whylest my lyf lasteth / Fy fy
 said the damoyfel that euer fuche a stynkyng knaue shold
 blowe fuche a boost / Damoyfel he said ye ar to blame soo to re-
 buke me / For I had leuer do fyue batails / than so to be rebu-
 ked / lete hym come and thenne lete hym doo his werst / Syre 5
 she said I merueylle what thou arte and of what kyn thou
 arte come / boldly thou spekest / and boldly thou hast done / that
 haue I fene / therfore I praye the saue thy self and thou ma-
 yst / for thy hors and thou haue had grete traueylle / And I
 drede we dwelle ouer longe from the sege / For hit is but hens 10
 feuen myle / and alle perillous passages we ar past saue al on-
 ly this passage / and there I drede me fore lest ye shalle ketch
 some hurte / therfore I wold haue ye were hens that ye were not bry-
 sed nor hurte with this stronge knyghte / But I lete you we-
 te this fyr Perfant of ynde is no thyng of myzte nor strength 15
 vnto the knyghte that leid the syege aboute my lady / As for
 that said fyre Beaumayns be it as it be may / For fythen I
 am come soo nyghe this knyght I wille preue his myghte or
 I departe from hym / and els I shalle be shamed / and I now
 withdrawe me from hym / And therfore damoyfel haue ye 20
 no doubte by the grace of god I shall so dele with this kny-
 ghte that within two houres after none I shalle delyuer hym
 And thenne shal we come to the syege by day lyghte / O Ihe-
 su merueille haue I said the damoyfel what maner a man ye
 be / for hit may neuer ben otherwyse but that ye be comen of a 25
 noble blood / for soo foule ne shamefully dyd neuer woman
 rule a knyghte as I haue done you / and euer curtoisly ye ha-
 ue suffred me / and that cam neuer but of a gentyl blood /

¶ Damoyfel sayd Beaumayns a knyght may lytel do that
 may not suffre a damoysel / for what someuer ye said vnto me / 30
 I took none hede to your wordes / for the more ye sayd the mo-
 re ye angryd me / and my wrathe I wrekyd vpon them that
 I had adoo with al / And therfor alle the myssayenge that
 ye myssayed me / fordered me in my bataill & caused me to thyn-
 ke to shewe & preue my self at the ende what I was / for pera- 35
 ventur thou3 I had mete in kyng Arthurs kechyn / yet I myzt
 haue had mete ynou3 in other places / but alle that I dyd it
 for to preue & assaye my frendes / and that shalle be knownen

another day / and whether that I be a gentylman borne or none / I lete you wete fayre damoyfel I haue done you gentilmans feruyfe / and parauentur better feruyfe yet wille I do or I departe from you / Allas she said fayre Beaumayns for-
 5 gyue me alle that I haue myffaid or done ageynst the / wyth alle my herte said he I forgyue it yow / for ye dyde no thyng but as ye shold doo / for al your euyl wordes pleasfyd me / & damoyfel faide Beaumayns fyn hit lyketh you to faye thus fayre vnto me / wete ye wel it gladeth my herte gretely / and
 10 now me semeth ther is no knyght lyuyng but I am able ynough for hym

¶ Capitulum Duodecimum

Wyth this sir Persant of ynde had aspyed them as they houed in the felde / and knyztly he sente to them whether he came in werre or in pees / say to thy lord said beauma-
 15 yns I take no force / but whether as hym lyst hym self / Soo the messenger went ageyne vnto fyr Persaunt / and told hym alle this ansuer / wel thenne will I haue adoo with hym to the vtteraunce / and soo he purueyed hym and rode ageynst hym / And Beaumayns sawe hym and made hym redy / & ther they
 20 mette with all that euer theyr horsfes myght renne / and braste their speres eyther in thre pyeces / & their horsfes rassed so to gyders that bothe their horsfes felle dede to the erthe & lyztly they auoyded their horsfes / and put their sheldes afore them / & drewe their fwerdes / and gaf many grete strokes that somtyme
 25 they hurtled to gyder that they felle grouelyng on the ground Thus they fought two houres and more that their sheldes & theyr hauberkes were al forhewen / & in many stedys they were wounded / So at the last fyr Beaumayns smote hym thorou the cost of the body / & thenne he retrayed hym here & there
 30 & knyghtly mayntened his batail long tyme / And at the last though hym lothe were Beaumayns smote sir Persant aboue vpon the helme that he felle grouelyng to the erthe / & thenne he lepte vpon hym ouerthwart and vnlaced his helme to haue slayne hym / Thenne fyr Persant yelded hym & asked hym
 35 mercy / with that cam þe damoisel & praid to saue his lyf / I wil wel / for it were pyte this noble knyzt shold dye / gramercy sayd Persaunt gentyl knyzt & damoyfel / For certeynly now I

wote wel it was ye that flewe my broder the black knyghte /
 at the black thorne / he was a ful noble kny3te / his name was
 fyr Perard / Also I am sure that ye are he that wanne myn
 other brother the grene knyght / his name was fyre Pertolepe
 Also ye wanne my broder the reed knyght fyr Perrymones / 5
 And now syn ye haue wonne thefe / this shal I do for to ple-
 ase you ye shal haue homage & feaute of me / & an C knyghtes
 to be alweyes at your commaundement to go & ryde where ye
 wil commaunde vs / & so they wente vnto sir Perfauntes pael-
 ione & dranke the wyne / & ete spyeces / & afterward fire Per- 10
 faunte made hym to reste vpon a bedde vntyl souper tyme / and
 after souper to bedde ageyne / whan Beaumayns was abedde
 fyr Perfaunt had a lady a faire dou3ter of xviiij yere of age
 and there he called her vnto hym / & charged her & commaunded
 her vpon his bleffynge to go vnto the knyghtes bedde / and lye 15
 down by his fyde / & make hym no straunge chere / but good che-
 re / and take hym in thyne armes & kyffe hym / & loke that this
 be done I charge you as ye wil haue my loue & my good wil
 So fyr Perfants doughter dyd as her fader bad her / and soo
 she wente vnto fyr Beaumayns bed / & pryuely she dispoyllled 20
 her / & leid her doune by hym / & thenne he awoke & fawe her &
 asked her what she was / fyre she said I am sir Perfants dou3-
 ter that by the commaundement of my fader am come hyder /
 Be ye a mayde or a wyf said he / sir she said I am a clene mai-
 den / God defende sayd he that I shold defoyle you to doo fyre 25
 Perfaunt fuche a shame / therefore fayre damoyfel aryse oute of
 this bedde or els I wille / Syre she said I cam not to you by
 myn owne wille but as I was commaunded / Allas said fyr
 Beaumayns I were a shameful knyghte and I wolde do
 your fader ony disworship / and so he kyft her and soo she de- 30
 parted and came vnto fyr Perfant her fader / & told hym
 alle how she had spedde / Truly saide fyre Perfaunt what som-
 euer he be / he is comen of a noble blood / and soo we leue hem
 there tyl on the morne

¶ Capitulum xiiij

¶ Capitulum xiii

ANd foo on the morne the damoyfel & fir Beaumayns
 herd masse & brake their fast / and foo took their leue
 Fair damoyfel said Persant whether ward ar ye way ledyng
 this knyghte / fyr she said this knyghte is goyng to the sege /
 5 that besyegeth my fyfter in the castel Dangerus / A a sayd per-
 faunt that is the knyghte of the reed launde / the whiche is the
 moost peryllous knyghte that I knowe now lyuyng / and a
 man that is withouten mercy / and men sayen that he hath feuen
 mens strength / god saue you said he to Beaumayns from þ^t
 10 knyghte / for he doth grete wrong to that lady / and that is gre-
 te pyte / for she is one of the fairest ladyes of the world / & me
 semeth that your damoyfel is her fuster / is not your name Lyn-
 net said he / ye fir said she / and my lady my fusters name is da-
 me Lyoneffe / Now shal I telle you said fyr Perfaunt / thys
 15 reed knyghte of the reed laund hath layne long at the syege
 wel nyghe this two yeres / and many tymes he myghte haue
 had her and he had wold / but he prolongeth the tyme to thys
 entent / for to haue fir laūcelot du lake to doo bataill with hym
 or fir Trystram or fyr Lamerak de galys / or fyre Gawayne / &
 20 this is his taryenge foo longe at the syege / Now my lord fyre
 Perfaunt of ynde saide the damoyfel Lynet I requyre you that
 ye wille make this gentelman knyghte or euer he fyghte with
 the reed knyghte / I will with all my herte said fyr Perfaunt
 and it please hym to take the ordre of knyghthode of so sym-
 25 ple a man as I am / Sire said Beaumayns I thanke you
 for your good wil / for I am better sped / for certainly the no-
 ble knyght fir Launcelot made me knyght / A said fir Persant
 of a more renommed knyghte myghte ye not be made knyghte /
 For of alle knyghtes he maye be called chyef of knyghthode / &
 30 so all the world saith that betwixe thre knyghtes is departed
 clerly knyghthode / that is laūcelot du lake / fyr Trystram de ly-
 ones and fir Lamerak de galis / these bere now the renommee /
 there ben many other knyghtes as fir Palamydes the sarafyn
 and fir Safere his broder / Also fir Bleoberys and sire Bla-
 35 more de ganys his broder / Also fyr Bors de Ganys & fyr Ec-
 tor de marys & fir Percyuale de galis / these & many mo ben no-
 ble kniȝtes / but ther be none þ^t passe þ^e iij aboue said / therfor god

spede you wel said fyr Perfant / for and ye may matche the rede knyghte ye shalle be called the fourth of the world / fir said Beaumayns I wold fayne be of good fame / and of knyghthode / And I lete you wete I am of good men / for I dare say my fader was a noble man / and soo that ye wil kepe hit in clofe / and this damoyfel / I wyl telle you of what kyn I am We wille not discouer you said they both tyl ye commaunde vs by the feythe we owe vnto god / ¶ Truly thenne faide he / my name is Gareth of Orkeney and kynge Lot was my fader / & my moder is kynge Arthurs fyfter / her name is Dame Morgawfe / and fir Gawayne is my broder / and fir Agraauayne & fir Gaheryes / and I am the yongest of hem alle / And yet wote not kyng Arthur nor fir Gawayn what I am

¶ Capitulum xiiij

Soo the book faith / that the lady that was biseged had word of her systers comynge by the dwerf and a knyghte with her / and how he had passed al the perillous passages / what manere a man is he said the lady / he is a noble knyght truly madame said the dwerf and but a yong man / but he is as lykely a man as euer ye sawe ony / what is he sayd the damoyfel / and of what kynne is he comen / and of whome was he made knyghte / Madame said the dwerf he is the kynnes sone of Orkeney / but his name I wille not telle you as at this tyme / but wete ye wel of fyre launcelot was he maade knyght / for of none other wolde he be maade knyghte / and fire kay named hym Beaumayns / how escaped he said the lady from the bretheren of Perfaunt / ¶ Madame he said as a noble knyghte shold / Fyrste he slewe two bretheren att a passage of a water / A faide she they were good knyghtes but they were murtherers / the one hyght Gherard de breuffe / & the other knyght hyght fir Arnolde le Brewfe / thenne madame he recou- tred with the black knyght / and slewe hym in playne batail & so he toke his hors & his armour & fouzt with the grene knyght & wanne hym in playn bataill / & in lyke wyse he ferued the reed knyzt / and aftir in the same wyse he ferued the blewe knyzt & wan hym in playn batail / thēne said the lady he hath ouercome fir Perfaūt of Inde / one of the noblest knyztēs of the world / & þe dwerf said he hath wōne al the iiij bretherē & slayn

the blak knyght / and yet he dyd more tofore he ouerthrewe fir
 kay and lefte hym nyghe dede vpon the ground / Also he dyd
 a grete batayll with fyre launcelot / and there they departed on
 euen handes / And thenne fyre launcelot made hym knyghte /
 5 Dwerf fayd the lady I am gladde of these tydynges / therfor
 go thou in an hermytage of myn here by / and there shalt thou
 bere with the of my wyn in two flagans of siluer / they ar of
 two galons / and also two cast of brede with fatte venefon ba-
 ke and deynte foules / and a cop of gold here I delyuer the /
 10 that is ryche and precyous and bere all this to myn hermyta-
 ge / and put it in the hermytes handes / And fythen go thou
 vnto my fyfter and grete her wel / and commaūde me vnto that
 gentyl knyghte / and praye hym to ete and to drynke and ma-
 ke hym stronge / and say ye hym I thanke hym of his curto-
 15 fy and goodenes that he wold take vpon hym fuche labour
 for me that neuer dyd hym bounte nor curtosye / ¶ Also pray
 hym that he be of good herte & courage / for he shalle mete with
 a ful noble knyghte / but he is neyther of bounte / curtosye / nor
 gentylnes / for he attendyth vnto nothyng but to murther / &
 20 that is the cause I can not prayse hym nor loue hym / So this
 dwerf departed / and came to fyre Perfant where he fond the
 damoyfel lynet and fyr Beaumayns / and there he tolde hem
 alle as ye haue herd / and thenne they took theyr leue / but fyr
 Perfant took an ambelyng hacney and conueyed hem on the-
 25 yr wayes / And thenne belefte hem to god / and soo within a
 lytil whyle they came to that heremytage / and there they dra-
 nke the wyne / and ete the venefon and the foules baken /
 And so whan they had repasted hem wel / the dwerf retourned
 ageyn with his vessel vn to the castel ageyne / and there mette
 30 with hym the reed knyght of the reed laundes / and asked
 hym from whens that he came / and where he had ben / Syr fa-
 yd the dwerf I haue ben with my ladyes fyfter of this castel
 and she hath ben at kynge Arthurs courte / and broughte a
 knyghte with her / thenne I accompte her trauaille but losse /
 35 For though she had broughte with her fyre launcelot / sir Tryf-
 tram / fyr Lamerak or fyr gawayne / I wold thynke my selfe
 good ynough for them all / it may well be said the dwerf / but
 this knyghte hath passed alle the peryllous passages & slayn

[leaf 117 verso]

the black knyghte and other two mo / and wonne the grene
 knyght / the reed knyghte and the blewe knyghte / thenne is he
 one of these four that I haue afore reherced / He is none of tho
 faid the dwerf / but he is a kynges sone / what is his name fa-
 yd the reed knyght of the reed laund / that wille I not telle 5
 you seyde the dwerf / but sire kay upon scorne named hym Be-
 aumayns / I care not faid the knyght what knyghte foo euer
 he be / for I shal soone delyuer hym / And yf I euer matche
 hym he shalle haue a shameful dethe as many other haue had
 that were pyte sayd the dwerf / And it is merueill that ye ma- 10
 ke suche shameful warre vpon noble knyghtes

¶ Capitulum xv

Noo leue we the knyghte and the dwerf / and speke we
 of Beaumayns that al nyzt lay in the hermytage / &
 vpon the morne he and the damoyfel lynet herd their masse / &
 and brake their fast / And thenne they toke theyr horses / and 15
 rode thorou oute a fair forest / and thenne they came to a play-
 ne and sawe where were many paelions and tentys / and a
 fayr castel / and there was moche smoke and grete noyse / and
 whanne they came nere the sege / fyr Beaumayns aspyed vp-
 on grete trees as he rode / how there henge ful goodly armed 20
 knyghtes by the neck and theire sheldes aboute theire neckys
 with their swardes / and gylt spores vpon their heles / and foo
 there henge nyghe a fourty knyghtes shamefully with ful ry-
 che armes / Thenne sir Beaumayns abated his countenance &
 sayd what meneth this / Fayre fyre faid the damoyfel abate not 25
 your chere for all this fyghte / for ye must courage your self or
 els ye ben al shente / for all these knyghtes came hyder to this
 sege to rescowe my syster Dame lyones / and whanne the reede
 knyghte of the reed laund hadde ouercome hem / he putte them
 to this shameful dethe withoute mercy and pyte / And in the 30
 same wyse he wyll serue you / but yf ye quyte you the better
 Now Ihesu deffende me faid Beaumayns from suche a vylay-
 nous dethe and shenship of armes / For rather than I sholde
 so be faren with all / I wolde rather be slayn manly in playn

bataille / Soo were ye better said the damoyfel / for trust not in
hym is no curtosye but alle goth to the deth or shameful mur-
ther / and that is pyte / for he is a ful lykely man / wel made
of body / and a ful noble knyghte of prowesse and a lorde
5 of grete laundes and possessions / Truly said Beaumayns /
he may wel be a good knyghte / but he vfeth shameful customs
and it is merueylle that he endureth so longe that none of the
noble knyghtes of my lord Arthurs haue not delt with hym
And thenne they rode to the dykes and sawe them double dy-
10 ked with ful warly wallis / and there were lodged many gre-
te lordes nyghe the wallys / and there was grete noyse of myn-
stralfy / and the see betyd vpon the one fyde of the walles whe-
re were many shippes and maryners noyse with hale & how
And also there was fast by a Sykamore tree / and ther henge
15 an horne the grettest that euer they sawe of an Olyfantes bo-
ne / and this knyght of the reed laund had hanged it vp ther
that yf ther came ony arraunt knyghte / he muste blowe that
horne / and thenne wylle he make hym redy & come to hym to
doo bataille / But fyr I pray you said the damoyfel Lynet blo-
20 we ye not the horne tyl it be hyghe none / for now it is aboute
pryme / & now encreaced his myghte / that as men say he hath
feuen mens strengthe / A fy for shame fair damoifel say ye ne-
uer soo more to me / For and he were as good a knyghte as
euer was I shalle neuer fayle hym in his moost myghte / for
25 outhur I wille wynne worship worshipfully or dye knyghte-
ly in the felde / and ther with he spored his hors streyghte to
the Sykamore tree / and blewe soo the horne egerly that alle
the sege and the castel range therof / And thenne there lepte
oute knyghtes oute of their tentys and paelions / and they
30 within the castel loked ouer the wallis and oute att wyndo-
wes / Thenne the reed knyghte of the reed laundes armed hym
hastely / and two barons sette on his spores vpon his heles /
and alle was blood reed his armour spere and shelde / And
an Erle buclad his helme vpon his hede / and thenne they bro-
35 ughte hym a rede spere and a rede stede / and soo he rode into a
lytyl vale vnder the castel / that al that were in the castel and
at the sege myghte behold the bataill

¶ Capitulum xvi]

HYre sayd the damoyfel Lynet vnto fyr Beaumayns
 loke ye be gladde and lyght / for yonder is your dedely
 enemy / and at yonder wyndowe is my lady fyfter dame
 Lyones / where sayd Beaumayns / yonder said the damoyfel &
 poynted with her fynger / that is trouthe sayd Beaumayns / 5
 She besemeth a ferre the fayrest lady that euer I loked vpon
 and truly he said I aske no better quarel than now for to do
 bataylle / for truly she shalle be my lady / and for her I wyll
 fyghte / And euer he loked vp to the wyndowe with gladde
 countenance / And the lady Lyones made curtosy to hym do- 10
 une to the erthe with holdyng vp bothe their handes / Wyth
 that the reed knyghte of the reed laundes callid to fyr Be-
 aumayns / leue fyr knyghte thy lokyng / and behold me I cou-
 ceille the / for I warne the wel she is my lady / and for her I
 haue done many stronge batails / Yf thou haue so done said Be- 15
 aumayns / me semeth it was but waste labour / for she loueth
 none of thy felauship / and thou to loue that loueth not the / is
 but grete folly / For and I vnderstode that she were not glad
 of my comyng / I wold be auyfed or I dyd bataille for her /
 But I vnderstande by the fygyng of this castel she may for- 20
 bere thy felauship / And therfor wete thou wel thou rede kny-
 ghte of the reed laundes / I loue her / and wille rescowe her or
 els to dye / Saist thou that said the reed knyghte / me semeth /
 thou oughte of reson to beware by yonder knyghtes that thou
 sawest hange vpon yonder trees / Fy for shame said Beauma- 25
 yns that euer thou sholdest saye or do so euyl / for in that thou
 shamest thy self and knyghthode / and thou mayst be sure ther
 wyll no lady loue the that knoweth thy wycked custommes
 And now thou wenest that the fyghte of these hanged knygh-
 tes shold fere me / Nay truly not so / that shameful fyght cau- 30
 feth me to haue courage and hardynes ageynste the more than
 I wold haue had ageynst the / and thou were a wel ruled
 knyght / make the redy said the reed knyghte of the reed laū-
 des / and talke no lenger with me / Thenne fyre Beaumayns
 badde the damoyfel goo from hym / and thenne they putte their 35
 speres in their reyftes and came to gyders with alle their mygt

that they had bothe / and eyther smote other in myddes of their
 sheldes that the paytrellys / fursenglys and crowpers brafte /
 and felle to the erthe bothe / and the reynys of their brydels
 in their handes / and soo they laye a grete whyle fore stonyed
 5 that al that were in the castel and in the sege wende their nec-
 kes had ben broken / and thenne many a straunger and other
 sayd the straunge knyzt was a bygge man / and a noble Iuf-
 ter / for or now we sawe neuer noo knyghte matche the reed
 knyghte of the reed laundes / thus they sayd bothe within the
 10 castel and withoute / thenne lyghtly they auoyded theyr hor-
 ses and put their sheldes afore them / and drewe their swardes
 and ranne to gyders lyke two fyers lyons / and eyther gafe
 other fuche buffets vpon their helmes that they relyd backward
 bothe two strydys / and thenne they recouerd bothe and hewe
 15 grete pyeces of their harneis and their sheldes / that a grete
 parte felle in to the felde

¶ Capitulum xviij

ANd thenne thus they foughte tyl it was past none /
 and neuer wold stynte tyl att the laste they lacked
 wynde bothe / and thēne they stode wagyng and scateryng pon-
 20 tyng / blowyng and bledyng that al that behelde them for the
 moost party wepte for pyte / Soo whan they had restyd them
 a whyle / they yede to bataille ageyne / tracyng racyng foynyng
 as two bores / And at some tyme they toke their renne as hit
 had ben two rammys & hurtled to gyders that somtyme they
 25 felle grouelyng to the erthe / And at somtyme they were so a-
 mased that eyther took others swerd in stede of his owne /
 Thus they endured tyl euenyng tyme / that there was none
 that beheld them myghte knowe whether was lyke to wynde
 the bataill / and their armour was so fer hewen that men myzt
 30 see their naked fydes / and in other places / they were naked /
 but euer the naked places they dyd defende / and the reed kn-
 yghte was a wyly knyght of werre / and his wyly fyghtyng
 taughte fyr Beaumayns to be wyse / but he aboughte hit fulle
 fore or he dyd aspye his fyghtyng / And thus by assente of
 35 them bothe they graunted eyther other to rest / and so they sette

hem doune vpon two molle hylles there befydes the fyghtynge
 place / and eyther of hem vnlaced his helme / and toke the cold
 wynde / for either of their pages was fast by them to come whā
 they called to vnlace their harneis and to fette hem on ageyn
 at their commaundement / And thenne whan fyr Beaumayns 5
 helme was of / he loked vp to the wyndowe / and there he sawe
 the faire lady Dame Lyones / and she made hym fuche counte-
 naunce that his herte waxed lyghte and Ioly / and ther with
 he bad the reed knyghte of the reed laundes make hym redy
 and lete vs doo the bataille to the vtteraunce / I will wel fa- 10
 id the knyghte / and thenne they laced vp their helmes / and
 their pages auoyded / & they stepte to gyders & foughte freffhe-
 ly / but the reed knyghte of the reed laundes awayted hym /
 & at an ouerthwart smote hym within the hand / that his sw-
 erd felle oute of his hand / and yet he gaf hym another buf- 15
 fet vpon the helme that he felle grouelynge to the erthe / & the
 reed knyghte felle ouer hym / for to holde hym doune / Thenne
 cryed the maiden Lynet on hyghe / O fyr Beaumayns where
 is thy courage become / Allas my lady fyfter beholdeth the
 and she sobbeth and wepeth / that maketh myn herte heuy / when 20
 fyr Beaumayns herd her saye soo / he abrayed vp with a gre-
 te myght and gate hym vpon his feet / and lyghtely he lepte
 to his swerd and gryped hit in his hand and doubled hys
 paas vnto the reed knyghte and there they foughte a newe ba-
 taille to gyder / But sir Beaumayns thenne doubled his stro- 25
 kes / and smote soo thyck that he smote the swerd oute of his
 hand / and thenne he smote hym vpon the helme that he felle to
 the erthe / and sir Beaumayns felle vpon hym / and vnlaced
 his helme to haue slayne hym / and thenne he yelded hym and
 asked mercy / and said with a lowde vois O noble knyghte 30
 I yelde me to thy mercy / Thenne fyr Beaumayns bethoughte
 hym vpon the knyghtes that he had made to be hanged shame-
 fully / and thenne he said I may not with my worship saue
 thy lyf / for the shameful dethes that thou hast caused many
 ful good knyghtes to dye / Syre saide the reed knyghte of the 35
 reed laundes hold your hand and ye shalle knowe the causes
 why I put hem to so shameful a dethe / saye on said sir Beau-
 mayns / Syre I loued ones a lady a faire damoisel / and she

had her broder slayne / and she said hit was fyr launcelot du
lake / or els fyr gawayn / and she praide me as that I loued
her hertely that I wold make her a promyse by the feith of my
knyghthode for to laboure dayly in armes vnto I mette wyth
5 one of them / and alle that I myghte ouercome I shold putte
them vnto a vylaynous dethe / and this is the cause that I ha-
ue putte alle these knyghtes to dethe / and foo I ensured her to
do alle the vylony vnto kyng Arthurs knyghtes / and that I
shold take vengeaunce vpon alle these knyghtes and fyr now
10 I wille the telle that euery daye my strengthe encreaceth tyll
none / and al this tyme haue I feuen mens strengthe

¶ Capitulum xviii

THenne came ther many Erles and Barons and no-
ble knyghtes and praid that knyghte to saue his lyf
and take hym to your pryfoner / And all they felle vpon the-
15 ir knees and prayd hym of mercy / and that he wolde saue
his lyf / and fyr they all sayd it were fairer of hym to take ho-
mage and feaute / and lete hym holde his landes of you than
for to flee hym / by his deth ye shal haue none auantage and
his mysdedes that ben done maye not ben vndone / And ther-
20 for he shal make amendys to al partyes & we al wil become
your men and doo you homage and feaute / Fayre lordes said
Beaumayns / wete you wel I am ful lothe to flee this knyzt
neuertheles he hath done passyng ylle and shamefully / But
in foo moche al that he dyd was at a ladyes request I blame
25 hym the lesse / and so for your sake I wil releace hym that he
shal haue his lyf vpon this couenaunt / that he goo within the
castel / and yelde hym there to the lady / And yf she wil forgy-
ue and quyte hym / I wil wel / with this he make her amen-
dys of al the trespas he hath done ageynst her and her landes /
30 ¶ And also whanne that is done that ye goo vnto the courte
of kyng Arthur / and there that ye aske fyr Launcelot mercy / &
fyr Gawayn for the euyl wil ye haue had ageynst them / fire
said the reed knyght of the reed laundes / al this wil I do as
ye commaunde / and fyker assuraunce and borowes ye shal ha-
35 ue / And foo thenne whan the assuraunce was made / he made

his homage and feaute / and alle tho erles and barons wyth
 hym / And thenne the mayden Lynet came to fyre Beauma-
 yns / and vnarmed hym and ferched his woundes / and styn-
 ted his blood / and in lyke wyfe she dyd to the rede knyghte
 of the reed laundes / and there they foiourned ten dayes in 5
 their tentes / and the reed knyghte made his lordes and serua-
 untes to doo alle the pleafyre that they myghte vnto fyre Be-
 aumayns / And foo within a whyle the reed knyghte of the
 reed laundes yede vnto the castel / and putte hym in her grace
 And foo she receyued hym vpon fuffysaunt feurte / so alle her 10
 hurtes were wel restored of al that she coude complayne / and
 thenne he departed vnto the Courte of kynge Arthur / and
 there openly the reed knyghte of the reed laundes putte hym
 in the mercy of fyre Launcelot and fyr Gawayne / and there
 he told openly how he was ouercome and by whome / and al- 15
 so he told alle the batails from the begynnyng vnto the en-
 dyng / Ihesu mercy sayd kynge Arthur and fire Gawayne
 we merueylle moche of what blood he is come / for he is a no-
 ble knyghte / Haue ye no merueille faide fire Launcelot / for ye
 shal ryght wel wete that he is comen of a ful noble blood / 20
 and as for his myghte and hardynes ther ben but fewe now
 lyuyng that is so myghty as he is / and so noble of prowesse
 It semeth by yow said kynge Arthur that ye knowe his na-
 me / and fro whens he is come / and of what blood he is / I sup-
 pose I doo so said Launcelot / or els I wold not haue yeuen 25
 hym thordre of knyghthode / but he gaf me fuche charge at that
 tyme that I shold neuer discouer hym vntyl he requyred me
 or els it be knownen openly by some other

¶ Capitulum xix

Now torne we vnto fyr Beaumayns that defyred of
 Lynet that he myght see her fyfter his lady / Syre she 30
 said I wold fayne ye sawe her / Thenne fyr Beaumayns al
 armed hym and toke his hors and his spere and rode streyzt
 vnto the castel / And whanne he cam to the gate he fond there
 many men armed and pulled vp the drawe brydge / & drewe

the porte cloose / ¶ Thenne merueilled he why they wold not
suffre hym to entre / And thenne he loked vp to the wyndow
And there he sawe the fair Lyones that said on hyghe go thy
way / fyr Beaumayns / for as yet thou shalt not haue holy
5 my loue vnto the tyme that thou be callyd one of the nombre
of the worthy knyghtes / And therfor goo laboure in worship
this twelue monethe / and thenne thou shalt here newe tydyn-
ges / Allas faire lady said Beaumayns I haue not deserued
that ye shold shewe me this straungenes / and I had wend
10 that I shold haue ryght good chere with you and vnto my
power I haue deserued thanke / and wel I am sure I haue
boughte your loue with parte of the best blood within my body
Fayre curteis knyghte said Dame Lyones / be not displeasyd
nor ouer hasty / for wete you wel / your grete trauaill nor go-
15 od loue shal not be lost / for I confydre your grete trauail & la-
bour / your bounte and your goodenes as me oughte to doo /
And therefore goo on your wey / and loke that ye be of good
comforte for all shal be for your worship / and for the best / &
perde a twelue moneth wille foone be done / and trust me fair
20 knyghte I shal be true to you and neuer te bitraye you / but
to my dethe I shalle loue you / and none other / And ther with
alle she torned her from the wyndowe / and fyr Beaumayns
rode away ward from the castel makyng grete dole / and soo
he rode here and there & wyfte not ne where he rode tyl hit was
25 derke nyghte / And thenne it happend hym to come to a poure
mans hous and there he was herborowed all that nyghte /
But fyr Beaumayns hadde no rest but walowed and wry-
thed for the loue of the lady of the castel / And soo vpon the
morowe he took his hors and rode vn tyl vnderne / and theñe
30 he came to a brode water / and there by was a grete lodge / and
there he alyghte to slepe and leid his hede vpon the shelde / and
bitoke his hors to the dwarf / and commaunded hym to wat-
che al nyghte / Now torne we to the lady of the fame castel /
that thoughte moche vpon Beaumayns / and thenne she called
35 vnto her fyr Gryngamore her broder / and praid hym in al ma-
ner as he loued her hertely that he wold ryde after fyr Beau-
mayns / and euer haue ye wayte vpon hym tyl ye may fynde
hym slepyng / for I am sure in his heuynes he wil alyzt down

in some place / and leye hym doune to flepe / And therfor haue ye your wayte vpon hym / and in the preuyest manere ye can take his dwerf / and go ye your waye with hym as faste as euer ye maye or fyr Beaumayns awake / For my syfter Lynet telleth me that he can telle of what kynreed he is come / 5
and what is his ryghte name / And the meane whyle I and my syfter wille ryde vnto youre castel to awayte whanne ye brynge with you the dwerf / And thenne whan ye haue broughte hym vnto youre Castel / I wylle haue hym in examynacion my self / vnto the tyme that I knowe what is his ryghte name / and of what kynred he is come / shalle I neuer be mery at my herte

¶ Syfter faid fyre Gryngamore alle thys shalle be done after your entente / And soo he rode alle the other daye and the nyghte tyll that he fond fyre Beaumayns lyenge by a water and his hede vpon his shelde 15
for to flepe /

¶ And thenne whanne he sawe fyre Beaumayns fast on flepe / he cam stilly stalkyng behynde the dwerf and plucked hym fast vnder his arme / and soo he rode awaye with hym as faste as euer he myght vnto his owne castel
And this fyre Gryngamors armes were alle black and that 20
to hym longeth / But euer as he rode with the dwerf toward his castel / he cryed vnto his lord / and prayd hym for helpe / And there with awoke fyre Beaumayns / and vp he lepte lyghtly / & sawe where the Gryngamor rode his waye with the dwerf / and soo fyr Gryngamor rode oute of his fyghte / 25

¶ Capítulum xi

THenne fyre Beaumayns putte on his helme anone / and buckeled his shelde / and tooke his hors / and rode after hym alle that euer he myghte ryde thorow marys and feldes and grete dales / that many tymes his hors and he plunged ouer the hede in depe myres / for he knewe not 30
the wey / but took the gaynest waye in that woodenes that many tymes he was lyke to peryfhe / And at the laste hym happend to come to a fayre grene waye And there he mette with a poure man of the countreye whom he salewed & asked hym /

whether he mette not with a knyghte vpon a black hors & all
 black harneis a lytel dwerf fyttynge behynde hym with heuy
 chere / Syre faide this poure man here by me came fyre Gryn-
 gamor the knyght with fuche a dwerf mornyng as ye faye / &
 5 therefore I rede you not folowe hym / For he is one of the pe-
 ryllouft knyghtes of the world / and his castel is here nyhe
 hand but two myle / therfor we aduyse you ryde not after fyr
 Gryngamor but yf ye owe hym good wille / Soo leue we fyre
 Beaumayns rydyng toward the castel and speke we of fir
 10 Gryngamor and the dwerf / Anone as the dwerf was come
 to the castel / dame Lyones and dame Lynet her fyfter asked
 the dwerf where was his maister borne / and of what lygnage
 he was come / And but yf thou telle me said dame Lyones
 thou shalt neuer escape this castel / but euer here to be pryfoner
 15 As for that faid the dwerf I fere not gretely to telle his na-
 me and of what kynne he is come / Wete ye wel he is a kyn-
 ges fone / and his moder is fyfter to kyng Arthur / and he is
 broder to the good knyghte of fyre Gawayne / and his name
 is fyre Gareth of Orkeney / and now I haue told you his ry-
 20 ght name / I praye you fayre lady lete me goo to my lord a-
 geyne / for he wille neuer oute of this cuntry vntyl that he
 haue me ageyne / And yf he be angry / he wil doo moche harme
 or that he be stynte / and worche you wrake in this countray
 As for that thretyng fayd fyr Gryngamore be it as it be may
 25 We wille goo to dyner / and soo they waffhed and wente to
 mete / and made hem mery and wel at ease / by cause the lady
 Lyones of the castel was there / they made grete Ioye

¶ Truly Madame fayd Lynet vnto her fyfter wel maye he be
 a kynges fone / for he hath many good tatches on hym / for he
 30 is curteis and mylde and the moost sufferynge man that euer
 I mette with al / For I dar faye ther was neuer gentytwo-
 man reulyd man in soo foule a manere / as I haue rebuked
 hym / And at all tymes he gafe me goodely and meke anfuers
 ageyne

¶ And as they fate thus talky-
 35 nge / ther came fire Gareth in at the gate with an angry coun-
 tenaunce and his fwerd drawn in his hand / and cryed a-
 loude that alle the castel myzt here hit fayeng thou traitour fyre

Gryngamor delyuer me my dwerf ageyn / or by the feith that
 I owe to the ordre of knyghthode I shal doo the al the harme
 that I can / Thenne fyr Gryngamor loked oute at a wyndow
 and said fyr Gareth of Orkeney leue thy bofying wordes / for
 thou getest not thy dwerf ageyne / Thou coward knyghte sayd 5
 fyr Gareth brynge hym with the / and come and doo bataylle
 with me / and wyne hym and take hym / So wille I do fa-
 id fyr Gryngamor and me lyft / but for al thy grete wordes
 thou getest hym not / A fayr broder said dame Lyones I wold
 he had his dwerf ageyne / for I wold he were not wroth / for 10
 now he hath told me al my defyre I kepe nomore of the dwerf
 And also broder he hath done moche for me / and delyuerd me
 from the reed knyghte of the reed laundes / and therfor bro-
 der I owe hym my feruyse afore al knyghtes lyuyng / And
 wete ye wel that I loue hym before al other / and ful fayne 15
 wold speke with hym / But in no wyse I wold that he wist
 what I were / but that I were another straunge lady / Wel fa-
 id fyr Gryngamor fythen I knowe now your wille / I wyll
 obeye now vnto hym / And ryght ther with al he wente doun
 vnto fyr Gareth / and said fyr I crye you mercy / and al that 20
 I haue myfdone I wille amend hit at your wille / And ther-
 fore I pray you that ye wold alyghte / and take fuche chere
 as I can make you in this castel / Shal I haue my dwerfe
 faide fyre Gareth / ye fyr / and alle the pleasaunce that I can
 make you / for as foone as your dwerf told me what ye we- 25
 re and of what blood ye ar come / and what noble dedes ye ha-
 ue done in these marches / thenne I repentyd of my dedes /
 And thenne fyre Gareth alyghte / and ther came his dwerf &
 took his hors / O my felawe said fyr Gareth / I haue had ma-
 ny aduentures for thy sake / And soo fyre Gryngamor tooke 30
 hym by the hand / and ledde hym in to the halle where his own
 wyf was

¶ Capitulum xxiij

And thenne came forth Dame Lyones arayed lyke a
 prynceffe / and there she made hym passyng good chere
 and he her ageyne / and they had goodely langage &
 louely countenaunce to gyder / And fyre Gareth thought ma-
 5 ny tymes Ihesu wold that the lady of the castel perillous we-
 re so fayre as she was / there were al maner of games & pla-
 yes of dauncyng and syngyng / And euer the more fyre Ga-
 reth bihelde that lady / the more he loued her / and so he brenned
 in loue that he was past hym self in his reason / and forth to-
 10 ward nyghte they yede vnto souper / and fyre Gareth myghte
 not ete for his loue was soo hote / that he wist not where he was
 Alle these lokes aspyed fyr Gryngamor / and thenne at after
 souper he callid his fyfter Dame Lyones vnto a chamber / and
 sayd / fair fyfter I haue wel aspyed your couētaūce betwixe
 15 you and this knyght / And I wil fyfter that ye wete he is a
 ful noble knygt / & yf ye can make hym to abyde here I wil
 do hym all the pleasyr þ^t I can / for & ye were better than ye ar
 ye were wel bywaryd vpon hym / Fayr^e broder said Dame
 lyones I vnderstande wel that the knyghte is good & come he
 20 is of a noble hous / Notwithstandyng I wille assaye hym bet-
 ter how be it I am moost beholdyng to hym of ony erthely mā
 for he hath had grete labour for my loue / and passid many a
 daungerous passage / Ryght soo fyr Gryngamor wente vnto
 fyr Gareth and said fyre make ye good chere / for ye shal haue
 25 none other cause / for this lady my fyfter is yours at al tymes
 her worship faued / for wete ye wel she loueth you as wel as
 ye doo her and better / yf better may be / And I wist that fa-
 id fyr Gareth / ther lyued not a gladder man than I wold be
 Vpon my worship said fyr Gryngamor trust vnto my promyse
 30 And as long as it lyketh you ye shal sojourne with me and
 this lady shal be with vs dayly and nyghtly to make yow
 alle the chere that she can / I wille wel said fyre Gareth / For
 I haue promysed to be nyghe this countrey this twelue mo-
 neth / And wel I am fure kyng Arthur and other noble
 35 knyghtes wille fynde me where that I am within this twelue
 moneth / For I shal be foughte and founden yf that I be on
 lyue ¶ And thenne the noble knyghte fyre Gareth wente
 vnto the dame Lyones whiche he thēne moche loued / & kyft her

many tymes / and eyther made grete loye of other / And there she promysed hym her loue certaynly to loue hym and none other the dayes of hyr lyf / Thenne this lady dame Lyones by the assente of her broder told fyr Gareth alle the trouth what she was / And how she was the same lady that he dyd batail 5 for / and how she was lady of the castel peryllous / and there she told hym how she caufed her broder to take away his dwerf

¶ Capitulum xxi

FOr this caufe to knowe the certaynte what was your name / and of what kynne ye were come / And thenne she lete fetch tofore hym Lynet the damoyfel that had ryden with hym many wylsome wayes / Thenne was fyre Gareth more gladder than he was to fore / And thēne they trouthplyte eche other to loue / and neuer to faylle whyles their lyfe lasteth / And foo they brente bothe in loue that they were accorded to abate their lustes secretly / And there Dame Lyones 15 counceyllid fyr Gareth to slepe in none other place but in the halle / And there she promysed hym to come to his bedde a lytel afore mydnyght / This counceyl was not foo pryuely kepte but it was vnderstande / for they were but yonge bothe and tender of age / and had not vsed none fuche craftes to forne / 20 Wherfor the damoyfel Lynet was a lytel displeasyd / and she thoughte her syster Dame Lyones was a lytel ouer hafty / that she myghte not abyde the tyme of her maryage / And for fauyng their worship / she thoughte to abate their hote lustes /

¶ And so she lete ordeyne by her subtyl craftes that they had 25 not their ententes neyther with other as in her delytes / vntyl they were maryed / And foo it past on / At after souper was made clene auoydaunce / that euery lord and lady shold goo vnto his rest / But fyr Gareth said playnly he wold goo noo ferther than the halle / for in fuche places he said was conuenient 30 for an arraunt knyzt to take his rest in / and so there were ordeyned grete couches / & theron fether beddes / & there leyde hym doune to slepe / & within a while cam dame Lyones wrapped in a mantel furred with Ermyne & leid her down befydes fyr Gareth / And there with alle he beganne to kyffe her / And thenne 35 he loked afore hym and there he apperceuyued and sawe come an armed knyght with many lyghtes aboute hym / and

fawe come an armed kny3t with many lyghtes about hym / &
this knyghte had a longe Gyfarme in his hand / and maade
grym countenaunce to smyte hym / Whanne fyre Gareth fawe
hym come in that wyfe / he lepte oute of his bedde and gate in
5 his hand his fwerd and lepte straye toward that knyght /
And whanne the knyght fawe fyr Gareth come so fyrefly vp-
on hym / he smote hym with a foyne thorou the thycke of the
thy3 that the wound was a shaftmon brode and had cutte a-
two many vaynes and fenewes / And there with al fyr Ga-
10 reth smote hym vpon the helme fuche a buffet that he felle gro-
uelyng / and thenne he lepte ouer hym and vnaced his hel-
me and smote of his hede fro the body / And thenne he bledde so
fast that he myghte not stande / but soo he leid hym down vpon
his bedde / and there he swouned and laye as he had ben dede
15 Thenne dame Lyones cryed alowde / that her broder fyr Gryn-
gamor herd / and came doune / And whan he fawe fyr Gareth
soo shamefully wounded / he was fore displeasyd and sayd I
am shamed that this noble knyghte is thus honoured / Syr fa-
yd fyr Gryngamore hou may this be / that ye be here / and thys
20 noble knyghte wounded / Broder she said I can not telle yow
For it was not done by me nor by myn assente / For he is my
lord and I am his / and he must be myn husband / therfore my
broder I wille that ye wete I shame me not to be with hym /
nor to doo hym alle the pleasyr that I can / Syfter said fyre
25 Gryngamore / and I will that ye wete it and fyr Gareth both
that it was neuer done by me nor by my assente that this vn-
happy dede was done / And there they staunched his bledynge
as wel as they myght / and grete sorow made fir Gryngamor
and Dame Lyones / And forthe with al came Dame Lynet
30 and toke vp the hede in the syghte of hem alle / and enoynted
it with an oyntement there as it was smyten of / and in the fa-
me wyfe she dyd to the other parte there as the hede stak / And
thenne she sette it to gyders / and it stak as fast as euer it did
And the knyghte arose lyghtely vp / and the damoyfel Lynet
35 put hym in her chambre / Alle this fawe fir Gryngamor and
dame Lyones / and soo dyd fir Gareth / and wel he espyed that
it was the damoyfel Lynet that rode with hym thorou the pe-
ryllous passages / A wel damoyfel said fyre Gareth I wende

wold not haue done as ye haue done / My lord Gareth said
 Lynet / alle that I haue done I will auowe / and alle that I
 haue done shal be for youre honoure and worship / and to vs
 alle / And soo within a whyle fyr Gareth was nyghe hole / &
 waxid lyghte and Iocounde / and fange / daunced and ga- 5
 med / and he and dame Lyones were soo hote in brennyng
 loue that they made their couenaunte at the tenth nyghte after
 that she shold come to his bedde / And by cause he was wouided
 afore / he laid his armour / and his fwerd nyghe his beddes
 fyde

10

¶ Capitulum xxiij

RYght as she promysed she came / and she was not soo
 foone in his bedde / but she aspyed an armed knyghte
 comyng toward the bedde / there with alle she warned fyr Ga-
 reth / and lyghtly thorou the good helpe of Dame Lyones he
 was armed / and they hurtled to gyders with grete Ire & ma- 15
 lyce al aboute the halle / and there was grete lyght as it had
 ben the nombre of xx torches bothe before and behynd / soo that
 fyr Gareth strayned hym / soo that his old wounde brafte a-
 geyne on bledyng / but he was hote and couragious and to-
 ke no kepe / but with his grete force he stroke doune that kny- 20
 ghte / and voyded his helme / and strake of his hede / Thenne he
 hewe the hede in an honderd pyeces / And whan he had done so
 he took vp alle tho pyeces and threwe hem oute at a wyndow
 in to the dyches of the castel / and by this done / he was so faynt
 that vnnethes he myght stande for bledyng / And by thenne he 25
 was al most vnarmed / he felle in a dedely swoone in the flo-
 re / And thenne dame Lyones cryed soo that fyr Gryngamor
 herd / And whan he cam and fond fyr Gareth in that plyte he
 made grete sorou / & there he awaked sir Gareth / and gaf hym
 a drynke that releued hym wonderly wel / but the sorou that 30
 Dame Lyones made there maye no tonge telle / for she soo fa-
 ryd with her self as she wold haue dyed / ¶ Ryghte soo cam
 this damoyfel Lynet before hem al / and she had sette alle the
 goblets of the hede that fyr Gareth had throwen out at a wyn-
 dowe / and there she enoynted hem as she had done to fore / & set 35
 them to gyder ageyn / wel damoifel Lynet said fyre Gareth /

I haue not deserued alle this despyte that ye doo vnto me / fir
knyghte she said / I haue no thyng do / but I will auowe /
And al that I haue done shalle be to your worship and to
vs al / And thenne was fyre Gareth staunched of his bledying
5 But the leches said / that ther was no man that bare the lyf /
fholde hele hym thorou oute of his wounde / but yf they heled
hym that caused that stroke by enchauntement / So leue we fyr
Gareth there with fyr Gryngamore and his systers / and tor-
ne we vnto kynge Arthur that at the nexte feest of Pentecost
10 helde his feest / and there cam the grene knyzt with fyfty kny-
ghtes / and yelded hem all vnto kynge Arthur / And so there
came the reed knyghte his broder / and yelded hym to kyng Ar-
thur and thre score knyghtes with hym / Also there came the
blewe knyghte broder to them with an honderd knyghtes / &
15 yelded hem vnto kynge Arthur / and the grene knyghtes na-
me was Partolype / and the reed knyghtes name was Pe-
rymones / and the blewe knyghtes name was fyr Perfant of
Inde / these thre bretheren told kynge Arthur how they were
ouercome by a knyghte that a damoyfel had with her / and
20 called hym Beaumayns / Ihesu sayd the kynge I mer-
ueylle what knyghte he is / and of what lygnage he is come /
He was with me a twelue monethe / and pourely and sha-
mefully he was fostred / and fyre kay in fcorne named hym
Beaumayns / Soo ryghte as the kyng stode soo talkyng with
25 these thre bretheren / there came fyr Launcelot du lake and told
the kynge that there was come a goodly lord with vj C kn-
ghtes with hym / thenne the kynge wente oute of Carlyon /
for there was the feest / and there came to hym this lord / and
falewed the kynge in a goodly manere / What wylle ye sayd
30 kyng Arthur / and what is youre erand / Syr he said my na-
name is the reed knyghte of the reed laundes / but my name is
fyr Ironfyde / and fyre wete ye wel / here I am sente to yow /
of a knyght that is called Beaumayns / for he wanne me in
playne bataille hande for hand / and soo dyd neuer no kny-
35 ght but he that euer had the better of me this xxx wynter /
the whiche commaunded to yelde me to yow at youre wylle /
ye are welcom said the kyng / for ye haue ben long a grete foo
to me and my Courte / and now I truste to god I shalle

soo entreate you that ye shal be my frend / Syre / bothe I and
 these fyue honderd knyghtes shal alweyes be at your somons
 to doo you seruyfe as maye lye in oure powers / Ihesu mercy
 said kyng Arthur I am moche beholdynge vnto that knyght /
 that hath put soo his body in deuoyre to worshippe me & my 5
 Courte / And as to the Ironfyde that art called the reed kn-
 yghte of the reed laundes thou arte called a peryllous knyzt
 And yf thou wylt holde of me I shal worshippe the and ma-
 ke the knyghte of the table round / but thenne thou must be no
 more a murtherer / Syre as to that I haue promysed vnto 10
 fyre Beaumayns neuer more to vse fuche custommes / for all
 the shameful customes that I vsed I dyd at the request of a
 lady that I loued / and therfor I must goo vnto fyr Laun-
 celot and vnto fyre Gawayne / and aske them foryeuenes of
 the euyll wyll I had vnto them / for alle that I put to deth 15
 was al only for the loue of fyr Launcelot and of fyr Gawa-
 yne / They ben here now said the kyng afore the / now maye ye
 faye to them what ye wyll / And thenne he kneled doune vn-
 to fyre Launcelot and to fyre Gawayne and prayd them of
 foryeuenes of his enemytee that euer he had ageynste them / 20

¶ Capitulum xxxiiij

T Henne goodely they said al at ones / god foryeue you
 and we do / and praye you that ye will telle vs where
 we may fynde fyr Beaumayns / Fayre lordes said fyr Iron-
 fyde I can not telle you / for it is ful hard to fynde hym / for
 fuche yong knyghtes as he is one / whanne they be in their ad- 25
 uentures ben neuer abydyng in no place / ¶ But to faye the
 worship that the reed knyghte of the reed laundes and fyr per-
 faunt and his broder said of Beaumayns / it was merueil to
 here / Wel my fayre lordes said kyng Arthur / wete yow wel /
 I shalle do you honour for the loue of fyr Beaumayns / and 30
 as soone as euer I mete with hym I shalle make you al vp-
 on one day knyghtes of the table round / And as to the fyre
 Perfaunt of Inde thou hast ben euer called a ful noble kny-
 ghte / and soo haue euer ben thy thre bretheren called / But I
 merueil said the kyng that I here not of the black knyzt your 35

broder / he was a ful noble knyghte / Syr fayd Pertolype the grene knyzt fyr Beaumayns flewe hym in a recoûtre with his spere / his name was fyr Perard / that was grete pyte fayd the kyng and foo said many knyghtes / For these four brethe-
 5 ren were ful wel knownen in the courte of kyng Arthur for noble knyghtes / for long tyme they had holden werre ageynst the knyghtes of the round table / Thenne fayd Pertolepe the grene knyghte to the kyng atte a passage of the water of mortayse there encountred fyr Beaumayns with two brethe-
 10 ren that euer for the moost party kepte that passage / and they were two dedely knyghtes / and there he flewe the eldest broder in the water / and smote hym vpon the heede suche a buffet that he felle doune in the water / and there he was drowned / & his name was fir Garard le brewse / and after he flewe the other
 15 broder vpon the lond / his name was fyr Arnold le brewse /

¶ Capitulum xxvi

SOo thenne the kyng and they wente to mete / and were serued in the best manere / And as they satte at the mete / ther came in the quene of Orkeney with ladyes & knyghtes a grete nombre / And thenne fyr Gawayn / fyr Agraue-
 20 yn and Gaherys arose / and wente to her / and fawed her vpon their knees / and asked her blyffyng / For in xv yere they had not sene her / Thenne she spak on hyghe to her broder kyng Arthur / where haue ye done my yong sone fyr Gareth / he was here amongst you a twelue moneth / & ye made a kechyn kna-
 25 ue of hym / the whiche is shame to you all / Allas where haue ye done my dere sone that was my Ioye and blyffe / O dere moder said fyr Gawayn I knewe hym not / Nor I said the kyng that now me repenteth / but thanked be god he is preued a worshipful knyghte as ony is now lyuyng of his yeres / &
 30 I shal neuer be glad tyl I may fynde hym / A broder fayd the quene vnto kyng Arthur and vnto fyr Gawayne and to alle her fones / ye dyd your self grete shame whan ye amongst you kepte my sone in the kechyn and fedde hym lyke a poure hog / Fayr syster said kyng Arthur ye shall ryghte wel wete /
 35 I knewe hym not / nor nomore dyd fyre Gawayn / nor his

bretheren / but fythen it is soo faid the kyng that he is thus
 gone from vs alle / we must shape a remedy to fynde hym / Also
 fyfter me semeth ye myght haue done me to wete of his comy-
 nge / And thenne and I had not done wel to hym / ye myzt
 haue blamed me / For whan he cam to this courte he came le- 5
 nyng vpon two mens sholders as though he myght not haue
 gone / And thenne he asked me thre yestes / and one he asked
 the same day / that was that I wold gyue hym mete ynough
 that twelue moneth / and the other two yestes he asked that
 day a twelue moneth / and that was that he myghte haue thad- 10
 uenture of the damoyfel Lynet / and the thyrd was that fyre
 Launcelot shold make hym knyght whan he defyred hym /
 And soo I graunted hym alle his defyre / and many in this
 Courte merueilled that he defyred his sustenance for a twelf
 monethe / And there by we demed many of vs that he was 15
 not come of a noble hous / Syre faid the Quene of Orkeney
 vnto kyng Arthur her broder / wete ye wel that I sente hym
 vnto you ryghte wel armed and horsed and worshipfully
 byfene his body / and gold and syluer plente to spend / it
 may be faid the kyng / but therof fawe we none / sauf that fa- 20
 me daye as he departed from vs / knyghtes told me that ther
 came a dwerf hyder fodenly and broughte hym armour and
 a good hors ful wel and rychely byfene / and there at we al
 had merueille / fro whens that rycheffe came / that we demed al
 that he was come of men of worship / Broder faid the Quene 25
 alle that ye faye I byleue / for euer fythen he was growen / he
 was merueillously wytted / and euer he was feythful & true
 of his promesse / But I merueille faid she that fyre kay dyd
 mocke hym and scorne hym / and gaf hym that name Beau-
 mayns / yet fyr kay faid the quene named hym more ryghte- 30
 uously than he wende / For I dare faye and he be on lyue / he
 is as fair an handed man and wel disposed as ony is lyu-
 ynge / Syre faid Arthurle te this langage be styll / and by the
 grace of god he shal be founde / and he be within these seuen ro-
 yames / and lete alle this passe and be mery / for he is proued 35
 to be a man of worship / and that is my loye

¶ Capitulum xviij

T Henne said fyr Gawayne and his bretheren vnto arthur / fyre and ye wyl gyue vs leue we wille go and feke oure brother / Nay said fyr Launcelot that shalle ye not nede / and so said fyr Bawdewyn of Bretayne / for as
 5 by oure aduys the kyng shal fende vnto dame Lyones a messenger / and praye her that she wille come to the courte in alle the hast that she may / and doubte ye not she wille come / And thēne she may gyue you best couceille where ye shal fynde hym This is wel said of you said the kyng / Soo thenne goodely
 10 letters were made / and the messenger sente forth that nyghte & day he wente tyl he cam vnto the castel perillous / And thenne the lady dame Lyones was sente fore there as she was wyth fyr Gryngamor her broder and fyre Gareth / and whan she vnderstode this message / she badde hym ryde on his way vnto kyng
 15 nge Arthur / and she wold come after in al goodely hast

¶ Thenne whan she came to fyr Gryngamor and to sir Gareth she told hem al how kyng Arthur had sente for her / that is by cause of me said fyr Gareth / Now auyse me said dame Lyones what shalle I saye and in what manere I shal rule
 20 me / My lady and my loue said sir Gareth I pray you in no wyfe be ye aknowen where I am / but wel I wote my moder is there and alle my bretheren / and they wille take vpon hem to feke me / I wote wel that they doo / But this madame I wold ye sayd and aduysed the kyng whan he questyoned
 25 with you of me / Thenne maye ye fay / this is your aduys that and hit lyke his good grace / ye wille doo make a crye ayenst the feest of thassumpcion of our lady that what knyghte there preueth hym best he shal welde you and all your land / And yf soo be that he be a wedded man that his wyf shal the degre
 30 and a coronal of gold besette with stones of vertue to the valwe of a thousand pound and a whyte Iarfaucou /

Soo dame Lyones departed / and came to kyng Arthur where she was nobly receyued / and there she was fore questyoned of the kyng and of the quene of Orkeney / And she ansuerde
 35 where fyr Gareth was she coude not telle / But thus moche she said vnto Arthur / fyre I wille lete crye a turnement that shal be done before my castel at the Assumpcion of oure lady / and the crye shal be this that you my lorde Arthur shalt be there / &

your knyghtes / and I will puruey that my knyghtes shalle
be ageynst yours / And thenne I am fure ye shal here of fyr
Gareth / this is wel aduysed said kynge Arthur / and soo she
departed / And the kynge and she maade grete prouysyon to
that turnement / Whan dame Lyones was come to the yle of A- 5
uylyon that was the same yle ther as her broder fyr Grynga-
mor dwelte / thenne she told hem al how she had done / and
what promyse she had made to kynge Arthur / Allas said fyr
Gareth / I haue been soo wounded with vnhappynes fythen I
cam in to this castel that I shal not be abyll to doo at that tur- 10
nement lyke a knyghte / for I was neuer thorouly hole syn I
was hurte / Be ye of good chere said the damoyfel Lynet / for
I vndertake within these xv dayes to make you hole and as
lusty as euer ye were / And thenne she leid an oynement & a
salve to hym as it pleasyd to her that he was neuer so fresch 15
nor soo lusty / Thenne said the damoyfel Lynet / fend you vnto
fyr Perfaunt of ynde / and affomone hym and his knyghtes
to be here with you as they haue promysed / Also that ye fend
vnto fyr Ironsyde that is the reed knyghte of the reed laun-
des / and charge hym that he be redy with you with his hole 20
somme of knyghtes / and thenne shalle ye be abyll to matche
with kynge Arthur and his knyghtes / Soo this was done &
alle knyghtes were sente for vnto the castel peryllous / & then-
ne the reed knyght answerd and said vnto dame Lyones and
to fyre Gareth / Madame & my lord fyr Gareth ye shal vnder- 25
stande that I haue ben at the court of kynge Arthur and fir
Perfaunt of Inde and his bretheren / and there we haue done
oure homage as ye commaunded vs / Also fyr Ironsyde sayd
I haue taken vpon me with fyre Perfaunt of Inde and his
bretheren to hold party ageynst my lord fir Launcelot and the 30
knyghtes of that courte / And this haue I done for the loue of
my lady Dame Lyones and you my lord fir Gareth / ye haue
wel done said fyr Gareth / But wete you wel ye shal be ful
fore matched with the moost noble knyghtes of the world / ther-
for we must purueye vs of goode knyghtes where we may ge- 35
te them / That is wel said / said fir Perfaunt and worshipfully
And soo the crye was made in England / walis and scotland
Ireland / Cornewaille / & in alle the oute Iles and in bretayn

and in many countreies that at the feest of our lady the assumption next comyng men shold come to the castel peryllous befyde the yle of Auylyon / And there al the knyghtes that ther came shold haue the choyse whether them lyft to be on the
 5 one party with the knyghtes of the castel or on the other party with kynge Arthur / And two monethes was to the daye that the turnement shold be / & so ther cam many good knyghtes that were at her large and helde hem for the moost party ageynst kynge Arthur and his knyghtes of the round table /
 10 cam in the fyde of them of the castel / For fyr Epyngyrus was the fyrst / and he was the kynges sone of Northumberland / & fyr Palamydes the farafyn was another / and fyr Safere his broder / and fyre Segwarydes his broder / but they were cryf-
 ned / and fyre Malegryne another / and fyr Bryan des les
 15 Ilelys a noble knyghte / and fyr Grummore gummurfum a good knyghte of Scotland / and fyr Carados of the dolorous toure a noble knyghte and fyr Turquyn his broder / and fyr Arnold and fyre Gauter two bretheren good knyghtes of Cornewaile / there cam fyr Trystram de lyones / and with hym
 20 fyr Dynadas the seneschal / and sir Saduk / but this fyr Triftram was not at that tyme knyght of the table round / but he was one of the best knyghtes of the world / And foo all these noble knyghtes accompanied hem with the lady of the castel and with the reed knyghte of the reed laundes / but as for sir
 25 Gareth he wold not take vpon hym more but as other meane knyghtes

¶ Capitulum xxviii

ANd thenne ther cam with kynge Arthur sir Gawayn Agrawayne / Gaherys his bretheren / And thenne his newwes fyr Vwayn le blaunche maynys / and fyr Aglouale
 30 fyr Tor / sir Percyuale de galys / and fyre Lamorrak de galis Thenne came sir Launcelot du lake with his bretheren neuws and cofyns as sir Lyonel / sir Ector de marys / fyr bors de ganyys and sir Galyhodyn / fyre Galihud and many moo of fyre Launcelots blood and fyre Dynadan / sir la coote male tayle /
 35 his broder a good knyghte / and sir Sagramore a good knyzt

And al the most party of the round table / Also ther cam with
 kyng Arthur these knyghtes the kyng of Ireland / kyng
 Agwyfaunce / and the kyng of Scotland kyng Carados and
 kyng Vryens of the londe of gore and kyng Bagdemagus
 and his sone fyr Melyaganus and fyr Galahault the noble
 prynce / Alle these kynges prynces and Erles Barons and
 other noble knyghtes / as fyre Braundyles / fyre Vwayne les
 auowtres / and fyre kay / fyr Bedeuere / fyr Melyot de logrys
 fyr Petypafe of wynkelfee / fyr Godelake / alle these came with
 kyng Arthur and moo that can not ben reherced /

¶ Now leue we of these kynges and knyghtes / and lete vs
 speke of the grete araye that was made within the castel and
 aboute the castel for bothe partyes / the lady Dame Lyones
 ordeyned grete aray vpon her party for her noble knyghtes for
 al maner of lodgyng and vytaille that cam by land & by wa-
 ter that ther lacked no thyng for her party nor for the other
 but there was plente to be had for gold and fyluer for ky-
 nge Arthur and his knyghtes / And thenne ther cam the her-
 begeours from kyng Arthur for to herberowe hym & his ky-
 nges / dukes Erles Barons and knyghtes / And thenne fyr
 Gareth prayd dame Lyones and the reed knyghte of the reed
 laundes / and fyr Perfant and his broder / and fyre Grynga-
 mor that in no wyse ther shold none of them telle not his na-
 me and make no more of hym than of the leest knyghte that
 there was / for he said I wille not be knowen of neyther more
 ne leffe / neyther at the begynnynge neyther at the endynge

¶ Thenne Dame Lyones said vnto fyr Gareth / fyre I wylle
 lene you a rynge / but I wold pray you as ye loue me hertely
 lete me haue it ageyne whanne the turnement is done / ¶ For
 that rynge encreaceth my beaute moche more than it is of hym
 self / And the vertu of my rynge is that / that is grene it will
 torne to reed / and that is reed it wil torne in lykenes to gre-
 ne / And that is blewe it wil torne in lykenes of whyte / and
 that is whyte it wil torne in lykenes to blewe / and so it wil
 doo of al manere of colours / Also who that bereth my rynge /
 shalle lese no blood / and for grete loue I wil gyue you thys
 rynge / Gramercy said fyr Gareth myn own lady / for this ry-
 nge is passynge mete for me / for it wille torne al manere of

lykenes that I am in / and that shalle cause me that I shall
 not be knowen / Thenne fyr Gryngamor gaf fyr Gareth a bay
 courser that was a passyng good hors / Also he gaf hym go-
 od armoure and fure and a noble swerd that somtyme fyre
 5 Gryngamors fader wanne vpon an hethen Tyraunt / And soo
 thus euery knyghte made hym redy to that turnement & kyng
 Arthur was comen two dayes to fore thassumpcion of our la-
 dy / And there was al maner of Royalte of al mynstralfye /
 that myghte be founde / Also there cam quene Gweneuer and
 10 the quene of Orkeney fyr Gareths moder / And vpon the af-
 sumpcion day whanne masse and matyns were done there we-
 re herowdes with trompettes commaunded to blowe to the feld
 And soo there came oute fyr Epynogrus the kynges sone of
 Northumberland from the castel / and there encountred with
 15 hym fyre Sagramor le defyrus / and eyther of hem brake their
 speres to their handes / And thenne came in fyre Palamydes
 oute of the Castel / and there encountred with hym Gawayne
 and eyther of hem smote other so hard that bothe the good kn-
 yghtes and their horses felle to the erthe / And thenne knygh-
 20 tes of eyther party rescowed their knyghtes / And thenne cam
 in fyr Safere and fyre Segwarydes bretheren to fyre Pala-
 mydes / and there encountred fyr Agrauayne with fyr Safere
 and fyr Gaherys encountred with fyre Segwarydes / So fyr
 Safere smote doune Agrauayne fyr Gawayns broder / and fir
 25 Segwarydes fyr Saferys broder And fyr Malgryne a knyzt
 of the Castel encountred with fyr Vwayne le blaunche may-
 nys / And there fyre Vwayne gaf fyr Malgryn a falle / that
 he had almost broke his neck

¶ Capitulum xxix

30 **T**henne fyr Bryan de les yles and Grummore grum-
 morffsum knyghtes of the Castel with fyre Aglouale
 and fyre Tor smote down fyr Gromere Gromorson to the erth
 Thenne cam in fyr Carados of the dolorous toure / & fyr Tur-
 quyne knyghtes of the Castel / and there encoûtred with hem
 fyr Percyuale de galys & fyr Launceſot de galys / that were
 35 two bretheren / And there encountred fyr Percyuale with fyre

[leaf 129 verso]

Caradus / and eyther brake their speres vnto their handes / &
 thenne fyr Turquyn with fyre Lamerak / and eyther of hem
 smote doune others hors and alle to the erthe / and eyther par-
 tyes refcowed other / and horsed them ageyn / And fyr Arnold
 and fyr Gautere knyghtes of the castel encountred with fyre 5
 Braundyles and fyr kay / and these four knyghtes encoun-
 tred myghtely / and brake their speres to their handes / Then-
 ne came in fyr Tryfram / fyre Saduk / and fyre Dynas kny-
 ghtes of the castel / and there encountred fyr Tryfram wyth
 fyre Bedyuere / and there fyr Bedyuere was smyten to the er- 10
 the bothe hors and man / And fyr Saduk encountred with fyr
 Petypafe / and there fyr Saduk was ouerthrowen / And there
 Vwayne les auoutres smote doune fyr Dynas the feneschal /
 Thenne came in fyr Perfaunt of Inde a knyght of the castel
 And there encountred with hym fyr Launcelot du lake / and 15
 there he smote fyr Perfaunts hors and man to the erthe / then-
 ne came fyr Pertylope from the castel / and there encountred
 with hym fyr Lyonel / and there fyr Pertylope the grene kn-
 yght smote doune fyr Lyonel broder to fyr Laūcelot / All this
 was marked by noble heroudes / who bare hym best / and their 20
 names / And thenne came in to the feld fyre Perymones the
 grene knyght fyr Perfaunts broder that was a knyght of the
 Castel / and he encountred with fyr Ector de marys / and ey-
 ther smote other so hard / that bothe their horses and they felle
 to the erthe / And thenne came in the reed knyght of the reed 25
 laundes and fyr Gareth from the castel / and there encountred
 with hem fyr Bors de ganys and fyr Bleoberys / and there
 the reed knyghte and fyr Bors smote other so hard that her
 speres braft and their horses felle grouelynge to the erthe
 Thenne fyr Blamor brake his spere vpon fyr Gareth / but of 30
 that stroke fyr Blamor felle to the erthe / whan fyr Galyhou-
 dyn fawe that / he bad fyr gareth kepe hym / & fyr gareth smote
 hym to the erthe / thenne fyr Galyhud gate a spere to auenge
 his broder / & in the same wyfe fyr gareth ferued hym / & fyr Dy-
 nadan & his broder la cote male tayle / & fyr Sagramor defirus 35
 & fyr Dodynas le faueage / All these he bare doun with one spe-
 re / Whan kyng Aguyfaūce of Irland fawe fyr Gareth fare so
 he merueiled what he myzt be þ^t one tyme semed grene & another

tyme at his ageyne comyng he femed blewe / And thus at e-
 uery cours that he rode to and fro he chaunged his colour so
 that ther myghte neyther kyng nor knyghte haue redy cong-
 nyssaunce of hym / Thenne fyr Anguyssaunce the kyng of Ir-
 5 land encountred with fyr Gareth / and there fyr Gareth smote
 hym from his hors fadyl and all / And thenne came kyng
 Caradus of Scotland and fyr Gareth smote hym down hors
 and man / And in the same wyse he ferued kyng Vryens of
 the land of Gore / And thenne came in fyr Bawdemagus /
 10 and fyr Gareth smote hym doune hors and man to the erthe
 And Bawdemagus sone Melyganus brake a spere vpon fyr
 Gareth myghtely and knyghtely / And thenne fyr Galahaut
 the noble prynce cryed on hyghe knyghte with the many colo-
 urs wel hast thou Iusted / Now make the redy that I maye
 15 Iuste with the / Syre Gareth herd hym / and he gat a grete spe-
 re / and soo they encountred to gyder / and there the prynce bra-
 ke his spere / But fyr Gareth smote hym vpon the lyfte fyde
 of the helme / that he relyd here and there / and he had falle do-
 une had not his men recouerd hym / Soo god me help sayd
 20 kyng Arthur that same knyght with the many colours is a
 good knyghte / wherfor the kyng called vnto hym fyr Laun-
 celot and praid hym to encountre with that knyghte / Syr fa-
 id Launcelot I may wel fynde in my herte for to forbere hym
 as at this tyme / for he hath hadde trauail ynough this day / &
 25 whan a good knyghte doth soo wel vpon somme day / it is no
 good knyghtes parte to lette hym of his worship / And na-
 mely whan he seeth a Knyght hath done soo grete labour / for
 peradventure said fyr Launcelot his quarel is here this day / &
 perauentur he is best byloued with this lady of al that ben he-
 30 re / for I fee wel / he payneth hym & enforceth hym to do grete de-
 des / & therfor said fyr launcelot as for me this day he shall ha-
 ue the honour / though it lay in my power to put hym fro it / I
 wold not

¶ Capitulum xxx

35 **T**Henne whanne this was done / there was drawynge
 of swerdes / And thenne there began a fore turnement
 [leaf 130 verso]

And there dyd fyr Lamerak merueyllous dedes of armes / &
 betwixe fyr Lamerak and fyre Ironfyde that was the reed
 knyghte of the reed laudes there was strong batail / & betwix
 fyre Palamides & Bleoberys there was a strong batail / & fir
 Gawayne and fyr Trystram mette / and there fyr Gawayne 5
 had the werse / for he pulled fyre Gawayne from his hors /
 And there he was long vpon foote and defouled / Thenne cam
 in fyr Launcelot and he smote fyr Turquyne / and he hym / &
 thenne came fyr Caradus his broder / and bothe at ones they
 assayed hym / & he as the moost noblest knyght of the world 10
 worshipfully foughte with hem bothe / that al men wondred of
 the nobleffe of fyr launcelot / And thenne came in fyr Gareth
 and knewe that it was fir launcelot that fought with tho two
 peryllous knyghtes / And thenne fyr Gareth came with his
 good hors and hurtled hem in sonder / & no stroke wold he sm- 15
 yte to fyr Launcelot / that aspyed fir launcelot & demed it shold
 be the good knyghte fyre Gareth / & thenne fyr Gareth rode he-
 re and there / & smote on the ryght hand & on the lyfte hand
 that alle the folke myghte wel aspye where that he rode / and
 by fortune he mette with his broder fyr Gawayn / and there he 20
 put fyr Gawayne to the werse / for he put of his helme / and so
 he ferued fyue or fyxe knyghtes of the rounde table that alle
 men said / he put hym in the most payne / and best he dyd his de-
 uoyr / For whan fyr Trystram beheld hym how he fyrst Iuf-
 ted and after foughte so wel with a swerd / Thenne he rode 25
 vnto fyr Ironfyde and to fyre Perfaunt of ynde and asked
 hem by their feythe / what maner a knyghte is yonder knyght
 that semeth in soo many dyuerse colours / Truly me semeth sa-
 yd Trystram that he putteth hym self in grete payne for he ne-
 uer ceafeth / Wote ye not what he is sayd fyr Ironfyde / No fa- 30
 id fyr Trystram / thenne shal ye knowe that this is he that lo-
 ueth the lady of the castel and she hym ageyne / and this is he
 that wanne me whan I bysegged the lady of this castel / and
 this he that wanne fyr Perfaunt of ynde / and his thre brethe-
 ren / what is his name sayd fyr Trystram and of what blood 35
 is he come / he was called in the courte of kyng Arthur Be-
 aumayns / but his ryzt name is fir Gareth of Orkeney broder
 to fir Gawayn / by my hede said fir Tristram he is a good kniȝt

knyght and a bygge man of armes / & yf he be yong he shalle
 preue a ful noble knyghte / he is but a child they all faide & of
 fyr Launcelot he was made knyzt / therfor is he mykel the bet-
 ter faid Tryfram / And thenne fyr Tryfram / fyr Ironfyde /
 5 fyr Perfaunt and his broder rode to gyders for to helpe fir ga-
 reth / & thenne there were gyuen many strong strokes / And then-
 ne fyr Gareth rode oute on the one fyde to amende his helme /
 & thenne faid his dwerf take me your ryng that ye lese it not
 whyle that ye drynke / And so whan he had dronken he gat on
 10 his helme / & egerly took his hors & rode in to the felde & leste
 his rynge with his dwerf / and the dwerf was gladde the ry-
 ng was from hym / for thenne he wist wel he shold be knowen
 And thenne whan fyr Gareth was in the felde all folkes fa-
 we hym wel / & playnly that he was in yelow colours / & the-
 15 re he raffyd of helmes & pulled doun knyzttes that kyng Ar-
 thur had merueylle what knyzt he was / for the kyng sawe by
 his here that it was the fame knyght

¶ Capitulum xxxi

BVt by fore he was in so many colours and now he is
 but in one colour that is yelow / Now goo faid kyng
 20 Arthur vnto dyuerse heroudes and ryde aboute hym &
 aspye what maner knyghte he is / for I haue speryd of many
 knyghtes this day that ben vpon his party / and all saye they
 knowe hym not / And so an heroude rode nyhe Gareth as he cou-
 de / and there he sawe wryten aboute his helme in golde / This
 25 helme is fyr gareth of Orkeney / Thenne the heroude cryed as he
 were wood / & many heroudes with hym / This is fyre gareth
 of Orkeney in the yelow armes that by all kynges and kny-
 ghtes of Arthurs beheld hym & awayted / & thenne they pre-
 ffyd al to beholde hym / & euer the heroudes cryed this is fyre
 30 gareth of Orkeney kyng Lots sone / and whan fyr gareth af-
 pyed that he was discoueryd / thenne he doubled his strokes / &
 smote doune fyr Sagramore & his broder fir gawayn / O bro-
 der faide fir gawayn I wende ye wolde not haue fryken me /
 so whan he herd hym say so he thrang here & there / & so with gre-
 35 te payne he gat out of the prees / and there he mette with his
 dwerf / O boye faid fyr gareth thou hast begyled me foule this
 day that thou kepte my rynge / Gyue it me anone ageyn that

I may hyde my body with al / and foo he tooke it hym / And
 thenne they all wist not where he was become / and fyr Gawa-
 yn had in maner aspyed where fyr Gareth rode / and thenne he
 rode after with alle his myghte / that aspyed fyr Gareth and
 rode lyghtely in to the forest that fyr Gawayn wist not where 5
 he was become / And whan fyr Gareth wyft that fyr Gawa-
 yn was past / he asked the dwerf of best counceil / Syr said the
 dwerf / me semeth it were best now that ye are escaped fro spy-
 eng that ye send my lady dame lyones her rynge / It is wel
 aduysed said fyr Gareth / now haue it here and bere it to her / 10
 And saye that I recommaunde me vnto her good grace / and
 saye her I will come whan I maye / and I pray her to be true
 and feythful to me as I wil be to her / Syr said the dwerf it
 shal be done as ye commaunde / and foo he rode his waye and
 dyd his eraund vnto the lady / Thenne she said where is my 15
 knyghte fyr Gareth / Madame said the dwerf he bad me saye /
 that he wold not be long from you / ¶ And foo lyghtely the
 dwerf cam ageyne vnto fyr Gareth that wold ful fayne ha-
 ue had a lodgyng / for he had nede to be reposed / And thenne
 felle there a thonder and a rayne as heuen and erthe shold 20
 goo to gyder / And fyr Gareth was not a lytyl wery / for of al
 that day he had but lytel rest neyther his hors nor he / So this
 fyr Gareth rode foo longe in that forest vntyl the nyghte came
 And euer it lyghtned and thondred as it had ben woode
 At the last by fortune he came to a Castel / and there he herd 25
 the waytes vpon the wallys ¶ **Capitulum xxxij /**

Thenne fyr Gareth rode vnto the barbycan of the castel /
 and praid the porter fayr to lete hym in to the castel /
 The porter answerd vngoodely ageyne / and saide thow
 getest no lodgyng here / Fayr fyr say not foo for I am a knyghte 30
 of kynge Arthurs / & pray the lord or the lady of this castel to
 gyue me herberow for the loue of kynge Arthur / Thenne the
 porter wente vnto the duchesse / and told her how ther was a
 knyghte of kyng Arthurs wold haue herberowe / lete hym in
 said the duchesse / for I wille see that knyghte / And for kyng 35
 Arthurs sake he shalle not be herberoules /

¶ Thenne she yode vp in to a toure ouer the gate with greete
 torche lyght / whan sir Gareth sawe that torche lyghte he cryed

on hyhe whether thou be lord or lady gyaunt or champyon I
 take no force so that I may haue herberowe this nyghte / & yf
 hit so be that I must nedes fyghte / spare me not to morne when
 I haue restyd me for bothe I and myn hors ben wery / Syr
 5 knyghte said the lady thou spekest knyghtly and boldly / but
 wete thou wel the lord of this castel loueth not kyng Arthur /
 nor none of his court / for my lord hath euer ben ageynst hym
 and therfor thou were better not to come within this castel /
 For and thou come in this nyghte / thou must come in vnder
 10 fuche fourme that where someuer thou mete my lord by sty³ or
 by strete / thou must yelde the to hym as prysoner / Madame said
 fyre Gareth what is your lord and what is his name / fyr
 my lordes name is the duke de la rouse / wel madame said fyr
 Gareth I shal promyse yow in what place I mete your lord
 15 I shalle yelde me vnto hym and to his good grace with that
 I vnderstande he wille do me no harme / And yf I vnderstand
 that he wille I wil releace my self and I can with my spe-
 re and my swerd / ye say wel said the ducheffe / and thenne she
 lete the drawe brydge doune / and soo he rode in to the halle /
 20 and there he alyghte / and his hors was ledde in to a stable / &
 in the halle he vnarmed hym / & faide madame I will not oute
 of this holle this nyghte / And whan it is daye lyght / lete fee /
 who wil haue adoo with me / he shal fynde me redy / Thenne
 was he sette vnto souper / and had many good dyshes / then-
 25 ne fyr Gareth lyft wel to ete / and knyghtely he ete his mete /
 and egerly / there was many a fair lady by hym / & some said
 they neuer sawe a goodlyer man nor so wel of etyng / then-
 ne they made hym passyng good chere / & shortly whan he had
 souped his bedde was made there so he rested hym al nyghte /
 30 And on the morne he herd masse & brake his fast & toke his le-
 ue at the ducheffe / & at them al / & thanked her goodely of her
 lodgyng & of his good chere / & thenne she asked gym his na-
 me / Madame he faide truly my name is Gareth of Orkeney / &
 some men calle me Beaumayns / thēne knewe she wel it was
 35 the same knyght that fougt for dame lyones / so sir gareth depar-
 ted & rode vp in to a montayne / & ther mette hym a knyghte /
 his name was fyr Bendelayne and sayd to fyr Gareth thou
 shalt not passe this way / for outhur thou shalt Iuste with me or

els be my prysoner / Thenne wille I Iuste said fyr Gareth /
 And soo they lete their horses renne / and there fyr Gareth smote
 hym thorou oute the body / and fyr Bendalyne rode forth to
 his castel there befyde and there dyed / So fyr gareth wold ha-
 ue rested hym / and he cam rydyng to Bendalaynis castel / 5
 Thenne his knyghtes and seruauntes aspyed that it was he
 that had slayne their lord / Thenne they armed xx good men
 and cam out and assailed fyr gareth / and soo he had no spe-
 re but his swerd / and put his shelde afore hym / and there they
 brake their speres vpon hym / and they assailed hem passyng- 10
 ly fore / But euer fyr gareth deffended hym as a knyght

¶ Capitulum xxxiiij

Soo whan they sawe that they myghte not ouercome
 hym / they rode from hym / and took their councelle to
 flee his hors / and soo they cam in vpon fyr gareth / and with
 speres they flewe his hors / and thenne they assailed hym hard 15
 But whan he was on foote / there was none that he raughte
 but he gaf him suche a buffet that he dyd neuer recouer / So he
 flewe hem by one and one tyl they were but foure / and there
 they fledde / and fire gareth took a good hors that was one of
 theirs and rode his waye / Thenne he rode a grete paas til that 20
 he came to a castel and there he herd moche mornyng of lady-
 es and gentylwymmen / so ther cam by hym a page / what noy-
 se is this said fyr gareth that I here within this castel / Syre
 knyghte said the page here ben within this castel thyrty lady-
 es and alle they be wydowes / For here is a knyght that way- 25
 teth dayly vpon this castel / and his name is the broun kn-
 yght withoute pyte / and he is the peryllouft knyght that now
 lyueth / And therfor fir said the page I rede you flee / Nay fa-
 id fir gareth I wille not flee though thou be aferd of hym /
 And thenne the page sawe where came the broune knyghte / loo 30
 said the page yonder he cometh / lete me dele with hym said fyre
 gareth / And whan eyther of other had a fyghte they lete the-
 yr horses renne / and the broune knyghte brake his spere and
 fir gareth smote hym thorou oute the body that he ouerthrewe
 hym to the ground stark dede / So fir gareth rode in to the castel 35
 & praid the ladies þ^t he myȝt repose hym / allas said the ladies
 ye may not be lodged here / make hym good chere said the page

for this knyghte hath slayne your enemy / thenne they al made hym good chere as laye in their power / But wete ye wel they maade hym good chere for they myghte none otherwyse doo for they were but poure / And fo on the morne he wente to
 5 maffe / and there he sawe the thyrtty ladyes knele / and lay grouelyng vpon dyuerse tombes makynge grete dole and forowe / Thenne fyr Gareth wyft wel that in the tombes lay their lordes / Fayre ladyes said fyr Gareth ye must at the next feest of Pentecost be at the court of kynge Arthur / and saye that I
 10 fyr Gareth sente you thyder / we shal doo this said the ladyes Soo he departed / and by fortune he came to a mountayne / & there he found a goodely knyght that badde hym abyde fyr knyghte and Iuste with me / what are ye said fyr Gareth / My name is said he the duke de la rowse / A fyr ye ar the same knyghte that I lodged ones in your Castel / And there I made promyse vnto your lady that I shold yelde me vnto yow
 15 A said the duke arte thou that proud knyghte that profereft to fyghte with my knyghtes / therfore make the redy for I wil haue adoo with you / Soo they lete their horses renne / and ther
 20 fyr Gareth smote the duke doune from his hors / But the duke lyghtly auoyded his hors / and dresfid his shelde and drew his swerd / and bad fyr Gareth alyghte and fyghte with hym / Soo he dyd alyghte / and they dyd grete batail to gyders more than an houre / and eyther hurte other ful fore / Att
 25 the last fir Gareth gat the duke to the erthe / and wold haue slayn hym / and thenne he yelded hym to hym / Thenne must ye goo said fir Gareth vnto fyr Arthur my lord at the next feest and saye that I fir Gareth of Orkeney sente you vnto hym / hit shal be done said the duke / and I wil doo to yow homage and
 30 feaute with an C knyghtes with me / and alle the dayes of my lyf to doo you seruyse where ye wille commaunde me /

¶ Capitulum xxiiiij

Soo the duke departed / and fir Gareth stode there alone and there he sawe an armed knyght comyng toward hym / Thenne fyre Gareth toke the dukes shelde / and

mounted vpon horsbak / and soo withoute bydyng they ranne
 to gyder as it had ben the thonder / And there that knyzt hurt
 fyr Gareth vnder the fyde with his spere / And thenne they a-
 lyghte / and drewe their swardes / and gafe grete strokes that
 the blood trayled to the ground / And soo they foughte two 5
 houres / At the last there came the damoyfel Lynet that somme
 men calle the damoyfel faueage / and she came rydyng vpon
 an ambelynge meule / and there she cryed al on hyghe / fyr Ga-
 wayne fyr Gawayne leue thy fyghtyng with thy broder fyre
 Gareth / And whan he herd her saye soo he threwe aweye hys 10
 shelde and his sward / and ranne to fyre Gareth / and tooke
 hym in his armes / and fythen kneled doune and asked hym
 mercy / What are ye said fyr Gareth that ryght now were soo
 stronge and soo myghty / and now so sodenly yelde you to me
 O Gareth I am your broder fyr Gawayn that for youre sake 15
 haue had grete forou and labour / Thenne fyr Gareth vnaced
 his helme / and knelyd doune to hym / and asked hym mercy /
 thenne they rose both and enbraced eyther other in their armes
 and wepte a grete whyle or they myghte speke / and eyther of
 hem gaf other the pryce of the bataille / And there were many 20
 kynde wordes bitwene hem / Allas my faire broder said fir ga-
 wayn perde I owe of ryghte to worshippe you / and ye were
 not my broder / for ye haue worshipped kyng Arthur and all
 his courte / for ye haue sente me mo worshipful knyghtes this
 twelue moneth than fyxe the best of the round table haue do- 25
 ne excepte fir Launcelot / Thenne cam the damoyfel faueage that
 was the lady Lynet that rode with fir gareth soo longe / and
 there she dyd staunche fir gareths woundes / and fir gawayns
 Now what wille ye doo said the damoyfel faueage / me semeth
 that it were wel do þ^t Arthur had wetyng of you both for yo- 30
 ur horses are soo bryfed that they may not bere / Now faire da-
 moyfel said fyr Gawayne / I praye you ryde vnto my lord myn
 vnkel kynge Arthur / and telle hym what aduenture is to me
 betyd here / and I suppose he wille not tary long / Thenne she
 tooke her meule and lyghtly she came to kynge Arthur / that 35
 was but two myle thens / And whan she had told hym tydyn-
 ges the kynge bad gete hym a palfroy /  And whan he was
 vpon his bak he badde the lordes and ladyes come after who

that wold / and there was fadelyng and brydelyng of quenes
 horfes and prynces horfes / & wel was hym that sooneft myght
 be redy / Soo whan the kynge came there as they were he sawe
 fyr Gawayn and fyr Gareth fyte vpon a lytel hylle fyde / &
 5 thenne the kynge auoyded his hors / And whanne he cam ny-
 ghe fyre Gareth / he wold haue spoken but he myghte not / and
 therwith he fanke doune in a swoune for gladnesse / and soo
 they starte vnto theyr vnkyll / and requyred hym of his good
 grace to be of good comforte / Wete ye wel the kyng made gre-
 10 te ioye and many a pyteous complaynte he made to fyr Ga-
 reth / And euer he wepte as he had ben a chyld / With that cam
 his moder the quene of Orkeney dame Morgause / And whan
 she sawe fyr Gareth redely in the vyfage she myghte not wepe
 but fodenly felle doune in a swoune / and lay there a grete why-
 15 le lyke as she had ben dede / And thenne fyr Gareth recomfor-
 ted his moder in fuche wyse that she recouerd and made good
 chere / Thenne the kynge commaunded that al maner of knygh-
 tes that were vnder his obeissaunce shold make their lodgyng
 ryght there for the loue of his neuwes / And soo it was do-
 20 ne and al manere of purueaunce purueyd that ther lacked
 nothyng that myghte be gotten of tame nor wyld for gold or
 fyluer / And thenne by the meanes of the damoyfel Saueage
 fyr Gawayne and fyr Gareth were heled of their woundes /
 and there they sojourned eyght dayes / Thenne said kyng Ar-
 25 thur vnto the damoyfel saueage I merueylle that your syster
 Dame Lyones cometh not here to me / and in especial that she
 cometh not to vyfite her knyghte my neuwe fyre Gareth that
 hath had soo moche trauaille for her loue / My lord said the da-
 moyfel Lynet ye must of your good grace hold her excused /
 30 For she knoweth not that my lord fyr Gareth is here / Go the-
 ne for her said kynge Arthur that we may be apoynted what
 is best to done accordyng to the plesyr of my neuwe / Syr fa-
 id the damoyfel that shal be done / and soo she rode vnto her syf-
 ter / And as lyghtely as she myght made her redy & she cam
 35 on the morne with her broder fyr Gryngamor / and with her
 xl knyghtes / And so whan she was come she had alle the che-
 re that myghte be done bothe of the kynge and of many other
 kynges and quenes

¶ Capitulum xxxv

ANd amonge alle these ladyes she was named the fayrest and pyreles / Thenne whanne fyr Gawayn sawe her / there was many a goodely loke and goodely wordes that alle men of worship had ioye to beholde them / Thenne cam kyng Arthur and many other kynges and dame Gweneuer & the quene of Orkeney / And there the kyng asked his neuweyre Gareth whether he wold haue that lady as peramour or to haue her to his wyf / My lord wete yow wel that I loue her aboue al ladyes lyuynge / Now fayre lady said kyng Arthur what say ye / Moost noble kyng said dame Lyones wete yow wel that my lord fyr Gareth is to me more leuer to haue and welde as my husband than ony kyng or prynce that is crystened / and yf I maye not haue hym I promyse yow I wyll neuer haue none / For my lord Arthur sayd dame Lyones wete ye wel he is my fyrst loue and he shal be the laste / And yf ye wil suffre hym to haue his wyl and free choyse I dare saye he wyll haue me / That is trouthe said fyr Gareth / And I haue not you and weld not you as my wyf / there shal neuer lady ne gentylwoman reioyce me / What neuweyre said the kyng is the wynde in that dore / for wete ye wel I wold not for the stynte of my croune to be caufar to withdrawe your hertes / And wete ye wel ye con not loue so wel but I shal rather encrease hit than dystresse hit / And also ye shal haue my loue and my lordship in the vttermest wyse that may lye in my power / And in the same wyse said sir Gareths moder / thenne there was made a prouysyon for the day of maryge / and by the kynges aduyse it was prouyded that it shold be at Mychelmas folowyng at kynkenadon by the see fyde / for ther is plentyful cuntry / And soo it was cryed in al the places thurgh the royaume / And thenne fyr Gareth sent his somones to alle these knyghtes and ladyes that he had wonnen in batail to fore that they shold be at his day of maryage at kynkenadon by the sandys / And thenne dame Lyones and the damoyfel Lynet with fyr Gryngamor rode to their castel / and a goodely and a ryche rynge she gaf to fyr Gareth / and he gaf her another / And kyng Arthur gaf her a ryche bece of

gold / and soo she departed / and kyng Arthur and his felau-
 ship rode toward Kynkenadon / and fyr Gareth broughte his
 lady on the way / & so cam to the kyng ageyne and rode with
 hym / Lord the grete chere that fyr launcelot made of fir Gareth
 5 and he of hym / for there was neuer no knyght that fyr gareth
 loued so wel as he dyd fyr Launcelot / and euer for the most
 party he wold be in fyr launcelots company / for after fyr Ga-
 reth had aspyed fir Gawayns condycions he withdrewe hym
 self fro his broder fyr Gawayns felaufship / for he was venge-
 10 able / and where he hated he wold be auengyd with murther
 and that hated fyr gareth

¶ Capitulum xxxvi

Soo hit drewe faste to Mychelmas / and thyder came
 dame Lyones the lady of the castel peryllous and her
 yfster dame Lynet with fyre gryngamor her broder with hem /
 15 For he had the conduyte of these ladyes / And there they were
 lodged at the deuyse of kyng Arthur / And vpon mychelmas
 day the Biffhop of Caunterbury made the weddyng betwixe
 fyr gareth and the lady Lyones with grete solempnyte / and
 kyng Arthur made gaherys to wedde the damoyfel saueage /
 20 that was dame Lynet / and kyng Arthur made fyr Agraue-
 aine to wedde dame Lyones nees a fayr lady / her name was
 dame Laurel / And so whan this solemnacion was done / then-
 ne came in the grene knyghte fyr Pertylope with thyrty kn-
 yghtes / and there he dyd homage and feaute to fyr gareth and
 25 these knyghtes to hold of hym for euermore / Also fir Pertilo-
 pe said I pray you that at this feest I maye be your cham-
 berlayne / with a good wil said fyr gareth / fyth it lyketh you
 to take soo symple on offyce / Thenne come in the reed knyghte
 with thre score knyghtes with hym / and dyde to fyr Gareth
 30 homage and feaute / and alle tho knyghtes to hold of hym
 for euermore / And thenne this fyr Perymonyes praide fir ga-
 reth to graunte hym to be his chyef botteler at that hyghe feest
 I wil wel faide fir gareth that ye haue this offyce and it we-
 re better / Thenne came in fyr Perfant of Inde with an C kn-
 35 yghtes with hym / and there he dyd homage and feaute / and

al his knyghtes shold doo hym feruyfe / and hold their lond-
des of hym for euer / and there he prayd fyr Gareth to make
hym his Sewar chyef at the feest / I wil wel said fyr Ga-
reth that ye haue it & it were better / Thenne cam the dukde la
rowse with an C knyghtes with hym / and there he dyd ho- 5
mage and feaute to fyr Gareth / and soo to hold theire londes
of hym for euer / And he requyred fyr Gareth that he myght
ferue hym of the wyn that day at that feest / I wil wel sayd
fyr Gareth and it were better / Thenne came in the reed knyghte
of the reed laundes that was fyr Ironfyde / and he broughte 10
with hym thre honderd knyghtes / and there he dyd homage &
feaute / and al these knyghtes to hold their landes of hym for
euer / And thenne he asked fyr Gareth to be his keruer / I
will wel said fyr Gareth and it please you / Thenne came in to
the courte thyrtty ladyes / and alle they femed wydowes / and 15
tho thyrtty ladyes broughte with hem many fayre gentylwy-
mmen / And alle they kneled doune at ones vnto kyng arthur
and vnto fyr Gareth / and there al tho ladyes told the kyng
how fyr Gareth delyuerd hem from the dolorous toure / and fle-
we the broune knyght withoute pyte / And therfore we and 20
oure heyres for euermore wille doo homage vnto fyr Gareth of
Orkeney / So thenne the kynges and quenes / prynces & erlys
Barons and many bold knyghtes wente vnto mete / & well
maye ye wete there were al manere of mete plentyuoufly / alle
manere rules and games with al manere of mynstralsy that 25
was vsed in tho dayes / ¶ Also ther was grete Iustes thre da-
yes / But the kyng wold not suffre fyre Gareth to Iuste by
cause of his newe bryde / for as the frensshe book fayth that da-
me Lyones desyred of the kyng that none that were wedded
shold Iuste at that feest / Soo the fyrst day there Iusted fir la- 30
merak de galys / for he ouerthrewe thyrtty knyghtes / & did pas-
fying merueillously dedes of armes / and thenne kyng Arthur
made fyr Perfaunt and his two bretheren knyghtes of the ro-
und table to their lyues ende / and gaf hem grete londes / Also
the second daye there Iusted Trystram best / and he ouerthrew 35
fourty knyghtes / and dyd there merueillous dedes of armes
And there kyng Arthur made Ironfyde that was the reed
knyghte of the reed laundes a knyghte of the table round to

his lyues ende / and gaf hym grete landes / The thyrd day there
 Iusted fyr launcelot du lake / and he ouerthrewe fyfty knygh-
 tes and dyd many merueyllous dedes of armes that all men
 wondred on hym / And there kynge Arthur made the duke de
 5 la rouse a knyghte of the round table to his lyues ende / and
 gaf hym grete landes to spende / But whan this Iustes were
 done / fyr Lamerak and fyr Trystram departed fodenly / & wold
 not be knowm / for the whiche kyng Arthur and all the court
 were fore displeasyd / And soo they helde the courte fourty da-
 10 yes with grete solempnyte / And this fyr Gareth was a no-
 ble knyghte and a wel rulyd and fayr langaged

¶ Thus endeth this tale of fyr Gareth of Orkeney that wed-
 ded dame Lyones of the castel peryllous / And also fyr Gabe-
 rys wedded her systre dame Lynet / that was called the damo-
 ysel saueage / And fyr Agraunayne wedded dame Laurel a fa-
 yr lady and grete and myghty landes with grete rycheffe
 gaf with them kyng Arthur that ryally they myght lyue tyl
 their lyues ende

There foloweth the viij book the which is the first book of sir
 Tristram de Lyones / & who was his fader & his moder / & hou
 he was borne and fosteryd / And how he was made knyghte

¶ Capitulum primum



It was a kyng that hyghte Melyodas / and he
 was lord and kyng of the cowntre of Lyonas
 And this Melyodas was a lykely knyght as
 ony was that tyme lyuyng / And by fortune
 he wedded kyng Markys fyfter of Cornewaille / And she 5
 was called Elyzabeth that was callyd bothe good and fair
 And at that tyme kyng Arthur regned / and he was hole
 kyng of Englund / walys and Scotland & of many other
 royammes how be it there were many kynges that were lordes
 of many countreyes / but alle they held their landes of kyng 10
 Arthur / for in walys were two kynges / and in the north we-
 re many kynges / And in Cornewail and in the west were
 two kynges / ¶ Also in Irland were two or thre kynges
 and al were vnder the obeiffaunce of kyng Arthur / So was
 the kyng of Fraunce and the kyng of Bretayn and all the 15
 lordshippes vnto Rome / So whan this kyng Melyodas hadde
 ben with his wyf / within a whyle she waxid grete with child
 and she was a ful meke lady / and wel she loued her lord / &
 he her ageyne / foo there was grete ioye betwixe them / Thenne
 ther was a lady in that countrey that had loued kyng Me- 20
 lyodas longe / And by no meane she neuer coude gete his loue
 therfore she lete ordeyne vpon a day as kyng Melyodas rode
 on huntynge / for he was a grete chacer / and there by an en-
 chaument she made hym chace an herte by hym self alone / til
 that he came to an old Castel / and there anone he was taken 25
 pryfoner by the lady that hym loued / Whanne Elyzabeth kyng
 Melyodas myft her lord / and she was nyghe oute of her wytte
 and also as grete with child as she was she took a gentylwo-
 man with her / and ranne in to the forest to feke her lord /
 And whanne she was ferre in the forest she myghte no ferther 30
 for she byganne to trauaille fast of her child / And she had ma-
 ny grymly throwes / her gentylwoman halp her alle that she
 myghte / And foo by myracle of oure lady of heuen she was
 delyuerd with grete paynes / But she had taken suche cold for
 the defeaute of helpe that depe draughtes of deth toke her / that 35
 nedes she must dye and departe oute of this world / ther was

none other boote / And whanne this quene Elyzabeth sawe
 that ther was none other bote / thenne she made grete dole / and
 said vnto her gentylwoman / whan ye see my lord kyng Me-
 lyodas recommaunde me vnto hym / and telle hym what pay-
 5 nes I endure here for gis loue / and how I must dye here for
 his sake for defaute of good helpe / and lete hym wete that I
 am ful fory to departe out of this world fro hym / therfor pray
 hym to be frende to my soule / Now lete me see my lytel child /
 for whome I haue had alle this sorowe / And whanne she sa-
 10 we hym she said thus / A my lytel sone thou hast murdered
 thy moder / and therefore I suppose thou that arte a murtherer
 soo yong / thou arte ful lykely to be a manly man in thyn age /
 And by cause I shal dye of the byrthe of the / I charge the
 gentylwoman / that thou pray my lord kynge Melyodas that
 15 whan he is crystned lete calle hym Trystram that is as moch
 to faye / as a sorouful byrthe / And ther with this quene gaf
 vp the ghooft and dyed / Thenne the gentylwoman leyde her
 vnder an vmbre of a grete tree / and thenne she lapped the ch-
 yld as wel as she myght for cold / Ryghte soo ther came the
 20 Barons folowyng after the quene / ¶ And whan they sawe
 that she was dede / and vnderstood none other but the kynge
 was destroyed /

¶ Capitulum secundum

T Henne certayne of them wold haue slayne the child /
 by cause they wold haue ben lordes of the countrey of
 25 Lyonas / But thenne thorow the faire speche of the gentylwo-
 man / and by the meanes that she made / the moost party of the
 Barons wold not assente ther to / And thenne they lete cary
 home the dede quene / and moche dole was made for her / Thenne
 this meane whyle Merlyn delyuerd kynge Melyodas out of
 30 pryson on the morne after his quene was dede / And so when
 the kynge was come home / the moost party of the barons ma-
 de grete ioye / But the sorow that the kyng made for his quene
 that myghte no tong telle

Soo thenne the kynge lete entere her rychely and after he le-
 35 te crystene his child as his wyf had commaunded afore her

deth / And thenne he lete calle hym Trystram the sorouful borne child / ¶ Thenne the kyng Melyodas endured feuen yeres withoute a wyf / And alle this tyme Trystram was nourysshed wel / ¶ Thenne hit befelle that kyng Melyodas wedded kyng Howles doughter of Bretayne / and anone 5 she hadde children of kyng Melyodas / thenne was she heuy and wrothe / that her children shold not reioyce the Countrey of Lyones / wherfor this quene ordeyned for to poyfene yong Tristram / So she lete poyfon be put in a pyece of syluer in the chamber where as Trystram and her children were to gyders / 10 Vnto that entente that whanne Trystram were thursty he shold drynke that drynke / And so hit felle vpon a daye the quenes sone as he was in that chamber / aspyed the pyece with poyfon / and he wende hit hadde ben good drynke / and by cause the child was thursty he tooke the pyece with poyfon and 15 dranke frely / and there with al sodenly the child braft & was dede / whanne the quene Melyodas wyft of the dethe of her sone wete ye wel that she was heuy / But yet the kyng vnderstode no thyng of her treason / ¶ Not withstandynge the quene wold not leue this / but este she lete ordeyne more poyfon / and 20 putte hit in a pyece / And by fortune kyng Melyodas her husband fond the pyece with wyn where was the poyfon / and he that was moche thursty took the pyece for to drynke ther oute And as he wold haue dronken therof / the Quene aspyed hym / and thenne she ranne vnto hym / and pulled the pyece 25 from hym sodenly ¶ The kyng merueilled why she dyd soo / and remembryd hym how her sone was sodenly slayne with poyfon / And thenne he took her by the hand and sayd / thou fals traitresse thou shalte telle me what manere of drynke this is / or els I shalle flee the / And ther with he pul- 30 led oute his swerd / and sware a grete othe that he shold flee her / but yf she told hym trouthe / A mercy my lord sayd she / and I shalle telle you alle / And thenne she told hym why she wold haue slayne Trystram / by cause her chyldren shold reioyce his land / wel said the kyng Melyodas / and therfor shal 35 ye haue the lawe / And soo she was dampned by the assente of the Barons to be brent / and thenne was ther made a grete fyre / & ryght as she was at the fyre to take her execucion / yong

Tryftram knelyd afore kynge Melyodas / and befought hym
 to gyue hym a bone / I wylle wel faid the kynge ageyne /
 ¶ Thenne faide yonge Tryftram gyue me the lyf of thy que-
 ne my stepmoder / That is vnryghtfully asked faid kyng Me-
 5 lyodas / for thou oughte of ryght to hate her / for she wold ha-
 ue flayne the with that poyson and she myghte haue hadde her
 wille / And for thy sake moost is my cause that she sholde dye
 Syr faide Tryftram as for that I byfeche you of your mercy
 that ye wille forgyue hit her / And as for my parte god forgy-
 10 ue it her and I doo / and soo moche it lyked your hyhenes to
 graunte me my bone / for goddes loue I requyre you hold yo-
 ur promyse / Sythen hit is soo faid the kynge I wille that ye
 haue her lyf / thenne faid the kynge I gyue her to you / and go
 ye to the fyre and take her / and doo with her what ye wylle /
 15 Soo fyre Tryftram wente to the fyre / and by the commaunde-
 ment of the kyng delyuerd her from the dethe / But after that
 kynge Melyodas wold neuer haue adoo with her as at bedde
 and borde / But by the good meanes of yong Tryftram he ma-
 de the kynge and her accorded / But thenne the kynge wold
 20 not suffre yonge Tryftram to abyde no lenger in his courte

¶ Capitulum iiii

ANd thenne he lete ordeyne a gentylman that was wel
 lerned and taughte / his name was gouernayle / and
 thenne he sente yonge Tryftram with Gouernayle in
 to Fraunce to lerne the langage / and nurture / and dedes of
 25 armes / And there was Tryftram more than feuen yeres /

¶ And thenne whanne he wel couthe speke the langage and
 hadde lerned alle that he myght lerne in that countreyes / then-
 ne he came home to his fader kynge Melyodas ageyne / and so
 Tryftram lerned to be an harper passyng alle other that there
 30 was none fuche called in no countrey / and soo in harpyng &
 on Instrumentys of musyke he applyed hym in his yongthe
 for to lerne / And after as he growed in myght and strengthe
 he laboured euer in huntynge and in haukyng soo that neuer

gentyelman more that euer we herd rede of / ¶ And as the
 book fayth / he beganne good mefures of blowyng of beeftes of
 venery and beeftes of chace / and alle manere of vermayns /
 and alle thefe termes we haue yet of haukyng and huntyng
 And therefore the book of venery / of haukyng and hunty- 5
 nge is called the book of fyr Tryftram / Wherfor as me femeth
 alle gentylmen that beren old armes oughte of ryght to ho-
 noure fyre Tryftram for the goodly termes that gentilmen ha-
 ue and vse / and fhalle to the daye of dome / that there by in a
 maner alle men of worship maye diffeuer a gentyelman fro a 10
 yoman / and from a yoman a vylayne / For he that gentyl is
 wylle drawe hym vnto gentil tatches / and to folowe the cus-
 tommes of noble gentylmen ¶ Thus fyr Tryftram
 endured in Cornewaile vntyl he was bygge / and ftronge / of
 the age of xvij yeres / And thenne the kynge Melyodas had 15
 grete ioye of fyr Tryftram / and soo had the quene his wyfe /
 For euer after in her lyf by caufe fyre Tryftram faued her
 from the fyre fhe dyd neuer hate hym more after / but loued
 hym euer after / and gaf Tryftram many grete yeftes for eue-
 ry eftate loued hym / where that he wente 20

¶ Capitulum quartum

THenne it befelle that kynge Anguyffhe of Irland /
 fente vnto kynge Marke of Cornewaile for his tru-
 age that Cornewaile had payed many wynters / And
 alle that tyme kynge Marke was behynde of the truage for fe-
 uen yeres / And kyng Marke and his Barons gaf vnto the 25
 meffager of Irland thefe wordes and anfuere that they wo-
 ld none paye / and bad the meffagyer goo vnto his Kynge
 Anguyffhe / and telle hym we wille paye hym no truage / but
 telle youre lord / and he wille alweyes haue truage of vs of
 Cornewaile / bydde hym fende a trusty knyghte of his land / 30
 that wille fyghte for his ryght / and we fhalle fynde another
 for to defende oure ryght / With this anfuere the meffagers de-
 parted in to Irland / ¶ And whanne kynge Anguyffh vn-
 derftood the anfuere of the meffagers / he was wonderly wroth

And thenne he callyd vnto hym fyr Marhaus the good knyght that was nobly preued / and a knyghte of the table round / And this Marhaus was broder vnto the quene of Irland / ¶ Thenne the kynge fayd thus / Fayre broder fir Marhaus I praye yow goo in to Cornewaile for my sake and do bataille for our truage that of ryght we oughte to haue / and what fomeuer ye spende ye shalle haue suffyciently more than ye shal nede / Syre saide Marhaus wete ye wel that I shalle not be lothe to doo bataille in the ryght of you and your land
 10 with the best knyght of the table rounde / for I knowe them for the moost party what ben theire dedes / and for to auance my dedes and to encrease my worship I wylle ryght gladly goo vnto this iourneye for our ryghte

¶ Soo in alle haste there was made purueaunce for fyr marhaus / and he hadde al thyng that to hym neded / and soo he departed out of Irland / and arryued vp in Cornewaile euen fast by the castel of Tyntagil / And whan kynge Marke vnderstood that he was there arryued to fyghte for Irland /

¶ Thenne made kynge marke grete sorow whan he vnderstood
 20 that the good and noble knyghte fyre Marhaus was come / For they knewe no knyght that durste haue adoo with hym / For at that tyme fyre Marhaus was called one of the famoussest and renoumed knyghtes of the world

¶ And thus fyre Marhaus abode in the fee / and euery daye
 25 he sente vnto kynge Marke for to paye the truage that was behynde of seuen yere / outhur els to fynde a knyght to fyghte with hym for the truage / This maner of message fyre Marhaus sente dayly vnto kynge Marke /

¶ Thenne they of Cornewayle lete make cryes in euery place that what knyght
 30 wold fyghte for to faue the truage of Cornewaile he sholde be rewarded soo that he sholde fare the better terme of hys lyf /

¶ Thenne some of the Barons sayde to kynge Marke / and counceiled hym to sende to the courte of Kynge Arthur for to feke fyre Launcelot du lake that was that tyme
 35 named for the merueillouft Knyght of alle the worlde /

¶ Thenne there were somme other Barons that counceyllled the Kynge not to doo soo & said that it was laboure in vayn /

by cause fyr Marhaus was a knyght of the round table / ther-
 for any of hem will be loth to haue adoo with other / but yf hit
 were any knyght at his owne request wold fyghte dyfgyfied
 and vnknownen / Soo the kyng and alle his barons affented
 that it was no bote to feke any knyght of the round table / 5
 ¶ This meane whyle came the langage and the noyse vnto
 kyng Meliodas hou that fyre Marhaus abode bataille faste by
 Tyntagil / And how kyng Marke couthe fynde no maner kn-
 yghte to fyghte for hym / Whan yong Trystram herd of thys /
 he was wrothe and fore afhamed that ther durst no knyghte 10
 in Cornewaile haue adoo with fyr Marhaus of Irland /

¶ Capitulum quintum

THere with al Trystram wente vnto his fader Kyng
 Meliodas and asked hym counceil what was best to
 doo for to recouer Cornewaile from truage / For as
 me semeth said sir Triftram it were shame that fyr Marhaus 15
 the quenes broder of Irland shold goo awaye onles that he
 were foughten with alle ¶ As for that said kyng
 Meliodas wete you wel sone Triftram that fyre Marhaus is
 called one of the best knyghtes of the world and knyghte of
 the table round / And therefore I knowe no knyghte in this 20
 countre that is able to matche with hym / ¶ Allas faide fyre
 Triftram that I am not made knyght / And yf sir Marhaus
 shold thus departe in to Irland / god lete me neuer haue wor-
 ship and I were made knyght I shold matche hym /
 And fyr said Trystram I pray you gyue me leue to ryde to 25
 kyng Mark / and soo ye be not displeafyd / of kyng Marke
 wille I be made Knyght / I wille wel faide kyng Meliodas
 that ye be ruled as your courage wille rule you

¶ Thenne sir Trystram thanked his fader moche / And thenne
 he made hym redy to ryde in to Cornewaile / ¶ In the meane 30
 whyle there came a messager with letters of loue fro kyng
 Faramon of Fraunces doughter vnto fyre Trystram that we-
 re ful pyteous letters & in them were wryten many compla-
 yntes of loue / but fyre Triftram had no Ioye of her letters nor

regard vnto her / Also she sente hym a lytel brachet that was
 passynge fayre / But whan the kynges doughter vnderstood
 that fyre Trystram wold not loue her / as the book sayth / she
 dyed for forou / ¶ And thenne the same squyer that broughte
 5 the letter and the brachet came ageyne vnto fyr Trystram / as
 after ye shalle here in the tale ¶ Soo this yonge

fyre Trystram rode vnto his eme kynge Marke of Cornewa-
 yle / ¶ And whanne he came there / he herd say that ther wold
 no knyghte fyghte with fyre Marhaus / Thenne yede sir Trif-
 10 tram vnto his eme and sayd / fyre yf ye wylle gyue me thor-
 dre of knyghthode / I wille doo bataille with fyr Marhaus /
 What are ye said the kynge and from whens be ye comen / Sir
 said Trystram I come fro kynge Melyodas that wedded yo-
 ur fyfter and a gentylman wete ye wel I am

15 ¶ Kynge Marke behelde sir Trystram and sawe that he was
 but a yonge man of age / but he was passyngly wel maade
 and bygge / ¶ Faire fyre said the kynge what is youre name
 and where were ye borne / Syre sayd he ageyne / my name is
 Trystram / and in the countreye of Lyones was I borne /

20 Ye faye wel said the kynge / and yf ye wille doo this batayll
 I shalle make yow knyghte / Therefore I come to you sayd
 fyre Trystram and for none other cause

¶ But thenne kynge Marke made hym knyghte / And there
 with al anone as he had made hym knyght he sente a meffa-
 25 ger vnto fyre Marhaus with letters that said / that he hadde
 fonde a yonge knyghte redy for to take the bataile to the vtter-
 mest / hit may wel be said fyre Marhaus / ¶ But telle kynge
 Marke I wille not fyghte with no knyghte but he be of bl-
 ood royal / that is to faye outhur kynges sone outhur quenes
 30 sone borne of a prynce or prynceffe /

¶ Whanne Kynge Marke vnderstood that / he sente for fyre
 Trystram de lyones and tolde hym what was the anfuer of
 fyr Marhaus / ¶ Thenne sayd fyre Trystram fythen that he se-
 yth foo / lete hym wete that I am comen of fader fyde and mo-
 35 der fyde of as noble blood as he is / ¶ For fyre now shalle ye
 knowe that I am kynge Melyodas sone borne of youre own
 fyfter dame Elyzabeth that dyed in the forest in the byrthe of
 me / O Ihesu said kynge Mark ye are welcome faire neuewe

to me / ¶ Thenne in alle the hafte the kynge lete horfe fyr Trif-
 tram and arme hym in the beft maner that myghte be had or
 goten for gold or fyluer / ¶ And thenne kynge Marke fente
 vnto fir Marhaus / and dyd hym to wete that a better born mā
 than he was hym felf fhold fyghte with hym / and his name 5
 is fir Tryftram de lyonas goten of kynge Melyodas / and bo-
 rne of kynge Markes fyfter / Thenne was fir Marhaus glad
 and blythe that he fhold fyghte with fuche a gentylman / and
 foo by the affente of kynge Mark and of fyr Marhaus they
 lete ordeyne that they fhold fyghte within an Iland nyghe 10
 fyr Marhaus fhyppes / and foo was fyr Tryftram putte in to
 a veffel both his hors and he and all that to hym longed bo-
 the for his body and for his hors / Syre Tryftram lacked no
 thyng / And whan kynge Marke and his Barons of Cor-
 newaile beheld how yonge fyr Tryftram departed with fuche 15
 a caryage to fyghte for the ryghte of Cornewaile / there was
 neyther man ne woman of worfhip but they wepte to fee and
 vnderftande foo yonge a knyght to leoparde hym felf for their
 ryghte /

¶ Capitulum tertium

SOo to fhorten this tale whan fyr Tryftram was arry- 20
 ued within the Iland / he loked to the ferther fyde / &
 there he fawe at an anker fyxe fhippes nyghe to the land / and
 vnder the fhadowe of the fhippes vpon the land / there houed
 the noble knyghte fyr Marhaus of Irland / Thenne fyr Tryf-
 tram commaunded his feruaunt gouernail to brynge his hors 25
 to the land and drefse his harneis at al manere of ryghtes /
 And thenne whan he had foo done / he mounted vpon his hors
 And whan he was in his fadel wel apparailled / & his fhelde
 drefsid vpon his fholder / Tryftram asked Gouernayle where
 is this knyghte that I fhall haue adoo with alle / Syre fayd 30
 Gouernaile / fee ye hym not / I wende ye had fene hym yonder
 he houeth vnder the vmbre of his fhippes on horfbak with his
 fpere in his hand and his fheld vpon his fholder / That is
 trouthe fayd the noble knyghte fyre Tryftram now I fee hym
 wel ynou3 Thenne he commaunded his feruaunt Gouernayle 35

to goo to his veffaile ageyne / and commaunde me vnto myne
 eme kynge Marke / and praye hym / yf that I be flayn in this
 bataille for to entere my body as hym femed best / & as for me
 lete hym wete I will neuer yelde me for cowardyse / and yf I
 5 be flayne and flee not / thenne they haue loft no truage for me
 And yf foo be that I flee or yelde me as recreaūt / bydde myn
 eme neuer berye me in Cryften beryels / And vpon thy lyf fa-
 id fyr Tryfram to Gouvernayle / come thou not nyghe this I-
 land tyl that thou fee me ouercomen or flayne / or els that I
 10 wyne yonder knyght / foo eyther departed from other fore we-
 pynge

¶ Capitulum septimum

ANd thenne fyr Marhaus auyfed fyr Tryfram and fa-
 id thus / yonge knyght fyr Tryfram what doft thou he-
 re / me fore repenteth of thy courage / for wete thou wel I haue
 15 ben affayed / and the best knyghtes of this land haue ben af-
 fayed of my hand / And also I haue matched with the best kn-
 yghtes of the world / and therfor by my counceille retorne a-
 geayne vnto thy veffaile / And faire knyght and wel preued
 knyght faid fyre Tryfram thou fhalt wel wete I maye not
 20 forsake the in this quarel / for I am for thy sake made knyght
 And thou fhalt wel wete that I am a kynges sone born and
 goten vpon a quene / and fuche promyse I haue made att my
 neuews request and myn owne fekyng that I shalle fyghte
 with the vnto the vttermest / and delyuer Cornewaile from
 25 the old truage / And also wete thou wel fyr Marhaus / that
 this is the gretteft cause that thou courageft me to haue adoo
 with the / For thou art called one of the moost renoumed kn-
 yghtes of the world / and by cause of that noyse and fame /
 that thou haft / thou gyueft me courage to haue adoo with the /
 30 for neuer yet was I preued with good knyghte / And fy-
 then I toke the ordre of knyghthode this day / I am wel plea-
 syd that I maye haue adoo with fo good a knyght as thou
 arte / And now wete thou wel fyr Marhaus that I caste me
 to gete worship on thy body / And yf that I be not preued / I
 35 trust to god that I shal be worshipfully preued vpon thy bo-
 dy / and to delyuer the countrey of Cornewaile for euer fro al

maner of truage from Irland for euer / Whanne fyr Marhaus
had herde hym faye what he wold / he faide thenne thus ageyn
Fair Knyght fythen it is foo that thou casteft to wynne wor-
ship of me / I lete the wete / worship may thou none lefe by me
yf thou mayft ftande me thre ftrokes / for I lete the wete / for 5
my noble dedes preued and fene / Kyng Arthur made me kny-
ghte of the table round / Thenne they beganne to feutre theyre
fperes / and they mette foo fyerfly to gyders / that they smote
eyther other doune / bothe hors and all / But fir Marhaus smote
fyr Tryftram a grete wounde in the fyde with his fpere / & 10
thenne they auoyded their horses / and pulled oute their fwer-
des / and threwe their fheldes afore them / And thenne they laf-
shed to gyders as men that were wyld and couragious / And
whan they hadde ftryken foo to gyder longe / thenne they lefte
her ftrokes / and foyned at their brethes and vyfours / & when 15
they fawe that that myght not preuaile them / thēne they hurt-
led to gyders lyke rammes to bere eyther other down / thus they
fought ftylle more than half a day / and eyder were wounded
paffyng fore / that the blood ranne doune freffhly fro them vp-
on the ground / By thenne fyr Tryftram waxed more freffher / 20
than fyr Marhaus and better wynded and bygger / and with a
myghty ftroke he smote fyr Marhaus vpon the helme fuche a
buffet that hit went thorou his helme / and thorou the coyfe of
ftele and thorou the brayn pan / and the fwerd ftak foo fast in
the helme and in his brayn pan that fir Tryftram pulled thry- 25
es at his fwerd or euer he myght pulle it out from his hede / &
there Marhaus felle down on his knees the edge of Triftrams
fwerd left in his brayne pan / And fodenly fyr Marhaus rofe
grouelynge / and threwe his fwerd and his fhelde from hym /
and foo ranne to his shippes and fledde his waye / and fir trif- 30
tram hadde euer his fhelde and his fwerd / And whan fir Trif-
tram fawe fir Marhaus withdrawe hym / he faid A fir knyght
of the roūd table why withdraweft thou the / thou doft thy felfe
and thy kyn grete fhamme / for I am but a yong Knyghte / or
now I was neuer preued / and rather than I fhold withdra- 35
we me from the / I had rather be hewen in C pyeces / Syr mar-
haus anfuerd no worde but yede his way fore gronynge / Well
fir knyght faid fir Triftram I promyfe the thy fuerd and thy

sheld shal be myn / and thy sheld shalle I were in al places
where I ryde on myn aduentures and in the fyghte of kyng
Arthur and alle the round table

¶ Capitulum viii

5 **N**on fir Marhaus and his felaufship departed in to Ir-
land / And as soone as he came to the kynge his bro-
der / he lete ferche his woundes / ¶ And whan his hede
was ferched / a pyece of fyre Trystrams fwerd was founden
therin / and myghte neuer be had oute of his hede for no furge-
ons / and soo he dyed of fyr Trystrams fwerd / and that py-
10 ece of the fwerd the quene his fyfter kepthe hit for euer wyth
her / for she thoughte to be reuengyd and she myghte / ¶ Now
torne we ageyne vnto fyr Trystram that was fore wounded /
and ful fore bled that he myzt not within a lytel whyle when
he had take cold vnnethe stere hym of his lymmes / and thē-
15 ne he sette hym doune softely vpon a lytel hylle / and bledde
fast / Thenne anone came Gouvernaile his man with his vessel
And the kynge and his barons came with procession ageynst
hym / And whan he was come vnto the land / Kynge Marke
toke hym in his armes / and the kynge and fir Dynas the fe-
20 nescal ladde fyr Tristram in to the castel of Tyntygail / And
thenne was he ferched in the best maner / and leid in his bedde /
And whan kynge Marke sawe his woundes / he wepte hertely
and soo dyd alle his lordes / So god me help said kyng Mark
I wolde not for alle my landes that my neuewe dyed / Soo
25 fyr Trystram laye there a moneth and more / and euer he was
lyke to deye of that stroke that fir Marhaus smote hym fyrst
with the spere / For as the Frensshe book faith / the speres hede
was enuenymed that fyr Trystram myghte not be hole / Then-
ne was kynge Mark and alle his barons passynghe heuy / For
30 they demed none other / but that fyr Trystram shold not reco-
uer / Thenne the kynge lete sende after alle manere of leches &
furgens bothe vnto men and wymmen / and there was none /
that wold behote hym the lyf / Thenne came there a lady that
was a ryght wyse lady / & she said playnly vnto kyng mark
35 and to fir Trystram and to alle his barons that he shold neuer

be hole / but yf sire Trystram wente in the same countrey that
the venym came fro / and in that countrey shold he be holpen
or els neuer / Thus said the lady vnto the Kynge / whan ky-
nge Marke vnderstood that / he lete purueye for fyr Trystram
a faire vessel / wel vytailled / and therin was put fyr Tryf- 5
tram and gouernail with hym / and sir Triftram toke his harp
with hym / and soo he was putte in to the fee to fayle in to Ir-
land / and soo by good fortune he arryued vp in Irland e-
uen fast by a castel where the Kynge and the quene was / and
at his arryuayl he sat and harped in his bedde a mery lay fu- 10
che one herd they neuer none in Irland afore that tyme /

¶ And whan it was told the Kyng and the quene of fuche
a Knyght that was fuche an harper / anone the Kyng sente for
hym / and lete ferche his woundes / and thenne asked hym his
name / then he anfuerd I am of the countrey of Lyonas / & 15
my name is Tramtryft that thus was wounded in a bataille
as I fought for a ladyes ryght / So god me help said kyng
Anguysshe ye shal haue al the helpe in this land that ye may
haue here / But I lete you wete in Cornewaile I had a gre-
te losse / as euer hadde kynge / for there I lost the best knyghte 20
of the world / his name was Marhaus a ful noble knyghte
and Knyght of the table round / and there he told fyr Trystrā
wherefore fyr Marhaus was slayne / Syr Trystram made sem-
blaunt as he had ben fory / and better knewe he how hit was
than the kynge 25

¶ Capitulum ix

THenne the kynge for grete fauoure maade Tramtryft
to be put in his daughters ward and kepyng by cau-
se she was a noble surgeon / And whan she had ferched hym /
she fond in the bottome of his wound that therin was poyson /
And soo she heled hym within a whyle / and therfore Tramtrift 30
cast grete loue to la beale Ifoud / for she was at that tyme the
fairest mayde and lady of the worlde / And there Tramtryft
lernerd her to harpe / and she beganne to haue grete fantasye
vnto hym / And at that tyme sir Palamydes the farafyn was
in that countrey and wel cheryssed with the kynge and the 35

quene / And euery day fyr Palamydes drewe vnto la beale
 Ifoud / and profered her many yestes / for he loued her passy-
 ngly wel / Al that Aspyed Tramtryft / and ful wel knewe
 he fyr Palamydes for a noble knyght and a myghty man /
 5 And wete ye wel fyr Tramtryft had grete despyte at fyr pa-
 lomydes / for la beale Ifoud told Tramtryft that Palamydes
 was in wylle to be crystened for her sake / Thus was ther gre-
 te enuy betwixe Tramtryft and fyr Palamydes / Thenne hit
 befelle that kyng Anguyfse lete crye a grete Iustes and a
 10 grete turnement for a lady that was called the lady of the la-
 undes / and she was nyghe cofyn vnto the kyng / And what
 man wanne her / thre dayes after he shold wedde her and ha-
 ue alle her landes / This crye was made in England / walys
 Scotland and also in Fraunce and in Bretayne / It befelle
 15 vpon a day la beale Ifoud came vnto fyr Tramtryft and told
 hym of this turnement / he anfuerd and sayd fayr lady I am
 but a feble knyghte / and but late I had ben dede / had not
 your good ladyship ben / Now fayre lady what wold ye I
 shold doo in this matere / wel ye wote my lady that I maye
 20 not Iuste / A Tramtryft said la beale Ifoud why wille ye
 not haue ado at that turnement / wel I wote fyr Palamydes
 shal be there / and to doo what he maye / And therfore Tram-
 tryft I pray you for to be there / for els fyr Palamydes is ly-
 ke to wyne the degree / Madame said Tramtrist as for that /
 25 it may be foo / for he is a proued knyght / and I am but a
 yong knyght and late made / and the fyrst batail that I dyd
 it myshapped me to be foore wounded as ye see / But and I
 wyft ye wold be my better lady / at that turnement I will be
 fo that ye wille kepe my counceille and lete no creature haue
 30 knoueleche that I shalle Iuste but your self / and suche as ye
 wil to kepe your counceil / my poure persone shal I leoparde
 there for your sake that parauentur sir Palamydes shal kno-
 we whan that I come / Therto said la beale Ifoud do your best
 & as I can said la beale Ifoud I shal purueye hors and ar-
 35 mour for you at my deuyse / as ye will foo be hit said fyr Trā-
 trist I wille be at your cōmaundement / So at the day of Ius-
 tes / ther cam sir Palamydes with a black sheld / & he ouerthrew
 many knyghtes that alle the peple had merueylle of hym /

For he putte to the werse fyr Gawayne / Gaherys / Agrauayn
 Bagdemagus / kay / Dodyus le faueage / Sagramor le desy-
 rus / Gumret le petyte / and Gryflet le fyse de dieu / Alle these
 the fyrste daye fyr Palamydes strake doune to the erthe / And
 thenne alle maner of knyghtes were adred of sir Palamydes 5
 and many called hym the knyght with the black shelde / Soo
 that day fyre Palamydes had grete worshyp / ¶ Thenne cam
 kynge Anguysshe vnto Tramtryst / and asked hym why he
 wold not lufte / Syr he said I was but late hurte / and as
 yet I dare not auenture me / ¶ Thenne came there the same 10
 squyer that was sente from the kynges doughter of Fraunce /
 vnto fyr Trystram / And whanne he had aspyed fyre Triftrā
 he felle flat to his feete / Alle that aspyed la Bele Ifoud /
 what curtosye the squyer made vnto fyr Trystram / And ther-
 with al sodenly fyr Trystram ranne vnto his squyer whos na- 15
 me was Heles le renoumes / and praid hym hertely in noo
 wyse to telle his name / Syr said Heles I wille not discouer
 your name / but yf ye commaunde me

¶ Capitulum x

Thenne fyr Trystram asked hym what he dyd in those
 countreyes / fyr he sayd / I came hyder with fyr Gawa- 20
 yn for to be made knyght / And yf it please you of your han-
 des that I may be made knyghte / Awaite vpon me as to morn
 secretly / and in the feld I shal make you a knyght / Thenne
 had la beale Ifoud grete suspecyon vnto Tramtryst that he
 was somme man of worship proued / and ther with she com- 25
 forted her self / and cast more loue vnto hym than she had do-
 ne tofore ¶ And soo on the morne fyr Palamydes maade
 hym redy to come in to the feld as he dyd the fyrst day / And
 there he smote doune the kynge with the C knyghtes and the
 kynge of Scottes / ¶ Thenne had la beale Ifoud ordeyned 30
 and wel arayed fyr Trystram in whyte hors and harneis /
 And ryght soo she lete putte hym oute at a preuy posterne / &
 soo he came in to the feld as it had ben a bryght angel / And
 anone fyr Palamydes aspyed hym / and ther with he feutrid
 a spere vnto fyr Tramtrist / and he ageyne vnto hym / And 35

there fyr Tryftram smote doune fyr Palamydes vnto the erth
 And thenne there was a grete noyse of people / some sayd / fyre
 Palamydes hadde a falle / some said the knyght with the blak
 fhelde had a falle / And wete you wel la beale Ifoud was
 5 passyng gladde / And thenne sire Gawayne and his felawes
 ix had merueille what knyghte it myght be that had smyten
 doune fyr Palamydes / Thenne wold there none Iuste with
 Tramtryst / but alle that there were forfoke hym / moost & lest /
 Thenne fyr Tryftram made Heles a knyght / and caused hym
 10 to put hym self forthe / and dyd ryght wel that day / So af-
 ter fyr Heles held hym with fyr Tryftram / And whan fyre
 Palamydes had receyued this falle / wete ye wel that he was
 fore ashamed / And as pryuely as he myght / he withdrewe
 hym oute of the feld / Alle that aspyed fyre Tryftram / and
 15 lyghtly he rode after fyre Palamydes and ouertoke hym /
 and badde hym torne / for better he wold assaye hym / or euer
 he departed / Thenne fyr Palamydes torned hym and eyther
 lashed at other with their swerdes / But at the fyrste stroke
 fyre Tryftram smote doune Palamydes / and gaf hym fuche a
 20 stroke vpon the hede that he felle to the erthe / Soo thenne Trif-
 tram badde yelde hym / and doo his commaundement or els he
 wold flee hym / whan fyre Palamydes beheld his countena-
 unce / he dredde his buffets foo / that he graunted al his askyn-
 ges / Wel said / said sir Triftram / this shalle be your charge /
 25 Fyrst vpon payne of your lyf that ye forsake my lady la be-
 ale Ifoud / and in no maner wyse that ye drawe not to her /
 Also this twelue moneth and a day / that ye bere none armou-
 ur nor none harneis of werre / ¶ Now promyse me this or here
 fhalt thou dye / Allas faide Palamydes for euer I am asha-
 30 med / ¶ Thenne he sware as fyr Tryftram hadde commaunded
 hym / Thenne for despyte and anger / fyre Palamydes cutte of
 his harneis / and threwe them awaye / And soo fyr Tryftram
 torned ageyne to the Castel where was la beale Ifoud / and
 by the weye he mette with a damoyfel that asked after fyre
 35 launcelot that wanne the dolorous gard worshipfully / & this
 damoyfel asked sire Triftram what he was / For it was tolde
 her that it was he that smote doune fyr Palamydes / by whom
 the x knyghtes of kynge Arthurs were smyten doune /

Thenne the damoyfel prayd fyr Trystram to telle her what he was / And whether that he were fyr Launcelot du lake / for she demyd that there was no knyght in the world myghte do suche dedes of armes / but yf it were Launcelot / Fayre damoyfel sayd fyr Trystram wete ye wel that I am not fyr launcelot 5 for I was neuer of suche prowesse / but in god is al that he maye make me as good a knyght as the good knyght sir launcelot / Now gentyl knyght said she / put vp thy vyfure / & whan she beheld his vyfage / she thougt she sawe neuer a better mās vyfage / nor a better farynge knyght / And thenne whan the 10 damoyfel knewe certaynly that he was not fyre launcelot / thenne she took her leue and departed from hym / And thenne fyre Trystram rode pryuely vnto the posterne where kepte hym la beale Ifoud / and there she made hym good chere and thanked god of his good spede / Soo anone within a whyle 15 the kyng and the quene vnderstood that hit was Tramtryft that smote doune fyre Palamydes / thenne was he moche made of more than he was before.

¶ Capitulum xi

THus was sir Tramtryft longe there wel cheryfshed / with the kyng and the quene / and namely with la 20 beale Ifoud / So vpon a daye / the quene and la beale Ifoud made a bayne for fyre Tramtryft / And whan he was in his bayne / the quene and Ifoud her doughter romed vp & doune in the chamber / and there whyles Gouvernail and Helles attendyd vpon Tramtryft / & the quene beheld his fwerd 25 there as it laye vpon his bedde / And thēne by vnhap the quene drewe oute his fwerd / and beheld it a longe whyle / and bothe they thoughte it a passyng fayre fwerd / but within a foote and an half of the poynte there was a grete pyece there of oute broken of the edge / And whan the quene aspyed that 30 gap in the fwerd / she remembryd her of a pyece of a fwerd / that was foude in the brayne pan of fyre Marhaus the good knyght that was her broder / Allas thenne said she vnto her doughter la beale Ifoud / this is the same traytour knyght that slewe my broder thyn eme / Whanne Ifoud herd her faye 35

foo / she was passyng fore abasshed / for passyng wel she loued
 Tramtryft / and ful wel she knewe the cruelnes of her moder
 the quene / Anon there with alle the quene went vnto her owne
 chamber / and foughte her cofre / and there she toke oute the
 5 pyece of the swerd that was pulled out of syr Marhaus hede
 after that he was dede / And thenne she ranne with that pyece
 of yron to the swerd that laye vpon the bedde / And whanne
 she putte that pyece of stele and yron vnto the swerd / hit was
 as mete as it myghte be / whan it was newe broken / And thē-
 10 ne the quene gryped that swerd in her hand fyerfly / & with
 alle her myghte she ranne streyghte vpon Tramtryft where he
 sat in his bayne / And there she hadde ryued hym thorou hadde
 not syr Heles gotten her in his armes / and pulled the swerd
 from her / and els she hadde threst him thorou / Thenne whanne
 15 she was lettyd of her euyl wylle / she ranne to the kynge An-
 guyssh her husband and sayde on her knees / O my lord here
 haue ye in your hous that traitour knyght that slewe my bro-
 der and your seruaut that noble knyght syr Marhaus / Who
 is that said kynge Anguyshe and where is he / Syr she said
 20 hit is syr Tramtryft the same knyght that my doughter helyd
 Allas said the kynge therfore am I ryght heuy / for he is a
 ful noble knyght as euer I sawe in felde / ¶ But I charge
 you said the kyng to the quene that ye haue not ado with that
 knyght / but lete me dele with hym / Thenne the kynge went in
 25 to the chambre vnto syr Tramtryft / and thenne was he gone
 vnto his chambre / and the kynge fond hym al redy armed to
 mounte vpon his hors / Whanne the kynge sawe hym al redy
 armed to goo vnto horsbak / the kynge said nay Tramtryft hit
 wille not auaille to compare the ageynst me / But thus moche
 30 I shalle doo for my worship and for thy loue in soo moch as
 thou arte within my courte / hit were no worship for me to flee
 the / Therefore vpon this condycyon I wille gyue the leue for
 to departe from this courte in saufte / so thou wilt telle me who
 was thy fader / and what is thy name / and yf thou slewe syr
 35 Marhaus my broder

¶ Capitulum xij

SYr said Trystram now I shalle telle you alle the tro-
uthe / my faders name is sir Melyodas kynge of Lyo-
nas / & my moder hyȝt Elyzabeth that was sifter vnto
kynges Marke of Cornewaile / & my moder dyed of me in the
foreste / And by cause therof she commaunded or she dyed that 5
whan I were crystened / they shold crystene me Tcystram / &
by cause I wold not be knowen in this countrey I turned my
name and lete me calle Tramtryst / & for the truage of Corne-
wayle I fought for myn emes sake / & for the ryght of Cor-
newaile that ye had posseded many yeres / And wete ye well 10
said Trystram vnto the kynge I dyd the bataille for the loue
of myn vnkel kynge Marke / and for the loue of the countreye
of Cornewaile / and for to encrease myn honoure / For that sa-
me day that I fought with sir Marhaus I was made knyȝt
And neuer or than dyd I no bataille with no knyght / & fro 15
me he went alyue & lefte his sheld & his fuerd behynde / so god
me helpe said the kyng I may not say but ye dyd as a kny-
ght shold / & it was your part to doo for your quarel / & to en-
crease your worship as a knyght shold / how be it I may not
mayntene you in this countrey with my worship onles that I 20
shold displease my barons & my wyf / & her kyn / Syr said Tr-
ystram I thanke you of your good lordship that I haue had
with you here / and the grete goodenes my lady your doughter
hath shewed me / & therfor said sir Tristram it may so happen
that ye shalle wyne more by my lyf than by my dethe / for in 25
the parties of Englonde it may happen I may doo you seruyse
at some season that ye shal be glad that euer ye shewed me yo-
ur good lordship / ¶ With more I promyse you as I am true
knyȝt that in all places I shal be my lady your douȝters fer-
uaunt / & knyȝt in ryght & in wrong / & I shal neuer fayle her 30
to doo as moche as a knyght maye doo

¶ Also I byseche your good grace that I may take my leue
at my lady your doughter and at alle the Barons and kny-
ghtes / I wille wel said the kynge / ¶ Thenne sire Tristram
wente vnto la beale Isoud / and toke his leue of her / And 35
thenne he tolde her all what he was and how he had chaunged
his name by cause he wold not be knowen / & hou a lady told
hym he þ^t shold neuer be hole tyl he cam in to this couȝtre where

the poyson was made / where thorou I was nere my dethe had
 not your ladyship ben / O gentyl knyght said la beale Ifoud
 ful wo am I of thy departynge / for I fawe neuer man that
 I oughte foo good wille to / and there with all she wepte her-
 5 tely / Madame said fire Trystram ye shalle vnderstande that
 my name is fir Trystram de lyones gotten of kyng Melyodas
 and borne of his quene / And I promyse you feythfully that
 I shal be alle the dayes of my lyf your knyghte / Gramercy fa-
 id La beale Ifoud / and I promyse you there ageynste that I
 10 shalle not be maryed this feuen yeres but by your assent / and
 to whome that ye wille I shalle be maryed to / hym wyll I
 haue / and he wille haue me yf ye wil consente / And thenne
 fyre Trystram gaf her a rynge and she gaf hym another / and
 ther with he departed fro her / leuyng her / makynge grete dole
 15 and lamentacion / and he streyghte wente vnto the Courte a-
 monge alle the Barons / and there he took his leue at moost
 and leest / and openly he said amonge them all / Faire lordes
 now it is foo that I muste departe / Yf there be ony man here
 that I haue offended vnto / or that ony man be with me gre-
 20 ued / lete complayne hym here afore me or that euer I depart
 and I shal amende it vnto my power / And yf there be ony
 that wil profer me wronge or say of me wrong / or shame be-
 hynde my bak / saye hit now or neuer / and here is my body to
 make it good body ageynst body / And alle they stood styll /
 25 ther was not one that wold saye one word / yet were there
 some knyghtes that were of the quenes blood and of fire Mar-
 haus blood / but they wold not medle with hym /

¶ Capitulum xiii

Soo fir Triftram departed and toke the fee / & with good
 wynde he aryued vp at Tyntagyl in Cornewaile / &
 30 whan kyng Mark was hole in his prosperite ther cam
 tydynges that fir Triftram was arryued and hole of his wo-
 undes / therof was kynge marke passyng glad / & foo were alle
 the barons / & whan he fawe his tyme he rode vnto his fader ky-
 ng melyodas / & there he had al the chere that the kyng & the
 35 quene coude make hym / And thenne largely Kyng Melyo-
 das and his quene departed of their landes and goodes to fire
 Trystram /

¶ Thenne by the lycence of Kyng

Melyodas his fader he retorned ageyne vnto the court of kyng Mark / and there he lyued in grete ioye long tyme / vntyl at the laste there befelle a Ialoufyre and an vnkyndenes betwyxe kyng Marke and sir Triftram / for they loued bothe one lady / And she was an erles wyf that hyght fyre Segwarydes / And this lady loued fyre Tryfram passyngly wel / And he loued her ageyne for she was a passyng fayr lady / And that aspyed sir Triftram wel / ¶ Thenne kyng Mark vnderstood that and was Ialous / for kyng Marke loued her passyngly wel / Soo it felle vpon a day / this lady sent a dw- 10
erf vnto sir Triftram and badde hym as he loued her / that he wold be with her the nyzt nexte folowyng / Also she charged you that ye come not to her but yf ye be wel armed / for her lord was called a good knyghte ¶ Syre Tryfram answered to the dwerf / recommaunde me vnto my lady / and telle 15
her I wille not fayle but I wille be with her the terme that she hath sette me / and with this ansuer the dwerf departed / And kyng Marke aspyed that the dwerf was with fyre Tryfram vpon message from Segwarydes wyf / thenne kyng Marke sent for the dwerf / And whanne he was comen / he 20
maade the dwerf by force to telle hym alle why and wherfore that he came on message from fyre Triftram

¶ Now said kyng Marke goo where thou wilt / and vpon payne of dethe that thou saye no word that thou spakest with me / soo the dwerf departed from the kyng / ¶ And that same 25
nyghte that the steuen was sette betwixt Segwarydes wyfe & fyr Tryfram kyng Marke armed hym / and made hym redy and took two knyghtes of his councelle with hym / and soo he rode afore for to abyde by the waye / for to awayte vpon sir Tryfram / ¶ And as fyre Tryfram came rydyng vpon hys 30
waye with his spere in his hand / kyng Marke came hurtlyng vpon hym with his two knyghtes fodenly / And alle thre smote hym with theyre speres / and kyng Marke hurte fyre Tryfram on the brest ryght fore / And thenne fyre Triftram feutryd his spere / and smote his vnkel kyng Marke 35
soo fore that he raffhyd hym to the erthe / and bryfed hym that he laye styll in a fwoune / and longe hit was or euer

he myghte welde hym felf / And thenne he ranne to the one knyght / and efte to the other / and smote hem to the cold erthe / that they laye styll / And ther with alle fir Triftram rode forth the fore wounded to the lady / and fonde her abydyng hym
5 at a pofterne

¶ Capitulum xiiii

ANd there she welcomed hym fayre / and eyther halfed other in armes / and foo she lete putte vp his hors in the beft wyfe / and thenne she vnarmed hym / And foo they fouped lyghtely and wente to bedde with grete ioye and
10 plefaunce / and foo in his ragyng he took no kepe of his grene wound that kynge Marke had gyuen hym / And foo fyr Triftram bebled both the ouer fhete and the nether & pelowes / and hede fhete / and within a whyle ther came one afore that warned her that her lord was nere hand within a bowe draughte
15 Soo she made fir Tryfram to aryfe / and foo he armed hym / and tooke his hors and fo departed / By thenne was come fegwarydes her lord / and whan he fond her bedde troubled & broken and wente nere and beheld it by candel lyghte / thenne he fawe that there had layne a wounded knyght / A fals traitrefse thenne he faid / why haft thou bitrayed me / and there
20 with alle he fwange oute a fwerd and faid / but yf thou telle me who hath ben here / here thou fhalt dye / A my lord mercy fayd the lady / and helde vp her handes / fayeng / flee me not / and I fhall telle you alle who hath ben here / Telle anone faid fegwarydes to me alle the trouthe / Anone for drede she faide here
25 was fir Tryfram with me / and by the way as he came to me ward / he was fore wounded / A fals traitrefse faid fegwarides where is he become / fir she faid he is armed and departed on hors bak not yet hens half a myle / ye faye wel faid fegwarydes
30 thenne he armed hym lyghtly / and gate his hors and rode after fyre Triftram that rode freyght waye vnto Tyntagyl / And within a whyle he ouertoke fire Triftram / And thenne he badde hym torne fals traitour knyghte / and fyr Triftram anon torned hym ageynft hym / And there with al fegwarides smote
35 te fyr Tryfram with a fpere that it alle to brafte / ¶ And

thenne he swange oute his swerd / and smote fast at fyr Trif-
 tram / Syre knyght said fyre Trystram I counceyle you that
 ye smyte no more how be it for the wronges that I haue do-
 ne you / I wille forbere you as longe as I maye / ¶ Nay fa-
 yd Segwarides that shalle not be / for outhur thou shalt dye 5
 or I / Thenne fyre Triftram drewe oute his swerd and hurt-
 led his hors vnto hym fyrefly / and thorou the waste of the
 body he smote fyre Segwarides that he felle to the erthe in a
 fwounne / And soo fyre Triftram departed and lefte hym there
 And soo he rode vnto Tyntagil and tooke his lodgyng secrete 10
 tely for he wold not be knowen that he was hurte

¶ Also sir Segwarides men rode after theyr maister / whome
 they fond lyenge in the feld fore wounded / and brouȝt hym
 home on his shelde / and there he lay longe or that he were ho-
 le / but at the laste he recouerd ¶ Also kynge Marke 15
 wold not be aknowen of that sir Triftram and he hadde mette
 that nyght / And as for fyre Trystram he knewe not that ky-
 nge Marke had mette with hym / And soo the kynges astau-
 ce came to sir Triftram to comforte hym as he laye seke in his
 bedde / But as longe as kynge Marke lyued / he loued neuer 20
 fyre Trystram after that / though there was fayre speche / loue
 was there none / And thus it past many wekes and dayes / &
 alle was forgyuen and forgotten / For fyre Segwarydes durste
 not haue ado with sir Triftram by cause of his noble prowesse
 And also by cause he was neuewe vnto kynge Marke / ther- 25
 fore he lete it ouer fflyp / for he that hath a pryuy hurte is loth
 to haue a shame outward

¶ Capitulum xv /

THenne hit befelle vpon a daye that the good knyghte
 Bleoberys de ganys broder to Blamore de ganys / &
 nyghe cofyn vnto the good knyght sir launcelot du la- 30
 ke / This Bleoberys came vnto the courte of kynge Marke / &
 there he asked of kynge Marke a bone to gyue hym what yest
 that he wold aske in his courte

¶ Whanne the kyng herd hym aske soo / he merueilled of hys

askynge / but by caufe he was a knyghte of the round table / &
 of a grete renomme / kynge Marke graunted hym his hole af-
 kynge / thenne faide fire Bleoberys I wille haue the fayrest
 lady in your Courte that me lyft to chese / I maye not fay nay
 5 sayd kynge marke / Now chese at youre aduenture

And soo fir Bleoberys dyd chese fyr segwarydes wyf / and to-
 ke her by the hand and soo wente his waye with her / and soo
 he tooke his hors and gart fette her behynde his squyer and
 rode vpon his way / When fir segwarydes herd telle that his la-
 10 dy was gone with a knyght of kynge Arthurs courte /

¶ Thenne he armed hym and rode after that knyght for to re-
 scowe his lady / soo whan Bleoberys was gone with this la-
 dy / kyng Mark and all the courte was wroth that she was a-
 way / thenne were there certayne ladyes that knewe that there
 15 was grete loue bitwene fir Tristram and her / and also that la-
 dy loued fir Tristram aboue alle other knyghtes / Thenne there
 was one lady that rebuked fir Tristram in the horryblest wy-
 fe / and called hym coward knyghte / that he wold for shame
 of his knyghthode see a lady soo shamefully be taken awaye /
 20 fro his vnkels courte / But she ment that eyther of hem hadde
 loued other with entiere hert / But fire Tristram anfuerd her
 thus / Faire lady it is not my parte to haue adoo in suche ma-
 ters whyle her lord and husband is present here / And yf hit
 hadde ben that her lord hadde not ben here in this courte / thenne
 25 for the worship of this courte perauentur / I wold haue ben her
 champyon / And yf so be / fir segwarides spede not wel / it may
 happen that I wille speke with that good knyght / or euer he
 passe from this countrey / Thenne within a whyle came one of
 fir segwarydes squyers / and told in the court that fir segwari-
 30 des was beten fore and wounded to the poynte of dethe / as he
 wold haue rescowed his lady / fir Bleoberis ouerthrewe hym
 and fore hath wounded hym / Thenne was kynge marke heuy
 therof / and alle the courte / When fire Tristram herd of this / he
 was affamed and fore greued / And thenne was he soone ar-
 35 med and on horfbak / & gouernaile his seruauant bare his shelde
 and spere / And soo as fire Tristram rode fast / he mette with fir
 Andret his cofyn that by the commaundement of kynge Ma-
 rke was sente to brynge forth & euer it laye in his power / ij /

knyghtes of Arthurs Courte that rode by the countrey to feke
 their aduentures / Whan fyr Trystram sawe sir Andret / he as-
 ked hym what tydynges / Soo god me helpe said fyre An-
 dret / ther was neuer worfe with me / for here by the commaun-
 dement of kynge Mark I was sente to fetch two knyghtes of 5
 kynge Arthurs courte / and that one bete me / and wounded
 me / and sette nought by my meffage / Faire cofyn said sir trif-
 tram ryde on your way / and yf I may mete them / it may hap-
 pen I shal reunge you / So fyr Andret rode in to Cornewaile
 And fyr Triftram rode after the two knyghtes the whiche one 10
 hyght Sagramor le defyrus / & the other hyght Dodynas le
 faueage /

¶ Capitulum xvi /

THenne within a whyle fyr Trystram sawe hem afore
 hym two lykely knyghtes / Sir said Gouvernaile vnto
 his maister / fir I wold counceile you nought to haue 15
 ado with hem / for they ben two preued knyghtes of Arthurs
 Courte / As for that said fyr Trystram haue ye no doute / but
 I wille haue adoo with hem to encrease my worship / for it is
 many daye fythen I dyd ony dedes of armes / doo as ye lyst
 said Gouvernaile / and there with alle anone fyr Trystram af- 20
 ked them / from whens they came / and wheder they wold / and
 what they dyd in tho marches / Syre Sagramore loked vpon
 fyre Triftram / and hadde scorne of his wordes / & asked hym
 ageyne / Fair knyghte be ye a knyght of Cornewaile / where by
 aske ye hit said fir Triftram / For it is feldom sene said fir Sa- 25
 gramore that ye Cornysfhe knyghtes ben valyaunte men of
 armes / For within these two houres there mette vs one of you
 cornysfhe knyghtes / and grete wordes he spak / and anon with
 lytel myght he was leyd to the erthe / And as I trowe sayd
 fir Sagramore ye shal haue the same handfel that he hadde 30
 Faire lordes said fire Triftram it may soo happen that I maye
 better withstande than he dyd / and whether ye will or nyl / I
 wil haue ado with you / by cause he was my cofyn that ye bete
 And therefore here do your best / & wete ye wel but yf ye quyte
 you the better here vpon this ground / one knyzt of cornewaile 35
 shal bete you both / Whan fire Dodynas le faueage herd hym
 faye soo he gatte a spere in his hand and said / fire knyghte

thy felf / And thenne they departed and came to gyders as it
 had ben thonder / And fyr Dodynas spere braft in fonder / but
 fyr Tryfram smote hym with a more myght / that he smote
 hym clene ouer the hors croupe that nyghe he hadde broken his
 5 neck / Whanne fyre Sagramour fawe his felawe haue fuche a
 falle / he merueylled what knyzt he myght be / And he dresseth
 his spere with alle his myght / and fyr Tryfram ageynst hym
 and they came to gyders as the thonder / and ther fir Trifram
 smote fyr Sagramore a stronge buffet that he bare his hors &
 10 hym to the erthe / and in the fallyng he brake his thygh / whan
 this was done / fyr Tryfram asked hem / Fayre knyghtes will
 ye ony more / Be there no bygger knyzt in the courte of ky-
 nge Arthur / it is to you shame to say of vs knyzt of Corne-
 wayle dishonoure / for it may happen a Cornyshe knyght may
 15 matche you / that is trouthe said fyr Sagramore / that haue we
 wel preued / but I requyre the sayd fyre Sagramore telle
 vs youre ryght name by the feythe and trouthe that ye owe to
 the hyghe ordre of knyghthode / ye charge me with a grete thy-
 nge said fyr Tryfram / and sythen ye lyst to wete hit / ye shal
 20 knowe and vnderstande that my name is fyr Tryfram de ly-
 onas kynge Melyodas fone / and neuewe vnto kynge Marke
 Thenne were they two knyghtes fayne / that they had mette
 with Tryfram / and foo they praid hym to abyde in their fela-
 uship / Nay said fyre Trifram / for I must haue ado with one of
 25 your felawes / his name is fyr Bleoberys de ganyys / god spe-
 de you wel said fyr Sagramore and Dodynas / Syre Tryf-
 fram departed and rode on ward on his waye / And thenne
 was he ware before hym in a valeye where rode fyr Bleoberys
 with fir Segwarydes lady that rode behynde his squyer vpon
 30 a palfroy

¶ Capitulum xvij

THēne fyr Tryfram rode more than a paas vntyl that
 he had ouertake hym / Thenne spak fyr Tryfram aby-
 de he said knyght of Arthurs courte / brynge ageyne
 that lady or delyuer her to me / I wille doo neyther said Ble-
 35 oberys / for I drede no Cornyshe knyght foo fore that me lyfte

to delyuer her / why said fyr Tristram may not a Cornyssh knyght doo as wel as another knyght / this same daye two knyghtes of your Courte within this thre myle mette with me / And or euer we departed / they fonde a Cornyssh knyght good ynough for them bothe / what were their names said Bleoberis / they told me said fyr Trystram that the one of them hyghte fyr Sagramore le defyrus / and the other hyghte Dodynas le faueage / A said fyr Bleoberys haue ye met with them Soo god me helpe they were two good knyghtes and men of grete worship / And yf ye haue bete them bothe / ye must nedes be a good knyght / but yf it soo be / ye haue bete them bothe / yet shalle ye not fere me / but ye shalle bete me / or euer ye haue thys lady / Thenne defende you said fyr Tristram / soo they departed and came to gyder lyke thonder / and eyder bare other doune hors and alle to the erthe / Thenne they auoyded their horses / and lassed to gyder egerly with fwerdes and myghtely / now tracyng and trauerfynge on the ryght hand and on the lyfte hand more than two houres / And somtyme they rasshed to gyder with fuche a myght that they laye bothe grouelynge on the ground / Thenne fir Bleoberis de ganys starte abak / and said thus / Now gentyl good knyght a whyle hold your handes / & lete vs speke to gyders / Saye what ye wille said Trystram / & I wille anfuere you / Sire faide Bleoberys I wold wete of whens ye be / and of whom ye be come / and what is your name / Soo god me help said fyr Trystram I fere not to telle you my name / Wete ye wel I am kynge Melyodas sone / and my moder is kyng Markes syster / and my name is fir Tristram de Lyonas and kynge Marke is myn vnkel / Truly said Bleoberys I am ryght gladde of you / for ye are he that flewe marhaus the knyght hand for hand in an Iland for the truage of Cornewaile / Also ye ouercame fir Palamydes the good knyght at a turnement in an Iland / where ye bete fir Gawayne & his nyne felawes / Soo god me helpe said fir Trystram wete ye wel that I am the same knyght / Now I haue told you my name / telle me yours with good will / Wete ye wel that my name is fir Bleoberys de ganys / and my broder hyghte fire Blamore de ganys / that is called a good knyght and we be fyfter children vnto my lord fir Laücelot du lake that we calle

one of the best knyghtes of the world / That is trouthe said sir
 Triftram / sir Launcelot is called pierles of curtosy and of knyghthode / and for his sake said sir Tryftram I will not with
 my good wille fyghte no more with you for the grete loue I
 5 haue to sir Launcelot du lake / In good feith said Bleoberys / as for me / I wille be lothe to fyghte with you / But fythen ye folowe me here to haue this lady / I shal profer you kyndenys curtosy and gentilnes right here vpon this ground /
 This lady shalle be betwixe vs bothe / and to whome that she
 10 wille go / lete hym haue her in pees / I wille wel said Triftrā
 For as I deme she wille leue you / and come to me / ye shalle
 preue hit anone said Bleoberys

¶ Capitulum xviij

SOo whan she was sette betwixe them bothe / she sayd
 these wordes vnto sir Triftram / wete ye wel fyr Trif-
 15 tram de lyones that but late thou was the man in the
 world that I moost loued and trusted / And I wende thou
 haddeft loued me ageyne aboue alle ladyes / But whan thou
 sawest this knyght lede me away thou madeft no chere to rescowe
 me / but suffred my lord Segwarydes ryde after me / but
 20 vn tyl that tyme I wend thou haddeft loued me / And therefore
 now I wille leue the / and neuer loue the more / & there
 with alle she went vnto sir Bleoberys / Whan fyr Triftram sawe
 her doo soo / he was wonderly wrothe with that lady & afhamed
 to come to the courte / sir Triftram said sir Bleoberys ye
 25 are in the defaute / for I here by these ladyes wordes / she before
 this day trusted you aboue alle erthly knyghtes / and as she
 faith ye haue deceyued her / therefore wete ye wel / ther may noo
 man hold that wille aweye / and rather than ye shold be her-
 tely displeafyd with me / I wold ye had her / and she wold
 30 abyde with you / Nay said the lady / so god me help I wil
 neuer goo with hym / For he that I loued most / I wende he had
 loued me / And therefore sire Tryftram she said ryde as thou
 cam / for though thou haddeft ouercome this kny3t as ye was
 lykely / with the neuer wold I haue gone / And I shall pray
 35 this knyghte soo faire of his knyghthode that or euer he passe

this countrey / that he wille lede me to the Abbeye / there my lord
 fyr Segwarydes lyeth Soo god me helpe said Bleoberis
 I lete yow wete good knyght fire Trystram by cause kynge
 Marke gaf me the choyse of a yeste in this courte / and so this
 lady lyked me best / Not withstandynge she is wedded and 5
 hath a lord / and I haue fulfilled my quest / she shall be sent
 vnto her husband ageyne / And in especyal moost for youre
 sake fir Trystram / And yf she wold goo with you / I wold
 ye had her / I thanke you said fyr Trystram / but for her loue
 I shal beware what manere a lady I shalle loue or truste / 10
 For had her lord fyr Segwarydes ben away from the courte
 I shold haue ben the fyrst that shold haue folowed yow / but
 sythen ye haue refused me / as I am true knyght I shalle her
 knowe passyngly wel that I shal loue or trust / and soo they
 took theyr leue one fro thother and departed / And soo fir trif- 15
 tram rode vnto Tyntagyl / and fyr Bleoberys rode vnto the ab-
 bay where fyr segwarydes lay fore wounded / and there he de-
 lyuerd his lady / and departed as a noble knyght / & whan
 fir segwarydes sawe his lady / he was gretely comforted / and
 thenne she told hym that fir Trystram had done grete bataill 20
 with fyre Bleoberys / and caused hym to brynge her ageyne /
 These wordes pleasyd fir segwarydes ryght wel that fir trif-
 tram wold doo soo moche / and soo that lady told alle the bata-
 ill vnto kynge Marke betwixe fyr Trystram and fir Bleobe-
 rys

25

¶ Capitulum xix

THenne whanne this was done / kynge Mark cast al-
 weyes in his hert how he myght destroye fyr Tristram
 And thenne he ymagyned in hym self to sende fir trif-
 tram in to Irland for la beale Ifoud / For fir Trystram had
 soo preyfed her beaute and her goodnes that kynge Mark fa- 30
 id he wold wedde her / where vpon he praid fyr Tristram to ta-
 ke his way in to Irland for hym on message / And all this
 was done to the entente to flee fyr Tristram / Not withstandy-
 nge fyr Trystram wold not reffuse the message for no daunger
 nor peryl that myght falle for the pleasyr of his vnkel / but 35

[leaf 151]

to goo he made hym redy in the most goodlyest wyfe that myght be deuysed / For sir Tristram tooke with hym the mooste goodlyest knyghtes that he myght fynde in the courte / & they were arayed after the gyfe that was thenne vsed in the goodlyest maner / So sir Tristram departed and toke the see with alle his selaufship / And anone as he was in the brode see / a tempest toke hym and his selaufship and drofe them bak in to the coste of Englonde / And there they arryued fast by Camelot / and ful fayne they were to take the land / ¶ And whan they were landed sir Tristram sette vp his paelione vpon the land of Camelot / and there he lete hange his shelde vpon the paelione / And that same day came two knyghtes of kynge Arthurs / that one was sir Ector de marys and sir Morganor And they touched the shelde / and badde hym come oute of the paelione for to Iust and he wold Iust / ye shalle be anfuerd said sir Tristram and ye wille tarye a lytel whyle / Soo he made hym redy / and fyrste he smote doune sir Ector de marys / and after he smote doune sir Morganor alle with one spere / and sore bryfed them / And whan they laye vpon the erthe / they asked sir Tristram what he was / and of what countrey he was knyghte / Faire lordes said sir Tristram wete ye wel that I am of Cornewaile / Allas said sire Ector now am I ashamed / that euer ony Cornyshe knyghte shold ouercome me / And thenne for despyte fyre Ector put of his armour fro hym / and wente on foot and wold not ryde

¶ Capitulum xx

THenne it felle that sire Bleoberys and sire Blamore de ganys that were bretheren they hadde assomoned the kyng Anguysshe of Irland for to come to Arthurs Court vpon payne of forfeiture of kyng Arthurs good grace And yf the kyng of Irland came not in at the day assigned and sette / the kyng shold lese his landes / So by hit happend that at the day assigned kyng Arthur neither sire Launcelot myght not be there for to gyue the Iugement / for kyng Arthur was with sir launcelot at the castel ioyous gard / And so

kyng Arthur assigned kyng Carados and the kyng of scot-
 tes to be there that day as Iuges / So whan the kynges were
 at Camelot / kyng Anguyfthe of Irland was come to kno-
 we his accusars / Thenne was there Blamore de ganys and
 appeled the kyng of Irland of treason / that he hadde slayne 5
 a cofyn of his in his courte in Irland by treason / The kyng
 was fore abaffhed of his accusacion / for why / he was come att
 the fomons of kyng Arthur / And or that he came at Came-
 lot / he wist not wherfore he was sente after / And whanne the
 kyng herd fir Blamor faye his wille / he vnderstood wel there 10
 was none other remedy but to anfuere hym knyghtly / for the
 custome was fuche in tho dayes / that and ony man were appe-
 aled of ony treason or murther / he shold fyghte body for body /
 or els to fynde another knyght for hym / And alle maner of
 Murtherers in tho dayes were callid treason / So whan kyng 15
 Anguyfthe vnderstood his accusynge / he was passynge heuy /
 for he knewe fir Blamor de ganys that he was a noble kny-
 ght / and of noble knyghtes comen / Thenne the kyng of Ir-
 land was symply purueyed of his anfuere / therfore the Iu-
 ges gaf hym respyte by the thyrdde daye to gyue his anfuere / 20
 Soo the kyng departed vnto his lodgyng / the mean whyle
 ther came a lady by fir Trystrams paelione makynge grete do-
 le / what eyleth you said fir Triftram that ye make fuche dole /
 A fayre knyght said the lady I am afhamed onles that som
 good knyght helpe me / for a grete lady of worship sente by 25
 me a fayre child and a ryche vnto fir launcelot du lake / and
 here by there mette with me a knyghte and threwe me doune
 fro my palfray and took awaye the child from me / wel my
 lady said fyr Triftram / and for my lord fyr Launcelots fake
 I shalle gete you that child ageyne / or els I shalle be beten 30
 for hit / And foo fire Triftram tooke his hors / and asked the
 lady whiche wey the knyght rode / And thenne she tolde hym
 And he rode after hym / and within a whyle he ouertoke that
 knyght / And thenne fyr Triftram badde hym corne and gyue
 ageyne the child

35

¶ Capitulum xxi

THe knyghte torned his hors / and he made hym redy to
 fyghte / And thenne sir Trystram smote hym with a
 swerd suche a buffet / that he tumbled to the erthe / And
 thenne he yelded hym vnto sir Tristram / thenne come thy waye
 5 fayd sire Trystram and brynge the child to the lady ageyne /
 Soo he took his hors wekely and rode with sir Trystram / and
 thenne by the way fyr Trystram asked hym his name / Then-
 ne he said my name is Breunis faunte pyte / Soo whanne he
 hadde delyuerd that child to the lady / he said / sir as in this the
 10 child is wel remedyed / Thenne sir Trystram lete hym goo a-
 geyne that fore reyentyd hym after / for he was a grete foo vn-
 to many good knyghtes of kynge arthurs courte / ¶ Thenne
 whan sir Tristram was in his paelione / Gouvernaile his man
 cam / and told hym how that kynge anguysshe of Irland was
 15 come thyder / and he was putte in grete distresse / and there go-
 uernaile told sir Trystram / how kynge anguysshe was somo-
 ned and appealed of murther / Soo god me help said sir Tris-
 tram these ben the best tydynges that euer came to me this vii ye-
 re / for now shalle the kynge of Irland haue nede of my helpe
 20 for I dare faye there is no knyght in this countrey that is not
 of arthurs courte dare doo bataille with fyre Blamore de ga-
 nys / and for to wyne the loue of the kyng of Irland I wil
 take the batail vpon me / and therfor gouernaile brynge me I
 charge the to the kyng / Thenne Gouvernaile wente vnto kynge
 25 anguysshe of Irland and salwed hym fayre / the kynge wel-
 comed hym / and asked hym what he wolde / Syr faide Gouer-
 naile / here is a knyghte nere hande that desyareth to speke with
 you / he badde me faye he wolde doo you seruyse / what Knyght
 is he faide the Kyng / fyr he said hit is sir Tristram du fyonas
 30 that for your good grace ye shewed hym in your landes wyll
 rewarde you in these countreyes / Come on felawe said the ky-
 nge with me anone / and shewe me vnto sir Trystram / soo the
 Kyng took a lytel hackney and but fewe selaufship with him
 vntyl he came vnto sir Tristrams paelione / and whanne fyre
 35 Trystram sawe the Kyng / he ranne vnto hym and wold haue
 holden his styrope / But the kynge lepte from his hors lyght-
 ly / and eyther halfed other in armes / my gracious Lord fayde
 sire Trystram gramercy of your grete goodnesse shewed vn-

to me in your marches and landes / And at that tyme I promyfed you to doo my feruyfe / and euer it laye in my power / & gentyl knyght faid the kyng vnto fir Triftram / now haue I grete nede of you / neuer had I foo grete nede of no knyghtes helpe / How foo my good lord faid fire Tryftram / I fhalle telle 5
 you faid the kyng I am affomoned and appeled fro my cuntry for the deth of a knyght that was kyn vnto the good knyght fir Launcelot / wherfor fir Blamor de ganys broder to fir Bleoberys hath appeled me to fyghte with hym / outhere to fynde a knyght in my ftede / And wel I wote faid the kyng 10
 thefe that are come of kyng Bans blood as fir Launcelot & thefe other are paffynge good knyghtes and hard men for to wyne in bataille as ony that I knowe now lyuynge / Syre faid fir Tryftram / for the good lordfhip ye fhewed me in Ireland and for my lady youre doughters fake / La Beale I 15
 foud I wille take the bataille for you vpon this condycyon / that ye fhalle graunte me two thynges / that one is that ye fhall fwere to me that ye are in the ryght that ye were neuer confentyng to the knyghtes dethe / Syr thenne faid fir Triftram when that I haue done this bataille yf god yeue me grace that I 20
 fpede that ye fhalle gyue me a reward what thyng refonable that I wille afke of you / Soo god me help faid the kyng ye fhall haue what fomeuer ye will afke / It is wel faid / faid fir Tryftram

¶ Capitulum xxiij

Now make your anfuer that youre Champyon is redy 25
 For I fhalle dye in your quarel rather than to be recreaunt / I haue no doubte of you faid the kyng / that and ye fhold haue adoo with fir Launcelot du lake / Syr faid fir Triftram as for fire Launcelot he is called the nobleft knyghte of the worlde / And wete ye wel that the knyghtes of his blood 30
 are noble men and drede fhame / And as for Bleoberys broder to fyr Blamor I haue done bataille with hym / therfore vpon my hede / it is no fhame to call hym a good knyght / It is noyfed faid the kyng / that Blamor is the hardyer knyghte / fire as for that lete hym be / he fhall neuer be refused / & as he were 35

the best knyght that now bereth shelde or spere / Soo kyng Anguyfhe departed vnto kynge Carados / and the kynges that were that tyme as Iuges / and told hem that he hadde fonde his champyon redy / Thenne by the commaundementes of the
 5 kynges sir Blamor de ganys and sire Triftram were sente for to here the charge / And whan they were come beforne the Iuges / there were many kynges and knyghtes biheld sire Triftram / and moche speche they had of hym by cause he slewe sir Marhaus the good knyght / and by cause he foriusted sir Pa-
 10 lamydes the good knyght / ¶ So when they had taken theire charge / they withdrewe hem to make hem redy to doo bataille / Thenne said sir Bleoberys to his broder sir Blamore / fayr dere broder remembre of what kyn we be come of / and what a man is sir launcelot du lake / neyther ferther nor nere but bro-
 15 ther children / and ther was neuer none of oure kyn that euer was shamed in bataille / and rather suffre deth broder than to be shamed / Broder said Blamore haue you no doute of me / for I shal neuer shame none of my blood / hou be it I am sure that yonder knyghte is called a passyng good knyght as of
 20 his tyme one of the world / yet shal I neuer yelde me nor say the lothe word / wel may he happen to smyte me down with his grete myzt of chyalry / but rather shalle he flee me than I shal yelde me as recreaunt / God spede you wel said Bleoberys for ye shal fynde hym the myghtyest knyght that euer ye hadde a-
 25 do with all / for I knowe hym for I haue had ado with hym God me spede said Blamor de ganys / and therewith he tooke his hors at the one ende of the lyfles / and sire Tryftram atte other ende of the lyfles / and soo they feutryd theyre speres / & came to gyders as it had ben thonder / and there sir Triftram
 30 thorou grete myght smote doune sir Blamore and his hors to the erthe / Thenne anone sir Blamor auoyded his hors and pulled oute his sward / and threwe his shelde afore hym / and badde sir Tryftram alyghte / for though an hors hath failed me I truste to god the erthe wil not faile me / And thenne fyre
 35 Tryftram alyght and dresseid hym vnto batail / and there they lashed to gyder strongly as racyng and tracyng / foynynge and daffhyng many sad stokes that the kynges and knyghtes had grete wonder that they myghte stande / for euer they

fought lyke wood men so that there were neuer knyghtes fene
 fyghte more fyerfly than they dyd / for fire Blamore was
 so hasty he wold haue no rest that alle men wondred that they
 had brethe to stande on their feet / and alle the place was blo-
 dy that they fought in / And at the laste fyre Tristram smote 5
 fir Blamor fuche a buffet vpon the helme that he there felle do-
 une vpon his fyde / and fir Trystram stode and beheld hym /

¶ Capitulum xxiii

THenne whan fir Blamor myghte speke / he said thus
 Syre Tristram de Lyones I requyre the as thou art
 a noble knyghte and the best knyghte that euer I fond that 10
 thou wilt flee me oute / for I wold not lyue to be made lord
 of alle the erth / for I haue leuer dye with worship than lyue
 with shame / and nedes fir Tristram thou must flee me / or els
 thou shalt neuer wyne the feld / for I wille neuer saye the
 lothe word / And therefore yf thou dare flee me / flee me / I re- 15
 quyre the / Whanne fir Tristram herd hym saye soo knyghtely /
 he wyfte not what to doo with hym / he remembryng hym of bo-
 the partyes of what blood he was comen / and for fir Launce-
 lots sake he wold be lothe to flee hym / and in the other party
 in no wyse he myghte not chese / but that he must make hym to 20
 saye the lothe word or els to flee hym / Thenne fyre Tristram
 starte abak and went to the kynges that were Iuges / and ther
 he kneled down to fore hem and besoughte hem for their wor-
 shippes and for kynge Arthurs and fir Laūcelots sake that
 they wold take this mater in theyr handes / For my fayre lor- 25
 des said fir tristram hit were shame and pyte / that this noble
 knyght that yonder lyeth shold be slayne / for ye here wel / sha-
 med wille he not be / and I pray to god that he neuer be slayne
 nor shamed for me / And as for the kyng for whome I fyghte
 fore I shalle requyre hym as I am his true champyon and 30
 true knyght in this felde that he wille haue mercy vpon this
 knyghte / So god me helpe said kynge Anguysshe I wil for
 your sake fyre tristram be ruled as ye wylle haue me / For I
 knowe you for my true knyghte /

¶ And therefore I

wylle hertely pray the kynges that ben here as Iuges to take
hit in theire handes / And the kynges that were Iuges called
fyr Bleoberys to them / and asked hym his aduysse ¶ My lordes
faid Bleoberys / though my broder be beten and hath the
5 wers thorou myghte of armes I dare saye though fyre Tryf-
tram hath beten his body / he hath not beten his herte / and I
thanke god he is not shamed this daye / And rather than he
shold be shamed / I requyre you sayd Bleoberys lete fir Trif-
tram flee hym oute / It shalle not be soo faid the kynges / for
10 his parte aduerfary bothe the kynge and the champyon haue
pyte of fyre Blamors knyghthode / My lordes faid Bleoberys
I wille ryght wel as ye wille /

¶ Thenne the kynges called the kynge of Irland and fond
hym goodely and tretabyll / And thenne by alle their aduyses
15 fyre Triftram and fyre Bleoberys toke vp fire Blamore / and
the two bretheren were accorded with kynge Anguysse / and
kyffed and made frendys for euer / And thenne fire Blamor
and fire Tryfram kyffed to gyders / and there they made the-
ir othes that they wold neuer none of them two bretheren fy-
20 ghte with fyre Tryfram / and fyre Tryfram made the same oth
And for that gentyl bataille alle the blood of fyre Launcelot
loued fire Tryfram for euer /

¶ Thenne kynge Anguysse and fyre Triftram toke theire le-
ue ande failed in to Irland with grete nobleffe and ioye /
25 ¶ Soo whanne they were in Irland / the kynge lete make it
knownen thoroute alle the land how and in what manere fyre
Tryfram had done for hym ¶ Thenne the Quene
and alle that there were made the moost of hym that they my-
ghte / But the Ioye that la beale Ifoud made of fyr Triftram
30 there myghte no tonge telle / for of alle men erthely she loued
hym moost

¶ Capitulum xxiii

Thenne vpon a daye kynge Anguysse asked fyr Trif-
tram why he asked not his bone / For what someuer he
had promysed hym / he shold haue hit withoute fayle

Syre fayd fire Tryftram now is hit tyme this is alle that I wylle defyre that ye wylle gyue me la beale Ifoud youre doughter not for my felf but for myn vnkel kynge Marke that fhalle haue her to wyf / for foo haue I promysed hym / Allas faid the kynge I had leuer than alle the land that I haue / 5
ye wold wedde her youre felf / Syre and I dyd than I were fhamed for euer in this world / and fals of my promyse / Therefore faid fire Tryftram I praye you hold your promyse that ye promysed me / for this is my defyre that ye wylle gyue me la Beale Ifoud to goo with me in to Cornewaile for to 10
be wedded to kynge Marke myn vnkel / ¶ As for that fayd kynge Anguyfhe ye fhalle haue her with you to doo with her what it please you / that is for to faye yf that ye lyst to wedde her your felf that is me leueft / And yf ye wille gyue her vnto kynge Marke youre vnkel that is in youre choyfe / 15

¶ Soo to make short conclufion la beale Ifoud was made redy to goo with fyre Tryftram and dame Bragwayne wente with her for her chyf gentylwoman with many other / thenne the quene Ifouds moder gaf to her and dame Bragwayne her doughters gentylwoman and vnto Gouvernaile a drynke and 20
charged them that what day kynge Marke fhold wedde that fame daye they fhold gyue hym that drynke / foo that kynge Marke fhold drynke to la beale Ifoud / and thenne faid the Quene I vndertake eyther fhalle loue other the dayes of their lyf / Soo this drynke was yeuen vnto dame Bragwayne and 25
vnto Gouvernaile / And thenne anone fyre Tryftram tooke the fee / and la Beale Ifoud / and whan they were in their caban hit happed foo that they were thurfty / and they fawe a lytyl flacked of gold ftande by them / and hit femed by the coloure and the tafte that it was noble wyn / 30

Thenne fire Tryftram toke the flacket in his hand / and fayd Madame Ifoud here is the beft drynke that euer ye drank that dame Bragwayne youre mayden and Gouvernayle my feruaunt haue kepte for them felf / Thenne they lough and made good chere and eyther dranke to other frely / and they tho- 35
ughte neuer drynke that euer they dranke to other was foo fwete nor foo good / But by that theyr drynke was in their

bodies / they loued eyther other so wel that neuer theyr loue departed for wele neyther for wo / And thus it happed the loue fyrste betwixe sire Tristram and la beale Ifoud / the whiche loue neuer departed the dayes of their lyf / soo thenne they fay-
 5 led tyl by fortune they came nyghe a castel that hyght Pluere
 And there by arryued for to repofe them wenyng to them to haue hadde good herborou3 / but anon as sir Trystram was within the castel / they were taken pryfoners / for the customme of the castel was fuche who that rode by that castel and brought ony
 10 lady he must nedes fyghte with the lord that hyghte Breunor
 And yf it were soo that Breunor wanne the feld / thenne shold the knyght straunger and his lady be putte to dethe what that euer they were / and yf hit were so that the straunge knyghte wanne the feld of sir Breunor / thenne shold he dye and
 15 his lady bothe / this custome was vfed many wynters / for hit was called the castel pluere that is to faye the wepyng castel

¶ Capitulum xrv

THus as sire Trystram and la beale Ifoud were in pryfon / hit happed a knyght and a lady came vnto them / where they were to chere them / I haue merueille said Tristram
 20 vnto the kny3t and the lady what is the cause the lord of this Castel holdeth vs in pryfon / hit was neuer the custome of no place of worship that euer I came in / whan a knyghte and a lady asked herborough / and they to receyue hem / & after to destroye them that ben his gastes / Syr said the kny3t this is the
 25 old custome of this castel that whan a knyght cometh here / he must nedes fyghte with our lord / and he that is weyker muste lese his hede / And whan that is done yf his lady that he bryngeth / be fouler than our lordes wyf / she must lese her heede / And yf she be fayrer preued than is oure lady / thenne shal the la-
 30 dy of this castel lese her heede / Soo god me help said sire Tristram this is a fowle custome and a shameful / But one auau- tage haue I said sir Trystram I haue a lady is fayre ynou3 fayrer sawe I neuer in alle my lyfe dayes / And I doubte

not for lack of beaute she shalle not lese her heed / and rather than I shold lese my heede I wille fyghte for hit on a fayre felde /

¶ Wherefore Syre knyght I pray you telle your lord that I wille be redy as to morne with my lady and my selfe to doo batail yf hit be so I maye haue my hors and myne armour / Syre said that knyght I vndertake that youre defyre shalle be spedde ryght wel /

And thenne he sayd take youre rest and loke that ye be vp by tymes and make you redy and your lady / for ye shall wante no thyng that you behoueth / and ther with he departed and on the morne by tymes that same knyghte came to sire Tryfram and fetched hym oute and his lady & brouzte hym hors and armour that was his owne / and badde hym make hym redy to the feld / for alle the estates and comyns of that lordship were there redy to behold that bataille and Iugement /

¶ Thenne came fyre Breunor the lord of that Castel wyth his lady in his hand muffeld / and asked fyre Tryfram where was his lady / for and thy lady be fayrer than myn wyth thy swerd smyte of my ladyes hede / and yf my lady be fayrer than myn / with my swerd I muste stryke of her heed / And yf I maye wyne the / yet shalle thy lady be myne / and thou shalt lese thy hede /

¶ Syre said Tryfram this is a fowle custome and horryble / and rather than my lady shold lese her heed / yet had I leuer lese my hede /

¶ Nay nay said sire Breunor the ladyes shalle be fyrst shewed to gyder / and the one shalle haue her Iugement / Nay I wille not soo said sire Trifram / For here is none that wille gyue ryghteous Iugement / But I doubte not said sire Trifram my lady is fayrer than thyne / And that wille I preue and make good with my hand / And who someuer he be that wille faye the contrary I wille preue hit on his hede

And there with sire Trifram shewed la beale Ifoud / and torned her thryes aboute with his naked swerd in his hand And whanne fyre Breunor sawe that he dyd the same wyse torne his lady / But whanne fyre Breunor beheld la beale Ifoud / hym thoughte he sawe neuer a fayrer lady / and thenne he dradde his ladyes hede shold be of / and soo al the peple

that were there present gaf Iugement that la beale Ifoud was
 the fayrer lady and the better made / how now said fir Triftrā
 me semeth it were pyte that my lady shold lose her heed / but
 by cause thou and she of long tyme haue vfed this wycked cus-
 5 tome / and by you bothe haue many good knyghtes and la-
 dyes ben destroyed / for that cause it were no losse to destroye
 you bothe / Soo god me help said fir Breunor for to saye the
 forhe / thy lady is fayrer than myn / and that me fore repenteth
 And soo I here the peple pryuely saye / for alle wymmen I
 10 sawe none soo fayre / and therfor and thou wilt flee my lady
 I doute not but I shal flee the and haue thy lady / ¶ Thou
 shalt wyne her said fir Trystram as dere as euer knyzt wan
 lady / And by cause of thyn owne Iugement as thou woldest
 haue done to my lady yf that she had ben fouler / and by cause
 15 of the evyl custome gyue me thy lady said Trystram / & there
 with alle fir Triftram strode vnto hym and toke his lady from
 hym / and with an auke stroke he smote of her hede clene / wel
 knyght said fir Breunor now hast thou done me a despyte /

¶ Capitulum xxvj

Now take thyn hors sythen I am lady les I wil wyn
 20 thy lady and I may / thenne they took their horses / &
 came to gyders as hit had ben the thonder / and fire Trystram
 smote fir Breunor clene from his hors / and lyztely he rose vp
 And as fir Trystram came ageyne by hym / he threst his hors
 thorou oute both the sholders that his hors hurled here and the-
 25 re / and felle dede to the ground / And euer fir Breunor ranne
 after to haue slayne fire Triftram / but fire Triftram was ly-
 ght and nymel and voyded his hors lightly / And or euer
 fir Trystram myght dresse his sheld and his swerd / the other
 gaf hym thre or foure sadde strokes ¶ Thenne they
 30 raffhed to gyders like two bores tracyng and trauercyng myz-
 tely and wyfely as two noble knyghtes / For this fire Breu-
 nor was a proued knyghte and hadde ben or than the dethe of
 many good knyghtes / that it was pyte that he had so long en-
 dured / Thus they fouzt hurlyng here & there nyz two houres &

eyder were wounded fore / thenne at the last fir Breunor raff-
 hed vpon fir Tryftram and tooke hym in his armes / for he tr-
 ufted moche to his strengthe / Thenne was fir Tryftram called
 the strengest and the hiest knyght of the world / For he was
 called bygger than fir laūcelot / but fir Launcelot was better 5
 brethed / Soo anone fire Tryftram thrust fyr Breunor doune
 grouelynge / and thenne he unlaced his helme / and strake of
 his hede / And thenne al they that longed to the castel cam to
 hym and dyd hym homage and feaute prayenge hym / that he
 wold abyde there styll a litel whyle to fordo that foule custom 10
 Syr Tryftram graunted ther to / the meane whyle one of the
 knyghtes of the castel rode vnto fire Galahad the haut prynce
 the whiche was fir Breunors sone / whiche was a noble knyzt
 and told hym what myfauenture his fader hadde and his mo-
 der

15

¶ Capitulum xxviij

THenne came fir Galahad and the kyng with the hon-
 derd knyghtes with hym / and this fyr Galahad pro-
 fered to fyghte with fir Tryftram hand for hand / and
 foo they made them redy to go vnto bataile on horsbak with gre-
 te courage / Thenne fir Galahad and fir Tryftram mette to gy- 20
 ders foo hard that eyder bare other doune hors and alle to the
 erthe / And theñe they auoyded their horses as noble knyghtes
 and drefsid theire sheldes and drewe their fwerdes with Ire &
 rancour / and they lashed to gyder many fadde strokes / and one
 whyle strykyng another whyle foynynge / tracynge and tra- 25
 uerfynge as noble knyghtes / thus they fought long nere half
 a day and eyder were fore wounded / At the last fire Tryftram
 waxed lyghte and bygge / and doubled his strokes and drofe
 fyr Galahad abak on the one syde and on the other / so that he
 was lyke to haue ben slayne / With that came the kyng with 30
 the honderd knyghtes and all that felauship went fyerfly vp-
 on fir Triftram / whan fir Tryftram sawe them comyng vpon
 hym / thenne he wist wel he myghte not endure / ¶ Thēne as a
 wyfe knyght of werre he said to fir Galahad the haut prynce
 fyre ye shewe to me no knyghthode for to suffre alle youre men 35
 to haue adoo with me al at ones / ¶ And as me semeth ye be a

noble knyghte of your handes / hit is grete shame to you / So
god me helpe said sire Galahad there is none other waye but
thou must yelde the to me / outhere els to dye said sire Galahad
to sire Trystram I wille rather yelde me to you than dye / for
5 that is more for the myght of your men than of your handes /
And ther with alle sire Trystram tooke his owne fuerd by the
poynte / and put the pomel in the hand of sire Galahad / there
with alle came the kynge with the honderd knyghtes / and
hard beganne to assaylle sire Trystram / lete be said sire Galahad
10 be ye not foo hardy to touche hym / for I haue gyuen this kny-
ght his lyf / that is youre shame said the kynge with the C
knyghtes / hath he not slayne your fader and your moder / As
for that said fyre Galahad I may not wyte hym gretely for
my fader had hym in pryson / and enforced hym to doo bataill
15 with hym / and my fader had fuche a customme that was a sha-
meiful custome that what knyght came there to aske herborouh
his lady must nedes deye but yf she were fayrer than my mo-
der / And yf my fader ouercame that knyght he must nedes de-
ye / This was a shameful customme and vsage / a knyghte
20 for his herberowe askynge to haue fuche herborage / ¶ And for
this customme I wold neuer drawe aboute hym / So god me
helpe said the kynge this was a shameful customme / Truly
said fyre Galahad foo femed me / and me femed it had ben
grete pyte that this knyght shold haue ben slayne / for I dare
25 faye he is the noblest man that bereth lyf / but yf it were sire laū-
celot du lake / Now fayre knyght said sire Galahad I requyre
the telle me thy name / and of whens thou arte / and whyder
thou wolt / Syr he said my name is sire Trystram du lyones &
from kynge Marke of Cornewaile I was sente on message
30 vnto kynge Anguysshe of Irland for to fetch his doughter
to be his wyf / & here she is redy to go with me into Cornewai-
le / and her name is la beale Ifoud / and / sire Trystram said sire
Galahad the haut prynce / wel be ye fonde in these marches / &
foo ye wille promyse me to goo vnto sire Launcelot du lake /
35 and accompanye with hym / ye shalle goo where ye wylle / and
your fayre lady with you / And I shalle promyse you neuer
in al my dayes shal fuche custommes be vsed in this castel as
haue ben vsed / Syr said fyre Trystram now I lete you wete

foo god me helpe I wende ye had ben fyr launcelot du lake /
 whan I sawe you fyrste / and therfore I dredde you the more
 And fire I promyse you said fir Tristram as foone as I may
 I wille see fir launcelot / and enfelaushippe me with hym / for
 of alle the knyghtes of the world I moost defyre his felau- 5
 ship

¶ Capítulum xxviii

ANd thēne fir Tristram took his leue whan he sawe his
 tyme and tooke the see / And the meane whyle word
 came vnto fir Launcelot and to fir Trystram that fire
 Carados the myghty kynge that was made lyke a gyaunt / 10
 that fought with fir Gawayn and gaf hym suche strokes that
 he fwouned in his fadel / and after that he took hym by the col-
 ler / and pulled hym oute of his fadel / and fast bounde hym to
 the fadel bowe / and so rode his wey with hym toward his cas-
 tell / And as he rode by fortune fir Launcelot mette with fire 15
 Carados and anone he knewe fire Gawayne / that lay bounde
 after hym / A said fir Launcelot vnto fire Gawayne how stande
 it with you / Neuer so hard said fir gawayn onles that ye helpe
 me / for so god me help without ye rescowe me I knowe no kn-
 yght that may but outhur you or fyr Trystram / where for fir 20
 Launcelot was heuy of fir Gawayns wordes / And thenne fir
 Launcelot bad fir Carados leye doune that knyghte / & fyghte
 with me / thou arte but a foole faide fire Carados / for I wylle
 serue you in the same wyfe / as for that said fir Launcelot spa-
 re me not / for I warne the I wille not spare the / And then- 25
 ne he bond fir Gawayne hand and foot / and so threwe hym to
 the ground / And thenne he gate his spere of his squyer / and
 departed from fyr launcelot to fetch his cours / and foo eyther
 met with other / and brake their speres to their handes / & then-
 ne they pulled out fwerdes / and hurtled to gyders on horsbak 30
 more than an houre / And at the laste fire launcelot smote fir
 Carados fuche a buffet vpon the helme that it perched his bra-
 yne pan / So thenne fir Launcelot toke fir Carados by the col-
 ler and pulled hym vnder his hors feet / And thenne he alyzte
 and pulled of his helme / and strake of his hede / And thenne 35

fir Launcelot vnbounde fir Gawayne / foo this fame tale was
told to fir Galahad and to fir Trystram / here maye ye here the
noblenes that foloweth fir launcelot / Allas said fyr Trystram
and I had not this meſſage in hand with this fayre lady /
5 truly I wold neuer ſtynte or I had fonde fyre Launcelot /
Thenne fire. Trystram and la beale Ifoud wente to the ſee &
came in to Cornewaile / and there alle the barons mette hem /

¶ Capitulum xix

ANd anone they were rychely wedded with grete nob-
ley / But euer as the frenſſhe book ſayth fir Trystram
10 and la beale Ifoud loued euer to gyders / ¶ Thenne
was there grete luſtes and grete torneyenge / and many lor-
des and ladyes were at that feſt / and fir Trystram was moſt
preyſed of alle other / thus dured the feſt longe / and after
the feſt was done / within a lytel whyle after by the aſſent of
15 two ladyes that were with quene Ifoud / they ordeyned for
hate and enuy for to deſtroye dame Bragwayne / that was
mayden and lady vnto la beale Ifoud / and ſhe was ſente in
to the foreſt for to fetch herbes / & there ſhe was mette & bo-
unde feete and hand to a tree / and ſoo ſhe was bounden thre
20 dayes / And by fortune fir Palamydes fond dame Bragwa-
yne / and there he delyuerd her from the dethe / and brought her
to a nonnery there beſyde for to be recouerd / whanne Ifoud the
quene myſt her mayden / wete ye wel ſhe was ryght heuy as e-
uer was ony quene / for of alle erthely wymmen ſhe loued her
25 beſt / the cauſe was for ſhe came with her oute of her countreye /
And ſoo vpon a day quene Ifoud walked in to the foreſt to
putte awaye her thoughtes / and ther ſhe wente her ſelf vnto a
welle / and made grete mone / and ſodenly there came Palamy-
des to her / and had herd alle her complaynte / and ſayd Mada-
30 me Ifoud and ye wille graunte me my bone / I ſhalle bryn-
ge to you dame Bragwayne ſauf and ſound / And the que-
ne was ſo glad of his profer / that ſodenly vnaufed ſhe graū-
ted alle his aſkyng / wel madame ſaid Palamydes I truſt
to your promyſe / And yf ye wille abyde here half an houre / I
35 ſhal brynge her to you / I ſhall abyde you ſaid la beale Ifoud

And sir Palamydes rode forth his way to that nonnery / and lyghtly he came ageyne with dame Bragwayne / but by her good wille she wold not haue comen ageyne / by cause for loue of the quene she stood in auēture of her lyf / Notwithstandyng half ageynst her wille she wente with sir Palamydes vnto the quene / And whan the quene sawe her / she was passyng glad
 Now madame said Palamydes remembre vpon your promyse / for I haue fulfilled my promyse / Sir Palamydes said the quene I wote not what is your desyre / But I wille that ye wete how be it I promysed you largely I thought none euyl
 nor I warne you none ylle wille I doo / Madame said sir palamydes / as at this tyme ye shalle not knowe my desyre / but bfore my lord your husband there shalle ye knowe that I wil haue my desyre that ye haue promysed me / And therwith the quene departed and rode home to the kynge / and sir palamydes rode after her / And whan fyr Palamydes came before the kynge / he said sir kyng I requyre you as ye be a ryghteous kyng that ye wille Iuge me the ryght / Telle me your cause faid the kyng and ye shalle haue ryght /

¶ Capitulum xxx

Syre said Palamydes I promysed your Quene Ifoud to brynge ageyne dame Bragwayne that she had lost vpon this couenaunt that she shold graunte me a bone that I wold aske / and without grutchyng outhur auysēmēt she graunted me / what saye ye my lady said the kynge / hit is as he faith soo god me help said the quene / to saye the sothe / I promysed hym his askyng for loue and ioye that I had to see her / Wel madame said the kynge / and yf ye were hasty to graunte hym what bone he wold aske / I wylle wel that ye performe your promyse / Thenne said Palamydes I will that ye wete that I wille haue your quene to lede her and gouerne her where as me lyft / There with the kynge stood styll and be-thought hym of sir Trystram / and demed that he wold rescowe her / And thenne hastely the kynge anfuerd take her with the aduētures that shal falle of hit / for as I suppose thou wylt

not enioye her noo whyle / As for that faid Palamydes I dare
ryght wel abyde the aduenture / and soo to make short tale / fir
Palamydes toke her by the hand / and faid Madame grutche
not to goo with me / for I defyre no thyng but your own pro-
5 myse / As for that faid the quene I fere not gretely to go with
the / hou be it thou hast me at auauntage vpon my promyse /
For I doute not I shalle be worshipfully rescowed from the /
As for that faid fir Palamydes be it as it be maye / So quene
Ifoud was sette behynde Palamydes / and rode his way / anon
10 the kynge sente after fyr Tryfram / but in no wyse he coude be
foude / for he was in the forest an huntyng / for that was alwe-
yes his custome / but yf he vsed armes / to chafe and to hunte
in the forestes / Allas faid the kynge now I am shamed for
euer that by myn owne assente my lady and my quene shalle
15 be deuoured / Thenne came forth a knyght his name was lam-
begus / and he was a knyght of fyr Tryfram / My lord sayd
this knyght fythe ye haue truste in my lord fire Triftram / we-
te ye wel for his sake I wille ryde after your quene and re-
scowe her / or els I shal be beten / Gramercy faide the kynge / &
20 I lyue fir Lambegus I shal deferue hit / And thenne fir Lam-
begus armed hym / and rode after as fast as he myghte / And
thenne within a whyle he ouertoke fir Palamydes / And then-
ne fir Palamydes lefte the quene / what arte thou faide Pala-
mydes / arte thou Tryfram / nay he faide I am his seruante /
25 and my name is Lambegus / that me repenteth faide Pala-
mydes / I hadde leuer thou haddest ben fire Tryfram / I bileue
you wel faid Lambegus / but when thou metest with fir Tryf-
tram thou shalt haue thy handes ful / And thenne they hurtled
to gyders and alle to brafte their speres / and thenne they pul-
30 led oute their fwerdes / and hewed on helmes and hauberkes /
At the laste fire Palamydes gaf fir Lambegus suche a wound
that he felle down lyke a dede knyghte to the erthe / Thenne he lo-
ked after la beale Ifoud / and thēne she was gone he nyft whe-
re / wete ye wel fir Palamydes was neuer soo heuy / So the qu-
35 ene ranne in to the forest / and there she fond a wel / and theryn
she hadde thoughte to haue drowned her self / And as good for-
tune wold ther came a knyght to her that hadde a Castel ther-
by his name was fire Adtherp / And when he fonde the quene

in that meschyef / he rescowed her / and broughte her to his castel / And whanne he wyft what she was he armed hym / and took his hors and said / he wold be auengyd vpon palamydes and soo he rode on tyll he mette with hym / and there sir Palamydes wounded hym fore / and by force he made hym to telle 5 hym the cause why he dyd bataille with hym / and how he had ladde the quene vnto his castel / Now brynge me there said palamydes or thou shalt dye of my handes / Sir said sir Adtherp I am soo wounded I may not folowe / but ryde you this way and hit shalle brynge you in to my castel / and there within is 10 the quene / Thenne sire Palamydes rode styll tyl he came to the Castel / And at a wyndowe La Beale Ifoud sawe sir Palamydes / thenne she made the yates to be shette strongly / And whan he sawe he myght not come within the castel / he putte of his brydel and his sadel / and putte his hors to pasture / and 15 sette hym self doune atte gate lyke a man that was oute of his wytte that retchyd not of hym self /

¶ Capitulum xxi

Now torne we vnto sir Tristram that whanne he was come home / and wyfte la Beale Ifoud was gone with fyr Palamydes wete ye wel he was wrothe oute of mesure / Allas said sir Trystram I am this day shamed / Thenne he cryed to Gouvernaile his man / haste the that I were armed and on horsbak / for wel I wote Lambegus hath no myghte nor strengthe to withstande sir Palamydes / Allas that I haue not ben in his stede / Soo anone as he was armed and horsed 25 sir Tristram and Gouvernaile rode after in to the forest / and within a whyle he fond his knyght Lambegus al moost wounded to the dethe / and fyre Trystram bare hym to a foster / and charged hym to kepe hym wel / And thenne he rode forth and there he fond fyr Adtherp fore wounded / and he told hym how 30 the quene wold haue drowned her self had not he ben / And how for her sake & loue he had taken vpon hym to doo bataille with sir Palamydes / where is my lady said sire Trystram / Syr said the knyght she is sure ynough within my Castel / &

she can hold her within hit / Gramercy said fyre Trystram of
 thy grete goodenes / and soo he rode tyl he came nyghe to that
 Castel / and thenne fyr Trystram sawe where fyr Palamydes
 sat at the gate slepyng / and his hors pastured fast afore hym
 5 Now goo thou Gouvernaile said fire Triftram / and byd hym
 awake / and make hym redy / So Gouvernayle rode vnto hym /
 and said fir Palamydes aryse and take to the thyn harneis
 but he was in fuche a study he herd not what Gouvernayle said
 So Gouvernaile came ageyne and told fyre Trystram he sle-
 10 pte or els he was madde / Goo thou ageyne said fire Triftram /
 and bydde hym aryse / and telle hym that I am here his mortal
 foo / So Gouvernaile rode ageyne and putte vpon hym the
 but of his spere / and said fir Palamydes make the redy / for
 wete ye wel fyr Triftram houeth yonder and fendeth the word
 15 he is thy mortal foo / And there with all fire Palamydes arofe
 stylylly withoute wordes and gate his hors / and faddeled hym /
 and brydeled hym / and lyghtely he lepte vpon / and gat his
 spere in his hand / and eyder feutryd their speres and hurt-
 led faste to gyders / and there Triftram smote doune fire Pa-
 20 lamydes ouer his hors tayle / Thenne lightly fire Palamydes
 putte his sheld afore hym and drewe his fwerd / And there
 beganne stronge bataill on bothe partyes / for both they fought
 for thr loue of one lady / and euer she laye on the walles and
 behelde them / hou they foughte oute of mesure / and eyther we-
 25 re woūded possyng fore / but Palamydes was moche forer woū-
 ded / thus they fought tracyng and trauercyng more than two
 houres that wel nygh for dole and forowe la beale Ifoud fwo-
 uned / ¶ Allas she said that one I loued and yet doo / and the
 other I loue not / yet it were grete pyte that I shold see fir pa-
 30 lamydes flayne / for wel I knowe by that tyme the ende be
 done fir Palamydes is but a dede knyzt / by cause he is not cry-
 stened I wold be lothe that he shold dye a sarasyn / And there
 with alle she came doune and bifought fire Trystram to fyghte
 no more / A madame saide he what meane you / wille ye haue
 35 me shamed / wel ye knowe I wille be ruled by you / I wylle
 not your dishonour saide la beale Ifoud but I wold that ye
 wold for my sake spare this vnhappy sarasyn Palamydes /
 Madame said fyre Trystram I wille leue fyghtyng at this

tyme for your sake / ¶ Thenne she said to sire Palamydes this
 shalle be your charge that thou shalt goo oute of this coun-
 trey whyle I am therin / I wille obeye your commaundement
 said sire Palamydes / the whiche is fore ageynst my wylle

¶ Thenne take thy waye said la beale Ifoud vnto the Courte 5
 of kynge Arthur / and there recommaūde me vnto quene Gue-
 neuer / and telle her that I send her word / that ther be withyn
 this land but four louers / that is sire Launcelot du lake and
 Quene Gueneuer and sire Trystram de lyonas and quene I-
 foud 10

¶ Capitulum xxxij

ANd soo fyre Palamydes departed with grete heuynes
 And sire Tristram took the quene and brouȝte her agey-
 ne to kynge Marke / And thenne was there made grete
 Ioye of her home comynge / who was cherysshed but sire Tryst-
 ram / Thenne sire Trystram lete fetchen fyre Lambegus his knyȝte 15
 fro the fosters hous and hit was longe or he was hole / but at
 the last he was wel recouerd / thus they lyued with Ioye and
 play a long whyle / But euer sire Andred that was nygh cofyn
 to fyre Trystram lay in a wathe to wayte betwix sire Trystram
 and la beale Ifoud for to take hem and sklaundre hem / Soo 20
 vpon a day fyre Tristram talked with la beale Ifoud in a wyn-
 dowe / and that aspyed sire Andred and told it to the kynge /
 Thenne kynge Marke took a sward in his hand and came to
 sire Tristram and called hym fals traitour / and wold haue stry-
 ken hym / But sire Trystram was nyghe hym and ranne vnder 25
 his sward and tooke hit oute of his hande / And thenne the
 kynge cryed where are my knyghtes and my men / I charge
 you flee this traitour / But at that tyme there was not one
 wold meue for his wordes / Whanne fyre Trystram sawe that
 there was not one wold be ageynst hym / he shoke the sward to 30
 the kynge and made countenaunce as though he wold haue stry-
 ken hym / And thenne kynge Marke fledde / and sire tristram
 folowed hym and smote vpon hym fyue or fixe strokes fla-
 tlynge on the neck that he made hym to falle vpon the nose / &
 thenne sire Tristram yede his waye and armed hym and tooke 35

his hors and his men / and foo he rode in to that forest / And
 there vpon a daye fyr Tryftram mette with two bretheren that
 were knyghtes with kynge Marke / and there he strake of the
 hede of the one / & wounded the other to the dethe / and he maade
 5 hym to bere his broders hede in his helme vnto the kynge / and
 thyrtty moo there he wounded / And whan that knyght came
 before the kynge to faye his meffage / he there dyed afore the
 kynge and the quene / Thenne kynge Marke called his coun-
 ceill vnto hym / and asked aduysse of his barons what was
 10 best to doo with sire Tryftram / Syr said the barons in especyall
 Syre Dynas the Seneschal / fyr / we wille yeue you counceyll
 for to fende for sir Triftram / for we wille that ye wete / many
 men wille holde with fyre Tryftram / and he were hard bestad
 And fyr said sire Dynas ye shalle vnderstande that sir Trif-
 15 ram is called pyerles and makeles of ony Crysten knyghte /
 and of his myghte and hardynes we knewe none foo good
 a knyght / but yf hit be sire Launcelot du lake / And yf ye de-
 parte from your Courte and goo to kynge Arthurs courte /
 wete ye wel he wille gete hym fuche frendes there that he wylle
 20 not sette by your malyce / And therefore fyre I counceyle yow
 to take hym to youre grace / I wylle wel said the kynge that
 he be fente for / that we maye be frendes / Thenne the Barons
 fente for fyr Triftram vnder a sauf conduyte / And foo whan
 fyre Triftram came to the kynge / he was welcome / and no re-
 25 herfail was made / and there was game and playe / and then-
 ne the kynge and the quene wente on huntynge and sir Trif-
 tram

¶ Capitulum xxxiiij

THe kynge and the quene made their paelions & the-
 30 ire tentes in that forest befyde a Ryuer / and ther was
 dayly huntynge and Iustyng / for there were euer x-
 xx knyghtes redy to Iuste vnto alle them that came in at that
 tyme / And there by fortune came sire Lamerak de galys and
 sir Dryaunt / and there fyre Dryaunt Iusted ryght wel / but
 at the laste he had a falle / Thenne sire Lamerak profered to
 35 Iuste / And whan he began he ferd so with the thyrtty knyghtes

that there was not one of hem but that he gaf hym a falle / and
 fomme of them were fore hurte / I merueyle faid kyng Mark
 what knyght he is that doth fuche dedes of armes / Sir faid fire
 Triftram / I knowe hym wel for a noble knyght / as fewe now
 ben lyuynge / and his name is fir Lamorak de Galys / it were 5
 grete shame faide the kynge that he shold goo thus aweye on-
 les that fomme of you mette with hym better / Syre faid fyre
 Triftram me semeth it were no worship for a noble man to ha-
 ue adoo with hym / And for by cause at this tyme he hath done
 ouer moche for any meane knyght lyuynge / therfore as me se- 10
 meth hit were grete shame and vylony to tempte hym any mo-
 re at this tyme / in foo moche as he and his hors are wery bothe
 For the dedes of armes that he hath done this daye and they be
 wel confydered / it were ynough for fir Launcelot du lake /

¶ As for that faid kynge Marke I requyre you as ye loue 15
 me and my lady the Quene La beale Ifoud take youre ar-
 mes and Iuste with fire Lamorak de Galys / ¶ Syre faid fir
 Triftram ye byd me doo a thyng that is ageynst knyghthode /
 And wel I can deme that I shal gyue hym a falle / For hit
 is no maystry / for my hors and I ben fresshe bothe / and so is 20
 not his hors and he / and wete ye wel / that he wil take hit for
 grete vnkyndenes / For euer one good is lothe to take another
 at disauantage / But by cause I wil not displease yow / as
 ye requyre me / foo wille I doo and obeye your commaundemēt
 And foo fire Triftram armed hym and took his hors / & putt 25
 hym forth / and there fire Lamerak mette hym myghtely / and
 what with the myght of his owne spere / and of fire Triftram
 spere fyr Lamoraks hors felle to the erthe / and he fyttynge in
 the fadel / Thenne anone as lyghtly as he myghte he auoyded
 the fadel and his hors / and put his shelde afore hym and dre- 30
 we his fwerd / And thenne he badde fir Triftram alyghte thou
 knyght and thou darst / Nay faid fire Triftram I wil no more
 haue adoo with the / for I haue done to the ouer moche vnto
 my dishonour and to thy worship / ¶ As for that faid fir
 Lamorak I can the no thanke / fyn thou hast foriusted me on 35
 horfbak I requyre the and I bifeche the / and thou be fir Trif-
 tram / fyghte with me on foote / ¶ I wylle not foo

said ore Tristram / And wete ye wel my name is fire Tristrā
 de lyones / and wel I knowe ye be fire Lamorak de Galys /
 And this that I haue done to you was ageynst my wylle /
 but I was requyred therto / but to faye that I wille doo atte
 5 youre request / as at thys tyme I will haue no more ado with
 you / for me shameth of that I haue done / ¶ As for the shame
 said fire Lamorak on thy party or on myne / beare thou hit &
 thou wilt / For though a marys sone hath fayled me / now a
 Quenes sone shalle not fayle the / And therefore and thou be
 10 suche a knyghte as men calle the / I requyre the / alyghte / and
 fyghte with me / Syre Lamorak said fire Tristram I vnder-
 stande youre herte is grete / and cause why ye haue / to faye the
 sothe / for hit wold greue me and ony knyght shold kepe hym
 fresshe / and thenne to stryke doune a wery knyghte / for that
 15 knyghte nor hors was neuer fourmed that alwey myght stā-
 de or endure / And therefore said fire Tristram I wille not ha-
 ue adoo with you / for me forthynketh of that I haue done / as
 for that said fire Lamorak I shal quyte you and euer I see
 my tyme /

¶ Capitulum xxxiiii

20 **T**oo he departed from hym with fire Dryaun / and by
 the weye they mette with a knyzt that was sente from
 Morgan le fay vnto kynge Arthur / and this knyght hadde
 a fayre horne harnest with gold / and the horne had suche a ver-
 tue that there myght no lady ne gentilwoman drynke of that
 25 horne / but yf she were true to her husband / And yf she were
 fals she shold spylle alle the drynke / And yf she were true
 to her lord she myght drynke peasyble / and by cause of the que-
 ne Gueneuer and in despyte of fire Launcelot this horne
 was sente vnto kynge Arthur / and by force fire Lamorak ma-
 30 de that knyghte to telle alle the cause why he bare that horne /
 ¶ Now shalte thou bere this horn sayd Lamorak vnto kyng
 Marke or els chese thou to dye for it / For I telle the playnly
 in despyte and reproof of fire Tristrams thou shalte bere that
 horne vnto kynge Marke his vnkel / and say thou to hym that

I sent hit hym for to affay his lady / ¶ And yf she be true to hym he shal preue her / Soo the knyghte wente his waye vnto kynge Marke and broughte hym that ryche horne / and sayd that sir Lamorak sente hit hym / and there to he told hym the vertue of that horne

¶ Thenne the kynge maade 5
Quene Ifoud to drynke therof / and an honderd ladyes / and there were but four ladyes of alle tho that dranke clene /

¶ Allas faide kynge Marke this is a grete despyte / and fware a grete othe / that she shold be brente and the other ladyes /

¶ Thenne the Barons gadred them to gyder and said playn- 10
ly they wold not haue tho ladyes brente for an horne maade by forcery that came from as fals a forcereffe and wytche as tho was lyuyng / For that horne dyd neuer good but caused stryf and debate / and alweyes in her dayes she had ben an enemy to alle true louers / Soo there were many knyghtes made their a- 15
uowe / and euer they met with Morgan le fay that they wold shewe her short curtosye /

¶ Also sir Tristram was passyng wrothe that sire Lamorak sente that horne vnto kynge Marke for wel he knewe that hit was done in the despyte of hym / And therfor he thoughte to quyte sire Lamorak / ¶ Thenne 20
sire Tristram vfed dayly and nyghtely to go to quene Ifoud whanne he myght / and euer sire Andred his cosyn watched hym nyght and daye for to take hym with la Beale Ifoud / And soo vpon a nyght sire Andred aspyed the houre and the tyme whan sir Tristram wente to his lady /

¶ Thenne sire 25
Andred gate vnto hym twelue knyghtes / and at mydnyght he sette vpon sire Tristram secretly and sodenly / and there sire Tristram was take naked a bedde with la beale Ifoud / and thenne was he bound hande and foot / and soo was he kepte vntyl daye / ¶ And thenne by the assent of kynge Marke and of 30
sire Andred and of somme of the Barons sire Tristram was ledde vnto a chappel that stode vpon the fee rockes there for to take his Iugement / and soo he was ledde bounden with fourty knyghtes / And whan sire Tristram sawe that there was none other boote / but nedes that he must dye / thenne said he fayr lor- 35
des remembre what I haue done for the Countreye of Cornewaile / and in what Ieopardy I haue ben in for the wele of you alle / For whan I fouzt for the truage of cornewaile with

fir Marhaus the good knyght / I was promysed for to be bet-
 ter rewarded / whanne ye alle reffused to take the bataille / ther-
 fore as ye be good gentyl knyghtes / see me not thus shame-
 fully to dye / for it is shame to alle knyghthode thus to see me
 5 dye / For I dare faye faid fire Triftram that I neuer met with
 no knyght but I was as good as he / or better / Fy vpon the
 faid fir Andred fals traitour that thou arte with thyn auau-
 cynges / for alle thy boost thou shalt dye this daye / O Andred
 Andred faid fir Triftram thou sholdest be my kynnesman / and
 10 now thou art to me ful vnfrendely / but and there were no mo
 but thou and I / thou woldest not putte me to deth / No faid fir
 Andred / and ther with he drewe his fwerd / and wold haue
 flayne hym / Whanne fir Triftram sawe hym make suche coun-
 tenaunce / he loked vpon bothe his handes that were fast boun-
 15 den vnto two knyghtes / and sodenly he pulled them bothe to
 hym / and vnwraft his handes / and thenne he lepte vnto his co-
 fyn fyr Andred and wrothe his fwerd oute of his handes /
 thenne he smote fir Andred that he fylle to the erthe / and soo
 fir Triftram foughte tyl that he hadde kyled x knyghtes / So
 20 thenne fir Triftram gate the chappell and kepte hit myghtely /
 thenne the crye was grete / and the peple drewe faste vnto fire
 Andred moo than an honderd / whanne fir Triftram sawe the
 peple drawe vnto hym he remembryd he was naked / & sperd
 fast the chappel dore and brake the barrys of a wyndowe / and
 25 soo he lepte oute and fylle vpon the crackys in the see / And so
 at that tyme fir Andred nor none of his felawes myghte ge-
 te to hym at that tyme /

¶ Capitulum xxxv

30 **S**oo whanne they were departed / Gouvernaile and fire
 Lambegus and fire Sentraile de lufhon that were fir
 Triftrams men foughte their maister / whanne they herd
 he was escaped / thenne they were passyng gladde / and on the
 rockes they fond hym / and with tuel they pulled hym vp /
 And thenne fire Triftram asked hem where was la beale Ifo-
 ud / for he wende she had ben had aweye of Andreds peple /
 35 Syr faid Gouvernaile she is put in a lazar cote

¶ Allas

faid fyre Trystram this is a ful vngoodely place for suche a
fayre lady / And yf I maye she shalle not be longe there /
And soo he took his men and wente there as was la Beale
Ifoud / and fette her aweye and broughte her in to a forest to
a fayre manoyre / and fire Triftram there abode with her / 5
Soo the good knyghte badde his men goo from hym / For att
this tyme I maye not helpe you / soo they departed alle fauf
Gouvernaile / And soo vpon a daye fir Triftram yede in to the
forest for to disporte hym / and thenne hit happend / that there
he felle on slepe / And there came a man that fire Triftram a- 10
fore hand had slayne his broder / And whan this man hadde
foud hym he shotte hym thorou the sholder with an arow / and
fir Triftram lepte vp and kylled that man / And in the me-
ane tyme it was told kynges Marke / how fir Triftram and la
beale Ifoud were in that same manoir / and as soone as euer he 15
myght thyder he came with many knyghtes to flee fir Triftram
And whanne he came there / he fond hym gone / and there he
took la beale Ifoud home with hym / and kepte her strayte that
by no meane neuer she myght wete nor sende vnto Trystram
nor he vnto her / And thenne whanne fyre Triftram came to- 20
ward the old manoir / he fond the trak of many horses / and
ther by he wiste his lady was gone / And thenne fir Triftram
took grete forou / and endured with grete payne long tyme /
for the arowe that he was hurte with al was enuenymed /
Thenne by the meane of la Beale Ifoud she told a lady that 25
was cofyn vnto dame Bragwayne / and she came to fir Trif-
tram and told hym that he myght not be hole by no meanes /
For thy lady la beale Ifoud maye not helpe the / therfor she byd-
deth you haste in to Bretayne to kynges Howel / and there ye
shal fynde his douzter Ifoud le blaunche maynys / and she shal 30
helpe the / Thenne fir triftram and gouernaile gat them shypp-
yng / and soo failed in to Bretayne / And whan kynges Howel
wist that it was fir triftram / he was ful gladde of hym / Syre
he faid I am comen in to this countrey to haue help of your do-
ughter / For hit is tolde me / that there is none other may hele 35
me but she / and soo within a whyle she heled hym /

¶ Capitulum xxxvi

T Here was an Erle that hyghte Gryp / And this Erle
maade grete werre vpon the kynge / and putte the ky-
nge to the werse / and bysegged hym / And on a tyme
fyre kehydyus that was sone to kynge Howel / as he yssued
5 oute / he was fore wounded nyghe to the dethe /

¶ Thenne Gouvernaile wente to the kynge and said / fyre I
counceyle you to defyre my lord fyre Tristram as in your nede
to helpe you / I wille doo by your counceylle said the kynge /
and soo he yede vnto fyr Trystram and praid hym in his war-
10 ris to helpe hym / for my sone kehydyus may not goo in to the
felde

¶ Sire said sir Tristram I wille goo to the feld
and doo what I maye / Thenne sir Tristram yssued out of the
towne with fuche felauship as he myght make / and dyd fuche
dedes that alle Bretayne spake of hym / And thēne at the last
15 by grete myghte and force he flewe the Erle Gryp with his
owne handes / and moo than an honderd knyghtes he flewe
that daye / And thenne sire Tristram was receyued worship-
fully with procession

¶ Thenne kynge Howel enbra-
ced hym in his armes / and said sire Tristram alle my kyng-
20 dome I wille refygne to the / God defende said sir Tristram /
For I am beholden vnto you for youre doughters sake to doo
for you /

¶ Thenne by the grete meanes of kynge
Howel & kehydyus his sone by grete profers there grewe gre-
te loue betwixe Ifoud and sire Trystram / for that lady was
25 bothe good and fayre / and a woman of noble blood & fame

¶ And for by cause sir Tristram had fuche chere and Rycheffe
and alle other plesaunce that he hadde / all moost he hadde for-
faken la beale Ifoud / And soo vpon a tyme sir Trystram a-
greed to wedde Ifoud la blaunche maynys / And at the laste
30 they were wedded / and solempnly held theyr maryage / And
foo whanne they were abedde bothe / sire Tristram remembryd
hym of his old lady la beale Ifoud / And thenne he toke fu-
che a thought fodenly that he was alle defmaged / and other che-
re maade he none but with clyppynge and kyssynge as for
35 other flesshly lustes sire Trystram neuer thoughte nor hadde
adoo with her / fuche mencyon maketh the frenshe booke

Also it maketh mencyon that the lady wende there had ben no
 pleasyr but kyffynge and clyppynge / ¶ And in the meane
 tyme there was a knyght in Bretayne his name was Suppy-
 nabyles / and he came ouer the see in to Englonde / And thenne
 he came in to the court of kynge Arthur / and he met with 5
 sir Launcelot du lake / and told hym of the maryage of fyre
 Triftram / Thenne said sir Launcelot / Fy vpon hym vntrue
 knyghte to his lady that soo noble a knyghte as sir Tryfram
 is shold be foude to his fyrst lady fals / la beale Ifoud / quene
 of Cornewaile / But faye ye hym this / said sir Launcelot that 10
 of alle knyghtes in the world I loued hym moost / and had
 moost ioye of hym / and alle was for his noble dedes / and le-
 te hym wete the loue bitwene hym and me is done for euer /
 And that I gyue hym warnyng from this daye forth as his
 mortal enemy

15

¶ Capitulum xxxviij

Thenne departed fyr Suppynabyles vnto Bretayne a-
 gayne / and there he fond sir Triftram / and told hym /
 that he had ben in kynge Arthurs courte / Thenne said sir Trif-
 tram herd ye ony thyng of me / Soo god me help faide fyre
 Suppynabyles / there I herd sir Launcelot speke of you gre- 20
 te shame / and that ye be a fals knyght to your lady / and he bad
 me doo you to wete that he wille be your mortal enemy in eue-
 ry place where he may mete you / That me repenteth said Trif-
 tram / for of alle knyghtes I loued to be in his felausship / Soo
 fyre Triftram made grete mone and was ashamed that noble 25
 knyghtes shold deffame hym for the sake of his lady / And in
 this meane whyle la beale Ifoud maade a letter vnto Quene
 Gueneuer complaynyng her of the vntrouthe of sir Triftram
 and how he hadde wedded the kynges doughter of Bretayne /
 Quene Gueneuer sente her another letter / and badde her be of 30
 good chere / for she shold haue Ioye after sorow / for sir triftram
 was so noble a knyght called / that by craftes of forcery ladyes
 wolde make fuche noble men to wedde them / but in the ende
 Quene Gueneuer said hit shal be thus / that he shalle hate her /
 and loue you better than euer he dyd to fore

¶ So leue 35

we fire Trystram in Bretayne and speke we of fire Lamerak
 de galys / that as he sayled his shyp felle on a rok and peryf-
 fhed all / faue fire Lamerak and his squyer / and there he swam
 myghtely / and fysshers of the yle of seruage toke hym vp and
 5 his squyer was drowned / and the ship men had grete laboure
 to faue fire Lamoraks lyf / for alle the comfort that coude
 doo / and the lord of that yle hyght fyre Nabon le noyre a gre-
 te myghty gyaunt / And this fir Nabon hated alle the knygh-
 tes of kynge Arthurs / and in no wyfe he wold doo hem fa-
 10 uoure / And thefe fysshers told fir Lamorak alle the gyfe of
 fyre Nabon / how there came neuer knyghte of kynge Arthurs
 but he destroyed hym / And atte last bataille that he dyd was
 flayne fyr Nanowne le petyte / the which he put to a shameful
 dethe in despyte of kynge Arthur / for he was drawen lymme
 15 meale / That forthynketh me said fir Lamerak for that knygh-
 tes dethe / for he was my cofyn / And yf I were at myn ease
 as wel as euer I was I wold reuenge his dethe / Pees fa-
 yd the fysshers and make here no wordes / for or euer ye depar-
 te from hens fyre Nabon must knowe that ye haue ben here / or
 20 els we shold dye for your sake / So that I be hole said Lamo-
 rak of my diseafe / that I haue taken in the see / I wille that ye
 telle hym that I am a knyzt of kynge Arthurs / for I was ne-
 uer aferd to reneye my lord /

¶ Capitulum xxxviii

Now tourne we vnto fire Trystram that vpon a daye he
 25 took a lytel Barget and his wyf Ifoud la blaūche
 maynys with fire kay hedyus her broder to playe hem in the cof-
 stes / And whan they were from the land / there was a wyn-
 de drofe hem in to the coste of walys vpon this yle of seruage /
 where as was fyre Lamorak and there the Barget all to rofe
 30 and there dame Ifoud was hurte / and as wel as they myzte
 they gate in to the forest / and there by a welle he sawe Segwa-
 rydes and a damoyfel / And thenne eyther falewed other / fyre
 fayde Segwarydes I knowe you for fire Tristram de Lyones
 the man in the world that I haue moost cause to hate by cause

ye departed the loue bitwene me and my wyf / but as for that
fayd Segwarydes I wil neuer hate a noble knyzt for a lyzt
lady / And therefore I pray you be my frende and I wille be
yours vnto my power / for wete ye wel / ye are hard bestad in
this valey / and we shalle haue ynough to doo eyther of vs to 5
focoure other / And thenne sir Segwarydes brought sir Tryf-
tram to a lady there by that was borne in Cornewaile / and
she told hym alle the peryls of that valey / and how ther cam
neuer knyght there but he were taken prysoner or slayne / wete
you wel fair lady said sir Tryfram that I slewe sire Marhaus 10
and delyuerd Cornewaile from the truage of Irland / And
I am he that delyuerd the kynge of Irlande from sire Bla-
mor de ganys / and I am he that bete sire Palamydes / and we-
te ye wel I am sire Tryfram de lyones that by the grace of
god shalle delyuer this woful yle of feruage / So sir Triftram 15
was wel eased / thenne one told hym there was a knyghte of
kyng Arthur þat had wrackyd on the rockes / what is his name
said sir Triftram / we wote not said the fyffhers but he kepeth it
no counceil but that he is a knyghte of Kynge Arthurs / and
by the myghty lord of this yle he setteth nought by / I praye 20
you said sir Tdeftram and ye maye brynge hym hyder that I
maye see hym / And yf he be ony of the Knyghtes of Arthurs
I shalle knowe hym / Thenne the lady prayed the fyffhers to
brynge hym to her place / Soo on the morowe they brouzt hym
thyder in a fyffhers rayment / And as soone as sire Triftram 25
sawe hym he smyled vpon hym and knewe hym wel / but he
knewe not sir Triftram / Fair sir faide sire Triftram me semeth
by your chere ye haue ben diseased but late / and also me thyn-
keth I shold knowe you here to fore / I wille wel said sir La-
morak that ye haue sene me and mette with me / Fair sir faide 30
sir triftram telle me your name / vpon a couenaunt I wil telle
you said sir Lamorak / that is / that ye wil telle me whether ye
be lord of this Iland or noo that is called Nabon le noyre /
For sothe said sir triftram I am not he nor I hold not of hym
I am his foo as wel as ye be / and foo shal I be foude or I de- 35
parte out of this yle / Wel said sir Lamorak syn ye haue faide
foo largely vnto me / My name is sire Lamorak de galis sone
vnto kynge Pellinore / forsothe I trowe wel said sir triftram /

for and ye said other / I knowe the contrary / What are ye said
 fyre Lamorak that knoweth me / I am sir Trystram de ly-
 ones / A fyre remembre ye not of the falle ye dyd yeue me o-
 nes / and after ye refused me to fyghte on foot / that was not
 5 for fere I had of you said sir Tristram / but me shamed att
 that tyme to haue more a doo with you / for me semed ye hadde
 ynough / but sir Lamorack for my kyndenes many ladyes ye
 putte to a reproof / whan ye sente the horne from Morgan le fay
 to kyng Marke where as ye dyd this in despyte of me / Well
 10 said he / and it were to doo ageyne / soo wold I doo / for I had
 leuer stryf and debate felle in kyng Marks courte rather than
 Arthurs courte / for the honour of bothe courtes be not y lyke
 As to that said sir Tristram I knowe wel / ¶ But that that
 was done it was for despyte of me / but alle youre malyce I
 15 thanke god hurte not gretely / Therfor said sir Tristram ye shal
 leue alle your malyce / and soo wille I and lete vs assay hou
 we may wyne worship bitwene you and me vpon this gy-
 aunt sir Nabon le noyre / that is lord of this Iland to destroye
 hym / Sir said sir Lamorak now I vnderstande your knyght-
 20 hode / it maye not be fals that alle men saye / for of your bounte
 nobles and worship of alle knyghtes ye are pyerles / And for
 your curtosy and gentilnes I shewed you vngentilnesse / &
 that now me repenteth

¶ Capitulum xxxix

IN the meane tyme there cam word that sir Nabon had
 25 made a crye that alle the peple of that yle shold be at
 his castel the fyfthe day after / ¶ And the same daye the sone
 of Nabon shold be made knyghte / and alle the knyghtes of
 that valey and there about shold be there to Iuste and all tho
 of the Royamme of Logrys shold be there to Iuste with them
 30 of Northwalys / and thyder came fyue honderd knyghtes / and
 they of the countrey brought thyder fyre Lamorak and sir Trif-
 tram and fyre kehedyus and sir Segwarides / for they durst
 none other wyse doo / and thenne sir Nabon lent sir Lamorak
 hors and armour at sir Lamoraks desyre / and sir Lamorak
 35 Iusted and dyd suche dedes of armes that Nabon and all the

peple faid there was neuer knyzt that euer they sawe do fuche
 dedes of armes / for as the Frenshe book saith he foriusted alle
 that were there for the moost party of fyue honderd knyghtes
 that none abode hym in his fadel Thenne sir Nabon profered to
 playe with hym his playe / for I sawe neuer no knyghte doo 5
 soo muche vpon a daye / I wille wel faid sire Lamorak playe
 as I may but I am wery and fore bryfed / and there eyther
 gate a spere / but Nabon wold not encountre with sire Lamo-
 rak / but smote his hors in the forhede and soo slewe hym / and
 thenne sire Lamorak yede on foote and torned his shelde and 10
 drewe his swerd / and there beganne stronge bataill on foote /
 But sir Lamorak was so fore bryfed and shorte brethed that
 he tracyd and trauercyd somwhat abak / Fair felawe faid fyre
 Nabon hold thy hand and I shalle shewe the more curtosye /
 than euer I shewed knyght by cause I haue sene this daye thy 15
 noble knyghthode / And therfore stand thou by and I wil wete
 whether ony of thy felawes wille haue adoo with me / Thenne
 whan sir Tristram herd that / he stepte forth and and faid Nabon le-
 nde me hors and sure armour and I wille haue adoo with the
 Wel felawe faid sir Nabon goo thou to yonder paelione and 20
 arme the of the best thou fyndest there / and I shalle playe a
 merueillous playe with the / Thenne faid sire Tristram loke ye
 playe wel or els peraduentur I shalle lerne you a newe play
 that is wel faid felawe faid sir Nabon / So whan sir Tristram
 was armed as hym lyked best and wel shelded and swerded / 25
 he dresid to hym on foote / For wel he knewe syr Nabon wold
 not abyde a stroke with a spere / therfore he wold flee alle kny-
 ghtes horses / Now fair felawe faid sir Nabon lete vs playe /
 Soo thenne they foughte longe on foote tracynge and trauer-
 cynge smytynge and foynynge longe withoute ony rest / Atte 30
 last sir Nabon praid hym to telle hym his name / Syre Nabon
 I telle the my name is sir Tristram de lyones a knyzt of Cor-
 newail vnder kynge Marke / thou art welcome faid sir nabon /
 for of alle knyghtes I haue moost defyred to fyghte with the
 or with sir Launcelot / Soo thenne they wente egerly to gyders 35
 and sire tristram slewe sire nabon / and soo forth with he lepte
 to his sone / and strake of his hede / and thenne al the country
 sayde / they wold holde of sire Tristram / nay saide sire Tristram

I wille not foo / here is a worshipfull knyght fir Lamorak de
galys that for me he shalle be lord of this countrey / for he ha-
th done here grete dedes of armes / nay said fir Lamorak I wil
not be lord of this countrey / for I haue not deserued it as wel
5 as ye / therfore gyue ye hit where ye wille for I will none ha-
ue / Wel faide fire Triftram fyn ye nor I wille not haue hit /
lete vs yeue hit to hym that hath not so wel deserued hit / Doo
as ye lyft said Segwarydes / for the yefte is yours for I wil
none haue and I had deserued hit / Soo was it yeuen to seg-
10 warydes wherof he thanked hem / and foo was he lord / & wor-
shipfully he dyd gouerne hit / And thenne fir Segwarydes
delyuerd alle prysoners and sette good gouernaunce in that
valey / and foo he torned in to Cornewaile / and told kynge
Mark and la beale Ifoud how fir Triftram had auauenced
15 hym to the yle of seruage / and there he proclamed in al Cor-
newaile of alle the aduentures of these two knyghtes / so was
hit openly knowen / But ful wo was la Beale Ifoud when
she herde telle that fire Triftram was wedded to Ifoud la bla-
unche maynys

¶ Capitulum xi

20 **S**oo torne we vnto fir Lamorak that rode toward Ar-
thurs courte / and fire Triftrams wyf and Kehydyus
took a vessel and sailed in to Bretayne vnto kynge Howel
where he was welcome / And whan he herd of these aduētures
they merueilled of his noble dedes / Now torne we vnto fir La-
25 morak that whan he was departed from fire Triftram / he rode
oute of the forest tyll he came to an hermytage / whan the here-
myte sawe hym / he asked hym from whens he came / fir said fir
Lamorak I come fro this valey / fir said the hermyte therof I
merueille / For this xx wynter I sawe neuer no knyght passe
30 this countrey / but he was other slayne or vylaynoufly woun-
ded or passe as a poure prysoner / Tho ylle customs said fir la-
morak are fordone / for fir Triftram slewe your lord fir Nabon
and his sone / thenne was the hermyte gladde and all his bre-
theren / for he said ther was neuer suche a tyraunt among cry-
35 sten men / And therfor said the hermyte this valey and fraūceis

we wille holde of fire Triftram / Soo on the morowe fir Lamo-
rak departed / And as he rode he sawe four knyghtes fyghte a-
geynst one / and that one knyght defended hym wel but atte
last the four knyghtes had hym doune / And thenne fir Lamo-
rak wente betwixe them / and asked them why they wold flee 5
that one knyght / and said hit was shame four ageynst one /
Thou shalt wel wete said the four knyghtes that he is fals /
that is youre tale said fir Lamorak / And whanne I here hym
also speke / I wille say as ye saye / ¶ Thenne said Lamorak / a
knyght can ye not excuse you / but that ye are a fals knyghte / 10
Syr said he yet can I excuse me both with my word & with my
handes / that I wille make good vpon one of the best of them
my body to his body / ¶ Thenne spake they al attones / we wil
not Ieopardy our bodyes as for the / But wete thou wel they
faide and kynge Arthur were here hym self it shold not lye in 15
his power to faue his lyf / That is to moche said / said fire La-
morak / but many speke behynde a man more than they wylle
faye to his face / And by cause of your wordes ye shalle vnder-
stande that I am one of the symplest of kynge Arthurs co-
urte / in the worship of my lord now doo your best / and in despy- 20
te of you I shalle rescowe hym / And thenne they laffhed alle
at ones to fir Lamorak / but anone at two strokes fyre Lamo-
rak had slayne two of them / and thenne the other two fledde
¶ Soo thenne fire Lamorak torned ageyne to that knyghte / &
asked hym his name / fyre he sayde my name is fire Frolle of 25
the oute Iles / thenne he rode with fire Lamorak and bare hym
company / And as they rode by the waye / they sawe a femely
knyght rydyng ageynst them / and all in whyte / A said Frol
yonder knyght Iusted late with me and smote me doune / ther-
fore I wil Iuste with hym / ye shal not doo soo said fire Lamo- 30
rak by my counceil / and ye wille telle me your quarel whether
ye Iusted at his request / or he at yours / Nay said fir Frol / I
Iusted with hym at my request / Syr said Lamorak / thēne wil
I couceile you dele no more with hym / for me semeth by his co-
untenaunce he shold be a noble knyght / and no Iaper / for me 35
thynketh / he shold be of the table round / therfor I wil not spa-
re said fir Frol / and thenne he cryed and said / fir knyzt make

the redy to Iust / That nedeth not faid the whyte knyghte / For
 I haue no luste to Iuste with the / but yet they feutryd theyr
 speres / and the whyte knyghte ouerthrewe fire Frol / and thē
 ne he rode his waye a softe paas / Thenne fir Lamorak rode af-
 5 ter hym / and praid hym to telle hym his name / for me semeth
 ye shold be of the felauhip of the round table / Vpon a coue-
 naunt faid he I wille telle you my name / soo that ye wylle
 not discouer my name / and also that ye wille telle me yours /
 Thenne faid he my name is fir Lamorak de galys / And my
 10 name is fir Launcelot du lake / thenne they putte vp their fuer-
 des / and kyffed hertely to gyders / and eyder made grete Ioye
 of other / Syr faid fir Lamorak and hit please you I wyll do
 you feruyse / God defende faid Launcelot that ony of soo noble
 a blood as ye be shold doo me feruyse / Thenne he faide more I
 15 am in a quest that I must doo my self alone / Now god spede
 you faid fir Lamorak / and so they departed / Thenne fir Lamo-
 rak came to fir Frol and horfed hym ageyne / what knyght is
 that faid fir Frol / fir he faid it is not for you to knowe nor it
 is no poynte of my charge / ye are the more vncurteis faide fire
 20 Frol / and therefore I wille departe fro yow / ye may doo as ye
 lyft faid fir Lamorak / and yet by my company ye haue faued
 the fayrest floure of your garland / soo they departed

¶ Capitulum xli

THenne within two or thre dayes fyr Lamorak fond a
 knyghte at a welle slepyng / and his lady fate with
 25 hym and waked / Ryght so came fir Gawayne and toke the
 knyghtes lady / and fette her vp behynde his squyer / Soo fyre
 Lamorak rode after fyre Gawayne / and faid fire Gawayne /
 torne ageyne / And thenne faid fir Gawayne what wylle ye do
 with me / for I am neuewe vnto kyng Arthur / fyre faid he for
 30 that cause I wil spare you / els that lady shold abyde wyth
 me / or els ye shold Iuste with me / Thenne fire Gawayne tor-
 ned hym and ranne to hym that ought the lady with his spe-
 re / but the knyght with pure myght smote doune fyre Gawa-
 yne / and took his lady with hym / Alle this fir Lamorak saw
 35 and faid to hym self / but I reuenge my felawe / he will fay of

me dishonour in kynge Arthurs courte / Thenne sire Lamorak
 retorned and profered that knyght to Iuste / Syr said he I am
 redy / and there they came to gyders with alle their myght / and
 there sir Lamorak smote the knyght thorou both fydes / that he
 fylle to the erthe dede / thenne that lady rode to that knyghtes 5
 broder that hyght Belliaunce le orgulus / that duelled fast ther
 by / and thenne she told hym how his broder was slayne /
 Allas said he I wille be reuengyd / and soo he horfed hym / &
 armed hym / and within a whyle he ouertook fyre Lamorak /
 and badde hym torne and leue that lady / for thou and I must 10
 playe a newe playe / for thou hast slayne my broder fyre Froll
 that was a better knyghte than euer were thou / It myghte
 wel be said sir Lamorak / but this day in the felde I was found
 the better / Soo they rode to gyder / and vnhorfed other / & torned
 their sheldes / and drewe their swerdes / and foughte myghtely 15
 as noble knyghtes preued by the space of two houres / So the-
 ne sir Bellyaunce prayed hym to telle hym his name / Syr sa-
 id he my name is sire Lamorak de galys / A said fyr Belly-
 aunce / thou arte the man in the world that I moost hate / for
 I flewe my fones for thy sake / where I faued thy lyf / and 20
 now thou hast slayne my broder fyr Frol / Allas how shold I
 be accorded with the / therfore defende the / for thou shalt dye ther
 is none other remedy / ¶ Allas said sir Lamorak ful wel me
 ought to knowe you / for ye are the man that moost haue done
 for me / And there with alle sire Lamorak knelyd doune / and 25
 bifought hym of grace / Aryse said sir Bellyaunce / or els there
 as thou knelest I shalle flee the / That shal not nede saide sire
 Lamorak / for I wyl yelde me vnto you / not for fere of yow /
 nor for your strengthe / but your goodenes maketh me ful loth
 to haue adoo with you / wherfore I requyre you for goddes fa- 30
 ke / and for the honour of knyghthode forgyue me al that I ha-
 ue offended vnto you / Allas said Belleaunce leue thy knely-
 nge or els I shal flee the withoute mercy / Thenne they yede
 ageyne vnto batail / and either wounded other that al the gro-
 und was bloody there as they foughte / And at the laste Bel- 35
 leaunce withdrewe hym abak and sette hym doune softly vp-
 on a lytil hylle / for he was so faynte for bledyng that he my-
 ght not stande / Thenne sir lamorak threwe his shelde vpon his

bak / and asked hym what chere / wel said fyr Belliaunce / A
 fyr yet shalle I shewe you faueour in your male ease / A kn-
 yght fyr Belliaunce said fyr Lamorak thou arte a foole / for
 and I had had the at fuche auantage as thou hast done me
 5 I shold flee the / but thy gentylnes is so good and so large /
 that I must nedes forgyue the myn euylle wille / And then-
 ne fire Lamorak knelyd adoune / and vnlaced fyrst his vm-
 berere / and thenne his owne / and thenne eyther kyssed other
 with wepyng teres / Thenne fire Lamerak ledde fir Belliaunce
 10 to an Abbay fast by / and there fire Lamorak wold not departe
 from Bellyaunce tyl he was hole / And thenne they sware to
 gyders that none of hem shold neuer fyghte ageynst other / So
 fyre Lamorak departed and wente to the courte of kynge Ar-
 thur /

¶ Here leue we of fire Lamorak and of sir Tristram

¶ And here begynneth the hystorie of La cote male tayle

¶ Capitulum primum

15 **A**T the Courte of kynge Arthur there cam a yo-
 unge man and bygly made / and he was ryche-
 ly bysene / and he desyred to be made knyghte of
 the kyng but his ouer garmēt sat ouerthwart-
 ly / how be hit / hit was ryche clothe of gold /
 20 ¶ What is your name said kynge Arthur / Syre faide he / my
 name is Breunor le noyre / and within shorte space ye shalle
 knowe that I am of good kyn / It maye wel be said fir kay
 the Seneschal / but in mockage ye shalle be called la cote male
 tayle / that is as moche to saye the euyl shapen cote / Hit is a
 25 grete thyng that thou askest said the kyng / And for what ca-
 use werest thou that ryche cote / telle me / for I can wel thynke
 for somme cause hit is / Syre he answerd I had a fader a noble
 knyght / And as he rode on huntynge vpon a daye hit happed
 hym to leye hym doune slepe / And there came a knyght that
 30 had ben longe his enemy / And whan he sawe he was fast on
 slepe / he alle to hewe hym / And this same cote had my fader

on the same tyme / and that maketh this cote to fyte foo evyll
 vpon me / for the strokes ben on hit as I fond hit / and neuer
 shalle be amendyd for me / Thus to haue my faders dethe in re-
 membraunce I were this cote tyl I be reuengyd / and by cau-
 se ye are callyd the moost noblest kynge of the world I come to 5
 you that ye shold make me knyght / Sir said sir Lamorak and
 sir Gaherys / hit were wel done to make hym knyght / for hym
 besemeth wel of persone / and of countenaunce / that he shal pre-
 ue a good man and a good knyght / and a myghty for fire and
 ye be remembryd euen fuche one was sire launcelot du lake / 10
 whanne he came fyrste in to this Courte / and full fewe of vs
 knewe from whens he came / and now is he preued the man of
 moost worship in the world / and all your courte and alle yo-
 ur Round table is by sire launcelot worshipped and amended
 more than by ony knyghte now lyuyng / that is trouthe faide 15
 the kynge / and to morou att your request I shalle make hym
 knyght

¶ So on the morou there was an herte
 founden / and thyder rode kynge Arthur with a company of his
 knyghtes to flee the herte / And this yonge man that sire kay
 named la cote male tayle was there lefte behynd with Quene 20
 Gueneuer / and by fodeyne aduenture ther was an horryble ly-
 on kepte in a stronge Toure of stone and it happend that he at
 that tyme brake loos / and came hurlyng afore the Quene &
 her knyghtes

¶ And whanne the Quene sawe the
 lyon / she cryed and fledde / and praide her knyghtes to rescowe 25
 her / And there was none of hem alle but twelue that abode /
 and alle the other fledde / ¶ Thenne faide La cote male tayle
 Now I see wel that alle coward knyghtes ben not dede / and
 there with alle he drewe his sward / and dressid hym afore the
 lyon / and that lyon gaped wyde and came vpon hym raump- 30
 pyng to haue slayne hym / And he thenne smote hym in the
 mydde of the hede fuche a myghty stroke / that it clafe his hede
 in sonder / and daffhed to the erthe / ¶ Thenne was hit tolde
 the Quene how the yonge man that sire kay named by sorne
 La cote male tayle hadde slayne the lyon / With that the kyng 35
 came home /

¶ And whanne the Quene tolde hym of that
 aduenture / he was wel pleased / and said / vpon payne of myn
 hede he shalle preue a noble man and a feythful Knyghte

and true of his promyse / thenne the kynge forth with al made hym knyght / Now sire said this yonge knyght I requyre you and alle the knyghtes of youre courte / that ye calle me by none other name but la cote male tayle / in foo moche that
 5 fyr kay hath foo named me / foo wille I be called / I assente me wel therto said the kynge

¶ Capitulum secundum

THenne that fame daye there came a damoyfel in to the courte / and she brought with her a grete black shelde / with a whyte hand in the myddes holdynge a fwerd
 10 Other pyctour was there none in that shelde / whan kyng Arthur sawe her / he asked her from whens she came / and what she wold / Syr she said I haue ryden longe and many a day with this sheld many wayes / and for this cause I am come to your courte / There was a good knyght that ought this sheld / &
 15 this knyght had vndertake a grete dede of armes to enchieue hit / and foo it myffortuned hym / another stronge knyght met with hym by fodeyne aduenture / and there they fought longe / & eyther wounded other passynge fore / and they were foo wery / that they lefte that bataille euen hand / Soo this knyghte that
 20 ought this shelde sawe none other way but he must dye / & thēne he commaunded me to bere this shelde to the Courte of kynge Arthur / he requyrynge and prayenge somme good knyzt to take this shelde / and that he wold fulfyll the quest that he was in / Now what faye ye to this quest said kynge Arthur /
 25 Is there ony of you here that wille take vpon hym to welde this shelde / ¶ Thenne was there not one that wold speke one word / thenne sire kay took the shelde in his handes / Sire knyzt said the damoyfel what is your name / Wete ye wel said he my name is sire kay the seneschal that wyde where is knowen /
 30 Syre said that damoyfel laye doune that shelde / for wete ye wel it falleth not for you / for he must be a better knyzt than ye / that shalle welde this shelde / damoyfel sayd sire kay wete ye wel I toke this sheld in my handes by youre leue / for to behold it

not to that entent / but goo where someuer thou wilt / for I will
 not go with you / Thenne the damoyfel stode styll a grete why-
 le / and byheld many of tho knyghtes / Thenne spak the kny-
 ght La cote male tayle / fayre damoyfel I wille take the shel-
 de and that aduenture vpon me / soo I wyft I shold knowe / 5
 wheder ward my iourney myght be / for by cause I was thys
 daye made knyght I wold take this aduenture vpon me /
 What is your name fayre yonge man said the damoyfel / My
 name is said he la cote male tayle / wel mayft thou be called so
 said the damoyfel / the knyzt with the euylle shapen cote / but & 10
 thou be soo hardy to take vpon the to bere that shelde and to fo-
 lowe me / wete thou wel / thy skyn shalle be as wel hewen as
 thy cote / As for that said la cote male tayle whan I am soo
 hewen I wille afke you no salue to hele me with alle / And
 forth with all ther came in to the Court two squyers & brouzt 15
 hym grete horses and his armour and his speres / and anone
 he was armed and tooke his leue / ¶ I wold not by my will
 said the kynge that ye took vpon you that hard aduenture / fir
 said he / this aduenture is myn / and the fyrst that euer I took
 vpon me / and that wille I folowe what someuer come of me 20
 ¶ Thenne that damoyfel departed / and la cote male tayle fast
 folowed after / And within a whyle he ouertook the damoyfell
 and anone she myffaid hym in the fowleste maner

¶ Capitulum Tercium /

THenne fir kay ordeyned fir dagonet / kynge Arthurs
 foole to folowe after la cote male taile / and there fir 25
 kay ordeyned that fir Dagonet was horfed and armed
 and bad hym folowe la cote male taile / and profer hym to Iuf-
 te and soo he dyd / and whan he sawe la cote male tayle he cry-
 ed and badde hym make hym redy to Iufte / Soo fir la cote ma-
 le tayle smote fir Dagonet ouer his hors croupe / Thenne the 30
 damoyfel mocked la cote male tayle / and said fy for shame /
 now art thou shamed in Arthurs courte / whan they fende a
 foole to haue adoo with the / and specially at thy fyrst Iuftes /
 thus she rode longe and chyde / ¶ And within a whyle there

came fir Bleoberys the good knyght / and there he Iufted with
 la cote male tayle / and there fyre Bleoberys fmote hym fo fore
 that hors and alle felle to the erth / Thenne la cote male tayle
 arofe vp lyghtely and drefsid his fheld / and drewe his fuerd
 5 and wold haue done bataill to the vtteraūce / for he was wode
 wrothe / Not foo faid Bleoberys de ganys / as at this tyme I
 wille not fyghte vpon foote / Thenne the damoyfel Maledyfaūt
 rebuked hym in the fouleſt maner / and badde hym torne ayene
 coward / A damoyfel he faid I pray you of mercy to myſſay
 10 me no more / my gryef is ynough though ye gyue me no more /
 I calle my felf neuer the wers knyght / whan a marys ſone fa-
 yleth me / and alfo I compte me neuer the wers knyght for a
 falle of fir Bleoberys / Soo thus he rode with her two dayes /
 and by fortune there came fir Palomydes and encountred with
 15 hym / and he in the ſame wyſe ferued hym as dyd Bleoberys
 to fore hand / ¶ What doſt thou here in my ſelaufhip faide the
 damoyfel maledyfaunt / thou canſt not fytte no knyghte / nor
 withſtande hym one buffet / but yf hit were fir dagonet / A fair
 damoyfel I am not the wers to take a falle of ſire Palamy-
 20 des / and yet grete diſworſhip haue I none / for neyder Bleo-
 berys nor yet palamydes wold not fyghte with me on foote /
 As for that faid the damoyfel wete thou wel they haue deſda-
 yne and ſcorne to lyghte of their horſes to fyghte with ſuche a
 lewde knyght as thou arte / Soo in the meane whyle ther cam
 25 fir Mordred / fir Gawayns broder / and foo he felle in the ſelauf-
 ſhip with the damoyfel maledyfaunt / And thenne they came a-
 fore the caſtel Orgulous / and there was ſuche a customme that
 there myght no knyght come by that caſtel / but outhere he muſt
 luſte or be pryſoner / or at the leſt to leſe his hors and his har-
 30 neis / and there came oute two knyghtes ageynſt them / and fir
 Mordred Iuſted with the formeſt / and that knyght of the caſ-
 tel fmote ſire Mordred doune of his hors / and thenne la cote
 male tayle Iuſted with that other / and eyther of hem fmote o-
 ther doune hors and alle to the erthe / And whanne they auoy-
 35 ded their horſes / thenne eyther of hem took others horſes /
 ¶ And thenne la cote male tayle rode vnto that knyght that
 fmote doune ſire Mordred and Iuſted with hym / And there
 fyre La cote male tayle hurte & wounded hym paſſyng fore

and putte hym from his hors as he had ben dede / So he torned
vnto hym that mette hym afore / and he took the flyght toward
the castel / and sire la cote male tayle rode after hym in to the
Castel Orgulous / and there la cote male tayle flewe hym

¶ Capitulum iiij

ANd anone there came an honderd knyȝtes about hym 5
and affaylled hym / and whan he sawe his hors shold
be slayne / he alyghte and voyded his hors / & putte the brydel vn-
der his feete / and so put hym out of the gate / And whan he had
foo done / he hurled in amonge hem / and dresfid his bak vnto a
ladyes chamber walle / thynkyng hym self that he had leuer 10
dye there with worship / than to abyde the rebukes of the damoi-
fel Maledyfaunt / And in the meane tyme as he stood & fouȝt
that lady whos was the chamber wente out flyly at her post-
erne / and without the gates she fond la cote male tayles hors
and lyghtly she gate hym by the brydel / and teyed hym to the 15
posterne / And thenne she wente vnto her chambre flyly ageyn
for to behold hou that one knyght fought ageynst an honderd
knyghtes / And whan she had behold hym longe / she wente to
a wyndowe behynde his bak / and said thou knyght thou fygh-
test wonderly wel / but for alle that at the last thou must ne- 20
des dye / But and thou canst thorou thy myȝty prowesse wyn-
ne vnto yonder posterne / for there I haue fastned thy hors to
abyde the / but wete thou wel thou must thynke on thy wor-
ship / & thynke not to dye / for thou maiste not wynne vnto that
posterne without thou doo nobly and myghtly / Whan la cote 25
male tayle herd her faye so / he gryped his fwerd in his handes
and put his sheld fayre afore hym / & thorou the thyckest prees
he thrulled thorou them / And whan he came to the posterne he
fond there redy four knyghtes / and at two the fyrst strokes he
flewe two of the knyghtes / & the other fledde / & foo he wanne 30
his hors and rode from them / and alle as it was it was reher-
ced in kyng Arthurs courte / hou he flewe twelue knyghtes
within the castel Orgulous / and so he rode on his waye / And
in the meane whyle the damoyfel said to sir Mordred I wene
my foolyshe knyȝt be outhur slayn or takē pryfoner / thēne we- 35
re they ware where he came rydyng / And whan he was come

to them / he told alle how he hadde spedde / and escaped in despyte
of them alle / and somme of the best of hem wille telle no tales /
Thou lyeft falsly faide the damoyfel / that dare I make good /
but as a foole and a dastard to alle knyghthode / they haue
5 lete the passe / that may ye preue said La cote male taylor /
With that she sente a curour of hers that rode alweye with her
for to knowe the trouthe of this dede / and soo he rode thydder
lyghtly / and asked how and in what maner that la cote male
taylor was escaped oute of the castel / ¶ Thenne alle the
10 knyghtes cursyd hym and said that he was a fende and noo
man / For he hath slayne here twelue of oure best knyghtes / &
we wende vnto this daye that hit ben to moche for sir launcelot
du lake or for sir Tristram de lyones / And in despyte of
vs alle he is departed from vs and maulgre oure hedes /
15 ¶ With this answer the curour departed and came to Male-
dyfaunt his lady / and told her alle how fyr la cote male
taylor had spedde at the castel Orgulous / Thenne she smote down
her heed / and sayd lytel / By my hede said sir Mordred to the
damoyfel ye are gretely to blame so to rebuke hym / for I war-
20 ne you playnly he is a good knyghte / and I doubte not / but
he shalle preue a noble knyghte / but as yet he may not yet fytt
sure on horsbak / for he that shalle be a good horsman / hit must
come of vsage and excercyse / But whan he cometh to the strokes
of his swerd / he is thenne noble and myghty / and that sa-
25 we sir Bleoberys and sir Palamydes / for wete ye wel they
are wyly men of armes / and anon they knowe when they see
a yonge knyghte by his rydyng / how they are sure to yeue hym
a falle from his hors or a grete buffet / But for the moost party
they wille not lyghte on foote with yonge knyghtes / For
30 they are wyght and strongly armed / For in lyke wyse sir laun-
celot du lake whan he was fyrste made knyghte / he was often
putte to the werse vpon horsbak / but euer vpon foote he re-
couerd his renomme / and slewe and defoyled many knyghtes
of the round table / And therfor the rebukes that sir Laun-
35 celot dyd vnto many knyghtes causeth them that be men of pro-
weesse to beware / for often I haue sene the old preued knyghtes
rebuked and slayne by them that were but yonge begynners /
Thus they rode sure talkyng by the way to gyders /

¶ Here leue we of a whyle of this tale and speke we of sire
Launcelot du lake /

¶ Capitulum Quintum

THat whan he was come to the courte of kynge Arthur
thenne herd he telle of the yonge knyghte la cote male
tayle how he flewe the lyon / & how he tooke vpon hym
the aduenture of the black shelde / the whiche was named atte
that tyme the hardyest aduenture of the world / Soo god me 5
saue said sir Laūcelot vnto many of his felawes / it was shame
to alle the noble knyghtes to suffre suche a yonge knyghte
to take suche aduenture vpon hym for his destructyon / for I
wille that ye wete said sire launcelot / that that damoyfel ma-
ledyfaunt hath born that shelde many a day for to feche the most 10
proued knyghtes / and that was she that Breunys saunce py-
te took that sheld from her / and after Tristram de lyones rescow-
wed that shelde from hym / and gaf it to the damoyfell ageyne
A lytil afore that tyme that sir Tristram fought with my ne-
uwe sire Blamore de Ganys for a quarel that was betwixe 15
the kynge of Irland and hym / Thenne many knyghtes were
fory that sir La cote male tayle was gone forth to that aduen-
ture / Truly said sir launcelot I cast me to ryde after hym / and
within seuen dayes sir launcelot ouertook la cote male tayle /
And thenne he salewed hym / and the damoyfel maledyfaunt / 20
And whan sir Mordred sawe sir laūcelot / thenne he leste their
felauship / and soo sir launcelot rode with hem al a day / and e-
uer that damoyfel rebuked la cote male taile / and thenne sire
launcelot anfuerd for hym / thenne she leste of / and rebuked sir
launcelot / Soo this meane tyme fyre Tristram sente by a da- 25
moyfel a letter vnto sire launcelot excusynge hym of the wed-
dyng of Ifoud le blaunche maynys / and said in the letter as
he was a true knyzt / he hadde neuer adoo flesshly with Ifoud
la blaunche maynys / and passynge curtoisly & gentyly sir trif-
tram wrote vnto sire launcelot / euer bysechyng hym to be his 30
good frende / & vnto la beale Ifoud of Cornewaile / and that sire

Launcelot wold excuse hym yf that euer he sawe her / ¶ And
within shorte tyme by the grace of god said sir Tristram that
he wold speke with la Beale Isoud and with hym ryghte
haftely / Thenne sire Launcelot departed from the damoyfel / &
5 from fyr la cote male taile for to ouersee that letter / and to
wryte another letter vnto fyre Tristram de lyones / and in the
meane whyle la cote male taile roode with the damoyfel vntyl
they came to a castel that hyght Pendragon / and there were
fyxe knyghtes stode afore hym / and one of hem profered to luf-
10 te with la cote male taile / And there la cote male taile smote
hym ouer his hors croupe / ¶ And thenne the fyue knyghtes
fette vpon hym all at ones with their speres / & there they smote
la cote male taile doune hors and man / And thenne they a-
lyght sodenly / and fette their handes vpon hym all attones /
15 and toke hym prysoner / and soo ledde hym vnto the castel / &
kepte hym as prysoner / And on the morne sir Launcelot arofe
and delyuerd the damoyfel with letters vnto sir Tristram / &
thenne he took his way after la cote male taile / & by the waye
vpon a brydge there was a knyghte profered sire Launcelot to
20 lufte / and sire Launcelot smote hym doune / and thenne they
foughte vpon foote a noble batail to gyders and a myghty / &
at the laste sire Launcelot smote hym doune grouelynge vpon
his handes and his knees / And thenne that knyghte yelded
hym / and sire launcelot receyued hym fayre / Syr said the kn-
25 yght I requyre the telle me your name / for moche my herte ye-
ueth vnto you / Nay said sire Launcelot as at this tyme I wil
not telle you my name / onles thenne that ye telle me your na-
me / Certaynly said the knyght my name is sir Nerouens that
was made knyght of my lord sir Launcelot du lake / A Nero-
30 uens de lyle said sire Launcelot I am ryght gladde that ye ar
proued a good knyghte / for now wete ye wel my name is sir
Launcelot du lake / Allas said sire Nerouens de lyle what ha-
ue I done / and there with al flatlyng he felle to his feet / and
would haue kyft them / but sir Launcelot wold not lete hym / &
35 thenne eyther made grete ioye of other / And thenne sire Nero-
uens told sir Launcelot that he shold not goo by the castel of
Pendragon / for there is a lord a myghty knyght / and many
knyghtes with hym / and this nyght I herd say that they toke

a knyght prysoner yesterday that rode with a damoyfel / & they
faye he is a knyghte of the round table

¶ Capitulum vj

ASaid fir Launcelot that knyght is my felawe / & hym
shalle I rescowe or els I shalle lese my lyf therfore
And there with alle he rode fast tyl he came before the 5
Castel of Pendragon / and anone there with alle there cam vj
knyghtes / and alle made hem redy to sette vpon fire Launcelot
at ones / thenne fire Laūcelot feutryd his spere / and fmote the
formest that he brake his bak in fonder / and thre of them hytte
and thre fayled / And thenne fire launcelot past thorou them / 10
and lyghtly he torned in ageyne / and fmote another knyghte /
thorugh the brest and thorou oute the bak more than an ell / &
ther with alle his spere brak / Soo thenne alle the remenaunt
of the four knyghtes drewe their swerdes and lassed at fyre
Launcelot / And at euery stroke fire launcelot bestowed so his 15
strokes that at four strokes sondry they auoyded theyr fadels
passynge fore wounded / and forthe with alle rode hurlynge
in to that castel / And anon the lord of the castel that was that
tyme cleped fir Bryan de les yles the which was a noble mā
and grete enemy vnto kyng arthur / within a whyle he was 20
armed and vpon horsbak / And thenne they feutryd their spe-
res and hurled to gyders soo strongly that bothe theire horses
rasshed to the erthe / And thenne they auoyded their fadels / &
dressid their sheldes and drewe their swerdes and flange to
gyders as wood men / and there were many strokes yeuen in a 25
whyle / at the last fir launcelot gaf to fir Bryan suche a buffet
that he kneled vpon his knees / and thenne fir launcelot ras-
shed vpon hym / and with grete force he pulled of his helme /
and whanne fire Bryan sawe that he shold be slayne he yelded
hym and put hym in his mercy and in his grace / Thenne fire 30
launcelot made hym to delyuer alle his prysoners that he had
within his castel / and therin fir laūcelot fonde of arthurs kn-
yghtes thyrtty / and / xl / ladyes / and soo he delyuerd hem / and
thenne he rode his waye / and anon as la cote male tayle was
delyuerd he gat his hors and his harneis / and his damoyfel 35

Maledyfaunt / the meane whyle fyre Neroueus that fir Launcelot had foughten with alle afore at the brydge / he sente a damoyfel after fir Launcelot to wete hou he spedde at the Castell of Pendragon / And thenne they within the castel merueylled
 5 what knyght he was whan fir Bryan and his knyghtes deluyerd alle tho pryfoners / haue ye no merueille said the damoyfel / for the best knyghte in this world was here / and dyd this iourney / and wete ye wel she said it was fire launcelott
 Thenne was fir Bryan ful gladde and foo was his lady / &
 10 alle his knyghtes / that fuche a man shold wynne them / And whan the damoyfel and la cote male tayle vnderstood that it was fyr Launcelot du lake that had ryden with them in felau-ship / ¶ And that she remembryd her hou she had rebuked hym and callyd hym coward / thenne was she passynge heuy

¶ Capitulum septimum

15 **S** Oo thenne they took their horfes and rode forth a pas after fire Launcelot / And within two myle they ouertook hym / and falewed hym / and thanked hym / and the damoyfel cryed fir Launcelot mercy of her euyll dede / and fayenge / for now I knowe the floure of alle knyghthode is
 20 departed euen bitwene fire Triftram and you / For god knoweth said the damoyfel that I haue foughte you my lord fir Launcelot and fir Triftram longe / and now I thanke god I haue mette with you / and ones at Camelot I mette with fir Triftram / and there he rescowed this blak shelde with the why-
 25 te hand holdynge a naked fwerd / that fir Bruyns faunce pyte had taken from me / Now fayre damoyfel said fir Launcelot who told you my name / Syre said she / there came a damoyfell from a knyghte that ye fought with all at the brydge / and she told me your name was fir Launcelot du lake / blame haue
 30 she thenne said fire Launcelot / but her lord fire Neroueus hath told her / But damoyfel said fire Launcelot vpon this couenaunt I wille ryde with you / so that ye wille not rebuke this knyght fir La cote male tayle nomore / for he is a good knyght and I doubte not he shalle preue a noble knyght / and for his

fake and pyte that he sholde not be destroyed / I folowed hym
 to focoure hym in this grete nede / A / Ihesu thanke you said the
 damoyfel / for now I wil fay vnto you and to hym both / I re-
 buked hym neuer for no hate that I hated hym / but for grete
 loue that I had to hym / For euer I suppoofed that he had ben 5
 to yonge and to tendyr to take vpon hym these aduentures /
 And therefore by my wille I wold haue dryuen hym awaye
 for Ialoufy that I had of his lyf / for it maye be no yong kny-
 ghtes dede that shal enchyuee this aduenture to the ende / Per-
 dieu said sire Launucelot hit is wel said / and where ye are cal- 10
 led the damoyfel Maledyfaunt I wille calle you the damoy-
 fel Bien penfaunt / and soo they rode forthe a grete whyle vn-
 to they came to the Bordoure of the countrey of Surluse / and
 there they fond a fayr vyllage with a stronge brydge lyke a
 fortresse / And whanne sire launcelot and they were at the brid- 15
 ge / there starte forth afore them of gentilmen and yomen ma-
 ny that saide / Faire lordes ye maye not passe this brydge and
 this fortresse by cause of that black shelde that I see one of
 you bere / And therefore there shalle not passe but one of you at
 ones / therfore chese you whiche of you shalle entre withynne 20
 this brydge fyrste / Thenne sire Launcelot profered hym self fyrst
 to entre within this brydge / Syr said La cote male tayle I bi-
 feche you lete me entre within this fortresse / and yf I may spe-
 de wel / I wille fende for you / and yf it happend that I be slayn
 there it goth / And yf soo be that I am a prysoner taken / then- 25
 ne maye ye rescowe me / I am lothe said sire launcelot to lete
 you passe this passage / Syre said la cote male tayle I praye
 you lete me putte my body in this aduenture / Now goo youre
 waye said sire Launcelot / and Ihesu be your spede / So he entrid
 and anone there mette with hym two bretheren / the one hyzte 30
 sire Playne de force and the other hyght sire Playne de amours
 And anone they mette with sire la cote male tayle / and fyrste
 la cote male tayle smote doune Playne de force / and after he
 smote doune playne de amours / and thenne they dresfid them
 to their sheldes and fwerdes / and badde la cote male tayle a- 35
 lyghte / and soo he dyd / and there was daffhyng and foynyng
 with fwerdes / and soo they began to affaile ful hard la cote
 male tayle / and many grete woundes they gaf hym vpon his

heed and vpon his breft and vpon his fhoulders / And as he
 myght euer amonge he gaf fadde ftrokes ageyne /
 And thenne the two bretheren traced and trauercyd for to be
 of bothe handes of fire la cote male tayle / but he by fyne force &
 5 knyghtly prowefſe gate hem afore hym / And thenne whan he
 felte hym ſelf ſoo wounded / thenne he doubled his ftrokes / &
 gaf them ſoo many woundes that he feld them to the erthe / &
 wold haue ſlayne them had they not yelded them / And ryzt
 ſoo fire la cote male tayle tooke the beſt hors that there was of
 10 them thre / and ſoo rode forth his waye to the other fortrefſe &
 brydge and there he mette with the thyrd broder whoos name
 was fire Plenorius / a ful noble knyghte / and there they luſ-
 ted to gyder / and eyther fmote other doune hors and man to
 the erthe / And thenne they auoyded their horſes / and dreſſid
 15 their ſheldes / and drewe their ſwerdes / and gaf many fad ſtro-
 kes / and one whyle the one knyght was afore on the brydge /
 and an other whyle the other / And thus they foughte two
 houres and more / and neuer reſted / And euer fire Launcelot
 and the damoyfel beheld them / ¶ Allas ſaid the damoyfel my
 20 knyghte fyghteth paſſyng fore and ouer longe / ¶ Now may
 ye ſee ſaid fir Launcelot that he is a noble knyghte for to con-
 fydre his fyrſte bataile / and his greuouſ woundes / And euen
 forth with all ſo wounded as he is / it is merueile that he may
 endure this longe batail with that good knyghte /

¶ Capitulum Octauum

25 **T**His meane whyle fyre la cote male tayle ſanke ryghte
 doun vpon the erthe / what forwounded and what for-
 bled he myghte not ſtande / Thenne the other knyghte
 hadde pyte of hym / and ſayd fayr yonge knyghte deſmaye you
 not / for had ye ben freſſhe whan ye mette with me / as I was /
 30 I wote wel that I ſhold not haue endured ſo longe as ye ha-
 ue done / and therfore / for youre noble dedes of armes / I ſhall
 ſhewe to you kyndenes and gentylnefſe in alle that I maye /
 And forth with al this noble knyght fir Plenorius took hym
 vp in his armes / and ledde hym in to his toure / And thenne

he commaunded hym the wyn / and made to farche hym and to
 stoppe his bledynge woundes / **¶** Syre faid la cote male tayle
 withdrawe you from me / and hyhe you to yonder brydge age-
 yne / for there wille mete with you another maner knyght than
 euer was I / why faid Plenorius / is there another maner kn- 5
 yght behynde of your felaufship / ye faid la cote male tayle / ther
 is a moche better knyght than I am / what is his name fayd
 Plenorius / ye fhalle not knowe for me / faid la cote male tayle
 Wel faid the knyght / he fhalle be encountred with alle / what
 someuer he be / Thenne fir Plenorius herd a knyght calle / that 10
 fayd fyr Plenorius where art thou / outhen thou muft delyuer
 me the pryfoner that thou haft led vnto thy toure / or els come
 and doo bataile with me / Thenne Plenorius gat his hors / and
 came with a fpere in his hand walloppyng toward fyr laun-
 celot / and thenne they beganne to feutre their fperes / and came 15
 to gyders as thonder / and fmote eyther other fo myghtely that
 their horfes felle doune vnder them / And thenne they auoyded
 their horfes / and pulled out their fwerdes / & lyke two bulles
 they laffhed to gyders with grete ftrokes and foynes / but euer
 fyr launcelot recouerd ground vpon hym / and fire Plenorius 20
 traced to haue gone aboute hym / But fire launcelot wold not
 fuffer that / but bare hym backer and backer / tyll he came nyyhe
 his toure gate / And thenne faid fire launcelot I knowe the
 wel for a good knyght / but wete thou wel / thy lyf and dethe
 is in my hand / and therefore yelde the to me / and thy pryfoner 25
 The other anfuerd no word / but ftrake myztely vpon fir laū-
 celots helme that the fyre fprange out of his eyen / thenne fyre
 Launcelot doubled his ftrokes foo thyck / and fmote at hym fo
 myghtely that he made hym knele vpon his knees / And there
 with fir launcelot lepte vpon hym / and pulled hym grouelyng 30
 doune / Thenne fir Plenorius yelded hym / and his toure / and
 alle his pryfoners at his wille / thenne fir launcelot receyued
 hym and took his trouthe / and thēne he rode to the other bryd-
 ge / and there fir launcelot Iufted with other thre of his brethe-
 ren / the one hyght Pillounes / and the other hyght Pellogris 35
 and the thyrdde fir Pellandris / and fyrft vpon horfbak fir la-
 uncelot fmote hem doune / and afterward he bete them on foote /
 and made them to yelde them vnto hym / and thenne he retorned

vnto fir Plenorius / and there he fond in his pryson kyng Carados of scotland and many other knyghtes / and alle they were delyuerd / And thenne fire la cote male tayle came to fire launcelot / and thenne fir launcelot wold haue yeuen hym alle thefe fortrefes and thefe brydges / Nay faid la cote male tayle I wille not haue fire Plenorius lyelode / with that he wylle graunte you my lord fire launcelot to come vnto kyng Arthurs courte and to be his knyght and alle his bretheren I will pray you my lord to lete hym haue his lyelode / I wille wel
 10 faid fire launcelot / with this that he wille come to the Courte of kyng Arthur and bicom his man / and his bretheren fyue / And as for you fir Plenorius I wille vndertake faid fir Launcelot at the next feest foo there be a place voyded that ye shalle be knyght of the round table / Syr faid Plenorius atte
 15 next feest of Pentecost I wille be at Arthurs courte / and at that tyme I wille be guded and ruled as kyng Arthur & ye wille haue me / Thenne fir Launcelot and fire la cote male tayle repofed hem there vnto the tyme fire la cote male tayle was hole of his woundes / and there they hadde mery chere
 20 and good reft and many good gamys / and there were many fayre ladyes /

¶ Capitulum Nonum /

ANd in the meane whyle came fir kay the fenefchal and fire Brandyles / and anone they felauhypped wyth them / And thenne within ten dayes thēne departed tho knygh-
 25 tes of Arthurs Courte from thefe fortrefes / And as fir laūcelot came by the castel of Pendragon / there he putte fir Bryan de les yles from his landes / for caufe he wold neuer be withhold with kyng Arthur / and alle that castel of Pendragon / and alle the landes therof he gaf to fire la cote male tayle / &
 30 thēne fir launcelot sente for Neroueus that he made ones knyghte / and he made hym to haue alle the rule of that castel / & of that countrey vnder la cote mayle tayle / and foo they rode to Arthurs courte al holy to gyders / And at Pentecost next followynge there was fire Plenorius and fir la cote male tayle
 35 called otherwyfe by rygth fyr Breunes le noyre bothe maade

knyghtes of the table round / and grete londes kyng Arthur
 gaf them / and there Breune le noyre wedded that damoyfell
 Maledyfaunt / And after she was called Beau viuante / but
 euer after for the more party he was called la cote male tayle
 and he preued a passyng noble knyghte and myghty / & many
 worshipful dedes he dyd after in his lyf / and sire Plenorius
 proued a noble knyght and ful of prowesse / and alle the da-
 yes of their lyf for the moost party they awayted vpon sir laū-
 celot / and sire Plenorius bretheren were euer knyghtes of ky-
 nge Arthur / and also as the frensch book maketh mencyon /
 10 fyr la cote male tayle auengyd his faders dethe /

¶ Capitulum x

Now leue we here sire la cote male tayle / and torne we
 vnto sir Tristram de lyones that was in Bretayne /
 whanne la beale Ifoud vnderstode that he was wedded / she sent
 to hym by her mayden Bragwayne as pyteous letters as co-
 15 ude be thoughte and made / and her conclusion was / that / and
 hit pleasyd fyr Tristram / that he wold come to her courte / and
 bryng with hym Ifoud la blaunche maynys / and they shold
 be kepte as wel as she her self / Thenne sir Tristram called vn-
 to hym sir kehydius / and asked hym whether he wold go with
 20 hym in to Cornewaile secretly / He answered hym that he was
 redy at al tymes / And thenne he lete ordeyne pryuely / a lytel
 vessel / and therin they wente fyr Tristram / kehydius / Dame
 Bragwayne and Gouvernaile sir Tristrams squyer / So when
 they were in the see / a contraryous wynde blewe hem on the co-
 25 stes of Northwalys nygh the castel peryllous / Thenne sayd sir
 Tristram here shalle ye abyde me these ten dayes / and Gouver-
 naile my squyer with you / And yf so be I come not ageyne /
 by that daye / take the next way in to Cornewaile / for in this
 forest are many straunge aduentures / as I haue herd faye / &
 30 somme of hem I caste me to preue or I departe / And whanne
 I maye / I shalle hye me after you / Thenne sir Tristram and
 kehydius took their horses and departed from their felaship /
 And soo they rode within that forest a myle and more / And

at the last sir Triftram fawe afore hym a lykely knyzt armed
 fyttynge by a welle / and a stronge myghty hors paffyng ny-
 ghe hym teyed to an Oke and a man houynge and rydyng
 by hym ledyng an hors lade with speres / And this knyghte
 5 that fatte atte welle / femed by his countenance to be paffyng
 heuy / Thenne sire Triftram rode nere hym / and said fayr knyzt
 why fytt ye foo droupyng / ye seme to be a knyght erraunt by
 your armes and harneis / and therfor dresse you to Iuste with
 one of vs or with bothe / There with all that knyght made noo
 10 wordes / but took his shelde and bokeled hit aboute his neck /
 and lyghtely he took his hors and lepte vpon hym / And thē-
 ne he took a grete spere of his squyer / and departed his waye
 a furlonge / Sire kehydius asked leue of sir Triftram to Iuste
 fyrst / doo your best said sire Triftram / soo they mette to gyders
 15 and there sir kehydius had a falle / and was fore wounded /
 on hyghe aboue the pappys / ¶ Thenne sir Triftram said / knyzt
 that is wel Iusted / Now make you redy vnto me / I am redy
 said the knyght / And thenne that knyght took a gretter spere
 in his hand / and encountred with sir Triftram / and there by
 20 grete force that knyght smote doune sir Triftram from his ho-
 rs and had a grete falle / Thenne sir Triftram was fore asha-
 med / and lyghtly he auoyded his hors / and put his sheld a-
 fore his sholder and drewe his swerd / And thenne sire Tryf-
 tram requyred that knyght of his knyghthode to alyghte vp-
 25 on foote and fyghte with hym / I wille wel said the knyght
 and soo he alyghte vpon foote / and auoyded his hors / and cast
 his shelde vpon his sholder / and drewe his swerd / and there
 they fought a longe bataile to gyder ful nyghe two houres /
 ¶ Thenne sir Triftram said fayr knyght hold thyn hand / &
 30 telle me of whens thou arte / and what is thy name / ¶ As for
 that said the knyght / I wille be auyfed / but and thou wolt
 telle me thy name / peradventure I wille telle the myn /

¶ Capitulum xi

Now fayr knyght he said / my name is sire Triftram de
 lyones / Syre faide the other knyght / and my name is
 35 sir lamorak de galys / A sir lamorak said sir Triftram / well

be we mette / and bethynke the now of the despyte thou dydest
 me of the fendyng of the horne vnto kynges Markes courte to
 the entente to haue flayne or dishonoured my lady the Quene
 la Beale Ifoud / and therefore wete thou wel said sir Tristram
 the one of vs shalle dye or we departe / Sire said sir Lamorak 5
 remembre that we were to gyders in the yle of seruage / and at
 that tyme ye promysed me grete frendship / thenne sire Tristram
 wold make no lenger delays but lassed at sir Lamorak / &
 thus they foughte longe / tyl eyder were wery of other / Thenne
 sir Tristram seid to sir Lamorak in alle my lyf mette I neuer 10
 with fuche a knyght that was soo bygge and well brethed as
 ye be / therefore said fyre Tristram hit were pyte / that ony of vs
 both shold here be meschyeued Syr said sire Lamorak for youre
 renomme and name I wille that ye haue the worship of this
 bataille / and therfor I will yelde me vnto you / And ther with 15
 he took the poynte of his sward to yelde hym / Nay said sir trif-
 tram ye shalle not doo soo / for wel I knowe your profers and
 more of your gentylnesse than for my fere or drede ye haue of
 me / And there with alle sir Tristram profered hym his sward
 and said sire Lamorak as an ouercomen knyghte I yelde me 20
 vnto you / as to a mā of the most noble prowesse / that euer I
 mette with alle / Nay said sir Lamorak I wille doo you gen-
 tylness / I requyre yow lete vs be sworne to gyders that ne-
 uer none of vs shalle after this day haue adoo with other / and
 there with alle fyre Tristram and sire Lamorak sware that ne- 25
 uer none of hem shold fyghte ageynst other nor for wele / nor
 for woo

¶ Capítulum xij

ANd this meane whyle there came sire Palomydes the
 good knyght folowyng the questyng beest that hadde
 in shap a hede lyke a serpentis hede / and a body lyke a 30
 lybard / buttocks lyke a lyon / and foted lyke an herte / and in
 his body there was fuche a noyse as hit had ben the noyse of
 thyrtyty coupel of hōudes questyng / and fuche a noyse that beest
 made where someuer he wente / & this beest euermore fyr palo-
 mydes folowed / for hit was called his quest / & ryȝt so as he fo- 35
 lowed this beest / it came by fyr Tristram / and soone after cam

Palamydes / and to breue this matere / he smote doune fir trif-
 tram and fir Lamorak bothe with one spere / and foo he depar-
 ted after the beste Glatyfaunt / that was called the questyng
 beeft / wherfore these two knyghtes were passyng wrothe / that
 5 fir Palomydes wold not fyghte on foote with hem /

¶ Here men may vnderstande / that ben of worship that he was
 neuer fourmed that alle tymes myght stande / but somtyme he
 was putte to the werse by male fortune / And at somme tyme
 the wers knyghte putte the better knyghte to a rebuke / Then-
 10 ne fire Triftram and fire Lamorak gate fire kehydius vpon a
 sheld betwixe them bothe / and ledde hym to a fosters lodge / &
 there they gaf hym in charge to kepe hym well / and with hym
 they abode thre dayes / Thenne the two knyghtes toke their hor-
 ses / and at the crosse they departed / And thenne said fir Trif-
 15 tram to fire Lamorak I requyre you yf ye happe to mete wyth
 fir Palamydes / say hym that he shal fynde me atte fame welle
 there I mette hym / and there I fire Triftram shalle preue whe-
 ther he be better knyght than I / and foo eyther departed from
 other a fondry way / and fire triftram rode nyghe there as was
 20 fire kehydius / and fire Lamorak rode vn tyl he came to a chap-
 pel / and there he putte his hors vnto pasture / and anone there
 came fir Melyagaunce that was kynge Bagdemagus sone / &
 he there putte his hors to pasture / and was not ware of fir la-
 morak / and thenne this knyght fire Melliagaunce maade his
 25 mone of the loue that he hadde to quene Gueneuer / and there
 he made a woful complaynte / All this herd fire Lamorak / and
 on the morne fir lamorak took his hors and rode vnto the fo-
 rest / and there he mette with two knyghtes houynge vnder the
 wood shawe / Faire knyghtes said fire Lamorak what doo ye
 30 houynge here and watchynge / And yf ye be knyghtes arraunt
 that wille luste / loo I am redy / Nay fir knyght they said / not
 foo / we abyde not here for to luste with you / but we lye here in
 a wayte of a Knyghte that slewe our broder /

¶ What knyght was that said fir Lamorak that ye wold fa-
 35 yne mete with all / Syre they said / hit is fire launcelot that fle-
 we oure broder / And yf euer we maye mete with hym / he shal
 not escape but we shalle flee hym / ¶ Ye take vpon you a

grete charge faide fir Lamorak / for fire launcelot is a noble
 proued knyzt / As for that we doute not / for there nys none of
 vs but we are good ynough for hym I will not bileue that
 faid fir Lamorak / For I herd neuer yet of no knyght the da-
 yes of my lyf but fir launcelot was to bygge for hym

5

¶ Capítulum xliij /

RYght soo as they stode talkynge thus / fyre Lamorak
 was ware hou fyr launcelot came rydyng freyghte
 toward them / thenne fire Lamorak falewed hym / and he hym
 ageyne / And thenne fire lamorak asked fir launcelot / yf there
 were ony thyng that he myght doo for hym in these marches / 10
 Nay said fire launcelot not at this tyme / I thanke you / thenne
 eyther departed from other / and fir Lamorak rode ageyn ther
 as he lefte the two knyghtes / and thenne he fond them hydde
 in the leued woode / Fy on you said fir Lamorak fals cowar-
 des / pyte and shame it is / that ony of you shold take the hyhe 15
 ordre of knyghthode / Soo fir Lamorak departed fro them / and
 within a whyle he mette with fire Melyagaunce / And thenne
 fyre Lamorak asked hym / why he loued Quene Gueneuer
 as he dyd / for I was not fer from you whanne ye made yo-
 ur complaynte by the chappel / Dyd ye soo faid fir Melyagaun- 20
 ce / thenne wille I abyde by hit / I loue quene gueneuer what
 wille ye with hit / I wille preue and make good / that she is
 the fayrest lady and moost of beaute in the world / ¶ As to
 that faid fire Lamorak I fay nay therto / for quene Morgause
 of Orkeney moder to fire Gawayne and his moder is the fay- 25
 rest quene and lady that bereth the lyf / That is not so fayd
 fyre Melyagaunce / and that wille I preue with my handes
 vpon thy body / Wille ye soo faid fire Lamorak / and in a better
 quarel kepe I not to fyghte / Thenne they departed eyther from
 other in grete wrathe / And thenne they came rydyng to gyder 30
 as hit had ben thonder / and eyther smote other so fore that the-
 ir horses felle bakward to the erthe / And thenne they auoyded
 their horses and drestid their sheldes / and drewe their fwerdes
 And thenne they hurtled to gyders as wylde bores / and thus

they fought a grete whyle / For Melyagaunce was a good
 man and of grete myght / but fire Lamorak was hard bygge
 for hym / and putte hym alweyes a bak / but eyther had wo-
 unded other fore / ¶ And as they stode thus fyghtynge / by for-
 5 tune came fire Launcelot and fire Bleoberys rydyng / And
 thenne fire launcelot rode betwixe them / and asked them / For
 what caufe they fought foo to gyders / and ye are bothe knygh-
 tes of kynge Arthur /

¶ Capitulum xiiii

10 **S**Yr said Melyagaunce I shalle telle you for what ca-
 use we doo this bataille / I prayfed my lady Quene
 Gueneuer / and said she was the fayrest lady of the
 world / and fire Lamorak said nay therto / For he said quene
 Morgause of Orkeney was fayrer than she and more of beau-
 te / A fyre Lamorak why faist thou foo / hit is not thy parte to
 15 disprays thy prynceffe that thou arte vnder their obeyffaunce
 dn we alle / and there with he alyghte on foote / and sayd
 for this quarel make the redy / For I wille preue vpon the /
 that Quene Gueneuer is the fayrest lady and moost of boun-
 te in the world

¶ Syre said fire Lamorak I am loth
 20 to haue adoo with you in this quarell / For euery man thyn-
 keth his owne lady fayrest / and though I prayse the lady /
 that I loue moost / ye shold not be wrothe / For though my la-
 dy quene Gueneuer be fayrest in your eye / wete ye wel Quene
 Morgause of Orkeney is fayrest in myn eye / and foo euery
 25 knyght thynketh his owne lady fayrest / and wete ye wel fyr
 ye are the man in the world excepte fire Tristram / that I am
 moost lothest to haue adoo with alle / But and ye wille nedes
 fyghte with me I shal endure you as long as I may /

¶ Thenne spake fire Bleoberys / and said / my lord fire Laū-
 30 celot / I wyfte you neuer foo mysaufed as ye are now / For
 fyre Lamorak faith you but reason and knyghtely / ¶ For I
 warne you I haue a lady / and me thynketh that she is the
 fayrest lady of the world / were this a grete reason that ye sh-
 old be wrothe with me for fuche langage / And wel ye wote /
 35 that fyr Lamorak is as noble a knyght as I knowe / and he

hath oughte you and vs euer good wille / and therfore I praye you be good frendes / ¶ Thenne sire Launcelot sayd vnto sire lamerak / I pray you foryeue me myn euylle wyll / And yf I was myfauyfed I wille amende hit / Syre sayde sire Lamorak the amendys is soone made betwixe you and me 5 And soo sire Launcelot and sire Bleoberys departed / and fyre Melyagaunce and sire Lamorak took their horses / and eyther departed from other / And within a whyle came kynge Arthur and mette with sire Lamorak and Iusted with hym / and there he smote doune sire Lamorack / and wounded hym fore 10 with a spere / and soo he rode from hym / wherfore sire Lamorak was wrothe that he wold not fyghte with hym on foote / how be it that sire Lamorak knewe not kynge Arthur

¶ Capitulum xv

Now leue we of this tale / and speke we of sire Tristram / that as he rode he mette with sire kay the seneschal 15 and there sire kay asked sire Tristram of what countrey he was / he answered that he was of the countrey of Cornewail Hit maye wel be said sire kay / for yet herd I neuer that euer good knyghte came oute of Cornewaile / that is euyl spoken said sire Tristram / but and it please you to telle me your name 20 I requyre you / Syre wete ye wel said sire kay that my name is sire kay the seneschal / Is that your name said sire Tristram / now wete ye well that ye are named the shamefullest knyghte of youre tonge that now is lyuyng / how be it ye are called a good knyght / but ye are called vnfortunate / and passyng ouer- 25 thwarte of your tonge / And thus they rode to gyders tyl they came to a brydge / And there was a knyghte wold not lete hem passe / tyl one of hem Iusted with hym / and so that knyzt Iusted with sire kay / and there that knyght gaf sire kay a falle / his name was sire Tor fyre Lamoraks half broder / and then- 30 ne they two rode to theyre lodgyng / And there they fonde sire Brandyles / and sire Tor came thyder anone after /

¶ And as they fatte atte souper these foure knyghtes / thre of

them spak alle fham by Cornyshe knyghtes / ¶ Syr
Triftram herd alle that they faide / and he sayd but lytell /
but he thoughte the more / but at that tyme he discouerd not his
name / Vpon the morne fir Triftram took his hors / and abode
5 them vpon their way / And there fyre Brandyles proferd to
Iuste with fir Triftram / and fir Triftram smote hym doune ho-
rs and alle to the erthe / Thenne fire Tor le fyfe de vayfhoure
encountred with fyre Triftram / and there fire Triftram smote
hym doune / and thenne he rode his waye / and fir kay folowed
10 hym / but he wold not of his felaufhip / Thenne fire Brandy-
les came to fir kay / and faid I wold wete fayne what is that
knyghtes name / Come on with me faid fir kay / and we fhall
praye hym to telle vs his name / Soo they rode to gyders / tylle
they came nyghe hym / and thenne they were ware where he fat
15 by a welle / and had putte of his helme to drynke at the welle
And whanne he sawe them come / he laced on his helme lyght-
ly / and took his hors / and proferd hem to Iuste / Nay faid fyre
Brandyles we Iusted late ynough with you / we come not in
that entent / But for this we come to requyre you of knyght-
20 hode to telle vs your name / My fayre knyghtes sythen that is
your defyre / and to please you ye shal wete that my name is
fir Triftram de lyones neuewe vnto kynge Mark of Corne-
wayle / In good tyme faide fire Brandyles / and wel be ye
fonden / and wete ye wel that we be ryght gladde that we ha-
25 ue fonde you / and we be of a felaufhip that wold be ryzt glad
of your company / For ye are the knyghte in the world that
the noble felaufhip of the round table mooste defyareth to haue
the company of / God thanke them faid fir Triftram of theyre
grete goodenes / but as yet I feale wel that I am vnabyl to
30 be of their felaufhip / For I was neuer yet of fuche dedes of
worthynes to be in the company of fuche a felaufhip / A fayde
fire kay and ye be fyre Tryftram de lyones ye are the man cal-
led now moost of prowesse excepte fir launcelot du lake / For
he bereth not the lyf crysten ne hethen that can fynde fuche ano-
35 ther knyght to speke of his prowesse and of his handes and
his trouthe with alle / For yet coude there neuer creature saye
of hym dishonour and make hit good / ¶ Thus they
talked a grete whyle / and thenne they departed eyther from

other fuche weyes as hem femed best /

¶ Capitulum xvj /

Now shall ye here what was the cause that kynge Arthur cam in to the forest perillous / that was in North-walys by the meanes of a lady / her name was An-
nowre / and this lady came to kynge Arthur at Cardyf / and she by fayre promyse and fayre bihestes maade kynge Arthur
to ryde with her in to that forest perillous / and she was a grete forcereffe / and many dayes she hadde loued kynge arthur / and
by cause she wold haue hym to lye by her / she came in to that Countrey / Soo whanne the kynge was gone with her / many
of his knyghtes folowed after kynge arthur / whan they myst hym / as sir launcelot Braundyles and many other / and when
she had brought hym to her toure / she defyred hym to lye by her and thenne the kynge remembryd hym of his lady / and wold
not lye by her for no crafte that she coude doo / Thenne euery
daye she wolde make hym ryde in to that forest with his owne knyghtes to the entent to haue had kynge arthur slayne / For
whan this lady annoure sawe that she myzt not haue hym at her wille / thenne she laboured by fals meanes to haue destroyed
kynge arthur and slayne / Thenne the lady of the lake
that was alwey frendely to kynge arthur / she vnderstoode by her subtyl craftes that kynge arthur was lyke to be destroyed
And therefore this lady of the lake that hyght Nyneue cam in to that forest to feke after sire Launcelot du lake / or sire Trif-
tram for to helpe kynge arthur / for as that same day this lady
of the lake knewe wel that kynge arthur shold be slayne / on-
les that he hadde helpe of one of these two knyghtes / and thus she rode vp and doune tyl she mette with sire Triftram / and a-
none as she sawe hym / she knewe hym / O my lord sir Triftram she said well be ye mette / and bleffid be the tyme that I haue
mette with you / for this same day / and within these two houres shalle be done the foulest dede that euer was done in this land
O fair damoyfel said sir Triftram maye I amende hit / Come on with me she said and that in alle the haste ye maye / for ye
shal see the most worshipfullest knyzt of the world hard bestad

¶ Thenne said sire Tristram I am redy to helpe suche a noble man / he is neither better ne wers said the lady of the lake but the noble kynge Arthur hym self / God defende said sir Trystram that euer he shold be in suche distresse / Thenne they rode to
 5 gyders a grete pas vntyl they came to a lytel turret a castel / & vndernethe that castel they sawe a knyghte standynge vpon foote fyghtynge with two knyghtes / And soo sir Tristram biheld them / and at the laste the two knyghtes smote doune the one knyghte / and that one of hem vnaced his helme to haue
 10 slayne hym / And the lady Annoure gat kyng Arthurs fuerd in her hand to haue stryken of his hede / And there with alle came sire Tristram with alle his myghte / cryenge / Traytreffe / Traitresse leue that / And anone there sire Tristram smote the one of the knyghtes thorou the body that he felle dede / and thē
 15 ne he raffhed to the other / and smote his bak in sonder / and in the meane whyle the lady of the lake cryed to kyng Arthur lete not that fals lady escape / Thenne kynge Arthur ouertoke her / and with the same swerd he smote of her heed / and the lady of the lake took vp her heed and henge it vp by the heyre
 20 re of her fadel bowe / And thenne sir Tristram horfed kyng Arthur / and rode forth with hym / but he charged the lady of the lake not to discouer his name as at that tyme / Whan the kynge was horfed / he thanked hertely sire Tristram / and desyred to wete his name / but he wold not telle hym / but that he was
 25 a poure knyght auenturous / and soo he bare kyng Arthur felauship tyl he met with somme of his knyghtes / And within a whyle he mette with sir Ector de marys / and he knewe not kyng Arthur nor sir Tristram / and he desyred to luste with one of hem / Thenne sire Tristram rode vnto sir Ector / and smote
 30 hym from his hors / And whanne he hadde done soo / he cam ageyne to the kynge / and said my lord yonder is one of your knyghtes / he may bere you felauship / and another day that dede that I haue done for you I truste to god ye shalle vnderstande that I wold do you seruyse / Allas said kyng Arthur
 35 lete me wete what ye are / Not at this tyme said sir Tristram / Soo he departed and lefte kyng Arthur and sir Ector to gyders

¶ Capitulum xvij

ANd thenne at a day sette fire Triftram and fire Lamo-
rak mette at the welle / and thenne they took kehydi-
us at the fosters hous / and soo they rode with hym to
the ship / where they lefte dame Brangwayne and Gouvernayle
and soo they fayled in to Cornewaile all holy to gyders / and 5
by assent and enformacyon of dame Brangwayn whan theye
were landed they rode vnto fire Dynas the seneschal / a trusty
frende of fir Triftrams / and so dame Brangwayne and fyre
Dynas rode to the courte of kynge Marke / and told the que-
ne la Beale Ifoud that fir triftram was nyghe her in that co- 10
untrey / thenne for very pure Ioye la beale Ifoud swowned / &
whan she myghte speke / she said gentyl knyzt Seneschall help
that I myght speke with hym / outhur my herte wille braft /

¶ Thenne fir Dynas and dame Brangwayne broughte fyre
triftram and kehydius pryuely vnto the courte vnto a cham- 15
bre where as la beale Ifoud hadde assygned hit / and to telle
the ioyes that were betwixe la beale Ifoud and fire triftram /
there is no tonge can telle it / nor herte thynke hit / nor pen wry-
te hit / And as the Frensshe book maketh mencyon at the fyrst
tyme that euer fir kehydius sawe la beale Ifoud / he was soo 20
enamoured vpon her / that for very pure loue he myghte neuer
withdrawe hit / And at the last as ye shall here or the book be
ended / fire Kehydius dyed for loue of la beale Ifoud / and
thenne pryuely he wrote vnto her lettres and ballades of the
moost goodlyest that were vsed in tho dayes / ¶ And whanne 25
La beale Ifoud vnderstood his letters she hadde pyte of his cō-
playnt / and vnauyfied she wrote another letter to comforte hym
with alle / And fire triftram was alle this whyle in a turret
at the commaundement of la beale Ifoud / and whan she my-
ght / she came vnto fire triftram / So on a day kynge Mark pla- 30
yed at the cheffe vnder a chamber wyndowe / and at that tyme
fire triftram and fire Kehydius were within the chamber ouer
Kyng Marke / and as it myshapped fir triftram fonde the let-
ter that Kehydius sent vnō la beale Ifoud / also he had fōud
the letter that she wrote vnto Kehydius / & at that same tyme 35
la Beale Ifoud was in the same chamber / Thenne fir triftram

came vnto la Beale Ifoud and said / Madame here is a letter that was sente vnto you / and here is the letter that ye sent vnto hym that sente you that letter / Allas madame the good loue that I haue loued you / and many landes and rycheſſe
 5 haue I forfaken for your loue / and now ye are a traytreſſe to me the whiche dothe me grete payne / but as for the fir kehydius I broughte the oute of Bretayne in to this Coūtreȳ / and thy fader kynge Howel I wanne his landes / how be it I wedded thy fyſter Ifoud le blaunche maynys for the goodenes ſhe
 10 dyd vnto me / And yet as I am true knyghte ſhe is a clene mayden for me / but wete thou wel fyr Kehydius for this falſhede and treaſon thou haſt done me / I wille reuenge hit vpon the / And there with alle fir Triftram drewe oute his ſwerd / and ſaid ſire kehydius kepe the / and thenne la Beale Ifoud
 15 fwounded to the erthe / And whanne ſir kehydius ſawe ſir triftram come vpon hym / he ſawe none other bote / but lepte oute at a bay wyndowe euen ouer the hede where ſat kynge Marke playenge at the cheſſes / And whanne the kynge ſawe one come hurlynge ouer his hede / he ſayd / Felawe what arte thou / and
 20 what is the cauſe thou lepeſt oute at that wyndowe / ¶ My lord the kynge ſaid Kehydius / hit fortunēd me that I was a ſlepe in the wyndowe aboue your hede / and as I ſlepte I flommeryd / and ſoo I felle doune / And thus ſir kehydius excuſed hym

¶ Capitulum xiii

25 **T**Henne ſir Triftram dredde fore left he were diſcouerd vnto the kynge that he was there / wherfore he drewe hym to the ſtrengthe of the Toure / and armed hym in ſuche armour as he had to fyghte with hem that wold withſtande hym / And ſoo whanne ſire Triftram ſawe / there was no
 30 reſyſtence ageynſt hym / he ſente Gouvernaile for his hors and his ſpere / and knyghtely he rode forth oute of the caſtel openly that was called the caſtel of Tyntagil / And euen atte gate he mette with Gyngalyn fyr Gawayns ſone / And anone ſir Gyngalyn putte his ſpere in his reyſte / and ranne vpon
 35 ſire Tryſtram and brake his ſpere / and ſire Triftram at that

tyme had but a fwerd / and gaf hym fuche a buffet vpon the
 helme that he fylle doune from his fadel / and his fwerd fode
 adoune / and carf a fonder his hors neck / And foo fire triftram
 rode his waye in to the foreft / and alle this doyngne fawe kyng
 Mark / And thenne he fente a fquyer vnto the hurte knyghte 5
 and commaunded hym to come to hym / and foo he dyd / And
 whanne kynge Marke wyft that it was fir Gyngalyn / he wel-
 comed hym / and gaf hym an hors / and asked hym what kn-
 yght hit was that had encoûtred with hym / Syr faid fir gyn-
 galyn / I wote not what knyzt he was / but wel I wote that he 10
 fygheth and maketh grete dole / Thenne fir Triftram within a
 whyle mette with a knyght of his owne that hyghte fir Fer-
 gus / And whan he had mette with hym he made grete forowe
 in fo moche that he felle doune of his hors in a fwoune / and
 in fuche forowe he was in thre dayes and thre nyghtes / Thenne 15
 at the lafte fir Triftram sent vnto the courte by fir Fergus for
 to fperre what tydynges / And fo as he rode by the way he met
 with a damoyfel that came from fir Palamydes to knowe and
 feke how fir Triftram dyd / Thenne fir Fergus told her / how
 he was al moft out of his mynde / ¶ Allas faid the damoyfel 20
 where fhalle I fynde hym / In fuche a place faid fire Fergus
 ¶ Thenne fir Fergus fond Quene Ifoud feke in her bedde /
 makynge the gretteft dole that euer ony erthely woman made
 And whan the damoyfel fonde fire Triftram / ſhe made grete do-
 le by caufe ſhe myzt not amende hym / for the more ſhe made of 25
 hym / the more was his payne / And at the laft fir Triftram to-
 ke his hors and rode awaye from her / And thenne was it thre
 dayes or that ſhe coude fynde hym / And thenne ſhe broughte
 hym mete and drynke / but he wold none / and thenne another
 tyme fir Triftram eſcaped away from the damoyfel / and it hap- 30
 ped hym to ryde by the ſame caſtel where fire Palamydes and
 fir Triftram dyd bataille whan la beale Ifoud departed them /
 And there by fortune the damoyfel mette with fire Triftram a-
 geyne makynge the gretteft dole that euer erthely creature ma-
 de / and ſhe yede to the lady of that caſtel / and tolde her of the 35
 myſaventure of fire Triftram / allas faid the lady of that caſtel
 where is my lord fir triftram / Ryght here by your caſtel faid the
 damoyfel / In good tyme faide the lady / is he foo nyghe me / he

fhalle haue mete and drynke of the best / and an harp I haue
 of his / where vpon he taught me / For of goodely harpyng he
 bereth the pryce in the world / So this lady and damoifel bro-
 ught hym mete and drynke / but he ete lytel therof / Thenne
 5 vpon a nyght he putte his hors from hym / And thenne he vn-
 laced his armour / and thenne fir Triftram wold go in to the
 wilderneffe and braft doune the trees and bowes / and other-
 whyle whan he fond the harp that the lady fente hym / thenne
 wold he harpe and playe therupon / and wepe to gyders / and
 10 fomtyme whan fir Triftram was in the woode that the la-
 dy wyft not where he was / thenne wold she fytt her doune and
 playe vpon that harp / Thenne wold fir Triftram come to that
 harp / and herken ther to / and fomtyme he wold harpe hym self
 Thus he there endured a quarter of a yere / thēne at the laft he
 15 ranne his way / and she wifte not where he was become / And
 thenne was he naked and waxed lene / and poure of fleffhe /
 and foo he felle in the felaufhip of herd men and sheepherdes /
 and dayly they wold gyue hym fomme of their mete / & dryn-
 ke / And whan he dyd ony fhrewd dede / they wold bete hym
 20 with rodde / and foo they clypped hym with fheres and ma-
 de hym lyke a foole

¶ Capitulum xix

ANd vpon a day Dagonet kyng Arthurs foole came
 in to Cornewaile with two fquyers with hym / and as
 they rode thorough that forest / they came to a fayre welle / where
 25 fir Triftram was wonte to be / and the whether was hote / and
 they alyghte to drynke of that welle / and in the meane whyle
 their horses brake lous / ¶ Ryght foo fir Triftram came vnto
 them / and fyrft he foufyd fir Dagonet in that welle / & af-
 ter his fquyers / and there at lough the sheepherdes / and forth
 30 with al he ranne after their horses and broughte hem ageyne /
 one by one / and ryghte foo wete as they were / he made hem le-
 pe vp / and ryde their wayes / ¶ Thus fir Triftram endured
 there an halfe yere naked / and wold neuer come in town / ne
 vyllage / The meane whyle the damoyfel that fyre Palomydes
 35 fente to feke fir Triftram she yede vnto fir Palomydes / and told

hym alle the meschyef that sir Triftram endured / Allas fayd
sir Palomydes hit is grete pyte that euer soo noble a Knyght
shold be soo mescheued for the loue af a lady / But neuerthe-
les I wille goo and feke hym / and comforte hym and I may
¶ Thenne a lytel before that tyme la Beale Ifoud had com- 5
maunded sir Kehydus oute of the Countrey of Cornewaile /
Soo sir Kehydus departed with a dolorous herte / and by ad-
uerture he mette with sir Palomydes / and they enfelaushypped
to gyder / and eyther complayned to other of theire hote loue
that they loued la beale Ifoud / Now lete vs faid sir Palomy- 10
des feke sire triftram that loued her as wel as we / and lete
vs preue whether we maye recouer hym / Soo they rode in to
that forest / and thre dayes and thre nyghtes they wold neuer
take their lodgyng but euer foughte sir triftram / And vpon
a tyme by aduerture they mette with Kynge Mark that was 15
ryden from hys men al alone / whanne they sawe hym / fyre pa-
lomydes knewe hym / but sir Kehydus knewe hym not / A fa-
ls kynge faid sir Palomydes / it is pyte thou hast thy lyf / For
thou arte a destroyer of alle worshipful Knyghtes / and by thy
meschyef and thy vengeance thou hast destroyed the mooste 20
noble Knyght sire triftram de lyones / And therfor defende the
faid sir Palomydes / for thou shalt dye this day / that were sha-
me faid Kyng Mark / for ye two are armed and I am vnar-
med / As for that faid sir Palomydes I shalle fynde a remedy
therfore / here is a Knyzt with me / and thou shalt haue his har- 25
neis / Nay faid kyng Mark I wille not haue adoo with yow
for cause haue ye none to me / For alle the myseafe that sir trif-
tram hath / was for a letter that he fond / for as to me I dyd
to hym no displeasyre / and god knoweth I am ful sory for
his diseafe and malady / Soo when the kyng had thus excused 30
hym / they were frendes / and kyng Mark wold haue had them
vnto tyntagil / but fyr Palomydes wolde not but torned vnto
the Realme of Logrys / and sir kehydus faide that he wolde
goo in to Bretayn / ¶ Now torne we vnto sir Dagonet ayene
that whanne he and his squyers were vpon horsbak / he demyd 35
that the shepherdes had sente that soole to araye hem so / by ca-
use that they laughed at hem / and soo they rode vnto the kepers
of beestes and alle to bete them / Syr triftram sawe them bete

that were wonte to gyue hym mete and drynke / thenne he ran
 thyder / and gat fir Dagonet by the hede / and gaf hym fuche a
 falle to the erthe / that he bryfed hym fore so that he lay styllle /
 And thenne he wraft his fwerd oute of his hand / And ther-
 5 with he ranne to one of his squyers / and smote of his hede / &
 the other fled / And soo fir Triftram took his waye with that
 fwerd in his hand rennyng as he hadde ben wylde woode /
 ¶ Thenne fir Dagonet rode to kyng Mark and told hym hou
 he had spedde in that forest / And therfore said fir Dagonet /
 10 Beware kyng Mark that thou come not aboute that welle /
 in the forest / For there is a foole naked / and that foole and
 I foole mette to gyders / and he hadde almost slayn me / ¶ A
 said kyng Mark / that is fir Matto le breune / that felle oute
 of his wytte by cause he lost his lady / For whan fir Gaherys
 15 smote doune fir Matto and wanne his lady of hym / Neuer
 fyny was he in his mynde / and that was pyte / for he was a
 good knyght /

¶ Capitulum xx

THenne fir Andred that was cofyn vnto fir Triftram /
 made a lady that was his peramour to fay and to no-
 20 yfe hit that she was with fire Triftram or euer he dyed / And
 this tale she broughte vnto kyng markes courte that she bu-
 rryed hym by a welle / and that or he dyed / he besoughte kyng
 Marke to make his cofyn fir Andred kyng of the countre of
 Lyonas / of the whiche fir Tryftram was lord of / Alle this
 25 dyd fir Andred by cause he wold haue had fire triftrams lā-
 des / ¶ And whanne kyng Mark herd telle / that fir triftram
 was dede / he wepte / and made grete dole / But whanne quene
 Ifoud herd of these tydynge / she maade fuche forowe / that she
 was nyghe oute of her mynde / And soo vpon a daye she tho-
 30 ught to flee her self / and neuer to lyue after fir triftrams deth
 And soo vpon a day la beale Ifoud gat a fwerd pryuely /
 and bare hit in to her gardyn / and there she pyghte the fwerd
 thorough a plumme tree vp to the hyltes / soo that hit stak fast
 and hit stode breft hyhe / And as she wold haue ronne vpon the
 35 fwerd and to haue slayne her self / ¶ Alle this aspyed kyng

Marke / how she kneled doune and faide / swete lord Ihesu ha-
 ue mercy vpon me / for I maye not lyue after the dethe of fyr
 Triftram de lyones / for he was my fyrst loue / and he shalle be
 the last / and with these wordes came Kyng mark and took her
 in his armes / and thenne he took vp the swerd / and bare her 5
 away with hym in to a Toure / and there he made her to be kept
 and watched her surely / and after that she lay longe seke nyȝ
 at the poynte of dethe / This meane whyle ranne sir Triftram
 naked in the forest with the swerd in his hand / and soo he cam
 to an hermytage / and there he leid hym doun and slepte / and 10
 in the meane whyle the heremyte stole awaye his swerd / and
 leid mete doune by hym / Thus was he kepte there a ten dayes
 And at the last he departed and came to the herd men ageyne /
 And there was a gyaunt in that countre that hyght Tawleas
 And for fere of sir Triftram more than seuen yere he durst ne- 15
 uer moche goo at large / but for the moost party he kepte hym
 in a sure castel of his owne / and soo this Tauleas herd telle /
 that sir Triftram was dede by the noyse of the courte of kynge
 Marke / Thenne this Tauleas wente dayly at large / And soo
 he happed vpon a daye he came to the herd men wandryng and 20
 langerynge / And there he sette hym doun to reste among them
 The meane whyle ther cam a knyght of Cornewaile that ledde
 a lady with hym / and his name was sir Dynaunt / & whanne
 the gyaunt sawe hym / he wente from the herd men and hydde
 hym vnder a tree / and soo the knyght came to that welle / and 25
 there he alyghte to repose hym / And as soone as he was from
 his hors / this gyaunt Tauleas came betwixe this knyght and
 his hors / and toke the hors and lepte vpon hym / So forth with
 he rode vnto sir Dynaunt / and took hym by the coller / & pulled
 hym afore hym vpon his hors / and there wolde haue stryken 30
 of his hede / Thenne the herd men said vnto sir Triftram / helpe
 yonder knyght / helpe ye hym seid sir triftram / we dare not said
 the herd men / Thenne sir triftram was ware of the swerd of the
 knyght there as hit lay / and soo thyder he ranne / and took vp
 the swerd and stroke of sir tauleas hede and so he yede his way 35
 to the herd men

¶ Capitulum xxi

THenne the knyght took vp the gyaunts hede / and bare hit with hym vnto kynge Marke / and told hym / what aduenture betyd hym in the forest / and how a naked man rescowed hym / from the grymly gyaunt Tauleas
 5 where hadde ye this aduenture said kynge Marke / forsothe said fyr Dynaunt at the fayre fontayne in your foreste / where many aduenturous knyghtes mete / and there is the madde man wel said kyng Mark I wille see that wild man / So within a day or two kynge Marke commaunded his knyghtes / & his
 10 hunters that they shold be redy on the morne for to hunte / and foo vpon the morne he wente vnto that forest / And whanne the kynge came to that welle / he fonde there lyenge by that welle a fayr naked man / and a sward by hym / Thenne kyng Mark blewe and straked / and there with his knyghtes came to
 15 hym / and thenne the kynge commaunded his knyghtes to take that naked man with fayrenes / and brynge hym to my castel / Soo they did fauflly & fayre and cast mantels vpon sir Triftram and foo ledde hym vnto Tyntagyll / and there they bathed hym and wasshed hym and gaf hym hote suppynges til
 20 they had brought hym wel to his remembraunce / but alle this whyle there was no creature that knewe sir Triftram nor what man he was / Soo hit felle vpon a daye that the quene la beale Ifoud herd of fuche a man / that ranne naked in the foreste / and how the kynge had brought hym home to the Courte /
 25 Thenne la Beale Ifoud called vnto her dame Brangwayne and said come on with me / For we wille goo see this man / that my lord brought from the forest the last daye / So they passed forthe / and spered where was the seke man / And thenne a squyer told the quene that he was in the gardyn / takynge
 30 his rest / and repose hym ageynst the sonne / Soo whan the quene looked vpon sir Triftram she was not remembryd of hym / but euer she seid vnto dame Brangwayne / me semeth I shold haue sene hym here to fore in many places / but as soone as sir Triftram sawe her / he knewe her wel ynough / And thenne he
 35 torned away his vyfage / and wepte / Thenne the quene hadde alweyes a lytel brachet with her that sir Triftram gaf her the fyrst tyme that euer she came in to Cornewaile / & neuer wold that brachet departe from her / but yf fyre Triftram was nyghe

there as was la Beale Ifoud / and this brachet was fente
 from the kynges doughter of Fraunce vnto fyre Triftram for
 grete loue / and anone as this lytel brachet felte a faueour of
 fyr Triftram she lepte vpon hym and lycked his learys and
 his erys / and thēne he whyned and quested and she smelled 5
 at his feet and at his handes / and on all partyes of his body
 that she myghte come to / A my lady sayd dame Brangwayn
 vnto la beale Ifoud / Allas allas said she I see it is myn own
 lord fyr Triftram / And therupon Ifoud felle doune in a fw-
 oune and foo laye a grete whyle / And whan she myght spe- 10
 ke she said / my lord sir Triftram bleffid be god ye haue your
 lyf / and now I am fure ye shalle be discouerd by this lytel bra-
 chet / for she wille neuer leue you / And also I am fure as fo-
 one as my lord kyng Mark doo knowe you / he wil bannyssh
 you oute of the countrey of Cornewaile / or els he will destroye 15
 you / For goddes sake myn owne lord / graunte kyng Marke
 his wille / and thenne drawe you vnto the Courte of kyng ar-
 thur / for there are ye byloued / and euer whan I maye I shalle
 fende vnto you / And whan ye lyft ye may come to me / and at
 alle tymes erly and late I wille be at your commaundement / 20
 to lyue as poure a lyf as euer dyd quene or lady / O madame
 said sir Triftram goo from me / for mykel anger and daunger
 haue I escaped for your loue

¶ Capitulum xxij

THenne the quene departed / but the brachet wold not
 from hym / and there with alle came kyng Marke and 25
 the brachet fat vpon hym / and bayed at them all / There with al
 fyr Andred spak and said fyr this is sir Triftram I see by the
 brachet / Nay said the kyng I can not suppose that / Thenne the
 kyng asked hym vpon his feith what he was / and what was
 was his name / ¶ So god me help said he / my name 30
 is sir Triftram de lyones / now do by me what ye lyft / A faide
 kyng Mark me repenteth of your recouer / & thenne he lete calle
 his barons to Iuge sir Triftram to the dethe / thēne many of his
 barons wold not assente therto / and in especyal fyr Dynas
 the feneschal / & sir Fergus / And so by thadyse of them al sir 35
 Triftram was banysshed out of the cōutrey for x yere / & therup-
 on he took his oth vpon a book before the kyng & his barons /

And foo he was made to departe oute of the Countrey of Cor-
 newaile / and there were many barons brought hym vnto hys
 fhyp / of the whiche somme were his frendes / & somme his foes /
 And in the meane whyle there came a knyghte of kynge Ar-
 5 thurs / his name was Dynadan / and his comyng was for to
 feke after sir Triftram / thenne they shewed hym where he was
 armed at alle poyntes goyng to the fhyp / Now fayre knyghte
 faid sir Dynadan or ye passe this courte that ye will luste with
 me / I requyre the / with a good wille faid sir Triftram / & the-
 10 se lordes wille gyue me leue / Thenne the Barons graunted
 therto / and foo they ranne to gyders / and there sir Triftram
 gaf sir Dynadan a falle / And thenne he praid sir Triftram to
 gyue hym leue to goo in his felauship / ye shalle be ryght wel-
 come faid thenne sir Triftram / and foo they took theyr horses
 15 and rode to their shyppes to gyders / and whanne sir Triftram
 was in the see / he faid / Grete wel kyng Marke and all myn
 enemyes / and faye hem I wille come ageyne whan I maye /
 And wel am I rewarded for the fyghtyng with sir Mar-
 haus / and delyuerd all this countrey from seruage / and wel
 20 am I rewarded for the fetchyng and costes of Quene Ifoud
 oute of Irland / and the daunger that I was in fyrst & last
 and by the way comyng home what daunger I had to bryn-
 ge ageyne Quene Ifoud from the castel Pluere / and well I
 am rewarded whanne I foughte with sir Bleoberys for fyre
 25 Segwarydes wyf / and well am I rewarded whan I fought
 with fyre Blamore de ganys for kynge Anguyfhe / fader vn-
 to la Beale Ifoud / and well am I rewarded whan I smote
 doune the good knyghte fyre Lamorak de galys at Kyng
 Markes request / And wel am I rewarded whan I fought
 30 with the kynge with the honderd knyghtes / and the kynge of
 Northgalys / and bothe these wold haue put his land in serua-
 ge / and by me they were put to a rebuke / and wel I am re-
 rewarded for the sleynge of Tauleas the myghty gyaunte and
 many other dedes haue I done for hym / and now haue I my
 35 waryfon / And telle Kyng Mark that many noble knyghtes
 of the table roude haue spared the barons of this countrey for
 my sake / Also am I not wel rewarded whan I fought with
 the good knyght sir Palomydes and rescowed quene Ifoud

from hym / And at that tyme kynge Marke said afore all his barons I shold haue ben better rewarded / nad forth with alle he took the fee /

¶ Capitulum xiiij

ANd at the next landynge faste by the fee / there mette with sir Triftram & with sir Dynadan sir Ector de mays 5
 rys and sir Bors de ganys / and there sir Ector Iusted with fyr Dynadan / and he smote hym and his hors doun And thenne sir Triftram wold haue Iusted with fyre Bors and sir Bors said that he wolde not Iuste with no Cornysfhe knyghtes / for they are not called men of worship / and all this 10
 was done vpon a brydge / and with this came sire Bleoberys and fyr Dryaunt / and sir Bleoberys profered to Iuste with fyr Triftram / and there sir Triftram smote doune fyr Bleoberys / Thenne said sire Bors de ganys / I wist neuer Cornysfhe knyghte of foo grete valoure nor foo valyaunt as that knyght 15
 that bereth the trappours enbrouded with crounes / And thenne sir Triftram and fyr Dynadan departed fro them in to a forest / and there mette them a damoyfel that came for the loue of sire launcelot to seke after somme noble knyghtes of kyng Arthurs courte for to rescowe sir launcelot / and foo sir launcelott 20
 was ordeyned / for by the treason of quene Morgan le fay to haue slayne sir launcelot / and for that cause she ordeyned thyrty knyghtes to lye in a wayte for sir launcelot / and this damoyfel knewe this treason / And for this cause the damoyfel came for to seke noble knyghtes to helpe fyr Launcelot / For that nyght 25
 or day after fyr launcelot shold come where these xxx knyghtes were / And foo this damoyfel mette with fyre Bors and sire Ector and with sir Dryaunt / and there she told hem alle four of the treason of Morgan le fay / and thenne they promysed her that they wold be nyghe where sire launcelot shold 30
 mete with the xxx knyghtes / & yf foo be they set vpon hym / we wil do rescowes as we can / so the damoyfel departed / and by aduenture the damoifel met with sir triftram & with sir Dynadan / & there the damoyfel told hem al the treason that was ordeyned for sir launcelot / Fair damoyfel said sir triftram bryng 35
 me to that same place where they shold mete with sir launcelot Thenne said sir Dynadan what will ye do / hit is not for vs to fyghte with thyrty knyghtes / and wete you wel I wylle

not thereof / as to matche one knyght two or thre is ynough and
 they be men / But for to matche xv knyghtes that wille I ne-
 uer vndertake / fy for shame said sire Tristram / doo but youre
 parte / Nay said sir Dynadan I will not therof / but yf ye wil
 5 lene me your sheld / for ye bere a sheld of Cornewaile / and for
 the cowardyse that is named to the knyghtes of Cornewaile by
 your sheldes ye be euer forborne / Nay said fyr Tristram I will
 not departe from my sheld for her sake that gaf it me / But one
 thyng said sir Tristram I promyse the fyr Dynadan / but yf
 10 thou wilt promyse me to abyde with me / here I shalle flee the
 For I desyre no more of the / but anfuere one knyghte / And yf
 thy herte wille not serue the / stande by and loke vpon me and
 them / Syre said fyre Dynadan I promyse you to loke vpon &
 to doo what I may to faue my self / but I wold I had not
 15 mette with you / Soo thenne anone these thyrty knyghtes cam
 fast by these four knyghtes / and they were ware of them / and
 eyther of other / And soo these thyrty knyghtes lete for thys
 cause that they wold not wrathe them yf caas be that they had
 adoo with fyr launcelot / and the four knyghtes lete them passe
 20 to this entent that they wold see and beholde what they wo-
 ld doo with fyr launcelot / and soo the thyrty knyghtes paste
 on / and came by sir Tristram and by sir Dynadan / and then-
 ne sir Tristram cryed on hyghe / loo here is a knyght ageynste
 you for the loue of sire launcelot / and there he slewe two with
 25 one sperd and ten with his fwerd / And thenne came in fyre
 Dynadan and he dyd passyng wel / and soo of the thyrty
 knyghtes there wente but ten away / and they fledde / Al this
 bataille sawe sir Bors de ganys and his thre felawes / and
 thenne they sawe wel hit was the same knyghte that lusted
 30 with hem at the brydge / thenne they took their horses and rode
 vnto fyr Tristram and prayfed hym and thanked hym of his
 good dedes / and they alle desyred fyre Tristram to goo wyth
 hem to their lodgyng / and he said nay / he wold not go to no
 lodgyng / Thenne they alle four knyghtes praid hym to telle
 35 hem his name / Faire lordes said fyr Tristram / as at this tyme
 I wille not telle you my name /

¶ **Capitulum xxiij /**

THene sir Tristram & sir Dynadan rode forth their weye
 tyl they came to the shepherdes & to the herde men / & the-

re they asked hem yf they knewe any lodgyng or herberough
there nyghe hand / ¶ Forfothe fyrs fayde the herde-
men / here by is good lodgyng in a castel / But there is fuche a
customme that there shalle no knyghte be herberowed but yf he
luste with two knyghtes / and yf he be but one knyghte / he 5
must luste with two / And as ye be therin soone shalle ye be
matched / There is shrewde herberowe said fyre Dynadan / lodge
where ye will / for I wille not lodge there / Fy for shame sayd
fir Triftram are ye not a knyghte of the table round / wherefore
ye may not with your worship refuse your lodgyng / Not foo 10
said the herd men / for and ye be beten / and haue the wers ye
shalle not be lodged there / and yf ye bete them ye shalle be wel
herberowed A said fyr Dynadan they are two fure knyghtes /
Thenne fire Dynadan wold not lodge there in no manere / but
as fire Triftram requyred hym of his knyghthode / and so they 15
rode thyder / and to make shorte tale fyr Triftram and fir Dy-
nadan smote hem doune bothe / and foo they entred in to the cas-
tel and had good chere / as they coude thynke or deuyse / And
whanne they were vnarmed and thought to be mery and in
good rest / there came in at the yates fyre Palomydes and fyre 20
Gaherys requyryng to haue the customme of the castel / what
aray is this said fire Dynadan / I wold haue my rest / that may
not be said fir Triftram / Now must we nedes defende the cus-
tomme of this castel / in foo moche as we haue the better of the
lordes of this castel / and therfore faide fire Triftram / nedes 25
muste ye make you redy / In the deuyls name said fir Dyna-
dan came I in to your company / and so they made them redy
And fir Gaherys encountred with fire Triftram / and fyr Ga-
herys had a falle / and fir Palamydes encountred with fir Dy-
nadan / and fir Dynadan had a falle / thenne was hit fall for 30
falle / Soo thenne muste they fyghte on foote / that wold not
fyr Dynadan / for he was so fore bryfed of the falle that fyre
Palomydes gaf hym / Thenne fir Triftram vnlaced fyre Dy-
nadans helme / and praid hym to helpe hym / I wille not fayde
fyr Dynadan for I am fore wounded of the thyrty knyghtes 35
that we hadde but late agoo to doo with alle ¶ But ye fa-
re said fire Dynadan vnto fyr Triftram as a madde man and
as a man þ^t is oute of his mynde þ^t wold cast hym self away

and I may curfe the tyme that euer I fawe you / For in al the world are not two fuche knyghtes that ben fo wode as is fire launcelot and ye fyr Triftram / for ones I felle in the felaufhip of fyr launcelot as I haue done now with you and he fet me
 5 a werke that a quarter of a yere I kepte my bedde / Ihefu defende me faid fyr Dynadan from fuche two knyghtes / and fpecially from your felaufhip / Thenne faid fyre Triftram I will fyghte with hem both / Thenne fyr Triftram badde hem come forth both / for I wille fyghte with you / thenne fyr Palomydes
 10 and fyr Gaherys drefsid them / and fmote at hem bothe / thenne Dynadan fmote at fyr Gaherys a froke or two / and torned from hym / nay faid fir Palomydes / it is to moche fhamme for vs two knyghtes to fyghte with one / And thenne he dyd byd fyr Gaherys ftande a fyde with that knyght that hath no lyfte to
 15 fyghte / Thenne they rode to gyders and fought longe / and atte laft fyr Triftram doubled his ftrokes / and drofe fyre Palomydes a bak / more than thre ftrydes / And thenne by one affente fyre Gaherys and fyr Dynadan wente betwixe them / and departed them in fonder / And thenne by affent of fyr Triftram
 20 they wold haue lodged to gyders / But fyre Dynadan wold not lodge in that caftel / And thenne he curfed the tyme that euer he came in their feaufhip / and foo he took his hors / and his harneis / and departed / thenne fir Triftram prayd the lordes of that caftel to lene hym a man to brynge hym to a lodg-
 25 ynge / and foo they dyd / and ouertoke fir Dynadan / and rode to their lodgyng two myle thens with a good man in a pryory / and there they were wel at eafe / And that fame nyght fir Bors and fire Bleoberys and fir Ector and fyre Dryaunt / abode ftyle in the fame place there as fire Triftram fouzt with
 30 the thyrty knyghtes / and there they mette with fyr Launcelot the fame knyght / and had made promyfe to lodge with fyr Colgreuaunce the fame nyght /

¶ Capitulum xrv

BVt anone as the noble Knyghte fyre launcelot herd of the shelde of Cornewayle thenne wyft he wel that hyt
 [leaf 188 verso]

was fire Triftram that fought with his enemyes / And thenne
 fyre Launcelot prayfed fyre Triftram / and called hym the man
 of mooft worfhip in the world / ¶ Soo there was a knyght in
 that pryory that hyght Pellinore / and he defyred to wete the
 name of fire Triftram / but in no wyfe he coude not / and fo fyr 5
 Triftram departed and lefte fir Dynadan in the pryory / for he
 was foo wery and foo fore bryfed that he myghte not ryde /
 Thenne this knyght fyre Pellinore faid to fire Dynadan / fy-
 then that ye wille not telle me that knyghtes name I will ry-
 de after hym / and make hym to telle me his name / or he fhall 10
 dye therfore / Beware fir knyght faid fir Dynadan / for and ye
 folowe hym / ye fhalle repente hit / Soo that knyghte fire Pelli-
 nore rode after fire Triftram and requyred hym of Iuftes / thē-
 ne fir Triftram fmote hym doune and wounded hym thorū
 the fhoulder / and foo he paft on his way / And on the next day 15
 folowyng fyr Triftram mette with purfyuaūts / and they told
 hym that there was made a grete crye of turnement bitwene
 kyng Carados of Scotland and the kyng of Northwalys / &
 eyther fhould Iufte ageyne other at the caftel of maydens / and
 thefe purfyuaūtes fought alle the cōtrey after the good kny3- 20
 tes / and in efpecial kyng Carados lete make fekyng for fir
 launcelot du lake / and the kyng of Northgalys lete feke af-
 ter fir Triftram de lyonas / ¶ And at that tyme fyr Triftram
 thought to be at that Iuftes / and foo by aduenture they mette
 with fire kay the fenefchal and fyr Sagramor le defyrus / and 25
 fyr kay requyred fir Triftram to Iufte / and fire Triftram in a
 maner refused hym / by caufe he wold not be hurte nor bryfed
 ageynfte the grete Iuftes that fhould be bifore the caftel of may-
 dens / and therfore he thought to repofe hym and to reft hym /
 And alway fir kay cryed fir kny3t of Cornewaile Iuft with 30
 me / or els yelde the to me as recreaunte / whan fir Triftram herd
 hym faye foo / he torned to hym / and thenne fire kay refused
 hym and torned his bak / Thenne fyr Triftram faid as I fyn-
 de the / I fhalle take the / Thenne fire Kay torned with euylle
 wyll / and fyre Triftram fmote fyr kay doune / and foo he ro- 35
 de forthe / ¶ Thenne fyre Sagramore le defyrus rode after fyre
 Triftram / and maade hym to Iufte with hym / and there fyre
 Triftram fmote doune fyre Sagramor le defyrus from his hors

and rode his way / and the fame day he mette with a damoyfel
that told hym that he shold wynne grete worship of a knyzt
aduenturous that dyd moche harme in alle that countrey /

¶ Whanne fir Triftram herd her fay foo / he was gladde to goo
5 with her to wynne worship / So fire Triftram rode with that da-
moyfel a vj myle / and thenne mette hym fyre Gawayne / and
there with alle fyre Gawayne knewe the damoyfel / that she
was a damoyfel of Quene Morgan le fay / Thenne fir Gawa-
yne vnderstode that she ladde that knyght to somme meschyef /
10 Faire knyght said fire Gawayne whyder ryde you now wyth
that damoyfel / Syr said fire Triftram I wote not whyder I
shalle ryde / but as the damoyfel wylle lede me / Syr saide fyre
Gawayne ye shalle not ryde with her / for she and her lady did
neuer good but ylle / And thenne fir Gawayne pulled oute
15 his fwerd / and said / damoyfel / but yf thou telle me anon / for
what what cause thou ledest this knyzt with the thou shalt dye
for hit ryght anone / I knowe alle your ladyes treason / & yo-
urs / Mercy fyre Gawayne she said / and yf ye wille faue my
lyf / I wille telle you / Saye on said fir Gawayne / and thow
20 shalte haue thy lyf / Syre she said Quene Morgan le fay my
lady hath ordeyned a xxx ladyes to seke & to aspye after fir la-
ūcelot or fir triftram / & by þ^e trainys of these ladyes who þ^t may
fyrst mete any of these two knyghtes they shold torne hem vn-
to Morgan le fays castel / sayenge that they shold doo dedes of
25 worship / & yf any of the two knyghtes cam there / there be xxx
knyghtes lyenge and watchyng in a toure to wayte vpon fir
launcelot or vpon fyre triftram / Fy for shame said fire Gawa-
yne that euer suche fals treason shold be wrought or vsed in a
quene and a kynges syfter / and a kyng and quenes dought-
30 ter

¶ Capitulum rrvj

SYr said fire Gawayne wille ye stande with me / and
we wille see the malyce of these thyrtty knyghtes / fyr
said fir triftram goo ye to hem / and hit please you / and ye shal
see I wille not fayle you / for hit is not long a go syn I and
35 a felawe mette with thyrtty knyghtes of that quenes felauship

[leaf 189 verso]

And god spede vs foo that we may wynne worship / So thē-
 ne sir Gawayne and sire tristram rode toward the castel where
 Morgan le fay was / and euer sir Gawayne demed wel that
 he was sire tristram de lyones by cause he herd that two kn-
 yghtes had slayne and beten thyrty knyghtes / And whanne 5
 they came afore the castel sir Gawayn spak on hyghe / and fa-
 id Quene Morgan le fay fende oute youre knyghtes / that ye
 haue leyd in a watche for sir laūcelot & for sir tristram / Now
 said sir Gawayne I knowe your fals treason / and thorou all
 places where that I ryde men shall knowe of your fals trea- 10
 son / And now lete see sir Gawayn / whether ye dare come out of
 your castel ye thyrty knyghtes / thenne the quene spak and al
 the thyrty knyghtes attones / and said / sir Gawayne ful wel
 weteft thou what thou doft and faift / For by god we knowe
 the passyng wel / But alle that thou spekeft / and doft / thow 15
 faift hit vpon pryde of that good Knyghte that is there with
 the / For there be somme of vs that knowen full wel the han-
 des of that knyght ouer alle wel / And wete thou wel sir ga-
 wayne / hit is more for his sake than for thyn that we wyll
 not come oute of this castel / For wete ye wel sir Gawayne 20
 the Knyght that bereth the armes of Cornewaile / we knowe
 hym / and what he is / thenne sir Gawayne and sir tristram de-
 parted and rode on their wayes a day or two to gyders / and
 there by aduenture they met with fyr Kay and fyr Sagramor
 le defyrus / And thenne they were glad of fyr gawayne / and 25
 he of them / but they wiste not what he was with the shelde of
 Cornewaile / but by demynge / And thus they rode to gyders a
 daye or two / And thenne they were ware of fyr Breuse faū-
 ce pyte chacyng a lady for to haue slayne her / for he had slayn
 her peramour afore / Hold you all styll said fyr Gawayne & 30
 shewe none of you forthe / and ye shalle see me reward yonder
 fals Knyght / for and he aspye you he is so wel horfed that he
 wille escape away / And thenne fyre Gawayne rode betwix fyr
 Breuse and the lady / and said fals knyghte leue her / and ha-
 ue adoo with me / whan fyr Breuse sawe no moo but fyre ga- 35
 yne he feutryd his spere / and fyr Gawayne ageynft hym / and
 there fyr Breuse ouerthrewe fyr Gawayne / and thenne he rode
 ouer hym / & ouerthwart hym twenty tymes to haue destroyed

hym / and whan fire Triftram sawe hym doo foo vylaynous a
 dede / he hurled oute ageynste hym / And whan fyr Breufe sa-
 we hym with the shelde of Cornewaile / he knewe hym well /
 that it was fyre Triftram / and thenne he fledde / and fir Trif-
 5 tram folowed after hym / and fyr Breufe saunce pyte was so
 horfed that he wente his waye quyte / and fir Triftram folowed
 hym longe / for he wold fayne haue ben auengyd vpon hym /
 And soo whanne he hadde longe chaced hym / he sawe a fayre
 welle / and thyder he rode to repose hym / and teyed his hors til
 10 a tree /

¶ Capitulum xxvii

ANd thenne he pulled of his helme and wasshed his
 vyfage / and his handes / and soo he felle on slepe /
 ¶ In the meane whyle came a damoyfel that had fo-
 ught fir triftram many wayes and dayes within this land /
 15 And whanne she came to the welle she loked vpon hym / & had
 forgeten hym as in remembraunce of fire Triftram / but by hys
 hors she knewe hym / that hyghte passe Brewel / that had ben
 fire Triftrams hors many yeres / For whanne he was mad in
 the forest / fyr Fergus kepte hym / Soo this lady dame Bran-
 20 gwayne abode styll tyl he was awake / Soo whanne she sawe
 hym wake / she sawed hym / and he her ageyn / for eyther kn-
 ewe other of old acqueyntaunce / thenne she told hym how she
 had fought hym longe and brode / and there she told hym how
 she hadde letters from quene la beale Ifoud / Thenne anon fire
 25 Triftram redde them / and wete ye well / he was gladde / for the-
 ryn was many a pyteous complaynte / Thenne fir Triftram sa-
 id / lady Brangwayne ye shalle ryde with me tyl that turne-
 ment be done at the castel of maydens / And thenne shalle ye
 bere letters and tydynges with you / And thenne fire triftram
 30 took his hors and fought lodgyng / and there he mette wyth
 a good auncyent knyght and prayd hym to lodge with hym
 Ry3t so came Gouvernaile vnto fir Triftram / that was glad
 of that lady / Soo this old knyghtes name was fir Pellow-
 nus / and he told of the grete turnement that shold be att the
 35 Castel of maydens / And there fir launcelot and xxxij kny3tes

of his blood had ordeyned sheldes of Cornewaile / and ryzte
 foo there came one vnto fyr Pellounes / and told hym that fir
 Perfydes de bloyfe was come home / thenne that knyght helde
 vp his handes and thanked god of his comynge home / and
 there fir Pellounes told fyr Triftram that in two yeres he had 5
 not fene his sone fyr Perfydes / Syr said fir Triftram I kno-
 we your sone wel ynough for a good knyght / foo on a tyme
 fyr Triftram and fyr Perfydes came to their lodgyng both at
 ones / and foo they vnarmed hem / and putte vpon hem their
 clothynge / And thenne these two knyghtes eche welcomed o- 10
 ther / And whanne fyr Perfydes vnderstode that fir Triftram
 was of Cornewaile / he said he was ones in Cornewaile / and
 there I Iufted afore kynge Marke / And foo it happed me at
 that tyme / to ouerthrowe ten knyghtes / and thenne came to
 me fyre Triftram de lyones and ouerthrewe me / and took my 15
 lady away from me / and that shalle I neuer forgete / but I
 shalle remembre me and euer I see my tyme / A said fir tryf-
 tram now I vnderstande that ye hate fyr Triftram / what deme
 ye / wene ye that fir Triftram is not able to withstande your ma-
 lyce / yes said fir Perfydes I knowe wel that fir Triftram is 20
 a noble knyght and a moche better knyght than I / yet shalle
 I not owe hym my good wille / ¶ Ryght as they stode thus
 talkynge at a bay wyndowe of that castel / they sawe many
 knyghtes rydyng to and fro toward the turnement / And
 thenne was fyre Triftram ware of a lykely knyght rydyng vp- 25
 on a grete black hors / and a black couerd shelde / what knyzt
 is that said fyre Triftram with the black hors & the blak sheld
 he femes a good knyzt / I knowe hym wel said fir Perfydes
 he is one of the best knyghtes of the world / thenne is it fyre
 Launcelot said fir Triftram / nay said fyre Perfydes / hit is fyr 30
 Palomydes / that is yet vncrystened /

¶ Capitulum xxviii

THenne they sawe moche people of the countrey salewe
 fyre Palomydes / And within a whyle after / ther cam
 a squyer of the castel / that told fyre Pellounes that
 was lord of that castel / that a knyght with a blak sheld had 35

fmyten doune thyrten knyȝtes / Fayr broder ſaid ſir Triftram
 vnto fyr Perfydes / lete vs caſte vpon vs clokes / and lete vs
 goo ſee the play / Not ſoo ſaid ſir Perfydes / we wille not goo
 lyke knaues thyder / but we wille ryde lyke men and good
 5 knyghtes to withſtande oure enemyes / Soo they armed them
 and took their horſes and grete ſperes / and thyder they went
 there as many knyȝtes affayed hem ſelf before the turnement
 And anone ſir Palomydes ſawe ſir Perfydes / and thenne he
 ſente a ſquyer vnto hym and ſaid / goo thou to the yonder kn-
 10 yght with the grene ſheld and therin a lyon of gooldis / and
 ſay hym I requyre hym to luſte with me / and telle hym that
 my name is ſire Palomydes / whanne ſir Perfydes vnderſtood
 that requeſt of ſyre Palomydes / he made hym redy / and there
 anone they mette to gyders / but ſyre Perfydes had a falle
 15 Thenne ſyre Triftram dreſſid hym to be reuengyd vpon ſir pa-
 lomydes / and that ſawe ſyre Palomydes that was redy / and
 ſoo was not ſire Triftram and took hym at auantage / and
 ſmote hym ouer his hors tayle whanne he had no ſpere in his
 reyſte / Thenne ſtarte vp ſyre Triftram and took his hors lyȝ-
 20 tely / and was wrothe oute of meſure / and fore aſhamed of
 that falle / Thenne ſire Triftram ſente vnto fyr Palomydes by
 Gouvernaile and prayd hym to luſte with hym at his requeſt
 Nay ſaid ſire Palomydes as att this tyme I wille not luſte
 with that knyght / for I knowe hym better than he weneth /
 25 And yf he be wrothe / he may ryghte it to morne att the caſtel
 of maydens / where he maye ſee me and many other knyghtes
 with that came fyr Dynadan / and whanne he ſawe ſire Triftra
 wrothe / he lyft not to Iape / lo ſayd ſir Dynadan / here may a mā
 preue / Be a man neuer ſoo good yet maye he haue a falle / &
 30 he was neuer ſoo wyſe but he myght be ouerfene / and he rydeth
 wel that neuer fylle / Soo ſyre Triftram was paſſyng wrothe
 and ſayd to ſyre Perfydes and to ſyre Dynadan I wille re-
 uenge me / Ryghte ſoo as they ſtood talkyng there / there came
 by ſir Triftram a lykely knyght rydyng paſſyng ſoberly and
 35 heuily with a blak ſhelde / what knyght is that ſaid ſir Trif-
 tram vnto fyr Perfydes / I knowe hym well ſaid ſir Perfy-
 des / for his name is ſire Bryaunt of Northwalys / ſoo he paſte
 on amonge other knyghtes of Northwalys / And there came

in fyre launcelot du lake with a sheld of the armes of Cornewaile / and he sente a squyer vnto fyr Bryaunt / and requyred hym to Iuste with hym / wel said fyr Bryaunt / sythen I am requyred to Iuste / I wille doo what I may / and there
 fyre launcelot smote doune fyr Bryaunt from his hors a grete 5
 falle / And thenne fyr Triftram merueiled what knyght he was that bare the sheld of Cornewaile / what so euer he be said fyr Dynadan I warante you he is of Kynge Bannys blood / the whiche ben knyghtes of the moost noble prowesse / in the world for to accompte soo many for soo many / Thenne 10
 there came two knyghtes of Northgales / that one hyghte Hewe de la montayne / and the other fyr Madok de la montayne / & they chalengyd fyre launcelot foote hote / Syr Launcelot not refusyng hem but made hym redy / with one spere he smote hem doune bothe ouer their hors croupes / and soo fyr launcelot rode 15
 his way / By the good lord said fyr Triftram he is a good knyght that bereth the shelde of Cornewaile / and me semeth he rydeth in the best maner that euer I sawe knyghte ryde / Thenne the kynge of Northgalys rode vnto fyre Palomydes / and praid hym hertely for his sake to Iuste with that knyght that 20
 hath done vs of Northgalys despyte / Syr said fyr Palomydes I am ful lothe to haue adoo with that knyght / and cause why is / for as to morne the grete turnement shalle be / And therfor I wille kepe my self fresshe by my wille / Nay said the kyng of Northgalys I pray you requyre hym of Iustes / fyre sayd 25
 fyr palomydes I wille Iuste at your request / and requyre that knyght to Iuste with me / and often I haue sene a man haue a falle at his owne request

¶ Capitulum xix

THenne fyr palomydes sente vnto fyr launcelot a squyer and requyred hym of Iustes / Fair felawe seid fyr launcelot / telle me thy lordes name / Syre said the squyer my lordes name is fyr Palomydes the good knyght / In good houre said fyr launcelot / for there is no knyght that I sawe thys feuen yeres that I had leuer adoo with all than with hym / 30

And so eyther knyghtes made hem redy with two grete speres
 Nay said fyr Dynadan ye shalle see that fir Palomydes will
 quyte hym ryght wel / hit may be foo said fir Triftram / but I
 vndertake that knyght with the sheld of Cornewayle shal gy-
 5 ue hym a falle / I bileue hit not said fir Dynadan / Ryght so
 they spored their horfes / and feutryd their speres / and eyther
 hytte other / and fyr palomydes brake a spere vpon fire launce-
 lot / and he sat and meued not / but fir Launcelot smote hym so
 lyghtly that he made his hors to auoyde the fadel / and the stro-
 10 ke brake his shelde and the hauberke / and had he not fallen / he
 had be slayne / how now said fir Triftram / I wiste wel by the
 maner of their rydyng bothe that fire Palomydes shold haue
 a falle / Ryght so fir launcelot rode his way and rode to a well
 to drynke and to repose hym / and they of Northgalys aspyed
 15 hym whyther he rode / and thenne there folowed hym twelue
 knyghtes for to haue meschyeued hym / for this cause that vp-
 on the morne at the turnement of the castel of maydens that he
 shold not wyne the vycory / Soo they came vpon fir launce-
 lot fodenly and vnnethe he myght putte vpon hym his helme /
 20 and take his hors but they were in handes with hym / & then-
 ne fir launcelot gat his spere and rode thorou them / and there
 he slewe a knyght and brake his spere in his body / Thenne he
 drewe his fwerd and smote vpon the ryght hand and vpon the
 lyfte hand soo that within a fewe strokes he had slayne o-
 25 ther thre knyghtes / and the remenaunt that abode he wounded
 hem fore alle that dyd abyde / Thus fyr launcelot escaped from
 his enemyes of Northwalys / and thenne fir launcelot rode his
 way tyl a frende & lodged hym tyl on the morne / for he wold
 not the fyrste daye haue adoo in the turnement by cause of his
 30 grete labour / And on the fyrst day he was with kyng Arthur
 there as he was fet on hyhe vpon a schaffold to discerne who
 was best worthy of his dedes / So fir launcelot was with kyng
 Arthur / and Iufted not the fyrst daye /

¶ Capitulum xxx

35 **N**ow torne we vnto fir Triftram de lyones that comma-
 unded Gouvernaile his seruauit to ordeyne hym a blak
 sheld with none other remembraunce therin /

[leaf 192 verso]

And soo fyre Perfydes and fyr Triftram departed from the-
 ir hooftē fyr Pellounes / and they rode erly toward the tur-
 nement / and thenne they drewe hem to kyngē Carados fyde of
 Scotland / and anone knyȝtes beganne the felde what of ky-
 nge Northgalys party / and what of kyngē Carados party / & 5
 there began grete party / Thenne there was hurlyng and raffh-
 ynge / Ryght soo came in fyr Perfydes and fire Triftram / and
 soo they dyd fare that they put the kyng of Northgalys abak
 Thenne came in fyre Bleoberys de ganys and fyre Gaherys
 with them of Northaglys / and thenne was fir Perfydes smy- 10
 ten doune / and alle moost flayne / For moo than xl horsmen
 wente ouer hym / For fyr Bleoberys dyd grete dedes of armes
 and fyre Gaherys fayled hym not / whanne fire Triftram by-
 held them / and sawe hem doo fuche dedes of armes / he meruey-
 led what they were / Also fir Triftram thought shame that fir 15
 Perfydes was soo done to / and thenne he gat a grete spere in
 his hand / and thenne he rode to fire Gaherys and smote hym
 doune from his hors / And thenne was fire Bleoberys wroth
 and gate a spere and rode ageynst fir Triftram in grete yre / &
 there fyre Triftram mette with hym / and smote fir Bleoberys 20
 from his hors / Soo thenne the kyngē with the honderd knygh-
 tes was wrothe / and he horfed fire Bleoberys and fir gaherys
 ageyne / and there beganne a grete medle / and euer fir triftram
 held them passynge shorte / and euer fir Bleoberys was pas-
 synge besy vpon fyre Triftram / and there came fire Dynadan a- 25
 ageynst fyre Triftram / and fire Triftram gaf hym fuche a buffet
 that he swounded in his fadel / Thenne anone fir Dynadan cam
 to fire Triftram / and said fyr I knowe the better than thou
 wenest / But here I promyse the my trouthe I wille neuer co-
 me ayenst the more / for I promyse the that swerd of thyn shal 30
 neuer come on myn helme / with that came fir Bleoberys / and
 fyr Triftram gaf hym fuche a buffet that doune he leyde his he-
 de / and thenne he raught hym so fore by the helme / that he pul-
 led hym vnder his hors feet / And thenne kyng Arthur blewe
 to lodgyngē / Thenne fyre Triftram departed to his paelione / 35
 and fire Dynadan rode with hym / and fire Perfydes & kyng
 Arthur thenne and the kynges vpon bothe partyes merueylled
 what knyght that was with the blak shelde / Many said their

aduyfe / and fome knewe hym for fyre Triftram / and helde the-
 ir pees and wold nought fay / Soo that fyrfte day kyng Ar-
 thur and alle the kynges and lordes that were Iuges gaf fir
 Triftram the pryce / hou be hit they knewe hym not but named
 5 hym the knyght with the black fheld

¶ Capitulum xxxi

THenne vpon the morne fire Palomydes retorned from
 the kyng of Northgalys / and rode to kyng Arthurs
 fyde where was kyng Carados and the kyng of Irland / &
 fyr launcelots kynne and fir Gawayns kynne / Soo fire palo-
 10 mydes fente the damoyfel vnto fire Triftram that he fente to feke
 hym whanne he was oute of his mynde in the forest / and thys
 damoyfel asked fire Triftram / what he was / and what was
 his name / As for that said fir Triftram telle fir Palomydes ye
 fhalle not wete as at this tyme vnto the tyme I haue broken
 15 two speres vpon hym / But lete hym wete thus moche said fir
 Triftram / that I am the fame knyghte that he smote doune in
 ouer euenyng at the turnement & telle hym playnly / on what
 party that fyre Palomydes be / I wille be of the contrary parte
 Syre said the damoyfel ye fhalle vnderfande that fir Palomy-
 20 des wille be on kyng Arthurs fyde / where the moost noble kn-
 yghtes of the world ben / In the name of god said fir Trif-
 tram / thenne wille I be with the kyng of Northgalys by ca-
 use fyr Palomydes wille be on kyng Arthurs fyde / and els
 I wold not but for his fake / ¶ Soo whanne kyng Arthur
 25 was come they blewe vnto the felde / and thenne there began
 a grete party / and foo kyng Carados Iufted with the kyng
 of the honderd knyghtes / and there kyng Carados hadde a
 falle / thenne was there hurlynge and raffhyng / and ryght fo
 cam in knyghtes of kyng Arthurs / and they bare on bak the
 30 kyng of Northgalys knyghtes / Thenne fir Triftram came in
 and beganne fo roughly and foo bygly that there was none
 myght withftande hym / and thus fire Triftram dured longe /
 ¶ And at the laft fyr Tryfram felle amonge the felaufhip of
 kyng Ban / and there felle vpon hym fyr Bors de ganys /
 35 and fyr Ector de marys / and fire Blamor de ganys / & many

other knyghtes / And thenne fir Triftram smote on the ryght hand and on the lyfte hand that alle lordes and ladyes spak of his noble dedes / But at the laft fyre Triftram shold haue had the werfe / had not the kynge with the honderd knyghtes ben / And thenne he came with his felaufhip and rescowed 5 fir Triftram / and brought hym away from tho knyghtes that bare the sheldes of Cornewaile / and thenne fir Triftram sawe another felaufhip by them self / and there were a xl Knyghtes to gyder / and fir Kay the Seneschal was there gouernour / Thenne fyre Triftram rode in amongest them / and there he 10 smote doune fyr Kay from his hors / and there he fared among tho Knyghtes lyke a grey hound among conyes / Thenne fyre launcelot fond a Knyght that was fore wounded vpon the hede / Sir said fir launcelot who wounded you so fore / Sire he said a Knyght that bereth a black shelde / and I maye curfe the 15 tyme that euer I mette with hym for he is a deuyl and no man Soo fyre launcelot departed fro hym / & thought to mete with fir Triftram / and soo he rode with his fwerd drawen in his hand to feke fir Triftram / and thenne he aspyed hym how he hurled here and there / and at euery stroke fyr Triftram wel nygh smote 20 doune a knyght / O mercy Ihesu said the kynge syth the tyme I bare armes sawe I neuer no knyght do so merueillous dedes of armes / And yf I shold sette vpon this knyght said fir Launcelot to hym self I dyd shame to my self / & there with al fir launcelot put vp his fwerd / And theñe the Kyng with the 25 C Knyztes / and an honderd more of Northwalys set vpon the twenty of fir launcelots kyn / and they xx Knyztes held them euer to gyder / as wylde fwyne and none wold faile other / & so whan fir Triftram beheld the nobleffe of these xx Knyghtes / he merueiled of their good dedes / for he sawe by their fare and 30 by theil reule that they had leuer deye than auoyde the felde / ¶ Now Ihesu saide fyre Triftram wel maye he be valyaunte and ful of prowesse that hath suche a forte of noble Knyghtes vnto his kynne / and ful lyke is he to be a noble man that is their leder and gouernour / he mente hit by fir Launcelot du 35 Lake / ¶ Soo whanne fyre Triftram had beholden them long / he thouzt shame to see / ij / C knyztes batterying

vpon twenty knyghtes / ¶ Thenne fire Tristram rode vnto the
 kyng with the honderd knyghtes / and said fyre leue youre
 fyghtyng with tho twenty knyghtes / for ye wyne no wor-
 ship of them / ye be foo many / and they foo fewe / And wete ye
 5 well they wille not oute of the felde I see by their chere and
 countenaunce / and worship gete ye none and ye flee them /
 therfore leue your fyghtyng with them / for I to encrease my
 worship / I wyll ryde to the twenty knyghtes and helpe them
 with all my myghte and power / ¶ Nay said the
 10 kyng with the honderd knyghtes / ye shall not do so / Now I
 see youre courage and curtosy / I wille withdrawe my kny3-
 tes for your pleafyr / for euermore a good knyght wyll fa-
 uoure another / and lyke wille drawe to lyke /

¶ Capitulum xxxij

15 **T**henne the kyng with the honderd knyghtes withdre-
 we his knyghtes / And al this whyle and long tofore
 fyr launcelot had watched vpon fyr Tristram with a
 very purpos to haue felauhipped with hym / And thenne so-
 denly fyr Tristram / fyr Dynadan / and Gouvernaile his man ro-
 de their waye in to the forest that no man perceyued where they
 20 wente / Soo thenne kyng Arthur blewe vnto lodgyng / and
 gaf the kyng of Northgalys the pryce by cause fyr Tristram
 was vpon his fyde / Thenne fyr launcelot rod here and there so
 wood as lyon that fauted his fylle by cause he had losfe fyre
 Tristram / and foo he retorned vnto kyng Arthur / and then-
 25 ne in alle the felde was a noyse that with the wynde hit my-
 ght be herd two myle thens / how the lordes and ladyes cryed
 the knyght with the blak shelde hath wonne the felde

¶ Allas said kyng Arthur where is that knyght become / hit
 is shame to alle tho in the felde so to lete hym escape away from
 30 you / but with gentylnes and curtosy ye myght haue brought
 hym vnto me to the castel of maydens

¶ Thenne the noble kyng Arthur wente vnto his knyghtes
 and comforted them in the best wyfe that he coude / and fayd /
 my fayre felawes be not dysmayed / how be hit ye haue losfe

the felde this daye and many were hurte and fore wounded /
and many were hole /

¶ My felawes said kynge Ar-
thur loke that ye be of good chere / for to morne I wille be in
the feld with you and reuenge you of youre enemyes

¶ Soo that nyght Kynge Arthur and his knyghtes repofed 5
them self /

¶ The damoyfel that came from la Beale Ifoud vnto fyr Triftram alle the whyle the turnement was a-
doyng she was with Quene Gueneuer / and euer the Quene
asked her for what cause she came in to that Countrey

¶ Madame she anfuerd I come for none other cause but from 10
my lady la Beale Ifoud to wete of your welfare / For in no
wyfe she wold telle the Quene that she came for fyr Trif-
trams sake / Soo this lady dame Brangwayne took her leue
of Quene Gueneuer / and she rode after fyr Triftram / And
as she rode thurgh the forest she herd a grete crye / thenne she 15
commaunded her squyer to goo in to that forest to wete what
was that noyse / and soo he came to a welle and there he fond
a Knyght bounden tyl a tree cryeng as he had ben wode and
his hors and his harneis standynge by hym / And whan he af-
pyed the squyer / ther with he abraide / and brake hym self lo- 20
os and took his fwerd in his hand / and ranne to haue fla-
yne that squyer / Thenne he took his hors and fledde all that e-
uer he myght vnto dame Brangwayne / and told her of his
aduenture / Thenne she rode vnto fyr Triftrams paelione / and
told hire Triftram what aduenture she had fonde in the forest / 25
Allas said fyr Triftram vpon my heede there is somme good
Knyghte at meschyef / Thenne hire Triftram tooke his hors and
his fwerd / and rode thyder / there he herd how the Knyght com-
playned vnto hym self and sayd / I woful knyght fyre pa-
lomydes what myfauture befalleth me / that thus am defoiled 30
with falskede and treason thorou fyre Bors and fyre Ector /
Allas he sayde why lyue I soo longe / And thenne he gat his
fwerd in his handes / and maade many straunge fygnes and
tokens / and soo thorou his ragynge he threwe his fwerd in to
that fontayne

¶ Thenne fir Palomydes way- 35
led and wrange his handes / And at the laste for pure forow
he ranne in to that Fontayne ouer his bely / and foughte after

his fwerd / Thenne fir Triftram fawe that and ranne vpon fyr
 Palomydes / and helde hym in his armes fast / what arte thou
 faid Palomydes that holdeth me foo / I am a man of this fo-
 rest that wold the none harme / Allas faid fire Palomydes I
 5 maye neuer wyne worship where fyr Triftram is / For euer
 where he is / and I be there thenne gete I no worship / And
 yf he be away / for the moost party I haue the gree / onles that
 fir Launcelot be there or fyr Lamorak / Thenne fire Palomydes
 faid ones in Irland fyr Triftram putte me to the werse / and
 10 another tyme in Cornewaile and in other places in this land
 What wold ye do faid fyre Triftram & ye had fir Triftram / I
 wold fyghte with hym faid fir Palomydes and ease my hert
 vpon hym / and yet to faye the sothe fyre Triftram is the gen-
 telyft knyght in this world lyuyng / what wil ye doo fayd fir
 15 Triftram wille ye goo with me to youre lodgyng / Nay fayde
 he I wille goo to the kynge with the honderd knyghtes / for
 he rescowed me from fire Bors de ganys / and fir Ector / & els
 had I ben slayne traitourly / Syre Triftram faid hym fuche
 kynde wordes that fyre Palomydes wente with hym to his lod-
 20 gyng / Thenne Gouvernaile wente to fore / and charged dame
 Brangwayn to goo oute of the way to her lodgyng / and byd
 ye fyre Perfydes that ye make hym no quarels / And so they
 rode to gyders tyl they came to fire Triftrams paelione / and
 there fyre Palomydes had alle the chere that myght be had all
 25 that nyghte / But in no wyse fire Palomydes myzt not knowe
 what was fyr Triftram / and foo after souper they yede to reste
 And fyr Triftram for grete trauaile slepte tylle it was daye /
 And fyr Palomydes myghte not flepe for anguysshe / and in
 the daunynge of the daye he tooke his hors pryuely / and rode
 30 his waye vnto fyr Gaherys and vnto fyr Sagramour le defy-
 rus / where they were in their paelions / for they thre were fe-
 lawes at the begynnyng of the turnement / And thenne vp-
 on the morne the kynge blewe vnto the turnement vpon the
 thyrdde daye /

¶ Capitulum xxxiii /

SOo the kynge of Northgalys and the kynge with the
honderd knyghtes they two encountred with kyng ca-
rados and with the kynge of Irland / and there the
kynge with the honderd knyghtes smote doune kynge Cara-
dos / and the kynge of Northgalys smote doune the kynge of 5
Irland / With that came in fyr Palomydes / and whan he cam
he made grete werke / for by his endented shelde he was well
knownen / Soo came in kynge Arthur / and dyd grete dedes of
armes to gyders / and putte the kynge of Northgalys and the
kynge with the honderd knyghtes to the werse / With this came 10
in fyr Triftram with his black shelde / And anone he lusted
with fyre palomydes / and there by fyne force fyr Triftram smote
fyre palomydes ouer his hors croupe / Thenne kynge Arthur
cryed Knyght with the black shelde make the redy to me / and
in the same wyse fyr Triftram smote kynge Arthur / And then- 15
ne by force of kyng Arthurs knyghtes the kynge and fyr pa-
lomydes were horfed ageyne / Thenne kyng Arthur with a gre-
te egre herte he gate a spere in his hand / and therupon the one
fyde he smote fyr Triftram ouer his hors / Thenne foote hote fyr
Palomydes cam vpon fyr Triftram as he was vpon foot to ha- 20
ue ouer ryden hym / Thenne fyr Triftram was ware of hym / &
there he stouped a fyde / and with grete yre he gate hym by the
arme / and pulled hym doune from his hors / Thenne fyre pa-
lomydes lyghtely arofe / and thenne they daffhed to gyder my-
ghtely with their fwerdes / and many kynges / Quenes and 25
lordes stode and beheld them / And at the laste fyre Triftram
smote fyre palomydes vpon the helme thre myzty strokes / and
at euery stroke that he gaf hym he said this for fyre Trif-
trams sake / With that fyre Palomydes felle to the erthe groue-
lynge / Thenne came the kynge with the honderd knyghtes / & 30
broughte fyre Triftram an hors / and soo was he horfed ageyn
By thenne was fyr Palomydes horfed / and with grete yre
he lusted vpon fyr Triftram with his spere as hit was in the
reyfte and gaf hym a grete daffhe with his swerd /

¶ Thenne fyr Triftram auoyded his spere / and gate hym by 35
the neck with his bothe handes / and pulled hym clene oute of
his fadel / and soo he bare hym afore hym the lengthe of ten spe-
res / & thenne in the presence of hem al he lete hym falle at his

adventure / Thenne fire Triftram was ware of kynge Arthur /
 with a naked fuerd in his hand / and with his spere fir Trif-
 tram ranne vpon kynge Arthur / and thenne kynge Arthur
 boldly abode hym and with his fwerd he smote atwo his spe-
 5 re / and there with alle fyre Triftram stonyed / and soo kynge
 Arthur gaf hym thre or four grete strokes or he myzt gete out
 his fwerd / and at the last fir Triftram drewe his fwerd and
 assailed other passyng hard / with that the grete prees depar-
 ted / thenne fir Triftram rode here and there and dyd his gre-
 10 te payne that xj of the good knyghtes of the blood of kynge
 Ban that was of fire launcelots kyn / that daye fyre Triftram
 smote doune / that alle the estates merueilled of his grete dedes
 and alle cryed vpon the knyght with the black sheld

¶ Capitulum xxxiiiij

15 **T**henne this crye was soo large / that fir launcelot herd
 it / And thenne he gate a grete spere in his hand / and
 came towards the crye / Thenne fir launcelot cryed / the
 knyght with the blak shelde make the redy to Iuste with me /
 Whanne fire Triftram herd hym fay so he gate his spere in his
 hand / and eyther abeyshed down their hedes / and came to gy-
 20 der as thonder / and fire Triftrams spere brake in pyeces / and
 fyr launcelot by male fortune stroke fir Triftram on the fyde a
 depe wound nyghe to the dethe / But yet fyr Triftram auoyded
 not his fadel / and soo the spere brak / there with all fir triftram
 that was wounded gate oute his fwerd / and he raffhed to fir
 25 launcelot / and gaf hym thre grete strokes vpon the helme that
 the fyre sprange there oute / and fir launcelot abeyshed his he-
 de lowely toward his fadel bowe / And there with alle fir trif-
 tram departed from the felde / for he felte hym soo wounded that
 he wende he shold haue dyed / and fir Dynadan aspyed hym
 30 and folowed hym in to the forest / Thenne fir launcelot abode &
 dyd many merueyllous dedes / Soo whan fire Triftram was
 departed by the forests fyde / he alyght & vnaced his harneis
 and fresshed his woūd / thēne wende fir Dynodan that he shold

haue dyed / Nay nay faide fire Triftram / Dynadan / neuer drede
 the / for I am herte hole / & of this wounde I shal soone be hole
 by the mercy of god / ¶ By that fir Dynadan was ware
 where came palomydes rydyng streyghte vpon them / And
 thenne fyre Triftram was ware that fyre Palomydes came to 5
 haue destroyed hym / and so fyre Dynadan gaf hym warnyng
 and faide fire Triftram my lord ye are soo fore wounded that
 ye may not haue adoo with hym / therfore I wille ryde agey-
 nst hym and doo to hym what I maye / And yf I be slayne
 ye maye praye for my foule and in the meane whyle ye maye 10
 withdrawe you and goo in to the castel / or in the foreste that
 he shalle not mete with you /

¶ Syre Triftram
 smyled and said I thanke you fyre Dynadan of your good
 wyll / but ye shalle wete that I am able to handle hym / And
 thenne anone hastily he armed hym and took his hors / and a 15
 grete spere in his hand and said to fyre Dynadan Adieu / &
 rode toward fyre Palamydes a softe paas

¶ Thenne whanne fire Palomydes sawe that / he made counte-
 naunce to amende his hors / but he dyd hit for this cause / For
 he abode fire Gaherys that came after hym / ¶ And whanne he 20
 was come he rode toward fyre Triftram / ¶ Thenne fyre Trif-
 tram sente vnto fyr palomydes and requyred hym to Iuste with
 hym / And yf he smote doune fir Palomydes / he wold doo no
 more to hym / And yf it so happend that fire Palomydes smo-
 te doune fyr Triftram he badde hym do his vtteraunce / So they 25
 were accorded / thenne they mette to gyders / and fyre Triftram
 smote doune fir palomydes / that he had a greuous falle / soo
 that he laye styll as he hadde ben dede / And thenne fire Tryf-
 tram ranne vpon fyr Gaherys / and he wold not haue Iusted
 But whether he wolde or not fyre Triftram smote hym ouer 30
 his hors croupe that he laye styll as though he had ben dede /
 And thenne fyr Triftram rode his waye and lefte fyre Persfy-
 des squyer within the paelions / and fyre Triftram and fyre
 Dynadan rode to an old knyghtes place to lodge them / And
 that olde knyght had fyue fones at the turnement / for whome 35
 he prayed god hertely for their comyng home / ¶ And so as the
 frenshe book saith they cam home al / v / wel beten / And whan
 fyr Triftram departed in to the forest fyr laücelot held alwey

the stoure lyke hard as a man araged that took no heede to
 hym felf / and wete ye wel there was many a noble knyghte
 ageynst hym / And whanne kyng Arthur sawe sir Launcelot
 doo foo merueyllous dedes of armes / he thenne armed hym / &
 5 took his hors and his armour / and rode in to the felde to helpe
 fyr launcelot / and so many knyghtes came in with kyng Ar-
 thur / and to make short tale in conclusion the kyng of North-
 galys / and the kynge of the honderd knyghtes were putte to
 the wers / and by cause fyre launcelot abode and was the last
 10 in the feld / the pryce was yeuen hym / But sir Launcelot wold
 neyther for kyng / Quene ne knyghte haue the pryce / but whe-
 re the crye was cryed thorough the felde / fyr launcelot sir laun-
 celot hath wonne the felde this day / fyre Launcelot lete make
 an other crye contrary fyr Tristram hath wonne the feld / for
 15 he beganne fyrst and last he hath endured / and foo hath he do-
 ne the fyrst day / the second and the thyrday /

¶ Capitulum xxxv

THenne alle the estates and degrees hyhe and lowe sa-
 yd of fyr launcelot grete worship / for the honour that
 he dyd vnto fyr Tristram / and for that honour doying
 20 to sir Tristram he was at that tyme more preyfied and renou-
 med than and he had ouerthrowen v C knyghtes / and all the
 peple holy for this gentylnes / fyrst the estates bothe hyhe and
 lowe / and after the comynalte cryed at ones fyre Launcelot
 hath wonne the felde who foo euer saye nay / Thenne was fyre
 25 Launcelot wroth and ashamed / and foo there with alle he ro-
 de to kynge Arthur / Allas said the kynge we are alle dyf-
 mayed that fyr Tristram is thus departed from vs / By god
 said kynge Arthur he is one of the noblest knyghtes that euer
 I sawe hold spere or fwerd in hand / and the moost curteyst
 30 knyght in his fyghtyng / for ful hard I sawe hym sayd kyng
 Arthur whanne he smote fyr Palomydes vpon the helme thry-
 es / that he abasshed his helme with his strokes / and also he sa-
 id / here is a stroke for fyr Tristram / and thus thryes he sayd /
 Thenne kynge Arthur / fyr launcelot / and fire Dodynas le sa-
 35 ueage took their horses to seke sir Tristram / and by the menes

of fyr Perfydes / he had told kyng Arthur where fyr Triftram
 was in his paelione / but whanne they came there / fyr Trif-
 tram and fir Dynadan were gone / thenne kyng Arthur and
 fyr launcelot were heuy / and retorned ageyne to the castel of
 maydens makyng grete dole for the hurte of fyre Tryftram / & 5
 his sodeyne departynge / Soo god me helpe said kyng Arthur
 I am more heuy that I can not mete with hym / thenne for al
 the hurtes that alle my knyghtes haue had at the turnement
 Ryght soo came fir Gaherys and told kyng Arthur how fyr
 Triftram had smyten doune fyr Palomydes / and it was atte 10
 fyr Palomydes owne request / Allas said Kyng Arthur that
 was grete difhonoure to fyre Palomydes in as moche as fyre
 Triftram was fore wounded / and now may we alle kynges
 and knyghtes and men of worship faye that fyre Triftram may
 be called a noble knyght and one of the best Knyghtes that e- 15
 uer I fawe the dayes of my lyf / For I wille that ye al kyn-
 ges and Knyghtes knowe said Kyng Arthur that I neuer
 fawe Knyghte doo so merueyllously as he hath done these thre
 dayes / for he was the first that began and that lengest held on
 fauf this last day / And though he was hurte it was a manly 20
 aduenture of two noble Knyghtes / and whan two noble men
 encountre nedes must the one haue the werse lyke as god wil
 suffre at that tyme / ¶ As for me said fir launcelot for alle the
 landes that euer my fader lefte me I wold not haue hurte fir
 Triftram and I had knowen hym at that tyme / that I hurt 25
 hym was for I fawe not his sheld / For and I had sene his
 black sheld / I wold not haue medled with hym for many
 causes / for late he dyd as moche for me as euer dyd Knyght
 and that is wel knownen that he had adoo with thyrtty Knyg-
 tes / and no helpe faue fyr Dynadan / And one thyng shalle 30
 I promyse said fyr launcelot / fyr Palomydes shalle repente it
 as in his vnkyndely delynge for to folowe that noble knyght
 that I by myshap hurted thus / Syr launcelot sayd alle the
 worship that myght be said by fir Triftram / Thenne kyng Ar-
 thur made a grete feest to alle that wold come / And thus we 35
 lete passe Kyng Arthur / and a lytyl we wille torne vnto fir
 Palomydes that after he had a falle of fire Triftram / he was
 nyghe hand araged oute of his wyt for despyte of fir Triftram

And foo he folowed hym by aduenture / And as he came by
 a ryuer in his woodenes / he wold haue made his hors to haue
 lepte ouer / and the hors fayled footynge / and felle in the Ry-
 uer / wherfore fyre palomydes was adrad left he shold haue ben
 5 drouned / and thenne he auoyded his hors / and swamme to
 the land / and lete his hors goo doune by aduenture /

¶ Capitulum xxxvj /

ANd whanne he came to the land he took of his harne-
 is / and fatte rorynge and cryenge as a man oute of
 his mynde / Ryght so came a damoyfel euen by fyr Palomydes
 10 that was sente fro fyr Gawayne and his broder vnto sir mor-
 dred that lay seke in the same place with that old knyzt whe-
 re fyr Triftram was / For as the Frensshe book faith fyr Per-
 fydes hurte foo fyr Mordred a ten dayes afore / and had not
 ben for the loue of sir Gawayne and his broder / fyr Perfydes
 15 had slayne sir Mordred / and foo this damoyfel came by sir pa-
 lomydes / and she and he had langage to gyder / the whiche ple-
 asyd neyther of them / and foo the damoyfel rode her wayes tyl
 she came to the old knyghtes place / & there she told that old
 knyght how she mette with the woodeft knyght by aduenture
 20 that euer she mette with all / what bare he in his sheld said sir
 Triftram / hit was endented with whyte and black saide the
 damoyfel / A said sir Triftram that was sir palomydes / the go-
 od knyght / For wel I knowe hym said sir Triftram for one
 of the best knyghtes lyuynge in this realme / Thenne that old
 25 knyght took a lytel hackney and rode for fyre palomydes / and
 brought hym vnto his owne manoyr / and ful wel knewe sire
 Triftram fyr Palomydes / but he said but lytel / for at that ty-
 me fyr Triftram was walkyng vpon his feet / and wel amen-
 ded of his hurtes / and alweyes whan sire Palomydes sawe
 30 fyr Triftram / he wold behold hym ful merueilloufly / And
 euer hym femed that he hadde sene hym / Thenne wold he saye
 vnto fyre Dynadan and euer I may mete with fyre Triftram
 he shal not escape myn handes / I merueile said sir Dynadan þ^t

ye boofte behynde fyr Triftram / for it is but late that he was in
 youre handes / and ye in his handes / why wold ye not holde
 hym whanne ye hadde hym / for I fawe my self twyes or thry-
 es that ye gat but lytel worship of fir Triftram / thenne was
 fyr Palomydes afhamed / Soo leue we them a lytyl whyle in 5
 the old caftel / with the old knyght fir Darras / ¶ Now shall
 we fpeke of Kynge Arthur / that faid to fir Launcelot had not
 ye ben / we had not loft fyre Triftram / for he was here dayly vn-
 to the tyme ye mette with hym / and in an euylle tyme fayd
 Arthur ye encountred with hym / My lord Arthur faid Laun- 10
 celot ye putte vpon me that I fhold ben caufe of his departy-
 cyon / god knoweth hit was ageynfte my wille / But whan
 men ben hote in dedes of armes ofte they hurte their frendes as
 wel as their foes / And my lord faid fir launcelot ye fhall vn-
 derftande that fir Triftram is a man that I am loth to offende 15
 for he hath done for me more than euer I dyd for hym as yet /
 But thenne fir Launcelot made brynge forth a book and the-
 ne fir launcelot faid / here we are ten Knyghtes that wil swe-
 re vpon a book neuer to reſte one nyght where we reſt another
 this twelue moneth vn tyl that we fynde fyr Triftram / And 20
 as for me faid fyre Launcelot I promyſe you vpon this book
 that and I may mete with hym / outhere with fayrenes or foul-
 neſſe I ſhalle brynge hym to this courte / or els I ſhalle dye
 therfore / And the names of theſe ten knyghtes that hadde vn-
 dertake this queſt were theſe folowyng / Fyrſt was fir Laun- 25
 celot / fyr Ector de Marys / fyr Bors de ganys and Bleoberis
 and fyre Blamor de ganys / and Lucan the botteler / fyr Vwa-
 yne / fyr Galyhud / Lyonel and Galyodyn / Soo theſe x noble
 knyghtes departed from the courte of kynge Arthur / and ſoo
 they rode vpon their queſt to gyders vntyl they came to a cro- 30
 ſſe where departed four wayes / and there departed the felau-
 ſhip in four to ſeke fyr Triftram / And as fyr launcelot rode
 by aduenture he mette with dame Brangwayn that was ſent
 in to that cuntrye to ſeke fir Triftram / and ſhe fled as faſte
 as her palfrey myght goo / Soo fire Launcelot mette with her 35
 and asked her why ſhe fledde / ¶ A fayre knyghte faid dame
 Brangwayne I flee for drede of my lyf / for here foloweth me
 fyr Breufe faunce pyte to flee me / Hold you nyghe me fayd

fir launcelot / Thenne whanne fire Launcelot sawe fir Breufe
 faunce pyte / fyr launcelot cryed vnto hym / and said / fals kny-
 ght destroyer of ladyes and damoyfels / now thy last dayes
 be come / Whanne fire Breufe faunce pyte sawe fire launcelots
 5 shelde he knewe hit wel / for at that tyme he bare not the armes
 of Cornewaile / but he bare his owne shelde / And thenne fyre
 Breufe fled / and fyr Trifram folowed after hym / But fir
 Breufe was soo wel horfed that whan hym lyft to flee he my-
 ght wel flee / and also abyde whan hym lyft /
 10 And thenne fire launcelot retorned vnto dame Brangwayne
 and she thanked hym of his grete labour /

¶ Capitulum xxxviij

Now wille we speke of fir Lucan the buttelere that by
 fortune he came rydyng to the same place there as was
 fyr Trifram / and in he came in none other entente /
 15 but to aske herberowe / thenne the porter asked what was his
 name / Telle your lord that my name is fyr Lucan the botteler
 a knyghte of the round table / Soo the porter wente vnto fyre
 Darras lord of the place / and told hym who was there to as-
 ke herborou3 / Nay nay seid fyr Daname that was neuewe to
 20 fyr Darras / faye hym that he shalle not be lodged here / But
 lete hym wete that I fyr Daname wyll mete with hym anon
 and bydde hym make hym redy / So fire Daname came forth
 on horsbak / and there they mette to gyders with speres / and fir
 Lucan fmote doune fyr Daname ouer his hors croupe / and thē-
 25 ne he fledde in to that place / and fir Lucan rode after hym / &
 asked after hym many tymes / Thenne fyr dynadan said to fire
 Trifram hit is shame to see the lordes cofyn of this place de-
 foiled / Abyde said fir Trifram and I shalle redresse it / and
 in the meane whyle fyr Dynadan was on horsbak and he Iuf-
 30 tid with Lucan þe botteler / & ther fir lucan fmote doune dynadā thur3
 the thyck of the thyghe / and foo he rode his way / and fire trif-
 fram was wrothe that fir Dynadan was hurte / & folowed af-
 ter and thought to auenge hym / and within a whyle he ouer-
 took fir lucan / and badde hym torne / and foo they mette to gy-
 35 ders soo that fire Trifram hurt fir Lucan passyng fore / and

gaf hym a falle / With that came fire Vwayne a gentyl kny3t
 And whanne he sawe fire Lucan soo hurte / he called fyre trif-
 tram to Iuste with hym / Faire knyght said fire Triftram telle
 me your name I requyre you / Syre knyghte wete ye wel my
 name is fyre Vwayne le fyfe de roy Vreyne / A faide fire Trif- 5
 tram by my wille I wold not haue adoo with you at no ty-
 me / ye shalle not soo said fir Vwayne but ye shalle haue adoo
 with me / And thenne fire Triftram sawe none other boote but
 rode ageynst hym and ouerthrewe fyr Vwayn and hurte hym
 in the fyde / and soo he departed vnto his lodgyng ageyne / 10
 And whanne fire Dynadan vnderstood that fyr Triftram had
 hurte fir Lucan / he wold haue ryden after fyr Lucan for to
 haue slayne hym / but fir Triftram wold not suffre hym /

¶ Thenne fyr Vwayne lete ordeyne an hors lytter / and bro-
 ught fir Lucan to the abbey of Ganys / and the castel there by 15
 hyght the castel of Ganys / of the whiche fyr Bleoberys was
 lord / And at that Castel fire launcelot promysed alle his fe-
 lawes to mete in the quest of fyr Triftram / Soo whan fir trif-
 tram was come to his lodgyng / ther cam a damoisel þ^t told fir
 Darras that thre of his fones were slayne at that turnement 20
 and two greuouly wouDED that they were neuer lyke to helpe
 them self / And alle this was done by a noble knyghte that
 bare the black shelde / and that was he that bare the pryce /

¶ Thenne came there one and told fyr Darras that the same
 knyght was within hym that bare the black sheld / Thenne fir 25
 Darras yede vnto fir Triftrams chamber / and there he fond his
 sheld and shewed it to the damoyfel / A fyr said the damoyfel
 that same is he / that slewe your thre fones / Thenne withoute
 ony taryenge fir Darras putte fyre Triftram and fyre Palomydes
 and fyr Dynadan within a strong pryson / and there fir 30
 Triftram was lyke to haue dyed of grete sekeneffe / and eue-
 ry day fyr Palomydes wold repreue fir Triftram of old hate
 betwixe them / And euer fir Triftram spak fayre and said ly-
 tel / But whan fir Palomydes sawe the fallynge of sekeneffe
 of fir Triftram thenne was he heuy for hym / and comforted 35
 hym in alle the best wyse he coude / And as the Frensshe booke
 faith there came fourty knyghtes to fire Darras / that were of
 his owne kyn / and they wold haue slayne fire Triftram and

his two felawes / but fire Darras wold not suffre that but
 kepte them in pryfon / and mete and drynke they had / So fire
 Triftram endured there grete payne / for fekenesse had vnderta-
 ke hym / and that is the grettest payne a pryfoner maye haue
 5 For alle the whyle a pryfoner may haue his helthe of body / he
 maye endure vnder the mercy of god and in hope of good de-
 lyueraunce / But whanne fekenes toucheth a pryfoners body /
 thenne may a pryfoner fay al welthe is hym berafte / and then-
 ne he hath cause to wayle and to wepe / Ryzt so dyd fyre Trift-
 10 ram whanne fekenes had vndertake hym / for thenne he tooke
 suche forou that he had almost flayne hym self

¶ Capitulum xxxviii

Now wille we speke and leue fir Triftram / fyre Palo-
 mydes / & fyr Dynadan in pryfon / and speke we of o-
 ther knyghtes that foughte after fyre Triftram many dyuerse
 15 partyes of this land / and some yede in to Cornewaile / and by
 aduenture fyr Gaheryse neuewe vnto kyng Arthur came vnto
 Kyng Mark / and there he was wel receyued / and fatte atte
 kyng Marks owne table & ete of his owne messe / ¶ Thenne
 kyng Mark asked fir Gaheryse what tydynges there were in
 20 the royalme of Logrys / Syre said fyr Gaheryse the Kyng reg-
 neth as a noble knyght / and now but late there was a grete
 iustes and turnement as euer I sawe ony in the realme of
 Logrys / and the moost noble knyghtes were at that iustes /
 But there was one knyght that dyd merueyllously thre da-
 25 yes / and he bare a black shelde / and of alle knyghtes that e-
 uer I sawe he preued the best knyzt / thenne said Kyng mark
 that was fyre launcelot or fyre palomydes the paynym / Not foo
 said fyr Gaherys / for bothe fyre launcelot and fire Palomydes
 were on the contrary party ageynst the Knyght with the blak
 30 shelde / thenne was it fir Triftram said the kyng / ye said fir Ga-
 heryse And there with all the Kyng fmote down his hede / & in
 his herte he feryd fore that fyre Triftram shold gete hym suche
 worship in the Royame of Logrys / where thorou that he hym
 self shold not be able to withstande hym / Thus fyre Gaheryse

had grete chere with kynge Marke / and with quene la Beale
 Ifoud the whiche was gladde of fyr Gaheryfe wordes / For
 wel she wist by his dedes and maners / that it was fyr Tristram
 / And thenne the kynge made a feest Royal / and to that
 feest came sir Vwayne le fyfe de roy Vreyne / and fomme callid
 hym Vwayne le blaunche maynys / And this fyr Vwayn chal- 5
 lengyd alle the knyghtes of Cornewaile / Thenne was the kyng
 woode wroth that he had no knyghtes to anfuer hym /
 Thenne sire Andred neuewe vnto kynge Mark lepte vp and
 said I wille encountre with fyr Vwayne / Thenne he yede and 10
 armed hym and horfed hym in the best maner / And there fyre
 Vwayne mette with fyre Andred and smote hym doune that
 he fwouned on the erthe / Thenne was kynge Marke fory and
 wrothe oute of mesure that he had no knyghte to reuenge his
 neuewe sir Andred / Soo the kynge called vnto hym fyr Dynas 15
 the seneschal / and praid hym for his sake to take vpon
 hym to Iuste with sir Vwayne / Syr said fyr Dynas I am ful
 lothe to haue adoo with ony knyght of the round table / yet said
 the kyng for my loue take vpon the to Iuste / Soo fyr Dynas
 made hym redy / and anone they encountred to gyders with gre- 20
 te speres / but sire Dynas was ouerthrowen hors and man a
 grete falle / who was wrothe but kynge Marke / Allas he said
 haue I no knyght that wille encountre with yonder knyghte
 Syr said sir Gaheryfe for your sake I wille Iuste / So sir Ga-
 herys made hym redy / and whanne he was armed he rode in to 25
 the felde / And whanne sir Vwayne sawe fyr Gaheryfes sheld
 he rode to hym and said / sir ye doo not youre parte / For sire the
 fyrst tyme ye were made Knyght of the round table ye sware
 that ye shold not haue a do with your felauship wetyngly
 And par dy sir Gaheryfe ye knewe me wel ynou3 by my shelde 30
 & so do I knowe you by your sheld / and thou3 ye wold breke
 your othe / I wold not breke myn / for there is not one here
 nor ye that shall thynke I am aferd of yow / but I durst ry-
 ght wel haue adoo with you / and yet we be sifter fones / Then-
 ne was sir Gaheryfe ashamed / and soo there with alle eury 35
 knyght wente their way / and sir Vwayne rode in to the coun-
 trey / Thenne kyng mark armed hym and tooke his hors and
 his spere with a squyer with hym / And thenne he rode afore sir

Vwayne / and fodenly at a gap he ranne vpon hym as he that
 was not ware of hym / and there he smote hym al most thurgh
 the body / and there lefte hym / So within a whyle there cam fir
 Kay / and fonde fir Vwayne / and asked hym how he was
 5 hurte / I wote not said fir Vwayne why nor wherfore / but by
 treason I am sure I gat this hurte / for here came a knyghte fo-
 denly vpon me or that I was ware / and fodenly hurte me /
 ¶ Thenne there was come fyre Andred to feke kynge Marke
 ¶ Thou traytour knyght said fir kay / and I wiste it were
 10 thou that thus traitourly hast hurte this noble knyghte / thou
 sholdest neuer passe my handes / Syre faide fir Andred I dyd
 neuer hurte hym / and that I wylle reporte me to hym self /
 Fy on you fals knyghtes said fyr kay / for ye of Cornewaile
 ar nought worthe / Soo fyr kay made cary fyr Vwayne to the
 15 abbay of the black Croffe / and there he was helyd / And then-
 ne fyr Gaherys took his leue of kynge Mark / But or he de-
 parted he sayd / fyre kynge ye dyd a foule shame vnto you &
 your Courte whan ye bannysshed fir Tristram out of this cou-
 trey / for ye neded not to haue doubted no knyght and he had
 20 ben here / and soo he departed

¶ Capitulum xxxix

THenne there came fyre kay the Seneschal vnto kynge
 Marke / and there he hadde good chere shewyng oute-
 ward / Now fayre lordes said he wille ye preue ony
 aduenture in the forest of Morris in the whiche I knowe wel
 25 is as hard an aduenture as I knowe ony / Syr said fir kay/
 I wille preue hit / And fir Gaheryse said he wold be auyfed
 For kynge Mark was euer ful of treason / and there with al
 fyr Gaheryse departed and rode his waye / And by the same
 waye that fyre Kay shold ryde / he leyd hym doune to reste
 30 chargynge his squyer to wayte vpon fir kay / and warne me
 whanne he cometh / Soo within a whyle fir kay came rydyng
 that way / and thenne fir Gaheryse tooke his hors and met hym
 and sayd fire kay ye are not wyse to ryde at the request of ky-
 nge Mark for he deleth alle with treason / Thenne said fire kay
 35 I requyre you lete vs preue this aduenture / I shal not fayle

[leaf 201 verso]

you said sir Gaherys / and so they rode that tyme tyl a lake /
 that was that tyme called the peryllous lake / And there they
 abode vnder the shawe of the wood / ¶ The meane whyle kyng
 Marke within the castel of Tyntagyl auoyded alle his barōs
 & alle other fauf suche as were pryuy with hym / were auoyded 5
 oute of his chamber / And thenne he lete calle his neuewe sir
 Andred / and badde arme hym and horfe hym lyghtely / & by
 that tyme it was mydnyght / And so kyng Marke was ar-
 med in blak hors and alle / and so att a pryuy posterne they
 two yffued oute with their varlets with them / and rode tyll 10
 they came to that lake / Thenne sir Kay aspyed them fyrst and
 gat his spere / and profered to Iuste / And kyng Mark rode
 ageynst hym / and smote eche other ful hard / for the mone shone
 as the bryght day / And there at that Iustes sir Kayes hors
 fyllle doune / for his hors was not so bygge as the kynges hors 15
 and sir kayes hors bryfed hym ful fore / Thenne sir Gaherys
 was wrothe that sir kay had a falle / Thenne he cryed knyght
 fytte thou fast in thy fadel / for I wille reuenge my felawe /
 Thenne kyng Marke was aferd of sir Gaherys / and so with
 euyl wylle kyng Marke rode ageynst hym / and sir Gaherys 20
 gaf hym suche a stroke that he felle down / So thenne forth with
 all sir Gaherys ranne vnto sir Andred and smote hym from
 his hors quyte that his helme smote in the erthe / and nyhe had
 broken his neck / And there with al sir Gaherys alyghte and
 gate vp sir Kay / And thenne they yode bothe on foote to them / 25
 and badde them yelde them / and telle their names other they
 shold dye / Thenne with grete payne sir Andred spak fyrst &
 said hit is kyng Marke of Cornewaile / therfore be ye ware
 what ye do / and I am sir Andred his cofyn / Fy on you bothe
 said sir Gaherys for a fals traitour / and fals treason hast thou 30
 wrougt / and he both vnder the fayned chere that ye made vs / it
 were pyte said sir Gaherys that thou sholdest lyue ony lenger /
 Saue my lyf said kyng Marke and I wil make amendys &
 confyder that I am a kyng anoynted / it were the more shame
 said sir Gaherys to saue thy lyf / thou arte a kyng enoynted 35
 with creme / and therfore thou sholdest holde with alle men
 of worship / And therfor thou arte worthy to dye /
 With that he laffhed at kyng Mark without sayeng ony more &

couerd hym with his sheld and defended hym as he myghte /
 and thenne fir kay laffhed at fir Andred / and there with all
 kynge Marke yelded hym vnto fyr Gaherys / And thenne he
 kneled adoune / and made his othe vpon the croffe of the fuerd
 5 that neuer whyle he lyued he wold be ageynst arraunt knygh-
 tes / And also he sware to be good Frende vnto fir Triftram /
 yf euer he came in to Cornewaile / By thenne fir Andred was
 on the erthe / and fir Kay wold haue slayne hym / lete be said
 fir Gaherys / flee hym not I pray you / It were pyte said fyre
 10 kay that he shold lyue ony lenger / for this is nygh cofyn vn-
 to fyr Triftram / and euer he hath ben a traytour vnto hym / &
 by hym he was exyled oute of Cornewaile / and therfor I will
 flee hym sayd fir Kay / ye shalle not said Gaherys fythen I
 haue gyuen the kynge his lyf / I pray you yeue hym his lyf /
 15 and there with alle fir Kay lete hym goo / And soo fir Kay
 and fyre Gaherys rode their way vnto Dynas the Seneschal
 for by cause they herd say that he loued wel fir Triftram / Soo
 they reposed them there / and soone after they rode vnto the ro-
 yamme of Logrys / And soo within a lytel whyle they mette
 20 with fire Launcelot that alweyes had dame Bragwayn with
 hym / to that entente / he wende to haue mette the fooner with fir
 Triftram / and fyr launcelot asked what tydynges in Corne-
 waile / and whether they herd of fir Triftram or not / Syr Kay
 and fir Gaherys anfuerd and said that they herd not of hym
 25 Thenne they told fir launcelot word by word of their aduen-
 ture / Thenne fyr launcelot smyled and said / hard hit is to take
 oute of the fleffhe that is bred in the bone / and soo maade hem
 mery to gyders

¶ Capitulum xl

30 **N**ow leue we of this tale / and speke we of fyr dynas
 that had within the castel a peramour / and she loued
 another knyghte better than hym / And so whanne fyr
 Dynas wente oute on huntyng / she flypped doune by a tuell /
 And took with her two brachets / and soo she yede to the kny-
 ght that she loued / and he her ageyne / ¶ And whanne fir

Dynas come home / and myft his peramour and his brachets
 thenne was he the more wrother for his Brachets than for
 the lady / Soo thenne he rode after the knyght that had his per-
 amour and badde hym torne and Iufte / So fyr Dynas fmo-
 te hym doune that with the falle he brake his legge and his ar- 5
 me / And thenne his lady and peramour cryed fire Dynas
 mercy / and faid ſhe wold loue hym better than euer ſhe dyd /
 Nay faid fir Dynas I ſhalle neuer truſte them that ones by-
 trayed me / and therfor as ye haue begonne ſo ende / for I wyll
 neuer medle with you / And ſo fir Dynas departed and tooke 10
 his brachets with hym / and ſoo rode to his caſtel / Now wil we
 torne vnto fir launcelot that was ryght heuy that he coude ne-
 uer here no tydynges of fir Triftram / for al this whyle he was
 in pryſon with fir Darras / Palomydes / & Dynadan / Thenne
 dame Brangwayne took her leue to goo in to Cornewaile and 15
 fyr launcelot / fyr kay / & fyr Gaherys rode to ſeke fir Triftram
 in the countrey of Surleuſe / Now ſpeketh this tale of fir trif-
 tram and of his two felawes / for euery daye fyre Palomydes
 brauled and ſayd langage ageynſt fyr Triftram I merueyle
 faid fir Dynadan of the fyr Palomydes / and thou haddeſt fyre 20
 Triftram here / thou woldeſt do hym no harme / For and a wolf
 and a ſhepe were to gyders in a pryſon / the wolf wold ſuffre
 the ſheep to be in pees / and wete thou wel faid fire Dynadan
 this fame is fire Triftram at a word / and now maiſt thou doo
 thy beſt with hym / & lete ſee now yf ye can ſkyfte it with your 25
 handes / thenne was fire Palomydes abaſhed and faid lytyl/
 fyr Palomydes thenne faid fyr Triftram / I haue herd moche
 of your maugre ageynſt me / but I wille not medle with you
 as at this tyme by my wille / by cauſe I drede the lord of this
 place that hath vs in gouernaunce / for and I dredde hym not 30
 more than I doo the / ſoone hit ſhold be ſkyfte / ſoo they peaced
 them ſelf / Ryght ſoo came in a damoyfel and faid knyghtes be
 of good chere for ye are ſure of your lyues / and that I herd ſay
 my lord fyre Darras / Thenne were they gladde alle thre / For
 dayly they wende they ſhold haue dyed / ¶ Thenne ſoone after 35
 this fyr Triftram fylle ſeke that he wende to haue dyed / thenne
 fyr Dynadan wepte / and ſoo dyd fire Palomydes vnder them
 bothe making grete forou /

¶ Soo a damoyfel

came in to them and fonde them mornynge / Thenne she wente
 vnto fire Darras / and told hym how that myghty knyghte
 that bare the black shelde was lykely to dye / That shalle not
 be sayd sir Darras / for god defende whanne Knyghtes come
 5 to me for focour that I shold suffre hem to dye within my pry-
 son / Therfor said sir Darras to the damoyfel / fetch that knyzt
 and his felawes afore me / And thenne anone sir Darras sa-
 we sir Triftram brought afore hym / he said fire Knyghte me
 repenteth of thy sekenesse / for thou arte called a ful noble kn-
 10 yght / and soo hit semeth by the / And wete ye wel it shall ne-
 uer be said that syr Darras shalle destroye suche a noble kny-
 ght as thou arte in pryson / how be hit / that thou hast slayn / iij
 of my fones / where by I was gretely agreued / But now shalt
 thou goo and thy felawes / and youre harneis & horses haue
 15 ben fayre and clene kepte / and ye shall goo where hit lyketh
 you vpon this couenaunt / that thou Knyght wilt promyse me
 to be good frende to my fones two that ben now on lyue / and
 also that thou telle me thy name / Syr said he as for me my na-
 me is sir Triftram de Lyones / and in Cornewaile was I born
 20 and neuewe I am vnto Kynge Marke / And as for the deth
 of your fones I myght not doo with alle / For and they had
 ben the next kyn þ^t I haue / I myzt haue done none other wyse/
 And yf I had slayne hem by treason or trechery I hadde ben
 worthy to haue dyed / Alle this I confyder said syr Darras/
 25 that alle that ye dyd was by force of knyghthode / and that
 was the cause I wold not putte you to deth / But fythe ye be
 syr Triftram the good knyght I pray you hertely to be my good
 frend and to my fones / Syr said fire Triftram I promyse yow
 by the feithe of my body euer whyle I lyue I wille do yow fer-
 30 uyse / for ye haue done to vs but as a naturel Knyghte ought
 to doo / Thenne sir Triftram repofed hym there tyl that he was
 amended of his sekenesse / And whanne he was bygge and
 stronge / they took their leue / and euery knyght took their hor-
 ses and soo departed and rode to gyders tyl they came to a
 35 crosse way / Now felawes said syr Triftram here wylle we de-
 parte in sondry wayes / and by cause fire Dynadan hadde the
 fyrst aduenture of hym I wille begynne

¶ Capitulum xlii

SOo as fir Dynadan rode by a welle / he fond a lady
 makyng grete dole / what eyleth you said fir Dynadan
 Syre knyght said the lady I am the wofullest lady
 of the world / for within these fyue dayes / here came a knyght
 called fir Breuse saunce pyte / and he slewe myn owne broder / 5
 And euer fyns he hath kepte me at his owne will / and of al
 men in the world I hate hym moost / And therfor I requyre
 you of knyghthode to auenge me / for he wille not tary but be he-
 re anone / Lete hym come said fire Dynadan / And by cause of
 honour of alle wymmen I wylle doo my parte / With this cam 10
 fyr Breuse / And whan he sawe a Knyght with his lady / he
 was wood wrothe / And thenne he said fir Knyght kepe the
 from me / soo they hurled to gyder as thonder / and eyther smote
 other passyng fore / But fyre Dynadan putte hym thurgh
 the sholder a greuous wounde / and or euer fir Dynadan my- 15
 ght torne hym fyr Breuse was gone and fledde / Thenne the
 lady prayd hym to bryng her to a Castel there befyde but fou-
 ur myle thens / and soo fir Dynadan brought her there / & she
 was welcome / for the lord of that castel was her vnkel / and
 soo fyre Dynadan rode his way vpon his aduenture / Now tor- 20
 ne we this tale vnto fyre Triftram that by aduenture he cam to
 a castel to aske lodgyng / wherin was quene Morgan le fay / &
 soo whan fire Triftram was lete into that castel / he had good
 chere alle that nyght / And vpon the morne whan he wold ha-
 ue departed / the Quene said / wete ye wel ye shall not departe 25
 lyghtely / for ye are here as a prysoner / Ihesu defende said fyr
 Triftram / for I was but late a prysoner / Fayr knyght sayd
 the quene ye shalle abyde with me tyl that I wete what ye ar
 and from whens ye come / And euer the Quene wold set fyr
 Triftram on her owne fyde / and her peramour on the other fy- 30
 de / And euer Quene Morgan wold beholde fyr Triftram / &
 ther at the knyght was Ialous / and was in wille sodenly to
 haue ronne vpon fyr Triftram with a swerd / but he lefte it for
 shame / theñe the quene said to fir Triftram telle me thy name &

I shalle suffre you to departe whan ye will / vpon that couena-
 unt I telle you my name is fyr Triftram de lyones / A fayd
 Morgan le fay / and I had wyft that thou sholdest not haue
 departed soo soone as thou shalt / But sythen I haue maade a
 5 promyse / I wille holde hyt / with that thou wilt promyse me to
 bere vpon the a shelde that I shall delyuer the / vnto the castel
 of the hard roche where kynge Arthur had cryed a grete
 turnement / and there I pray you that ye wille be / and to doo
 for me as moche dedes of armes as ye maye doo / For att the
 10 Castel of maydens fyr Triftram ye dyd merueillous dedes of
 armes as euer I herd knyght doo / Madame said fyr Triftram
 lete me see the shelde that I shalle bere / Thenne the shelde was
 brought forth / and the feld was guldysfh with a kynge and
 a quene therin paynted / and a knyght standynge aboue them
 15 vpon the kynges hede / and the other vpon the quenes /
 Madame said fir Triftram this is a fayre shelde and a myzty
 But what fygnesyeth this kynge and this quene / and that
 knyght standynge vp bothe their hedes / I shalle telle you said
 Morgan le fay hit fygnesyeth kynge Arthur and quene gue-
 20 neuer and a knyght that holdeth them both in bondage and in
 seruage / who is that knyght said fyre Triftram / that shalle ye
 not wete as at this tyme / said the quene / but as the Frensfhe
 book faith Quene Morgan le fay loued fir launcelot best / and euer
 she defyred hym / and he wold neuer loue her / nor doo no thyng
 25 at her request / and therefore she held many Knyghtes to gyder /
 for to haue taken hym by strengthe / And by cause she demed
 that fyr Launcelot loued Quene Gueneuer peramour / and
 she hym ageyne / therfore Quene Morgan le fay ordeyned that
 sheld to put fir launcelot to a rebuke to that entent that kyng
 30 Arthur myght vnderstande the loue bitwene them / Thenne fir
 Triftram took that sheld and promysed her to bere hit atte tur-
 nement at the castel of the hard roche / But fir Triftram knewe
 not that that sheld was ordeyned ageynst fyr launcelot / but
 afterward he knewe hit

¶ Capitulum xliij

SOo thenne fyre Triftram took his leue of the Quene /
 and took the sheld with hym / Thenne came the knyght
 that helde Quene Morgan le fay / his name was fyre
 Hymefon / and he made hym redy to folowe fyre Triftram / fayr
 frende said Morgan le fay ryde not after that knyght / for ye shalle 5
 not wyne no worship of hym / Fy on hym coward faide fyre
 Hemyfon / for I wyft neuer good knyghte come oute of Cor-
 newaile / but yf hit were fyr Triftram de Lyones / what & that
 be he said she / Nay nay said he / he is with la beale Ifoud and
 this is but a daffyssh knyght / Allas my fair frende ye shalle 10
 fynde hym the best knyght that euer ye mette with alle / For I
 knowe hym better than ye doo / for your fake said fir Hemyfon
 I shalle flee hym / A fayr frende said the Quene me repenteth
 that ye wylle folowe that knyght / for I fere me fore of youre
 ageyne comynge / with this / this knyghte rode his waye woode 15
 wrothe / and he rode after fyr Triftram as fast as he hadde ben
 chaced with knyghtes / Whanne fir Triftram herd a knyghte
 come after hym soo fast / he retorned aboute / and sawe a knyzt
 comynge ageynst hym / And whanne he came nyghe to fir Trif-
 tram / he cryed on hyghe fyr knyght kepe the from me / Thenne 20
 they raffhed to gyders as hit had ben thonder / and fir Hemy-
 fon bryfed his spere vpon fyr Triftram / but his harneis was
 soo good that he myght not hurte hym / And fyre Tryfram
 smote hym harder and bare hym thorou the body / and fylle
 ouer his hors croupe / Thenne fyre Triftram torned to haue do- 25
 ne more with his swerd / but he sawe soo moche blood go from
 hym that hym semed he was lykely to deye / And so he depar-
 ted from hym / and came to a fayre manoyre to an old knyzt
 and there fyre Triftram lodged

¶ Now leue to speke of fir Triftram / and speke we of the 30
 knyght that was wounded to the dethe / thenne his varlet aly-
 ght and took of his helme / and thēne he asked his lord whether
 there were ony lyf in hym / there is in me lyf faide the knyghte
 but hit is but lytyl / and therfore lepe thou vp behynde me /
 whan thou hast holpen me vp / and holde me fast that I falle 35
 not / and brynge me to Quene Morgan le fay / for depe drau-
 zes of dethe drawn to my herte that I may not lyue / for I
 wold fayne speke with her or I dyed / For els my foule wyll

be in grete perylle and I dye / for with grete payne his varlet
 brought hym to the Caſtel / and there fyr Hemyſon fylle doun
 dede / whanne Morgan le fay ſawe hym dede / ſhe made grete fo-
 rou oute of reaſon / And thenne ſhe lete deſpoyle hym vnto his
 5 ſhyrte / and ſoo ſhe lete hym putte in to a tombe / And aboute
 the tombe ſhe lete wryte / Here lyeth fyr Hemyſon ſlayne by the
 handes of ſire Triftram de lyones / ¶ Now torne we vnto fyre
 Triftram that asked the knyght his hooft yf he ſawe late ony
 knyghtes aduenturous / Sir he ſaid the laſt nyght here lodged
 10 with me Ector de marys and a damoyſel with hym / and that
 damoyſel told me that he was one of the beſt knyghtes of the
 world / that is not ſoo ſaid ſir Triftram / for I knowe four bet-
 ter knyghtes of his owne blood / and the fyrſt is fyr launce-
 lot du lake / calle hym the beſt knyght / and ſir Bors de ganys
 15 Syr Bleoberys / fyr Blamor de ganys and fyr Gaheris / nay
 ſaid his hooft / ſir Gawayne is a better knyght than he / that is
 not ſoo ſaid fyr Triftram / for I haue mette with hem bothe / &
 I felte fyr Gaherys for the better knyght and ſir Lamorak I
 calle hym as good as ony of them / excepte ſir launcelot / Why
 20 name ye not ſir Triftram ſaid his hooft / for I accompte hym
 as good as ony of them / I knowe not ſire Triftram ſaid trif-
 tram / thus they talked and bourded as longe as them lyſte /
 and thenne wente to reſte / And on the morne ſir Triftram de-
 parted and took his leue of his hooft / and rode toward the
 25 roche deure / and anone aduenture had ſire Triftram but that / &
 ſoo he reſted not tyl he came to the caſtel where he ſawe fyue C
 tentys

¶ Capitulum xliiii

THenne the kynge of Scottes and the kyng of Irland
 helde ageynſt kynge Arthurs knyghtes / and there be-
 30 ganne a grete medle / So came in fyr Triftram and dyd mer-
 ueillous dedes of armes / for there he ſmote doune many kny3-
 tes / And euer he was afore kynge Arthur with that ſhelde /
 And whanne kynge Arthur ſawe that ſhelde / he meruyylled
 gretely in what entente hit was made / but Quene Gueneuer
 35 demed as it was wherfor ſhe was heuy / Thēne was ther a da-

moyfel of Quene Morgan in a chamber by kynge Arthur /
 And whan she herd kynge Arthur speke of that shelde / thēne
 she spak openly vnto kynge Arthur / fyre kynge wete ye well
 this sheld was ordeyned for you to warne you of your sha-
 me and dishonour / and that longeth to you and your Quene / 5
 And thenne anone that damoyfel pyked her away pryuely /
 that no man wyft where she was become / Thenne was kynge
 Arthur fadde and wrothe and asked from whens came that
 damoyfel / there was not one that knewe her / nor wyfte where
 she was become / Thenne Quene Gueneuer called to her fir Ec- 10
 tor de marys / and there she made her complaynte to hym / and
 said I wote wel this sheld was made by Morgan le fay / in
 despyte of me and fir Launcelot / wherfore I drede me fore
 lest I shold be destroyed / And euer the kynge bihelde fyre
 Triftram that dyd foo merueillous dedes of armes that he wō- 15
 dred fore what knyght he myght be / and wel he wyft hit was
 not fyr launcelot / And hit was told hym that fyr Triftram
 was in petyte Bretayne with Ifoud la blaunche maynys /
 for he demyd and he had ben in the realme of Logrys / fyr la-
 uncelot or fomme of his felawes that were in the quest of fyr 20
 Triftram that they shold haue fond hym or that tyme / So ky-
 ng Arthur had merueylle what knyght he myghte be / And
 euer fyr Arthurs eye was on that shelde / Alle that aspyed the
 Quene / and that made her fore aferd / Thenne euer fyr Triftram
 smote doune knyghtes wonderly to beholde what vpon the ry- 25
 ght hand and vpon the lyfte hand that vnnethe no knyzt my-
 ght withstande hym / And the kyng of Scottes and the kyng
 of Irland beganne to withdrawe hem / Whanne Arthur aspy-
 ed that / he thought that that Knyght with the straunge sheld
 shold not escape hym / Thenne he called vnto hym fyre Vwayn 30
 la blaunche maynys / and bad hym arme hym and make hym
 redy / Soo anone kynge Arthur and fir Vwayne dressid them
 bifore fir Triftram and requyred hym to telle hem where he had
 that shelde / Syr he said I had it of Quene Morgan le fay sis-
 ter vnto kynge Arthur 35

¶ Soo here endeth this history of this book / for it is the firste
 book of sire Triftram de lyones / and the second book of sir tris-
 tram foloweth

¶ Here begynneth the second book of sire Tristram / How fyre Tristram smote doune kyng Arthur & sir Vwayne / by cause he wold not telle hem wherfor that shelde was made / But to say the sothe fyre Tristram coude not telle the cause / for he knewe it not

¶ The tenth book

¶ Capitulum primum

S Nd yf so be ye can descryue what ye bere / ye ar worthy to bere the armes / As for that said fyr Tristram I wille anfuere you / this sheld was yeuen me / not defyred / of quene Morgan le fay
 5 And as for me I can not descryue these armes for it is no poynt of my charge / and yet I truste to god to bere hem with worship / Truly sayd kynge Arthur ye oughte not to bere none armes / but yf ye wist what ye bare / But I pray you telle me youre name / to what entente said fyre Tristram /
 10 for I wold wete said Arthur / Syre ye shalle not wete as at this tyme / thenne shalle ye and I doo bataille to gyders sayd Kyng Arthur / why said fyre Tristram wylle ye doo bataille with me but yf I telle you my name / and that lytyl nedeth you and ye were a man of worshyp / for ye haue sene me thys
 15 day haue had grete traueylle / And therefore ye are a vylaynous knyght to aske bataille of me confyderynge my grete traueylle / how be hit I wyl not fayle you / and haue ye no doute that I feare not you / though ye thynke ye haue me atte a grete auauntage / yet shalle I ryght wel endure you / And
 20 there with all kynge Arthur dresfid his shelde and his spere and fyre Tristram ageynst hym / and they came soo egerly to gyders / And there kynge Arthur brake his spere all to pyeces vpon fyr Tristrams shelde / But sir Tristram hitte Arthur ageyne that hors and man felle to the erthe / And there was
 25 kynge Arthur wounded on the lyfte syde a grete wounde and a peryllous / Thenne whanne sir Vwayne sawe his lord Arthur lye on the ground fore wounded he was passyng heuy / And thenne he dresfid his shelde and his spere / and cryed a-

lowde vnto fyr Triftram and faid knyght defende the / So they
came to gyder as thonder / and fyr Vwayne bryfed his spere /
alle to pyeces vpon fyre Triftrams shelde / and fyre Triftram
smote hym harder and forer with fuche a myzt that he bare hym
clene oute of his fadel to the erthe / with that fyr Triftram tor- 5
ned aboute and faid Fair knyghtes / I had no nede to luste
with you / for I haue had ynough to doo this daye / Thenne a-
rofe Arthur / and wente to fyr Vwayn and faid to fire Trif-
tram we haue as we haue deferued / For thurgh our orgulyte
we demaunded bataille of you / and yet we knewe not youre 10
name / Neuertheles by feynt croffe faid fyre Vwayne he is a
fstronge knyght at myn aduysse as ony is now lyuyng /
Thenne fir Triftram departed / and in euery place he asked &
demaunded after fir Launcelot / but in no place he coude not he-
re of hym whether he were dede or on lyue / wherfor fir triftram 15
made grete dole and sorowe / Soo fyr Triftram rode by a forest
and theñe was he ware of a fayre toure by a mareysse on that
one fyde / and on that other fyde a fayr medowe / And there
he sawe ten knyghtes fyghtynge to gyder / And euer the nere
he came / he sawe how ther was but one knyght dyd bataille 20
ageynst nyne knyghtes / and that one dyd foo merueyllously
that fyre Triftram had grete wonder that euer one knyzt my-
ght doo foo grete dedes of armes / and thenne within a lytell
whyle he had slayne half their horses / and vnhorfed them /
and their horses ranne in the feldes and foreste / Thenne fyre 25
Triftram had foo grete pyte of that one knyght that endured
foo grete payne / and euer he thought hit shold be fyr palomy-
des by his shelde / and foo he rode vnto the knyghtes and cry-
ed vnto them / and bad them seace of their bataille / for they did
them self grete shame foo many knyghtes to fyghte with one / 30
Thenne ansuerd the maister of tho knyghtes / his name was
called Breuse saunce pyte that was atte that tyme the mooste
meschyeuoust knyght lyuyng / and faid thus / fyr knyzt what
haue ye ado with vs to medle / And therfor and ye be wyfe/
departe on your way as ye cam / for this knyghte shalle not ef- 35
cape vs / that were pyte faid fyr Triftram that foo good a kn-
yght as he is shold be slayne foo cowardly / And therefore I
warne you I will focoure hym with all my puyssaunce

¶ Capitulum secundum

SO fyre Triftram alyghte of his hors by cause they were on foote that they shold not flee his hors / And thenne dresseid his sheld with his swerd in his hand / and he smote on the ryght hand and on the lyfte hand passyng fore that
 5 wel nygh at euery stroke he strake down a knyght / And when they aspyed his strokes / they fled all with Breuse fauce pyte vnto the toure / & sir Triftram folowed fast after with his swerd in his hand / but they escaped in to the toure / and shytte sir Triftram withoute the gate / ¶ And whanne sir Triftram
 10 sawe this / he retorned abak vnto sir Palomydes / and fond hym syttyng vnder a tree fore wounded / A faire knyght saide fyre Triftram wel be ye fonde / Gramercy said sir palomydes of your grete goodenes / for ye haue rescowed me of my lyf and saued me from my dethe / what is your name said sir Triftram /
 15 he said my name is sir Palomydes / O Ihesu said sir Triftram thou hast a fayre grace of me this daye / that I shold rescowe the / and thou arte the man in the world that I mooste hate / but now make the redy / for I will doo bataille with the / what is your name sayd palomydes / my name is sir Triftram your
 20 mortal enemy / hit may be so said sir palomydes / But ye haue done ouer moche for me this day that I shold fyghte with you / for in as moche as ye haue saued my lyf / hit wille be no worship for you to haue adoo with me / for ye are freshe and I am wounded fore / And therfor and ye wille nedes haue ado
 25 with me / Assigne me a day and thenne I shal mete with you withoute fayle / ye saye wel said sir Triftram / Now I assigne you to mete me in the medowe by the ryuer of Camelot / where Merlyon sette the peron / so they were agreed / Thenne sir Triftram asked sir Palomydes why the ten knyghtes dyd bataill
 30 with hym / for this cause said sir palomydes / as I rode vp myn aduentures in a forest here besyde / I aspyed where laye a dede Knyght / and a lady wepyng besyde hym / And whanne I sawe her makynge suche dole / I asked her who flewe her lorde
 ¶ Syre she said the falsest knyght of the world now lyuyng
 35 and he is the moost vylayne that euer man herd speke of /

and his name is sir Breuse faunce pyte / thenne for pyte I made the damoyfel to lepe on her palfroy / and I promysed her to be her waraunt / and to helpe her to entyere her lord / And foo fodenly as I came rydyng by this toure / there came oute fyr Breuse faunce pyte / and fodenly he strake me from my hors / 5
 And thenne or I myghte recouer my hors / this sir Breuse flewe the damoyfel / and foo I took my hors ageyne / and I was fore ashamed / and so beganne the medle betwixe vs / and this is the cause wherfore we dyd this bataille / Well said sir trifram now I vnderstande the maner of your bataiylle / but in 10
 ony wyfe haue remembraunce of your promyse that ye haue made with me to doo bataille with me this day fourtenyght / I shal not fayle you said sir Palomydes / wel said sir Trifram as at this tyme I wille not fayle you tyl that ye be oute of the daunger of your enemyes / So they mounted vpon theyr horses / & 15
 rode to gyders vnto that foreste / and there they fond a fayre welle / with clere water burbelynge / fayr sir said sir Trifram to drynke of that water haue I courage / and thenne they alyght of their horses / And thenne were they ware by them where stood a grete hors teyed to a tree / and euer he neyhed 20

And thenne were they ware of a fayr knyght armed vnder a tree lackyng no pyece of harneis faue his helme lay vnder his heede / By the good lord said sir Trifram yonder lyeth a wel farynge knyght / what is best to doo / Awake hym said sir palomydes / so sir Trifram awaked hym with the but of his spe- 25
 re / And foo the knyght arofe vp hastely and putte his helme vpon his hede / and gat a grete spere in his hand / and without ony moo wordes he hurled vnto sir Trifram / and smote hym clene from his fadel to the erthe / and hurte hym on the lyfte fyde that sir Trifram lay in grete perylle / Thenne he wallopped 30
 ferther / and fette his cours / and came hurlynge vpon sir palomydes / and there he strake hym a parte thorou the body that he fylle from his hors to the erthe / ¶ And thenne this straunge knyght lefte them there / and took his way thurgh the foreste / With this sir Palomydes and sire Trifram were on foote and 35
 gat their horses ageyn / and eyther asked counceylle of other / what was best to done / By my hede said sir Trifram I wyll folowe this strong knyght that thus hath shamed vs / ¶ Well

said fir Palomydes / & I wylle repose me here by with a frend
 of myn / Beware said fire Tristram vnto Palomydes that ye
 fayle not that day ye haue fet with me to do bataill / for as
 I deme ye wille not hold your day / for I am moche bygger
 5 than ye / As for that said fir Palomydes / be hit as hit be maye
 for I feare you not / For and I be not feke nor prysoner I wil
 not fayle you / But I haue cause to haue moche more doubte of you
 that ye wille not mete with me / for ye ryde after yonder strong
 knyght / And yf ye mete with hym / hit is an hard aduenture
 10 and euer ye escape his handes / Ryght soo fir Tristram and fir
 Palomydes departed / and eyther took their wayes dyuerse

¶ Capitulum iij

ANd so fyre Tristram rode longe after this stronge kn-
 yght / And at the laste he sawe where lay a lady ouer-
 thwarte a dede knyght / Faire lady said fir Tristram who hath
 15 slayne your lord / Syr she said here came a knyght rydyng as
 my lord and I rested vs here / and asked hym of whens he
 was / and my lord said of Arthurs courte / therfore said the
 stronge knyght I wille Iuste with the / for I hate alle these
 that ben of Arthurs Courte / And my lord that lyeth here dede
 20 amounted vpon his hors / and the stronge knyght and my
 lord encountred to gyder / and there he smote my lord thorough
 oute with his spere / and thus he hath broughte me in grete
 woo and dammage / That me repenteth said fire Tristram of
 your grete anger / and hit please you / telle me your husbandes
 25 name / fyr said she his name was Galardoun that wold ha-
 ue preued a good knyghte / Soo departed fir Tristram from
 that dolorous lady and hadde moche euylle lodgyng / Thenne
 on the thyrdd day fyr Tristram mette with fyr Gawayne and
 with fir Bleoberys in a forest at a lodge and eyther were so-
 30 re wounded / Thenne fyre Tristram asked fyr Gawayne and
 fyr Bleoberys yf they met with suche a Knyghte with suche a
 cognoyssaunce with a keuerd shelde / Faire fyr said these kn-
 yghtes suche a knyght met with vs to oure grete dommage / &
 fyrst he smote doune my felawe fyre Bleoberys & fore wouDED

hym / by cause he badde me I shold not haue ado with hym
 For why he was ouer stronge for me / That strong knyght to-
 ke his wordes at sorne and said he said it for mockery / And
 thenne they rode to gyders / and soo he hurte my felawe / And
 whan he had done so / I myght not for shame / but I must Iuste 5
 with hym / And at the fyrst course he smote me doune / and my
 hors to the erthe / And there he had al moost slayne me / and
 from vs he took his hors / and departed / and in an euyl tyme
 we mette with hym / Faire knyghtes said sir Tristram soo he
 mette with me / and with another knyght that hyght Palomy- 10
 des / and he smote vs bothe doune with one spere / and hurt vs
 ryght fore / By my feythe said sir Gawayne by my counceil ye
 shalle lete hym passe / and seke hym no ferther / for at the nexte
 feest of the round table vpon payne of my hede ye shalle fynde
 hym there / By my feythe said sir Tristram I shall neuer reste 15
 tyl that I fynde hym / And thenne sir Gawayne asked hym
 his name / thenne he said my name is sir Tristram / and so ey-
 ther told other their names / and thenne departed fyr Tristram /
 and rode his way / And by fortune in a medowe sire Tristram
 mette with sir Kay the feneschal and sir Dynadan / What ty- 20
 dynges with you said sir Tristram with you Knyghtes / Not
 good said these knyghtes / why soo said sir Tristram I praye
 you telle me / for I ryde to seke a knyght / what cognoysaunce
 bereth he said sir Kay / He bereth said sir Tristram a couerd
 sheld clofe with clothe / By my hede said sir Kay that is the 25
 same Knyght that mette with vs / for this nyght we were lod-
 ged within a wydowes hous / and there was that knyght lod-
 ged / And whanne he wyft we were of Arthurs court / he spak
 grete vylonye by the kynge / and specially by the Quene Gue-
 neuer / ¶ And thenne on the morne was waged bataille 30
 with hym for that cause / And at the fyrst recoûtre said sir kay
 he smote me doune from my hors / and hurte me passynge fore /
 And whanne my felawe fyr Dynadan fawe me smyten doune
 and hurte / he wold not reuenge me / but fledde from me / And
 thus is he departed / And thenne sir Tristram asked them theyr 35
 names / and soo eyther told other their names / And soo fyre
 Tristram departed from fyr kay / and from sir Dynadan / and
 so he past thurgh a grete forest in to a playne tyl he was ware

of a pryory / and there he repofed hym with a good man fyxe
dayes

¶ Capitulum quartum

ANd thenne he fente his man that hyght Gouvernaile / &
5 hym neue harneis / for hit was long tyme afore that / that fyre
Triftram had ben refrefshed / his harneis was bryfed & broken
And whanne Gouvernaile his feruaunt was come with his ap-
parail / he toke his leue at the wydowe / and mounted vpon his
hors / and rode his way erly on the morne / And by fodeyn ad-
10 uenture fyr Triftram mette with fir Sagramore le defyrus / &
with fyre Dodynas le faueage / And thefe two knyghtes mette
with fyre Triftram and queftioned with hym / and asked hym
yf he wold Iufte with hem / Faire knyghtes faid fir Triftram
with a good wylle I wold Iufte with you / But I haue
15 promyfed at a day fette nere hand to do bataille with a ftrong
knyght / And therfore I am lothe to haue adoo with you / for
and hit myffortuned me here to be hurte I fhold not be able
to doo my bataille / whiche I promyfed / As for that faid Sa-
gramor maulgre your hede ye fhalle Iufte with vs / or ye paffe
20 from vs / well faid fyr Triftram / yf ye enforce me therto I muft
doo what I may / And thenne they drefsid their sheldes / and
came rennyng to gyder with grete yre / But thurgh fyr Trif-
rams grete force he ftrake fyr Sagramor from his hors / Then-
ne he hurled his hors ferther / and faid to fir Dodynas / knygte
25 make the redy / and foo thorou fyne force fyre Triftram ftrake
Dodynas from his hors / And whanne he fawe hem lye on the
erthe / he took his brydel / and rode forth on his way and his
man Gouvernaile with hym / Anone as fir Triftram was paffe
fyr Sagramore and fir Dodynas gate ageyne their horfes / &
30 mounted vp lyghtely and folowed after fir Triftram / And
whan fyre Triftram fawe them come foo faft after hym / he retor-
ned with his hors to them / and asked them what they wold
Hit is not longe ago fythen I fmote you to the erthe at your
owne request / and defyre / I wold haue ryden by you / but ye
35 wold not fuffre me / and now me femeth ye wold doo more ba-
taille with me / That is trouthe faid fire Sagramore and fyre

Dodynas / for we wille be reuengyd of the despyte ye haue done to vs / Faire knyghtes said fir Tristram that shal lytyl ne-
 de you / for all that I dyd to you / ye caused hit / wherfore I re-
 quyre you of your knyghthode leue me as at this tyme / for I
 am fure and I doo bataille with you I shalle not escape with 5
 oute grete hurtes / and as I suppoſe ye shalle not escape alle
 lotles / And this is the cause why I am soo loth to haue ado
 with you / For I muſt fyghte within theſe thre dayes with a
 good knyght and as valyaunt as ony is now lyuyng / and
 yf I be hurte I shalle not be able to doo bataille with hym / 10
 What Knyght is that said fir Sagramor that ye shalle fyghte
 with alle / Syrs said he it is a good knyght called fir Palo-
 mydes / By my hede said fir Sagramor and fire Dodynas ye
 haue cause to drede hym / for ye shall fynde hym a paſſyng go-
 od knyght / and a valyaunt / And by cause ye shalle haue ado 15
 with hym / we wille forbere you as at this tyme / and els ye
 shold not escape vs lyghtely / But fayr knyght said fir Sa-
 gramour telle vs your name / Syr said he my name is fir Trif-
 tram de lyones / A said Sagramor and fir Dodynas well be ye
 fonde / for moche worship haue we herd of you / And thenne ey- 20
 ther took leue of other / and departed on their way /

¶ Capítulum v

THenne departed fire Tristram and rode ſtreyghte vnto
 Camelot to the Peron that Merlyn had made to fore
 where fire Lancyor that was the Kynges ſone of Irland was
 ſlayne by the handes of Balyn / and in that ſame place was 25
 a fayr lady Columbe ſlayn that was loue vnto fir Lanceor
 for after he was dede ſhe took his ſuerd and threſt hit thorou her
 body / And by the craſte of Merlyn he made to entiere this kn-
 yght Lanceor and his lady Columbe vnder one ſtone / And at
 that tyme Merlyon profecyed / that in that ſame place shold 30
 fyghte two the beſt knyghtes that euer were in Arthurs da-
 yes / and the beſt louers / ¶ Soo whanne fyre Tristram
 came to the tombe where lancyor and his lady were buryed / he

looked aboute hym after sir Palomydes / Thenne was he ware of
 a femely knyght came rydyng ageynst hym all in whyte / with
 a couerd shelde / Whanne he came nyghe sir Tristram he said
 on hyghe ye be welcome fyr Knyght / and wel and truly ha-
 5 ue ye hold your promyse / And thenne they dresfid their shel-
 des and speres / and came to gyders with alle their myghtes
 of their horses / and they met so fyerfly that bothe their horses
 and Knyghtes fylle to the erthe / And as fast as they myzte
 auoyded theyre horses / and putte their sheldes afore them / and
 10 they strake to gyders with bryght swardes as men that were of
 myght / and eyther wouDED other wonderly fore that the blood
 ranne out vpon the grasse / And thus they fought the space of
 four houres / that neuer one wold speke to other one word / &
 of their harneis they had hewen of many pecys / O lord Ihesu
 15 said Gouvernaile I merueyle gretely of the strokes my maif-
 ter hath yeuen to your mayster / By my hede said sir Laūcelots
 feruaunt your maister hath not yeuen so many but your maif-
 ter hath receyued as many or more / O Ihesu faide Gouvernaile
 it is to moche for sir palomydes to suffre or sir Launcelot / And
 20 yet pyte it were that eyther of these good knyghtes shold def-
 troye others blood / Soo they stode and wepte bothe / and made
 grete dole / whan they sawe the bryghte swardes ouer couerd
 with blood of their bodyes / Thenne at the last spake fyr laun-
 celot and said knyght thou fyghtest wonderly wel / as euer I
 25 sawe knyght / therfor and hit please you telle me your name /
 Syr faide fyre Tristram that is me lothe to telle ony man my
 name / Truly said sir launcelot and I were requyred I was
 neuer loth to telle my name / Hit is wel said said sir Tristram
 thenne I requyre you to telle me your name / fayr knyghte he
 30 said my name is sir launcelot du lake / Allas said fyre Trist-
 ram what haue I done / for ye are the man in the world that I
 loue best / Faire knyght said sir Launcelot telle me your name
 Truly said he my name is sir Tristram de lyones / O Ihesu fa-
 id sir launcelot what aduenture is befalle me / And there with
 35 fyr launcelot kneled doune and yelded hym vp his fuerd
 And there with alle sir Tristram kneled adoune / and yelded
 hym vp his fuerd / And soo eyther gaf other the degree / And
 thenne they bothe forth with all went to the stone / and set them

doune vpon hit / and toke of their helmes to kele them / and
 eyther kyft other an honderd tymes / And thenne anone after
 they took of their helmes and rode to Camelot / and there they
 mette with sir Gawayne and with sir Gaherys that had made
 promyse to Arthur neuer to come ageyne to the court tyl they 5
 had brought fyr Triftram with them

¶ Capitulum sextum

Retorne ageyne said sir launcelot for your queft is do-
 ne / for I haue mette with sir Triftram / loo here is his
 owne perfone / Thenne was fyr Gawayne gladde / and faid to
 fire Triftram ye are welcome / for now haue ye eafyd me grete- 10
 ly of my labour / For what caufe faid sir Gawayne came ye
 in to this courte / Fair sir faid sir Triftram I came in to thys
 cuntry / by caufe of fyr Palomydes / for he and I had affyg-
 ned at this day to haue done bataille to gyders at the Peroun
 And I merueyle I here not of hym / And thus by aduentur 15
 my lord fyre Laūcelot and I mette to gyders / With this came
 Kynge Arthur / And whan he wyft that there was sir Trif-
 tram / thenne he ranne vnto hym and toke hym by the hand /
 And faide fire Triftram ye are as welcome as ony Knyghte /
 that euer came to this Courte / And whanne the Kynge had 20
 herd how fire Launcelot and he had foughten / and eyther had
 wounded other wonderly fore / thenne the Kynge maade grete
 dole / Thenne sir Triftram told the Kynge how he came thydder
 for to haue had adoo with fire Palomydes / And thenne he told
 the kynge how he had refcowed hym from the nyne knyghtes 25
 and Breufe faunce pyte / And how he fond a Knyght lyeng
 by a well / and that Knyght fmote doune sir Palomydes and
 me / but his fheld was couerd with a clothe / Soo sir Palomy-
 des lefte me / and I folowed after that Knyghte / and in ma-
 ny places I fonde where he had flayne Knyghtes / and foriuf- 30
 ted many / By my hede faid sir Gawayne that fame Knyghte
 fmote me down and fire Bleoberys and hurte vs fore both / he
 with the couerd fhelde / A fayd sir Kay that Knyght fmote
 me adoune & hurte me paffynge fore / & fayne wolde I haue
 knownen hym but I myzt not / Ihefu mercy faid Arthur what 35

knyghte was that with the couerd shelde / I knowe not faide
fir Triftram / and so faid they all / now faid kyng Arthur then-
ne wote I for it is fir laūcelot / thēne they al loked vpon fir laū-
celot & faid ye haue begyled vs with your couerd shelde / Hit is
5 not the fyrst tyme faid Arthur he hath done foo / My lord fayd
fir Launcelot truly wete ye wel I was the fame knyght that
bare the couerd shelde / And by cause I wold not be knowen
that I was of your Courte I faid no worship of your hows
That is trouthe faid fir Gawayne / fir kay / and fir Bleoberys
10 Thenne kynge Arthur took fir Triftram by the hand / & wente
to the table round / Thenne came Quene Gueneuer and many
ladyes with her / and alle tho ladyes sayden at one voyce / wel-
come fir Triftram / welcome faid the damoyfels / welcome fayd
knyghtes / welcome faid Arthur for one of the best knyghtes /
15 and the gentylst of the world / and the man of mooste wor-
ship / for of alle maner of huntyng thou bereft the pryce / and
of alle mesures of blowyng thou arte the begynnyng / and
of alle the termes of huntyng and haukyng ye are the begyn-
ner / of all Instrumentes of musyke ye ar the best / therfor gen-
20 tyl knyght faid Arthur ye are welcome to this courte / And
also I pray you faid Arthur graunte me a bone / it shall be at
your commaundement faid Triftram / wel faid Arthur I will
desyre of you that ye wille abyde in my courte / Syr faide fyre
Triftram therto is me lothe / for I haue adoo in many countre-
25 yes / Not foo faid Arthur / ye haue promyfed hit me / ye maye
not fay nay / Syr faid fir Triftram I wille as ye wille / Then-
ne wente Arthur vnto the seges about the round table / and lo-
ked in euery fyege / the whiche were voyde that lacked knygh-
tes / And thenne the kynge sawe in the siege of Marhaus let-
30 ters that saiden / this is the fyege of the noble knyght fir Trif-
tram / And thenne Arthur made fir Triftram knyght of the ta-
ble round with grete nobley and grete feest as myghte be tho-
ught / for fir marhaus was slayne by the handes of fire
Triftram in an yland / and that was wel knowen at that ty-
35 me in the courte of Arthur / for this marhaus was a worthy
knyght / And for euylle dedes that he dyd vnto the countrey of
Cornewaile / fire Triftram and he foughte / And they foughte
foo longe tracyng and trauercyng tylle they fylle bledyng

to the erthe / for they were so fore wounded that they myght not
stande for bledynge / and sir Tristram by fortune recouerd and
fyre Marhaus dyed thurgh the stroke on the hede / Soo leue we
of sir Tristram and speke we of Kyng Marke /

¶ Capitulum vij

THenne Kyng Marke had grete despyte of the renou- 5
me of sir Tristram / and Thanne he chaced hym oute
of Cornewaile / yet was he neuewe vnto Kyng Marke / but he
had grete suspecyon vnto sire Tristram by cause of his Quene
la Beale Isoud / for hym semed that there was to moche lo-
ue bitwene them bothe / Soo whan sir Tristram departed oute 10
of Cornewaile in to Englund / kyng Marke herd of the grete
prowesse that sir Tristram dyd there / the whiche greued hym so-
re / Soo he sente on his party men to aspye what dedes he dyd /
And the Quene sente pryuely on her party spyes to knowe
what dedes he had done / for grete loue was bitwene them tweyn 15
Soo whan the messagers were come home / they told the trouth
as they had herd that he passed alle other knyghtes / but yf it
were sir launcelot / Thenne kyng Marke was ryght heuy of
these tydynges / and as glad was la Beale Isoud / Thenne
in grete despyte he took with hym two good Knyztes / and two 20
squieres / and desguyfed hym self / and took his way in to En-
glond to the entente for to see sir Tristram / and one of these ij
Knyghtes hyght Bersules / and the other Knyzt was called
Amant / Soo as they rode Kyng Marke asked a knyght that
he met where he shold fynde Kyng Arthur / he said at Came- 25
lot / Also he asked that Knyghte after sire Tristram whether he
herd of hym in the courte of Kyng Arthur / wete you wel sa-
id that Knyzt ye shall fynde sir Tristram ther for a man of as
grete worship as is now lyuyng for thurȝ his prowesse he wā
the turnement of the castel of maydens / that standeth by the 30
hard roche / And fythen he hath wonne with his owne handes
thyrtty Knyghtes that were men of grete honour /

¶ And the laste batail that euer he dyde / he foughte with fyre

I. ~~launcelot~~ / and that was a merueilous bataille / And not by
~~force~~ fyr launcelot brought fir Triftram to the Courte / and of
 hym kynge Arthur made passyngre grete ioye / and soo maade
 hym knyght of the table round / and his seate was where the
 5 good Knyghtes fir Marhaus seate was / Thenne was Kyng
 Marke passyngre fory whanne he herd of the honour of fir Trif-
 tram / and soo they departed / Thenne said Kyng Marke vnto
 his two Knyghtes / Now wille I telle you my counceylle ye
 are the men that I trust moost to on lyue / and I wille that
 10 ye wete my comyngre hyder is to this entente / for to destroye fir
 Triftram by wyles or by treason / and hit shalle be hard yf e-
 uer he escape our handes / Allas said fir Berfules what mene
 you / for ye be sette in suche a waye / ye are disposed shamefully
 For fir Triftram is the Knyzt of moost worship that we kno-
 15 we lyuynge / And therfor I warne you playnly I wyll ne-
 uer consente to doo hym to the dethe / and therfor I wyll yelde
 my seruyse / and forsake you whan kynge Mark herd hym say
 so / Sodenly he drewe his sward and said A traitour / & smote
 fyr Berfules on the hede that the fuerd wente to his teeth /
 20 Whanne Amant the knyghte sawe hym doo that vylaynous
 dede / and his squyers / they said hit was foul done / and me-
 schyeuoufly / wherfore we wille doo the no more seruyse / and
 wete ye wel / we wil appeche the of treason afore Arthur /
 Thenne was Kyng Marke wonderly wrothe / and wold ha-
 25 ue slayne Amant / but he and the two squyers held them to gy-
 ders / and sette nought by his malyce / whanne Kyng Marke
 sawe he myght not be reuenged on them / he said thus vnto the
 Knyght Amant / wete thou wel / and thou apoeche me of trea-
 son / I shalle therof defende me afore Kyng Arthur / but I re-
 30 quyre the that thou telle not my name that I am Kyng mark
 what someuer come of me / As for that said fir Amant I wil
 not discouer your name / and soo they departed / and Amant
 and his felawes took the body of Berfules and buried hit

¶ Capitulum Octauum

THenne kynge Mark rode tyl he came to a fontayne /
 and there he rested hym / and stode in a doubte whether
 he wold ryde to Arthurs courte or none / or retorne a-
 geyne to his countrey / And as he thus rested hym by that fon-
 tayne / ther came by hym a knyght wel armed on horsbak / and 5
 he alyghte and teyed his hors vntyl a tree / and fette hym do-
 une by the brynke of the fontayne / and there he made grete lā-
 gour and dole / and made the dolefullest complaynte of loue /
 that euer man herd / and al this whyle was he not ware of ky-
 nge Marke / And this was a grete parte of his complaynte / 10
 he cryed and wepte sayenge O fayre Quene of Orkeney ky-
 nge Lots wyf and moder of sir Gawayne and to sire Gaheris
 and moder to many other / for thy loue I am in grete paynes /
 Thenne Kynge Marke arofe and wente nere hym / and sayd /
 Fayr knyght ye haue made pyteous complaynte / Truly fa- 15
 id the knyght / hit is an honderd parte more reufullyr than my
 herte can vtter / I requyre you said Kyng Marke telle me yo-
 ur name / Sir said he as for my name I wil not hyde it from
 no knyght that bereth a shelde / and my name is sire Lamorak
 de galys / But whan sire Lamorak herd Kynge Mark speke 20
 thenne wist he wel by his speche that he was a Cornyshe kny-
 ght / Syr said sir Lamorak / I vnderstande by your tonge ye
 be of Cornewaile wherin there duelleth the shamefullest kynge
 that is now lyuyng / for he is a grete enemy to alle good kn-
 yghtes / and that preueth wel / for he hath chaced oute of that 25
 Countrey fyr Tristram that is the worshipfullest knyght that
 now is lyuyng / and alle knyghtes speken of hym worship /
 And for Ialoufnes of his quene he hath chaced hym oute of
 his countrey / Hit is pyte said sir Lamorak that euer ony fu-
 che fals knyght coward as kynge Marke is shold be matched 30
 with fuche a fayre lady and good as la Beale Ifoud is /
 for alle the world of hym speketh shame / and of her worshyp
 that ony Quene maye haue

¶ I haue
 not adoo in this matere said kynge marke / neyther noughte
 wille I speke therof wel said said fyre Lamorak fyre can ye 35

telle me ony tydynges / I can telle you said fyr Lamorak /
that there shalle be a grete turnement in hast beynde Camelot at
the castel of Iagent / and the kyng with the C knyghtes & the
kyng of Irland as I suppose make that turnement

5 ¶ Thenne there came a knyght that was callid fire Dyna-
dan / and fawed them bothe / And whan he wyf that kyng
Marke was a knyght of Cornewaile / he reprevd hym for the
loue of kyng Marke a thousand fold more / than dyd fir la-
morak / thenne he proferd to lufte with kyng Mark / and he
10 was ful lothe therto / But fir Dynadan edgyd hym foo / that
he lufte with fir lamorak / & fir lamorak smote kyng marke
so fore that he bare hym on his spere ende ouer his hors tayle /
And thenne kyng Marke arose ageyne / and folowed after
fir lamorak / but fir Dynadan wold not lufte with fire Lamo-
15 rak / But he told kyng Marke that fire Lamorak was fyre
kay the feneschall / that is not foo said kyng Mark / for he is
moche bygger than fir kay / and foo he folowed and ouerto-
ke hym / and badde hym abyde / what wille ye doo said fir La-
morak / Syr he said / I will fyghte with a swerd / for ye haue
20 shamed me with a spere / and there with they dafshed to gyders
with swerdes / and fir Lamorak suffred hym / and forbore hym
And kyng Marke was passyng hafty / and smote thycke stro-
kes / Syr Lamorak sawe he wold not stynte and waxyd som-
what wrothe / and doubled his strokes / for he was one of the
25 noblest knyghtes of the world / and he bete hym foo on the hel-
me that his hede henge ny3 vn the fadel bowe Whan fir lamorak
sawe hym fare foo / he said / fyr knyght what chere me semeth ye
haue nyghe your fylle of fyghtyng / hit were pyte to doo yow
ony more harme / for ye are but a meane knyght / therfore I gy-
30 ue you leue to goo where ye lyst / Gramercy said kyng Mark
For ye & I be not matches / Thenne fir dynadan mocked kyng
Marke and said ye are not able to matche a good knyght / as
for that said Kyng Mark at the first tyme that I lufte with
this Knyzt ye refused hym / Thynke ye that it is a shame to
35 me said fyr Dynadan / Nay fyr it is euer worship to a Knyzt
to refuse that thyng that he may not atteyne / therfor your wor-
ship had ben moche more to haue refused hym as I dyd / for
I warne you playnly he is able to bete fuche fyue as ye / and

I be / for ye Knyghtes of Cornewaile are no men of worship /
as other Knyghtes are / And by cause ye are no men of wor-
ship / ye hate alle men of worship / for neuer was bredde in yo-
ur countrey suche a Knyght as is sir Tristram /

¶ Capitulum ix

THenne they rode forth alle to gyders Kynge Mark / fir 5
Lamorak & sir Dynadan tyl that they came to a bryd-
ge / And at the ende therof stode a fayre Toure / Thenne sawe
they a Knyght on horsbak wel armed braundysshing a spere
cryenge and proferynge hym self to Iuste / Now said sir Dy-
nadan vnto Kynge Mark / yonder ar two bretheren that one hy- 10
ght Aleyn / and the other hyghte Tryan that will Iuste with
ony that passeth this passage / Now profer your self said Dyna-
dan to Kynge Mark / for euer ye be leide to the erthe / Thenne
Kynge Marke was ashamed / and there with he feutryd hys
spere / and hurtlid to sir Tryan / and eyther brake their sper 15
all to pyeces / and passid thurgh anone / Thenne fyr Trian sent
Kynge Mark another spere to Iuste more / But in no wyfe he
wold not Iuste no more / Thenne they came to the castel al thre
Knyghtes / and praid the lord of the castel of herburgh / ye are
ryght welcome said the Knyghtes of the castel / for the loue of
the lord of this castel / the whiche hyght sir Tor le fyse aries / &
thenne they came in to a fayr courte wel repayred / and they
had passyng good chere tyl the lieutenaunt of this castel that
hyght Berluse / aspyed Kynge Marke of Cornewaile / Then-
ne said Berluse / fyr Knyght I knowe you better than ye we- 25
ne / for ye are Kynge Marke that slewe my fader afore myne
owne eyen / and me hadde ye slayne hadde I not escaped in
to a wood / but wete ye wel for the loue of my lord of this castel
I will neyther hurte you ne harme you nor none of your
felauship / But wete ye wel whan ye are past this lodgyng 30
I shalle hurte you and I may / for ye slewe my fader traito-
urly / But fyrst for the loue of my lord sir Tor / and for the lo-
ue of sir Lamorak the honourable Knyght that here is lodged
ye shal haue none ylle lodgyng / For hit is pyte that euer ye
shold be in the company of good Knyghtes / for ye ar the moost 35

vylaynous knyght or kynge that is now knowen on lyue /
for ye are a deftroyer of good knyghtes and alle that ye doo
is but treason /

¶ Capitulum x

THenne was Kynge Marke fore afhamed / and fayd
5 but lytyl ageyne / But whanne fir Lamorak and fir
Dynadan wyft that he was kynge Marke / they were fory of
his felaufhip / Soo after fouper they wente to lodgyng / Soo
on the morne they arofe erly / and kynge Marke and fir Dyna-
dan rode to gyders / and thre myle fro their lodgyng there met
10 with hem thre knyghtes / and fir Berlufe was one / and that
other was two cofyns / Syr Berlufe fawe kynge Marke / and
thenne he cryed on hyghe traytour kepe the from me / for wete
thou wel that I am Berlufe / Syr knyght faid fir Dynadan /
I counceylle you to leue of at this tyme / for he is rydyng to
15 Kynge Arthur / And by caufe I haue promysed to conduyte
hym to my lord kynge Arthur / nedes muft I take a part with
hym / how be hit I loue not his condycyon / and fayne I wold
be from hym / Wel dynadan faid fir Berlufe me repenteth that
ye wille take party with hym / but now doo your beft / And thē-
20 ne he hurtled to Kynge Marke and fmote hym fore vpon the
fhelde / that he bare hym clene out of his fadel to the erthe /
That fawe fir Dynadan / and he feutryd his fpere / and ranne
to one of Berlufes felawes / and fmote hym doune of his fa-
del / Thenne Dynadan torned his hors / and fmote the thyrdde
25 knyght in the fame wyfe to the erthe / for fyre Dynadan was a
good knyght on horfbak / and there byganne a grete batail for
Berlufe and his felawes helde them to gyders strongly on fote
And foo thurgh the grete force of fir Dynadan / kyng Marke
had Berlufe to the erthe / and his two felawes fledde / and
30 had not ben fyre Dynadan kynge Marke wold haue flayne
hym / And foo fyre Dynadan refcowed hym of his lyf / for ky-
nge Marke was but a murtherer / And thenne they took their
horfes / and departed / and lefte fir Berlufe there fore wouDED
Thenne kynge Mark and fir Dynadan rode forth a four leges
35 englyfhe tyl that they came to a brydge where houed a kny-
ght on horfbak armed and redy to Iufte /

¶ Loo fayd

fyr Dynadan vnto Kyng Marke / yonder houeth a Knyghte
 that wille Iuste / for there shalle none passe this brydge / but he
 must Iuste with that Knyght / Hit is wel said kyng Marke
 for this Iustes falleth with the / Syr Danadan knewe the kn-
 yght wel / that he was a noble Knyght / and fayne he wold ha- 5
 ue Iusted / but he had had leuer Kyng Mark had Iusted with
 hym / but by no meane kyng Marke wold not Iuste / Thenne
 fyr Dynadan myght not refuse hym in no maner / And then-
 ne eyther dresseid their speres and their sheldes / and smote to
 gyders soo that thorou fyne force fyr Dynadan was smyten 10
 to the erthe / and lyghtely he arose vp / and gat his hors / and
 requyred that Knyght to doo bataille with fuerdes / An^d he an-
 fuerd and said Fair Knyght as at this tyme I may not ha-
 ue adoo with you nomore / for the customme of this passage is
 fuche / Thenne was sir Dynadan passynge wrothe / that he myzt 15
 not be reuenged of that Knyghte / and soo he departed / and in
 no wyse wold that Knyght telle his name / But euer sir Dy-
 nadan thought he shold knowe hym by his shelde that it s^hould
 be sir Tor

¶ Capitulum xi

Soo as they rode by the way / Kyng Marke thenne be- 20
 ganne to mocke sir Dynadan and said I wend yow
 Knyghtes of the table round myzt not in no wyse fynde their
 matches / ye say well said sir Dynadan / as for you on my lyfe
 I calle you none of the best knyghtes / But sythe ye haue fuch
 a despyte at me / I requyre you to Iuste with me / to preue my 25
 strengthe / Not soo said Kyng Marke / for I wille not haue ado
 with you in no maner / But I requyre you of one thyng that
 whanne ye come to Arthurs courte discouer not my name / for
 I am there soo hated / It is shame to you said sir Dynadan /
 that ye gouerne you soo shamefully / for I see by you ye ar ful 30
 of cowardyse and ye are a murtherer / and that is the grettest
 shame that a Knyght may haue / for neuer a Knyght beyng
 a murtherer hath worship / nor neuer shalle haue / for I fawe
 but late thurȝ my force ye wold haue slayn sir Berluse a bet-
 ter Knyghte than ye / or euer ye shal be / & more of prowesse 35

¶ Thus they rode forth talkynge tyl they came to a fayre place
 where stood a knyght and prayd them to take their lodgyng
 with hym / Soo at the request of that knyght / they repofed
 them there and made them wel at ease / and had grete chere /
 5 For al arraunt knyghtes were welcome to hym / and specially
 alle tho of Arthurs courte / Thenne sire Dynadan demaunded
 his hooft what was the Knyghtes name that kepte the brydge
 For what cause aske you it said his hooft / for hit is not long
 ago said fyr Dynadan fythen he gaf me a falle / A fayr kny-
 10 ght said his hooft / therof haue ye no meruaylle for he is a paf-
 synge good knyght / and his name is fir Tor the sone of ari-
 es le v^ashere / A said fir Dynadan was that fir Tor / for tru-
 ly soo I er me thought / Ryght as they stode thus talkyng to
 gyders / they sawe come rydyng to them ouer a playne vj kn-
 15 yghtes of the courte of kynge Arthur wel armed at al po-
 yntes / And there by theire sheldes sire Dynadan knewe them
 wel / The fyrst was the good knyght fir Vwayne the sone of
 Kynge Vryens / the second was the noble knyght fir Bran-
 d^ales / the thyrde was Ozana le cure hardy / the fourthe was
 20 Vwayne les auenturous / The fyfthe was fyr Agrauayne /
 The vj fir Mordred broder to fir Gawayne / Whanne fir Dyna-
 dan had sene these vj knyghtes / he thought in hym self he wold
 bryng kynge Marke by some wyle to luste with one of them
 And anone they toke their horses & ranne after these knyghtes
 25 wel a thre myle englyfthe / Thenne was kynge Marke ware /
 where they sat al fyxe aboute a welle / and ete and drank fu-
 che metes as they had / and their horses walkyng and somme
 teyed / and their sheldes henge in dyuerse places aboute them
 Loo said fir Dynadan yonder ar Knyghtes arraunt that wyl
 30 luste with vs / God forbede said Kynge Mark / for they be fyx
 and we but two / As for that said sire Dynadan lete vs not
 spare / for I wille assaye the formeft / and there with he maade
 hym redy / whanne kynge Marke sawe hym doo soo as fast as
 fir Dynadan rode toward them Kynge marke rode froward
 35 them with alle his mayneal meyny / Soo whan sire Dynadan
 sawe Kynge Marke was gone / he sette the spere oute of the
 reeft / and threwe his sheld vpon his bak / and came rydyng
 to the felaufhip of the table round / And anone sire Vwayne

knewe fir Dynadan / and welcomed hym / and soo dyd al his
felaufhip /

¶ Capitulum xij /

ANd thenne they asked hym of his aduentures / & whe-
ther he had sene fyr Tristram or fir launcelot / So god
me helpe said fir Dynadan I sawe none of them fythen I de- 5
parted from Camelot / what Knyght is that said fir Brandy-
les that soo fodenly departed from you / and rode ouer yonder
felde / Syr said he / hit was a Knyghte of Cornewaile / arⁿ the
moost horryble coward that euer bestrode hors / what is h^{is} na-
me said alle these knyghtes / I wote not said fir Dynadan / 10
Soo whan they had repofed them / and spoken to gyders / they
took their horses / and rode to a castel where duellid an old kn-
yght that made alle Knyghtes erraunt good chere / Thenne in
the meane whyle that they were talkynge came in to the ca-
stel fyr Gryflet le fyse de dieu / and there was he welcome / and 15
they alle asked hym whether he had sene fyre Launcelot or fyre
Tristram / Syrs he answered I sawe hym not fythen he depar-
ted from Camelot / Soo as fir Dynadan walked and beheld
the castel / there by in a chamber he aspyed Kyng Marke / and
thenne he rebuked hym / and asked hym why he departed soo / 20
Syr said he for I durst not abyde by cause they were so many
But how escaped ye said Kyng Mark / fyr said fir Dynadan
they were better frendes than I wend they had ben / who is
Capytayn of that felaufhip said the Kyng / thenne for to fere
hym fir Dynadan sayd that it was fir Launcelot / O Ihesu sa- 25
id the Kyng myghte I knowe fir Launcelot by his shelde / ye
said Dynadan / for he bereth a shelde of fyluer and black ben-
dys / Alle this he said to fere the kyng / for fyre launcelot was
not in his felaufhip / Now I pray you said kyng Mark that
ye wille ryde in my felaufhip / that is me lothe to doo said fyre 30
Dynadan by cause ye forfoke my felaufhip / Ryght soo fir Dy-
nadan went from kyng Mark & wente to his own felaufhip
and soo they mounted vpon their horses / & rode on their wa-
yes / and talked of the Cornyshe knyghte / for Dynadan told
them that he was in the castel where they were lodged / hit is 35

wel said said sir Gryflet / for here haue I brought sir Dagonet
 kynge Arthurs foole that is the best felawe and the meryest /
 in the world / ¶ Wille ye doo wel said sir Dynadan I haue
 told the Cornysse Knyght that here is sir Launcelot / and the
 5 Cornysse Knyght asked me what shelde he bare / Truly I told
 hym that he bereth the same shelde that sir Mordred bereth / wyl ye
 doo wel said sir Mordred I am hurte and maye not wel be-
 re my shelde nor harneis / And therfore put my shelde and my
 harneis vpon sir Dagonet / and lete hym sette vpon the Cor-
 10 nysshe Knyght / that shalle be done said sir Dagonet by my fe-
 thyth[^] Thenne anone was Dagonet armed hym in Mordreds
 harneis and his shelde / & he was sette on a grete hors & a spe-
 re in his hand / Now said Dagonet shewe me the Knyght / &
 I trowe I shalle bere hym doune / Soo alle these Knyghtes
 15 rode to a woode syde / and abode tyl Kynge Marke came by the
 way / Thenne they putte forth sir Dagonet / and he came on al
 the while his hors myght renne streyght vpon Kynge Mark
 And whanne he came nyghe Kynge Marke / he cryed as he
 were wood / and said kepe the Knyghte of Cornewaile / for I
 20 wille flee the / Anone as Kynge Mark beheld his shelde / he sa-
 id to hym self / yonder is sir launcelot Allas now am I destroy-
 ed / and there with all he made his hors to renne as fast as it
 myghte thorough thycke and thynne / And euer sire Dagonet
 folowed after Kynge Mark cryenge and rateynge hym as a
 25 wood man thurgh a grete forest / whanne sir Vwayne and sire
 Brandyles sawe dagonet foo chace Kynge Marke / they lau-
 ghed all as they were wood / And thenne they toke their hor-
 ses / and rode after to see how sir Dagonet spedde / for they wo-
 ld not for no good that sire Dagonet were shente / for Kyng
 30 Arthur loued hym passynge wel / and made hym Knyght his
 owne handes / And att euery turnement he beganne to make
 Kynge Arthur to laughe / Thenne the knyghtes rode here and
 there cryenge and chacyng after kynge Marke that alle the fo-
 rest range of the noyse /

¶ Capitulum xiiij

35 **S**oo kyng Mark rode by fortune by a welle in the way
 where stood a Knyght erraunte on horfbak armed att
 al poyntes with a grete spere in his hand

And whanne he sawe Kyng Marke comynge fleyng / he fa-
 id Knyght retorne ageyne for shame and stand with me / &
 I shalle be thy waraunt / A fayr Knyght said Kyng Marke
 lete me passe / for yonder cometh after me the best knyght of the
 world with the blak bended shelde / Fy for shame said the kn- 5
 yght he is none of the worthy Knyghtes / and yf he were fyre
 launcelot or sir Tristram I shold not doubte to mete the bet-
 ter of them bothe / Whanne Kyng Marke herd hym saye that
 word / he torned his hors and abode by hym / And thenne that
 stronge Knyght bare a spere to Dagonet / and smote hym so fo- 10
 re that he bare hym ouer his hors taylor / and nyghe he had bro-
 ken his neck / And anone after hym came sir Brandyles and
 whanne he sawe Dagonet haue that falle / he was passynge
 wrothe / and cryed Kepe the Knyght / and soo they hurtled to
 gyders wonder fore / But the Knyght smote sir Brandyles so 15
 fore that he wente to the erthe hors and man / Syre Vwayne
 came after and sawe alle this / Ihesu said he / yonder is a stro-
 nge Knyght / And thenne they feutryd theyr speres / and thi-
 Knyght came soo egerly that he smote doune sir Vwayne /
 Thenne came Ozana with the hardy hert / and he was smyten 20
 doune / Now said sire Gryflet by my counceyl lete vs sende to
 yonder arraunt Knyght / and wete whether he be of Arthurs
 Courte / for as I deme hit is sir Lamorak de galys / Soo they
 sente vnto hym / and prayd the straunge Knyghte to telle his
 name / and whether he were of Arthurs courte or not / As for 25
 my name they shalle not wete / but telle hem I am a Knyzt ar-
 raunt as they ar / and lete them wete that I am no Knyghte
 of Kyng Arthurs Courte / and soo the squyer rode ageyne
 vnto them and told them his ansuer of hym / By my hede said
 sir Agrauayne he is one of the strongest Knyghtes that euer 30
 I sawe / for he hath ouerthrowen thre noble Knyghtes / and ne-
 des we must encountre with hym for shame / So fyr Agraua-
 yne feutryd his spere / and that other was redy / & smote hym
 doune ouer his hors to the erthe / And in the same wyse he smo-
 te sir Vwayne les auoultres and also sir Gryflet / thenne had 35
 he serued hem alle / but sir Dynadan / for he was behynde / and
 sir Mordred was vnarmed and Dagonet had his harneis /
 ¶ Soo whan this was done this stronge Knyght rode on his

his way a softe paas / and kynge Marke rode after hym / pray-
 fyng hym mykel / but he wold anfuer no wordes / but fyghed
 wonderly fore / hangynge doune his hede / takyng no hede to his
 wordes / Thus they rode wel a thre myle Englysshe / and then-
 5 ne this Knyght called to hym a varlette / and badde hym ryde
 vntyl younder fayr manoyre / and recommaunde me to the lady
 of that castel and place / and praye her to sende me refressh-
 ynge of good metes / and drynkes / And yf she aske the what
 I am / Telle her that I am the knyght that foloweth the Gla-
 10 tyfaunt beest / that is in Englysshe to saye the questynge beeste
 for that beest where someuer he yede / he quested in the bely with
 fu a noyse / as hit hadde ben a thyrty couple of houndes

¶ Thenne the varlet wente his way and came to the manoyr
 and salewed the lady / and told her from whens he came / And
 15 whan she vnderstode that he came from the knyghte that folo-
 wed the questynge beeste / O swete lord Ihesu she sayd whan
 shalle I see that noble Knyghte my dere sone Palomydes /
 ¶ Allas wille he not abyde with me / and there with she fwoun-
 ned and wepte / and made passynge grete dole / And thenne al-
 20 so soone as she myghte she gaf the varlet alle that he axyd /
 And the varlet retorned vnto sir Palomydes / for he was a var-
 let of kynge Marke / And as foone as he came / he told the kn-
 yghtes name was sir Palomydes / I am wel pleasyd said ky-
 nge Marke but holde the styll and seye no thyng / ¶ Thenne
 25 they alyghte and sette them doune and repofed them a why-
 le / Anone with alle kynge Marke felle on slepe / whanne fyre
 Palomydes sawe hym found a slepe / he took his hors and ro-
 de his way and said to them I wille not be in the companye
 of a slepyng Knyghte / And soo he rode forthe a grete paas

¶ Capitulum xiiii

30 **N**ow torne we vnto sire Dynadan that fonde these seuen
 knyghtes passynge heuy / And whanne he wyfte how
 that they sped / as heuy was he / My lord Vwayne said Dy-
 nadan / I dare ley my hede it is sir Lamorak de galys / I pro-
 myse you alle / I shalle fynde hym / and he may be founde in

[leaf 217 verso]

this cuntry / and foo fyre Dynadan rode after this knyghte /
 And so dyd kyng Marke that fought hym thurgh the forest
 Soo as Kyng Mark rode after fir Palomydes / he herd a noy-
 fe of a man / that made grete dole / Thenne kyng Mark rode as
 nyghe that noyse as he myght and as he durst / Thenne was he 5
 ware of a knyght that was descended of his hors / and hadde
 putte of his helme / and there he made a pyteous complaynte /
 and a dolorous of loue

¶ Now leue we that / and talke we of fire Dynadan that ro-
 de to feke fyr Palomydes / And as he came within a foreste / he 10
 mette with a Knyght a chacer of a dere / Syr said fire Dyna-
 dan mette ye with a Knyghte with a shelde of fyluer / and ly-
 ons hedes / ye fayr knyghte sayd the other / with fuche a knyght
 mette I with but a whyle agone / and straye yonder waye he
 yede / Gramercy said fir Dynadan / for myght I fynde the trak 15
 of his hors I shold not fayle to fynde that Knyghte / Ryghte
 so as fir Dynadan rode in the euen late / he herd a doleful noy-
 fe as it were of a man / ¶ Thenne fir Dynadan rode toward
 that noyse / And whanne he came nyghe that noyse / he alyghte
 of his hors / and wente nere hym on foote / Thenne was he wa- 20
 re of a knyght that stood vnder a tree and his hors teyed by
 hym / and the helme of his hede / and euer that knyght made a
 doleful complaynte as euer made knyghte / And alweyes he
 made his complaynte of la Beale Ifoud the Quene of Cor-
 newaile / and said A fayr lady why loue I the / for thou art 25
 fayrest of alle other / and yet shewest thou neuer loue to me / nor
 bounte / Allas yet must I loue the / And I may not blame the
 fayre lady / for myn eyen ben cause of this forowe / And yet to
 loue the I am but a foole / for the best knyghte of the world
 loueth the / and ye hym ageyne / that is fir Triftram de Lyones 30
 And the falsest kyng and Knyghte is youre husband / and
 the moost coward and ful of treason is your lord kyng ma-
 rke

¶ Allas that euer so fayre a lady and pyerles of
 alle other shold be matched with the moost vylaynous knyght
 of the world / Alle this langage herd Kynge Marke / what 35
 fir Palomydes said by hym / wherfore he was adradde / whanne
 he sawe fire Dynadan left and he aspyed hym / that he wold
 telle fyre Palomydes that he was Kynge Marke / and there-

for he withdrewe hym and took his hors and rode to his men
 where he commaunded hem to abyde / And foo he rode as fast as
 he myght vnto Camelot / & the same day he fonde there Amant
 the knyght redy that afore Arthur had appeled hym of trea-
 5 son / and foo lyghtely the Kyng commaunded them to do ba-
 taile / And by myfaventure kyng Marke smote Amant tho-
 rough the body / And yet was Amant in the ryghtuous quarel
 And ryghte foo he took his hors and departed from the court
 for drede of fir Dynadan that he wold telle fyr Triftram and
 10 fir Palomydes what he was / ¶ Thenne were ther maydens /
 that la Beale Ifoud hadde sente to fire Triftram that knewe
 fir Amant wel

¶ Capitulum xv

T Henne by the lycence of Kyng Arthur / they went to
 hym and spak with hym / for whyle the troncheon of
 15 the spere stak in his body he spak / A fayr damoyfels
 said Amant / ye recommaūde me vnto la Beale Ifoud / and telle
 her that I am slayn for the loue of her and of fir Triftram /
 And there he told the damoyfels how cowardly Kyng Mark
 had slayne hym and fire Berfyles his felawe / ¶ And for
 20 that dede I appeled hym of treason / and here am I slayne in
 a ryghtuous quarel / and alle was by cause of fir Berfules &
 I wold not consente by treason to flee the noble knyght fir trif-
 tram / Thenne the two maydens cryed alowde that alle the co-
 urte myght here it / and said O swete lord Ihesu that knowest
 25 alle hydde thynges / why suffrest thou foo fals a traytour to
 vaynquyssh and flee a trewe knyght that fought in a ryght-
 uous quarel / Thenne anone hit was spronge to the Kyng and
 the quene and to alle the lordes that it was kyng Mark that
 had slayne fyr Amant / and fire Berfules afore hand / wher-
 30 for they dyd theire bataille / Thenne was Kyng Arthur wroth
 oute of mesure / and so were alle the other knyghtes
 But whanne fire Triftram knewe alle the matere / he maade
 grete dole and sorowe oute of mesure / and wepte for sorow for
 the losse of the noble knyghtes fyr Berfyles & of fir Amant

¶ Whanne fir Launcelot aspyed fir Tristram wepe / he wente
 hastely to Kynge Arthur and said fyre I pray you gyue me
 leue to retorne ageyne to yonder fals kynge and knyghte / I
 pray yow said kynge Arthur / fetch hym ageyne / but I wold
 not that ye slewe hym for my worship / Thenne fir launcelot 5
 armed hym in alle haste / and mounted vpon a grete hors / &
 toke a spere in his hand and rode after kynge Marke / And
 from thens a thre myle englysshe / fir launcelot ouertook hym /
 and badde hym torne recreaunt kyng and knyght / For why-
 der thou wilt or not thou shalt go with me to kyng Arthurs 10
 Courte / Kynge Marke retorned and loked vpon fir Launce-
 lot / and said Faire fyr what is your name / wete thou wel fa-
 id he my name is fire Launcelot / and therfor defende the / And
 whanne Kynge Marke wiste that it was fire Launcelot / and
 came soo fast vpon hym with a spere / he cryed thenne on lowde 15
 I yelde me to the fir launcelot / honourable Knyghte / But fire
 Launcelot wold not here hym / but came fast vpon hym / kyng
 Marke sawe that / and maade no defence but tombled adoune
 out of his fadel to the erthe as a fak / and there he lay styll /
 and cryed fire launcelot mercy / Aryse recreaunt knyghte and 20
 Kynge / I wylle not fyghte said Kynge Marke / But whe-
 ther that ye wille I wil goo with yow /
 Allas Allas said fire Launcelot that I maye not gyue the
 one buffet for the loue of fire Tdestram and of la Beale Ifoud
 And for the two knyghtes that thou hast slayne traitourly / 25
 And soo he mounted vpon his hors and brouzt hym to kyng
 Arthur / and there Kynge Marke alyghte in that same place
 and threwe his helme from hym vpon the erthe / and his fuerd
 and fylle flat to the erthe of kynge Arthurs feet and putte
 hym in his grace and mercy / ¶ Soo god me help said 30
 Arthur ye are welcome in a maner / and in a maner ye ar not
 welcome / In this maner ye are welcome that ye come hyder
 maulgre thy hede as I suppose / ¶ That is trouthe said kynge
 Marke / and els I had not ben here / For my lord fir launce-
 lot brought me hyder thurgh his fyne force / and to hym am 35
 I yolden to as recreaunt / ¶ Wel said Arthur ye vnderstande
 ye oughte to doo me seruyse / homage and feaute / And neuer

wold ye doo me none / but euer ye haue ben ageynst me / and a
 destroyer of my knyghtes / now / how wille ye acquyte you / Sir
 said Kynge Marke / Ryght as your lordship will requyre me
 vnto my power / I wille make a large amendys / For he was
 5 a fayre speker and fals there vnder / Thenne for grete pleasyr
 of fyr Triftram to make them tweyne accorded / the kyng with-
 held kynge Marke / as at that tyme / and made a broken loue
 day bitwene them /

¶ Capitulum xvi

Now torne we ageyne vnto sir Palomydes how sir Dy-
 10 nadan comforted hym in alle that he myghte from his
 grete forow / what Knyghte are ye said sir Palomydes / fyre I
 am a knyght erraunt as ye be that hath foughte you longe by
 your sheld / Here is my sheld said sir Palomydes / Wete ye wel
 and ye wille oughte / there with I wille defende hit / Nay said
 15 sir Dynadan I wille not haue adoo with yow / but in good
 maner / And yf ye wil ye shal fynde me fone redy / Syr said sir
 Dynadan whyder ward ryde you this way / By my hede sayd
 sir Palomydes I wote not but as fortune ledeth me / Herde ye
 or fawe ye ought of sir Triftram / So god me help of sir Trif-
 20 ram I bothe herd and fawe / and not / for thenne we loued
 not Inwardly wel to gyders / yet at my meschyef sir Triftram
 rescowed me from my dethe / and yet or he and I departed by
 bothe our assentes we assigned a day that we shold haue met
 at the stony graue / that merlyon sette besyde Camelot / & there
 25 to haue done bataille to gyders / how be hit I was letted sayd
 sir Palomydes that I myght not holde my daye / the whiche
 greueth me fore / but I haue a large excuse / For I was pry-
 foner with a lord and many other moo / and that shalle fyre
 Triftram ryght wel vnderstande / þ^t I brake hit not of fere of
 30 cowardyse / And thenne sir Palomydes told sir Dynadan the
 fame day that they shold haue mette / Soo god me helpe sayd
 fyre Dynadan that fame day mette fyre Launcelot and sir Trif-
 tram at the fame graue of stone / ¶ And there was the moost
 myghtyest bataille that euer was sene in this land betwyxe

two knyghtes / for they fought more than two houres / And there they bothe bledde moche blood / that alle men merueyled that euer they myght endure hit /

¶ And so at the laste by bothe their affentes they were made frendes and sworne bretheren for euer / and no man can Iuge the better knyght / And now is sir Triftram made a Knyghte of the round table / and he fytteth in the sege of the noble knyght fire Marhaus /

¶ By my hede said sir Palomydes fyre Triftram is ferre bygger than sir Launcelot / and the hardyer Knyghte /

¶ Haue ye assayed them bothe faide fyre Dynadan / ¶ I haue sene fyre Triftram fyghte said fyre Palomydes / but neuer fire Launcelot / to my we-tynge / But at the fontayne where fire Launcelot lay on slepe there with one spere he smote doune fire Triftram / and me said Palomydes / but at that tyme they knewe not eyther other Faire Knyghte said sir Dynadan as for sir launcelot and sir Triftram lete them be / for the werst of them wille not be lyghly matched of no knyghtes that I knowe lyuyng /

No said fire Palomydes god defende but and I had a quarrel to the better of them bothe / I wold with as good a wylle fyghte with hym as with yow

¶ Syre I requyre you telle me your name and in good feith I shalle hold you company / tyl that we come to Camelot / and there shalle ye haue grete worship now at this grete turnement for there shalle be the Quene Gueneuer / and la Beale Ifoud of Cornewaile / wete yow wel fyre Knyght for the loue of la Beale Ifoud I wille be there and els not / but I wille not haue adoo in Kynge Arthurs courte / Sir said Dynadan / I shal ryde with yow and doo you seruyse / so ye wille telle me youre name / Syre ye shalle vnderstande my name is fyre palomydes brother to Safere the good and noble Knyghte / And Syre Segwarydes and I we be Sarafyns borne of fader and moder /

¶ Syre said fire Dynadan I thanke you moche / for the tellyng of your name / For I am gladde of that I knowe your name / & I promyse you by the feyth of my body ye shalle not be hurte by me by my will / but rather be auaunced / And therto wille I helpe yow with all my power I promyse you / doubte ye not / And certaynly on my lyf ye shalle

wynne grete worship in the Courte of Kyng Arthur / And
 be ryght welcome / Soo thenne they dresid on their helmes / &
 putte on their sheldes / & mounted vpon their horses / and toke
 the brode way toward Camelot / And thenne were they ware
 5 of a castel / that was fayre and ryche / and also passyng strong
 as ony was with in this reame

¶ Capitulum xvij

SYr Palomydes said Dynadan here is a Castell that I
 knowe wel / and therin duelleth Quene Morgan le
 fay Kyng Arthurs syster / And kyng Arthur gafe her this
 10 Castel / the whiche he hath repented hym sythen a thousand ty-
 mes / for sythen kyng Arthur and she haue ben at debate and
 fryfe / but this castel coude he neuer gete nor wyne of her by
 no maner of engyne / And euer as she myght she made werre
 on kyng Arthur / And alle daungerous knyghtes she with-
 15 holdeth with her for to destroye alle these knyghtes that Kyng
 Arthur loueth / And there shalle noo Knyghte passe this way
 but he muste luste with one knyght or with two or with thre
 And yf it happe that Kyng Arthurs knyght be beten / he shal
 lese his hors and his harneis / and alle that he hath / and hard
 20 yf that he escape / but that he shalle be pryfoner /

¶ Soo god me helpe said Palomydes this is a shameful cus-
 tomme and a vylaynous vfaunce for a Quene to vse / And
 namely to make suche werre vpon her owne lord / that is cal-
 led the floure of chyualry that is Crysten or hethen / and with
 25 alle my hert I wold destroye that shameful customme / And
 I wille that alle the world wete she shalle haue no feruise of
 me / And yf she sende oute ony knyghtes / as I suppose she wil
 for to luste they shalle haue bothe their handes ful /

And I shalle not fayle you said sir Dynadan vnto my pu-
 30 yffaunce vpon my lyf / Soo as they stode on horsbak afore the
 Castel / there came a Knyght with a reed sheld and ij squye-
 rs after hym / And he came streyght vnto fyre Palomydes the
 good Knyghte / and sayd to hym / Fayre and gentyl Knyzt

erraunt I requyre the for the loue thou owest vnto knyghthode
 that ye wille not haue adone here with these men of thys Caf-
 tell / for this was sire Lamorack that thus said / For I came
 hydder to feke this dede / and hit is my request / And therfor I
 bifeche you knyght lete me dele / and yf I be beten / reuenge 5
 me / In the name of god said Palomydes / lete see how ye wil
 spede / and we shalle behold you / ¶ Thenne anone came forth
 a knyght of the Castel and profered to Iuste with the knyghte
 with the reed sheld / Anone they encountred to gyders / and he
 with the reed shelde smote hym soo hard that he bare hym ouer 10
 to the erthe / There with anone came another Knyght of the castel
 / and he was smyten so fore that he auoyded his fadel / And
 forth with alle came the thyrd knyghte / and the knyght with
 the reed shelde smote hym to the erthe / Thenne came sire Palo-
 mydes and befought hym that he myght helpe hym to Iuste 15
 Faire knyght said he vnto hym suffre me as at this tyme to haue
 my wylle / For and they were twenty knyghtes I shalle
 not doubte them / And euer there were vpon the wallys of the
 castel many lordes and ladyes that cryed and said wel haue
 ye Iusted knyght with the reed shelde / ¶ But as soone as the 20
 Knyght had smyten hem doune / his squyer toke their horses / &
 auoyded their fadels and brydels of the horses / and tourned
 them in to the forest / and made the knyghtes to be kepte to the
 ende of the Iustes / Ryght soo came oute of the castel the fourth
 Knyght / and fresshly proferd to Iuste with the knyghte with 25
 the reed shelde / and he was redy / and he smote hym soo hard /
 that hors and man felle to the erthe / & the knyghtes bak brak
 with the falle and his neck also / O Ihesu said sire Palomydes
 that yonder is a passyng good knyght / and the best Iustar that
 euer I sawe / By my hede said sire Dynadan he is as good as 30
 euer was sire launcelot or sire Tristram what knyghte someuer
 he be /

¶ Capitulum xviii

THenne forthe with alle came a knyght oute of the castel
 with a shelde bended with blak and with whyte /
 ¶ And anone the knyghte with the reede shelde and 35

And he encountred soo hard / that he smote the Knyght of the
 Castel thorou the bented shelde and thurgh the body / and bra-
 ke the hors bak / Faire Knyghte said fyr Palomydes ye haue
 ouer moche on hand / therfor I praye you lete me Iuste / for ye
 5 had nede to be repofed / Why fir said the knyght / seme ye that I
 am weyke and feble / and fir me thynketh ye profer me wrong
 and to me shame whan I doo wel ynough / I telle yow now
 as I told you erst / for and they were twenty knyghtes I shal
 bete them / And yf I be beten or flayne thenne may ye reuen-
 10 ge me / And yf ye thynke that I be wery / and ye haue an ap-
 petyte to Iuste with me / I shalle fynde you Iustynge ynough /
 Syr said Palomydes I said it not by cause I wold Iuste with
 you / but me semeth that ye haue ouer moche on hand / & ther-
 for and ye were gentyl said the Knyght with the reed sheld
 15 ye shold not profer me shame / therfor I requyre you to Iuste
 with me / and ye shalle fynde that I am not wery / Syth ye re-
 quyre me said fir palomydes / take kepe to your self / ¶ Thenne
 they two Knyghtes came to gyders as fast as their horsfes my-
 ght renne / and the Knyght smote fir Palomydes so fore on the
 20 shelde that the spere wente in to his fyde a grete wounde and
 a perillous / And there with alle fir Palomydes auoyded his
 fadel / And that Knyght torned vnto fir Dynadan / And when
 he sawe hym comynge / he cryed a loude and said / fyr I wyll
 not haue ado with you / but for that he lete it not / but cam stre-
 25 yghte vpon hym / Soo fire Dynadan for shame put forthe his
 spere and alle to sheuerd hit vpon the Knyght / But he smo-
 te fyr Dynadan ageyne soo hard that he smote hym clene from
 his fadel / but their horsfes he wold not suffre his squyers to me-
 dle with / and by cause they were knyghtes erraunt / Thenne he
 30 dresfid hym ageyne to the castel and Iusted with seuen kny-
 tes moo / and there was none of hem myght withstande hym /
 but bare hym to the erthe / And of these twelue Knyghtes he
 slewe in playne Iustes four / And the eyght knyghtes he ma-
 de them to fwere on the croffe of a fuerd / that they shold neuer
 35 vse the euylle custommes of the castel / And whan he had ma-
 de them to fwere that othe / he lete them passe / And euer stode
 the lordes and the ladyes on the Castel walles cryeng and fa-
 yenge / knyghte with the reed shelde ye haue merueylloufly

wel done as euer we sawe Knyght doo / And therewith came
 a knyght oute of the Castel vnarmed and said / Knyghte
 with the reed sheld ouer moche dammage hast thou done to vs
 this day / therfor retorne whyther thou wilt / for here ar no moo
 wille haue adoo with the / for we repente fore that euer thou 5
 camest here / for by the is fordone the old customme of this castel /
 And with that word he tourned ageyne in to the Castel /
 and shytte the yates / Thenne the Knyght with the reede sheld
 torned and called his squyers / and so pafte forth on his waye
 and rode a grete paas / And whanne he was pafte fere Palomydes 10
 wente to fere Dynadan and said I had neuer suche a shame
 of one Knyght that euer I met / And therefore I caste me
 to ryde after hym / and to be reuenged with my fwerd / for on
 horsbak I deme I shalle gete no worship of hym / Syre Palomydes
 said Dynadan ye shalle not medle with hym by my comyn 15
 unceil for ye shal gete no worship of hym / and for this cause /
 ye haue fene hym this day haue had ouer moche to done & ouer
 moche trauailed / By almyghty Ihesu said Palomydes I shall
 neuer be at ease tyl that I haue had adoo with hym / Syr said
 Dynadan I shalle gyue you my beholdynge / wel said Palomydes 20
 / thenne shall ye see how we shalle redresse our myghtes
 Soo they took their horses of their varlets / and rode after the
 Knyght with the reed shelde / & doune in a valey beyde a fontayne
 they were ware where he was alyghte to repose hym / and
 had done of his helme / for to drynke at the welle 25

¶ Capitulum xix

THenne Palomydes rode faste tyl he came nyghe hym /
 And theñe he said Knyght remembre ye of the shame
 ye dyd to me ryght now at the Castel / therfore dresse the / for
 I wille haue adoo with the / Fair knyght said he to Palomydes
 of me ye wyne no worship / for ye haue fene this daye that I 30
 haue ben trauailed fore / As for that said Palomydes I wille
 not lete / for wete ye wel I wil be reuenged / wel said the knyght
 I may happen to endure you / And there with all he mou-
 nted vpon his hors and took a grete spere in his hand redy for

to Iuste / Nay said palomydes I wille not Iuste / for I am sure
 at Iustyng I gete no pryce / Fair knyght said that Knyghte
 It wold bifeme a knyght to Iuste and to fyghte on horsbak
 ye shalle see what I wille doo said Palomydes / and therwith
 5 he alyghte doune vpon foote / and dresfid his shelde afore hym
 and pulled oute his swerd / Thenne the knyghte with the red
 sheld descended doune from his hors / and dresfid his sheld
 afore hym / and soo he drewe oute his fuerd / And thenne they
 came to gyders a softe paas / and wonderly they lashed to gy-
 10 ders passyng thyck the mouënaunce of an houre / or euer they
 brethed / Thenne they tracyd and trauercyd and waxed won-
 derly wrothe / and eyther behyght other dethe / they hewe so fast
 with their fuerdes that they cutte in doune half their swerdes /
 and mayles that the bare fleshe in some place stode aboute the-
 15 yr harneis / ¶ And whan sir Palomydes beheld his felawes
 swerd ouer hyllid with his blood / hit greued hym fore / some
 whyle they fayned / some whyle they strake as wyld men /
 But at the last sir Palomydes waxed faynte by cause of his
 first wounde that he had atte castel with a spere / for that wo-
 20 und greued hym wonderly fore / Faire knyght said Palomy-
 des me semeth we haue affayed eyther other passyng fore / and
 yf hit may please the / I requyre the of thy knyghthode telle
 me thy name / Sir said the knygt to Palomydes / that is me loth
 to doo / for thou hast done me wronge / and no knyghthode to pro-
 25 fer me bataille / confyderynge my grete trauaylle / ¶ But and
 thou wolt telle me thy name / I wille telle the myn / Syr said
 he wete thou wel my name is palomydes / A fyr ye shall vnder-
 stande my name is sir Lamorak de galys / sone and heyre vnto
 the good knyghte and kynge / kynge Pellenore / and fyr Tor
 30 the good knyght is my half broder / Whanne sire Palomydes
 herd hym faye soo he kneled doune and asked mercy for oul-
 traguously haue I done to you this daye / confyderyng the gre-
 te dedes of armes I haue sene you done / shamefully and vn-
 knyghtely I haue requyred you to doo bataille / A fyre Palo-
 35 mydes said sir Lamorak / ouer moche haue ye done and sayd to
 me / And ther with he embraced hym with his both handes / and
 said Palomydes the worthy knyght in alle this land is noo
 better than ye nor more of prowesse / and me repentyd fore that

we shold fyghte to gyders / So it doth not me faid fir Palomydes / and yet am I forer wounded than ye ben / ¶ But as for that I shalle soone therof be hole / But certaynly I wold not for the fayrest castel in this land / but yf thou and I had met for I shalle loue you the dayes of my lyfe afore al other knyghtes excepte my broder fir Safere / I saye the same faid fyre Lamorak excepte my broder fir Tor / Thenne came fire Dynadan / and he made grete ioye of fir Lamorak / ¶ Thenne theire squyers dresseid bothe their sheldes and their harneis / and stopped their woundes / And there by at a pryory they rested them alle nyghte /

¶ Capitulum xx

Now torne we ageyne / whan fire Gaynys and fir brandyles with his felawes came to the Courte of kyng Arthur / they told the kyng / fyr Launcelot and fir Triftram / how fire Dagonet the foole chaced Kyng Marke thurgh the forest / and how the stronge knyght smote them doune al feuen with one spere / There was grete laughynge and Iapyngge atte Kyng Marke and at fire Dagonet / But all these knyghtes coude not telle what knyzt it was that rescowed kyng mark / Thenne they asked kyng Marke yf that he knewe hym / and he anfuerd and faid / he named hym self the Knyght that followed the questynge beeft / and on that name he sente one of my varlets to a place where was his moder / and when she herd from whens he cam / she made passyng grete dole and discouered to my varlet his name and faid / O my dere sone fire Palomydes why wolt thou not see me / and therfor fyr faid kyng mark it is to vnderstande his name is fir Palomydes a noble knyght / Thenne were alle these feuen knyghtes gladde that they knewe his name / ¶ Now torne we ageyne / for on the morne they toke their horses bothe fir Lamorak / Palomydes Dynadā with their squyers and varlets tyl they sawe a fayre castel / that stood on a montayne wel closed / and thyder they rode and there they fond a knyght that hyght Galahalt that was lord of that castel / and there they had grete chere and were wel eased / Syr Dynadan faid fire Lamorak what wil ye doo

fir faid Dynadan / I wylle to morowe to the courte of kynge
 Arthur / ¶ By my hede faid fir Palomydes I wille not ryde
 these thre dayes / for I am fore hurte / and moche haue I bled
 And therfor I wille repofe me here / Truly faid fir Lamorak /
 5 and I wille abyde here with you / And whan ye ryde / thenne
 wille I ryde / onles that ye tary ouer longe / Thenne wyll I ta-
 ke myn hors / therfor I pray you fyr Dynadan abyde and ry-
 de with vs / Feythfully faid Dynadan I wille not abyde for
 I haue fuche a talent to fee fir Triftram that I may not abyde
 10 longe from hym / / A Dynadan faid fyre Palomydes now do I
 vnderftande / that ye loue my mortal enemy / and therefore how
 fhold I truſt yow / wel faid Dynadan I loue my lord fyre
 Triftram aboue all other / and hym wille I ferue and do ho-
 noure / So fhalle I faid fyre Lamorak in al that may lye in
 15 my power / Soo on the morne fir Dynadan rode vnto the court
 of kynge Arthur / And by the way as he rode he fawe where
 ſtoode an erraunt Knyght / and made hym redy for to Iuſte /
 Not foo faid Dynadan for I haue no wylle to Iuſte / with me
 fhalle ye Iuſte faid the knyght or that ye paſſe this waye /
 20 Whether aſke ye Iuſtes by loue or by hate / The knyght anſuerd
 wete ye wel / I aſke hit for loue & and not for hate / hit maye wel
 be foo faid fyre Dynadan / but ye profer me hard loue / whan ye
 wylle Iuſte with me with a ſharp ſpere / But fayre knyghte
 ſayd fyre Dynadan fythe ye wylle Iuſte with me / mete wyth
 25 me in the Courte of Kynge Arthur / and there fhalle I Iuſte
 with you / Wel faid the Knyght fythe ye wille not Iuſte with
 me I pray yow telle me your name / ¶ Syr kny-
 ght faid he my name is fyre Dynadan / A faid the Knyghte /
 ful wel knowe I you for a good knyghte and a gentyl / and
 30 wete yow wel I loue you hertely / ¶ Thenne fhalle here be no
 Iuſtes ſayd Dynadan betwixe vs / Soo they departed / And
 the fame day he came to Camelot where lay Kynge Arthur /
 And there he ſalewed the Kynge and the quene / fyre Launce-
 lot and fyre Triftram / and alle the Courte was gladd of fir
 35 Dynadan / for he was gentyl wyfe and curteys / and a good
 Knyghte / And in eſpecyal the valyaunt Knyght fir Triftram
 loued fyre Dynadan paſſyng wel aboue alle other knyghtes
 fauf fir launcelot ¶ Thenne the kynge asked

fyr Dynadan what aduentures he had fene / Sire said Dyna-
 dan I haue fene many aduentures / and of somme kyng mark
 knoweth / but not alle / Thenne the Kynge herkened fyr Dyna-
 nadan how he told that fir Palomydes and he were afore the
 castel of Morgan le fay / and how fyr Lamorak toke the Iuf- 5
 tes afore them / and how he foriusted twelue Knyghtes / and
 of them four he flewe / And how after he smote doune fir Palo-
 mydes and me bothe / I may not byleue that sayd the kynge
 For fir Palomydes is a passyng good knyghte / that is very
 trouthe said fir Dynadan / but yet I sawe hym better preued 10
 hand for hand / And thenne he told the kyng alle that batail
 And how fir Palomydes was more weyker and more hurte /
 and more lost of his blood / And withoute doubte sayd fir dy-
 nadan had the bataille lenger lasted / palomydes had be slayn
 O Ihesu said Kynge Arthur this is to me a grete merueylle 15
 Syr said Triftram merueylle ye no thyng therof / for at myn
 aduys / there is not a valyaunter knyghte in the world ly-
 uynge / for I knowe his myght / And now I wille faye yow
 I was neuer soo wery of knyghte but yf it were fir launcelot
 And there is no knyghte in the world excepte fyr Launcelot 20
 I wold dyd soo wel as fir Lamorak / Soo god me help sa-
 id the kyng I wold that knyght fyre Lamorak came to thys
 Courte / fyr said Dynadan he wille be here in shorte space / and
 fyr Palomydes bothe / but I fere that Palomydes may not yet
 trauallye 25

¶ Capitulum xxi /

THenne within thre dayes after the kyng lete make a
 Iustyng at a pryory / And there made hem redy many
 Knyghtes of the round table / For fyr Gawayne and
 his bretherē made them redy to Iuste / But Triftram / Laūcelot
 nor Dynadan wold not Iuste / but suffred fir Gawayne for 30
 the loue of kyng Arthur with his bretheren to wyne the gree
 yf they myght / Thenne on the morne they apparayled them to
 Iuste fyr Gawayne and his four bretheren / and dyd there gre-
 te dedes of armes / and fir Ector de marys dyd merueylloufly
 wel / But sire Gawayne passed alle that felasship / wherfore 35

kynge Arthur and alle the knyghtes gafe fire Gawayne the
 honour at the begynnyng / ¶ Ryght soo kynge Arthur was
 ware of a knyght and two squyers / the whiche came oute of
 a forest fyde with a sheld couerd with leder / And thenne he
 5 came flyly and hurtlyd here and there / And anone with one
 spere he had smyten doune two knyghtes of the round table
 Thenne with this hurtlyng he lost the keuerynge of his sheld
 thenne was the kynge and alle other ware that he bare a reed
 shelde / O Ihesu faide Kynge Arthur see where rydeth a stoute
 10 Knyghte he with the reed shelde / And there was noyse & cry-
 enge Beware the knyght with the reed shelde / Soo within a
 lytel whyle he had ouerthrowen thre bretheren of fire Gawa-
 yns / Soo god me help said Kynge Arthur me semeth yonder
 is the best Iuster that euer I sawe / with that he sawe hym en-
 15 countre with fire Gawayne / and he smote hym doune with soo
 grete force that he made his hors to auoyde the fadel / ¶ How
 now said the Kyng fire Gawayne hath a falle / wel were me /
 and I knewe what knyght he were with the reed shelde / I kno-
 we hym wel said Dynadan / but as at this tyme ye shalle not
 20 knowe his name / By my hede said fyr Triftram he Iusted bet-
 ter than sir Palomydes / And yf ye lyst to knowe his name /
 wete ye wel his name is sir Lamorak de galys / As they sto-
 de thus talkyng / fire Gawayne and he encountred to gyders
 ageyne / And there he smote sir Gawayne from his hors / and
 25 bryfed hym fore / And in the fyghte of Kynge Arthur he smo-
 te doune twenty knyghtes befyde fire Gawayne and his bre-
 theren / And soo clerely was the pryce yeuen hym as a knyght
 pyerles / Thenne flyly and merueyllously fyr Lamorak with-
 drewe hym from alle the felauschip in to the forest fyde / Al this
 30 aspyed Kynge Arthur / for his eye wente neuer from hym /
 ¶ Thenne the Kynge fyr Launcelot fyr Triftram and fyr dy-
 nadan took theire hackneis / and rode streyght after the good
 knyght fyr Lamorak de galys / And there fond hym / And
 thus said the kyng / A fayr knyght wel be ye fonde / Whanne
 35 he sawe the kynge / he put of his helme and salewed hym / and
 whanne he sawe sir Triftram / he alyghte doun of his hors and
 ranne to hym to take hym by the thyes / but sir Triftram wold

not suffre hym / but he alyghte or that he came / and eyder took
 other in armes / and made grete ioye of other / The kynge was
 gladde / and also was alle the felaufhip of the round table /
 excepte fire Gawayne and his bretheren / And whanne they
 wyft that he was fyre Lamorak / they had grete despyte at hym 5
 and were wonderly wrothe with hym / that he had putte hym
 to dishonour that day / Thenne Gawayn called pryuely in cou-
 ceille alle his bretheren / and to them said thus / Faire brethe-
 ren here may ye see whome that we hate / kynge Arthur loueth
 And whome that we loue he hateth / ¶ And wete ye wel my 10
 fayr bretheren / that this fir Lamorak wille neuer loue vs / by
 cause we flewe his fader Kynge Pellenore / for we demed that
 he flewe our fader Kynge of Orkeney / And for the despyte of
 Pellenore fyr Lamorak dyd vs a shame to oure moder / ther-
 fore I wille be reuenged / Syr said fir Gawayns bretheren / 15
 lete see how ye wylle or maye be reuenged / and ye shalle fyn-
 de vs redy / Wel said Gawayne hold you stylye and we shalle
 aspye oure tyme /

¶ Capitulum xxiij

Now passe we oure matere / and leue we fire Gawayn
 and speke of Kynge Arthur that on a day sayd vn- 20
 to Kynge Marke / Syr I pray yow gyue me a yeste that I
 shall axe yow / Syr said Kyng Mark I will gyue you what
 someuer ye desyre and hit be in my power / Syre gramercy fa-
 id Arthur / This I wille aske yow that ye wille be good lo-
 rd vnto fir Tristram / for he is a man of grete honour / and that 25
 ye wille take hym with yow in to Cornewaile / & lete hym see
 his frendes / and there cheryfhe hym for my sake / Syre said
 Kynge Marke I promyse yow by the feythe of my body and
 by the feythe that I owe to god and to yow I shalle wor-
 shippe hym for your sake in alle that I can or may / Syr said 30
 Arthur / and I wylle forgyue yow alle the euylle wylle that
 euer I oughte yow / and so be that ye swere vpon a book
 afore me / with a good wille said Kynge Marke / and soo he
 there sware vpon a boook afore hym and alle his knyghtes / &
 ther with kynge Mark and fire Tristram toke eyther other by 35

the handes hard knyht to gyders / But for alle this kyng ma-
 rke thought falsly / as it preued after / for he put sir Triftram
 in pryson / and cowardly wold haue slayne hym / Thenne fo-
 one after kyng Marke took his leue to ryde in to Cornewa-
 5 yl / and sir Triftram made hym redy to ryde with hym / wherof
 the moost party of the round table were wrothe and heuy / &
 in especial sir launcelot and sire Lamorak and sir Dynadan
 were wrothe oute of mesure / For wel they wyft kyng Marke
 wold flee or destroye sir Triftram / Allas said Dynadan that
 10 my lord fyr Triftram shalle departe / and sir Triftram toke suche
 sorowe that he was amafyd lyke a foole / ¶ Allas said sir
 Launcelot vnto kyng Arthur what haue ye done / for ye shall
 lese the moost man of worship that euer cam in to your court
 It was his owne defyre said Arthur / and therefore I myghte
 15 not doo with alle / for I haue done alle that I can and made
 them at accord / Accord said sir launcelot fy vpon that accord
 For ye shalle here that he shalle flee sir Triftram / or put hym
 in a pryson / for he is the moost coward and the vylaynst kyng
 and knyght that is now lyuyng / And there with sire Laun-
 20 celot departed / and cam to kyng Mark / and said to hym thus
 Syr kyng wete thou wel the good knyght sir Triftram shalle
 goo with the / Beware I rede the of treason / for and thou me-
 chyeue that knyght by any maner of falskede or trefon by the
 feythe I owe to god and to the ordre of knyghthode I shall
 25 flee the myn owne handes / Syr launcelot said the kyng ouer
 moche haue ye said to me / and I haue fworne and said ouer
 largely afore kyng Arthur in herynge of alle his knyghtes /
 that I shal not fle nor bitraye hym / It were to me ouer mo-
 che shame to breke my promyse / ye saye wel said sir Launcelot
 30 but ye are called so fals and ful of treason that no man man
 byleue yow ¶ For soth it is knowen wel wherfor ye came
 in to this countrey / and for none other cause but to flee sir trif-
 tram / Soo with grete dole Kyng Marke and sir Triftram ro-
 de to gyders / for hit was by sir Triftrams wil and his mea-
 35 nes to goo with kyng Marke and all was for the entente to
 see la Beale Ifoud / for without the fyghte of her fyr Triftrā
 myght not endure

¶ Capitulum xxiij

Now torne we ageyne vnto fire Lamorak / and speke
 we of his bretheren / fyr Tor whiche was kynge Pelle-
 nors fyrst sone and bygoten of Aryes wyf the couherd
 for he was a bastard and fire Aglouale was his fyrste sone
 begoten in wedlok / fyre Lamorak / Dornar / Percyuale / these 5
 were his sones to in wedlok / ¶ Soo whanne kynge Marke
 and fire Triftram were departed from the Courte / there was
 made grete dole and forowe for the departyng of fir Triftram
 Thenne the kynge and his knyghtes made no manere of Io-
 yes eyghte dayes after / And atte eyghte dayes ende ther cam 10
 to the courte a knyghte with a yonge squyer with hym /
 And whanne this knyghte was vnarmed / he went to the ky-
 nge and requyred hym to make the yonge squyer a knyghte /
 Of what lygnage is he come said Kynge Arthur / Syre sayd
 the knyght he is the sone of kyng Pellenore that dyd you fom- 15
 tyme good seruyse / And he is broder vnto fyr Lamorak de ga-
 lys the good knyghte / wel sayd the kynge for what cause de-
 fyre ye that of me that I shold make hym knyghte / wete you
 wel my lord the Kynge that this yonge squyer is broder to
 me as wel as to fir Lamorak / and my name is Aglauale 20
 Syre Aglouale sayd Arthur for the loue of fire Lamorak and
 for his faders loue he shalle be made knyghte to morowe /
 ¶ Now telle me said Arthur what is his name / Syre sayd
 the Knyght his name is Percyuale de Galys /
 Soo on the morne the kynge made hym knyght in Camelott / 25
 But the Kynge and alle the knyghtes thoughte hit wold be
 longe or that he preued a good knyghte ¶ Thenne at the
 dyner whanne the Kynge was fet at the table / and euery kn-
 yzt after he was of prowesse / the kyng commaunded hym to be
 sette amonge meane Knyghtes / and foo was fire Percyuale 30
 sette as the Kynge commaunded / Thenne was there a mayden
 in the Quenes court that was come of hyhe blood / & she was
 domme & neuer spak word / Ryght so she cam streyght in to the
 halle / & went vnto fir Percyuale & toke hym by þ^e hād & said a-

lowde that the kyng and all the knyghtes myght here hit / A-
 ryse fyr Percyuale the noble Knyght and goddes knyght and
 go with me / and soo he dyd / And there she broughte hym to
 the ryght fyde of the sege perillous / And said Fair knyghte
 5 take here thy sege / for that sege apperteyneth to the and to none
 other / Ryght soo she departed and asked a preste / And as
 she was confessid and housfeld thenne she dyed / Thenne the
 kyng and alle the courte made grete ioye of fyr Percyuale

¶ Capitulum xxxiiij

10 **N**ow torne we vnto fir Lamorak that moche was there
 preyed / Thenne by the meane of fir Gawayn and his
 bretheren / they sente for her moder there besydes fast by
 a Castel befyde Camelot / and alle was to that entente to flee
 fir Lamorak / The Quene of Orkeney was there but a whyle
 but fir Lamorak wyft of their beyng / and was ful fayne / &
 15 for to make an ende of this matere he sente vnto her / and ther
 betwixe them was a nyght assygned that fir Lamorak shold
 come to her / Therof was ware fyre Gaherys / and there he rode
 afore the same nyght and waited vpon fire Lamorak / and thē-
 ne he sawe where he came all armed / and where fire Lamorak
 20 alyghte / he teyed his hors to a preuy posterne / and so he wēt
 in to a palour and vnarmed hym / And thenne he wente vnto
 the Quenes bedde / and she made of hym passyngre grete Ioye
 and he of her ageyne / for eyther loued other passyngre fore /

¶ Soo whan the Knyght fyr Gaherys / sawe his tyme / he cam
 25 to their beddes fyde alle armed with his swerd naked / and so-
 denly gat his moder by the here and strake of her hede / whanne
 fir Lamorak sawe the blood dasshe vpon hym all hote / the whi-
 che he loued passyngre wel / wete yow wel he was fore abasshed
 and defmayed of that dolorous knyght / And there with al fir
 30 Lamorak lepte out of the bedde in his sherte as a knyght def-
 mayed fayenge thus A fyre Gaherys knyght of the table ro-
 und foule and euylle haue ye done and to yow grete shame
 Allas why haue ye slayn your moder that bare you with more
 ryght ye shold haue slayne me / ¶ The offence hast thou done

fayd Gaherys not withstandynge a man is borne to offre his
 feruyfe / but yet sholdest thou beware with whome thou me-
 dledest / for thou hast putte me and my bretheren to a shame / and
 thy fader slewe our fader / and thou to lye by our moder is to
 moche shame for vs to suffre / And as for thy fader kyng Pel- 5
 lenore my broder sir Gawayne and I slewe hym / ye dyd hym
 the more wronge said sir Lamorak / For my fader slewe not
 your fader / it was Balyn le faueage / and as yet my faders
 dethe is not reuenged / leue tho wordes said sir Gaherys / For
 and thou speke felonfly I wil flee the / But by cause thou 10
 arte naked I am ashamed to flee the / but wete thou wel / in
 what place I may gete the / I shalle flee the / and now my mo-
 der is quyte of the / and withdrawe the / and take thyn armor-
 ur that thou were gone / Syre Lamorak fawe there was none
 other bote but fast armed hym and took his hors and rode his 15
 way makynge grete forowe / But for the shame and doloure
 he wold not ryde to kyng Arthurs Courte / but rode another
 waye / But whan hit was knowen that Gaherys had slayne
 his moder / the kyng was passynge wrothe and commaunded
 hym to goo oute of his courte / wete ye wel sir Gawayn was 20
 wrothe that Gaherys had slayne his moder / and lete sir La-
 morak escape / And for this matere was the kyng passynge
 wrothe and foo was sir Lamorak and many other knyghtes
 Syr said sir Launcelot here is a grete meschyef befallen by fe-
 lony / and by fore cast treason that your syster is thus shame- 25
 fully slayne / And I dare saye that it was wrouzte by trefon
 And I dare saye ye shalle lese that good Knyghte sir Lamo-
 rak the whiche is grete pyte / I wote wel and am sure and sir
 Triftram wyfte hit / he wold neuer more come within your co-
 urte / the whiche shold greue yow moche more and alle youre 30
 knyghtes / God defende said the noble Kyng Arthur that I
 shold lese sir Lamorak or sir Triftram / for thenne tweyne of
 my chyef knyghtes of the table round were gone / Syre saide
 syre Launcelot I am sure ye shalle lese sir Lamorak for sir Ga-
 wayne and his bretheren wille fle hym / by one meane or oth- 35
 er / for they amonge them haue concluded and sworne to flee
 hym and euer they may see their tyme / That shalle I lette sa-
 yd Arthur

¶ Capitulum rrv

Now leue we of sire Lamorak / and speke of sire Ga-
wayns bretheren & specially of sire Agrauayne and fyre
Mordred as they rode on their aduentures they mette
with a Knyghte fleyng fore wounded / and they asked hym
5 what tydynges / Faire Knyghtes said he here cometh a knyght
after me that wylle flee me / With that came sire Dynadan ry-
dyng to them by aduenture / but he wold promyse them no help
But sire Agrauayne and sire Mordred promysed hym to resco-
we hym / There with alle came that knyght streyght vnto them
10 And anone he proferd to Iuste / That fawe fyre Mordred and
rode to hym but he strake Mordred ouer his hors taylor

¶ That fawe sire Agrauayn and streyghte he rode toward that
knyght / And ryghte soo as he serued Mordred soo he serued
Agrauayne / and said to them / Syrs wete ye wel bothe that I
15 am Breuse faunce pyte that hath done this to yow / And yet he
rode ouer Agrauayne fyue or fyxe tymes /

¶ Whan Dynadan fawe this / he muste nedes Iuste with hym
for shame / And so Dynadan and he encountred to gyders / that
with pure strengthe sire Dynadan smote hym ouer his hors ta-
20 ylor / Thenne he took his hors and fledde / for he was on foot one
of the valyauntest knyghtes in Arthurs dayes / and a grete def-
troyer of alle good knyghtes / Thenne rode sire Dynadan vnto
sire Mordred and vnto sire Agrauayne / Sire knyght said they
alle wel haue ye done / and wel haue ye reuenged vs / wherfor
25 we praye yow telle vs youre name / Faire sirs ye ouzte to kno-
we my name the whiche is called sire Dynadan / Whanne they
vnderstood that it was Dynadan / they were more wroth than
they were before / for they hated hym oute of mesure by cause of
sire Lamorak / For Dynadan had suche a custome that he loued
30 alle good Knyghtes that were valyaunt / and he hated al tho
that were destroyers of good knyghtes / And there were none
that hated Dynadan but tho that euer were called murtherers
Thenne spak the hurt knyght that Breuse faunce pyte hadde
chaced / his name was Dalan / and said yf thou be Dynadan /
35 thou slewest my fader / Hit may wel be so said Dynadan / but
thenne it was in my defence and at his request / By my hede
said Dalan thou shalt dye therefore / and there with he dressed

his spere and his shelde / And to make the shorter tale fyre
 Dynadan smote hym doune of his hors that his neck was ny3
 broken / And in the same wyfe he smote fyre Mordred and sir
 Agraayne / And after in the quest of the Sancgreal coward-
 dly and felloynsly they flewe Dynadan / the whiche was gre- 5
 te dammage / for he was a grete bourder and a passyng good
 knyght

¶ And soo fyre Dynadan rode to a
 Castel that hyght Beale valet / And there he fonde fyre Palo-
 mydes that was not yet hole of the wound that fyr Lamorak
 gaf hym / And there Dynadan told Palomydes all the tydyn- 10
 ges that he herd and sawe of fyre Tristram / and how he was
 gone with kynge Marke / and with hym he hath alle his wyll
 and defyre / There with fyre Palomydes waxed wrothe / for he
 loued la Beale Ifoud / And thenne he wysste wel that fyre
 Tristram enjoyed her 15

¶ Capitulum xxvj

Now leue we fyre Palomydes and fyre Dynadan in the
 castel of Beale valet / and torne we ageyne vnto ky-
 nge Arthur / There came a Knyght oute of Cornewail
 his name was Fergus / a felawe of the round table / And
 ther he told the Kynge and sir Launcelot good tydynges of 20
 sir Tristram / and there were brought goodly letters / and how
 he lefte hym in the castel of Tyntagil

¶ Thenne came the damoyfel that broughte goodly letters vn-
 to kynge Arthur and vnto fyre launcelot / and there she hadde
 passyng good chere of the Kynge and of the Quene Guene- 25
 uer and of fyre Launcelot /

¶ Thenne they wrote good-
 ly letters ageyne / But fyre Laūcelot badde euer fyre Tristram
 beware of kynge Marke / for euer he called hym in his letters
 Kynge Foxe / As who faith / he fareth alle with wyles and
 treason / wherof fyre Tristram in his herte thanked fyre Laū- 30
 celot

¶ Thenne the Damoyfel went vnto la Beale Ifoud
 and bare her letters from the Kynge and from fyre Launce-
 lot / wherof she was in passyng grete Ioye

¶ Faire damoyfel said la Beale Ifoud / how fareth my

Lord Arthur and the Quene Gweneuer / and the noble knyzt
 fyr Launcelot / she anfuerd and to make short tale / moche the
 better that ye and sire Triftram ben in Ioye /
 God rewarde them said la beale Ifoud / for sire Triftram suffereth
 5 grete payne for me and I for hym / So the damoyfel departed
 and broughte letters to Kyng Marke / And whanne he had
 redde them / and vnderstood them / he was wrothe with sire Trif-
 tram / for he demed he had sente the damoyfel vnto Kyng
 Arthur / For Arthur and Launcelot in a maner threted kyng
 10 mark / And as Kyng mark redde thefe letters / he demed tre-
 fon by sire Triftram / Damoyfel said Kyng Marke / wille ye
 ryde ageyne and bere letters from me vnto Kyng Arthur / sire
 she said I wille be at your commaundement to ryde whan ye
 wille / ye saye wel said the Kyng / come ageyne said the Kyng
 15 to morne / and fetch your letters / Thenne she departed / & told
 them how she shold ryde ageyne with letters vnto Arthur
 Thenne we praye you said la beale Ifoud and sire Triftram
 that whanne ye haue receyued your letters / that ye wold co-
 me by vs that we may see the pryete of your letters / Al that
 20 I may doo madame ye wote wel I muft doo for sire Triftram
 for I haue ben longe his owne mayden / Soo on the morne the
 damoyfel went to kyng Marke to haue had his letters and to
 departe / I am not auyfed said kyng Marke as at this tyme
 to fende my letters / Thenne pryuely and secretly he sent let-
 25 ters vnto kyng Arthur and vnto Quene Queneuer / and vn-
 to sire launcelot / So the varlet departed / and fond the Kyng
 and the Quene in walys at Carlyon / And as the kyng and
 the Quene were at masse the varlet came with the letters /
 And whanne masse was done the kyng and the Quene ope-
 30 ned the letters pryuely by them self / And the begynnyng of
 the kynges letters spak wonderly short vnto Kyng Arthur/
 and badde hym entermete with hym self and with his wyf / &
 of his knyghtes / For he was able ynough to rule and kepe
 his wyf

¶ Capitulum xviij

WHanne kyng Arthur vnderstood the letter / he musyd of many thynges / & thouzt on his systers wordes que- ne Morgan le fay that she had sayd betwixe quene gue- neuer and sir Launcelot / And in this thoughte he studyed a grete whyle / Thenne he bethought hym ageyne how his syster 5 was his owne enemy / and that she hated the Quene and sir launcelot / and soo he putte all that oute of his thoughte

¶ Thenne Kyng Arthur redde the letter ageyne / and the latter clause said that Kyng Marke tooke fire Tristram for his mortal enemy / wherfor he put Arthur oute of doubte he wold 10 be reuengyd of sir Tristram / Thenne was kyng Arthur wroth with kyng Marke / And whanne quene Gueneuer redde her letter and vnderstood hit / she was wrothe oute of mesure / for the letter spak shame by her / and by sir launcelot / And soo pryuely she sente the letter vnto sir Launcelot / And whanne 15 he wyfte the entent of the letter / he was soo wrothe that he leyd hym doune on his bedde to slepe / wherof sir Dynadan was ware / for hit was his maner to be preuy with alle good knyghtes / And as fire launcelot slepte he stole the letter oute of his hand and red it word by word / And thenne he made gre- 20 te sorow for anger / and soo sir Launcelot awaked / and went to a wyndowe / and redde the letter ageyne / the whiche maade hym angry / Syre said Dynadan wherfore be ye angry / disco- uer your hert to me / For sothe ye wote wel I owe yow good wyll / how be hit I am a poure knyght and a seruytour vnto 25 yow and to alle good knyghtes / For though I be not of worship my self I loue alle tho that ben of worship / It is trouth said sir Launcelot / ye are a trusty knyght / and for grete trust I wille shewe yow my counceyll / And whan Dynadan vnderstood alle / he said this is my counceyl / Sette you ryght no- 30 ught by these thretys / For kyng marke is soo vylaynous / that by fayre speche shalle neuer man gete of hym / ¶ But ye shalle see what I shalle doo / I wille make a lay for hym / & whan hit is made I shalle make an harper to synge hit afore hym / Soo anone he wente and made hit / and taughte hit an 35 harper that hyght Elyot / And whanne he coude hit / he taught hit to many harpers

¶ And soo by the wyll of fire Launcelot and of Arthur the harpers went streyghte in to

walys / and in to Cornewaile to fynge the laye that sire Dynadan made kynge Marke / the whiche was the werste lay that euer harper fange with harp or with any other Instrumētys

¶ Capitulum xviij

5 **N**ow torne we ageyne vnto sire Tristram and to Kyng Marke / As fyr Tristram was at Iustes and att turnement / hit fortunēd he was fore hurte bothe with a spere and with a swerd / but yet he wanne alweyes the degre And for to repose hym / he wente to a good knyght that duelled in Cornewaile in a Castel whos name was Syr Dynas
 10 le Seneschall / Thenne by myffortune there came oute of Seffoyne a grete nombre of men of armes / and an hydous hooft / & they entred nyghe the castel of Tyntagyl / and her Capytayns name was Elyas a good man of armes / Whan Kyng Mark
 15 vnderstode his enemyes were entred in to his land / he maade grete dole and sorow / for in no wyse by his wille kyng Mark wold not fende for sir Tristram for he hated hym dedely / Soo whan his counceill was come / they deuysed and cast many peryls of the strengthe of her enemyes / And thenne they conclu-
 20 ded all at ones and said thus vnto kyng Marke / Syr wete ye wel ye must fende for sire Tristram the good knyghte or els they wylle neuer be ouercome / For by sire Tristram they must be foughten with alle / or els we rowe ageynst the streame
 ¶ Wel said Kyng Marke I wille doo by your counceylle /
 25 but yet he was ful lothe ther to / but nede constrayned hym to fende for hym / Thenne was he sente for in alle hast that myghte be that he shold come to Kyng Marke / And whanne he vnderstood that Kyng Marke had sente for hym / he mounted vpon a softe ambuler and rode to Kyng Marke / And when
 30 he was come / the Kyng said thus / Faire neuewe fyr Tristram this is alle / Here be come oure enemyes of Seffoyne / that are here nyghe hand / and withoute taryenge they must be mette with shortly or els they wylle destroye this countrey / Syr said sir Tristram wete ye wel alle my power is at your commaun-
 35 dement / And wete ye wel fyre / these eyght dayes I may bere

none armes for my woundes ben not yet hole / And by that day
 I shalle doo what I may / ye faye wel faid kyng Marke /
 Thenne goo ye ageyne and repose yow and make yow fresshe
 And I shalle go and mete the Seffoyns with alle my power
 Soo the Kyng departed vnto Tyntagyl and sir Triftram went 5
 to repose hym / and the Kyng made a grete hooft and departed
 them in thre / The fyrste parte ledde fyr Dynas the Seneschall
 and sir Andred ledde the second parte / and sir Arguys ledde
 the thyrde parte / and he was of the blood of Kyng Mark / and
 the Seffoyns had thre grete batails / and many good men of 10
 armes / And soo Kyng Marke by the aduysse of his Knygh-
 tes yssued oute of the Castel of Tyntagyl vpon his enemyes
 And Dynas the good knyghte rode oute afore / and slewe ij
 Knyghtes his owne handes / and thenne beganne the batayls /
 And there was merueyllous brekyng of speres and smytyng 15
 of fuerdes / and slewe doune many good knyghtes / And euer
 was fyr Dynas the Seneschal the best of Kyng Markes par-
 ty / And thus the bataille endured longe with grete mortalyte
 But at the last Kyng Mark and sire Dynas were they ne-
 uer soo lothe they withdrewen hem to the castel of Tyntagyll / 20
 with grete slaughtre of peple / And the Seffoyns folowed on
 fast / that ten of them were put within the gates and four fla-
 yne with the porte coloyse / Thenne Kyng Marke sente for sire
 Triftram by a varlet that told hym alle the mortalyte /

¶ Thenne he sente the varlet ageyne and bad hym telle Kyng 25
 Mark that I wille come as soone as I am hole / for erste I
 maye doo hym noo good / Thenne Kyng Mark hadde his an-
 swer / There with came Elyas and badde the Kyng yelde vp
 the castel / for ye maye not hold it no whyle / Sir Elyas faid
 the kyng so wyll I yelde vp the castel yf I be not soone rescow- 30
 ued / Anone Kyng Marke sente ageyne for rescowe to sir trif-
 tram / By thenne sir Triftram was hoole / and he hadde goten
 hym ten good Knyghtes of Arthurs / And with hem he rode
 vnto Tyntagyl / And whanne he sawe the grete hooft of Seff-
 oyns he merueyllled wonder gretely / And thenne sir Trystram 35
 rode by the woodes and by the dyches as secretly as he myght
 tyl he came nyghe the gatys / And there dresid a Knyghte to
 hym / when he sawe that sir Triftram wold entre & sir triftram

fmote hym doune dede / And foo he ferued thre mo / And eue-
ryche of these ten knyghtes flewe a man of armes / Soo fir trif-
tram entryd in to the castel of Tyntagyl / And whan kynge
Marke wyft that fir Triftram was come he was glad of his
5 comyng / and foo was alle the felauſhyp / and of hym they ma-
de grete Ioye

¶ Capitulum xxi

SOo on the morne Elyas the capytayne came / and bad
kynge Marke come oute / and doo bataille / for now the
good knyghte fir Triftram is entryd / It wylle be fhamme to
10 the ſayd Elyas for to kepe thy walles / whan kynge Mark vn-
derſtode this / he was wrothe and ſayd no word / but went vn-
to fir Triftram and axed hym his counceyl / Sire ſaid fir Trif-
tram wylle ye that I gyue hym his anſuer / I wille wel ſayd
Kynge Marke / Thenne fir Triftram ſaid thus to the meſſagere
15 Bere thy lord word from the kynge and me / that we wyl do
batail with hym to morne in the playne felde / what is your na-
me ſaid the meſſager / wete thou wel / my name is fir Tryfram
de Lyones / There with alle the meſſager departed / and told
his lord Elyas alle that he had herd / Syr ſaide ſire Triftram
20 vnto Kynge Marke I praye yow gyue me leue to haue the
rule of the bataill / I pray yow take the rule ſaid kyng mark
Thenne ſire Triftram lete deuyſe the bataille in what manere
that it ſhold be / He lete departe his hooft in fyxe partyes / and
ordeyned fir Dynas the Senefchal to haue the fore ward / &
25 other knyghtes to rule the remenaunt / And the ſame nyghte
fyre Triftram brente alle the Seffoyns ſhyppes vnto the cold
water / Anone as Elyas wyft that he ſaid hit was of fir Trif-
trams doynge / for he caſteth that we ſhalle neuer eſcape moder
ſone of vs / Therefore fayre felawes fyghte frely to morowe / &
30 myſcomforte yow noughte for ony knyzt though he be the beſt
knyght in the world / he maye not haue adoo with vs alle /

¶ Thenne they ordeyned theyr batails in four partyes won-
derly wel apparailled and garnyſhed with men of armes
Thus they within yſſued / and they withoute ſette frely vpon
35 them / and there fir Dynas dyd grete dedes of armes / not for

thenne fir Dynas and his felaufhip were put to the werfe /
 With that came fire Triftram and flewe two Knyghtes with
 one fpere / thenne he flewe on the ryght hand and on the lyfte
 hand / that men merueylled that euer he myght do fuche dedes
 of armes / And thenne he myght fee fomtyme the bataille was 5
 dryuen a bowe draughte from the caftel / and fomtyme it was
 at the gates of the Caftel / Thenne came Elyas Capytayne
 raffhyng here and there / and hytte kynge Mark fo fore vpon
 the helme that he made hym to auoyde the fadel / And thenne
 fir Dynas gate kynge Mark ageyne to horfbak / There with 10
 alle came in fir Triftram lyke a lyon / and there he mette with
 Elyas / and he fmote hym fo fore vpon the helme that he auoy-
 ded his fadel / And thus they fought tyl it was nyghte / and
 for grete flauzter and for wounded peple eueryche party dre-
 we to their refte / And whan kynge Marke was come within 15
 the caftel of Tyntagyl / he lacked of his knyghtes an honderd
 and they withoute lacked two honderd / and they ferched
 the wounded men on bothe partyes / And thenne they wente to
 counceil / and wete yow wel eyther party were lothe to fyghte
 more / foo that eyther myght efcape with their worfhip 20

¶ Whan Elyas the capytayn vnderftode the dethe of his men /
 he made grete dole / And whan he wyft that they were lothe to
 goo to bataille ageyne / he was wrothe oute of mefure / Thenne
 Elyas fente word vnto Kyng Mark in grete despyte whether
 he wold fynde a Knyght that wold fyghte for hym / body for 25
 body / ¶ And yf that he myght flee Kyng Markes kny-
 ghte / he to haue the truage of Cornewaile yerely / And yf
 that this knyght flee hym / I fully releece my clayme for euer
 Thenne the meffager departed vnto Kyng Marke and told
 hym how that his lord Elyas had fente hym word to fynde a 30
 Knyght to doo bataille with hym body for body / whanne kyng
 Marke vnderftood the meffagyer he badde hym abyde / and he
 fhold haue his anfuer / Thenne called he alle the Baronage
 to gyder to wete what was the beft counceyll / They fayd all at
 ones to fyghte in a felde we haue no luft / for had not ben fyr 35
 Triftrams prowefse / hit had ben lykely that we neuer fhold
 haue efcaped / And therfor fir as we deme / hit were wel done
 to fynde a knyzt that wold do batail with hym for he knyztly

H profereth

¶ Capítulum xxx

Ot for thenne whan alle this was said / they coude fynde
 no Knyght that wold doo bataille with hym / Syre
 kynges said they alle / here is no knyght that dare fyghte wyth
 5 Elyas / Allas said kynges Marke thenne am I vtterly asha-
 med and vtterly destroyed / onles that my neuewe sire Tristram
 wylle take the bataille vpon hym / wete yow wel they sayd
 alle he had yesterday ouer moche on hand / and he is wery
 for trauaille / and sore wounded / where is he said Kyng mark
 10 Syr said they he is in his bedde to repose hym / Allas said kynges
 Marke / but I haue the focoure of my neuewe sire Tristram
 I am vtterly destroyed for euer / There with one wente to sire
 Tristram there he lay and told hym what kynges Marke had
 sayd / And there with sire Tristram aroos lyghtely / and putt
 15 on hym a longe gowne / and came afore the Kynges and al the
 lordes / And whan he sawe hem alle soo defmayed / he asked the
 Kynges and the lordes what tydynges were with hem / Neuer
 werse said the Kynges / And ther with he told hym alle how
 he had word of Elyas to fynde a knyght to fyghte for the tru-
 20 age of Cornewail / and none can I fynde / And as for yow
 said the kynges and alle the lordes we maye aske no more of
 yow for shame / For thurgh your hardynes yesterday ye faued
 alle your lyues / Syre said sire Tristram now I vnderstande
 ye wold haue my focour / reason wold that I shold doo al that
 25 lyeth in my power to doo / sauynge my worship / and my lyf /
 how be hit I am fore brysed and hurte / And sythen sire Elyas
 profereth soo largely / I shalle fyghte with hym or els I will
 be slayne in the felde / or els I wille delyuer Cornewaile from
 the old truage / And therefore lyghtely calle his messager and
 30 he shalle be anfuere / for as yet my woundes ben grene and they
 wille be forer a feuen nyght after than they ben now / And ther-
 for he shalle haue his anfuere / that I will doo bataill to morn
 with hym / Thenne was the messager departed brought
 before kynges Marke / Herke my felawe said sire Tristram
 35 goo fast vnto thy lord and bydde hym make true assuraunce
 on his party / for the truage / as the kyng here shalle make on
 his party / and thēne telle thy lord sire Elyas that I sire Tristram
 kynges Arthurs knyght / and knyghte of the table round /

wylle as to morne mete with thy lord on horfbak / to doo batail
 as longe as my hors maye endure / And after that to doo ba-
 taille with hym on foote to the vtteraunce / the messager behelde
 fyre Triftram from the top to the too / And there with alle he
 departed and came to his lord and told hym how he was an- 5
 fuerd of sir Triftram / And there with alle was made hostage
 on bothe partyes / and made hit as sure as hit myghte be / that
 whether party had the vycory / soo to ende / And thenne were
 bothe hostes affembled on bothe partyes of the felde withoute
 the castel of Tyntagyl / & ther was none but sir Triftram & sir 10
 Elyas armed / Soo whan the poyntement was made they de-
 parted in fonder / and they came to gyders with alle the myght
 that their horses myghte renne / And eyther knyghte smote o-
 ther soo hard that bothe horses and knyghtes wente to the er-
 the / Not for thenne they bothe lyghtely aroos and dresfid the- 15
 ir sheldes on their sholders with naked swerdes in their han-
 des / and they daffhed to gyders that hit semed a flammynge
 fyre aboute them / Thus they tracyd and trauercyd and hewe
 on helmes and hawberkes / and cutte awaye many cantels of
 their sheldes / and eyther wounded other passynge fore / so that 20
 the hote blood felle fresshly vpon the erthe / ¶ And by thenne
 they had foughten the mountenaunce of an houre / sir Triftram
 waxte faynte and forbledde / and gaf fore a bak / That sawe
 fire Elyas / and folowed fyersly vpon hym / and wounded
 hym in many places / And euer fire Triftram tracyd and tra- 25
 uercyd / and wente froward hym here and there / and couerd
 hym with his shelde as he myghte alle weykely / that alle men
 said he was ouercome / For sir Elyas hadde gyuen hym twen-
 ty strokes ageynst one / ¶ Thenne was there laughyng of the
 Seffoyns party and grete dole on Kynge Markys party / 30
 Allas said the Kynge we are afhamed and destroyed all for
 euer / for as the book faith syr Triftram was neuer so matched
 but yf it were sir launcelot / Thus as they stode and beheld
 bothe partyes / that one party laughynge and the other party
 wepyng / Syre Triftram remembryd hym of his lady la bea- 35
 le Ifoud that loked vpon hym / And how he was lykely ne-
 uer to come in her preface / Thenne he pulled vp his shelde that
 erst henge ful lowe / And thenne he dresfid vp his shelde vnto

Elyas / and gaf hym many fadde strokes twenty ageynst one
 and alle to brake his shelde and his hauberk / that the hote bl-
 od ranne doune to the erthe / Thenne beganne kynge Mark to
 laughe and alle Cornyshe men / and that other party to wepe /
 5 And euer fir Triftram said to fir Elyas yelde the / ¶ Thenne
 whanne fir Triftram sawe hym foo stakkerynge on the ground
 he said fyr Elyas I am ryght fory for the / for thou arte a
 passyng good knyghte as euer I mette with alle excepte fire
 Launcelot / ther with alle fir Elyas fylle to the erthe / & there
 10 dyed / what shalle I doo said fir Triftram vnto Kynge marke
 for this bataille is at an ende / Thenne they of Elyas party de-
 parted / and kynge Marke took of hem many prysoners to re-
 dresse the harmes and the scathes that he had of them / and the
 remenaunt he sente in to their countrey to borowe oute their fe-
 15 lawes / Thenne was fire Triftram serched and wel helyd / yet
 for alle this Kynge Marke wold fayne haue slayne fir Trif-
 tram / ¶ But for alle that euer fire Triftram sawe or herd by
 kynge Marke yet wold he neuer beware of his treason / but e-
 uer he wold be there as la Beale Ifoud was

¶ Capitulum rrrj

20 **N**ow wille we passe of this mater / and speke we of
 the harpers that fir Launcelot and fir Dynadan hadde
 sente in to Cornewaile / And at the grete feest that kyng ma-
 rke made for Ioye that the Sessoyns were putte oute of his
 Countrey / Thenne came Elyas the harper with the lay that
 25 Dynadan had made and secreately broughte hit vnto fir Trif-
 tram and told hym the lay that Dynadan had made by ky-
 nge Marke / And whan fir Triftram herd hit / he said O lord
 Ihesu that Dynadan can make wonderly wel and ylle / there
 as it shalle be / ¶ Syr said Elyas dare I synge this songe
 30 afore Kynge Marke / ye on my perylle said fire Triftram / for I
 shalle be thy waraunt / Thenne at the mete cam in Elyas the
 harper / & by cause he was a curyous harper men herd hym syn-
 ge the fame lay that Dynadan had made / the whiche spak the
 moost vylony by Kyng Marke of his treason / that euer man
 35 herd / whan the harper had songe his songe to the ende / kynge
 Marke was wonderly wrothe ¶ And sayd / thow

harper how durst thou be so bold on thy heede to synge this
 songe afore me / Syr said Elyas wete yow wel I am a myn-
 strel / and I must doo as I am commaunded of these lordes that
 I bere the armes of / And fyre wete ye wel that sir Dynadan
 a knyghte of the table round made this songe / and made me 5
 to synge hit afore yow / Thow sayest wel sayd kyng Marke
 And by cause thou arte a mynstral / thou shalt go quyte / but
 I charge the hye the fast oute of my syghte / Soo the harper
 departed and wente to sir Trifram and told hym how he had
 sped / Thenne fyre Trifram lete make letters as goodely as he 10
 coude to launcelot and to sire Dynadan / And soo he lete con-
 duyte the harper out of the countrey / but to say þ^t Kyng Mark
 was wonderly wrothe he was / for he demed that the lay that
 was songe afore hym was made by sir Triframs counceylle/
 wherfore he thoughte to flee hym / and alle his wel wyllars / 15
 in that countrey

¶ Capitulum xxxij

Now torne we to another mater that felle bitwene kyng
 Marke and his broder that was called the good pry-
 nce Bodwyne that alle the peple of the countrey loued passy-
 nge wel / So hit befelle on a tyme that the mescreaunts Sa- 20
 rasyns loded in the countreye of Cornewaile soone after the-
 se Seffoyns were gone / And thēne the good prynce Boudw-
 yne at the landynge he areysed the countrey pryuely and ha-
 stly / And or hit were day / he lete put wylde fyre in thre of his
 owne shyppes / and sodenly he pulled vp the sayle / And with 25
 the wynde he made tho shyppes to be dryuen among the nauye
 of the Sarasyns / And to make shorte tale tho thre shippes set
 on fyre alle the shippes that none were saued / And atte poynt
 of the day the good prynce Boudwyn with all his selauship
 sette on the mescreauntes with shoutes and cryes and slewe 30
 to the nombre of xl / M / and leste none on lyue / whan kyng
 Marke wyft this he was wonderly wrothe that his broder sh-
 old wyne suche worship / And by cause this prynce was bet-
 ter byloued than he in all that countrey / And that al so Boud-
 wyn loued wel sir Trifram / therfore he thoughte to flee hym 35

And thus hastily as a man oute of his wytte he sente for prynce boudwyn / & Anglides his wyf / & bad them brynge theyre yonge fone with them that he myght fee hym / Alle this he dyd to the entente to flee the child as wel as his fader / for he was
 5 the falsest traitour that euer was borne / Allas for his goode-nes and for his good dedes this gentyl prynce Boudwyn was slayne / Soo whan he came with his wyf Anglydes the Kyng made them fayre semblaunt tyl they had dyned /
 And whanne they had dyned / Kyng Marke sente for his
 10 broder and faid thus / Broder how spedde yow whan the mefcreaunts aryued by yow / me semeth hit had be youre parte to haue sente me word that I myght haue ben at that Iourneye for it had ben reason that I had had the honour and not you Syre faid the Prynce Boudwyn it was soo that and I had
 15 taryed tyl that I had sente for yow / tho myfcreauntes hadde destroyed my countrey / Thou lyeft fals traytour faid Kyng Marke / for thou arte euer aboute for to wyne worship from me / and put me to dishonour / and thow cheryst that I hate / And there with he stroke hym to the hert with a daggar / that
 20 he neuer after spake word / Thenne the lady Anglydes made grete dole and fwouned / for she sawe her lord slayne afore her face / Thenne was there no more to doo but prynce Boudwyn was despoyled and brought to buryels / But Anglydes pryuely gat her husbandes dobblet and his sherte / and that she
 25 kepte secretely / Thenne was there moche sorowe and cryenge / and grete dole made sir Tristram / sir Dynas / sir Fergus / and so dyd alle knyghtes that were there / for that prynce was pafyngly wel byloued / Soo la Beale Ifoud sente vnto Anglydes the prynce Boudwyns wyf and badde her auoyde lyz-
 30 tely or els her yonge fone Alyfander le Orphelyn shold be slaye / whanne she herd this / she took her hors and her child / and rode with fuche poure men as durst ryde with her /

¶ Capitulum xxxiii

N

Ot withstandynge whan Kyng Marke had done this dede / yet he thought to doo more vengeance / and with

[leaf 233 verso]

his fwerd in his hand / he fought from chamber to chamber to
 feke Anglydes and her yonge sone / And when she was myfte /
 he called a good knyghte that hyghte Sadok / and charged
 hym by payne of dethe to fetch Anglydes ageyne / and her yo-
 nge sone / So fyre Sadok departed / and rode after Anglydes / 5
 And within ten myle he ouertoke her / and badde her torne a-
 geyne and ryde with hym to Kynge Marke / Allas fair knyzt
 she said / what shalle ye wyne by my fones deth or by myn / I
 haue hadde ouer moche harme and to grete a losse / Madame
 said Sadok / of your losse is dole and pyte / but madame said 10
 Sadok wold ye departe oute of this countrey with your sone /
 and kepe hym tyl he be of age / that he may reuenge his faders
 dethe / thenne wold I suffer yow to departe from me / Soo ye pro-
 myse me to reuenge the dethe of prynce Boudwyn / A gentyl
 knyght Ihesu thanke the / and yf euer my sone Alyfaunder le 15
 Orphelyn lyue to be a knyght / he shal haue his faders dobblet
 and his shert with the bloody markes / and I shalle gyue hym
 fuche a charge that he shalle remembre hit whyles he lyueth /
 And there with al Sadok departed from her / and eyther by-
 toke other to god ¶ And when Sadok came to kyng 20
 Marke he told hym feythfully that he had drouned yong Aly-
 fander her sone / and therof kynge Marke was ful gladde /
 ¶ Now torne we vnto Anglydes that rode bothe nyghte and
 day by aduenture oute of Cornewaile / and lytyl and in fewe
 places she rested / but euer she drewe southward to the see syde / 25
 tyl by fortune she came to a castel that is called Magouns / &
 now hit is called Arundel in southsex / and the Conestable or
 the castel welcomed her and said she was welcome to her owne
 castel / and there was Anglydes worshipfully receyued / for the
 Conestable wyf was nyghe her cosyn / and the Conestable 30
 name was Belangere / and that same Conestable told Angly-
 des that the same Castel was hers by ryght enherytaunce /
 Thus Anglydes endured yeres and wynters tyl Alyfander
 was bygge and stronge / there was none foo wyght in all that
 Countrey / neyther there was none that myghte doo no manere 35
 of mayftry afore hym /

¶ Capitulum xxxiiii

T Henne vpon a day Bellangere the Coneftable came to
 Anglydes and fayd Madame it were tyme my lord
 Alyfander were made knyzt / for he is a paffyng ftrong
 yonge man / Syre faid ſhe I wold he were made knyghte /
 5 But thenne muſt I yeue hym the mooft charge that euer ſyn-
 ful moder gaf to her childe / Doo as ye lyfte fayd Bellange-
 re / and I ſhalle gyue hym warnyng that he ſhalle be maade
 knyght / Now hit wyl be wel done that he may be made knyght
 at oure lady day in lente / Be hit ſoo faid Anglydes / and I
 10 pray yow make redy therefore / Soo came the Coneftable to A-
 lyfander and told hym that he ſhold at oure lady in lente be
 made knyghte / I thanke god faid Alyfander theſe are the beſt
 tydynges that euer came to me / Thenne the Coneftable ordey-
 ned twenty of the gretteſt gentylmens ſones and the beſt born
 15 men of the countrey that ſhold be maade knyghtes that ſame
 day that Alyfander was made knyght / Soo on the ſame daye
 that Alyfander and his twenty felawes were made Knygh-
 tes / at the offrynge of the maſſe there came Anglydes vnto her
 ſone and fayd thus / ¶ O fayre ſwete ſone I charge the vpon
 20 my bleſſyng and of the hyghe ordre of chyualry that thou ta-
 keſt here this day / that thou vnderſtande what I ſhalle fayre /
 and charge the with alle / There with alle ſhe pulled out a blo-
 dy dobblet and a bloody ſherte that were bebledde with old blo-
 od / whanne Alyfaunder ſawe this / he ſtarte abak and waxed
 25 paale / and fayd fayre moder what maye this meane / I ſhall
 telle the fayre ſone / this was thyne owne faders dobblett and
 ſherte that he ware vpon hym that ſame daye that he was fla-
 yne / and there ſhe told hym why and wherfore / And hou for
 his goodenes kynge Marke ſlewe hym with his daggar afore
 30 myn owne eyen / And therfor this ſhalle be your charge that I
 I ſhalle gyue the

¶ Capitulum xxxv

N

Ow I requyre the / and charge the vpon my bleſſyng

[leaf 234 verso]

and vpon the hyghe ordre of kny3thode that thow be reuengyd
vpon kynge Marke for the dethe of thy fader / and there with
all the fwouned / Thenne Alyfander lepte to his moder / and
took her vp in his armes and fayd Fair moder ye haue gyuen
me a grete charge / and here I promyse yow I shalle be auen- 5
gyd vpon Kynge Marke / whanne that I may / and that I
promyse to god and to yow

¶ Soo this feest was
endyd / and the conestabyl by the aduyse of anglydes lete pur-
ueye that Alyfander was wel horsed and harneyfid / Thenne
he Iufted with his twenty felawes that were made knyghtes 10
with hym / but for to make a shorte tale he ouerthrewe alle tho
twenty that none myght withstande hym a buffet / ¶ Thenne
one of tho Knyghtes departed vnto Kynge Marke / and told
hym alle how Alyfander was maade Knyghte / and alle the
charge that his moder gaf hym as ye haue herd afore tyme 15

¶ Allas fals treafon said Kynge Marke I wende that yo-
nge traitour had ben dede / Allas whome may I truste / And
there with alle kynge Marke took a fwerd in his hand / and
foughte fyre Sadok from chamber to chamber to flee hym /

¶ Whanne fir Sadok sawe kynge Marke come with his fuerd 20
in his hand / he sayd thus / Beware Kynge Marke and come
not nyghe me / for wete thow wel that I faued Alyfander his
lyf / of whiche I neuer repente me / for thow falsly and co-
wardly flewe his fader Boudwyn traytourly for his good
dedes / wherfore I pray almyghty Ihesu sende Alyfander my- 25
ghte and strengthe to be reuengyd vpon the / and now beware
Kynge Marke of yonge Alyfander / for he is made a knyghte /

¶ Alas said Kynge Marke that euer I shold here a tray-
tour faye foo afore me / ¶ And there with foure Knyghtes of
kynge Markes drewe their fwerdes to flee fyre Sadok / but 30
anone fir Sadok flewe hem alle in Kynge Markes presence /
And thenne fyre Sadok past forthe in to his chamber / and to-
ke his hors and his harneis / and rode on his waye a good
paas / For there was neyther fyre Trifram / neyther fyre Dy-
nas nor fyre Fergus that wold fir Sadok ony euylle wyll / 35

¶ Thenne was Kynge Marke wrothe / and thoughte to destro-
ye fyre Alyfander and fyre Sadok that had faued hym / for
kynge Marke dredde and hated Alifander moost of ony man

lyuynghe whanne fir Triftram vnderstood that Alyfander was made knyghte / Anone forth with alle he sente hym a letter prayenge hym and chargynghe hym that he wold drawe hym to the Courte of Kyng Arthur / and that he putte hym in the rule and in the handes of fire Launcelot

¶ Soo this letter was sente to Alyfander from his cosyn fyr Triftram / And at that tyme he thought to doo after his commaundement / Thenne kyng Mark called a knyght that broughte hym the tydynges from Alyfander / and badde hym abyde styll in that countrey / Syre fayd that knyght soo muste I doo / for in myn owne countrey I dare not come / No force said Kyng Marke / I shalle gyue the here double as moche landes as euer thou haddest of thyne owne / But within short space fir Sadok mette with that fals knyght / and flewe hym
15 Thenne was Kyng Marke wode wrothe oute of mesure

¶ Thenne he sente vnto Quene Morgan le fay / and to the queene of Northgalys prayenge them in his letters that they two forcereffes wold sette alle the countrey in fyre with ladyes that were enchauntresses / And by suche that were daungerous
20 knyghtes as Malgryn Breufe faunce pyte / that by no meane Alyfander le Orphelyn shold escape / but outhere he shold be taken or slayne / This ordenaunce made kyng Marke for to destroye Alyfander

¶ Capitulum xxxvj

25 **N**ow torne we ageyne vnto fire Alyfander that at his departynghe his moder toke with hym his faders bloody sherte / Soo that he bare with hym alweyes tylle hys dethe daye in tokenynghe to thynke on his faders dethe

¶ Soo was Alyfander purposed to ryde to london by the counceille of fire Triftram to fyre Launcelot / And by fortune he
30 wente by the see syde / and rode wronge / and there he wanne at a turnement the gree / that Kyng Carados made / And there he smote doune Kyng Carados and twenty of his knyghtes and also fire Safere a good knyght that was fire Palomydes broder the good knyght / ¶ Alle this fawe a damoyfel / and

fawe the best knyghte Iuste that euer he fawe / And euer as
 he smote doune knyghtes / he made them to fwere to were none
 harneis in a twelue monethe and a day / This is wel fayd /
 faide Morgan le fay / this is the knyght that I wold fayne
 see / And soo she took her palfroy and rode a grete whyle / and
 thenne she rested her in her paelione / So there came four kn- 5
 yghtes two were armed and two were vnarmed / and they
 told Morgan le fay their names / the fyrst was Elyas de go-
 meret / the second was Carde Gomoret / tho were armed / that
 other tweyne were of Camlyard / cofyns vnto Quene Gue- 10
 neuer / and that one hyzt Guy / and that other hyght Garaūt
 tho were vnarmed / There these four Knyghtes told Morgan
 le fay how a yonge knyghte had smyten them doune before a
 Castel / For the mayden of that Castel said that he was but
 late made knyghte and yonge / But as we suppose but yf hit 15
 were fire Triftram or fire Launcelot or fire Lamorak the good
 kny3 there is none that my3t fyte hym a buffet with a spere/
 Well said Morgan le fay I shalle mete that knyght or it be
 longe tyme / and he dwelle in that countrey

¶ Soo torne we to the damoyfell of the Castel that whanne 20
 Alyfander le Orphelyn hadde foriusted the four Knyghtes she
 called hym to her and said thus / Syre knyghte wolt thou for
 my sake Iuste and fyghte with a knyghte for my sake of this
 countrey that is and hath ben long tyme an euyl neyghbour
 to me / his name is Malgryne / and he wylle not suffer me 25
 to be maryed in no maner wyfe for all that I can doo / or any
 knyght for my sake /

¶ Damoyfel said Alyfander and he come whyles I am he-
 re I wylle fyghte with hym / and my poure body for your sa-
 ke I wille Ieoparde / And there with alle she sente for hym / 30
 for he was at her commaundement / And whan eyther hadde a
 fyghte of other / they made hem redy for to Iuste / and they cam
 to gyder egerly / and Malgryn bryfed his spere vpon Alyfan-
 der / and alifander smote hym ageyne so hard that he bare hym
 quyte from his sadell to the erthe / But this Malgryne aroos 35
 lyghtly and dresseid his sheld and drewe his fuerd / and badde
 hym aly3te / sayēg thou3 thou haue the better of me on horsbak

thow shalt fynde that I shalle endure lyke a knyght on foot
It is wel said said Alyfander / and soo lyghtly he auoyded
his hors and bitoke hym to his varlet / And thenne they raff-
shed to gyders lyke two bores and leyd on their helmes and
5 sheldes long tyme by the space of thre houres that neuer man
coude saye whiche was the better Knyghte

¶ And in the meane whyle came Morgan le fay to the damoy-
fel of the Castel / and they beheld the bataylle / But this mal-
gryne was an olde roted Knyghte / and he was called one of
10 the daungerous knyghtes of the world to doo bataille on foot
but on horsbak there were many better / And euer this Mal-
gryne awayted to flee Alyfander / and soo wounded hym won-
derly fore / that it was merueylle that euer he myghte stande /
for he had bledde soo moche blood / for Alyfander fought wyld-
15 ly and not wyttely / And that other was a felonous knyghte
and awayted hym / and smote hym fore / And somtyme they
raffshed to gyders with their sheldes lyke two bores or rammes
and fylle grouelynge bothe to the erthe /

¶ Now knyghte sayd Malgryn hold thy hand a whyle / &
20 telle me what thow arte / I wylle not said Alyfander / but yf
me lyft / But telle me thy name / and why thow kepest thys
country / or els thow shalt dye of my handes / wete thow well
sayd Malgryne that for this maydens loue of this Castel I
haue slayne ten good knyghtes by myshap / and by outorage
25 and orgulyte of my self I haue slayne ten other knyghtes /
Soo god me helpe sayd Alyfander this is the fowleste confes-
sion that euer I herd knyghte make / nor neuer herd I speke
of other men of suche a shameful confession / wherfore hit were
grete pyte & grete shame vnto me that I shold lete the lyue ony
30 lenger / therfore kepe the as wel as euer thow mayst / for as I
am true knyghte eyther thow shalte flee me or els I shal flee
the / I promyse the feythfully

¶ Thenne they lassed to gyders fyerfly / And at the last A-
lyfander smote Malegryne to the erthe / And thenne he racyd
35 of his helme / and smote of his hede lyghtely /

¶ And whanne he hadde done and ended this bataille / anone
he called to hym his varlet the whiche brought hym his hors
And thene he wenyng to be strong ynou3 wold haue mouëd

And soo she leyd fire Alyfander in an hors lyttar and ledde hym in to the Castel / for he he had no foote ne myzt to stande vpon the erthe / for he had fyxtene grete woundes / and in especial one of them was lyke to be his dethe /

¶ Capitulum xxxviij

Thenne Quene Morgan le fay serched his woundes / 5
and gaf fuche an oynement vnto hym that he shold haue dyed / And on the morne whanne she came to hym he camplayned hym fore / And thenne she put other oynements vpon hym / And thenne he was out of his payne / Thenne cam the damoyfel of the Castel and said vnto Morgan le fay / I 10
pray yow helpe me that this Knyghte myghte wedde me / for he hath wonne me with his handes / ye shalle see said Morgan le fay what I shalle faye Thenne Morgan le fay wente vnto Alyfander and bad in ony wyse that he shold refuse this lady and she desyre to wedde yow / for she is not for yow / Soo the 15
damoyfel came and desyred of hym maryage / damoyfel sayd Orphelyn I thanke yow but as yet I caste me not to marye in this countrey / Syre she said sythen ye will not mary me / I pray yow in soo moche as ye haue wonne me that ye wyl gyue me to a Knyghte of this countrey that hath ben my frende / & 20
loued me many yeres / with alle my herte said Alyfander I wylle assente therto / Thenne was the Knyzte sente for / his name was Geryne le grofe / And anone he made them hand fast / and wedded them / Thenne came Quene Morgan le fay to Alyfander and badde hym aryse and putte hym in an hors lyttar 25
and gaf hym fuche a drynke that in thre dayes and thre nyghtes he waked neuer but slepte / and soo she brought hym to her owne castel that at that tyme was called la Beale regard / Thenne Morgan le fay came to Alyfander and asked hym yf he wold fayne be hole / who wold be seke said Alyfander and he 30
myghte be hole / wel said Morgan le fay thenne shalle ye promyse me by youre knyghthode that this daye twelue monethe and a daye ye shalle not passe the compas of thys Castel / and withoute doubte ye shalle lyghtely be hole / I assente said fire

Alyfaunder / And there he made her a promyse / thenne was he
foone hole / And whanne Alyfander was hole / thenne he repen-
tyd hym of his othe / for he myghte not be reuenged vpon ky-
nge Marke / Ryght soo there came a damoyfel that was cofyn
5 to the Erle of pafe / and she was cofyn to Morgan le fay / and
by ryght that castel of la Beale regard shold haue ben hers
by true enherytaunce / Soo this damoyfel entred in to this cas-
tel / where lay Alyfander / and there she fond hym vpon his bed
passyng heuy and alle sad

¶ Capitulum xxxviii

10 **S**yre knyghte said the damoyfel / and ye wold be mery
I coude telle yow good tydynges / wel were me said
Alyfander / and I myghte here of good tydynges / for now I
stand as a prysoner by my promyse / Syr she sayd wete ye wel
that ye be a prysoner and werse than ye wene / for my lady
15 my cofyn Quene Morgan le fay kepeth yow here for none o-
ther entente but for to doo her pleasyr with yow whan hit ly-
ked her / O Ihesu defende me said Alyfander from suche plea-
syr for I had leuer cutte away my hangers than I wold do
her suche pleasyr / As Ihesu helpe me said the damoyfel / and
20 ye wold loue me and be ruled by me I shalle make youre de-
lyueraunce with your worshyp / Telle me said Alyfander / by
what meane / and ye shalle haue my loue / fayre knyghte sayd
she / this castel of ryght ought to be myn / And I haue an vn-
kel the whiche is a myghty Erle / he is Erle of pafe / and of al
25 folkes he hateth moost Morgan le fay / and I shalle fende vn-
to hym / and praye hym for my sake to destroye this castel / for
the euylle custommes that ben vsed therin / And thenne wylle
he come and sette wylde fyre on euery parte of the castel / and
I shalle gete yow oute at a pryuy posterne / and there shall ye
30 haue your hors and your harneis / ye say wel damoyfel sayd
Alyfander / and thenne she sayd ye may kepe the rome of thys
Castel this twelue moneth / and a day / thenne breke ye not yo-
ur othe / Truly fayr damoyfel said Alyfander ye saye sothe /
And thenne he kyfte her and dyd to her pleasaunce as it plea-
35 sed them bothe at tymes and leysers / Soo anone she sent vnto

her vnkel and badde hym come and destroye that castel / for as
the book faith / he wold haue destroyed that castel afore tyme/
had not that damoyfel ben / Whanne the Erle vnderstood her let-
ters / he fente her word ageyne that on fuche a day he wold co-
me and destroye that castel / Soo whan that day came she she- 5
wed Alyfander a posterne where thorou he shold flee in to a
gardyn / and there he shold fynde his armour and his hors /
Whanne the day came that was fette thydder came the erle of
pafe with four honderd knyghtes / and fette on fyre all the par-
tyes of the castel / that or they seaced they lefte not a stone stan- 10
dyng / And alle this whyle that the fyre was in the Castell/
he abode in the gardyn / And whan the fyre was done / he lete
make a crye that he wold kepe that pyece of erthe / there as the
castel of la beale regard was a twelue monethe and daye /
from alle manere knyghtes that wold come / Soo hit happed 15
there was a duke that hyzte Anſirus / and he was of the kyn
of sir launcelot / And this knyght was a grete pylgrym / for
euery thyrdde yere he wold be at Iherusalem / And by cause he
vſed alle his lyf to goo in pylgremage men called hym duke
Anferus the pylgrym / And this duke had a douȝter that hyzt 20
Alys that was a passyng fayre woman / And by cause of her
fader she was called Alys la beale pylgrym / And anone as
she herd of this crye / she wente vnto Arthurs courte & sayd o-
penly in heryng of many knyghtes / that what Knyghte maye
ouercome that Knyght that kepeth the pyece of erthe shal ha- 25
ue me and alle my landes / whan the Knyghtes of the round
table herd her faye thus / many were gladde / for she was passy-
nge fayre and of grete rentes / Ryght so she lete crye in castels
and townes as faste on her fyde as as Alyfander dyd on his
fyde / Thenne she dresfid her paelione streyghte by the pyece of 30
the erthe that Alyfander kepte / So she was not so soone there/
but there came a Knyght of Arthurs courte that hyghte Sa-
gramore le defyrus / and he proferd to Iuste with Alyfander / &
they encountred / and Sagamore le defyrus bryfed his spere
vpon sire Alyfander / but sire Alyfander smote hym soo harde 35
that he auoyded his fadel / And whanne la Beale Alys sawe
hym Iuste soo wel / she thought hym a passyng goodly knyȝt
on horsbak / And thenne she lepte oute of her paelione / & toke

fir Alyfander by the brydel / and thus ſhe ſayd / fayre knyght
 I requyre the of thy knyghthode / ſhewe me thy vyſage / I dar
 wel ſaid Alyfander ſhewe my vyſage / And thenne he put of
 his helme / and ſhe ſawe his vyſage / ſhe ſaid / O ſwete Iheſu/
 5 the I muſt loue / and neuer other / thenne ſhewe me your vy-
 ſage ſaid he /

¶ Capitulum xxxix

THenne ſhe vnwympeled her vyſage / And whanne he
 ſawe her / he ſaid here haue I fond my loue and my
 lady / Truly fayre lady ſaid he I promyſe yow to be
 10 your knyghte / and none other that bereth the lyf / Now gentil
 knyghte ſaid ſhe telle me your name / My name is ſaid he A-
 lyfander le Orphelyn / Now damoyſel telle me your name ſayd
 he / my name is ſaid ſhe / Alys la beale pilggrym / And whan
 we be more at oure hertes eaſe both ye and I ſhalle telle other
 15 of what blood we be come / Soo there was grete loue betwyxe
 them / And as they thus talked / there came a Knyghte that
 hyghte Harſouſe le Berbuſe and axed parte of fir Alyfan-
 ders ſperes / Thenne ſire Alyfander encountred with hym / and
 at the fyrſt fir Alyfander ſmote hym ouer his hors croupe /
 20 And thenne there came another knyghte that hyzt ſire Hew-
 gon / And ſire Alyfander ſmote hym doune as he dyd that o-
 ther / Thenne ſire Heugon profered to do bataille on foote / ſyre
 Alyfander ouercame hym with thre ſtrokes / and there wold ha-
 ue ſlayne hym had he not yelded hym / Soo thenne Alifander
 25 made bothe tho Knyghtes to ſwere to were none armour in a
 twelue moneth and a day / Thenne ſire Alifander alyzte down
 and wente to reſte hym and reſoſe hym / Thenne the damoyſell
 that halp ſire Alyfander oute of the caſtel in her play told
 Alys all to gyder how he was pryſoner in the caſtel of la bea-
 30 le regard / and there ſhe told her how ſhe gat hym oute of pry-
 ſon / Syr ſaid Alys la Beale pylgrym me ſemeth ye ar moche
 beholdynge to this mayden / that is trouth ſaid fir Alyfander /
 And there Alys told hym of what blood ſhe was come /
 Syre wete ye wel ſhe ſaid that I am of the blood of Kynge
 35 Ban that was fader vnto fir Launcelot ye wys fayr lady ſa-
 yd Alyfander my moder told me that my fader was broder

vnto a kynge / and I am nyghe cofyn vnto fire Tristram / Thē-
 ne this whyle came there thre knyghtes / that one hyzt Vayns /
 and the other hyght Haruys de le marches / and the thyrdde
 hyght Peryn de la montayne / and with one spere sire Alyfan-
 der smote them doune alle thre / and gaf them suche fallys / that 5
 they hadde no lyfte to fyghte vpon foote / Soo he made them to
 swere to were none armes in a twelue moneth / Soo whanne
 they were departed sire Alyfander beheld his lady Alys on
 hors bak as he stood in her pavelione / And thenne was he soo
 enamoured vpon her that he wyft not whether he were on hors- 10
 bak or on foote / Ryght so came the fals Knyght fyr Mordred
 and sawe sir Alyfander was affoted vpon his lady / and ther-
 with alle he took his hors by the brydel / and ledde hym here &
 there / and had cast to haue ledde hym oute of that place to ha-
 ue shamed hym / whanne the damoyfel that halpe hym out of 15
 that Castel sawe how shamefully he was ledde / Anone she le-
 te arme her and sette a shelde vpon her sholder / And ther with
 she mounted vpon his hors / and gatte a naked swerd in her
 hand / and she threst vnto Alyfander with alle her myght / and
 she gaf hym suche a buffet that he thought the fyre flewe oute 20
 of his eyen / And whanne Alyfander felte that stroke he loked
 about hym / and drewe his swerd / And whan he sawe that she
 fledde / and soo dyd Mordred in to the forest / and the damoyfel
 fledde in to the pavelione / So whanne Alyfander vnderstood
 hym self how the fals knyght wold haue shamed hym / hadde 25
 not the damoyfel ben / thenne was he wrothe with hym self that
 fyre Mordred was soo escaped his handes / But thenne sire
 Alyfander and Alys hadde good game at the damoyfel hou-
 sady she hytte hym vpon the helme / ¶ Thenne sir Alyfander
 lusted thus day by day / and on foot he dyd many batails with 30
 many knyghtes of kynge Arthurs court and with many kn-
 yghtes straungers / therfore to telle alle the batails that he did
 it were ouer moche to reherse / for euery day within that twelue
 moneth he had adoo with one Knyght or with other / and some
 day he had adoo with thre or with foure / And there was neuer 35
 knyght that putte hym to the werse / & at the twelue monethes
 ende he departed with his lady Alys la beale pylgrym / and
 the damoyfel wold neuer goo from hym / and soo they went in

to theyr countrey of Benoye / and lyued there in grete Ioye /

¶ Capitulum xl

BVt as the book fayth / kyng marke wold neuer flynte
 tyll he had slayne hym by treason / and by Alys he
 gat a child that hyght Bellengerus le Beuse / and by good
 5 fortune he came to the courte of Kynge Arthur / and preued
 a passyng good Knyghte / and he reuenged his faders dethe
 for the fals Kynge Marke flewe bothe fyre Tristram & Aly-
 fander falsly and felonly / and hit happed so that Alyfander
 hadde neuer grace ne fortune to come to Kynge Arthurs court
 10 For and he had comen to fire launcelot alle knyghtes fayd /
 that knewe hym / he was one of the strengest knyghtes that
 was in Arthurs dayes / and grete dole was made for hym
 Soo lete we of hym passe and torne we to another tale
 So hit befelle that fire Galahalt the haute prynce was lord of
 15 the countrey of Surluse / wherof came many good knyghtes /
 And this noble prynce was a passyng good man of armes
 and euer he helde a noble felauyhyp to gyders / And thenne he
 came to Arthurs court / & told hym his entent / how this was
 his wyll / how he wold lete crye a Iustes in the cōutrey of Sur-
 20 luse / the whiche countrey was within the landes of kynge Ar-
 thur / and there he axed leue to lete crye a Iustes / I wyl gy-
 ue yow leue said Kynge Arthur / But wete thou wel fayd
 Kynge Arthur / I maye not be there / Syre said Quene Gue-
 neuer please hit you to gyue me leue to be at that Iustes / with
 25 ryght good wille said Arthur / for fire Galahalt the haute
 prynce shall haue yow in gouernaunce / Syr said Galahalt I
 wille as ye wylle / fir thenne the quene I wille take with me
 and fuche knyghtes as please me best / do as ye lyst said ky-
 nge Arthur / So anone she commaunded fire Launcelot to ma-
 30 ke hym redy with fuche knyghtes as he thought best / Soo in e-
 uery good towne and castel of this land was made a crye /
 that in the countrey of Surluse fyre Galahalt sholde make a
 Iustes that shold laste eyghte dayes / And how the haute pr-
 ynce with the help of Quene Gueneuers knyghtes shold Iuste

ageyne alle manere of men that wold come / whanne this crye
was known / kynges and prynces / dukes and Erles / Ba-
rons and noble knyghtes made them redy to be at that Iuftes
And at the daye of Iuftyng there came in fire Dynadan / dif-
guyfed / and dyd many grete dedes of armes 5

¶ Capitulum xli

THenne at the request of Quene Gueneuer and of ky-
nge Bagdemagus / fir Laūcelot came in to the rayeng
but he was desguyfed / and that was the cause that fe-
we folke knewe hym / and there mette with hym fir Ector de
marys his owne broder / and eyther brake their speres vpon 10
other to theyr handes / And thenne eyther gate another spere /
And thenne fire launcelot smote doune fyr Ector de marys his
owne broder / That fawe fire Bleoberys / and he smote fir laun-
celot fuche a buffet vpon the helme that he wyft not wel where
he was / Thenne fir launcelot was wrothe / and smote fir Ble- 15
oberys so fore vpon the helme that his hede bowed doune back-
ward / And he smote este another buffet that he auoyded his
fadel / and foo he rode by / and threst forth to the thyckest / whan
the kynge of Northgalys fawe fire Ector and Bleoberys lye
on the ground / thenne was he wroth / for they came on his par- 20
ty ageynst them of Surluse / So the kynge of Northgalys ran
to fire Launcelot / and brake a spere vpon hym all to pyeces
There with fire Launcelot ouertook the kynge of Northgalys
and smote hym fuche a buffet on the helme with his fuerd that
he made hym to auoyde his hors / and anone the kyng was hor- 25
fed ageyne / So bothe the kynge Bagdemagus and the kyng
of Northgalys party hurled to other / and thenne beganne a
stronge medle / but they of Northgalys were ferre bygger
Whanne fire launcelot fawe his party goo to the werft / he th-
range in to the thyckest prees with a fuerd in his hand / & 30
there he smote doune on the ryght hand and on the lyft hand
and pulled doune knyghtes and racyd of their helmes that
alle men hadde wonder that euer one knyght myghte doo fuch
dedes of armes / whanne fire Mellegaunt that was sone vnto
kyng Bagdemagus saw how fir Launcelot ferd / he merueiled 35

gretely / And whan he vnderstood that it was he / he wyft wel
that he was defguysed for his sake / Thenne sire Malegeaunt
prayd a Knyghte to flee sir launcelots hors outhur with fuerd
or with spere / At that tyme Kynge Bagdemagus mette wyth
5 a Knyghte that hyght Saufeyse a good knyghte / to whom he
fayd / Now fayr Saufeyse encounter with my sone Malege-
aunt / and gyue hym large payment / for I wold he were well
beten of thy handes that he myghte departe oute of this feld /
And thenne sir Saufeyse encountred with fyre Malegeaunt /
10 and eyther smote other doune / And thēne they fought on fo-
te / and there Saufeyse had wonne fyre Malegeaunt / hadde not
there come rescowes / So thenne the haute prynce blewe to lod-
gyng / And euery knyghte vnarmed hym / and wente to the
grete feest / ¶ Thenne in the meane whyle there came a damoy-
15 fel to the haute prynce / and complayned that there was a kn-
yghte that hyght Goneryes that withhelde her alle her landes
Thenne the knyghte was there presente and caste his gloue to
hym or to any that wold fyghte in her name / Soo the damoy-
fel took vp the gloue alle heuily for defaute of a champion /
20 Thenne there came a varlet to her and fayd damoyfel / wille ye
doo after me / ful fayne said the damoyfel / thenne goo ye vnto
suche a knyght that lyeth here befyde in an ermytage / and that
foloweth the questyng best / and pray hym to take the bataille
vpon hym / and anone I wote wel he wille graunte yow /
25 ¶ So anone she took her palfroy / and within a whyle she fond
that knyght that was sire Palomydes / And whan she requy-
red hym / he armed hym and rode with her / and made her to go
to the haute prynce / and to aske leue for her kynght to doo ba-
tail / I wille wel said the haute prynce / Thenne the knyghtes
30 were redy in the feld to luste on horsbak / and eyther gatte a
spere in their handes and mette soo fyrfly to gyders that the-
ir speres alle to sheurd / Thenne they flange out fwerdes / and
syr Palomydes smote sire Gonereys doune to the erthe / And
thenne he racyd of his helme and smote of his hede / Thenne
35 they wente to souper / and the damoyfel loued Palomydes as
peramour / but the book saith she was of his kyn / Soo thenne
Palomydes defguysed hym self in this manere / in his shelde
he bare the questyng beest and in alle his trappours / ¶ And

whanne he was thus redy / he sente to the haute prynce to gyue hym leue to Iuste with other knyghtes / but he was adoubted of fire launcelot / The haute prynce sente hym word ageyne / that he shold be welcome / and that fyre Launcelot shold not Iuste with hym / Thenne fire Galahalt the haute prynce lete 5 crye what knyght someuer he were that smote doune fir Palomydes shold haue his damoyfel to hym self /

¶ Capitulum xliij

Here begynneth the second daye / anone as fire Palomydes came in to the felde / fyr Galahalt the haute prynce was at the raunge ende / and mette with fire Palomydes 10 / and he with hym with grete speres / And thenne they cam soo hard to gyders that their speres alle to sheuered / But fyr Galahalt smote hym soo hard that he bare hym backward ouer his hors / but yet he lost not his styropes / ¶ Thenne they drewe their swerdes and lashed to gyder many fadde strokes / that 15 many worshipful knyghtes lefte their besynes to behold them But at the last fire Galahalt the haut prynce smote a stroke of myghte vnto Palomydes fore vpon the helme / but the helme was soo hard that the swerd myght not byte but flypped and smote of the hede of the hors of fir Palomydes / whan the haut 20 prynce wyft and sawe the good knyght falle vnto the erthe / he was ashamed of that stroke / And there with he alyghte doune of his owne hors / and prayd the good knyghte Palomydes to take that hors of his yeste / and to forgyue hym that dede / Syre said Palomydes I thanke yow of your grete good- 25 nes / for euer of a man of worship / a knyghte shalle neuer haue disworship / and soo he mounted vpon that hors / and the haute prynce had another anone / Now said the haute prynce I relece to yow that maiden / for ye haue wonne her / A said palomydes the damoyfel and I be at your commaundement / So 30 they departed and fire Galahalt dyd grete dedes of armes / And ryght soo came Dynadan / and encountred with fyr Galahalt / and eyther came to other so fast with their speres that their speres brak to their handes / But Dynadan had wende the haute prynce had ben more wery than he was / And thenne 35

he smote many fadde frokes at the haute prynce / but whan dynadan sawe he myght not gete hym to the erthe / he said My lord I pray yow leue me / and take another / the haute prynce knewe not Dynadan / and lefte goodely for his fayr wordes /
 5 And soo they departed / but soone there came another / and told the haute prynce that hit was Dynadan / for soth sayd the prynce therfor am I heuy that he is soo escaped from me / for with his mockes and lapes / now shalle I neuer haue done with hym / And thenne Galahalt rode fast after hym / and bad hym
 10 abyde Dynadan for kynge Arthurs sake / Nay said Dynadan foo god me helpe we mete no more to gyder this daye / Thenne in that wrathe the haute prynce mette with Melyagaunt / and he smote hym in the throte that and he had fallen his neck had broken / and with the same spere he smote doune another knyght /
 15 Thenne came in they of Northgalys / and many straügers and were lyke to haue putte them of Surluse to the werse / for fyr Galahalt the haut prynce had ouer moche in hand / Soo there came the good knyghte Semound the valyaunt wyth fourty knyghtes / and he bete them al abak / Thenne the Que-
 20 ne Gueneuer and sire launcelot lete blowe the lodgyng / and euery knyghte vnarmed hym / and dresfid hem to the feeste /

¶ Capitulum xliii

WHanne Palomydes was vnarmed he axed lodgyng for hym self and the damoyfel / Anone the haute prynce commaunded them to lodgyng / And he was not so soone
 25 in his lodgyng / but there came a Knyghte that hyght Archade / he was broder vnto Gomoryes that Palomydes slewe afore in the damoyfels quarel / And this Knyght Archade called fyre Palomydes traytour / and appelyd hym for the dethe of his broder / By the leue of the haute prynce sayd Palomydes
 30 I shalle ansuer the / whan sire Galahalt vnderstood theyre quarel / he badde them goo to dyner / and as soone as ye haue dyned / loke that eyther knyghte be redy in the felde / So when they hadde dyned they were armed bothe / and tooke their hors-
 35 to behold them / and soo they lete renne their horses / and there fir Palomydes bare Archade on his spere ouer his hors tayle

And thenne Palomydes alyght and drewe his fwerd / but
 fyr Archade myght not aryse / and there fyr Palomydes racyd
 of his helme / and fmote of his hede / ¶ Thenne the haute prynce
 and Quene Gueneuer wente vnto fouper / ¶ Thenne Kyng
 Bagdemagus sente aweye his sone Melyagaunt by cause fyr 5
 Launcelot shold not mete with hym / for he hated fire launce-
 lot / and that knewe he not

¶ Capitulum xliiiij

Now begynneth the thyrdde daye of Iuftyng / and att
 that daye Kyng Bagdemagus made hym redy / and
 there came ageynst hym kyng Marfyl / that had in yeste an 10
 Iland of fyre Galahalt the haute prynce / And this yland
 had the name Pomytayne / Thenne hit befelle that Kyng Bag-
 demagus and kyng Marfyl of Pomytayne mette to gyders
 with speres / and Kyng Marfyl had fuche a buffet that he
 felle ouer his hors croupe ¶ Thenne came therin a 15

Knyght of Kyng Marfyl to reuenge his lord / And kyng
 Bagdemagus fmote hym doune hors and man to the erthe

¶ Soo there came an Erle that hyght arrouse / and sir Breuse
 and an honderd knyghtes with hem of Pometyne / and the
 Kyng of Northgalys was with hem / And alle these were a- 20
 ageynst them of Surluse / And thenne there beganne grete ba-
 taylle / and many Knyghtes were caste vnder hors feet / And
 euer Kyng Bagdemagus dyd best / for he fyrste beganne / &
 euer he helde on / Gaherys Gawayns broder fmote euer at the
 face of Kyng Bagdemagus / And at the laste kyng Bag- 25
 demagus hurtled doune Gaherys hors and man

¶ Thenne by aduenture fyre Palomydes the good Knyghte
 mette with fyre Bleoberys de Ganys / fyre Bleoberys broder/
 And eyther fmote other with grete speres / that both theyre hor-
 ses and Knyghtes felle to the erthe / But fyre Blamore had 30
 fuche a falle that he had al mooft broken his neck / for the blo-
 od brafte oute at nose / mouthe and his eres / but at the laste he
 recouerd well by good surgyens / Thenne therecam in the duke

Chaleyns of Claraunce and in his gouernaunce there came
 a knyghte that hyghte Elys la noyre / And there encountred
 with hym Kynge Bagdemagus / and he smote Elys that he
 made hym to auoyde his fadel / ¶ Soo the Duke Chaleyns of
 5 Claraunce dyd there grete dedes of armes / and of foo late as
 he came in the thyrdde daye there was no man dyd foo wel ex-
 cepte kynge Bagdemagus and fire Palomydes that the pryce
 was gyuen that day to Kynge Bagdemagus /

¶ And thenne they blewe vnto lodgyng and vnarmed hem
 10 and wente to the feest / ¶ Ryght foo came Dynadan and moc-
 ked and Iaped with Kynge Bagdemagus that alle knygh-
 tes lough at hym / for he was a fyne Iaper and wel louynge
 alle good knyghtes / ¶ Soo anone as they had

dyned / there came a varlet berynge foure speres on his bak / &
 15 he came to Palomydes / & fayd thus / here is a Knyzte by hath
 sente yow the choyse of foure speres / and requyreth yow for yo-
 ur lady sake to take that one half of these speres / and Iuste
 with hym in the felde / ¶ Telle hym said Palomydes I wyll
 not fayle hym / whanne fire Galahalt wyfte of this / he badde
 20 Palomydes make hym redy / ¶ So the Quene Gueneuer the
 haute prynce and fire Launcelot they were set vpon schafhol-
 des to gyue the Iugement of these two Knyghtes /

¶ Thenne fyre Palomydes and the straunge knyght ranne fo-
 egerly to gyders that their speres brake to their handes / Anon
 25 with alle eyther of them tooke a grete spere in his hand and
 alle to sheuered them in pyeces / And thenne eyther tooke a
 gretter spere / And thenne the knyghte smote doune fyre Pa-
 lomydes hors and man to the erthe / And as he wold haue
 passed ouer hym / the straunge knyghtes hors stumbled and
 30 felle doune vpon Palomydes

¶ Thenne they
 drewe their fwerdes and lassed to gyders wonderly fore a gre-
 te whyle / ¶ Thenne the haute prynce and fire Launcelot fayd
 they sawe neuer two knyghtes fyghte better than they dyd /
 but euer the straunge knyght doubled his strokes / and putte
 35 Palomydes abak / there with alle the haute prynce cryed hoo /
 and thenne they wente to lodgyng / And whanne they were
 vnarmed / they knewe hit was the noble knyzt fyr Lamorak
 ¶ Whanne fyr Launcelot knewe that hit was fir Lamorak he

made moche of hym / for aboute alle erthely men he loued hym
 best excepte sire Tristram / ¶ Thenne Quene Gueneuer
 commended hym / and so dyd alle other good knyghtes made
 moche of hym excepte sire Gawayns bretheren / Thenne quene
 Gueneuer said vnto sire launcelot fyr I requyre yow that & 5
 ye Iuste ony more / that ye Iuste with none of the blood of my
 lord Arthur / so he promysed he wold not as at that tyme

¶ Capitulum xlv

Here begynneth the fourthe daye / thenne came in to the
 felde the kynge with the honderd knyghtes / and alle
 they of Northgalys and the duke chaleyns of Cla- 10
 raunce / and Kynge Marsyl of pomatyn / and there came Sa-
 fyr Palomydes broder / and there he told hym tydynges of his
 moder / and his name was called the Erle / And so
 he appeled hym afore kynge Arthur / for he made warre vpon
 oure fader and moder / and there I slewe hym in playne ba- 15
 taille / Soo they wente in to the feld / and the damoyfel wyth
 them / and there came to encountre ageyne them sire Bleober-
 rys de ganys / and sire Ector de marys / sire Palomydes encoū-
 tred with sire Bleoberys / and eyther smote other doune / And
 in the same wyse dyd sire Safere and sire Ector / and tho two 20
 couples dyd bataille on foote / Thenne came in sire Lamorak &
 he encountred with the kynge with the honderd knyghtes / and
 smote hym quyte ouer his hors tayle / And in the same wyse
 he serued the kynge of Northgalys / and also he smote doune
 Kynge Marsyl / And so or euer he stynte / he smote doune with 25
 his spere and with his fuerd thyrty knyghtes whan Duke
 Chaleyns sawe Lamorak doo so grete prowesse / he wolde not
 medle with hym for shame / and thenne he charged all his kn-
 yghtes in payne of dethe that none of yow touche hym / For hit
 were shame to alle good knyghtes and that Knyght were sha- 30
 med /

¶ Thenne the two Kynges gadred
 them to gyders / and alle they sette vpon sire Lamorak / and
 he faylled them not / but raffhed here and there smytyng on the
 ryght hand and on the lyfte & racyd of many helmes / so that

the haute prynce and Quene Gueneuer said they sawe neuer knyghte do suche dedes of armes on horsbak / Allas sayd Launcelot to kynge Bagdemagus / I wylle arme me / and helpe fyre Lamorak / and I wylle ryde with yow said kyng bagdemagus / And whanne they two were horsed they came to fir
 5 Lamorak that stood amonge thyrty knyghtes / and wel was hym that myght retche hym a buffet / and euer he smote ageyn myghtely / Thenne came there in to the prees fir launcelot / and he threwe doune fir Mador de la porte / And with the trunche-
 10 on of that spere he threwe doune many knyghtes / And kynge Bagdemagus smote on the lyfte hand and on the ryzt hand merueylously wel / And thenne the thre kynges fledde abak There with all thenne fire Galahalt lete blowe to lodgyng / & alle the heroudes gaf fire Lamorak the pryce / ¶ And alle this
 15 whyle foughte Palomydes / fire Bleoberys / fire Safere / fire Ector on foot / neuer were there foure knyghtes euener matched / And thenne they were departed and had vnto their lodgyng and vnarmed hem / and soo they wente to the grete feest / But whanne fire Lamorack was come in to the courte quene
 20 Gueneuer took hym in her armes and sayd fyr wel haue ye done this daye / Thenne came the haute prynce and he maade of hym grete Ioye / and soo dyd Dynadan for he wepte for Ioye But the Ioye that fire Launcelot made of fire Lamorak there myghte no man telle / thenne they wente vnto rest / and on the
 25 morne the haute prynce lete blowe vnto the felde

¶ Capitulum xlvj

The begynneth the fyfthe daye / soo hit befelle that fyre Palomydes came in the morne tyde / and profered to Iuste there as kynge Arthur was in a Castel there besydes Surluse / and there encountred with hym a worshipful
 30 duke / and there fire Palomydes smote hym ouer his hors croupe / And this duke was vnkel vnto kynge Arthur / Thenne fire Elyfes sone rode vnto Palomydes / and Palomydes ferued Elyfe in the same wyse / whanne fire Vwayne sawe thys

he was wrothe / Thenne he took his hors / and encountred with
 fyr Palomydes / and Palomydes smote hym soo hard / that he
 wente to the erthe hors and man / And for to make a short ta-
 le / he smote doune thre bretheren of fyre Gawayns / that is for
 to say Mordred Gaherys and Agrauayne / O Ihesu said Ar- 5
 thur this is a grete despyte of a Sarafyn that he shalle smyte
 doune my blood / And there with alle kyng Arthur was wo-
 ode wrothe / and thoughte to haue made hym redy to Iuste /
 That aspyed fyre Lamorak that Arthur and his blood were
 difcomfyte / And anone he was redy and axed Palomydes 10
 yf he wold ony more Iuste / why shold I not said Palomy-
 des / Thenne they hurtled to gyders and brake their speres / and
 alle to sheuerd them / that alle the castel range of theyr dyn-
 tys / Thenne eyther gate a gretter spere in his hand / and they
 came soo fyersly to gyders / but fir Palomydes spere all to braft 15
 and fyre Lamorak dyd holde / there with alle fyre Palomydes
 loft his steroppes and lay vp ryght on his horsbak / And the-
 ne fyre Palomydes retorned ageyne and took his damoyfel /
 and fyre Safere retorned his way / Soo whan he was departed
 kyng Arthur came to fyr Lamorak and thanked hym of his 20
 goodnes / and prayd hym to telle hym his name / Syr sayd
 Lamorak wete thow wel / I owe yow my seruyse / but as att
 this tyme I wylle not abyde here / for I see of myn enemyes
 many aboute me

¶ Allas sayd Arthur now wote
 I wel / it is fyre Lamorak de galys / O Lamorak abyde with 25
 me / and by my croune I shalle neuer fayle the / and not soo
 hardy in Gawayns hede / nor none of his bretheren to doo the
 ony wronge /

Syre said fyre Lamorak wronge haue
 they done me and to yow bothe / That is trouth sayd the kyng
 for they flewe theyre owne moder and my fyfter / the whiche 30
 me fore greueth / It hadde ben moche fayrer and better that ye
 had wedded her / for ye are a kynges sone as wel as they

¶ O Ihesu sayd the noble Knyght fyre Lamorack vnto Ar-
 thur her dethe shalle I neuer forgete / I promyse yow and ma-
 ke myn auowe vnto god I shalle reuenge her dethe as soone 35
 as I see tyme conenable / And yf hit were not at the reuerence
 of your hyhenes / I shold now haue ben reuenged vpon fyre
 Gawayn & his bretheren / truly said arthur I wil make you at

acord / Syr said Lamorak as at this tyme I may not abyde
 with yow / for I muste to the Iustes / where is fyre launcelot
 and the haute prynce fyre Galahalt / Thenne there was a da-
 moyfel that was doughter to kyng Bandes / and there was
 5 a Sarafyn knyghte that hyghte Corfabryn / and he loued the
 damoyfel / and in no wyse he wold suffre her to be maryed / for
 euer this Corfabryn noyfed her and named her that she was
 oute of her mynde / and thus he lette her that she myght not be
 maryed

¶ Capitulum xliiij

10 **S**oo by fortune this damoyfel herd telle that Palomy-
 des dyd moche for damoyfels sake / soo she sent to hym
 a pensel / and prayd hym to fyghte with fyre Corfabryn
 for her loue / and he shold haue her / and her landes of her fa-
 ders that shold falle to her / Thenne the damoyfel sente vnto cor-
 15 fabryn and badde hym goo vnto fyr Palomydes that was a
 paynym as wel as he / and she gaf hym warnyng that she had
 sente hym her pensel / and yf he myghte ouercome Palomydes
 she wold wedde hym / whanne Corfabryn wyft of her dedes /
 then was he wood wroth and angry / and rode vnto Sur-
 20 luse where the haute prynce was / and there he fond fyre Pa-
 lomydes redy the whiche had the pensel / Soo there they waged
 batail either with other afore Galahalt / wel said the haute pr-
 ynce / this daye muste noble knyghtes Iuste / and at after dy-
 ner we shall see how ye can spede / Thenne they blewe to Iustes
 25 And in cam Dynadan / and mette with sir Geryn a good kn-
 yght / and he threwe hym doune ouer his hors croupe / and fyre
 Dynadan ouerthrewe four knyghtes moo / and there he dyd gre-
 te dedes of armes / for he was a good knygt / but he was a scof-
 fer / and a Iaper and the meryest knyght among felauship that
 30 was that tyme lyuyng / And he hadde suche a customme that
 he loued euery good knyghte / and euery good knyght loued
 hym ageyne / ¶ Soo thenne whanne the
 haute prynce sawe Dynadan doo soo wel / he sente vnto fyre la-
 uncelot / and bad hym stryke doune fyre Dynadan / And whan
 35 that ye haue done so brynge hym afore me and the noble quene

Gueneuer / Thenne fir Launcelot dyd as he was requyred /
 Thenne fire Lamorak and he smote doune many knyghtes / &
 racyd of helmes / and drofe alle the knyghtes afore them
 And soo fire Launcelot smote doune fire Dynadan / and ma-
 de his men to vnarme hym / and soo brought hym to the quene 5
 and the haute prynce and they lough at dynadan so fore that
 they myghte not stande / wel said fire Dynadan yet haue I no
 shame / for the old shrewe fire Launcelot smote me doune / So
 they wente to dyner / alle the Courte had good sporte at Dy-
 nadan

¶ Thenne whanne the dyner was done / they 10
 blewe to the felde to beholde fire Palomydes and Corfabryn /
 Syre Palomydes pyght his pensell in myddes of the felde / &
 thēne they hurtled to gyders with their speres as it were thon-
 der / and eyther smote other to the erthe / And thenne they pul-
 led oute their swardes / and dresid their sheldes / and lashed 15
 to gyders myghtely as myghty knyghtes / that wel nyghe there
 was no pyece of harneis wold hold them / for this Corfabryn
 was a passynge felonous knyghte / Corfabryn said Palomy-
 des wylte thou releace me yonder damoyfel / and the pensell /
 Thenne was Corfabryn wrothe oute of mesure / and gaf Palo- 20
 mydes suche a buffet that he kneled on his knee /

¶ Thenne Palomydes arose lyghtely / and smote hym vpon
 the helme / that he felle doune ryzt to the erthe / And ther with
 he racyd of his helme / and sayd Corfabryn yelde the or ellys
 thou shalt dye of my handes / Fy on the said Corfabryn / doo 25
 thy werst / thenne he smote of his hede / And there with all cam
 a stynte of his body whan the soule departed / that there myzt
 no body abyde the fauoure / Soo was the corps hadde awaye
 and buryed in a wood by cause he was a paynym /

¶ Thenne they blewe vnto lodgyng / and Palomydes was 30
 vnarmed

¶ Thenne he wente vnto Quene Gue-
 neuer / to the haute prynce / and to fyre launcelot / ¶ Syre sayd
 the haute prynce / here haue ye sene this day a grete myrakel by
 Corfabryn / what fauour there was whanne the soule departed
 from the body / There for fyre we wylle requyre yow to take the 35
 baptyvm vpon yow / and I promyse yow alle knyghtes wyl
 sette the more by yow / and say more worship by yow

¶ Syre said Palomydes I wille that ye alle knowe / that in

to this land I came to be crystened / and in my herte I am
 crystened / and crystend wille I be / ¶ But I
 haue made fuche an auowe that I maye not be crystend tyl I
 haue done feuen true batails for Ihesus sake / And thenne wil
 5 I be crystend / And I truste god wylle take myn entent for
 I meane truly / Thenne sire Palomydes prayed Quene Gue-
 neuer and the haute prynce to soupe with hym / And soo they
 dyd bothe sire Launcelot and sire Lamorak / and many other
 good knyghtes / Soo on the morne they herd their masse / and
 10 blewe the felde / and thenne knyghtes made them redy /

¶ Capitulum xlviii

Here begynneth the fyxthe day / Thenne came therin fyr
 Gaherys / and there encountred with hym fyre Offaife
 of Surluse / and sire Gaherys smote hym ouer his hors
 croupe / And thenne eyther party encountred with other / and
 15 there were many speres broken / and many knyghtes cast vn-
 der feete / ¶ Soo there came in sire Dornard and sire Aglouale
 that were bretheren vnto sire Lamorak / and they mette with o-
 ther two knyghtes / and eyther smote other soo hard that all
 four knyghtes and horses felle to the erthe / whan sire Lamo-
 20 rak sawe his two bretheren doune / he was wrothe out of me-
 sure / And thenne he gat a grete spere in his hand / and there
 with alle he smote doune four good knyghtes / and thenne his
 spere brake / Thenne he pulled oute his suerd / and smote abo-
 ute hym on the ryght hand and on the lyfte hand / and ra-
 25 cyd of helmes and pulled doune knyghtes that alle men mer-
 ueyllled of fuche dedes of armes as he dyd / for he ferd so that
 many knyghtes fledde / Thenne he horsed his bretheren ageyne
 and sayd bretheren ye oughte to be ashamed to falle so of yo-
 ur horses / What is a Knyght but whan he is on horfbak / I sett
 30 not by a knyght whanne he is on foote / for all batails on fo-
 te ar but pelowres batails / For there shold no Knyghte fygh-
 te on foote / but yf hit were for treason / or els he were dryuen
 therto by force / therfore bretheren fytte faste on your horses or
 els fyghte neuer more afore me / with that cam in the duke

Chaleyns of Claraunce / and there encountred with hym the
 Erle Vlbawes of Surlufe / and eyther of hem smote other do-
 une / Thenne the knyghtes of bothe partyes horsed their lordes
 ageyne / for fyr Ector and Bleoberys were on foote wayty-
 nge on the duke Chaleyns / And the kynge with the honderd 5
 knyghtes was with the erle of Vlbawes / With that came Ga-
 herys / and lashed to the Kynge with the honderd Knyghtes
 and he to hym ageyne / Thenne came the Duke Chaleyns / and
 departed them / thenne they blewe to lodgyng / and the kny-
 tes vnarmed them and drewe them to their dyner / and atte 10
 myddes of their dyner in came Dynadan and beganne to ray-
 le / Thenne he beheld the haute prynce that semed wrothe with
 fomme faute that he sawe / for he hadde a customme he loued no
 fyssh / and by cause he was serued with fyssh / the whiche he
 hated therfore he was not mery / Whan sir Dynadan had aspy- 15
 ed the haute prynce / he aspyed where was a fyssh with a gre-
 te hede / and that he gatte betwixe two dysshes / and serued the
 haute prynce with that fyssh / And thenne he said thus / sir ga-
 lahalt wel may I lyken yow to a wolf / for he wille neuer ete
 fyssh but flesshe / thenne the haute prynce lough at his wordes 20
 Wel wel said Dynadan to launcelot / what deuylle doo ye in
 this Countrey / for here may no meane knyghtes wyne no wor-
 ship for the / sir Dynadan said Laūcelot I ensure the I shalle
 no more mete with the nor with thy grete spere / for I maye
 not fytte in my fadel when that spere hyttyth me / And yf I 25
 be happy I shalle beware of that boystous body that thow be-
 rest / wel said launcelot make good watche euer / god forbe-
 de that euer we mete but yf hit be at a dysshe of mete / Thenne
 lough the Quene and the haute prynce / that they myghte not
 fytte at their table / thus they made grete Ioye tyl on the morn 30
 And thenne they herd masse / and blewe to felde / And quene
 Gueneuer and all the estates were fet and Iuges armed cle-
 ne with their sheldes to kepe the ryghte

¶ Capitulum xlii

A Ow begynneth the feuenth bataill / there cam in the du-
 ke Cambynes / and there encountred with hym fyr A-
 ryftaunce that was counted a good knyghte / & they
 mette soo hard that eyther bare other doune hors and man
 5 ¶ Thenne came there the Erle of lambayle and helped the du-
 ke ageyne to hors / Thenne came there fyr Offayse of Surlufe /
 and he smote the erle Lambayle doune from his hors / Thenne
 beganne they to doo grete dedes of armes / and many speres we-
 re broken / and many knyghtes were caste to the erthe
 10 ¶ Thenne the kyng of Northgalys and the Erle Vlbowes
 smote to gyders that alle the Iuges thought it was lyke mor-
 tal dethe / This meane whyle quene Gueneuer and the haute
 prynce and fyr laūcelot made there fyre Dynadan make hym
 redy to Iuste / I wold said Dynadan ryde in to the felde / but
 15 thenne one one of yow tweyne wille mete with me / Per dieu
 sayd the haute prynce ye maye see hou we fyttre here as Iuges
 with oure sheldes / and alweyes mayst thow beholde whether
 we fyttre here or not / Soo fyr Dynadan departed and tooke
 his hors and mette with many knyghtes / and dyd passynge
 20 wel / And as he was departed / fyre Launcelot desguyfed hym
 self / and putte vpon his armour a maydens garment fresshe-
 ly attyered / Thenne fyre Launcelot made fyre Galyhodyn to le-
 de hym thorough the raunge / and alle men had wonder what
 damoyfel it was / And soo as fyre Dynadan came in to the
 25 raunge / fyre Launcelot that was in the damoyfels araye gatte
 Galyhodyns spere and ranne vnto fir Dynadan / And alwa-
 yes fyre Dynadan lokd vp there as fyre Launcelot was / and
 thenne he sawe one fyttre in the stede of fyre Launcelot armed /
 But whanne Dynadan sawe a maner of a damoyfel he drad
 30 peryls that it was fyre launcelot desguyfed / but fyre Launce-
 lot came on hym so fast that he smote hym ouer his hors cro-
 upe / and thenne grete scornes gate fyre Dynadan in to the
 foreft there befyde / & there they dispoyllled hym vnto his sherte
 and putte vpon hym a womans garment / and so brought hym
 35 in to the felde / and soo they blewe vnto lodgyng / And eury
 knyght wente and vnarmed them / thenne was fir Dynadan
 brought in among them alle / And whanne Quene Gueneuer
 sawe fir Dynadan brought soo amonge them alle / thenne she

lough that she fylle doune / and foo dyd alle that there were /
 Wel sayd Dynadan to launcelot thow arte foo fals that I can
 neuer beware of the / Thenne by alle the affente they gaf fyre
 Launcelot the pryce / the next was sire Lamorak de galys / the
 thyrd was sire Palomydes / the fourthe was kynge Bagdema- 5
 gus / foo these four Knyghtes had the pryce / and there was
 grete Ioye / and grete nobley in alle the Courte / And on the
 morne Quene Gueneuer and sire Launcelot departed vnto ky-
 nge Arthur / but in noo wyse sire Lamorak wold not go with
 them I shalle vndertake said sire launcelot that and ye wyll 10
 goo with vs / kynge Arthur shalle charge fyre Gawayne and
 his bretheren / neuer to doo yow hurte / As for that sayd fyre
 Lamorak I wylle not truste sire Gawayne nor none of his
 bretheren / and wete ye wel sire Launcelot / and hit were not for
 my lord Kynge Arthurs sake / I shold matche sire Gawayn 15
 and his bretheren wel ynouȝ / But to say that I shold truste
 them / that shal I neuer / and therfor I pray you recomma-
 unde me vnto my lord Arthur and vnto alle my lordes of the
 round table / And in what place that euer I come I shal do
 you seruyse to my power / and sire it is but late that I reuen- 20
 gyd that whan my lord Arthurs kynne were put to the werse
 by sire Palomydes / Thenne sire Lamorak departed from sire laū-
 celot / and eyther wepte at their departynge

¶ Capitulum I

Now torne we fro this mater / and speke we of sire trif-
 tram of whome this booke is pryncipal of / and leue 25
 we the kynge and the quene / sire Launcelot / and fyre
 Lamorak / and here begynneth the treason of kynge Marke that
 he ordeyned ageynst sire Triftram / There was cryed by the cos-
 tes of Cornewaile a grete turnement and Iustes / and al was
 done by sire Galahalt the haut prynce / and kynge Bagdema- 30
 gus to the entent to flee Launcelot or els vtterly destroye hym
 and shame hym / by cause sire launcelot had alweyes the hyher
 degree / therfore this prynce and this kynge made this Iustes
 ageynst sire Launcelot / And thus her couceyll was discouerd

vnto Kyng Marke wherof he was ful gladde / Thenne Kyng
 Marke bethoughte hym that he wold haue fyre Triftram vnto
 that turnement desguyfed that no man shold knowe hym / to
 that entente that the haute prynce shold wene that fir Triftram
 5 were fyre launcelot / Soo at thise Iustes came in fyr Triftram/
 And at that tyme fyre launcelot was not there / but whan they
 sawe a Knyzt desguyfed doo fuche dedes of armes / they wende
 hit had been fir launcelot / And in especyal Kyng Mark sayd
 hit was fyre launcelot playnly / Thenne they sette vpon hym
 10 bothe Kyng Bagdemagus and the haute prynce and theyre
 Knyghtes that hit was wonder that euer fyre Triftram myght
 endure that payne / Not withstandynge for alle the payne that
 he had fyr Triftram wanne the degree at that turnement / and
 there he hurte many Knyztes and bryfed them / and they hurte
 15 hym and bryfed hym wonderly fore / ¶ So whanne the Iustes
 were alle done / they knewe wel that hit was fyre Triftram de
 Lyones / and all that were on Kyng markes party were glad
 that fir Triftram was hurte / and the remenaunt were fory of
 his hurte / for fyre Triftram was not soo behated as was fyre
 20 Launcelot within the Reame of Englund / Thenne came Kyng
 Marke vnto fyre Triftram / and sayd fayre neuewe I am so-
 ry of your hurtes / Gramercy my lord said fyre Triftram /
 ¶ Thenne Kyng Marke made fir Triftram to be putte in an
 hors bere in grete fygne of loue / and said fayre cosyn I shalle
 25 be your leche my self / and soo he rode forthe with fyre Triftram
 and brought hym to a Castel by day lyghte / And thenne Ky-
 nge Mark made fyre Triftram to ete / And thenne after he gaf
 hym a drynke / the whiche as soone as he had dronke / he fell on
 slepe / And whanne it was nyghte he made hym to be caryed to
 30 another castel / and there he putte hym in a stronge pryson / &
 there he ordeyned a man and a woman to gyue hym his mete
 and drynke / Soo there he was a grete whyle / thenne was fyr
 Triftram myssed / and no creature wyft where he was become
 When la beale Ifoud herd hou he was myssed pryuely she went
 35 vnto fir Sadok & praid hym to aspye where was fir Triftram
 Thenne when Sadok wyft hou fir triftram was myssed & anon
 aspyed that he was put in pryson by kyng mark & the traito-
 urs of Magōs / thēne sadok & two of his cosyns leid them in an

enbuffement fast by the castel of Tyntagyl in armes / And
 as by fortune there came rydyng Kynge Marke and foure
 of his neuwes / and a certayn of the traytours of Magouns
 Whanne sir Sadok aspyed them / he brake oute of the buffhe-
 ment / and fette there vpon them / And whan kynge Mark as- 5
 pyed fire Sadok / he fledde as fast as he myghte / and there sir
 Sadok flewe alle the four neuwes vnto Kynge Marke /
 But these traitours of Magons flewe one of Sadoks cosyns
 a grete wound in the neck / but Sadok smote the other to the
 dethe / Thenne sir Sadok rode vpon his way vnto a Castel that 10
 was called Lyonas / and there he aspyed of the treason and fe-
 lony of kynge Marke / Soo they of that castel rode with fyre
 Sadok tyl that they came to a Castel that hyghte Arbray / &
 there in the tounne they fond fyre Dynas the Seneschal / that
 was a good Knyght / But whan fire Sadok had told fyre 15
 Dynas of alle the treason of Kynge Marke / he defyed fuche a
 Kynge / and sayd he wold gyue vp his landes that he held of
 hym / And whanne he said these wordes alle manere Knygh-
 tes sayd as fyre Dynas said / Thenne by his aduys and of
 fire Sadoks he lete stuffe alle the townes and Castels within 20
 the Countrey of Lyones and assembled alle the peple that they
 myght make

¶ Capitulum li

Now torne we vnto Kynge Marke that whan he was
 escaped from sir Sadok / he rode vnto the Castel of Tyn-
 tagyl / and there he made grete crye and noyse / & cry- 25
 ed vnto harneis alle that myghte bere armes / Thenne they fo-
 ught and fond where were dede four cosyns of kyng Markes
 and the traytour of Magouns / Thenne the kynge lete entyere
 them in a chappel / thenne the kynge lete crye in alle the coun-
 trey that helde of hym to goo vnto armes / for he vnderstood 30
 to the werre he must nedes / Whanne Kynge Marke herde and
 vnderstood how fyre Sadok and sir Dynas were aryfen in the
 Countrey of Lyones / he remembryd of wyles and treason / Lo
 thus he dyd / he lete make and counterfete letters from the pope

and dyd make a straunge clerke to bere them vnto kyng mar-
 rk / the whiche letters specyfied that kynge Marke shold ma-
 ke hym redy vpon payne of curfying with his hooft to come to
 the pope to helpe to goo to Iherusalem for to make warre vp-
 5 on the Sarafyns / whan this clerk was come by the meane of
 the Kynge / anone with alle kyng marke sente these letters vn-
 to fire Triftram and badde hym faye thus / that and he wold
 goo werre vpon the mescreauntes / he shold be had oute of pry-
 son / and to haue alle his power / Whanne fire Triftram vnder-
 10 stood this letter / thenne he sayd thus to the Clerke / A kynge
 Marke euer haft thou ben a traytour / and euer wyll be / but
 Clerke said fire Triftram Say thou thus vnto Kynge marke
 Syn the Appostle pope hath sente for hym / bydde hym goo thy-
 der hym self / for telle hym traitour Kynge as he is I wyll
 15 not goo at his commaūdement / gete I oute of pryson as I may
 for I see I am wel rewarded for my true seruyse / Thenne
 the Clerke retorned vnto kynge Marke and told hym of the
 anfuere of fire Triftram / wel sayd Kynge marke yet shal he be
 begyled / Soo he wente in to his chamber and counterfete let-
 20 ters / and the letters specyfied that the pope desyred fire Tri-
 ftram to come hym self to make werre vpon the mescreauntes
 Whan the Clerke was come ageyne to fir Triftram and tooke
 hym these letters / thenne fire Triftram behelde these letters / &
 anone he aspyed they were of kynge Markes counterfetyng
 25 A said fyre Triftram fals haft thou ben euer kynge Marke /
 and soo wolt thou ende / Thenne the Clerke departed from fire
 Triftram and came to kynge Marke ageyne / By thenne there
 were come four wounded knyghtes within the castel of Tyn-
 tagil / and one of them his neck was nyghe broken in tweyn
 30 Another had his arme stryken away / the thyrdde was borne
 thurgh with a spere / the fourth had his teeth stryken in tweyn
 And whanne they came afore kynge Marke they cryed and
 sayd / kynge / why fleest thou not for alle this countrey is a-
 ryfen clerely ageynst the / thenne was kynge Marke wrothe
 35 oute of mesure / and in the meane whyle there came in to the
 countrey fire Percyuale de galys to seke fire Triftram / And
 whan he herd that fyre Triftram was in pryson / fyr Percyual

made clerely the delyueraunce of sir Triftram by his knyghtly
 meanes / And whan he was foo delyuerd / he made grete Ioye
 of fyre Percyuale / and foo echone of other / Syr Triftram fa-
 yd vnto fyre Percyuale / and ye wille abyde in these marches
 I wylle ryde with yow / Nay said Percyuale in this countrey 5
 I maye not tary / for I muste nedes in to walys / ¶ Soo fyre
 Percyuale departed from fyre Triftram / and rode streyghte vn-
 to Kynge Marke / and told hym how he had delyuerd fyre
 Triftram / and also he told the kyng that he had done hym self
 grete shame for to putte sir Triftram in pryson / For he is now 10
 the knyght of moost renomme in this world lyuyng
 And wete thou wel the noblest knyghtes of the worlde loue
 fyr Triftram / and yf he wille make werre vpon yow / ye maye
 not abyde hit / That is trouthe said kynge Marke / but I may
 not loue fyre Triftram by cause he loueth my Quene and my 15
 wyf la beale Ifoud / A fy for shame said fyr Percyuale fay
 ye neuer so more / Are ye not vnkel vnto sir Triftram / and he
 your neuewe / ye shold neuer thynke that foo noble a Knyghte
 as fyre Triftram is that he wold doo hym self foo grete a vy-
 lony to holde his vnkel's wyf / how be it said fyr Percyuale he 20
 may loue your Quene synles by cause she is called one of the
 fayrest ladyes of the world / Thenne fyr Percyuale departed
 from Kynge Marke / Soo whan he was departed Kyng Mark
 bethought hym of more trefon / Not withstādyng kyng mark
 graunted fyr Percyuale neuer by no manere of meanes to 25
 hurte fyre Triftram / Soo anone Kynge Marke sente vnto fyre
 Dyanas the Seneschal that he shold putte doune alle the peple
 that he had reysed / for he sente hym an othe that he wold goo
 hym self vnto the pope of Rome to warre vpon the mescreaun-
 tes / and this is a fayrer werre than thus to areyse the peple / 30
 ageynst youre kynge / whanne sir Dynas vnderstood that ky-
 nge marke wold goo vpon the mescreauntes / thenne fyre Dy-
 nas in alle hast putte doune alle the peple / and whan the
 peple were departed euery man to his home / thēne Kyng mark
 aspyed where was fyre Triftram with la Beale Ifoud / and 35
 there by treason Kynge Marke lete take hym and put hym in
 pryson contrary to his promyse that he made vnto fyre Percy-
 uale / whan Quene Ifoud vnderstood that fyr Triftram was

in pryson / she made as grete forowe as euer made lady or gen-
 tylwoman / Thenne sire Triftram sent a letter vnto la Beale
 Ifoud and praid her to be his good lady / and yf hit pleased
 her to make a vessel redy for her and hym / he wold goo with
 5 her vnto the reame of Logrys that is this land / ¶ Whanne la
 beale Ifoud vnderstood fyre Triftrams letters and his entent
 she sente hym another / and badde hym be of good comfote / for
 she wold doo make the vessel redy and alle thyng to purpos
 ¶ Thenne la beale Ifoud sente vnto fyre Dynas and to fadok
 10 and prayd hem in ony wyfe to take Kynge Marke / and put
 hym in pryson vnto the tyme that she and fyre Triftram were
 departed vnto the Royamme of Logrys / whan sir Dynas the
 Seneschall vnderstood the treason of Kynge Marke / he promy-
 fed her ageyne and sente her word that Kynge Marke shold
 15 be put in pryson / And as they deuyfed hit soo hit was done /
 And thenne fyre Triftram was delyuerd out of pryson / and
 anone in alle the haste Quene Ifoud and fyr Triftram and went
 and took their counceyll with that they wold haue with them
 whan they departed

¶ Capitulum liij

20 **T**Henne la Beale Ifoud and sire Triftram took their
 vessel / and came by water in to this land / and so they
 were not in this land four dayes / but there came a crye
 of a Iustes and turnement that Kynge Arthur lete make /
 Whanne sire Triftram herd telle of that turnement he desguyfed
 25 hym self / and la Beale Ifoud / and rode vnto that turnement
 And whan he came there he sawe many Knyghtes Iuste and
 turneye / and so fyr Triftram dresfid hym to the raunge / and to
 make short conclusion / he ouerthrewe fourteen Knyghtes of the
 round table / Whanne sir Launcelot sawe these Knyghtes thus
 30 ouerthrowen / sire launcelot dresfid hym to sir Triftram / That
 sawe la Beale Ifoud how sire launcelot was come in to the
 felde / ¶ Thenne la Beale Ifoud sente vnto sire Launcelot a
 ryng / and badde hym wete that it was sir Triftram de lyones
 Whanne sir launcelot vnderstood that there was fyre Triftram
 35 he was ful gladde / and wold not Iuste / thēne sire Launcelot

aspyed whyder fyre Triftram yede / and after hym he rode / and
 thenne eyther made of other grete Ioye / And foo fire Launce-
 lot broughte fire Triftram and la beale Ifoud vnto Ioyous
 gard that was his owne Castel that he had wonne with his
 owne handes / And there fire Launcelot put them in to welde 5
 for their owne / And wete ye wel that Castel was garnysshed
 and furnysshed for a Kynge and a quene Royal there to ha-
 ue fojourned / and fyre Launcelot charged alle his people to
 honoure them and loue them as they wold doo hym self /

¶ Soo fire launcelot departed vnto kynge Arthur / and then- 10
 ne he told Quene Gueneuer how he that Iufted foo wel atte
 laft turnement was fire Triftram / and there he told her how
 he hadde with hym la beale Ifoud maulgre kynge Marke / &
 foo Quene Gueneuer told alle this vnto kynge Arthur /

¶ Whanne kynge Arthur wyfte that fire Triftram was efca- 15
 ped and comen from kynge Marke / and had broughte la be-
 ale Ifoud with hym / thenne was he passynge gladde / So by
 cause of fire Triftram kynge Arthur lete make a crye / that on
 may day fhold be a Iuftes before the castel of Lonazep / And
 that Castel was fast by Ioyous gard / And thus Arthur 20
 deufyed that alle the knyghtes of this land and of Corne-
 waile and of Northwalys fhold Iufte ageynfte all these co-
 untreyes / Irland / Scotland / and the remenaunt of walys &
 the countrey of Gore and Surlufe and of Lyftynoyfe / & they
 of Northumberland and alle they that helde landes of arthur 25
 a this half the fee / whanne this crye was made / many knygh-
 tes were gladde and many were vngladde / ¶ Syre faid laū-
 celot vnto Arthur by this crye that ye haue made ye wyll put
 vs that ben aboute yow in grete Ieopardy / for there be many
 Knyghtes that haue grete enuye to vs / therfore whan we fhal 30
 mete at the daye of Iuftes there wille be hard fkyfte amonge
 vs / As for that faid Arthur I care not / there fhal we preue
 who fhal be best of his handes / Soo whan fir launcelot vnder-
 ftode wherfore kynge Arthur made this Iuftyng thēne he ma-
 de fuche purueaunce that la beale Ifoud fhold behold the Iuf- 35
 tes in a fcrete place that was honeft for her eftate /

¶ Now torne we vnto fire Triftram and to la beale Ifoud /
 how they maade grete Ioye dayly to gyders with alle manere

of myrthes that they coud deuyse / and in euery day sir Triftram
 wold goo ryde on huntynge / for fire Triftram was that tyme
 called the best chacer of the world / and the noblest blower of
 an horne of alle manere of mesures / for as bookes reporte / of
 5 fyre Triftram came alle the good termes of venery and of hū-
 tyng and alle the fyfes and mesures of blowyng of an hor-
 ne / and of hym we had fyrste alle the termes of haukyng / &
 whiche were beestes of chace and beestes of venery / and whi-
 che were vermyns / and alle the blaſtes that longen to all ma-
 10 ner of gamen / Fyrste to the vncouplyng / to the ſekyng / to
 the rechate / to the flyghte / to the dethe / and to ſtrake / and ma-
 ny other blaſtes and termes / that all maner of gentylmen ha-
 ue cauſe to the worldes ende to preyſe ſir Triftram and to praye
 for his ſoule

¶ Capitulum liij

15 **S**oo on a daye la beale Ifoud ſayd vnto ſir Triftram
 I merueyle me moche ſaid ſhe / that ye remembre not
 your ſelf how ye be here in a ſtraunge countrey and here be ma-
 ny peryllous knyghtes / and wel ye wote that kyng Marke
 is ful of treaſon / and that ye wylle ryde thus to chace and to
 20 to hunte vnarmed ye myghte be deſtroyed / ¶ My fayr
 lady and my loue I crye you mercy I wille no more doo ſoo
 Soo thenne ſir Triftram rode dayly on huntyng armed and
 his men berynge his ſhelde and his ſpere / Soo on a day a ly-
 tyl afore the monethe of may fyre Triftram chaced an hert paſ-
 25 fyng egerly / and ſoo the herte paſſed by a fayr welle / And
 thenne ſir Triftram alyghte and putte of his helme to drynke
 of that burbley water / Ryght ſoo he herd and ſawe the queſt-
 yng beſt come to the welle / whan fyre Triftram ſawe that be-
 ſte / he putte on his helme for he demed he ſhold here of ſir Pa-
 30 lomydes / for that beſte was his queſt / ¶ Ryght ſo ſir Triftram
 ſawe where came a knyghte armed vpon a noble courſer / and
 he ſalewed hym / and they ſpake of many thynges / and thys
 knyghtes name was Breuſe ſaunce pyte / and ryght ſo with
 alle there came vnto them the noble knyghte ſir Palomydes /
 35 and eyther ſalewed other / and ſpake fair to other

[leaf 250 verso]

Fair knyghtes said sir Palomydes I canne telle yow tydyn-
ges / what is that said tho knyghtes / Syrs wete ye wel that
Kynge Marke is put in pryson by his owne knyghtes / and
alle was for loue of sire Tristram / for kynge Marke hadde put
fyre Tristram twyes in pryson / And ones sire Percyuale de- 5
lyuerd the noble knyghte sire Tristram oute of pryson

¶ And at the laste tyme Quene La beale Ifoud deliuerd
hym / and wente clerlyly awaye with hym in to this reame / &
alle this whyle kynge Marke the fals traytour is in pryson /
Is this trouthe said Palomydes / Thenne shall we hastily he- 10
re of sire Tristram / And as for to say that I loue la Beale
Ifoud peramours I dare make good that I doo / and that
she hath my seruyse aboue alle other ladyes / and shalle haue
the terme of my lyf / And ryght soo as they stood talkynge /
they sawe afore them where came a Knyghte alle armed on a 15
grete hors / and one of his men bare his sheld / and the other
his speres / And anone as that Knyght aspyed them he gatte
his shelde and his spere / and dresid hym to Iuste

¶ Fair felawes said sire Tristram yonder is a Knyghte wil
Iuste with vs / lete see whiche of vs shalle encountre with hym 20
for I see wel he is of the courte of Kynge Arthur

¶ It shalle not be longe or he be mette with alle said sire Pa-
lomydes / for I fonde neuer noo knyght in my queste of this
Glastynge beest / but and he wold Iuste I neuer refused hym

¶ As wel may I said Breufe faunce pyte folowe that beest 25
as ye / Thenne shalle ye doo bataille with me said Palomydes /
Soo fyre Palomydes dresid hym vnto that other Knyghte
fyre Bleoberys that was a ful noble Knyghte nyghe kynne
vnto sire Launcelot / And soo they mette soo hard / that fyre
Palomydes felle to the erthe hors and alle / 30

Thenne sir Bleoberis cryed a lowde and said thus / make the
redy thou fals traytour knyghte Breufe faunce pyte / for wete
thow certaynly I wille haue adoo with the to the vtterance
for the noble knyghtes and ladyes that thou hast falsly bi-
traid

¶ Whanne this false knyght and traitour 35
Breufe faunce pyte herde hym saye soo / he took his hors by the
brydel and fledde his waye as faste as euer his hors myghte
renne / for fore he was of hym aferd / ¶ Whan fyr Bleoberys

sawe hym flee he folowed faste after thorough thycke and thorough thynne / And by fortune as sir Breuse fledde / he sawe euen afore hym thre knyghtes of the table round / of the whiche tho one hyghte sire Ector de marys / the other hyghte sire Percyuale de galys / the thyrddde hyghte sir Harre de fyse lake
 5 a good knyght and an hardy / And as for sire Percyuale he was called that tyme of his tyme one of the best knyghtes of the world and the best assured / when Breuse sawe these knyghtes he rode streyghte vnto them and cryed vnto them & prayd
 10 yd them of rescowes / what nede haue ye said sire Ector / A fayr knyghtes saide sire Breuse here foloweth me the moost traytour knyght and moost coward and moost of vylony / his name is Breuse saunce pyte / and yf he may gete me he wylle flee me withoute mercy and pyte / Abyde with vs said sire per-
 15 cyuale and we shalle waraunt yow / Thenne were they ware of sire Bleoberys that came rydyng alle that he myghte / Thenne sire Ector put hym self forth to Iuste afore them alle / When sire Bleoberis sawe that they were four knyghtes / and he but hym self / he stode in a doubte / whether he wold torne or
 20 hold his waye / Thenne he said to hym self I am a knyght of the table round / and rather than I shold shame myn othe & my blood I wille hold my way what soo euer falle therof / And thenne sire Ector dresfid his spere and smote either other passyng fore / but sire Ector felle to the erthe / That sawe sire Per-
 25 cyuale and he dresfid his hors toward hym all that he myghte dryue / but sire Percyuale had fuche a stroke that hors and man felle to the erth / ¶ Whanne sire Harre sawe that they were bothe to the erthe / thenne he said to hym self / neuer was Breuse of fuche prowesse / Soo sire Harre dresfid his hors / &
 30 they mette to gyders soo strongly that bothe the horses and knyghtes felle to the erthe / but sire Bleoberis hors beganne to recouer ageyne / That sawe sire Breuse and he came hurtlyng / & smote hym ouer and ouer and wolde haue slayne hym as he lay on the ground / Thenne sire Harre le fyse lake arofe lyghte-
 35 ly and toke the brydel of sire Breuse hors and said / ¶ Fy for shame stryke neuer a Knyght when he is at the erthe / for this Knyght may be called no shameful knyghte of his dedes / for yet as men may see there as he lyeth on the ground he hath done

worshipfully / and putte to the werse passynge good knyghtes
 Therefore wylle I not lete faide sire Breuse / thou shalt not
 chefe faid fyr Harre as at this tyme / Thenne whanne sire Br-
 use sawe that he myghte not chefe nor haue his wylle / he spak
 fayre / Thenne fyre Harre lete hym goo / And thenne anone he 5
 made his hors to renne ouer fyre Bleoberys / and raffhed hym
 to the erthe lyke yf he wold haue slayne hym / Whanne fyre
 Harre sawe hym doo so vyloynly / he cryed traytour knyzt le-
 ue of for shame / and as sire Harre wold haue taken his hors
 to fyghte with sire breuse / thenne sire Breuse ranne vpon hym 10
 as he was half vpon his hors and smote hym doune hors &
 man to the erthe / and had nere slayne fyr Harre the good kn-
 yght / That sawe sire Percuiale / and thenne he cryed traitour
 knyghte what dost thou / And whan sire Percuiale was vpon
 his hors / fyr Breuse tooke his hors and fledde all that euer 15
 he myght / and fyre Percuiale and fyre Harre folowed after
 hym fast / but euer the lenger they chaced the ferther were they
 behynde / Thenne they turned ageyne and came to fyr Ector de
 marys and to fyre Bleoberys / A fayr knyghtes faid Bleo-
 berys why haue ye focoured that fals knyght & traitour / why 20
 faid sire Harre what knyght is he / for wel I wote hit is a
 fals knyght faid sire Harre and a coward and a felonous kn-
 yght / Syr sayd Bleoberys he is the moost coward knyghte /
 and a deuourer of ladyes and a destroyer of good Knyghtes
 and speccially of Arthurs / what is your name faide sire Ector 25
 my name is Syr bleoberys de ganys / Allas fair cosyn sayde
 Ector / forgyue it me / for I am sire Ector de marys / thenne fyre
 Percuiale and sire Harre made grete ioye that they met with
 bleoberys / but alle they were heuy that fyr breuse was esca-
 ped them wherof they made grete dole 30

¶ Capitulum liiiij

RYght soo as they stood thus / there came sire Palomydes
 And whanne he sawe the shelde of bleoberys lye on
 the erthe / ¶ Thenne faid Palomydes he that oweth

that sheld / lete hym dreffe hym to me / for he smote me doune he-
 re fast by at a fontayne / and therefore I wyll fyghte for hym
 on foote / I am redy said Bleoberys here to anfuer the / for we-
 te thou wel fyr knyzt it was I / and my name is Bleoberys
 5 de ganys / wel arte thou met faide Palomydes / and wete thou
 wel my name is Palomydes the farafyn / and eyther of them
 hated other to the dethe / ¶ Syre Palomydes fayd Ector wete
 thou wel there is neyther thou nor none knyght that bereth the
 lyf that sleeth ony of oure blood / but he shalle dye for hit / ther-
 10 for and thou lyfte to fyghte goo seche fire laūcelot or fir Trif-
 tram and there shalle ye fynde your matche / with hem haue I
 mette said Palomydes / but I had neuer no worship of them /
 was there neuer no maner of knyghte said fire Ector but they
 that euer matched with yow / yes sayd Palomydes / there was
 15 the thyrdde a good knyght as ony of them / and of his age he
 was the best that euer I fond / for and he myghte haue lyued
 tyl he had ben an hardyer man / there lyueth no knyghte now
 fuche / and his name was fyre Lamorak de galys / And as he
 had Iufted at a turnement / there he ouerthrewe me / and xxx
 20 knyghtes moo / and there he wanne the degree / And at his de-
 partynge there mette hym fyre Gawayne and his bretheren / &
 with grete payne they slewe hym felonfly vnto alle good kny-
 ghtes grete damage / Anone as fir Percyuale herd that his
 broder was dede fyr Lamorak / he felle ouer his hors mane fw-
 25 ounynge / and there he made the gretteft dole that euer maade
 knyghte / ¶ And whan fyr Percyuale aroos / he said / Allas
 my good and noble broder fyre Lamorak / now shalle we ne-
 uer mete / and I trowe in alle the wyde world a man maye
 not fynde fuche a knyght as he was of his age / and hit is to
 30 moche to suffre the dethe of our fader kyng Pellenore / & now
 the dethe of our good broder fir Lamorak / Thenne in the me-
 ane wyhle there came a varlet from the court of kyng Arthur
 and told them of the grete turnement that shold be at Lona-
 35 ageynft alle them that wold come

¶ Capitulum lv

Now torne we vnto sir Tristram that as he rode on hun-
 tyng / he mette with sire Dynadan that was comen in
 to that countrey to seke fyre Tristram / Thenne sire Dy-
 nadan told sire Tristram his name / but sire Tristram wold
 not telle hym his name / wherefore syr Dynadan was wrothe / 5
 For fuche a foolyshe knyghte as ye are said sire Dynadan I
 sawe but late this day lyenge by a welle / and he fared as he
 slepte / and there he lay lyke a foole grymmynge and wold
 not speke / and his shelde lay by hym / and his hors stode by
 hym / and wel I wote he was a louer / A fayr syr said fyre 10
 Tristram are ye not a louer / mary fy on that crafte said sir dy-
 nadan / that is euylle said said sire Tristram / for a knyzt maye
 neuer be of prowesse / but yf he be a louer / it is wel said said sir
 Dynadan / Now telle me your name syth ye be a louer / or els
 I shalle doo bataille with yow / As for that said sir Tristram 15
 hit is no reason to fyghte with me / but I telle yow my name
 And as for that my name shalle ye not wete as at this tyme
 Fy for shame said Dynadan arte thou a knyghte and darste
 not telle thy name to me / therfore I wil fyghte with the / As
 for that said sir Tristram I wylle be aduyfed / for I wil not 20
 doo batail / but yf me lyst / And yf I doo batail said sire Trist-
 ram ye are not able to withstande me / Fy on the coward sayd
 fyre Dynadan / and thus as they houed styl they sawe a kn-
 yght came rydyng ageynst them / Lo said sir Tristram see whe-
 re cometh a knyght rydyng wyll Iuste with you / Anon as sir 25
 Dynadan beheld hym he said that is the same doted knyzt that
 I sawe lye by the welle neither slepyng ne wakyng / wel sa-
 yde sire Tristram I knowe that knyght wel with the couerd
 shelde of asure / he is the kynges sone of Northumberland / his
 name is Epynegrys / and he is as grete a louer as I knowe / 30
 and he loueth the kynges doughter of walys a ful fayre lady
 And now I suppose said sire Tristram / and ye requyre hym / he
 wille Iuste with yow / and thenne shalle ye preue whether a lo-
 uer be a better knyghte or ye that wylle not loue no lady / wel
 said Dynadan now shalt thou see what I shall do / There with 35
 alle sire Dynadan spake on hyghe and said sir knyghte make
 the redy to Iuste with me / for it is the custome of erraūt kny-
 zes one to Iuste with other / Sir said Epynegrys is þ^t the rule

of yow arraunt knyghtes for to make a knyght to Iuste will
 he or nyll / As for that fayd Dynadan make the redy / for here
 is for me / And there with al they spored theyr horses & mett
 to gyders foo hard that Epynegrys fmote doune fir Dynadan
 5 Thenne fir Triftram rode to fire Dynadan and fayd how now
 me semeth the loue hath wel spedde / Fy on the Coward fayd
 fyre Dynadan / and yf thou be a good Knyghte reuenge me /
 Nay said fyr Triftram I wylle not Iuste as at this tyme /
 but take your hors and lete vs goo hens / God defende me fa-
 10 yd fyre Dynadan from thy felauſhyp / For I neuer sped wel
 fyn I mette with the / and foo they departed / wel fayd fir trif-
 tram / peradventure I coude telle yow tydynges of fir triftram
 God defende me said Dynadan from thy felauſhyp / for fir trif-
 tram were mykel the werse / and he were in thy company / and
 15 thenne they departed / Syre said fir Triftram yet it may hap-
 pen I shal mete with you in other places / so rode fyr Triftram
 vnto Ioyous gard / and there he herd in that toun grete no-
 yse and crye / what is this noyse said fire Triftram / Syre fayd
 they here is a knyght of this castel that hath ben longe among
 20 vs / and ryght now he is slayne with two knyghtes / And
 for none other cause / but that oure knyghte fayd that fir Lau-
 celot were a better Knyght than fyre Gawayne / that was a
 fymple cause said fir Triftram for to flee a good knyght for to
 faye wel by his mayster / That is lytel remedy to vs fayde the
 25 men of the toun / For and fire Launcelot had ben here / foone
 we shold haue ben reuenged vpon the fals knyghtes / whan
 fyre Triftram herd them faye foo / he sente for his shelde / & for
 his spere / and lyghtly within a whyle he had ouertake them /
 and badde them torne and amende that they had mysdone /
 30 What amendes woldest thou haue said the one Knyghte / &
 therwith they tooke theyr cours / and eyther mette other so hard
 that fyr Triftram fmote doune that knyghte ouer his hors ta-
 yle / Thenne the other knyght dresseid hym to fyr Triftram / and
 in the same wyse he serued the other knyghte / ¶ And thenne
 35 they gate of their horses as wel as they myghte and dresseid
 their sheldes and swardes do do their bataile to the vtterance
 Knyghtes said fire Triftram ye shalle telle me of whens ye ar
 and what be youre names / for fuche men ye myzte be ye shold

hard escape my handes / and ye myghte be fuche men of fuche a
 countre / that for alle your euylle dedes ye shold passe quyte /
 Wete thow wel fyre Knyghte sayde they we feare not to telle
 the oure names / for my name is fyr Agrawayne / and my na-
 name is Gaherys bretheren vnto the good Knyghte fyre Gawa- 5
 yne / and we be neuwes vnto kyng Arthur / wel sayd fir trif-
 tram for Kynge Arthurs sake I shalle lete yow passe as att
 this tyme / But hit is shame said fyre Triftram that fyre Ga-
 wayne and ye be comen of soo grete a blood that ye foure bre-
 theren are soo named as ye be / For ye be called the grettest def- 10
 troyers and murtherers of good Knyghtes that ben now in
 this reame / for it is but as I herde faye that fyr Gawayne &
 ye flewe amonge yow a better knyght than euer ye were / that
 was the noble knyghte fyre Lamorak de galys / and hit hadde
 pleafed god sayd fyre Triftram I wold I had ben by fyre 15
 Lamorak at his deth / thenne sholdest thou haue gone the same
 way said fir Gaherys / Fayre knyghte said fyre Triftram ther
 must haue ben many moo knyghtes than ye are / And there
 with alle fyre Triftram departed fro them toward Ioyous gard
 And whanne he was departed / they took theyre horses / and 20
 the one said to the other / we wylle ouertake hym and be reuen-
 ged vpon hym in the despyte of fyre Lamorak

¶ Capitulum lvj

SOo when they hadde ouertake fyre Triftram / fir Agra-
 uayne badde hym torne traytour knyght / that is euyl
 fayd / said fir Triftram / and ther with he pulled out his 25
 fuerd / and smote fyr Agrawayne fuche a buffet vpon the helme
 that he tombled doune of his hors in a fwoune / and he hadde
 a greuous wounde / And thenne he torned to Gaherys / and fyre
 Triftram smote his swerd and his helme to gyders with fuche
 a myght that Gaherys felle oute of his fadel / and soo fir Trif- 30
 tram rode vnto Ioyous gard and there he alyght and vnarmed
 hym / Soo fyre Triftram told la beale Ifoud of alle his aduen-
 ture as ye haue herd to forne / And whan she herd hym telle of
 fyre Dynadan / fyr said she is not that he that made the song by

kynge Marke / that fame is he said fire Triftram / for he is the
 best bourder and Iaper and a noble knyghte of his handes /
 and the best felawe that I knowe / and alle good knyghtes
 loue his felauship / Allas fyre said she why broughte ye not
 5 hym with yow / haue ye no care sayd fyr Triftram / for he rydeth
 to feke me in this cowntre / and therefore he wylle not away tyl
 he haue met with me / And there fire Triftram told la Beale
 Ifoud how fir Dynadan helde ageynste alle louers / Ryght fo
 there came in a varlet and told fir Triftram how there was co-
 10 me an erraunt knyght in to the toune with fuche colours vpon
 his sheld / that is fyre Dynadan said fyre Triftram / wete ye
 what ye shalle doo said fire Triftram / fend ye for hym my la-
 dy Ifoud / and I wylle not be fene and ye shal here the me-
 ryeft knyghte that euer ye spak with alle and the maddest tal-
 15 ker / and I praye yow hertely that ye make hym good chere /
 Thenne anone la beale Ifoud sente in to the toune / and prayd
 fyr Dynadan that he wold come in to the castel / & repose hym
 there with a lady / with a good wylle sayd fir Dynadan / &
 foo he mounted vpon his hors and rode in to the castel / & there
 20 he alyghte / and was vnarmed / & brought in to the castel / A-
 none la Beale Ifoud came vnto hym / and eyther falewed o-
 ther / thenne she asked hym of whens that he was / Madame sa-
 yd Dynadan I am of the courte of Kynge Arthur / & knyghte
 of the table round / and my name is fyre Dynadan / what doo
 25 ye in this cowntrey sayd la Beale Ifoud / Madame sayd he I
 feke fyre Triftram the good knyght / for hit was told me that
 he was in this cowntrey / hit may wel be said la Beale Ifoud
 but I am not ware of hym / madame said Dynadan I mer-
 ueylle of fire Triftram and moo other louers what eyleth them
 30 to be foo mad and foo foted vpon wymmen / why said la bea-
 le Ifoud / are ye a Knyght and be no loue / it is shame to you
 where for ye may not be called a good knyghte / and yf ye ma-
 ke a quarel for a lady / God defende me sayd Dynadan / for the
 Ioye of loue is to short / and the sorow therof and what cometh
 35 therof dureth ouer longe / A said la Beale Ifoud say ye not
 foo / for here fast by was the good knyght fire Bleoberys that
 foughte with thre knyghtes at ones for a damoyfels fake / &
 he wanne her afore the kynge of Northumberland / hit was fo

faid fire Dynadan for I knowe hym wel for a good knyȝte
 and a noble and comen of noble blood / for alle ben noble kny-
 ghtes of whome he is comen of / that is fire Launcelot du la-
 ke / Now I pray yow faid la Beale Ifoud / telle me wyll
 ye fyghte for my loue with thre knyghtes that done me grete 5
 wronge / and in foo moche as ye be a knyȝt of kyng Arthurs
 I requyre yow to doo batail for me / Thenne fyr Dynadan fa-
 yd I ſhalle fay yow ye be as fayr a lady as euer I fawe o-
 ny / and moche fayrer than is my lady quene Gueneuer / but
 wete ye wel at one word I wyll not fyghte for yow wyth 10
 thre knyghtes / Ihefu defende me / Thenne Ifoud lough / & had
 good game at hym / Soo he had alle the chere that ſhe myghte
 make hym / and there he lay alle that nyght / And on the morn-
 erly fyr Triftram armed hym and la beale Ifoud gaf hym a
 good helme / and thenne he promyſed her that he wold mete 15
 with fyr Dynadan / And they two wold ryde to gyders vnto
 Lonaȝep where the turnement ſhold be / and there ſhal I ma-
 ke redy for yow where ye ſhalle ſee the turnement / Thenne de-
 parted fir Triftram with two ſquyers that bare his ſheld & his
 ſperes that were grete and longe /

20

¶ Capitulum Ivi]

THenne after that fyr Dynadan departed / and rode his
 way a grete paas vntyl he had ouertake fir Triftram
 And when fyr Dynadan had ouertake hym / he kne-
 we hym anone / and he hated the ſelaufhip of hym aboue all
 other knyghtes / A faid fyre Dynadan art thou that coward 25
 knyght that I mette with yesterday / kepe the / for thou ſhalte
 luſte with me maulgre thy hede / Wel faid fire Triftram and I
 am lothe to luſte / and foo they lete theyr horſes renne / and fyr
 Triftram myſſid of hym a purpoſ / & fir Dynadan brak a ſpe-
 re vpon fire Triftram / and there with fyre Dynadan dreſſid 30
 hym to to drawe out his ſwerd / Not ſoo faid fir Triftram / why
 are ye ſoo wrothe I wille not fyghte / Fy on the coward ſayd
 Dynadan thou ſhameſt alle knyghtes / As for that faid fyre
 Triftram I care not / for I wille wayte vpon you and be vnder

your protectyon / for by cause ye are so good a knyght ye may
faue me / The deuylle delyuer me of the faid fyr Dynadan / for
thou arte as goodely a man of armes and of thy persone as
euer I fawe and the moost coward that euer I fawe / what
5 wold thou doo with tho grete speres that thou caryest with the
I shalle gyue them faid sir Triftram to somme good knyght
whan I come to the turnement / And yf I see yow doo best / I
shalle gyue them to yow / Soo thus as they rode talkyng they
fawe where came an erraunt knyght afore them that dresfyd
10 hym to Iuste / Loo faid fyr Triftram yonder is one wylle Iuste
now dresse the to hym / a shame betyde the faid fire Dynadan /
Nay not foo faid Triftram for that knyght befemeth a shrewe /
Thenne shalle I faid fyr Dynadan and foo they dresfid their
sheldes and their speres / and they mette to gyders foo hard /
15 that the other knyght smote down sir Dynadan from hys hors
Loo faid sir Triftram hit had ben better ye had lefte / Fy on
the coward faid fire Dynadan / Thenne sir Dynadan starte vp
and gat his swerd in his hande / and profered to do batail on
foote / whether in loue or in wrathe faide the other knyghte / lete
20 vs doo bataille in loue faid sir Dynadan / what is your name
faid that knyght I pray yow telle me / wete ye wel my name
is sir Dynadan / A Dynadan faid that knyght and my na-
me is Gareth the yongest broder vnto fyre Gawayne / thenne
eyther made of other grete chere / for this Gareth was the best
25 knyghte of alle tho bretheren / and he preued a good Knyghte
Thenne they took their horses / and there they spak of sir Trif-
tram how fuche a coward he was / and euery word sir Triftram
herd and lough them to sorne / Thenne were they ware where
came a knyght afore them wel horfed and wel armed / and he
30 made hym redy to Iuste / Fair knyghtes faid fyr Triftram / lo-
ke betwixe yow who shalle Iuste with yonder knyghte / for I
warne yow I wille not haue adoo with hym / thenne shall I
faid fyr Gareth / and foo they encountred to gyders / and there
that knyght smote doune fire Gareth ouer his hors croupe
35 How now faide fire Triftram vnto fyre Dynadan / dresse the
now and reunge the good knyght Gareth / That shall I not
faid sir Dynadan / for he hath stryken doune a moche bygger

knyghte than I am / A said fire Triftram now fire Dynadan
 I see and fele wel your herte fayleth yow / therfore now shalle
 ye see what I shalle doo / And thenne fire Triftram hurtled
 vnto that knyghte / and smote hym quyte from his hors / And
 whanne fire Dynadan sawe that / he merueyled gretely / And 5
 thenne he demed that hit was fire Triftram / Thenne this kny-
 ght that was on foot pulled oute his fwerd to doo bataille /
 what is your name said fire Triftram / wete ye wel fayde that
 knyghte my name is fyre Palomydes / What knyghte hate ye
 moost said fyr Triftram / Syr knyeght said he I hate fir Trif- 10
 tram to the dethe / for and I may mete with hym the one of
 vs shalle dye / ye faye wel said fir Triftram / and wete ye wel
 that I am fire Triftram de lyones / and now doo your werste
 whanne fire Palomydes herd hym faye soo he was afonyed /
 And thenne he said thus I praye yow fir Triftram forgyue 15
 me alle myn euylle wylle / And yf I lyue I shal doo you fer-
 uyse aboue alle other knyghtes that ben lyuynge / and there as
 I haue owed yow euylle wylle me fore repenteth / I wote not
 what eyleth me / for me semeth that ye are a good knyghte / &
 none other Knyghte that named hym self a good knyghte 20
 shold not hate yow therfor I requyre yow fyr triftram take no
 displeafyr at myn vnkynde wordes / Syr Palomydes said fire
 Triftram ye fay wel / and wel I wote ye are a good knyghte
 for I haue fene you preued and many grete enterpryses ha-
 ue ye taken vpon yow / and wel encheued them / therfor said 25
 fire Triftram and ye haue ony euyll wille to me / now maye ye
 ryghte hit / for I am redy at your hand / Not foo my lord fire
 Triftram I wille doo yow knyghtly feruyshe in all thyng as
 ye wyl commaunde / and ryght foo I will take yow said fyre
 Triftram / and foo they rode forthe on theyr wayes talkyng of 30
 many thynges / O my lord fire Triftram said Dynadan / foule
 haue ye mocked me / for god knoweth I cam in to this couñtre
 for your sake / and by the aduyshe of my lord fire Launcelot /
 And yet wold not fire Launcelot telle me certeynte of you
 where I shold fynde yow / Truly said fir Triftram fyre Laun- 35
 celot wiste wel wherr I was / for I abode within his owne cas-
 tel /

¶ Capitulum lviij

[leaf 256]

THus they rode vntyl they were ware of the Castel lo-
 nazep / And thenne were they ware of foure honderd
 tentys and paelions / and merueylous grete ordena-
 unce / Soo god me helpe faide fire Triftram yonder I fee the
 5 gretteft ordenaunce that euer I fawe / Syre faid Palomydes /
 me femeth that there was as grete an ordenaunce att the castel
 of maydens vpon the roche where ye wanne the pryce / for I fa-
 we my felf where ye foriufsted thyrtty knyghtes / ¶ Syr fayd
 Dynadan and in Surlufe at that turnement that Galahalt
 10 of the longe Iles maade the whiche there dured feuen dayes /
 was as grete a gadrynge as is here / for there were many nacy-
 ons / who was the beft faid fire Triftram / fire it was fir Laun-
 celot du lake and the noble knyghte fire Lamorak de galys /
 and fir launcelot wanne the degree / I doubte not faid fir Trif-
 15 tram but he wanne the degree / So he had not ben ouermatched
 with many knyghtes / and of the dethe of fire Lamorak fayd
 fyre Triftram hit was ouer grete pyte / for I dare fay / he was
 the clenest myzted man and the beft wynded of his age / that
 was on lyue / for I knewe hym that he was the byggeft kny-
 20 ght that euer I mette with all but yf hit were fire Launcelot /
 Allas faid fire Triftram ful woo is me for his deth / And yf
 they were not the cofyns of my lord Arthur that flewe hym /
 they fhold dye for hit / and all tho that were consentyng to his
 dethe / And for fuche thynges faid fire Triftram I feare to dra-
 25 we vnto the courte of my lord Arthur / I wylle that ye wete
 hit faid fire Triftram vnto Gareth / Syre I blame yow not fa-
 id Gareth / For wel I vnderftande the vengeance of my bre-
 theren fire Gawayne / Agrauayne / Gaherys / and Mordred /
 But as for me faid fire Gareth I medle not of their maters
 30 therfore there is none of them that loueth me / And for I vn-
 derftande they be murtherers of good knyghtes I lefte theyre
 company / and god wold I had ben by fayd Gareth whanne
 the noble knyghte fyre Lamorak was flayne / Now as Ihefu
 be my help faid fir Triftram / it is wel faid of you / for I had le-
 35 uer than al the gold betwixe this & Rome I had ben there /
 ye wys faid palomydes & foo wold I had ben there / & yet had I
 neuer the degree at no Iuftes nor turnement there as he was /
 but he put me to the werfe or on foot or on horfbak / & that day

that he was slayne he dyd the most dedes of armes that euer I
fawe knyghte doo in alle my lyfe dayes

¶ And whan hym was gyuen the degree by my lord Arth-
ur / fyre Gawayne and his thre bretheren Agrawayne / Gahe-
rys and fire Mordred sette vpon fyre Lamorack in a pryuy 5
place / and there they flewe his hors / and so they fought with
hym on foote more than thre houres bothe biforne hym and be-
hynd hym / and fire Mordred gaf hym his dethes wound /
behynde hym at his bak / and alle to hewe hym / for one of his
suyers told me that fawe hit / Fy vpon treason said sir Tryf- 10
tram / for hit killeth my herte to here this tale / So it doth myn
said Gareth bretheren as they be myn I shall neuer loue them
nor drawe in their felauship for that dede / Now speke we of
other dedes said Palomydes / and lete hym be / for his lyf ye
maye not gete ageyne / that is the more pyte said Dynadan / 15
For fire Gawayne and his bretheren excepte yow fire Gareth/
haten alle the good knyghtes of the round table for the most
party / for wel I wote and they myght pryuely / they hate my
lord fire Launcelot and al his kynne / and grete pryuy despy-
te they haue at hym / and that is my lorde fyre launcelot wel 20
ware of / and that causeth hym to haue the good knyghtes of
his kyn aboute hym /

¶ Capitulum lii

Syre said Palomydes lete vs leue of this matere / and
lete vs see how we shalle doo at this turnement / By
myn aduyse said Palomydes lete vs foure holde to gyders a- 25
geynste alle that wyl come / Not by my councel said fire Trif-
tram / for I see by their pauelions ther wil be four honderd kn-
yghtes / and doubte ye not said sir Triftram but there wil be ma-
ny good knyghtes / and be a man neuer soo valyaunt nor soo
bygge / yet he may be ouermatched / And soo haue I fene kn- 30
yghtes done many tymes / And whanne they wend best to haue
wonne worship they losse hit / For manhode is not worthe / but
yf it be medled with wysedome / And as for me said sir Trif-
tram hit maye happen I shalle kepe myn owne hede as wel
as another / Soo thus they rode vntyl that they came to hum- 35
ber bank where they herd a crye and a doleful noyse / ¶ Thenne
were they ware in the wynde where came a ryche vessell hyllid

ouer with reed fylke / and the veffel lounded fast by them /
There with fire Triftram alyghte and his knyghtes / And fo
fyre Triftram wente afore and entred in to that veffel ¶ And
whanne he came within he fawe a fayre bedde rychely couerd /
5 and there vpon laye a dede femely knyghte all armed fauf the
hede was al bebledde with dedely woundes vpon hym / the whi-
che femed to be a paffynge good knyghte / ¶ How may thys
be faid fire Triftram / that this knyghte is thus flayne / Thenne
fyre Triftram was ware of a letter in the dede knyghtes hande /
10 Maifter maronnners faid fire Triftram what meaneth that let-
ter / Syre fayd they / in that letter ye fhalle here and knowe hou
he was flayne / and for what caufe / and what was his name /
But fire faid the maronnners wete ye wel that no man fhall
take that letter and rede hit but yf he be a good knyghte / and
15 that he wille feythfully promyfe to reuenge his dethe / els fhall
there no knyghte fee that letter open / wete ye wel faid fir Trif-
tram that fomme of vs may reuenge his dethe as wel as other
And yf hit be foo as ye maronnners faye / his dethe fhalle be re-
uenged / And there with fire Triftram took the letter oute of
20 the knyghtes hande / and hit fayd thus / Harmaunce kynge &
lord of the reed Cyte I fend vnto alle knyghtes erraunt re-
commaundyng vnto yow noble knyghtes of Arthurs courte
I byfeche them alle amonge them to fynde one knyghte that
wylle fyghte for my fake with two bretheren that I brought
25 vp of nought and felonfly and traytourly they haue flayne
me / wherfore I byfeche one good knyghte to reuenge my deth
And he that reuenged my dethe I wille that he haue my rede
Cyte and alle my castels / Syre faid the maronnners wete ye
wel this kynge and knyghte that here lyeth was a ful wor-
30 shipful man and of ful grete prowesse / and ful wel he loued
alle maner knyghtes errauntes / Soo god me help faid fire
Triftram here is a pyteous kaas / and ful fayne I wold take
this enterpryfe vpon me / but I haue made fuche a promyfe that
nedes I muft be at this grete turnement / or els I am shamed
35 For wel I wote for my fake in efpecial my lord Arthur lete
make this Iuftes and turnement in this countrey / and well
I wote that many worfhipful people wylle be there att that
turnement for to fee me / therfor I fere me to take this enterpryfe

vpon me that I shal not come ageyne by tyme to this lustys
 Syr said Palomydes / I pray yow gyue me this enterpryse /
 and ye shall see me encheue it worshipfully / outhur els I shal
 dye in this quarel / wel said sire Tristram / and this enterpryse
 I gyue yow with this that ye be with me at this turnement / 5
 that shalle be as this day feuen nyght / Syre said Palomydes /
 I promyse yow that I shalle be with yow by that day / yf I
 be vnslayne or vnmaymed

¶ Capitulum 12

THenne departed sire Tristram / Gareth / and sire Dyna-
 dan / and lefte sire Palomydes in the vessel / and so sire 10
 Tristram behelde the maronniers how they fayled ouer
 longe humber / And whan sire Palomydes was oute of theyre
 fyghte / they toke theyr horses and beheld aboute them / And
 thenne were they ware of a Knyght that came rydyng ageyn-
 nst them vnarmed / and nothyng aboute hym but a swerd / 15
 And whan this knyghte came nyghe them / he falewed them / &
 they hym ageyne / Faire knyghtes sayd that knyght I praye
 yow in soo moche as ye be knyghtes erraunt that ye wille come
 and see my castel and take fuche as ye fynde there / I praye
 yow hertely / and soo they rode with hym vntyl his Castel / & 20
 there they were brought in to the halle that was wel apparail-
 led / and soo they were there vnarmed and sette at a bord / &
 whan this knyghte sawe sire Tristram anone he knewe hym /
 And thenne this Knyght waxed pale and wroth at sire trif-
 tram / whan sire Tristram sawe his hooft make fuche chere / he 25
 merueylled and said Syre myn hooft what chere make yow
 wete thou wel said he I fare the werse for the / for I knowe the
 sire Tristram de lyones / thou slewest my broder / And therfore
 I gyue the somons I wille flee the / and euer I maye gete
 the at large / Syr knyght said sire Tristram I am neuer ad- 30
 uysed that euer I slewe ony broder of yours / And yf ye say
 that I dyd I wille make amendys vnto my power / I wyll
 none amendys said the knyght but kepe the from me / So whan
 he had dyned sire Tristram asked his armes & departed / & so they
 rode on their wayes / & within a whyle / sire Dynadan sawe whe- 35
 re cam a knyght wel armed & wel horsed withoute shelde / fyre

Triftram said sir Dynadan take kepe to your self / for I dar vn-
 dertake yonder cometh your hooft that will haue ado with you
 Lete hym come said sir Triftram I shall abyde hym as wel as
 I may / anone the knyghte whanne he came nyghe sir Triftram
 5 he cryed and bad hym abyde and kepe hym / So they hurtled
 to gyders / but sir Triftram smote the other knyght so fore that
 he bare hym ouer his hors croupe / That knyght arofe lyghte-
 ly and took his hors ageyne / and foo rode fyerfly to sir Trif-
 tram and smote hym twyes hard vpon the helme / Sir knygte
 10 said sir Triftram I pray yow leue of and smyte me no mo-
 re / for I wold be lothe to dele with yow / & I myzt chese / for I
 haue your mete and your drynke within my body / for al that
 he wold not leue / and thēne sir Triftram gaf hym suche a buf-
 fet vpon the helme that he felle vp foo doune fro his hors / that
 15 the blood braft oute at the ventayls of his helme / and foo he
 lay styll lykely to be dede / Thenne sire Triftram said me repen-
 teth of this buffet that I smote so fore / for as I suppose he is
 dede / and foo they lefte hym and rode on their wayes / ¶ So
 they had not ryden but a whyle but they sawe rydyng ayenst
 20 them two ful lykely knyghtes wel armed and wel horfed &
 goodly feruauntes aboute them / the one was Berraunt le a-
 pres / and he was called the kynge with the honderd Knyztes
 and the other was sir Segwarydes whiche were renommed two
 noble Knyghtes / So as they cam eyther by other / the Kynge
 25 loked vpon sir Dynadan that at that tyme he had fyre Trif-
 trams helme vpon his sholder / the whiche helme the kynge had
 fene to fore with the Quene of Northgalys / and that quene
 the kynge loued as peramour / & that helme the quene of north-
 galys had gyuen to la Beale Ifoud / & the quene la Beale
 30 Ifoud gaf it to sir Triftram / Syr Knyghte sayd Berraunt
 Where had ye that helme / what wold ye said sire Dynadan /
 for I wylle haue adoo with the said the kynge for the loue of
 her that owed that helme / and therfore kepe yow / Soo they
 departed and came to gyders with alle their myghtes of the-
 35 yr horses / and there the kyng with the honderd knyghtes smote
 sire Dynadan hors and alle to the erthe / and thēne he com-
 maunded his feruaunt goo and take thou his helme of / and
 kepe hit / Soo the varlet wente to vnbockel his helme / What

helme / what wold thou doo faid fir Triftram / leue that helme to
 what entente fayd the kynge wille ye fire knyght medle with
 that helme / Wete yow wel faid fir Triftram that helme shalle
 not departe from me or it be derer boughte / Thenne make you re-
 dy faid fir Beraunce vnto fyre Triftram / Soo they hurtled to 5
 gyders / and there fyr Triftram smote hym doun ouer his hors
 tayle// and thenne the kynge arofe lyghtely / and gatte his
 hors lyghtely ageyne / And thenne he strake fyerfly att fyre
 Triftram many grete strokes / And thenne fyre Triftram gaf
 fir Beraunce fuche a buffet vpon the helme / that he felle doune 10
 ouer his hors fore stonyed / Loo faid Dynadan that helme is
 vnhappy to vs tweyne / for I had a falle for hit / and now fir
 kynge haue ye another falle /

¶ Thenne Segwarydes asked who shal Iuste with me / I pr-
 aye the faid fyre Gareth vnto Dynadan / lete me haue this Iuf- 15
 tes / fyr faid Dynadan I pray yow take it as for me / that is
 no reafon faid trifrā / for this Iustes shold be yours / ¶ Att a
 word faid Dynadan I wille not therof / ¶ Thenne Gareth
 drefsid hym to fyre Segwarides / and there fyre Segwarides
 smote Gareth and his hors to the erthe / ¶ Now fayd fyr 20
 Triftram to Dynadan Iuste with yonder knyghte / I wil not
 therof faid Dynadan / Thenne wille I faid fyr Triftram / and
 thenne fyr Triftram ranne to hym / and gaf hym a falle / and
 foo they lefte them on foote / and fyre Triftram rode vnto Io-
 yous gard / and there fir Gareth wold not of his curtofy haue 25
 gone in to this castel / but fyre Triftram wold not suffre hym
 to departe / And foo they alyghte and vnarmed them / & hadde
 grete chere / But whan Dynadan came afore la Beale Ifoud
 he curfed the tyme that euer he bare fyr Triftrams helme / and
 there he tolde her how fyre Triftram had mocked hym / Thenne 30
 was there laughyng and Iapyng at fyr Dynadan that they
 wiste not what to doo with hym

¶ Capitulum lxi

Now wille we leue them mery within Ioyous gard
 & speke we of fyr palomydes / thēne fir palomydes fail-
 led euen longes hūber to the costes of the see / where was a fair 35

castel / And at that tyme hit was erly in the mornynge afore
 daye / Thenne the maronnners wente vnto fire palomydes / that
 slepte fast / Syre knyghte faide the maronnners ye muste aryse /
 for here is a castel there ye muste goo in to / I affente me sayd
 5 fire Palomydes / and there with alle he aryued / And thenne
 he blewe his horne that the maronnners had yeuen hym /
 And whanne they within the Castel herd that horne / they put
 forthe many knyghtes and there they stode vpon the walles /
 and said with one voys / welcome be ye to this castel / and then-
 10 ne it waxed clere day / and fire Palomydes entred in to the cas-
 tel / And within .a. whyle he was serued with many dyuerse
 metes / Thenne fire Palomyders herd aboute hym moche wepy-
 nge and grete dole / what may this meane said fir palomydes /
 I loue not to here fuche a forou / and fayne I wold knowe
 15 what it meaneth / thenne there came afore hym one whos name
 was fir Ebel that said thus wete ye wel fir knyghte this dole
 and forowe is here made euery daye / ¶ And for this cause /
 We had a kyng that hyght Hermaunce and he was kyng of
 the reed cyte / and this kyng that was lord / was a noble kn-
 20 yght large and lyberal of his expense / And in the world he
 loued no thyng so moche as he dyd erraunt knyghtes of ky-
 nge Arthurs courte / and alle lustynge huntynge and al ma-
 ner of knyghtly games / for so kynde a kyng and knyghte had
 neuer the rule of poure peple as he was / and by cause of his
 25 goodenes and gentylnesse we bemone hym / and euer shalle /
 And alle kynges and estates may beware by oure lord for he
 was destroyed in his owne defaute / for had he cheriffhed them
 of his blood / he hadde yet lyued with grete rycheffe and reste/
 but alle estates may beware by our kyng / But allas sayd
 30 Ebel that we shalle gyue alle other warnynge by his dethe /
 ¶ Telle me said palomydes / and in what manere was youre
 lord slayne and by whome / Syr said fir Ebel / oure kyng br-
 ought vp of children two men that now are peryllous knygh-
 tes / & these two knyghtes oure kyng had soo in cherete that he
 35 loued no man nor trusted no man of his blood / nor none other
 that was aboute hym / And by these two knyghtes oure kyng
 was gouerned / and soo they ruled hym peafyby and his lan-
 des / and neuer wolde they suffre none of his blood to haue

no rule with oure kyng / And also he was foo free and foo
 gentyl / and they so fals and deceyuable that they ruled hym
 peasybyly / and that aspyed the lordes of our kynges blood / &
 departed from hym vnto their owne lyuelode / Thenne whan
 these two traytours vnderstoode that they had dryuen alle the 5
 lordes of his blood from hym / they were not pleased with that
 rule / but thenne they thoughte to haue more / as euer hit is an
 old sawe / gyue a chorle rule / and there by he wylle not be suf-
 fysed / for what someuer he be that is ruled by a vylayne born
 and the lord of the foyle to be a gentilman born / that fame vy- 10
 layne shalle destroye alle the gentylmen aboute hym / therfor al
 estates and lordes / beware / whome ye take aboute yow / And
 yf ye be a knyght of Kyng Arthurs courte remembre this ta-
 le / for this is the ende and conclusion / my lord and kyng ro-
 de vnto the forest here by by the aduyse of these traytours / and 15
 there he chaced at the reed dere armed at alle pyeces ful lyke
 a good knyght / and foo for labour he waxed drye / And then-
 ne he alyghte / and dranke at a welle / And whan he was a-
 lyghte by the assente of these two traytours that one that hy-
 ght Helyus he sodenly smote our kyng thurgh the body with 20
 a spere / and foo they lefte hym there / And whan they were de-
 parted / thenne by fortune I came to the welle / and fond my
 lord and kyng wounded to the dethe / And whan I herd his
 complaynte / I lete brynge hym to the water fyde / and in that
 fame shyp I put hym a lyue / And whan my lord kyng her- 25
 maunce was in that vessel / he requyred me for the true feyth
 I owed vnto hym for to wryte a letter in this maner /

R Capitulum Ixi

Ecommaundyng vnto kyng Arthur & to al his kny-
 3tes erraūt bisechyng them al that in so moche as I ky-
 ng Hermaūce kyng of the reed cyte thus am slayn by felony 30
 & treason thurȝ two knyghtes of myn own & of myn own br-
 yngyng vp & of myn owne makyng that som worshipful kn-
 yȝt wil reuenge my deth / in so moche I haue ben euer to my po-
 wer wel willyng vnto Arthurs court / & who that wil aduen-
 ture his lyf with these two traitours for my sake in one batail 35
 I kyng hermaūce kyng of the rede cyte frely gyue hym all my

landes and rentes that euer I welded in my lyf / This letter
said Ebel I wrote by my lordes commaundement / and thenne
he receyued his creatoure / and whan he was dede / he comman-
ded me or euer he were cold to put that letter fast in his hand /
5 And thenne he commaunded me to putte forthe that same ves-
sel doune humber / and I shold gyue these maronniers in com-
maundement neuer to stynte vntyl that they came vnto Logris
where all the noble knyghtes shal assemble at this tyme / &
there shalle somme good knyghte haue pyte on me to reuenge
10 my dethe / for there was neuer kynge nor lord falslyer ne trai-
tourlyer slayne than I am here to my dethe / ¶ Thus was the
complaynte of our kyng Hermauce / Now said sir Ebel ye kno-
we alle how our lord was bitrayed / we requyre you for god-
des sake haue pyte vpon his dethe / and worshipfully reuenge
15 his dethe / and thenne may ye weld alle thise landes / For we
alle wete wel / that & ye may flee these two traytours the reed
cyte and alle tho that ben therein will take you for their lord /
Truly said sire Palomydes hit greueth my herte for to here you
telle this doleful tale / and to faye the trouthe I sawe the same
20 letter that ye speke of / and one of the best knyghtes on the er-
the redde that letter to me / and by his commaundement I cam
hydder to reuenge your Kynges deth / and therfor haue done /
and lete me wete where I shall fynde tho traitours / for I shal
neuer be at ease in my herte tyl I be in handes with them /
25 ¶ Syr said sire Ebel thenne take your ship ageyne / and that
shyp must brynge you vnto the delectable yle fast by the reed
Cyte / and we in this castel shalle pray for yow / and abyde yo-
ur ageyne comynge / for this same castel and ye spede wel must
nedes be yours / for oure kyng Harmaunce lete make this cas-
30 tel for the loue of the two traytours / and so we kepte it with
stronge hande / & therefore ful fore are we threted / ¶ wote ye
what ye shal do said sir Palomydes what somme euer come of
me / loke ye kepe wel this castel / for & it myffortune me soo to
be slayn in this quest / I am sure there wil come one of the best
35 knyghtes of the world for to reuenge my deth / and that is sir
Tristram de lyones or els sir Launcelot du lake
¶ Thenne sir Palomydes departed from that castel / And as
he cam nyghe the Cyte / there cam out of a shyp a goodly knyzt

armed ageynst hym with his shelde on his sholder / and his hand vpon his swerd / And anone as he came nyghe sir Palomydes he said sir knyghte what seke ye here / leue this queste for it is myn / and myn it was or euer it was yours / & therfor I wille haue hit / Syr knyght said Palomydes it may wel be 5 that this quest was yours or it was myn / but when the letter was take oute of the dede kynges hand at that tyme by lykelyhode there was no knyght had vndertake to reuenge the deth of the kyng / And soo at that tyme I promysed to reuenge his dethe / And soo I shalle or els I am ashamed / ye say wel 10 sayd the knyghte / but wete ye wel thenne wille I fyzte with yow / and who be the better knyghte of vs bothe / lete hym take the bataille vpon hand / I assente me said sire Palomydes / & thenne they dresid their sheldes / and pulled out their swerdes and lashed to gyder many sadde strokes as men of myghte / & 15 this fyztynge was more than houre / but at the last sir Palomydes waxed bygge and better wynded / soo that thenne he smote that knyght suche a stroke / that he made hym to knele vpon his knees / Thenne that knyghte spak on hyghe / and sayd gentyll knyght hold thy hand / Syr Palomydes was goodely & with- 20 drewe his hand / Thenne this knyght sayd wete ye wel knyzt that thou arte better worthy to haue this bataille than I / and requyre the of knyghthode telle me thy name / Syr my name is Palomydes a knyghte of Kyng Arthurs and of the table round that hyder I came to reuenge the dethe of this dede kyng 25

¶ Capitulum lxiij

WEl be ye fond said the knygyte to Palomydes / for of alle knyghtes that ben on lyue excepte thre I had leuest haue yow / The fyrste is sire Launcelot du lake & sir Tristram de lyones / the thyrd is my nyz cosyn syr Lamorck de galys / and I am broder vnto kyng Harmaunce that is dede 30 & my name is sir Hermynde / ye saye wel said sir Palomydes / & ye shal see how I shal spede / & yf I be there slayn / goo ye to my lord sir launcelot or els to my lord sir Tristram / & pray them to reuenge my deth / for as for sir Lamorak hym shal ye neuer see in this world / Allas said sir Hermynde how may that be / he is 35

flayne faid fire Palomydes by fire Gawayne and his brethe-
 ren / Soo god me helpe faid Hermynd there was not one for
 one that slewe hym / that is trouthe faid fire Palomydes / for
 they were four daungerous knyghtes that slewe hym / as Syr
 5 Gawayne / fyr Agrauayne / fire Gaherys and fire Mordred /
 but fire Gareth the fyfthe broder was away / the best knyght of
 them alle / And soo fyre Palomydes told Hermynde alle the
 manere / and how they slewe fir Lamorak all only by treason
 So fir Palomydes took his ship / and aryued vp at the delecta-
 10 ble yle / And in the meane whyle fyr Hermynde that was the
 kynges broder he arryued vp att the reed Cyte / and there he
 told them how there was comen a knyghte of kyng Arthurs
 to auenge kyng Hermaunce dethe / and his name is fire Pa-
 lomydes the good knyght / that for the moost party he foloweth
 15 the best Glatysfaunt / Thenne alle the Cyte made grete Ioye / for
 mykel had they herd of fire Palomydes and of his noble pro-
 wesse / Soo lete they ordeyne a messager and fente vnto the / ij /
 bretheren / and bad them to make them redy / for there was a
 knyght comen that wold fyghte with them bothe / Soo the mes-
 20 sager wente vnto them where they were at a Castel there besyde
 and there he told them how there was a knyght comen of ky-
 nge Arthurs courte to fyghte with them bothe at ones / he is
 welcome faid they / But telle vs we pray yow yf hit be fire
 launcelot or ony of his blood / he is none of that blood faid the
 25 messager / thenne we care the lesse faid the two bretheren / for
 with none of the blood of fire launcelot we kepe not to haue a-
 doo with alle / wete ye wel faid the messager that his name is
 fire Palomydes that yet is vncrystened a noble knyght / well
 faid they and he be now vncrystened / he shalle neuer be cryst-
 30 end / Soo they apoynted to be at the cyte within two dayes /
 And whanne fire Palomydes was come to the Cyte they ma-
 de passyngre grete Ioye of hym / and thenne they beheld hym/
 and fawe that he was wel made / clenely and byggely / and vn-
 maymed of his lymmes / and neyther to yonge nor to old / and
 35 soo alle the peple preysed hym / and though he was not cryst-
 ened yet he byleued in the best maner / and was fulfeythful &
 true of his promyse / and wel condycyoned / And by caufe he
 made his auowe that he wold neuer be crystened vnto the ty-

me that he had encheued the beste Glatysfaunt / the whiche was
 a ful wonderful beest and a grete fygnifycacyon / for Merlyn
 profecyed moche of that beest / And also sire Palomydes auo-
 wed neuer to take ful crystendome vnto the tyme that he had
 done seuen batails within the lyftys / So within the thyrd day 5
 there came to the Cyte these two bretheren / the one hyght He-
 lyus / the other hyzt Helake / the whiche were men of grete pro-
 wesse how be hit that they were fals and ful of treason / and
 but poure men borne / yet were they noble knyghtes of their han-
 des / And with hem they brought fourty knyghtes to that en- 10
 tent / that they shold be bygge ynough for the reed Cyte /
 Thus came the two bretheren with grete bobaunce and pryde /
 for they had put the reed Cyte in fere and dammage / Thenne
 they were broughte to the lyftes / and sire Palomydes came in
 to the place and sayd thus / be ye the two bretheren Helyus & 15
 Helake that slewe your kynge and lord fyr Hermaunce by
 felony and treason / for whome that I am comen hyder to re-
 uenge his dethe / wete thou wel said sir Helyus and sir He-
 lake that we ar the same knyghtes that slewe kyng Harma-
 unce / And wete thou wel sire Palomydes farafyn / that we 20
 shalle handle the fo or thou departe that thou shalt wyffhe that
 thou werest crystened / Hit maye wel be said sir Palomydes /
 for yet I wold not dye or I were crystened / and yet foo am
 I not aferd of yow both / but I truste to god that I shal dye
 a better crysten man than ony of yow both / and doubte ye not 25
 said sir Palomydes eyther ye or I shalle be lefte dede in this
 place

¶ Capitulum lxiij

THēne they departed and the two bretheren came aye-
 nst sir Palomydes / and he ageynst them as fast as the-
 ir horses myght renne / And by fortune sir Palomydes smote 30
 Helake thorou his shelde and thurgh the brest more than a fa-
 dom / Alle this whyle sir Helyas helde vp his spere / and for
 pryde and orgulyte he wold not smyte sire Palomydes wyth
 his spere / but whan he sawe his broder lye on the erth / and sa-
 we he myzt not helpe hym self / thēne he said vnto sir palomydes 35

helpe thy self / and there with he came hurtlyng vnto sir Palomydes with his spere / and smote hym quyte from his fadel
Thenne sire Helyus rode ouer sir Palomydes twyes or thryes
And there with sir Palomydes was ashamed / & gat the hors
5 of sir Helyus by the brydel / & therwith al the hors areryd / &
sir Palomydes halp after / & so they felle both to the erthe / but
anone sir Helyus starte vp lyghtely & there he smote sir Palomydes a grete stroke vpon the helme that he kneled vpon his
owne knee / Thenne they lassed to gyder many sad strokes / &
10 tracyd and trauercyd now bakward / now fydelyng hurtlyng
to gyders lyke two bores / & that same tyme they felle both grouelyng to the erthe / Thus they fought styll withoute ony repofyng
two houres and neuer brethed / & thēne sir Palomydes waxed faynt and very / & sir Helyus waxed passyng strong
15 & doubled his strokes / & drofe sir Palomydes ouerthwart and endlonge alle the feld / that they of the cyte whan they sawe sir
Palomydes in this caas they wept & cryed & made grete dole / & the other party made as grete Ioye / Allas said the men of the
Cyte that this noble knyght shold haue thus be flayne for our kyn-
20 ges sake / & as they were thus wepyng & cryeng / sir Palomydes that had suffred an honderd strokes that it was wonder/
that he stode on his feet / At the last sire Palomydes beheld as he myght the comen peple how they wepte for hym / and thenne
he said to hym self / A fy for shame fyr palomydes why han-
25 gest thou thy hede soo lowe / & there with he bare vp his sheld / & looked sir Helyus in the vyfage / and he smote hym a grete stroke
vpon the helme / and after that another and another / And thenne he smote sir Helyus with fuche a myghte that he felle to
the erthe grouelynge / and thenne he rassyd of his helme from
30 his hede / and there he smote hym fuche a buffet that he departed his hede from the body / And thenne were the peple of the Cyte
the Ioyefullest peple that myght be / Soo they brought hym to his lodgyng with grete solempnyte / and there alle the peple
became his men / And thenne sire Palomydes prayd them all
35 to take kepe vnto alle the lordship of Kynge Hermaunce / for fair firs wete ye wel I maye not as at this tyme abyde with
yow / for I muste in alle haste be with my lord kyng Arthur at the cotel of Lonazep the whiche I haue promysed /

Thenne was the peple ful heuy at his departynge / for alle that
 Cyte profered fir Palomydes the thyrd parte of their goodes/
 foo that he wold abyde with hem / but in no wyse as at that ty-
 me he wold not abyde / and foo fire Palomydes departed / and
 foo he came vnto the castel there as fire Ebel was lieutenaunt/ 5
 And whanne they in the castel wyfte hou fire Palomydes had
 sped there was a Ioyeful meyny / and foo fir Palomydes depar-
 ted / and came to the castell of Lonazep / And whanne he wyft
 that fire Triftram was not there / he took his way ouer humber
 and came vnto Ioyous gard where as fir Triftram was and 10
 la Beale Ifoud / Syr Triftram had commaunded that what
 knyght erraunt came within the Ioyous gard as in the toun
 that they shold warne fire Triftram / Soo there came a man of
 the toun / and told fire Triftram how there was a Knyghte
 in the toun a passynge goodely man / What manere of man is 15
 he said fire Triftram / and what fygne bereth he / Soo the man
 told fire Triftram alle the tokens of hym / that is Palomydes
 said Dynadan / it maye wel be said fir Triftram / go ye to hym
 said fire Triftram vnto Dynadan / Soo Dynadan wente vn-
 to fire Palomydes / and there eyther made other grete Ioye / 20
 and foo they laye to gyder that nyghte / And on the morne er-
 ly came fire Triftram and fire Gareth / and took them in the-
 yr beddes / and foo they arofe and brake their fast

¶ Capitulum lrv

ANd thenne fire Triftram defyred fire Palomydes to ry-
 de in to the feldes and woodes / So they were accorded. 25
 to repose them in the foreste / And whanne they hadde
 played them a grete whyle / they rode vnto a fayre welle / and
 anone they were ware of an armed knyght that came rydyng
 ageynste them / and there eyther salewed other / Thenne this ar-
 med knyghte spak to fire Triftram and asked what were these 30
 knyghtes that were lodged in Ioyous gard / I wote not what
 they ar said fir Triftram / what knyghtes be ye said that knyghte
 for me semeth ye be no knyghtes erraunt by cause ye ryde vn-
 armed / whether we be Knyghtes or not / we lyste not to telle

the oure name / wilt thou not telle me thy name faid that knyght / thenne kepe the for thou shalt dye of my handes / & therewith he gate his spere in his handes / and wold haue ronne fir Triftram thurgh / that sawe fir palomydes / and smote his hors
5 trauerse in myddes of the fyde that man and hors felle to the erthe / And ther with fire palomydes alyghte and pulled out his fwerd to haue slayne hym / lete be faid fir Triftram / flee hym not / the Knyght is but a foole / it were shame to flee hym but take away his spere faid fire Triftram / and lete hym take
10 his hors and goo where that he wille / Soo whan this knyghte arose he groned fore of the falle / and foo he took his hors / and whan he was vp / he torned thenne his hors and requyred fir Triftram and fir palomydes to telle hym what knyghtes they were / Now wete ye wel faid fir Triftram that my name is fir
15 Triftram de Lyones / and this knyghtes name is fir palomydes / when he wyfte what they were / he took his hors with the spores by cause they shold not aske hym his name / and so rode fast away thurgh thyck and thynne / Thenne came there by them a knyghte with a bented sheld of asure whos name was
20 Epynogrys / and he cam toward them a grete wallop / whether ar ye rydyng faid fir Triftram / my fayre lordes faid Epynogrys I folowe the falsest knyght that bereth the lyf wherfor I requyre yow telle me whether ye sawe hym / for he bereth a shelde with a caas of reed ouer it / So god me help faid Triftram fuche a knygt departed from vs not a quarter of an houre agon
25 We pray yow telle vs his name / Allas faid Epynogrys why lete ye hym escape from yow / and he is foo grete a fo vnto al erraunt knyghtes his name is Breuse faunce pyte / A fy for shame faid fire palomydes / Allas that euer he escaped myne
30 handes / for he is the man in the world that I hate moost / Thenne euery knyghte made grete sorowe to other / and so Epynogrys departed and folowed the chace after hym / Thenne fir Triftram and his thre felawes rode vnto Ioyous gard / and there fir Triftram talked vnto fire palomydes of his batail hou
35 he sped atte reed Cyte / and as ye haue herd afore so was hit ended / Truly faid fir Triftram I am gladde ye haue wel sped for ye haue done worshipfully / wel faid fir Triftram we must forward to morn / and thenne he deuysed how it shold be / and

fyr Triftram deuysed to fende his two pauelions to fette them fast by the welle of Lonazep / and therin shalle be the Quene la beale Ifoud / Hit is wel said / said sir Dynadan but when fire Palomydes herd of that / his herte was rauysshed oute of mesure / Not withstandynge he sayd but lytel / Soo when they came to Ioyous gard / fire Palomydes wold not haue gone in to the castel / but as fire Triftram took hym by the fynger / & ladde hym in to the castel / And whanne fire Palomydes sawe la Beale Ifoud he was rauysshed so that he myghte vnneth speke / Soo they wente vnto mete / but Palomydes myghte not ete / and there was alle the chere that myght be hadde / And on the morn they were apparaylled to ryde toward Lonazep /

¶ Soo sir Triftram had thre squyers / and la beale Ifoud had thre gentylwymmen and bothe the Quene and they were ryche-ly apparailled / and other peple had they none with them / but varlets to bere their sheldes and their speres / ¶ And thus they rode forthe / So as they rode / they sawe afore them a route of knyghtes / hit was the knyght Galyhodyn with / xx / knyghtes with hym / Fair felawes said Galyhodyn / yonder comen foure knyghtes and a ryche and wel fayre lady / I am in wylle to take that lady fro them / That is not of the best counceyl said one of Galyhodyns men / but fende ye to them / and wete what they wille saye / and foo hit was done / there came a squyer vnto fire Triftram / and asked them whether they wold lufte or els to lese their lady / Not foo said fire Triftram telle your lord I byd hym come as many as we ben and wynne her and take her / Syre said Palomydes and hit please you lete me haue this dede / and I shalle vndertake them all foure / I wyll that ye haue it said fire Triftram at your pleasyr / Now goo and telle your lord Galyhodyn / that this same knyghte wylle encountre with hym and his felawes

¶ Capitulum lxxvj

THenne this squyer departed and told Galyhodyn / & thenne he dresid his shelde / and put forthe a spere / & sir Palomydes another / and there fire Palomydes smote Galyhodyn foo hard that he smote bothe hors and man to the erthe

And there he had an horryble falle / And thenne came ther an
 other knyght / and in the same wyfe he serued hym / and soo
 he serued the thyrd and the fourthe that he smote them ouer
 their horse croupes / and alweyes sire Palomydes spere was
 5 hole / Thenne came fixe knyghtes moo of Galyhodys men / &
 wold haue been auenged vpon sire Palomydes / lete be said
 sire Galyhodys not soo hardy / none of yow alle medle with
 this knyght / for he is a man of grete bounte and honoure / &
 yf he wold ye were not able to medle with hym / and ryghte
 10 soo they helde them styll / And euer sire Palomydes was redy
 to Iuste / And whan he sawe they wold no more / he rode vn-
 to sire Tristram / Ryght wel haue ye done said sire Tristram / &
 worthyfully haue ye done as a good knyghte shold / This
 Galyhodys was nyghe cosyn vnto Galahalt the haute prynce
 15 And this Galyhodys was a kyng within the countrey of
 Surluse / Soo as sire Tristram / sire Palomydes / and la Bea-
 le Ifoud rode to gyders they sawe afore them four knyghtes
 and euery man had his spere in his hand / the fyrst was sire
 Gawayne / the second sire Vwayne / the thyrd sire Sagramor le
 20 desyrus / and the fourthe was Dodynas le fauceage / Whan sire
 palomydes beheld them that the four knyghtes were redy to Ius-
 te / he praid sire Tristram to gyue hym leue to haue adoo with
 them also longe as he myghte holde hym on horsbak / And yf
 that I be smyten doune I pray yow reuenge me / wel said sire
 25 Tristram I wille as ye wille / and ye are not soo fayne to ha-
 ue worship but I wold as fayne encrease your worship / and
 there with all sire Gawayne put forth his spere / & sire Palomy-
 des another / and so they cam so egerly to gyders that sire Pa-
 lomydes smote sire Gawayne to the erthe / hors and alle / and
 30 in the same wyfe he serued Vwayne / sire Dodynas / and Sagra-
 more / Alle these four knyghtes sire Palomydes smote down with
 dyuerse speres / And thenne sire Tristram departed toward
 Lonezep / And whanne they were departed thenne came thyd-
 der Galyhodys with his x knyghtes vnto sire Gawayne / & ther
 35 he told hym alle how he had sped / I merueyle said sire Ga-
 wayne what knyghtes they ben / that ar so arayed in grene / &
 that knyght vpon the whyte hors smote me down said galihodys
 & my / iij / felaws / & so he dyd to me said gawayn / & wel I wote

said fire Gawayne that outhur he vpon the whyte hors is fire
 Triftram or els fire Palomydes / and that gay byfene lady is
 quene Ifoud / Thus they talked of one thyng and of other
 And in the meane whyle fir Triftram passed on / tyl that he
 came to the welle where his two paelions were sette / & there 5
 they alyghted / and there they sawe many paelions and gre-
 te araye / Thenne fire Triftram leste there fire Palomydes and
 fire Gareth with la beale Ifoud / and fir Triftram and fyre
 Dynadan rode to Lonezep to herken tydynges / and fire Trif-
 tram rode vpon fire Palomydes whyte hors / And whanne he 10
 came in to the castel / fir Dynadan herd a grete horne blowe / &
 to the horne drewe many Knyghtes / Thenne fire Triftram af-
 ked a Knyght what meaneth the blaft of that horne / Sir said
 that Knyght it is alle tho that shalle holde ageynst kyng Ar-
 thur at this turnement / The fyrste is the kyng of Irland / & 15
 the Kyng of Surluse / the Kyng af Lyftynoyse / the kyng of
 Northumberland / and the kyng of the best parte of Walys /
 with many other countreyes / and these drawe them to a coun-
 ceyle to vnderstande what gouernaunce they shalle be of / but
 the Kyng of Irland whos name was Marhalt and fader to 20
 the good knyghte fir Marhaus that fire Triftram flewe had
 alle the speche that fir Triftram myghte here it / He said lordes
 and felawes lete vs loke to our self / for wete ye wel Kyng
 Arthur is sure of many good Knyghtes / or els he wold not
 with soo fewe knyghtes haue adoo with vs / therfore by my co- 25
 unceyl lete euery Kyng haue a standard and a cognoiffaun-
 ce by hym self that euery knyghte drawe to their naturel lord
 and thenne maye euery Kyng and capytayne helpe his kny-
 tes yf they haue nede / whan fir Triftram had herd all their co-
 unceyl / he rode vnto Kyng Arthur for to here of his counceyl 30

¶ Capitulum lviij

BVt fir Triftram was not soo soone come in to the pla-
 ce but fire Gawayne and fir Galyhodyn wente to ky-
 nge Arthur and told hym that same grene Knyzte in the gre-
 ne harneis with the whyte hors smote vs two doune / and / vj /

of oure felawes this fame day / wel faid Arthur / and then-
ne he called fir Triftram and asked hym what was his na-
me / Syre faid fire Triftram ye fhalle holde me excufed as att
this tyme / for ye fhalle not wete my name / And there fir Trif-
15 tram retorned and rode his way / I haue merueylle faid Ar-
thur that yonder knyght wille not telle me his name / but goo
thow Gryflet le fyfe de dieu / and praye hym to fpeke with me
betwixe vs / Thenne fire Gryflet rode after hym and ouertoke
hym / and faid hym that kyng Arthur praid hym for to fpe-
10 ke with hym fecretely a parte / vpon this couenaunt faid fir trif-
tram I wille fpeke with hym that I wille torne ageyne / foo
that ye wille enfore me not to defyre to here my name / I fhalle
vndertake faid fir Gryflet that he wille not gretely defyre hit
of you / Soo they rode to gyders vntyl they cam to kyng Ar-
15 thur / Fair fir faid Kynge Arthur what is the caufe ye wyll
not telle me your name / Syr faid fir Triftram withoute a ca-
ufe I wille not hyde my name / vpon what party will ye hold
faid kynge Arthur / Truly my lord faid fir Triftram I wote
not yet on what party I wille be on vntil I come to the felde
20 And there as my herte gyueth me / there wille I hold / but to
morowe ye fhalle fee and preue on what party I fhall come &
there with al he retorned and wente to his paelions / And
vpon the morne they armed them alle in grene / and came in
to the felde / and there yonge knyghtes beganne to Iufte and
25 dyd many worfhipful dedes / Thenne fpacke Gareth vnto fire
Triftram and praid hym to gyue hym leue to breke his fpere
for hym thoughte shame to bere his fpere hole ageyne / Whan
fir Triftram herd hym fay foo he lough / and fayd I pray yow
doo your beft / Thenne fir Gareth gate a fpere and profered to
30 Iufte / That fawe a knyght that was neuewe vnto the kynge
of the honderd knyghtes / his name was Selyfes and a good
man of armes / Soo this knyght Selyfes thenne drefsid hym
vnto fir Gareth / and they two mette to gyders foo hard / that
eyther fmote other doune his hors and alle to the erthe / fo they we-
35 re both bryfed and hurte and there they lay tyl the Kyng with
the honderd knyghtes halp Selyfes vp / and fyr Triftram and
fir Palomydes halpe vp Gareth ageyne / and fo they rode with
fir Gareth vnto their paelions / and thenne they pulled of his

helme / And whanne la Beale Ifoud fawe sire Gareth bry-
 fed in the face / she asked hym what eyled hym / Madame fa-
 id sire Gareth I had a grete buffet / and as I suppoſe I gaf
 another / but none of my felawes god thanke them wold not
 reſcowe me / Forſothe ſaid Palomydes hit longed not to none 5
 of vs as this daye to Iuſte / for there haue not this day Iuſted
 no preued knyghtes / and nedely ye wold Iuſte / And whan
 the other party fawe ye profered your ſelf to Iuſte / they ſente
 one to yow a paſſynge good knyght of his age / for I knowe
 hym wel his name is Selyſes / and worſhipfully ye met with 10
 hym / and neyther of yow are diſhonoured / & therfor reſrefſhe
 your ſelf that ye may be redy and hole to Iuſte to morowe /
 As for that ſaid Gareth I ſhalle not fayle yow and I may
 beſtryde myn hors /

¶ Capitulum lxxiii

Now vpon what party ſaid Triftram is hit beſt / we be 15
 with alle as to morne / Syr ſaid Palomydes ye ſhalle
 haue myn aduylſe to be ageynſt Kynge Arthur as to morne for
 on his party wille be fyre Launcelot and many good knygh-
 tes of his blood with hym / And the moo men of worſhip that
 they be / the more worſhip we ſhalle we wynde / That is full 20
 knyghtely ſpoken ſaid ſir Triftram / and ryght ſoo as ye coun-
 ceile me / ſoo wille we doo / In the name of god ſaid they all
 Soo that nyghte they were lodged with the beſt / And on the
 morne whan it was day they were arayed alle in grene trap-
 pours ſheldes and ſperes / and la Beale Ifoud in the ſame co- 25
 loure and her thre damoyſels / And ryghte ſoo theſe four kn-
 yghtes came in to the feld endlonge and thurgh / And ſo they
 ledde la beale Ifoud thyder as ſhe ſhold ſtande and beholde all
 the Iuſtes in a bay wyndowe / but al wayes ſhe was wyped
 that no man myȝt ſee her vyſage / And thenne theſe thre kny- 30
 tes rode ſtreight vnto the party of the kynge of Scottes /
 Whan Kyng arthur had ſene hym doo all this he asked ſir laū-
 celot what were theſe knyȝtes & that quene / ſir ſaid launcelot
 I can not ſay you in certayn / but yf ſir Triftram be in this co-
 untrey or ſir palomydes / wete ye wel it be they in certeyn / and 35

la beale Ifoud / Thenne Arthur called to hym fyre kay and
 faid goo lyghtely and wete how many knyghtes there ben he-
 re lackynge of the table round / for by the feges thou maifte
 knowe / Soo wente fyr kay and fawe by the wrytynge in the
 5 feges that there lacked ten knyghtes / and thefe ben their na-
 mes that ben not here / Syr Triftram / fyr Palomydes / fyr Per-
 cyuale / fyr Gaherys / fyr Epynogrys / fyr Mordred / fyre Dy-
 nadan / fyr la cote male tayle and fyr Pelleas the noble knyzt
 wel faid arthur somme of thefe I dar vndertake ar here thys
 10 day ageynft vs / Thenne came therin two bretheren cofyns vn-
 to fyre Gawayne the one hyght fyr Edward / that other hyzte
 fyr Sadok the whiche were two good knyghtes / and they af-
 ked of Kynge arthur that they myght haue the fyrft Iuftes /
 for they were of Orkeney / I am pleafed faid Kynge arthur /
 15 Thenne fyr Edward encountred with the Kynge of Scottes/
 in whos party was fyre Triftram and fyr Palomydes / & fyre
 Edward fmote the Kynge of Scottes quyte from his hors /
 and fyr Sadok fmote doune the Kynge of Northwalys / and
 gaf hym a wonder grete falle that there was a grete crye on
 20 kynge arthurs party / and that made fyr Palomydes paffyng
 wrothe / and foo fyr palomydes dreffid his fhelde and his fpe-
 re / and with alle his myght he mette with fyr Edward of or-
 keney that he fmote hym foo hard / that his hors myghte not
 ftande on his feet / and foo they hurtled to the erthe / and then-
 25 ne with the fame fperre fyr Palomydes fmote doune fyre Sa-
 dok ouer his hors croupe / O Ihefu faid arthur what Knyghte
 is that arayed all in grene / he Iufteth myghtely / wete you wel
 faid fyr Gawayne he is a good Knyghte and yet fhall ye fee
 hym Iufte better or he departe / and yet fhalle ye fee faide fyre
 30 Gawayne another bygger Knyghte in the fame coloure than
 he is / for that fame Knyghte faid fyre Gawayn that fmote
 doune ryghte now my four cofyns / he fmote me doune within
 thefe two dayes and feuen felawes moo / This meane whyle
 as they ftood thus talkynge there came in to the place fyr trif-
 35 tram vpon a black hors / and or euer / he ftynte he fmote doune
 with one fperre four good Knyghtes of Orkeney that were of
 the Kynne of fir Gawayn / & fir Gareth & fir Dynadan eue-
 ryche of them fmote doun a good Knyzt / Ihefu feid arthur yöder

knyghte vpon the black hors doth myghtely and merueyllo-
 usly wel / Abyde you said sir Gawayne that knyght with the
 black hors beganne not yet / Thenne fyr Tristram made to horse
 ageyne the two kynges that Edward and Sadok had vn-
 horfed at the begynnyng / And thenne sire Tristram drewe 5
 his swerd and rode in to the thickest of the prees ayenst them
 of Orkeney / and there he smote doune knyghtes / and rashed
 of helmes and pulled away their sheldes / and hurtled down
 many knyghtes / he ferd soo that sire Arthur and alle knygh-
 tes had grete merueille whan they sawe one knyghte doo soo 10
 grete dedes of armes / and sire Palomydes fayled not vpon
 the other fyde / but dyd so merueylously wel that al men had
 wonder / For there kyng Arthur lykened fyre Tristram that
 was on the black hors lyke to a wood lyon / and lykened fyr
 palomydes vpon the whyte hors vnto a wood lybard / and sir 15
 Gareth and sir Dynadan vnto eger wolues / But the custome
 was suche amonge them that none of the kynges wold helpe
 other / but alle the fellowship of euery standard to helpe other
 as they myght / but euer sire Tristram dyd soo moche dedes of
 armes that they of Orkeney waxed wery of hym / and so with- 20
 drewe them vnto Loneyep

¶ Capitulum lxi

THenne was the crye of Heraudes and alle manere of
 comyn peple the grene knyghte hath done merueyllo-
 usly and beten all them of Orkeney / & there the heraudes nom-
 bred that fyr Tristram that satte vpon the black hors had smy- 25
 ten doune with speres and swerdes xxx knyghtes / and sir pa-
 lomydes had smyten doune twenty knyghtes / and the moost
 party of these / 1 / knyghtes were of the hous of kyng Arthur / &
 proued knyghtes / So god me help said Arthur vnto sir laūcelot
 this is a grete shame to vs to see four knyghtes bete soo many 30
 knyghtes of myn / & therfor make yow redy for we wyll haue
 adoo with them / Syr said launcelot wete ye wel that there ar
 two passynge good knyghtes and grete worship were hit not
 to vs now to haue adoo with them / for they haue this day fore

trauaylled / As for that said Arthur I wille be auengyd / &
 therfor take with yow fire Bleoberys and fir Ector / and I
 wille be the fourthe sayd Arthur / Syre said Launcelot ye shal
 fynde me redy / and my broder fir Ector and my cosyn fir ble-
 5 berys / And soo whanne they were redy and on horfbak / Now
 chefe said fir Arthur vnto fir laūcelot with whome that ye wil
 encountre with alle / Sir said Launcelot I wille mete with the
 grene knyghte vpon the black hors that was fyre Triftram / &
 my cosyn fir Bleoberys shalle matche the grene knyghte vpon
 10 the whyte hors that was fir Palomydes / and my broder fyre
 Ector shalle matche with the grene knyzt vpon the whyte hors
 that was fir Gareth / Thenne must I said fir Arthur haue a-
 doo with the grene knyghte vpon the gryfeld hors / and that
 was fire Dynadan / Now euery man take heede to his felawe
 15 said fir launcelot / and soo they trotted on to gyders / and ther
 encountred fire Launcelot ageynste fyre Triftram / ¶ Soo fyr
 Launcelot smote fir Triftram soo fore vpon the shelde that he
 bare hors and man to the erthe / but fir launcelot wend that it
 had ben fire Palomydes and soo he passed forthe / And then-
 20 ne fire Bleoberys encountred with fire Palomydes / and he
 smote hym soo hard vpon the shelde that fire Palomydes and
 his whyte hors rustled to the erthe ¶ Thenne fir Ector
 de marys smote fire Gareth soo hard that doune he felle of his
 hors / And the noble kynge Arthur encountred with fir Dy-
 25 nadan / and he smote hym quyte from his fadel / And thenne
 the noyse torned a whyle how the grene knyghtes were fla-
 yn doune / Whanne the Kynge of Northgalys sawe that fyre
 Triftram had a falle / thenne he remembryd hym how grete dedes
 of armes fir Triftram had done / Thenne he made redy ma-
 30 ny knyghtes for the customme and crye was fuche that what
 knyght were smyten down and myghte not be horfed ageyne
 by his felawes outhur by his owne strength that as that daye
 he shold be prysoner vnto the party that had smyten hym do-
 une / Soo came in the Kynge of Northgalys and he rode strey-
 35 ghte vnto fire Triftram / And whanne he came nyghe hym / he
 alyghte doune fodenly and bytoke fir Triftram his hors / and
 sayd thus Noble knyghte I knowe the not / of what countrey
 that thow arte / but for the noble dedes that thow haste done

this day take there my hors / and lete me doo as wel I maye
 For as Ihesu me helpe thow arte better worthy to haue myne
 hors than I my self / Gramercy said sir Triftram / & yf I may
 shalle quyte yow / loke that ye goo not ferre from vs / And as
 I suppose I shalle wyne yow an other hors / And ther with 5
 sire Triftram mounted vpon his hors / and there he mette with
 Kynge Arthur / and he gaf hym fuche a buffet vpon the helme
 with his swerd that kynge Arthur had no power to kepe his
 fadel / And thenne sir Triftram gaf the Kynge of Northgalis
 kynge Arthurs hors / thenne was there grete prees about kyng 10
 Arthur for to horse hym ageyne / But sire Palomydes wold
 not suffre kynge Arthur to be horsed ageyne / but euer sir Pa-
 lomydes smote on the ryght hand and on the lyfte hand my-
 ghtely as a noble knyght / And this meane whyle sir Triftrā
 rode thorou the thyckest of the prees / and smote doune knygh- 15
 tes on the ryzt and on the lyfte hand and racyd of helmes
 and soo passed forth vnto his paelions / and leste fyr Palo-
 mydes on foot / and fyr Triftram chaunged his hors and def-
 guyfed hym self alle in reed hors and harneis /

¶ Capitulum lxxij

ANd whan the Quene la Beale Ifoud sawe that fyre 20
 Triftram was vnhorsed and she wist not where he was
 thenne she wept gretely / But sir Triftram whan he was redy
 came daffhyng lyghtely in to the feld / And thenne la Beale
 Ifoud aspyed hym / and so he dyd grete dedes of armes with
 one spere that was grete / fyr Triftram smote doune fyue knygh- 25
 tes or euer he stynte / Thenne fyr Launcelot aspyed hym redy-
 ly that it was fyr Triftram and thenne he repentyd hym that
 he had smyten hym doune / and soo fyr Launcelot went oute
 of the prees to repose hym and lyghtely he came ageyne / and
 now whanne fyr Triftram came in to the prees thorou his gre- 30
 te force / he put fyre palomydes vpon his hors / and fyr Gareth
 and fyre Dynadan / and thenne they beganne to do merueyl-
 lously / but sir Palomydes nor none of his two felawes kne-
 we not who had holpen them on horfbak ageyne / But euer
 fyre Triftram was nyghe them / and socoured them and they 35

not hym by cause he was chaunged in to reed armour / and al
 this whyle fir launcelot was away / Soo whanne la Beale
 Ifoud knewe fir Triftram ageyne vpon his horsbak / she was
 passyng gladde / and thenne she lough and make good chere /
 5 And as hit happend fir palomydes loked vp toward her whe-
 re she lay in the wyndowe / and he aspyed how she laughed
 and there with he took fuche a reioycyng that he smote doune
 what with his spere and with his fuerd alle that euer he mett
 for thurgh the syghte of her he was soo enamoured in her loue
 10 that he semed at that tyme / that and bothe fir Triftram and fir
 Launcelot had ben bothe ageynst hym they shold haue won-
 ne no worship of hym / and in his herte as the book saith fyre
 Palomydes wysshed that with his worship he myghte haue a-
 doo with fir Triftram bifore all men by cause of la Beale I-
 15 foud / ¶ Thenne fyre Palomydes beganne to double his stren-
 gthe / and he dyd soo merueyllously that alle men had wonder
 of hym / and euer he caste vp his eye vnto la Beale Ifoud /
 And whanne he sawe her make fuche chere / he ferd lyke a lyon
 that there myghte no man withstande hym / and thenne fyre
 20 Triftram beheld hym how that fyre Palomydes bestured hym /
 and thenne he said vnto fir Dynadan / soo god me help fir Pa-
 lomydes is a passyng good knyghte and a wel enduryng /
 But fuche dedes sawe I hym neuer doo / nor neuer herd I telle
 that euer he dyd soo moche in one day / it is his day said Dyna-
 25 dan / and he wold saye no more vnto fyr Triftram / but to hym
 self he sayd / and yf ye knewe for whos loue he doth alle these
 dedes of armes / soone wolde fyre Triftram abate his courage/
 Allas said fyre Triftram that fyre Palomydes is not cryste-
 ned / Soo said Kynge Arthur / and soo said all tho that behelde
 30 hym / Thenne alle peple gaf hym the pryce as for the best kny-
 ght that day that he passed fyr launcelot outhur fyre Triftram
 wel said Dynadan to hym self alle this worship that fyre Pa-
 lomydes hath here this daye he maye thanke the Quene Ifoud
 For had she ben awaye this daye / fyre Palomydes had not ge-
 35 ten the pryce this daye ¶ Ryght soo come in to the
 felde fyr launcelot du lake and sawe and herd the noyse and
 crye and the grete worship that fyre Palomydes had he dresid
 hym ageynst fyr Palomydes with a grete myghty spere / and

alonge / and thought to smyte hym doune / And whanne fyre
 Palomydes sawe sir launcelot come vpon hym soo fast / he ran
 vpon fire launcelot as fast with his swerd as he myght / and
 as fire launcelot shold haue stryken hym / he smote his spere
 on fyde / and smote it atwo with his swerd / And sir palomy- 5
 des raffhed vnto fire launcelot and thoughte to haue putt hym
 to a shame / and with his swerd he smote his hors neck that
 fire launcelot rode vpon / and thenne sir launcelot felle to the
 erthe / Thenne was the crye huge and grete / see how sir Palo-
 mydes the sarafyn hath smyten doune fyre launcelots hors 10
 ¶ Ryght thenne were there many knyghtes wrothe with fyre
 Palomydes by cause he had done that dede / therfor many kny-
 ghtes held there ageynst that it was vnknyghtely done in a
 turnement to kille an hors wilfully but that hit had ben do-
 ne in playne batail lyf for lyf 15

¶ Capitulum lxxi

WHanne sir Ector de marys sawe sir launcelot his bro-
 der haue suche a despyte / & so set on foot / thenne he gat
 a spere egerly / & ran ageynst sir palomydes / & he smote hym so
 hard that he bare hym quyte from his hors / that sawe sir tristrā
 that was in reed harneis / & he smote doune syr Ector de ma- 20
 rys quyte from his hors / thenne sir launcelot dressid his sheld
 vpon his sholder / & with his fuerd naked in his hand / & so cam
 streyzt vpon sir palomydes fyerfly & said wete thou wel thou
 hast done me this day the grettest despyte that euer ony worsh-
 ipful knyzt dyd to me in turnement or in Iustes / & therefore I 25
 will be auengid vpon the / therfor take kepe to your self / ¶ A
 mercy noble knyzt said palomydes / & forgyue me myn vnkyn-
 dely dedes for I haue no power nor myzt to withstande you / &
 I haue done soo moche this daye that wel I wote I dyd neuer
 so moche nor neuer shal in my lyf dayes / & therefore moost no- 30
 ble knyzt I requyre the spare me as at this day / & I promyse
 you I shal euer be your knyzt whyle I lyue / And ye putte
 me from my worship now / ye putte me from the grettest wor-
 ship that euer I had or euer shalle haue in my lyf dayes / wel

fayd fire launcelot / I fee for to fay the fothe ye haue done merueylously wel this day / and I vnderstande a parte for whos loue ye doo hit / and wel I wote that loue is a grete maystresse And yf my lady were here as she nys not / wete yow wel fa-
 5 id fire Palomydes ye shold not bere away the worship / But beware your loue be not discouerd / for and fyr Triftram may knowe hit ye wille repente hit / And sythen my quarel is not here / ye shall haue this day the worshyp as for me confydering the grete trauaylle and payne that ye haue had this day / it we-
 10 re no worship for me to putte yow from hit / And there wyth all fir launcelot suffred fir Palomydes to departe / ¶ Thenne fir Launcelot by grete force and myghte gate his owne hors maulgre xx knyghtes / Soo whanne fire Launcelot was horfed / he dyd many merueylles / and soo dyd fir Triftram / and fyre
 15 palomydes in lyke wyse / Thenne fir laūcelot smote doune with a spere fir Dynadan / and the kyng of scotland / and the kyng of walys / and the kyng of Northumberland / and the kyng of Lyftynes / Soo thenne fire laūcelot and his felawes smote doune wel a fourty knyghtes / Thenne came the kyng of
 20 Irland and the kyng of the freyte marches to rescowe fyre Triftram and fire Palomydes / There beganne a grete medle / & many knyghtes were smyten doune on bothe partyes / and alweyes fir launcelot spared fir Triftram / and he spared hym / And fir Palomydes wold not medle with fir launcelot / and
 25 soo there was hurtelynge here and there / And thenne Kyng Arthur sente oute many knyghtes of the table round / and fir palomydes was euer in the formeft fronte / and fyre Tryfram dyd soo strongly wel that the kyng and alle other had merueylle / And thenne the kyng lete blowe to lodgyng / and by
 30 caufe fir Palomydes beganne fyrste / and neuer he went nor rode oute of the feld to repose / but euer he was doynge merueylously wel outhur on foote or on horsbak / and lenger duryng Kyng Arthur and alle the kynges gaf fir Palomydes the honour and the gree as for that daye / Thenne fyr Triftram commaunded fir Dynadan to fetch the Quene la Beale Ifoud
 35 and bryng her to his two paelions that stode by the welle / And soo Dynadan dyd as he was commaunded / But when fir Palomydes vnderstode and wyft that fire Triftram was in

the reed armour / and on the reed hors / wete ye wel that he
 was gladde and foo was sir Gareth and sire Dynadan / For
 they alle wende that fyre Trystram had be taken pryfoner
 And thenne every knyghte drewe to his inne / And thenne
 kynge Arthur and every knyghte spake of tho knyghtes / but 5
 aboute alle men they gaf sire Palomydes the pryce / and alle
 knyghtes that knewe sire Palomydes had wonder of his dedes
 / Syre said sir Launcelot vnto Arthur as for sire Palomydes
 and he be the grene knyghte I dare say as for this daye he
 is best worthy to haue the degree / for he reposed hym neuer / ne 10
 neuer chaunged his wedys / And he beganne fyrste and lengest
 held on / and yet wel I wote said sir Launcelot that ther
 was a better knyght than he / and that shalle be preued or we
 departe vpon payne of my lyf / ¶ Thus they talked on eyther
 party / and foo sire Dynadan rayled with sir Tristram & said 15
 what the deuyll is vpon the this day / for sire palamydes strenght
 febled neuer this day but euer he doubled his strenght

¶ Capitulum lxxij

ANd thou sire Tristram faryst alle this daye as though
 thou haddeft ben a slepe / and therfor I calle the coward
 wel Dynadan said sir Tristram / I was neuer called co- 20
 ward or now of no erthely knyghte in my lyf / and wete thou
 wel fyr I calle my selfe neuer the more coward though fyre
 Launcelot gaf me a falle / For I oute cepte hym of al knygh-
 tes / And doubte ye not fyr Dynadan and fyr Launcelot haue
 a quarel good / he is to ouer good for any knyght that now is 25
 lyuyng / and yet of his sufferance largeffe / bounte / and cur-
 tofye I calle hym knyght pyerles / and foo sire Tristram was
 in maner wrothe with fyr Dynadan / But alle this langage
 fyr Dynadan said by cause he wold angre fyre Tristram for to
 cause hym to awake his spyrytes & to be wrothe for wel kne- 30
 we fyr Dynadan that and fyr Tristram were thorowly wrothe
 fyre Palomydes shold not gete the pryce vpon the morn / And
 for this entente fyr Dynadan said alle this raylynge and lan-
 gage ageynst sir Tristram / Truly said fyre palomydes / as for
 fyr launcelot of his noble knyghthode / curtosye and prowesse / 35

and gentilnes I knowe not his pyere / for this day fayd fyre
 Palomydes I dyd ful vncurtoisly vnto fire launcelot and ful
 vnknyghtely / and ful knyghtely and curtoisly he dyd to me
 ageyne / for and he had ben as vngentyl to me as I was to
 5 hym this daye I had wonne no worship / And therfor fayd
 Palomydes I shal be fire launcelots knyght whyles my lyfe
 lasteth / Thys talkynge was in the howses of Kynges / But
 alle kynges lordes and knyghtes fayd of clere knyghthode / &
 of pure strengthe / of bounte / of curtosye / fyr Launcelot and fir
 10 Triftram bare the pryce aboue alle knyghtes that euer were in
 Arthurs dayes / And there were neuer knyghtes in Arthurs
 dayes dyd half soo many dedes as they dyd / as the book fa-
 yth / no ten knyghtes dyd not half the dedes that they dyd &
 there was neuer knyghte in their dayes that requyred fir la-
 15 uncelot or fire Triftram of ony quest soo hit were not to theyre
 shame but they performed their desyre

¶ Capitulum lxxiiij

SOo on the morne fyre Launcelot departed and fir trif-
 tram was redy and la Beale Ifoud with fir Palo-
 mydes and fir Gareth / And soo they rode alle in gre-
 20 ne ful frehly byfene vnto the forest / and fir Triftram left fir
 Dynadan slepynge in his bed / and so as they rode / it happed
 the kynge and launcelot stode in a wyndowe / and sawe fyre
 Triftram ryde and Ifoud / Syre fayd Launcelot yonder ry-
 deth the fayrest lady of the world excepte youre quene Dame
 25 Gueneuer / who is that said fir Arthur / Sir fayd he / it is que-
 ne Ifoud that oute taken my lady your quene she is make-
 les / Take your hors said Arthur / and araye yow at alle ryz-
 tes as I wylle doo / and I promyse yow said the kynge / I
 wille see her / ¶ Thenne anone they were armed &
 30 horfed / and eyther took a spere and rode vnto the forest / Syre
 said launcelot it is not good that ye goo to nyghe them / for
 wete ye wel there are two as good knyghtes as nowe are ly-
 uynge / and therefore fir I pray yow be not to hasty / For perad-
 uenture there wille be somme knyghtes ben displeased and we

come fodenly vpon them / As for that fayd Arthur I wyll see
 her / for I take no force whome I greue / Syr said launcelot
 ye putte your self in grete leopardy / As for that said the ky-
 nge we wille take the aduenture / Ryght soo anone the Kyng
 rode euen to her / and falewed her / and said god yow faue / 5
 Syr said she ye are welcome / thenne the kynge beheld her / and
 lyked her wonderly wel / with that came sir palomydes vnto
 Arthur and said vncurtois knyght what sekest thou here / thou
 art vncurtois to come vpon a lady thus fodenly / therfor with-
 drawe the / Syr Arthur took none hede of sir palomydes wor- 10
 des / but euer he loked styll vpon Quene Ifoud / Thenne was
 sir Palomydes wrothe / and there with he took a spere / and cam
 hurtelynge vpon Kynge Arthur / and smote hym doune with
 a spere / whan sir launcelot sawe that despyte of sir Palomydes
 he sayd to hym self I am loth to haue adoo with yonder kny- 15
 ght / and not for his owne sake but for sir Tristram / And one
 thyng I am sure of / yf I smyte doune sir palomydes I must
 haue adoo with sir Tristram / and that were ouer moche for
 me to matche them bothe / for they are two noble knyghtes / not-
 withstandyng whether I lyue or I dye nedes muste I re- 20
 uenge my lord / and so wille I what someuer befall of me /
 And there with sir launcelot cryed to sir palomydes / kepe the
 from me / And thenne sir launcelot and sir Palmydes raf-
 fhed to gyder with two speres strongly / But sir Launcelot
 smote sir palomydes soo hard that he wente quyte oute of his 25
 fadel and had a grete falle / Whanne sir Tristram sawe sir
 palomydes haue that falle / he sayd to sir Launcelot / syr kny-
 ght kepe the / for I must Iuste with the / As for to Iuste with
 me said sir launcelot I wille not fayle yow / for no drede I
 haue of yow / but I am lothe to haue adoo with yow and I 30
 myghte chese / for I will that ye wete that I must reuenge my
 special lord that was vnhorfed vnwarly and vnknyghtely /
 And therfor though I reuengyd that falle / take ye no disp-
 leafyr therin / for he is to me suche a frende that I may not see
 hym shamed / anone sir Tristram vnderstode by his parson and 35
 by his knyghtely wordes that it was sir launcelot du lake /
 and veryly sir Tristram demed that it was kynge Arthur he
 that sir Palomydes had smyten doune

And thenne fir Triftram put his spere from hym / and putte
 fire Palomydes ageyne on horsbak / and fir launcelot put kyng
 Arthur on horsbak and foo departed / So god me helpe sayd
 fire Triftram vnto Palomydes ye dyd not worshipfully when
 5 ye smote doune that knyght soo sodenly as ye dyd / And we-
 te ye wel ye dyd your self grete shame / for the knyghtes cam
 hyder of their gentilnesse to see a fayre lady / and that is eue-
 ry good knyghtes parte to behold a fayr lady / and ye hadde
 not adoo to playe fuche maystryes afore my lady / wete thow
 10 wel hit wille tourne to angre / for he that ye smote doune was
 kynge Arthur / and that other was the good knyght fire la-
 uncelot / But I shalle not forgete the wordes of fire launcelot
 whan that he callyd hym a man of grete worship / there by I
 wyft that it was kynge Arthur / And as for fire launcelot /
 15 and there had ben fyue honderd knyghtes in the medowe / he
 wold not haue refused them / and yet he said he wold refuse
 me / By that ageyne I wyft that it was fir launcelot / for e-
 uer he forbereth me in euery place / and sheweth me grete kynd-
 nesse / and of alle knyghtes I oute take none saye what men
 20 wille say / he bereth the floure of al chyualry / saye hit hym who
 someuer wille / and he be wel angred / and that hym lyft to do
 his vtterance withoute ony fauour / I knowe hym not on
 lyue but fir launcelot is ouer hard for hym / be hit on horsback
 or on foote / I may neuer byleue sayd Palomydes that kyng
 25 Arthur wille ryde soo pryuely as a poure erraunt knyghte / A
 said fir Triftram ye knowe not my lord Arthur / for all kny-
 tes maye lerne to be a knyghte of hym / And therefore ye may
 be fory said fire Triftram of your vnkyndely dedes to so noble
 a kynge / And a thyng that is done may not be vndone sayd
 30 Palomydes / Thenne fire Triftram sente quene Ifoud vnto her
 lodgyng in the pryory there to behold alle the turnement /

¶ Capitulum lxxiiij

Thenne there was a crye vnto all knyghtes that when
 they herd an horne blowe they shold make Iustes as
 they dyd the fyrst day / And lyke as the bretheren fire

Edward and sir Sadok beganne the Iustes the fyrst daye / fir
 Vwayne the kynges sone Vreyn and fir lucanere de buttelere
 beganne the Iustes the second day / And at the fyrst encountre
 fyr Vwayne smote doune the kynges sone of Scottes / and fyr
 Lucanere ranne ageynste the kyng of walys / and they brake 5
 their speres alle to pyeces / and they were foo fyers bothe / that
 they hurtled to gyders that bothe felle to the erthe / ¶ Thenne
 they of Dorkeney horfed ageyne fyr Lucanere / And thenne
 came in fyr Triftram de Lyones / and thenne fyr Triftram smote
 doune fyr Vwayne / and fyre Lucanere and fyre Palomydes 10
 smote doune other two Knyghtes / and fyre Gareth smote
 doune other two Knyghtes / Thenne said fyre arthur vnto fyr
 Launcelot / see yonder thre knyghtes doo passyngly wel / & namely
 the fyrst that Iusted / Sir said launcelot that Knyghte
 beganne not yet / but ye shalle see hym this day doo merueyl- 15
 lously / and thenne came in to the place the dukes sone of Or-
 keney / and thenne they beganne to do many dedes of armes /
 ¶ Whan fyre Triftram sawe them foo begynne / he said to Pa-
 lomydes / how fele ye your self / maye ye doo this daye as ye dyd
 yesterday / Nay said Palomydes I fele my self foo wery and 20
 foo fore bryfed of the dedes of yesterday that I maye not endu-
 re as I dyd yesterday / That me repenteth said fyre Triftram /
 for I shall lacke yow this day / Sire Palomydes saide truste
 not to me / for I maye not doo as I dyd / alle these wordes said
 Palomydes for to begyle fyr Triftram / Syr said fyr Triftram 25
 vnto fyr Gareth thenne muste I truste vpon yow wherfor I
 praye yow be not ferre from me to rescowe me / and nede be sa-
 id Gareth I shalle not fayle yow in alle that I maye doo
 ¶ Thenne fyr Palomydes rode by hym self / and thenne in des-
 pyte of fyr Triftram he putte hym self in the thyckest prees a- 30
 monge them of Dorkeney / and there he dyd foo merueyllous
 dedes of armes that alle men had wonder of hym / for there
 myghte none stande hym a stroke / whanne fyre Triftram sawe
 fyre Palomydes doo suche dedes / he merueylled and sayd to
 hym self / he is wery of my company / Soo fyr Triftram beheld 35
 hym a grete whyle and dyd but lytel els / for the noyse and
 crye was foo huge / and grete / that fyre Triftram merueylled /
 from whens came the strengthe that sire Palomydes had there

in the felde / Syr said fire Gareth vnto fyr Triftram / remembre
 ye not of the wordes that fyr Dynadan sayd to yow yesterday
 when he called yow coward / for sothe fir he said it for none yl
 for ye are the man in the world that he moost loueth / and alle
 5 that he sayd was for your worship / And therefore said fir Ga-
 reth to fir Triftram lete me knowe this daye what ye be / & won-
 dre ye not foo vpon fire Palomydes / for he enforceth hym self to
 wynne alle the worship and honour from yow / I maye well
 byleue it said fir Triftram / And fythen I vnderstande his euyl
 10 wyll and his enuy / ye shalle see / yf that I enforce my selfe /
 that the noyse shalle be lefte that now is vpon hym /
 Thenne fire Triftram rode in to the thickest of the prees / & then-
 ne he dyd foo merueyllously wel / and dyd foo grete dedes of
 armes that alle men sayd that fire Triftram dyd double so mo-
 15 che dedes of armes as fyre Palomydes had done afore hand /
 And thenne the noyse wente playne from fire Palomydes / and
 alle the peple cryed vpon fir Triftram / O Ihesu said the peple
 see how fire Triftram smyteth doune with his spere foo many
 knyghtes / And see faide they all how many knyghtes he smy-
 20 teth doune with his suerd / and of how many knyghtes he raf-
 fhed of their helmes and their sheldes / and foo he bete them al
 of Orkeney afore hym / How now said fir launcelot vnto ky-
 nge Arthur / I told yow that this daye there wold a knyzt
 playe his pagent / yonder rydeth a knyzt ye may see he doth kny-
 25 ghtely / for he hath strengthe and wynde / So god me help said
 Arthur to Launcelot ye saye sothe / for I sawe neuer a better
 knyghte / for he passeth fer fire Palomydes / Syre wete ye well
 sayd launcelot hit muste be foo of ryghte / for hit is hym selfe
 that noble knyght fyr Triftram / I maye ryght wel byleue it
 30 said Arthur / But whan fire Palomydes herd the noyse and
 the crye was torned from hym / he rode oute on a parte / and be-
 held fir Triftram / And whanne fire Palomydes sawe fir Trif-
 tram do so merueyllously wel / he wepte passyngly fore for def-
 pyte / for he wiste wel / he shold no worship wynne that daye /
 35 for wel knewe fire Palomydes whanne fire Triftram wold
 put forth his strengthe and his manhode he shold gete but ly-
 tyl worship that daye

¶ Capitulum lxxv

THenne came kynge Arthur and the kynge of Northgalys / and fir Launcelot du lake and fire Bleoberis fire Bors de ganys / fir Ector de maris / these thre knyghtes came in to the feld with fire launcelot / And thenne fire Launcelot with the thre knyghtes of his kynne dyd foo grete dedes of armes that alle the noyse beganne vpon fir launcelot / And foo they bete the kynge of walys and the kyng of scottes ferre abak / and made them to auoyde the felde / but fir Triftram and fir Gareth abode stylye in the felde and endured all that euer there came / that alle men had wonder that ony knyght myght endure foo many strokes / But euer fir launcelot & his thre kynnesmen by the cammaüement of fyr launcelot forbare fir Triftram / Thenne said fir Arthur is that fir Palomydes that endureth foo wel / nay sayd fir launcelot / wete ye wel it is the good knyght fir Triftram / for yonder ye maye see fyr Palomydes beholdeth and houeth and doth lytel or noughte / And fire ye shalle vnderstande that fire Triftram weneth thys day to bete vs alle oute of the felde / And as for me said fire launcelot I shal not bete hym / bete hym who foo wil / Sir said Launcelot vnto Arthur ye maye see how fir Palomydes houeth yonder / as though he were in a dreame / wete ye wel he is ful heuy that Triftram doth fuche dedes of armes / Thenne is he but a foole said Arthur / for neuer was fire Palomydes / nor neuer shalle be of fuche prowesse as fir Triftram / And yf he haue ony enuy at fir Triftram and cometh in with hym vpon his fyde he is a fals knyghte / ¶ As the kynge and fir Launcelot thus spake / fir Triftram rode pryuely oute of the prees / that none aspyed hym / but la Beale Ifoud and fir Palomydes / for they two wold not lete of their eyen vpon fir Triftram / ¶ And whanne fir Triftram cam to his paelions he fond fire Dynadan in his bedde a slepe / Awake said Triftram / ye ouzt to be ashamed foo to slepe whan knyghtes haue ado in the feld Thenne fyr Dynadan arofe lyghtely and said fyr what wylle ye that I shalle doo / make yow redy said fyr Triftram to ryde with me in to the felde / Soo whan fyr Dynadan was armed he loked vpon fyre Triftrams helme and on his shelde / and

whan he sawe foo many strokes vpon his helme and vpon his
 shelde / he said in good tyme was I thus a slepe / For hadde
 I ben with yow / I must nedes for shame there haue folowed
 yow / more for shame than ony prowesse / that is in me / that I
 5 see wel now by tho strokes that I shold haue ben truly beten
 as I was yesterdaye / Leue youre lapes said sire Tristram / &
 come of that were in the felde ageyne / what sayd sire Dy-
 nadan is your herte vp / yester daye ye ferd as though ye had
 dremed / Soo thenne sir Tristram was arayed in black harne-
 10 is / O Ihesu said Dynadan what eyleth yow this day / me fe-
 meth ye be wylder than ye were yesterday / Thenne smyled fyr
 Tristram and sayd to Dynadan awayte wel vpon me / yf ye
 fee me ouermatched / loke that ye be euer behynde me / and I
 shalle make yow redy way by goddes grace / Soo sir Tristram
 15 and fyre Dynadan took their horses / Alle this aspyed sir pa-
 lomydes / bothe their goynge and their comynge / and soo dyd
 la Beale Ifoud / for she knewe sir Tristram aboue alle other

¶ Capitulum lxxvj

20 **T**Henne whanne sire Palomydes sawe that sir Tristram
 was desguysed / thenne he thoughte to doo hym a sha-
 me / Soo fyre Palomydes rode to a knyghte that was
 fore wounded that satte vnder a fayre welle from the felde /
 Syr knyghte said sire Palomydes I pray you to lene me yo-
 ur armour / and your shelde / for myn is ouer wel knowen in
 this felde / and that hath done me grete damage / and ye shall
 25 haue myn armour and my shelde that is as sure as yours /
 I wille wel said the knyghte that ye haue myn armour and
 my shelde / yf they may doo yow ony auayle / So sire Palomy-
 des armed hym hastely in that Knyghtes armoure & his shield
 that shone as ony cryfall or fyluer / and soo he came rydynge
 30 in to the felde / And thenne ther was neyther sire Tristram nor
 none of kynge Arthurs party that knewe sir Palomydes /

¶ And ryght soo as sir Palomydes was come in to the feld
 fyr Tristram smote doune thre Knyghtes euen in the fyght of
 sir Palomydes / And thenne sir Palomydes rode ageynst fyre

Triftram / and eyther mette other with grete speres / that they
 brafte to their handes / And thenne they daffhed to gyder with
 fwerdes egerly / Thenne fyre Triftram had merueylle what kny-
 ghte he was that dyd bataill fo knyghtely with hym / Then-
 ne was fir Triftram wrothe / for he felte hym paffyngge stronge 5
 fo that he demed he myghte not haue adoo with the remenaunt
 of the knyghtes by caufe of the frengthe of fyre palomydes

¶ Soo they laffhed to gyder and gaf many fadde ftrokes to
 gyders / and many knyghtes merueylled what knyghte he
 myghte be that foo encountred with the black knyghte fir trif- 10
 tram / ful wel knewe la Beale Ifoud that there was fyre
 palomydes that fought with fir Triftram / for he afpyed al in
 her wyndowe where that fhe ftode / as fyr palomydes chaunged
 his harneis with the wounded knyghte / And thenne fhe be-
 ganne to wepe fo hertely for the defpyte of fyr palomydes that 15
 ther fhe fwouned / Thenne came in fyr laūcelot with the knygh-
 tes of Orkeney / And whanne the other party had afpyed fir
 Launcelot / they cryed / retorne retorne / here cometh fyre launce-
 lot du lake / Soo there came knyghtes and fayd fyr launce-
 lot ye muft nedes fyghte with yonder knyght in the black har- 20
 neis that was fyr Triftram / for he hath al mooft ouercome that
 good knyghte that fyghteth with hym with the fyluer fhelde
 that was fyr palomydes / Thenne fir launcelot rode betwix fir
 Triftram and fyr palomydes / and fyr launcelot faid to palo-
 mydes / fyr knyghte lete me haue the bataill / for ye haue nede 25
 to be repofed / Syr palomydes knewe fyr launcelot wel / and fo
 dyd fyre Triftram / but by caufe fyr Launcelot was ferre har-
 dyer knyght than hym felf / therfor he was gladde / and fuffred
 fyr launcelot to fyghte with fyr Triftram / For wel wyfte he
 that fyre launcelot knewe not fir Triftram / and there he hoped 30
 that fyr launcelot fhold bete or fhame fyre Triftram / wherof
 fyre palomydes was ful fayne / and foo fyr launcelot gaf fyr
 Triftram many fadde ftrokes / but fyre launcelot knewe not fir
 Triftram / but fir Triftram knewe wel fyre launcelot /

And thus they fought longe to gyders that la Beale Ifoud 35
 was wel nygh oute of her mynde for forou / thenne fyr Dyna-
 dan told fir Gareth how þ^t knygt in the black harneis was fir
 triftrā & this is laūcelot þ^t fyzteth with hym þ^t muft nedes haue

the better of hym / for sir Triftram hath had to moche trauaylle
 this day / Thenne lete vs smyte hym doune said fyre Gareth / fo
 it is better that we doo said fyre Dynadan thenne sir Triftram
 be shamed / for yonder houeth the stronge knyghte with the fyl-
 5 uer sheld to falle vpon fyre Triftram yf nede be / Thenne forthe
 with alle Gareth raffhed vpon fyre launcelot / and gaf hym a
 grete stroke vpon his helme soo hard that he was astroyed
 And thenne came fyr Dynadan with a spere / and he smote
 fyr launcelot suche a buffet that hors and alle felle to the erthe
 10 O Ihesu said fyr Triftram to fyre Gareth and fyre Dynadan
 fy for shame why dyd ye smyte doune soo good a knyght as
 he is / and namely whan I had adoo with hym / now ye doo
 your self grete shame / and hym no difworship / For I helde
 hym refonable hote though ye had not holpen me / Thenne cam
 15 fyre palomydes that was desguysed and smote doune fyr Dy-
 nadan from his hors / Thenne fyr launcelot by cause fyr Dyna-
 dan had smyten hym afore hand / thenne fyr launcelot affai-
 led fyre Dynadan passynge fore / and fyre Dynadan defended
 hym myghtely / But wel vnderstood fyr Triftram that fyre
 20 Dynadan myghte not endure fyr launcelot / wherfor fyr Trif-
 tram was fory / Thenne came fyre palomydes fresshe vpon fyre
 Triftram / And whanne fyr Triftram sawe hym come / he tho-
 ughte to delyuer hym at ones by cause that he wold helpe fyre
 Dynadan by cause he stode in grete perylle with fyr Launcelot
 25 ¶ Thenne fyre Triftram hurteled vnto fyre palomydes & gaf
 hym a grete buffet / and thenne sir Triftram gate sir palomy-
 des and pulled hym doune vnder nethe hym / And so felle sir
 Triftram with hym / and fyr Triftram lepte vp lyghtely and
 lefte sir palomydes and wente betwixe sir launcelot and Dy-
 30 nadan / and thenne they beganne to do bataille to gyders /
 ¶ Ryght soo fyre Dynadan gat sir Triftrams hors and said
 on hyghe that sir Launcelot myght here it / my lord sir Triftrā
 take yours hors / And whanne fyre Launcelot herd hym ne-
 name sir Triftram / O Ihesu said launcelot what haue I done
 35 I am dishonoured / A my lord fyre Triftram said Launcelot /
 why were ye desguysed / ye haue put your self in grete perille
 this daye / But I praye you noble Knyghte to pardone me /
 for and I had knowen yow we had not done this bataille /

Sir said sir Triftram this is not the fyrst kyndenes ye shewed me / foo they were bothe horfed ageyne / Thenne alle the people on the one syde gaf sir laūcelot the honour and the degree / & on the other syde all the people gaf to the noble knyzt sir triftram the honour and the degree / but launcelot sayd nay ther to / for 5 I am not worthy to haue this honour / for I wil reporte me vn-to alle knyghtes that sir Triftram hath ben lenger in the felde than I / and he hath smyten down many moo knyghtes thys day than I haue done / And therfore I wille gyue fire Triftram my voyce and my name / and so I praye alle my lordes & felawes foo to doo / Thenne there was the hole voyce of dukes and Erles / Barons and knyghtes / that fyr Triftram thys day is preued the best knyghte

¶ Capitulum lxxvij

THenne they blewe vnto lodgyng / and Quene Ifoud was ledde vnto her paelions / but wete yow wel she 15 was wrothe oute of mesure with fyr Palomydes / for she sawe alle this treason from the begynnyng to the endyng / And all this whyle neyther fyr Triftram neyther sir Gareth nor Dynadan knewe not of the treason of sir Palomydes / but afterward ye shalle here that there befelle the gretteft debate betwixe fyre 20 Triftram and fyre Palomydes that myghte be / So whanne the turnement was done / sir Triftram Gareth and Dynadan rode with la Beale Ifoud to these paelions / And euer fyre Palomydes rode with them in theyr company desguysed as he was But whanne sir Triftram had aspyed hym that he was the fa- 25 me knyghte with the sheld of syluer / that helde hym foo hote that day / Sir knyghte said fyre Triftram wete yow wel here is none that hath nede of youre felausship / and therfore I praye yow departe from vs / ¶ Sire Palomydes ansuerd ageyne as though he had not knowen sir Triftram / wete yow wel sir kn- 30 yghte from this felausship wille I neuer departe / for one of the best knyghtes of the world commaunded me to be in this company / and tyl he discharge me of my seruyse I wille not be discharged / by that sir Triftram knewe that it was sir palomydes A sir palomydes sayd the noble knyghte fyre Triftram ar ye su- 35 che a knyghte ye haue ben named wronge / For ye haue longe

ben called a gentil knyȝt / And as this daye ye haue shewed
 me grete vngentilnes / For ye hadde al mooſte broughte me
 vnto my dethe / But as for yow I ſuppoſe I ſhold haue done
 wel ynough / but ſir launcelot with yow was ouer moche / for
 5 I knowe no knyght lyuynge but ſir launcelot is ouer good
 for hym and he wylle doo his vttermoſt / Allas ſaid ſir Palomydes
 ar ye my lord ſir Triftram / ye ſir and that ye knowe wel
 ynough / by my knyghthode ſaid Palomydes vntyl now I kne-
 we yow not I wende that ye had ben the Kynge of Irland /
 10 for wel I wote ye bare his armes / His armes I bare ſaid fyre
 Triftram / and that wille I ſtand by / For I wanne them ones
 in a felde of a ful noble knyghte / his name was ſir Marhaus
 and with grete payne I wanne that knyghte / for there was no-
 ne other recouer but ſir Marhaus dyed thorough fals leches / &
 15 yet was he neuer yolden to me / Sir ſaid Palomydes I wend
 ye had ben torned vpon ſir Launcelots party / and that cauſed
 me to torne / ye ſay wel ſaid ſir Triftram / and ſo I take you &
 I forgyue yow / Soo thenne they rode in to their paelions / and
 whan they were alyȝt they vnarmed them and waſſhe theyre
 20 faces and handes / and ſoo yode vnto mete and were ſette atte
 their table / But whanne Ifoud ſawe ſir Palomydes ſhe chaū-
 ged thenne her colours & for wrath ſhe myght not ſpeke / Anon
 ſir Triftram aſpyed her countenaunce and ſaid Madame / for
 what cauſe make ye vs ſuche chere / we haue ben fore trauailed
 25 this day / Myn owne lord ſaid la Beale Ifoud for goddes ſa-
 ke be ye not dyspleafyd with me / for I maye none other wyſe
 doo / for I ſawe thys day how ye were bitrayed and nyghe bro-
 ughte to your dethe / Truly fyre I ſawe euery dele how and in
 what wyſe and therfor fyr how ſhold I ſuffre in your preſence
 30 ſuche a felon and traytour as ſir Palomydes / For I ſawe hym
 with myn eyen / how he beheld yow whan ye wente oute of the
 felde / for euer he houed ſtylle vpon his hors til he ſawe yow co-
 me in ageynward / And thēne forth with al I ſawe hym ryde to
 the hurte knyghte and chaunged harneis with hym / And then-
 35 ne ſtreighte I ſawe hym how he rode in to the felde /

¶ And anone as he had foude yow / he encountred with yow /
 and thus wilfully ſir Palomydes dyd bataille with yow / &
 as for hym ſir I was not gretely aferd but I dred fore laūcelot

that knewe yow not / Madame said Palomydes ye maye faye
 what so ye wyll / I maye not contrary yow but by my knyghtho-
 de I knewe not fir Triftram / ¶ Sir Palomydes said fir Trif-
 tram I wille take your excuse / but wel I wote ye spared me
 but lytel / but alle is pardoned on my party / Thenne la beale 5
 Ifoud held doune her heed and said no more at that tyme /

¶ Capitulum lxxviii

ANd there with alle two knyghtes armed cam vnto the
 paulione / and there they alyghte bothe / and came in
 armed at alle pyeces / Faire knyghtes sayd fyre Triftram / ye
 ar to blame to come thus armed at alle pyeces vpon me why- 10
 le we ar at oure mete / yf ye wold ony thyng when we were
 in the felde / there myghte ye haue easyd your hertes / Not so
 said the one of tho knyghtes we come not for that entent /
 But wete ye wel fir Triftram we be come hydder as your fren-
 des / And I am come here said the one for to see yow & thys 15
 knyghte is come for to see la Beale Ifoud / Thenne said fire
 Triftram I requyre yow doo of your helmes that I maye see
 yow / that wille we doo at your defyre sayd the knyghtes /
 And whanne their helmes were of / fir Triftram thought that
 he shold knowe them / Thenne said fir Dynadan pryuely vnto 20
 fyr Triftram / fyr that is fire Launcelot du lake that spak vnto
 yow fyrst / and the other is my lord Kynge Arthur / Thenne
 said fir Triftram vnto la Beale Ifoud Madame aryse for he-
 re is my lord kynge Arthur / thenne the kynge and the quene
 kyffed and fire launcelot and fyr Triftram braced eyther other 25
 in armes / and thenne there was Ioye withoute mesure / &
 at the request of la Beale Ifoud kynge Arthur and Laun-
 celot were vnarmed / and thenne there was mery talkynge

¶ Madame said fire Arthur hit is many a day fythen that I
 haue defyred to see yow / for ye haue ben prayfed soo ferre / and 30
 now I dar say ye are the fayrest that euer I sawe / & fir Trif-
 tram is as fayre and as good a knyghte as ony that I knowe
 / therfor me befemeth ye are wel befett to gyders /
 Syr god thanke yow said the noble knyzt fire Triftram and
 Ifoud / of your grete goodenesse & largesse ye ar pyerles / Thus 35

they talked of many thynges and of alle the hole Iuftes /
But for what caufe fayd kynge Arthur were ye fir Triftram
ageynft vs / ye are a knyght of the table round / of ryghte ye
fhould haue ben with vs / Syre faid fir Triftram here is Dyna-
5 dan and fire Gareth your owne neuewe caused me to be ayenft
yow / My lord Arthur fayd Gareth I may wel bere the bla-
me but it were fir Triftrams owne dedes / That may I repente
fayd Dynadan / for this vnhappy fire Triftram broughte vs to haue
this turnement / and many grete buffets he caused vs to haue
10 Thenne the kynge and launcelot lough that they myghte not
fytte / what knyght was that fayd Arthur that held yow foo
fhort / this with the fhield of fyluer / Syr faid fir Triftram here
he fytteth at this bord / what faid Arthur was hit fire Palo-
mydes / wete ye wel hit was he faid la Beale Ifoud / ¶ So
15 god me help faid Arthur that was vnknyghtely done of you
of foo good a Knyghte / for I haue herd many peple calle you
a curtois knyghte / Sir faid Palomydes I knewe not fir Trif-
tram / for he was foo defguysed / Soo god me helpe fayd la-
uncelot it maye wel be / for I knewe not fir Triftram / But I
20 merueyle why ye torned on oure party / That was done for
the fame caufe faid launcelot / As for that faid fir Triftram I
haue pardonned hym / and I wold be ryght lothe to leue his
felaufhip / for I loue ryght wel his company / foo they lefte of
and talked of other thynges / And in the euenynge kyng ar-
25 thur and fir launcelot departed vnto their lodgyng / but wete
ye wel fir Palomydes had enuy hertely for alle that nyght he
had neuer reft in his bedde / but wayled and wepte oute of
mefure / Soo on the morn fire Triftram Gareth and Dynadan
arofe erly / and thenne they wente vnto fire Palomydes cham-
30 ber / and there they fond hym faft on flepe / for he had al nyzt
watched / And it was feene vpon his chekes that he had wept
ful fore / Say no thyng faid fyr Triftram / for I am fure he hath
taken anger and forowe for the rebuke that I gaf to hym and
la Beale Ifoud

¶ Capitulum lxxix

THenne sir Triftram lete calle sir Palomydes / and bad
 hym make hym redy / for it was tyme to go to the felde
 whan they were redy they were armed and clothed al
 in reed bothe Ifoud and alle they / and soo they lad her pas-
 synge fresshly thurgh the feld in to the pryory where was her
 lodgyng / and thenne they herd thre blaftes blowe / and euery
 kynge and knyghte dresfid hym vnto the felde / and the fyrste
 that was redy to luste was sir Palomydes and sir Kaynus le
 straunge a knyghte of the table round / And soo they two en-
 countred to gyders / but sire Palomydes smote sir Kaynus soo
 hard that he smote hym quyte ouer his hors croupe / and forth
 with alle sir Palomydes smote doune another knyght and br-
 ake thenne his spere & pulled oute his sward and did won-
 derly wel / And thenne the noyse beganne gretely vpon sir pa-
 lomydes / loo said Kyng Arthur yonder palomydes begynneth
 to play his pagent / So god me help said Arthur he is a pas-
 synge good knyght / And ryght as they stood talkyng thus
 in came sir Triftram as thonder / and he encountred with fyre
 Kay the Seneschall / and there he smote hym doune quyte from
 his hors / and with that same spere sir Triftram smote doune
 thre knyghtes moo / and thenne he pulled oute his sward and
 dyd merueyllously / Thenne the noyse and crye chaunged from
 fyr Palomydes and turned to sir Triftram and alle the peple
 cryed O Triftram O Triftram / And thenne was sir Palomy-
 des clene forgotten / How now said Launcelot vnto Arthur /
 yonder rydeth a knyght that playeth his pagents / So god me
 help said Arthur to launcelot ye shalle see this daye that yon-
 der two knyghtes shalle here doo this day wonders / Syr said
 Launcelot the one knyght wayteth vpon the other / and enfor-
 ceth hym self thurgh enuy to passe the noble knyght sire Trif-
 ram / and he knoweth not of the pryuy enuy / the whiche fyre
 Palomydes hath to hym / For all that the noble fyre Triftram
 dothe is thorou clene knyghthode / And thenne sire Gareth and
 Dynadan dyd wonderly grete dedes of armes as two noble
 knyghtes soo that Kyng Arthur spak of them grete honour &

worship / and the kynges and knyghtes of fir Triframs fyde
 did passyngly wel / and helde them truly to gyders / Thenne fir
 Arthur and fir Launceloot took their horses and dresfid them
 and gete in to the thyckest of the prees / And there fyr Trift-
 5 ram vnknowyng smote doune kyng Arthur / and thenne fyre
 launcelot wold haue rescowed hym / but there were soo many
 vpon fir launcelot that they pulled hym doune from his hors /
 And thenne the kyng of Irland and the kyng of Scottes
 with their Knyghtes dyd their payne to take kyng Arthur/
 10 and fir launcelot prysoner / Whanne fyr Launcelot herd hem fay
 soo he ferd as hit had ben an hongry lyon / for he ferd so that
 no knyghte durste nyghe hym / Thenne came fir Ector de maris
 and he bare a spere ageynst fire Palomydes / and braft it vpon
 hym alle to sheuers / And thenne fyr Ector came ageyne and
 15 gaf fire Palomydes suche a daffe with a swerd that he stou-
 ped doune vpon his fadel bowe / And forth with alle fyre Ec-
 tor pulled doune fir Palomydes vnder his feete / And thenne
 fyr Ector de marys gate fir launcelot du lake an hors / and
 brought hit to hym / and badde hym mounte vpon hym / But
 20 fir Palomydes lepte afore and gatte the hors by the brydel / &
 lepte in to the fadel / Soo god me helpe faid launcelot ye are
 better worthy to haue that hors than I / Thenne fir Ector br-
 oughte fyr launcelot an other hors / gramercy fayd launce-
 lot vnto his broder / ¶ And so when he was horsed ageyne/
 25 with one spere he smote doune four knyghtes / And thenne fir
 Launcelot broughte to kyng Arthur one of the best of the iiij
 horses / Thenne fyr launcelot with kyng Arthur and a fewe
 of his Knyghtes of fire Launcelots kynne dyd merueyllous
 dedes / for that tyme as the booke recordeth fyr launcelot smote
 30 doune and pulled doune thyrty knyghtes / Not withstanding
 the other parte held them soo fast to gyders that kyng arthur
 and his knyghtes were ouermatched / And whanne fir Trif-
 ram sawe that what labour Kyng Arthur and his knyghtes
 and in especyal the noble dedes that fyre launcelot dyd with
 35 his owne handes he merueylled gretely

¶ Capitulum lxxx

T Henne fir Triftram called vnto hym fyr Palomydes/
 fyr Gareth and fyr Dynadan / and fayd thus to them
 my fayre felawes wete ye wel that I will torne vnto
 kyng Arthurs party / for I sawe neuer soo fewe men doo soo
 wel / and hit wille be shame vnto vs knyghtes that ben of the 5
 round table to see our lord kyng Arthur and that noble kn-
 yght fire Launcelot to be difhonoured / It wille be wel do fa-
 id fire Gareth / and fyr Dynadan / do your best said palomy-
 des / for I wille not chaunge my party that I came in with al
 That is for my sake said fir Triftram / god spede yow in your 10
 Iourneye / and soo departed fyr Palomydes fro them / Thenne
 fir Triftram Gareth and Dynadan torned with fir launcelot
 And thenne fyr launcelot smote doune the kyng of Irland
 quyte from his hors / and so fyr launcelot smote doune the ky-
 nge of Scottes and the Kyng of walys / and thenne fir ar- 15
 thur ranne vnto fyre Palomydes and smote hym quyte from
 his hors / and thenne fyr Triftram bare doune alle that he mett
 Syr Gareth and fir Dynadan dyd there as noble knyghtes/
 thenne al the partyes beganne to flee / Allas said Palomydes
 that euer I shold see this day / for now haue I lost al the wor- 20
 ship that I wanne / and thene fir palomydes wente his way
 waylynge / and soo withdrewe hym tyl he came to a welle
 and there he putte his hors from hym / and dyd of his armour
 and wayled and wepte lyke as he had ben a wood man /
 Thenne many Knyghtes gaf the pryce to fyre Triftram / and 25
 there were many that gaf the pryce vnto fyre Launcelot /

Fair lordes said fir Triftram I thanke yow of the honour
 ye wold yeue me / but I pray yow hertely that ye wold gyue
 your voys to fyr launcelot / for by my feythe said fyre Tryf-
 tram / I wille gyue fir launcelot my voys / but fyre launcelot 30
 wold not haue hit / and so the pryce was gyuen betwix them
 bothe / Thenne euery man rode to his lodgyng and fyr bleobe-
 ris and fyr Ector rode with fir Triftram and la Beale Ifoud
 vnto her paelions / Thenne as fyr Palomydes was atte well
 waylynge and wepyng / there came by hym fleyng the kyng 35
 of walys and of Scotland / and they sawe fyre Palomydes
 in that arage / Allas said they that soo noble a man as ye be/
 shold be in this araye / & thenne tho kynges gat fir palomydes

hors ageyne / and made hym to arme hym and mounte vpon
 his hors / and foo he rode with hem makyng grete dole / ¶ Soo
 whan sire Palomydes came nyghe the pauelions there as fyre
 Tristram and La beale Ifoud was in / thenne sire palomydes
 5 prayd the two kynges to abyde hym there the whyle that he
 spake with sir Tristram / And whanne he came to the porte of
 the pauelions / fyre palomydes said on hyghe where arte thou
 fyr Tristram de lyones / Syr said Dynadan that is palomydes
 What sir Palomydes wille ye not come in here amonge vs /
 10 Fy on the traytour sayd Palomydes / for wete yow wel and
 hit were day lyght as it is nyght I shold flee the myn owne
 handes / And yf I euer maye gete the said Palomydes thou
 shalt dye for this dayes dede / Sir Palomydes said sir Tristram
 ye wyte me with wronge / for had ye done as I dyd ye hadde
 15 wonne worship / But fythen ye gyue me foo large warnynge/
 I shalle be wel ware of yow / Fy on the traitour faide Palo-
 mydes / and there with departed / Thenne on the morne sir Trif-
 tram / Bleoberis and sir Ector de marys / sir Gareth / fyr Dy-
 nadan what by water and what by lond they brought la be-
 20 ale Ifoud vnto Ioyous gard / and there repofed them a vij
 nyghte / and made alle the myrthes and disportes that they
 coude deuyse / and kyng Arthur and his knyghtes drewe vn-
 to Camelot / and fyre Palomydes rode with the two kynges /
 And euer he made the grettest dole that ony man coude thynke
 25 for he was not alle only foo dolorous for the departyng from
 la beale Ifoud / but he was a parte as sorouful to departe from
 the felauship of sir Tristram / for sire Tristram was foo kynd
 and foo gentyl that whanne sire Palomydes remembrid hym
 therof he myghte neuer be mery

¶ Capitulum lxxxj

30 **S**O at the seuen nyghtes ende / sir Bleoberys & fyr Ec-
 tor departed from sir Tristram and from the Quene / &
 these two good knyghtes had grete yestes / and sir Gareth and
 sir Dynadan abode with sir Tristram / & whan sire Blebeorys
 and sir Ector were comen there as the Quene Gueneuer was

[leaf 278 verso]

lodged in a castel by the see fyde / And thorou the grace of god
the quene was recouerd of her maladye / ¶ Thenne she asked
the two knyghtes from whens they came / they sayd that they
came from sir Tristram and from la beale Ifoud / how doth sir
Tristram said the quene and la Beale Ifoud / Truly sayd 5
tho two knyghtes he dothe as a noble knyght shold doo / and
as for the Quene Ifoud she is pyerles of alle ladyes / for to
speke of her beaute bounte and myrthe / and of her goodenesse
we sawe neuer her matche as ferre as we haue ryden and gone
O mercy Ihesu said quene Gueneuer soo sayth alle the people / 10
that haue sene her and spoken with her / God wold that I had
parte of her condycyons / and it is myffortuned me of my se-
kenesse whyle that turnement endured / And as I suppose / I
shalle neuer see in alle my lyf suche an assemble of knyghtes
and ladyes as ye haue done / Thenne the knyghtes told her hou 15
Palomydes wanne the degree at the fyrst daye with grete no-
bleffe / And the second day sir Trystram wanne the degree / and
the thyrdd day fyre launcelot wanne the degree / wel said que-
ne Gueneuer who dyd best alle these thre dayes / Soo god me
help said these knyghtes sir launcelot and sire Tristram hadde 20
leest dishonour / And wete ye wel sir palomydes dyd passyng
wel and myghtely / but he torned ageynst the party that he cam
in with alle / and that caused hym to lese a grete parte of hys
worship / for it semed that sir Palomydes is passyng enuyous
Thenne shalle he neuer wynne worship said Quene Gueneuer 25
for and it happeth an enuyous man ones to wynne worshyp he
shalle be dishonoured twyes therfore / And for this cause alle
men of worship hate an enuyous man / and wille shewe hym
no fauour / And he that is curtois and kynde and gentil hath
fauour in euery place / 30

¶ Capitulum lxxxij

Now leue we of this mater / and speke we of sir Pa-
lomydes that rode and lodged hym with the two kyn-
ges wherof the kynnges were heuy / Thenne the kynge of Ir-
land sent a man of his to fyr Palomydes and gaf hym a gre-
te courser / and the Kynge of Scotland gaf hym grete yestes/ 35

and fayne they wold haue had fire Palomydes to haue aby-
 den with them / but in no wyfe he wold abyde / and foo he depar-
 ted / and rode as auentures wold guyde hym / tyl it was ny³
 none / And thenne in a foreft by a welle fyr Palomydes fawe
 5 where lay a fayre wounded knyght and his hors bounden by
 hym / and that knyght made the gretteft dole that euer he herd
 man make / for euer he wepte and ther with he fyghed as th-
 ough he wold dye / Thenne fyre Palomydes rode nere hym and
 falewed hym myldly and fayd / fayr knyghte why wayle ye
 10 foo / lete me lye doune and wayle with yow / for doubte not I
 am moche more heuyer than ye are / for I dare fay fayd Palo-
 mydes that my forowe is an honderd fold more than yours is
 and therfor lete vs complayne eyther to other / Fyrft faide the
 wounded knyghte I requyre yow telle me your name / for &
 15 thow be none of the noble knyghtes of the round tabble / thou
 fhalt neuer knowe my name / what fomeuer come of me / Faire
 knyghte faid Palomydes fuche as I am be it better or be hit
 werfe wete thou wel that my name is fire Palomydes fone &
 heyre vnto kyng Aflabor / and fir Safyr and fir Segwary-
 20 des are my two bretheren / and wete thou wel as for my felf I
 was neuer cryftened / but my two bretheren ar truly cryftend
 O noble knyghte faid that knyghte / wel is me that I haue
 mette with yow / and wete ye wel my name is Epyngryns
 the kynges fone of Northumberland / Now fytte doune fayd
 25 Epyngryns / and lete vs eyther complayne to other / Thenne
 fyre Palomydes beganne his complaynte / Now fhalle I telle
 yow faid Palomydes what wo I endure I loue the faireft
 Quene and lady that euer bare lyf / and wete ye wel her na-
 me is la Beale Ifoud kynges Markes wyf of Cornewaile /
 30 That is grete foly faid Epyngryns for to loue Quene Ifoud
 For one of the beft knyghtes of the world loueth her / that is
 fir Triftram de lyones / that is trouthe faid Palomydes / for no
 man knoweth that mater better than I doo / for I haue ben in
 fir Triftrams felaufhip this moneth and with la beale Ifoud
 35 to gyders / and alas faid Palomydes vnhappy man that I am
 now haue I lofte the felaufhip of fyre Triftram for euer & the
 loue of la beale Ifoud for euer / and I am neuer lyke to fee her
 more / and fir Triftram & I ben eyther to other mortal enemyes

Wel faid Epynogrys / fythe that ye loued la Beale Ifoud /
 loued she yow euer ageyne by ony thyng that ye coude thynke
 or wyte / or els dyd ye reioyse her euer in ony pleasyr / Nay by
 my knyghthode faid Palomydes I neuer aspyed that euer
 she loued me more than alle the world / nor neuer had I ple- 5
 fyr with her / But the laste daye she gaf me the gretteft rebuke
 that euer I had / the whiche shalle neuer goo from my herte / &
 yet I wel deserued that rebuke / for I dyd not knyghtely / &
 therfor I haue lost the loue of her and of sir Tristram for e-
 uer / & I haue many tymes enforced my self to doo many de- 10
 des for la beale Ifoud sake / and she was the causer of my
 worship wynnyng / Allas faid sir Palomydes now haue I lost
 alle the worship that euer I wanne / for neuer shalle me be-
 falle fuche prowesse as I had in the felauship of sir Tristram

¶ Capitulum lxxiii

Ay nay fayde Epynogrys youre forowe is but Iapes 15
 to my forowe / for I reioyced my lady and wanne her
 with my handes / and loste her ageyn allas that daye /
 Thus fyrst I wanne her faid Epynogrys My lady was an
 Erles doughter And as the Erle and two knyghtes cam from
 the turnement of Lonezep / for her sake I sette vpon this erle 20
 and on his two knyghtes my lady there beyng present / and
 soo by fortune there I flewe the erle and one of the knyghtes
 and the other knyghte fledde / and soo that nyghte I had my
 lady / And on the morne as she and I reposed vs atte thys
 welle fyde / there came there to me an erraunt knyghte his na- 25
 me was fyr Helyor le preuse an hardy knyght / and this sir
 Helyor chalengyd me to fyghte for my lady / And thenne
 we wente to bataille fyrst vpon hors and after on foote / But
 at the last sir Helyor wounded me soo that he leste me for de-
 de / and soo he toke my lady with hym / And thus my forowe 30
 is more than yours / for I haue reioyced and ye reioyced neuer
 That is trouthe faid Palomydes / but fythe I can neuer recouer
 my self I shalle promyse yow yf I can mete with sir Helynor I
 shalle gete yow your lady ageyne or els he shalle bete me /
 Thenne sire Palomydes made sir Epynogrys to take his hors 35

and so they rode to an hermytage / and there fir Epynogrys rested hym / And in the meane whyle fyre Palomydes walkd pryuely oute to reste hym vnder the leues / and there befyde he sawe a knyghte come rydyng with a sheld that he had sene
 5 fir Ector de marys bere afore hand / and there came after hym a ten knyghtes / and foo these x knyghtes houed vnder the leues for hete / And anone after there came a knyzt with a grene shelde / and there in a whyte lyon ledyng a lady vpon a palfroy / Thene this knyzt with the grene sheld that semed to be
 10 maister of the ten knyghtes he rode fyerfly after fire Helyor / For it was he that hurte fir Epynogrys / And whanne he cam nyghe fir Helyor / he badde hym defende his lady / I will defende her said Helyor vnto my power / and foo they ranne to gyders foo myghtely that eyther of these knyghtes smote other doune
 15 hors and all to the erthe / and thenne they wanne vp lyghtely and drewe their swardes and their sheldes / and lashed to gyders myghtely more than an houre / Alle this fire Palomydes sawe and behelde but euer at the last the knyghte with fir Ectors shelde was bygger / and att the laste this knyghte smote
 20 fir Helyor doune / and thenne that knyghte unlaced his helme to haue stryken of his hede / And thenne he cryed mercy / and praid hym to saue his lyf and badde hym take his lady /

¶ Thenne fire Palomydes dressid hym vp by cause he wyfte wel that that same lady was Epynogrys lady / and he promysed hym to helpe hym / Thenne fir Palomydes wente streyghte to that lady and toke her by the hand and asked her whether she knewe a knyghte that hyghte Epynogrys / Allas she said that euer he knewe me or I hym / for I haue for his sake losse my worship / and also his lyf greueth me moost of al
 30 Not so lady said Palomydes / come on with me / for here is Epynogris in this hermytage / A wel is me said the lady and he be on lyue / whether wylt thou with that lady said the knyght with fyr Ectors shelde / I will doo with her what me lyst said Palomydes / wete yow wel sayd that knyghte thou spe-
 35 keft ouer large / though thou semest me to haue at auantage / by cause thou sawest me doo bataille but late / Thou wenest fir knyghte to haue that lady away from me so lyghtly / nay thyneke hit neuer not / and thou were as good a knyghte as is

fyr launcelot or as is fir Triftram or fir Palomydes / but thow
 fhalt wyne her derer than euer dyd I / and foo they went vn-
 to bataille vpon foote / and there they gaf many fadde frokes /
 and eyther wounded other paffyng fore // and thus they fouzt
 ftille more than an houre / Thenne fire Palomydes had merueil 5
 what knyghte he myghte be that was foo ftronge and foo wel
 brethed duryng / and thus faid Palomydes / knyzt I requy-
 re the telle me thy name / Wete thow wel faid that knyghte I
 dar telle the my name / foo that thow wilt telle me thy name / I
 wille faid palomydes / Truly faid that knyghte / my name is 10
 Safyr fone of kyng Aftlabor and fire palomydes and fyre
 Segwarydes are my bretheren / Now and wete thou wel / my
 name is fir Palomydes / Thenne fir Safyr kneled doune vpon
 his knees and prayd hym of mercy / and thenne they vnaced
 their helmes / and eyther kyffed other wepyng / And in the 15
 meane whyle fire Epyngrys aroofe oute of his bedde / and
 herd them by the frokes / and foo he armed hym to helpe fire
 Palomydes yf nede were

¶ Capitulum lxxxv

THenne fir Palomydes tooke the lady by the hand / &
 broughte her to fire Epyngrys / and there was grete 20
 ioye betwixe them / for eyther fwouned for Ioye / whan
 they were mette / Fair knyght and lady faid fir Safer / it we-
 re pyte to departe yow / Ihefu fend yow Ioye eyther of other /
 Gramercy gentyl knyghte faid Epyngrys / and moche more
 thanke be to my lord fir Palomydes / that thus hath thurgh his 25
 prowesse made me to gete my lady / ¶ Thenne fir Epyngrys
 requyred fire Palomydes and fire Safere his brother to ryde
 with them vnto his caftel for the fauf gard of his perfon / Sire
 faid Palomydes we will be redy to conduyte you by caufe that
 ye are fore wounded / and foo was Epyngrys and his lady 30
 horfed / and his lady behynde hym vpon a foft ambuler /
 And thenne they rode vnto his caftel where they had grete chere
 and Ioye as grete as euer fir Palomydes and fir Safere had
 in their lyfe dayes / Soo on the morne fir Safere and fir palo-
 mydes departed and rode as fortune ledde them / and foo they 35

rode alle that daye vntyl after none / And at the laft they herd
 a grete wepyng and a grete noyse doune in a manoir / Syre
 faid thenne fir Safere lete vs wete what noyse this is / I wil
 wel faid fir palomydes / and soo they rode forth tyl that they
 5 came to a fayr gate of a manoir / and there fatte an old man
 fayenge his prayers and bedes / Thenne fire palomydes and fir
 Safere alyghte and lefte their horfes / and wente within the
 gates / and there they fawe ful many goodely men wepyng /
 ¶ Fair fyrs faid palomydes wherfore wepe ye / and make
 10 this forowe / Anone one of the knyghtes of the caftel beheld fir
 palomydes / and knewe hym / and thēne wente to his felawes
 and faid Fair felawes wete ye wel al / we haue in this Caf-
 tel the fame knyght that flewe oure lord at Lonezep / for I
 knowe hym wel it is fyre palomydes / Thenne they wente vn-
 15 to harneis alle that myghte bere harneis / fome on horfbak / and
 fome on foote to the nombre of thre fcore / And whan they we-
 re redy / they came freffhly vpon fyr palomydes and vpon fyr
 Safere with a grete noyse and fayd thus / kepe the fyre palo-
 mydes . for thow arte knowen / and by ryght thow muft be dede
 20 for thow haft flayne oure lord / and therfore wete ye wel / we
 wille flee the / therfore defende the / Thenne fir palomydes & fyr
 Safer the one fette his bak to the other / and gaf many grete
 frokes / and took many grete frokes / and thus they fouzte
 with a twenty knyghtes and fourty gentilmen / and yomen
 25 nyghe two houres / But at the laft though they were lothe fir
 palomydes and fyr Safere were taken and yolden and putte
 in a ftronge pryfon / and within thre dayes twelue knyghtes
 paffed vpon them / and they fond fir palomydes gylty / and
 fyr Safyr not gylty of their lordes dethe / And whan fir Sa-
 30 fyr fhould be delyuerd there was grete dole betwixe fyr palomy-
 des and hym / and many pyteous complayntys that fir Sa-
 fyr made at his departyng / there is no maker can reherce the
 tenthe parte / Fair broder faid palomydes lete be thy dolour and
 thy forou / And yf I be ordeyned to dye a fhameful dethe wel-
 35 come be it / but and I had wift of this deth that I am demed
 vnto I fhould neuer haue ben yolden / Soo fyr Safere depar-
 ted from his broder with the gretteft dolour and forou that e-
 uer made knyghte / ¶ And on the morne they of the caftel

ordeyned twelue knyghtes to ryde with fyre Palomydes vnto
 the fader of the fame knyght that fyr Palomydes flewe / and
 soo they bound his legges vnder an old stedes bely / And then-
 ne they rode with fyr Palomydes vnto a Castel by the see fyde
 that hyghte Pelownes / and there fyr Palomydes shold 5
 haue Iuftyce / thus was their ordenaunce / and so they rode with
 fyr palomydes fast by the Castel of Ioyous gard / ¶ And as
 they passed by that Castel / there came rydyng oute of that cas-
 tel by them one that knewe fyr palomydes / And whan that
 knyghte sawe fyre palomydes bounden vpon a croked courser / 10
 the knyght asked fyre palomydes / for what cause he was led
 so / A my fair felawe and knyghte fayd palomydes / I ryde to-
 ward my dethe for the sleynge of a knyght at a turnement of
 Lonezep / & yf I had not departed from my lord fyr Tristrā
 as I ouzte not to haue done / now myzt I haue ben sure to haue 15
 had my lyf saued / But I pray yow fyr knyght recommaun-
 de me vnto my lord fir Triftram and vnto my lady Quene I-
 foud / & fay to them / yf euer I trespaced to them / I aske them
 foryeuenes / And also I bifeche yow recommaunde me vnto
 my lord kynge Arthur and to alle the felaufhip of the round 20
 table vnto my power / Thenne that knyghte wepte for pyte of
 fyr palomydes / and there with alle he rode vnto Ioyous gard
 as faste as his hors myghte renne / ande lyghtly that knyght
 descended doune of his hors and wente vnto fir Triftram / and
 there he told hym all as ye haue herd / and euer the knyghte 25
 wepte as he had ben madde

¶ Capitulum lxxxv

WHen fir Triftram herd how fir palomydes went to his
 deth / he was heuy to here that / and faid how be it that
 I am wroth with fir palomydes / yet wil not I suffre hym to dye
 so shameful a deth for he is a ful noble knyzt / & thenne anon 30
 fir Triftram was armed & toke his hors & two squyers wyth
 hym / & rode a grete paas towarde the castel of pelownes where
 fir palomydes was Iuged to deth / & these twelue knyytes that
 led fir palomydes passed by a welle where as fir laücelot was
 whiche was alyghte there & had teyed his hors to a tree & ta- 35
 ken of his helme to drynke of that welle / & whan he saw these

knyghtes / fyr launcelot putte on his helme / and suffred them
 to passe by hym / And thenne was he ware of fyre Palomydes
 bounden and ledde shamefully to his dethe / O Ihesu said laun-
 celot What myfauenture is befallle hym that he is thus ledde to-
 5 ward his dethe / Forfoth said launcelot it were shame to me /
 to suffre this noble knyght soo to dye and I myzte helpe hym
 therfor I wille helpe hym what someuer come of hit / or els I
 shal dye for fyr Palomydes sake / ¶ And thenne fir launcelot
 mounted vpon his hors and gate his spere in his hand / and
 10 rode after the twelue knyghtes that ledde fir Palomydes /
 Fair knyghtes said fir Launcelot whyder lede ye that knyzt/
 it byfemeth hym ful ylle to ryde bounden / Thenye these twelue
 Knyghtes fodenly torned their horses / and said to fir launce-
 lot / fyr Knyghte we counceille the not to medle with this kn-
 15 yght / for he hath deferued deth / and vnto dethe he is Iuged / that
 me repenteth said launcelot that I may not borowe hym with
 fayrenesse / for he is ouer good a knyghte to dye suche a shame-
 ful dethe / And therfor fayre knyghtes said fyr launcelot kepe
 yow as wel as ye can / for I will rescowe that knyght or dye
 20 for it / Thenne they beganne to dresse their speres / and fir laun-
 celot smote the formeft doune hors and man / and so he serued
 thre moo with one spere / and thenne that spere braft / and there
 with al fir launcelot drewe his sward / and thenne he smote on
 the ryght hand and on the lyfte hand / thenne within a why-
 25 le he leste none of tho twelue knyghtes / but he had leyed them
 to the erthe / and the moost party of hem were fore wounded / &
 thenne fyr Launcelot took the best hors that he fonde and lou-
 fed fyre Palomydes / and sette hym vpon that hors / and so they
 retorned ageyne vnto Ioyous gard / & thenne was fir Palo-
 30 mydes ware of fir Triftram how he came rydyng / And whan
 fir Launcelot sawe hym / he knewe hym wel / but fir Triftram
 knewe not hym by cause fyre Launcelot had on his sholder a
 golden shelde / Soo fyr launcelot made hym redy to Iuste with
 fyr Triftram / that fyre Triftram sholde not wene that he were
 35 fyre Launcelot / Thenne fir Palomydes cryed on lowde to fyr
 Triftram O my lorde I requyre yow Iuste not with this kny-
 ght / for this goode knyght hath saued me from my dethe /
 Whan fyre Triftram herde hym saye so / he came a softe trottyng

paas toward them / And thenne fyre Palomydes sayd / My lord fyr Triftram moche am I beholdynge vnto yow of youre grete goodenes that wold profer youre noble body to rescowe me vnderfuerd / for I haue gretely offended yow / Not withstandynge said fyre Palomydes here mette we with this noble knyghte that worshipfully and manly rescowed me from xij knyghtes / and smote them doune alle and wounded them fore

¶ Capitulum lxxxvj /

FAyre knyght said fyr Triftram vnto fyre Launcelot / of whens be ye / I am a knyght erraunt sayd sir launcelot that rydeth to seke many aduentures / What is your name said sir Triftram / fyre at this tyme I wille not telle yow / Thenne fyre launcelot sayd vnto sir Triftram and to palomydes / now eyther of yow ar mette to gyders / I wille departe from yow / Not soo said fyr Triftram I pray yow of knyghthode to ryde with me vnto my Castel / wete yow wel said fyr Launcelot I may not ryde with yow / for I haue many dedes to doo in other places / that att this tyme I maye not abyde with yow / A mercy Ihesu said fyr Triftram I requyre yow / as ye be a true knyghte to the ordre of knyghthode / playe you with me this nyghte / Thenne fyre Triftram had a graunte of fyre launcelot / how be it though he had not desyred hym / he wold haue ryden with hem / outhere soone haue come after them for fyr launcelot cam for none other cause in to that Countrey but for to see fyr Triftram / And whanne they were come within Ioyous gard / they alyght / and their horses were ledde in to a stable / and thenne they vnarmed them / And whanne fyre Launcelot was vnhelmed / sir Triftram and fyr Palomydes knewe hym / Thenne fyre Triftram took fyr launcelot in armes / & soo dyd la Beale Ifoud / and Palomydes kneled doune vpon his knees / and thanked fyr Launcelot / whan fyr launcelot sawe sir Palomydes knele / he lyghtely toke hym vp and sayd thus / wete thou wel sir Palomydes I and ony knyght in this land of worship oughte of veray ryght focoure and rescowe

foo noble a knyghte as ye are proued and renoumed thurgh
 oute alle this reame endlonge and ouerthwart / And thenne
 was there Ioye amonge them / and the oftyner that fyre Palo-
 mydes fawe la Beale Ifoud / the heuyer he waxed day by day
 5 Thenne fir launcelot within thre or four dayes departed / and
 with hym rode fir Ector de marys / and Dynadan and fir Pa-
 lomydes were there lefte with fire Triftram a two monethes &
 more / But euer fire Palomydes faded and morned that alle
 men had merueylle wherfore he had faded foo aweye / So vppn a
 10 day in the daunyng fire Palomydes wente in to the foreste by
 hym self alone / and there he fond a welle / and thenne he loked
 in to the welle / and in the water he fawe his owne vyfage hou
 he was distourbled and defaded nothyng lyke that he was
 What may this meane said fire Palomydes / and thus he said
 15 to hym self / A Palomydes / Palamydes / why arte thou dyffa-
 ded thou that was wonte to be called one of the fayrest kny-
 tes of the world / I wille no more lede this lyf / for I loue
 that I maye neuer gete nor recouer / And there with all he le-
 yd hym doune by the welle / And thenne he beganne to make
 20 a ryme of la Beale Ifoud and hym / ¶ And in the meane
 whyle fyr Triftram was that fame day ryden in to the forest
 to chace the herte of greefe / but fire Triftram wold not ryde on
 huntynge neuer more vnarmed by cause of fyr Breufe faun-
 ce pyte / and foo as fir Triftram rode in to that forest vp and
 25 doune / he herd one fynge merueyllously lowde / and that was
 fyre Palomydes that lay by the welle / And thenne fyr Trif-
 tram rode softely thyder / for he demed / there was some knyght
 erraunt that was at the welle

¶ And whanne fire Triftram came nyghe hym / he descended
 30 doune from his hors and teyed his hors fast tyl a tree / and
 thenne he came nere hym on foote / and anone he was ware
 where lay fire palomydes by the welle and fange lowde and
 meryly / and euer the complayntes were of that noble Que-
 ne La Beale Ifoud / the whiche was merueyllously and
 35 wonderfully wel sayd / and ful dolefully and pytously made
 And alle the hole songe the noble knyghte fire Triftram herd
 from the begynnyng to the endynge / the whiche greued and
 troubled hym fore

¶ But thenne at the last whanne

fir Triftram had herd all fir Palomydes complayntes he was
 wrothe oute of mesure & thouzt for to flee hym there as he lay
 Thenne fyr Triftram remembryd hym self that fir Palomydes
 was vnarmed and of the noble name that fir Palomydes had
 and the noble name that hym self had / and thenne he made a 5
 restraynte of his anger / & so he wente vnto fire Palomydes a
 fofte paas and said fir Palomydes I haue herd youre com-
 playnte and of thy treason that thow haft owed me so longe
 And wete thou wel therfor thow shalt dye / And yf it were
 not for shame of kny3thode / thow sholdest not escape my han- 10
 des / for now I knowe wel thow haft awayted me with trea-
 son . Telle me said fyre Triftram how thow wolt acquyte the/
 Sir said Palomydes thus I wille acquyte me / as for Que-
 ne la beale Ifoud ye shal wete that I loue her aboute all
 other ladyes in this world / and wel I wote it shalle befall 15
 me as for her loue as befelle to the noble knyghte fyre Kehy-
 dius that dyed for the loue of la Beale Ifoud / and now fir
 Triftram I wil that ye wete that I haue loued la Beale I-
 foud many a day / and she hath ben the causer of my worshyp
 And els I had ben the moost symplest knyght in the world 20
 For by her / and by cause of her / I haue wonne the worshyp
 that I haue / for when I remembryd me of la Beale Ifoud
 I wanne the worship where someuer I came for the most par-
 ty / and yet had I neuer reward nor bounte of her the dayes
 of my lyf / and yet haue I ben her knyght gwerdonles / And 25
 therfor fyr Triftram as for ony deth I drede not / for I hadde
 as lyef dye as to lyue / And yf I were armed as thow arte /
 I shold lyghtely doo batail with the / wel haue ye vttered yo-
 ur treason said Triftram / I haue done to yow no treason said
 Palomydes / for loue is free for alle men / and though I ha- 30
 ue loued your lady / she is my lady as wel as yours / how be
 it I haue wronge yf ony wronge be / for ye reioyce her / and ha-
 ue youre desyre of her / and soo had I neuer nor neuer am ly-
 ke to haue / and yet shalle I loue her to the vttermest dayes of
 my lyf as wel as ye 35

¶ Capitulum lxxxvij

T

Henne said fyr Triftram I wil fyghte with yow to the
 vttermest / I graunte faide palomydes / for in a better

quarel kepe I neuer to fyghte / for & I dye of your handes / of
a better knyghtes handes may I not be flayne / And fythen I
vnderstande that I shalle neuer reioyce la beale Ifoud / I haue
as good wylle to dye as to lyue / Thenne sette ye a day said fir
5 Triftram that we shalle doo bataille / this day / xv / dayes said pa-
yd Palomydes wille I mete with yow here by / in the medowe
vnder Ioyous gard / Fy for shame said fire Triftram / wille
ye sette foo longe day / lete vs fyghte to morn / Not foo sayd pa-
lomydes / for I am megre and haue ben longe seke for the loue
10 of la Beale Ifoud / and therfore I wille repose me tyl I ha-
ue my strengthe ageyne / Soo thenne fire Triftram and fyr pa-
lomydes promysed feythfully to mete at the welle that day xv
dayes / I am remembryd said fir Triftram to Palomydes / that
ye brake me ones a promyse whan that I rescowed yow from
15 Breuse faunce pyte and ix knyghtes / and thēne ye promysed
me to mete me at the peron and the graue besydes Camelot /
where as at that tyme ye sayled of your promyse / wete you wel
said Palomydes vnto fir Triftram I was at that day in pry-
son so that I myghte not holde my promyse / So god me helpe
20 said fir Triftram / and ye had holden your promyse this werk
had not ben here now at this tyme / Ryghte foo departed fyre
Triftram and fire Palomydes / And foo fire palomydes tooke
his hors and his harneis / and he rode vnto Kynge Arthurs
Courte / and there fyr palomydes gat hym four knyghtes and
25 four sergeaunts of armes / and foo he retornod ageynward
vnto Ioyous gard / And in the meane whyle fyr Triftram cha-
ced and hunted at alle maner of venery / and aboute thre dayes
afore the bataille shold be / as fyr Triftram chaced an herte ther
was an Archer shot at the herte / and by myffortune he smote
30 fyr Triftram in the thyck of the thygh / and the arowe slewe fir
Triftrams hors & hurte hym / whan fir Triftram was so hurte /
he was passynge heuy / and wete ye wel he bled fore / and then-
ne he took another hors / and rode vnto Ioyous gard with gre-
te heuyneffe more for the promyse that he hadde made with fir
35 palomydes as to doo bataille with hym wythin thre dayes after
than for ony hurte of his thyȝ / wherfor ther was neyther man
ne woman that coude chere hym with ony thyng that they co-
de make to hym / neyther Quene la Beale Ifoud / for euer he

demed that fyr launcelot had smyten hym foo / that he shold
not be able to doo bataille with hym at the day fette /

¶ Capitulum lxxxviii

BVt in no wyfe there was no knyghte aboute fyr Trif-
tram that wold byleue that euer fyr Palomydes wo-
ld hurte sir Triftram neyther by his owne handes nor by no- 5
ne other consentynge / thenne whan the fyftenth day was come
sir Palomydes came to the welle with four knyghtes with hym
of Arthurs courte and thre sergeauntes of armes / And for
this ententente fyr palomydes broughte the knyghtes with hym
and the sergeaunt of armes / for they shold bere record of the 10
bataille betwixe fyre Triftram and fyr Palomydes / And the
one sergeaunt brought in his helme / the other his spere / the th-
yrd his swerd / Soo thus Palomydes came in to the felde / &
there he abode nyghe two houres / and thenne he sente a squyer
vnto fyr Triftram / and desyred hym to come in to the felde / to 15
holde his promyse / whan the squyer was come to Ioyous gard
Anone as sir Triftram herd of his comynge he lete commaun-
de that the squyer shold come to his presence there as he lay in
his bedde / My lord sir Triftram said Palomydes squyer wete
yow wel my lord Palomydes abydeth yow in the felde / and 20
he wold wete whether ye wold doo bataille or not / A my fair
broder said sir Triftram wete thou wel that I am ryght heuy
for these tydynges / therfor telle fire Palomydes / and I were
wel atte ease I wold not lye here nor he shold haue noo ne-
de to sende for me / and I myghte outhur ryde or goo / and for 25
thow shalt saye that I am no lyer / fyre Triftram shewed hym
his thye that the wounde was fixe Inches depe / and now thou
hast sene my hurte / telle thy lord that this is no fayned mater
and telle hym that I had leuer than all the gold of kyng Ar-
thur that I were hole / & telle palomydes as soone as I am ho- 30
le I shal seke him endlong & ouerthwart & þ^t I promyse you as
I am true knygt / & if euer I may mete with hym / he shal haue
batail of me his fylle / & with this the squyer departed / & when
palomydes wist þ^t tristrā was hurt he was glad & said now I

am sure I shalle haue no shame / for I wote wel I shold ha-
 ue had hard handelynge of hym / and by lykely I muste ne-
 des haue had the werfe / For he is the hardest knyghte in bata-
 ylle that now is lyuyng excepte sir Launcelot / And thenne
 5 departed fyr Palomydes where as fortune ladde hym / & with-
 in a moneth sir Triftram was hole of his hurte / And thenne
 he took his hors / and rode from countray to countrey / and all
 straunge aduentures he acheued where someuer he rode / and al-
 weyes he enquiryed for sire Palomydes / but of alle that quar-
 10 ter of somer fyr Triftram coude neuer mete with sir palomy-
 des / But thus as sir Triftram soughte and enquiryed after
 sire Palomydes / sir Triftram encheued many grete batails whe-
 re thorough alle the noyse felle to fyr Triftram / and it seaced of
 sir launcelot / & therfor fyre launcelots bretheren and his kyn-
 15 nefmen wold haue slayne sire Triftram by cause of his fame/
 But whanne fyre launcelot wyfte how his kynnesmen were
 fette / he said to them openly wete yow wel that and the enuy
 of yow alle be soo hardy to wayte vpon my lord sire Triftram
 with ony hurte / shame / or vylony / as I am true knyghte / I
 20 shalle flee the best of yow with myne owne handes / Allas fy
 for shame shold ye for his noble dedes awayte vpon hym to
 flee hym / Ihesu defende said launcelot that euer ony noble kn-
 yghte as fyre Triftram is shold be destroyed with treason / Of
 this noyse and fame sprange in to Cornewaile / and amonge
 25 them of Lyonas / wherof they were passyng gladde / and made
 grete loye / And thenne they of Lyonas sente letters vnto sire
 Triftram of recommendacyon / and many grete yestes to mayn-
 tene sir Triftrams estate / and euer bitwene sir Triftram refor-
 ted vnto Ioyous gard where as la Beale Ifoud was that
 30 loued hym as her lyf /

¶ Here endeth the tenth book whiche is of fyr Triftram

¶ And here foloweth the Eleuenth book whiche is of sir la-
 uncelot

¶ Capitulum primum



Ow leue we fyr Tristram de lyones / & speke
 we of fire launcelot du lake and of fire Gala-
 halt fyr launcelots sone hou he was goten / and
 in what maner as the book of Frensshe reherceth
 Afore the tyme that fyre Galahalt was goten 5
 or borne / there came in an hermyte vnto kynge Arthur vpon
 whytsonday / as the knyghtes satte at the table round / And
 whan the heremyte sawe the fyege perillous / he asked the kyng
 and alle the knyghtes why that fege was voyd / Sir Arthur
 and alle the knyghtes answerd / ther shalle neuer none fyte 10
 in that fyege / but one / but yf he be destroyed / ¶ Thenne sayd
 the hermyte wote ye what is he / nay said Arthur / and alle the
 Knyghtes / we wote not who is he / that shalle fyte therin /
 thenne wote I said the heremyte / for he that shal fyte there is
 vnborne and vngoten / and this same yere he shalle be goten 15
 that shalle fyte ther in that fyege perillous / and he shall wyn-
 ne the Sancgreal whan this hermyte had made this mensyon
 he departed from the courte of kynge Arthur / And thenne af-
 ter this feest fyre launcelot rode on his aduenture tyl on a ty-
 me by aduenture he past ouer the pounte of Corbyn / and there 20
 he sawe the fayrest toure that euer he sawe / and ther vnder was
 a fayre Towne ful of peple and alle the peple men and wy-
 mmen cryed at ones / welcome fir Launcelot du lake the flou-
 re of all knyghthode for by the alle we shalle be holpen oute
 of daunger / what mene ye said fire Launcelot that ye crye foo 25
 vpon me / A fayr knyght said they alle here is within thys
 Toure a dolorous lady that hath ben ther in paynes many wyn-
 ters and dayes / for euer she boyleth in scaldynge water / & but
 late said alle the peple fire Gawayne was here and he myght
 not helpe her / and foo he lefte her in payne / Soo may I faide 30
 fyr Launcelot leue her in payne as wel as fire Gawayne dyd
 Nay said the peple we knowe wel that it is fir Laūcelot that
 shalle delyuer her / wel said launcelot / thenne shewe me what
 I shalle doo / thenne they brought fire launcelot in to the toure
 And when he came to the chamber there as this lady was the 35
 dores of yron vnlocked and vnbolted / And so fyr launcelot

wente in to the chambre that was as hote as ony stewe / And
there fyr launcelot toke the fayrest lady by the hand / that euer
he sawe / and she was naked as a nedel / and by enchauntemēt
Quene Morgan le fay and the Quene of Northgalys hadde
5 put her there in that paynes by cause she was called the fairest
lady of that countrey / and there she had ben fyue yeres / and
neuer myghte she be delyuerd oute of her grete paynes vnto
the tyme the best knyghte of the world had taken her by the
hand / Thenne the peple broughte her clothes / And whanne she
10 was arayed / fyre launcelot thoughte she was the fayrest lady
of the word / but yf it were Quene Gueneuer / thenne this la-
dy said to fyre Launcelot / fyre yf hit please yow wille ye goo
with me here by in to a chappel that we may yeue louyng and
thankyng vnto god / ¶ Madame said fir launcelot cometh on
15 with me I wille goo with yow / Soo whanne they came there
and gaf thankynges to god / alle the people both lerned and
lewde gaf thankynges vnto god and hym / and said fir kn-
yght fyn ye haue delyuerd this lady / ye shall delyuer vs from
a serpent that is here in a tombe / Thenne fyr launcelot tooke his
20 shelde and said brynge me thyder / and what I may doo vnto
the pleasyr of god and yow I wille doo / ¶ Soo whanne fir
Laūcelot came thydder / he sawe wryten vpon the tombe letters
of gold that said thus / Here shalle come a lybard of kynges
blood / and he shalle flee this serpent / and this lybard shalle
25 engendre a lyon in this foreyn countrey the whiche lyon shall
passe alle other knyghtes / Soo thenne fir launcelot lyfte vp
the tombe / and there came out an horryble & a fyendly dragon
spyttyng fyre oute of his mouthe / Thenne fir launcelot drewe
his sward and fought with the dragon longe / and atte laste
30 with grete payne fir launcelot slewe that dragon / There with
alle came kyng Pelles the good and noble knyght / and fa-
lewed fyr launcelot and he hym ageyne / Fair knyghte said
the kyng / What is your name / I requyre you of your knyght-
hode telle me

¶ Capitulum ij

35 **S**Yr said launcelot wete yow wel my name is fyre la-
uncelot du lake / & my name is said the kyng / Pelles

[leaf 286 verso]

kyng of the foreyn cuntry / and cosyn nyghe vnto Ioseph of
Armathye / And thenne eyther of them made moche of other /
and soo they wente in to the Castel to take theyr repaste / and
anone there came in a douue at a wyndowe / and in her mouth
there femed a lytel censer of gold / And there with alle there 5
was fuche a fauour as alle the spyecery of the world had ben
there / And forth with all there was vpon the table al maner
of metes and drynkes that they coude thynke vpon / Soo cam
in a damoyfel passyng fayre and yonge / and she bare a ves-
sel of gold betwixe her handes / and therto the kynge kneled 10
deuoutely / and said his prayers / and soo dyd alle that were
there / O Ihesu said sir launcelot what maye this meane / thys
is said the kynge the rycheft thyng that ony man hath lyuyng
And whanne this thyng goth aboute / the round table shall
be broken / and wete thow wel said the kynge this is the holy 15
Sancgreal that ye haue here sene / Soo the kynge and sir laū-
celot ladde their lyf the moost parte of that daye / And fayne
wold kynge Pelles haue fond the meane to haue hadde fyre
Launcelot to haue layne by his doughter fayre Elayne / And
for this entent the kyng knewe wel that fyr launcelot shold 20
gete a chylde vpon his doughter / the whiche shold be named sir
Galahalt the good knyghte / by whome alle the forayn coun-
trei shold be broughte oute of daunger / and by hym the holy
graale shold be encheued / ¶ Thenne came forth a lady that
hyghte Dame Bryfen / and she said vnto the Kynge / Syr we- 25
te ye wel / fyre Launcelot loueth no lady in the world but all
only Quene Gueneuer / and therefore wyrche ye by counceylle
and I shalle make hym to lye with your doughter / & he shall
not wete but that he lyeth with Quene Gueneuer / O fayre
lady dame Bryfen said the kyng / hope ye to brynge this about 30
fyr said she vpon payne of my lyf lete me dele / for this Bry-
fen was one of the gretteft enchauntresses that was at that ty-
me in the world lyuyng /

¶ Thenne anone by dame Bryfens wytte she maade one to co-
me to fyr launcelot that he knewe wel / And this man brougt 35
hym a ryng from Quene Gueneuer lyke as hit hadde come
from her / and fuche one as she was wonte for the moost parte
to were / & when sir laūcelot sawe that tokē wete ye wel he was

neuer foo fayne / where is my lady said fyr launcelot / in the castel of Cafe said the messager but fyue myle thens / Thenne fir launcelot thoughte to be there the fame nyghte / And thenne this Bryfen by the commaundement of kynge Pelles lete sende Elayne to this castel with xxv knyghtes vnto the castel of Cafe / Thenne fyr launcelot ageynst nyght rode vnto that castel / and there anone he was receyued worshipfully with fuche peple to his femyng as were aboute Quene Queneuer secrete Soo whanne fir Launcelot was alyghte / he asked where the
 10 Quene was / Soo dame Bryfen said that she was in her bedde / & thenne the peple were auoyded / and fir launcelot was ledde vnto his chamber / And thenne dame Bryfen broughte fir launcelot a cup ful of wyne / and anone as he had dronken that wyn / he was soo affoted and madde that he myghte make no
 15 delay / but withouten ony lette he wente to bedde / and he wende that mayden Elayne had ben Quene Gueneuer / wete yow wel that fir launcelot was glad and soo was that lady Elayne / that she had geten fir launcelot in her armes / For well she knewe that fame nyght shold be goten vpon her Galahalt
 20 that shold preue the best knyghte of the world / and soo they lay to gyders vntyl vndorne on the morn / and alle the wyndowes and holes of that chamber were stopped that no man ere of day myghte be fene / And thenne fire launcelot remembryd hym / and he arofe vp and wente to the wyndowe /

¶ Capitulum Tercium

25 **A**Nd anone as he had vnshet the wyndowe the enchaūtement was gone / thēne he knewe hym self that he had done amys / Allas he sayd that I haue lyued so long now I am shamed / Soo thenne he gat his sward in his hand and said thow traitresse what arte thow that I haue layn by
 30 alle this nyghte / thow shalt dye ryghte here of my handes / Thenne this fayr lady Elaye skyped oute of her bedde al naked and kneled doune afore fir launcelot / and sayd Fair curteis knyghte comen of kynges blood / I requyre yow haue mercy vpon me / ¶ And as thow arte renoumed the moost noble

[leaf 287 verso]

knyghte of the world / flee me not / for I haue in my wombe
hym by the / that shal be the moost noblest knyghte of the world
A fals traitresse said fyr launcelot why hast thou bytrayed
me / anone telle me what thou arte / Syr she said I am Elayn
the doughter of Kynges pelles / wel said sire Launcelot I wyl 5
forgyue yow this dede / and there with he took her vp in his ar-
mes / and kyssed her / for she was as fayr a lady and there to
lusty and yonge and as wyfe as ony was that tyme lyuyng
So god me helpe said sir launcelot I may not wyte this to
yow / but her that made this enchauntement vpon me as by- 10
twene yow and me / and I may fynde her that same lady Bry-
sen f shehalle lese her hede for wytchecraftes / for there was ne-
uer knyghte deceyued soo as I am this nyghte / And soo fyre
Launcelot arayed hym / and armed hym / and toke his leue
myldely at that lady yonge Elayne / and soo he departed / 15
Thenne she said my lord sir launcelot I biseche yow see me as
soone as ye may / for I haue obeyed me vnto the prophecy that
my fader teld me / And by his commaundement to fulfille this
prophecy I haue gyuen the grettest rycheffe and the fayrest flo-
ure that euer I had / and that is my maydenhode that I shalle 20
neuer haue ageyne / and therefore gentyl knyght owe me youre
good wille / And soo fyr launcelot arayed hym and was ar-
med / and toke his leue myldely at that yonge lady Elayne / &
soo he departed / and rode tyl he came to the Castel of Corbyn/
where her fader was / and as fast as her tyme came she was de- 25
lyuerd of a fayr chylde / and they crystened hym Galahalt / &
wete ye wel that child was wel kepte and wel nourished / &
he was named Galahalt by cause fyr Launcelot was so na-
med at the fontayne stone / And after that the lady of the lake
confermed hym sir Launcelot du lake / Thenne after this lady 30
was delyuerd and chirched / there came a knyghte vnto her / his
name was sire Bromel la pleche / the whiche was a grete lord
and he hadde loued that lady longe / and he euermore desyred
her to wedde her / and soo by no meane she coude putte hym of /
Tyl on a day she said to fyr Bromel / wete thou wel sir knyght 35
I wille not loue yow / for my loue is fet vpon the best knyght
of the world / Who is he said fyr Bromel . fyr she said it is fyre
Launcelot du lake that I loue and none other / and therefore

wowe me no lenger / ye faye wel faid fir Bromel / And fythen
 ye haue told me foo moche / ye shalle haue but lytel Ioye of fir
 launcelot / for I shal flee hym where someuer I mete hym / fire
 faid the lady Elayne / doo to hym no treason / wete ye wel my
 5 lady faid Bromel / and I promyse yow this twelue moneth
 I shalle kepe the pounte of Corbyn for fyr launcelots sake /
 that he shalle neyther come ne goo vnto yow / but I shall me-
 te with hym /

¶ Capitulum Quartum

10 **T** Henne as hit felle by fortune and aduenture fire Bo-
 rs de ganyys that was neuewe vnto fir Launcelot cam
 ouer that brydge / and ther fyre Bromel and fire bors
 Iusted / & fir Bors smote fyre Bromel suche a buffet that he
 bare hym ouer his hors croupe / And thenne fyre Bromel as
 an hardy knyghte pulled out his fuerd / and dresseid his sheld
 15 to doo bataille with fyr Bors / And thenne fyr Bors alyzte /
 and auoyded his hors / and there they daffhed to gyders ma-
 ny fadde strokes / and long thus they foughte / tyl att the laste
 fyr Bromel was leyd to the erthe / and there fyre bors began
 to vnlace his helme to flee hym / Thenne fyr bromel cryed fyre
 20 bors mercy / and yelded hym / vpon this couenaunt thou shalt
 haue thy lyf faid fyr bors / foo thou goo vnto fyr launcelot vp-
 on whytsondaye that next cometh and yelde the vnto hym as
 knyghte recreaunt / I wille doo hit faid fyr bromel / and that
 he sware vpon the croffe of the swerd / and foo he lete hym de-
 25 parte / and fyr bors rode vnto kynge Pelles / that was within
 Corbyn / And whanne the kynge and Elayne his doughter
 wist that fyr bors was neuewe vnto fyr launcelot / they made
 hym grete chere / Thenne faid dame Elayne / we merueyle whe-
 re fir Launcelot is / for he came neuer here but ones / Meruelle
 30 not faid fir bors / for this half yere he hath ben in pryson with
 quene Morgan le fay kyng Arthurs fyfter / Allas faid dame
 Elayne that me repenteth / and euer fyr bors beheld that child
 in her armes / and euer hym semed it was passynge lyke fire
 launcelot / Truly faid Elayne wete ye wel this child he gat vp-
 35 on me / Thēne fir bors wepte for Ioye / & he praid to god it myzt

preue as good a knyghte as his fader was / And foo cam in
 a whyte douue / and she bare a lytel cenfer of gold in her mo-
 uthe / and there was alle maner of metes and drynkes / and a
 mayden bare that Sancgreal / and she faid openly / wete yow
 wel fyr Bors that this child is Galahalt that shalle fyte in 5
 the sege peryllous and encheue the Sancgreal / and he shalle
 be moche better than euer was sir Launcelot du lake / that is
 his owne fader / & thenne they kneled doune / & made theyre
 deuocyons / and there was fuche a fauour as alle the spyecery
 in the world had ben there / And whanne the douue took her 10
 flyghte / the mayden vanysshed with the Sancgreal as she cam
 Syr faid sir Bors vnto kynge Pelles / this Castel may be na-
 med the castel aduenturous / for here be many straunge aduen-
 tures / that is sothe faid the kynge / for wel maye this place be
 called the aduentures place / for there come but fewe knyghtes 15
 here that gone aweye with ony worship / be he neuer so strong
 here he may be preued / and but late sire Gawayne the good
 knyght gate but lytyl worship here / for I lete yow wete faid
 kynge Pelles / here shalle no knyght wyne no worship / but if
 he be of worship hym self and of good lyuynge / and that lo- 20
 ueth god and dredeth god / and els he geteth no worshyp here
 be he neuer foo hardy / that is wonderful thyng faid fyr Bors
 what ye meane in this Countrey / I wote not / for ye haue ma-
 ny straunge aduentures / and therfor I wyl lye in this Caf-
 tel this nyghte / ye shalle not doo so faid kynge Pelles by my 25
 counceyll / for hit is hard and ye escape withoute a shame / I
 shalle take the aduenture that wille befalle me faid fyr Bors
 thenne I counceyle yow faid the kynge to be confessid clene/
 As for that faid sire Bors I wille be shryuen with a good
 wylle / Soo fyr Bors was confessyd / and for al wymmen sir 30
 Bors was a vyrgyne / fauf for one / that was the doughter of
 kynge Brangorys / and on her he gat a child that hyghte E-
 layne / and fauf for her fyre Bors was a clene mayden / and
 foo sir Bors was ledde vnto bed in a fayr large chamber / and
 many dores were fhette aboute the chamber / whan sir Bors af- 35
 pyed alle tho dores / he auoyded alle the peple / for he myght ha-
 ue no body with hym / but in no wyse fyr Bors wold vnarme
 hym / but foo he leid hym doune vpon the bedde / and ryght foo

he sawe come in a lyghte that he myght wel see a spere grete &
 longe that came streyghte vpon hym poyntelynge / and to fyre
 Bors femed that the hede of the spere brente lyke a tapre / and
 anon or fyr Bors wyft / the spere hede smote hym in to the shol-
 5 der an hand brede in depneffe / and that wound greued fyre
 Bors passyng fore / And thenne he leyde hym doune ageyne
 for payne / and anone there with alle there came a knyght ar-
 med with his shelde on his sholder and his fuerd in his hande
 and he bad sir Bors aryse fyr knyghte and fyghte with me / I
 10 am fore hurte he said / but yet I shal not fayle the / And thenne
 fyr Bors starte vp and dresseid his shelde / and thenne they
 lashed to gyders myghtely a grete whyle / and at the laste
 fyr Bors bare hym bakward vntyl that he came vnto a chā-
 ber dore / and there that knyghte yede in to that chamber & rested
 15 hym a grete whyle / And whan he hadde repofed hym he came
 out fresshely ageyne / and beganne newe bataille with sir bors
 myghtely and strongly

¶ Capitulum Quintum

Thenne sir Bors thought he shold no more goo in to
 that chamber to reste hym / and soo fyr Bors dresseid
 20 hym betwixe the knyghte and that chamber dore / and there sir
 Bors smote hym doune / and thenne that knyght yelded hym
 What is your name said fyr Bors / Syr said he / my name is
 pedyuere of the streyte marches / Soo fyre Bors made hym to
 fwere at whytsonday next comyng to be atte court of kyng ar-
 25 thur / and yelde hym there as a prysoner as an ouercome kn-
 yghte by the handes of fyr Bors / Soo thus departed fyr pe-
 dyuere of the straye marches / And thenne fyre Bors layde
 hym doune to reste / and thenne he herd and felt moche noyse in
 that chamber / and thenne sir Bors aspyed that there came in /
 30 he wist not whether at the dores nor wyndowes shot of arowes
 and of quarels soo thyck that he merueylled / and many felle
 vpon hym and hurte hym in the bare places / And thenne fyre
 Bors was ware where came in an hydous lyon / soo fyre bors
 dresseid hym vnto the lyon / & anone the lyon berafte hym his
 35 sheld & with his fuerd fyr bors smote of the lyons heed /

Ryght soo fyre Bors forth with all sawe a dragon in the courte passyng horryble / and there semed letters of gold wryten in his forhede / and sir Bors thoughte that the letters made a sygnyfycacyon of kyng Arthur / Ryghte soo there came an horryble lybard and an old / and there they foughte longe / & 5
 dyd grete batail to gyders / And at the laste the dragon spytte oute of his mouthe as hit had ben an honderd dragons / and lyghtely alle the smal dragons slewe the old dragon and tare hym all to pyeces / Anone with alle there came an old man in to the halle / and he fatte hym doune in a fayre chayre / and 10
 there semed to be two edders aboute his neck / and thenne the old man had an harp / and there he fange an old songe how Ioseph of Armathye came in to this land / thenne whanne he had songen / the old man bad sir Bors go from thens / for here shall ye haue no mo aduentures / and ful worshipfully haue ye done / and better shalle ye doo here after / And thenne sir Bors semed that there came the whyttest douue with a lytel golden senfer in her mouthe / And anone there with alle the tēpest ceased and passed that afore was merueyllous to here / Soo was alle that Courte ful of good fauours / Thenne fyre 20
 Bors sawe four children berynge four fayre tapres / and an old man in the myddes of the children with a senfer in his owne hand / and a spere in his other hand / and that spere was called the spere of vengeance

¶ Capitulum Sextum

Now said that old man to sire Bors goo ye to your 25
 cofyn sir Launcelot / and telle hym of this aduenture the whiche had ben most conuenyent for hym of al erthely knyghtes / but synne is soo foule in hym / he may not encheue suche holy dedes / for had not ben his synne he had past al the knyghtes that euer were in his dayes / and telle thou sir launcelot of alle 30
 worldly aduentures he passeth in manhode & prowesse al other But in this spyrytuel maters he shalle haue many his better / And thenne sir Bors sawe four gentylwymen come by hym pourely bifene / & he sawe where that they entrid in to a chamber where was grete lyghte as it were a somer lyghte / & the wymen 35

kneled doune afore an aulter of fyluer with foure pyllowes
 and as hit had ben a biffhop kneled doune afore that table
 of fyluer / And as fire Bors loked ouer his hede / he fawe a
 fwerd lyke fyluer naked houynge ouer his hede / and the cle-
 5 renes there of smote soo in his eyen that as att that tyme fyre
 Bors was blynde / and there he herd a voys that faid go hens
 thou fyre Bors / for as yet thow arte not worthy for to be in
 this place / and thenne he yede backward to his bedde tyl on the
 morne / And on the morne kyng Pelles made grete Ioye of
 10 fir Bors / and thenne he departed and rode to Camelot / and
 there he fonde fire launcelot du lake / and told hym of the ad-
 uentures that he had fene with kyng Pelles at Corbyn / Soo
 the noyfe fprange in Arthurs Courte that launcelot had geten
 a childe vpon Elayne the doughter of Kyng Pelles / wherfor
 15 Quene Gueneuer was wrothe / and gafe many rebukes to fir
 launcelot / and called hym fals knyghte / & thenne fire laūcelot
 told the quene all / & how he was made to lye by her by enchaū-
 tement in lykenes of the Quene / Soo the quene helde fir laū-
 celot excused / And as the book faith kyng Arthur had ben in
 20 Fraunce / and had made warre vpon the myghty kyng Clau-
 das / and had wonne moche of his landes / And whanne the
 kyng was come ageyne / he lete crye a grete feest that al lordes
 & ladyes of al Englond fhould he there / but yf it were fuche as
 were rebellious ageynft hym

¶ Capitulum vij

25 **A**Nd when dame Elayne the doughter of kyng Pelles
 herd of this feeste / ſhe wente to her fader and requyred
 hym that he wold gyue her leue to ryde to that feest / The kyng
 anſuerd I will wel ye go thyder / but in ony wyſe as ye loue
 me / and wile haue my bleſſyng that ye be wel biſene in the
 30 rycheſt wyſe / and loke that ye ſpare not for no coſt / aſke and
 ye ſhalle haue alle that yow nedeth / Thenne by the aduylſe of
 dame Bryſen her mayden alle thyng was apparaylled vnto
 the purpoſe that there was neuer no lady more rychelyer byſe-
 ne / So ſhe rode with xx knyghtes & x ladyes & gētilwymen to þ°

[leaf 290 verso]

nombre of an honderd horses / And whanne she came to Camelot / kynge Arthur and quene Gueneuer sayd and all the knyghtes / that dame Elayne was the fayrest and the best byfene lady that euer was fene in that Courte

¶ And anone as kynge Arthur wyfte that she was come / he mette her / and falewed her / and soo dyd the moost party of al the knyghtes of the round table / bothe fyr Trifram / fir Bleoberys and fyr Gawayne and many moo that I wille not reherce / But whanne fyre Launcelot sawe her he was soo afhamed / & that by cause he drewe his sward on the morne whan he had layne by her / that he wold not falewe her nor speke to her / & yet fyre Launcelot thought she was the fayrest woman that euer he sawe in his lyf dayes / But whanne dame Elayn sawe fyre Launcelot that wold not speke vnto her / she was so heuy that she wend her herte wold haue to braft / For wete you wel oute of mesure she loued hym / And thenne Elayne sayd vnto her woman dame Bryfen the vnkyndenesse of fyr Launcelot fleeth me nere /

¶ A pees madame said dame Bryfen I wille vndertake that this nyghte he shalle lye with yow / and ye wold hold yow styll / that were me leuer sayd dame Elayne than alle the gold that is aboute the erthe / Lete me dele said dame Bryfen / ¶ Soo whanne Elayne was broughte vnto quene Gueneuer eyther made other good chere by countenance but nothyng with hertes / But alle men & wymmen spake of the beaute of dame Elayne and of her grete Rycheffes / thenne at nyghte the quene commaunded that dame Elayne shold slepe in a chamber / nyghe her chamber and alle vnder one rooffe / & soo it was done as the quene commaunded

¶ Thenne the quene sent for fyre Launcelot & badde hym come to her chamber that nyghte / or els I am sure said the Quene that ye will go to your ladyes bed dame Elayn / by whome ye gat Galahalt / A madame said fyr Launcelot neuer faye ye so For that I dyd was ageynste my wille / thenne said the quene loke that ye come to me whan I fend for yow / Madame said launcelot I shall not fayle yow but I shall be redy at your commaundemēt / this bargayn was soone done & made bitwene them / but dame Bryfen knewe it by her craftes / & told hit to her lady dame Elayne /

¶ Allas said she how shall I

doo / lete me dele said dame Bryfen / for I shalle brynge hym
 by the hand euen to your bedde / and he shalle wene that I am
 Quene Gueneuers messager ¶ Now wel is me fa-
 id dame Elayne / for alle the world I loue not soo moche as
 5 I doo fyr launcelot /

¶ Capitulum viij

Soo whanne tyme came that alle folkes were a bedde /
 Dame Bryfen came to fyr launcelots beddes fyde and
 said Syre launcelot du lake flepe yow / My lady quene gwe-
 neuer lyeth and awayteth vpon yow / O my fayre lady sayd
 10 fyr launcelot I am redy to goo with yow where ye will haue
 me / Soo fyr launcelot threwe vpon hym a long gowne / and
 his fuerd in his hand / and thenne dame Bryfen took hym by
 the fynger and ledde hym to her ladyes bedde dame Elayne /
 And thenne she departed and lefte them in bedde to gyders /
 15 wete yow wel the lady was gladde and soo was fyr launce-
 lot / for he wende that he had had another in his armes /

¶ Now leue we them kyssyng and clyppynge as was kyn-
 dely thyng / & now speke we of quene gueneuer that sente one
 of her wymen vnto fyr launcelots bed / ¶ And whan she came
 20 there / she fond the bedde colde / and he was away / soo she came
 to the Quene and told her alle / Allas said the Quene whe-
 re is that fals knyghte become / Thenne the quene was nyghe
 oute of her wytte / and thenne she wrythed and weltred as a
 mad woman / and myght not flepe a four or fyue houres /

25 ¶ Thenne fyre launcelot had a condycion that he vsed of cust-
 omme he wolde clater in his flepe / and speke ofte of his lady
 Quene Gueneuer / Soo as fyr launcelot had waked as longe
 as hit had pleasyd hym / thenne by course of kynde he slepte / &
 dame Elayne bothe / And in flepe he talked and clatered
 30 as a Iay of the loue that had ben betwixe Quene Gweneuer
 and hym /

¶ And soo as he talked soo lowde
 the Quene herde hym there as she laye in her chamber / & when
 she herde hym soo clater she was nyghe woode and out of her
 mynde / and for anger and payne wist not what to do / ¶ And

thenne she coughed foo lowde that fyre launcelot awaked and he knewe her hemyng / ¶ And thenne he knewe well that he lay not by the Quene / and there with he lepte out of his bed as he had ben a wood man in his sherte / and the quene mett hym in the floore / and thus she said / fals traytour knyzt that 5
thow arte / e thow neuer abyde in my Courte and auoyde my chamber / a not foo hardy thow fals traytour knyzt that thow arte that euer thow come in my fyghte / Allas sayd fyr launcelot / and there with he tooke fuche an hertely sorowe atte her wordes that he felle doune to the floore in a swoune / And 10
there with alle Quene Gueneuer departed / And whanne fyr Launcelot awoke of his swoune / he lepte oute at a bay wyndowe in to a gardyne / and there with thornes he was alle to cratched in his vyfage and his body / and foo he ranne forthe he wyft not whyder / and was wylde wood as euer was man 15
and foo he ranne two yere / and neuer man myghte haue grace to knowe hym

¶ Capitulum Nonum

Now torne we vnto Quene Gueneuer and to the fayr lady Elayne that whanne dame Elayn herd the quene foo to rebuke fyr launcelot / and also she sawe how 20
he swowned / and hou he lepte oute at a bay wyndowe / Thenne she said vnto quene Gueneuer Madame ye are gretely to blame for fyr launcelot / for now haue ye lost hym / for I sawe & herd by his countenance that he is mad for euer / Allas madame ye doo grete fynne / and to your self grete dishonour / for 25
ye haue a lord of your owne / and therfor it is youre parte to loue hym / for there is no quene in this world / hath fuche an other kynge as ye haue / And yf ye were not I myghte haue the loue of my lord fyr Launcelot / and cause I haue to loue hym / for he had my maydenhode / and by hym I haue borne a 30
fayre sone / and his name is Galahalt / and he shalle be in his tyme the best knyghte of the world /

¶ Dame Elayne said the Quene whanne hit is daye lyght I charge yow and commaunde yow to auoyde my Courte

And for the loue ye owe vnto fire launcelot discouer not his
 counceylle / for and ye doo / it wille be his dethe / As for that fa-
 id dame Elayne I dar vndertake he is marred for euer / and
 that haue ye made / for ye nor I are lyke to reioyce hym / for he
 5 made the moost pytous grones whanne he lepte oute at yonder
 bay wyndowe that euer I herd man make / Allas sayd fayre
 Elayne / and allas said the Quene Gueneuer / for now I wote
 wel / we haue losse hym for euer / So on the morne dame E-
 layne took her leue to departe and she wold no lenger abyde/
 10 Thenne kynge Arthur brought her on her waye with mo than
 an honderd knyghtes thurgh a forest / ¶ And by the way she
 told sir Bors de ganys alle how hit betyd that fame nyghte
 And how sir launcelot lepte out att a wyndowe araged oute
 of his wytte / Allas said fyr Bors where is my lord sir laun-
 15 celot become / Syr said Elayne I wote nere /

Allas said fyre Bors betwixe yow bothe ye haue destroyed
 that good knyghte / As for me said dame Elayne I sayd ne-
 uer nor dyd neuer thyng that shold in ony wyse displease
 hym / but with the rebuke that Quene Gueneuer gaf hym I
 20 sawe hym swoune to the erthe / And whanne he awoke he took
 his swerd in his hand naked sauf his sherte / and lepte oute
 at a wyndowe with the gryfylyest grone that euer I herd
 man make

¶ Now fare wel dame Elayne faide
 fyre Bors / and hold my lord Arthur with a tale as long as
 25 ye can / for I wylle torne ageyne to Quene Gueneuer / and
 gyue her a hete / and I requyre yow as euer ye wylle haue
 my feruysse make good watche and aspye yf euer ye may see
 my lord fire Launcelot

¶ Truly sayd fayr Elayne I shalle doo alle that I may do
 30 for as fayne wold I knowe and wete where he is become as
 yow or ony of his kynne / or Quene Gueneuer / and cause gre-
 te ynough haue I therto as wel as ony other / And wete ye
 wel said fayre Elayne to fire Bors / I wold lese my lyf for
 hym / rather than he shold be hurte / but allas I cast me neuer
 35 for to see hym / and the chyef causer of this is dame Gueneuer

¶ Madame said dame Brysen the whiche had made the en-
 chauntement before betwix sir launcelot and her / I pray you
 hertely lete fyre Bors departe / and hye hym with al his my3t

as fast as he may to feke fyre Launcelot / For I warne yow
 he is clene out of his mynde / and yet he shal be wel holpen / &
 but by myracle / Thenne wepte dame Elayne / and soo dyd
 fyre Bors de ganys / and soo they departed / and fyre bors ro-
 de streyghte vnto Quene Gueneuer / and whanne she sawe fir 5
 Bors / she wepte as she were wood / Fy on your wepyng sa-
 id fir Bors de ganys / for ye wepe neuer but whan there is no
 bote / Allas said fir Bors that euer fyr launcelots kynne sa-
 we yow / for now haue ye lost the best knyght of oure blood /
 and he that was alle oure leder and oure focour / and I dare 10
 saye and make it good that all kynges crysten nor hethen may
 not fynde fuche a knyghte for to speke of his nobylneffe and
 curtosye with his beaute and his gentylnesse / Allas said fire
 Bors what shalle we doo that ben of his blood / Allas sayd
 Ector de marys / Allas said Lyonel 15

¶ Capitulum x

ANd whanne the Quene herd them saye soo / she felle to
 the erthe in a dede swoune / and thenne fyr Bors took
 her vp / and dawe her / & whanne she was awaked she
 kneled afore the thre knyghtes / and helde vp bothe their handes
 and besoughte them to feke hym / and spare not for noo goodes 20
 but that he be founden / for I wote he is oute of his mynde / &
 fir Bors / fyr Ector / and fyr Lyonel departed from the quene
 for they myght not abyde no lenger for sorowe / and thenne
 the quene sent them trefour ynough for theyr expencys / and so
 they took their horses and their armour and departed / and then- 25
 ne they rode from countrey to countrey in forestes and in wyl-
 dernes and in wastes / and euer they laid watche bothe att fo-
 restes and at alle maner of men as they rode to herken and spe-
 re after hym / as he that was a naked man in his sherte with
 a swerd in his hand / ¶ And thus they rode 30
 nyghe a quarter of a yere endlonge and ouerthwarte in many
 places forestes and wildernes / and oftymes were euylle lod-
 ged for his sake / and yett for alle their laboure and sekynge
 coude they neuer here word of hym / ¶ And wete yow well

these thre knyghtes were passynge fory / Thenne at the laste fire
Bors and his felawes mette with a knyghte that hyght fyr
Melyon de Tartare / Now fayre knyzt said sir Bors / whether
be ye away / for they knewe eyther other afore tyme / Sir said
5 Melyon I am in the way toward the courte of kyng Arthur
Thenne we praye yow sayd fire Bors that ye wille telle my
lord Arthur and my lady quene Gueneuer and alle the fe-
laushyp of the roūd table that we can not in no wyfe here telle
where fyr launcelot is become / ¶ Thenne fire Melyon departed
10 from them / and sayd that he wold telle the kynge and the que-
ne and alle the felauschyp of the round table as they had de-
fyred hym / Soo whanne fire Melyon came to the Courte of
kyng Arthur / he told the kynge and the quene and al the
felaushyp of the round table what sir Bors had said of fyre
15 Launcelot / Thenne fire Gawayne fire Vwayne / fyr Sagramor
le defyrus / fyr Aglouale / and fyre Percyuale de galys tooke
vpon them by the grete defyre of kyng Arthur / and in espec-
ial by the quene to feke thorou out all Englund walys & Scot-
land to fynde fire launcelot / and with hem rode eyghten kn-
20 yghtes moo to bere them felauschyp / and wete ye wel / they lac-
ked no maner of spendyng / and soo were they thre and twen-
ty knyghtes / ¶ Now torne we to fyre Launcelot / and speke
we of his care and woo / and what payne he there endured / for
cold / honger and thurst he had plente / ¶ And thus as these
25 noble knyghtes rode to gyders / they by one assente departed / &
thenne they rode by two / by thre / and by foure / and by fyue / &
euer they assigned where they shold mete / And soo sir Aglo-
uale and fyr Percyuale rode to gyders vnto theyr moder that
was a quene in tho dayes / And whanne she sawe her two fo-
30 nes / for Ioye she wepte tendyrly / And thenne she sayd / A my
dere fones / whanne your fader was slayne / he lefte me iiij fo-
nes / of the whiche now be tweyn slayne / And for the dethe of
my noble sone fyre Lamorak shalle my herte neuer be gladde /
And thenne she kneled doune vpon her knees to fore Aglo-
35 uale and sir Percyuale / and besoughte them to abyde at home
with her / A swete moder said fyr Percyuale we may not / For
we be come of kynges blood of bothe partyes / and therfor mo-
der it is our kynde to haunte armes and noble dedes / Allas

my swete fones thenne she sayd . for your sakes I shalle lese
 my lykyng and lust / and thenne wynde and weder I maye
 not endure / what for the dethe of your fader kyng Pellenore
 that was shamefully slayne by the handes of fyr Gawayne /
 and his broder fyre Gaherys / and they slewe hym not manly 5
 but by treason / A my dere fones this is a pyteous complaynte
 for me of your faders dethe / confyderynge also the dethe of sire
 Lamorak that of kny3thode had but fewe felawes / Now my
 dere fones haue this in your mynde / Thenne there was but we-
 pyng and sobbyng in the Courte whanne they shold depar- 10
 te / and she felle in swounyng in myddes of the Courte /

¶ Capitulum xi

ANd whanne she was awaked / she sente a squyer after
 them with spendyng ynough / And soo whanne the
 squyer had ouertake them / they wold not suffre hym
 to ryde with hem / but sente hym home ageyne to comforte theyr 15
 moder / prayenge her mekely of her bleffynge / And so this squ-
 yer was benygthed / and by myffortune he happend to come
 to a castel where dwellid a Baroune / ¶ And so whanne the
 squyer was come in to the castel / the lord asked hym / from
 whens he came / and whome he serued / my lord sayd the squy- 20
 er a serue a good knyghte that is called sire Aglouale / the
 squyer said it to good entente / wenyng vnto hym to haue ben
 more forborne for fyre Aglouals sake / than he had said he had
 serued the quene Aglouals moder / wel my felawe said the
 lord of that Castel / for fyre Aglouals sake thou shalt haue 25
 euyl lodgyng / for sire Aglouale slewe my brodr / and ther-
 for thou shalt dye on party of payement / ¶ And thenne that
 lord commaunded his men to haue hym aweye and flee hym/
 and soo they dyd / and soo pulled hym oute of the castel / and
 there they slewe hym without mercy / ¶ Ryghte so on the mo- 30
 rne came sire Aglouale and sire Percyuale rydyng by a chir-
 che yerd where men and wymmen were besy / and beheld the dede
 squyer / and they thoughte to berye hym / what is there said sire
 Aglouale / that ye behold soo fast / A good man starte forthe /

and said / fayre knyghte here lyeth a squyer slayne shamefully this nyght / How was he slayne fayr felawe said sir Aglouale / my fayr fyr said the man / the lord of this castel lodged this squyer this nyght / and by cause he said he was feruaunt
 5 vnto a good knyghte that is with kynge Arthur / his name is fyr Aglouale / therfor the lord commaunded to flee hym / & for this cause is he slayne / Gramercy said fyr Aglouale / and ye shalle see his dethe reuenged lyghtely / for I am that fame knyght for whome this squyer was slayne / Thenne sir Aglo-
 10 uale called vnto hym fyr Percyuale / and badde hym alyghte lyghtely / and soo they alyghte bothe / and betoke their horses to their men / and soo they yede on foote in to the Castel / And also soone as they were within the castel gate / fyre Aglouale badde the porter goo thow vnto thy lord and telle hym / that I
 15 am fyr Aglouale for whome this squyer was slayne this nyght Anone the porter told this to his lord whos name was Godewyn / anone he armed hym / and thenne he came in to the court and said whiche of yow is sir Aglouale / here I am said Aglouale / for what cause slewest thou this nyghte my moders
 20 squyer / I slewe hym said fyr Goodewyn by cause of the / For thou slewest my broder fyr Gawdelyn / As for thy broder fayd fyr Aglouale I auowe hit / I slewe hym / for he was a fals knyghte and a bitrayer of ladyes and of good knyghtes / & for the dethe of my squyer thou shalt dye / I defy the said sir
 25 Goodewyn / thenne they lassed to gyders as egerly as hit had ben two lyons / and fyr Percyuale he fought with alle the remenaunt that wold fyghte / And within a whyle fyr Percyuale had slayne alle that wold withstande hym / For fyr percyuale delt soo his strokes that were soo rude that there durste
 30 no man abyde hym / And within a whyle sir Aglouale had sir Goodewyn at the erthe / and there he vnaced his helme / & strake of his hede / and thenne they departed and took theyre horses / and thenne they lete cary the dede squyer vnto a pryory / and there they entered hym /

¶ Capitulum xij

35 **A**Nd whanne this was done / they rode in to many countreyes euer enquiryng after fyr Launcelot / but neuer
 [leaf 294 verso]

they coude here of hym / and at the laste they came to a Castell
that hyghte Cardycan / and there fyre Percyuale and fire a-
glouale were lodged to gyders / and pryuely aboute mydnyzt
fir Percyuale came to aglouals squyer / and sayd aryfe & ma-
ke the redy / for ye and I wylle ryde away secretely / Sir said 5
the squyer / I wold ful fayne ryde with yow where ye wold
haue me / but and my lord your broder take me / he wille flee
me / as for that care thow not / for I fhalle be thy waraunt / &
foo fyr Percyual rode tyl it was after none / and thenne he
came vpon a brydge of stone / and there he fond a knyght that 10
was bounden with a chayne faste aboute the waft vnto a pyl-
ler of stone / O fayre knyghte said that bounden Knyghte / I
rekyre the lose me of my boundes / what knyghte are ye sayd
fyr Percyuale / and for what cause are ye soo bounden / Syre I
fhalle telle yow said that knyght I am a knyzte of the table 15
round / and my name is fyre Perfydes / and thus by aduentur
I came this waye / and here I lodged in this castel atte bryd-
ge foote / and therin duelleth an vncurtois lady / and by cause
she profered me to be her peramour / and I refused her / she sette
her men vpon me sodenly or euer I myghte come to my wepen 20
and thus they bonde me / and here I wote wel I shal dye but
yf somme man of worship breke my bandes / Be ye of good
chere said fyr Percyuale / and by cause ye are a knyghte of the
round table as wel as I / I trust to god to breke youre ban-
des / and there with fyr Percyuale pulled out his sward and 25
strake at the chayne with suche a myght that he cutte a two the
chayne / and thoru fyr Percydes hauberk and hurte hym a ly-
tel / O Ihesu said fir Perfides that was a myghty stroke as e-
uer I felt one / for had not the chayne be / ye hadde slayn me / &
there with al fire Perfydes sawe a knyghte comyng oute of a 30
Castel al that euer he myghte flynge / Beware fyr faide fyre
Percydes yonder cometh a man that wille haue adoo with you
Lete hym come said fyre Percyuale / and so he mette with that
knyghte in myddes of the brydge / and fire percyuale gaf hym
suche a buffet that he smote hym quyte from his hors / & ouer 35
a parte of the brydge that had not ben a lytil vessel vnder the
brydge / that knyghte had ben drowned / and thēne fire percyual
tooke the knyghtes hors and made fire percydes to mounte vp

hym / and soo they rode vnto the castel / and bad the lady dely-
 uer fyre Percydes seruants / or els he wold flee alle that e-
 uer he fonde / and soo for fere she delyuerd them alle / Thenne
 was fyre Percyuale ware of a lady that stode in that toure /
 5 A madame sayd fyre Percyuale what vse and customme is
 that in a lady to destroye good knyghtes / but yf they wylle be
 your peramour / for sothe this is a shameful customme of a la-
 dy / And yf I had not a grete mater in my hand / I shold
 fordoo your euylle custommes / and soo fyr Percydes brouȝte
 10 fyr percyuale vnto his owne castel / and there he made hym gre-
 te chere alle that nyghte / And on the morne whanne fyr percy-
 uale had herd masse / and broken his fast / he badde fyr perfy-
 des ryde vnto kynge Arthur / and telle the kynge how that ye
 mette with me / and telle my broder fyre Aglouale how I re-
 15 scowed yow / and bydde hym feke not after me / for I am in
 the quest to feke sir launcelot du lake / And though he feke me
 he shalle not fynde me / and telle hym I wille neuer see hym
 nor the courte tyl I haue fond fyre Launcelot / Also telle sir
 kay the Seneschal and to fyr Mordred that I trust to Ihesu
 20 to be of as grete worthynes as eyther of them / for telle them I
 shal neuer forgete there mockes and scornes that they did to
 me that day that I was made knyghte / And telle them I wil
 neuer see the Courte tyl men speke more worship of me than
 euer men dyd of ony of them bothe / And soo fyre percydes de-
 25 parted from fyr percyuale / and thenne he rode vnto kyng Ar-
 thur / and told there of fyre percyuale / And whan fyre Aglo-
 uale herd hym speke of his broder fyr percyuale / he sayd / he de-
 parted from me vnkyndely /

¶ Capitulum xiiij

SYr sayd fyre percydes on my lyf he shalle preue a no-
 30 ble knyghte as ony now is lyuyng / And whanne he
 sawe fyre kay and fyr Mordred / fyr percydes said thus / My
 fayre lordes bothe fyr percyuale greteth yow wel bothe / and he
 sente you word by me that he trusteth to god or euer he come
 to the courte ageyne to be of as grete nobleſſe as euer were ye
 35 bothe and mo men to speke of his nobleſſe than euer they did

yow / hit maye wel be fayd fyr kay and fyre Mordred / but at
that tyme whanne he was made knyghte / he was ful vnlyke
to preue a good knyght / As for that fayd kynge Arthur / he
muft nedes preue a good knyghte / for his fader and his bre-
theren were noble knyghtes / And now wille we tourne vnto 5
fyr Percyuale that rode longe / and in a forest he mette a kn-
yghte with a broken shelde and a broken helme / and as soone
as eyther sawe other redyly they made them redy to Iuste / and
foo hurteled to gyders with alle the myghte of theyr horses / &
they to gyders foo hard that fyre Percyuale was smyten to 10
the erthe / and thenne fyr Percyuale arofe lyghtely / and caste
his shelde on his sholder and drewe his fwerd / and badde the
other knyghte alyghte and doo we bataille vnto the vttermest
Wylle ye more fayd that knyghte / and there with he alyghte/
and putte his hors fro hym / and thenne they came to gyders 15
an esy paas / and there they lassed to gyder with noble fuer-
des / and somtyme they stroke / and somtyme they foyned / and
eyther gaf other many grete woundes / Thus they fought nere
half a daye / and neuer rested but ryghte lytel / and there was
none of them both that had lasse woundes than xv / and they 20
bledde foo moche that it was merueyl they stode on their feete/
But this knyghte that foughte with fyre Percyuale was a
proued knyghte and a wyse fyghtyng knyghte / and fyre
percyuale was yonge and stronge not knowyng in fyghtyng
as the other was / Thenne fir percyuale spake fyrste and fayd 25
fyre knyghte hold thy hand a whyle stille / for we haue fouz-
ten for a symple mater and quarel ouer longe / and therfor I
requyre the telle me thy name / for I was neuer or this tyme
matched / Soo god me help fayd that knyghte / and neuer or
this tyme was there neuer knyght that wounded me foo fore/ 30
as thow hast done / and yet haue I foughten in many batails
and now shalt thow wete that I am a knyghte of the table
round / and my name is fyr Ector de marys broder vnto the
good knyghte fyr launcelot du lake / Allas said fyr percyual
and my name is fyre percyuale de galys that hath maade my 35
quest to seke fyr launcelot / and now I am seker that I shall
neuer fynyshe my quest / for ye haue slayne me with your han-
des / It is not foo said fire Ector / for I am slayne by youre

handes / and maye n lyuote / therfor I requyre yow sayd sire
 Ector vnto fyr Percyuale ryde ye here by to a pryory / & bryn-
 ge me a preest that I may receyue my faueour / for I may not
 lyue / And whanne ye come to the courte of Kynge Arthur /
 5 telle not my broder sire launcelot how that ye flewe me / For
 thenne he wold be your mortal enemy / But ye may fay that
 I was flayne in my quest as I foughte hym / Allas said sire
 Percyuale ye saye that thyng that neuer wille be / for I am
 foo faynte for bledynge that I maye vnnethe stande / how shold
 10 I thenne take my hors /

¶ Capitulum xiiii

THenne they made bothe grete dole oute of mesure / this
 wille not auayle said sire Percyuale / And thenne he
 kneled doune and made his prayer deuoutely vnto al myghty
 Ihesu / for he was one of the best knyghtes of the world that at
 15 that tyme was / in whome the veray feythe stode moost in

¶ Ryght foo there came by / the holy vessel of the Sancgreal
 with alle maner of swetnes and fauour / but they coude not re-
 dyly see who that bare that vessel / but fyre Percyuale hadde a
 glemerynge of the vessel and of the mayden that bare hit / for
 20 he was a parfyte clene mayden / and forth with al they bothe
 were as hole of hyde and lymme as euer they were in their
 lyf dayes / thenne they gaf thankynges to god with grete myl-
 denesse / O Ihesu said fyr Percyuale what maye this meane /
 that we be thus heled / and ryghte now we were at the poynt
 25 of dyenge / I wote ful wel said sire Ector what it is / It is
 an holy vessel that is borne by a mayden / and therein is parte
 of the hooly blood of oure lord Ihesu crist bleffid mote he be
 but it may not be sene said fyr Ector / but yf hit be by a par-
 fyte man / Soo god me help said fyr Percyuale I sawe a da-
 30 moyfel as me thoughte alle in whyte with a vessel in both her
 handes / and forth with al I was hole / Soo thenne they toke
 their horses and their harneis and amended their harneis as
 wel as they myghte that was broken / and soo they mounted
 vpon their horses / and rode talkynge to gyders / And there fir
 35 Ector de marys told sire Percyuale how he hadde foughte his

broder fyr launcelot longe / and neuer coude here wetyng of
hym / in many straunge aduentures haue I ben in this queste
And soo eyther told other of their aduentures /

¶ Here endeth the enleuenth booke / ¶ And here foloweth the
twelfth booke

¶ Capitulum primum /



And now leue we of a whyle of fyr Ector and
of fyre Percyuale / and speke we of sir launce- 5
lot that suffred and endured many sharp shou-
res that euer ranne wylde wood from place to
place and lyued by fruyt / and fuche as he my-
ght gete / and dranke water two yere / and other clothyng had
he but lytel / but his sherte and his breche / ¶ Thus as sir laū- 10
celot wandred here and there / he came in a fayre medowe whe-
re he fond a paelione / and there by vpon a tree there henge a
whyte shelde / and two swerdes henge there by and two spe-
res lened there by a tree / ¶ And whanne fyr launcelot sawe
the swerdes / anone he lepte to the one swerd and tooke hit in 15
his hand and drewe hit oute / And thenne he lashed at the
sheld that alle the medowe range of the dyntes / that he gaf fu-
che a noyse as ten knyghtes had foughten to gyders / Thenne
came forthe a dwerf and lepte vnto fyr launcelot / and wold
haue had the swerd oute of his hand / and thenne fyre launce- 20
lot took hym by the bothe sholders and threwe hym to the gro-
und vpon his neck that he had al mooft broken his neck / and
there with alle the dwerf cryed helpe / Thenne came forth a ly-
kely knyghte and wel apparaylled in scarlet furred with my-
neuer / And anone as he sawe fyr launcelot / he demed that he 25
shold be oute of his wytte / And thenne he said with fayre spe-
che good man leye doune that swerd / for as me semeth / thou
haddest more nede of slepe and of warme clothes / than to wel-
de that swerd / As for that said fyr Launcelot come not to ny3
for and thou doo wete thou wel I will flee the / And when 30

the knyghte of the pauelione sawe that he starte bakward with-
 in the pauelione / And thenne the dwerf armed hym lyghtely
 and soo the knyghte thought by force and myghte to take the
 fwerd from fyr launcelot / and soo he came steppynge oute / and
 5 whanne fyr launcelot sawe hym come so alle armed with hys
 fwerd in his hand / Thenne sire launcelot flewe to hym with
 fuche a myghte and hytte hym vpon the helme fuche a buffet /
 that the stroke troubled his braynes / and there with the fuerd
 brak in thre / And the knyght felle to the erthe as he hadde ben
 10 dede / the blood braстыnge oute of his mouthe / the nose / and the
 eres / And thenne fyr launcelot ranne in to the pauelione and
 raffhed euen in to the warme bedde / and there was a lady in
 that bedde / and she gat her smock / and ranne oute of the pauel-
 ione / And whanne she sawe her lord lye at the ground lyke to
 15 be dede / thenne she cryed and wepte as she had ben madde /
 Thenne with her noyse the knyghte awaked oute of his swoun
 and loked vp wekely with his eyen / and thenne he asked her
 where was that madde man that had gyuen hym fuche a buf-
 fet / for fuche a buffet had I neuer of mans hand / Sir sayd
 20 the dwerf it is not worship to hurte hym for he is a man oute
 of his wytte / and doubte ye not he hath ben a man of grete
 worship / and for somme hertely sorow that he hath taken he is
 fallen madde / and me befemeth said the dwerfe he resembleth
 moche vnto sir Launcelot / for hym I sawe at the grete turne-
 25 ment befyde Lonezep / Ihesu defende said that knyghte that e-
 uer that noble knyght fyre Launcelot shold be in fuche a ply-
 te / but what someuer he be said that knyghte / harme wille I
 none doo hym / and this knyghtes name was Blyaunt /
 Thenne he said vnto the dwerf / goo thow fast on horsbak vn-
 30 to my broder fyr Selyuaunt / that is at the Castel blank / & telle
 hym of myn aduenture / and bydde hym brynge with hym an
 hors lytter / and thenne wille we bere this knyghte vnto my
 Castel /

¶ Capitulum ij

35 **S**oo the dwerf rode fast / and he came ageyne / and bro-
 ughte fyr Selyuaunt with hym / and fyxe men with
 [leaf 297 verso]

an hors lytter / and foo they took vp the fether bedde with fyre
 launcelot / and foo caryed alle away with hem vnto the Castel
 Blank / and he neuer awaked tyl he was within the Castel /
 And thenne they bounde his handes & his feet / and gafe hym
 good metes and good drynkes / and broughte hym ageyne 5
 to his strengthe and his fayrenesse / but in his wytte they cou-
 de not brynge hym ageyn / nor to knowe hym self / Thus was
 fyr launcelot there more than a yere and a half honestly ara-
 yed and fayre farne with alle / Thenne vpon a day this Lord
 of that Castel fyr Blyaunt took his armes on horfbak with 10
 a spere to seke aduentures / And as he rode in a forest ther met
 hym two knyghtes aduenturous / the one was Breufe saunce
 pyte / and his broder fyr Bertelot / & these two ranne both atto-
 nes vpon fyr Blyaunt / and brake their speres vpon his body
 And thenne they drewe oute swerdes & made grete bataill / & 15
 fought long to gyders / But at the last fyr Blyaunt was fo-
 re wounded / and felte hym self faynte / and thenne he fled on
 horfbak toward his castel / And as they cam hurlyng vnder the
 Castel where as fir launcelot lay in a wyndowe / & sawe how
 two knyghtes layd vpon fyr Blyaunt with their swerdes / 20
 And whanne fir launcelot sawe that yet as woode as he was
 he was fory for his lord fyr Blyaunt / And thenne fir laun-
 celot brake the chaynes fro his legges and of his armes / &
 in the brekyng he hurte his handes fore / & so fir launcelot ran
 out at a posterne / and there he mett with the two knyghtes that 25
 chaced fir Blyaunt / & there he pulled down fir Bertelot with
 his bare handes from his hors / & there with all he wrothe hys
 suerd out of his hand / & so he lepte vnto fyr Brufe / & gaf hym
 fuche a buffet vpon the hede that he tumbled bakward ouer his
 hors croupe / And whan fir Bertolet sawe there his broder ha- 30
 ue fuche a falle / he gat a spere in his hand / & wold haue ron-
 ne fyr launcelot thurgh / that sawe fir Blyaunt / and strake of
 the hand of fyr Bertelot / And thenne fyr brufe and fir ber-
 telot gat theyr horses and fled away / whan fyre Selyuaunt
 came and sawe what fyr launcelot had done for his brother / 35
 thenne he thanked god and so dyd his broder that euer they
 dyd hym ony good

¶ But whanne fire blyaunt sawe that fyr launcelot was hurte with the brekyng

of his yrons / thēne was he heuy that euer he bound hym / bynde
 hym no more faid fyr Selyuaunt / for he is happy & gracyous
 Thenne they made grete Ioye of fyr launcelot / and they bound
 hym no more / & soo he abode there an half yere and more / and
 5 on the morne erly fyr launcelot was ware where came a grete
 bore with many houndes nyghe hym / But the bore was so byg
 ther myghte no houndes tere hym / and the hunters came after
 blowyng their hornes bothe vpon horsbak & some vpon foote / &
 thenne fir launcelot was ware where one alyght and teyed his
 10 hors to a tree . and lened his spere ageynste the tree /

¶ Capitulum iij

SOo came fyr launcelot and fonde the hors bounden tyl
 a tree / & a spere lenyng ageynst a tree / & a swerd te-
 yed to the fadel bowe / & thenne fir launcelot lepte in to
 the fadel & gat that spere in his hand / & thenne he rode after the
 15 bore / & thenne fyre laūcelot was ware where the bore set his ars
 to a tree fast by an hermytage / Thenne fir launcelot ranne atte
 bore with his spere / & ther with the bore torned hym nemly / &
 rafe out the longes & the hert of the hors so that launcelot felle
 to the erthe / & or euer fire launcelot myzt gete from the hors /
 20 the bore rafe hym on the brawne of the thy3 vp to the hough-
 bone / and thenne fir launcelot was wrothe / & vp he gat vpon
 his feet / & drewe his swerd / & he smote of the bores hede at one
 stroke / & there with all came out the heremyte / & sawe hym ha-
 ue suche a wound / thenne the heremyte came to fir launcelot and
 25 bemoned hym / and wold haue had hym home vnto his hermy-
 tage / but whan fyr launcelot herd hym speke / he was so wroth
 with his wound that he ranne vpon the heremyte to haue fla-
 yne hym / & the heremyte ranne away / & whan fir laūcelot my-
 ght not ouer gete hym / he threwe his swerd after hym / for fyr
 30 launcelot myght tho no ferther for bledyng / thēne the heremy-
 te torned ageyn / & asked fir launcelot how he was hurte / Fe-
 lawe faid fir launcelot this bore hath beten me fore / Thenne co-
 me with me faid the heremyte and I shalle hele yow / Goo thy
 wey faid fir launcelot and dele not with me / Thenne the here-
 35 myte ranne his way / and there he mette with a good knyghte

with many men / Sir said the heremyte / here is fast by my place the goodlyest man that euer I sawe / and he is fore wounded with a bore / & yet he hath slayne the bore / But wel I wote sayd the heremyte and he be not holpen that goodly man shall dye of that wounde / and that were grete pyte / Thenne that knyghte atte desyre of the heremyte gat a carte / and in that carte that knyghte putte the bore and sir launcelot / for sir launcelot was soo feble that they myghte ryght easly deale wyth hym / and soo fyr launcelot was broughte vnto the hermytage and there the heremyte heled hym of his wound / But the heremyte myghte not fynde fyr launcelots sustenance / and so he enpayred and waxed feble bothe of his body and of his wyt for the defaute of his sustenance / he waxed more wooder than he was afore hand / And thenne vpon a day fyr launcelot ran his waye in to the forest / and by aduenture he came to the cyte of Corbyn where dame Elayne was that bare Galahalt fyr Launcelots sone / and soo whan he was entryd in to the toun he ranne thurgh the Towne to the Castel / and thenne alle the yonge men of that Cyte ranne after sir Launcelot / and there they threwe turues at hym / and gaf hym many fadde strokes / And euer as fyre launcelot myghte ouer retche ony of them / he threwe them soo that they wold neuer come in his handes no more / for of some he brake the legges & the armes / & so fledde in to the Castel / and thenne came oute knyghtes and squyers and rescowed fyr launcelot / And whan they beheld hym / & looked vpon his perfon / they thought they sawe neuer so goodly a man / And whan they sawe so many woundes vpon hym alle they demed that he had ben a man of worship / And thenne they ordeyned hym clothes to his body / and frawe vndernethe hym / and a lytel hous / And thēne euery day they wold throwe hym mete / and sette hym drynke / but there was but fewe wold brynge hym mete to his handes

¶ Capitulum iiij

SO it befelle that kynge Pelles had a neuewe / his name was Castror / and so he desyred of the kyng to be made knyghte / & so atte request of this Castror the kynge

made hym knyghte at the feest of Candelmaffe / And whanne
 fyr Caſtor was made knyghte / that ſame day he gaf many go-
 wnes / And thenne ſir Caſtor ſente for the foole that was fyr
 Launcelot / And when he was come afore fyr Caſtor / he gaf ſir
 5 Launcelot a Robe of ſcarlet and alle that longed vnto hym /
 And whanne fyr launcelot was foo arayed lyke a knyghte
 he was the ſemelyeſt man in alle the Courte / and none ſo wel
 made / Soo whanne he ſawe his tyme / he went in to the gardyn
 And there fyre launcelot leid hym doune by a welle & ſlepte
 10 And foo at after none dame Elayne and her maydens came
 in to the gardyn to playe them / and as they romed vp & doun
 one of dame Elayns maydens aſpyed where laye a goodely
 man by the welle ſlepyng / and anone ſhewed hym to dame
 Elayne / Pees ſaid dame Elayne / and faye no word / & then-
 15 ne ſhe broughte dame Elayne where he laye / And whan that
 ſhe beheld hym / anone ſhe felle in remembraunce of hym / and
 knewe hym veryly for fyr launcelot / and there with alle ſhe
 felle on wepyng foo hertely / that ſhe ſanke euen to the erthe / &
 whanne ſhe had thus wepte a grete whyle / thenne ſhe aroos &
 20 called her maydens and ſaid ſhe was ſeke / And ſo ſhe yede out
 of the gardyn / & ſhe wente ſtreighte to her fader / & there ſhe to-
 ke hym a parte by her ſelf / and thenne ſhe ſaid O fader now
 haue I nede of your help / and but yf that ye helpe me / fare
 wel my good dayes for euer / What is that doughter ſaid ky-
 25 ng Pelles / Sir ſhe ſaid thus is it in your gardyn / I went for
 to ſporte / and there by the welle I fonde fyr Launcelot du la-
 ke ſlepyng / I may not bileue that ſaid kyng Pelles / fyre ſhe
 ſaid truly he is there / & me ſemeth he ſhold be diffracte oute of
 his witte / thenne hold yow ſtille ſaid the kyng & lete me dele
 30 Thenne the kyng called to hym ſuche as he moſt truſted a / iiij /
 perſons & dame Elayn his douzter / and whan they cam to the
 welle and beheld fyr launcelot / anone dame Bryſen knewe
 hym / Sire ſaide dame Bryſen we muſte be wyſe how we dele
 with hym / for this knyghte is oute of his mynde / & yf we a-
 35 wake hym rudely / what he wil doo we al knowe not / But ye
 ſhal abyde / and I ſhalle throwe ſuche an enchauntement vpon
 hym / that he ſhal not awake within the ſpace of an houre / &
 fo ſhe dyd

¶ Thenne within a lytel whyle after the

kyng commaunded that all peple shold auoyde that none shold be in that way there as the kyng wold come / & soo whan this was done / these four men and these ladyes layd hand on fyr launcelot / and soo they bare hym in to a Toure / and soo in to a chamber where was the holy vessel of the Sancgreal / and 5 by force fyr launcelot was leid by that holy vessel / and there came an holy man and vnhyllled that vessel / and soo by myracle and by vertu of that holy vessel fyr launcelot was heled and recouerd / And whanne that he was awaked / he groined and fyghed and complayned gretely / that he was pas- 10 syng fore

¶ Capitulum v

ANd whanne sir launcelot sawe kynge Pelles & Elayne / he waxed ashamed and said thus / O lord Ihesu how came I here / for goddes sake my lord lete me wete how that I came here / Sir said dame Elayne in to thys 15 Countrey ye cam lyke a madde man clene oute of your wytte And here haue ye ben kepte as a foole / and no creature here knewe what ye were vntyl by fortune a mayden of myn broughte me vnto yow where as ye lay slepyng by a welle / and anone as I veryly beheld yow / I knewe yow / And thenne I 20 told my fader / and so were ye broughte afore this holy vessel And by the vertu of it thus were ye helyd / O Ihesu mercy said sir launcelot yf this be sothe / how many there be that knowen of my woodenes / Soo god me help sayd Elayne no mo but my fader and I and dame Bryfen / Now for Crystes 25 ue said sir Launcelot kepe hit in counceyll / and lete noo man knowe hit in the world / for I am sore ashamed that I haue ben thus myscaryed / for I am bannysshed oute of the Countrey of Logrys for euer that is for to save the countrey of Englonde / And soo fyr Launcelot lay more than a fourtenyghte or euer 30 that he myghte stere for forenes / And thenne vpon a day he sayd vnto dame Elayne these wordes / lady Elayne for your sake I haue had moche trauaill care and anguysshe / it nedeth not to reherse hit / ye knowe how / Not withstandyng I knowe wel I haue done foule to yow whan that I drewe my swerd to you 35 to haue slayn you vpon the morn whan I had layn with yow And alle was the cause that ye & dame Bryfen made me for

to lye by yow maulgre myn hede / and as ye faye that nyghte
 Galahalt your sone was begoten / that is trouthe sayd dame
 Elayne / ¶ Now wille ye for my loue said fire launcelot goo
 vnto your fader and gete me a place of hym wherin I maye
 5 dwelle / For in the Courte of kynge Arthur maye I neuer co-
 me / Syr said dame Elayne I will lyue and dye with yow /
 and only for your sake / and yf my lyf myghte not auaile you
 and my dethe myghte auaile yow / wete you wel I wold dye
 for your sake / and I wille go to my fader / and I am sure/
 10 there is no thyng that I can defyre of hym but I shalle ha-
 ue hit / And where ye be my lord fyr Launcelot doubte ye not
 but I wille be with yow with alle the feruyse that I may do
 Soo forth with alle she wente to her fader / and said fyre / my
 lord fyr launcelot defyareth to be here by yow in some Castel of
 15 yours / wel doughter said the kynge fythe hit his defyre to
 abyde in these marches he shalle be in the Castel of Blyaunt /
 and there shalle ye be with hym and twenty of the fayrest la-
 dyes that ben in this countrey / and they shalle alle be of the
 grete blood / and ye shalle haue ten knyghtes with yow / For
 20 doughter I wille that ye wete we alle ben honoured by the
 blood of fire launcelot

¶ Capitulum vi

T Henne wente dame Elayne vnto fyr Launcelot & told
 hym alle how her fader had deuysed for hym and her/
 Thenne cam the knyzt fyr Castor that was neuewe vnto kyng
 25 Pelles vnto fyr launcelot & asked hym what was his name
 Sir said fyr launcelot my name is le cheualer malfet that is
 to say the knyzt that hath trespaced / Sir said fir Castor it may
 wel be so / but euer me semeth your name shold be fyr laūcelot
 du lake / for or now I haue fene yow / fir said launcelot ye are
 30 not as a gentyl knyzt / I put caas my name were fyr laūcelot/
 & that it lyst me not to discouer my name / what shold it gre-
 ue you here to kepe my counceyl / & ye not hurte ther by / but
 wete thou wel & euer it lye in my power I shal greue yow &
 that I promyse you truly / Thenne fir Castor kneled doune and
 35 besouzt fir laūcelot of mercy / for I shal neuer vtter what ye be
 whyle ye be in these partyes / thenne fire launcelot pardon-
 ned hym / ¶ And thenne after this kynge Pelles with

x knyghtes / and dame Elayne / and twenty ladyes rode vnto
 the Castel of Blyaunt that stood in an Iland beclofed in y-
 ron with a fayr water depe and large / ¶ And whanne they
 were there / fyr launcelot lete calle hit the Ioyous yle / & there
 was he called none other wyfe / but Le cheualer malfet the 5
 knyghte that hath trespaced / Thenne sire Launcelot lete make
 hym a shelde alle of Sabel / and a quene crowned in the myd-
 des alle of syluer / & a knyghte clene armed knelyng afore her
 and euery day ones for ony myrthes that alle the ladyes myzt
 make hym / he wold ones euery day loke toward the realme 10
 of Logrys / where kyng Arthur and Quene Gueneuer was
 And thenne wold he falle vpon a wepyng as his hert shold
 to brafte / Soo hit felle that tyme fyr launcelot herd of a Iust-
 ynge fast by his Castel within thre legges thenne he called vn-
 to hym a dwerf and he badde hym goo vnto that Iustyng / and 15
 or euer the knyghtes departe loke thow make there a crye in he-
 ryng of alle knyghtes / that there is one knyghte in the Io-
 yous yle that is the Castel of Blyaunt / and faye his name
 is le cheualer malfet that wille Iuste ageynste knyghtes that
 wille come / And who that putteth that knyghte to the werse / 20
 shalle haue a fayr mayde and a Ierfaucon /

Capitulum septimum /

SOo whanne this crye was made / vnto Ioyous yle dre-
 we knyghtes to the number of fyue honderd / and we-
 te ye wel there was neuer fene in Arthurs dayes one knyght
 that dyd soo moche dedes of armes as fyre launcelot dyd thre 25
 dayes to gyders / For as the booke maketh truly mencyon / he
 had the better of all the fyue honderd knyghtes / and ther was
 not one slayne of them / And after that fyr launcelot maade
 them alle a grete feest / and in the meane whyle came fyr Per-
 cyual de galys & fyr Ector de marys vnder that Castel / that 30
 was called the Ioyous yle / And as they beheld that gay cast-
 el / they wold haue gone to that Castel / but they myghte not
 for the brode water / and brydge coude they fynde none / Thenne
 they sawe on the other fyde a lady with a sperhawk on her hād

and fir Percyual called vnto her / and asked that lady who
was in that Castel / Fair knyghtes she said / here within thys
castel is the fayrest lady in this land / and her name is Ela-
yne / Also we haue in this Castel the fayrest knyghte and the
5 myghtyest man that is I dar faye lyuyng / and he called hym
felf le cheualer mal fett / how came he in to these marches sayd
fyr Percyuale / Truly said the damoyfel / he came in to this co-
untrey lyke a madde man with dogges and boyes chacyng hym
thorou the Cyte of Corbyn / and by the holy vessel of the Sa-
10 nke greal he was broughte in to his wytte ageyne / but he wil
not doo batail with noo knyghte / but by vndorne or by none /
And yf ye lyst to come in to the castel sayd the lady ye muste
ryde vnto the ferther syde of the castel / and there shalle ye fy-
nde a vessel that wille bere yow and your hors / Thenne they
15 departed / and came vnto the vessel / And thenne fyre Percy-
ual alyghte / and sayd to fire Ector de marys / ye shalle abyde
me here vntyl that I wete what maner a knyghte he is / For it
were shame vnto vs in as moche as he is but one knyghte / &
we shold both doo batail with hym / doo ye as ye lyst said fire
20 Ector / and here I shalle abyde yow vntyl that I here of yow
Thenne passed fire Percyuale the water / And whanne he cam
to the Castel gate / he bad the porter goo thow to the good kn-
yghte within the Castel / and telle hym / here is comen an erraūt
knyghte to Iuste with hym / Sir said the porter ryde ye within
25 the Castel / and there is a comyn place for Iustyng that lordes
and ladyes maye behold yow / So anone as fyr launcelot had
warnyng / he was soone redy / and there fyr Percyual and fir
launcelot encountred with fuche a myghte / and theire speres
were soo rude that both the horses and the knyghtes felle to the
30 erthe / Thenne they auoyded their horses / and flange oute no-
ble fwerdes / & hewe away cantels of theire sheldes / & hurtled
to gyder with their sheldes lyke two bores / and eyther woun-
ded other passyng fore / At the last fyr Percyual spake fyrst
whanne they had foughten there more than two houres / Fair
35 knyghte said fyre Percyuale I requyre the telle me thy name
for I mette neuer with fuche a knyghte / Sir said fyr launce-
lot my name is le cheueler mal fet / Now telle me youre name
faide fyre Launcelot I requyre yow gentyl knyghte

Truly faid fire Percyual my name is fyr Percyual de galis
that was broder vnto the good knyghte fyre Lamorak de ga-
lys / and kynge Pellenore was oure fader / and fyre Agloul
is my broder / Allas faid fire launcelot what haue I done to
fyghte with yow that art a knyghte of the table round / that 5
somtyme was your felawe

¶ Capitulum viii

ANd there with alle fyre launcelot kneled doune vpon
his knees and threwe away his fheld and his fuerd
from hym / Whanne fire Percyual sawe hym doo so / he meruey-
led what he mened / And thenne thus he faid / fyre knyghte 10
what someuer thou be / I requyre the vpon the hyghe ordre of
knyghthode telle me thy true name / Thenne he faid so god me
help my name is fyre launcelot du lake kynge Bans sone of
Benoy / Allas faid fyr Percyual what haue I done I was
fente by the Quene for to seke yow / and soo I haue foughte 15
yow nygh this two yere / and yonder is fyre Ector de marys
your broder abyde me on the other fyde of the yonder water/
Now for goddes sake faid fire Percyual forgyue me myn of-
fencys that I haue here done / hit is foone forgyuen faid fyre
launcelot / Thenne fyre Percyual fente for fyr Ector de marys 20
And whanne fyr launcelot had a fyghte of hym / he ranne vn-
to hym and took hym in his armes / and thēne fyr Ector kne-
led doune / and eyther wepte vpon other that all had pyte to
beholde them / Thenne came dame Elayne / and she there maade
them grete chere as myghte lye in her power / and there she told 25
fyr Ector and fyr Percyual how and in what manere fir la-
uncelot came in to that countrey / And how he was heled / and
there hit was knowen how longe fyr launcelot was with fyre
Blyaunt and with fyr Selyaunt / and how he fyrste mette
with them / and how he departed from them by cause of a bore / 30
and how the heremyte heled fyre launcelot of his grete woud
and how that he came to Corbyn /

¶ Capitulum ix

Now leue we fire launcelot in the Ioyous yle with
 the lady dame Elayne and fyr Percyual and fir Ec-
 tor playenge with hem / and torne we to fyr Bors de
 ganys and fire Lyonel that had foughte fire launcelot nygh
 5 by the space of two yere / and neuer coude they here of hym / &
 as they thus rode / by aduenture they cam to the hous of Bran-
 degore / and there fyr Bors was wel knowen / for he had geten
 a child vpon the kynges doughter fyten yere to forne / & his
 name was Helyn le blank / And whanne fyre Bors sawe
 10 that child hit lyked hym passyng wel / And so tho knyghtes
 had good chere of the kynge Brandegore / ¶ And on
 the morne fyre Bors came afore kynge Brandegore and said
 Here is my sone Helyn le blanck / that as it is sayd he is my
 sone / And fythe hit is soo / I wille that ye wete that I wil ha-
 15 ue hym with me vnto the Courte of kynge Arthur / Sir sayd
 the kynge / ye maye wel take hym with you / but he is ouer ten-
 der of age / As for that sayd fyre Bors I wille haue hym
 with me / and bryng hym to the hows of most worship of the
 world / Soo whanne fyre Bors shold departe / there was ma-
 20 de grete sorowe for the departyng of Helyn le blanck / and gre-
 te wepyng was there made / But fire Bors and fyre Lyonel
 departed / And within a whyle they came to Camelot / where
 was kynge Arthur / And whanne kynge Arthur vnderstood
 that Helyn le blank was kynge Bors sone / and neuewe vn-
 25 to kynge Brandegore / Thenne kynge Arthur lete hym make
 knyghte of the round table / and soo he preued a good kny-
 ght / and an aduenturous / ¶ Now wille we torne to our ma-
 ter of fire launcelot / Hit befelle vpon a day fyr Ector and fyr
 Percyual cam to fyr Launcelot and asked hym what he wo-
 30 ld doo / and whether he wold goo with them vnto kynge Ar-
 thur or not / Nay sayd fyr Launcelot that may not be by no me-
 ane / for I was so venetreted at the Courte that I cast me ne-
 uer to come there more / Sir said fyr Ector I am youre broder
 and ye are the man in the world that I loue moost / And yf I
 35 vnderstode that it were your disworship / ye may vnderstande I
 neuer counceyle yow ther to / but kynge Arthur and al
 his knyghtes / and in especial Quene Gueneuer maade fuche
 dole and sorowe that hit was merueyle to here and see

And ye muste remembre the grete worship and renoume that ye be of / how that ye haue ben more spoken of than any other knyghte that is now lyuyng / for there is none that bereth the name now but ye and fyr Tristram / therfore broder sayd fyre Ector make yow redy to ryde to the Courte with vs / and I dar 5
 say / there was neuer knyghte better welcome to the court than ye / and I wote wel and can make it good said fyr Ector it hath coste my lady Quene twenty thowfsand pound the fekyng of yow / wel broder said fyre launcelot I wil doo after your counceil and ryde with yow / Soo thenne they took their 10
 horsfes and made them redy and took their leue at kyng Pelles and at dame Elayne / And whanne fyre launcelot shold departe / dame Elayne made grete forowe / My lord fyr Launcelot said dame Elayne at this fame feest of Pentecost shall your sone and myn Galahalt be made knyghte / for he is fully 15
 now xv wynter old / doo as ye lyst said sir Launcelot / god gyue hym grace to preue a good knyghte / As for that sayd dame Elayne I doubte not he shal preue the best man of his kyn excepte one / thenne shalle he be a man good ynough said fyre launcelot /

20

¶ Capitulum x

THenne they departed / and within fyue dayes Iourney they came to Camelot / that is called in Englyssh wynechester / And whanne fyre launcelot was come among them / the kyng and all the knyghtes made grete loye of hym And there fyre Percyual de galys and fyre Ector de marys 25
 beganne and told the hole aduentures that fyre launcelot had ben oute of his mynde the tyme of his absence / and how he called hym self le cheueler malefet / the knyzt that had trespaced And in thre dayes sir launcelot smote doun fyue honderd knyghtes / And euer as fyre Ector and fyre Percyual told these 30
 tales of fyre launcelot quene Gueneuer wepte as she shold haue dyed / Thenne the quene made grete chere / O Ihesu sayd kyng Arthur I merueyle for what cause ye fyre launcelot wente out of your mynde / I and many other deme it was for the loue of fayre Elayne the doughter of kyng Pelles / by 35

[leaf 303]

whome ye ar noyfed that ye haue goten a child / & his name
 is Galahalt / and men faye / he shalle doo merueylles / My lord
 sayd fyr launcelot yf I dyd ony foly / I haue that I fouzt
 and there with alle the kynge spak no more / But all fire la-
 5 uncelots kynne knewe for whome he wente oute of his mynde/
 And thenne there were grete feestes made and grete Ioye / &
 many grete lordes and ladyes whanne they herd that fir laun-
 celot was come to the Courte ageyne they made grete ioye

¶ Capitulum xi

10 **N**ow wille we leue of this mater and speke we of fire
 Triftram / and of fyr Palomydes that was the Sara-
 fyn vncrystened / whanne fyr Triftram was come ho-
 me vnto Ioyous gard from his aduentures / Alle this why-
 le that fyr launcelot was thus myst two yere and more / fyre
 Triftram bare the renomme thurgh alle the realme of Logrys
 15 and many straunge aduentures befelle hym and ful wel and
 manly and worshipfully he broughte hem to an ende/ ¶ So
 whanne he was come home la Beale Ifoud told hym of the
 grete feest that shold be at Pentecost next folowyng / and there
 she told hym how fir launcelot had ben myst two yere / and al
 20 that whyle he had ben oute of his mynde / and how he was hol-
 pen by the holy vessel the Sancgreal / Allas said fyr Triftram
 that caused some debate betwixe hym and Quene Gueneuer /
 Syr said dame Ifoud I knowe hit all / for quene Gweneuer
 sente me a letter in the whiche she wrote me alle how hit was
 25 for to requyre yow to feke hym / and now bleffid be god said
 la Beale Ifoud he is hole and found and come ageyne to
 the Courte / therof am I glad said fyr Triftram and now shal
 ye and I make vs redy / for both ye and I wille be atte feest
 Sir said Ifoud and hit please yow I wille not be there / for
 30 thorough me ye be marked of many good knyghtes / and that
 caused yow to haue moche more labour for my sake than ne-
 deth yow / Thenne wille I not be there said fyr Triftram / but
 yf ye be there / god defende said la beale Ifoud / for thenne
 shal I be spoken of shame amonge alle Quenes and ladyes

of estate / for ye that ar called one of the noblest knyghtes of
 the world / and ye a knyghte of the round table / how maye ye
 be myst at that feest / what shalle be said amonge all knyghtes
 See how sire Triftram hunteth and hawketh & coureth with-
 in a Castel with his lady / and forsaketh your worshyp / Al- 5
 las shalle some say hit is pyte that euer he was made knyght
 or that euer he shold haue the loue of a lady / Also what shal
 Quenes and ladyes saye of me / hit is pyte that I haue my
 lyf that I wille holde soo noble a knyghte as ye ar from his
 worshyp / Soo god me help said fyre Triftram vnto la Beale 10
 Ifoud / hit is passyng wel sayd of yow and nobly councey-
 led / and now I well vnderstande that ye loue me / and lyke
 as ye haue counceyled me I wille doo a parte there after /
 But there shalle no man nor childe ryde with me / but my self
 And soo wille I ryde on teweſday next comyng and no mo- 15
 re harneis of werre but my spere and my fuerd /

¶ Capitulum xij

ANd soo whanne the daye came / fyre Triftram toke his
 leue at la Beale Ifoud / and she sente with hym / iiij
 knyghtes / and within half a myle he sente them ageyne / and
 within a myle after sir Triftram sawe afore hym where sir pa- 20
 lomydes had stryken doune a knyghte / and al moost wounded
 hym to the dethe / Thenne fyr Triftram repentyd hym / that he
 was not armed / and thenne he houed styll / with that sir pa-
 lomydes knewe fyr Triftram and cryed on hygh / fyr Triftram
 now be we mette / for or we departe / we wille redresse our old 25
 sores / As for that said sir Triftram there was yet neuer cristen
 man myghte make his boost that euer I fledde from hym / and
 wete ye wel fyr Palomydes thow that arte a farefyn shal ne-
 uer make thy boost that fyr Triftram de lyones shall flee from
 the / And there with fyr Triftram made his hors to renne / and 30
 with all his myghte he came streyghte vpon fyr Palomydes / &
 braſte his spere vpon hym an honderd pyeces / And forth with
 alle sir Triftram drewe his sward / And thenne he torned his
 hors & stroke at palomydes / vj / grete strokes vpon his helme / &
 thenne sir Palomydes stode styll / and beheld fyre Triftram / & 35

merueyled of his woodenes / and of his foly / And thenne fir
 palomydes fayd to hym self / and fir Triftram were armed / it
 were hard to feace hym of this bataille / and yf I torne age-
 yne and flee hym I am ashamed where someuer that I goo
 5 Thenne fyr Triftram spake and said / ¶ Thow coward
 knyghte what castest thou to doo / why wolt thou not doo ba-
 taille with me / for haue thou noo doubte I shalle endure alle
 the malyce / A fyr Triftram said Palomydes ful wel thou wo-
 test I maye not fyghte with the for shame / for thou arte here
 10 naked and I am armed / And yf I flee the / dishonour shal
 be myn / and wel thou wotest said fyr Palomydes to fir Trif-
 tram I knowe thy strengthe and thy hardynesse to endure a-
 geynst a good knyghte / That is trouthe said fyr Triftram I
 vnderstande thy valyauntneffe wel / ye saye wel said fyr Palo-
 15 mydes / Now I requyre yow telle me a question that I shalle
 saye to yow / Telle me what hit is said fyr Triftram / and I
 shalle anfuer yow the trouthe as god me helpe / I putte caas
 said fir Palomydes that ye were armed at al ryztes as wel
 as I am / and I naked as ye be what wold ye doo to me now
 20 by your true knyghthode / A said fyr Triftram now I vnder-
 stande the wel fyr Palomydes / for now must I say myn own
 Iugement / and as god me blyffe that I shalle say / shal not
 be said for no fere that I haue of the / But this is all wete fir
 Palomydes / as at this tyme thou sholdest departe from me / for
 25 I wold not haue adoo with the / no more wil I said palomy-
 des / & therfor ryde forth an thy way / as for that I maye chese
 said fir Triftram outhere to ryde or to abyde / but fir Palomydes
 said fir Triftram I merueille of one thyng that thou that art
 soo good a knyghte that thou wolt not be crystened / & thy
 30 broder fyr Safere hath ben Crystened many a daye

A

¶ Capitulum xiiii

S for that said fire Palomydes I may not yet be cri-
 stened / for one auowe that I haue made many yeres a-
 gone / how be it in my herte I bileue in Ihesu crist & his mylde
 moder mary / but I haue one batail to do / & when that is do-
 35 ne I wil be baptyfed with a good wille

¶ By my hede sayd Triftram as for one bataille thou that not

[leaf 304 verso]

feke it no lenger / For god defende faid fir Triftram that thurȝ
 my defaute thou ſholdeſt lenger lyue thus a ſaraſyn / for yon-
 der is a knyghte that ye fyre Palomydes haue hurte & ſmyten
 doune / Now helpe me that I were armed in his armour / and
 I ſhalle ſoone fulfyll thyne auowes / As ye wille faid palo- 5
 mydes ſoo it ſhalle be / Soo they rode bothe vnto that knyghte
 that fatte vpon a bank / and thenne fir Triftram ſalewed hym
 and he wekely ſalewed hym ageyne / Sir knyȝt faid fir Trif-
 tram I requyre yow telle me your ryghte name / Sir he ſayd
 my name is fyr Galleron of Galway and knyghte of the ta- 10
 ble round / Soo god me help faid fir Triftram I am ryghte
 heuy of your hurtes / but this is alle I muſt praye yow to le-
 ne me alle your hole armour / for ye ſee I am vnarmed / and I
 muſt doo batail with this knyght / fyr faid the hurte knyghte
 ye ſhalle haue hit with a good will / but ye muſte beware for 15
 I warne yow that knyghte is wyghte / Syr ſayd Galeron I
 praye yow telle me your name / and what is that knyghtes
 name þ^t hath beten me / Sir as for my name it is fir Triftram
 de lyones / and as for the knyghtes name that hath hurte you
 is fyr Palomydes broder to the good knyghte fyre Safere / & 20
 yet is fyr Palomydes vncryſtened / Allas faid fyr Galleron/
 that is pyte that ſoo good a knyghte and ſoo noble a man of
 armes ſhold be vncryſtened / Soo god me help faid fir Trif-
 tram outhur he ſhalle flee me or I hym / but that he ſhalle be
 cryſtened / or euer we departe in ſonder / My lord fyr Triftram 25
 faid fir Galeron / your renoume and worſhip is wel knowen
 thorou many reames / and god ſaue yow this day from ſenf-
 hyp and ſhame / Thenne fyr Triftram vnarmed Galeron / the
 whiche was a noble knyghte / and had done many dedes of ar-
 mes / and he was a large knyghte of fleſſhe and boone / And 30
 whan he was vnarmed he ſtood vpon his feet / for he was bry-
 ced in the bak with a ſpere / yet ſoo as fyr Galleron myghte he
 armed fyr Triftram / And thenne fyr Triftram mounted vp-
 on his owne hors and in his hand he gat fyr Gallerons ſpe-
 re / and there with al fyr palomydes was redy / & ſoo they came 35
 hurtlynge to gyders / and eyther ſmote other in myddes of the-
 yr ſheldes / & there with al fir Palomydes ſpere brak / and fyre
 Triftram ſmote doune the hors / and fir Palomydes as ſoone

as he myghte auoyde his hors / & dresid his sheld / & pulled
oute his swerd / that sawe sir Triftram / & there with al he aly-
ght and teyed his hors tyl a tree

¶ Capitulum xiiij

5 **A**Nd thenne they came to gyders as two wyld bores /
lasshyng to gyders tracyng and trauercyng as noble
men / that ofte had ben wel proued in batail / but euer
fyr Palomydes dredde the myghte of fyre Triftram / and ther-
for he suffred hym to brethe hym / thus they fought more than
two houres / but often fyr Triftram smote fuche strokes at sir
10 Palomydes that he made hym to knele / and fyre Palomydes
brake and cutte away many pyeces of sir Triftrams shelde / &
thenne sir Palomydes wounded sir Triftram for he was a wel
fyghtyng man / Thenne sire Triftram was woode wrothe oute
of mesure and rasshed vpon fyr Palomydes with fuche a my-
15 ghte that sire Palomydes felle grouelyng to the erthe / & there
with alle he lepte vp lyghtely vpon his feet / and thenne fyre
Triftram wounded Palomydes fore thurgh the sholder / & euer
fyr Triftram foughte styll in lyke hard / and fyr Palomydes
fayled not but gaf hym many sadde strokes / And atte laste
20 fyr Triftram doubled his strokes / & by fortune fyre Triftram
smote fyr Palomydes swerd oute of his hand / & yf sir Palo-
mydes had stouped for his swerd he had ben slayne / Thenne
Palomydes stode styll and beheld his swerd with a sorouful
herte / How now said fyr Triftram vnto Palomydes / now ha-
25 ue I the at auauntage as thow haddeft me this daye / but it
shalle neuer be said in no Courte nor among good knyghtes
that fyr Triftram shalle flee ony knyghte that is wepenles / &
therfor take thow thy swerd / & let vs make an ende of thys
batail / As for to doo this batail sayd Palomydes I dar ryzt
30 wel ende hit / but I haue no grete luste to fyghte no more / and
for this cause said Palomydes / Myn offence to yow is not foo
grete / but that we may be frendes / Alle that I haue offended
is and was for the loue of la Beale Ifoud / And as for her/
I dar say she is pyerles aboue alle other ladyes / and also I

proferd her neuer no dishonour / and by her I haue gotten the
 moost parte of my worship / and fythen I offended neuer as
 to her owne persone / And as for the offence that I haue done/
 it was ageynste your owne persone / And for that offence ye ha-
 ue gyuen me this day many sad strokes / and some I haue ye- 5
 uen yow ageyne / and now I dar say I felte neuer man of
 your myghte / nor soo wel brethed / but yf hit were fyr launce-
 lot du lake / wherfor I requyre yow my lord / forgyue me alle
 that I haue offended vnto yow / And this same day haue me
 to the next chirche / and fyrst lete me be clene confessed / And 10
 after see yow now that I be truly baptyfed / And thenne wil
 we alle ryde to gyders vnto the courte of Arthur that we be
 there at the hyhe feest / Now take your hors said sir Tristram
 And as ye say / soo hit shal be / and alle thyn euylle wil god
 forgyue it yow and I doo / And here within this myle is the 15
 suffrekan of Carleil that shalle gyue yow the sacrament of bap-
 tym / Thenne they took their horses and sire Galleron rode wyth
 them / ¶ And whanne they cam to the suffrekan fyre Tristram
 told hym their desyre / Thenne the suffrekan lete fylle a grete ves-
 sel with water / And whanne he had halowed hit / he thenne 20
 confessed clene fyr Palomydes / and fyr Tristram and sir gal-
 leron were his godfaders / And thenne soone after they depar-
 ted rydyng toward Camelot / where kynge Arthur & Quene
 Gueneuer was / And for the moost party alle the knyghtes
 of the round table / And so the kynge and all the Court we- 25
 re glad that fyre Palomydes was crystened / And at the same
 feest in came Galahad and sat in the sege perillous/
 ¶ And soo there with alle departed and disseuered alle the
 knyghtes of the round table / and sire Tristram retourned ayene
 vnto Ioyous gard / and fyr Palomydes folowed the questy- 30
 nge beest

¶ Here endeth the second book of fyr Tristram that was dra-
 wen oute of Frenche in to Englyshe

But here is no rehersal of the thyrd book / ¶ And here folo-
 weth the noble tale of the Sancgreal that called is the booly
 vessel and the sygnefycacyon of the blessed blood of our lord
 Ihesu Cryste / blessed mote it be / the whiche was brought in to

this land by Joseph of Armathe / therfor on al synful soules
 s bleſſid lord haue thou mercy

¶ Explicit liber xij / Et incipit Decimustercius

¶ Capitulum primum /

AT the vygyl of Pentecost whan alle the felau-
 ship of the round table were comen vnto Ca-
 melot / and there herd their feruysse And the ta-
 bles were set redy to the mete / Ryzte so entryd
 5 in to the halle a ful fayre gentylwoman on
 horsbak that had ryden ful fast / for her hors was al besuette /
 Thenne she there alyght / and came before the kynge & salewed
 hym / and he said damoyſel god the blyſſe / Sire said she for
 goddes sake saye me where fyr launcelot is / yonder ye may see
 10 hym said the kynge / Thenne she wente vnto Launcelot and
 said fyr launcelot I salewe yow on kyng Pelles behalf / and
 I requyre yow come on with me here by in to a forest / thenne
 fyr launcelot asked her with whome she dwelled / I dwelle sa-
 id she with kynge Pelles / what wille ye with me said Launce-
 15 lot / ye shal knowe said she whanne ye come thyder / wel sayd
 he I wille gladly goo with yow / So fyr launcelot badde his
 squyer sadel his hors / and brynge his armes / and in all haſt
 he dyd his commaundement / Thenne came the quene vnto laū-
 celot / and said wille ye leue vs at this hyhe feest / Madame sa-
 20 id the gentylwoman wete ye wel he shal be with yow to morn
 by dynere tyme ¶ Yf I wyſt said the Quene that he
 shold not be with vs here to morne he shold not goo with you
 by my good wyll

¶ Ryght soo departed sir launcelot with the gentylwoman / &
 25 rode vntyl that he came in to a foreſte and in to a grete valey/
 where they ſawe an Abbay of nonnes / and there was a squyer
 redy and opened the gates / and soo they entryd and deſcended
 of their horses / and there came a fayr felauſhip aboute sir laū-
 celot / and welcomed hym / & were paſſyng gladd of his comy-
 30 nge / And thenne they ladde hym vnto the Abbefſe chamber &
 vnarmed hym / and ryght soo he was ware vpon a bed lyeng
 two of his coſyns fyr Bors & sir Lyonel / & thenne he waked

them / And whanne they sawe hym / they mad grete Ioye / Syr
said fyre Bors vnto fyr launcelot what aduenture hath bro-
ught yow hydder / for we wende to morne to haue fond you at
Camelot

¶ As god me help said fyr launcelot a
gentylwoman brought me hyther but I knowe not the cause 5
In the meane whyle that they thus stode talkynge to gyder /
therin came twelue nonnes that broughte with hem Galahad
the whiche was passyng fayre and wel made that vnneth in
the world men myghte not fynde his matche / and alle tho la-
dyes wepte / ¶ Sire sayd they alle we bryng yow here thys 10
child / the whiche we haue nourished / and we praye yow to
make hym a knyght / for of a more worthyer mans hande may
he not receyue the ordre of knyghthode / Sir launcelot beheld the
yonge squyer / and sawe hym femely and demure as a doue /
with alle maner of good fetures / that he wende of his age ne- 15
uer to haue fene soo fayre a man of forme

¶ Thenne said sir launcelot cometh this defyre of hym self / he
and alle they sayd ye / Thenne shalle he sayd sir launcelot re-
ceyue the hyghe ordre of knyghthode as to morne atte reuerence
of the hyghe feeft / That nyght fyr launcelot had passyng go- 20
od chere / And on the morne at the houre of pryme att Gala-
halts defyre he made hym knyzt & said / god make hym a good
man / for of beaute fayleth yow not as ony that lyueth /

¶ Capitulum Secundum

Now fayre fyr said fyr launcelot wille ye come wyth
me vnto the Courte of kyng Arthur / Nay sayd he / I 25
wille not goo with yow as at this tyme / Thenne he departed
fro them and took his two Cofyns with hym / and so they cam
vnto Camelot by the houre of vndorn on whytfonday / By that
tyme the kyng and the Quene were gone to the mynster to he-
re their feruyfe / Thenne the kyng and the quene were passyng 30
gladde of sir Bors and fyr Lyonel and soo was alle the fe-
lauship / So when the kyng & all the knyzttes were come from
feruyfe / the barons aspyed in the syeges of the round table al
aboute wryten with golden letters / here ouzt to fytte he / and
he oughte to fytte here / And thus they wente soo longe tyll 35

that they came to the fege perillous / where they fond letters newely wretoun of gold whiche said / iiii / C / wynters / & / liiiij / accomplifshed after the passion of oure lord Ihesu Criste ouzte this fege to be fulfilled / thenne alle they said / this is a merueyllous thyng and an aduenturous / In the name of god
5 said fyr launcelot / & thenne accompted the terme of the wrytyng from the byrthe of oure lord vnto that day / It semeth me faith fyr launcelot this fege oughte to be fulfilled this same day / for this is the feest of Pentecost after the four honderd
10 and four and fyfty yere / And yf it wold please all partyes I wold none of these letters were sene this daye tyl he be come that oughte to encheue this aduenture / Thenne maade they to ordeyne a clothe of fylke for to couer these letters in the fege peryllous / Thenne the kyng badde haste vnto dyner / Sire sayd
15 sir kay the steward / yf ye goo now vnto your mete / ye shalle breke your old customme of your Courte / for ye haue not vfed on this day to fyttre at your mete or that ye haue sene som aduenture / ye say sothe said the kyng / but I had soo grete Ioye of sir launcelot and of his Cofyns whiche be come to the
20 Courte hole and found / so that I bethoughte me not of myne old customme / Soo as they stode spekyng / in cam a squyer / & said vnto the kyng / Sire I bryng vnto yow merueillous tydynges / what be they said the kyng / Sir there is here bynethe at the Ryuer a grete stone whiche I sawe flete aboue the water / and therin I sawe styckying a swerd / the kyng sayde I
25 wille see that merueill / soo all the knyghtes went with hym / And whanne they came vnto the ryuer they fonde there a stone fletying as hit were of reed marhel / and therin stak a fair Ryche swerd / & in the pomel therof were precyous stones wrought with subtyl letters of gold / Thenne the Barons redde
30 the letters whiche said in this wyse / Neuer shalle man take me hens / but only he by whos fyde I ought to hange / and he shalle be the best knyght of the world / whanne the kyng had sene the letters / he said vnto sir launcelot / Fair sire this swerd
35 ought to be yours / for I am sure ye be the best knyght of the world / ¶ Thenne fyr launcelot answered ful soberly / Certes sir it is not my swerde /

¶ Also sir wete ye wel I haue no hardynes to sett my hande

[leaf 307* verso]

to / for hit longed not to hange by my fyde / ¶ Also who that
 affayeth to take the fwerd and fayleth of hit / he shalle receyue
 a wound by that fwerd that he shalle not be hole longe after /
 ¶ And I wille that ye wete that this fame day shall the ad-
 uentures of the Sancgreal that is called the hooly vessel be- 5
 gynne /

¶ Capitulum iij

Now fayre neuewe said the kynge vnto fyr gawayn/
 affaye ye for my loue / Sir he said fauf your good gra-
 ce I shalle not doo that / Sir sayd the kynge affaye to
 take the fwerd and at my commaundement / Syre sayd Ga- 10
 wayne your commaundement I wille obeye / and ther with he
 took vp the fwerd by the handels / but he myghte not stere hit/
 I thanke yow said the kynge to fyre Gawayne /

¶ My lord fyr Gawayne said fyr Laücelot now wete ye wel
 this fwerd shalle touche yow soo fore / that ye shalle wylle ye 15
 had neuer sette your hand therto for the best Castel of this re-
 alme / Syr he sayd I myghte not withfay myn vnkels wyll
 and commaundement / but whanne the kynge herd this he re-
 pentet hit moche / and said vnto fyr Percyual that he shold
 affaye for his loue / and he said gladly for to bere fyr Gawa- 20
 yn felaufhyp / and there with he sette his hand on the fwerd/
 and drewe hit strongly / but he myghte not meue hit / Thenne
 were there moo that durste be soo hardy to sette theire handes
 therto / ¶ Now maye ye goo to your dyner said fyr kay vnto
 the kynge / for a merueillous aduenture haue ye sene / Soo the 25
 kynge and alle wente vnto the Courte / and euery knyghte
 knewe his owne place / and sette hym therin / and yonge men
 that were knyghtes serued them / Soo whan they were serued
 and alle seges fulfylled fauf only the syege perillous / Anon
 there befelle a merueillous aduenture / that alle the dores & wyn- 30
 dows of the palays shut by them self / Not for thenne the ha-
 lle was not gretely darked / and there with they abasshed both
 one and other / ¶ Thenne kynge Arthur spak fyrst and sayd
 by god fayre felawes & lordes we haue sene this daye merue-
 yls / but or nyght I suppoſe we shal see gretter merueyls / In 35

the meane whyle came in a good old man and an aun-
 cent clothed al in whyte / and there was no knyzt knewe from
 whens he came / And with hym he broughte a yong knyzt bo-
 the on foote in reed armes withoute fwerd or sheld / fauf a
 5 scauberd hangynge by his fyde / And thefe wordes he faid pees
 be with yow faire lordes / ¶ Thenne the old man fayd vn-
 to Arthur / fyre I brynge here a yonge knyghte / the whiche is
 of kynges lygnage & of the kynrede of Ioseph of Abarima-
 thye where by the merueylles of thys Courte and of straunge
 10 realmes shalle be fully accomplyfshed

¶ Capitulum Quartum

THe kyng was ryghte gladde of his wordes / and faid
 vnto the good man / fyr ye be ryghte welcome / and the
 yonge knyzte with yow / Thenne the old man made the yong
 man to vnarme hym / and he was in a cote of reed fendel / &
 15 bare a mantel vpon his sholder that was furred with ermyn/
 and put that vpon hym / And the old knyghte fayd vnto the
 yonge knyght / fyr foloweth me / and anone he ledde hym vnto
 the sege peryllous / where befyde sat fyr Laūcelot / and the good
 man lyfte vp the clothe / and fonde there letters that faid thus
 20 this is the sege of Galahalt the haute prynce / Sir faid thold
 knyghte / wete ye wel that place is yours / And thenne he sett
 hym doune surely in that fyege / And thenne he fayd to the old
 man / fyr ye maye now goo your way / for wel haue ye done /
 that ye were commaunded to doo / & recommaunde me vnto my
 25 graunt fir kyng Pelles / and vnto my lord Petchere / and fay
 hem on my behalf I shalle come and see hem as soone as euer
 I may / Soo the good man departed / and there met hym xx
 noble squyers / and so took their horses and wente their way
 Thenne alle the knyghtes of the table round merueylled gre-
 30 tely of fir Galahalt that he durst fyttre there in that fyege peril-
 lous / and was soo tendyr of age / and wist not from whens he
 came but al only by god / and faid this he by whome the Sāc-
 greal shal be encheued / For there sat neuer none / but he / but he
 were mescheued / Thenne fyr launcelot beheld his sone and had

grete Ioye of hym / Thenne Bors told his felawes vpon payne of my lyf this yonge knyghte shalle come vnto grete worship / this noyse was grete in alle the Courte / soo that it cam to the quene / thenne she had merueylle what knyght it myght be that durste auenture hym to fytt in the fyege peryllous / many faid vnto the quene / he refembled moche vnto sire Launcelot I may wel suppoose faid the quene / that fyr Launcelot begatte hym on kynge Pelles doughter / by the whiche he was made to lye by / by enchaument / and his name is Galahalt / I wold fayne see hym faid the quene / for he must nedes be a noble man for soo is his fader that hym begat I reporte me vnto alle the table round / So whanne the mete was done that the kynge & alle were ryfen / the kynge yede vnto the fyege Peryllous and lyfte vp the clothe / and fonde there the name of Galahad / & thenne he shewed hit vnto fyr Gawayne / and fayd fayre newe now haue we amonge vs fyr Galahad the good knyght that shalle worshippe vs alle / and vpon payne of my lyf he shal encheue the Sancgreal / ryght as sir launcelot had done vs to vnderstande / Thenne came kyng Arthur vnto Galahad and faid fyr ye be welcome / for ye shall meue many good knyghtes to the quest of the Sancgreal / and ye shal encheue that neuer knyghtes myght brynge to an ende / Thenne the kynge took hym by the hand and wente doune from the paleis to shewe Galahad the aduentures of the stone /

¶ Capitulum v

THe Quene herd therof and came after with many lades / and shewed hem the stone where it houed on the water / Sire faid the kyng vnto fyre Galahad here is a grete merueylle as euer I sawe / and ryght good knyghtes haue affayed and fayled /

¶ Syre faid Galahad that is no merueil / for this aduenture is not theirs / but myne / and for the seurte of this swerd I brought none with me / For here by my fyde hangeth the

scauberd / And anone he layd his hand on the fwerd / and
 lyghtly drewe it oute of the stone / and putte it in the shethe / &
 said vnto the kynge / now hit goth better than hit dyd afore
 hand / Sir said the kynge / A. sheld god shalle fend you now
 5 haue I that fwerd that somtyme was the good knyghtes
 Balyn le faueage / and he was a passyng good man of his
 handes / And with this fuerd he flewe his broder Balan and
 that was grete pyte for he was a good knyghte / and eyther
 flewe other thorou a dolorous stroke that Balyn gaf vnto my
 10 graüte fader / kynge Pelles / the whiche is not yet hole / nor not
 shal be tyl I hele hym / There with the kynge and all aspyed
 where came rydyng doune the ryuer a lady on a whyte pal-
 froy toward them / Thenne she falewed the kynge and the que-
 ne / and asked yf that fyr Launcelot was there / And thenne
 15 he answerd hym self I am here fayre lady / Thenne she sayd al
 with wepyng how your grete doynge is chaunged fyth this
 day in the morne / Damoyfel why say ye soo sayd Launcelot / I
 saye yow sothe said the damoyfel / for ye were this day the best
 knyghte of the world / but who shold saye soo now he shold
 20 be a lyar / for there is now one better than ye / And wel hit is
 preued by the aduenturs of the fuerd where to ye durste not
 sette to your hand / and that is the chaunge and leuyng of
 your name / wherfore I make vnto yow a remembraunce / that
 ye shalle not wene from hensforth that ye be the best knyght of
 25 the world / As touchyng vnto that said launcelot / I knowe
 wel I was neuer the best / yes sayd the damoyfel that were ye
 and are yet of ony synful man of the world / And fir kyng
 Nacyen the heremyte sendeth the word that the shalle befall the
 gretteft worship that euer befelle kynge in Brytayne / and I
 30 say yow wherfore / for this daye the Sancgreal appiered in thy
 hows and fedde the and all thy felauyhyp of the round table
 Soo she departed and wente that same way that she came /

¶ Capitulum vj

35 **M** Ow sayd the kyng I am sure at this quest of the Sāc-
 greal shalle alle ye of the table rounde departe / and ne-
 uer shalle I see yow ageyne hole to gyders / therfor I
 [leaf 309 verso]

wille see yow alle hole to gyders in the medowe of Camelot to Iuste and to torneye / that after your dethe men maye speke of hit that suche good knyghtes were holy to gyders suche a day As vnto that councyll and at the kynges request they accorded alle / and toke on their harneis that longed vnto Iustyng 5 but alle this meuyng of the kyng was for this entent for to see Galahalt preued / for the kyng demed he shold not lyghtly come ageyne vnto the Courte after his departynge / So were they asssembled in the medowe bothe more and lasse / Thenne fyr Galahalt by the prayer of the kyng and the Quene 10 dyd vpon hym a noble Iefferaunce / and also he dyd on hys helme / but shelde wold he take none for no prayer of the kyng And thenne fir Gawayne and other knyghtes praid hym to take a spere / Ryghte soo he dyd / and the Quene was in a toure with alle her ladyes for to behold that turnement / Thenne 15 fir Galahalt dresid hym in myddes of the medowe / and began to breke speres merueylously that all men had wonder of hym for he there surmounted alle other knyghtes / for within a whyle he had defouled many good knyghtes of the table round / fauf tweyne that was fyr launcelot and fire Percyuale / 20

¶ Capitulum vii

THenne the kyng at the quenes request made hym to alyghte / and to vnlace his helme that the Quene myzt see hym in the vyfage / whanne she beheld hym she sayd sothely I dar wel say that fir launcelot begat hym / for neuer two men resembled more in lykenes / therfor it nys no merueyle though 25 he be of grete prowesse / So a lady that stode by the Quene said / Madame for goddes sake oughte he of ryghte to be so good a knyghte / ye forsothe said the quene / for he is of alle partyes come of the best knyghtes of the world and of the hyhest lygnage / for fir launcelot is come but of the / viij / degre from oure 30 lord Ihesu Cryst / and fyre Galahalt is of the nynthe degre from oure lord Ihesu Cryst / therfor I dar saye they be the grettest gentilmen of the world / and thenne the kyng and al estatates wente home vnto Camelot / and soo wente to euenfonge

to the grete mynster / And soo after vpon that to souper / and
 euery knyzt sette in his owne place as they were to fore hand
 Thenne anone they herd crakyng and cryenge of thonder that
 hem thought the place shold alle to dryue / In the myddes of
 5 this blast entred a sonne beaume more clerer by seuē tymes
 than euer they sawe daye / And al they were alyghted of the
 grace of the holy ghooft / thenne beganne euery knyghte to be-
 hold other / & eyther sawe other by their semyng fayrer than
 euer they sawe afore / Not for thenne there was no knyght my-
 10 ghte speke one word a grete whyle / and soo they loked euery
 man an other as they had ben dome / Thenne ther entred in to
 the halle the holy graile couerd with whyte famyte / but ther
 was none myghte see hit / nor who bare hit / And there was al
 the halle fulfylled with good odoures / and euery knyzt had
 15 fuche metes and drynkes as he best loued in this world / And
 whan the holy grayle had be borne thurgh the halle / thenne the
 holy vessel departed fodenly that they wyfte not where hit be-
 cam / thenne had they alle brethe to speke / And thenne the ky-
 nge yelded thankynges to god of his good grace that he had
 20 sente them / Certes said the kynge we oughte to thanke oure
 lord ihesu gretely for that he hath shewed vs this daye atte re-
 uerence of this hye feest of Pentecost / Now said sir Gawayn
 we haue ben serued this daye of what metes and drynkes we
 thoughte on / but one thyng begyled vs we myght not see the
 25 holy Grayle / it was soo precyously couerd / wherfor I wil ma-
 ke here auowe / that to morne withoute lenger abydyng I shal
 laboure in the quest of the Sancgreal / that I shalle hold me
 oute a twelue moneth and a day or more yf nede be / & neuer
 shalle I retorne ageyne vnto the Courte / tyl I haue fene hit
 30 more openly than hit hath ben fene here / & yf I may not spede /
 I shall retorne ageyne as he that maye not be ageynst the wil
 of our lord Ihesu Cryste / whan they of the table round herde
 fyr Gawayne saye so / they arose vp the most party and maade
 fuche auowes as sire Gawayne had made /
 35 ¶ Anone as kynge Arthur herd this / he was gretely dyf-
 pleasyd / for he wyfte wel they myghte not ageyne saye theyre
 auowes ¶ Allas said kynge Arthur vnto sir Gawayn
 ye haue nyghe slayne me with the auowe and promesse that

ye haue made / For thurgh yow ye haue berafte me the fayrest
felauship and the truest of knyghthode that euer were sene to
gyders in any realme of the world / For whanne they departe
from hens I am fure / they alle shalle neuer mete more in thys
world / for they shalle dye many in the quest / And soo it for- 5
thynketh me a lytel / for I haue loued them as wel as my lyf
wherfor hit shall greue me ryghte fore the departycyon of this
felauship / For I haue had an old customme to haue hem in
my felauship /

Capitulum Octauum /

ANd ther with the teres fylle in his eyen / And thenne 10
he sayd Gawayne Gawayne ye haue sette me in grete
sorowe / For I haue grete doubte that my true felauship
shalle neuer mete here more ageyne / A sayd fyr Launcelot com-
forte your self / for hit shalle be vnto vs a grete honour & mo-
che more than yf we dyed in any other places / for of deth we 15
be fyker / A laūcelot said þ^e kyng þ^e grete loue þ^t I haue had vn-
to you al the dayes of my lyf maketh me to say fuche dolefull
wordes / for neuer Crysten kynge had neuer soo many worthy
men at this table as I haue had this daye at the round table
and that is my grete sorowe / ¶ Whanne the Quene ladyes & 20
gentilwymmen wyft these tydynges / they had fuche sorowe &
heuyneffe that ther myght no tonge telle hit / for tho knyghtes
had hold them in honour and chyerte / But amonge all oth-
ther Quene Gueneuer made grete sorowe / I merueylle said she
my lord wold suffre hem to departe from hym / thus was al the 25
Courte troubled for the loue of the departycyon of tho knygh-
tes / And many of tho ladyes that loued knyghtes wold ha-
ue gone with her louers / and soo had they done had not an
old knyghte come amonge them in Relygyous clothynge / and
thenne he spake alle on hyghe / and said fayre Lordes which ha- 30
ue sworn in the quest of the Sancgreal / Thus fendeth you na-
cyen the heremyte word that none in this queste lede lady nor
gentylwoman with hym / for hit is not to doo in so hyghe a fer-
uyse as they labour in / for I warne yow playne he that is not
clene of his synnes / he shalle not see the mysteryes of our lord 35

Ihesu Cryfte / and for this cause they leste these ladyes and
 gentylwymmen / ¶ After this the quene came vnto Galahad
 and asked hym of whens he was / and of what countrey / he
 told her of whens he was / and fone vnto Launcelot / she saide he
 5 was / as to that he said neyther ye nor nay / So god me helpe
 said the quene of your fader ye nede not to shame yow / for he
 is the goodlyest knyghte and of the best men of the world co-
 men and of the strenge of alle partyes of kynges / Wherefore ye
 oughte of ryghte to be of your dedes a passynge good man / &
 10 certaynly she said ye resemble hym moche / Thenne fyr Galahad
 was a lytel ashamed and said Madame sythe ye knowe in
 certayne wherfore doo ye aske hit me / for he that is my fader/
 shalle be knowen openly and al by tymes / And thenne they
 wente to reste them / And in the honour of the hyhenes of Ga-
 15 lahad he was ledde in to kyng Arthurs chamber / and there
 rested in his owne bedde / And as soone as hit was daye the
 kyng arose for he had no rest of alle that nyght for sorowe /
 Thenne he wente vnto Gawayne and to fyr launcelot that we-
 re aryfen for to here masse / And thenne the kyng ageyn said
 20 A Gawayne Gawayne ye haue bitrayed me / For neuer shal
 my Courte be amended by yow / but ye wille neuer be sory for
 me as I am for yow / And there with the teres began to ren-
 ne doune by his vyfage / And there with the kyng said A kn-
 yghte fyr launcelot / I requyre the thow counceyle me / for I
 25 wold that this quest were vndone and it myghte be / fyr sayd
 fyr launcelot / ye sawe yesterday foo many worthy knyghtes
 that thenne were sworne / that they may not leue it in no maner
 of wyfe / That wote I wel said the kyng / but it shal so heuye
 me at their departynge that I wote wel there shal no manere
 30 of Ioye remedye me / And thenne the kyng and the Quene
 wente vnto the mynster / Soo anone launcelot and Gawayne
 commaunded her men to brynge her armes / And whanne they
 alle were armed sauf her sheldes and her helmes / thenne they
 came to theyre felauship / whiche alle were redy in the same wy-
 35 fe for to goo to the mynster to here their feruyse
 ¶ Thenne after the feruyse was done / the kyng wolde wete
 how many hadde vndertake the queste of the holy grayle / and
 to accompte them he praid them alle

Thenne fond they by the tale an honderd and fyfty / and alle
 were knyghtes of the table round / And thenne they putte on
 their helmes and departed / and recommaunded them all holy
 vnto the Quene / and there was wepynge and grete forowe /
 Thenne the Quene departed in to her chamber / and helde her / 5
 that no man shold perceyue her grete sorowes / Whanne fyre
 Launcelot myst the quene / he wente tyl her chamber / And when
 she sawe hym / she cryed aloude / O launcelot / launcelot ye haue
 bitrayed me / and putte me to the deth for to leue thus my lord
 A madame I praye yow be not displeafed / for I shall come 10
 ageyne as soone as I may with my worship / Allas sayd she
 that euer I sawe yow / but he that suffred vpon the crosse for
 alle mankynde he be vnto yow good conduyte and saufte / and
 alle the hole felauship / Ryght soo departed Launcelot / & fond
 his felauship that abode his comyng / and so they mounted on 15
 their horsfes / and rode thorou the strete of Camelot / and there
 was wepynge of ryche and poure / and the kyng tourned a-
 wey and myghte not speke for wepynge / So within a whyle
 they came to a Cyte and a Castel that hyzt Vagon / there they
 entrid in to the castel / and the lord therof was an old man / 20
 that hyght Vagon / and he was a good man of his lyuyng /
 and sette open the gates / & made hem alle the chere that he myzt
 And soo on the morne they were alle accorded that they shold
 departe eueryche from other / And on the morne they departed
 with wepynge chere / and euery knyzt took the way that hym 25
 lyked best

¶ Capitulum ix

Now rydeth Galahalt yet withouten shelde / and so rode
 four dayes without ony aduenture / And at the fourth
 day after euenfonge / he came to a whyte Abbay / and
 there was he receyued with grete reuerence / and ledde vnto a 30
 chambre / and there was he vnarmed / And thenne was he wa-
 re of knyghtes of the table round / one was sir Bagdemagus
 and syr Vwayne / And whanne they sawe hym / they wente
 vnto Galahad / and made of hym grete folace / and soo they
 wente vnto fouper / Sirs said sire Galahalt what aduenture 35

broughte yow hyder / Sir they sayd all it is told vs that with-
 in this place is a shelde that no man may bere aboute his neck
 but he be mescheued outhur dede within thre dayes or maymed
 for euer / A fyr said kyng Bagdemagus I shalle bere hit to
 5 morne for to affay this aduenture / In the name of God sayd
 Galahad / Sire said Bagdemagus and I may not encheue
 the aduenture of this shelde ye shalle take hit vpon yow / for I
 am fure ye shalle not fayle / Sir said Galahad / I ryghte wel
 agree me therto / for I haue no shelde / Soo on the morne they
 10 aroos and herd masse / Thenne Bagdemagus asked where the
 aduenturous sheld was / Anone a monke ledde hym behynde
 an aulter where the shelde henge as whyte as ony snowe / but
 in the myddes was a reed croffe / Sirs said the monke this sh-
 eld oughte not to be hanged aboute no knyghtes neck / but he
 15 be the worthyest knyghte of the world / therefore I counceylle
 yow knyghtes to be wel aduyfed / Wel said Bagdemagus I
 wote wel I am not the left knyghte of the world / but I shal
 affay to bere hit / and soo bare hit oute of the mynstre / And thē-
 ne he said vnto Galahad and hit please you to abyde here stil
 20 tyl that ye wete how that I spede / I shalle abyde yow sayd ga-
 lahad / Thenne kynge Bagdemagus took with hym a good
 squyer to beyng tydynges vnto fyr Galahad how he spedde /
 Thenne whanne they had ryden two myle and came to a fayr
 valey afore an hermytage / And thenne they fawe a knyghte
 25 come from that party in whyte armour hors and all / And he
 came as faste as his hors myghte renne / and his spere in his
 reffe / And fyr Bagdemagus dresfid his spere ageynst hym/
 and brake hit vpon the whyte knyght / but the other stroke hym
 soo hard that he braste the mayles / and sheef hym thorou the
 30 ryght sholder / for the shelde couerd hym not as at that tyme / &
 soo he bare hym from his hors / And there with he alyghte and
 took the whyte shelde from hym / sayenge knyght thow haft do-
 ne thy self grete foly / for this shelde oughte not to be borne but
 by hym that shalle haue no pierce that lyueth / And thenne he
 35 came to Bagdemagus squyer / & faide bere this shelde vnto the
 good knyghte sir Galahad that thow leste in the Abbay and
 grete hym wel by me / Sir said the squyer what is your name
 Take thow none hede of my name said the knyghte / for it is not

for the to knowe nor for none erthely man / Now fayr fyr faid
 the squyer at the reuerence of Ihesu Cryfte / telle me for what
 cause this shelde may not be borne / but yf the berer therof be me-
 schyeued / Now fythe thow hast coniured me soo fayd the kn-
 yghte this shelde behoueth vnto no man but vnto Galahad / 5
 & þ^e squyer wēt vnto Bagdemagus / & asked whether he were
 fore wounded or not / ye forfothe faid he / I shalle escape hard
 from the dethe / Thenne he fette his hors and brought hym with
 grete payne vnto an Abbay / thenne was he taken down softly
 and vnarmed and leid in a bedde / and there was loked to 10
 his woundes / And as the booke telleth he laye there longe / &
 escaped hard with the lyf /

¶ Capitulum x

SYr Galahad fayd the squyer that knyghte that woun-
 ded Bagdemagus fendeth yow gretynge / and bad that
 ye shold bere this shelde where thurgh grete aduentu- 15
 res shold befallē / Now bleffid be good & fortune faid Gala-
 had / And thenne he asked his armes / and mounted vpon
 his hors / and henge the whyte shelde aboute his neck / & com-
 maunded hem vnto god / and fyr Vwayne faid he wold bere
 hym felaufhip yf it pleasyd hym / ¶ Sir fayd Galahad that 20
 maye ye not / for I muft goo alone fauf this squyer shall bere
 me felaufhip / and so departed Vwayne / Thenne within a why-
 le came Galahad there as the whyte knyght abode hym by the
 heremytage / and eueryche fawed other curtoisly / ¶ Sir faid
 Galahad by this shelde ben many merueils fallen / Sir fayd 25
 the knyght hit befelle after the passion of our lord Ihesu Crist
 xxxij yere that Ioseph of Armathye the gentyl knyghte / the
 whiche took doune oure lord of the hooly Crosse att that tyme
 he departed from Iherusalem with a grete party of his kynred
 with hym / and so he laboured tyl that they came to a cyte that 30
 hyght Sarras / and att that fame houre that Ioseph came to
 Sarras there was a kynge that hyghte Euelake that had gre-
 to werre ageyne the Sarafyns / and in especyal ageynste one
 Sarafyn / the whiche was kyng Euelaks cosyn / a ryche kyng

and a myghty whiche marched nyghe this land / and his name
 was called Tolleme la feyntes / Soo on a day this two mette
 to doo bataill / Thenne Ioseph the sone of Ioseph of Armathye
 wente to kyng Euelake / and told hym he shold be difcomfyt
 5 and slayne but yf he lefte his bileue of the old lawe and by-
 leue vpon the newe lawe / And thenne there he shewed hym
 the ryght bileue of the holy Trynyte / to the whiche he agreed
 vnto with alle his herte / and there this shelde was maade for
 kyng Euelake in the name of hym that dyed vpon the crosse
 10 And thenne thurgh his good bileue he had the better of kyng
 Tolleme / For whanne Euelake was in the bataill / there was
 a clothe sette afore the sheld / And whanne he was in the gret-
 test perylle he lete putte awaye the clothe / and thenne his ene-
 myes sawe a fygur of a man on the Crosse where thurgh they
 15 alle were difcomfyte / And soo it befelle that a man of Kyng
 Euelaks was smyten his hand of / and bare that hand in his
 other hand / and Ioseph called that man vnto hym / and badde
 hym goo with good deuocyon touche the Crosse / And as soone
 as that man had touched the Crosse with his hand / it was as
 20 hole as euer hit was to fore / Thenne soone after there felle a
 grete merueyll that the Crosse of the sheld at one tyme vanyf-
 shed away that no man wyft where hit became / And thenne ky-
 nge Euelake was baptyfed / and for the moost party alle the
 peple of that Cyte / So soone after Ioseph wold departe / and
 25 kyng Euelake wold goo with hym whether he wold or nold /
 And soo by fortune they came in to this land that at that tyme
 was called grete Bretayne / and there they fond a grete felon
 paynym / that put Ioseph in to pryson / And soo by fortune ty-
 dynges cam vnto a worthy man that hyghte Mondrames / &
 30 he assembled alle his peple for the grete renomme he had herde
 of Ioseph / and soo he came in to the land of grete Bretayne &
 disherited this felon paynym and consumed hym / and ther with
 delyuerd Ioseph oute of pryson / and after that alle the peple
 were torned to the Crysten feithe

¶ Capitulum vndecimum

N Ot longe after that Ioseph was layd in his dedely bed
 And whanne kynge Euelake sawe that / he made mo-
 che forowe / and sayd / for thy loue I haue lefte my co-
 untrey / And fythe ye shalle departe oute of this world / leue
 me somme token of yours that I may thynke on you / Ioseph 5
 said that wille I doo ful gladly / Now brynge me your sheld
 that I toke yow whanne ye went in to bataille ageynst kyng
 Tolleme / Thenne Ioseph bled fore at the nose / so that he myzt
 not by no meane be staunched / And therupon that sheld he ma-
 de a crosse of his owne blood / Now may ye see a remembraunce 10
 that I loue yow / for ye shalle neuer see this shelde but ye shal
 thynke on me / and it shall be alweyes as fresshe as it is now
 And neuer shalle man bere this sheld aboute his neck but he
 shalle repente hit vnto the tyme that Galahad the good knyghte
 bere hit / and the laste of my lygnage shal leue hit aboute his 15
 neck that shall doo many merueyllous dedes / Now sayd kynge
 Euelake where shalle I put this shelde that this worthy kn-
 yght may haue hit / ye shal leue hit there as nacyen the heremy-
 te shal be put after his dethe / For thydder shal that good kn-
 yghte come the fyfteenth day after that he shal receyue the ordre 20
 of knyghthode / and soo that daye that they sette / is this tyme
 that he haue his shelde / And in the same abbay lyeth Nacyen
 the heremyte / And thenne the whyte knyghte vanysshed away
 Anone as the squyer had herde these wordes / he alyghte of his
 hakney and kneled doune at Galahads feet and prayd hym 25
 that he myghte goo with hym tyll he had made hym knyghte /
 Yf I wold not refuse yow / thenne will ye make me a knyghte
 sayd the squyer / and that ordre by the grace of god shal be wel
 sette in me / Soo fyr Galahad graunted hym and tourned a-
 geyne vnto the Abbay there they came fro / and there men made 30
 grete Ioye of fyr Galahad / And anone as he was alyghte /
 there was a monke broughte hym vnto a Tombe in a Chirche
 yerd where that was suche a noyse that who that herd hit shold
 verily nyghe be madde or lese his strengthe / and fyre they sa-
 yd we deme hit is a fende

35

¶ Capitulum xij

Now lede me thyder sayd Galahad / and foo they dyd
 alle armed fauf his helme / Now sayd the good man/
 goo to the Tombe and lyfte hit vp / Soo he dyd and
 herd a grete noyse / and pytously he sayd that alle men myzte
 5 here hit / Syr Galahad the seruauunt of Ihesu Cryfte come thou
 not nyghe me / For thou shalt make me goo ageyne ther whe-
 re I haue ben foo longe / But Galahad was no thyng affra-
 yed but lyfte vp the stone / and there came out so foul a smo-
 ke / and after he sawe the fowlest fygur lepe there oute that e-
 10 uer he sawe in the lykenes of a man / & thenne he bleffid hym/
 and wysste wel hit was a fende / ¶ Thenne herd he a vo-
 yse fay / Galahad I see there enuyronne aboute the so many an-
 gels that my power may not dere the / ¶ Ryght soo fyr Gala-
 had sawe a body al armed lye in that tombe and besyde hym
 15 a fwerd / Now fayr broder sayd Galahad lete vs remeue this
 body for hit is not worthy to lye in this chircheyerd / for he was
 a fals Crysten man / And there with they alle departed and
 wente to the Abbay / And anone as he was vnarmed a good
 man cam and sette hym doune by hym / and sayd fyre I shall
 20 telle yow what betokeneth alle that ye sawe in the Tombe / for
 that couerd body betokeneth the dureffe of the world and the
 grete synne that oure lord fond in the world / For there was
 fuche wretchydnesse that the fader loued not the sone / nor the so-
 ne loued not the fader / and that was one of the causes that
 25 oure lord took fleffhe and blood of a clene mayden / for oure
 synnes were so grete at that tyme that wel nyghe all was wic-
 kednes / Truly sayd Galahad I bileue yow ryghte wel / So
 fyre Galahad rested hym there that nyghte / And vpon the
 morne he made the squyer knyghte / and asked hym his name/
 30 and of what kynred he was come /

¶ Syre sayd he men calleth me Melyas de lyle / And I am
 the sone of the kyng of Denmarke / ¶ Now fayre fyre sayd
 Galahad sythe that ye be come of kynges and Quenes / now
 loketh that knyghthode be wel sette in yow / for ye oughte to be
 35 a myrrour vnto all chyualry

¶ Sire sayd fyre Melyas ye faye sothe / But fyre fythen ye
 haue made me a knyzt ye must of ryzt graūte me my fyrst de-
 fyre þ^t is refonable / ye fay soth said galahad / melyas said thēne

that ye wil suffre me to ryde with yow in this quest of the fanc-
 greal tyl that somme aduenture departe vs / I graunte yow fir
 Thenne men brought fyre Melyas his armoure and his spere
 and his hors / and soo fyr Galahad and he rode forth all that
 weke or they fond ony aduenture / And thenne vpon a mon- 5
 day in the mornyng as they were departed fro an Abbay they
 cam to a Crosse whiche departed two wayes / and in that cros-
 se were letters wryten that sayd thus Now ye knyghtes arra-
 unt the whiche goth to seke knyghtes aduenturous / see here / ij /
 wayes þ^t one wey defendeth the that thow ne go þ^t way / for he 10
 shalle not go oute of the way ageyne / but yf he be a good man
 and a worthy knyghte / And yf thow goo on the lyfte hand/
 thow shalt not lyghtely there wyne prowesse / for thow shalt
 in this way be foone assayed / Sir said Melyas to Galahad/
 yf hit lyke yow to suffer me to take the way on the lyft hand 15
 telle me / for there I shalle wel preue my strengthe / hit were
 better said Galahad ye rode not that way / for I deme I shold
 better escape in that way than ye / nay my lord I praye yow
 lete me haue that aduenture / Take it in goddes name said Ga-
 lahad

20

¶ Capitulum xiii

ANd thēne rode melyas in to an old forest / and therin
 he rode two dayes and more / And thenne he came in
 to a fayr medowe / and there was a fayr lodge of bowes / And
 thenne he aspyed in that lodge a chayer wherin was a crown
 of gold subtyly wroughte / Also there were clothes couerd vp- 25
 on the erthe / and many delycious metes sette thereon / Sir Me-
 lyadas behelde this auenture and thoughte hit merueillous/
 but he had no honger / but of the croune of gold he took moch
 kepe / and there with he stouped doune and took hit vp / and
 rode his way with it / And anone he sawe a knyght came ry- 30
 dyng after hym that sayd / knyghte sette doune that crowne/
 whiche is not yours / & therfor defendeth yow / Thenne fyre Me-
 lyas bleffid hym and said Fair lord of heuen helpe and fa-
 ue thy newe made knyght / & thenne they lete their horses ren-
 ne as fast as they myȝt / so that the other knyȝt smote sir melias 35

thorou hauberk and thorow the lyfte fyde that he felle to the
 erthe nyghe dede / And thenne he took the crowne and went his
 way and fyr Melyas lay styll and had no power to stere /
 In the meane whyle by fortune ther came fyre Galahad and
 5 fond hym there in perille of dethe / And thenne he said A me-
 lyas who hath wounded yow / therfor hit had ben better to ha-
 ue ryden the other way / And whanne sir Melyas herd hym
 speke / fyre he sayd for goddes loue lete me not dye in this fo-
 rest / but bere me vnto the Abbay here besyde that I may be con-
 10 fessyd and haue my ryghtes / It shal be done said Galahad /
 but where is he that hath wounded yow / with that fyr Gala-
 had herd in the leues crye on hyghe / knyght kepe the from me
 A fyr said Melyas / Beware / For that is he that hath slayne
 me / Sir Galahad answerd fyr knyghte come on your perylle/
 15 Thenne eyther dresid to other and came to gyder as fast as the-
 ir horses myghte renne / and Galahad smote hym soo that his
 spere wente thorou his sholder / and smote hym doune of his
 hors / and in the fallyng Galahadis spere brak / with that cam
 oute another knyghte of the leues / and brake a spere vp-
 20 on Galahad or euer he myghte torne hym / Thenne Galahad
 drewe oute his swerd and smote of the lyfte arme of hym soo
 that it felle to the erthe / And thenne he fledde / and fyre Gala-
 had sewed fast after hym / And thenne he torned ageyne vnto
 fyr Melyas / and there he alyghte and dresid hym softly on
 25 his hors to fore hym for the truncheon of his spere was in his
 body / and fyr Galahad sterte vp behynde hym / and helde hym
 in his armes / and soo broughte hym to the Abbay / and there
 vnarmed hym and broughte hym to his chamber / And thenne
 he asked his faueour / And whanne he had receyued hym he sa-
 30 id vnto fyr galahad / fyr lete deth come whan it pleasyd hym
 And there with he drewe oute the truncheon of the spere oute
 of his body / And thenne he fwounded / Thenne came there an
 olde monke whiche somtyme had ben a knyghte & behelde fyre
 Melyas / And anone he ranfakyd hym / & thenne he saide vnto
 35 fyr galahad I shal hele hym of this woūde by the grace of god
 within the terme of feuen wekes / Thenne was sir galahad gl-
 ad and vnarmed hym / & said he wold abyde there thre dayes
 And thenne he asked fyr Melyas how it stood with hym /

Thenne he fayd he was torned vnto helpyng god be thanked

¶ Capitulum xiiii /

Now wylle I departe fayd Galahad / for I haue moche on hand / for many good knyghtes be ful besy aboute hit / And this knyghte and I were in the same quest of the Sancgreal / Sire said a good man / for his synne 5 he was thus wounded / and I merueylle said the good man how ye durst take vpon yow soo ryche a thyng as the hyghe ordre of knyghthode withoute clene confession / & that was the cause ye were bytterly wounded / For the way on the ryzt hand betokeneth the hyghe way of our lord Ihesu Cryste / and the 10 way of a good true good lyuer / And the other wey betokeneth the way of synners and of mysbyleuers / And whanne the deuylle sawe your pryde and presumpcyon for to take yow in the quest of the Sancgreal / that made you to be ouerthrowen for hit may not be encheued but by vertuous lyuynge / Also 15 the wrytynge on the crosse was a fygnifycacyon of heuenly dedes and of knyghtly dedes in goddes werkes and no knyghtly dedes in worldly werkes / and pryde is hede of alle dedely synnes that caused this knyghte to departe from Galahad / & where thou tokest the croune of gold / thou synnest in couetyse 20 se and in theste / Alle this were no knyghtely dedes / And this Galahad the holy knyghte / the whiche foughte with the two knyghtes / the two knyghtes fygnifyen the two dedely synnes whiche were holy in this knyghte Melyas / and they myghte not withstande yow / for ye are withoute dedely synne / Now departed 25 Galahad from thens and betaught hem alle vnto god Sir Melyas fayd my lord Galahad as soone as I may ryde I shalle feke yow / god send yow helthe said Galahad / & soo toke his hors and departed / and rode many Iourneyes forward and backward as aduenture wold lede hym / 30

¶ And at the laste hit happend hym to departe from a place or a Castel the whiche was named Abblafore / and he hadde herd no masse / the whiche he was wonte euer to here or euer he departed oute of any Castel or place / and keppe that for a customme /

¶ Thenne fyr Galahad came vnto a montayne 35

where he fond an old chappel / and fond there no body for all
 alle was desolate / and there he kneled to fore the aulter / and
 besought god of holfome counceil / Soo as he prayd / he herd a
 voys that sayd / Goo thow now thou aduenturous knyghte to
 5 the Castel of maydens / and there doo thow away thy wycked
 custommes

¶ Capitulum xv

WHanne fyr Galahad herd this / he thanked god / & to-
 ke his hors / and he had not ryden but half a myle / he
 sawe in a valeye afore hym a stronge Castel with de-
 10 pe dyches / and there ranne besyde hit a fayr ryuer that hyghte
 Syuarne / and there he mette with a man of grete age / and ey-
 ther salewed other / and Galahad asked hym the Castels na-
 me / Fair fyr said he hit is the Castel of maydens / That is a
 curfyd Castel said Galahad / and alle they that ben conuerfa-
 15 unt therin / for alle pyte is oute therof and alle hardynesse and
 meschyef is therin / therfor I counceyle yow fir knyght to torne
 ageyne / Sir said Galahad wete yow wel I shalle not tourne
 ageyne / Thenne loked fyre Galahad on his armes that noo
 thyng fayled hym / and thenne he put his sheld afore hym / &
 20 anone there mette hym feuen fayr maydens / the whiche sayd vn-
 to hym / fyr knyghte ye ryde here in a grete foly / for ye haue the
 water to passe ouer / why shold I not passe the water said ga-
 lahad / So rode he away from them / and mette with a Squyer
 that said knyghte / tho knyghtes in the Castel defyen yow / &
 25 defenden yow / ye go no ferther tyl that they wete what ye wo-
 lde / Faire sir saide Galahad I come for to destroye the wycked
 custome of this Castel / Sir and ye wille abyde by that ye shal
 haue ynough to doo / go yow now said Galahad and hast my
 nedes / Thenne the squyer entryd in to the castel / And anone af-
 30 ter there came oute of the Castel feuen knyghtes and all were
 bretheren / And whan they sawe Galahad / they cryed knyghte
 kepe the for we assure the no thyng but dethe / why sayd ga-
 lahad will ye alle haue adoo with me at ones / ye sayde they
 therto maist thow trust / Thenne Galahad putte forth his spere
 35 and smote the formeſt to the erthe that nere he brake his neck

And there with alle the other smote hym on his shelde grete strokes so that their speres brake

¶ Thenne fyr Galahad drewe oute his fwerd / and fet vpon hem soo hard that it was merueylle to see hit / and soo thurgh grete force he made hem to forsake the felde / and Galahad charged hem tyl they entryd in to the Castel / and so passed thurgh the Castel at another gate / And there mette fyr Galahad an old man clothed in Relygyous clothynge and sayd / here haue here the kayes of this Castel / Thenne fyr Galahad opened the gates / and fawe soo moche peple in the stretes that he myghte not nombre them / and alle sayd fyr ye be welcome / for longe haue we abyden here our delyueraunce / Thenne came to hym a gentylwoman and sayde these knyghtes be fledde / but they wille come ageyne this nyghte / and here to begynne ageyn their euylle customme

15

¶ What wille ye that I shalle doo sayd Galahad / Sir said the gentilwoman that ye send after alle the knyghtes hyder that hold their landes of this Castel / and make hem to fwere for to vse the customes that were vfed here to fore of olde tyme / I wille wel said Galahad / and there she broughte hym an horne of Iuory bouēden with gold rychely / & faide sir blowe this horne whych wille be herde two myle aboute this Castel /

20

¶ Whanne fyr Galahad had blowen the horne / he fet hym done vpon a bedde / Thenne came a preest to Galahad / and said fyr hit is past a feuen yere agone that these feuen bretheren came in to this Castel and herberowed with the lord of this castell that hyght the Duke Lyanowre / and he was lord of alle thys countrey / And whanne they aspyed the dukes doughter / that was a ful faire woman / Thenne by their fals couyn they made debate betwixe them self / and the duke of his goodenes would haue departed hem / and there they slewe hym and his eldest sone / And thenne they took the mayden and the trefour of the castel / And thenne by grete force they helde alle the knyghtes of this Castel ageynste their wyll vnder theyre obeyssaunce and in grete seruage and truage / robberyng and pyllyng the poure comyn peple of all that they had

30

35

¶ Soo hit happend on a daye the dukes doughter sayd ye haue done vnto me greete wronge to flee myn owne fader / and

my broder / and thus to holde our landes / not for thenne she fayd / ye shalle not holde this Castel for many yeres / for by one knyghte ye shal be ouercomen / Thus she prophcyed feuen yeres agone / wel said the feuen knyghtes / fythen ye fay fo / ther shal
 5 neuer lady nor knyghte passe this Castel / but they shall abyde maulgre their hedes / or dye therfor / tyl that knyghte be come / by whome we shalle lese this Castel / And therefore is it called the maydens Castel / for they haue deuoured many maydens / Now said Galahad is she here for whome this Castel was loft
 10 Nay sir said the preest she was dede within these thre nyghtes after that she was thus enforced / and fythen haue they kepte their yonger fyther which endureth grete paynes with mo other ladyes / By this were the knyghtes of the countray comen / & thenne he made hem doo homage and feaute to the kynges doug-
 15 ter / and sette hem in grete ease of herte / And in the morne ther came one to Galahad and told hym how that Gawayn / Gareth and Vwayne had slayne the feuen bretheren / I suppose wel said fyr Galahad and took his armour and his hors / & commaunded hem vnto god /

¶ Capitulum xvi

20 **N**ow faith the tale after fyr Gawayne departed / he rode many Iourneyes bothe toward and froward / And att the laste he cam to the Abbaye where fyre Galahad had the whyte sheld / and there fyr Gawayne lerned the way to fewe after fyr Galahad / and soo he rode to the Abbay whe-
 25 re Melyas lay seke / and there fyr Melyas told fyr Gawayn of the merueyllous aduentures that fyr Galahad dyd / Certes said sire Gawayne I am not happy / that I took not the way that he wente / for and I maye mete with hym / I wille not departe from hym lyghtely / for alle merueyllous aduentures fir
 30 Galahad encheueth / Sir said one of the monkes he wille not of your felauship / why said fyr Gawayne / Sir said he / for ye be wycked and synful / and he is ful bleffid /

¶ Ryght as they thus stode talkynge / there came in rydyng fyr Gareth / And thenne they made Ioye eyther of other / And
 35 on the morne they herd masse / and soo departed / And by the

way they met with fyr Vwayne les auoultres / and there fyre
 Vwayne told fyr Gawayne how he had mette with none ad-
 uenture fythe he departed from the Courte / Nor we / said fir ga-
 wayne / and eyther promysed other of tho thre knyghtes not to
 departe whyle they were in that quest but yf fortune caused it/ 5
 Soo they departed and rode by fortune tyl that they came by
 the Castel of maydens / and there the feuen bretheren aspyed the
 thre knyghtes / and said sythen we be flemyd by one knyghte
 from this Castel / we shalle destroye alle the knyghtes of kyng
 Arthurs that we maye ouercome for the loue of fyr Galahad 10
 And there with the feuen knyghtes sette vpon the thre knygh-
 tes / and by fortune fyr Gawayne flewe one of the bretheren /
 and echone of his felawes flewe another and soo flewe the re-
 menaunt / And thenne they took the wey vnder the Castel / &
 there they losfe the way that fir Galahad rode / and there eue- 15
 ryche of hem departed from other / and fir Gawayne rode tylle
 he came to an hermytage / and there he fond the good man fa-
 yenge his euenfonge of our lady / and there fyr Gawayne af-
 ked herberowe for charyte / and the good man graunted hit hym
 gladly / Thenne the good man asked hym what he was / Syre 20
 he said I am a knyzt of kynge Arthurs that am in the quefte
 of the Sancgreal / and my name is fyr Gawayne / Sire sayd
 the good man I wold wete how it standeth betwixe god and
 yow / Sir said fir Gawayne I wille with a good will shewe
 yow my lyf yf hit please yow / and there he tolde the heremyte/ 25
 how a monke of an Abbay called me wycked knyght / he my-
 ght wel saye hit said the heremyte / for whanne ye were fyrste
 made knyghte ye sholde haue taken yow to knyghtely dedes &
 vertuous lyuynge / and ye haue done the contrary / for ye haue
 lyued mescheuoufly many wynters / & fir Galahad is a mayd 30
 and synned neuer / and that is the cause he shalle encheue whe-
 re he goth / that ye nor none fuche shalle not atteyne nor none
 in your felauship / for ye haue vfed the moost vntruest lyf that
 euer I herd knyght lyue / For certes had ye not ben so wycked
 as ye ar / neuer had the feuen bretheren be slayne by yow and 35
 your two felawes / For fyre Galahad hym self alone bete hem
 alle feuen the day to forne / but his lyuyng is fuche he shal slee
 no man lyghtely / Also I may say yow the Castel of maidens

betokenen the good foules that were in pryson afore the Incarnacyon of Ihesu Cryfte / And the seuen knyghtes betokenen the seuen dedely fynnes that regned that tyme in the world / & I may lyken the good Galahad vnto the sone of the hyghe
 5 fader / that lyghte within a mayde and bought alle the foules oute of thralle / Soo dyd fyre Galahad delyuer all the maydens oute of the woful Castel / Now fyre Gawayne said the good man / thou must doo penaunce for thy synne / fyre what penaunce shalle I do / fuche as I wille gyue sayd the good
 10 man / Nay said fyre Gawayne I may doo no penaunce / For we knyghtes aduenturous ofte suffren grete woo and payne Wel sayd the good man / and thenne he held his pees / And on the morne fyre Gawayne departed from the heremyte / and betaught hym vnto god / And by aduentur he mette with fyre
 15 Agloulale and fyr Gryflet two knyghtes of the table round / And they two rode four dayes withoute fyndynge of ony aduenture / and at the fyfthe day they departed / And eueryche helde as felle them by aduenture

¶ Here leueth the tale of fyr Gawayne and his felawes / and
 20 speke we of fyr Galahad /

¶ Capitulum xviij

SOo whanne fyr Galahad was departed from the castel of maydens / he rode tyl he came to a waste forest / & there he mette with fyre launcelot and fyr Percyuale but they knewe hym not / for he was newe desguysed / Ryghte
 25 fo fyr launcelot his fader dresfid his spere and brake it vpon fyr Galahad / and Galahad smote hym so ageyne that he smote doune hors and man / And thenne he drewe his fuerd / and dresfid hym vnto fyr Percyuale / and smote hym soo on the helme that it rose to the coyfe of stele / and had not the fwerd
 30 swarued / fyr Percyuale had ben slayne / and with the stroke he felle oute of his fadel / This Iustes was done to fore the hermytage where a recluse dwelled / And when she sawe fyr galahad ryde / she said god be with the best knyghte of the world A certes said she alle alowde that Launcelot and Percyuale
 35 myzt here it / And yonder two knyghtes had knowen the as wel as I doo they wold not haue encoütrede with the / thenne

fyr Galahad herd her fay so he was adrad to be knowen ther
 with he smote his hors with his spores / and rode a grete paas
 toward them / Thenne perceyued they bothe that he was Gala-
 had / and vp they gat on their horsfes / and rode faste after hym
 but in a whyle he was out of their fyghte / And thēne they tor- 5
 ned ageyne with heuy chere / lete vs spere some tydynges sayd
 Percyuale at yonder recluse / Do as ye lyft said fyr launcelot
 Whanne fyr Percyuale came to the recluse she knewe hym wel
 ynough and fyr launcelot bothe / but fyr launcelot rode ouer-
 thwart and endlonge in a wylde forest and helde no pathe / but 10
 as wyld aduenture led hym / And at the last he came to a sto-
 ny Crosse whiche departed two wayes in waste land / and by
 the Crosse was a stone that was of marbel but it was so derke
 that fyr launcelot myghte not wete what it was / Thenne fyre
 Launcelot loked by hym / and sawe an old chappel / & ther he 15
 wende to haue fond peple / and fir launcelot teyed his hors
 tyl a tree / and there he dyd of his sheld / and henge hit vpon
 a tree / And thenne wente to the chappel dore and fonde hit
 waste and broken / And within he fond a fayr aulter ful ry-
 chely arayed with clothe of clene fylke / and there stode a fayre 20
 clene candelftyk / whiche bare fyxe grete candels / and the candel-
 ftyk was of fyluer / And whanne fyre launcelot sawe thys
 lyght / he had grete wylle for to entre in to the chappel / but he
 coude fynde no place where he myghte entre / thenne was he pas-
 syng heuy and desmayed / Thenne he retorned and cam to his 25
 hors and dyd of his sadel and brydel / and lete hym pasture / &
 vnclaced his helme / and vngyrd his fwerd and laide hym
 doune to slepe vpon his shelde to fore the Crosse /

¶ Capitulum xviii

ANd soo he felle on slepe and half wakyng and fle-
 pyng he sawe come by hym two palfreyes alle fayr & 30
 whyte / the whiche bare a lytter / therin lyenge a feke
 knyghte / And whanne he was nyghe the crosse / he there abode
 styll / Alle this fyr launcelot sawe / and beheld for he slepte
 not veryly / and he herd hym saye / O swete lord whanne shal

this forowe leue me / And whanne fhalle the holy vessel come
 by me / where thurgh I fhalle be bleffid / For I haue endured
 thus longe / for lytyl trefpace / a ful grete whyle complayned
 the knyght thus / and alweyes fyr launcelot herd it / With that
 5 fyr launcelot fawe the Candelftyk with the fyxe tapers come be-
 fore the Croffe / and he fawe no body that brought it / ¶ Also
 there came a table of fyluer and the holy vessel of the Sancgre-
 al whiche launcelot had fene afore tyme in kynge Pefcheours
 hows / And there with the feke knyghte fette hym vp / & helde
 10 vp bothe his handes / and faid Faire fwete lord whiche is he-
 re within this holy vessel / take hede vnto me that I may be ho-
 le of this maladye / And ther with on his handes and on his
 knees he wente foo nyghe that he touched the holy vessel / and
 kyfte hit / and anone he was hole / and thenne he fayd lord god
 15 I thanke the / for I am helyd of this fekenefse / So whanne
 the holy vessel had ben there a grete whyle hit wente vnto the
 Chappel with the chaundeler and the lyght / foo that launcelot
 wyft not where it was become for he was ouertaken with fyn-
 en that he had no power to ryfe ageyne the holy vessel / wher-
 20 for after that many men faid of hym fhame / but he took repen-
 taunce after that / Thenne the feke knyght dreffid hym vp / &
 kyffed the croffe / anone his fquyer brought hym his armes/
 and asked his lord how he dyd / Certes fayd he I thanke god
 ryghte wel thurgh the holy vessel I am helyd / But I haue
 25 merueil of this fleepyng knyghte that had no power to awa-
 ke whanne this holy vessel was brought hyder / I dare ryzt
 wel faye / fayd the fquyer that he dwelleth in fome dedely fyn-
 ne wherof he was neuer confeffid / By my feythe faid the kn-
 yght what fomeuer he be / he is vnhappy / for as I deme he is
 30 of the felaufhip of the round table / the whiche is entryd in to
 the queft of the Sancgreal / Sire faid the fquyer here I haue
 brought yow alle your armes fauf your helme and your fu-
 erd / and therfor by myn affente now maye ye take this kny-
 zes helme and his fuerd and fo he dyd / And whan he was
 35 clene armed / he took fyr laūcelots hors / for he was better than
 his and foo departed they from the Croffe /

¶ Capítulum xix

[leaf 319 verso]

THenne anone fyr launcelot waked and fette hym vp
 and bethought hym what he had fene there / & whether
 it were dremes or not / Ryght so herd he a voys that fa-
 id fyr launcelot more harder than is the stone / and more byt-
 ter than is the wood / and more naked and barer than is the 5
 leef of the fygge tree / therfore goo thow from hens / and wyth-
 drawe the from this hooly place / And whanne fyre launcelot
 herd this / he was passynghe heuy and wyft not what to do / & so
 departed fore wepynghe / and cursed the tyme that he was borne
 For thenne he demed neuer to haue hadde worship more For 10
 tho wordes went to his herte tyl that he knewe wherfor he was
 called foo / Thenne fyre Launcelot wente to the Croffe & fonde
 his helme / his swerd and his hors taken away / And thenne
 he called hym self a veray wretche and moost vnhappy of all
 knyghtes / and there he sayd my synne and my wyckednes ha- 15
 ue brought me vnto grete dishonour / For whanne I foughte
 worldly aduentures for worldly defyres I euer encheued them
 and had the better in euery place / and neuer was I difcomfyt
 in no quarel were it ryght or wronge / And now I take vp-
 on me the aduentures of holy thynges / & now I see and vn- 20
 derstande that myn old synne hyndereth me and shameth me /
 so that I had no power to stere nor speke whan the holy blood
 appiered afore me / So thus he forowed til hit was day / & herd
 the fowles synge / thenne somewhat he was comforted / But
 whan fyr Launcelot myst his hors and his harneis thenne he 25
 wyfte wel god was displeasyd with hym / Thenne he depar-
 ted from the croffe on foote in to a foreste / and foo by pry-
 me he came to an hyghe hylle & fonde an hermytage and an
 Heremyte theryn whiche was goynge vnto masse / And then-
 ne launcelot kneled doune / & cryed on oure lorde mercy for his 30
 wycked werkes / Soo whanne masse was done launcelot cal-
 led hym and prayed hym for charite for to here his lyfe / with
 a good will sayd the good man / Sir sayd he be ye of Kyng
 Arthurs Courte and of the felauship of the round table / ye
 forsothe and my name is sir Launcelot du lake that hath ben 35
 ryght wel said of / and now my good fortune is chaunged /
 For I am the moost wretche of the world / The Heremyte be-
 helde hym & hadde merueille how he was foo abaffhed / Syre

faid the heremyte ye oughte to thanke god more than ony knyght
 lyuyng / for he hath caused yow to haue more worldly worship
 than ony knyghte that now lyueth / And for your presumption
 to take vpon you in dedely synne for to be in his presence
 5 where his fleshe and his blood was / that caused you ye myghte
 not see hit with worldly eyen / for he wille not appiere where
 fuche synners ben / but yf hit be vnto theire grete hurte &
 vnto her grete shame / & there is no knyght lyuyng now / that
 ought to kenne god foo grete thanke as ye / for he hath yeuen
 10 yow beaute / femelynes / and grete strengthe aboue all other knyghtes
 / and therfor ye are the morr beholdyng vnto god than ony other
 man to loue hym and drede hym / for your strength and manhode
 wille lytel auaylle yow / and god be ageynste yow /

¶ Capitulum xx /

15 **T** Henne sir launcelot wept with heuy chere / and sayd
 Now I knowe wel ye saye me sothe / Sire sayd the good man /
 hyde none old synne from me / Truly faid fyr Launcelot that
 were me ful lothe to discouere / For this x-iiij yere I neuer
 discouerd one thyng that I haue vsed / and 20 that maye I
 now wyte my shame and my disauntur / And thenne he told
 there that good man alle his lyf / And hou he had loued a
 quene vnmesurably and oute of mesure longe / & alle my grete
 dedes of armes that I haue done I dyd for the moost party
 for the quenes sake / And for her sake wold I 25 doo batail
 were hit ryght or wronge / and neuer dyd I bataille alle
 only for goddes sake / but for to wynne worshyp and to cause
 me to be the better biloued / and lytel or noughte I thanked
 god of hit / Thenne fyr launcelot sayd I praye yow /
 counceylle me / I wille counceyle yow faid the heremyte /
 yf ye 30 wille ensure me that ye will neuer come in that quenes
 felauship as moche as ye may forbere / And thenne fyre
 launcelot promysed hym he nold by the feithe of his body /
 loke that your herte and your mouthe accorde faid the good
 man / and I shalle ensure yow ye shalle haue more worship
 than euer ye 35 had / Holy fader faid fyre launcelot I merueylle
 of the voys

that fayd to me merueillous wordes as ye haue herd to fore
hand / haue ye no merueylle fayd the good man therof / for hit
semeth wel god loueth yow / for men maye vnderstande a stone
is hard of kynde / and namely one more than another / and that
is to vnderstande by the fyr launcelot / for thou wylt not leue 5
thy synne for no goodnes that god hath sente the / therfor thou
arte more than ony stone / and neuer woldest thou be maade
neyfthe nor by water nor by fyre / And that is the hete of the
holy ghooft maye not entre in the / Now take hede in alle the
world men shal not fynde one knyghte to whome oure Lord 10
hath yeuen soo moche of grace as he hath yeuen yow / for he hath
yeuen yow fayrenes with semelynes / he hath yeuen the wyt dis-
crecyon to knowe good from euyl / he hath yeuen the prowesse
and hardynesse and gyuen the to werke soo largely / that thou
hast had at al dayes the better where someuer thou came / and 15
now our lord wille suffre the no lenger / but that thou shalte
knowe hym whether thou wilt or nyll / And why the voyce
called the bytter than wood / for where ouer moche synne duel-
leth / there may be but lytel swetnesse / wherfor thou arte lyke-
ned to an old roten tree / Now haue I shewed the why thou 20
arte harder than the stone & bytterer than the tree / Now shall
I shewe the why thou arte more naked and barer than the
fygge tree / It befelle that our lord on palmfondeye preched in
Iherusalem / and there he fonde in the people that alle hardnes
was herberowed in them / and there he fond in alle the towne 25
not one that wold herberowe hym / And thenne he wente with-
oute the Towne / and fond in myddes of the way a fygge tree
the whiche was ryghte fayr and wel garnysshed of leues / but
fruyte had it none / Thenne our lord cursyd the tree that bere no
fruyte that betokeneth the fygge tree vnto Iherusalem that had 30
leues and no fruyte / Soo thou fyr launcelot whan the hooly
Grayle was broughte afore the / he fonde in the noo fruyte / nor
good thoughte nor good wille and defowled with lechery / Cer-
tes said sir launcelot alle that ye haue said is true / And from
hens forward I caste me by the grace of god neuer to be so wyc- 35
ked as I haue ben / but as to folowe knyghthode and to do fe-
tys of armes / Thenne the good man Ioyned fyr launcelot fu-
che penaunce as he myghte doo and to fewe knyghthode / and

so affoylled hym / and praid fyre launcelot to abyde with hym
 alle that daye / I wylle wel said fyr launcelot / for I haue ney-
 ther helme ne hors ne fuerd / As for that sayd the good man
 I shalle helpe yow or to morne at euen of an hors and al that
 5 longed vnto yow / And thenne fyr laūcelot repented hym gre-
 tely /

¶ Here leueth of the history of fyr launcelot / ¶ And here folo-
 weth of fyr Percyual de galys whiche the xiiij book

¶ Capitulum primum

10 **N**ow sayth the tale that whan fyr launcelot was
 ryden after fyre Galahad / the whiche had alle
 these aduentures aboue sayd / Sir Percyual tor-
 ned ageyne vnto the recluse / where he demed to
 haue tydynges of that knyzt that Launcelot fo-
 llowed / And soo he kneled at her wyndow / and the recluse o-
 pened hit / and asked fyre Percyuale what he wold / Madame
 he sayd I am a knyghte of kynge Arthurs Courte / and my
 15 name is fyr Percyual de Galys / whanne the reecluse herd his
 name she had grete Ioye of hym / for mykel she had loued
 hym to forne any other knyzt / for she ouzt to do so / for she was
 his aunt / And thenne she commaunded the gates to be opened
 and there he had alle the chere that she myght make hym and
 20 alle that was in her power was at his commaundement / Soo
 on the morne fyr Percyual wente to the recluse / and asked
 her yf she knewe that knyghte with the whyte shelde / Sir said
 she why wold ye wete / Truly madame said fyr Percyual I
 shalle neuer be wel at ease tyl that I knowe of that knygh-
 25 tes fellowship / and that I may fyghte with hym / for I maye
 not leue hym soo lyghtely / for I haue the shame yet / A Per-
 cyual sayd she wold ye fyghte with hym / I see wel ye haue
 grete wylle to be slayne as your fader was thorough outrage-
 ousnes / Madame sayd fyr Percyual hit semeth by your wor-
 30 des that ye knowe me / ye sayd she / I wel ought to knowe you
 for I am your aunt / al though I be in a pryory place / For

somme called me somtyme the quene of the waste landes / and
I was called the quene of moost rycheffe in the world / and
it pleasyd me neuer my rycheffe soo moche as doth pouerte
Thenne fyre Percyual wepte for veray pyte whan that he kne-
we it was his aunt

¶ A fair neuewe said she whanne 5
herd ye tydynges of your moder / Truly sayd he I herd none
of her / but I dreme of her moche in my slepe / And therfore I
wote not whether she be dede or on lyue / Certes fayr neuew sa-
yd she / your moder is dede / for after your departynge from her /
she took suche a sorowe that anone after she was confessid she 10
dyed / Now god haue mercy on her soule sayd fyr Percyual
hit fore forthynketh me / but alle we must chaunge the lyf /

¶ Now fayre Aunt telle me what is the knyghte / I deme hit
be he that bare the reed armes on whytsonday / wete yow well
said she / that this is he / for other wyse oughte he not to doo / 15
but to goo in reed armes / and that fame knyghte hath no pie-
re / for he worcheth alle by myracle / and he shalle neuer be o-
uercome of none erthely mans hand

¶ Capitulum ij

Also Merlyn made the round table in tokenyng of ro-
undenes of the world / for by the round table is the 20
world sygnifyed by ryghte / For al the world crysten
and hethen repayren vnto the round table / And whan they are
chosen to be of the felauship of the round table / they thynke hem
more bleffid & more in worship than yf they had gotten halfe
the world / and ye haue sene that they haue losse her faders & 25
her moders and alle her kynne and her wyues and her chil-
dren for to be of your felauship / It is wel sene by yow / For
syns ye departed fro your moder / ye wold neuer see her ye fond
suche felauship at the round table / whan Merlyn had ordeyned
the round table he said by them which shold be felawes of the 30
round table / the trouthe of the Sancgreal shold be wel knownen
and men asked hym how men myghte knowe them that sholde
best do and to encheue the Sancgreal / thenne he said ther shold
be thre whyte bulles that shold encheue hit / and the two sholde
be maydens / and the thyrd shold be chaft / And that one of the 35
thre shold passe his fader as moche as the lyon passeth the ly-
bard bothe of strengthe and hardynes

They that herd Merlyn faye foo / sayd thus vnto Merlyn /
 Sythen ther shalle be fuche a knyghte thow sholdest ordeyne by
 thy craftes a sege that no man shold fyttē in hit / but he al on-
 ly that shalle passe alle other knyghtes / Thenne Merlyn an-
 5 fuerd that he wold doo foo / And thenne he made the sege peril-
 lous in the whiche Galahad fatte in at his mete on whytson-
 day last past / Now madame sayd fyr Percyual so moche haue
 I herd of yow that by my good wyllē I wille neuer haue a-
 doo with fyr Galahad but by waye of kyndenes / and for god-
 10 des loue fayr aunte / can ye teche me some way where I maye
 fynde hym / for moche wold I loue the felauship of hym / Fa-
 ir neuewe sayd she ye must ryde vnto a Castel / the whiche is
 called Goothe / where he hath a cosyn germayn / and ther may
 ye be lodged this nyghte / And as he techeth you / feweth after
 15 as faste as ye can / and yf he can telle yow noo tydynges of
 hym / ryde streyght vnto the Castel of Carbonek where the may-
 med kynge is there lyenge / for there shalle ye here true tydyn-
 ges of hym

¶ Capitulum Tercium

THenne departed fyr Percyuale from his aunte eyther
 20 makynge grete sorowe / And foo he rode tyl euenfonge
 tyme / And thenne he herd a clok smyte / and thēne he was wa-
 re of an hows closed wel with walles and depe dyches / and
 there he knocked at the gate / and was lete in / and he alyght
 and was ledde vnto a chamber and soone he was vnarmed /
 25 And there he had ryght good chere alle that nyghte / and on
 the morne he herd his masse / and in the monastery he fonde a
 preeft redy at the aulter / And on the ryght fyde he sawe a pe-
 we clofyd with yron / and behynde the aulter he sawe a ryche
 bedde and a fayre as of clothe of sylke and golde / Thenne fyr
 30 Percyual aspyed that therin was a man or a woman / for the
 vyfage was couerd / thenne he left of his loking and herd his
 feruyse / And whan hit came to the sacrynge / he that lay with-
 in that Percloos dresseid hym vp and vncouerd his heede / and
 thenne hym befemed a passynge old man / and he had a crowne
 35 of gold vpon his hede / & his sholders were naked & vnhyllēd

vnto his nauel / And thenne sir Percyual aspyed his body /
 was ful of grete woundes bothe on the sholders armes and
 vyfage / And euer he held vp his handes ageynst oure lordes
 body / and cryed / Fair swete fader Ihesu Cryft forgete not me
 and soo he laye doune / but alwayes he was in his prayers & 5
 orysons / and hym femed to be of the age of thre honderd wyn-
 ter / And whanne the masse was done the preeft took oure lor-
 des body / and bare hit to the seke kynge / And whanne he had
 vsed hit / he dyd of his crowne / and commaunded the crowne
 to be sette on the aulter / Thenne fyr Percyual asked one of 10
 the bretheren / what he was / Sire sayd the good man ye haue
 herd moche of Ioseph of Armathye how he was sente by Ihesu
 Cryft in to this land for to teche and preche the holy cristen fe-
 ythe / and therfor he suffred many persecucyons the whiche the
 enemyes of Cryft dyd vnto hym / and in the Cyte of Sarras 15
 he conuerted a kynge whos name was Euelake / And so this
 kynge came with Ioseph in to this land / and euer he was be-
 fy to be there as the Sancgreal was / and on a tyme he nyghed
 it soo nyghe that oure lord was displeasyd with hym / but e-
 uer he folowed hit more and more / tyl god stroke hym al most 20
 blynde / Thenne this kynge cryed mercy / and sayd / faire lord
 lete me neuer dye tyl the good knyghte of my blood of the ix
 degree be come that I may see hym openly that he shal encheue
 the Sancgreal that I may kyffe hym

¶ Capitulum Quartum

WHanne the kynge thus had made his prayers he herd 25
 a voys that sayd herd ben thy prayers / for thou shalt
 not dye tyl he haue kyft the / And whanne that knyghte
 shalle come the clerenes of your eyen shalle come ageyne / and
 thou shalt see openly / and thy woundes shalle be heled / & erst
 shalle they neuer clofe / and this befelle of kynge Euelake / & 30
 this fame kynge hath lyued this thre honderd wynters thys
 holy lyf / and men saye the knyghte is in the Courte that shall
 hele hym / Sir sayd the good man I praye yow telle me what
 knyghte that ye be / and yf ye be of kyng Arthurs courte &
 of the table rouñ / ye forsoth said he / & my name is sir Percyual 35

de Galys / And whanne the good man vnderstood his name
 he made grete Ioye of hym / And thenne fyr Percyual departed
 and rode tyl the houre of none / and he mette in a valey about
 a twenty men of armes whiche bare in a bere a knyghte dedely
 5 flayne / And whanne they sawe fyr Percyuale they asked hym
 of whens he was / and he answered of the Courte of kyng Ar-
 thur / thenne they cryed all at ones flee hym / Thenne fyr Percy-
 ual smote the fyrst to the erthe and his hors vpon hym / And
 thenne feuen of the knyghtes smote vpon his shield al attones
 10 and the remenaunt flewe his hors so that he felle to the erthe
 So had they flayne hym or taken hym had not the good kn-
 yghte sir Galahad with þ^e reed armes come there by aduenture
 in to tho partyes / And whanne he sawe alle tho knyghtes vp-
 on one knyghte / he cryed saue me that knyghtes lyf / And then-
 15 ne he dressed hym toward the twenty men of armes as faste
 as his hors myght dryue with his spere in the reyfte / & smote
 the foremost hors and man to the erthe / And whanne his spe-
 re was broken / he sette his hand to his fuerd and smote on the
 ryght hand and on the lyfte hand / that it was merueylle to
 20 see / and at euery stroke he smote one doune or put hym to a re-
 buke / so that they wold fyghte no more but fled to a thyck
 forest / and fyr Galahad folowed them / And whanne sir per-
 cyuale sawe hym chafe hem so / he made grete forowe that his
 hors was away / And thenne he wyft wel it was fyre Gala-
 25 had / And thenne he cryed alowde A fayre knyghte abyde and
 suffre me to doo thankynges vnto the / for moche haue ye done
 for me / But euer fyr Galahad rode so fast that atte laste he
 past oute of his fyghte / And as fast as sir Percyual myght he
 wente after hym on foote cryenge / And thenne he mette with
 30 a yoman rydyng vpon an hakney the whiche led in his hand
 a grete stede blacker than ony bere / A fayr frend sayd sir per-
 cyuale as euer as I maye doo for yow / and to be your true
 knyghte in the fyrst place ye wille requyre me that ye wille le-
 ne me that black stede that I myghte ouertake a knyghte the
 35 whiche rydeth afore me

¶ Syre knyghte sayd the yoman I praye yow hold me ex-
 cused of that / for that I maye not doo / For wete ye wel the
 hors is fuche a mans hors that and I lente hit yow or ony man

that he wold flee me / Allas fayd fir Percyual / I had neuer
 foo grete sorowe as I haue had for losynge of yonder knyghte
 Syr sayd the yoman I am ryghte heuy for yow / for a good
 hors wold byfeme yow wel / but I dar not delyuer you this
 hors but yf ye wold take hym from me / that wille I not doo 5
 fayd fyre Percyual / and foo they departed / and fyre Percy-
 ual fette hym doune vnder a tree / and made sorowe oute of me-
 sure / & as he was there ther cam came a knyght rydyng on the
 hors that the yoman lad / and he was clene armed /

¶ Capitulum Quintum /

ANd anone the yoman came pryckynge after as fast as 10
 euer he myghte / and asked fyre Percyuale yf he sa-
 we any knyghte rydyng on his blak stede / ye fir for soth said
 he / why fyr aske ye me that / A fyre that stede he hath benome
 me with strenght / wherfor my lord wylle flee me / in what pla-
 ce he fyndeth me / Wel faide fyre Percyual what woldest thou 15
 that I dyd thou seeft wel that I am on foote / but and I had
 a good hors / I shold bryng hym soone ageyne / Sir said the
 yoman take myn hakney and doo the best ye can / and I shall
 fewe yow on foote to wete how that ye shalle spede / Thenne fir
 Percyual alyghte vpon that hakney / and rode as faste as he 20
 myghte / And at the laste he sawe that knyghte / And thenne
 he cryed knyghte torne ageyne / and he torned / and fet his spe-
 re ageynst fyr Percyuale / and he smote the hakney in the myd-
 des of the brest that he felle doune dede to the erthe / and there he
 had a grete falle / and the other rode his waye / And thenne 25
 fyr Percyual was wood wrothe / and cryed abyde wycked
 knyghte coward and fals herted knyghte torne ageyne / and
 fyghte with me on foote / but he ansuerd not / but paste on hys
 waye / whanne fyr Percyual sawe he wold not torne he caste
 awaye his helme and fuerd / and fayd / now am I a veray 30
 wretche / curfyd / and moost vnhappy aboue all other knyghtes
 So in this sorowe he abode all that day tyl hit was nyghte / &
 thenne he was faynte & leyd hym down and slepte tyl it was
 mydnyghte / & thenne he awaked & sawe afore hym a woman
 whiche fayd vnto hym ryght fyrefly / Syre Percyuale what 35

doft thou here / he anfuerd I doo neyther good nor grete ylle/
 Yf thou wylt enſure me ſaid ſhe that thou wylt fulfyll my
 wyll / whanne I ſomone the I ſhall lene the myn owne hors
 whiche ſhall bere the whyder thou wylt / Syr Percyual was
 5 glad of her profer and and enſured her to fulfyll alle her deſyre/
 thenne abydeſt me here / and I ſhall goo fetch yow an hors /
 And ſoo ſhe cam ſoone ageyne and broughte an hors with her
 that was inly blak / whan Percyual beheld that hors / he mer-
 ueylled that it was ſoo grete and ſoo wel apparaylled / and
 10 not for thenne he was ſoo hardy / & he lepte vpon hym / & took
 none hede of hym ſelf / And ſoo anone as he was vpon hym /
 he threft to hym with his ſpores / and ſoo rode by a foreſt / and
 the mone ſhone clere / And within an houre and laſſe he bare
 hym four dayes Iourney thens vntyl he came to a rough wa-
 15 ter the whiche roryd / and his hors wold haue borne hym in
 to hit

¶ Capítulum vj

ANd whanne fyr Percyuale came nyghe the brymme /
 & ſawe the water ſo boyſtous / he doubted to ouerpaffe it
 And thenne he made a ſygne of the croſſe in his forheed / whan
 20 the fende felte hym ſoo charged / he ſhoke of fyr Percyual / and
 he wente in to the water cryenge and roryng makyng grete ſo-
 rowe / and it ſemed vnto hym that the water brente / Thenne fir
 Percyual perceyued it was a fend the which wold haue bro-
 ught hym vnto his perdycyon / Thenne he commaunded hym
 25 ſelf vnto god / and prayd oure lord to kepe hym from alle ſuche
 temptacyons / and ſo he praid alle that nyghte tyl on the morn
 that it was day / thenne he ſawe that he was in a wylde mon-
 tayne / the whiche was cloſed with the ſee nygh al aboute that
 he myȝt ſee no land about hym whiche myȝte releue hym but
 30 wylde beeftes / And thenne he went in to a valey / and there he
 ſawe a yonge ſerpent brynge a yonge lyon by the neck / and
 ſoo he came by fir Percyual / with that came a grete lyon cry-
 enge and rorynge after the ſerpent

¶ And as faſt as fyr Percyual ſawe thys / he merueylled / &
 35 hyhed hym thyder / but anon the lyon had ouertake the ſerpent

and beganne bataille with hym / ¶ And thenne fyr Percyual
thoughte to helpe the lyon for he was the more naturel beeste /
of the two / and there with he drewe his fuerd / and sette hys
shelde afore hym / and ther he gaf the serpent suche a buffet that
he had a dedely wound / whanne the lyon sawe that / he made 5
no refemblaunt to fyghte with hym / but made hym all the che-
re that a beest myghte make a man / Thenne Percyuale percey-
ued that and caste doune his sheld / whiche was broken / and
thenne he dyd of his helme for to gadre wynde / for he was gre-
tely enchafed with the serpente / and the lyon wente alwaye 10
aboute hym fawnyng as a spanyel / And thenne he stroked
hym on the neck and on the sholders / And thenne he thanked
god of the felauship of that beeste / And aboute none the lyon
took his lytel whelp and trusted hym and bare hym there he
came fro / Thenne was fyr Percyual alone / And as the tale 15
telleth be was one of the men of the world at that tyme / whi-
che moost byleued in oure lord Ihesu Cryste / for in tho dayes
there were but fewe folkes that byleued in god parfytely /
For in tho dayes the sone spared not the fader no more than a
straunger / And soo fyre Percyual comforted hymself in our 20
lord Ihesu / and besoughte god no temptacyon shold bryng
hym oute of goddes seruyse / but to endure as his true champy-
on / Thus whanne fyr Percyual had prayd he sawe the lyon
came toward hym / and thenne he couched doune at his feete /
And soo alle that nyghte the lyon and he slepte to gyders / & 25
whanne fyr Percyual slepte / he dremed a merueyllous dreame
that there two ladyes mette with hym / and that one sat vpon
a lyon / and that other sat vpon a serpent / and that one of hem
was yonge and the other was old / and the yongest hym thou-
ght said fir Percyual my lord saleweth the / and sendeth the 30
word that thou araye the / and make the redy / for to morne
thou must fyghte with the strongest champion of the world /
And yf thou be ouercome / thou shalt not be quyte for losyng
of any of thy membrys / but thou shalt be shamed for euer to
the worldes ende / And thenne he asked her what was her lord 35
And she said the grettest lord of alle the world / and soo she
departed sodenly that he wyfte not where

¶ Capitulum vii

THenne came forth the other lady that rode vpon the serpent / and she sayd fyr Percyual I complayne me of yow that ye haue done vnto me and haue not offended vnto yow / Certes madame he sayd / vnto yow nor no lady I neuer
 5 offended / yes sayd she / I shalle telle yow why / I have nourysshed in this place a grete whyle a serpent whiche serued me a grete whyle / and yesterday ye flewe hym as he gat his pray Saye me for what cause ye flewe hym / for the lyon was not yours / Madame said fyre Percyuale I knowe wel the Lyon
 10 was not myn / but I dyd hit / for the lyon is of more gentiller nature than the serpent / and therfor I flewe hym / me semeth / I dyd not amys ageynst yow / Madame sayd he what wold ye that I dyd / I wold sayd she for the amendys of my be-
 15 I not graunte yow / No sayd she truly ye were neuer but my feruaunt / syn ye receyued the homage of our lord Ihesu crist Therfor I ensure yow in what place I may fynde yow withoute kepynge I shalle take yow as he that fomytyme was my man / And soo she departed from fyr Percyual and lefte hym
 20 flepynge the whiche was fore trauaylled of his aduysyon / & on the morne he aroos and bleffid hym and he was passyng feble / Thenne was sire Percyual ware in the see / and sawe a shyp come sayllyng toward hym / and fyr Percyual went vnto the shyp and fond hit couerd within and withoute wyth
 25 whyte Samyte / And at the bord stood an old man clothed in a furples in lykenes of a preeft / Syr said fyr Percyuale ye be welcome / god kepe yow sayd the good man / Sir sayd the old man of whens be ye / Syr said sir Percyual I am of kyng-
 30 Arthurs Courte / and a knyghte of the table Round / the whiche am in the quest of the Sancgreal / and here I am in grete duresse and neuer lyke to escape oute of this wyldernesse Doubte not sayd the good man and ye be soo true a knyghte /
 as the ordre of chyualry requyreth / and of herte as ye oughte to be / ye shold not doubte that none enemy shold flay yow /
 35 What ar ye said fyr Percyuale / fyr sayd the old man I am of a straunge countrey / and hyther I come to comforte yow / Syr

fayd fyr Percyuale what fygnefyeth my dreme that I dremed
 this nyghte / & there he told hym alle to gyder / She whiche ro-
 de vpon the lyon betokeneth the newe lawe of holy chirche that
 is to vnderstande / fayth / good hope / byleue / and baptym / for she
 femed yonger than the other / hit is grete reafon / for she was 5
 borne in the refurrection and the paffion of our lord Ihefu cryfte
 And for grete loue she came to the / to warne the of thy grete ba-
 taille that fhalle befalle the / with whome fayd fyre Percyuale
 fhalle I fyghte / with the mooft champyon of the world faid
 the old man / for as the lady fayd / but yf thou quyte the wel 10
 thou fhalt not be quyte by lofyng of one membre / but thou
 fhalt be fhamed to the worldes ende / And she that rode on the
 ferpent fygnefyeth the olde lawe / and that serpent betokeneth a
 fende / And why she blamed the that thou flewest her feruaunt
 it betokeneth no thyng / the serpent that thou flewest betokeneth 15
 the deuylle that thou rodeft vp on to the roche / And whan thou
 madeft a fygne of the Croffe / there thou flewest hym / & putte
 away his power / And whanne she asked the amendys and to
 become her man / And thou faydest thou woldest not / that was
 to make the to bileue on her and leue thy baptym / Soo he com- 20
 maunded fyr Percyuale to departe / and foo he lepte ouer the
 bord and the fhip / and alle wente away he wyfte not whyder /
 Thenne he wente vp vnto the roche and fonde the lyon whyche
 alwey kepte hym felafhyp and he ftryked hym vpon the bak
 and had grete Ioye of hym

25

¶ Capitulum viii

BY that fyr Percyuale had abyden there tyl myddaye /
 he fawe a fhypp came rowyng in the fee as all the wy-
 nd of the world had dryuen hit / And foo it droof vn-
 der that roche / And whanne fyr Percyual fawe this / he hyhed
 hym thyder / and fonde the fhip couerd with fylke more blacker 30
 than any beare / and therin was gentilwoman of grete beau-
 te / and she was clothed rychely that none myghte be better /
 And whanne she fawe fyr Percyuale / she faide Who broughte
 yow in this wyldernes where ye be neuer lyke to paffe hens /
 for ye fhall dye here for hongre and mefchyef / Damoyfel faide 35

[leaf 326]

fyr Percyuale I serue the best man of the world / and in his
seruyse he wille not suffre me to dye / for who that knocketh shal
entre / and who that asketh shalle haue / and who seketh hym/
he hydeth hym not / But thenne she said fyr Percyual wote ye
5 what I am / ye sayd he / Now who taughte yow my name sa-
id she / Now sayd fyre Percyuale I knowe you better than ye
wene / And I came oute of the wafte forest where I found the
reed knyghte with the whyte sheld sayd the damoyfel / A da-
moyfel said he with that knyghte wold I mete passyng fayn
10 Sir knyghte said she / and ye wille enfore me by the feyth that
ye owe vnto knyghthode that ye shalle doo my wyll what ty-
me I somone yow / and I shalle brynge yow vnto that knyzt
ye said he / I shalle promyse yow to fulfille your desyre / well
said she now shal I telle yow / I sawe hym in the foreste cha-
15 cyngre two knyghtes vnto a water the whiche is called mor-
tayse and they drofe hym in to the water for drede of dethe /
and the two knyghtes passed ouer / and the reed knyghte
passed after / and there his hors was drenched / and he thorou
grete strengthe escaped vnto the land / thus she told hym / and
20 fyr Percyuale was passyng glad therof / Thenne she asked
hym yf he had ete ony mete late / Nay madame truly I ete
no mete nyghe this thre dayes / but late here I spak with a go-
od man that fedde me with his good wordes and hooly / and
refresshyd me gretely / A fyr knyghte said she that same man
25 is an enchaunter and a multiplyer of wordes / For and ye
byleue hym ye shall playnly be shamed & dye in this roche for
pure hunger and be eten with wylde beestes and ye be a yong
man and a goodly knyghte / and I shalle helpe yow & ye wil
What are ye said fyr Percyual that profered me thus grete ky-
30 ndenes / I am said she a gentylwoman that am disheryted /
whiche was somtyme the rycheft woman of the world / Da-
moyfel said fyr Percyual who hath disheryted yow / for I ha-
ue grete pyte of yow / Sir said she I dwellid with the gretteft
man of the world and he made me so fayre and clere that ther
35 was none lyke me / and of that grete beaute I had a lytil pry-
de more than I ought to haue had / Also I sayd a word that
pleasyd hym not / And thenne he wold not suffre me to be ony
lenger in his company / and soo drofe me from myn herytage /

and foo disheryted me / and he had neuer pyte of me nor of
 none of my councelle / nor of my Courte / And fythen fir kny-
 ght hit hath befallen me foo / and thurgh me and myn I haue
 benome hym many of his men / and made hem to become my men
 For they aske neuer no thyng of me but I gyue hit hem that 5
 and moche more / Thus I and al my seruantes were ayenst
 hym nyghte and daye / Therefore I knowe now no good knyzt
 nor noo good man but I gete hym on my fyde and I maye
 And for that I knowe that thow arte a good knyzt / I by-
 feche yow to helpe me / And for ye be a felawe of the round ta- 10
 ble wherfore ye oughte not to fayle noo gentylwoman whiche
 is disheryted / and she befought yow of helpe

¶ Capitulum ix

THenne fyr Percyual promysed her alle the helpe that
 he myghte / And thenne she thanked hym / And at that
 tyme the wheder was hote / thenne she called vnto her a 15
 gentylwoman and badde her brynge forth a paelione / And
 foo she dyd / and pyght hit vpon the grauel / Sire sayd she /
 Now maye ye reste yow in this hete of the day / Thenne he than-
 ked her / and she put of his helme and his sheld / and there he
 slepte a grete whyle / And thenne he awoke / and asked her / 20
 yf she had ony mete / and she sayd ye / also ye shalle haue yno-
 ugh / and foo there was sette ynough vpon the table / and
 theron foo moche þ^t he had merueil / for there was all maner of
 metes þ^t he coude thynke on / Also he dranke ther the strengest
 wyn that euer he dranke / hym thoughte / and there with he 25
 was a lytel chafed more than he oughte to be / with that he be-
 held the gentylwoman / and hym thought / she was the fayrest
 creature that euer he sawe / And thenne fyre Percyual proferd
 her loue and prayd her that she wold be his / Thenne she refu-
 fed hym in a maner whan he requyred her for the cause he shold 30
 be the more ardant on her / and euer he seafed not to pray her of
 loue / And whanne she sawe hym wel enchauffed / thenne she
 sayd fyr Percyuale wete yow wel I shall not fulfille youre
 wylle / but yf ye swere from hensforth ye shalle be my true ser-
 uant / and to doo no thyng but that I shalle commaunde 35

yow / wyl ye enfore me this as ye be a true knyghte / ye sayd he
 fayr lady by the feythe of my body / wel sayd she now shal ye
 doo with me what foo hit please yow / and now wete ye well /
 ye are the knyghte in the world that I haue moost desyre to /
 5 And thenne two squyers were commaunded to make a bed
 in myddes of the paelione / And anone she was vnclouted &
 leyd therin / And thenne fyre Percyual leyd hym doune by
 her naked / and by aduenture and grace he sawe his fuerd lye
 on the ground naked / in whoos pomel was a reede croffe and
 10 the fygne of the crucifyxe therin / and bethoughte hym on his
 knyghthode and his promyse made to fore hand vnto the good
 man / thenne he made a fygne of the croffe in his forhede / & there
 with the paelione torned vp so doune / and thenne it chaunged
 vnto a smoke / and a blak clowde / and thenne he was adradde
 15 and cryed alowde /

¶ Capitulum x

F Ayr fwete fader Ihesu Cryste ne lete me not be sha-
 med / the whiche was nyghe lost had not thy good gra-
 ce ben / And thenne he loked in to a shyp / and sawe her entre
 therin / Whiche sayd sir Percyual ye haue bitrayed me / and foo
 20 she wente with the wynde rorynge and yellynge that it semed
 alle the water brent after her / Thenne fyr Percyual made grete
 sorowe / and drewe his fuerd vnto hym / sayēg fythen my flesshe
 will be my maister I shalle punyshe it / and there with he rose
 hym self thurgh the thygh that the blood starte aboute hym / &
 25 said O good lord take this in recompensacion of that I haue do-
 ne ageynst the my lord / Soo thenne he clothed hym and armed
 hym / and called hym self a wretche / sayenge how nyghe was I
 lost / and to haue loste that I shold neuer haue geten ageyne /
 that was my vyrgynyte / for that maye neuer be recouerd af-
 30 ter hit is ones lost / and thenne he stopped his bledying wounde
 with a pyece of his sherte / Thus as he made his moue he saw
 the same shyp come fro Oryent that the good man was in the
 day afore / and the noble knyzt was ashamed with hym selfe / &
 there with he felle in a swoune / And whan he awoke he went
 35 vnto hym wekely and there he salewed this good man / And

[leaf 327 verso]

thenne he asked fyr Percyual how haft thow done fythe I de-
 parted / Sir said he / here was a gentylwoman and ledde me
 in to dedely synne / And there he told hym all to gyders /
 Knewe ye not the mayde sayd the good man / Syr said he nay
 but wel I wote the fende fente her hyther to shame me / O good 5
 knyghte sayd he thow arte a foole / for that gentilwoman was
 the maister fende of helle / the whiche hath power aboue alle de-
 uyls / and that was the old lady that thow sawest in thyn ad-
 uysyon rydyngge on the serpent / Thenne he told fyr Percyuale
 how our lord Ihesu Cryft bete hym oute of heuen for his synne 10
 the whiche was the moost bryghtest angel of heuen / & therfore
 he losse his herytage / and that was the champyon that thow
 foughtest with alle / the whiche had ouercome the / had not the
 grace of god ben / Now beware fyre Percyuale and take thys
 for an Enfample / and thenne the good man varyfshed away/ 15
 Thenne fyre Percyual took his armes / and entryd in to the
 shyp / and soo departed from thens

¶ There endeth the fourtenthe booke / whiche is of fyr percyual

¶ And here foloweth of fyre launcelot whiche is the fyfttentb
 book

¶ Capitulum primum



Hanne the Heremyte had kepte fyr Launcelot
 thre dayes / the heremyte gate hym an hors / an
 helme / and a fuerd / ¶ And thenne
 he departed about the houre of none And then-
 5 ne he sawe a lytel hows / And whanne he came nere / he sawe a
 Chappel / and there besyde he sawe an old man that was clo-
 thed al in whyte ful rychely / and thenne sire launcelot faide
 god faue yow / god kepe yow sayd the good man / and make
 yow a good knyghte / Thenne fyr Launcelot alyghte and en-
 10 tred in to the Chappel / and there he sawe an old man dede in
 a whyte shert of passyng fyne clothe / ¶ Sir said the
 good man this man that is dede oughte not to be in fuche clo-
 thyng as ye see hym in / for in that he brake the othe of hys
 ordre // For he hath ben more than an C wynter a man of a re-
 15 lygyon / And thenne the good man and sire Launcelot wente
 in to the Chappel / and the good man tooke a stole aboute hys
 neck and a book / and thenne he coniured on that book / & with
 that they sawe in an hydous fygure & horryble / that there was
 no man soo hard herted nor soo hard but he shold haue ben a-
 20 ferd / Thenne faide the fende thow hast trauaylled me gretely/
 Now telle me what thou wilt with me / I wille faide the go-
 od man that thow telle me how my felawe became dede / & whe-
 ther he be faued or dampned / Thenne he said with an horryble
 voys / he is not lost but faued / how may that be sayd the good
 25 man / It semed to me that he lyued not wel / for he brake his
 ordre for to were a sherte / where he oughte to were none /
 And who that trespasseth ageynst our ordre dothe not wel /
 Not soo sayd the fende this man that lyeth here dede was come
 of a grete lygnage / and there was a lord that hyghte the er-
 30 le de Vale that helde grete werre ageynste this mans neuwe
 the whiche hyghte Aguarus
 And soo this Aguarus sawe the Erle was bygger than he /
 Thenne he wente for to take counceylle of his vnkel the which
 lyeth here dede as ye maye see /
 35 ¶ And thenne he asked leue & wente oute of his heremytage

[leaf 328 verso]

for to mayntene his neuewe ageynst the myghty Erle / and fo
hit happed that this man that lyeth here dede dyd so moche by
his wysedome and hardynes that the Erle was take and thre
of his lordes by force of this dede man /

¶ Capitulum ij

T Henne was there pees betwyxe the Erle and this A- 5
guarus / & grete feurte that the erle shold neuer werre
ageynst hym / Thenne this dede man that here lyeth came to this
heremytage ageyne / And thenne the erle made two of his ne-
uewes for to be auenged vpon this man / Soo they came on a
day / and fonde this dede man at the sacryng of his masse / and 10
they abode hym tyl he had sayd masse / And thenne they set vp-
on hym and drewe oute swardes to haue slayne hym / But
there wold no fuerd byte on hym more than vpon a gad of
stele for the hyghe lord whiche he serued / he hym preferred /

¶ Thenne made they a grete fyre and dyd of alle his clothes 15
and the hayre of his bak / And thenne this dede man heremyte
sayd vnto them / wene ye to brenne me / it shalle not lye in yo-
ur power nor to perysshe me as moche as a threde & there were
ony on my body / Noo sayd one of them / hit shalle be affayed / &
thenne they dispoyled hym / and putte vpon hym this sherte / 20
and cast hym in a fyre / and there he laye all that nyght tyl hit
was daye in that fyre and was not dede / and foo in the morn
I came and fond hym dede / but I fond neyther threde nor
skynne tamed / & foo tooke hym oute of the fyre with grete fe-
re and leyd hym here as ye may see / And now may ye suffer 25
me to goo my way / for I haue sayd yow the sothe / And then-
ne he departed with a grete tempest / Thenne was the good man
and fyr launcelot more gladder than they were to fore / And
thenne fyr launcelot dwelled with that good man that nyght
Sire said the good man be ye not fir launcelot du lake / ye fire 30
said he / what seke ye in this countrey / fyr sayd fyr launcelot I
goo to seke the aduentures of the Sancgreal / wel sayd he se-
ke it ye may wel / But though it were here ye shalle haue noo
power to see hit no more than a blynd man shold see a bryzte
fuerd / and that is longe on your synne / and els ye were more 35

abeler than ony man lyuyng / And thenne fir launcelot began
 to wepe / Thenne fayd the good man were ye confessid fyth ye
 entryd in to the quest of the Sancgreal / ye fir fayd fyr launce-
 lot / Thenne vpon the morne whanne the good man had songe
 5 his maffe / thenne they buryed the dede man / Thenne fyr laun-
 celot fayd / fader what shalle I do / Now fayd the good man/
 I requyre yow take this hayre that was this holy mans and
 putte it nexte thy skynne / and it shalle preuaylle the gretely/
 fyr and I wille doo hit fayd fir launcelot / Also I charge you
 10 that ye ete no fleshe as longe as ye be in the quest of the sanc-
 greal / nor ye shalle drynke noo wyne / and that ye here maffe
 dayly and ye may doo hit / Soo he took the hayre and putte it
 vpon hym and soo departed at euenfonge tyme / And soo rode
 he in to a foreste / and there he mette with a gentylwoman ry-
 15 dyng vpon a whyte palfrey / and thenne she asked hym fyre
 knyght whyder ryde ye / Certes damoyfel fayd launcelot I wo-
 te not whyder I ryde but as fortune ledeth me / A fyre launce-
 lot said she / I wote what aduenture ye seke / for ye were afore
 tyme nerer than ye be now / and yet shalle ye see hit more open-
 20 ly than euer ye dyd / and that shalle ye vnderstande in shorte
 tyme / Thenne fyr launcelot asked her where he myghte be herbe-
 rowed that nyghte / ye shalle not fynde this day nor nyghte but
 to morne ye shal fynde herberowe good and ease of that ye be
 in doubte of / And thenne he commaunded her vnto god /
 25 Thenne he rode tyl that he cam to a crosse and took that for his
 hooft as for that nyghte

¶ Capitulum Tercium

ANd soo he putte his hors to pasture / and dyd of hys
 helme and his shelde and made his prayers vnto the
 Crosse that he neuer falle in dedely synne ageyne / And soo he
 30 leyd hym doune to slepe / And anone as he was on slepe / hit
 befelle hym there an aduysyon / that there came a man afore
 hym alle by compas of sterres / and that man had a crowne
 of gold on his hede / and that man ledde in his felaushyp fe-
 uen kynges and two knyghtes / And alle these worhipped
 35 the Crosse knelyng vpon their knees / holdyng vp their handes

toward the heuen / And alle they sayd fair fwete fader of heuen come and vyfyte vs and yelde vnto vs eueryche as we haue deferued / Thenne loked launcelot vp to the heuen / and hym femed the cloudes dyd open / and an old man came down with a company of angels / and alyghte amonge them / & gaf 5 vnto eueryche his bleffynge and called them his seruantes / and good and true knyghtes / And whanne this old man had sayd thus he came to one of tho knyghtes and sayd I haue loſt alle that I haue ſette in the / For thou haſt rulyd the ageynſte me as a warryour and vſed wrong werres with va- 10 yne glory more for the pleaſyr of the world than to pleaſe me / therfor thou ſhalt be confounded withoute thou yelde me my trefour / Alle this aduyſyon ſawe ſir Launcelot at the Croſſe / And on the morne he took his hors and rode tyl mydday / and there by aduenture he mette with the ſame knyght that took his 15 hors / helme and his fuerd whan he ſlepte whan the Sancgreal appiered afore the croſſe / whanne ſir launcelot ſawe hym / he ſalewed hym not ſayre but cryed on hyghe / knyghte kepe the / for thou haſt done to me grete vnkyndenes / And thenne they put afore them their ſperes / and ſir launcelot came ſoo fyerfly 20 vpon hym / that he ſmote hym and his hors doune to the erthe / that he had nyghe broken his neck / Thenne ſir Launcelot tooke the knyghtes hors that was his owne afore hand / and deſcended from the hors he ſat vpon and mounted vpon his own hors and teyed the knyghtes owne hors to a tree that he myght fyn- 25 de that hors whanne that he was aryſen

¶ Thenne ſir launcelot rode tyl nyghte / and by aduentur he met an heremyte / and eche of hem ſalewed other / and there he reſted with that good man alle nyght / and gaf his hors ſuche as he myghte gete / Thenne ſayde the good man vnto Launcelot / of 30 whens be ye / ſyr ſayd he I am of Arthurs courte / and my name is ſir launcelot du lake / that am in the Queſt of the Sancgreal / And therfor I pray yow to counceylle me of a vyſyon the whiche I hadde et the Croſſe / And ſoo he tolde hym alle /

¶ Capitulum quartum

¶ Capitulum Quartum

LOo fir launcelot said the good man / there thou myz-
 test vnderstande the hyghe lygnage that thou art comen
 of / And thyne aduysyon betokeneth after the passion of Ihe-
 fu Criste fourty yere Ioseph of Armathye preched the vycory
 5 of kynge Euelake / that he had in the batails the better of his
 enemyes of the feuen kynges and the two knyghtes / the
 fyrst of hem is called Nappus an holy man / and the second
 hyghte Nacyen in remembraunce of his graunte fyre / and in
 hym dwelled oure lord Ihesu Cryst / And the thyrd was cal-
 10 led Hellyas le grose / and the fourth hyght Lysays / and the
 fyfthe hyghte Ionas / he departed out of his countrey and
 went in to walys / and toke there the doughter of Manuel /
 where by he had the lond of Gaule / and he came to dwelle in
 this countrey / And of hym came kynge launcelot thy graute
 15 fyre / the whiche there wedded the kynges doughter of Irland
 and he was as worthy a man as thou art / and of hym cam
 kynge Ban thy fader the which was the last of the feuen kyn-
 ges / And by the fir launcelot hit fygnefyeth that the Angels
 sayd thou were none of the feuen felauships / And the laste
 20 was the ix knyght / he was fygnefyed to a lyon / for he shold
 passe all maner of erthely knyghtes / that is fyre Galahad /
 the whiche thou gate on kynge Pelles doughter / and thou ou-
 ght to thanke god more than any other man lyuynge / for of
 a fynner erthely thou hast no piere as in knyghthode nor neuer
 25 shalle be / But lytyl thanke hast thou gyuen to god for al the
 grete vertues that god hath lent the /

¶ Syr said Launcelot ye faye that that good knyzt is my sone
 That ouztest thou to knowe and no man better said the good
 man / For thou knewest the doughter of kyng Pelles fles-
 30 shely / and on her thou begattest Galahad / And that was he
 that at the feest of Pentecost fatte in the sege peryllous / And
 therfor make thou hit knownen openly that he is one of thy
 begetynge on kynge Pelles doughter / for that wyl be youre
 worship and honour and to alle thy kynred /
 35 And I couceyle yow in no place prece not vpon hym to haue

adoo with hym / wel fayd launcelot / me semeth that good knyghte shold praye for me vnto the hyghe fader / that I falle not to fynne ageyne / Trust thou wel fayd the good man thou faryst mykel the better for his prayer / but the sone shalle not bere the wyckednes of the fader / Nor the fader shalle not bere the 5 wyckednes of the sone / but eueryche shalle bere his owne burthen / And therfor befeke thou only god / and he wylle helpe the in alle thy nedes / And thenne fyr launcelot and he wente to souper / and soo leyd hym to rest / and the hayre prycked so fyr launcelots skynne whiche greued hym ful fore / but he toke 10 hit mekely / and suffred the payne / And soo on the morne / he herd his masse and took his armes / and soo toke his leue /

¶ Capitulum Quintum

ANd thenne mounted vpon his hors / and rode in to a forest / and helde no hyhe waye / And as he loked afore hym / he sawe a fayre playne / and besyde that a fayre Castel / & 15 afore the Castel were many pauelions of fylke & of dyuerse hewe / And hym semed that he sawe there fyue honderd knyghtes rydyng on horsbak / and there were two partyes / they that were of the Castel were all in blak horses and their trappours blak / and they that were withoute were al on whyte horses & 20 trappours / and eueryche hurteled to other that it merueylled fyr launcelot / And at the laste hym thoughte they of the castel were putte to the werse / Thenne thoughte sir launcelot for to helpe there the weyker party in encrecyng of his chyualry And soo fyr launcelot threst in among the party of the Castel 25 and smote doune a knyghte hors and man to the erthe / And thenne he raffhed here and there and dyd merueyllous dedes of armes / And thenne he drewe oute his fuerd / and strake many knyghtes to the erthe / so that alle tho that sawe hym merueylled that euer one knyghte myghte doo soo grete dedes of 30 armes / But alweyes the whyte knyghtes helde them nyghe aboute fyr launcelot for to tyere hym and wynde hym / But att the laste as a man may not euer endure fyre Launcelot waxed so faynt of fy3tyng & trauaill yng & was so wery

of his grete dedes / but he myghte not lyfte vp his armes for to
 gyue one stroke so that he wende neuer to haue borne armes / &
 thenne they alle took and ledde hym away in to a forest / and
 there made hym to alyghte & to reſte hym / And thenne all the
 5 felaushyp of the caſtel were ouercome for the defaute of hym /
 Thenne they ſayd alle vnto fyr launcelot bleſſid be god / that
 ye be now of oure felaushyp / for we ſhalle holde yow in oure
 pryſon / and ſoo they leſte hym with fewe wordes / And thenne
 fyr launcelot made grete ſorowe / for neuer or now was I ne-
 10 uer at turnement nor luſtes but I had the beſt / and now I
 am ſhamed / and thenne he ſayd now I am ſure that I am
 more ſynfuller than euer I was / thus he rode ſorowynge / and
 half a day he was oute of deſpayre / tyl that he came in to a de-
 pe valey / And whanne fyr launcelot ſawe he myghte not ryde
 15 vp in to the montayne / he there alyghte vnder an Appel tree /
 and there he leſte his helme and his ſhelde / and put his hors
 vnto paſture / And then he leid hym doune to ſlepe / And
 thenne hym thoughte there came an old man afore hym / the
 whiche ſayd A launcelot of euylle feythe and poure byleue /
 20 wherfor is thy wille tourned ſoo lyghtely toward thy dedely
 fynne / And whanne he had ſayd thus / he vanyſhed away / &
 launcelot wyſt not where he was become / Thenne he tooke his
 hors and armed hym / And as he rode by the way he ſawe a
 chappel where was a recluſe whiche hadde a wyndowe that ſhe
 25 myghte ſee vp to the Aulter / And alle aloude ſhe called la-
 uncelot / for that he ſemed a knyghte erraunt / And thenne he
 came and ſhe aſked hym what he was / and of what place / &
 where aboute he wente to ſeke

¶ Capitulum Sextum

30 **A**Nd thenne he told her alle to gyder word by word
 and the trouthe how it befelle hym at the turnement/
 And after told her his aduſfyon that he had had that ny-
 ghte in his ſlepe / and prayd her to telle hym what hit myght
 mene / for he was not wel contente with hit /

¶ A Launcelot fayd she as longe as ye were knyghte of erthely knyghthode / ye were the mooft merueillous man of the world and mooft aduenturous / ¶ Now said the lady fythen ye be fette amonge the knyghtes of heuenly aduentures / yf aduenture felle the contrary at that turnement / haue thou no merueille / for that turnement yesterdaye was but a tokenynge of oure lord / And not for thenne there was none enchauntement for they at the turnement were erthely knyghtes / The turnemēt was a token to see who shold haue moft knyghtes outhur Clyazar the sone of kynge Pelles or Argustus the sone of kynge Harlon / But Clyazar was alle clothed in whyte / and Argustus was couerd in blak the whiche were comen / Alle what this betokeneth I shalle telle yow / ¶ The daye of Pentecost whan kynge Arthur helde his court / it befelle that erthely kynges and knyghtes toke a turnement to gyders / that is to say the quest of the Sancgreal / The erthely knyghtes were they / the whiche were clothed al in black / and the couerynge betokeneth the fynnes wherof they be not confessed / And they with the couerynge of whyte betokeneth vyrgynyte / and they that chofen chastyte / And thus was the quest begonne in them / Thenne thow behelde the fynners and the good men / and when thow sawest the fynners ouercomē / thow enclynest to that party for bobaunce and pryde of the world / and alle that must be lefte in that quest / ¶ For in this quest thow shalte haue many felawes and thy betters / For thow arte soo feble of euylle truste and good byleue / this made hit whan thou were there where they took the / and ledde the in to the forest / And anone there appiered the Sancgreal vnto the whyte knyghtes / but thow was soo feble of good byleue and feyth that thou myghtest not abyde hit for alle the techynge of the good man / but anone thou torneft to the fynners / and that caused thy myfaenture that thow sholdest knowe good from euylle / and wayne glory of the world / the whiche is not worth a pere And for grete pryde thou madeft grete forow that thou haddest not ouercome alle the whyte knyghtes with the keueryng of whyte by whome was betokeneth vyrgynyte & chastyte / & therfor god was wroth with yow / for god loueth no suche dedes in this quest / & this aduision signefyeth þ^t thou were of euil

feythe and of poure byleue / the whiche wille make the to falle
in to the depe pytte of helle yf thou kepe the not

¶ Now haue I warned the of thy vayne glory / and of thy
pryde / that thou haft many tymes erryd ageynst thy maker
5 beware of euerlastyng payne / for of alle erthely knyghtes I
haue moost pyte of the / for I knowe wel thou haft not thy
pyere of ony erthely synful man / And soo she commaunded
fyr launcelot to dyner / And after dyner he toke his hors and
commaunded her to god / and soo rode in to a depe valeye / and
10 there he sawe a ryuer and an hyhe montayn / And thorou the
water he must nedes passe / the whiche was hydous / and then-
ne in the name of god he took hit with good herte / and when
he came ouer / he sawe an armed knyghte hors and man black
as ony beare without ony word he smote fyr launcelots hors
15 to the erthe / and soo he passed on he wyft not where he was be-
come / And thenne he took his helme and his shelde / & thanked
god of his aduenture

¶ Here leueth of the story of fyr launcelot

¶ And speke we of sir Gawayne the whiche is the xvj book

¶ Capitulum primum

20 **A** Hanne sire Gawayne was departed from his
his felauyhyp / he rode long withoute ony aduen-
ture / For he fond not the tenth parte of aduen-
ture as he was wonte to doo / For fyre Gawa-
yn rode from whytfontyde vntyl Mychelmasse
And fonde none aduenture that pleasyd hym / Soo on a daye
it befelle Gawayne mette with sir Ector de marys / and eyther
25 made grete Ioye of other / that it were merueylle to telle /
And soo they told eueryche other and complayned them gre-
tely that they coude fynde none aduenture /

¶ Truly sayd fyre Gawayne vnto fyre Ector I am nyghe
wery of this quest / and loth I am to folowe further in straunge

[leaf 332 verso]

Countreyes / one thyng merueilled me fayd fyre Ector I ha-
 ue mette with twenty knyghtes felawes of myn / and al they
 complayne as I doo / I haue merueille said fyr Ga-
 wayne where that fyr launcelot your broder is / Truly said fire
 Ector I can not here of hym nor of fyr Galahad / Percyuale 5
 nor fyr Bors / lete hem be fayd fyre Gawayne / for they foure
 haue no pyeres / And yf one thyng were not in fyr launcelot /
 he had no felawe of none erthely man / but he is as we be / but
 yf he took more payne vpon hym / But and thefe four be mette
 to gyders / they wille be lothe that ony man mete with hem / for 10
 and they fayle of the Sancgreal / hit is in wafte of alle the re-
 menaunt to recouer hit / Thus as Ector and Gawayne rode
 more than eyghte dayes / And on a faterday they fond an old
 chappel the whiche was wafted that there femed no man thy-
 der repayred / and there they alyghte / and fette their fperes att 15
 the dore / and in they entryd in to the chappel / and there ma-
 de their orysons a grete whyle / And thenne fette hem doune in
 the feges of the chappel / And as they fpak of one thyng and
 other / for heuynes they felle on flepe / and there befelle hem both
 merueyllous aduentures / Sir Gawayn hym femed he cam in 20
 to a medowe ful of herbes and floures / And there he fawe a
 rake of bulles an honderd and fyfty that were prowde & blak
 fauf thre of hem were al whyte and one had a blak spot / and
 the other two were foo fayre and foo whyte that they myght be
 no whyter / And thefe thre bulles whiche were foo fayre were 25
 tayed with two ftronge cordes / And the remenaunt of the bul-
 les fayd among hem goo we hens to feke better pasture / and fo
 fome wente / and fome came ageyne / but they were fo lene that
 they myghte not ftande vp ryghte / and of the bulles that were
 foo whyte that one came ageyne and no mo / But whan this 30
 whyte bulle was come ageyne amonge thefe other / there rofe
 vp a grete crye for lack of wynde þt fayled them / And fo they
 departed one here and another there / this aduyfon befelle Ga-
 wayne that nyght

¶ Capitulum secundum

BVt to Ector de marys befelle another vyfyon the contrary / For hit semed hym that his broder fyre launcelot and he alyghte oute of a chayer and lepte vpon ij horses / and the one sayde to the other go we feke that we shal
 5 not fynde / and hym thoughte that a man bete fyr launcelot / and despoyllid hym / and clothed hym in another aray the whiche was al ful of knottes / and sette hym vpon an asse / and so he rode tyll he cam to the fayrest welle that euer he sawe / and fyre Laūcelot alyghte and wold haue dronke of that welle / And
 10 whan he stouped to drynke of the water the water fanke from hym / ¶ And whanne fyre launcelot sawe that he torned and wente thyder as the hede came fro / And in the meane whyle he trowed that hym self and fyr Ector rode tyl that they cam to a ryche mans hows where there was a weddyng / And there
 15 he sawe a kynge / the whiche sayd fyr knyghte here is no place for yow / and thenne he torned ageyne vnto the chayer that he came fro / Thus within a whyle bothe Gawayne and Ector awaked / and eyther told other of their aduysyon / the whiche merueylled them gretely / Truly sayd Ector I shalle neuer be
 20 mery tyl I here tydynges of my broder launcelot /

¶ Now as they sat thus talkyng they sawe an hand sheuyng vnto the elbowe / and was couerd with reed Samyte / And vpon that henge a brydel not ryght ryche / and helde within the fyft a grete candel whiche brenned ryght clere / and soo passed
 25 afore them / and entryd in to the chappel / and thēne vanysshed away and they wyft not where / And anone came doune a voyse whiche sayd knyghtes ful euylle feyth and of poure byleue these two thynges haue fayled yow / and therfor ye may not come to the aduentures of the fancgreal / Thenne fyrst spak
 30 Gawayne and sayd Ector haue ye herd these wordes / ye truly said sir Ector I herd alle / Now goo we sayd fyre Ector vnto some heremyte that wille telle vs of our aduysyon / for hit semeth me we labour alle in vayne / and soo they departed and rode in to a valeye and there mette with a squyer whiche
 35 rode on an hakney / and they falewed hym fayre / Sire sayd Gawayne can thou teche vs to ony heremyte / Here is one in a lytel montayne / but hit is soo rough there may no hors go thyder / and therefore ye muste goo vpon foote / there shalle ye fynde

a poure hows / and there is nacyen the heremyte which is the
 holyest man in this countrey / and so they departed eyther from
 other / And thenne in a valey they mette with a knyghte al ar-
 med whiche profered hem to Iuste as fer as he sawe them / In
 the name of god sayd fyr Gawayne / fythe I departed from ca- 5
 melot / there was none profered me to Iuste but ones / and now
 Sir said Ector lete me Iuste with hym / Nay sayd Gawayne ye
 shalle not / but yf I be bete / hit shalle not forthynke me thenne
 yf ye goo after me / And thenne eyther enbraced other to Iuste
 and came to gyders as fast as their horses myghte renne / and 10
 braft their sheldes and the mayles / and the one more than the
 other / and Gawayne was wounded in the lyfte fyde / but the
 other knyghte was smyten thorou the brest / and the spere cam
 oute on the other fyde / and soo they felle bothe oute of their sa-
 dels / and in the fallynge they brak bothe their speres / Anone 15
 Gawayne aroos and sette his hand to his fuerd / and caste his
 sheld afore hym / But alle for nought was it / for the knyght
 had no power to aryse ageyne hym / Thenne said gawayne ye
 must yelde you as an ouercome mā / or els I may flee you / A
 fir knyghte sayd he I am but dede / for goddes sake and of yo- 20
 ur gentilnes lede me here vnto an Abbay that I may receyue
 my creatour / Syre sayd Gawayne I knowe no hows of rely-
 gyon here by / Syr sayd the knyghte sette me on an hors to fo-
 re yow / and I shalle teche yow / Gawayne sette hym vp in the
 fadel / and he lepte vp behynde hym for to sustene hym / and soo 25
 came to an Abbay where they were wel receyued / and anone
 he was vnarmed / and receyued his creatour / Thenne he pra-
 yd Gawayne to drawe out the truncheon of the spere oute of
 his body / Thenne Gawayne asked hym what he was that kne-
 we hym not / I am sayd he of kynge Arthurs courte / & was 30
 a felawe of the round table / and we were bretheren sworne to
 gyders / and now fyr Gawayne thow hast slayne me / and my
 name is Vwayne les auoultres that somtyme was sone vn-
 to kynge Vryens / and was in the quest of the Sancgreal / &
 now forgyue it the god / for hit shal euer be sayd that the one 35
 fworn broder hath slayn thotherr /

¶ Capitulum Tercium

Allas fayd Gawayne that euer this myfauenture is be-
 fallen me / No force fayd Vwayne fythe I fhalle dye
 this deth / of a moche more worshypfuller mans hand
 myghte I not dye / but whanne ye come to the Court / recom-
 5 maunde me vnto my lord kynge Arthur and alle tho that ben
 lefte on lyue / and for old brotherhode thynke on me / Thenne
 beganne Gawayne to wepe and Ector alfo / And thenne V-
 wayne hym felf and fyre Gawayne drewe oute the truncheon
 of the spere / and anone departed the foule from the body / Thē-
 10 ne fir Gawayne and fir Ector beryed hym as men oughte to
 berye a kynges sone / and made wryten vpon his name / & by
 whome he was flayne / Thenne departed Gawayne and Ector
 as heuy as they myghte for their myfauentur / and so rode til
 that they came to the rou3 montayne / and there they teyed the-
 15 ir horfes and wente on foote to the heremytage / And whanne
 they were come vp / they sawe a poure hows / & besyde the chap-
 pel a lytyl courtelage / where Nacyen the heremyte gadred wor-
 tes as he whiche had tasted none other mete of a grete whyle
 And whanne he sawe the erraunt knyghtes / he came toward
 20 them and falewed them / and they hym ageyne / Faire lordes
 said he what aduentur brought yow hyther / Syr said Gawa-
 yn to speke with yow for to be confessid / Sir said the heremyte
 I am redy / thenne they told hym soo moche that he wyft well
 what they were / And thenne he thoughte to counceylle hem yf
 25 he myght / Thenne began gawayne fyrst & told hym of his ad-
 uysyon that he had in the Chappel / and Ector told hym
 alle as it is afore reherced / Sir said the heremyte vnto fir Ga-
 wayne the fayr medowe and the rak therin ought to be vnder-
 stande the round table / and by the medowe oughte to be vnder-
 30 stande humylyte and pacyence / tho ben the thynges whiche ben
 alweyes grene and quyck / for men maye no tyme ouerco-
 me humylyte and pacyence / therfor was the round table fou-
 den and the Chyualry hath ben at alle tymes / soo by the frater-
 nyte whiche was there that she myght not be ouercomen / For
 35 men sayd she was founded in pacyence and in humylyte at the

[leaf 334 verso]

Rake ete an honderd and fyfty bulles / but they ete not in the
 medowe / for their hertes shold be fette in humylyte and pacy-
 ence / and the bulles were prowde and blak sauf only thre
 By the bulles is to vnderstande the felauishyp of the round ta-
 ble whiche for their synne and their wyckednes ben black / 5
 Blaknes is to faye withoute good or vertuous werkes / and
 the thre bulles which were whyte sauf only one that was spot-
 ted / The two whyte bitokenen fyr Galahad and sir percyual
 for they be maydens clene and withoute spotte / And the th-
 yrd that had a spot fygnifyeth fyr Bors de ganys / which tre- 10
 spaced but ones in his vyrgynyte / but sythen he kept hym self
 so wel in chaftyte that alle is forgyuen hym and his mysdedes
 And why tho thre were teyed by the neckes / they be thre kn-
 yghtes in vyrgynyte and chaftyte / and there is no pryde smy-
 ten in them / And the blak bulles whiche sayd goo we hens / 15
 they were tho whiche at Pentecost atte the hyhe feest took vpon
 hem to goo in the quest of the Sancgreal / withoute confession
 they myghte not entre in the medowe of humylyte and pacy-
 ence / And therfor they retorned in to waste countreyes / that
 fygnifyeth dethe / for there shalle dye many of them / eueryche of 20
 them shalle flee other for synne / and they that shalle escape /
 shalle be foo lene that hit shalle be merueylle to see them / And
 of the thre bulles withoute spotte / the one shalle come ageyne/
 and the other two neuer

¶ Capitulum Quartum

THenne spak Nacyen vnto Ector sothe hit is that la- 25
 uncelot and ye came doune of one chayer / the chayer be-
 tokeneth maisterhip and lordshyp whiche ye came doune fro /
 But ye two knyghtes sayd the heremyte ye goo to seke that ye
 shalle neuer fynde that is the Sancgreal For hit is the secrete
 thyng of oure lord Ihesu Cryste / what is to meane that fyre 30
 Launcelot felle doune of his hors / he hath left pryde / and taken
 hym to humylyte / for he hath cryed mercy lowde for his synne
 and fore repented hym / and our lorde hath clothed hym in his
 clothyng whiche is ful of knottes that is the hayre that he we-
 ryth dayly / ¶ And the asse that he rode vpon is a beeft of 35

humylyte / For god wold not ryde vpon no stede nor vpon no
 palfrey / So in enfample that an asse betokeneth mekenes that
 thou sawest fyr Launcelot ryde on in thy flepe / and the welle
 where as the water fanke from hym whanne he shold haue ta-
 5 ken therof / And whanne he sawe he myghte not haue it / he re-
 turned thyder from whens he came / for the welle betokeneth the
 hyghe grace of god / the more men desyre hit to take hit / the mo-
 re shalle be their desyre / Soo whanne he came nyghe the Sanc-
 greal / he meked hym that he held hym not a man worthy to be
 10 soo nyghe the holy vessel / for he had ben soo defouled in dedely
 synne by the space of many yeres / yet whanne he kneled to dr-
 ynke of the welle / there he sawe grete preuydence of the Sanc-
 greal / And for he had ferued soo longe the deuylle / he shal ha-
 ue vengeance four and twenty dayes longe / for that he hath
 15 ben the deuyls seruauunt four and twenty yeres / And thenne
 soone after he shalle retorne vnto Camelot oute of this coutrei
 and he shalle faye a parte of fuche thynges as he hath fonde
 ¶ Now wille I telle yow what betokeneth the hande with the
 candel and the brydel / that is to vnderstande the holy ghoft whe-
 20 re charyte is euer / and the brydel fygnifyeth abstynence / For
 whanne she is brydeled in Crysten mans herte / she holdeth hym
 soo shorte that he falleth not in dedely synne / And the candell
 whiche sheweth clerenesse and fyghte fygnifyeth the ryȝt way
 of Ihesu Cryst / And whanne he wente and sayd knyghtes
 25 of poure feyth and of wycked byleue / these thre thynges fay-
 led charyte / abstynence / and trouthe / therfor ye maye not attey-
 ne that hye aduenturr of the Sancgreall

¶ Capitulum Quintum

30 **C**ertes sayd Gawayne / fothely haue ye sayd that I see
 it openly / ¶ Now I pray yow good man and holy
 fader telle me why we mette not with soo many aduen-
 tures as we were wonte to doo / and comynly haue the better /
 ¶ I shalle telle yow gladly sayd the good man / The aduen-
 ture of the Sancgreall whiche ye and many other haue vn-
 dertake þe quest of it & fynde it not / the cause is / for it appiereth

not to fynners / wherfore merueylle not though ye fayle therof
 and many other / For ye be an vntrue knyghte / and a grete
 murtherer / and to good men fygnesyeth other thynges than
 murther / For I dar faye as synful as fyre launcelot hath ben
 fythe he wente in to the quest of the Sancgreal / he slewe 5
 neuer man / nor nought shalle tyll that he come vnto Camelot
 ageyne / for he hath taken vpon hym for to forsake synne / And
 nere were that he nys not stable / but by his thoughte he is ly-
 kely to torne ageyne / he shold be nexte to encheue it sauf Ga-
 lahad his sone / but god knoweth his thoughte and his vn- 10
 stabylnesse / and yet shalle he dye ryght an holy man / and no
 doubte he hath no felawe of no erthely synful man / Sir sayd
 Gawayne hit semeth me by your wordes that for oure synnes
 it wyll not auaylle vs to trauaylle in this quest / Truly sayd
 the good man / there ben an honderd suche as ye be / that 15
 neuer shalle preuayle / but to haue shame / And whanne they
 had herd these voyces they commaunded hym vnto god /

¶ Thenne the good man called Gawayne and sayd it is lo-
 nge tyme passed syth that ye were made knyghte / and neuer
 fythen thou seruedest thy maker / and now thou arte foo old 20
 a tree that in the is neyther lyf ne fruyte / wherfore bethynk the
 that thou yelde to oure lord the bare rynde / fythe the fende hath
 the leues and the fruyte / Syr said Gawayne & I had leyser
 I wold speke with yow / but my felawe here fyr Ector is go-
 ne and abydeth me yonder bynæthe the hylle / wel sayd the go- 25
 od man thou were better to be counceylled / Thenne departed
 Gawayne ande came to Ector / and foo took their horsfes & rode
 tyl they came to a fosters hows whiche herberowed them ryzt
 wel / And on the morne they departed from theyr hooft / and
 rode longe or they coude fynde ony aduenture 30

¶ Capitulum Sextum

WHanne Bors was departed from Camelot / he mette
 with a Relygyous man rydyng on an asse / and fyre
 Bors falewed hym / Anon the good man knewe hym
 that he was one of the knyghtes erraunt that was in the quest
 of the Sancgreal / what are ye sayd the good man / Sire sayd 35

he / I am a kny3te that fayn wold be counceylled in the quest
of the Sancgreal / For he shall haue moche erthely worship that
may brynge it to an ende / Certes sayd the good man that is
sothe / for he shalle be the best knyghte of the world and the fai-
5 rest of alle the felauship / But wete yow wel there shall none
atteyne it but by clennes that is pure confession / So rode they
to gyder tyl that they came to an heremytage / And there he pra-
yd Bors to dwelle alle that nyghte with hym / and foo he a-
lyghte and put away his armour / and prayd hym that he
10 myghte be confessid / and foo they wente in to the chappel / and
there he was clene confessid / & they ete brede and drank wa-
ter to gyder / Now sayd the good man I praye the that thou
ete none other / tyl that thou fytte at the table where the Sanc-
greal shalle be / Sir sayd he I agree me therto / but how wete
15 ye that I shall fytte there / yes sayd the good man that knowe
I / but there shalle be but fewe of your felawes with yow / All
is welcome sayd sir Bors that god fendeth me / Also said the
good man / in stede of a sherte and in fygne of chastyfement ye
shal were a garment / therfor I pray yow doo of al your clo-
20 thes and your sherte / and foo he dyd / And thenne he tooke
hym a scarlet cote so that shold be in stede of his sherte / tyll he
had fulfilled the quest of the Sancgreal / and the good man
fond hym in foo merueillous a lyfe / and foo stable / that he
merueilled and felte that he was neuer corrupte in flesshely
25 lustes / but in one tyme that he begat Elyan le blank / Thenne
he armyd hym and took his leue and so departed / And foo
a lytel from thens he loked vp in to a tree / and there he sawe a
passyng grete byrde vpon an olde tree / and hit was passyng
drye withoute leues / and the byrd sat aboue and had byrdes
30 the whiche were dede for hunger / Soo smote he hym self with
his bek the whiche was grete and sharpe / And foo the grete
byrd bledde tyl that he dyed amonge his byrdes / And the yo-
nge byrdes token the lyf by the blood of the grete byrd / whan
Bors sawe this he wyft wel it was a grete tokenyng / For
35 whanne he sawe the grete byrd arofe not / thenne he tooke hys
hors and yede his way / So by euenfonge by aduentur he cam
to a strong toure and an hyhe / & there was he lodged gladly /

¶ Capitulum Septimum

ANd whanne he was vnarmed / they ledd hym in to
 an hyhe toure where was a lady yonge / lusty and fa-
 yre / And she receyued hym with grete Ioye / and made hym to
 fyttre doune by her / and soo was he sette to soupe with fleshe /
 and many deyntees / And whanne fyre Bors sawe that / he 5
 bethought hym on his penaunce and badde a squyer to brynge
 hym water // And soo he broughte hym / and he made soppes
 therin / and ete them / A sayd the lady / I trowe ye lyke not
 my mete / yes truly sayd fyr Bors / god thanke yow madame
 but I may ete none other mete this daye / thenne she spak no- 10
 more as at that tyme / for she was lothe to displease hym /

¶ Thenne after souper they spak of one thyng and other /
 With that came a squyer and sayd / Madame ye must purueye
 yow to morne for a champyon / for els your fyfter wille haue
 this castel and also your landes excepte ye can fynde a knyght 15
 that wille fyghte to morne in your quarel ageynst Prydam le
 noyre / Thenne she made sorowe and sayd / A lord god wherfor
 graunted ye to hold my lond wherof I shold now be dishe-
 ryted withoute reason and ryghte / And whanne fyre Bors
 had herd her say thus / he sayd I shalle comforte yow / Syr fa- 20
 yd she I shal telle yow there was here a kyng that hyghte
 Anyause / whiche held alle this land in his kepyng / Soo hit
 myfhapped he loued a gentylwoman a grete dele elder than I
 Soo tooke he her alle this land to her kepyng / and all his men
 to gouerne / and she brought vp many euylle custommes whe- 25
 re by she putte to dethe a grete party of his kynnesmen / And
 whanne he sawe that / he lete charce her oute of this land / and
 bytoke hit me / and alle this land in my demenys / but anone
 as that worthy kyng was dede / this other lady beganne to
 werre vpon me / and hath destroyed many of my men / & tour- 30
 ned hem ageynste me / that I haue wel nyghe no man lefte me
 And I haue nought els but this hyhe toure that she lefte me
 And yet she hath promysed me to haue this Toure withoute
 I can fynde a knyghte to fyghte with her Champyon / Now
 telle me sayd fyr Bors / what is that Prydam le noyre / fyre 35
 sayd she he is the moost doubted man of thys land / ¶ Now

may ye fend her word that ye haue fond a knyghte that shall
 fyghte with that Prydam le noyre in goddes quarel & yours /
 Thenne that lady was not a lytel glad / and fente word that
 she was purueyed / and that nyghte Bors had good chere/
 5 but in no bedde he wold come / but leyd hym on the floore / nor
 neuer wold doo otherwyfe tyl that he had met with the quest
 of the Sancgreal /

¶ Capítulum Octauum

ANd anone as he was a slepe / hym befelle a vyfyon /
 that there came to hym two byrdes / the one as whyte
 10 as a swan / and the other was merueyllous blak / but it was
 not foo grete as the other / but in the lykenes of a Rauen / the-
 ne the whyte byrd came to hym / and fayd / and thou woldest
 gyue me mete and ferue me / I shold gyue the alle the ryches
 of the world / And I shalle make the as fayre and as why-
 15 te as I am / Soo the whyte byrd departed / and there came the
 blak byrd to hym & fayd / & thou wolte ferue me to morowe &
 haue me in no despyte / though I be blak / for wete thou wel /
 that more auayleth my blaknes than the others whytnes / and
 thenne he departed / and he had another vyfyon / hym thoughte/
 20 that he came to a grete place whiche semed a chappel / & there he
 fonde a chayer sette on the lyfte fyde whiche was worme eten /
 and feble / And on the ryghte hand were two floures lyke a
 lylle / and the one wold haue benome the others whytnes
 But a good man departed hem that touched not the other / &
 25 thenne oute of eueryche floure came oute many floures and fr-
 uyte grete plente / Thenne hym thoughte the good man fayd/
 shold not he doo grete folly that wold lete these two floures pe-
 rysshe for to focoure the rotten tree that hit felle not to the erthe
 Syr fayd he / it semeth me that this woode myghte not auayle
 30 Now kepe the fayd the good man that thou neuer see suche ad-
 uenture befall the / Thenne he awaked and made a fygne of
 the croffe in myddes of the forhede / and soo rose / & clothed hym
 and there came the lady of the place / and she salewed hym / &
 he her ageyne / and so wente to a chappel and herd their seruyse
 35 And ther came a companye of knyghtes that the lady had sent

for to lede fir Bors vnto bataille / Thenne asked he his armes
 And whanne he was armed / she prayd hym to take a lytyl
 morfel to dyne / Nay madame sayd he / that shalle I not do tyll
 I haue done my bataille by the grace of god / And soo he lept
 vpon his hors / and departed alle the knyghtes and men with 5
 hym / And as foone as these two ladyes mette to gyder / She
 whiche Bors shold fyghte for complayned her and sayd ma-
 dame ye haue done me wronge to bireue me of my landes that
 kynge Anyaus gaf me / and ful lothe I am there shold be o-
 ny bataille / ye shalle not chefe sayd the other lady or els youre 10
 knyghte withdrawe hym / Thenne ther was the crye made whi-
 che party had the better of tho two knyghtes that his lady sh-
 old reioyse alle the lande / Now departed the one knyghte here/
 and the other there / Thenne they came to gyders with suche a
 raundon that they perced their sheldes and their hauberkes / & 15
 the speres flewe in pyeces / and they wounded eyther other fo-
 re / Thenne hurteled they to gyders so that they felle both to the
 erthe / and their horses betwix their legges / and anone they a-
 rose and sette handes to their swardes / and smote echone other
 vpon the hedes that they made grete woundes and depe that the 20
 blood wente oute of her bodyes / For ther fond fir Bors gret-
 ter defence in that knyght more than he wende / For that Pry-
 dam was a passyng good knyghte / and he wounded fir bors
 ful euyl and he hym ageyne / but euer this Prydam helde the
 stoure in lyke hard / That perceyued fire Bors and suffred 25
 hym tyl he was nyghe attaynte / ¶ And thenne he ranne vpon
 hym more and more / and the other wente bak for drede of deth
 Soo in his withdrawynge he felle vp ryght / and fyre Bors
 drewe his helme foo strongly that he rente hit fro his hede / and
 gafe hym grete strokes with the flatte of his sward vpon the 30
 vyfage / and bad hym yelde hym or he shold flee hym /
 Thenne he cryed hym mercy and sayd Faire knyght for god-
 des loue flee me not / and I shalle ensure the neuer to werre a-
 geynst thy lady / but be alwey toward her / Thenne Bors lete
 hym be / thenne the old lady fledde with alle her knyghtes 35

¶ Capitulum ix

¶ Capitulum nonum

Soo thenne came Bors to alle tho that held landes of
his lady / and fayd he shold destroye hem / but yf they
dyd siche seruyse vnto her as longed to their landes / Soo they
dyd their homage and they that wold not were chaced oute
5 of their landes / Thenne befelle that yonge lady to come to her
estate ageyne by the myghty prowesse of fyr Bors de ganys
Soo whan alle the countrey was wel set in pees / thenne fyre
Bors toke his leue and departed / and she thanked hym gre-
tely / and wold haue gyuen hym grete rycheffe but he refused
10 hit / Thenne he rode alle that day tyl nyght / and came to an
herberowe to a lady whiche knewe hym wel ynough / & maade
of hym grete Ioye / Vpon the morne as soone as the day appie-
red / Bors departed from thens / and soo rode in to a foreste /
vnto the houre of mydday / and there bifelle hym a merueyllo-
15 us aduenture / So he mette at the departyng of the two wayes
two knyghtes that ledde lyonel his broder al naked bounden
vpon a straunge hakney / & his handes bounden to fore his brest
And eueryche of hem helde in his handes thornes where with
they wente betynge hym so fore that the blood trayled doune
20 more than in an honderd places of his body / soo that he was
al blood to fore and behynde / but he said neuer a word as he
whiche was grete of herte / he suffred alle that euer they dyd
to hym as though he had felte none anguysshe / Anone fyre
Bors dresfid hym to rescowe hym that was his broder / and
25 soo he loked vpon the other syde of hym / and sawe a knyghte
whiche brought a fair gentylwoman / and wold haue fet her
in the thyckest place of the forest for to haue ben the more furer
oute of the way from hem that fought hym / And she whiche
was no thyng assured cryed with an hyghe voys Saynte
30 mary focoure your mayde

¶ And anone she aspyed where fyre Bors came rydyng /
And whanne she came nygh hym / she demed hym a knyghte
of the round table / wherof she hoped to haue some comforte / &
thenne she coniured hym by the feythe that he ought vnto hym
35 in whos seruyse thow arte entryd in / and for the feythe ye o-
we vnto the hyghe ordre of knyghthode / & for the noble kyng

Arthurs sake that I suppose that made the knyght that thow
 help me / and suffre me not to be shamed of this knyghte /
 ¶ Whanne Bors herd her saye thus / he had soo moche sorowe
 there he nyft not what to doo / For yf I lete my broder be in ad-
 uenture he must be slayne / and that wold I not for alle the 5
 erthe And yf I help not the mayde / she is shamed for euer /
 and also she shall lese her vyrgynyte / the whiche she shal neuer
 gete ageyne / Thenne lyfte he vp his eyen and sayd wepyng/
 Fair swete lord Ihesu Cryste whoos lyege man I am kepe
 Lyonel my broder that these knyghtes flee hym not / and for 10
 pyte of yow / and for Mary sake I shalle socoure this mayde /

¶ Capitulum x

Thenne dressid he hym vnto the knyghte / the whiche
 had the gentylwoman / and thenne he cryed sir kny-
 ghte lete your hand of that mayden or ye be but dede / & thenne
 he sette doune the mayden / and was armed at alle pyeces sauf 15
 he lacked his spere / Thenne he dressid his sheld / and drewe
 oute his swerd / and Bors smote hym soo hard that it went
 thurgh his shelde and haberton on the lyfte sholder / and tho-
 rowe grete strengthe he bete hym doune to the erthe / and at the
 pullynge oute of Bors spere there he swouned / 20

¶ Thenne came Bors to the mayde / and sayd how semeth it
 yow of this knyghte / ye be delyuerd at this tyme / ¶ Now sir
 said she I praye yow lede me there as this knyghte hadde me
 soo shall I do gladly / & took the hors of the wounded knyght
 and sette the gentylwoman vpon hym / and soo broughte her 25
 as she desyred / Sir knyghte sayd she / ye haue better sped than
 ye wend / for and I had lost my maydenhede / fyue honderd men
 shold haue dyed for hit / what knyghte was he that had yow
 in the forest / by my feithe sayd she / he is my cofyn / So wote I
 neuer with what engyn the fende enchauffed hym / for yesterday 30
 he took me from my fader pryuely / for I nor none of my faders
 men mystrusted hym not / And yf he hadde hadde my mayden-
 hede / he shold haue dyed for the synne & his body shamed &
 dishonoured for euer / Thus as she stood talkynge with hym
 there came twelue knyghtes sekynge after her / and anone she 35

told hem alle how Bors had delyuerd her / thenne they maad
 grete Ioye and befoughte hym to come to her fader a grete lord
 and he shold be ryght welcome / Truly sayd Bors that may
 not be at this tyme / for I haue a grete aduentur to doo in this
 5 countrey / Soo he commaunded hem vnto god and departed /
 Thenne fyr Bors rode after Lyonel his broder by the trace of
 their horses / thus he rode sekyng a grete whyle / Thenne he ouer-
 toke a man clothed in a Relygyous clothynge / and rode on a
 stronge black hors blacker than a bery / and sayd fyre kny3te
 10 what feke yow / Syre sayd he I feke my broder that I fawe
 within a whyle beten with two knyghtes / A Bors discom-
 forte yow not / ne falle in to no wanhope / for I shall telle you
 tydynges fuche as they ben / for truly he is dede / Thenne shewed
 he hym a newe slayne body lyenge in a busshe / and it femed
 15 hym wel that it was the body of Lyonel / and thenne he made
 fuche a forowe that he felle to the erthe all in a fwoune / and
 lay a grete whyle there / And whanne he came to hym selfe / he
 said Faire brother syth the company of yow and me is depar-
 ted shall I neuer haue Ioye in my herte / and now he whiche
 20 I haue take vnto my maister / he be my help / And whanne he
 had sayd thus / he toke his body lyghtely in his armes / and
 putte hit vpon the arfon of his fadel / And thenne he sayd to
 the man canst thou telle me vnto somme chappel where that I
 may burye this body / Come on said he / here is one fast by / and
 25 foo longe they rood tyl they fawe a fayre Toure / and afore it
 there femed an old feble chappel / And thenne they alyght bo-
 the and put hym in to a Tombe of marbel

¶ Capitulum xj

M Ow leue we hym here sayd the good man / and goo
 we to oure herberowe tyl to morowe we wille come he-
 30 re ageyne to doo hym feruyse / Sir sayde Bors be ye a
 preest / ye forsothe sayd he / thenne I pray yow telle me a dreme
 that befall to me þ^e last nyzt / Say on sayd he / thenne he began
 foo moche to telle hym of the grete byrd in the forest / And af-
 ter told hym of his byrdes one whyte / another black / and of

[leaf 339 verso]

of the rotten tree and of the whyte floures / fyre I shalle telle
 yow a parte now and the other dele to morowe / The whyte fo-
 ule betokeneth a gentylwoman fayre and ryche whiche loued
 the peramours / and hath loued the longe

¶ And yf thou warne her loue she shalle goo dye anone yf 5
 thou haue no pyte on her / that fygnifyeth the grete byrd / the
 whiche shalle make the to warne her / ¶ Now for noo fere that
 thou hast ne for no drede that thou hafte of god / thou shalte
 not warne her but thou woldest not do hit for to be holden chaft
 for to conquere the loos of the veyne glory of the world / for 10
 that shalle befall the now and thou warne her that Launce-
 lot the good knyghte thy cofyn shalle dye / And therfore men
 shalle now saye þ^t thou art a man sleer / both of thy broder fyre
 Lyonel and of thy cofyn fyre launcelot du lake / the whiche
 thou myghtest haue saued and rescowed easly / But thou 15
 wenest to rescowe a mayde whiche perteyneth no thyng to the
 ¶ Now loke thou whether hit had ben gretter harme of thy
 broders deth or els to haue suffred her to haue lost her mayden-
 hode /

¶ Thenne asked he hym hafte
 thou herd the tokens of thy dreame the whiche I haue told to 20
 yow / Ye forsothe sayd fyre Bors / alle youre expofycyon and
 declarynge of my dreame I haue wel vnderstande and herd /
 Thenne said the man in this black clothyng / thenne is hit in
 thy defaute yf fyre Launcelot thy cofyn dye / ¶ Syre said bors
 that were me lothe / for wete ye wel there is no thyng in the 25
 world but I had leuer doo hit than to see my lord fyre laun-
 celot du lake to dye in my defaute

Chese ye now the one or the other said the good man / And
 thenne he led fyre Bors in to an hyghe Toure / and there he
 fonde knyghtes and ladyes tho ladyes sayde he was wel 30
 come / and soo they vnarmed hym / ¶ And whanne he was in
 his dobblet / men broughte hym a mantel furred with ermyne
 and putte hit aboute hym / and thenne they made hym suche che-
 re that he hadde forgotten alle his sorowe and anguysshe /
 and only sette his herte in these delytes and deyntees / & tooke 35
 noo thoughte more for his broder fyre Lyonel neyther of fyre
 Launcelot du lake his cofyn / And anone came oute of a ch-
 amber to hym the fayrest lady that euer he sawe & more rycher

byfene than euer he fawe Quene Gueneuer or ony other estat
 Lo fayd they fyre Bors here is the lady vnto whome we owe
 alle oure feruyfe / and I trowe fhe be the rycheft lady and the
 fayreft of alle the world / and the whiche loueth yow beft abo-
 5 ue alle other knyghtes / for fhe wille haue no knyght but yow
 And whanne he vnderftood that langage he was abaffhed /
 Not for thenne fhe falewed hym / and he her / and thenne they
 fatte doune to gyders and fpak of many thynges / in foo moche
 that fhe befoughte hym to be her loue / for fhe had loued hym a-
 10 bone alle erthely men / and fhe fhold make hym rycher than e-
 uer was man of his age / ¶ Whanne Bors vnderftood her
 wordes / he was ryght euyl at eafe / whiche in no maner wold
 not breke chaftyte / foo wyft not he how to anfuer her /

¶ Capitulum xij

A Llas fayd fhe Bors fhalle ye not doo my wylle / Ma-
 15 dame faid Bors / there is no lady in this world whos
 wylle I wylle fulfyll as of this thyng / for my broder lyeth
 dede whiche was flayne ryght late / A Bors fayd fhe I haue
 loued yow longe for the grete beaute I haue fene in yow / and
 the grete hardynes that I haue herd of yow that nedes ye muft
 20 lye by me this nyghte / & therfor I praye yow graunte it me /
 ¶ Truly fayd he I fhalle not doo hit in no maner wyfe / then-
 ne fhe made hym fuche forowe as though fhe wold haue dyed/
 wel Bors fayd fhe vnto this haue ye broughte me nyghe to
 myn ende / And there with fhe took hym by the hand / & badde
 25 hym behold her / and ye fhal fee how I fhalle dye for your lo-
 ue / A fayd thenne he that fhalle I neuer fee / Thenne fhe depar-
 ted and wente in to an hyhe batilment / and led with her
 twelue gentylwymmen / and whan they were aboute one of the
 gentylwymmen cryed and fayd ¶ A fyr Bors gentil kny-
 30 ghte haue mercy on vs all / and fuffre my lady to haue her wil
 And yf ye doo not we muft fuffre deth with oure lady for to
 falle doune of thys hyhe towre / And yf ye fuffre vs thus to
 dye for foo lytel a thyng / alle ladyes and gentylwymmen
 wylle faye of you difhonour / ¶ Thenne loked he vpward

they fered alle ladyes of grete estate and rychely and well
 byfene / thenne had he of hem grete pyte / not for that he was vn-
 counceiled in hym self that leuer he had they alle had lofte
 their foules than he his / and with that they felle adoune alle
 at ones to the erthe / And whan he sawe that / he was al a- 5
 baffhed / and had therof grete merueylle / with that he bleffyd
 his body and his vyfage / And anone he herd a grete noyse &
 a grete crye as though alle the fendes of helle had ben aboute
 hym / and there with he sawe neyther toure ne lady ne gentyl-
 woman nor no chappel where he broughte his broder to / 10
 Thenne helde he vp bothe his handes to the heuen and sayd / fa-
 yre fader god I am greuoufly escaped / and thenne he tooke
 his armes and his hors and rode on his way / Thenne he herde
 a clok fmyte on his ryght hand / and thydder he came to an
 Abbay on his ryght hand clofyd with hyhe walles / and there 15
 was lete in / thenne they supposyd that he was one of the quest
 of the Sancgreal / So they ledde hym in to a chamber and vn-
 armed hym / Syrs sayd fyr Bors yf there be ony holy man in
 this hows / I pray yow lete me speke with hym / Thenne one
 of hem ledde hym vnto the Abbot whiche was in a Chappel / 20
 And thenne fyr Bors falewed hym / and he hym ageyne / fir
 said Bors I am a knyght erraunt / and told hym all the ad-
 uenture whiche he had fene / Sir knyght sayd the Abbot I
 wote not what ye be / for I wende neuer that a knyght of yo-
 ur age myghte haue ben soo strong in the grace of our lord Ihe- 25
 fu Cryft / Not for thenne ye shall go vnto your rest / for I wyll
 not counceyle yow this day / hit is to late / and to morowe I
 fhalle counceyle yow as I can

¶ Capitulum xiiij

ANd that nyghte was fyre Bors ferued rychely / and
 on the morne erly he herd masse / and the Abbot came 30
 to hym / and bad hym good morow / and Bors to hym
 ageyne / And thēne he told hym he was a felawe of the quest
 of the Sancgreal / and how he had charge of the holy man to
 ete brede and water / ¶ Thenne oure lord Ihesus Cryfte
 fhewed hym vnto yow in the lykenes of a fowle that suffred 35

grete anguyfſhe for vs fyn he was putte vpon the croſſe / and
bledde his herte blood for mankynde / there was the token and
the lykenes of the Sancgreal that appiered afore yow / for the
blood that the grete foule bled reuyued the chyckens from deth
5 to lyf / And by the bare tree is betokened the world whych is
naked and withoute fruyte but yf hit come of oure lord / Al-
ſo the lady for whome ye fought for and kyng Anyaus whi-
che was lord there to fore betokeneth Iheſu Cryſte / whiche is
kynge of the world / and that he foughte with the champyon
10 for the lady / this hit betokeneth / for whanne he took the bata-
ille for the lady / by her ſhall ye vnderſtande the newe lawe of
Iheſu Cryſt and holy chirche / and by the other lady ye ſhalle
vnderſtande the old lawe and the fende whiche al day werrith
ageynſt holy chirche / therfor ye dyd your bataille with ryghte
15 For ye be Iheſu Cryſtes knyghtes / therfor ye oughte to be de-
fenders of holy chirche / And by the black byrd myghte ye vn-
derſtande holy chirche whiche ſayth I am blak / but he is faire
And by the whyte byrd myghte men vnderſtande the fende / &
I ſhalle telle yow how the ſwan is whyte withoute forth and
20 blak within / hit is ypocryfy whiche is withoute yelowre or pa-
le / and ſemeth withoute forth the ſeruauntes of Iheſu Cryſte
but they ben within ſoo horryble of fylthe and fynne and be-
gyle the world euylle / Alſo whanne the fende appiered to the
in lykenes of a man of relygyon and blamyd the that thow
25 leſte thy broder / For a lady ſoo ledde the where thow ſemyd thy
broder was ſlayne / but he is yet on lyue / and alle was for to
putte the in errour and brynge the vnto wanhope and lecher-
ry / for he knewe thou were tendyr herted / & all was / for thou
ſholdeſt not fynde the bleſſid aduenture of the Sancgreal / and
30 the thyrdde foule betokeneth the ſtronge bataille ageynſt the fa-
ir ladyes whiche were alle deuyls / Alſo the drye tree and the
whyte lylle the drye tree bitokeneth thy broder Lyonel whiche
is drye withoute vertue / and therefore many men oughte to
calle hym the rotten tree and the worme eten tree / for he is a
35 murtherer and doth contrary to the ordre of knyghthode / And
the two whyte floures fygnyfyen two maydens / the one is a
knyght whiche was wounded the other day / and the other is
the gentylwoman whiche ye reſcowed and why the other flo-

ure drewe nyghe the other / that was the knyghte which wold
 haue defowled her and hym felf bothe / and fyr Bors ye had
 ben a grete foole and in grete perylle for to haue fene tho two
 floures peryffhe for to focoure the roten tree / for and they had
 synned to gyder they had ben dampned / and for that ye re- 5
 scowed hem bothe / men myghte calle yow a veray knyghte and
 seruaunt of Ihesu Cryfte /

¶ Capitulum xiiii

T Henne wente fir Bors from thens and commaunded
 the Abbot vnto god / And thenne he rode alle that day
 and herberowed with an old lady / And on the morne he ro- 10
 de to a Castel in a valey / and there he mette with a yoman go-
 ynge a grete paas toward a foreste / Saye me sayd fyre Bors
 canst thou telle me of ony aduenture / Syre sayd he / here shal
 be vnder this Castle a grete and a merueyllous turnement /
 of what folkes shal hit be sayd fyr Bors / The erle of playns 15
 shal be in the one party / & the ladyes neuw of Heruyn on the
 other party / thenne bors thouzt to be there yf he myzt mete with
 his broder fyr Lyonel or ony other of his felaushyp / whyche
 were in the quest of the Sancgreal / And thenne he torned to
 an hermytage that was in the entre of the foreste / And when 20
 he was come thyder / he fonde there fyr Lyonel his broder whi-
 che sat al armed at the entre of the Chappel dore for to abyde
 there herberowe tyl on the morn that the turnement shalle be /
 And whanne fir Bors sawe hym / he had grete Ioye of hym /
 that it were merueil to telle of hys Ioye / And thenne he a- 25
 lyghte of his hors / and sayd fair swete broder whanne cam ye
 hydder / Anone as Lyonel sawe hym he said ¶ A Bors ye
 maye not make none auant / but as for you I myzt haue ben
 slayn whan ye sawe two knyghtes ledyng me away betyng me
 ye lefte me for to focoure a gentilwoman / and suffred me in pe- 30
 rylle of deth / for neuer erst ne dyd no broder to another so gre-
 te an vntrouthe / And for that myfdede now I ensure you but
 deth / for wel haue ye deserued it / therfore kepe the from henffor-
 ward / and that shal ye fynde as soone as I am armed / whan
 fir Bors vnderstood his broders wrath / he knelyd doune to 35

the erthe / and cryed hym mercy / holdyng vp both his handes
 and prayd hym to forgyue hym his euyl wylle / Nay sayd
 Lyonel that shalle neuer be and I maye haue the hyher hand
 that I make myn auowe to god / thow shalt haue dethe for it
 5 for it were pyte ye lyued ony lenger / Ryghte foo he wente in
 and took his harneis and mounted vpon his hors / and cam
 to fore hym and sayd / Bors kepe the from me / for I shall do
 to the as I wold to a felon or a traytour / for ye be the vntrueft
 knyght that euer came oute of foo worthy an hows / as was
 10 kynge Bors de ganys / whiche was oure fader / therfore starte
 vpon thy hors / and foo shalle ye be moost at your auantage
 And but yf ye wylle / I wille renne vpon yow there as ye
 stande vpon foote / and foo the shame shalle be myn / and the
 harme yours / but of that shame ne reke I noughte / whan fyr
 15 Bors sawe that he must fyghte with his broder or els to dye/
 he nyft what to doo / thenne his herte counceyled hym not therto
 in as moche as Lyonel was borne or he / wherfor he ought to be-
 re hym reuerence / yet kneled he doune afore Lyonels hors feet/
 and sayd fair swete broder haue mercy vpon me / and fle me
 20 not / and haue in remembraunce the grete loue whiche oughte to
 be bitwene vs tweyne / what fyr Bors sayd to Lyonel he ro-
 ughte not / for the fende had broughte hym in fuche a wyl that
 he shold flee hym / Thenne whanne Lyonel sawe he wold none
 other / and that he wold not haue ryfen to gyue hym bataille/
 25 he raffhed ouer hym so that he smote Bors with his hors feete
 vpward to the erthe / and hurte hym so fore that he swounded
 of distresse / the whiche he felte in hym self to haue dyed with-
 oute confession / Soo whanne Lyonel sawe this / he alyghte of
 his hors to haue smyten of his hede / And foo he toke hym by
 30 the helme / and wold haue rente hit from his heed / ¶ Thenne
 came the heremyte rennyng vnto hym whiche was a good man
 and of grete age / and wel had herd alle the wordes that we-
 re bitwene them / and foo felle doune vpon fyre Bors

¶ Capitulum xv

35 **T**henne he sayd to Lyonel A gentyl knyghte haue mer-
 cy vpon me and on thy broder / for yf thow flee hym /
 [leaf 342 verso]

thow shalte be dede of fynne / and that were sorouful / for he is
 one of the worthyest knyghtes of the world / and of the best
 condycyons / Soo god me help sayd Lyonel fyr preest / but yf
 ye flee from hym I shall flee yow / and he shalle neuer the fo-
 oner be quyte / Certes sayd the good man I haue leuer ye flee 5
 me than hym / for my dethe shalle not be grete harme not halfe
 foo moche as of his / wel sayd Lyonel I am greed / and fette
 his hand to his sward and smote hym foo hard that his he-
 de yede bakward / Not for that he restrayned hym of his euyl
 wylle / but took his broder by the helme and vnaced hit to ha- 10
 ue stryken of his hede / and had slayn hym withoute fayle but
 foo it happed Colgreuaunce a felawe of the round table cam
 at that tyme thyder as oure lordes wylle was / And whanne
 he sawe the good man slayne he merueylled moche what it
 myght be / And thenne he beheld Lyonel wold haue slayne 15
 his broder / and knewe fyre Bors whiche he loued ryzt wel
 Thenne starte he doune and toke Lyonel by the sholders and
 drewe hym strongly abak from Bors / and sayd Lyonel wylle
 ye flee your broder the worthyest knyghte of the world one / &
 that shold noo good man suffer / why sayd Lyonel / wylle ye 20
 lette me / therfor yf ye entermete yow in this I shall flee you
 and hym after / why sayd Colgreuaunce is this sothe that ye
 wille flee hym / flee hym wylle I sayd he / who so faye the con-
 trary / For he hath done so moche ageynst me / that he hath wel
 deserued it / and foo ranne vpon hym / and wold haue smyten 25
 hym thurgh the hede / and sir Colgreuaunce ranne betwyx them
 and sayd & ye be so hardy to do foo more we two shal medle
 to gyders / when Lyonel vnderstood his wordes / he took his sh-
 eld afore hym / and asked hym what that he was / and he told
 hym Colgreuaunce one of his felawes / Thenne Lyonel defyed 30
 hym / and gaf hym a grete stroke thurgh the helme / Thenne he
 drewe his sward / for he was a passyng good knyghte / and defend-
 ed hym ryzt manfully / foo longe dured the batail that Bors
 rose vp all anguysshly & behelde Colgreuaunce the good kny-
 ght fought with his broder for his quarel / thenne was he full 35
 fory and heuy / and thoughte yf Colgreuaunce flee hym / that
 was his broder / he sholde neuer haue loye / And yf his broder
 flew Colgreuaunce the shame shold euer be myn / Thenne wolde

he haue ryfen to haue departed them / but he had not foo moche
 myghte to stande on foote / foo he abode hym foo longe tyl Col-
 greuaunce had the werfe / for Lyonel was of grete chyualrye
 and ryghte hardy / for he had perced the hauberk and the helme
 5 that he abode but dethe / For he had lost moche of his blood that
 it was merueylle that he myghte stande vp ryghte / Thenne be-
 held he fyr Bors whiche sat dressynge hym vpward and said
 A Bors why come ye not to caste me oute of perylle of dethe
 wherin I haue put me to focoure yow whiche were ryght now
 10 nyghe the dethe / Certes said Lyonel that shall not auayle you
 for none of you shalle bere others waraunt / but that ye shalle
 dye bothe of my hand / when Bors herd that / he dyd foo moche
 he rose and putte on his helme / Thenne perceyued he fyrste the
 heremyte preest whiche was slayne / thenne made he a merueil-
 15 lous sorowe vpon hym /

¶ Capitulum xvj

THenne ofte Colgreuaunce cryed vpon fyre Bors /
 Why wylle ye lete me dye here for your sake / yf it ple-
 se yow that I dye for yow the dethe / it wille please me
 the better for to saue a worthy man / with that word fyre Ly-
 20 nel smote the helme from his hede / Thenne Colgreuaunce
 sawe that he myght not escape / thenne he sayd Fair swete Ihe-
 su that I haue mysdoo haue mercy vpon my fowle / For fuche
 sorowe that my herte suffreth for goodenes and for almes dede
 that I wold haue done here / be to me a lygement of penaunce
 25 vnto my foules helthe / At these wordes Lyonel smote hym foo
 fore that he bare hym to the erthe / foo whanne he had slayne
 Colgreuaunce / he ranne vpon his broder as a fendly man / &
 gaf hym fuche a stroke that he made hym stoupe / and he that
 was ful of humylyte prayd hym for goddes loue to leue this
 30 bataille / For and hit befelle fayre broder that I slewe yow or
 ye me / we shold be dede of that synne / ¶ Neuer god me help
 but yf I haue on yow mercy and I maye haue the better
 hand / Thenne drewe Bors his fuerd al wepynge and sayd /
 Faire brother god knoweth myn entente / A fayre broder ye
 35 haue done ful euylle this daye to flee fuche an holy preest the

whiche neuer trespast / Also ye haue slayne a gentyl knyghte
and one of oure felawes / And wel wote ye that I am not a-
ferd of yow gretely / but I drede the wrathe of god / and this
is an vnkyndely werre / therefore god shewe myracle vpon vs
bothe / Now god haue mercy vpon me / though I defende my 5
lyf ageynst my broder / with that Bors lyfte vp his hand / &
wold haue smyten his broder /

¶ Capitulum xvij

ANd thēne he herd a voyce that sayd flee bors & touche
hym not / or els thou shalt flee hym / Ryght so alyzt
a clowde betwixe them in lykenes of a fyre and a merueyllo- 10
us flamme that bothe her two sheldes brente / ¶ Thenne were
they fore affrayed that they felle bothe to the erthe / and laye
there a grete whyle in a swoone / And whanne they came to
them self Bors sawe that his broder had no harme / thenne he
held vp bothe his handes / for he dradde god had taken venge- 15
aunce vpon hym / with that he herd a voyce saye Bors go hens
and bere thy broder noo lenger felauyhyp / but take thy way a-
none ryghte to the see / For fire Percyual abydeyth the there /
Thenne he sayd to his broder fayr swete broder forgyue me for
goddess loue alle that I haue trespassed vnto yow / Thenne he 20
anfuerd God forgyue it the and I doo gladly / So fir Bors
departed from hym and rode the nexte way to the see / And at
the last by fortune he came to an Abbay whiche was nygh the
see / That nyght Bors rested hym there / and in his slepe there
came a voice to hym & badde hym go to the see / thenne he starte 25
vp and made a fygne of the Crosse in the myddes of his for-
hede and took his harneis and made redy his hors / and mou-
ted vpon hym / And at a broken walle he rode oute / & rode soo
long tyl that he came to the see / And on the strond he fond a
shyp couerd all with whyte samyte / And he alyghte & bitoke 30
hym to Ihesu Cryst / And as soone as he entryd in to the ship
the shyp departed in to the see and wente so fast that hym se-
med the shyp wente fleyng / but hit was soone derke soo that
he myght knowe no man / and soo he slepte tyl hit was daye

Thenne he awaked and sawe in myddes of the shyp a knyzt
 lye alle armed fauf his helme / Thenne knewe he that hit was
 fyr Percyual of walys / and thenne he made of hym ryzt gre-
 te Ioye / but sir Percyual was abasshed of hym / and he asked
 5 hym what he was / A fayr fyr sayd Bors knowe ye me not /
 Certes sayd he I merueylle how ye came hyther / but yf oure
 lord broughte yow hyder hym self / thenne fyre Bors smyled
 and dyd of his helme / Thenne Percyual knewe hym / & eyther
 er made grete Ioye of other that it was merueylle to here /
 10 ¶ Thenne Bors told hym how he came in to the shyp / and
 by whoos ammonysshement / and eyther told other of theyre
 temptacyons / as ye haue herd to fore hand /
 ¶ Soo wente they douneward in the see one whyle bakward
 another whyle forward / and eueryche comforted other / and
 15 ofte were in their prayers / thenne sayd fyre Percyual we lak
 no thyng but Galahad the good knyghte

¶ And thus endeth the xvjth book whiche is of fyre Ga-
 wayne / Ector de marys / and fyre Bors de ganys and sir per-
 cyual

¶ And here foloweth the xvjth book whiche is of the no-
 ble knyghte fyre Galahad /

¶ Capitulum primum



Ow faith this story whanne Galahad had rescowed Percyual from the twenty knyghtes / he yede tho in to a waste foreste / wherin he rode many Iourneyes / and he fonde many aduentures / the whiche he brought to an ende / wherof the 5 story maketh here no mencyon / Thenne he toke his waye to the see on a daye / & hit befelle as he passed by a Castel where was a wonder turnement / but they withoute had done soo moche / that they within were putte to the werse / yet were they wythin good knyghtes ynouȝ / whanne Galahad sawe that tho with- 10 in were at soo grete a meschyef that men slewe hem att the entre of the Castel / thenne he thoughte to helpe hem / and putte a spere forth / and smote the fyrste that he flay to the erthe / and the spere brak to pyeces / thenne he drewe his fuerd / and smote there as they were thyckest / and so he dyd wonderful dedes of 15 armes / that alle they merueylled / thenne hit happed that Gawayne and sir Ector de marys were with the knyghtes withoute / But whanne they aspyed the whyte shelde with the red Crosse / the one sayd to the other yonder is the good knyght sir Galahad the haute prynce / Now he shold be a grete foole / 20 whiche shold mete with hym to fyghte / Soo by adventure he came by sire Gawayne and he smote hym soo hard that he claf his helme and the coyfe of yron vnto his hede / so that Gawayn felle to the erthe / but the stroke was soo grete that it slented doune to the erthe and carfe the hors sholder in two / Whan Ec- 25 tor sawe Gawayne doune he drewe hym asyde / and thoughte it no wysedome for to abyde hym / and also for naturel loue that he was his vnkel / Thus thurgh his grete hardynesse he bete abak alle the knyghtes withoute / And thenne they within cam oute and chaced hem alle aboute / But whanne Galahad sawe 30 ther wold none torne ageyne / he stale away pryuely so that none wyft where he was bicomme / Now by my hede sayd Gawayn to Ector now are the wonders true that were sayd of Launcelot du lake / that the sward whiche stak in the stone shold gyue me suche a buffet þat I wold not haue it for the best Castell 35 in this world / and sothely now hit is preued trewe for neuer

ere had I fuche a froke of mans hand / Sir fayd Ector me femeth your queft is done / and yours is not done fayd Gawayn but myn is done I fhalle feke noo ferther / Thenne Gawayne was borne in to a Caftel and vnarmed hym / and leyd
 5 hym in a ryche bedde / and a leche fonde that he myght lyue / & to be hole within a moneth / Thus Gawayne and Ector abode to gyder / For fyre Ector wold not away til Gawayne were hole / & the good knyzt Galahad rode fo long tyll he came that nyghte to the Caftel of Carboneck / & hit befelle hym thus / that
 10 he was benygthed in an hermytage / Soo the good man was fayne whan he fawe he was a knyght erraunt / tho whan they were at reft / ther cam a gentylwoman knockyng at the dore / & called Galahad / and foo the good man cam to the dore to wete what fhe wold / Thenne fhe called the heremyte fyre Vlfyn
 15 I am a gentylwoman that wold fpeke with the knyght whiche is with yow / Thenne the good man awaked Galahad / & badde hym aryfe and fpeke with a gentylwoman that femeth hath grete nede of yow / Thenne Galahad wente to her & asked her what fhe wold / Galahad fayd fhe I will that ye arme you
 20 and moute vpon your hors and folowe me / for I fhall shewe yow within thefe thre dayes the hyeft aduenture that euer ony knyght fawe / Anone Galahad armed hym and took his hors and commaunded hym to god / and badde the gentylwoman go and he wold folowe there as fhe lyked /

¶ Capitulum ij

25 **S**oo fhe rode as faft as her palfrey myght bere her tylle that fhe came to the fee / the whiche was called Collybe And at the nyghte they came vnto a Caftel in a valeye clofed with a rennyng water and with ftronge walles and hyhe / & foo fhe entred in to the Caftel with Galahad and there had he
 30 grete chere for the lady of that Caftel was the damoyfels lady / foo whan he was vnarmed / thenne faid the damoyfel madame fhalle we abyde here all this day / Nay fayd fhe but tylle he hath dynded and tyl he hath flepte a lytyl / fo he ete and flepte a whyle tyl that the mayde called hym / and armed hym by

torche lyght / And whan the mayde was horfed and he bothe
 the lady took Galahad a fayr child and ryche / and so they
 departed from the Castel tyl they came to the see fyde / & there
 they fond the shyp where Bors and Percyual were in / the
 whiche cryed on the shyps bord fir Galahad ye be welcome / 5
 we haue abyden yow longe / And whan he herd them / he asked
 them what they were / Sir said she leue your hors here / and I
 shall leue myn and toke her fadels and her brydels with them
 and made a croffe on them / and soo entryd in to the shyp / and
 the two knyghtes receyued hem bothe with grete Ioye / and e- 10
 ueryche knewe other / and soo the wynde aroos / and drofe hem
 thurgh the see in a merueyllous place / And within a whyle
 it dawyd / Thenne dyd Galahad of his helme & his fuerd / &
 asked of his felawes from whens cam that fayre shyp / Tru-
 ly sayd they ye wote as wel as we but of goddes grace / and 15
 thenne they told eueryche to other of alle theire hard aduen-
 tures / and of her grete temptacyons / truly sayd Galahad ye
 are moche bounden to god for ye haue escaped grete aduentures
 and had not the gentilwoman ben / I had not comen here / for
 as for yow I wend neuer to haue fond yow in these straun- 20
 ge countreyes / A Galahad faide Bors yf launcelot your fader
 were here / thenne were we wel at ease / for thenne me femed we
 fayled no thyng / That may not be sayde Galahad / but yf it
 pleasyd oure lorde / By thenne the shyp wente fro the londe of
 Logrys / and by aduenture it arryued vp betwix two roches 25
 passyng grete and merueyllous / but there they myght not lon-
 de / for there was a swalowe of the see / sauf there was another
 ship / and vpon it they myght goo withoute daunger / Goo we
 thyder sayd the gentylwoman / and there shalle we see aduen-
 tures / for soo is oure lordes wylle / ¶ And whanne they came 30
 thyder / they fond the ship ryche ynou3 / but they fond neyther
 man ne woman therin / But they fonde in the ende of the ship
 two fayre letters wryten whiche sayd a dredeful word and
 a merueyllous / Thow man whiche shalle entre in to this shyp
 beware thou be in stedfast bileue for I am feith & therfor beware 35
 hou thou entrest / for & thou faile I shal not helpe the / thenne
 faide the gētilwoman Percyual wote ye what I am / Certes fa-
 id nay to my wetyng / ¶ Wete you wel sayd she that I

am thy syfter / whiche am doughter of kynge Pellenore / And
 therefore wete ye wel ye are the man in the world that I moost
 loue / And yf ye be not in parfyte byleue of Ihesu Cryft entre
 not in no maner of wyfe / for thenne shold ye peryfhe the shyp
 5 for he is foo parfyte / he wyll suffre no synner in hym / whanne
 Percyual vnderstode that she was his veray syfter / he was in-
 wardly glad and sayd / faire syfter I shalle entre therin / For
 yf I be a mys creature or an vntrue knyghte there shalle I pe-
 ryfhe

¶ Capitulum Tercium

10 **I**N the meane whyle Galahad bleffed hym / & entrid
 therin / and thenne next the gentylwoman / & thenne fir
 Bors & fir Percyual / And whan they were in / it was so mer-
 ueyllous fayre and ryche that they merueylled / & in myddes
 of the shyp was a fayr bedde / & Galahad wente therto / & fond
 15 there a crowne of fylke / And at the feet was a swerd ryche &
 fayre / and hit was drawen oute of the shethe half a foot and
 more / and the fuerd was of dyuerse facyons / and the pomel
 was of stone / and there was in hym alle manere of colours
 that ony man myght fynde / and eueryche of the colours hadde
 20 dyuerse vertues / and the skalys of the hafte were of two ryb-
 bes of dyuerse beestes / the one beest was a serpent whiche was
 conuerfaunt in Calydone / and is called the serpent of the fend
 And the bone of hym is of fuche a vertu that there is no ha-
 nd that handeleth hym shalle neuer be very nor hurte / and the
 25 other beest is a fyfhe which is not ryght grete / and haunteth
 the flood of Euftrate / and that fyfhe is called Ertanax / and
 his bones be of fuche a maner of kynde that who that handeleth
 hem / shalle haue soo moche wille that he shalle neuer be very
 and he shalle not thynke on Ioye nor forow that he hath had
 30 But only that thyng that he beholdeth before hym / And as
 for this fuerd there shalle neuer man begrype hym at the han-
 dels but one / but he shalle passe alle other / In the name of god
 said Percyual I shall affaye to handle hit / Soo he sette his
 hand to the fuerd / but he myghte not begrype hit / by my feyth
 35 said he now haue I fayled / Bors set his hand therto & fayled
 Thenne Galahad beheld the fuerd and sawe letters lyke blood
 that sayd / lete see who shall affaye to drawe me oute of my



shethe / but yf he be more hardyer than ony other / & who that dra-
 weth me / wete ye wel that he shalle neuer fayle of shame of
 his body or to be wounded to the dethe / By my feyth said ga-
 lahad I wold drawe this fuerd oute of the shethe / but the
 offendynge is soo grete that I shalle not sette my hand therto 5
 Now firs said the gentilwoman wete ye wel that the drawy-
 nge of this fuerd is warned to alle men sauf al only to yow
 Also this shyp aryued in the realme of Logrys / and that ty-
 me was dedely werre bytwene kynge labor whiche was fader
 vnto the maymed kynge and kynge Hurlame whiche was a 10
 Sarafyn / But thenne was he newly crystend / soo that men
 helde hym afterward one of the wyttiest men of the world / &
 soo vpon a day hit befelle that kynge Labor and kynge Hur-
 lame had assembled their folke vpon the see where this shyp
 was aryued / and there kyng Hurlame was discomfyte / and 15
 his men slayne / and he was aferd to be dede / and fled to his
 shyp and there he fond this fuerd and drewe hit / and cam oute
 and fond kyng Labor the man in the world of al crystendom
 in whome was thenne the grettest feythe / ¶ And when kynge
 Hurlame sawe kynge Labor he dreffid this fuerd / and smote 20
 hym vpon the helme soo hard that he clafe hym / and his hors
 to the erthe with the fyrst stroke of his fuerd / and hit was in
 the realme of Logrys / and soo bifelle grete pestylence & grete
 harme to both Realmes / for fythen encrecyd neyther corne ne
 graffe nor wel nyghe no fruyte / ne in the water was no fyfthe 25
 werfor men callen hit the landes of the two marches the wast
 land / for that dolorous stroke / And when kynge Hurlame sa-
 we this fuerd soo keruyng / he torned ageyne to fetch the scau-
 bard / And soo came in to this shyp and entred and putt vp
 the fuerd in the shethe / And as soone as he had done it / he felle 30
 doune dede afore the bedde / Thus was the fwerd preued that
 none ne drewe it but he were dede or maymed / So laye he ther
 tyl a mayden cam in to the shyp / and cast hym oute / for there
 was no man so hardy of the world to entre in to shyp that for
 the defence

35

¶ Capitulum quartum /

ANd thenne beheld they the scaubard / hit femed to be
 of a serpentis skynne / And theron were letters of go-
 ld and fyluer / and the gyrdel was but pourely to co-
 me to / and not able to susteyne suche a ryche fuerd / and the let-
 5 ters sayd / he whiche shal welde me oughte to be more harder
 than any other yf he bere me as truly as me oughte to be born
 For the body of hym whiche I oughte to hange by he shal not
 be shamed in no place whyle he is gyrd with this gyrdel / nor
 neuer none be soo hardy to doo away this gyrdel / for it oughte
 10 not be done away but by the handes of a mayde / and that she be
 a kynges doughter and quenes / and she must be a mayde alle
 the dayes of her lyf / bothe in wylle and in dede / And yf she
 breke her vyrgynte she shalle dye the moost vylaynous dethe
 that euer dyd ony woman / Sir said Percyual torne this fuerd
 15 that we may see what is on the other syde / & hit was reed as
 blood with blak letters as ony cole / whiche sayd / he that shal
 prayse me moost / moost shalle he fynde me to blame at a grete
 nede and to whome I shold be moost debonair shall I be most
 felon / and that shalle be at one tyme / Faire broder sayd she to
 20 Percyual it befelle after a fourty yere after the passion of Ihe-
 su Cryst that Nacyen thy broder in lawe of kyng Mordrayns
 was boren in to a Towne more than xiiij dayes Iourneye from
 his countrey by the commaundement of our lord in to an yle /
 in to the partyes of the west that men clepyd the yle of Tur-
 25 naunce / Soo befelle hit that he fond this shyp at the entre of a
 roche / and he fond the bedde and his fuerd as we haue herd
 now / Not for thenne he had not soo moche hardyneffe to drawe
 hit / and there he dwellid an eyght dayes / and at the nynythe
 day there felle a grete wynde whiche departed hym out of the
 30 yle and brought hym to another yle by a roche / and there he
 fond the gretteft gyaunt that euer man myghte see / therwith
 cam that horryble gyaunt to flee hym / and thenne he loked a-
 boute hym aad myghde not flee / and he had no thyng to de-
 fende hym with / Soo he ranne to his fuerd / and when he sawe
 35 hit naked / he prayfed it moche / and thenne he shoke it / and ther-
 with he brak it in the myddes A said Nacyen the thyng that I
 moost prayfed ought I now moost to blame / and ther with he
 threwe the pyeces of his fuerd ouer his bedde / And after he

lepte ouer the borde to fyghte with we gyaunt / and flewe hym
 And anone he entryd in to the fhyp ageyne / and the wynde a-
 rose / and drofe hym thurgh the see / that by aduenture he came
 to another fhyp where kynge Mordrayns was / whiche hadde
 ben tempted ful euyl with a fende in the porte of peryllous ro- 5
 che / And whanne that one sawe the other / they made grete Io-
 ye of other / and eyther told other of their aduenture / & how
 the fwerd fayled hym at his moost nede / Whanne Mordra-
 yns sawe the fuerd he prayfed hit moche / but the brekyng was
 not to doo / but by wyckednes of thy felf ward / for thow arte 10
 in somme fynne / and there he took the fuerd / and sette the pe-
 cys to gyders / and they foudered as fayr as euer they were
 to fore / and there putte he the fwerd in the shethe / and leyd it
 doune on the bedde / Thenne herd they a voyce that fayd go out
 of this ship a lytel whyle / and entre in to the other for drede 15
 ye falle in dedely fynne / for and ye be fonde in dedely fynne ye
 maye not escape but peryfhe / and soo they wente in to the o-
 ther fhyp / And as Nacyen wente ouer the borde he was fmy-
 ten with a fwerd on the ryghte foote that he felle doune nose-
 lyngge to the fhyps bord / and there withe he fayd O god how 20
 am I hurte / and thenne there came a voyce and fayd / take
 thow that for thy forfette that thow dydest in drawyngge of
 this fuerd / therfor thow receyuest a wounde / for thow were ne-
 uer worthy to handel it / the wrytyngge maketh mencyon / In
 the name of god said galahad ye ar ryzt wyse of these werkes 25

¶ Capitulum v

EYr fayd she there was a kynge that hyghte Pelles the
 maymed kynge / And whyle he myghte ryde / he sup-
 ported moche crystendome and holy chirche / Soo vpon a daye
 he hunted in a woode of his whiche lafted vnto the see / and
 at the last he losfe his houndes / and his knyghtes / fauf only 30
 one / and there he and his knyghte wente tyl that they cam to-
 ward Irland / and there he fonde the fhyp / And whanne he sa-
 we the letters and vnderstood them / yet he entryd / for he was
 ryghte parfytte of his lyf / but his knyghte had none hardynes
 to entre & ther fonde he this fuerd & drewe it oute as moche as 35
 ye maye see / Soo there with entryd a spere where with he was

fmyte hym thurgh bothe the thyes / and neuer fythe myghte
 he be helyd ne nought shall to fore we come to hym / Thus faid
 she was not kynge Pelles your graunte fir maymed for his
 hardyneffe / In the name of god damoyfel fayd Galahad / fo
 5 they wente toward the bedde to behold al aboute hit / and aboute
 the hede ther henge two fwerdes / Also there were two spyndels
 whiche were as whyte as ony snowe / and other that were as
 reed as blood / and other aboute grene as ony emeraude / of the-
 fe thre colours were the spyndels and of naturel coloure within
 10 and withoute ony payntyng / These spyndels fayd the damoy-
 fel were whan synful Eue came to gadre fruyte / for whiche A-
 dam and she were putte oute of paradyse / she tooke with her
 the bough on whiche the Appel henge on / Thenne perceyued she
 that the braunche was fayre and grene / and she remembryd her
 15 the losse whiche came fro the tree / Thenne she thoughte to kepe
 the braunche as longe as she myghte / And for she had no cofer
 to kepe hit in / she put it in the erthe / Soo by the wylle of our
 lord the braunche grewe to a grete tree within a lytil whyle / &
 was as whyte as ony snowe / braüches / bowes / and leues that
 20 was a token a mayden planted hit / But after god came to
 Adam and bad hym knowe his wyf flesshly as nature requy-
 red / Soo lay Adam with his wyf vnder the same tree / and a-
 none the tree whiche was whyte and ful grene as ony grasse
 and alle that came oute of hit / and in the same tyme that they
 25 medled to gyders there was Abel begoten / thus was the tree
 longe of grene colour / And so it befelle many dayes after / vn-
 der the same tree Caym slewe Abel / wherof befelle grete merueil
 For anone as Abel had receyued the dethe vnder the grene tree
 he lost the grene colour and becam reed and that was in toke-
 30 nyng of the blood / & anone alle the plantes dyed therof / but
 the tree grewe and waxed merueylously fayre / & hit was the
 fayrest tree & the moost delectable that ony man myght beholde
 and see and so dyd the plantes that grewe out of it tofore that
 Abel was slayne vnder it / Soo longe dured the tree tyl that
 35 Salamon kynge Dauyds sone regned / and helde the londe af-
 ter his fader / This Salamon was wyse and knewe alle the
 vertues of stones and trees / and soo he knewe the course of
 the sterres and many other dyuerse thynges

This Salamon had an euylle wyfe / where thurgh he wende
 that there had ben no good woman / and foo he despyfed hem
 in his bookes / Soo anfuerd a voyce hym ones / Salamon / yf
 heuynes come to a man by a woman / ne reke thow neuer / For
 yet fhalle there come a woman wherof there fhalle come gretter 5
 Ioye to man an honderd tymes more than this heuynesse ge-
 ueth forowe / and that woman fhalle be borne of thy lygnage /
 Tho whan Salamon herd these wordes / he held hym self but a
 foole / & the trouthe he perceyued by old bookes / Also the ho-
 ly ghooft shewed hym the comynge of the glorious vyrgyne 10
 marye / Thenne asked he of the voyce / yf hit shold be in the ye-
 rde of his lygnage / Nay sayd the voyce but there fhalle come a
 man whiche fhalle be a mayde / and the last of your blood / &
 he fhalle be as good a knyght as duke Iofue / thy broder in
 lawe

15

¶ Capitulum vi

Now haue I certefyed the of that thow stodeft in do-
 ubte / thenne was Salamon glad that there shold co-
 me ony fuche of his lygnage / but euer he merueyllled &
 studyed who that shold be / And what his name myghte be /
 his wyf perceyued that he studyed and thoughte she wolde 20
 knowe it at some seafon / and so she wayted her tyme / & asked
 of hym the caufe of his studyenge / and there he told her alle to
 gyder how the voyce tolde hym / Wel sayd she / I fhalle lete ma-
 ke a shyp of the best wood and moost durable that men maye
 fynde / Soo Salamon sente for alle the Carpenters of the lond 25
 and the best / And whan they had made the shyp / the lady fa-
 yd to Salamon / fyr sayd she / fyn hit is foo that this knyght
 ouzte to passe all knyghtes of cheualry whiche haue ben to fo-
 re hym / & fhall come after hym / More ouer I fhalle telle yow
 sayd she ye fhalle goo in to oure lordes temple where is kynge 30
 Dauyds fuerd your fader / the whiche is the merueyllouft and
 the sharpest that euer was taken in ony knyghtes hand / ther-
 fore take that / and take of the pomel / and therto make ye a
 pomel of precyous stones that it be foo subtylly made that noo
 man perceyue it / but that they be al one / & after make there an 35
 hylte foo merueylloufly and wonderly that noo man maye

knowe hit / And after make a merueyllous sheth / And whan
ye haue made alle this / I shalle lete make a gyrdel ther to fu-
che as shalle please me / Alle this kynge Salamon dyd lete ma-
ke as she deuyfed / bothe the shyp and alle the remenaunt / And
5 whan the ship was redy in the see to fayle / the lady lete make a
grete bedde and merueyllous ryche / and fette her vpon the bed-
des hede couerd with fylke / and leyd the fuerd at the feete / &
the gyrdels were of hempe / and there with the kynge was an-
gry / Syr wete ye wel sayd she that I haue none foo hyghe a
10 thyng whiche were worthy to susteyne foo hyhe a fuerd / and a
mayde shal brynge other knyghtes ther to / but I wote not
whanne hit shalle be ne what tyme / and there she lete make a
couerynge to the shyp of clothe of fylke that shold neuer rote
for no maner of weder / yet went that lady and maade a Car-
15 penter to come to the tree whiche Abel was slayne vnder / Now
sayd she carue me oute of this tree as moche woode as wylle
make me a spyndyl / A madame sayd he / this is the tree / the
whiche our fyrst moder planted / Do hit sayd she or els I shall
destroye the / Anone as he beganne to werke / ther cam out drop-
20 pes of blood / and thenne wold he haue leste / but she wold not
suffre hym // and foo he tooke aweye as moche wood as myzte
make a spyndyl / and foo she made hym to take as moche of
the grene tree and of the whyte tree / And whan these thre sp-
pyndels were shapen / she made hem to be fastned vpon the felar
25 of the bedde / whanne Salamone sawe this / he sayd to his wyf
ye haue done merueyllously / for though alle the world were
here ryght now / he coude not deuyse wherfor alle this was ma-
de / but oure lord hym self / and thow that hast done hit / wotest
not what it shal betoken / Now late hit be sayd she / for ye shal
30 here tydynges sooner than ye wene /

¶ Now shalle ye here a wonderful tale of kyng Sa-
lamon and his wyf

¶ Capitulum viij

That nyght lay Salamon bifore the ship with lytel fe-
lauship / And whan he was on slepe / hym thoughte /
[leaf 349 verso]

there come from heuen a grete company of angels and alyghte
 in to the ship and took water whiche was broughte by an an-
 gel in a vessell of syluer / and sprete alle the shyp / And af-
 ter he came to the fuerd and drewe letters on the hylte / And
 after wente to the shyps borde / and wrote there other letters / 5
 whiche sayd thou man that wylt entre within me / beware that
 thou be ful within the feythe / for I ne am but feythe & byle-
 ue / whanne Salamon aspyed these letters he was abaffhed/
 soo that he durste not entre / and soo drewe hym abak / and the
 shyp was anone shouen in the see / and he wente soo faste that 10
 he lost fyghte of hym within a lytyl whyle / And thenne a ly-
 tyl voyce said / Salamon / the last knyghte of thy lygnage sh-
 alle reste in this bedde / Thenne wente Salamon and awaked
 his wyf / and told her of the aduentures of the shyp /

¶ Now sayth thystory that a grete whyle the thre felawes bi- 15
 held the bedde / and the thre spyndels / than they were at cer-
 tayne that they were of naturel colours withoute payntyng /
 Thenne they lefte vp a clothe whiche was aboue the ground &
 there fond a ryche purse by femynge / and Percyuale took hit/
 And fonde therin a wrytte / & soo he redde hit / and deuysed the 20
 maner of the spyndels and of the shyp whens hit came / and
 by whome it was made / Now sayd Galahad where shal we
 fynde the gentylwoman / that shalle make newe gyrdels to the
 fuerd / Fair fyre sayd Percyuals fyfter / desmaye yow not /
 For by the leue of god I shal lete make a gyrdel to the fuerd 25
 suche one as shalle longe therto / And thenne she opend a boxe
 and toke oute gyrdels which were femely wroughte with gol-
 den thredys / and vpon that were sette ful precyous stones &
 a ryche buckel of gold / lo lordes said she / here is a gyrdel that
 oughte to be sette aboute the fuerd / And wete ye wel the gret- 30
 test parte of this gyrdle was made of my here whiche I loued
 wel whyle that I was a woman of the world / But as so-
 one as I wyft that this aduenture was ordeyned me I clyp-
 ped of my here / and made this gyrdel in the name of god / ye
 be wel y fonde said fir Bors / for certes ye haue put vs out of 35
 grete payne wherin we shold haue entryd ne had your tydyn-
 ges ben / Thenne wente the gentylwoman and sette hit on the
 gyrdel of the fuerd / Now sayd the felaufship what is the name

of the fuerd / and what shalle we calle hit / Truly sayd she the
 name of the fuerd is the fuerd with the straunge gyrdels and
 the shethe meuer of blood / for noo man that hath blood in hym
 ne shalle neuer see the one party of the shethe whiche was ma-
 5 de of the tree of lyf / Thenne they sayd to Galahad In the na-
 me of Ihesu Cryste / and praye yow that ye gyrd you with
 this fuerd whiche hath ben defyred so moche in the Realme of
 Logrys / Now lete me begynne sayd Galahad to grype thys
 fwerd for to gyue yow courage / But wete ye wel hit longeth
 10 no more to me than it doth to yow / And thenne he gyped abo-
 ute hit with his fyngers a grete dele / And thenne she gyrte
 hym aboute the myddel with the fwerd / Now rek I not tho-
 ugh I dye / for now I hold me one of the bleffid maydens of
 the world whiche hath made the worthiest knyght of the wo-
 15 rld / Damoyfel sayd Galahad ye haue done soo moche that I
 shalle be your knyghte alle the dayes of my lyf / Thenne they
 wente from that shyp / and wente to the other / And anone the
 wynde droofe hem in to the see a grete paas but they had no vy-
 taille / but hit befelle that they came on the morne to a Castell
 20 that men calle Carteloyse / that was in the marches of Scotlād
 And whan they had passed the porte / the gentilwoman sayde
 lordes here be men aryuen that and they wyfte that ye were of
 kynge Arthurs courte / ye shold be assayed anone / Damoyfell
 sayd Galahad he that cast vs oute of the Roche shalle delyuer
 25 vs from hem

¶ Capitulum Octauum

SOo hit befelle as they spoken thus / there cam a squyer
 by them / and asked what they were / and they said they
 were of kynge Arthurs hows / is that sothe sayd he / Now by
 my hede sayd he ye be ylle arayed / and thenne torned he ageyn
 30 vnto the clyff fortresse / And within a whyle they herd an ho-
 rne blowe / Thenne a gentylwoman came to hem and asked hem
 of whens they were / and they told her / Faire lordes sayd she for
 goddes loue torne ageyne yf ye may / for ye be come vnto youre
 dethe / Nay they sayd we wille not torne ageyne / for he shalle
 35 helpe vs in whos seruyse we ben entred in / ¶ Thenne as they

stode talkynge / there came knyghtes wel armed and bad hem
 yelde them or els to dye / that yeldyng sayd they shal be noyo-
 us to yow / and there with they lete theyr horses renne / and sir
 Percyual smote the formeſt to the erthe / and took his hors / &
 mounted therupon / and the ſame dyd Galahad / Also Bors 5
 ſerued another ſoo for they had no horses in that countrey / for
 they leſte their horses whan they toke their ſhypp in other coun-
 trayes / ¶ And ſoo whan they were horſed / thenne beganne
 they to ſette vpon them / and they of the Caſtel fled in to the
 ſtronge fortrefſe / and the thre knyghtes after them in to the 10
 Caſtel / and ſoo alyghte on foote / and with their ſwerdes fle-
 we them doune and gate in to the halle / Thenne whan they be-
 held the grete multytude of peple / that they had ſlayne / they
 held them ſelf grete ſynners / Certes ſayd Bors / I wene &
 god had loued hem that we ſhold not haue had power to ha- 15
 ue ſlayne hem thus / But they haue done ſoo moche ageyn our
 lord that he wold not ſuffre hem to regne no lenger / Say ye not
 ſoo ſayd Galahad / for yf they myſdyd ageynſt god / the ven-
 geaunce is not ours / but to hym whiche hath power therof / So
 came there oute of a chamber a good man whiche was a preeſt 20
 and bare goddes body in a coupe / And whanne he ſawe hem
 whiche lay dede in the halle / he was alle abaſſhed / and Gala-
 had dyd of his helme and kneled doune / and ſoo dyd his
 two felawes / fyre ſayd they haue ye no drede of vs / For we
 ben of kynge Arthurs courte / ¶ Thenne aſked the go- 25
 od man how they were ſlayn ſo ſodenly / and they told it hym
 Truly ſayd the good man and ye myghte lyue as longe as
 the world myght endure / ne myghte ye haue done ſoo grete an
 almeſſe dede as this / Sire ſayd Galahad I repente me moch
 in as moche as they were cryſtened / Nay repente yow not ſa- 30
 yd he for they were not cryſtened / and I ſhalle telle you hou
 that I wote of this Caſtel / here was lord Erle Hernox not
 but one yere / and he had thre ſones good knyghtes of armes
 and a doughter the fayreſt gentylwoman that men knewe / ſoo
 tho thre knyghtes loued theyr ſyſter ſo fore that they brente in 35
 loue / and ſo they lay by her maulgre her hede / And for ſhe cry-
 ed to her fader / they flewe her and took their fader / and putte
 hym in pryſon / and wouDED hym nygh to the deth / but a coſyn

of hers rescowed hym / And thenne dyd they grete vntrouthe/
 they flewe clerkes and preeftes / and made bete doune chap-
 pels that oure lordes seruyse myght not be serued ne fayd / and
 this same day her fader sente to me for to be confessid & hou-
 5 feld / but fuche shame had neuer man as I had this day with
 the thre bretheren / but the erle badde me suffer / for he fayde they
 shold not longe endure / for thre seruauntes of oure lord shold
 destroye them / and now hit is brought to an ende / And by this
 maye ye wete our lord is not displeasyd with your dedes
 10 Certes sayd Galahad and hit had not pleasid our lord / neuer
 shold we haue slayne soo many men in soo lytel a whyle / &
 thenne they broughte the erle Hernox oute of pryson in to the
 myddes of the halle that knewe Galahad anone / and yet he
 sawe hym neuer afore but by reuelacyon of our lord

¶ Capitulum ix

15 **T**Henne beganne he to wepe ryght tendyrly & said long
 haue I abyden your comynge / but for goddes loue hol-
 deth me in your armes that my fowle may departe oute of my
 body in soo good a mans armes as ye be / Gladly sayd Gala-
 had / And thenne one sayd on hyghe that alle herde / Galahad/
 20 wel hast thou auenged me on goddes enemyes / Now behoueth
 the to goo to the maymed kyng as soone as thow maist / for he
 shalle receyue by the helthe whiche he hath abyden soo long / and
 ther with the fowle departed from the body / and Galahad made
 hym to be buryed as hym ought to be / Ryght soo departed the
 25 thre knyghtes and Percyuals fyfter with them / And soo they
 came in to a waste foreste / and there they sawe afore them a
 whyte herte whiche four lyons ladde / Thenne they took hem to
 affent for to folowe after / for to knowe whydder they repayred
 and soo they rode after a grete paas til that they cam to a va-
 30 leye / & ther by was an hermytage where a good man dwellid
 and the herte and the lyons entryd also / soo whanne they sa-
 we all this / they torned to the chappel / and sawe the good man
 in a relygyous wede & in the armour of our lord / for he wold
 synge masse of the holy ghooft / and soo they entryd in & herde

[leaf 351 verso]

maffe / And at the secretys of the maffe / they thre sawe the hert
 become a man / the whiche merueyled hem and sette hym vpon
 the aulter / in a ryche sege / and sawe the four lyons were ch-
 aunged / the one to the forme of a man / the other to the forme
 of a lyon / and the thyrd to an Egle / and the fourth was ch- 5
 aunged vnto an oxe / thenne toke they her sege / where the herte
 fat / and wente oute thurgh a glas wyndowe / and there was
 no thyng perysshed nor broken / and they herd a voyce say in
 fuche a maner entred the sone of god in the wombe of a mayd
 mary / whos vyrgynyte ne was perysshed ne hurte / & whanne 10
 they herd these wordes they felle doune to the erthe / and were
 astonyed / and ther with was a grete clerenes / And whanne
 they were come to their self ageyn they wente to the good man
 and prayd hym that he wold say hem trouthe / What thyng ha
 ue ye fene sayd he / & they told hym all that they had fene / A 15
 lordes sayd he ye be welcome / now wote I wel ye be the good
 knyghtes / the whiche shal brynge the Sancgreal to an ende /
 For ye ben they vnto whome oure lord shalle shewe grete secre-
 tes / and wel oughte oure lord be sygnefyed to an herte / For
 the herte whanne he is old / he waxeth yonge ageyne in hys 20
 whyte skynne / Ryght soo cometh ageyne oure lord from dethe
 to lyf / for he lost erthely flesshe that was the dedely flesshe / wh-
 yche he had taken in the wombe of the bleffid vyrgyn mary / &
 for that cause appiered oure lord as a whyte herte withoute
 spot / and the foure that were with hym is to vnderstande the 25
 foure euuangelystes whiche sette in wrytyng a parte of Ihe-
 su Crystes dedes that he dyd somtyme whan he was amonge
 yow an erthely man / for wete ye wel neuer erst ne myghte
 no knyghte knowe the trouthe / for oftymes or this oure lord
 shewed hym vnto good men and vnto good knyghtes in ly- 30
 kenes of an herte But I suppoose from hens forth ye shalle
 see no more / and thenne they loyed moche / and dwelled ther
 alle that day / ¶ And vpon the morowe whan they had herde
 maffe / they departed and commaunded the good man to god
 and soo they came to a Castel and passed by / So there came a 35
 knyghte armed after them and sayd lordes herke what I shal
 faye to yow

¶ Capitulum x

This gentylwoman that ye lede with yow is a mayde /
 Syr said she / a mayde I am / Thenne he took her by the
 brydel / and sayd by the holy croffe ye shalle not escape me to
 fore ye haue yolden the customme of this Castel / lete her go fa-
 5 yd Percyual ye be not wyfe / for a mayde in what place she
 cometh is free / Soo in the meane whyle there came oute a ten
 or twelue knyghtes armed oute of the Castel / and with hem
 came gentylwymmen whiche held a dyffhe of fyluer / and then-
 ne they sayd this gentylwoman must yelde vs the customme
 10 of this Castel / fir sayd a knyghte / what mayde passeth here by
 shalle yeue this dyffhe ful of blood of her ryghte arme / blame
 haue he sayd Galahad that broughte vp fuche custommes / and
 foo god me faue I ensure yow of this gentylwoman ye shal
 fayle whyle that I lyue / Soo god me help sayd Percyual I
 15 had leuer be slayne / and I also sayd fir Bors / By my tro-
 uthe sayd the knyght / thenne shalle ye dye / for ye maye not
 endure ageynste vs / though ye were the best knyghtes of the
 world / thenne lete they renne eche to other / and the thre fela-
 wes bete the ten knyghtes / and thenne sette their handes to
 20 their fwerdes and bete them doune and slewe them / Thenne
 there came oute of the Castel a thre score knyghtes armed /
 Faire lordes sayd the thre felawes haue mercy on youre selfe
 and haue not adoo with vs / Nay fayre lordes sayd the knygh-
 tes of the Castel we counceyl yow to withdrawe yow / for ye
 25 ben the best knyghtes of the world / and therefore doo no more
 for ye haue done ynough / We wille lete yow go with this har-
 me but we must nedes haue the customme / Certes sayd Ga-
 lahad for nought speke ye / wel sayd they / wille ye dye / we be
 not yet come therto sayd Galahad / thēne beganne they to me-
 30 dle to gyders / and Galahad with the straunge gyrdels dre-
 we his fuerd / and smote on the ryght hand and on the lyfte
 hand & slewe what that euer abode hym / & dyd fuche merueils
 that there was none that fawe hym / they wend he had ben no-
 ne erthely man but a monstre / and his two felawes halp hym
 35 passyng wel / and foo they held the Iourney eueryche in lyke
 hard tyl it was nyzt / thenne must they nedes departe / So cam

in a good knyghte / and fayd to the thre felawes / yf ye wyll
 come in to nyght / and take fuche herberowe as here is / ye shal
 be ryght welcome / and we shal ensure yow by the feyth of our
 bodyes / and as we be true knyghtes to leue yow in fuche estat
 to morowe as we fynde yow withoute ony falskede / And as 5
 soone as ye knowe of the custome we dare say ye wyll accorde
 therfor for goddes loue said the gentylwoman goo thyder and
 spare not for me / Go we sayd Galahad / and soo they entryd
 in to the chappel / And when they were alyghte / they made gre-
 te Ioye of hem / Soo within a whyle the thre knyghtes asked 10
 the customme of the Castel and wherefor it was / what hit is
 sayd they we wille faye yow sothe /

¶ Capitulum xj /

THer is in this Castel a gentylwoman whiche we and
 this castel is hers and many other / Soo it befelle ma-
 ny yeres agone there fylle vpon her a maladye / And whanne 15
 she had layne a grete whyle she felle vnto a mesel / and of no
 leche she coude haue no remedy / But at the last an old man sa-
 yd and she myght haue a dyffshe ful of blood of a mayde and
 a clene vyrgyn in wylle and in werke / And a kynges do-
 ughter / that blood shold be her hele / and for to anoynte her 20
 with alle / & for this thyng was this customme made
 Now said Percyuals syster fayr knyghtes I see wel þ^t this gen-
 tylwoman is but dede / Certes sayd Galahad and ye blede
 soo moche ye maye dye / Truly sayd she / and I dye for to he-
 le her / I shal gete me grete worship and fowles helthe / and 25
 worship to my lygnage / and better is one harme than tweyn
 And therfor ther shall be no more batail but to morne I shall
 yelde yow your customme of this castel / and thenne there was
 grete Ioye more than there was to fore / For els had there ben
 mortal werre vpon the morne / not withstandyng she wold no- 30
 ne other whether they wold or nold / that nyght were the thre
 felawes easyd with the best / & on the morne they herd masse /
 and sir Percyuals syster bad brynge forth the seke lady / so she
 was / the whiche was euylle at ease / thenne sayd she who shall

lete me blood / Soo one came forth and lete her blood / and she
 bled foo moche / that the dyffhe was ful / thenne she lyfte vp
 her hand and bleffid her / And thenne she faid to the lady /
 Madame I am come to the dethe for to make yow hole / for god-
 5 des loue prayeth for me / with that she felle in a fwoune / Then-
 ne Galahad and his two felawes starte vp to her and lyfte
 her vp and staunched her / but she had bled foo moche that she
 myght not lyue / Thenne she fayd whan she was awaked fa-
 yre broder Percyual I dye for the helynge of this lady / Soo
 10 I requyre yow that ye berye me not in this countrey / but as
 foone as I am dede / put me in a bote at the next hauen / and
 lete me goo as aduenture will lede me / And as foone as ye
 thre come to the Cyte of Sarras ther to encheue the holy graile
 ye shalle fynde me vnder a Towre arryued / and there bery me
 15 in the spyrytual place / for I faye yow foo moche there Gala-
 had shalle be buried and ye also in the same place / Thenne
 Percyual vnderstood thefe wordes and graunted it her we-
 pyngge / And thenne fayd a voyce lordes and felawes to mo-
 rowe at the houre of pryme ye thre shalle departe eueryche from
 20 other tyl the aduenture brynge yow to the maymed kyng /
 Thenne asked she her faueour / and as foone as she had recey-
 ued hit / the foule departed from the body / Soo the same daye
 was the lady helyd whan she was enoynted with alle /
 Thenne fyr Percyuale made a letter of all that she had holpen
 25 hem as in straunge aduentures / and put hit in her ryght hand
 and foo leyd her in a barge / and couerd it with blak fylke /
 and so the wynde aroos / and drofe the barge from the lond &
 alle knyghtes beheld hit / tyl it was oute of their fyghte /
 Thenne they drewe alle to the Castel / and foo forthe with ther
 30 felle a fodeyne tempest and thonder layte and rayne as alle
 the erthe wold haue broken / Soo half the castel torned vp foo
 doune / Soo it passed euenfonge or the tempest was feaced /
 Thenne they sawe afore hem a knyghte armed and wounded
 hard in the body and in the hede that fayd O god focoure me
 35 for now it is nede / After this knyght came another knyghte / &
 a dwerf whiche cryed to hem afer / stand ye may not escape . /
 Thenne the wounded knyghte held vp his handes to god that
 he shold not dye in fuche trybulacyon / Truly fayd Galahad

I shalle focoure hym for his fake that he calleth vpon / Sir said
 Bors I shalle doo hit / for it is not for yow / for he is but o-
 ne knyghte / Sir sayd he I graunte / So sir Bors toke his hors
 and commaunded hym to god / and rode after to rescowe the
 wounded knyghte

5

¶ Now torne we to the two felawes /

¶ Capitulum xij

Now faith the story that al nyght Galahad and Per-
 cyual were in a chappel in her prayers for to saue sir
 Bors / ¶ Soo on the morowe they dresfid hem in their har-
 neis toward the Castel to wete what was fallen of them there 10
 in / And when they cam there / they fond neyther man ne wo-
 man that he ne was dede by the vengeaunce of oure lord / with
 that they herd a voyce that sayd / this vengeaunce is for blood
 fhedyng of maydens / Also they fonde atte ende of the chappel
 a Chirche yard / and therin myght they see a thre score fair tom- 15
 bes / and that place was foo fayre and foo delectable that it fe-
 med hem there had ben none tempest / For there lay the body-
 es of alle the good maydens whiche were martred for the fe-
 ke ladyes fake / Also they fond the names of eueryche / and of
 what blood they were come / and alle were of kynges blood & 20
 twelue of them were kynges doughters / Thenne they depart-
 ed and wente in to a foreste / Now said Percyual vnto Ga-
 lahad we must departe / foo pray we oure lord that we maye
 mete to gyders in short tyme / thenne they dyd of their helmes
 and kyssed to gyder / and wepte at their departyng

25

¶ Capitulum xiiij

Now sayth the history that whan launcelot was come
 to the water of Mortoyse as hit is reherced before / he
 was in grete perylle / and foo he leyd hym doune and slepte/
 and toke the aduenture that god wold fende hym /

¶ Soo whan he was a slepe / there came a vyfyon vnto hym 30
 and said Launcelot aryse vp & take thyn armour / and entre
 in to the first ship that thou shalt fynde / ¶ And when he
 herd these wordes he starte vp and fawe grete clerenes about

hym / And thenne he lyfte vp his hande and bleffid hym and
 so toke his armes and made hym redy / and foo by aduenture
 he came by a ftronde / & fonde a fhyp the which was withoute
 fayle or ore / And as foone as he was within the fhyp there he
 5 felte the moost swetnes that euer he felt / and he was fulfilled
 with alle thyng that he thought on or defyred / Thenne he fayd
 Fair fwete fader Ihesu Cryft I wote not in what Ioye I am
 For this Ioye paffeth alle erthely Ioyes that euer I was in
 And foo in this ioye he leyd hym doune to the fhyps borde / &
 10 flepte tyl day / And when he awoke / he fonde there a fayre bed
 & therin lyenge a gentylwoman dede / the whiche was fyr per-
 cyuals fyfter / And as launcelot deuysed her / he aspyed in hir
 ryght hand a wrytte / the whiche he redde / the whiche told hym
 all the aduentures that ye haue herd to fore / and of what lyg-
 15 nage she was come / Soo with this gentylwoman fir launcelot
 was a moneth and more / yf ye wold aske how he lyued / he
 that fedde the peple of Israell with manna in deferte / foo was
 he fedde / For euery day when he had fayd his prayers / he was
 susteyned with the grace of the holy ghooft / So on a nyghte
 20 he wente to playe hym by the water fyde / for he was fomwhat
 wery of the fhyp / And thenne he lyfted and herd an hors co-
 me / And one rydyng vpon hym / And whanne he cam nygh
 he femed a knyghte / And foo he lete hym paffe / and wente
 there as the fhyp was / and there he alyghte / and toke the fa-
 25 del and the brydel and putte the hors from hym / and went in
 to the ship / And thenne Launcelot dresfid vnto hym and said
 ye be welcome / and he anfuerd and fawed hym ageyne / &
 asked hym what is your name / for moche my hert gyueth vn-
 to yow / Truly fayd he my name is launcelot du lake / fir faide
 30 he / thēne be ye welcome / for ye were the begynner of me in this
 world / A fayd he ar ye Galahad / ye forsothe fayd he / and so
 he kneled doune and asked hym his bleffynge / and after to-
 ke of his helme and kyssed hym / And there was grete Ioye
 bitwene them / for there is no tonge can telle the Ioye that they
 35 made eyther of other / and many a frendely word spoken bitwe-
 ne / as kynde wold / the whiche is no nede here to be reherced /
 And there eueryche told other of their aduentures and mer-
 ueils that were befallen to them in many Iourneyes fythe

that they departed from the courte / Anone as Galahad sawe
 the gentilwoman dede in the bed / he knewe her wel ynough / &
 told grete worship of her that she was the best mayde lyuyng
 and hit was grete pyte of her dethe / But whanne Launcelot
 herd how the merueylous fwerd was gotten / and who made 5
 hit / and alle the merueyls reherced afore / Thenne he prayd ga-
 lahad his sone that he wold shewe hym the fuerd / and so he
 dyd / and anone he kyffed the pomel and the hyltes and the
 scaubard / Truly sayd launcelot neuer erst knewe I of so hyhe
 aduentures done and so merueyllous & straunge / So dwellid 10
 Launcelot and Galahad within that shyp half a yere / and
 serued god dayly and nyghtly with alle their power / and of-
 ten they aryued in yles ferre from folke / where there repayred
 none but wylde beestes / and ther they fond many straunge ad-
 uentures and peryllous whiche they broughte to an ende / but 15
 for tho aduentures were with wylde beestes / and not in the
 quest of the Sancgreal / therfor the tale maketh here no mency-
 on therof / for it wolde be to longe to telle of alle tho aduentu-
 res that befelle them

¶ Capitulum xiiii

SOo after on a mondaye hit befelle that they aryued in 20
 the edge of a foreste to fore a crosse / and thenne sawe
 they a knyghte armed al in whyte and was rychely horfed/
 and ledde in his ryght hand a whyte hors / and soo he cam to
 the shyp and salewed the two knyghtes on the hyghe lordes
 behalf / and sayd Galahad fyr ye haue ben longe ynough with 25
 your fader / come oute of the ship / and starte vpon this hors / &
 goo where the aduentures shall lede the in the quest of the sanc-
 greal / thenne he wente to his fader and kyft hym fwetely and
 sayd / Fair fwete fader I wote not whan I shal see you more
 tyl I see the body of Ihesu Cryst / I praye yow sayd laun- 30
 celot praye ye to the hyghe fader that he hold me in his seruyse
 & soo he took his hors / & ther they herd a voyce that sayd thyn-
 ke for to doo wel / for the one shal neuer see the other before the
 dredeful day of dome / Now sone galahad said launcelot fyn we
 shal departe / & neuer see other / I pray to þe hyz fader to conferue 35

me and yow bothe / Sire said Galahad noo prayer auaylleth
 foo moche as yours / And there with Galahad entryd in to
 the foreste / And the wynde aroos and drofe Launcelot more
 than a moneth thurgh oute the see where he slepte but lytyl but
 5 prayed to god that he myght see some tydynges of the Sanc-
 greal / Soo hit befelle on a nyghte at mydnyghte he aryued a-
 fore a Castel on the bak fyde whiche was ryche and fayre / &
 there was a pofterne opened toward the see / and was open
 withoute ony kepyng / fauf two lyons kept the entre / and the
 10 moone shone clere / Anone fir launcelot herd a voyce that fayd
 Launcelot goo oute of this shyp / and entre in to the Castel /
 where thou shalt see a grete parte of thy desyre / Thenne he ran
 to his armes and soo armed hym / and soo wente to the gate
 and sawe the lyons / Thenne sette he hand to his fuerd & dre-
 15 we hit / Thenne there came a dwerf sodenly and smote hym on
 the harme so fore that the fuerd felle oute of his hand / Then-
 ne herd he a voyce say O man of euylle feyth and poure byleue
 wherfor trowest thou more on thy harneis than in thy maker/
 for he myghte more auayle the than thyn armour in whos ser-
 20 uyse that thou arte sette / Thenne said launcelot / fay u fader ihe-
 su Cryste I thanke the of thy grete mercy that thou repreuest
 me of my myfdede / Now see I wel that ye hold me for youre
 feruaunt / thenne toke he ageyne his fuerd and putte it vp in
 his shethe and made a croffe in his forhede / and came to the ly-
 25 ons / and they made semblaunt to doo hym harme / Notwithstan-
 dyng he passed by hem without hurte and entryd in to the cas-
 tel to the chyef fortresse / and there where they al at rest / thenne
 Launcelot entryd in so armed / for he fond noo gate nor dore
 but it was open / And at the laft he fond a chamber wherof
 30 the dore was shytte / and he sette his hand therto to haue open-
 ed hit / but he myghte not

Capitulum xv

Thenne he enforced hym mykel to vndoo the dore / then-
 ne he lyfted and herd a voyce whiche fange so fwete-
 ly that it semed none erthely thyng / and hym thoughte the
 35 voyce said Ioye and honour be to the fader of heuen / Thenne

Launcelot kneled down to fore the chamber / for wel wyft he that
 there was the Sancgreal within that chamber / Thenne fayd he
 Fair fwete fader Ihesu Cryft yf euer I dyd thyng that ple-
 aſyd the lord / for thy pyte ne haue me not in deſpyte for my
 fynnes done afore tyme / and that thou ſhewe me ſome thyng 5
 of that I feke / And with that he ſawe the chamber dore open
 and there came oute a grete clerenes / that the hows was as
 bryghte as all the torches of the world had ben there / So cam
 he to the chamber dore / and wold haue entryd / And anone a
 voyce ſaid to hym / Flee launcelot / and entre not / for thou ou- 10
 ghteſt not to doo hit / And yf thou entre / thou ſhalt forthynke
 hit / Thenne he withdrewe hym abak ryght heuy / Thenne loked
 he vp in the myddes of the chamber / and ſawe a table of fyluer
 and the holy veſſel couerd with reed ſamyte / and many an-
 gels aboute hit / wherof one helde a candel of waxe brennyng 15
 and the other held a croſſe and the ornamentys of an aulter
 And bfore the holy veſſel he ſawe a good man clothed as a
 preeſt / And it ſemed that he was at the ſacrynge of the maſſe
 And it ſemed to Launcelot that aboue the preeſtes handes we- 20
 re thre men wherof the two putte the yongeſt by lykenes bitwe-
 ne the preeſtes handes / and ſoo he lyfte hit vp ryght hye / &
 it ſemed to ſhewe ſo to the peple / And thenne launcelot mer-
 ueyled not a lytyl / For hym thouȝt the preeſt was ſo gretely
 charged of the fygure that hym ſemed that he ſhold falle to the
 erthe / And whan he ſawe none aboute hym that wolde helpe 25
 hym / Thenne came he to the dore a grete paas and fayd / Faire
 fader Ihesu Cryft ne take hit for no ſynne though I helpe the
 good man whiche hath grete nede of help / Ryghte ſoo entryd
 he in to the chamber and cam toward the table of fyluer / and
 whanne he came nyghe he felte a brethe that hym thoughte hit 30
 was entremedled with fyre whiche ſmote hym ſo fore in the vy-
 ſage that hym thoughte it brente his vyſage / and there with he
 felle to the erthe and had no power to aryſe / as he that was
 ſoo araged that had loſte the power of his body and his he-
 ryng and his ſeyng 35

¶ Thenne felte he many handes aboute hym whiche tooke hym
 vp / and bare hym oute of the chamber dore / withoute ony a-
 mendyng of his ſwoune / and lefte hym there ſemyng dede to

of the chamber dore and lefte hym there femynge dede to al pe-
 ple / Soo vpon the morowe whan it was fayre day they with-
 in were aryfen / and fonde Launcelot lyenge afore the chamber
 dore / Alle they merueylled how that he cam in / and so they lo-
 5 ked vpon hym and felte his poufe to wyte whether there were
 ony lyf in hym / and foo they fond lyf in hym / but he myght
 not ftande nor ftere no membre that he had / and foo they tooke
 hym by euery parte of the body / and bare hym in to a chamber
 and leyd hym in a ryche bedde ferre from alle folke / and foo he
 10 lay four dayes / Thenne the one fayd he was on lyue / and the
 other fayd Nay / In the name of god fayd an old man / for
 I doo yow veryly to wete / he is not dede / but he is foo fulle
 of lyf as the myghtyest of yow alle / and therfor I counceylle
 yow that he be wel kepte tyl god fend hym lyf ageyne /

¶ Capítulum xvi

15 **I**N fuche maner they kepte launcelot four and twenty
 dayes and alfo many nyghtes that euer he laye styll
 as a dede man / and at the xxv daye byfelle hym after myddaye
 that he opened his eyen / And whan he fawe folke he made gre-
 te forowe and fayd why haue ye awaked me / for I was mo-
 20 re at ease than I am now / O Ihefu Cryft who myghte be foo
 bleffid that myght see openly thy grete merueyls of secretenes
 there where no fynnar may be / what haue ye fene fayd they a-
 boutte hym / I haue fene faid he fo grete merueyls that no tong
 may telle / and more than ony herte can thynke / & had not my
 25 fone ben here afore me I had fene moche more / Thenne they
 told hym how he had layne there four and twenty dayes and
 nyghtes / thenne hym thoughte hit was punyffhement for the
 four and twenty yeres that he had ben a fynner wherfore our
 lord put hym in penaunce four and twenty dayes and nyghtes
 30 Thenne loked fyr launcelot afore hym / & fawe the hayre whi-
 che he had borne nyghe a yere / for that he forthoughte hym ryzte
 moche that he had broken his promyfe vnto the heremyte whi-
 che he had auowed to doo / ¶ Thenne they asked how hit stood
 with hym / for fothe fayd he I am hole of body thanked be our

lord / therefore fyrs for goddes loue telle me where that I am /
 thenne fayd they alle that he was in the Castel of Carbonek /
 there with came a gentylwoman / and brought hym a sherte of
 smal lynyen clothe / but he chaunged not there / but toke the ha-
 yre to hym ageyne / Sir fayd they the quest of the Sancgreal 5
 is encheued now ryght in yow / that neuer shalle ye see of the
 Sancgreal nomore than ye haue sene / Now I thanke god fa-
 id Launcelot of his grete mercy of that I haue sene / for it suf-
 fyfeth me / for as I suppose no man in this world hath lyued
 better than I haue done to enchiere that I haue done / And ther 10
 with he took the hayre and clothed hym in hit / and aboute that
 he put a lynyen sherte / & after a Robe of Scarlet fresshe & ne-
 we / And whanne he was soo arayed / they merueylled alle /
 for they knewe hym that he was launcelot the good knyghte
 And thenne they fayd alle O my lord sir launcelot be that ye 15
 and he fayd Truly I am he / Thenne came word to kyng pel-
 les that the knyght that had layne soo longe dede was sir la-
 uncelot / thenne was the kyng ryght glad / and wente to see
 hym / And whanne launcelot sawe hym come / he dressid hym
 ageynste hym / and there made the kyng grete Ioye of hym / and 20
 there the kyng told hym tydynges / that his fayre doughter
 was dede / Thenne launcelot was ryght heuy of hit / and fayd /
 fyre me forthynketh of the dethe of your doughter / for she was
 a ful fayre lady / fresshe / and yonge / and wel I wote she be-
 re the best knyghte that is now on erthe or that euer was sith 25
 god was borne / So the kyng held hym there four dayes / and
 on the morowe he took his leue at kyng Pelles and at al the
 felauship and thanked them of the grete labour / Ryghte soo
 as they sat at her dyner in the chyef sale / thenne was so befalle
 that the Sancgreal had fulfilled the tables with al maner 30
 of metes that ony herte myghte thynke /

¶ Soo as they fate / they sawe alle the dores and the wyndo-
 wes of the place were shutte withoute mannys hand / wherof
 they were al abaffhed / and none wyfte what to doo

¶ And thenne it happed fodenly a knyghte cam to the chyefe 35
 dore and knocked / and cryed / vndo the dore / but they wold
 not / and euer he cryed vndoo / but they wold not / And atte
 laste it noyed hem soo moche that the kyng hym self arose and

came to a wyndowe there where the knyght called / Thenne he
 said fyr knyght ye shall not entre at this tyme whyle the sanc-
 greal is here / and therfor goo in to another / For certes ye be
 none of the knyghtes of the quest / but one of them whiche hath
 5 ferued the fende / and haft leste the feruyse of oure lord / and he
 was passyng wrothe at the kynges wordes / Sir knyght fa-
 yd the kyng syn ye wold so fayn entre / saye me of what cou-
 trey ye be / Sir sayd he I am of the Realme of Logrys / and
 my name is Ector de marys / and broder vnto my lord sir laū-
 10 celot / In the name of god sayd the kyng / me forthynketh of
 that I haue sayd for youre broder is here within / & whan Ec-
 tor de marys vnderstood that his broder was there / for he was
 the man in the world that he moost dredde and loued / And
 thenne he sayd A god now doubleth my sorowe and shame /
 15 ful truly sayd the good man of the hylle vnto Gawayne and
 to me of oure dremes / Thenne wente he oute of the courte as
 fast as his hors myghte / and soo thurgh oute the Castel

¶ Capitulum xviij

Thenne kyng Pelles came to sire Launcelot and told
 hym tydynge of his broder wherof he was fory that
 20 he wyfte not what to doo / Soo sir launcelot departed and toke
 his armes and sayd he wold goo see the realme of Logrys /
 whiche I haue not sene in twelue moneth / and there with
 commaunded the kyng to god / and soo rode thurgh many re-
 almes / And at the last he came to a whyte Abbay / And there
 25 they made hym that nyghte grete chere / And on the morne he
 aroos and herd masse / and afore an aulter he fond a ryche
 Tombe whiche was newly made / And thenne he took hede / &
 sawe the sydes wryten with gold / whiche sayd ¶ Here lyeth
 kyng Bagdemagus of Gore whiche kyng Arthurs newew
 30 slewe and named hym fyr Gawayn / Thenne was not he a
 lytel fory / for launcelot loued hym moche more than any other
 and had it ben any other than Gawayn he shold not haue ef-
 cared from dethe to lyf / and sayd to hym self A lord god this
 is a grete hurte vnto kyng Arthurs courte the losse of fuche

a man / And thenne he departed / and came to the Abbay whe-
 re Gatahad dyd the aduenture of the tombes / and wanne the
 whyte sheld with the reed croffe / and there had he grete chere
 alle that nyghte / and on the morne he torned vnto Camelot /
 where he fonde kyng Arthur and the quene / But many of the 5
 knyghtes of the round table were flayne and destroyed more
 than half / and soo thre were come home / Ector Gawayne and
 Lyonel and many other that neden not to be reherced / and alle
 the Courte was passyng gladde of fyr launcelot / and the ky-
 nge asked hym many tydynges of his sone Galahad / and ther 10
 Launcelot told the kyng of his aduentures that had befallen
 hym syn he departed / and also he told hym of the aduentures
 of Galahad Percyuale and Bors whiche that he knewe by
 the letter of the dede damoyfel / And as Galahad had told hym
 Now god wold fayd the kyng that they were all thre here / 15
 that shalle neuer be said launcelot / for two of hem shalle ye ne-
 uer see but one of hem shalle come ageyne /

¶ Now leue we this story and speke of Galahad

¶ Capitulum xviij

Now faith the story Galahad rode many Iourneyes in-
 vayne / And at the last he cam to the Abbay where ky- 20
 ng Mordrayns was / And whan he herd that he thoughe
 he wold abyde to see hym / And vpon the morne whanne he had
 herd masse Galahad came vnto kyng Mordrayns / And anon
 the kyng sawe hym the whiche had leyne blynd of long tyme
 And thenne he dressid hym ageynst hym / and said Galahad 25
 the seruauant of Ihesu cryfte whos comynge I haue abyden so
 longe / Now embrace me and lete me reste on thy brest / So that
 I may reste bitwene thyn armes / for thow arte a clene vyr-
 gyn aboue all knyghtes as the floure of the lyly / in whome
 vyrgynyte is fygnified / and thou arte the rose the whiche is 30
 the floure of al good vertu / & in coloure of fyre / For the fyre
 of the holy ghooft is take so in the / that my flesshe which was
 al dede of oldenes / is become yonge ageyne / Thenne Galahad
 herd his wordes thenne he embraced hym & alle his body /

Thenne fayd he / Faire lord Ihesu Cryst now I haue my wil
 Now I requyre the in this poynt that I am in thow come and
 vyfye me / And anone oure lord herd his prayer / there with
 the soule departed from the body / And thenne Galahad putte
 5 hym in the erthe as a kynge oughte to be / and foo departede / &
 foo came in to a perillous foreste where he fond the welle / the
 whiche boyllled with grete wawes as the tale telleth to fore /
 And as soone as Galahad sette his hand therto it seaced / so
 that it brente no more / and the hete departed / for that it brente
 10 hit was a fygne of lechery the whiche was that tyme moche v-
 fed / but that hete myght not abyde his pure vyrgyntye / & this
 was taken in the countrey for a myrakle / And foo euer after
 was it called Callahadys welle / Thenne by aduenture he cam
 in to the countrey of Gore and in to the Abbay where launce-
 15 lot had ben to fore hand and fonde the tombe of kynge Bag-
 demagus / but he was founder therof Ioseph of Armathyes
 sone and the Tombe of Symyan where launcelot had fayled
 Thenne he loked in to a Crofte vnder the mynster / and there he
 sawe a Tombe whiche brent ful merueyllously / Thenne asked
 20 he the bretheren what it was / Sir said they a merueyllous ad-
 uentur / that may not be broughte vnto none ende / but by hym
 that passeth of bounte and of knyghthode al them of the round
 table / I wold fayd Galahad that ye wold lede me ther to /
 Gladly fayd they / and foo ledde hym tyl a caue / and he went
 25 doune vpon grefys / and cam nyghe the tombe / and thenne the
 flammynge fayled and the fyre staunched the whiche many
 a day had ben grete / Thenne came there a voyce that fayd mo-
 che are ye beholde to thanke oure lord / the whiche hath gyuen
 yow a good houre that ye may drawe oute the fowles of er-
 30 thely payne / and to putte them in to the Ioyes of paradys / I
 am of your kynred the whiche haue dwelled in this hete thys
 thre honderd wynter and four and fyfty to be purged of the
 synne that I dyd ageynst Ioseph of Armathye / thenne Ga-
 lahad toke the body in his armes and bare it in to the mynster
 35 And that nyghte lay Galahad in the Abbay / and on the mo-
 rne he gaf hym seruyse and putte hym in the erthe afore the
 hyghe Aulter

¶ Capitulum xix

Soo departed he from thens / and commaunded the bre-
 theren to god / and soo he rode fyue dayes tyl that he
 came to the maymed kynge / And euer folowed Percyual the
 fyue dayes askynge where he had ben / and soo one told hym/
 how the aduentures of Logrys were encheued / So on a daye 5
 it befelle that they cam oute of a grete foreste / and there they
 mette at trauers with sir Bors the whiche rode alone / hit is
 none nede to telle yf they were glad / & hem he falewed / & they
 yelded hym honour and good aduenture / and eueryche told
 other / Thenne said Bors hit is more than a yere and an half 10
 that I ne lay ten tymes where men dwelled / but in wylde fo-
 restes and in montayns / but god was euer my comforte /
 Thenne rode they a grete whyle tyl that they came to the castel
 of Carbonek / And whan they were entryd within the Castel
 kynge Pelles knewe hem / thenne there was grete Ioye / For 15
 they wyft wel by theire comynge that they had fulfylled the
 queft of the Sancgreal / Thenne Elyazar kynge Pelles sone
 broughte to fore hem the broken fuerd where with Ioseph was
 ftryken thurgh the thygh / Thenne Bors fette his hand therto/
 yf that he myght haue fouded hit ageyne but it wold not be / 20
 Thenne he took it to Percyual but he had no more power ther-
 to than he / Now haue ye hit ageyne sayd Percyuall to Gala-
 had / for and it be euer encheued by ony bodely man / ye must
 doo hit / and thenne he took the pyeces and fette hem to gyders
 and they femed that they had neuer ben broken / and as well 25
 as hit had ben fyrft forged / And whanne they within aspyed
 that the aduenture of the fuerd was encheued / thenne they gaf
 the fuerd to Bors / for hit myght not be better fet / for he was a
 good knyghte and a worthy man / and a lytel afore euen the
 fuerd arofe grete and merueyllous / and was ful of grete he- 30
 te that many men felle for drede / And anone alyght a voys
 amonge them and sayd they that ought not to fyttre at the ta-
 ble of Ihesu Cryft / aryfe / for now fhalle veray knyghtes ben
 fedde / Soo they wente thens all fauf kynge Pelles and E-
 lyazar his sone / the whiche were holy men and a mayde which 35
 was his nece / and soo these thre felawes and they thre were

there no mo / Anone they fawe knyghtes al armed came in at
 the halle dore and dyd of their helmes and their armes and
 fayd vnto Galahad / Sire we haue hyed ryght moche for to be
 with yow at this table where the holy mete shalle be departed
 5 Thenne fayd he ye be welcome / but of whens be ye / So thre of
 them fayd they were of gaule / and other thre fayd they were of
 Irland / and the other thre fayd they were of Denmarke / So
 as they fatte thus / there came oute a bed of tree of a chamber /
 the whiche four gentylwymmen broughte / and in the bed lay
 10 a good man feke / and a crowne of gold vpon his hede / & there
 in the myddes of the place they sette hym doune and wente a-
 geyne their waye / Thenne he lyfte vp his hede and fayd Gala-
 had knyght ye be welcome / for moche haue I defyred your co-
 mynge / for in fuche payne and in fuche anguysshe I haue
 15 ben longe / ¶ But now I truste to god the terme is come that
 my payn shall be alayed that I shall passe oute of this world so
 as it was promysed me longe ago / there with a voyce fayd ther
 be two amonge you that be not in the queft of the Sancgreal
 and therfor departe ye

¶ Capitulum xx

20 **T**Henne kynge Pelles and his sone departed / and there
 with alle befemed that there cam a man and four
 angels from heuen clothed in lykenes of a Biffhop / and had
 a crosse in his hand / and these foure angels bare hym vp in a
 chayer / and sette hym doune before the table of syluer where
 25 vpon the Sancgreal was / and it semed that he had in myddes
 of his forhede letters the whiche fayd / See ye here Ioseph the
 fyrft Biffhop of Crystendome the same whiche our lord focou-
 red in the Cyte of Sarras in the spyrytuel place / Thenne the
 knyghtes merueylled / for that Biffhop was dede more than
 30 thre honderd yere to fore / O knyghtes sayde he / merueyle not /
 For I was somtyme an erthely man / with that they herde the
 chamber dore open / and there they fawe Angels and two ba-
 re candels of waxe / and the thyrd a towel / and the fourthe a
 spere whiche bled merueillously that thre droppes felle within

a boxe whiche he helde with other hand / And they fette the
candels vpon the table / and the thyrd the towel vpon the ves-
fel / and the fourth the holy spere euen vp ryghte vpon the ves-
fel / And thenne the Biffhop made femblaunt as thouȝ he wold
haue gone to the sacrynge of the masse / And thenne he tooke 5
an vbblye whiche was made in lykenes of breed / And at the
lyftyng vp / there came a fygur in lykenes of a chyld / and
the vyfage was as reed and as bryghte as ony fyre & smote
hym self in to the breed / so that they all sawe hit that the breed
was formed of a flesfhely man / and thenne he putte hit in to 10
the holy vessel ageyne / and thenne he dyd that longed to a
preeft to doo to a masse / And thenne he wente to Galahad and
kyffed hym / and badde hym goo and kyffe his felawes / and
foo he dyd anone / Now sayd he seruantes of Ihesu Cryfte ye
shall be fedde afore this table with swete metes that neuer kn- 15
ygthes tasted / And whanne he had sayd / he vanysshed away
And they fette hem at the table in grete drede and made their
prayers / thenne loked they and sawe a man come oute of the
holy vessel that had alle the sygnes of the passion of Ihesu
Cryfte bledynge alle openly / and sayd my knyghtes and my 20
servantes & my true children whiche ben come oute of dedely
lyf in to spyrytual lyf I wyl now no lenger hyde me from
yow / but ye shall see now a parte of my secretes & of my hydde
thynges / Now holdeth and receyueth the hyghe mete whiche ye
haue soo moche defyred / Thenne took he hym self the holy ves- 25
fel and came to Galahad / and he kneled doune / and there he
receyued his faueour / and after hym soo receyued alle his fe-
lawes / and they thoughte it soo swete that hit was merueil-
lous to telle / Thenne sayd he to Galahad / sone wotest thou
what I hold betwixe my handes / Nay sayd he / but yf ye will 30
telle me / This is sayd he the holy dyshe wherin I ete the la-
mbe on sberthurfdaye / And now hast thou sene that thou most
defyred to see / but yet hast thou not sene hit soo openly as
thow shalt see it in the Cyte of Sarras in the spyrituel place
Therefore thou must go hens and bere with the this holy vessel 35
For this nyght it shall departe from the Realme of Logrys /
that it shall neuer be sene more here / and wotest thou wherfor
for he is not serued nor worshypped to his ryghte by them of

this land / for they be torned to euylle lyuyng / therfor I shall
 disheryte them of the honour whiche I haue done hem / And
 therefore goo ye thre to morowe vnto the see where ye shal syn-
 de your shyp redy / & with you take the fuerd with the straun-
 5 ge gyrdels and no mo with yow but sire Percyual and sire
 Bors / Also I will that ye take with you of the blood of this
 spere for to enoynte the maymed kynge bothe his legges and
 alle his body and he shalle haue his hele / Sire sayd Galahad
 why shalle not these other felawes goo with vs / for this cause
 10 For ryght as I departed my postels one here and another the-
 re foo I wille that ye departe / and two of yow shalle dye in
 my feruyfe / but one of yow shal come ageyne and telle tydyn-
 ges / Thenne gaf he hem his blessyng and vanysshed awaye /

¶ Capitulum xxi

ANd Galahad wente anone to the spere whiche lay vp-
 15 on the table / and touched the blood with his fyngers
 and came after to the maymed kynge and anoynted his leg-
 ges / and there with he clothed hym anone / and starte vpon his
 feet oute of his bedde as an hole man / and thanked oure lorde
 that he had helyd hym / and that was not to the world ward /
 20 For anone he yelded hym to a place of Relygyon of whyte
 monkes and was a ful holy man / That same nyghte aboute
 mydnyght came a voyce amonge hem whiche sayde my fones &
 not my chyef fones my frendes and not my werryours / goo ye
 hens where ye hope best to doo and as I bad yow / A thanked
 25 be thou lord that thou wilt vouchesaufe to calle vs thy fynners
 Now maye we wel preue that we haue not lost our paynes /
 And anone in alle haste they took their harneis and departed
 But the thre knyghtes of Gaule one of them hyghte Clau-
 dyne kynge Claudas sone / and the other two were grete gen-
 30 tylmen / thenne praid galahad to eueryche of them that yf they
 come to kynge Arthurs court that they sholde salewe my lorde
 sir launcelot my fader and of hem of the round table / and pra-
 yed hem yf that they cam on that party that they shold not for-
 gete it / Ryght foo departed Galahad / Percyual / and Bors

with hym / and foo they rode thre dayes / and thenne they came
 to a Ryuage and fonde the shyp wherof the tale speket of to
 fore / And whanne they cam to the borde / they fonde in the myd-
 des the table of fyluer / whiche they had lefte with the may-
 med kyng and the Sancgreal whiche was couerd with rede 5
 famyte / Thenne were they gladde to haue fuche thynges in the-
 yr felaushyp / and foo they entryd / and maade grete reuerence
 ther to / and Galahad felle in his prayer longe tyme to oure
 lord that at what tyme he asked that he shold passe out of this
 world / foo moche he prayd tyl a voyce sayd to hym Galahad 10
 thou shalt haue thy request / And whan thou askest the dethe
 of thy body thou shalt haue it / & thenne shalt thou fynde the
 lyf of the soule / Percyual herd this / and prayd hym of felau-
 ship that was bitwene them to telle hym wherfor he asked fu-
 che thynges / That shalle I telle yow said Galahad / thother 15
 day whanne we sawe a parte of the aduentures of the Sanc-
 greal I was in fuche a Ioye of herte that I trowe neuer man
 was / that was erthely / And therfore I wote wel whan my
 body is dede / my fowle shalle be in grete Ioye to see the bleffid
 Trynyte euery day / and the mageste of oure lord Ihesu Cryst 20
 Soo longe were they in the shyp / that they sayd to Galahad
 fyr in this bedde ought ye to lye / for soo faith the scrypture / &
 soo he leyd hym doune and slepte a grete whyle / And whan
 he awaked he loked afore hym and sawe the Cyte of Sarras
 And as they wold haue landed / they sawe the shyp wherein 25
 Percyual had putte his fyfter in / Truly sayd Percyual in
 the name of god / wel hath my fyfter holden vs couenaunt /
 Thenne toke they out of the ship the table of fyluer / and he
 tooke it to Percyual and to Bors to goo to fore / and Gala-
 had came behynde / and ryght foo they went to the Cyte / and 30
 at the gate of the Cyte they sawe an old man croked / Thenne
 Galahad called hym and bad hym helpe to bere this heuy thy-
 nge / Truly said the old man / it is ten yere ago that I myzt
 not goo but with crouchys / Care thou not sayd Galahad and
 aryse vp and shewe thy good wille / and soo he assayed / and 35
 fonde hym self as hole as euer he was / Thenne ranne he to the
 table / and took one parte ageynst Galahad / and anone arofe
 there grete noyse in the Cyte that a cryppyl was maade hole by

knyghtes merueyls that entryd in to the Cyte / Thenne anon
 after the thre knyghtes wente to the water / and broughte vp
 in to the paleys Percyuals fyfter / and buried her as rychely
 as a kynges doughter oughte to be / And whan the kyng of
 5 the Cyte whiche was cleped Estoraufe sawe the felauhyp / he
 asked hem of whens they were / and what thyng it was that
 they had broughte vpon the table of syluer / & they told hym
 the trouthe of the Sancgreal and the power whiche that god
 had sette there / Thenne the kyng was a Tyraunt / and was
 10 come of the lyne of paynymys / and toke hem / and putte hem in
 pryson in a depe hole

Capitulum xxij

BVt as foone as they were there oure lord sente hem the
 Sancgreal / thorow whoos grace they were al waye
 fulfilled whyle that they were in pryson / Soo at the
 15 yeres ende hit befelle that this kyng Estouraffe lay seke and
 felte that he shold dye / Thenne he sente for the thre knyghtes &
 they came afore hym / and he cryed hem mercy of that he had
 done to them / and they forgaf hit hym goodely and he dyed
 anone / Whanne the kyng was dede / alle the Cyte was desma-
 20 yed and wyft not who myghte be her kyng / ¶ Ryght soo as
 they were in counceille there came a voyce amonge them / and
 badde hem chese the yongest knyght of them thre to be her kyng
 for he shalle wel mayntene yow and all yours / Soo they ma-
 de Galahad kyng by alle the assente of the hole Cyte / & els
 25 they wold haue flayne hym / And whanne he was come to be-
 holde the land / he lete make aboute the table of syluer a cheste
 of gold and of precyous stons that hyllid the holy vessel /
 And euery day erly the thre felawes wold come afore hit / &
 make their prayers / Now at the yeres ende and the self daye
 30 after Galahad had borne the croune of gold / he arofe vp erly
 and his felawes / and came to the palais / and sawe to fore
 hem the holy vessel / and a man knelynge on his knees in ly-
 kenys of a Bisschop that had aboute hym a grete felauhyp of
 Angels as it had ben Ihesu Cryst hym self / & thenne he arofe

and beganne a masse of oure lady / And whan he cam to the
 sacrament of the masse / and had done / anone he called Gala-
 had and sayd to hym come forthe the seruaunt of Ihesu cryft
 and thou shalt see that thou hast moche desyred to see / & thenne
 he beganne to tremble ryght hard / whan the dedely flesshe be- 5
 ganne to beholde the spyrytuel thynges / Thenne he helde vp his
 handes toward heuen / and sayd lord I thanke the / for now I
 see that that hath ben my desyre many a daye / ¶ Now bleffyd
 lord wold I not lenger lyue yf it myghte please the lord / &
 there with the good man tooke oure lordes body betwixe hys 10
 handes / and proferd it to Galahad / and he receyued hit ryghte
 gladly and mekely / ¶ Now woteft thou what I am sayd
 the good man / Nay said Galahad / I am Ioseph of Arma-
 thye the whiche oure lord hath sente here to the to bere the selau-
 shyp / and woteft thou wherfor that he hath sente me more than 15
 any other / For thou hast refemblyd in to thynges in that thou
 hast sene the merueyles of the Sancgreal in that thou hast ben
 a clene mayden as I haue ben and am / And whanne he had
 said these wordes Galahad went to Percyual and kyffed hym
 & commaunded hym to god / and soo he wente to sire Bors / & 20
 kyffed hym / and commaunded hym to god / and sayd Fayre
 lord salewe me to my lord fyr launcelot my fader / And as
 soone as ye see hym / byd hym remembre of this vnstable world
 And there with he kneled doune tofore the table / and made his
 prayers / and thenne sodenly his soule departed to Ihesu Crist 25
 and a grete multitude of Angels bare his soule vp to heuen /
 that the two felawes myghte wel behold hit / Also the two fe-
 lawes sawe come from heuen an hand / but they sawe not the
 body / And thenne hit cam ryght to the vessel / and took it and
 the spere / and soo bare hit vp to heuen / Sythen was there ne- 30
 uer man soo hardy to saye that he had sene the Sancgreal /

Capitulum xxiij

WHanne Percyual & Bors sawe Galahad dede / they
 made as moche sorowe as euer dyd two men / And yf
 they had not ben good men / they myght lyghtly haue fallen in
 despair / & the peple of the countrey & of the cyte were ryzt heuy 35

And thenne he was buryed / And as soone as he was buryed
 fire Percyual yelded hym to an hermytage oute of the cyte /
 and took a relygyous clothynge / and Bors was alwaye
 with hym / but neuer chaunged he his seculer clothynge for that
 5 he purposed hym to goo ageyne in to the Realme of Logrys /
 Thus a yere and two monethes lyued fir Percyual in the hermytage
 a ful holy lyf / and thenne passid oute of this world
 and Bors lete bery hym by his fyfter and by Galahad in the
 spyrytueltees / whanne Bors sawe that he was in so fer coun-
 10 treyes as in the partyes of Babyloyne he departed from Sar-
 ras / and armed hym and cam to the see / and entryd in to a
 shyp / and foo it befelle hym in good aduenture / he cam in to the
 Realme of Logrys / and he rode so fast tyl he came to Camelot
 where the kynge was / and thenne was there grete Ioye ma-
 15 de of hym in the Courte / for they wend alle / he had ben dede /
 for as moche as he had ben so longe oute of the countrey / and
 whan they had eten / the kynge made grete clerkes to come afo-
 re hym / that they shold cronycle of the hyghe aduentures of the
 good knyghtes / Whanne Bors had told hym of the aduentu-
 20 res of the Sancgreal fuche as had befalle hym / and his thre
 felawes that was launcelot / Percyual / Galahad / & hym self
 There Launcelot told the aduentures of the Sancgreal / that
 he had fene / Alle this was made in grete bookes / and put vp
 in almeries at Salyisbury / And anone fir Bors sayd to fyre
 25 Launcelot / Galahad your owne sone sawed yow by me / &
 after yow kynge Arthur / and alle the Courte / and foo dyd
 fir Percyual / for I buryed hem with myn owne handes in
 the Cyte of Sarras /

¶ Also fire Launcelot Galahad prayed yow to remembre of
 30 this vnfyker world as ye behyght hym whan ye were to gyders
 more than half a yere / This is true sayd launcelot / Now I
 truste to god his prayer shalle auayle me / thenne Launcelot
 took fyr Bors in his armes / and sayd gentyl cofyn ye are
 ryght welcome to me / and alle that euer I maye doo for yow
 35 and for yours ye shalle fynde my poure body redy atte all ty-
 mes / whyles the spyryte is in hit / and that I promyse yow
 feythfully / and neuer to fayle ¶ And wete ye wel gen-
 tyl cofyn fyre Bors that ye and I wylle neuer departe in

sonder whyleft oure lyues may laste / Sir sayd he I wyll as
ye wyll

¶ Thus endeth thistory of the Sancgreal that was breuely
drawen oute of Frenche in to Englyshe / the whiche is a story
croncyed for one of the truest and the holiest that is in thys
world / the whiche is the xviij book /

¶ And here foloweth the eyghtenth book

¶ Capitulum Primum



Oo after the quest of the Sancgreal was ful-
fylled / and alle knyghtes that were leste on
lyue were comen ageyne vnto the table round 5
as the booke of the Sancgreal maketh mencyon

¶ Thenne was there grete Ioye in the courte / and in especyal
kyng Arthur and quene Gueneuer made grete Ioye of the re-
menaunt that were comen home / and passyng glad was the
kyng and the quene of sire launcelot and of sire Bors / For 10
they had ben passyng long away in the quest of the Sancgre-
al / Thenne as the book saith fyr launcelot beganne to reforte vn-
to quene Gueneuer ageyne / and forgat the promyse and the
perfectyon that he made in the quest / for as the book sayth had
not sire Launcelot ben in hie preuy thouztes and in his myn- 15
des so fette inwardly to the quene as he was in femyng oute-
ward to god / there had no knyghte passed hym in the queste
of the Sancgreal / but euer his thoughtes were pryuely on the
Quene / and so they loued to gyder more hotter than they did
to fore hand / and had fuche preuy draughtes to gyder that ma- 20
ny in the Courte spak of hit / and in especial sir Agrawayne/
fyr Gawayns broder / for he was euer open mouthed / So bifel
that fyre Launcelot had many refortes of ladyes and damoy-
fels that dayly reforted vnto hym / that befoughte hym to be the-
ir champion / and in alle fuche maters of ryghte sir launcelot 25
applied hym dayly to do for the pleasyr of oure lord Ihesu crist
And euer as moche as he myghte he withdrewe hym from the
companye and felaushyp of Quene Gueneuer

for to eschewe the sklauder and noyse / wherfor the quene wax-
 ed wroth with sir Launcelot / and vpon a day she called sir la-
 uncelot vnto her chamber and saide thus / Sir launcelot I see
 and fele dayly that thy loue begynneth to flake / for thou hast
 5 no Ioye to be in my presence / but euer thou arte oute of thys
 Courte / and quarels and maters thow hast now a dayes for
 ladyes and gentilwymmen more than euer thou were wonte
 to haue afore hand / A madame said launcelot / in this ye must
 holde me excused for dyuerse causes / one is / I was but late
 10 in the quest of the Sancgreal / and I thanke god of his gre-
 te mercy and neuer of my deserte that I sawe in that my quest
 as moche as euer sawe ony synful man / and so was it told
 me / ¶ And yf I had not my pryuy thoughtes to re-
 torne to your loue ageyne as I doo I had sene as grete myf-
 15 teryes as euer sawe my sone Galahad outhur Percyual or sir
 Bors / & therfor madame I was but late in that quest / wete
 ye wel madame hit maye not be yet lyghtely forgeten the hyz
 feruyse in whome I dyd my dilygent laboure / Also madame
 wete ye wel that there be many men speken of our loue in this
 20 courte / and haue yow and me gretely in a wayte / as sire A-
 grauayne and syr Mordred / and madame wete ye wel I dre-
 de them more for youre sake / than for ony fere I haue of them
 my self / for I maye happen to escape and ryde my self in a gre-
 te nede where ye must abyde alle that wille be said vnto yow /
 25 And thenne yf that ye falle in ony distresse thurgh wylfulle
 foly / thenne is there none other remedy or help but by me and
 my blood / And wete ye wel madame the boldenes of you and
 me wille brynge vs to grete shame and sklauder / and that
 were me lothe to see you dishonoured / and that is the cause / I
 30 take vpon me more for to do for damoyfels and maydens than
 euer I dyd to forne that men shold vnderstande my Ioye and
 my delyte is my pleasyr to haue adoo for damoifels and may-
 dens

¶ Capitulum ij

Alle this whyle the quene stood styll and lete sir laun-
 35 celot faye what he wold / And when he hadde alle said
 she braut oute on wepyng / and soo she sobbed and wepte

a grete whyle / And whan she myght speke she sayd / launcelot now I wel vnderstande that thou arte a fals recreaūt knyghte and a comyn lecheoure / and louest and holdest other ladyes / and by me thou hast desdayne and scorne / ¶ For wete thou wel she sayd now I vnderstande thy falskede / and therfor shalle I neuer loue the no more / and neuer be thou so hardy to come in my fyghte / and ryghte here I discharge the this Courte that thou neuer come within hit / and I forfende the my felauschyp / and vpon payne of thy hede that thou see me no more / Ryght foo fire Launcelot departed with grete heuynes / 10 that vnnethe he myzt susteyne hym self for grete dole makynge Thenne he called sir Bors sir Ector de marys and syr Lyonel and told hem how the quene had forfendyd hym the Courte and foo he was in wille to departe in to his owne Countrey / Fair sir said fire Bors de ganys / ye shalle not departe oute 15 of this land by myn aduysse / ye must remembre in what honour ye are renoumed and called the noblest knyght of the world / and many grete maters ye haue in hand / and wymmen in their hastynes wille doo oftymes that fore repenteth hem / & therfor by myn aduysse ye shalle take youre hors / and ryde to 20 the good hermytage here befyde wyndsoure that somtyme was a good knyght / his name is sir Brasias / and there shalle ye abyde tyl I fende yow word of better tydynges / Broder said fire launcelot wete ye wel I am ful lothe to departe oute of this realme / but the quene hath defended me foo hyhely / that 25 me semeth she wille neuer be my good lady as she hath ben / Saye ye neuer foo sayd sir Bors / for many tymes or this tyme she hath ben wroth with yow and after it she was the first that repented it / Ye saye wel sayd launcelot / for now wille I doo by youre councyllle and take myn hors and my harneis 30 and ryde to the heremyte sir Brasias / and there will I repose me vntyl I here somme maner of tydynges fro yow / but fair broder I praye yow gete me the loue of my lady Quene Gueneuer and ye maye /

¶ Sire said fire Bors ye nede not to meue me of suche maters 35 For wel ye wote I wille doo what I may to please yow / & thenne the noble knyghte fire Launcelot departed with ryghte heuy chere sodenly / that none erthely creature wyfte of hym / nor

where he was become / but fir Bors / Soo whan fir launcelot was departed / the quene outward made no maner of sorowe in shewynge to none of his blood nor to none other / But we-
te ye wel inwardly as the book fayth she took grete thoughte
5 but she bare it out with a proud countenance / as though she felte nothyng nor daunger

¶ Capitulum Tercium

ANd thenne the quene lete make a preuy dyner in london vnto the knyghtes of the round table / and al was for to shewe outward that she had as grete Ioye in al other
10 knyghtes of the table round as she had in fir launcelot / al only at that dyner she had fir Gawayne and his bretheren / that is for to saye fir Agraun / fir Gaherys / fire Gareth and fyre Mordred / Also there was fir Bors de ganys / fire Blamor de ganys / fyr Bleoberys de ganys / fire Galyhud / fir Galyhodyn
15 fyre Ector de marys / fir Lyonel / fire Palomydes / fir Safyr his broder / fir la cote male taylor / fir Perfaunt / fyr Ironfyde / fyre Brandyles / fyr kay le Seneschal / fir Mador de la porte / Syre Patryse a knyght of Irland / Alyduk / fir Aftamore / and fir Pynel le faueage / the whiche was cofyn to fire Lamorak de
20 galys the good knyghte that fyr Gawayne and his bretheren flewe by treason / and so these four and twenty knyghtes shold dyne with the quene in a preuy place by them self / and there was made a grete feest of al maner of deyntees / but fyre Gawayne had a customme that he vsed dayly at dyner and at
25 souper that he loued wel al maner of fruyte / and in especial appels and perys / And therefore who someuer dynded or feested fyre Gawayne wold comynly purueye for good fruyte for hym / and soo dyd the quene for to please fir Gawayne / she lete purueye for hym al maner of fruyte / for fir Gawayn was
30 a passyng hote knyght of nature / and this Pynel hated fyre Gawayne by cause of his kynnesman fyr Lamorak de galys & therfor for pure enuy & hate fir Pynel enpoyfond certayn appels for to enpoysonne fir Gawayn / & soo this was wel vnto the ende of the mete / and soo it befelle by myffortune a good
35 knyght named Patryse cofyn vnto fire Mador de la porte to

take a poyfond Appel / And whanne he had eten hit / he swalle
 foo tyl he braft / & there fire Patryce felle doun sodenly deede a-
 monge hem / Thenne euery knyghte lepte from the bord asha-
 med and araged for wrathe nyghe oute of her wyttes / For
 they wyfte not what to faye confyderynge Quene Gueneuer 5
 made the feest and dyner / they alle had suspecyon vnto her /
 My lady the quene said Gawayne / Wete ye wel madame that
 this dyner was made for me / for alle folkes that knowen my
 condycyon vnderstande that I loue wel fruyte / and now I
 see wel / I had nere be slayne / therfor madame I drede me lest 10
 ye will be shamed / Thenne the quene stood styll and was so-
 re abasshed / that he nyft not what to faye / This shalle not so be
 ended said fyr Mador de la porte / for here haue I losse a ful
 noble knyght of my blood / And therefore vpon this shame &
 despyte I wille be reuenged to the vtterance / and there open- 15
 ly fyr Mador appeled the quene of the dethe of his cofyn fyr pa-
 tryse / thenne stode they all styll that none wold speke a word
 ageynst hym / for they all had grete suspecyon vnto the quene
 by cause she lete make that dyner / and the quene was so abas-
 shed that she coude none other wayes doo but wepte soo herte- 20
 ly that she felle in a swoone / with this noyse and crye came to
 them kyng Arthur / And whanne he wyft of that trouble / he
 was a passynge heuy man

Capitulum iiij

ANd euer fyr Mador stood styll afore the kyng / and
 euer he appeled the quene of treason / for the customme 25
 was suche that tyme that alle manere of shameful dethe was
 called treason / Fair lordes sayd kyng Arthur me repenteth
 of this trouble / but the caas is so I maye not haue adoo in
 this mater for I must be a ryghtful Iuge / and that repen-
 teth me that I maye not doo batail for my wyf / for as I deme 30
 this dede came neuer by her / And therefore I suppose she shalle
 not be alle distayned / but that somme good knyght shal putt
 his body in Iopardy for my quene rather than she shal be brent
 in a wrong quarel / And therfor fyr Mador be not so hasty /
 for hit maye happen she shalle not be all frendeles / and therefore 35

defyre thow thy daye of bataille / and she shalle purueye her of
somme good knyghte / that shalle anfuer yow or els it were to
me grete shame / and to alle my courte / My gracyous lord fayd
fir Mador ye muste holde me excused / for though ye be oure
5 kynge in that degree / ye are but a knyght as we are / and ye
are sworne vnto knyghthode as wel as we / and therfor I bi-
feche yow that ye be not displeased / For there is none of the
four and twenty knyghtes that were boden to this dyner / but
alle they haue grete suspecyon vnto the quene / What say ye all
10 my lordes said fir Mador / thenne they anfuerd by and by that
they coude not excufe the quene / for why she made the dyner / &
outher hit must come by her or by her seruantes / Allas sayd
the quene I made this dyner for a good entente / and neuer
for none euyl foo almyghty god me help in my ryght as I
15 was neuer purposed to doo fuche euylle dedes / and that I re-
porte me vnto god / My lord the kynge fayd fir Mador I re-
quyre yow as ye be a ryghtuous kyng gyue me a day that I
may haue Iustyce / wel fayd the kynge I gyue the daye thys
day xv dayes that thow be redy armed on horsbak in the me-
20 dowe befyde westmynster / And yf it foo falle that there be ony
knyght to encountre with yow / there mayst thow doo the best /
and god spede the ryght / And yf hit so falle that there be no
knyght at that day / thenne must my quene be brente / and ther
she shalle be redy to haue her Iugement / I am anfuerd fayd fir
25 Mador / and euery knyghte wente where it lyked hem / ¶ So
whan the kynge and the quene were to gyders / the kynge af-
ked the quene how this caas bifelle / the quene anfuerd / so god
me help I wote not how or in what maner / where is fir la-
uncelot said kyng Arthur / and he were here he wold not grut-
30 che to doo bataille for yow / Sire fayd the quene I wote not
where he is / but his brother and his kynnesmen deme that he
be not within this Realme / that me repenteth fayd kyng Ar-
thur / For and he were here / he wold soone stynte this stryf /
Thenne I wille counceyle yow fayd the kynge and vnto fire
35 Bors that ye wil doo bataille for her for fir launcelots sake /
And vpon my lyf he wille not refuse yow / For wel I see fa-
id the kynge that none of these foure and twenty knyghtes
that were with you at your dyner where fir Patryse was slayn

that wille doo batail for yow nor none of hem wille faye well
 of yow / and that shalle be a grete sklauder for yow in thys
 Courte / Allas said the quene and I maye not doo with all
 but now I mys fir launcelot / for and he were here / he wold
 putte me soone to my hertes ease / ¶ what eyleth yow said the 5
 kynge ye can not kepe fir launcelot vpon your fyde / for wete
 ye wel sayd the kynge who that hath fire Launcelot vpon his
 partye / hath the mooft man of worship in the world vpon his
 fyde / Now goo your way said the kynge vnto the quene / and
 requyre fir Bors to doo bataille for yow for fire launcelots fa- 10
 ke

¶ Capitulum quintum /

Soo the quene departed from the kynge / and fente for
 fir Bors in to her chamber / And whan he was come
 she befought hym of focour / Madame said he / what wold ye
 that I dyd / for I maye not with my worshyp haue adoo in 15
 this mater by cause I was at the same dyner for drede that o-
 ny of tho knyghtes wold haue me in suspecyon / Also mada-
 me said fir Bors now mys ye fir launcelot / for he wold not
 haue fayled yow neyther in ryght nor in wronge / as ye haue
 wel preued whan ye haue ben in daunger / and now ye haue 20
 dryuen hym oute of this countrey / by whome ye and alle we
 were dayly worshypped by / therfor madame I merueylle how
 ye dar for shame requyre me to doo ony thyng for yow in foo
 moche ye haue chaced hym oute of your countrey / by whome
 we were borne vp and honoured / Allas fayr knyghte sayd the 25
 quene I put me holy in your grace / and alle that is done a-
 mys / I will amende as ye wille counceyle me / And therwith
 she kneled doune vpon bothe her knees / and befought fir Bors
 to haue mercy vpon her / outhur I shall haue a shameful dethe
 and therto I neuer offended / Ryght soo cam kyng Arthur / & 30
 fonde the quene knelyng afore fir Bors / thenne fir Bors pul-
 led her vp / and said Madame ye doo me grete dishonoure / A
 gentil knyght said the kyng haue mercy vpon my Quene cur-
 tois knyght / for I am now in certayne she is vntruly defamed

And ther for curtois knyght fayd the kynge / promyse her to
doo bataille for her / I requyre yow for the loue of fyr launce-
lot / My lord fayd fyr Bors ye requyre me the gretteſt thyng
that any man may requyre me / And wete ye wel yf I gra-
5unte to doo bataille for the quene I ſhall wrathe many of my
felauſhip of the table round / but as for that fayd Bors I
wille graunte my lord / that for my lord fir launcelots fake &
for your fake I wille at that daye be the quenes champyon /
onles that there come by aduenture a better knyghte than I
10am to doo batail for her / Will ye promyse me this fayd the ky-
nge by your feythe / ye fir ſaid fir Bors / of that I will not fa-
yle yow / nor her bothe / but yf there came a better knyghte than
I am / and thenne ſhalle he haue the bataille / Thenne was the
kynge and the quene paſſyng gladde / and ſoo departed / and
15thanked hym hertely / Soo thenne fir Bors departed ſecretely
vpon a day / and rode vnto ſir launcelot there as he was wyth
the heremyte fir Braſtias / & told hym of all theire aduenture
A Ihefu ſaid fir Launcelot this is come happely as I wold
haue hit / and therfor I praye yow make you redy to doo ba-
20taille / but loke that ye tary tyl ye ſee me come as longe as ye
may / For I am ſure Mador is an hote knyghte whan he is en-
chaufed / for the more ye ſuffre hym the haſtyer wille he be to ba-
tail / fyr ſaid Bors lete me dele with hym / Doubte ye not ye
ſhalle haue alle your wille / thenne departed fyre Bors from
25hym / and came to the Courte ageyne / Thenne was hit noyſed
in alle the Courte that fir Bors ſhold doo bataill for the que-
ne / wherfore many knyghtes were diſpleaſyd with hym / that
he wold take vpon hym to doo batail in the quenes quarel for
there were but fewe knyghtes in all the courte but they demed
30the quene was in the wronge / and that ſhe had done that trea-
ſon / Soo ſir Bors anſuerd thus to his felawes of the table
round / Wete ye wel my fayre lordes it were ſhame to vs alle
and we ſuffred to ſee the mooſt noble quene of the world to be
ſhamed openly confyderynge her lord / and our lord is the man
35of mooſt worſhip in the world & mooſt cryſtend / and he hath
euer worſhipped vs alle in al places / Many anſuerd hym a-
geyne / As for oure mooſte noble kynge Arthur we loue hym
and honoure hym as wel as ye doo / but as for quene Gueneuer

we loue her not by cause she is a destroyer of good knyghtes
 Faire lordes fayd sir Bors me semeth ye faye not as ye shold
 fay / for neuer yet in my dayes knewe I neuer nor herd faye/
 that euer she was a destroyer of ony good knyghte / But att
 alle tymes as ferre as euer I coude knowe / she was a mayn- 5
 tener of good knyghtes / and euer she hath ben large and free
 of her goodes to alle good knyghtes / and the moost bounteuo-
 us lady of her yestes and her good grace that euer I sawe or
 herd speke of / And there for it were shame said sire Bors to
 vs all to our most noble kynges wyf / & we suffred her to be sha- 10
 mefully flayne / And wete ye wel fayd sire Bors I wylle
 not suffer it / for I dare say foo moche the quene is not gilty
 of sir Patryse dethe / for she owed hym neuer none ylle wylle/
 nor none of the four and twenty knyghtes that were at that
 dyner / for I dar faye / for good loue she bad vs to dyner / and 15
 not for no male engyne / and that I doubte not shalle be pre-
 ued here after / for how someuer the game goth / there was tre-
 ason amonge vs / Thenne some fayd to sire Bors we may wel
 bileue your wordes / and foo some of them were wel pleasyd/
 and somme were not so

20

¶ Capitulum vj

THe daye came on faste vntyl the euen that the bataille
 shold be / Thenne the quene sente for sir Bors and af-
 ked hym how he was disposed / Truly madame fayd
 he I am disposed in lyke wyse as I promysed yow / that is
 for to faye I shal not fayle yow / onles by aduenture there 25
 come a better knyghte than I am to doo batail for yow / then-
 ne madame am I discharged of my promyse / ¶ Wylle ye fa-
 yd the quene that I telle my lord Arthur thus / doth as it shal
 please yow madame / Thenne the quene wente vnto the kyng
 and told hym the ansuer of sir Bors / haue ye no doubte said 30
 the kyng of sir Bors / for I calle hym now one of the beste
 knyghtes of the world and the most profytelyest man / And
 thus it past on vntyl the morne / and the kyng and the quene
 and all maner of knyghtes that were there at that tyme dre-
 we them vnto the medowe byfyde wynchester where the bataylle 35

shold be / And soo whan the kynge was come with the Que-
ne / and many knyghtes of the round table / than the quene
was putte there in the Conestables ward and a grete fyre ma-
de aboute an yron stake / that and fyr Mador de la porte hadde
5 the better / she shold be brente / fuche customme was vsed in tho
dayes / that neyther for fauour neyther for loue nor affynyte /
there shold be none other but ryghtuous Iugement / as wel vp-
on a kynge as vpon a knyghte / and as wel vpon a Quene
as vpon another poure lady / Soo in this meane whyle came
10 in sir Mador de la porte / and tooke his othe afore the kynge /
that the quene dyd this treason vntyl his cosyn sir Patryse / &
vnto his othe / he wold preue hit with his body hand for hand
who that wold faye the contrary / Ryght so cam in sire Bors
de ganys and sayde that as for quene Gueneuer she is in the
15 ryght and that wille I make good with my handes / that she
is not culpable of this treason that is putte vpon her / Then-
ne make the redy said sir Mador / and we shalle preue whether
thow be in the ryght or I / Sir Mador said sir Bors wete thou
wel I knowe yow for a good knyghte / Not for thenne I shal
20 not fere yow soo gretely / but I truste to god I shalle be able
to withstande your malyce / But thus moche haue I promy-
fed my lord Arthur and my lady the quene that I shalle do
bataille for her in this caas to the vttermest / onles that there
come a better knyghte than I am / and discharge me / Is that
25 alle said sire Mador / outhere come thou of / and doo batail with
me / or els say nay / Take your hors said sire Bors / and as
I suppose ye shalle not tary longe / but ye shalle be anfuerd /
thenne eyther departed to their tentys and maade hem redy to
horsbak as they thoughte best / And anone sir Mador cam in to
30 the felde with his shelde on his sholder & his spere in his hand
And soo rode aboute the place cryenge vnto Arthur byd your
champion come forthe and he dare / Thenne was sir Bors afha-
med and took his hors / and came to the lystes ende / ¶ And
thenne was he ware where cam from a wood there faste by a
35 knyght all armed vpon a whyte hors with a straunge shelde
of straunge armes / and he came rydyng alle that he myghte
renne / and soo he came to sir Bors and sayd thus Fair kny-
ght I pray yow be not displeased / for here must a better knyzt

than ye are haue thys bataille / therfor I praye yow withdra-
 we yow / For wete ye wel I haue had this day a ryght grete
 Iourneye / and this bataille ought to be myn / and foo I pro-
 mysed yow whan I spak with yow last / and with alle my
 herte I thanke yow of your good wille / Thenne fire Bors ro- 5
 de vnto kynge Arthur and told hym how there was a knyzt
 come that wold haue the bataille for to fyghte for the Quene
 ¶ what knyght is he said the kynge / I wote not sayd fyre
 Bors / but fuche couenaunt he made with me to be here this day
 Now my lord sayd fyr Bors here am I discharged / 10

Capitulum vii

THenne the kynge called to that knyghte / and asked
 hym / yf he wold fyghte for the quene / Thenne he an-
 fuerd to the kynge therfor cam I hydder / and therfor fir kyng
 he sayd tary me noo lenger for I may not tary / For anone
 as I haue fynnyfshed this bataille I must departe hens / for I 15
 haue a doo many matters els where / For wete yow wel sayd
 that knyght this is difhonour to yow alle knyghtes of the ro-
 und table to see and knowe foo noble a lady and so curtoys
 a quene as quene Gueneuer is thus to be rebuked and sha-
 med amongest yow / thenne they alle merueylled what knyzt 20
 that myghte be that foo tooke the bataille vpon hym / For there
 was not one that knewe hym but yf it were fyre Bors / Then-
 ne sayd fir Mador de la porte vnto the kynge / now lete me we-
 te with whome I shalle haue adoo with alle / And thenne they
 rode to the lystes ende / and there they couched theire speres / & 25
 ranne to gyder with alle their myghtes / and fire Madors spere
 brake alle to pyeces / but the others spere held / and bare fyre
 Madors hors and alle bakward to the erthe a grete falle /
 But myghtely and fodenly he auoyded his hors / and putte
 his sheld afore hym / and thenne drewe his fuerd / and badde 30
 the other knyghte alyghte / and doo batail with hym on foote
 Thenne that knyght descended from his hors lyghtly lyke a
 valyaunt man / and putte his sheld afore hym and drewe
 his fuerd / and foo they came egerly vnto bataille / and eyther

gaf other many grete strokes tracynge and trauercyng / ra-
 cyng and foynyng / and hurtlyng to gyder with her fuerdes
 as it were wyld bores / thus were they fyghtyng nyghe an
 houre / For this fir Mador was a stronge knyghte / and mygh-
 5 tely proued in many stronge batails / But at the laste thys
 knyghte smote fir Madore grouelyng vpon the erthe / and the
 knyght stepped nere hym to haue pulled fir Mador flatlyng
 vpon the ground / and there with sodenly fir Mador aroos / &
 in his ryfynge he smote that knyght thurgh the thyck of the
 10 thyzys that the blood ranne oute fyrfly / ¶ And whan he
 felte hym self foo wounded / and sawe his blood he lete hym
 aryse vpon his feet / And thenne he gaf hym fuche a buffet vp-
 on the helme / that he felle to the erthe flatlyng / and therwith
 he strode to hym to haue pulled of his helme of his hede / And
 15 thenne fir Mador prayd that knyghte to saue his lyf / and so
 he yelded hym as ouercome and relecyd the quene of his qua-
 rel / I wille not graunte the thy lyf said that knyghte only
 that thou frely relece the quene for euer / and that no mencyon
 be made vpon fir Patryces tombe that euer Quene Gueneuer
 20 consented to that treason / Alle this shalle be done said fir ma-
 dor I clerely discharge my quarel for euer / Thenne the kny-
 30 tes parters of the lyfys toke vp fire Mador / and ledde hym to
 his tente / and the other knyghte wente streyghte to the steyer
 foote where sat kyng Arthur / and by that tyme was the que-
 25 ne come to the kyng / and eyther kyffed other hertely / And
 whan the kyng sawe that knyghte / he stouped doune to hym /
 and thanked hym / and in lyke wyse dyd the quene / and the
 kyng prayd hym to putte of his helmet / and to repose hym / &
 to take a sop of wyn / and thenne he putte of his helmet to dr-
 30 ynke / and thenne euery knyght knewe hym that it was fyre
 Launcelot du lake / Anone as the quene wyft that / he took the
 quene in his hand / and yode vnto fyr launcelot and sayd fir
 graunt mercy of your grete trauaille that ye haue hadde thys
 day for me and for my quene / My lord sayd fir launcelot wete
 35 ye wel I oughte of ryghte euer to be in your quarel / and in
 my lady the quenes quarel to do batail / for ye ar the man that
 gaf me the hyghe ordre of knyghthode / and that daye my la-
 dy your quene dyd me grete worship / & els I had ben shamed

for that fame day ye made me knyghte / thurgh my haftyneffe I
 loſt my fuerd / and my lady your quene fond hit / and lapped
 hit in her trayne / and gafe me my fuerd whan I hadde nede
 therto / and els had I ben ſhamed emonge alle knyghtes / &
 therfor my lord Arthur I promyſed her at that day euer to be 5
 her knyghte in ryghte outhur in wronge / Graunt mercy ſayd
 the kyng for this iourneye / & wete ye wel ſaid the kyng I ſhal
 acquyte youre goodenes / and euer the quene behelde ſir launce-
 lot / and wepte ſo tendyrly that ſhe ſanke all moſt to the ground
 for forowe that he had done to her ſoo grete goodenes where ſhe 10
 ſhewed hym grete vnkyndenes / ¶ Thenne the knyghtes of his
 blood drewe vnto hym / and there eyther of them made grete io-
 ye of other / And ſo came alle the knyghtes of the table round
 that were there at that tyme / and welcomed hym / And then-
 ne ſir Mador was had to leche crafte / and ſir launcelot was 15
 helyd of his woūd / And thenne there was made grete Ioye &
 myrthes in that courte

¶ Capitulum octauum /

ANd ſoo it befelle that the damoyſel of the lake / her na-
 me was Nymue / the whiche wedded the good knyzt
 ſir Pelleas / and ſoo ſhe cam to the Courte / for euer ſhe 20
 dyd grete goodenes vnto kynge Arthur / and to alle his kny-
 tes thurgh her forcery and enchauntementes / And ſoo whan
 ſhe herd how the quene was an angred for the dethe of fyre
 Patryſe / Thenne ſhe told it openly that ſhe was neuer gylty
 and there ſhe diſcloſed by whome it was done and named hym 25
 fyr Pynel / and for what cauſe he dyd it / there it was openly
 diſcloſed / and ſoo the quene was excuſed / and the knyzt Py-
 nel fled in to his countre / Thenne was it openly knowen that
 fyr Pynel enpoyſond the appels att the feeſt to that entente to
 haue deſtroyed ſir Gawayne / by cauſe fyr Gawayne and his 30
 bretheren deſtroyed fyr Lamorak de galys / to the whiche fyre
 Pynel was cofyn vnto / Thenne was ſir Patryce buried in
 the chirche of Weſtmeeſtre in a tombe / and there vpon was wry-
 ten / Here lyeth fyre Patryce of Irlond ſlayne by fyr Pynel

le faueage / that enpoyfoned appels to haue flayne fyre Gawa-
 yne / and by myfffortune fire Patryce ete one of tho appels / &
 thenne fodenly he braft / Also there was wryten vnto the tom-
 be that Quene Gueneuer was appelyd of treason of the deth
 5 of fire Patryce by fir Mador de la porte / and there was made
 mencyon how fire launcelot foughte with hym for quene Gue-
 neuer / and ouercame hym in playne bataille / Alle this was
 wryten vpon the tombe of fyr Patryce in excufyng of the que-
 ne / And thenne fir Mador fewed dayly and long / to haue the
 10 Quenes good grace / and soo by the meanes of fyre launce-
 lot he caufed hym to ftande in the quenes good grace / and all
 was forgyuen / Thus it paffed on tyl oure lady daye affūp-
 cyon / within a xv dayes of that feest the kynge lete crye a gre-
 te Iuftes and a turnement that fhold be at that daye att Ca-
 15 melot that is wynchefter / and the kynge lete crye that he and
 the kynge of Scottes wold Iufte ageynft alle that wold co-
 me ageynft hem / And whan this crye was made / thydder cam
 many knyghtes / Soo there came thyder the kyng of Northga-
 lys and kyng Anguyfthe of Irland / and the kyng with the
 20 honderd knyghtes / and Galahaut the haute prynce / and the
 Kynge of Northumberland / and many other noble dukes &
 Erles of dyuerfe countreyes / Soo kynge Arthur made hym re-
 dy to departe to thife Iuftys / and wold haue had the Quene
 with hym / but at that tyme ſhe wold not / ſhe ſaid / for ſhe was
 25 feke and myghte not ryde at that tyme / That me repenteth ſa-
 yd the kynge / for this feuen yere ye ſawe not ſuche a noble ſe-
 laufhyp to gyders excepte at wytfontyde whan Galahad de-
 parted from the Courte / Truly ſayd the quene to the kynge /
 ye muſte holde me excuſed / I maye not be there / and that me
 30 repenteth / and many demed the quene wold not be there by
 caufe of fir launcelot du lake / for fire launcelot wold not ry-
 de with the kynge / for he ſaid / that he was not hole of the wo-
 und the whiche fire Mador had gyuen hym / wherfor the kynge
 was heuy and paſſyng wrothe / and ſoo he departed toward
 35 wyncheſtre with his ſelaufhyp / and ſoo by the way the kynge
 lodged in a Towne called Aſtolot / that is now in Englyſh
 called Gylford / and there the kynge lay in the Caſtel / Soo
 whan the kynge was departed / the quene called fir launcelot

to her / and said thus / Sire launcelot ye are gretely to blame
 thus to holde yow behynde my lord / what trowe ye what will
 youre enemyes and myne faye and deme / noughte els but
 see how sire launcelot holdeth hym euer behynde the kyng / and
 foo doth the quene / for that they wold haue their pleasyr to gy- 5
 ders / And thus wylle they faye sayd the Quene to fyr laun-
 celot haue ye noo doubte therof

¶ Capitulum ix

Madame said fyr Launcelot I allowe your wytte / it is
 of late come syn ye were wyse / And therfor madame
 at this tyme I wille be rulyd by your counceylle / and thys 10
 nyghte I wylle take my rest / and to morowe by tyme I wyll
 take my waye toward wynchestre /

¶ But wete yow wel sayd sir Launcelot to the quene / that
 at that Iustes I wille be ageynst the kynge and ageynste al
 his felaushyp / ye maye there doo as ye lyst sayd the Quene / 15
 but by my counceylle ye shalle not be ageynst youre kyng and
 youre felaushyp / For therin ben ful many hard knyghtes of
 youre blood as ye wote wel ynough / hit nedeth not to reherce
 them / ¶ Madame said fyre Launcelot I praye yow that ye be
 not displeasyd with me / for I wille take the aduenture that 20
 god wylle sende me / And foo vpon the morne erly fyre laun-
 celot herd masse and brake his fast / and foo toke his leue of
 the quene and departed / And thenne he rode foo moche vntyl
 he came to Aftolat that is Gylford / and there hit happed hym
 in the euentyde he cam to an old Barons place that hyght fir 25
 Bernard of Aftolat / And as fyre launcelot entryd in to
 his lodgyng / kynge Arthur aspyed hym as he dyd walke in
 a gardyn befyde the Castel how he took his lodgyng / & kne-
 we hym ful wel / ¶ It is wel sayd kynge Arthur vnto the
 knyghtes that were with hym in that gardyn befyde the cas- 30
 tel / I haue now aspyed one knyghte that wylle playe his
 playe at the Iustes / to the whiche we be gone toward / I vn-
 dertake he wil do merueils / Who is that we pray you telle vs

fayd many knyghtes that were there at that tyme / ye shal not
 wete for me said the kynge as at this tyme / And foo the kyng
 smyled / and wente to his lodgyng / Soo whan sire launcelot
 was in his lodgyng / and vnarmed hym in his chamber the
 5 olde baron and heremyte came to hym makynge his reuerence
 and welcomed hym in the best maner / but the old knyght kne-
 we not sire Launcelot / Fair sir said sir launcelot to his hooft
 I wold praye yow to lene me a shelde that were not openly
 knowen for myn is wel knowen / Sir said his hooft ye shalle
 10 haue your defyre / for me semeth ye be one of the lykelyest kny-
 ghtes of the world / and therfor I shall shewe you frendship
 Sire wete yow wel I haue two fones that were but late ma-
 de knyghtes / and the eldest hyghte sir Tirre / and he was hurt
 that same day he was made knyghte that he may not ryde / and
 15 his sheld ye shalle haue / For that is not knowen I dare saye
 but here / and in no place els / and my yongest sone hyghte La-
 uayne / and yf hit please yow / he shalle ryde with yow vnto
 that Iustes / and he is of his age x stronge and wyght / for mo-
 che my herte gyueth vnto yow that ye shold be a noble knyghte
 20 therfor I praye yow telle me your name / said sir Bernard
 As for that sayd sire launcelot ye must holde me excused as
 at this tyme / And yf god gyue me grace to speke wel att the
 Iustes / I shalle come ageyne and telle yow / but I praye yow
 said sir Launcelot in ony wyse lete me haue youre sone sire la-
 25 uayne with me / and that I maye haue your broders shelde /
 Alle this shalle be done said sir Bernard / ¶ This old baron
 had a doughter that tyme that was called that tyme the faire
 mayden of Astolat / And euer she beheld sir launcelot wonder-
 fully / And as the book sayth she cast fuche a loue vnto sir la-
 30 uncelot that she coude neuer withdrawe her loue / wherfore she
 dyed / and her name was Elayne le blank / Soo thus as she
 cam to and fro / she was soo hote in her loue that she befoughte
 syr launcelot to were vpon hym at the Iustes a token of hers
 ¶ Faire damoyfel said sir launcelot / and yf I graunte yow
 35 that ye may saye I doo more for youre loue than euer I dyd
 for lady or damoyfel / ¶ Thenne he remembryd hym that he
 wold goo to the Iustes desguysed / And by cause he had neuer
 fore that tyme borne noo manere of token of noo damoyfel

¶ Thenne he bethoughte hym that he wold bere one of her that none of his blood there by myghte knowe hym / and thenne he said Faire mayden I wylle graunte yow to were a token of yours vpon myn helmet / and therfor what it is / shewe it me Sir she said it is a reed fleue of myn of scarlet wel enbrou- 5 dred with grete perlys / and soo she brought it hym / Soo fyre Launcelot receyued it / and sayd neuer dyd I erst soo moche / for no damoyfel / And thenne fir launcelot bitoke the fair mayden his shelde in kepyng / and praid her to kepe that vntyl that he came ageyne / and soo that nyghte he had mery rest & grete 10 chere / For euer the damoyfel Elayne was aboute fire Launcelot alle the whyle she myghte be suffred

Capitulum x

Soo vpon a daye on the morne kyng Arthur and al his knyghtes departed / for theire kyng had taryed thre dayes to abyde his noble knyghtes / And soo whanne the 15 kyng was ryden / fir launcelot and fire Lauayne made hem redy to ryde / and eyther of hem had whyte sheldes / and the reed fleue fir Launcelot lete cary with hym / and soo they tooke theire leue at fyr Bernard the old baron / and att his doughter the faire mayden of Astolat / And thenne they rode soo long til 20 that they came to Camelot that tyme called wynchestre / and there was grete prees of kynges / dukes / Erles / and barons / and many noble knyghtes / But there fir launcelot was lodged pryuely by the meanes of fir lauayne with a ryche burgeis that no man in that toune was ware what they were / & 25 soo they reposed them there til oure lady day affumpcyon as the grete feest sholde be / Soo thenne trumpets blewe vnto the felde / and kyng Arthur was sette on hyghe vpon a skafhold to beholde who dyd best / But as the Frensshe book faith / the kyng wold not suffer fyre Gawayn to goo from hym / for ne- 30 uer had fir Gawayn the better and fire launcelot were in the felde / & many tymes was fir Gawayn rebuked whan laūcelot cam in to ony Iustes desguyfed / Thenne som of the kynges as kyng Anguysshe of Irland and the kyng of Scottes were that tyme turned vpon the fyde of kyng Arthur / ¶ And 35

thenne on the other party was the kyng of Northgalys / and
 the kyng with the honderd knyghtes / and the kyng of Nor-
 thumberland / and fyre Galahad the haut prynce / But these
 thre kynges and this duke were passyng weyke to holde age-
 5 ynft kyng Arthurs party / for with hym were the noblest kn-
 yghtes of the world / Soo thenne they withdrewe hem eyther
 party from other / and euery man made hym redy in his best
 maner to doo what he myghte / ¶ Thenne fyre Launcelot made
 hym redy / and putte the reed fleue vpon his hede / and fastned
 10 it fast / and foo fyre launcelot and fyre Lauayne departed out
 of wynchestre pryuely / and rode vntyl a lytel leuyd wood /
 behynde the party that held ageynft kyng Arthurs party / and
 there they helde them styll tyl the partyes smote to gyders / &
 thenne cam in the kyng of Scottes and the kyng of Irland
 15 on Arthurs party / and ageynft them came the kyng of Nor-
 thumberland / and the kyng with the honderd knyghtes sm-
 ote doun the kyng of Northumberland / and the kyng with
 the honderd knyghtes smote doune kyng Anguyshe of Ir-
 land / Thenne fyre Palomydes that was on Arthurs party
 20 encountred with fyre Galahad / and eyther of hem smote do-
 une other / and eyther party halpe their lordes on horsbak a-
 geyne / Soo there began a stronge assaile vpon bothe partyes /
 And thenne came in fyr Brandyles / fyre Sagramor le defyr-
 rus / sire Dodynas le faueage / sir kay le fenefchal / sir Gryf-
 25 let le fyse de dieu / sir Mordred / sir Melyot de logrys / fyr O-
 zanna le cure hardy / sir Safyr / sir Epynogrys / fyr Galleron
 of Galway / Alle these xv knyghtes were knyghtes of the ta-
 ble round / Soo these with moo other came in to gyders / and
 bete on bak the kyng of Northumberland and the kyng of
 30 Northwalys / whan sir launcelot sawe this as he houed in a
 lytil leued woode / thenne he sayd vnto fyre lauayn / see yon-
 der is a company of good knyghtes / and they hold them to gy-
 ders as bores that were chauffed with dogges / that is trouthe
 said fyre Lauayne

¶ Capitulum xi

¶ Capitulum xi

Now fayd fyre Launcelot / and ye wille helpe me a ly-
tel / ye shalle see yonder felauship that chafeth now the-
se men in oure syde that they shal go as fast bakward as they
wente forward / Sir spare not said fire Lauayne / for I shall
doo what I maye / Thenne fire Launcelot and fire Lauayne 5
cam in at the thyckest of the prees / and there fyre launcelot
fmote doune fyr Brandyles / fyre Sagamore / fyre Dodynas/
fir Kay / fyr Gryflet / and alle this he dyd with one spere / and
fire Lauayne fmote doune fire Lucan the buttelere / and fir Be-
deuere / And thenne fire Launcelot gat another spere / & there 10
he fmote doune fir Agrauayne / fire Gaherys / and fir Mordred
and fir Melyot de Logrys / and fir Lauayne fmote doune O-
zanna le cure hardy / and thenne fir Launcelot drewe his fuerd
and there he fmote on the ryght hand and on the lyfte hand
and by grete force he vnhorced fyr Safyr / fire Epynogrys / & 15
fir Galleron / and thenne the knyghtes of the table round with-
drewe them abak after they had goten their horses as wel as
they myghte / O mercy Ihesu said fire Gawayne what kny3te
is yonder that doth soo merueyllous dedes of armes in that fe-
lde / I wote not what he is sayd kynge Arthur / But as att 20
this tyme I wille not name hym / fyre fayd fire Gawayne I
wold say it were fyr launcelot by his rydyng and his buf-
fets that I see hym dele / but euer me semeth it shold not be he
for that he bereth the reed fleue vpon his hede / for I wyft hym
neuer bere token at no Iustes of lady nor gentilwoman / Lete 25
hym be said kynge Arthur / he wille be better knowen / and do
more or euer he departe / Thenne the party that was ayenft ky-
nge Arthur were wel comforted / and thenne they helde hem
to gyders that before hand were fore rebuked / Thenne fir Bors
fir Ector de marys and fir Lyonel called vnto them the kny3- 30
tes of their blood / as fir Blamor de ganys / fyre Bleoberys
fyr Alyduke / fir Galyhud / fire Galyhodyn / fir Bellangere le
beuse / soo these nyne knyghtes of fir launcelots skynne threste
in myghtely / for they were al noble knyghtes / and they of
grete hate and despyte that they had vnto hym thoughte to re- 35
buke that noble knyght fir launcelot & fir lauayne / for they

knewe hem not / and foo they cam hurlynge to gyders / & smote
 doune many knyghtes of northgalys and of northumberland
 And whanne fire launcelot sawe them fare foo / he gat a spere
 in his hand / and there encountred with hym al attones fyr bors
 5 fir Ector and fire Lyonel / and alle they thre smote hym atte
 ones with their speres / And with fors of them self they smote
 fir launcelots hors to the erthe / and by myffortune fir bors
 smote fyre launcelot thurgh the shelde in to the fyde / and the
 spere brake / and the hede lefte styll in his fyde / whan fir La-
 10 uayne sawe his maister lye on the ground / he ranne to the ky-
 nge of scottes / and smote hym to the erthe / and by grete force
 he took his hors / and brought hym to fyr launcelot / and maul-
 gre of them al he made hym to mounte vpon that hors / & then-
 ne launcelot gat a spere in his hand / and there he smote fyre
 15 Bors hors and man to the erthe / in the fame wyfe he serued
 fyre Ector and fyre Lyonel / and fyre Lauayne smote doune fir
 Blamore de ganys / And thenne fir launcelot drewe his fuerd
 for he felte hym felf so fore y hurte that he wende there to haue
 had his dethe / And thenne he smote fire Bleoberys fuche a
 20 buffet on the helmet that he felle doune to the erthe in a fwoun
 And in the fame wyfe he serued fir Alyduk / and fir Galyhud
 And fire Lauayne smote doune fyr Bellangere that was the
 sone of Alyfaunder le orphelyn / and by this was fire Bors
 horfed / and thenne he came with fire Ector and fyr Lyonel / &
 25 alle they thre smote with fuerdes vpon fyre launcelots helmet/
 And whan he felte their buffets / and his wounde the whiche
 was foo greuous than he thought to doo what he myght why-
 le he myght endure / And thenne he gaf fyr Bors fuche a buf-
 fet that he made hym bowe his heed passynge lowe / and there
 30 with al he raced of his helme / and myght haue slayne hym / &
 foo pulled hym doune / and in the fame wyfe he serued fyre
 Ector and fire Lyonel / For as the book faith he myghte haue
 slayne them / but whan he sawe their vyfages / his herte myght
 not serue hym therto / but lefte hem there
 35 ¶ And thenne afterward he hurled in to the thyckest prees
 of them alle and dyd there the merueyloust dedes of armes th-
 at euer man sawe or herde speke of / And euer fire Lauayne
 the good knyghte with hym / and there fire Launcelot with

his fuerd smote doune and pulled doune as the Frensshe book
maketh mencyon moo than thyrty knyghtes / & the mooft par-
ty were of the table round / and sire Lauayne dyd ful wel
that day / for he smote doune ten knyghtes of the table round /

¶ Capitulum xii

Mercy Ihesu said fyr Gawayne to Arthur I merueil 5
what knyghte that he is with the reed sleue / Syr saide
kyng Arthur he wille be knowen or he departe / and thenne the
kyng blewe vnto lodgyng / and the pryce was gyuen by he-
rowdes vnto the knyghte with the whyte shelde that bare the
reed sleue / Thenne came the kyng with the honderd knyghtes 10
the kyng of Northgalys / and the kyng of Northumberland
and sire Galahaut the haute prynce / and sayd vnto sire laun-
celot / fayre knyght god the bleffe / for moche haue ye done this
day for vs / therfor we praye yow that ye wille come with vs
that ye may receyue the honour and the pryce as ye haue wor- 15
shipfully deserued it / My faire lordes saide fyre launcelot wete
yow wel yf I haue deserued thanke / I haue fore bought hit
and that me repenteth / for I am lyke neuer to escape with my
lyf / therfor faire lordes I pray yow that ye wille suffer me to
departe where me lyketh / for I am fore hurte / I take none force 20
of none honour / for I had leuer to repose me than to be lord
of alle the world / and there with al he groned pytously and
rode a grete wallop away ward fro them vntyl he came vnder
a woodes fyde / And whan he sawe that he was from the felde
nyghe a myle that he was sure he myghte not be sene / Thenne 25
he said with an hy3 voys / O gentyl knyght sire Lauayne helpe
me that this truncheon were oute of my fyde / for it stycketh so
fore that it nyhe sleeth me / O myn owne lord said sire Lauayne
I wold fayn do that my3t please yow / but I drede me fore / & I
pulle oute the truncheon that ye shalle be in perylle of dethe / I 30
charge you said sire launcelot as ye loue me drawe hit oute / &
there with alle he descended from his hors / and ryght soo dyd
sire Lauayn / and forth with al sire Lauayn drewe the trunche-
on out of his fyde / and gaf a grete shryche and a merueillous

gryfely grone / and the blood brafte oute nyghe a pynt at ones
that at the laft he fanke doun vpon his buttocks & fo fwounded
pale and dedely / Allas fayd fyre Lauayne what fhalle I doo
And thenne he torned fir launcelot in to the wynde / but foo he
5 laye there nyghe half an houre as he had ben dede / And fo at
the lafte fyre Launcelot cafte vp his eyen / and fayd O Laua-
yn helpe me / that I were on my hors / for here is faft by with-
in this two myle a gentyl heremyte that fomtyme was a fulle
noble knyghte and a grete lord of poffeffions / And for grete
10 goodenes he hath taken hym to wylful pouerte / and forfaken
many landes / and his name is fyre Baudewyn of Bretayn
and he is a ful noble furgeon and a good leche / Now lete
fee / helpe me vp that I were there / for euer my herte gyueth
me that I fhalle neuer dye of my cofyn germayns handes / &
15 thenne with grete payne fir Lauayne halpe hym vpon his hors
And thenne they rode a grete wallop to gyders / and euer fyr
Launcelot bledde / that it ranne doune to the erthe / and fo by for-
tune they came to that hermytage the whiche was vnder a wo-
od / and a grete clyf on the other fyde / and a fayre water ren-
20 nyng vnder it / And thenne fyre Lauayn bete on the gate with
the but of his fpere / and cryed faft / Lete in for Ihefus sake/
and there came a fair chyld to them / and asked hem what they
wold / Faire fone faid fyr Lauayne / goo and pray thy lord/
the heremyte for goddes sake to lete in here a knyghte that is
25 ful fore wounded / and this day telle thy lord I fawe hym do
more dedes of armes than euer I herd fay ony man dyd
Soo the chyld wente in lyghtely / and thenne he brought the
heremyte the whiche was a paffynge good man / Whan fyr la-
uayne fawe hym he prayd hym for goddes sake of focour / what
30 knyght is he fayd the heremyte / is he of the hows of kyng ar-
thur or not / I wote not faid fyre Lauayne what is he / nor
what is his name / but wel I wote I fawe hym doo meruey-
loufly this daye as of dedes of armes / On whos party was
he fayd the heremyte / fyre faid fyre Lauayne he was this daye
35 ageynft kynge Arthur / and there he wanne the pryce of alle
the knyghtes of the round table / I haue fene the daye fayd
the heremyte / I wold haue loued hym the werfe / by caufe he
was ageynft my lord kynge Arthur / for fomtyme I was one

of the felauship of the round table / but I thanke god now
 I am otherwyfe disposed / But where is he / lete me see hym/
 Thenne fir Lauayne broughte the heremyte to hym

¶ Capitulum xiiij

ANd whan the heremyte beheld hym as he sat lenynge
 vpon his fadel bowe euer bledynge pytously / and e- 5
 uer the knyghte heremyte thoughte that he shold knowe hym
 but he coude not brynge hym to knouleche / by cause he was foo
 pale for bledynge / what knyghte are ye sayd the heremyte / and
 where were ye borne / My fayre lord sayd fyre Launcelot I am
 a straunger and a knyghte auenturous that laboureth thur 10
 oute many Realmes for to wyne worship / Thenne the here-
 myte aduysed hym better / and fawe by a wound on his cheke
 that he was fyr Launcelot / Allas sayd the heremyte myn ow-
 ne lord why layne you your name from me / ¶ For sothe I
 oughte to knowe yow of ryzt / for ye are the moost noblest kn- 15
 yghte of the world / for wel I knowe yow for sire launcelot
 Sire said he fythe ye knowe me / helpe me and ye may for god-
 des sake / for I wold be oute of this payne at ones / outhur to
 dethe or to lyf / Haue ye no doubte sayd the heremyte ye shall
 lyue and fare ryght wel / and foo the heremyte called to hym 20
 two of his seruauytes / and so he and his seruauentes bare hym
 in to the hermytage / and lyghtely vnarmed hym / and leyd
 hym in his bedde / And thenne anone the heremyte staunched
 his blood and made hym to drynke good wyn so that fir la-
 uncelot was wel refresshed and knewe hym self / For in the- 25
 fe dayes it was not the guyse of heremytes as is now a dayes
 For there were none heremytes in tho dayes but that they had
 ben men of worship and of prowesse / and tho heremytes helde
 grete housholde / and refresshyd peple that were in distresse /
 ¶ Now torne we vnto kynge Arthur and leue we fir laun- 30
 celot in the hermytage / ¶ Soo whan the kynges were comen
 to gyders on bothe partyes / and the grete feest shold be holden
 kynge Arthur asked the kynge of Northgalys and theyr fe-
 laushyp where was that knyghte that bare the reed sleue / br-
 ynge hym afore me that he may haue his lawde and honour & 35

the pryce as it is ryght / Thenne spake sir Galahad the haute
 prynce and the kyng with the honderd knyghtes / we suppoſe
 that knyghte is meſcheued & that he is neuer lyke to ſee yow
 nor none of vs alle / and that is the gretteſt pyte that euer we
 5 wyfte of ony knyghte / Allas ſayd Arthur how may this be /
 is he ſoo hurte / What is his name ſayd kyng Arthur / Truly
 ſaid they all we knowe not his name / nor from whens he cam
 nor whyder he wold / Allas ſayd the kyng this be to me the
 werſt tydynges that came to me this ſeuē yere / For I wold
 10 not for alle the londes I welde to knowe and wete it were ſo
 that that noble knyght were ſlayne / knowe ye hym ſayd they
 al / ¶ As for that ſayd Arthur / whether I knowe
 hym or knowe hym not / ye ſhal not knowe for me what
 man he is but almyghty ihēſu ſende me good good tydynges
 15 of hym and ſoo ſaid they alle / By my hede ſaid ſire Gawayn
 yf it ſoo be that the good knyghte be ſo fore hurte / hit is grete
 damage and pyte to alle this land / For he is one of the nobleſt
 knyghtes that euer I ſawe in a felde handle a ſpere or
 a fuerd / And yf he maye be founde I ſhalle fynde hym / For
 20 I am ſure he nys not fer fro this towne / bere yow wel ſayd
 kyng Arthur / and ye may fynde hym onles that he be in ſuche
 a plyte that he may not welde hym ſelf / Ihēſu defende ſayd
 ſir Gawayne / but wete I ſhalle what he is and I may fynde
 hym / Ryght ſoo ſyre Gawayne took a ſquyer with hym vp-
 25 on hakneis and rode al aboute Camelot within vj or ſeuē myle
 / but ſoo he came ageyne and coude here no word of hym /
 Thenne within two dayes kyng Arthur and alle the felauſhypp
 retorned vnto london ageyne / And ſoo as they rode by
 the waye / hit happed ſir Gawayne at Aſtolat to lodge wyth
 30 ſyr Bernard / there as was ſyr Launcelot lodged / and ſoo as
 ſire Gawayn was in his chamber to repoſe hym / ſyr Barnard
 the old Baron came vnto hym and his doughter Elayne to
 chere hym and to aſke hym what tydynges and who dyd beſt
 at that turnement of wyncheſter / Soo god me help ſaid ſyre
 35 Gawayne there were two knyghtes that bare two whyte ſhel-
 des / but the one of hem bare a reed fleue vpon his hede and cer-
 taynly he was one of the beſt knyghtes that euer I ſawe luſte
 in felde / For I dare ſay ſayd ſire Gawayne that one knyght

with the reed fleue smote doune fourty knyghtes of the table
 round / and his felawe dyd ryght wel and worfhypfully /
 ¶ Now bleffid be god fayd the fayre mayden of Astolat
 that that knyght sped foo wel / for he is the man in the world
 that I fyrst loued / and truly he shalle be lafte that euer I sh- 5
 alle loue / / Now fayre mayde fayd fir Gawayne is that good
 knyght your loue / Certaynly fir fayd she / wete ye wel he is
 my loue / thenne knowe ye his name fayd fire gawayne / Nay
 truly said the damoyfel / I knowe not his name nor from whe-
 ns he cometh / but to say that I loue hym I promyse you and 10
 god that I loue hym / how had ye knoueleche of hym fyrst fa-
 id fire Gawayne

¶ Capitulum xiiii

THenne she told hym as ye haue herd to fore / and hou
 her fader betoke hym her broder to doo hym seruyse / and
 how her fader lente hym her broders fyr Tyrreis shelde / and he- 15
 re with me he lefte his owne sheld / For what cause dyd he so
 said fir Gawayne / For this cause fayd the damoyfel / for his
 sheld was to wel knowne amonge many noble knyghtes / A
 fayr damoyfel fayd fir Gawayne please hit yow lete me haue
 a fyghte of that sheld / fyre said she it is in my chamber couerd 20
 with a caas / and yf ye wille come with me / ye shalle see hit /
 Not foo fayd fyre Barnard tyl his doughter lete fende for it
 Soo whan the sheld was comen / fir Gawayne took of the ca-
 as / And whanne he beheld that sheld he knewe anone that hit
 was fir launcelots shelde / and his owne armes / A Ihesu mer- 25
 cy fayd fyr Gawayne now is my herte more heuyer than euer
 it was tofore why fayd Elayne / for I haue grete cause fayd
 fire Gawayne / is that knyght that oweth this shelde your loue
 ye truly said she my loue he is / god wold I were his loue/
 Soo god me spede fayd fire Gawayne fair damoyfel ye haue 30
 ryght / for and he be your loue / ye loue the moost honourable
 knyghte of the world and the man of moost worfhyp / So me
 thoughte euer said the damoyfel / for neuer or that tyme for no
 knyghte that euer I sawe / loued I neuer none erst / ¶ God
 graunte fayd fire Gawayne that eyther of yow maye reioyse 35

other / but that is in a grete aduenture / But truly said fir gawayne vnto the damoyfel / ye may faye ye haue a fayre grace for why I haue knowen that noble knyght this four and twenty yere / and neuer or that day / I nor none other knyghte / I
 5 dare make good / fawe / nor herd faye that euer he bare token or fygne of no lady / gentilwoman / ne mayden at no Iustes nor turnement / And therfor fayre mayden faide fire Gawayne ye ar moche beholden to hym to gyue hym thanks / But I drede me sayd fire Gawayne that ye shalle neuer see hym in thys
 10 world / and that is grete pyte / that euer was of erthely knyght / Allas sayd she / how may this be / is he slayne / I say not foo said fire Gawayne / but wete ye wel / he is greuoufly wounded by alle maner of fygnes and by mens fyghte more lykelyer to be dede than to be on lyue / and wete ye wel he is the
 15 noble knyghte fire launcelot / for by this sheld I knowe hym Allas said the fayre mayden of Aftolat / how maye this be / and what was his hurte / Truly said fire Gawayne the man in the world that loued hym best / hurte hym foo / and I dare say sayd fir Gawayne / and that knyghte that hurte hym kne-
 20 we the veray certaynte that he had hurte fire Launcelot / it wold be the moost sorowe that euer came to his herte / Now fair fader said thenne Elayne I requyre yow gyue me leue to ryde and to seke hym / or els I wote wel I shalle go oute of my mynde / for I shalle neuer stynte tyl that I fynde hym / and
 25 my broder fyre Lauayne / Doo as it lyketh yow sayd her fader / for me fore repenteth of the hurte of that noble knyghte
 ¶ Ryghte foo the mayde made her redy and before fyre Gawayne makynge grete dole / Thenne on the morne fyr Gawayne came to kynge Arthur / and told hym how he had fonde
 30 fire Launcelots shelde in the kepyng of the fayre mayden of Aftolat / Alle that knewe I afore hand sayd kynge Arthur and that caused me I wold not suffer you to haue adoo atte grete Iustes / for I aspyed said kynge Arthur whan he cam in tyl his lodgyng ful late in the euenyng in Aftolat / But
 35 merueille haue I said Arthur that euer he wold bere ony fygne of ony damoyfel / For or now I neuer herd say nor knewe that euer he bare ony token of none erthely woman / By my hede said fir Gawayne the fayre mayden of Aftolat loueth

hym merueylloufly wel / what it meaneth I can not faye / &
 ſhe is ryden after to feke hym / Soo the kyng and alle cam to
 london / and there ſir Gawayne openly diſcloſed to alle the
 Courte that it was ſir Launcelot that luſted beſt

¶ Capitulum xv

ANd whanne ſir Bors herd that wete ye wel / he was 5
 an heuy man / and ſoo were alle his kynneſmen / But
 whan quene Gueneuer wyfte that ſyre Launcelot bare
 the reed fleue / of the fayre mayden of Aſtolat / ſhe was nyghe
 oute of her mynde for wrathe / ¶ And thenne ſhe fente for ſyr
 Bors de ganys in alle the haſt that myghte be / Soo whanne 10
 ſir Bors was come to fore the quene / thenne ſhe ſayd / A ſir
 Bors haue ye herd ſay how falſly ſir launcelot hath bytrayed
 me / Allas madame ſaid ſir Bors / I am aferd he hath by-
 trayed hym ſelf and vs alle / No force ſaid the quene though
 he be deſtroyed / for he is a falſ traytour knyghte / Madame ſa- 15
 yd ſir Bors I pray yow faye ye not ſo / for wete yow wel /
 I maye not here fuche langage of hym / why ſir Bors ſayd
 ſhe / ſhold I not calle hym traytour whan he bare the reed fleue
 vpon his hede at wyncheſtre at the grete luſtes / Madame ſayd
 ſyre Bors that fleue beryng repenteth me fore / but I dar ſay 20
 he dyd it to none euylle entente / but for this cauſe he bare the
 reed fleue that none yf his blood ſhold knowe hym / For or
 thenne we nor none of vs alle neuer knewe that euer he bare
 token or ſygne of mayde / lady / ne gentylwoman / Fy on hym
 ſaid the quene / yet for all his pryde and bobaunce there ye pro- 25
 ued your ſelf his better / Nay madame faye ye neuer more ſoo
 for he bete me / and my felawes / and myghte haue ſlayne vs
 and he had wold / Fy on hym ſayd the quene / For I herd
 ſir Gawayne faye bifore my lord Arthur that it were merueil
 to telle the grete loue that is bitwene the fayre mayden of Aſ- 30
 tolat and hym / Madame ſaide ſyre Bors I maye not warne
 ſyr Gawayne to ſay what it pleaſyd hym / But I dare ſay
 as for my lord ſyre Launcelot that he loueth no lady gentil-
 woman nor mayde / but all he loueth in lyke moche / and therfor

madame said fir Bors / ye may faye what ye wylle / but wete
ye wel I wille haste me to feke hym / and fynde hym where
someuer he be / and god fende me good tydynges of hym / and
foo leue we them there / and speke we of fire launcelot that lay
5 in grete perylle / Soo as fayr Elayne cam to wynchestre / she
foughte there al aboute / and by fortune fyr Lauayne was ry-
den to playe hym to enchauffe his hors / And anone as Ela-
yne sawe hym she knewe hym / And thenne she cryed on loude
vntyl hym / And whan he herd her / anone he came to her / and
10 thenne she asked her broder how dyd my lord fire launcelot /
Who told yow fyfter that my lordes name was fir Launcelot
thenne she told hym how fire Gawayne by his sheld knewe
hym / Soo they rode to gyders tyl that they cam to the hermyta-
ge / and anone she alyghte / So fir Lauayne broughte her in to
15 fire launcelot / And whanne she sawe hym lye so feke & pale
in his bedde / she myght not speke / but sodenly she felle to the
erthe doune sodenly in a fwoun / and there she lay a grete wh-
yle / And whanne she was releuyd / she shryked / and saide my
lord fire Launcelot Allas why be ye in this plyte / and thenne
20 she fwouned ageyne / And thenne fir Launcelot prayd fyre
Lauayne to take her vp / and brynge her to me / And whan she
cam to her self fire Launcelot kyft her / and said / Fair mayden
why fare ye thus / ye put me to payne wherfor make ye nomo-
re fuche chere / for and ye be come to comferte me / ye be ryzt wel-
25 come / and of this lytel hurte that I haue I shal be ryghte
hastely hole by the grace of god / But I merueylle sayd fir
Launcelot / who told yow my name / thenne the fayre mayden
told hym alle how fire Gawayne was lodged with her fader
and there by your sheld he discouerd your name / Allas sayd
30 fir launcelot that me repenteth that my name is knowen / for
I am sure it wille torne vnto angre / And thenne fir launcelot
compast in his mynde that fyre Gawayne wold telle Quene
Gueneuer / how he bare the reed fleue / and for whome / that he
wyft wel wold torne vnto grete angre / Soo this mayden
35 Elayne neuer wente from fir launcelot / but watched hym day
and nyght / and dyd fuche attendaunce to hym that the fren-
fsh book faith / there was neuer woman dyd more kyndelyer
for man than she / Thenne fir Launcelot prayd fir Lauayne to

make aspyes in wynchestre for fire Bors yf he came there / and told hym by what tokens he shold knowe hym by a wound in his forhede / for wel I am fure sayd fire launcelot / that fyre Bors wille seke me / for he is the same good kny3t that hurte me /

5

¶ Capitulum xvi

Now torne we vnto fire Bors de ganys that cam vnto wynchestre to seke after his cosyn fyre Launcelot / and foo whanne he cam to wynchestre / anone there were men that fire Lauayne had made to lye in a watche for fuche a man and anone fir Lauayne had warnynge / and thenne fire Lauayne came to wynchestre / and fond fir Bors / and there he told hym what he was / and with whome he was / and what was his name / ¶ Now fayr knyghte said fire Bors I requyre yow that ye wille brynge me to my lord fir launcelot / Syre sayd fir Lauayne take your hors / & within this houre ye shall see hym / and foo they departed / and came to the hermytage /

¶ And whan fir Bors sawe fir launcelot lye in his bedde pale and discoloured / anone fir Bors lost his countenance / and for kyndenes and pyte / he myghte not speke / but wepte tendirly a grete whyle / And thenne whanne he myght speke / he said thus / O my lord fire launcelot god yow blyffe / and fend yow hasty recouer / And ful heuy am I of my myffortune & of myn vnhappyynes / for now I may calle my self vnhappy / & I drede me that god is gretely displeasyd with me that he wold suffre me to haue fuche a shame for to hurte yow that alle oure leder / and alle oure worshyp / and therfor I calle my self vnhappy / Allas that euer fuche a caytyf knyghte as I am shold haue power by vnhappyynes to hurte the moost noblest knyghte of the world / where I foo shamefully fet vpon yow and ouercharged yow / and where ye myghte haue slayne me ye faued me / and so dyd not I / For I and your blood did to yow our vtterance / I merueyle sayd fire Bors that my herte or my blood wold ferue me / wherfor my lord fir launcelot I aske your mercy / Fair cosyn said fire Launcelot ye be ryght welcome / & wete ye wel / ouer moche ye fay for to please

[leaf 377]

3 B

me / the whiche pleafeth me not / for why I haue the fame y fo-
 ught / for I wold with pryde haue ouercome yow alle / and
 there in my pryde I was nere flayne / and that was in myn
 owne defaute / for I myghte haue gyue yow warnyng of my
 5 beynge there / And thenne had I had noo hurte / for it is an
 old fayd fawe / there is hard bataille there as kynne & frendes
 doo bataille eyther ageynfte other / there maye be no mercy but
 mortal warre / Therfor fair cofyn faid fir launcelot / lete thys
 fpeche ouerpaffe and alle fhalle be welcome that god fendeth
 10 and lete vs leue of this mater / and lete vs fpeke of fomme
 reioycyng / for this that is done maye not be vndone / and lete
 vs fynde a remedy how foone that I may be hole / Thenne fire
 Bors lened vpon his beddes fyde / and told fire Launcelot
 how the quene was paffyng wrothe with hym / by caufe he wa-
 15 re the reed fleue at the grete Iuftes / and there fir Bors told
 hym alle how fir Gawayne difcouered hit by youre fheld that
 ye lefte with the fayre mayden of Aftolat / Thenne is the que-
 ne wrothe faid fir launcelot / and therfor am I ryght heuy /
 for I deferued no wrath / for alle that I dyd was by caufe I
 20 wold not be knowen / Ryght fo excufed I yow faid fir Bors
 but alle was in vayne / for fhe fayd more largelyer to me thā
 I to yow now / But is this fhe faid fire Bors that is fo befy
 aboute yow / that men calle the fayre mayden of Aftolat / She
 it is faid fire launcelot that by no meanes I can not putte her
 25 from me / why fhould ye putte her from you faid fire Bors / fhe
 is a paffyng fayre damoyfel and a wel bifene and wel ta-
 ughte / and god wold fayre cofyn faid fyre Bors that ye co-
 ude loue her / but as to that I may not / nor I dare not coun-
 ceyle yow / But I fee wel fayd fir Bors by her dylygence a-
 30 boutte you that fhe loueth you entierly / that me repenteth faid
 fir Laūcelot / fyr faid fyr Bors / fhe is not the fyrft that hath
 lofte her payn vpon yow / and that is the more pyte / and foo
 they talked of many moo thynges / And foo within thre dayes
 or four fire launcelot was bygge and ftronge ageyne

¶ Capitulum xviij

¶ Capitulum xviii

Thenne fire Bors told fire launcelot how there was
 sworne a grete turnement and Iustes betwixe kyng
 Arthur and the kyng of Northgalys that sholde be
 vpon al halowmasse day befyde wynchestre / is that trouthe fa-
 id fir launcelot / thenne shalle ye abyde with me styl a lytyll 5
 whyle vntyl that I be hole / for I fele my self ryght bygge &
 stronge / Bleffid be god said fyr Bors / thenne were they the-
 re nygh a moneth to gyders / and euer this mayden Elayn dyd
 euer her dyligente labour nyghte and daye vnto fyr launce-
 lot / that ther was neuer child nor wyf more meker to her fa- 10
 der and husband than was that fayre mayden of Aftolat/
 wherfore fir Bors was gretely pleasyd with her / Soo vpon
 a day by the assente of fyr launcelot / fyre Bors and fyre la-
 uayne they made the heremyte to seke in woodes for dyuerse her-
 bes / and soo fir launcelot made fayre Elayne to gadre herbes 15
 for hym to make hym a bayne / In the meane whyle fyr laun-
 celot made hym to arme hym at alle pyeces / and there he tho-
 ughte to affaye his armour and his spere for his hurte or not
 And soo whan he was vpon his hors / he stered hym fyerfly /
 and the hors was passyng lufy and fresshe by cause he was 20
 not laboured a moneth afore / And thenne fyr Launcelot cou-
 ched that spere in the reest / that courser lepte myghtely whan
 he felte the spere / and he that was vpon hym the whiche was
 the noblest hors in the world strayned hym myghtely and sta-
 bly / and kepte styll the spere in the reest / and ther with fyre 25
 Launcelot strayned hym self soo straytly with soo grete force
 to gete the hors forward that the buttom of his wound brast
 bothe within and withoute / and there with alle the blood cam
 oute so fyerfly that he felte hym self soo feble that he myghte
 not fyte vpon his hors / And thenne fyr Launcelot cryed vnto 30
 fyr Bors / A fyr Bors and fyr Lauayne helpe for I am co-
 me to myn ende / And there with he felle down on the one syde
 to the erthe lyke a dede corps / And thenne fyr Bors and fyr
 Lauayne came to hym with sorowe makyng out of mesure /
 And soo by fortune the mayden Elayn herd their mornyng / & 35
 thenne she came thyder / & whan she fond fyr Launcelot there ar-
 med in that place / she cryed & wepte as she had ben woode / &

thenne she kyft hym / & dyd what she myghte to awake hym /
 And thenne she rebuked her broder and fir Bors / and cal-
 led hem fals traytours / why they wold take hym out of his
 bedde / there she cryed and fayd / she wold appele them of his
 5 deth / With this came the holy heremyte fyr Bawdewyn of bre-
 tayne / And whan he fond fyr launcelot in that plyte / he fayd
 but lytel / but wete ye wel he was wrothe / and thenne he bad
 hem / lete vs haue hym in / And so they alle bare hym vnto the
 hermytage / and vnarmed hym / and layd hym in his bedde / &
 10 euer more his wound bledde pytously / but he stered no lymme
 of hym / Thenne the knyghte heremyte put a thyng in his nose
 and a lytel dele of water in his mouthe / And thenne fir laun-
 celot waked of his fwoone / and thenne the heremyte staunched
 his bledynge / And whan he myghte speke / he asked fir laun-
 15 celot / why he putte his lyf in Ieopardy / Sir said fyre Launce-
 lot by cause I wende I had ben stronge / and also fyre Bors
 told me / that there shold be at al halowmasse a grete Iustes be-
 twixe kyng Arthur and the kyng of Northgalys / and ther-
 for I thoughte to affaye hit my self / whether I myght be the-
 20 re or not / A fyr launcelot fayd the heremyte / your herte & yo-
 ur courage wille neuer be done vntyl your last day / but ye shal
 doo now by my counceyll / lete fyre Bors departe from yow / &
 lete hym doo at that turnement what he may / by the gra-
 ce of god fayd the knyghte heremyte by that turnement be
 25 done and ye come hydder ageyne / fyr launcelot shal be as hole
 as ye / soo that he wil be gouerned by me /

Capitulum xviij

Thenne fyre Bors made hym redy to departe from fyre
 launcelot / and thenne fyre launcelot fayd / Faire cosyn
 fyr Bors recommaunde me vnto all them / vnto whome me
 30 oughte to recommaunde me vnto / and I pray yow / enforce yo-
 ur self at that Iustes that ye maye be best for my loue / & here
 shalle I abyde yow at the mercy of god tyl ye come ageyne
 and so fir Bors departed & came to the courte of kyng arthur
 and told hem in what place he had lefte fyre launcelot / that
 35 me repenteth said the kyng / but fyn he shall haue his lyf we
 all may thanke god / and there fyre Bors told the Quene in
 what Ieopardy fyre Launcelot was / whanne he wold affaye

his hors / and alle that he dyd madame was for the loue of
 yow / by cause he wold haue ben at this turnement / Fy on hym
 recreaunt knyghte fayd the quene / For wete ye wel I am ry-
 ght fory and he shalle haue his lyf / his lyf shalle he haue said
 fyr Bors / and who that wold other wyfe excepte you mada- 5
 me / we that ben of his blood shold helpe to shorte theire ly-
 ues / but madame fayd fyr Bors ye haue ben oftymes disple-
 fyed with my lord fyr launcelot / but at all tymes at the ende
 ye fynde hym a true knyghte and soo he departed / And then-
 ne euery knyghte of the round table that were there at that ty- 10
 me present made them redy to be at that Iustes at all halow-
 masse and thyder drewe many knyghtes of dyuerse countreyes
 And as al halowemasse drewe nere / thydder came the kynge
 of Northgalys / and the kynge with the honderd knyghtes / &
 fyr Galahaut the haute prynce of Surluse / and thydder came 15
 kynge Anguysse of Irland / and the kynge of Scottes / soo
 these thre kynges came on kynge Arthurs party / and soo that
 daye fyre Gawayne dyd grete dedes of armes / and began fyrft
 And the herowdes nombred that sir Gawayne smote doune xx
 knyghtes / Thenne fyr Bors de ganys came in the same tyme 20
 and he was nombred that he smote doune twenty knyghtes /
 And therfor the pryce was gyuen betwixe them bothe / for they
 began fyrft : engest endured /

¶ Also fyr Bors as the book sayth dyd that daye grete de-
 des of armes / for he smote doune and pulled doune thyrty 25
 knyghtes / But whan he had done these dedes / he taryed not / but
 soo departed / and therfor he lost his pryce / & sir Palomydes did
 grete dedes of armes that day / for he smote down twenty kny-
 ghtes / but he departed fodenly / & men demed fyre Gareth & he rode
 to gyders to somme maner aduentures / Soo whan this turne- 30
 ment was done / fyr Bors departed / & rode tyl he came to fyre
 launcelot his cofyn / & thenne he fonde hym walkynge on his
 feet / & ther eyther made grete Ioye of other / & so fire Bors tolde
 fyr launcelot of all the Iustes lyke as ye haue herde / I merue-
 ille said sir launcelot that fyre Gareth whan he had done suche 35
 dedes of armes that he wolde not tary / therof we merueyled al
 faide fyr Bors / for but yf it were yow or fyr Tristram or fyre
 lamorak de galys I sawe neuer knyzt bere doune soo many in

fo lytel a whyle as dyd fyr Gareth / And anone as he was
 gone we wyfte not where / By my hede faid fir launcelot he is
 a noble knyghte / and a myghty man / and wel brethed / and
 yf he were wel affayed faid fir Launcelot / I wold deme he
 5 were good ynough for ony knyghte that bereth the lyf / and he
 is a gentyl knyghte / curtois / true / and bounteuous / meke and
 mylde / and in hym is no maner of male engyn / but playne /
 feythful and trewe / Soo thenne they made hem redy to departe
 from the heremyte / and so vpon a morne they took their horfes
 10 and Elayne le blank with them / And whan they came to Af-
 tolat / there were they wel lodged and had grete chere of fyre
 Bernard the old baron / and of fir Tyrre his sone / and so vp-
 on the morne whan fyr Launcelot shold departe / fayre Ela-
 yne brouzt her fader with her and fir Lauayne and fir Tyrre
 15 and thus she faid

Capitulum xix

MY lord fyr Launcelot now I see ye wylle departe
 Now fayre knyghte and curtois knyghte haue mercy
 vpon me / and suffer me not to dye for thy loue / what
 wold ye that I dyd faid fyr launcelot / I wold haue you to
 20 my hufbond sayd Elayne / Fair damoyfel I thanke yow fa-
 yd fyr Launcelot / but truly sayd he I cast me to be wed-
 ded man / thenne fair knyght faid she / wylle ye be my peramo-
 ur / Ihesu defende me faid fyr launcelot / for thenne I rewarded
 your fader and your broder ful euylle for their grete goodenes
 25 Allas sayd she / thenne must I dye for your loue / ye shal not
 so faid fyre launcelot / for wete ye wel fayr mayden I myght
 haue ben maryed & I had wolde / but I neuer applyed me to
 be maryed yet / but by caufe fair damoyfel that ye loue me as ye
 faye ye doo / I wille for your good wylle and kyndenes she-
 30 we yow fomme goodenes / & that is this / that were someuer ye
 wille befet youre herte vpon fomme goode knyghte that wylle
 wedde yow / I shalle gyue yow to gyders a thoufand pound
 yerely to yow & to your heyres / thus moche will I gyue yow
 faire madame for your kyndenes / & alweyes whyle I lyue to
 35 be your owne knyghte ¶ Of alle this faide the may-
 den I wille none / for but yf ye wille wedde me or ellys be

my peramour at the leest / wete yow wel fir launcelot my go-
 od dayes are done / Fair damoyfel fayd fir launcelot of these ij
 thynges ye must pardonne me / thenne she shryked shyrlly / and
 felle doune in a swoone / and thenne wymmen bare her in to her
 chamber / and there she made ouer moche sorowe / and thenne fir 5
 launcelot wold departe / and there he asked fir Lauayn what
 he wold doo / what shold I doo said fyre lauayne but folowe
 yow / but yf ye dryue me from yow / or commaunde me to goo
 from yow / Thenne came fir Bernard to fir launcelot and said
 to hym / I can not see but that my doughter Elayne wille dye 10
 for your sake / I maye not doo with alle said fir launcelot / for
 that me fore repenteth / For I reporte me to youre self that my
 profer is fayre / and me repenteth said fyr launcelot that she lo-
 ueth me as she doth / I was neuer the causer of hit / for I re-
 porte me to youre sone I erly ne late profered her bounte nor 15
 faire byhestes / and as for me said fir launcelot I dare do alle
 that a knyght shold doo that she is a clene mayden for me bo-
 the for dede and for wille / And I am ryght heuy of her dist-
 resse / for she is a ful fayre mayden good and gentyl and well
 taughte / Fader said fir Lauayne I dar make goood she is a 20
 clene mayden as for my lord fir launcelot / but she doth as I
 doo / For fythen I fyrst sawe my lord fir launcelot I coude ne-
 uer departe from hym nor nought I wylle and I maye folo-
 we hym / Thenne fir Launcelot took his leue / and foo they de-
 parted / and came vnto wynchestre / And whan Arthur wyfte 25
 that fyr launcelot was come hole and found / the kynge maade
 grete ioye of hym / and foo dyd fir Gawayn and all the kny3-
 tes of the round table excepte fir Agrauayn and sire Mordred
 ¶ Also quene Gueneuer was woode wrothe with fir launce-
 lot and wold by no meanes speke with hym / but enstraun- 30
 ged her self from hym / and fir launcelot made alle the mea-
 nes that he myght for to speke with the quene / but hit wolde
 not be / ¶ Now speke we of the fayre mayden of Astolat that
 made fuche sorowe daye and nyght that she neuer slepte / ete / nor
 drank / and euer she made her complaynt vnto fir Launcelot / so 35
 when she had thus endured a ten dayes / that she febled so that
 she must nedes passe out of thys world / thenne she shryued her
 clene / and receyued her creatoure / And euer she complayned

stille vpon fire launcelot / Thenne her ghooftly fader bad her le-
ue fuche thoughtes / Thenne she sayd why shold I leue fuche
thoughtes / am I not an erthely woman / and alle the whyle
the brethe is in my body I may complayne me / for my byle-
ue is I doo none offence / though I loue an erthely man / and
5 I take god to my record I loued none but fir launce-
lot du lake nor neuer shall / and a clene mayden I am for hym
and for alle other / and sythen hit is the sufferaunce of god /
that I shalle dye for the loue of soo noble a knyghte / I byfe-
10 che the hyghe fader of heuen to haue mercy vpon my fowle / and
vpon myn innumerable paynes that I suffred may be allyge-
aunce of parte of my synnes / For swete lord Ihesu sayd the
fayre mayden I take the to record / on the I was neuer gre-
te offender ageynst thy lawes / but that I loued this noble
15 knyght fir launcelot out of mesure / and of my self good lo-
rd I myght not withstande the feruent loue wherfor I haue
my dethe / And thenne she called her fader fir Bernard and
her broder fir Tyrre / and hertely she praid her fader that her bro-
der myght wryte a letter lyke as she did endyte hit / and so her
20 fader graunted her / And whan the letter was wryten word
by word lyke as she deuyfed / Thenne she prayd her fader that
she myght be watched vntyl she were dede / and whyle my bo-
dy is hote / lete this letter be putt in my ryght hand / and my
hande boude fast with the letter vntyl that I be cold / and lete
25 me be putte in a fayre bedde with alle the rycheft clothes that
I haue aboute me / and so lete my bedde and alle my rycheft
clothes be laide with me in a charyot vnto the next place whe-
re Temse is / and there lete me be putte within a barget / & but
one man with me / fuche as ye trust to stere me thyder / and that
30 my barget be couerd with blak famyte ouer and ouer / Thus
fader I byfeche yow lete hit be done / soo her fader graunted hit
her feythfully / alle thynges shold be done lyke as she had deuy-
fed / Thenne her fader and her broder made grete dole / for when
this was done / anone she dyed / And soo whan she was dede /
35 the corps and the bedde alle was ledde the next way vnto Te-
mse / and there a man and the corps & alle were put in to Te-
mse / and soo the man styred the barget vnto westmyenster / and
there he rowed a grete whyle to & fro or any aspyed hit

¶ Capitulum xx

SOo by fortune kynge Arthur and the quene Guene-
 uer were spekyng to gyders at a wyndowe / and foo as they
 loked in to Temse / they aspyed this blak barget / and hadde
 merueylle what it mente / thenne the kynge called fire kay / &
 shewed hit hym / Sir said fir kay wete you wel there is some 5
 newe tydynges / Goo thyder sayd the kynge to fir kay / & take
 with yow fire Brandyles and Agraayne / and bryng me
 redy word what is there / Thenne these four knyghtes departed
 and came to the barget and wente in / and there they fond the
 fayrest corps lyenge in a ryche bedde and a poure man sitting 10
 in the bargets ende and no word wold he speke / Soo these
 foure knyghtes retorned vnto the kyng ageyne and told hym
 what they fond / That fayr corps wylle I see sayd the kynge
 And foo thenne the kyng took the quene by the hand / & went
 thydder / Thenne the kynge made the barget to be holden fast / & 15
 thenne the kyng & þ^e quene entred with certayn knyghtes wyth
 them / and there he sawe the fayrest woman lye in a ryche bed-
 de couerd vnto her myddel with many ryche clothes / and alle
 was of clothe of gold / and she lay as though she had fmy-
 led / Thenne the quene aspyed a letter in her ryght hand / and 20
 told it to the kynge / Thenne the kynge took it and sayd / now
 am I sure this letter wille telle what she was / and why she is
 come hydder / Soo thenne the kynge and the quene wente oute
 of the barget / and foo commaunded a certayne wayte vpon
 the barget / And foo whan the kynge was come within his chā- 25
 ber / he called many knyghtes aboute hym / & faide that he wold
 wete openly what was wryten within that letter / thenne the
 kynge brake it / & made a clerke to rede hit / & this was the en-
 tente of the letter / Moost noble knyghte fir Launcelot / now
 hath dethe made vs two at debate for your loue I was your 30
 louer that men called the fayre mayden of Aftolat / therfor vn-
 to alle ladyes I make my mone / yet praye for my foule & bery
 me atte leest / & offre ye my masse peny / this is my last request
 and a clene mayden I dyed I take god to wytnes / pray for
 my foule fir launcelot as thou art pierles / this was alle the 35

substance in the letter / And whan it was redde / the kyng / the
 quene and alle the knyghtes wepte for pyte of the doleful cō-
 playntes / Thenne was sire Launcelot fente for / And whan he
 was come / kyng Arthur made the letter to be redde to hym /
 5 And whanne sire launcelot herd hit word by word / he sayd
 my lord Arthur / wete ye wel I am ryghte heuy of the dethe of
 this fair damoyfel / god knoweth I was neuer causer of her
 dethe by my wyllynge / & that wille I reporte me to her own
 broder / here he is sir Lauayne / I wille not faye nay sayd fyre
 10 Launcelot / but that she was bothe fayre and good / and mo-
 che / I was beholden vnto her / but she loued me out of mesure /
 Ye myght haue shewed her sayd the quene somme bounte and
 gentilnes that myghte haue preferued her lyf / madame sayd
 sir launcelot / she wold none other wayes be anfuerd / but that
 15 she wold be my wyf / outhir els my peramour / and of these
 two I wold not graunte her / but I proferd her for her go-
 od loue that she shewed me a thousand pound yerly to her /
 and to her heyres / and to wedde ony manere knyghte that she
 coude fynde best to loue in her herte / For madame said sir laun-
 20 celot I loue not to be constrayned to loue / For loue muste a-
 ryse of the herte / and not by no constraynte / That is trouth sayd
 the kyng / and many knyghtes loue is free in hym selfe /
 and neuer wille be bounden / for where he is bounden / he looseth
 hym self / Thenne sayd the kyng vnto sire Launcelot / hit wyl
 25 be your worthyp that ye ouer see that she be entered worthyp-
 fully / Sire sayd sire Launcelot that shalle be done as I can
 best deuyse / and soo many knyghtes yede thyder to behold that
 fayr mayden / and soo vpon the morne she was entered ryche-
 ly / and sir launcelot offryd her masse peny / and all the kny3-
 30 tes of the table round that were there at that tyme offryd with
 fyr launcelot / And thenne the poure man wente ageyne with
 the barget / ¶ Thenne the quene fente for fyr Launcelot / & pra-
 yd hym of mercy / for why that she had ben wrothe with hym
 causeles / this is not the fyrste tyme said sir launcelot that ye
 35 haue ben displeafyd with me causeles / but madame euer I
 must suffre yow / but what sorowe I endure I take no force /
 Soo this paste on alle that wynter with alle manere of hun-
 tyng and haukyng / and Iustes and torneyes were many be-

twixe many grete lordes / and euer in al places fir Lauayne
gate grete worhyp / foo that he was nobly renomed amonge
many knyghtes of the table round

Capitulum xxi

THus it pafte on tyl Cryftmasfe / And thenne euery day
there was Iuftes made for a dyamond / who that Iuf- 5
ted beft fhould haue a dyamond / but fyr laūcelot wo-
ld not Iufte but yf it were at a grete Iuftes cryed / but fyr la-
uayne Iufted there alle that Cryftmasfe paffyngly wel / and
beft was prayfed / for there were but fewe that dyd fo wel /
wherfore alle manere of knyghtes demed that fir lauayne fh- 10
old be made knyghte of the table round at the nexte feefte of
Pentecoft / Soo at after Cryftmasfe kynge Arthur lete calle
vnto hym many knyghtes / and there they aduysed to gyders
to make a party and a grete turnement and Iuftes / and the
kynge of Northgalys fayd to Arthur / he wold haue on his 15
party kynge Anguyffe of Irland / and the kynge with the
honderd knyghtes / and the kynge of Northumberland / and
fyr Galahad the haute prynce / and foo thefe foure kynges &
this myghty duke took party ageynft kynge Arthur and the
knyghtes of the table round / and the crye was made that the 20
day of the Iuftes fhould be befyde weftmynftre vpon candylmas
day wherof many knyghtes were glad / and made them redy to
be at that Iuftes in the freyffheft maner / Thenne quene Gue-
neuer fent for fyr launcelot / and faid thus I warne yow that
ye ryde ny more in no Iuftes nor turnementys / but that youre 25
kynnesmen may knowe yow / And at thife Iuftes that fhall be
ye fhalle haue of me a fleue of gold / and I pray yow for my
fake enforce your felf there that men may fpeke of yow wor-
fhip / but I charge yow as ye will haue my loue that ye war-
ne youre kynnesmen / that ye wille bere that daye the fleue of 30
gold vpon your helmet / Madame faid fir launcelot it fhalle be
don / and foo eyther made grete ioye of other / And whan fyre
Launcelot fawe his tyme / he told fir Bors that he wold depar-
te / & haue no more with hym but fir Lauayne vnto the good
heremyte that dwellid in that foreft of Wyndfoore / his name 35

was fire Braftias / and there he thoughte to repofe hym / and
 to take alle the reft that he myghte by caufe he wold be freſſhe
 at that daye of luſtes / Soo fire Launcelot and fire Lauayne de-
 parted that noo creature wyft where he was become / but the no-
 5 ble men of his blood / And whanne he was come to the her-
 mytage / wete yow wel he had good chere / and foo dayly fyr
 launcelot wold goo to a welle faſt by the hermytage / & there
 he wold lye doune / and ſee the welle ſprynge and burbyl / &
 ſomtyme he ſlepte there / ¶ So at that tyme there was a lady
 10 dwellid in that foreſt / and ſhe was a grete huntrefſe / & dayly
 ſhe uſed to hunte / and euer ſhe bare her bowe with her / and no
 men wente neuer with her / but alwayes wymmen / and they
 were ſhoters / and coude wel kylle a dere bothe at the ſtalke &
 at the treſt / and they dayly bare bowes and arowes / hornes &
 15 wood knyues / and many good dogges they had / both for the
 ſtrynge and for a bate / So hit happed this lady the huntrefſe
 had abated her dogge for the bowe at a barayne hynde / and ſo
 this barayne hynde took the flyghte ouer hedges and woodes
 And euer this lady and parte of her wymmen coſted the hy-
 20 nde and chekked it by the noyſe of the houndes to haue mette
 with the hynde at ſomme water / and foo hit happed the hynde
 came to the welle where as fire launcelot was ſlepyng & ſlom-
 berynge / And foo whan the hynde came to the welle / for hete
 ſhe wente to foyle / and there ſhe lay a grete whyle / and the dog-
 25 ges came after / and vmbecaſt aboute / for ſhe had loſt the veray
 parfyte feaute of the hynde / Ryghte ſo came that lady the hun-
 tres that knewe by thy dogge that ſhe had that the hynde was
 at the foyle in that welle / and there ſhe cam ſtyfly and fonde
 the hynde / and ſhe put a brode arowe in her bowe / and ſhot atte
 30 hynde / and ouer ſhotte the hynde / and foo by myſfortune the
 arowe ſmote ſir Launcelot in the thyck of the buttoke ouer the
 barbys / whanne ſir launcelot felte hym ſelf ſo hurte / he hurled
 vp woodely / and ſawe the lady that had ſmyten hym / ¶ And
 whan he ſawe ſhe was a woman / he ſayd thus / lady / or da-
 35 moyſel what that thow be / in an euylle tyme bare ye a bowe /
 the deuylle made yow a ſhoter /

Capitulum xx

Now mercy fair fir said the lady I am a gentilwoman that vseth here in this forest huntynge / and god knoweth I sawe yow not / but as here was a barayn hynde at the foyle in this welle and I wend to haue done wel / but my hand swarued / Allas said fyre launcelot ye haue mescheued me / and soo the lady departed / and fir launcelot as he myghte pulled oute the arowe / and lefte that hede styll in his buttoke / and soo he wente weykely to the hermytage euer more bledynge as he went / And whan fir Lauayne and the heremyte aspyed that fir launcelot was hurte / wete yow wel they were passynge heuy / but fire Lauayne wyft not how that he was hurte nor by whome / And thenne were they wrothe out of mesure / thenne with grete payne the heremyte gat oute the arowes hede oute of fyr launcelots buttoke / and moche of his blood he shedde / and the wound was passynge fore / and vn- happily smyten / for it was in fuche a place that he myght not sytte in noo sadyl / A mercy Ihesu said fir Launcelot I may calle my self the moost vnhappye man that lyueth for euer / whan I wold faynest haue worshyp / there befalleth me euer somme vnhappy thyng / Now soo Ihesu me helpe said fir launcelot / and yf no man wold but god / I shalle be in the felde vpon candelmasse daye at the Iustes what someuer falle of hit soo alle that myght be gotten to hele fir launcelot was had /

I Soo whan the day was come / fir launcelot lete deuyse that he was arayed / and fir Lauayne and their horses as thouz they had ben farazyns / and soo they departed and cam nygh to the felde / The kynge of Northgalys with an honderd knyghtes with hym / and the kynge of Northumberland broughte with hym an honderd good knyghtes / and kynge Anguysshe of Irland brought with hym an honderd good knyghtes redy to Iuste / and fir Galahalt the haute prynce broughte with hym an honderd good knyghtes / and the kynge with the honderd knyghtes brought with hym as many / and alle these were proued good knyghtes / Thenne cam in kyng Arthurs party / and there came in the kynge of Scottes with an honderd knyghtes / and kynge Vryens of Gore brought with hym an

honderd knyghtes / And kynge Howel of Bretayne brouzte
 with hym an honderd knyghtes and Chalaunce of Claraun-
 ce broughte with hym an honderd knyghtes / and kynge Ar-
 thur hym self came in to the felde with two honderd knyghtes
 5 and the moost party were knyghtes of the table round that
 were proued noble knyghtes / / and there were old knyghtes
 fette in skaffoldes for to Iuge with the quene who dyd best /

¶ Capitulum xxiij

THenne they blewe to the felde / and there the kyng of
 northgalys encountred with the kynge of scottes / &
 10 there the kynge of Scottes had a falle / and the kyng of Ir-
 land smote doune kynge Vryens / and the kyng of Northum-
 berland smote doune kynge Howel of Bretayne / and sir Ga-
 lahaut the haute prynce smote doune Challenge of Claraunce /
 And thenne kynge Arthur was woode wroth / and ranne to
 15 the kynge with the honderd knyghtes / and there kyng Arthur
 smote hym doune / and after with that same spere kynge Ar-
 thur smote doune thre other knyghtes / And thenne whan his
 spere was broken / kynge Arthur dyd passyngly wel / and soo
 there with alle came in sir Gawayne and sir Gaheryse / sire A-
 20 grauayne and sir mordred / and there eueryche of them smote
 doune a knyghte / and sir Gawayne smote doune four knyghtes
 and thenne there beganne a stronge medle / for thenne there
 came in the knyghtes of launcelots blood / and sir Gareth and
 sire Palomydes with them / and many knyghtes of the table
 25 round / and they beganne to holde the foure kynges and the
 myghty duke soo hard that they were discomfyte / but this du-
 ke Galahad the haut prynce was a noble knyght / and by his
 myghty prowesse of armes / he helde the knyghtes of the table
 round straye ynough / Alle this doynge sawe sir launcelot / &
 30 thenne he came in to the felde with sir Lauayne as hit had ben
 thonder / And thenne anone fyre Bors and the knyghtes of
 his blood aspyed sir launcelot / and said to them alle I warne
 yow beware of hym with the sleue of gold vpon his hede / for
 he is hym self sir launcelot du lake / and for grete goodenes sir

Bors warned fyr Gareth / I am wel apayed said fir Gareth
 that I may knowe hym / but who is he sayd they alle that ry-
 deth with hym in the fame aray / That is the good and gentyl
 knyght fir Lauayne said fir Bors / Soo fire Launcelot encoū-
 tred with fir Gawayne / and there by force fyr launcelot smote 5
 doune fir Gawayne and his hors to the erthe / and foo he smote
 doune fir Agraayne and fire Gaherys / and also he smote
 doune fir Mordred / and alle this was with one spere

¶ Thenne fir Lauayne mette with fir Palomydes / and eyther
 mette other foo hard and so fyrfly that bothe their horses felle 10
 to the erthe / And thenne were they horfed ageyne / and then-
 ne mette fir Launcelot with fir Palomydes / and there fire Pa-
 lomydes had a falle / and foo fir launcelot or euer he stynte as
 fast as he myghte gete speres / he smote down thyrty knyghtes
 and the moost party of them were knyghtes of the table round 15
 and euer the knyghtes of his blood withdrewe them / & made
 hem adoo in other places where fir launcelot came not / and then-
 ne kyng Arthur was wrothe whan he sawe fir Launcelot doo
 fuche dedes / and thenne the kyng called vnto hym fir gawayn
 fir Mordred / fir kay / fir Gryflet / fir Lucan the butteler / fyre 20
 Pedeuier / fir Palomydes / Sir Safyr his broder / and so the ky-
 nge with these nyne knyghtes made hem redy to sette vpon fir
 Launcelot / and vpon fyr Lauayne / Alle this aspyed fir bors
 and fir Gareth / Now I drede me fore said fir Bors that my
 lord fyr launcelot wylle hard be matched / By my hede sayd 25
 fyr Gareth I wylle ryde vnto my lord fir launcelot for to hel-
 pe hym / falle of hym what falle may / for he is the fame man
 that made me knyghte / ye shalle not foo said fir Bors by my
 counceylle / onles that ye were desguyfed / ye shalle see me dyf-
 guyfed said fyre Gareth / and there with al he aspyed a wa- 30
 lysshe knyghte where he was to repose hym / and he was fore
 hurte afore hurte by fyr Gawayne / and to hym fyre Gareth
 rode / and praid hym of his knyghthode to lene hym his shelde
 for his / I wille wel said the walysshe knyghte / And whanne
 fir Gareth had his shelde / the book saith / it was grene wyth a 35
 mayden that femed in hit / Thenne fyr Gareth came dryuynge
 to fir Launcelot al that he myghte / and said knyghte kepe thy
 self / for yonder cometh kyng Arthur with nyne noble knyghtes

with hym to putte yow to a rebuke / and so I am come to bere
 yow felauhyp for old loue ye haue shewed me / Gramercy fa-
 id fir launcelot / fyr sayd fir Gareth / encountre ye with fir Ga-
 wayne / and I shalle encountre with fyre Palomydes / and le-
 5 te fir Lauayne matche with the noble kynge Arthur / ¶ And
 whan we haue delyuerd hem / lete vs thre hold vs sadly to gy-
 ders / Thenne came kynge Arthur with his nyne knyghtes with
 hym / and fir launcelot encountred with fir Gawayne / & gafe
 hym fuche a buffet / that the arfon of his fadel braft / and fyre
 10 Gawayne felle to the erthe / Thenne fir Gareth encountred with
 the good knyghte fir Palomydes / and he gaf hym fuche a buf-
 fet that bothe his hors and he daffhed to the erthe / Thenne en-
 countred kynge Arthr with fyre Lauayne / and there eyther of
 hem smote other to the erthe hors and alle that they lay a gre-
 15 te whyle / Thenne fir launcelot smote doune fyr Agrauayne &
 fyre Gaheryfe / and fyr Mordred / and fyr Gareth smote doune
 fyr kay / and fyr Safyr and fyr Gryflet / And thenne fyr la-
 uayne was horsed ageyne / and he smote doune fyre Lucan the
 butteler and fyr Bedeuer / and thenne there beganne grete th-
 20 range of good knyghtes / Thenne fyre Launcelot hurtlyd here
 and there / and racyd and pulled of helmes / foo that at that
 tyme there myght none fyttte hym a buffet with spere nor with
 fuerd / and fyr Gareth dyd fuche dedes of armes that all men
 merueylled what knyghte he was with the grene sheld / For
 25 he smote doune that daye and pulled doune moo than thyrty
 knyghtes / And as the frensshe book sayth fyr Launcelot mer-
 ueylled whan he beheld fyr Gareth doo fuche dedes what kny-
 ghte he myghte be / and fyr Lauayne pulled doune and smo-
 te doune twenty knyghtes / ¶ Also fyr launcelot knewe not
 30 fyr Gareth / for and fyr Trifram de lyones / outhur fyr lamo-
 rak de galys had ben alyue / fyr launcelot wold haue demed
 he had ben one of them tweyne / Soo euer as fyr launcelot/
 fyr Gareth / fyr lauayn faughte / and on the one fyde fyr bors
 fyr Ector de marys / fyr lyonel / fyr lamorak de galys / fyr ble-
 35 oberyys / fyr Galyhud / fyr Galyhodyn / fyr Pelleas / and wyth
 moo other of kynge Bans blood foughte vpon another party
 and helde the kynge with the honderd knyghtes and the kyng
 of Northumberland ryght straye /

¶ Capitulum xxiiii

Soo this turnement & this Iustes dured longe / tyl hit
 was nere nyghte / for the knyghtes of the round table
 releued euer vnto kyng Arthur / for the kyng was wrothe
 oute of mesure / that he and his knyghtes myght not preuaile
 that day / Thenne sire Gawayne said to the kyng I merueile 5
 where alle this day fyr Bors de ganys and his felawshyp of
 fyre launcelots blood / I merueille all this day they be not a-
 boutte yow / hit is for somme cause sayd fyr Gawayne / By my
 hede said sire Kay fyr Bors is yonder all this day vpon the
 ryghte hand of this felde / and ther he and his blood done mo- 10
 re worshipfully than we doo / it may wel be sayd fyr Gawa-
 yne / but I drede me euer of gyle / for on payne of my lyf said
 sire Gawayne this knyghte with the reed fleue of gold is hym
 self fyr launcelot / I see wel by his rydyng / and by his grete
 strokes / and the other knyghte in the same colours is the good 15
 yonge knyght sire lauayne / Also that knyghte with the grene
 shelde is my broder fyr Gareth / and yet he hath desguysed hym
 self / for no man shalle neuer make hym be ageynst sire launce-
 lot by cause he made hym knyghte / By my hede said Arthur
 neuwe I byleue yow / therfore telle me now what is youre 20
 best counceyll / Sir said sire Gawayne ye shalle haue my coun-
 ceille / lete blowe vnto lodgyng / for and he be fyr Launcelot
 du lake and my broder fyr Gareth with hym with the helpe of
 that good yong knyghte fyr Lauayne / trust me truly it wyll
 be no bote to stryue with them / but yf we shold falle ten or xij 25
 vpon one knyghte / and that were no worship but shame / ye
 saye trouthe sayd the kyng / and for to saye sothe said the ky-
 ng it were shame to vs / soo many as we be to sette vpon them
 ony more / for wete ye wel sayd kyng Arthur / they ben thre
 good knyghtes / and namely that knyght with the fleue of 30
 gold / Soo thenne they blewe vnto lodgyng / but forth with all
 Kyng Arthur lete fende vnto the four kynges / and to the my-
 ghty duke / and praid hem that the knyghte with the fleue of
 gold departe not fro them / but that the kyng may speke with
 hym / Thenne fourthe with alle kyng Arthur alighte & vnar- 35
 med hym / & took a litill hakney / & rode after sire Launcelot /

for euer he had a fpye vpon hym / and foo he fonde hym amo-
 nge the four kynges / and the duke / and there the kyng pra-
 yd hem alle vnto fouper / and they fayd they wold with go-
 od wyll / And whan they were vnarmed / thenne kyng Ar-
 5 thur knewe fire launcelot / fir Lauayne and fir Gareth / A fyre
 Launcelot fayd kyng Arthur / this daye ye haue heted me / &
 my knyghtes / foo they yede vnto Arthurs lodgyng al to gy-
 der / and there was a grete feest and grete reuel / and the pry-
 ce was gyuen vnto fyr launcelot / and by herowdes they named
 10 hym / that he had smyten doune fyfty knyghtes / and fire Ga-
 reth fyue and thyrty / and fir Lauayne four and twenty kn-
 yghtes / Thenne fir Launcelot told the kyng and the Quene
 how the lady huntresse fhote hym in the foreste of wyndesore
 in the buttok with a brood arowe / & how the wound therof
 15 was that tyme fyxe Inches depe / and in lyke longe / ¶ Alfo
 Arthur blamed fyr Gareth by caufe he lefte his felafhypp / &
 helde with fir launcelot / My lord fayd fir Gareth / he maade me
 a knyghte / And whanne I fawe hym foo hard bestadde / me
 thought it was my worfhypp to helpe hym / for I fawe hym do
 20 foo moche / and foo many noble knyghtes ageynft hym / and
 whan I vnderftood that he was fir launcelot du lake / I sha-
 med to see foo many knyghtes ageynft hym alone / Truly fa-
 yd kyng Arthur vnto fyre Gareth ye faye wel and worfhypp-
 fully haue ye done and to your felf grete worfhypp / and alle
 25 the dayes of my lyf fayd kyng Arthur vnto fir Gareth wete
 yow wel I fhalle loue yow / and truſte yow the more better
 For euer fayd Arthur hit is a worfhyppful knyghtes dede to
 helpe an other worfhyppful knyghte whanne he feeth hym in a
 grete daunger / for euer a worfhyppful man will be lothe to see a
 30 worfhyppful fhamed / and he that is of no worfhip and fareth
 with cowardyſe / neuer fhall he fhewe gentilnes / nor no maner
 of goodnes where he feeth a man in ony daunger / for thenne
 euer wyll a coward fhewe no mercy / and alwayes a good
 man wille doo euer to another man as he wold ben done to
 35 hym felf / Soo thenne there were grete feestes vnto kynges and
 dukes / and reuel / game and playe / and al maner of nobleſſe
 was vſed / and he that was curtois / true and feythful to his
 frende was that tyme cheryſhed

¶ Capitulum xxv

ANd thus it past on from candylmas vntyl after efter
that the moneth of may was come / whan euery lusty
herte begynneth to blofomme / and to brynge forth fruyte / for ly-
ke as herbes and trees bryngen forth fruyte and florysshin in
may / in lyke wyse euery lusty herte that is in any maner a lo- 5
uer spryngeth and floryssheth in lusty dedes / For it gyueth vn-
to al louers courage that lusty moneth of may in some thyng
to constrayne hym to some maner of thyng more in that moneth
than in any other moneth for dyuerse causes / For thenne alle
herbes and trees renewen a man and woman / and lyke wy- 10
se louers callen ageyne to their mynde old gentilnes and old
seruyse and many kynde dedes were forgotten by neglygen-
ce / For lyke as wynter rasure doth alway a rase and deface gre-
ne fomer / soo fareth it by vnstable loue in man and woman /
For in many persons there is no stabylite / For we may see al 15
day for a lytel blast of wynters rasure anone we shalle deface
and lay a parte true loue / for lytel or noughte that cost moch
thyng / this is no wysedome nor stabylite / but it is feblenes
of nature and grete disworshyp who someuer vsed this / Ther-
fore lyke as may moneth floreth and floryssheth in many gar- 20
dyns / Soo in lyke wyse lete euery man of worshyp florysshe
his herte in this world / fyrst vnto god / and next vnto the io-
ye of them that he promysed his feythe vnto / for there was ne-
uer worshypful man or worshipfull woman / but they lo-
ued one better than another / and worshyp in armes may ne- 25
uer be foyled / but fyrst referue the honour to god / and second-
ly the quarel must come of thy lady / and suche loue I calle
vertuous loue / but now adayes men can not loue feuen nyzte
but they must haue alle their desyres that loue may not endu-
re by reason / for where they ben soone accorded and hasty hete / 30
soone it keleth / Ryghte soo fareth loue now a dayes / sone hote
soone cold / this is noo stabylite / but the old loue was not
so / men and wymmen coude loue to gyders feuen yeres / and no
lycours lustes were bitwene them / and thenne was loue tro-
uthe and feythfulnes / and loo in lyke wyse was vsed loue 35
in kynge Arthurs dayes /

¶ wherfor I lyken loue now

adaves vnto fomer and wynter / for lyke as the one is hote / &
 the other cold / so fareth loue now a dayes / therfore alle ye that
 be louers / calle vnto your remembraunce the moneth of may/
 lyke as dyd quene Gueneuer / For whome I make here a ly-
 5 tel mencyon that whyle she lyued / she was a true louer / and
 therfor she had a good ende

¶ Explicit liber Octodecimus / And here foloweth liber xix /

¶ Capítulum primum

Soo it befelle in the moneth of May / quene Gue-
 neuer called vnto her knyghtes of the table ro-
 und / and she gafe them warnynge that erly vp-
 10 on the morowe she wold ryde on mayeng in to
 woodes & feldes befyde westmynstre / & I warne
 yow that there be none of yow but that he be wel horfed / and
 that ye alle be clothed in grene outhur in fylke outhur in clothe
 and I shalle brynge with me ten ladyes / and euery knyght
 15 shalle haue a lady behynde hym / and euery knyghte shal haue
 a squyer and two yomen / and I wyll that ye alle be wel hor-
 fed / Soo they made hem redy in the fresshest maner / and these
 were the names of the knyghtes / fir Kay the Seneschal / fir A-
 grauayne / fir Brandyles / fir Sagramor le desyrus / Sir Do-
 20 dynas le faueage / fir Ozanna le cure hardy / fir Ladynas of the
 forest faueage / fir Perfaunt of Inde / fyre Ironfyde that was
 called the knyghte of the reed laundes / and fire Pelleas the
 louer / and these ten knyghtes made hem redy in the fresshest ma-
 ner to ryde with the quene / And soo vpon the morne they toke
 25 their horses with the quene / and rode on mayenge in woodes
 and medowes as hit pleasyd hem in grete Ioye and delytes /
 for the quene had cast to haue ben ageyne with kyng Arthur
 at the ferthest by ten of the klok / and soo was that tyme her
 purpoos / Thenne there was a knyghte that hyghte Mellya-
 30 graunce / and he was sone vnto kyng Bagdemagus / and this
 knyghte had at that tyme a castel of the yeste of kyng arthur

within feuen myle of westmynstre / And this knyghte fir Mel-
 lyagraunce loued passyng wel Quene Gueneuer / and foo
 had he done longe and many yeres / ¶ And the book sayth he
 had layne in a wayte for to stele away the quene / but euermo-
 re he forbare for by cause of fir launcelot / for in no wyfe he wo- 5
 ld medle with the quene / and fir Launcelot were in her com-
 pany / outhere els and he were nere hand her / and that tyme
 was fuche a customme / the quene rode neuer withoute a grete
 felauhyp of men of armes aboute her / and they were many
 good knyghtes / and the moost party were yong men that wo- 10
 ld haue worshyp / and they were called the quenes knyghtes
 and neuer in no batail / turnement / nor Iustes / they bare none
 of hem no maner of knouelechyng of their owne armes / but
 playne whyte sheldes / and there by they were called the que-
 nes knyghtes / And thenne whan it happed ony of them to be 15
 of grete worshyp by his noble dedes / thenne at the next feest of
 Pentecost / yf there were ony slayne or dede / as there was none
 yere that there fayled / but somme were dede / Thenne was there
 chofen in his stede that was dede the moost men of worshyp
 that were called the quenes knyghtes / And thus they came 20
 vp alle fyrste or they were renoumed men of worshyp / both fir
 Launcelot and alle the remenaunt of them / But this knyghte
 fir Mellyagraunce had aspyed the quene well and her purpos
 and how fir launcelot was not with her / and how she had no
 man of armes with her but the ten noble knyghtes all arayed 25
 in grene for mayeng / thenne he purueyed hym a xx men of ar-
 mes and an honderd archers for to destroye the quene and her
 knyghtes / for he thoughte that tyme was best feason to take the
 quene /

¶ Capitulum secundum

Soo as the quene had mayed and alle her knyghtes / 30
 alle were bedaffhed with herbys mosses and floures
 in the best maner and freshest / Ryghte so came oute of a wo-
 ode fyre Mellyagraunce with an eyghte score men wel harny-
 fed as they shold fyghte in a batail of a reeste and bad the
 quene and her knyghtes abyde / for maulgre theyr hedes they 35

shold abyde / Traytoure knyghte sayd quene Gueneuer what
cast thou for to doo / wolte thou shame thy self / bethynke the
how thou arte a kynges fone / and knyghte of the table rouȝd
and thou to be aboute to dishonoure the noble kyng that ma-
5 de the knyghte / thou shamest alle knyghthode and thy selfe / &
me I lete the wete shalte thou neuer shame / for I had leuer
cutte myn owne throte in tweyne rather than thou sholdest di-
honoure me / As for alle this langage sayd sir Mellyagraunce
be it as it be may / for wete yow wel madame I haue loued
10 yow many a yere / and neuer or now coude I gete yow at suche
an auauntage as I doo now / and therfor I wylle take yow
as I fynde yow / thenne spake alle the ten noble knyghtes att
ones and sayd / Syr Mellyagraunce wete thou wel ye ar a-
bout to Ieoparde your worshyp to dishonour / and also ye cast
15 to Ieoparde oure persons / how be it we ben vnarmed / ye haue
vs at a grete auayle / for hit semeth by yow that ye haue layd
watche vpon vs / but rather than ye shold putte the quene to
a shame and vs alle / we had as leef to departe from oure ly-
ues / for & yf we other wayes dyd / we were shamed for euer
20 Thenne sayd sir Mellyagraunce dresse yow as wel as ye can/
and kepe the Quene / ¶ Thenne the ten knyghtes of the table
round drewe their swardes / and the other lete renne at them/
with their speres / and the ten knyghtes manly abode them / &
smote away their speres / that no spere dyd them none harme
25 Thenne they lashed to gyder with swardes / and anone fyre
Kay / sir Sagramor / sir Agrauayn / sir Dodynas / sir Ladynas
and syr Ozanna were smyten to the erthe with grymly woundes
/ Thenne sir Brandyles and sir Perfaunt of Ironfyde / fyre
Pelleas foughte longe / and they were fore wounded / for these
30 ten knyghtes or euer they were layd to the ground slewe xl
men of the boldest and the best of them / Soo whan the Quene
sawe her knyghtes thus dolefully wounded / and nedes must
be slayne at the last / thenne for pyte and sorowe she cryed syr
Mellyagraunce flee not my noble knyghtes / and I wille go
35 with the vpon this couenaunt that thou saue hem / and suffer
hem not to be no more hurte with this that they be ledde wyth
me where someuer thou ledest me / for I wylle rather flee my
self than I wylle goo with the / onles / that thyfe my noble

knyghtes maye be in my prefence / Madame faid Mellyagraūce
 for your sake they shalle be ledde with yow in to myn owne
 Castel with that ye wylle be ruled & ryde with me / ¶ Thenne
 the quene prayd the four knyghtes to leue their fyghtyng / &
 she and they wold not departe / Madame sayd fir Pelleas we 5
 wille doo as ye doo / for as for me I take no force of my lyfe
 nor deth / For as the Frensshe book sayth fir Pelleas gaf fuche
 buffets there that none armour myghte holde hym /

¶ Capitulum Tercium

THenne by the quenes commaundement they lefte batail
 and dresfid the wounded knyghtes on horsbak some fyttyng 10
 somme ouerthwarte their horses / that hit was pyte to beholde
 them / And thenne fir Mellyagraunce charged the quene & al
 her knyghtes that none of al her felauſhyp shold departe from
 her / for ful fore he dradde fir launcelot du lake lest he shold ha-
 ue ony knoulechynge / Alle this aspyed the Quene / and pry- 15
 uely she called vnto her a child of her chamber that was sw-
 yftly horfed to whome she sayd / Go thow whan thou seeſt thy
 tyme / and bere this ryng vnto fir launcelot du lake / and pra-
 ye hym as he loueth me that he wylle see me / and rescowe me
 yf euer he wille haue Ioye of me / and spare not thy hors said 20
 the quene nouthen for water neyther for lond / Soo the chyld
 aspyed his tyme / and lyghtely he took his hors with the spo-
 res and departed as fast as he myghte / And whan fir Mel-
 lyagraunce sawe hym soo flee / he vnderſtood that hit was by
 the quenes commaundement for to warne fir launcelot / Then- 25
 ne they that were best horfed chaced hym and shot at hym /
 But from hem alle the child wente fodenly / and thenne fyre
 Mellyagraunce sayd to the quene / Madame ye are aboute to
 bitraye me / but I shalle ordeyne for fir launcelot that he shall
 not come lyghtely at yow / And thenne he rode with her and 30
 they alle to his castel in alle the haſte that they myghte / And
 by the waye fyre Mellyagraunce layd in an enbuſſhement the
 beſt archers that he myghte gete in his cōtrey to the nombre of

a thyrtty to awayte vpon fir Launcelot chargyng them that yf they fawe fuche a manere of knyghte come by the way vpon a whyte hors that in ony wyfe they flee his hors / but in no manere of wyfe haue not adoo with hym bodyly / for he is ouer
 5 hardy to be ouercomen / Soo this was done / and they were comen to his castel / but in no wyfe the quene wold neuer lete none of the ten knyghtes and her ladyes oute of her fyghte / but alwayes they were in their prefence / for the book fayth fir Mellyagraunce durfte make no maystryes for drede of fir launcelot in foo moche he demed that he had warnynge / Soo whan
 10 the child was departed from the felaufhip of fyr Mellyagraunce within a whyle he came to westmynstre / And anone he fonde fir launcelot / And whanne he had told his meffage / & delyuerd hym the quenes ryng / Allas fayd fyr Launcelot
 15 now am I fhamed for euer onles that I maye refcowe that noble lady from difhonour / thenne egerly he asked his armour / and euer the child told fyr launcelot how the ten knyghtes foughte merueylloufly / and how fir Pelleas and fire Ironfyde and fir Brandyles and fir Perfaunt of Inde fought
 20 strongly / but namely fir Pelleas / there myghte none withftāde hym / & how they all fouzte tyll at the laft they were layd to the erthe / and thenne the quene made apoyntement for to faue their lyues / and goo with fyr Mellyagraunce / Allas fayd fyr Launcelot / that moost noble lady that fhe fhold be fo deftroyed / I had leuer faid fir launcelot than alle Fraunce that
 25 I had ben there were wel armed / Soo whan fyre launcelot was armed / and vpon his hors / he prayd the chyld of the Quenes chamber to warne fyr Lauayne how fodenly he was departed / and for what caufe / and praye hym as he loueth me
 30 that he wylle hyhe hym after me / and that he ftynte not vntyll he come to the castel where fir Mellyagraunce abyde / or dwelleth / for there fayd fire launcelot he fhalle here of me / and I am a man lyuyng / and refcowe the quene and the ten knyghtes the whiche he traitourfly hath taken / and that fhalle I preue vpon his hede and alle them that hold with hym /

¶ Capitulum iiij

[leaf 388 verso]

T Henne fir launcelot rode as fast as he myghte / and the
 book faith / he took the water at westmynstre brydge / &
 made his hors to swymme ouer Temse vnto lambeh-
 the / And thēne within a whyle he came to the same place there
 as the ten noble knyghtes foughte with fyre Mellyagraunce 5
 And thanne fir launcelot folowed the trak vntyl that he came
 to a wood / and there was a straye waye / and there the xxx
 archers bad fir launcelot torne ageyne / and folowe noo lenger
 that trak / what commaundement haue ye ther to sayd fir laun-
 celot to cause me that am a knyghte of the round table to leue 10
 my ryghte way / This way shalte thou leue / outhere els thou
 shalt goo it on thy foote / for wete thou wel thy hors shalle be
 slayne / that is lytel maystry sayd fyre launcelot to flee myn
 hors / but as for my self whan my hors is slayne I gyue ry-
 ght nought for yow / not and ye were fyue honderd moo / So 15
 thenne they shot fir launcelots hors / and smote hym with ma-
 ny arowes / and thenne fyr launcelot auoyded his hors / and
 wente on foote / but there were foo many dyches and hedges be-
 twixe them and hym that he myghte not medle with none of
 hem / ¶ Allas for shame said launcelot that euer one knyght 20
 shold bitraye another knyght / but hit is an old sawe / a good
 man is neuer in daunger / but whan he is in the daunger of a
 coward / Thenne fir launcelot wente a whyle / and thenne he
 was fowle combred of his armour / his sheld and his spere &
 alle that longed vnto hym / wete ye wel he was ful fore an- 25
 noyed / and ful loth he was for to leue ony thyng that long-
 ged vnto hym / for he drad fore the treason of fir Mellyagraunce
 Thenne by fortune there came by hym a charyot that cam thy-
 der for to fetch wood / Say me carter said fyr launcelot what
 shal I gyue the to suffre me to lepe in to thy charyot / & that 30
 thou brynge me vnto a castel within this two myle / thou shalt
 not come within my charyot said the carter / for I am sente for
 to fetch wood for my lord fir Mellyagraunce / with hym wo-
 ld I speke / thou shalt not go with me said the carter / thēne fir
 launcelot lept to hym / & gaf hym suche a buffet that he felle to 35
 the erthe starke dede / thenne the other carter his felawe was a-
 ferde & wende to haue gone the same way / & thenne he cryed
 fair lord saue my lyf / & I shal brynge you where ye wil / thēne

I charge the sayd fyr launcelot that thow dryue me and thys
 charyot euen vnto fir Melliagaunce yate / lepe vp in to the cha-
 riyot sayd the carter / and ye fhalle be there anone / Soo the car-
 ter drofe on a grete wallop / and fir launcelots hors folowed
 5 the charyot with more than a xl arowes brode and rough in
 hym / and more than an houre and an half dame Gueneuer
 was awaytynge in a bay wyndowe with her ladyes / & aspyed
 an armed knyghte standyng in a charyot / See madame fa-
 yd a lady where rydeth in a charyot a goodly armed knyghte/
 10 I fuppose he rydeth vnto hangyng / where sayd the quene / then-
 ne she aspyed by his shelde that he was there hym self fir laun-
 celot du lake / And thenne she was ware where came his hors
 euer after that charyot / and euer he trade his guttes and his
 paunche vnder his feet / Allas sayd the quene now I fee well
 15 and preue that wel is hym that hath a trusty frend / ¶ Ha a
 moost noble knyghte sayd quene Gueneuer I fee wel thow
 arte hard bestad whan thow rydest in a charyot / thenne she re-
 buked that lady that lykend fir launcelot to ryde in a chary-
 ot to hangyng / hit was fowle mouthed sayd the quene and
 20 euylle lykened soo for to lyken the moost noble knyght of the
 world vnto fuche a shameful dethe / O Ihesu defende hym and
 kepe hym said the quene from alle mescheuous ende / By thys
 was fir Launcelot comen to the gates of that Castel / and there
 he descended doune and cryed that alle the Castel range of it
 25 where arte thow fals traitour fir Melliagraunce and knyght
 of the table round / now come forth here thou traytour kny3te
 thou and thy felaufhip with the / For here I am fir launcelot
 du lake that shal fyghte with yow / and there with all he ba-
 re the gate wyde open vpon the porter / and smote hym vnder
 30 his 3ere with his gauntelet that his neck braft in sonder /

¶ Capitulum v

WHanne fir Mellyagraunce herd that fir Launcelot was
 there / he ranne vnto quene Gueneuer / and felle vpon
 his knee / and sayd mercy madame now I put me ho-
 ly in to your grace / what eyleth yow now sayd quene Guene-

[leaf 389 verso]

uer / For sothe I myghte wel wete somme good knyzt wold
 reunge me / though my lord Arthur wyfte not of this youre
 werke / Madame said sir Mellyagraunce / alle this that is a-
 mys on my parte shalle be amended ryghte as your self wille
 deuyse / & holy I putte me in your grace / what wold ye that 5
 I dyd sayd the quene / I wold no more said Mellyagraunce
 but that ye wold take alle in your owne handes / and that ye
 wille rule my lord sir launcelot / and fuche chere as maye be
 made hym in this poure castel ye and he shalle haue vntyl to
 morne / and thenne may ye and alle they retorne vnto westm- 10
 ynster / and my body and all that I haue I shal putte in your
 rule / ye faye wel sayd the quene / and better is pees than euer
 werre / and the lesse noyse / the more is my worship / thenne the
 quene and her ladyes wente doune vnto the knyghte syr laun-
 celot / that stood wrothe oute of mesure in the Inner courte to 15
 abyde bataille / & euer he bad thou traytour knyghte come forth
 Thenne the quene came to hym and sayde fyre Launcelot why
 be ye soo moeued / Ha madame sayd fyre Launcelot why aske
 ye me that question / Me semeth said sir launcelot ye ouzte to
 be more wrothe than I am / for ye haue the hurte and the dif- 20
 honour / For wete ye wel madame my hurte is but lytel for
 the kyllynge of a mares fone / but the despyte greueth me moch
 more / than alle my hurte / truly sayd the quene ye faye trouth
 but hertely I thanke yow sayd the quene / but ye muste come
 in with me peasfyble / for al thyng is put in my hand / and 25
 alle that is euylle shalle be for the best / for the knyghte ful so-
 re repenteth hym of the mysfaenture that is befallen hym / Ma-
 dame faide fyre Launcelot / fyth it is soo that ye ben accorded
 with hym / as for me I may not be ageyn it / how be it sir Mel-
 lyagraunce hath done ful shamefully to me & cowardly / ¶ A 30
 madame said sir Launcelot / & I had wyft ye wold haue ben
 soo soone accorded with hym / I wold not haue made fuche ha-
 ste vnto yow / why faye ye soo sayd the quene / doo ye forthynke
 your self of your good dedes / wete you well sayd the Quene
 I accorded neuer vnto hym for fauour nor loue that I had 35
 vnto hym / but for to laye doune euery shameful noyse
 ¶ Madame said syr launcelot ye vnderstande ful well I was
 neuer willynge nor gladde of shameful sklauder nor noyse

And there is neyther kynge / quene ne knyght that bereth the
 lyf excepte my lord kynge Arthur and yow madame shold
 lette me / but I shold make fir Mellyagraunce herte ful cold/
 or euer I departed from hens / That wote I wel said the que-
 5 ne / but what wille ye more ye shal haue alle thynges rulyd as
 ye lyst to haue it / Madame said fyr launcelot / soo ye be plea-
 fyed I care not / as for my parte ye shal soone please / ryghte so
 the quene took fyr launcelot by the bare hand / for he had put
 of his gauntelet / and soo she wente with hym tyl her chamber
 10 and thenne she commaunded hym to be vnarmed / and thenne
 fyr launcelot asked where were the ten knyghtes that were
 wounded fore / so she shewed them vnto fir launcelot / and ther
 they made grete Ioye of the comynge of hym / and fir launcelot
 made grete dole of their hurtes and bewayled them gretely / &
 15 there fir launcelot told them how cowardly and traytourly
 Mellyagraunce sette archers to flee his hors / and how he was
 fayne to putte hym self in a charyot / thus they complayned
 eueryche to other / and ful fayn they wold haue ben reuengid
 but they peaced them self by cause of the Quene / Thenne as
 20 the Frensch book sayth / fyr launcelot was called many a day
 after le cheualer du charyot / and dyd many dedes and grete
 aduentures he had / and soo leue we of this tale le Cheualer
 du Charyot and torne we to this tale / ¶ Soo fyr Launcelot
 had grete chere with the quene / and thenne fyr launcelot ma-
 25 de a promys with the quene that the same nyghte fir launce-
 lot shold come to a wyndowe outward toward a gardyn / &
 that wyndowe was y barryd with yron / and there fir launce-
 lot promysed to mete her when alle folkes were on slepe / So
 thenne came fyr lauayne dryuyng to the gates cryeng where
 30 is my lord fyr launcelot du lake / thenne was he sente for / &
 when fir lauayne sawe fir Launcelot / he sayd my lord I fond
 well how ye were hard bestad / for I haue fonde your hors that
 was slayne with arowes / As for that sayd fyr launcelot I
 praye yow fyr Lauayne speke ye of other maters / and lete ye
 35 this passe / & we shalle ryghte hit another tyme when we beste
 may

¶ Capitulum vj

THenne the knyghtes that were hurte were ferched / &
 softe salues were leyd to their woundes / and soo hyt
 past on tyl souper tyme / and alle the chere that myght
 be made them / there was done vnto the quene and all her kny3-
 tes / thenne whan season was / they wente vnto their chambres 5
 but in no wyse the quene wold not suffre the wounded kny3-
 tes to be fro her / but that they were layde within draughtes by
 her chamber vpon beddes and pylowes that she her self myght
 see to them that they wanted no thyng / Soo whan sir laun-
 celot was in his chamber that was assygned vnto hym / he cal- 10
 led vnto hym sire Lauayne / and told hym that nyght he must
 goo speke with his lady dame Gueneuer / Sir said fyr Laua-
 yne / lete me goo with yow and hit please yow / for I drede me
 fore of the treason of sir Mellyagraunce / Nay sayd sir launce-
 lot I thanke yow / but I wille haue no body with me / thenne 15
 sir Launcelot took his fuerd in his hand / and pryuely went
 to a place where he had aspyed a ladder to fore hand / and that
 he took vnder his arme / and bare it thurgh the gardyn / & sette
 it vp to the wyndowe / and there anone the quene was redy to
 mete hym / and thenne they made eyther to other their compla- 20
 yntes of many dyuerse thynges / & thenne sir launcelot wyf-
 fhed that he myghte haue comen in to her / wete ye wel said the
 quene / I wold as fayne as ye / that ye myghte come in to me
 wold ye madame said fyre launcelot with youre herte that I
 were with yow / ye truly said the quene / Now shalle I proue 25
 my myght said fyr Launcelot for your loue / and thenne he fet
 his handes vpon the barres of yron / and he pulled at them
 with fuche a myghte that he braft hem clene oute of the stone
 walles / and there with all one of the barres of yron kytte the
 braune of his handes thurgh out to the bone / & thenne he lepte 30
 in to the chamber to the quene / make ye no noyse sayd the que-
 ne / for my wounded knyghtes lye here fast by me / So to pas-
 se vpon this tale fyr Launcelot wente vnto bed with the que-
 ne / & took no force of his hurte hand / but took his plesaunce
 and his lykyng vntyll it was in the daunyng of the daye / & 35
 wete ye well he slepte not but watched / and whan he sawe
 his tyme that he myghte tary no lenger / he took his leue and
 departed at the wyndowe / and putte hit to gyder as wel as he

myghte ageyne and foo departed vnto his owne chamber / &
 there he told fir Lauayne how he was hurte / thenne fir lauayn
 dresseid his hand and staunched it / and putte vpon it a gloue
 that it shold not be aspyed / and foo the quene lay long in her
 5 bedde vntyl it was nyne of the klok / thēne fir Mellyagraunce
 wente to the quenes chamber / and fond her ladyes there redy
 clothed / Ihesu mercy sayd fir Mellyagraunce what eyleth you
 madame that ye slepe thus longe / and ryght there with alle he
 opened the curteyn for to beholde her / and thenne was he ware
 10 where she laye & alle the shete & pylowe was bebled with the
 blood of fir Launcelot and of his hurte hand / Whan fir mel-
 lyagraunce aspyed that blood / thenne he demed in her that
 she was fals to the kynge / and that some of the wounded kn-
 yghtes had layne by her alle that nyghte / A madame said fir
 15 Mellyagraunce / now I haue founden you a fals traytreffe
 vnto my lord Arthur / For now I proue wel it was not for
 nought that ye layd these wounded knyghtes within the ban-
 des of your chamber / therfore I wille calle yow of treason be-
 fore my lord kynge Arthur / and now I haue proued yow
 20 madame with a shameful dede / and that they ben all fals or
 fomme of them I wylle make good / for a wounded knyghte
 this nyght hath layne by yow / That is fals sayd the Quene
 and that I wyl reporte me vnto them alle / thenne whanne the
 ten knyghtes herd fir Mellyagraunce wordes / they spak al in
 25 one voys and sayd to fire Mellyagraunce thou sayst falsly /
 and wrongfully puttest vpon vs fuche a dede / and that we wil
 make good ony of vs chese whiche thou lyft of vs whan we
 are hole of oure woundes / ye shal not said fyr Mellyagraunce
 away with your proud langage / for here ye may alle see sayd
 30 fir Mellyagraunce that by the quene this nyghte a wounded
 knyghte hath layne / thenne were they al afhamed whan they
 sawe that blood / and wete you wel fyr Mellyagraunce was
 passyng glad that he had the quene at fuche an auauntage /
 For he demed by that to hyde his trefon / foo with this rumoure
 35 came in fyr launcelot and fond them al at a grete araye /

¶ Capitulum septimum

¶ Capitulum septimum /

WHat araye is this sayd fir Launcelot / thenne fyr mel-
lygraunce told hem what he had fonde & shewed hem
the quenes bed / Truly said fyr launcelot ye dyd not your part
nor knyztly to touche a quenes bedde whyle it was drawen / &
she lyeng therin / for I dar say my lord Arthur hym self wold
not haue displayed her courteyns she beyng within her bed / on-
les that it had pleasyd hym to haue layne doune by her / and
therfor ye haue done vnworshipfully & shamefully to your selfe
I wote not what ye mene sayd fyr Mellyagraunce / but well
I am sure ther hath one of her wounded knyktes layne by her
this nyzte / & therfor I wil proue with my handes that she is a
traytreffe vnto my lord Arthur / beware what ye do said laun-
celot / for & ye say so & ye wil preue it / it wil be taken at your
handes / My lord fir Launcelot said fire Mellyagraunce I rede
yow beware what ye do / for thouz ye are neuer so good a kny-
ght as ye wote wel ye ar renomed the best knyzt of the world
yet shold ye be aduysed to do batail in a wrong quarel / for god
wil haue a stroke in euery batail / As for that sayd fyr launce-
lot god is to be drad / but as to that I saye nay playnly / that
this nyzte there lay none of these ten wounded knyktes wyth
my lady quene Gueneuer / & that wil I preue with my handes
that ye say vntruly in that now / Hold said fir Mellyagraunce
here is my gloue that she is traytreffe vnto my lord kyng Ar-
thur / & that this nyghte one of the wounded knyktes lay with
her / & I receyue your gloue sayd fir Launcelot / & so they were
fealyd with their fygnettys / and delyuerd vnto the x knyktes
At what day shal we do batail to gyders said fir launcelot / this
day viij dayes said fir Mellyagraunce in the felde besyde west-
mynstre / I am agreed said fir Launcelot / but now said fir mel-
lyagraunce / fythen it is so that we must fyzte to gyders I pray
yow as ye be a noble knyzt awayte me with no treason / nor
none vylony the meane whyle / nor none for yow / soo god me
help said fir launcelot ye shal ryzte wel wete I was neuer of
no fuche condycyons / for I reporte me to al knyktes that euer
haue knowen me I ferd neuer with no treason / nor I loued ne-
uer the felauship of no man that ferde with trefon / Thenne le-
te vs go to dyner feid melliagraunce . & after dyner ye & þe quene

and ye may ryde alle to westmester / I wylle wel sayd fir laū-
celot / thenne fir Mellyagraunce sayd to fir launcelot pleafeth it
yow to see the estures of this castel / with a good wylle sayd
fir Launcelot / and thenne they wente to gyders from chamber
5 to chamber / for fir Launcelot drad noo peryls / for euer a man
of worshyp and of prowesse / dredeth lest alwayes perils / For
they wene euery man be as they ben / But euer he that fareth
with treason putteth ofte a man in grete daunger / So it besel
vpon fir launcelot that no peryl dredde / as he wente with fire
10 Mellyagraunce he trade on a trap and the bord rollyd / and
there fir Launcelot felle doune more than ten fadom in to a ca-
ue ful of strawe / and thenne fir Mellyagraunce departed and
made no fare as that he nyft where he was / And whan fir laū-
celot was thus myssed / they merueylled where he was byco-
15 men / and thenne the quene and many of them demed that he
was departed as he was wonte to doo fodenly / For fyr Mel-
lyagraunce made fodenly to putte awaye on fyde fir Lauayns
hors that they myght alle vnderstande that fir launcelot was
departed fodenly / Soo it past on tyl after dyner / and thenne
20 fir Lauayne wold not stynte vntyl that he ordeyned lytters
for the wounded knyghtes that they myghte be lad in them /
and so with the quene and them al bothe ladyes & gentilwy-
mmen and other wente vnto westmynster / & there the knyghtes
told kyng arthur hou Mellyagraunce had appelyd the quene of
25 hyghe treason / and how fir Launcelot had receyued the glo-
ue of hym / and this daye eyghte dayes they shal doo batail a-
fore yow / By my hede sayd kynge Arthur I am aferd fyre
Mellyagraunce has taken vpon hym a grete charge / but where
is fyr Launcelot sayd the kynge / Sir sayd they alle we wote
30 not where he is / but we deme he is ryden to somme aduentures
as he is oftymes wonte to doo / for he hath fyr Lauayns hors /
lete hym be saide the kyng / he wylle be founden but yf he be
trapped with somme treason

¶ Capitulum octauum

35 **S**oo leue we fyr Launcelot lyenge within that caue in
grete payne / and euery day ther came a lady & brougt
hym his mete & his drynke / & wowed hym to haue layne by
hym / and euer the noble knyghte fyre Launcelot sayd

[leaf 392 verso]

her nay / fir Launcelot fayd she ye ar not wyfe / for ye maye neuer oute of this pryson / but yf ye haue my helpe and also your lady quene Gueneuer shalle be brente in your deffaulte onles that ye be there at the daye of bataille / God defende fayd fyr Launcelot that she shold be brente in my deffaute / & yf hyt 5
be soo said fir Launcelot that I maye not be there / hit shalle be wel vnderstande bothe at the kynge and at the quene & wyth alle men of worship that I am dede / seke / outhur in pryson / For alle men that knowe me / wille faye for me that I am in somme euyl caas and I be not there at that day / and wel I wote 10
there is somme good knyghte outhur of my blood or some other that loueth me that wylle take my quarel in hand / and therfor said fir launcelot wete ye wel ye shalle not fere me / & yf there were no more wymmen in alle this land but ye / I wil not haue adoo with yow / thenne arte thow shamed fayd 15
the lady / and destroyed for euer / As for worldes shame Ihesu defende me / and as for my dystresse it is welcome what so euer hit be that god sendeth me / soo she came to hym the same day that the batail shold be / and fayd fir launcelot / me thynketh ye are to hard herted / but woldest thow but kyffe me ones 20
I shold delyuer the and thyn armour / and the best hors that is within fir Mellyagraunces stable / As for to kyffe yow said fir launcelot I maye doo that and lese no worship / and wete ye wel and I vnderstood / there were ony disworship for to kyffe yow / I wold not doo hit / thenne he kyffed her / & thenne 25
she gat hym and broughte hym to his armour / and whan he was armed / she broughte hym to a stable / where stood xij good courfers / and bad hym chese the best / Thenne fyr launcelot loked vpon a whyte courfer the whiche lyked hym best / & anone he commaunded the keepers faste to sadle hym with the 30
best fadel of werre that there was / and soo it was done as he badde / thenne gatte he his spere in his hand and his fuerd by his fyde / and commaunded the lady vnto god / and fayd lady for this good dede I shal doo yow feruyse yf euer hit be in my power /

35

¶ Capitulum Nonum

Nowe leue we fir Launcelot wallop alle that he myghte
 And speke we of Quene Gueneuer / that was brou-
 ghte to a fyre to be brent / for fire Mellyagraunce was
 sure / hym thoughte that fir launcelot shold not be att that ba-
 5 taille / therfore he euer cryed vpon kynge Arthur to doo hym
 Iustyce / outhere els brynge forth fyr launcelot du lake / thenne
 was the kynge and al the Courte ful fore abasshed & shamed
 that the quene shold be brente in the defaute of fir Launcelot
 My lord Arthur sayd fir Lauayne ye maye vnderstande that
 10 it is not wel with my lord fyr launcelot / for and he were on
 lyue / foo he be not seke outhere in pryson / wete ye wel he wold
 ben here / for neuer herd ye that euer he failed his part for who-
 me he shold doo batail for / and therfor sayd fir lauayne / my
 lord kynge Arthur I byfeyeche yow gyue me the lycence to doo ba-
 15 tail here this day for my lord and maister / and for to faue my
 lady the quene / Gramercy gentil fir Lauayne sayd kyng ar-
 thur / for I dar say alle that fir Mellyagraunce putteth vpon
 my lady the Quene / is wronge / for I haue spoken with al
 the ten wounded knyghtes / and there is not one of them and
 20 he were hole and able to doo bataille / but he wold preue vpon
 fir Mellyagraunce body that it is fals that he putteth vpon my
 quene / foo shal I sayd fir lauayne in the defence of my lord
 fyr launcelot and ye wylle gyue me leue / Now I gyue yow
 leue sayd kynge Arthur and doo your best / for I dar wel say
 25 there is some treason done to fir launcelot / Thenne was fir La-
 uayne armed and horsed / and fodenly at the lyfste ende he
 rode to performe this bataille / and ryghte as the herowdes sho-
 ld crye / leffes les aler / Ryghte foo came in fir launcelot dry-
 uynge with alle the force of his hors / and thenne Arthur cry-
 30 ed ho / and abyde / thenne was fir launcelot called on horsbak
 to fore kynge Arthur / and there he told openly to fore the ky-
 nge and alle how fire Mellyagraunce had serued hym fyrste
 and last / And whanne the kynge and the quene and al the
 lordes knewe of the treason of fir Mellyagraunce / they were
 35 alle ashamed on his behalfe / thenne was quene Gueneuer se-
 nte for / and sette by the kynge in grete truste of her champyon
 And thenne there was no more els to say / but fyr Launcelot
 and fire Mellyagraunce drestid them vnto bataille / and took

their speres / and soo they came to gyders as thonder / and there
 fir launcelot bare hym doune quyte ouer his hors croupe / And
 thenne fire Launcelot alyghte and dresseid his sheld on his
 sholder with his fuerd in his hand / and fir Mellyagraunce in
 the same wyse dresseid hym vnto hym / and there they smote 5
 many grete strokes to gyders / and at the laste fire Launcelot
 smote hym suche a buffet vpon the helmet that he felle on the o-
 ne syde to the erthe / and thenne he cryed vpon hym alowde /
 Moost noble knyghte fir launcelot du lake faue my lyf / for I
 yelde me vnto yow / and I requyre yow / as ye be a knyghte & 10
 felawe of the table round flee me not / for I yelde me as ouer-
 comen / and whether I shalle lyue or dye I put me in the ky-
 nges handes and yours / thenne fir Launcelot wyfte not what
 to doo / for he had had leuer than all the good of the world /
 he myghte haue ben reuenged vpon fyr Mellyagraunce / and 15
 fir Launcelot loked vp to the Quene Gueneuer / yf he myghte
 aspye by ony fygne or countenaunce what she wold haue do-
 ne / And thenne the quene wagged her hede vpon fir Launce-
 lot / as though she wold saye flee hym / Ful wel knewe fir la-
 uncelot by the waggynge of her hede that she wold haue hym 20
 dede / thenne fir launcelot bad hym ryse for shame and perfor-
 me that bataille to the vtterance / nay said fir Mellyagraunce
 I wylle neuer aryse vntyll ye take me as yolden & recreaunt
 I shalle profer yow large profers sayd fir Launcelot / that is
 for to say / I shall vnarme my hede & my lyfte quarter of my 25
 body alle that may be vnarmed & lete bynde my lyfte hand be-
 hynde me / soo that it shalle not helpe me / and ryghte so I shall
 doo bataille with yow / thenne fir Mellyagraunce starte vp vp-
 on his legges / & sayd on hyghe My lord Arthur take hede to
 this profer / for I wille take hit / and lete hym be dyfarmed & 30
 bounden accordynge to his profer / what saye ye sayd kyng Ar-
 thur vnto fyre launcelot / wille ye abyde by youre profer / ye my
 lord sayd fir launcelot / I wille neuer goo fro that I haue
 ones sayd / Thenne the knyghtes parters of the felde disarmed
 fir launcelot first his hede / & sythen his lyfte arme & his lyfte 35
 syde / & they bond his lyft arme behynd his bak without sheld
 or ony thyng / & thenne they were put to gyders / Wete you wel
 there was many a lady & knyzt merueylled that fir launcelot

wold Ieopardy hym felf in fuche a wyfe / Thenne fyre Mellya-
 graunce came with his fuerd all on hygh / and fire launcelot
 shewed him openly his bare hede and the bare lyfte fyde / and
 whan he wende to haue smyten hym vpon the bare hede / thenne
 5 lyghtly he auoyded the lyfte legge & the lyfte fyde / & put his
 ryght hand and his fuerd to that stroke / and soo putte it on
 fyde with grete fleyghte / and thenne with grete force fyr laun-
 celot smote hym on the helmet fuche a buffet that the stroke ker-
 ued the hede in two partyes / thenne there was no more to doo /
 10 but he was drawen oute of the felde / and at the grete Instaun-
 ce of the knyghtes of the table round / the kyng suffred hym
 to be entered & the mencyon made vpon hym who flewe hym/
 and for what cause he was slayne / and thenne the kyng and
 the Quene made more of fyr Launcelot du lake / and more he
 15 was cheryssed than euer he was afore hand

¶ Capitulum x

THenne as the Frenssh booke maketh mencyon there
 was a good knyghte in the land of Hongre his name
 was fyr Vrre and he was an aduenturous knyghte and in al
 places where he myghte here of ony dedes of worthyp ther wo-
 20 ld he be / Soo it happend in Spayne there was an Erles sone
 his name was Alphegus / and at a grete turnement in spayn
 this fyre Vrre knyghte of Hongry and fir Alphegus of spa-
 yne encountred to gyders for veray enuy / and soo eyther vn-
 dertook other to the Vtteraunce / and by fortune fire Vrre fle-
 25 we fyr Alphegus the erles sone of Spayn / but this knyghte
 that was slayne had yeuen fyre Vrre or euer he was slayne
 feuen grete woundes / thre on the hede / and four on his body / &
 vpon his lyfte hand / and this fyr Alphegus had a moder /
 the whiche was a grete forcereffe / and she for the despyte of her
 30 fones dethe wrought by her subtyl craftes that fyr Vrre shold
 neuer be hole / but euer his woundes shold one tyme feyfter &
 another tyme blede / so that he shold neuer be hole vntyl the best
 knyghte of the world had serched his woundes / and thus she
 made her auaunt where thurgh it was knowen that fyre Vrre

shold neuer be hole / Thenne his moder lete make an hors lyt-
 ter / and put hym theryn vnder two palfroyes / and thenne she
 took fyr Vvres fyfter with hym a ful fayr damoyfel / whos na-
 me was Felelolye / and thenne she took a page with hym to ke-
 pe their horses / and soo they ledde fir Vvre thurgh many coun- 5
 treyes / For as the Frensshe book sayth she ledde hym so feuen
 yere thurgh alle landes crystened / and neuer she coude fynde
 no knyghte that myghte ease her fone / Soo she came in to Scot-
 land and in to the bandes of England / and by fortune she
 came nyghe the feest of pentecoste vntyl Arthurs Courte that 10
 at that tyme was holden at Carleil / And whan she came there
 thenne she made it openly to be knowen how that she was co-
 me in to that land for to hele her fone

¶ Thenne kyng Arthur lete calle that lady / and asked her
 the cause why she broughte that hurte knyghte in to that land 15
 My moost noble kyng sayd that lady / wete yow wel I bro-
 ughte hym hydder for to be heled of his woundes / that of alle
 this feuen yere he myghte not be hole / & thenne she told the ky-
 nge where he was wounded and of whome / and how his mo-
 der had discouerd in her pryde / how she had wroughte that by 20
 enchauntement / soo that he shold neuer be hole vntyl the best
 knyghte of the world had ferched his woundes / and soo I ha-
 ue passed thurgh alle the landes crystned to haue hym heled /
 excepte this land / And yf I fayle to hele hym here in this la-
 nd I wylle neuer take more payne vpon me / and that is pyte 25
 for he was a good knyghte and of grete noblenes / what is his
 name sayd Arthur / My good and gracyous lord she fayde /
 his name is fyr Vvre of the mounte / In good tyme sayd the
 Kyng / and fythe ye are come in to this land / ye are ryght wel
 come / and wete yow wel here shal your fone be helyd / and euer 30
 ony crysten man may hele hym /

And for to gyue alle other men of worshyp courage / I my
 self wille assay to handle your fone / and soo shalle alle the ky-
 nges dukes and Erles that ben here presente with me at this
 tyme thereto wylle I commaunde them / and wel I wote they 35
 shalle obeye and doo after my commaundement

And wete yow wel sayd kyng Arthur vnto Vvres fyfter I
 shalle begynne to handle hym and ferche vnto my **power**

not prefumyng vpon me that I am foo worthy to hele youre
 sone by my dedes / but I wille courage other men of worshyp
 to doo as I wylle doo / And thenne the kynge commaunded
 alle the kynges dukes and erles & alle noble knyghtes of the
 5 Round table that were there that tyme presente to come in to
 the medowe of Carleil / and so at that tyme there were but an
 honderd and ten of the roūd table / for xl knyghtes were that
 tyme away / and foo here we muſte begynne at kynge Arthur
 as is kyndely to begynne at hym / that was the mooſt man of
 10 worshyp that was cryſtned at that tyme

¶ Capitulum xj

THenne kynge Arthur loked vpon ſire Vrre . and the
 kynge thoughte he was a ful lykely man whanne he
 was hole / and thenne kynge Arthur made hym to be
 take doune of the lytter and layd hym vpon the erthe / and
 15 there was layd a cuſſhyn of gold that he ſhold knele vpon/
 And thenne noble Arthur ſayd fayr knyghte me repenteth of
 thy hurte / and for to courage alle other noble Knyghtes / I
 wille praye the ſoftly to ſuffre me to handle your woundes /
 Mooſt noble cryſtned kynge ſayd Vrre doo as ye lyſte / for I
 20 am at the mercy of god and at your commaundement / ¶ So
 thenne Arthur ſoftely handelyd hym / and thenne ſomme of his
 woundes renewed vpon bledynge / Thenne the kynge Clary-
 aunce of Northumberland ferched and it wold not be / And
 thenne ſir Baraunt le apres that was called the Kyng with
 25 the honderd Knyghtes he affayed and fayled / and ſo dyd ky-
 nge Vryence of the land of Gore / Soo dyd Kynge Anguyſ-
 faunce of Irland / Soo dyd Kynge Nentres of Garloth / So
 dyd Kyng Carados of Scotland / Soo dyd the duke Gala-
 halt the haute prynce / Soo dyd Conſtantyn that was ſir Ca-
 30 rados ſone of Cornewail / Soo dyd duke Challyns of Clara-
 unce / Soo dyd the Erle Vlbaufe / Soo dyd the Erle Lambaile
 Soo dyd the erle Aryſtaufe

Thenne came in ſyr Gawayne with his thre ſones ſir Gynga-
 lyn / ſyr Florence / & ſir Louel / theſe two were begoten vpon ſir

dyd the erle Lambayle / Soo dyd the erle Aryftaufe

¶ Thenne came in fyre Gawayne with his thre fones fyr gan-
galayne / fyr Florence and fyr Louel thefe two were goten vp-
on fyr Brandyles fyfter / and al they fayled / Thenne cam in
fyr Agrauayne / fyr Gaherys / fyr Mordred / & the good knyzt 5
fir Gareth that was of veray knyghthode worth al the brethe-
ren / Soo came knyghtes of Launcelots kynne / but fyr laun-
celot was not that tyme in the courte / for he was that tyme vp-
on his aduentures / Thenne fyr Lyonel / fyr Ector de marys /
fyr Bors de ganys / fyr Blamor de ganys / fyr Bleoberis de 10
ganys / fyr Gahalantyne / fyr Galyhodyn / fyr Menadeuke / fyr
Vyllyars the valyaunt / fyr Hebes le renoumes / Al thefe we-
re of fyr launcelots kynne / and alle they fayled / ¶ Thenne
came in fyr Sagamore le defyrus / fyr Dodynas le faueage
fyr Dynadan / fyr Bruyn le noyre / that fyr kay named la co- 15
te male tayle and fyr Kay the Senefchal / fyr Kay de ftraū-
ges / fyr Melyot de Logrys / fyr Petypafe of wynchelfee / fyre
Galleron of Galway / fyr Melyon of the montayne / fyr Car-
dok / fyr Vwayne les aduoultres / and fyr ozanna le cure har-
dy / Thenne came in fyr Aftamor & fyr Gromere grummors fo- 20
ne / fyr Croffelme / Sir Seruaufe le breufe that was callyd a
paffynge ftronge knyghte / for as the book fayth the chyef lady
of the lake feefed fyr launcelot and fyr Seruaufe le breufe /
And whan ſhe had feefed hem bothe at fondry tymes ſhe pra-
yd hem to gyue her a bone / and they graunted it her / and then- 25
ne ſhe prayd fyr Seruaufe that he wold promyfe her neuer to
doo batail ageynſt fyr launcelot du lake / & in the fame wyfe
ſhe prayd fyr Launcelot neuer to doo batail ageynſt fyr Ser-
uaufe / and ſoo eyther promyfed her / For the Frenſſhe book fa-
yth / that fir Seruaufe had neuer courage nor luſt to doo batail 30
ageynſt no man but yf it were ageynſt gyaunts & ageynſte
dragons and wylde beefes / Soo we paſſe vnto them that att
the kynges requeſt made hem alle that were there at that hyz
feefte as of the knyzttes of the table round for to ſerche fir Tur-
re / to that entente the kyng dyd hit / to wete whiche was the 35
nobleſt knyghte amonge them

¶ Thenne came fir Aglouale / fire Durnore / fir Tor that was
bygoten vpon Aryes the couherdes wyf / but he was begoten

afore Aryes wedded her / and Kyng Pellenor begatte hem
 all / fyrst fyre Tor / fyre Aglouale / fyr Durnore / fyre Lamorak
 the moost noblest knyghte one that euer was in Arthurs da-
 yes / as for a worldly knyghte / and fyre Percyual that was
 5 pyerles excepte fyre Galahad in holy dedes / but they dyed in
 the quest of the Sancgreal / Thenne cam fyr Gryflet le fyse de
 dieu / Sir Lucan the botteler / fyre Bedeuer his broder / fyr bran-
 dyles / fyr Constantyne / fyr Cadores sone of Cornewayl that
 was kyng after Arthurs dayes / and fyre Clegys / fyre Sa-
 10 dok / fyr Dynas the Seneschal of Cornewaile / fyre Fergus/
 fyr Dryaunt / fyr Lambegus / fyre Clarrus of Cleremont / fyr
 Cloddrus / fyre Hectymere / fyre Edward of Canaruan / fyre
 Dynas / fyre Pryamus that was cryftned by fyr Triftram the
 noble Knyghte / and these thre were bretheren fyr Hellayne de
 15 blank that was sone to fyre Bors / he begat hym vpon kyng
 Brandegorys doughter and fyre Bryan de lyftynoyse / Syre
 Gautere / fyr Reynold / fyr Gyllemere were thre bretheren that
 fyre launcelot wanne vpon a brydge in fyre Kayes armes / fir
 Guyart le petyte / fyre Bellangere le beuse that was sone to
 20 the good knyghte fyr Alyfander le orphelyn that was slayne
 by the treason of Kyng Marke / ¶ Also that traytour kyng
 flewe the noble Knyghte fyre Tryftram as he sat harpyng a-
 fore his lady la Beale Ifoud with a trenchaunt glayue / for
 whos deth was moche bewaylynge of euery knyghte that euer
 25 were in Arthurs dayes / there was neuer none so bewailed as
 was fyre Triftram and fyr lamorak / for they were traytourf-
 ly slayne / fyr Tryftram by kyng Marke / and fyr lamorak by
 fyr Gawayne and his bretheren / And this fyre Bellangere
 reuenged the deth of his fader Alyfander and fyr Triftram fle-
 30 we Kyng Marke and la Beale Ifoud dyed fwounyng vp-
 on the crosse of fyr Triftram wherof was grete pyte / And alle
 that were with Kyng Marke that were consentynge to the deth
 of fyr Triftram were slayne as fyre Andred and many other /
 Thenne came fyr Hebes / fyr Morganore / fyr Sentrayle / Syre
 35 Suppynabylis / Sire Bellangere le orgulous that the good
 Knyghte fyr lamorak wanne in playne batail fyr Nerouens /
 & fyr Plenorius two good knyghtes that fyr launcelot wan/
 fir Darras / fir Harre le fyse lake / fir ermynde broder to kyng

Hermaunce for whome fyre Palomydes foughte att the reed
 cyte with two bretheren / & fyr Selyfes of the dolorous toure / fir
 Edward of Orkeney / fyre Ironfyde that was called the no-
 ble kny3te of the reed laundes that fyre Gareth wanne for the
 loue of dame Lyones / fyr Arrook de greuaunt / fyr Degrane fa- 5
 unce velany that foughte with the gyaunt of the black lowe /
 Syr Epynogrys that was the kynges sone of Northüerland
 Sir Pelleas that loued the lady Ettard / and he had dyed
 for her loue had not ben one of the ladyes of the lake / her na-
 me was dame Nymue / and she wedded fire Pelleas / and she 10
 faued hym that he was neuer slayne / and he was a ful noble
 knyghte / and fire Lamyel of Cardyf that was a grete louter /
 Sir Playne de fors / fire Melleaus de lyle / fir Bohart le cure
 hardy that was kyng Arthurs sone / fir Mador de la porte / fir
 Colgreuaunce / fir Heruyse de la forest faueage / fir Marrok the 15
 good knyghte that was bitrayed with his wyf / for she ma-
 de hym seuen yere a werwolf / fir Perfaunt / fire Pertilope his
 broder that was called the grene knyght / and fir Perymones
 broder to them bothe / that was called the reed knyght / that fir
 Gareth wanne whan he was called Beaumayns / Alle these 20
 honderd knyghtes and ten ferched fyr Vvres woundes by the
 commaundement of kyng Arthur

¶ Capítulum xij /

MErcy Ihesu sayd kyng Arthur where is fyr launce-
 lot du lake that he is not here at this tyme / Thus as
 they stood and spak of many thynges / there was aspy- 25
 ed fyr launcelot that came rydyng toward them / and told the
 kyng / Pees sayd the kyng lete no maner thyng be sayd vn-
 tyl he be come to vs / Soo whan fyr launcelot aspyed Kyng
 Arthur / he descended from his hors and came to the kyng / &
 falewed hym / and them all / Anone as the mayde fyre Vvres 30
 fyfter sawe fyr launcelot / she ranne to her broder there as he lay
 in his lyttar / and sayd broder here is come a knyghte that my
 herte gyueth gretely vnto / Fayr fyfter sayd fyr Vvre soo dothe
 my herte lyghte ageynst hym / and certaynly I hope now to be
 heled for my hert yeueth vnto hym more thā to al these þ^t haue 35

ferched me / Thenne sayd Arthur vnto fyr Launcelot ye muste
 doo as we haue done / and told fyr launcelot what they hadde
 done / and shewed hym them alle / that had ferched hym / Ihe-
 fu defende me sayd fyr Launcelot whan foo many kynges and
 5 knyghtes haue assayed and fayled / that I shold presume vp-
 on me to encheue that alle ye my lordes myghte not encheue /
 Ye shalle not chefe sayd kyng Arthur / for I will commaunde
 yow for to doo as we alle haue done / My most renoumed lord
 said fir Launcelot ye knowe wel I dar not nor may not difo-
 10 beye your commaundement / but and I myghte or durste / wete
 yow wel I wold not take vpon me to touche that wounded
 knyghte in that entente that I shold passe alle other knygh-
 tes / Ihesu defende me from that shame / Ye take it wrong sayd
 kyng Arthur / ye shal not do it for no presumcyon / but for to
 15 bere vs felawshyp in foo moche ye be a felawe of the table ro-
 und / and wete yow wel sayd kyng Arthur / and ye preua-
 yle not and hele hym / I dare say / there is no knyghte in this
 land may hele hym / and therfor I pray yow / doo as we ha-
 ue done / and thenne alle the kynges and knyghtes for the
 20 moost party prayd fir Launcelot to ferche hym / and thenne the
 wounded knyghte fyr Vrrre sette hym vp weykely / and praid
 fir Launcelot hertely sayeng / curtois knyghte I requyre the for
 goddes sake hele my woundes / for me thynketh euer fythen ye
 came here / my woundes greuen me not / A my fayre lord sayd
 25 fyr launcelot Ihesu wold that I myghte helpe yow I shame
 me fore that I shold be thus rebuked / for neuer was I able
 in worthynes to doo so hyghe a thyng / Thenne fire Launcelot
 kneled doune by the wounded knyghte sayenge / My lord Ar-
 thur I must doo your commaundement / the whiche is fore a-
 30 geynst my herte / And thenne he helde vp his handes / & loked
 in to the eest / sayenge secretly vnto hym self / thou bleffid fa-
 der / fone and holy ghooft I byfeche the of thy mercy / that my
 symple worshyp and honeste be saued / and thou bleffid Try-
 nyte thou mayst yeue power to hele this feke knyghte by thy
 35 grete vertu and grace of the / but good lord neuer of my self
 And thenne fir Launcelot prayd fir Vrrre to lete hym see hys
 hede / and thenne deuoutely knelyng he ranfaked the thre woū-
 des that they bled a lytyl / and forth with alle the woundes

fayre heled / and femed as they had ben hole a feuen yere/
 And in lyke wyfe he ferched his body of other thre woundes
 and they heled in lyke wyfe / and thenne the laft of alle he fer-
 ched the whiche was in his hand / and anone it heled fayre /
 ¶ Thenne kyng Arthur and alle the kynges and knyghtes 5
 kneled doune and gaf thankynges and louynges vnto god
 and to his bleffid moder / And euer fyre Launcelot wepte as
 he had ben a child that had ben beten / Thenne kyng Arthur
 lete araye preeftes and clerkes in the mooft deuoutest manere
 to brynge in fir Vyre within Carleil with fyingyng and lo- 10
 uynge to god / And when this was done / the kyng lete clothe
 hym in the rycheft maner that coude be thoughte / and thenne
 were there but fewe better made knyghtes in alle the courte / for
 he was paffyngly wel made and bygly / and Arthur asked
 fyr Vyre how he felte hym felf / My good lord he fayd I felt 15
 my felf neuer foo lufly / wylle ye Iufte and doo dedes of armes
 fayd kyng Arthur / Sir fayd Vyre and I had all that lon-
 ged vnto Iuftes I wold be foone redy /

¶ Capitulum xiiij

THenne Arthur made a party of honderd knyghtes to
 be ageynfte an honderd knyghtes / and foo vpon the 20
 morne they Iufted for a dyamond / but there Iufted no-
 ne of the daungerous knyghtes / & foo for to fhorten thys tale
 fyr Vyre & fir Lauayn Iufted beft that day / for there was no-
 ne of hem but he ouerthrewe & pulled down thyrty knyghtes/
 & thenne by the affente of alle the kynges & lordes fyre Vyre 25
 & fir Lauayn were made knyghtes of the table round / & fir la-
 uayn cafte his loue vnto dame Felelolle fire Vres fyfter / &
 thēne they were wedded to gyder with grete Ioye / & kyng Ar-
 thur gaf to eueryche of hem a Barony of landes / and this fire
 Vyre wold neuer goo from fire Launcelot / but he & fir Laua- 30
 yn awayted euermore vpon hym / & they were in all the courte
 accounted for good knyghtes / & full defyrous in armes / & ma-
 ny noble dedes they dyd / for they wold haue no reſte / but euer
 foughte aduentures / thus they lyued in all that courte wyth
 grete nobleſſe & Ioye long tyme / But euery nyghte & day fire 35

Agrauayne / fyr Gawayns broder awayted Quene Gueneuer
 and fir Launcelot du lake to putte them to a rebuke & shame
 And foo I leue here of this tale and ouer hyp grete bookes of
 fir Launcelot du lake / what grete aduentures he dyd whan he
 5 was called le cheualer du charyot / For as the Frensishe booke
 sayth by cause of despyte that knyghtes and ladyes called hym
 the knyghte that rode in the charyot lyke as he were Iuged
 to the galhous / Therfor in despyte of all them that named hym
 foo / he was caryed in a charyot a twelue moneth / for but lityl
 10 after that he had slayne fir Mellyagraunce in the quenes qua-
 rel / he neuer in a twelue moneth came on horsbak / And as the
 Frensishe book sayth / he dyd that twelue moneth more than xl
 batails / And by cause I haue lost the very mater of la cheua-
 ler du charyot / I departe from the tale of fir Launcelot / & here
 15 I goo vnto the morte of kynge Arthur / and that caused fyre
 Agrauayne

¶ Explicit liber xix /

¶ And here after foloweth the moost pytous history of the
 morte of kynge Arthur / the whiche is the xx book

¶ Capitulum primum



N May whan euery lusty herte floryssheth and
 burgeneth / For as the season is lusty to beholde
 and comfortable / Soo man and woman reioy-
 cen and gladen of fomer comynge with hys
 fressh the floures / for wynter with his rouz wyndes 5
 and blaftes causeth a lusty man and woman to coure / and
 fytted fast by the fyre / So in this season as in the monethe of
 May it byfelle a grete angre and vnhap / that stynted not til
 the floure of chyualry of alle the world was destroyed & fla-
 yn / and alle was long vpon two vnhappy knyghtes the whi- 10
 che were named Agrauayne and sire Mordred that were bre-
 theren vnto sire Gawayne / for this sire Agrauayne and sire mor-
 dred had euer a preuy hate vnto the Quene dame Gueneuer
 and to sire launcelot / and dayly and nyghtly they euer wat-
 ched vpon sire Launcelot / Soo it myshapped sire Gawayne and 15
 alle his bretheren were in kyng Arthurs chamber / and then-
 ne sire Agrauayne sayd thus openly and not in no councylle
 that many knyghtes myghte here it / I merueylle that we alle
 be not ashamed bothe to see and to knowe how sire Launcelot
 lyeth dayly and nyghtly by the quene / and al we knowe it so 20
 and it is shamefully suffred of vs alle that we alle shold suf-
 fre soo noble a kyng as kyng Arthur is soo to be shamed /
 ¶ Thenne spak sire Gawayne and sayd / broder sire Agrauayn
 I pray yow and charge yow meue no suche maters no more
 afore me / for wete ye wel sayd sire Gawayne I wylle not be 25
 of your councylle / Soo god me help sayd sire Gaherys and
 sire Gareth we wylle not be knowynge broder Agrauayne of
 your dedes / Thenne wylle I sayd sire Mordred I leue well
 that sayd sire Gawayne / for euer vnto alle vnhappynges broder
 sire Mordred there to wille ye graunte / and I wold that ye 30
 leste alle this / and made you not soo besy / for I knowe sayd
 sire Gawayne what wylle falle of hit / Falle of hit what falle
 may sayd sire Agrauayne / I wille disclofe it to the kyng /
 Not by my councylle sayd sire Gawayne / for and there ryse
 warre and wrake betwyx sire launcelot and vs / wete you wel 35
 broder there will many kynges and grete lordes hold with sire

Launcelot / Also broder sir Agrauayne fayd fire Gawayne ye
 must remembre how oftymes fyr Launcelot hath rescowed the
 kynge and the quene / and the best of vs all had ben ful co-
 ld at the herte rote / had not sir launcelot ben better than we /
 5 And that hath he preued hym self ful ofte / And as for my
 parte fayd sir Gawayne I wylle neuer be ageynst sir launce-
 lot for one dayes dede whan he rescowed me from kynge Cara-
 dos of the dolorous toure / and flewe hym and faued my lyf/
 Also broder sir Agrauayne and sir mordred in lyke wyse sir
 10 Launcelot rescowed yow bothe and thre score and two from
 sir Turquyn / Me thynketh broder fuche kynde dedes and kynde-
 nes shold be remembryd / doo as ye lyft fayd fyr Agrauayne
 for I wylle layne it no lenger / ¶ With these wordes came to
 them kynge Arthur / Now broder stynte your noyse fayd fyre
 15 Gawayne / we wylle not fayd fyr Agrauayne and sir Mor-
 dred / wylle ye soo fayd sir Gawayne / thenne god spede yow
 for I wil not here your tales ne be of your counceyll / no mo-
 re wyll I fayd sir Gareth and sir Gaherys / for we wyl neuer
 faye euylle by that man / for by cause fayd fyre Gareth fyr la-
 20 uncelot made me knyghte by no manere owe I to fay ylle of
 hym / and there with al they thre departed makynge grete do-
 le / Allas fayd fyr Gawayn and sir Gareth now is this Re-
 alme holy mescheued / and the noble felaufhyp of the round
 table shalle be disparplyd / soo they departed

¶ Capitulum ij

25 **A**Nd thenne sir Arthur asked hem what noyse they ma-
 de / my lord fayd Agrauayye I shal telle yow that I
 may kepe noo lenger / here is I and my broder fyre Mordred
 brake vnto my broder fyr Gawayne / fyr Gaherys / and to fyre
 Gareth / how this we knowe alle that fyr Launcelot holdeth yo-
 30 ur quene and hath done longe / and we be your syfter sones / &
 we may suffre it no lenger / and alle we wote that ye shold be
 aboute fyr launcelot / and ye are the kynge that made hym kny-
 ghte / and therfor we wille preue hit that he is a traytoure to
 your persone / yf hit be soo fayd fyr Arthur wete yow wel he
 35 is none other / but I wold be lothe to begynne fuche a thyng

[leaf 399 verso]

but I myght haue preues vpon hit / for fir launcelot is an hardy knyghte / and alle ye knowe / he is the best knyghte among vs alle // and but yf he be taken with the dede / he wylle fyghte with hym that bryngeth vp the noyse / and I knowe no knyzt that is able to matche hym / Therefore and it be sothe as ye saye 5
 I wold he were taken with the dede / For as the Frensshe booke sayth the kynge was ful lothe therto that ony noyse shold be vpon fyr launcelot and his quene / for the kynge had a demynge / but he wold not here of hit / for fyr launcelot had done foo moche for hym and the quene foo many tymes that wete ye 10
 wel the kynge loued hym passyngly wel / My lord sayd fyre Agrawayne ye shal ryde to morne on huntynge / and doubte ye not fyr launcelot wille not goo with yow / Thenne whan it draweth toward nyghte / ye may sende the quene word that ye wil lye oute alle that nyghte / and foo may ye sende for your cokes 15
 and thenne vpon payne of deth we shalle take hym that nyght with the quene / and outhur we shal brynge hym to yow dede or quyk / I wille wel sayd the kynge / thenne I counceylle yow sayd the kynge take with yow fure felauship / fyre sayd Agrawayne my broder fir Mordred and I wil take with vs 20
 twelue knyghtes of the round table / Beware sayd kyng arthur / for I warne yow ye shalle fynde hym wyghte / lete vs dele sayd fir Agrawayne and fir Mordred / Soo on the morn kynge Arthur rode on huntynge / and sente word to the quene that he wold be oute alle that nyghte / Thenne fir Agrawayne 25
 and fire Mordred gate to them twelue knyghtes / and dyd them self in a chamber in the Castel of Carleyle / and these were their names / fyr Colgreuance / fyr Mador de la porte / fyre Gyngalyne / fyr Melyot de Logrys / fyre Petypase of wynchelfee / fyr Galleron of Galway / fyr Melyon of the montayne / fir 30
 Aftamore / fyre Gromore fomyr Ioure / fyr Curselayne / fyr Florence / fyr Louel / So these twelue knyghtes were with fir mordred and fir Agrawayne / and al they were of Scotland outhur of fyr Gawayns kynne / outhur wel willers to his bretheren / Soo whan the nyghte came fir Launcelot told fyre Bors 35
 how he wold goo that nyghte and speke with the quene / Sir sayd fir Bors ye shal not go this nyghte by my couceil Why sayd fir launcelot / Sir sayd fir Bors I drede me euer of

fir Agrauayn that wayteth yow dayly to do yow fhame and
 vs al / and neuer gaf my herte ageynst no goynge that euer
 ye wente to the Quene foo moche as now / for I mystruft that
 the kynge is oute this nyghte from the quene by cause perauen-
 5 tur he hath layne fomme watche for yow and the Quene / and
 therfor I drede me fore of treason / Hauē ye no drede fayd fyr
 Launcelot / for I fhalle goo and come ageyne and make noo
 taryenge / Sir said fir Bors that me repenteth / for I drede me
 fore that your goynge oute thys nyghte fhalle wrathe vs alle
 10 Fair neuewe fayd fire launcelot I merueylle moche why ye
 faye thus fythen the quene hath sente for me / and wete ye wel
 I wille not be foo moche a coward / but she fhalle vnderftande
 I wille fee her good grace / God fpede yow wel fayd fir bors
 and fend yow found and fauf ageyne

¶ Capitulum iij /

15 **S** Oo fir Launcelot departed and took his fwerd vnder
 his arme / and foo in his mantel that noble knyghte
 putte hym felf in grete Jeopardy / and foo he pafst tyl he
 came to the quenes chamber / and thenne fir launcelot was ly3-
 tely putte in to the chamber / And thenne as the Frensshe book
 20 fayth the quene and Launcelot were to gyders / And whether
 they were a bedde or at other maner of difportes / me lyft not
 herof make no mencyon / for loue that tyme was not as is now
 adayes / ¶ But thus as they were to gyder / there came
 fir Agrauayne and fyre Mordred with twelue kny3tes with
 25 them of the round table / and they fayd with cryenge voys /
 Traytour knyghte fyr launcelot du lake now arte thou taken
 And thus they cryed with a loude voys that alle the Courte
 myghte here hit / and they all xiiij were armed at al poyntes
 as they fhould fyghte in a bataille / Allas fayd quene Guene-
 30 uer now are we mefcheued bothe / Madame fayd fir Launcelot
 is there here ony armour within your chambre that I myght co-
 uer my poure body with al / And yf there be ony gyue hit me /
 and I fhalle foone stynte their malyce by the grace of god
 Truly fayd the quene I haue none armour fheld fwerd nor

spere / wherfore I drede me fore / our longe loue is come to a my-
 scheuous ende / for I here by theire noyse there ben many noble
 knyghtes / and wel I wote they ben surely armed / ageynste
 them ye may make no refyſtence / wherfore ye are lykely to be
 flayne / and thenne ſhalle I be brente / For and ye myghte ef- 5
 cape them ſaid the quene / I wold not doubte but that ye wo-
 ld reſcowe me in what daunger that euer I ſtoode in / Allas
 ſayd fyr Launcelot in alle my lyf thus was I neuer beſtadde
 that I ſhold be thus ſhamefully flayne for lack of myn ar-
 mour / But euer in one ſir Agraueyne and ſir Mordred cry- 10
 ed Traytour knyghte come oute of the Quenes chamber / for
 wete thou wel thou arte ſoo beſette that thou ſhalte not eſca-
 pe / O Iheſu mercy ſayd ſir Launcelot this ſhameful crye and
 noyse I may not ſuffre / for better were deth at ones than thus
 to endure this payne / thenne he took the quene in his armes / 15
 and kyſte her / and ſayd moost noble cryſten Quene I byſe-
 che yow as ye haue ben euer my ſpecial good lady / and I at
 al tymes your true poure knyghte vnto my power / and as I
 neuer fayled yow in ryghte nor in wrong ſythen the fyrſt day
 kyng Arthur made me knyghte that ye wylle praye for my 20
 ſoule / yf that I here be flayne / for wel I am aſſured that ſir
 Bors myn neuewe and all the remenaunt of my kynne with
 fyr Lauayne and fyr Vrre that they wylle not fayle yow to
 reſcowe yow from the fyre / and therfor myn owne lady recom-
 forte your ſelf what ſomeuer come of me that ye go with ſir 25
 Bors my neuewe and ſir Vrre / and they all wylle doo yow
 alle the pleaſyr that they can or may / that ye ſhall lyue lyke a
 Quene vpon my landes / Nay launcelot ſayd the Quene / we-
 te thou wel / I wyll neuer lyue after thy dayes / but and thou
 be flayne I wyl take my deth as mekely for Iheſus Cryſtus 30
 ſake / as euer dyd ony cryſten Quene / wel madame ſayd laū-
 celot / fythe hit is ſoo that the day is come that oure loue muſte
 departe / wete yow wel I ſhalle felle my lyf as dere as I maye
 and a thouſand fold ſayd fyr Launcelot I am more heuyer
 for yow than for my ſelf / And now I had leuer than to be 35
 lord of al cryſtendome that I had ſure armour vpon me / that
 men myghte ſpeke of my dedes or euer I were flayne / Tru-
 ly ſayd the Quene I wold and it myghte pleaſe god / that

they wold take me and flee me / and suffer yow to escape /
 That shal neuer be sayd fir launcelot / god defende me from fuche a shame / but Ihesu be thou my sheld and myn armour /

¶ Capitulum iiij

ANd there with fyr Launcelot wrapped his mantel aboute his arme wel and surely / and by thenne they had gotten a grete fourme oute of the halle / and there with all they raffhed at the dore / Fair lordes sayd fyre Launcelot leue your noyse and your raffyng / and I shalle sette open this dore / and thenne may ye doo with me what it lyketh yow / Come of thenne sayd they alle / and do hit / for hit auayleth the not to stryue ageynst vs alle / and therfor lete vs in to this chamber / and we shalle saue thy lyf vntyl thou come to kyng Arthur / Thenne launcelot vnbarred the dore / and with his lyfte hand he held it open a lytel / so that but one man myghte come in attones / and soo there came strydyng a good knyghte a moche man and large / and his name was Colgreuaunce / of Gore / and he with a swerd strake at fyr launcelot myztely and he put asyde the stroke / and gaf hym fuche a buffett vpon the helmet / that he felle grouelynge dede within the chamber dore / and thenne fyre Launcelot with grete myghte drewe that dede knyght within the chamber dore / and fyr Launcelot with helpe of the Quene and her ladyes was lyghtely armed in fyr Colgreuaunce armour / and euer stode fir Agrauayn and fir Mordred cryenge traytoure knyghte come oute of the quenes chamber / leue your noyse sayd fyr launcelot vnto fir Agrauayne / For wete yow wel fir Agrauayne ye shal not pryfone me this nyghte and therfor and ye doo by my counceyll / goo ye alle from this chamber dore and make not fuche cryeng and fuche maner of sklauder as ye doo / for I promyse you by my knyghthode and ye wil departe and make no more noyse / I shal as to morne appiere afore yow alle before the kyng / and thenne lete it be sene whiche of yow all outhur els ye all that wille accuse me of treason / and there I shal anfuer yow as a knyghte shold that hydder I cam to the quene for no maner of male engyne / and that wyl I preue and make hit good vpon

yow with my handes / Fy on the traytour fayd fir Agrauayn
 and fir Mordred / we wylle haue the maulgre thy hede / and
 flee the yf we lyfte / for we lete the wete we haue the choyse of
 kyng Arthur to faue the or to flee the / A firs fayd fir laun-
 celot / is there none other grace with you / thenne kepe your self 5
 Soo thenne fir Launcelot fet al open the chamber dore / and my-
 ghtely and knyghtely he strode in amongest them / and anone
 at the fyrst buffet he slewe fir Agrauayne and twelue of his
 felawes after within a lytel whyle after he layd hem cold to
 the erthe / for there was none of the twelue that myghte stan- 10
 de fir launcelot one buffet / ¶ Also fyr Launcelot wounded fyr
 Mordred and he fledde with alle his myghte / And thenne
 fyre launcelot retourned ageyne vnto the Quene and sayd ma-
 dame / now wete yow wel all oure true loue is brought to an
 ende / for now wille kyng Arthur euer be my foo / and ther- 15
 fore madame and it lyke yow that I maye haue you wyth
 me / I shalle faue yow from alle manere aduentures daunge-
 rous / that is not best sayd the quene / me semeth now ye haue
 done soo moche harme / it wylle be best ye hold yow styll with
 this / And yf ye see that as to morne they wylle put me vnto 20
 the dethe / thenne may ye rescowe me as ye thynke best / I wyll
 wel sayd fir launcelot / for haue ye no doubte whyle I am ly-
 uynge / I shalle rescowe yow / and thenne he kyfte her / & eyther
 gaf other a rynge / and soo there he lefte the quene / and went
 vntyl his lodgyng ¶ **Capitulum Quintum** / 25

WHan fyre Bors sawe fyr launcelot / he was neuer soo
 gladde of his home comynge as he was thenne / Ihesu
 mercy sayd fyr Launcelot why be ye all armed what
 meaneth this / Sir sayd fir Bors after ye were departed from
 vs / we alle that ben of youre blood and youre wel wyllers 30
 were soo dretched that somme of vs lepte oute of oure beddes
 naked / & some in their dremes caughte naked swardes in their
 handes / therfor said fir Bors we deme / there is some grete stryf
 at hand / & thēne we all demed that ye were betrayed with som
 treason / & therfor we made vs thus redy what nede that euer 35
 ye were in / My fayre neuewe sayd fir launcelot vnto fir bors
 now shal ye wete al that this nyzt I was more harder bestad
 wan euer I was in my lyf & yet I escaped / And so he told

hem alle how and in what maner as ye haue herd to fore /
 And therefore my felawes said fir Launcelot. I pray yow all
 that ye wylle be of good herte in what nede someuer I stande
 for now is warre come to vs alle / Sir sayd fir Bors alle is
 5 welcome that god fendeth vs / and we haue had moche wele
 with yow and moche worfhypp / and therfor we wille take the
 wo with yow as we haue taken the wele / And therefore they
 sayd alle there were many good knyghtes / loke ye take no dif-
 comforte / for there nys no bandys of knyghtes vnder heuen /
 10 but we shalle be able to greue them as moche as they maye vs
 And therfor discomforte not your self by no maner / and we
 shalle gadre to gyders that we loue / and that loueth vs / &
 what that ye wil haue done shalle be done /

And therfor fyr Launcelot sayd they we wil take the woo
 15 with the wele / Graunt mercy sayd fir Launcelot of your go-
 od comforte / for in my grete distresse my fayr neuewe ye com-
 forte me gretely / and moche I am beholdyng vnto yow

But thys my fayre neuewe I wold that ye dyd in al hafte
 that ye may or it be forth dayes that ye wille loke in their lod-
 20 gyng that ben lodged here nyghe aboute the kyng which wyll
 hold with me and whyche wylle not / for now I wolde kno-
 we whiche were my frendes fro my foes

Sir said fyr Bors I shalle doo my payne / and or it be feuen
 of the klok I shalle wete of fuche as ye haue sayd before who
 25 wil holde with yow

¶ Thenne fire Bors called vnto hym fire Lyonel / fyr Ector
 de marys / fir Blamor de ganys / fir Bleoberys de ganys / fyre
 Gahalantyne / fyr Galyhodyn / fir Galyhud / Sir menadeuke/
 fir Vyllyers the valyaunt / fir Hebes le renoumes / fir lauayne
 30 fyr Vyre of Hongry / fir Nerouneus / fire Plenorius / ¶ These
 two knyghtes fire launcelot made / and the one he wanne vp-
 on a a brydge / and therfor they wold neuer be ageynft hym/
 And Harre le fyfe du lake and fyre Selyfes of the doloro-
 us Toure / and fir Melyas de lyle / and fire Bellangere le
 35 beuse that was fyr Alyfanders sone le orphelyn / by cause hys
 moder Alys la Beale pelleryn and she was kynne vnto fir
 Launcelot / and he held with hym /

¶ Soo there came fyre Palomydes and fir Safyr his broder

to hold with fyr launcelot / And fyre Clegys of Sadok and
 fyr Dynas / fyr Claryus of Cleremont / So these two & twen-
 ty knyghtes drewe hem to gyders / and by thenne they were ar-
 med on horsbak / and promysed fir Launcelot to doo what he
 wold / ¶ Thenne there felle to them what of Northwalys and 5
 of Cornewaile for fir Lamoraks fake and for fire Triftrams
 fake to the nombre of a four score knyghtes

¶ My lordes sayd fyre Launcelot wete yow wel / I haue ben
 euër fyns I came in to this Countrey wel wylled vnto my
 lord kyng Arthur / and vnto my lady Quene Gueneuer vn- 10
 to my power / and this nyghte by cause my lady the quene se-
 nte for me to speke with her / I suppose it was made by treason
 how be hit / I dare largely excuse her perfone / not withstand-
 ynge I was ther by a fore cast nere slayne / but as Ihesu pro-
 uydde me I escaped alle theyir malyce and treason / 15

¶ And thenne that noble knyght fire Launcelot told hem al
 how he was hard bestad in the quenes chamber / and how and
 in what manere he escaped from them / And therfore sayd fir
 Launcelot wete yow wel my fayre lordes I am sure ther nys
 but werre vnto me and myn / And for by cause I haue fla- 20
 yn this nyghte these knyghtes I wote wel as is fire Agra-
 uayne fyr Gawayns broder / and at the leste twelue of his
 felawes / for this cause now I am sure of mortal warre / for
 these knyghtes were sente and ordeyned by kyng Arthur to
 bitraye me / And therfore the kyng wylle in his hete & ma- 25
 lyce Iuge the quene to the fyre / and that maye I not suffre
 that she shold be brente for my fake / for and I may be herd
 and sufferd and soo taken / I wyll fyghte for the Quene that
 she is a true lady vnto her lord / but the kyng in his hete I
 drede me wylle not take me as I oughte to be taken 30

¶ Capitulum vj



[leaf 403]

Y lord fyre Launcelot sayd fir Bors by myn aduys
 ye shalle take the wo with the wele / and take hit in
 pacyence / and thanke god of hit / ¶ And fythen

bb ij

hit is fallen as hit is / I counceyll yow to kepe youre self / for
 and ye wylle your self / ther is no felauſhyp of knyghtes cry-
 ſtened that ſhalle do you wrong / Alſo I wyll counceyll yow
 my lord fyr Launcelot / that and my lady quene Gueneuer be
 5 in diſtreſſe / in ſoo moche as ſhe is in payne for your ſake that
 ye knyghtly reſcowe her / and ye dyd other wayes / al the world
 wylle ſpeke of yow ſhame to the worldes ende / in ſo moche as
 ye were taken with her / whether ye dyd ryghte or wrong /
 It is now your parte to holde with the quene that ſhe be not
 10 ſlayne and put to a meſcheuous dethe / for and ſhe ſoo dye / the
 ſhame ſhalle be yours / Iheſu defende me from ſhame ſayd fyre
 Launcelot and kepe and ſaue my lady the quene from vylony
 and ſhameful deth / and that ſhe neuer be deſtroyed in my de-
 faute / wherfore my fayre lordes my kynne and my frendes fa-
 15 yd fir Launcelot what wylle ye doo / Thenne they ſayd all we
 wille doo as ye wylle doo / I putte this to yow ſayd fir laun-
 celot that yf my lord Arthur by euyll counceyll wyll to morn
 in his hete putte my lady the Quene to the fyre there to be
 brente / Now I praye yow counceyll me what is beſt to doo /
 20 Thenne they ſayd alle at ones with one voys / Syre vs thyn-
 keth beſt that ye knyghtly reſcowe the quene in ſoo moche as
 ſhe ſhal be brente / it is for youre ſake / and it is to ſuppoſe and
 ye myghte be handelyd ye ſhold haue the ſame dethe or a mo-
 re ſhamefuller dethe / and fyre we ſay al that ye haue many
 25 tymes reſcowed her from dethe / for other mens quarels / vs ſe-
 meth it is more youre worſhyp that ye reſcowe the quene from
 this perylle / in ſoo moche ſhe hath it for your ſake

¶ Thenne fir launcelot ſtood ſtyl and ſayd / my fayre lordes
 wete yow wel I wold be lothe to doo that thyng that ſhold
 30 diſhonoure yow or my blood / and wete yow wel I wold
 be lothe that my lady the quene ſhold dye a ſhameful dethe /
 but and hit be ſoo that ye wylle counceyll me to reſcowe her /
 I muſte doo moche harme or I reſcowe her / and peraduen-
 ture I ſhal there deſtroye ſomme of my beſt frendes / that ſhold
 35 moche repente me / and peradventure there be ſomme / and they
 coude wel brynge it aboute / or diſobeye my lord kynge Arth-
 ur they wold ſoone come to me / the whiche I were loth to hur-
 te / & yf ſo be þ^t I reſcowe her where ſhal I kepe her / that ſhal be

be the leste care of vs alle fayd fir Bors / how dyd the noble
 knyghte fire Triftram by your good wyll kepte not he wyth
 hym la beale Ifoud nere thre yere in Ioyous gard / the which
 was done by your elthers deuyfe / and that fame place is your
 owne / and in lyke wyfe may ye doo and ye lyft / and take the 5
 Quene lyghtely away / yf it foo be the kynge wyll Iuge her
 to be brente / and in Ioyous gard ye may kepe her longe yno-
 ugh vntyl the hete of the kynge be past /

And thenne shalle ye brynge ageyne the quene to the kynge
 with grete worshyp / and thenne peradventure ye shalle haue 10
 thanke for her bryngynge home and loue and thanke where o-
 ther shalle haue maugre / That is hard to doo fayd fir launce-
 lot / for by fir Triftram I maye haue a warnynge / for whanne
 by meanes of treatyce fyr Triftram brought ageyne la Beale
 Ifoud vnto kynge Mark from Ioyous gard loke what be- 15
 felle on the ende / how shamefully that fals traitour kyng ma-
 rke slewe hym / as he sat harpyng afore his lady la beale I-
 foud / With a groundyn glayue he threst hym in behynde to the
 herte / hit greueth me faid fir launcelot to speke of his dethe /
 for alle the world may not fynde suche a knyghte / Alle thys 20
 is trouthe fayd fyre Bors / but there is one thyng shalle cou-
 rage yow and vs alle / ye knowe wel Kynge Arthur & kyng
 marke were neuer lyke of condycyons / for there was neuer
 yet man coude preue kynge Arthur vntrewe of his promyse /
 Soo to make short tale they were alle consented that for bet- 25
 ter outhur for worfe / yf foo were that the quene were on that
 morne broughte to the fyre / shortly they al wold rescowe her /
 And foo by the aduyfe of fyr launcelot they putte hem all in
 an enbuffhement in a woode as nyghe Carleil as they myght
 And there they abode styll to wete what the Kynge wold do / 30

¶ Capitulum vij

Now torne we ageyne vnto fyre Mordred / that whan
 he was escaped from the noble knyghte fire Launcelot
 he anone gat his hors and mounted vpon hym / and
 rode vnto Kynge Arthur / fore wounded and fmyten / and alle

forbled / and there he told the kynge alle how hit was / and
 how they were alle flayne fauf hym self al only / Ihefu mercy
 how maye this be said the Kynge / toke ye hym in the quenes
 chamber / Ye foo god me helpe sayd sir Mordred there we fon-
 5 de hym vnarmed / and there he flewe Colgreuance & armed
 hym in his armour / and alle this he told the kynge from the
 begynnyng to the endyng

¶ Ihefu mercy sayd the kynge he is a merueyllous knyghte
 of prowesse / Allas me fore repenteth sayd the Kynge that euer
 10 fyr launcelot shold be ageynst me / Now I am fure the noble
 felaushyp of the round table is broken for euer / for with hym
 wille many a noble knyghte holde / and now it is fallen foo/
 sayd the Kyng / that I may not with my worshyp / but the que-
 ne must suffer the dethe / Soo thenne there was made grete or-
 15 dynaunce in this hete / that the quene must be Iuged to the deth
 And the lawe was fuche in tho dayes that what someuer they
 were / of what estate or degree / yf they were fonde gylty of tre-
 fon / there shold be none other remedy but dethe / and outhur the
 men or the takynge with the dede shold be causer of their hasty
 20 Iugement / and ryghte foo was it ordeyned for quene guene-
 uer / by cause sir Mordred was escaped fore wounded / and the
 dethe of thyrtyten knyghtes of the round table / these preues &
 experyences caused kyng Arthur to commaunde the quene to
 the fyre there to be brente / Thenne spake sir gawayn and sayd
 25 my lord Arthur I wold counceyllle yow not to be ouer hasty /
 but that ye wold putte it in respyte this Iugement of my la-
 dy the quene for many causes / ¶ One it is though it were so
 that sir Launcelot were fonde in the quenes chamber / yet it my-
 ghte be foo that he came thyder for none euylle / for ye knowe
 30 my lord said fyr gawayne that the quene is moche beholden vn-
 to fyr launcelot more than vnto ony other Knyghte / for ofty-
 me he hath faued her lyf / and done batail for her whan al the
 Courte refused the quene / and parauenture she sente for hym
 for goodenes and for none euyl to rewarde hym for his good
 35 dedes that he had done to her in tymes past / And peraduenture
 my lady the quene sente for hym to that entente that fyr Laun-
 celot shold come to her good grace pryuely and secretely / we-
 nyng to her that hit was best so to do in eschewyng & dredyng

of ilkaunder / for oftymes we doo many thynges that we we-
 ne it be for the best / & yet peradventure hit torneth to the werst/
 For I dare say sayd fyre Gawayne my lady your Quene is
 to yow bothe good and true / And as for fir Launcelot sayd
 fir Gawayne I dare saye he wylle make hit good vpon ony 5
 knyghte lyuyng that wylle putte vpon hym self vylony or sha-
 me / and in lyke wyse he wylle make good for my lady dame
 Gueneuer / that I byleue wel said kyng Arthur / but I wil not
 that way with fir Launcelot for he trusteth soo moche vpon his
 handes and his myghte that he doubteth no man / and therfore 10
 for my Quene he shalle neuer fyghte more / for she shall haue
 the lawe / And yf I maye gete fir Launcelot wete you well
 he shal haue a shameful dethe / Ihesu defende sayd fir Gawayn
 that I may neuer see it / why saye ye soo sayd kynge Arthur/
 For soth ye haue no cause to loue fir Launcelot / for this nyghte 15
 last past he slewe your broder fir Agrauayne a ful good kny-
 ghte / & al mooft he had slayne your other broder fir mordred
 And also there he slewe thyrten noble knyghtes / and also fir
 Gawayne remembre ye he slewe two fones of yours fire Flo-
 rence and fir Louel / my lord sayd fir Gawayne of alle thys 20
 I haue knowleche of whos dethes I repente me fore / but in so
 moche I gaf hem warnynge / and told my bretheren and my
 fones afore hand what wold falle in the ende / in soo moche /
 they wold not doo by my counceyll I wyl not medle me ther-
 of nor reuenge me no thyng of their dethes / for I told hem it 25
 was no bote to stryue wyth fir launcelot / how be it I am sory
 of the deth of my bretheren & of my fones / for they are the cau-
 sers of theyre owne dethe / For oftymes I warned my bro-
 der fir Agrauayne / and I told hym the peryls the which ben
 now fallen

30

¶ Capitulum viij

THenne sayd the noble Kynge Arthur to fyre Gawa-
 yne / dere neuewe I pray yow make yow redy in your
 best armoure with youre bretheren fyre Gaherys and
 fyre Gareth to bryng my Quene to the fyre there to haue her
 Iugement and receyue the dethe ¶ Nay my mooft noble 35

[leaf 405]

bb iiij

lord sayd fir Gawayne that wylle I neuer doo / for wete yow
wel / I wylle neuer be in that place where foo noble a Quene
as is my lady dame Gueneuer shalle take a shameful ende /
For wete yow wel sayd fire Gawayne my herte wylle neuer
5 ferue me to see her dye / and it shalle neuer be sayd that euer
I was of youre counceyllle of her dethe / Thenne sayd the kyng
to fyr Gawayne / suffer your broder fyr Gaherys and fyr Ga-
reth to be there / my lord sayd fire Gawayne wete yow wel /
they wille be lothe to be there present by cause of many aduen-
10 tures the whiche ben lyke there to falle / but they are yonge &
ful vnable to faye yow nay / Thenne spak fire Gaherys & the
good knyghte fire Gareth vnto fyre Arthur / fyre ye may wel
commaunde vs to be there / but wete yow wel it shalle be fore a-
geynst oure wylle / but and we be there by youre strayte com-
15 maundement / ye shall playnly hold vs there excused / we wyl
be there in peasfble wyse and bere none harneis of warre vpon
vs / In the name of god sayd the kynge thenne make you re-
dy / for she shalle foone haue her Iugement anone / Allas sayd
fyr Gawayne that euer I shold endure to see this woful da-
20 ye / Soo fir Gawayne torned hym / and wepte hertely / and so
he wente in to his chamber and thēne the quene was led forth
withoute Carleil / and there she was despoyllled in to her smok
And foo thenne her ghooftly fader was broughte to her to be
shryuen of her myfdedes / Thenne was there wepyng & way-
25 lunge and wryngynge of handes of many lordes and ladyes /
But there were but fewe in comparyson that wold bere any
armour for to strengthe the dethe of the quene / Thenne was ther
one that fire Launcelot had sente vnto that place for to aspye
what tyme the quene shold goo vnto her dethe / And anone as
30 he sawe the quene despoyllled in to her smok / and foo shryuen /
thenne he gaf fir launcelot warnynge / thenne was there but
sporynge and pluckyng vp of horses / and ryghte so they cam
to the fyre / And who that stood ageynst them there were they
flayne / there myghte none withstande fir Launcelot / so all that
35 bare armes and withstode hem there were they flayne ful ma-
ny a noble knyghte / For there was flayne fir Bellyas le or-
gulous / Sir Segwarydes / Sir Gryflet / fir Brandyles / fyre

Agloul / fyr Tor / fyr Gauter / fire Gyllymer / fyr Reynolds iij
 bretheren / fyr Damas / fyr Pyramus / fyr Kay the straunger/
 fir Dryaunt / fir Lambegus / fyr Hermynde / fyr Pertylope / fyre
 Perymones two bretheren that were called the grene knyght
 and the reed knyghte / And soo in this rassyng and hurlyng 5
 as fyre Launcelot thrange here and there / it myhapped hym to
 flee Gaherys and fyr Gareth the noble knyghte / for they we-
 re vnarmed and vnware / For as the Frensshe booke sayth/
 fyr Launcelot smote fyr Gareth and fyr Gaherys vpon the br-
 ayne pannes where thorou they were slayne in the felde how be 10
 hit in veray trouthe fyr launcelot sawe hem not / and soo we-
 re they fonde dede amonge the thyckest of the prees / ¶ Thenne
 whan fyr launcelot had thus done and slayne / and putte to
 flyghte alle that wold withstande hym / Thenne he rode strey-
 ghte vnto dame Gueneuer and maade a kyrtyl and a gowne 15
 to be cast vpon her / and thenne he made her to be fette behynde
 hym / and prayd her to be of good chere / wete yow wel / the
 Quene was gladde that she was escaped from the dethe / And
 thenne she thanked god and fir Launcelot / and soo he rode his
 way with the Quene as the Frensshe book faith vnto Ioyous 20
 gard / and there he kepte her as a noble knyghte shold doo / &
 many grete lordes and fomme kynges sent fyr Launcelot ma-
 ny good knyghtes / and many noble knyghtes drewe vnto fir
 Launcelot / ¶ whan this was knowen openly that kyng Ar-
 thur and fire launcelot were at debate / many knyghtes were 25
 gladde of their debate / and many were ful heuy of their debate

¶ Capitulum ix

Soo torne we ageyne vnto kyng Arthur that whan
 it was told hym / how and in what maner of wyfe the
 quene was taken away from the fyre / And whan he herd of
 the deth of his noble knyghtes / and in especyal of fyr gaheris 30
 and fir Gareths deth / thenne the kyng swouned for pure forou
 And whan he awoke of his swoun / thenne he sayd ¶ Allas
 that euer I bare croun vpon my hede / For now haue I losse
 the fayrest felaushyp of noble knyghtes that euer helde crysten

kyng to gyders / Allas my good knyghtes ben flayne aweye
 from me / now within these two dayes I haue lost xl knyghtes /
 & also the noble felauſhyp of fyr laūcelot and his blood / for
 now I may neuer hold hem to gyders no more with my wor-
 5 shyp / Allas that euer this werre beganne / Now fayr felawes
 sayd the kyng I charge yow that no man telle ſir gawayn
 of the dethe of his two bretheren / for I am ſure ſayd the kyng
 whan ſir Gawayne hereth telle that ſir Gareth is dede he wyll
 goo nyghe oute of his mynde / Mercy Iheſu ſaid the kyng why
 10 ſlewe he fyre Gareth and fyre Gaherys / for I dar ſaye as for
 fyre Gareth he loued ſir Launcelot aboue al men erthely / that
 is trouthe ſayd ſome knyghtes / but they were flayne in the
 hurtlyng as ſir launcelot thrange in the thyck of the prees /
 and as they were vnarmed / he ſmote hem and wyft not who-
 15 me that he ſmote / and ſoo vnhappily they were flayne / The
 dethe of them ſayd Arthur wyll cauſe the gretteſt mortal wer-
 re that euer was / I am ſure wyfte ſir Gawayne that fyr Ga-
 reth were flayne I ſhold neuer haue reſte of hym tyl I had
 deſtroyed fyr launcelots kynne and hym ſelf both / outhur els
 20 he to deſtroye me / and therfor ſayd the kyng wete yow well
 my herte was neuer ſoo heuy as it is now / and moche more I
 am foryer for my good knyghtes loſſe / than for the loſſe of
 my fayre quene / for quenes I myghte haue ynowe / but ſuche
 a felauſhyp of good knyghtes ſhalle neuer be to gyders in no
 25 company / and now I dare ſay ſayd kyng Arthur there was
 neuer cryſten kyng helde ſuche a felauſhyp to gyders / & allas
 that euer fyr launcelot & I ſhold be at debate / A Agrauiayn
 Agrauiayn ſayd the kyng Iheſu forgyue it thy ſowle / for thyn
 euyl wyl that thou and thy broder fyre Mordred haddeſt vn-
 30 to fyr launcelot hath cauſed al this ſorowe / and euer amonge
 theſe complayntes the kyng wepte and ſwouned

¶ Thenne ther came one vnto fyr Gawayne and told hym /
 how the Quene was ladde awaye with fyr launcelot / & nygh
 a xxiiij knyghtes flayne / O Iheſu defende my bretheren ſayd ſir
 35 gawayne / for ful wel wyft I that fyr launcelot wold reſcowe
 her / outhur els he wold dye in that felde / and to ſaye the trouthe
 he had not ben a man of worſhyp had he not reſcowed the que-
 ne that day / in ſo moche ſhe ſhold haue ben brente for his ſake

And as in that sayd fir Gawayne he hath done but knyȝtly/
 and as I wold haue done my felf and I had stand in ly-
 ke caas / but where ar my bretheren sayd fir Gawayne / I mer-
 ueyll I here not of hem / Truly sayd that man fir Gareth and
 fyr Gaherys be flayne / Ihesu defende sayd fir Gawayne / for 5
 alle the world I wold not that they were flayne / and in e-
 specyal my good broder fir Gareth / fyr sayd the man he is fl-
 ayne and that is grete pyte / who flewe hym sayd fir Gawayn
 Sir sayd the man Launcelot flewe hem bothe / that may I not
 byleue sayd fyr Gawayne that euer he flewe my broder fyre 10
 Gareth / For I dar say my broder Gareth loued hym better than
 me and alle his bretheren / and the kynge bothe / Also I dare
 say and fir Launcelot had defyred my broder fyr Gareth with
 hym / he wolde haue ben with hym ageynst the kynge and vs
 al / and therfore I may neuer byleue that fyr launcelot flewe 15
 my broder . Sir sayd this man it is noyfed that he flewe hym

¶ Capitulum x

Allas sayd fire Gawayne now is my loye gone / and
 thenne he felle doune and fwouned / and long he lay
 there as he had ben dede / And thenne whanne he aroos of his
 fwouned / he cryed oute forowfully and sayd Allas / and ryȝte 20
 foo fyr Gawayne ranne to the kynge cryenge and wepynge
 O kynge Arthur myne vnkel my good broder fyr Gareth is
 flayne / foo is my broder fyr Gaherys / the whiche were / ij /
 noble knyghtes / Thenne the kynge wepte and he bothe / and so
 they felle on fwounynge / And whan they were reuyued then- 25
 ne spak fir Gawayne / fyr I wyl go see my broder fyr Ga-
 reth / ye may not see hym sayd the kynge / for I caused hym to
 be entered and fyr gaherys bothe / For I wel vnderstood that
 ye wold make ouer moche sorowe / and the fyghte of fir Ga-
 reth shold haue caused your double sorowe / Allas my lord sa- 30
 yd fyr Gawayne how flewe he my broder fir Gareth myn own
 good lord I praye yow telle me / Truly sayd the Kyng I shal
 telle yow as it is told me / fyre Launcelot flewe hym & fir Ga-
 heris bothe / Allas sayd fire Gawayne they bare none armes

ayenst hym neyther of hem both / I wote not how it was faid
 the kyng / but as it is sayd fir launcelot flewe them bothe in
 the thyckest of the prees / and knewe them not / and therfor le-
 te vs shape a remedy for to reuenge their dethes / My Kyng
 5 my lord and myn vnkel sayd fir Gawayne wete yow wel
 now I shal make yow a promyse that I shalle holde by my
 knyghthode / that from this day I shalle neuer fayle fir launce-
 lot vntyl the one of vs haue slayne the other / And therfore I
 requyre yow my lord and kyng dresse yow to the werre for
 10 wete yow wel I will be reuenged vpon fir launcelot / & ther-
 for as ye wylle haue my feruyfe and my loue now haſte yow
 therto and affaye your frendes / For I promyse vnto god faid
 fir Gawayne for the dethe of my broder fir gareth I shalle seke
 fyr launcelot thorou oute feuen kynges Realmes / but I shalle
 15 flee hym or els he shalle flee me / ye shall not nede to seke hym
 foo ferre sayd the Kyng / for as I here faye fir Launcelot will
 abyde me and yow in the Ioyous gard / and moche peple dra-
 weth vnto hym as I here faye / That may I byleue sayd fir ga-
 wayne / but my lord he sayd affaye your frendes / and I wyll
 20 affaye myn / it shalle be done sayd the kyng / and as I suppo-
 se I shal be byg ynouȝ to drawe hym oute of the byggeſt toure
 of his Castel / So thenne the kyng sente letters and wryttes
 thorou oute alle Englonde bothe in the lengthe and the brede /
 for to affomone alle his knyghtes / And foo vnto Arthur dre-
 25 we many knyghtes dukes and Erles / foo that he had a gre-
 te hooft / And whan they were affemblyd the kyng enformed
 hem how fyr launcelot had beraſte hym his quene / Thenne the
 kyng and all his hooft made hem redy to laye fyege aboute fir
 Launcelot where he laye within Ioyous gard / Therof herd fir
 30 Launcelot and purueyed hym of many good knyghtes / for
 with hym helde many knyghtes / and ſome for his owne ſake
 and ſomme for the quenes ſake / Thus they were on bothe par-
 tyes wel furnyſhed and garnyſhed of alle maner of thyng
 that longed to the werre / But kyng Arthurs hooft was foo
 35 bygge that fyr launcelot wold not abyde hym in the felde /
 For he was ful lothe to doo batail ageynſt the kyng / but fyre
 launcelot drewe hym to his ſtrong caſtel with al maner of vy-
 tail / And as many noble men as he myghte ſuffyſe within the

Towne and the Castel / Thenne came kynge Arthur with sire
 Gawayne with an hughe hooft / and layd a fyege al aboute
 Ioyous gard both at the Towne and at the Castel / & there
 they made stronge werre on bothe partyes / but in no wyse fyre
 Launcelot wold ryde oute nor go out of his Castel of long 5
 tyme / neyther he wold none of his good knyghtes to yssue
 oute neyther none of the Towne nor of the Castel vntyl xv /
 wekes were past

¶ Capitulum xi

Thenne it befel vpon a daye in heruest tyme / fyr laun-
 celot loked ouer the walles / and spak on hyghe vn- 10
 to Kynge Arthur and sir Gawayne / my lordes bothe wete ye
 wel al is in vayne that ye make at this fyege / for here wyne
 ye no worship but maulgre and dishonoure / for and it lyfte
 me to come my self oute and my good knyghtes I shold ful
 foone make an ende of this werre / Come forthe sayd Arthur 15
 vnto Launcelot and thou darst / and I promyse the / I shalle
 mete the in myddes of the felde / God defende me sayd sir Laun-
 celot that euer I shold encountre with the mooft noble kyng
 that made me knyghte / Fy vpon thy fayre langage sayd the
 kynge / for wete yow wel and trust it I am thy mortal fo / & 20
 euer wylle to my deth daye / for thou hast slayne my good kn-
 yghtes / and ful noble men of my blood that I shal neuer re-
 couer ageyne / ¶ Also thou hast layne by my Quene & hol-
 den her many wynters / and fythen lyke a traytour taken her
 from me by force / my mooft noble lord and kyng sayd sir la- 25
 uncelot ye may say what ye will / for ye wote wel with youre
 self wil I not stryue / but there as ye say I haue slayn your
 good knyghtes I wote wel that I haue done foo / and that
 me fore repenteth / but I was enforced to doo batail with hem /
 in sauynge of my lyf or els I muste haue suffred hem to haue 30
 slayne me / and as for my lady Quene Gueneuer except yo-
 ur persone of your hyhenes / and my lord sire Gawayne there
 is noo knyghte vnder heuen that dar make it good vpon me /
 that euer I was a traytour vnto youre persone / And where hit
 please yow to faye that I haue holden my lady youre Quene 35

yeres and wynters / vnto that I shal euer make a large an-
 fuer / and preue hit vpon ony knyghte that bereth the lyf ex-
 cepte youre perfon and sire Gawayne that my lady Quene
 gueneuer is a true lady vnto your perfone as ony is lyuyng
 5 vnto her lord / and that wylle I make good with my handes /
 how be it / it hath lyked her good grace to haue me in chyerte
 and to cheryfhe me more than ony other knyghte / and vnto
 my power I ageyne haue deserued her loue / for oftymes my
 lord ye haue consented that she shold be brente and destroyed
 10 in your hete / and thenne it fortunied me to doo batail for her /
 and or I departed from her aduersary they confessid their vn-
 trouthe / and she ful worshipfully excused / And at suche ty-
 mes my lord Arthur sayd sir Launcelot ye loued me / and
 thanked me whan I saued your quene from the fyre / & then-
 15 ne ye promysed me for euer to be my good lord / and now me
 thynketh ye rewarde me ful ylle for my good seruyse / and my
 good lord me semeth I had lost a grete parte of my worship
 in my knyghthode / and I had suffred my lady youre Quene
 to haue ben brente / and in soo moche she shold haue ben brente
 20 for my sake / For fythen I haue done batails for your Quene
 in other quarels than in myn owne / me semeth now I had mo-
 re ryght to doo batail for her in ryghte quarel / and therfor my
 good and gracyous lord sayd sir launcelot take your quene
 vnto your good grace / for she is bothe fayr true and good /
 25 Fy on the fals recreaunt knyght sayd sire Gawayne / I lete
 the wete my lord myn vnkel Kynge Arthur shalle haue his
 Quene and the maulgre thy vyfage / and flee yow bothe whe-
 ther it please hym / It may wel be sayd sire Launcelot / but we-
 te ye wel my lord sire Gawayne / and me lyst to come oute
 30 of this Castel ye shold wyne me and the quene more harder
 than euer ye wanne a stronge bataille / Fy on thy proude wor-
 des seyde sir Gawayne / as for my lady the Quene I wil ne-
 uer faye of her shame / but thow fals and recreaunt Knyghte /
 faide fyre Gawayne what cause haddest thow to flee my good
 35 broder sir Gareth that loued the more than al my kynne
 Allas thow madest hym knyght thyn owne handes / Why fle-
 we thow hym that loued the soo wel / for to excuse me sayde
 sir Launcelot it helpeth me not / but by Ihesu / and by the feyth

that I owe to the hygh ordre of kny3thode / I shold with as a
 good wylle haue slayne my neuewe sir Bors de ganys / at þ^t
 tyme / but alas that euer I was so vnhappy sayd laūcelot þ^t I
 had not sene fyr Gareth and sir Gaherys / Thow lyeft recrea-
 unt knyght sayd sir Gawayne / thow slewest hym in despyte 5
 of me / And therefore wete thou wel I shalle make warre to
 the / and alle the whyle that I may lyue / That me repenteth
 said sir Launcelot / for wel I vnderstande it helpeth not to seke
 none accordement whyle ye fyr Gawayne ar soo mescheuously
 sette / And yf ye were not / I wold not doubte to haue the go- 10
 od grace of my lord Arthur / I byleue it wel fals recreant
 knyght sayd sir Gawayne / for thow hast many longe dayes o-
 uer ladde me and vs alle / and destroyed many of oure good
 knyghtes / ye saye as it pleafeth yow sayd fyr launcelot / & yet
 may it neuer be sayd on me / and openly preued that euer I 15
 before cast of treason flewe no good knyghte as my lord fyre
 Gawayne ye haue done / And soo dyd I neuer / but in my de-
 fense that I was dryuen therto in sauynge of my lyf /

¶ A fals knyghte sayd fyre Gawayne that thow meneft by
 fyre Lamorak / wete thou wel I slewe hym / ye slewe hym not 20
 youre self sayd sir launcelot / hit had ben ouer moche on hand
 for yow to haue slayne hym / for he was one of the best knygh-
 tes cryftned of his age / and it was grete pyte of his dethe /

¶ Capitulum xij

WEl wel sayd sayd sir Gawayne / to Launcelot fythen
 thou enbraydest me of fyre Lamorak / wete thou well 25
 I shalle neuer leue the tyl I haue the at suche auaille that thou
 shalte not escape my handes / I truste yow wel ynough sayd
 fyr launcelot / and ye may gete me / I gete but lytel mercy/
 but as the Frensshe book saith / the noble kyng Arthur wo-
 ld haue taken his Quene ageyne / and haue ben accorded 30
 with fyr Launcelot / but fyr Gawayne wold not suffer hym by
 no maner of meane / And thenne fyre Gawayne made many
 men to blowe vpon fyr launcelot / And all at ones they called
 hym fals recreant knyght / Thenne when fyr Bors de ganys

fyr Ector de marys and fir lyonel herd this oute crye / they
called to them fyre Palomydes fir Safyrs broder / and fir La-
uayne with many moo of their blood / and alle they went vn-
to fir launcelot and fayd thus / My lord fir launcelot wete ye
5 wel we haue grete fcorne of the grete rebukes / that we herd
gawayn faye to yow / Wherfor we pray you & charge you as
ye wille haue oure feruyse / kepe vs noo lenger within these
walles / for wete yow wel playnly we wille ryde in to the fel-
ld / and doo bataille with hem / for ye fare as a man that were
10 aferd / and for alle your fayr speche it wil not auayle yow /
For wete yow wel / fire Gawayne wille not suffer you to be
accorded with kynge Arthur / and therfore fyghte for youre
lyf and your ryghte and ye dar / Allas fayd fyre launcelot for
to ryde oute of this Castel and to doo batail I am ful lothe /
15 Thenne fyre launcelot spak on hyghe vnto fyr Arthur & fyre
Gawayne my lordes I requyre you and bifeche you sythen that
I am thus requyred and coniured to ryde in to the felde / that
neyder you my lord kynge Arthur nor you fyre Gawayne co-
me not in to the felde / What shal we doo thenne fayd fyr Ga-
20 wayne / is this the kynges quarel with the to fyghte / and it is
my quarel to fyghte with the fyr launcelot / by caufe of the deth
of my broder fyre Gareth / Thenne muste I nedes vnto bataill
said fyr launcelot / now wete you wel my lord Arthur and
fyre Gawayne ye wil repente it when someuer I doo bataylle
25 with you / And soo thenne they departed eyther from other / and
thenne eyther party made hem redy on the morne for to doo ba-
tail / and grete purueaunce was made on bothe fydes / and fyr
Gawayne lete purueye many knyghtes for to wayte vpon fir
launcelot for to ouerfette hym / and to flee hym / And on the
30 morne at vndorne fyre Arthur was redy in the felde with thre
grete hooftes / And thenne fyr launcelots felauyhyp came oute
at thre gates in a ful good araye / and fyre lyonel came in the
formest batail / and fyr launcelot came in the myddel / and fyre
Bors came oute at the thyrd gate / Thus they came in ordre &
35 rule as ful noble knyghtes / and alwayes fyr launcelot char-
ged all his knyghtes in ony wyfe to faue Kynge Arthur &
fyr Gawayne

¶ Capitulum xiii

THenne came forth fir Gawayne from the kynges host
 and he came before and proferd to Iuste / and fir Lyo-
 nel was a fyers knyghte / and lyghtely he encoütreð
 with fyr Gawayne / & there fir Gawayne smote fyr lyonel th- 5
 urch oute the body / that he daffhed to the erthe / lyke as he had
 ben dede / And thenne fir Ector de marys and other more ba-
 re hym in to the Caſtel / thenne there beganne a grete ſtoure &
 moche peple was ſlayne / and euer fyr launcelot dyd what he
 myghte to ſaue the peple on kyng Arthurs party / for fyr pa-
 lomydes and fyr Bors and fyr Safyr ouerthrowe many kn- 10
 yghtes / for they were dedely knyghtes / and fyre Blamor de
 ganys / and fyr Bleoberys de ganys with fir Bellangere le
 bewſe / theſe fyxe knyghtes dyd moche harme / and euer kyng
 Arthur was nyghe aboute fyr launcelot to haue ſlayn hym / &
 fyr launcelot ſuffred hym / and wold not ſtryke ageyne / Soo 15
 fyr Bors encountred with kyng Arthur / and there with a
 ſpere fyr Bors ſmote hym down / & ſoo he alyghte and drewe
 his ſwerd / and ſayd to fyr launcelot / ſhalle I make an ende
 of this werre / & that he mente to haue ſlayn Kyng Arthur
 Not ſoo hardy ſayd fyr launcelot vpon payn of thy hede / that 20
 thou touche hym no more / for I wille neuer ſee that moſt no-
 ble kyng that made me knyghte neyther ſlayn ne ſhamed /
 & there with al fyr laūcelot alyght of his hors & tooke vp the
 kyng & horfed hym ageyn / & ſayd thus / my lord Arthur for
 goddes loue ſtynte this ſtryf / for ye gete here no worſhyp / and 25
 I wold doo myn vtteraūce / but alweyes I forbere yow / & ye
 nor none of yours forbereth me / my lord remembre what I ha-
 ue done in many places / & now I am euylle rewarded
 Thenne whan kyng Arthur was on horſbak / he loked vpon
 fyr launcelot / & thēne the teres braſt out of his eyen / thynky- 30
 ng on the grete curtoſy that was in fyr laūcelot more than in
 any other man / & therwith the Kyng rode his wey / & myghte
 no lenger beholde hym / & ſayd Allas that euer this werre be-
 gan / & thēne eyther partyes of the batails withdrewe them to re-
 poſe them / & buryed the dede / & to the wouēd men they leid ſoſte 35

salues / and thus they endured that nyȝt tyll on the morne / &
 on the morne by vndorne they made hem redy to doo bataille /
 And thenne fyr Bors ledde the forward / ¶ Soo vpon the
 morne there came fyre Gawayne as brym as ony bore with a
 5 grete spere in his hand / And whan fir Bors sawe hym / he
 thoughte to reuenge his broder fyre Lyonel of the despyte that
 fyr Gawayn dyd hym the other daye / ¶ And so they that
 knewe eyther other feutryd their speres / and with alle their
 myghtes of their horses and hem self / they mette to gyder foo
 10 felonfly / that eyther bare other thorowe / and foo they felle both
 to the erthe / and thenne the batails ioyned / and there was
 moche slaughter on bothe partyes / Thenne fir launcelot resco-
 wed fyr Bors and sente hym in to the Castel / But neyder
 fyr Gawayne nor fyr Bors dyed not of their woundes / For
 15 they were alle holpen / Thenne fyr Lauayne and fir Vrre pra-
 yd fyr Launcelot to doo his payne / and fyȝte as they had do-
 ne / for we see / ye forbere and spare / and that doth moche harme
 therfor we praye yow spare not youre enemyes noo more than
 they done yow / Allas sayd fire Launcelot I haue no herte to
 20 fyghte ageynst my lord Arthur / For euer me semeth I doo
 not as I oughte to doo / My lord sayd fir Palomydes though
 ye spare them alle this day / they will neuer conne yow thank
 And yf they may gete yow at auayle / ye are but dede / ¶ So
 thenne fyr Launcelot vnderstood that they sayd hym trouth
 25 & thenne he strayned hym self more than he dyd afore hand /
 and by cause his neuewe fir Bors was fore wounded / And
 thenne within a lytel whyle by euenfong tyme fire Launcelot
 and his party better stode / for their horses wente in blood past
 the fytloks / there was foo moche people slayne / And thenne
 30 for pyte fyr launcelot withhelde his knyghtes / and suffred ky-
 nge Arthurs party for to withdrawe them on fyde / And then-
 ne fir launcelots party withdrewe hem in to his Castel / and
 eyther partyes buried the dede / & putte falf vnto the wounded
 men / Soo whan fyre Gawayne was hurte / they on kyng Ar-
 35 thurs party were not foo orgulous as they were to fore hand
 to do bataill / Of this werre was noyfed thorou al crystendome
 & at the last it was noyfed afore the pope / and he confyderyng
 the grete godenes of kynge Arthur / & of fir laūcelot that was

called the moost noblest knyghtes of the world wherfore the pope called vnto hym a noble Clerke that att that tyme was there prefente / the Frensshe book sayth / hit was the Bissshop of Rochestre / and the pope gaf hym bulles vnder lede vnto kynge Arthur of Englund / chargynge hym vpon payne of enterdy-
 5 tyng of al Englund that he take his quene dame Gueneuer vnto hym ageyne and accorde with fyr Launcelot /

¶ Capitulum xiiii

SOo whan this Bissshop was come to Carleyl / he shewed the kynge these bulles / And whan the kyng vnderstood these bulles / he nyft what to doo / ful fayne he wold
 10 haue ben accorded with fir launcelot / but fir Gawayne wold not suffre hym / but as for to haue the quene / ther to he agreed But in no wyfe fyre Gawayne wold not suffer the kyng to accorde with fyr Launcelot / but as for the quene he consented / And thenne the Bissshop had of the kynge his grete seal / & 15 his assuraunce as he was a true ennoynted kynge / that fyre Launcelot shold come fauf / and goo fauf / and that the quene shold not be spoken vnto / of the kynge / nor of none other / for no thyng done afore tyme past / and of alle these appoyntementes / the Bissshop broughte hym sure assuraunce & wry-
 20 tyng to shewe fir Launcelot / So whan the Bissshop was come to Ioyous gard / there he shewed fir launcelot how the pope had wryten to Arthur and vnto hym / and there he told hym the peryls yf he withhelde the quene from the kyng / It was neuer in my thoughte saide laücelot to withholde the quene from
 25 my lord Arthur / but in foo moche she shold haue ben dede for my sake / me semeth it was my parte to saue her lyf and putte her from that daunger tyl better recouer myghte come / & now I thanke god sayd fir Launcelot that the pope hath made her pees / for god knoweth sayd fyr launcelot I wyll be a thou-
 30 sand fold more gladder to brynge her ageyne than euer I was of her takyng away / With this I maye be sure to come fauf / and goo fauf / and that the quene shal haue her lyberte as she had before / and neuer for no thyng that hath ben furmyfed

afore this tyme / the neuer fro this day stande in no peryll / for
 els sayd sir launcelot I dare auenture me to kepe her from an
 harder shoure than euer I kepte her / It shal not nede yow sa-
 yd the Biffhop to drede soo moche / For wete yow wel the po-
 5 pe muste be obeyed / and it were not the popes worlhyp nor my
 poure honeste to wete yow distressyd neyther the queene / ney-
 ther in perylle nor shamed / And thenne he shewed sir laun-
 celot alle his wrytynge / bothe from the pope and from kyng
 Arthur / this is sure ynough / sayd sir Launcelot / for ful well
 10 I dare trust my lordes owne wrytynge and his seale / for he
 was neuer shamed of his promesse

¶ Therefore sayd sir Launcelot vnto the Biffhop / ye shall ryde
 vnto the kyng afore / and recommaunde me vnto his good
 grace / and lete hym haue knowlechyng that this same daye
 15 eyghte dayes by the grace of god / I my self shall bryng my
 lady Queene Gueneuer vnto hym / and thenne faye ye vnto
 my most redoubted kyng that I will say largely for the que-
 ne / that I shalle none excepte for drede nor fere / but the kyng
 hym self and my lord sire Gawayn / and that is more for the
 20 kynges loue than for hym self / Soo the Biffhop departed and
 came to the kyng at Carleyl / and told hym alle how sir laū-
 celot anfuerd hym / and thenne the teres braft oute of the ky-
 nges eyen / Thenne sire Launcelot purueyed hym an honderd
 knyghtes / and alle were clothed in grene velowet / and theyr
 25 horses trapped to their heles / and euery knyghte helde a bra-
 unche of olyue in his hande in tokenyng of pees / and the que-
 ne had four and twenty gentylwymmen folowyng her in the
 same wyfe / and sir Launcelot had twelue courfers folowyng
 hym / and on euery courfer sat a yonge gentylman / and alle
 30 they were arayed in grene veluet with farpys of gold about
 their quarters / and the hors trapped in the same wyfe doune
 to the helys with many ouches y fette with stones and perlys
 in gold to the nombre of a thowfand / and she and sir Laun-
 celot were clothed in whyte clothe of gold tyffew / and ryght
 35 soo as ye haue herd as the Frensshe book maketh mencyon /
 he rode with the queene from Ioyous gard to Carleyl / and so
 fyr Launcelot rode thorou oute Carleyl and soo in the castel
 that alle men myzt beholde / & wete you wel ther was many a

wepyngge eyen / and thenne fyr Launcelot hym self alyghte and
 auoyded his hors and toke the quene / and foo led her where
 kyngge Arthur was in his feate / and fyre Gawayn sat afore
 hym / and many other grete lordes / Soo whan fyre launcelot
 sawe the kyngge / and fyr Gawayne / thenne he lad the quene 5
 by the arme / and thenne he kneled doune and the quene bothe

¶ Wete yow wel thenne was there many bold knyghte ther
 with kyngge Arthur that wepte as tendyrly / as though they
 had sene alle their kynne afore them / Soo the kyngge sat styll /
 and sayd no word / And whan fyre Launcelot sawe his cou- 10
 tenaunce / he arofe and pulled vp the quene with hym / & thus



he spak ful knyghtely ¶ **Capitulum riiij**

Y moost redoubted kyngge ye shalle vnderstande by
 the popes commaundement and yours I haue brouzt
 to yow my lady the quene as ryghte requyareth / And yf there 15
 be ony knyghte of what someuer degree that he be excepte your
 persone that wylle faye or dar say but that she is true & clene
 to yow / I here my self fyr Launcelot du lake wylle make it
 good vpon his body that she is a true lady vnto yow / but ly-
 ars ye haue lyfted / & that hath caused debate betwixt yow & 20
 me / For tyme hath ben my lord Arthur that ye haue ben gre-
 tely plesyd with me whan I dyd batail for my lady youre
 quene / & ful wel ye knowe my moost noble kyngge / that she
 hath ben put to grete wrong or this tyme / & fythen it pleasyd
 yow at many tymes that I shold fyghte for her / me semeth my 25
 good lord I had more cause to rescowe her from the fyre in
 foo moche she shold haue ben brente for my sake / For they that
 told yow tho tales were lyers / & foo it befelle vpon them / for
 by lykelyhode had not the myght of god ben with me / I my-
 ghte neuer haue endured fourteen knyghtes & they armed & 30
 afore purposed & I vnarmed & not purposed / for I was se-
 nte for vnto my lady your quene I wote not for what cause /
 but I was not so soone within the chamber dore but anon fyre
 Agraunyn & fyr mordred called me traytour & recreaunt kny-
 ghte / They called the ryght sayd fyr Gawayn 35

¶ My lord fyre Gawayn said fyre Launcelot in their quarel
 they preued hem self not in the ryght / wel wel fyr launcelot

fayd the kyng / I haue gyuen the no cause to do to me as thou
 haft done / For I haue worshypped the and thyn more than
 ony of alle my knyghtes / My good lord fayd fir launcelot
 foo ye be not displeafyd / ye fhalle vnderftande / I and myn ha-
 5 ue done yow ofte better feruyfe than ony other knyghtes haue
 done in many dyuerfe places / and where ye haue ben ful hard
 beftadde dyuerfe tymes / I haue my felf refcowed yow from
 many daungers / and euer vnto my power I was glad to ple-
 ase yow and my lord fyr Gawayne bothe in luftes and tur-
 10 nementes and in batails fette bothe on horfbak and on foote /
 I haue often refcowed yow and my lord fyr Gawayne and
 many moo. of your kny3tes in many dyuerfe places / for now
 I wil make auaunt fayd fir launcelot I wyl that ye al we-
 te that yet I fonde neuer no maner of knyghte / but that I
 15 was ouer hard for hym and I had done my vtteraunce / thā-
 ked be god / how be it I haue ben matched with good knygh-
 tes as fir Triftram and fyr lamorak / but euer I had a faue-
 our vnto them and a demyng what they were / and I take god
 to record fayd fyr launcelot I neuer was wrothe nor gretely
 20 heuy with no good Knyghte and I fawe hym befy aboute to
 wyne worship / and glad I was euer when I fonde ony kn-
 yghte that myghte endure me on horfbak and on foote / hou be
 it fir Carados of the dolorous toure was a ful noble kny3te
 & a paffynge ftronge man / & that wote ye my lorde fyr Gawa-
 25 yne / for he myghte wel be called a noble knyghte whan he by
 fyne force pulled out of youre fadel / and bonde you ouer-
 thwarte afore hym to his fadel bowe / and there my lorde fyre
 Gawayne I refcowed yow and flewe hym afore your fizte
 Also I fonde his broder fyr Turquyn in lyke wyfe ledyng fir
 30 Gaherys youre broder bouiden afore hym / and there I refcowed
 your broder and flewe that Turquyn / & delyuerd thre fcore
 and foure of my lorde Arthurs knyghtes oute of his pryfon
 And now I dare fay fayd launcelot I mette neuer with fo
 ftronge knyghtes nor fo wel fyghtyng as was fir Carados &
 35 fyr Turquyn / for I fought with them to the vttermest / & ther-
 for faide fir launcelot vnto fyr Gawayne me femeth ye ought
 of ryghte to remembre this / for & I my3t haue your good wil
 I wolde truſte to god to haue my lorde Arthurs goode grace

¶ Capitulum xvi

THe Kynge maye doo as he wylle fayd fire Gawayne
 But wete thou wel fyre Launcelot thou and I shalle
 neuer ben accorded whyle we lyue / for thou hast fla-
 yne thre of my bretheren / and two of them ye flewe traytourly
 and pytously / for they bare none harneis ageynst the nor none 5
 wold bere / god wold they had ben armed fayd fire Launce-
 lot / for thenne had they ben on lyue

¶ And wete ye wel fyre Gawayne as for fire Gareth I loue
 none of my kynnesmen so moche as I dyd hym / and euer wh-
 yle I lyue fayd fir launcelot I wille bewaile fir Gareths deth 10
 not al only for the grete fere I haue of yow / but many causes
 causen me to be sorouful / one is / for I made hym knyghte / ano-
 ther is / I wote wel he loued me aboue alle other knyghtes
 And the thyrd is / he was passyng noble / true curteys & gen-
 tyl / and wel condycyoned / the fourth is / I wyft wel anone as 15
 I herd that fir Gareth was dede / I shold neuer after haue your
 loue but euerlastyng werre betwixe vs / and also I wift well
 that ye wold cause my noble lorde Arthur for euer to be my
 mortal foo / And as Ihesu be my help fayd fyr Launcelot I fle-
 we neuer fir Gareth nor fir Gaherys by my wylle / but allas 20
 that euer they were vnarmed that vnhappy daye / But thus
 moche I shalle offre me said fir launcelot yf hit may please the
 kynges good grace and yow my lord fire Gawayne I shalle
 fyrst begynne at Sandwyche / and ther I shal goo in my shert
 bare foot / and at euery ten myles endes I wylle founde & gar- 25
 make an hows of relygyon of what ordre that ye wyl affyg-
 ne me with an hole Couent to fynge and rede day & nyghte in
 especyal for fyr Gareths sake and fir gaherys / And this shal
 I performe from Sandwyche vnto Carleil / And euery hows
 shal haue suffycient lyuelode / and this shal I performe whyle 30
 I haue ony lyuelode in Crystendom / and there nys none of al
 these relygyous places / but they shal be performed / furnysshed
 and garnysshed in alle thynges as an holy place oughte to
 be / I promyse yow feythfully /

¶ And this fir Gawayne me thynketh were more fayrer holy- 35
 er & more better to their soules than ye my most noble kyng &

yow fire Gawayne to warre vpon me / for there by shall ye gete none auayle / Thenne alle knyghtes and ladyes that were there wepte / as they were madde / and the teres felle on kyng Arthurs chekes / Sire Launcelot sayd sir Gawayne I haue
 5 ryghte wel herd thy speche / and thy grete profers / but wete thou wel / lete the kyng doo as hit pleasyd hym / I will neuer forgyue my broders dethe / and in especyal the deth of my broder fyre Gareth / And yf myn vnkel kyng Arthur wyllle accorde with the / he shalle lese my feruyse / for wete thou wel/
 10 thou arte bothe fals to the kyng and to me / Sir said launcelot he bereth not the lyf / that may make that good / And yf ye sir Gawayne wyllle charge me with foo hyghe a thyng / ye muste pardonne me / for thenne nedes muste I anfuere yow/

¶ Nay sayd sir Gawayne we are past that at this tyme / and
 15 that caused the pope / for he hath charged myn vnkel the kyng that he shalle take his Quene ageyne / and to accorde with the syr Launcelot as for this feason / and therfor thou shalte goo sauf as thou camest / But in this land thou shalte not abyde past xv dayes fuche somons I gyue the / foo the kyng and we
 20 were contented and accorded or thou camest / and els sayd fyre Gawayne wete thou wel thou sholdest not haue comen here / but yf hit were maulgre thy hede / And yf it were not for the popes commaundement sayd fyre Gawayne I shold do bataille with myn owne body ageynst thy body / and preue it vp-
 25 on the / that thou hast ben bothe fals vnto myn vnkel kyng arthur and to me bothe / and that shalle I preue vpon thy body whan thou arte departed from hens where someuer I fynde the

¶ Capitulum xviij

30 **T**Henne fyr launcelot fyghed / and there with the teres felle on his chekes / and thenne he sayd thus / Allas moost noble Crysten Realme whome I haue loued aboue al other realmes / and in the I haue gotten a grete parte of my worshyp / and now I shalle departe in this wyse / Truly me repenteth that euer I came in this realme that shold be thus
 35 shamefully bannysshed vndeferued and caueles / but fortune

is foo varyaunt / and the whele foo meuable / there nys none
 constaunte abydyng / and that may be preued by many old
 Cronykles of noble Ector and Troylus and Alyfander the
 myghty Conquerour / and many moo other / whan they were
 mooft in their Royalte / they alyghte lowest / and foo fareth it 5
 by me sayd fir Launcelot / for in this realme I had worshyp
 and by me and myn alle the whole round table hath ben encre-
 cyd more in worship by me and myn blood than by any other
 And therfor wete thou wel fir Gawayne I may lyue vp-
 on my landes as wel as any knyghte that here is / And yf ye 10
 mooft redoubted kyng wyll come vpon my landes with fir
 Gawayne to werre vpon me / I must endure yow as wel as
 I maye / But as to yow fir Gawayne yf that ye come there
 I pray yow charge me not with treason nor felony / for and ye
 doo / I must anfuer yow / doo thou thy best sayd fir Gawayne / 15
 therfore hye the fast that thou were gone / and wete thou wel
 we shalle soone come after and breke the strengest Castel that
 thou hast vpon thy hede / That shalle not nede sayd fir Launce-
 lot / for and I were as orgulous sette as ye are / wete you wel
 I shold mete yow in myddes of the felde / Make thou no mo- 20
 re langage sayd fyre Gawayne / but delyuer the quene from
 the / and pyke the lyghtly oute of this Courte / wel sayd fir
 Launcelot / and I had wyft of this shorte comynge / I wolde
 haue aduysed me twyes or that I had comen hyder / for and
 the Quene had be foo dere to me as ye noyse her / I durst haue 25
 kepte her from the felaufhyp of the best knyghtes vnder heuen
 And thenne fir Launcelot sayd vnto Gueneuer in heryng of
 the kyng and hem all / Madame now I muste departe from you
 and this noble felaufship for euer / & fythen it is foo / I byfeche
 yow to praye for me / and faye me wel / and yf ye be hard be- 30
 stad by any fals tonges / lyghtly my lady fende me word / and
 yf any knyghtes handes may delyuer yow by bataill / I shall
 delyuer yow / and there with all fir launcelot kyft the Quene/
 and thenne he sayd al openly now lete see what he be in this
 place that dar faye the Quene is not true vnto my lord Arthur 35
 lete see who will speke and he dar speke / And ther with he bro-
 ughte the Quene to the Kyng / and thenne fir Launcelot toke
 his leue and departed / and ther was neyther Kyng duke / ne

erle / baron ne knyghte / lady nor gentylwoman / but alle they
wepte as peple oute of their mynde / excepte fir Gawayn / and
whan the noble fir Launcelot took his hors to ryde oute of Car-
leyl / there was fobbynge and wepyng for pure dole of his de-
5 partynge / and soo he took his way vnto Ioyous gard / And
thenne euer after he called it the dolorous gard / And thus de-
parted fir Launcelot from the courte for euer / And soo whan
he came to Ioyous gard he called his felaufhyp vnto hym / &
asked them what they wold do / thēne they anfuerd all holy to
10 gyders with one voys they wold as he wold doo / my fayre fe-
lawes sayd fyr Launcelot I must departe oute of this moost
noble realme / and now I shalle departe / hit greueth me fore /
for I shalle departe with no worshyp / for a flemyd man de-
parted neuer oute of a realme with noo worshyp / and that is
15 my heuynes / for euer I fere after my dayes that men shalle
cronykle vpon me that I was flemed oute of this land / and
els my fayre lordes be ye sure and I had not dred shame my
lady Quene Gweneuer and I fhold neuer haue departed /
Thenne spak many noble knyghtes as fir Palomydes / fir Sa-
20 fyr his broder / and fir Bellangere le bewfe / and fir Vrrre with
fir Lauayne with many other / Sir and ye be so disposed to a-
byde in this land / we wyll neuer fayle yow / & yf ye lyft not
to abyde in this land / ther nys none of the good kny3tes that
here ben will fayle yow / for many caufes / One is / All we that
25 ben not of your blood shalle neuer be welcome to the Courte /
And fythen hit lyked vs to take a parte with yow in youre
distresse & heuynesse in this realme / Wete yow wel it shal ly-
ke vs al as wel to goo in other countreyes with yow / and there
to take fuche parte as ye doo / My fayre lordes sayd fir launce-
30 lot I wel vnderstande yow and as I can / thanke yow / and
ye shalle vnderstande fuche lyuelode as I am borne vnto I shal
departe with yow in this maner of wyfe / that is for to fay / I
shalle departe alle my lyuelode and alle my landes frely a-
monge yow / and I my self wyll haue as lytel as ony of you
35 for haue I suffycyaunt that may longe to my perfon / I wyll
aske none other ryche araye / and I truste to god to mayntene
yow on my landes as wel as euer were mayntened ony kny3-
tes / Thenne spak all the knyghtes at ones / he haue shame that

wylle leue yow / For we alle vnderftande in this realme wyl
 be now no quyetē but euer ftryf and debate / now the felaufhip
 of the round table is broken / for by the noble felaufhyp of the
 round table was Kyngē Arthur vp borne / and by their no-
 bles the kyngē and alle his realme was in quyetē and reſte/ 5
 and a grete parte they ſayd all was by cauſe of your nobleſſe

¶ Capitulum xviii

TRuly ſayd fir Launcelot I thanke yow alle of youre
 good fayenge / how be it / I wote wel / in me was not
 alle the ſtabylte of this realme / but in that I myght
 I dyd my deuoyr / and wel I am ſure I knewe many rebel- 10
 lyons in my dayes that by me were peafed / and I trowe we
 alle ſhalle here of hem in ſhorte ſpace / and that me fore repen-
 teth / For euer I drede me ſayd fyr launcelot that fyr Mordred
 wille make trouble / for he is paſſyng enuyous & applyeth hym
 to trouble / So they were accorded to go with fir Launcelot to 15
 his landes / and to make ſhorte tale / they truſſed and payd
 alle that wold aſke hem / and holy an honderd knyghtes de-
 parted with fir laūcelot at ones / and made their auowes / they
 wold neuer leue hym for wele nor for wo / & ſo they ſhypped
 at Cardyf / & ſayled vnto Benwyk / ſomme men calle it bayen 20
 and ſomme men calle it Beaume where the wyn of beaume is
 But to ſaye the ſothe / fyre Launcelot and his neueweſ were
 lordif of alle Fraunce and of alle the landes that longed vnto
 Fraunce / he and his kynred reioyced it alle thurgh fyr Laū-
 celots noble prowes / And thenne fir Launcelot ſtuffed & fur- 25
 nyſhed and garnyſhed alle his noble townes and caſtels/
 Thenne alle the peple of tho landes came to fyr Launcelot on
 foote and handes / and ſo whan he had ſtabled alle theſe co-
 untreyes / he ſhortly called a parlement / and there he crowned
 fyr Lyonel kyngē of Fraunce / and ſire Bors crowned hym 30
 kyngē of al kyngē Claudas landes and fir Ector de marys/
 that was fir launcelot yongeſt broder / he crowned hym Kyngē
 of Benwyk and kyngē of alle Gyan that was fir launcelot
 owne land / and he made fir Ector prynce of them alle / & thus

he departed / Thenne fir Launcelot auauunced alle his noble knyghtes / and fyrste he auauunced them of his blood / that was fyr Blamor / he made hym duke of Lymosyn in gyan / and fir Bleoberys he made hym duke of poyters / and fir Gahalantyn
 5 he made hym duke of Ouerne / & fir Galyhodyn he maade hym duke of Sentonge / and fir Galyhud he made hym erle of perygot / and fir Menadeuke he made hym Erle of Roerge / and fire Vyllyars the valyaunt he made hym erle of Bearne / and fyr Hebes le renoumes he made hym Erle of Comange / and
 10 fyr Lauayne he made hym Erle of Armynak / and fire Vrre he made hym erle of Estrake / and fyr Neroneus he made hym Erle of pardyak / and fire Plenorius he maade Erle of foyfe and fir Selyses of the dolorous toure he made hym erle of mafauke / and fir Melyas de lyle he made hym Erle of Turfank
 15 and fir Bellangere le bewfe he made erle of the laundes / and fire Palomydes he made hym duke of the prouynce / and fyre Safyr he made hym duke of Landok / and fyr Clegys he gaf hym the erldome of Agente / and fyr Sadok he gaf the Erldom of Surlat / and fir Dynas le Seneschal he made hym duke of
 20 Anioye / and fir Clarrus he made hym duke of Normandye / Thus fyr launcelot rewarded his noble knyghtes / & many mo that me femeth it were to longe to reherce

¶ Capitulum xxi

SO leue we fyr Launcelot in his landes / and his noble knyghtes with hym / and retorne we ageyne vnto
 25 kyng Arthur and to fyr Gawayne that made a grete hooft redy to the nombre of thre score thousand / and al thyng was made redy for their fhyppyng to passe ouer the see / & so they fhypped at Cardyf / and there kyng Arthur made fir Mordred chyef ruler of alle Englonde / and also he put quene
 30 Gueneuer under his gouernaunce by cause fyr Mordred was kyng Arthurs sone he gaf hym the rule of his land and of his wyf / and soo the kyng passed the see and landed vpon fyr launcelots landes / and there he brente and wafte thurgh the vengeance of fyr gawayne al that they myghte ouer-

renne / whan this word came to fyr Launcelot that kyng Ar-
 thur and fir Gawayne were landed vpon his landes / & made
 a full grete destruc^{ti}on and wafte / thenne fpake fyr Bors &
 fayd my lord fir laūcelot it is shame that we fuffre hem thus
 to ryde ouer our landes / for wete yow wel / fuffre ye hem as lo- 5
 nge as ye will / they wille doo yow no faueour / and they may
 handle yow / Thenne faid fir Lyonel that was ware and wyfe
 My lord fyr Launcelot I wyll gyue this counceylle / lete vs
 kepe oure ftronge walled Townes vntyl they haue hongre &
 cold / and blowe on their nayles / and thenne lete vs frefshe- 10
 ly fette vpon hym / and fhrede hem doune as shepe in a felde /
 that Alyaunts may take enfample for euer how they lande
 vpon oure landes / Thenne fpak kyng Bagdemagus to fyre
 Launcelot / fyre your curtofy wyll fhende vs alle / and thy cur-
 tofy hath waked alle this forowe / for and they thus ouer our 15
 landes ryde / they fhalle by proceffe brynge vs alle to noughte
 whyles we thus in holes vs hyde / Thenne fayd fyre Galihud
 vnto fir Launcelot / fyre here ben knyghtes come of kynges
 blood that wyl not longe droupe / & they are within thefe
 walles / therfor gyue vs leue lyke as we ben kny^ztes to me- 20
 te them in the feld and we fhalle flee them / that they fhall cur-
 fe the tyme that euer they came in to this countrey / ¶ Thenne
 fpak feuen bretheren of northwalys / and they were feuen no-
 ble knyghtes / a man myghte feke in feuen kynges landes or
 he myghte fynde fuche feuen Knyghtes / Thenne they all faid at 25
 ones / fyr launcelot for cryftes fake lete vs oute ryde with fir
 Galyhud / for we be neuer wonte to coure in caftels nor in no-
 ble Townes / Thenne fpak fir Launcelot that was mayfter &
 gouernour of them alle / my fayre lordes wete yow wel I am
 full lothe to ryde oute with my knyghtes for fhedyng of cry- 30
 ften blood and yet my lendes I vnderftande ben full bare / for
 to fufteyne ony hooft a whyle / for the myghty warres that why-
 lome made kyng Claudas vpon this countrey vpon my fader
 kyng Ban & on myn vnkell Kyng Bors / how be it we will
 as at this tyme kepe oure ftronge walles / & I fhalle fende a 35
 meffager vnto my lord Arthur a treatyce for to take for bet-
 ter is pees than allwayes warre / So fir laūcelot fente forth a
 damoyfell & a dwerfe with her / requyrynge Kyng Arthur to

leue his warrynge vpon his landes / and so she ferte vpon a
 palfroy / and the dwerf ranne by her fyde / And whan she cam
 to the pauelione of kynge Arthur / there she alyghte / and ther
 mette her a gentyl knyghte fyr Lucan the butteler & said / fa-
 5 ir damoyfel come ye from fyr Launcelot du lake / ye fyr she fa-
 yd / therfor I come hyder to speke with my lord the kynge /
 Allas said fir Lucan my lord Arthur wold loue launcelot /
 but fir Gawayne wyl not suffer hym / And thenne he sayd I
 praye to god damoyfel ye may spede wel / for alle we that ben
 10 aboute the kynge wold fir launcelot dyd best of ony knyght
 lyuyng / And so with this lucan ledde the damoyfel vnto the
 kynge where he sat with fir Gawayne / for to here what she wo-
 ld faye / Soo whan she had told her tale / the water ranne out
 of the kynges eyen / and alle the lordes were ful glad for to
 15 aduyse the kynge as to be accorded with fyr launcelot / fauf al
 only fyre Gawayne / and he sayd my lord myn vnkel / What
 wyl ye doo / wil ye now torne ageyne now ye are past thus fer
 vpon this Iourney / alle the world wylle speke of yow vylo-
 ny / Nay sayd Arthur wete thou wel fir Gawayne I wylle
 20 doo as ye wil aduyse me / and yet me semeth sayd Arthur his
 fayre profers were not good to be refused / but fythen I am
 comen soo fer vpon this Iourney / I wil that ye gyue the da-
 moyfel her ansuer / for I maye not speke to her for pyte / for her
 profers ben so large

¶ Capitulum 11

25 **T**Henne fir Gawayne sayd to the damoyfel thus / Da-
 moyfel faye ye to fir launcelot that it is wast labour
 now to fewe to myn vnkel / for telle hym / and he wold
 haue made ony labour for pees / he shold haue made it or this
 tyme / for telle hym now it is to late / & faye that I fir Gawa-
 30 yn soo sende hym word / that I promyse hym by the feythe I
 owe vnto god and to knyghthode / I shal neuer leue hym /
 tyl he haue slayne me / or I hym / Soo the damoyfel wepte &
 departed / and there were many wepyng eyen / and soo fir lu-
 can broughte the damoyfel to her palfroy / and soo she came to
 35 fyr launcelot where he was among all his Knyghtes / & whan

[leaf 416 verso]

fyr launcelot had herd this anfuer / thenne the teres ranne doune by his chekes / And thenne his noble knyghtes strode aboute hym / and sayd fir launcelot / wherfor make ye fuche chere thynke what ye are / and what men we are / and lete vs noble knyghtes matche hem in myddes of the felde / that maye be lyghtely done sayd fir Launcelot / but I was neuer soo lothe to doo batail / and therfore I praye you fayre firs as ye loue me be ruled as I wyllle haue yow / for I wyllle alweyes flee þ^t noble kynge / that made me knyghte / And whan I may noo ferther / I muste nedes defende me / and that wyll be more wor-
 fhyp for me and vs alle / than to compare with that noble kynge whome we haue alle ferued / Thenne they helde their langage / and as that nyghte they tooke their rest / And vpon the morne erly in the daunynge of the daye / as knyghtes loked oute / they sawe the Cyte of Benwyk bysegged round aboute /
 and fast they beganne to sette vp ladders / and thenne they defyed hem oute of the Towne / and bete hem from the walles wyghtely / Thenne came forth fyre Gawayne wel armed vpon a styf stede / and he came before the chyef gate with his spere / in his hand cryenge / fyr Launcelot where arte thou / is there
 none of you proude knyghtes dare breke a spere with me / Thenne fir Bors made hym redy / and came forth oute of the Towne / and there fir Gawayne encountred with fyre Bors And at that tyme he smote fyre Bors doune from his hors / and al moost he had slayne hym / and soo fyre Bors was rescowed and borne in to the Towne / Thenne came forth fir
 Lyonel broder to fyr Bors / and thoughte to reuenge hym / and eyther feutryd their speres / and ranne to gyder / and there they mette spytefully / but fir Gawayn had fuche grace that he smote fir Lyonel doune / and wounded hym there passynge fore / &
 thenne fyr Lyonel was rescowed / and borne in to the towne / And this fir Gawayne came euery day / and he fayled not / but that he smote doune one knyghte or other / Soo thus they endured half a yere / and moche flauzter was of peple on both partyes / Thenne hit befelle vpon a day / fyr Gawayne came
 afore the gates armed at alle pyeces on a noble hors with a grete spere in his hand / and thenne he cryed with a lowde voy / where arte thou now thou fals traytour fyre Launcelot /

why hydest thou thy self within holes and walles lyke a coward / loke oute now thou fals traytour knyghte / and here I shal reuenge vpon thy body the dethe of my thre bretheren /

Alle this langage herd sir launcelot euery dele and his kyn
 5 and his knyghtes drewe aboute hym / and alle they sayd at ones to sir Launcelot / ¶ Sir Launcelot now must ye defende yow lyke a knyghte / or els ye be fhamed for euer / for now ye be called vpon treason / it is tyme for yow to stere / for ye haue slepte ouer longe and suffred ouer moche / Soo god me helpe
 10 lpe sayd sir Launcelot I am ryghte heuy of sir Gawayns wordes / for now he charged me with a grete charge / And therefore I wote it as wel as ye that I muste defende me / or els to be recreant / Thenne sir launcelot badde fadel his strongest hors / and bad lete fetch his armes / and brynge alle vnto the
 15 gate of the Toure / and thenne sir Launcelot spak on hygh vnto kynge Arthur / and sayd my lord Arthur and noble kynge that made me knyghte / wete yow wel / I am ryghte heuy for your sake / that ye thus sewe vpon me / and alweyes I forbere yow / for and I wold haue ben vengeable / I myghte
 20 haue mette yow in myddes of the felde / and there to haue made your boldest knyghtes ful tame / and now I haue forborne half a yere / and suffred yow and sir Gawayne to doo what ye wold doo / and now I may endure it no lenger / for now muste I nedes defende my self / in soo moche sir Gawayne hath
 25 apeeled me of treason / the whiche is gretely ageynste my will that euer I shold fyghte ayenst ony of your blood / but now I maye not forsake hit / I am dryuen there to as a beste tyll a baye / Thenne sir Gawayne sayd sir Launcelot / and thou darst doo batail / leue thy babblyng / and come of / and lete vs
 30 ease our hertes / Thenne sir Launcelot armed hym lyghtely / & mounted vpon his hors / and eyther of the knyghtes gat grete speres in their handes / and the hooste withoute stood styll all a parte / and the noble knyghtes came oute of the Cyte by a grete nombre / in so moche that whan Arthur sawe the nombre of men and knyghtes / he merueylled and sayd to hym
 35 self / Allas that euer sir launcelot was ageynst me / for now I see he hath forborne me / and so the couenaunt was made / there shold no man nyghe hem / nor dele with hem / tyl the one were

dede or yelden

¶ Capitulum rri]

THan fyr Gauwayn and fyr Launcelot departed a grete waye in fonder / & than they cam to gyder with al their hors myght as they myght renne & eyther smote other in myddes of their sheldes / but the knyghtes were soo stronge 5 & theyr sperys so bygge that their horses myzt not endure her buffettes / & so their horses fyl to therthe / & than they auoyded their horses & dresfyd her sheldes afore them / Than they stode to gyders & gaf many sad strokes on dyuers places of their bodyes that the blood brafte oute on many fydes and places / 10 Thenne had Syr Gauwayn fuche a grace and gyfte that an holy man had gyuen to hym That euery day in the yere from vnderne tyl hyhe none hys myght encreaced tho thre houres as moche as thryfe hys strengthe / and that caused fyr Gauwayn to wyne grete honour / ¶ And for hys sake kyng Arthur 15 maad an ordenaunce that al maner of bataylles for ony quarrellys that shold be done afore kyng Arthur shold begynne at vnderne / & al was done for fyr Gawayns loue / that by lyklyhode yf Syr Gauwayn were on the one parte he shold haue the better in batayl whyle his strengthe endured thre hou- 20 res / but there were but fewe knyghtes that tyme lyuyng that knewe this aduauntage that fyr Gauwayn had / but kyng Arthur all onelye / Thus fyr Launcelot faught with fyr Gauwayn / & whan fyr Launcelot felte hys myght euer more encreace fyr Launcelot wondred & dredde hym fore to be shamed 25 For as the frenshe book sayth Syr Launcelot wende whan he felte fyr Gauwayn double his strengthe that he had ben a fende and none erthely man / wherfore Syr Launcelotte traced and trauerfyd and couerd hym self wyth his shelde and kepte his myght and his brayde duryng thre houres / And that 30 whyle Syr Gauwayn gaf hym many sadde brundes ¶ And many sadde strokes that al the knyghtes that behelde fyr Launcelot meruaylled how that he myzt endure hym / but ful lytell vnderstood they that trauaylle that Syr Launcelot had for to endure hym ¶ And thenne whan hit was paste none Syr 35 Gauwayn had noo more but hys owne myght / Thenne fyr

Launcelot felte hym fo come doun / than he stratched hym vp &
 stode nere fyr Gauwayn / & sayd thus my lord fyr Gauwayn
 now I fele ye haue done / now my lord fyr Gauwayn I must
 do my parte for many grete & greuous strokes I haue endured
 5 you this day with grete payne / Than fir Launcelot doubled his
 strokes & gaf fir Gauwayn fuche a buffet on the helmet that
 he fyl doun on his fyde / & fyr Launcelot wythdrewe hym fro
 hym / why withdrawest thou the sayd fyr Gawayn now torne
 ageyn fals traytour knyght & flee me / for and thou leue me
 10 thus whan I am hole I shal do batayl wyth the ageyn / I shal
 endure you fyr by goddes grace / but wyt thou wel fyr Gau-
 wayn I wyl neuer smyte a fellyd knyght / & so fyr Launcelot
 wente in to the cyte / & fyr Gauwayn was borne in to kyng ar-
 thurs pauyllyon / & leches were brought to hym & ferched and
 15 salued with softe oynementes / & than fyr Launcelot sayd now
 haue good day my lord the kyng for wyt you wel ye wyne
 no worhyp at this wallys / & yf I wold my knyghtes oute
 brynge ther shold many a man deye / Therefore my lord Arthur
 remembre you of olde kyndenes / & how euer I fare Ihesu be
 20 your gyde in al places

¶ Capitulum xxij

A Las said the kynge that euer this vnhappy warre was
 begonne / for euer fyr Launcelot forbereth me in al pla-
 ces / & in lyke wyse my kynne / & that is sene wel thys
 day by my neuwe fyr Gauwayn / Than kyng Arthur fyl seek
 25 for sorowe of fyr Gauwayn that he was so fore hurt / and by
 cause of the warre betwyxt hym and fyr Launcelot / So than
 they on kyng arthurs partye kepte the fyege wyth lytel warre
 withoutforth / & they withinforth kepte theyr walles / & deffen-
 ded them whan nede was / Thus fyr Gauwayn laye seek thre
 30 wekes in his tentes wyth al maner of leche crafte that myzt
 be had . & affone as fyr Gawayn myzt goo & ryde / he armyd
 hym at al poyntes & sterte vpon a courser and gate a spere in
 his hande / and so he came rydyng afore the chyef gate of bar-
 wyk / and there he cryed on heyght where art thou fir Launce-
 35 lot come forth thou fals traytour knyzt & recreante for I am
 here fir Gauwayn wyl preue this that I say on the / Alle thys
 langage fir Launcelot herde / & than he sayd thus / fir Gawayn
 me repentys of your sayeng that ye wyl not seafe of

your langage for you wote wel Syr Gauwayn I knowe
 your myght and alle that ye may doo / ¶ And wel ye wote
 fyr Gauwayn ye may not gretelye hurte me / Come doune
 traytour knyght sayd he & make it good the contrarye wyth
 thy handes / For it myfhapped me the lafte bataylle to be hurte 5
 of thy handes ¶ Therefore wyte thou wel I am come thys day
 to make amendys / For I wene thys day to laye the as lowe
 as thou laydest me / Ihesu deffende me sayd fyr Launcelot that
 euer I be so ferre in your daunger as ye haue ben in myn / for
 than my dayes were doon / But fyr Gauwayn sayd fyr Laun- 10
 celot ye shal not thynke that I tary longe / but fythen that ye
 so vnknyghtelye calle me of trefon ye shalle haue bothe your
 handes ful of me / And than fyr Launcelot armed hym at al
 poyntes and mounted vpon his hors / and gate a grete spere
 in hys hande and rode oute at the gate / And bothe the hoof- 15
 tes were asssembled / of hem wythoute and of them wythin / &
 stode in a raye ful manlye / And bothe partyes were charged
 to holde them styll / to see and beholde the bataylle of these ij
 noble knyghtes / And thenne they layed their speerys in their
 reystys and they came to gyder as thondre / and fyr Gawayn 20
 brake his spere vpon fyr Launcelot in an hondred pyeces vnto
 his hande / & fyr Launcelot smote hym wyth a gretter myght
 that fyr Gauwayns hors fete reysed / and so the hors and he
 fyl to the erthe / ¶ Thenne fyr Gauwayn delyuerlye auoy-
 ded his hors and put his shelde afore hym / and eygyrlye 25
 drewe his swerde and bad Syr Launcelot alyghte traytoure
 knyght / for yf thys marys sone hath faylled me / wyt thou
 wel a kynges sone and a quenes sone shal not faylle the /
 ¶ Than fyr Launcelot auoyded his hors & dresyd his shelde
 afore hym and drewe hys swerde and soo stode they to gyders 30
 and gaf many sad stokes that all men on bothe partyes had
 therof passyng grete wonder / ¶ But whan fyr Launcelot
 felte Syr Gawyns myght soo meruayllously encrees / He
 than wyth helde his courage and his wynde / & kepte hym self
 wonder couert of his myght / and vnder his shelde he trasyd 35
 and trauersyd here & there to breke fyr Gauwayns stokes &
 his courage / and fyr Gauwayn enforced hym self with al his
 myght and power to destroye fyr Launcelot for as the frenshe

book sayth / Euer as Syr Gawayns myght encreased Ryght
 foo encreafyd his wynde and hys euyl wylle / Thus fyr Ga-
 wayne dyd grete payne vnto Syr Launcelot thre houres that
 he had ryght grete payne for to deffende hym / And whan the
 5 thre houres were passyd that fyr Launcelot felte that fyr Ga-
 wayn was comen to hys owne propre strengthe / Thenne Syr
 Launcelot sayd vnto fyr Gawayn now haue I prouyd you
 twyfe . That ye are a ful daungerous knyght and a wonder-
 ful man of your myght / and many wonderful dedes haue ye
 10 doon in your dayes / For by your myght encrefyng you haue
 dyffeyued many a ful noble and valyaunte knyght / And
 now I fele that ye haue doon your myghty dedes / Now wyte
 you wel I must do my dedys / ¶ And thenne Syr Launcelot
 stode nerre fyr Gauwayn / and thenne fyr Launcelot doubled
 15 hys strokes / And fyr Gauwayn deffended hym myghtelye
 But neuertheleffe fyr Launcelot smote fuche a stroke vpon fir
 Gauwayns helme / and vpon the olde wounde that fyr Gau-
 wayn synked down vpon hys one syde in a fwounde / And a-
 none as he dyd awake he wauyd and foynded at fyr Laun-
 20 celot as he laye / and sayd traytour knyght wyt thou wel I
 am not yet slayn / Come thou nere me and perfourme thys ba-
 taylle vnto the vttermyst / ¶ I wyl nomore doo than I haue
 doon sayd fyr Launcelot / For whan I see you on fote I wyll
 doo bataylle vpon you alle the whyle I see you stande on your
 25 feet / But for to smyte a wounded man that may not stonde
 god deffende me from fuche a shame / and thenne he tourned
 hym and wente his waye toward the cytee / And fyr Gau-
 wayn euermore callyng hym traytour knyght / and sayd wyt
 thou wel fyr launcelot whan I am hoole I shal doo bataylle
 30 wyth the ageyn ¶ For I shal neuer leue the tyl that one of
 vs be slayn / Thus as thys fyege endured & as fyr Gauwayn
 laye feek nere a monthe / and whan he was wel recouerd and
 redy wythin thre dayes to do bataylle ageyn wyth fyr Launce-
 lot Ryght so came tydynges vnto Arthur from Englund that
 35 made kyng Arthur and al his hooft to remeue /

¶ There foloweth the xxi book

[leaf 419 verso]

Capitulum primo

AS fyr Mordred was rular of alle englond he dyd do make letters as though that they came from beyonde the see / and the letters specefied that Kynge Arthur was slayn in bataylle wyth fyr Launcelot / ¶ Wherfore Syr Mordred made a parlemente / and called the lordes togyder / & there he made them to chefe hym kyng & soo was he crowned at caunterburye and helde a feest there xv dayes / & afterward he drewe hym vnto wyncheſter / and there he took the Quene Gueneuer and ſayd playnly that he wolde wedde hyr / whyche was his vnkyls wyf and his faders wyf / And soo he made redy for the feest / And a day prefyxt that they ſhold be wedded / wherfore quene Gweneuer was paſſyng heuy / But ſhe durſt not dyſcouer hyr herte but ſpake fayre / & agreyd to fyr Mordredes wylle / ¶ Thenne ſhe deſyred of fyr Mordred for to goo to London to bye alle manere of thynges that longed vnto the weddyng / And by cauſe of hyr fayre ſpeche Syr Mordred truſted hyr wel ynough / and gaf her leue to goo / And ſoo whan ſhe came to London ſhe took the toure of London / and ſodeynlye in alle haſte poſſyble ſhe ſtuffed hyt wyth alle manere of vytaylle / & wel garnyſhed it with men and ſoo kepte hyt / ¶ Than whan Syr Mordred wyſte and vnderſtode how he was begyled he was paſſyng wrothe oute of meſure / And a ſhorte tale for to make he wente and layed a myghty ſyege aboute the toure of London / and made many grete affaultes therat / And threwe many grete engynes vnto theym / and ſhotte grete gonnes / But alle myght not preuaylle Syr mordred / For quene Gueneuer wolde neuer for fayre ſpeche nor for foule wold neuer truſte to come in hys handes ageyn / ¶ Thenne came the byſſhop of caunterburye the whyche was a noble clerke and an holy man / and thus he ſayd to Syr mordred / Syr what wyl ye doo / wyl ye fyrſt dyſpleſe god and fythen ſhame your ſelf / & al knyghthode / Is not kyng Arthur your vncle no ferther but your mothers broder / & on hir hym ſelf kyng Arthur bygate you vpon his own ſyſter / therfor how may you wedde your faders wyf Syr ſayd the noble clerke leue this oppynyon or I ſhall curſe you wyth book & belle and candell / Do thou thy werſt ſaid fyr Mordred wyt thou wel I ſhal deſye the / ſir ſayd the byſſhop &

wyt you wel I shal not fere me to do that me ouzt to do / also
 where ye noyse where my lord Arthur is slayne / & that is not
 fo / & therefore ye wyl make a foule werke in this londe / Pees
 thou fals preest sayd fyr Mordred for & thou chauffe me ony
 5 more / I shal make stryke of thy heed / So the bysshop departed
 and dyd the curfying in the mooft orgulift wyfe that myght
 be doon / And than Syr mordred fought the bysshop of caun-
 terburye for to haue slayne hym / Than the bysshop fledde and
 toke parte of his goodes with hym & went nygh vnto glaftyn-
 10 burye / & there he was as preest Eremyte in a chapel / & lyued
 in pouerte & in holy prayers / For wel he vnderstode that mys-
 cheuous warre was at honde / Than Syr Mordred fought on
 quene Gueneuer by letters & fondes & by fayr meanes & foul
 meanys for to haue hir to come oute of the toure of london / but
 15 al this auaylled not / for she answerd hym shortelye / openlye
 and pryuelye that she had leuer flee hyr self than to be mary-
 ed wyth hym / Than came worde to fyr Mordred that kyng
 Arthur had arayfed the syege / For Syr Launcelot & he was
 comyng homeward wyth a grete hoost to be auenged vpon
 20 fyr Mordred wherfore fyr Mordred maad wryte wryttes to
 al the barownry of thys londe and moche peple drewe to hym
 For than was the comyn voys emonge them that wyth Ar-
 thur was none other lyf but warre and stryffe / And wyth
 Syr Mordred was grete loye and blyffe / Thus was fyr Ar-
 25 thur depraued and euyl sayd of . And many ther were that
 kyng Arthur had made vp of nought and gyuen them lan-
 des myght not than say hym a good worde / Lo ye al englyssh
 men see ye not what a myschyef here was / for he that was the
 mooft kyng and knyght of the world and mooft loued the
 30 felyshyp of noble knyghtes / and by hym they were al vphol-
 den / Now myght not this englyssh men holde them contente
 wyth hym / Loo thus was the olde custome and vfage of this
 londe / And also men saye that we of thys londe haue not yet
 loste ne foryeten that custome & vfage / Alas thys is a grete
 35 defaulte of vs englysshe men / For there may no thyng plese
 vs noo terme And soo faryd the people at that tyme they
 were better pleyd with sir Mordred than they were with kyng
 Arthur / and moche peple drewe vnto sir Mordred and sayd

they wold abyde with hym for better and for werse / and foo
 fyr Mordred drewe with a grete hooft to Douer / for there he
 herd faye / that fir Arthur wold arryue / and foo he thoughte
 to bete his owne fader from his landes / and the moost party
 of alle Eng lond helde with fire mordred / the peple were foo 5
 newe fangle

¶ Capitulum ij

ANd foo as fire mordred wat at Douer with his hoft
 there came kyng Arthur with a grete nauye of shyp-
 pes and galeyes and Carryks / & there was fyr Mordred re-
 dy awaytynge vpon his londage to lette his owne fader to lā- 10
 de vp the lande that he was kyng ouer / thenne there was la-
 uncynge of grete botes and smal / and ful of noble men of ar-
 mes / and there was moche slaughter of gentyl knyghtes and
 many a full bolde baron was layd ful lowe on bothe partyes/
 But kynge Arthur was foo couragious that there myght no 15
 maner of knyghtes lette hym to lande / and his knyghtes fy-
 erfly folowed hym / and so they landed maulgre fir mordreds
 and alle his power / and put fir mordred abak that he fledde &
 alle his peple / Soo whan this batail was done / kyng Arthur
 lete burye his peple that were dede / And thenne was noble fyr 20
 Gawayne fonde in a grete bote lyenge more than half dede /
 Whan fyr Arthur wyft that fyre Gawayne was layd so lowe
 he wente vnto hym / and there the kyng made forowe oute of
 mefure / and took fire Gawayne in his armes / and thryes he
 there fwouned / And thenne whan he awaked / he fayd / allas 25
 fir Gawayne my syfters sone / here now thow lyggest the man
 in the world that I loued moost / and now is my Ioye gone /
 for now my neuewe fyre Gawayne I will discouer me vnto
 your perfone / in fyr Launcelot & you I moost had my Ioye / &
 myn affyaunce / & now haue I lost my Ioye of you bothe / wher- 30
 for alle myn erthely Ioye is gone from me / Myn vnkel kyng
 Arthur said fir Gawayn wete you wel my deth day is come / &
 alle is thorou myn owne hastynes & wilfulnes / for I am smy-
 ten vpon thold wounde the which fir launcelot gaf me / on the
 whiche I fele wel I muft dye / & had fir laūcelot ben with you 35
 as he was / this vnhappy werre had neuer begonne / & of alle
 this am I causer / for fir laūcelot & his blood thorou their prowes

helde alle your cankered enemyes in subiectyon and daungere
 And now sayd sir Gawayne ye shalle myffe sir Launcelot /
 But alas I wold not accorde with hym / and therfor sayd
 fyr Gawayne I praye yow fayre vnkel that I may haue pa-
 5 per / pen / and ynke / that I may wryte to fyre Launcelot a ce-
 dle with myn owne handes / And thenne whan paper & ynke
 was broughte / thenne Gawayn was fet vp weykely by ky-
 nge Arthur / for he was shryuen a lytel tofore / and thenne he
 wrote thus as the Frensshe book maketh mencyon / Vnto fyre
 10 Launcelot floure of alle noble knyghtes that euer I herd of /
 or fawe / by my dayes / I fyre Gawayne kynge Lottes sone
 of Orkeney / fyfter sone vnto the noble kyng Arthur / sende the
 gretynge / & lete the haue knowleche that the tenth day of may
 I was smyten vpon the old wound that thou gauest me /
 15 afore the Cyte of Benwyck / and thorow the same wound that
 thou gauest me / I am come to my dethe day / And I wil that
 alle the world wete / that I sir Gawayne knyghte of the ta-
 ble round / foughte my dethe / and not thorow thy deseruyng /
 but it was myn owne sekyng / wherfor I byseche the sir laun-
 20 celot / to retorne ageyne vnto this realme / and see my tombe / &
 praye some prayer more or lesse for my soule / And this same
 day that I wrote this sedyl / I was hurte to the dethe in the
 same wound / the whiche I had of thy hand fyr Launcelot /
 For a of a more nobler man myghte I not be slayne / Also
 25 sir Launcelot for alle the loue that euer was betwyxe vs / ma-
 ke no taryenge / but come ouer the see in al haste / that thou
 mayst with thy noble knyghtes rescowe that noble kynge that
 made the knyghte / that is my lord Arthur / for he is ful stre-
 yghtly bestadde with a fals traytour / that is my half broder
 30 fyr Mordred / and he hath lete croune hym kynge / and wold
 haue wedded my lady quene Gueneuer / and soo had he done
 had she not put her self in the toure of london / And soo the / x /
 day of May last past / my lord Arthur and we alle landed vp-
 on them at douer / and there we putte that fals traytour fyre
 35 Mordred to flyghte / and there it myffortuned me to be stry-
 ken vpon thy stroke / And at the date of this letter was wry-
 ten but two houres and an half afore my dethe wryten with
 myn owne hand / and soo subscribed with parte of my hertes

blood / And I requyre the moost famous knyghte of the world
 that thou wylt see my Tombe / and thenne fir Gawayne wept
 and kynge Arthur wepte / And thēne they swouned both/
 And whan they awaked bothe / the kynge made fyr Gawa-
 yn to receyue his faueour / And thenne fir Gawayne praid the 5
 kynge for to fende for fir launcelot / and to cheryfthe hym aboute
 alle other knyghtes / And so at the houre of none fyr Gawa-
 yn yelded vp the spyryte / and thenne the kynge lete entiere
 hym in a chappel within douer Castel / and there yet alle men
 maye see the sculle of hym / and the fame wound is sene that 10
 fyr Launcelot gaf hym in bataill / Thenne was it told the ky-
 nge that fyr Mordred had pyghte a newe feld vpon Ba-
 ramdoun / And vpon the morne the kynge rode thyder to hym
 and there was a grete bataille betwixe them / and moche peple
 was slayne on bothe partyes / but at the last fyr Arthurs par- 15
 ty stode best / and fir Mordred and his party fledde vnto Caū-
 turbery

¶ Capitulum iiii

ANd thenne the kyng lete ferche all the townes for his
 knyghtes that were slayne / and enteryd them / & fal-
 ued them with softe salues that so fore were wounded / Then- 20
 ne moche peple drewe vnto kynge Arthur / And thenne they
 sayd that fir Mordred warred vpon kyng Arthur with w-
 ronge / and thenne kynge Arthur drewe hym with his hooft
 doune by the see fyde westward toward Salysbury / and ther
 was a day assygned betwixe kyng Arthur and fire mordred 25
 that they shold mete vpon a doune befyde Salysbury / and not
 ferre from the see fyde / and this day was assygned on a mon-
 day after Trynyte sonday / wherof kyng Arthur was passyng
 glad that he myghte be auengyd vpon fire Mordred / Thenne
 fyr Mordred areysed moche peple aboute london / for they of 30
 Kente Southsex and Surrey / Eftsex and of Southfolke and
 of Northfolk helde the most party with fir Mordred / and ma-
 ny a ful noble knyghte drewe vnto fyr Mordred and to the
 kynge / but they loued fir Launcelot drewe vnto fyr Mordred
 Soo vpon Trynyte sonday at nyghte kynge Arthur dremed 35

a wonderful dreame / & that was this / that hym fumed / he satte
vpon a chaflet in a chayer / and the chayer was fast to a whele
and therupon satte kynge Arthur in the rycheft clothe of go-
ld that myghte be made / and the kyng thoughte ther was vn-
5 der hym fer from hym an hydous depe blak water / and there in
were alle maner of serpentes and wormes and wylde bestes
foule and horryble / and fodenly the kynge thoughte the whe-
le torned vp foo doune / and he felle amonge the serpentys / &
euery beest took hym by a lymme / and thenne the kynge cry-
10 ed as he lay in his bedde and flepte / helpe / And thenne kny-
ghtes squyers and yomen awaked the kynge / and thenne he
was foo amased that he wyft not where he was / & thenne he
felle on flomberynge ageyn not slepyng nor thorouly waky-
nge / So the kynge fumed veryly that there came fyr Gawa-
15 yne vnto hym with a nombre of fayre ladyes with hym
And whan kynge Arthur sawe hym / thenne he sayd welcome
my fyfters sone / I wende thou haddeft ben dede / and now I
see the on lyue / moche am I beholdynge vnto almyghty Ihe-
fu / O fayre neuewe and my fyfters sone / What ben these la-
20 dyes that hydder be come with yow / Sir said sir Gawayne /
alle these ben ladyes for whome I haue foughten whanne I
was man lyuyng / and alle these are tho / that I dyd batail
for in ryghteous quarel / and god hath gyuen hem that gra-
ce at their grete prayer / by cause I dyd bataille for hem / that
25 they shold bryng me hydder vnto yow / thus moche hath god
gyuen me leue for to warne yow of youre dethe / for and ye
fyghte as to morne with fyre Mordred / as ye bothe haue
assygned / doubte ye not / ye must be slayne / and the moost par-
ty of your peple on bothe partyes / and for the grete grace and
30 goodenes that almyghty Ihesu hath vnto yow and for pyte
of yow / and many moo other good men there shalle be slayne
God hath sente me to yow of his speccial grace to gyue yow
warnynge / that in no wyse ye doo bataille as to morne / but that
ye take a treatyce for a moneth day and profer yow largely /
35 so as to morne to be putte in a delaye / For within a monethe
shalle come fyr launcelot with alle his noble knyghtes and re-
scowe yow worshipfully / and flee sir mordred and alle that
euer wylle holde with hym / Thenne fyr Gawayne and al the

ladyes vaynquysshed And anone the kyng callyd vpon hys knyghtes squyers and yemen and charged them wyghtly to fetche his noble lordes and wyfe bysshoppes vnto hym / And whan they were come the kyng tolde hem his auyfyon what fir Gawayn had tolde hym / and warned hym that yf he faught 5 on the morne he shold be slayn / ¶ Than the kyng comaunded fyr Lucan de butlere And his broder fyr Bedwere with two bysshoppes wyth hem and charged theym in any wyfe & they myght take a traytysse for a monthe day wyth Syr mordred / And spare not proffre hym londes & goodes as moche 10 as ye thynke best / So than they departed & came to fyr Mordred where he had a grymme hooft of an hondred thousand men / And there they entreted fyr Mordred longe tyme and at the laste Syr mordred was agreyd for to haue Cornwayl and kente by Arthures dayes After alle Englonde after the 15 dayes of kyng Arthur /

¶ Capitulum iiij

THan were they condefended that Kyng Arthure and fyr mordred shold mete betwyxte bothe theyr hooftes and eueryche of them shold brynge fourtene perfonas And they came wyth thys word vnto Arthure / Than sayd he I am 20 glad that thys is done And so he wente in to the felde / And whan Arthure shold departe he warned al hys hooft that and they see any swerde drawen look ye come on fyerfly and flee that traytour fyr Mordred for I in noo wyfe truste hym / In lyke wyse fyr mordred warned his hooft that and ye see any 25 swerde drawen look that ye come on fyerfly & soo flee alle that euer before you stondeth / for in no wyse I wyl not truste for thys treatyse / For I knowe wel my fader wyl be auenged on me / And soo they mette as theyr poyntemente was & so they were agreyd & accorded thorouly / And wyn was fette and 30 they dranke / Ryght soo came an adder oute of a lytel hethe buffhe & hyt stonge a knyght on the foot / & whan the knyght felte hym stongen he looked down and sawe the adder / & than he drewe his swerde to flee the adder / & thought of none other harme / And whan the hooft on bothe partyes saw that swerde 35

drawen than they blewe beamous trumpettes and hornes and
 shouted grymly And so bothe hooftes dresfyd hem to gyders
 And kyng Arthur took his hors and fayd allas thys vn-
 happy day & so rode to his partye ¶ And fyr mordred in like
 5 wyfe / And neuer was there feen a more doolfuller bataylle in
 no cryften londe / For there was but ruffhyng & rydyng few-
 nyng and ftrykyng & many a grymme worde was there spo-
 ken eyder to other & many a dedely froke But euer kyng Ar-
 thur rode thorough oute the bataylle of fyr Mordred many ty-
 10 mes / & dyd ful nobly as a noble Kyng shold / & at al tymes
 he faynted neuer & fyr Mordred that day put hym in deuoyr
 and in grete perylle ¶ And thus they faughte alle the longe
 day & neuer ftynted tyl the noble knyghtes were layed to the
 colde erthe / & euer they faught styлле tyl it was nere nyghte
 15 & by that tyme was there an hondred thousand layed deed
 vpon the down / Thenne was Arthure wode wrothe oute of
 mefure whan he sawe his peple so flayn from hym / ¶ Thenne
 the kyng loked aboute hym / & thenne was he ware of al hys
 hooft & of al his good knyghtes were lefte no moo on lyue
 20 but two knyghtes that one was Syr Lucan de butlere & his
 broder Syr Bedwere / And they were ful fore wounded /
 Ihesu mercy fayd the kyng where are al my noble knyghtes
 becomen Alas that euer I shold see thys dolefull day / for now
 fayd Arthur I am come to myn ende / ¶ But wolde to god
 25 that I wyfte where were that traytour Syr mordred that hath
 caused alle thys mefchyef / Thenne was kyng arthure ware
 where fyr Mordred lenyd vpon his fwerde emonge a grete hepe
 of deed men / Now gyue me my fpere fayd Arthur vnto Syr
 Lucan / For yonder I haue espyed the traytour that alle thys
 30 woo hath wrought / Syr late hym be fayd Syr Lucan for he
 is vnhappy / And yf ye passe thys vnhappy day ye shalle be
 ryght wel reuengyd vpon hym ¶ Good lord remembre ye of
 your nyghtes dreame / & what the spyryte of Syr Gauwayn
 tolde you this nyght / yet god of his grete goodnes hath pre-
 35 ferued you hyderto / Therefore for goddes sake my lord leue of
 by thys / for bleffyd by god ye haue wonne the felde / For
 here we ben thre on lyue / and wyth fyr Mordred is none on
 lyue / And yf ye leue of now thys wycked day of desteynye

is paste / Tyde me deth betyde me lyf sayth the kyng now I
 fee hym yonder allone he shal neuer escape myn handes / For
 at a better auaylle shal I neuer haue hym / ¶ God spede you
 wel sayd fyr bedwere / Thenne the kyng gate hys spere in bothe
 his handes & ranne toward fyr Mordred cryeng tratour now 5
 is thy deth day come / And whan fyr Mordred herde fyr Ar-
 thur he ranne vntyl hym with his swerde drawen in his hande
 And there kyng Arthur smote fyr mordred vnder the shelde
 wyth a foyne of his spere thoroughoute the body more than a fa-
 dom / And whan fyr Mordred felte that he had hys dethes 10
 wounde / He thryft hym self wyth the myght that he had vp
 to the bur of kyng Arthurs spere / And right so he smote his
 fader Arthur wyth his swerde holden in bothe his handes on
 the fyde of the heed that the swerde perfyd the helmet and the
 brayne panne / and therwythall fyr Mordred fyl starke deed 15
 to the erthe / And the nobyl Arthur fyl in a swoune to the
 erthe / and there he swounded ofte tymes / And fyr Lucan de
 butlere and fyr Bedwere oftymes heue hym vp / And foo
 waykely they ledde hym betwyxte them bothe to a lytel cha-
 pel not ferre from the see fyde / And whan the kyng was there 20
 he thought hym wel eafed / Thenne herde they people crye in
 the felde / Now goo thou fyr Lucan sayd the kyng and do me
 to wyte what bytokenes that noyse in the felde / So fyr Lu-
 can departed for he was greuoufly wounded in many places
 And so as he yede he sawe and herkened by the mone lyght 25
 how that pyllars and robbers were comen in to the felde To
 pylle and robbe many a ful noble knyghte of brochys and
 bedys of many a good rynge & of many a ryche Iewel / and
 who that were not deed al oute / there they slewe theym for
 theyr harneys and theyr rycheffe / Whan fyr Lucan vnderstode 30
 thys werke he came to the kyng affone as he myght and tolde
 hym al what he had herde & seen / Therefore be my rede sayd fyr
 Lucan it is beste that we brynge you to somme towne I wolde
 it were foo sayd the kyng /

¶ Capitulum v

B Vt I may not stonde myn hede werches foo / A Syr
 Launcelot sayd kyng Arthur thys day haue I fore
 myst the / Alas that euer I was ayenst the / for now
 haue I my dethe / Wherof fyr Gauwayn me warned in my
 5 dreame / Than fyr lucan took vp the kyng the one parte And
 Syr Bedwere the other parte / & in the lyftyng the kyng fow-
 ned and fyr Lucan fyl in a fowne wyth the lyfte that the
 parte of his guttes fyl oute of his bodye / And therwyth the
 noble knyghtes herte brafte / And whan the kyng awake he
 10 behelde fyr Lucan how he laye foomyng at the mowth & parte
 of his guttes laye at his feet / ¶ Alas sayd the kyng thys
 is to me a ful heuy fyght to see thys noble duke so deye for
 my sake / for he wold haue holpen me that had more nede of
 helpe than I / Alas he wold not complayne hym / hys herte
 15 was so sette to helpe me / Now Ihesu haue mercy vpon hys
 foule / than fyr bedwere wepte for the deth of his brother / leue
 thys mornyng & wepyng sayd the kyng for al this wyl not
 auaylle me / for wyte thou wel and I myght lyue my self / the
 deth of fyr Lucan wolde greue me euer more / but my tyme hy-
 20 eth fast sayd the kyng / Therefore sayd Arthur vnto fyr Bed-
 were take thou Excalybur my good swerde and goo with
 it to yonder water fyde / and whan thou comest there I charge
 the throwe my swerde in that water & come ageyn and telle
 me what thou there seeft / My lord sad Bedwere your com-
 25 maundement shal be doon & lyghtly brynge you worde ageyn
 So fyr Bedwere departed / & by the waye he behelde that no-
 ble swerde that the pomel & the hafte was al of precyous sto-
 nes / & thenne he sayd to hym self yf I throwe this ryche swerde
 in the water therof shal neuer come good but harme & losse /
 30 And thenne fyr bedwere hydde excalybur vnder a tree / And
 so as sone as he myght he came ageyn vnto the kyng and sayd
 he had ben at the water and had throwen the swerde in to the
 water / ¶ What fawe thou there sayd the kyng / fyr he sayd
 I fawe no thyng but wawes and wyndes / That is vntrew-
 35 ly sayd of the sayd the kyng / Therefore goo thou lyghtelye
 ageyn and do my commaundemente as thou arte to me leef &
 dere spare not but throwe it in / Than fyr bedwere retorned a-
 geyn & took the swerde in hys hande / and than hym thought

fynne and fhame to throwe awaye that nobyl fwerde / and fo
 efte he hydde the fwerde and retorned ageyn and tolde to the
 kyng that he had ben at the water and done his commaun-
 demente / what fawe thou there fayd the kyng Syr he fayd I
 fawe no thyng but the waters wappe and wawes wanne 5
 A traytour vntrewe fayd kyng Arthur now haft thou betray-
 ed me twyfe / Who wold haue wente that thou that haft been
 to me fo leef and dere and thou arte named a noble knyghte
 and wold betraye me for the richeffe of the fwerde / But now
 goo ageyn lyghtly for thy longe taryeng putteth me in grete 10
 Ieopardye of my lyf / For I haue taken colde / and but yf thou
 do now as I byd the / yf euer I may fee the I fhall flee the myn
 owne handes / for thou woldest for my ryche fwerde fee me dede
 ¶ Thenne Syr Bedwere departed and wente to the fwerde
 and lyghtly took hit vp / and wente to the water fyde and 15
 there he bounde the gyrdyl aboute the hyltes / and thenne he
 threwe the fwerde as farre in to the water as he myght / & there
 cam an arme and an hande aboue the water and mette it / &
 caught it and fo shoke it thryfe and braundyffhed / and than
 varyffhed awaye the hande wyth the fwerde in the water / So 20
 fyr Bedwere came ageyn to the kyng and tolde hym what
 he fawe ¶ Alas fayd the kyng helpe me hens for I drede me
 I haue taryed ouer longe / Than fyr Bedwere toke the kyng
 vpon his backe and fo wente wyth hym to that water fyde / &
 whan they were at the water fyde / euyn faft by the banke ho- 25
 ued a lytyl barge wyth many fayr ladyes in hit / & emonge
 hem al was a quene / and al they had blacke hoodes / and al
 they wepte and fhryked whan they fawe Kyng Arthur /
 ¶ Now put me in to the barge fayd the kyng and fo he dyd
 foftelye / And there receyued hym thre quenes wyth grete mor- 30
 nyng and foo they fette hem down / and in one of their lappes
 kyng Arthur layed hys heed / and than that quene fayd a
 dere broder why haue ye taryed fo longe from me / Alas this
 wounde on your heed hath caught ouermoch colde / And foo
 than they rowed from the londe / and fyr bedwere behelde all 35
 tho ladyes goo from hym / ¶ Than fyr bedwere cryed a my
 lord Arthur what fhall become of me now ye goo from me /
 And leue me here allone emonge myn enemyes / Comfort thy

self sayd the kyng and doo as wel as thou mayst / for in me
 is no truste for to truste in / For I wyl in to the vale of auy-
 lyon to hele me of my greuous wounde ¶ And yf thou here
 neuer more of me praye for my soule / but euer the quenes and
 5 ladyes wepte and shryched that hit was pyte to here / And
 assone as fyr Bedwere had losfe the syght of the baarge he
 wepte and waylled and so took the foreste / and so he wente
 al that nyght / and in the mornyng he was ware betwyxte
 two holtes hore af a chapel and an ermytage /

¶ Capitulum vi

10 **T**Han was fyr Bedwere glad and thyder he wente &
 whan he came in to the chapel he sawe where laye an
 heremyte grouelyng on al four there fast by a tombe
 was newe grauen / whan the Eremyte sawe fyr Bedwere he
 knewe hym wel / for he was but lytel tofore bysshop of caun-
 15 terburye that fyr Mordred flemed / Syr sayd Syr Bedwere
 what man is there entred that ye praye so fast fore / Fayr sone
 sayd the heremyte I wote not verayly but by my demyyng / But
 thys nyght at mydnyght here came a nombre of ladyes / and
 broughte hyder a deed cors / and prayed me to berye hym / and
 20 here they offeryd an hondred tapers and they gaf me an hon-
 dred befauntes ¶ Alas sayd fyr bedwere that was my lord
 kyng Arthur that here lyeth buyed in thys chapel / Than fyr
 bedwere swowned and whan he awoke he prayed the heremyte
 he myght abyde wyth hym styll there / to lyue wyth fastyng
 25 and prayers / For from hens wyl I neuer goo sayd fyr bed-
 were by my wylle but al the dayes of my lyf here to praye for
 my lord Arthur / Ye are welcome to me sayd the heremyte for
 I knowe you better than ye wene that I doo / Ye are the bolde
 bedwere and the ful noble duke Syr Lucan de butlere was
 30 your broder / Thenne fyr Bedwere tolde the heremyte alle as
 ye haue herde to fore / so there bode fyr bedwere with the hermyte
 that was tofore bysshop of Caunterburye / and there fyr bed-
 were put vpon hym poure clothes / and seruyd the hermyte ful
 lowly in fastyng and in prayers ¶ Thus of Arthur I fynde
 35 neuer more wryton in bookes that ben auctorysed nor more

of the veray certente of his deth herde I neuer redde / but thus was he ledde awaye in a shyppe wherin were thre quenes / that one was kyng Arthurs fyfter quene Morgan le fay / the o-ther was the quene of North galys / the thyrd was the quene of the wastelondes / Also there was Nynyue the chyef lady 5 of the lake / that had wedded Pelleas the good knyght and this lady had doon moche for kyng Arthur / for she wold neuer suffre fyr Pelleas to be in noo place where he shold be in daunger of his lyf / & so he lyued to the vttermest of his dayes wyth hyr in grete reste / More of the deth of kyng Arthur 10 coude I neuer fynde but that ladyes brought hym to his buryellys / & fuche one was buryed there that the hermyte bare wytnesse that somtyme was bysshop of caunterburye / but yet the hermyte knewe not in certayn that he was verayly the body of kyng Arthur / for thys tale fyr Bedwer knyght of the table 15 rounde made it to be wryton /

¶ Capitulum vij

WEt somme men say in many partyes of Englonde that kyng Arthur is not deed / But had by the wylle of our lord Ihesu in to another place / and men say that he shal come ageyn & he shal wyne the holy crosse . I wyl not 20 say that it shal be so / but rather I wyl say here in thys world he chaunged his lyf / but many men say that there is wryton vpon his tombe this vers ¶ Hic iacet Arthurus Rex quondam Rex que futurus / Thus leue I here fyr Bedwere with the hermyte that dwellyd that tyme in a chapel besyde glaftynburye 25 & there was his ermytage / & they lyuyd in theyr prayers & fastynges & grete abstynence / and whan quene Gueneuer vnderstood that kyng Arthur was slayn & al the noble knyghtes fyr Mordred & al the remenaunte / Than the quene stale awaye & v ladyes wyth hyr / & soo she wente to almesburye / & there 30 she let make hir self a Nonne / & ware whyte clothes & blacke & grete penaunce she toke as euer dyd synful lady in thys londe / & neuer creature coude make hyr mery / but lyued in fastyng prayers and almes dedes / that al maner of peple meruaylled how vertuously she was chaunged ¶ Now leue we 35 quene Gueneuer in Almesburye a nonne in whyte clothes & blacke and there she was abbesse and rular as reason wolde

and torne we from hyr / and speke we of Syr Launcelot du lake /

¶ Capitulum viii

ANd whan he herde in his contreye that Syr Mordred was crowned kyng in Englonde and maad warre a-
 5 yenst kyng Arthur his owne fader / and wolde lette hym to lande in hys owne londe / ¶ Also it was tolde Syr Launcelot how that fyr Mordred had layed fyege aboute the toure of london by cause the quene wold not wedde hym / Than was fyr Launcelot wroth oute of mesure and sayd to his kyn-
 10 nefmen alas that double traytour fyr Mordred now me repen- teth that euer he escaped my handes / for moche shame hath he done vnto my lord Arthur for alle I fele by the doleful letter that My lord fyr Gauwayn sente me / on whos soule Ihu haue mercy / that my lord Arthur is ful harde bestadde / Alas sayd
 15 fyr Launcelot that euer I shold lyue to here that moost noble kyng that maad me knyght thus to be ouersette wyth his sub- iecte in his owne royaume ¶ And this doleful letter that my lord fyr Gauwayn hath sente me afore his deth / prayeng me to see his tombe / wyt you wel his doleful wordes shal neuer
 20 goo from myn herte / For he was a ful noble knyght as euer was borne / and in an vnhappy houre was I borne that euer I shold haue that vnhappy to flee fyrst fyr Gauwayn fyr Ga- heris the good knyght and myn owne frende fyr Gareth that ful noble knyght / Alas I may say I am vnhappy sayd Syr
 25 Launcelot that euer I shold do thus vnappely / and alas yet myght I neuer haue happy to flee that traytour fyr Mordred Leue your complayntes sayd fyr Bors & fyrst reuenge you of the deth of fyr Gauwayn / & hit wyl be wel done that ye see fyr Gauwayns tombe / & secondly that ye reuenge my lord Ar-
 30 thur and my lady quene Gueneuer / I thanke you sayd Syr Launcelot for euer ye wyl my worshyp / Than they made them redy in al the haste that myzt be with shyppes & galeyes wyth fyr Launcelot & his hooft to passe in to englonde / & so he passyd ouer the see tyl he came to douer & there he landed wyth feuen
 35 kynges / & the nombre was hydous to beholde / Than fyr Laun- celot spyrrd of men of douer where was kyng Arthur become Than the peple tolde hym how that he was slayn / And Syr

Mordred & an / C / thousand deyed on a day / & how sir Mordred
 gaf kyng Arthur there the fyrste bataylle at his landyng &
 there was good fyr Gawayn slayn / & on the morne fyr Mor-
 dred faught with the kyng vpon baram doun / & there the kyng
 put fyr mordred to the wers / Alas said fyr Launcelot this is 5
 the heuyest tydynges that euer cam to me / Now fayr fyrs sayd
 fyr Launcelot shewe me the tombe of fyr Gawayn / & than cer-
 teyn peple of the towne brouȝt hym in to the castel of douer &
 shewed hym the tombe / Than fyr Launcelot knelyd doun and
 wepte & prayeed hertelye for his soule / & that nyght he made 10
 a dole / & al they that wold come had as moche fleshe / fyfthe
 wyn & aale / & euery man & woman had xii pens come who
 wold / Thus with his owne hande dalte he this money in a
 moornyng gowne / & euer he wepte / & prayed hem to praye for
 the soule of fyr Gawayn / & an the morne al the preeftys and 15
 clerkys that myght be goten in the contreye were there & fange
 masse of requyem & there offeryd fyrst fyr Launcelot / & he of-
 fred an / C / ponde / & than the feuen kynges offeryd fourty
 ponde a pees / & also there was a / M / knyghtes / & eche of hem
 offred a ponde / & the offeryng dured fro morne tyl nyght / & 20
 fyr Launcelot laye two nyghtes on his tombe in prayers and
 wepyng / Than on the thyrd day fyr Launcelot callyd the kyn-
 ges / dukes / erles / barons / & knyghtes & sayd thus / My fayr
 lordes I thāke you al of your comyng in to this contreye with
 me / but we came to late & that shal repente me whyle I lyue / 25
 but ayenst deth may no man rebelle / But sythen it is so said sir
 Launcelot I wyl my self ryde & seke my lady quene gueneuer
 for as I here say she hath had grete payne & moche dysese / & I
 herd say that she is fledde in to the weste / therfore ye alle shal
 abyde me here / & but yf I come ageyn wythin xv dayes / Than 30
 take your shyppes & your felawshyp & departe in to your con-
 traye for I wyl do as I say to you /

¶ Capitulum ix

THan came fyr Bors de ganys and sayd my lord fyr
 Launcelot what thynke ye for to doo / now to ryde in
 this royaume wyt you wel ye shal fynde fewe frendes 35
 be as be may sayd Syr Launcelot kepe you styll here / for I
 wyl forth on my Iourney / and noo man nor chylde shall goo
 with me / So it was no bote to stryue but he departed and rode

westerly & there he fought a vij or viij dayes & atte last he cam
 to a nonnerye & than was quene Gueneuer ware of sir Laun-
 celot as he walked in the cloystre / & whan she sawe hym there
 she swouned thryse that al the ladyes & Ientyl wymmen had
 5 werke ynough to holde the quene vp / So whan she myzt speke
 she callyd ladyes & Ientyl wymmen to hir / & sayd ye meruayl
 fayr ladyes why I make this fare / Truly she said it is for the
 fyght of yonder knyght that yender standeth / Wherefore I praye
 you al calle hym to me / whan fyr Launcelot was brought to
 10 hyr / Than she sayd to al the ladyes thorowe this man & me
 hath al this warre be wrought / & the deth of the moost noblest
 knyghtes of the world / for thorough our loue that we haue lo-
 ued to gyder is my moost noble lord slayn / Therfor fyr Laun-
 celot wyt thou wel I am fette in fuche a plyte to gete my foule
 15 hele / & yet I truste thorough goddes grace that after my deth to
 haue a fyght of the bleffyd face of cryft / and at domes day to
 fytte on his ryght fyde / for as synful as euer I was are sayn-
 tes in heuen / therfore fyr Launcelot I requyre the & besече the
 hertelye for al the loue that euer was betwyxte vs that thou
 20 neuer see me more in the vyfage / & I comande the on goddes
 behalfe that thou forsake my companye & to thy kyngdom thou
 torne ageyn & kepe wel thy royame from warre & wrake / for
 as wel as I haue loued the myn hert wyl not serue me to see
 the / for thorough the & me is the flour of kynges & knyghtes
 25 destroyed / therfor sir Launcelot goo to thy royame & there take
 the a wyf & lyue with hir with Ioye & blyffe / & I praye the
 hertelye praye for me to our lord that I may amende my myf-
 lyuyng / Now fwete madam sayd fyr Launcelot wold ye that
 I shold torne ageyn vnto my cuntreye & there to wedde a lady
 30 Nay Madam wyt you wel that shal I neuer do / for I shal ne-
 uer be soo fals to you of that I haue promysed / but the same
 deystenye that ye haue taken you to I wyl take me vnto for to
 plese Ihesu / & euer for you I cast me specially to praye / Yf thou
 wylt do so sayd the quene holde thy promyse / but I may neuer
 35 byleue but that thou wylt torne to the world ageyn / wel ma-
 dam sayd he ye fay as pleseth you / yet wyft you me neuer fals
 of my promesse / & god defende but I shold forsake the world
 as ye haue do / for in the quest of the fank greal I had fofaken

the vanytees of the world had not your lord ben / And yf I
 had done so at that tyme wyth my herte wylle and thought I
 had passed al the knyghtes that were in the fanke greal / ex-
 cepte fyr Galahad my sone / and therefore lady fythen ye haue
 taken you to perfeccion I must nedys take me to perfeccion of 5
 ryght / for I take recorde of god in you I haue had myn erthly
 loye / and yf I had founden you now so dysposed I had caste
 me to haue had you in to myn owne royame /

¶ Capítulum x

BVt fythen I fynde you thus desposed I ensure you fayth-
 fully I wyl euer take me to penaunce & praye while 10
 my lyf lasteth / yf that I may fynde ony heremyte other
 graye or whyte that wyl receyue me / wherefore madame I praye
 you kyffe me & neuer nomore / Nay sayd the quene that shal I
 neuer do / but absteyne you from suche werkes & they departed
 but there was neuer so harde an herted man but he wold haue 15
 wepte to see the dolour that they made / for there was laemen-
 tacyon as they had be stungyn wyth sperys / and many tymes
 they swouned / & the ladyes bare the quene to hir chambre / &
 fyr Launcelot awok & went & took his hors & rode al that day
 & al nyzt in a forest wepyng / & atte last he was ware of an 20
 Ermytage & a chappel stode betwyxte two clyffes / and than he
 herde a lytel belle ryng to masse / and thyder he rode & alyght
 & teyd his hors to the gate & herd masse / & he that fange masse
 was the bysshop of caunterburye / bothe the bysshop & sir Bed-
 were knewe fyr Launcelot / & they spake to gyders after masse 25
 but whan fyr Bedwere had tolde his tale al hole fyr Launce-
 lottes hert almost brafte for sorowe / & sir Launcelot threwe hys
 armes abrode / & sayd alas who may truste thys world / & than
 he knelyd doun on his knee and prayed the bysshop to shryue
 hym and assoyle hym / and than he befought the bysshop that he 30
 myght be hys brother / Than the bysshop sayd I wyll gladly
 and there he put an habyte vpon Syr Launcelot / and there he
 feruyd god day and nyzt with prayers and fastynges / Thus
 the grete hooft abode at douer and than sir Lyonel toke fystene
 lordes with hym & rode to london to seke sir Launcelot / & there 35
 fyr Lyonel was slayn and many of his lordes / Thenne Syr
 Bors de ganys made the grete hooft for to goo hoome ageyn

And fyr boors / fyr Ector de maris / Syr Blamour / fyr ble-
 orboris with moo other of fyr Launcelottes kynne toke on hem
 to ryde al englond ouerthwart & endelonge to seek fyr Launce-
 lot / So fyr Bors by fortune rode so longe tyl he came to the
 5 fame chapel where fyr Launcelot was / & so fyr Bors herde a
 lytel belle knylle that range to maffe / & there he alyght & herde
 maffe / & whan maffe was doon the bysshop fyr Launcelot & fir
 Bedwere came to fyr Bors / & whan fyr bors sawe fir Laun-
 celot in that maner clothyng / than he preyed the bysshop that
 10 he myght be in the fame sewte / and so there was an habyte put
 vpon hym / & there he lyued in prayers & fastyng / and wythin
 halfe a yere there was come fyr Galyhud / fyr Galyhodyn / fir
 Blamour / fyr Bleoheris / fyr wyllyars / fyr Clarras / and fir
 Gohaleaniyne / So al these vij noble knyghtes there abode styll
 15 and whan they sawe fyr Launcelot had taken hym to suche per-
 feccion they had no last to departe / but toke suche an habyte
 as he had / Thus they endured in grete penaunce fyx yere / and
 than fyr Launcelot took thabyte of preefthod of the bysshop / &
 a twelue monthe he fange maffe / & there was none of these
 20 other knyghtes but they redde in bookes / & holpe for to synge
 maffe & range bellys & dyd bodoly al maner of seruyce / & foo
 their horses wente where they wolde / for they toke no regarde
 of no worldly rycheffes / for whan they sawe fyr Launcelot en-
 dure suche penaunce in prayers & fastynges they toke no force
 25 what payne they endured for to see the nobleste knyght of the
 world take suche abstynauce that he waxed ful lene / & thus
 vpon a nyght there came a vyfyon to fyr Launcelot & charged
 hym in remyffyon of his synnes to haste hym vnto almyfbury
 & by thenne then come there thou shalt fynde quene Gueneuer
 30 dede / & therefore take thy felowes with the & parcuey them of an
 hors bere / & fetch thou the cors of hir / & burye hir by her huf-
 bond the noble kyng Arthur / So this auyfyon came to Laun-
 celot thryfe in one nyght

¶ Capitulum xi

35 **T**Han fyr Launcelot rose vp oe day & tolde the heremyte
 It were wel done sayd the heremyte that ye made you
 redy / & that ye dyshobeye not the auyfyon / Than fyr
 Launcelot toke his vij felowes with hym & on fore they yede
 from glaftynburye to almyfburye the whyche is lytel more

than xxx myle / & thyder they came within two dayes for they
 were wayke & feble to goo / & whan fyr Launcelot was come
 to almyfburye within the Nunerye quene gueneuer deyed but
 halfe an oure afore / and the ladyes tolde fyr Launcelot that
 quene Gueneuer tolde hem al or she passyd that fyr Launce- 5
 lot had ben preeft nere a twelue monthe / & hyder he cometh as
 faste as he may to fetche my cors . & besyde my lord kyng Ar-
 thur he shal berye me / wherfore the quene sayd in heryng of
 hem al / I beseeche almyghty god that I may neuer haue pow-
 er to see fyr Launcelot wyth my worldly eyen / And thus said 10
 al the ladyes was euer hir prayer these two dayes tyl she
 was dede / Than fyr Launcelot sawe hir vyfage bat he wepte
 not gretelye but fyghed / & so he dyd al the obseruaunce of the
 feruyce hym self bothe the dryge / and on the morne he fange
 masse / & there was ordeyned an hors bere / & so wyth an hon- 15
 dred torches euer brennyng aboute the cors of the quene / &
 euer fyr Launcelot with his viij felowes wente aboute the hors
 bere syngyng & redyng many an holy oryson / & frankensens
 vpon the corps encensed / Thus fyr Launcelot & his eyght fe-
 lowes wente on foot from almyfburye vnto glaftyburye / & 20
 whan they were come to the chapel & the hermytage there she
 had a dryge wyth grete deuocyon / & on the morne the here-
 myte that fomytyme was bysshop of canterburye fāge the masse
 of requyem wyth grete deuocyon / and fyr Launcelot was the
 fyrst that offeryd / & than als his eyght felowes / & than she 25
 was wrapped in cered clothe of raynes from the toppe to the
 too in xxx folde / & after she was put in a webbe of leed &
 than in a coffyn of marbyl / and whan she was put in therth
 fyr Launcelot swounded & laye longe styll whyle the hermyte
 came and awaked hym / and sayd ye be to blame / for ye dyf- 30
 plese god with suche maner of forow makyng / Truly sayd fyr
 Launcelot I trust I do not dysplese god / for he knoweth myn
 entente / For my forow was not nor is not for ony reioysyng
 of fynne / but my forow may neuer haue ende / For whan I re-
 membre of hir beaulte & of hir noblesse / that was bothe wyth 35
 hyr kyng & wyth hyr / So whan I sawe his corps & hir corps
 so lye togyders / truly myn herte wold not serue to susteyne
 my careful body / Also whan I remēbre me how by my defeaute

& myn orgule and my pryde / that they were bothe layed ful
lowe that were pereles that euer was lyuyng of cristen people
wyt you wel sayd fyr Launcelot this remembred of there kyn-
denes and myn vnkyndenes fanke so to myn herte that I myzt
5 not fusteyne my self so the frensishe book maketh mencyon /

¶ Capitulum xii

THeñe fyr Launcelot neuer after ete but lytel mete nor
dranke tyl he was dede / for than he seekened more and
more and dried & dwyned awaye / for the bysshop nor none
of his felowes myzt not make hym to ete and lytel he dranke
10 that he was waxen by a kybbet shorter than he was / that the
peple coude not knowe hym / for euermore day & nyzt he prayed
but somtyme he slombred a broken slepe / euer he was lyeng gro-
uelyng on the tombe of kyng Arthur & quene Gueneuer / &
there was no comferte that the bysshop nor fyr Bors nor none
15 of his felowes coude make hym it auaylled not / Soo wythin
fyx wekye after fyr Launcelot fyl seek and laye in his bedde
& thenne he fente for the bysshop that there was heremyte and
al his trewe felowes / Than Syr Launcelot sayd wyth drery
steuen / fyr bysshop I praye you gyue to me al my ryghtes that
20 longeth to a chrysten man / It shal not nede you sayd the here-
myte and al his felowes / It is but heuyneffe of your blood
ye shal be wel mended by the grace of god to morne / My fayr
lordes sayd fyr Launcelot wyt you wel my careful body wyl
in to therthe I houe warnyng more than now I wyl say / ther-
25 fore gyue me my ryghtes / So whan he was howsfelyd and ene-
lyd / and had al that a crysten man ought to haue he pray-
ed the bysshop that his felowes myght bere his body to Ioy-
ous garde / Somme men say it was anwyk / & somme may say
it was hamborow how be it sayd fyr Launcelot me repenteth
30 fore but I made myn auowe somtyme that in 'ioyous garde I
wold be buryed / and by cause of brekyng of myn auowe I
praye you al lede me thyder / Than there was wepyng and
wryngyng of handes among his felowes / So at a feson of the
nyght they al wente to theyr beddes for they alle laye in one
35 chambre / And so after mydnyght ayenst day the bysshop then
was hermyte as he laye in his bedd a slepe he fyl vpon a grete
laughter / and therwyth al the felyshyp awoke and came to

the bysshop & asked hym what he eyled / A Ihu mercy sayd
 the bysshop why dyd ye awake me I was neuer in al my lyf
 so mery & so wel at ease / wherfore sayd fyr bors / Truly sayd
 the bysshop here was fyr Launcelot with me with mo angellis
 than euer I fawe men in one day / & I fawe the angellys heue 5
 vp fyr Launcelot vnto heuen & the yates of heuen opened a-
 yenst hym / It is but dretchyng of sweuens sayd fyr Bors
 for I doubte not fyr Launcelot ayleth no thyng but good / It
 may wel be sayd the bysshop goo ye to his bedde & than shall
 ye proue the foth / So whan fyr Bors & his felowes came to 10
 his bedde they founde hym starke dede / & he laye as he had smy-
 led & the swettest fauour aboute hym that euer they felte / than
 was there wepyng & wryngyng of handes / & the gretteft dole
 they made that euer made men / & on the morne the bysshop dyd
 his masse of requyem / & after the bysshop & al the ix knyghtes 15
 put fyr Launcelot in the fame hors bere that quene Gueneuere
 was layed in tofore that she was buried / & soo the bysshop
 & they al togydere wente wyth the body of fyr Launcelot day-
 ly tyl they came to Ioyous garde / & euer they had an / C / tor-
 ches bernnyng aboute hym / & so within xv dayes they came to 20
 Ioyous garde . & there they layed his corps in the body of the
 quere / & fange & redde many faulters & prayes ouer hym and
 aboute hym / & euer his vyfage was layed open & naked that
 al folkes myght beholde hym / for sliche was the custum in tho
 dayes that al men of worshyp shold so lye wyth open vyfage 25
 tyl that they were buried / and ryght thus as they were at
 theyr seruyce there came fyr Ector de maris that had vij yere
 fought al Englund scotland & walys sekyng his brother fyr
 Launcelot /

¶ Capitulum xiiii

ANd whan fyr Ector herde sliche noyse & lyghte in the 30
 quyre of Ioyous garde he alyght & put his hors from
 hym & came in to the quyre & there he fawe men synge
 wepe / & al they knewe fyr Ector / but he knewe not them / than
 wente fyr Bors vnto fyr Ector & tolde hym how there laye
 his brother fyr Launcelot dede / & than Syr Ector threwe hys 35
 shelde swerde & helme from hym / & whan he behelde fyr Laun-
 celottes vyfage he fyl down in a swoun / & whan he waked
 it were harde ony tonge to telle the doleful complayntes that

he made for his brother / A Launcelot he sayd thou were hede of
 al crysten knyghtes / & now I dare say sayd fyr Ector thou fir
 Launcelot there thou lyeft that thou were neuer matched of er-
 thely knyghtes hande / & thou were the curteft knyght that e-
 5 uer bare shelde / & thou were the trueft frende to thy louar that
 euer befrade hors / & thou were the trewest louer of a fynful
 man that euer loued woman / & thou were the kyndest man
 that euer strake wyth swerde / & thou were the godelyest persone
 þ^t euer cam emonge prees of knyghtes / & thou was the mekest
 10 man & the Ientyllest that euer ete in halle emonge ladyes / &
 thou were the sternest knyght to thy mortal foo that euer put
 spere in the breste / than there was wepyng & dolour out of me-
 sure / Thus they kepte fyr Launcelots corps on lofte xv dayes
 & than they buryed it with grete deuocyon / & than at leyser
 15 they wente al with the bysshop of canterburye to his ermytage
 & there they were to gyder more than a monthe / Than fyr cof-
 tantyn that was fyr Cadores sone of cornwayl was chofen
 kyng of Englund / & he was a ful noble knyght / & worshyp-
 fully he rulyd this royame / & than thys kyng Costantyn sent
 20 for the bysshop of caunterburye for he herde saye where he was
 & so he was restored vnto his bysshopryche / & leste that Er-
 mytage / And Syr Bedwere was there euer styлле heremyte
 to his lyues ende / Than fyr Bors de ganys / fyr Ector de ma-
 ris / fyr Gahalantyne / fyr Galyhud / fir Galyhodyn / fyr Bla-
 25 mour / fyr Bleoberys / fyr Wylyats de balyaunt / fyr Clartus
 of clere mounte / al these knyghtes drewe them to theyr contreyes
 How be it kyng Costantyn wold haue had them wyth hym
 but they wold not abyde in this royame / & there they al lyued
 in their cuntreys as holy men / & somme englysshe bookes ma-
 30 ken mencyon that they wente neuer oute of englund after the
 deth of fyr Launcelot / but that was but fauour of makers/
 for the frensshe book maketh mencyon & is auctorysed that fyr
 Bors / fyr Ector / fyr Blamour / & fyr Bleoberis wente in to
 the holy lande there as Ihesu Cryst was quycke & deed / And
 35 anone as they had stablysshed theyr londes / for the book saith
 so fyr Launcelot commaunded them for to do or euer he passyd
 oute of thys world / & these foure knyghtes dyd many batayl-
 les vpon the myfcreantes or turkes / and there they ded vpon
 a good fryday for goddes sake / Here is the end of the booke

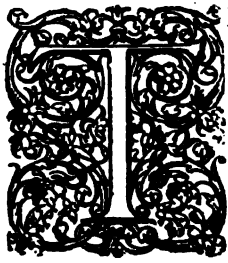
book of kyng Arthur & of his noble knyghtes of the rounde
table / that whan they were hole togyders there was euer an C
and xl / and here is the ende of the deth of Arthur / I praye
you all Ientyl men and Ientyl wymmen that redeth this book
of Arthur and his knyghtes from the begynnyng to the en- 5
dyng / praye for me whyle I am on lyue that god sende me
good delyueraunce / & whan I am deed I praye you all praye
for my foule / for this book was ended the ix yere of the reygne
of kyng edward the fourth / by fyr Thomas Maleore knyght
as Ihesu helpe hym for hys grete myght / as he is the feruaunt 10
of Ihesu bothe day and nyght /

¶ Thus endeth thys noble and Joyous book entytled le morte
Darthur / Notwythstondyng it treateth of the byrth / lyf / and
actes of the sayd kyng Arthur / of his noble knyghtes of the
rounde table / theyr mervayllous enquestes and aduentures /
thachyeuyng of the sangreal / & in thende the dolorous deth &
departyng out of thys world of them al / whiche book was re-
duced in to englyshe by syr Thomas Malory knyght as afore
is sayd / and by me deuyded in to xxi bookes chapytred and
enprynted / and fynysshed in thabbey westmestre the last day
of Juny the yere of our lord / M / CCCC / lxxxv /

¶ Carton me fieri fecit

"LE MORTE D'ARTHUR."

BY ANDREW LANG, M.A.



HE learning about Malory has been so fully dealt with in this edition by an expert, that the comments of one who merely reads Malory for enjoyment may be confined to the enjoyable elements in his work. His, as Mr. Furnivall remarks, "is a most pleasant jumble and summary of the legends about Arthur." The knight was no great clerk in Celtic mythology, and perhaps no very discriminate judge of what was best to choose, what best to omit, in his "French books." He was content to tell of "noble and renowned acts of humanity, gentleness, and chivalry. For herein may be seen noble chivalry, courtesy, humanity, friendliness, hardiness, love, friendship, cowardice, murder, hate, virtue, and sin." These are the elements of our life, these are the *farrago libelli* which Ascham should not have reproached for containing mere "bold bawdry and open manslaughter." In the very first page we meet Igerne, "a passing good woman," who "would not consent unto the king," though hers, after all, was Alomena's fate. Malory is throughout strong on the side of goodness. The Laureate talks of his book as "touched with the adulterous finger" of the time of Edward IV. But assuredly, if we compare the popular romance of that day with the popular romances of any other, we might consider that a golden age which found its favourite reading, and its ideals of conduct, in the "Morte d'Arthur." Men and women will be

men and women ; but here, even if the passion be sinful, it is still passion, ardent, constant, and loyal to the grave.

There is no more strange fortune in literature than that which blended wild Celtic myths, and a monastic theory of the saintly life, with all of chivalrous adventure, with all of courtesy and gentleness, that the Middle Ages could conceive, and handed it on to be the delight of the changing ages.

In this respect, in the mingling of remote, scarce decipherable legends with a high theory of human life, in the choice of what was feasible in Celtic legends, in its transmutation into the universally appropriate and excellent, the work of Malory may be compared to the Homeric epics. [Both have their distant undiscoverable sources in the high far-off lands of a society to which we can never return. ✓ Both gain a mystery and a magic from early imaginings, both have been touched with the colour of many ages, both have the noble melancholy of great deeds done and great enterprises attempted, to end as all human endeavour ends, leaving only a song or a story in the ears of men yet to be born. Studying Malory and Homer together, we are struck by the resemblances and differences of life and of its ideals ; we are impressed by the changes that Christianity and the temper of the North have brought into what may be styled the heroic and aristocratic theory of existence, of duty, of enjoyment.]

The epic and the romance both start from the conception of the marvellous, the supernatural, but how strangely that conception varies in each under the influence of the new, the Christian, and the Northern ideas. The old capricious Gods have departed, of course, and made way for a deity of mercy and justice. But magic is as powerful in Malory as in Homer. Merlin does such a craft that Pellinore saw not Arthur, as Apollo lightly hides Agenor or Aeneas in a mist. In Nimue, one of the ladies of the lake, we have Malory's Circe, whose wiles are too cunning even for his Odysseus, Merlin. The wide world to the knights, as to the adventurous Ithacan, is an unsubstantial fairy place, and Malory's castles are as enchanted as the isles of the unsailed Homeric seas. The vividness of Malory's pictures

has that element of surprise which waits for us as we go up to Circe's house, through the oak coppice and the wild wood. The knight rides over a bridge that is old and feeble, and, coming into a great hall, sees lying a dead knight that was a seemly man, and a brachet licks his wounds, and there comes a lady weeping. Across the moors, and through the darkness of the forests, Arthur rides after the mysterious Morgan le Fay, who shapes herself, by enchantment, into a great marble stone. But in Malory the adventures lead to no end till the Graal has to be won; the knights ride forth for the mere pleasure of the unknown, for the mere interest of what may befall them. One sleeps below an apple-tree, and lo! there come four Queens, and look on his face, and know that it is Lancelot, and contend for his love. Then Morgan le Fay carries him to the enchanted Castle Chariot, and they lay him "in a chamber cold," and tell him that, though no lady can have his love but one, and that Queen Guinevere, "now thou shalt lose her for ever, and she thee, and therefore thee behoveth to choose now one of us four." The knight is more loyal to his love than Odysseus to his wedded wife: "lever had I die in this prison with worship, than to have one of you to my love, mangre my head. . . . And as to Queen Guinevere, she is the truest lady unto her lord living." But all these adventures among chapels perilous, and valleys where stand pavilions of red sandal, are, unlike the Homeric adventures, without an end or aim. The slight unity that we find in the earlier parts, before the Graal becomes an aim and end, before the love of Lancelot brings a doom on all, is in the character and position of Arthur. Like the sleepless Agamemnon, he might complain of the great charge laid on his life; like Charlemagne in the "Chanson de Roland," he might cry,

"Deus ! si peneuse est ma vie !"

Different as are their ideas of love, and of pure fidelity and constancy unshaken in a man, Homer and Malory draw near each other in their pictures of their great ladies and lovers, Helen and Guinevere. Ruinous they both are, but each might say to her singer and her

romancer, in the words of Helen to the dead Hector, "Never yet heard I evil or despitel word from thee." Both romance and epic are chivalrous here; neither Homer nor Malory preaches nor rebukes, like the Arthur of the "Idylls of the King." But different are the repentances of the fateful ladies, the sorrows of the North and South. "At the last," says Helen, "I groaned for my blindness that Aphrodite gave me, when she led me to Troy from mine own country, forsaking my child and my bridal chamber, and my lord, that lacked not aught, either of wisdom or beauty." In heroic Greece, the shame is over and past; in Elysium, in the Avalon of Argos, Helen and Menelaus are destined to endless joy. But the spirit of Christianity and of the North, that gave us the passion of Brynhild, demand from Guinevere another penance. "She let make herself a nun, and great penance she took, as ever did sinful lady in this land, and never creature could make her merry, but lived in fasting, prayers, and alms deeds, that all manner of people marvelled how virtuously she was changed." In that last meeting of Lancelot and Guinevere, when she might have gone with him to her own Elysium of Joyous Garde, she cries, "As well as I have loved thee, mine heart will not serve me to see thee; for through thee and me is the flower of kings and knights destroyed." So she parts from "the truest lover of a sinful man that ever loved woman;" "then he sickened more and more and dwined and died away; . . . sometime he slumbered a broken sleep, and ever he was lying grovelling on the tomb of King Arthur and Queen Guinevere."

Helen and Guinevere are both children of the old world of dreams; both born in the land of myth, each is a daughter of Gods, or a daughter of the moon, as the old story fabled of Helen, or "the white ghost," as Guinevere's name is interpreted; they are not born of men nor of mortal seed: they are as the vision of Beauty on earth among the passions of men. But between the years that sang of Helen and the years that told of Guinevere what a change has come, and how readily the Greek wins to her rest in her home by Eurotas, and how hardly does Guinevere attain to hers. Guinevere is never in later time



be worshipped and sainted, like Helen, for her very beauty's sake. Une immense espérance a traversée la terre," a hope that brings with pain and sorrow, and an array of new passions and desires that never vexed or rejoiced the older faith, the older time. In all this inclusion of the faithful and disloyal love,

"Whose honour rooted in dishonour stood,"

Malory has penned the great and chief romance of his own age and of ours, the story that must endure and must move the *lacrymæ rerum* till man's nature is altered again. Homer knows wedded love, which no poet has praised with nobler words than he puts in the lips of Nausicaa; but he knows light loves of chiefs and captives. But that great charm of love which is constant as it is sinful, of Lancelot and of Guinevere, does not come into his ken, nor can we fancy him alluring and saddening with the passion of Clytemnestra and Aegisthus, "with sheer doom before their eyes," the doom that they drew on them "beyond what was ordained." Nor does Homer know, or care to dwell on, a hopeless passion like the mortal love of Elaine for Lancelot. We may see one touch of such an affection in the words of Nausicaa when she bids Odysseus a farewell, a passage the more deeply moving for its reticence. But of Nausicaa we learn no more; tradition even is not busy with her; but the last voyage of the Maid of Astolat is an enduring possession of romance. And yet more remote from Homer, of course, is the chastity of the Sangraal legend. Mr. Rhys has very ingeniously tried to account for the purity of Galahad and Percival, as if it were an inheritance from solar heroes, who had been of much prowess before the age of the passions began. But we may far more sensibly attribute the purity of Galahad to monastic influence in France, and in part to the Germanic chastity of which Tacitus tells, springing from a lofty respect for women. We may contrast it with the views of Thetis, so frankly heathen, which disconcert Mr. Gladstone in the "Iliad." Malory's ideal in this matter was probably very far from being attained by his readers, yet it remains an attractive ideal of a manly purity associated with strength and courage.

Among the many differences of temper which distinguish this great romance of the Middle Ages from the great epics of pre-historic Hellas, perhaps the strongest is to be found in the various theories of courage. In Homer, courage is a very varying quality. When Hector challenges the Achæan princes, dismay and silence fall on them. No man is eager to volunteer. In battle even Achilles (perhaps in an interpolated passage) is adread. Agamemnon is eternally despondent and anxious for flight. Only Odysseus, when cut off by a crowd of Trojans, dares to stand his ground, unaided and alone. "For I know that they are cowards, who flee the fight, but whosoever is a hero in war, him it mainly behoves to stand stubbornly, whether he be smitten, or whether he smite." Even Hector, in his last stand at the Scaean gate, deliberates about making shameful terms with Achilles, though Asteropæus has just set him the example of a gallant and glorious death. Neither Greek nor Trojan fights a losing battle well; and when Homer makes Hector actually run for his life, he gives us a scene which no romancer nor saga-man dared to write about a hero. Other is the temper of Lancelot in the Queen's chamber, naked and unarmed, and beset by overwhelming numbers: "Wit you well, Madam, I shall sell my life as dear as I may:—And now I had liever than to be lord of all Christendom that I had sure armour upon me, that men might speak of my deeds or ever I were slain."

We cannot doubt that Homer sang to men who shared his theory of courage—who, like him, believed that the bravest had their fighting days, as Paris says of himself, and their days when fighting was not dear to them. All this is doubtless true enough to human nature. But not to believe it, not to acknowledge it, to resist and defy the whispers of fear, is true to the Northern nature, and this creed has given us many an unsung Thermopylæ.

The Celtic legends, passed through the French mind, and rendered in Malory's English, have, what Homer lacks, the charm of mystery and distance, the background of the unknown. In Homer all is beheld in the clearest and most delicate air; about Merlin and

Morgan le Fay, and the ladies of the lake, and the strange swords and cups, there is a mist of enchantment. They are relics of an older world, not understood even by the narrators. It is, probably, not the Celtic, but the mediæval fancy which introduces another element into the romancer, much suppressed in Homer—that of broad conventional humour. The epics know of no such warrior as Dinadan among their many types of character. He satisfies the rude mediæval taste in jokes; he preserves the romances from becoming too sentimental. He sets a dish of fish before "the haut prince" because the haut prince "had a custom he loved no fish." So comic is this excellent Dinadan that Lancelot "may not sit in his saddle when at spear hitteth him," that spear with which the humorous knight wote his friends in the ribs. "Then laughed the queen and the haut prince that they might not sit at their table," so "tickle of these" are those beings, children of the mist and of the night as they are.

Thus Malory's book is a very complete and composite picture of a strangely inherited ideal; it is, indeed, "a jumble," but, of all jumbles, the most poetic and the most pathetic. Structureless as it seems, shewy as it is, the "Morte d'Arthur" ends as nobly as the "Iliad," serving the praise which Shelley gives to Homer, and dying away "the high and solemn close of the whole bloody tale in tenderness inexpressible sorrow." It is well called "La Morte d'Arthur," for ending atones for all, wins forgiveness for all, and, like the death of Roland, is more triumphant than a victory. Like the three musketeers, Malory is skilled "to teach men unto strange adventures," instruct in all courage, chastity, endurance, and true love, nor can we estimate what his influence must have been in training the fathers of Elizabeth's Englishmen. Thus it has somehow befallen that the Arthurian legends, in their third descent, are infinitely more dear and dearer to Englishmen and English boys than the original French romances are to the French, or to any foreign people who borrowed from the French. In France, the romances are the special possession of scholars only; in England, Malory's "Morte" is a

favourite in most school-rooms, and has been the inspiration of our greatest poet since our great poetic age. "It is characteristic of our mixed race that we have nothing at all like an ancient Germanic epic in our popular and living literature. "Beowulf" is far too remote from us in every way ; we are not fortunate enough to possess anything corresponding to the "Song of Roland." We owe our national romance first to the Celts, then to the French ; but the form and, to a great extent, the spirit are English, are Malory's.

∨ The style of Malory is, of course, based on the fresh and simple manner of his French originals. For an English style of his age, it is particularly fluent. Periods of considerable length and intricacy, especially in speeches, do not give him any trouble. As examples, we might take the dialogue (book xx. chapter iii.) of Lancelot and the Queen when he is surprised in her chamber. The daring, chivalry, and self-restraint of the knight are here admirably and suitably expressed. Perhaps it is just because he does follow a French copy, and so is familiar with words derived from the Latin, that Malory possesses his fluency and facility. The constant advice to use only "Anglo-Saxon" in modern composition is erroneous, and is ungrateful to those great makers of our language, the writers from Spenser to Shakespeare. Malory is, of course, much less Latinised than they ; such a phrase as

"The multitudinous seas incarnadine"

cannot be expected from him. But he is almost as remote from the "Wardour Street English" which stands in a false following of the Icelandic. If we take his famous chapter on true love and the month of May, we see how much his language owes to the Latin, or to the Latin through the French (book xviii. chapter xxv.). Here we have such Latinised words as "flourisheth," "constrain," "divers causes," "gentleness," "service," "negligence," "deface," "stability," "virtuous," "endure," "accord," and so forth, all in half a page. The language has slipped away from its monosyllables, and is becoming more rapid and more fluent. Here, too, Malory offers examples of a trait common in him—the sudden change to the second person, as if in

livelier and more actual address: "There never was worshipful man or worshipful woman but they loved one better than another, and worship in arms may never be foiled, but first reserve the honour to God, and secondly the quarrel must come of thy lady. . . . Therefore all ye that be lovers call unto your remembrance the month of May, like as did Queen Guinevere, for whom I make here a little mention, that while she lived she was a true lover, and therefore she had a good end." In ordinary spelling, the words all remain good current English. Almost the only obsolete word in the chapter is "lycoursa." Even when the carter "drove on a great wallop" Malory needs no glossary. His language always explains itself; for example, in the picturesque expression, "I sawe no thyng but the waters wappe and waves wanne." Malory's chief mark of childlike simplicity is in his conjunctions; his narrative is stitched with "so's" and "and's," though this is, of course, less marked in his dialogue and in his reflective passages. The childlike character becomes almost Republican in such a passage as this: "he landed wyth seven kynges, and the nombre was hydous to beholde." On the whole, it may be said of the narrative manner that it is well fitted to the wandering tale; just old enough and quaint enough to allure, and to mark the age, without disturbing or delaying even the youngest reader of the noble and joyous history. Readers enough Malory has, and is likely to have, more probably than any other ancient English author, more even than Chaucer, whose language and prosody offer more difficulty, and who has the perennial disadvantage of writing in verse. Maundeville, probably, can never be popular, in spite of his entertaining matter. Ascham only attracts scholars and the curious. But the manner and matter of Malory make him the most generally known of all old authors, except, of course, the translators of the Bible.

The name of Arthur has been unfortunate when borne by English princes, and the fame of Arthur has not always been happy in the hands of Malory's successors. Many have been moved to write an *Arthuriad*, but a kind of blight always fell on their intentions. Spenser's is but an Arthur of allegory and fantasy, not a living

character in real romance. Milton never carried out his long-cherished design, nor did Dryden "raise the Table Round again." In Malory's narrative, poets have felt that more was meant than met the ear. The myths of one age naturally become the symbols of the next, and Arthur's wars, passing from myth into romance, and touched by religion, were especially destined to end in the symbolical. This their third stage has, of necessity, the least tangible motive. As the Laureate declares, his "Idylls" are :

"New-old, and shadowing Sense at war with Soul,
Rather than that grey King, whose name, a ghost
Streams like a cloud, man-shaped, from mountain-peak,
And cleaves to cairn and cromlech still ; or him
Of Geoffrey's book, or him of Malleor's, one
Touched by the adulterous finger of a time
That hover'd between war and wantonness,
And crownings and dethronings."

This is a hard judgment on Malory's book, in which the evil is not triumphant, nor sympathetic beyond the true bounds of human sympathy. It is not so much the fault of the Laureate's genius, as of literary necessity, that the "Idylls" are almost too obviously allegoric. The Arthurian traditions remain purely romantic in his early "Lady of Shalott," and in that sweet vernal piece, "a fragment," "Sir Launcelot and Queen Guinevere."

"Then, in the boyhood of the year,
Sir Launcelot and Queen Guinevere
Rode thro' the coverts of the deer
With blissful treble ringing clear,
She seem'd a part of joyous Spring :
A gown of grass-green silk she wore,
Buckled with golden clasps before ;
A light-green tuft of plumes she bore,
Closed in a golden ring."

This and the magical "Lady of Shalott" are indeed poems of "the boyhood of the year," unclouded by inevitable, but not wholly appropriate reflection. The "Idylls," on the other side, have a purpose, a purpose which the ancient romance unavoidably suggests, but which is not of a piece with the legend. New wine is put into old bottles.

It may be doubted whether a poet is well advised when he deliberately treats the theme of another age in the spirit of to-day. Even in the first noble fragment of 1842, "The Morte d'Arthur," the strain of thought and speech are modern. King Arthur is, indeed, what the poet dreams that he is to be, "a modern gentleman of stateliest port." Admirable as his words are for wisdom and music, and imperishable in our memories, the voice is not the voice of the Arthur whom we knew. The knight has become a type; a type he remains, through the cycle of the "Idylls of the King." It is not our Arthur who preaches to the repentant Guinevere: the King has become the Conscience. All this, we may say, was not to be avoided. We can scarcely take an old theme of the dead world, and tell the story again in verse, without bringing, in one way or other, the new kind of thought. The new kind of expression, his own, the noble sort of conceits in which he is an inimitable master, also mark the Laureate's "Idylls." Says Arthur:

"O ye stars that shudder over me,
O earth that soundest hollow under me,
Vext with waste dreams!"

This is remote from the tone of the romance we know and love; beautiful in itself as it is, we cannot but feel that it is as inconsistent as the wisdom and mildness of the Greek in Mr. Bridges's "Achilles in Scyros." Or is this feeling only part of our haunting archæological pedantry, which, content with the heroes in the garb of their day, is vexed to find them familiar with our own more involved speech, and more involved thought? Every reader must judge for himself. Poetry is always turning back on her only valuable material, that which she does not and cannot make, that which was bequeathed to her in the youth of our race, when man wandered in worlds not realised, and explained them by his fancies. In spite of the cry for poetry of our own day and our own life, great poets have all turned to tradition for their materials. They may use tradition in two ways—frankly appropriating it, never dreaming that its people were in any way other than those they know; or clearly knowing the difference,



and making the ancient persons mere *personae*, masks through which the new voice is uttered. The first method is that of Homer, of Chaucer, and, to a great extent, of Shakspeare. Homer's men, Chaucer's men, when Chaucer deals with the remote past, are frankly Homeric and Chaucerian. The tragedians, on the other hand, place the ideas and the problems of Athenian thought in the mouths of mythic heroes and heroines, Agamemnon and Alcestis, Helen, Clytemnestra, and Odysseus. But the tragedians themselves are so remote that only fanatical adorers of Homer are conscious of any travesty, and that travesty they can pardon. So, too, in Shakspeare, Hamlet is no heroic Dane, but a man born after the Renaissance and Reformation. This use of far older legends and persons by the great poets of the past is so masterful, so imaginative, that it conquers us, and subdues us to belief. In the "Idylls of the King" we believe less, either that the sentiments are too peculiarly modern, or that the dramatic force is less vigorous, or that the veil of long familiarity is absent. They remain a wonderfully wrought series of pictures, gorgeous as the Gate of Camelot with its mystic sculptures, visionary and magnificent and unreal:

"New things and old co-twisted."

The age has seen many other Arthurian revivals. Mr. Morris has given us the "Defence of Guinevere," his most imaginative work, but this, too, has a fantasy, an "intensity" that is alien to the leisurely romance. It is pictorial in another way, full of the colour of the fourteenth century. Like Guinevere—

"We gaze upon the arras giddily,
Where the wind set the silken kings asway."

Mr. Swinburne's poem of "Tristram of Lyonesse" merely showed that, among Mr. Swinburne's many gifts the gift of narrative is not one. The story was clogged and covered out of sight by the heavy splendour of the style. Events and characters were lost in vast digressions of description. In Mr. Arnold's brief poem of the death of Tristram the passage which haunts us is all his own, owes nothing to Malory

or the French books, the beautiful passage on the children of Iseult :

" But they sleep in sheltered rest
Like helpless birds in the warm nest
On the castle's southern side, ..."

Thus the cycle of Arthur has not failed to enrich our modern poetry, nor our poetry to enrich it ; but a new epic it has not given us, because a new epic is an impossibility. Far hence, in the untravelled future, the echo of the tumult of an age dimly heard, faintly understood, may become a song in the ears of men unborn. But we have not the epic spirit ; ere that can come to birth, the world, too, must die and be born again.

EDITOR'S NOTE.

IN order to avoid misunderstandings I beg to state in anticipation of the second volume:

1. The present edition follows the original in every respect, word for word, line for line, and page for page, and, with a few exceptions which are accounted for and registered, letter for letter.

2. Caxton's volume commences with a blank leaf, which, as shown by the signatures, is counted. This leaf is also in the present edition, but it is not counted here, for the simple reason that the coincidence of the signatures in Caxton with the marks of the binders in the present edition should be avoided. Thus, on page 65 the fourth sheet begins, and is marked at the bottom by "E," whereas Caxton's fourth sheet only commences on page 67 (c j).

3. There occur in the impression of Caxton three kinds of "w." (Compare the photographic facsimile: firstly, line 20, in the word "was;" secondly, line 21, in the word "afterward;" and, thirdly, in the same line in the word "toward.") The first kind of "w," according to Mr. Blades, denotes in type No. 4* the capital "W." Caxton's compositors did not distinguish, as they ought, these "w" from one another, so that the one denoting "W" frequently occurs in the middle of words and in other places, where it is evidently out of place. I have, therefore, in the present edition, as Roman type does not admit of marking the three kinds, rendered it by "W" in all cases where capital "W" was to be expected, as in the beginning of a sentence and in proper names, otherwise it is rendered by "w."

4. There are, further, two styles of "I" used in Caxton's edition. (Compare the photographic facsimile, firstly, line 1, and secondly, line 5.) At first it appeared that a difference was made between "i" and "j," but such is not the case; both kinds are used indiscriminately. I have, therefore, after some consideration, always rendered it by "I." Moreover, the first kind of "I" occurs more frequently.

5. The character "3" is used in Caxton to express both "z" and "gh." In words where "z" was to be expected I have rendered "3" by "z," otherwise I have preserved "3," *e.g.*, "Cezar" and "kny3t."

6. Caxton has no fixed rules for dividing words at the end of a line. A word is divided as the space in each special case permits, and as a rule there is no conjunctive hyphen put—*e.g.*, "horfes" is not broken "hor-fes" but "ho rfes." As I found that in many cases mistakes arose from this deficiency, I have for the convenience of the modern reader always added the hyphen where it was to be expected.

7. In some cases where Caxton's compositors evidently confounded "n" with "u," or the reverse, *e.g.*, in "but," I have not reproduced the error. I have done the same in a few cases where "f" and "u" were confounded, *e.g.*, in "for."

8. In a few cases where letters or parts of words were either effaced or did not come out in printing, the missing matter is supplied in italics.

H. OSKAR SOMMER.

PREFACE.



WHEN, two years ago, I resolved upon reproducing the editio princeps of Sir Thomas Malory's "Le Morte Darthur," I determined that, as far as lay within my power, my edition should be a standard work of English literature, and should serve as a worthy token of the gratitude which, in common with all scholars who have worked at the British Museum, I feel towards the English people for the unrivalled organisation of that magnificent institution, and towards the unfailing courtesy and helpfulness of its officials. Bearing this high purpose in my mind, I have done my utmost to test and sift every question relating to this best of all English romances, as Sir Walter Scott so rightly styles it. Whatever shortcomings there may be in my humble work, they are not, I can honestly say, due to lack of zeal and energy. I have hopes that this will be recognised by the world of scholarship to which I offer the result of my labours.

The consequence of this purpose, from which I have never swerved, has been a considerable delay in the issue of my prolegomena to Caxton's reprint. This delay, though chiefly due to ill-health, which necessitated abstention from work during several months, is also partly due to the fact that I was unable at the outset to clearly recognise the magnitude of the task that I had taken upon me. I found, for instance, the investigations into the question of Malory's sources longer and more arduous than I had anticipated from the very scanty remarks in even important works bearing on this subject. To discuss this theme adequately required much more time

and space than I had at first calculated. With the concurrence of my publisher, I therefore determined, instead of bringing all the editorial matter into the second volume, to divide it, and to issue first the critical and philological apparatus, and, independently, in a third volume the literary discussion.

The second volume now lies before the reader, comprising the Bibliographical History of Malory's romance, a substantially complete List of Various Readings between Caxton's and Wynkyn de Worde's second edition, an exhaustive Index raisonné of Names and Places, Notes on the Language of Malory's work, etc., and a Glossary. The third volume, containing my Treatise on the Sources¹ and Mr. Andrew Lang's Essay on Malory's Prose Style, is being actively pushed forward, and will be issued as soon as is compatible with a thorough examination of the complex questions involved. I trust that original subscribers will feel compensated for the delay by the greater completeness of what is offered to them. I venture also to think that those who use this edition will find it a decided advantage to have the critical and the literary apparatus in distinct volumes, though those who are not so minded will be able to bind the two in one if they wish.

It only remains for me to acquit myself of the pleasant duty of thanking all those who have aided me in my task.

I must again renew my expressions of gratitude to Mrs. Abby E. Pope, of Brooklyn, N.Y., for her fresh collation of the four pages I sent for the second time to America, and to His Excellency Herr Dr. von Gossler for his grant of an additional subsidy from Prussian Government funds. To Sir Edward Strachey, Bart., I am indebted for the use of his private copy of Southey's edition, containing his collations with the Althorp and Osterley Park copies of the Caxton. To the authorities of the British Museum, and in especial to Dr. Richard Garnett, to Mr. W. Y. Fletcher, and to Mr. E. J. Scott, of the MSS. Department, I am deeply beholden for the facilities afforded me in

¹ Concerning the sources of "Le Morte Darthur," see my letter to *The Academy* London, January 4th, 1890.

the course of my studies. Mr. Henry Bradley, one of the editors of the great English Dictionary on Historical Principles, assisted me with his kind advice, and placed at my disposal the rich apparatus of texts and books of reference of the Delegates of the Clarendon Press deposited at the British Museum. To my eminent friend Mr. William Blades I owe not only the information derived from his great work on England's first printer, but also generous help spontaneously rendered me at a critical moment. Last, not least, I must thank my friend Mr. Alfred Nutt for advice and assistance of every kind rendered me during the whole period I was engaged on this work. It is to his love for Arthurian romance, to his enthusiasm for scholarly studies, that these volumes owe their existence.

H. OSKAR SOMMER.

EARTHAM HOUSE, CHICHESTER,
March 1890.

988k
M25
1889
v.3

PREFACE.



HERE present to the world of scholarship the third and last instalment of the work which four years ago I set myself to accomplish, and of which I published the first instalment in the spring of 1889. I have faithfully endeavoured to redeem every pledge I made to the public and to myself, and to the best of my ability to render this work, which was begun and has been continued as a labour of love, a worthy contribution to English literature, a worthy example of German scholarship. The task has been a long and an onerous one; during its execution my health failed me repeatedly—to this, as well as to my resolve to explore every portion of the vast tract of Romantic literature that lay before me, and, I candidly confess it, to miscalculation of the complexity of the task, must be attributed the delay which has taken place in the issue of this third volume. I can, however, assure the subscribers to my work that, as regrettable as this delay may have appeared to some of them, it has enabled me to attain results of which I had no idea when I began my task. I am likewise sure of one other thing: without the intimate knowledge of Malory's work which I acquired by the drudgery of copying out the text with my own hand, of collating proof with original, and of compiling the critical apparatus, I could never have achieved the results which I set forth in the present volume. All who are familiar

with studies of this kind will understand that the amount of printed matter represents but a slight proportion of the labour involved. Negative results occupy little or no space, yet they necessitate as much labour, and may be as important to establish, as positive ones.

It will be recognised, I trust, that, thanks to my efforts, Sir Thomas Malory's position in the history of English literature is henceforth clearly defined, and that the sources which he worked up into his compilation, together with his own additions, have been ascertained beyond doubt. It is true, a small portion remains which I have not been able to trace, but I fully hope that the opportune discovery of a new text (such as that of the "*Suite de Merlin*" fifteen years ago) may fill up this gap in our knowledge.

I may be allowed to sketch briefly the outcome of my investigations. Malory, in his account of the early life of Arthur, followed partly the *Vulgate-Merlin*, but mainly the so-called "*Suite de Merlin*," of which one solitary French MS. has survived, and for a portion of which Malory is the only extant authority; in the *Tristan*-section he followed a French trilogy, which is different from all existing versions, and which we only know from him; in the *Lancelot*-section he used a "*Suite de Lancelot*," the existence of which was not even suspected by any previous investigator, was established conjecturally by me after a minute examination of the entire *Lancelot*-cycle, and was finally placed beyond doubt by my discovery of a fragment of the version embedded in a *Tristan* MS. When Malory followed previous English versions, as is the case of the Thornton MS. in the library of Lincoln Cathedral and the Harl. MS. 2252 at the British Museum, he made free and ample use of them, to the extent of transcribing whole passages. I may also claim to have destroyed the erroneous theory that Malory derived his information directly from Welsh sources, or that he was himself a Welshman; and, finally, I have printed as an Appendix to this



lume the only portion of Malory's French sources which has never appeared in print previously.

I have seen with great pleasure that my transcript of Caxton's lume, even before the completion of the work, has been of use to ilologists as well as to students of literature, and I am more than ever rvinced that it was time to produce a reliable text of "Le Morte rthur," and that the secretary of a distinguished literary society was ong when he expressed his surprise on hearing of my intention, and ed me plaintively if I was not acquainted with Robert Southey's endid edition.

I hope and trust that these Studies on the Sources will meet with same kind welcome as the two former volumes, and that they will useful to the student of the vast and intricate Arthurian romance.

In common with other admirers of Malory, I must thank Mr. drew Lang for the few pages which he has prefixed to this volume, l in which he has so eloquently vindicated the abiding charm and rest of this great storehouse of romance.

I have again to express my deep obligation to His Excellency the yal Prussian State-Minister Herr Dr. von Gossler for the grant of mall third subsidy from the Prussian Treasury; also to all the staff he British Museum, the great national library, for their kindness l courtesy, and for all the facilities afforded me.

I again express my warmest thanks to my friend Mr. Alfred Nutt, y, himself an enthusiastic student of Arthurian romance, eagerly ched the progress of my studies; I owe to him many valuable gestions and much other help. He also assisted me in the onerous

ungrateful task of reading the proofs of this volume. Not only thanks, but those of all who love Arthurian romance, are due to him he readily and disinterestedly consented to the greatly enlarged e of my work, whereby the size and cost of this volume have been considerably increased.

At the conclusion of a work involving the exercise of so much skill and taste on the part of the eminent printing firm to which its execution was entrusted, I must tender my hearty thanks to my friend Mr. Charles McCall and to all his assistants both for the beauty of the volumes and for the ever ready assistance afforded me in the course of their progress through the press.

H. OSKAR SOMMER.

BRITISH MUSEUM, LARGE ROOM,
April 1891.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

	PAGE
SIR THOMAS MALORY AND THE VARIOUS EDITIONS OF "LE MORTE	
DARTHUR"	I
RELATION OF THE DIFFERENT EDITIONS OF "LE MORTE DARTHUR" TO	
ONE ANOTHER	15
THE PRESENT EDITION	17
LIST OF ERRORS, OMISSIONS, AND ORTHOGRAPHICAL IRREGULARITIES IN	
CAXTON'S IMPRESSION	21
RESULT OF THE COLLATION OF WHITTAKER'S FACSIMILES WITH THE	
ORIGINAL PAGES	26
NOTES ON THE LANGUAGE OF "LE MORTE DARTHUR".	28
LIST OF THE VARIOUS READINGS BETWEEN CAXTON'S AND WYNKYN DE	
WORDE'S EDITIONS	43
LIST OF NAMES AND PLACES	147
GLOSSARY	185

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTORY ESSAY BY ANDREW LANG, M.A. . . .	xiii
STUDIES ON THE SOURCES OF "LE MORTE DARTHUR":	
INTRODUCTION	I
I. THE "MERLIN," OR THE EARLY HISTORY OF KING ARTHUR.	
A. THE "MERLIN" BY ROBERT DE BORON.	
TABLE SHOWING THE RELATIVE LENGTH IN PAGES AND THE NUMBER OF CHAPTERS OF THE TWENTY-ONE BOOKS OF "LE MORTE DARTHUR," THE BRANCHES OF ARTHURIAN ROMANCE THEY BELONG TO, AND ALL MSS. AND EDITIONS PRESENTING THE SAME VERSIONS	facing 12
BOOK I. CHAPTERS I.-VII.: THE HUTH MS.	14
B. THE "ORDINARY MERLIN."	
BOOK I. CHAPTERS VIII.-XVIII.: ADD. MS. NO. 10292	31
C. THE "SUITE DE MERLIN."	
TABLE SHOWING THE RELATION OF THE "MERLIN" MSS. TO ONE ANOTHER, AND ILLUSTRATING THE TREATMENT OF PROPER NAMES BY THE SCRIBES	facing 55
a. BOOK I. CHAPTERS XIX.-XXVIII.	58
β. BOOK II.	70
γ. BOOK III.	97
δ. BOOK IV.	117
D. "LA MORTE ARTHURE": THORNTON MS.	
BOOK V.	148

II. THE "LANCELOT," OR THE LATER HISTORY OF KING ARTHUR. PAGE

A. THE "LANCELOT" PROPER.

a. BOOK VI.

TABLE SHOWING THE MSS. OF "LE ROMAN DE
LANCELOT" AT THE BRITISH MUSEUM IN THEIR
RELATIONSHIP TO THE EDITION OF PARIS, 1513,
AND "LE MORTE D'ARTHUR" . . . *facing* 177

α. CHAPTERS I.-VII. 178

β. CHAPTERS VII.-XI. 186

γ. CHAPTERS XI.-XVIII. 189

b. BOOK XI.

α. CHAPTERS I.-III. 190

β. CHAPTERS III.-VI. 193

γ. CHAPTERS VII.-XIV. 195

c. BOOK XII.

CHAPTERS I.-X. 200

B. THE QUEST OF THE HOLY GRAIL.

α. BOOK XIII. 206

β. BOOK XIV. 213

γ. BOOK XV. 214

δ. BOOK XVI. 216

ε. BOOK XVII. 217

C. "LA MORT AU ROI ARTUS."

α. BOOK XVIII. 221

β. BOOK XIX.: "LE ROMAN DE LA CHARRETTE" AND THE
PROSE-LANCELOT.

α. CHAPTERS I.-VI. 232

β. CHAPTERS VI.-IX. 241

γ. CHAPTERS X.-XII. 248

c. "LE MORTE ARTHUR": HARL. MS. 2252 AND THE PROSE-
LANCELOT 249

α. BOOK XX. 250

β. BOOK XXI. 265

D. MALORY'S COMPILATION REPRESENTS A LOST "SUITE DE LANCELOT" 272

III. THE "TRISTAN," OR THE LIFE AND ADVENTURES
OF SYR TRYSTRAM.

PAGE

TABLE SHOWING THE RELATIONS OF THE MSS. OF THE "VULGATE" AND ENLARGED "TRISTAN" AT THE BRITISH MUSEUM TO THE PRINTED EDITION OF 1520 AND TO "LE MORTE D'ARTHUR"	<i>facing</i> 280
BOOKS VIII., IX., X.; XII., CHAPTERS XI.-XIII.	286

IV. THE "PROPHECIES OF MERLIN."

BOOK X. CHAPTERS XXXI.-L.	291
-----------------------------------	-----

CONCLUSION	293
----------------------	-----

APPENDIX.

THE ADVENTURES OF ALYSAUNDER LE ORPHELYN	297
THE GREAT TOURNAMENT OF GALAHALT OF SURLUSE	313

SUPPLEMENT TO VOLUME II.

A. ADDENDA.

I. SIR THOMAS MALORY	335
II. "THE NINTH YEAR OF THE REIGN OF KING EDWARD IV."	336
III. "THE LAST DAY OF JULY, 1485"	336
IV. DOUCE FRAGMENTS NO. 10, BODLEIAN LIBRARY, OXFORD	336
V. WILLIAM COPLAND'S EDITION OF 1557	337
VI. ADDITIONS TO THE "LIST OF NAMES AND PLACES"	337

B. CORRIGENDA	338
-------------------------	-----

INTRODUCTION.

SIR THOMAS MALORY AND THE VARIOUS EDITIONS OF "LE MORTE DARTHUR."

HE cycle of stories of King Arthur and the Knights of the Round Table, known as "Le Morte DARTHUR," was first presented to us in a volume by England's earliest printer, William Caxton. About the personality of Sir Thomas Malory¹ very little indeed is known, and this little must be gleaned from Caxton's preface and colophon. There we read that Thomas Malory was a knight, that he completed his work in the ninth year of the reign of King Edward IV.—i.e., 1470—twenty-five years before it saw the light of day in print. Caxton further states that Malory "reduced" his work from certain books in French, and that he was the servant of Jesu both day and night, which fact and the general tone of the "Morte DARTHUR," have sometimes given rise to the hypothesis that he was a priest. The name "Malory" occurs in Leland's time² in Yorkshire, and is quoted in the next century in Burton's "Description of Leicestershire,"³ but no clue can be found to connect the

¹ The name "Malory," is also sometimes spelt "Malorye" and "Maleore." See Caxton, p. 861*, line 9; also, W. de Worde, Copland, East and Stansby.

² John Leland's "Itinerary," 2nd ed., Oxford, 1744, vol. viii. p. 22: "There be two Lordshippes lyenge not very far from Ripon, that is Norton Conyers and Hutton Coniers. Norton hathe Northeton Coniers, and Malory hathe Hutton Coniers. Thes Lands cam to their Aunciters by two doughtars, Heirs Generall of that Coniers. Malory bath another Place caullyd Highe Study, a litle from Fontaines."

³ W. Burton, "Description of Leicestershire," 1st ed. 1622, 2nd ed. Lynn, 1777, folio, p. 140, Thomas Malory; p. 262, Sir Thomas Malory, knyght of Winwick, Newbould and Swinford, 19, 27.

author of the "Morte Darthur" with the bearers of his name. The "Bibliographia Britannica"¹ says that Leland, and others after him, stated Malory to be a Welshman, but I can find no reference to this fact in Leland's works.

The "Morte Darthur" has been in all twelve times printed or edited previously to the present edition: seven times in black letter and five times in Roman type.

BLACK LETTER.			ROMAN TYPE.		
1. Caxton	.	1485 folio.	viii. Hazelwood	.	1816 3 vols. 12mo.
2. W. de Worde	.	1498 „	ix. Walker's Class	.	1816 2 vols. 12mo.
3. W. de Worde	.	1529 „	x. R. Southey	.	1817 2 vols. 8vo.
4. W. Copland	.	1557 „	xi a. Th. Wright	.	1856 3 vols. 8vo.
5. Th. East	.	about 1585 „	b. Th. Wright	.	1866 „ 2nd ed.
6. Th. East	.	about 1585 4to.	xii a. Sir E. Strachey	.	1868 Globe ed.
7. W. Stansby	.	1634 b.	b. „ „	.	1880 „

W. Caxton's impression was finished, according to his own statement, in 1485.² He was induced to print the book "by many noble and dyuers gentylmen of thys royaume." This edition was brought out in folio and printed in black letter. Only two copies of this first and original edition are known to exist. Of a third copy the second leaf of the table of contents of the book is alone preserved.³ One of the two above-mentioned copies is throughout perfect and in good condition, and is unanimously considered one of the finest specimens of early printing. Belonging originally to the Harleian Library, this copy was sold to the Earl of Jersey for his library at Osterley Park. In 1885 it became the property of Mrs. Abby E. Pope, of Brooklyn, N.Y., in

¹ "Bibliographia Britannica," vol. iii. p. 372, "Caxton:" "If this Sir Thomas Malory was a Welshman, as Leland and others after him assert, he was most likely a Welsh priest."

² (a) W. Blades, "The Life and Typography of William Caxton." London, 1861-3, folio, vol. ii. p. 178.

(b) "Bibliotheca Spenceriana, or a Descriptive Catalogue of the Books printed in the Fifteenth Century, in the Library of George John, Earl Spencer, K.G., &c." by T. F. Dibdin. London, 1815, folio, vol. iv. pp. 403-9.

(c) Dibdin, "Typographical Antiquities, or the History of Printing in England, Scotland, and Ireland." London, 1810-19, 4to, vol. i. pp. 241-85.

(d) Lowndes, "Bibliographer's Manual." London, 1864, 8vo, p. 74.

(e) W. Carew Hazlitt's "Hand-book to the Popular, Poetical, and Dramatic Literature of Great Britain, from the Invention of Printing to the Restoration." London, 1867, 8vo p. 13.

³ Bagford, "Fragments," vol. viii. No. 58.

Caxton
No. 32.

the United States.¹ The other copy is No. 1194 of the famous library of Earl Spencer, Althorp, Northampton. This copy, too, is in good condition, and not, as some sources say, very much damaged. It wants eleven leaves (not twelve), which are, however, replaced by facsimiles from the Osterley Park copy, due to the skilful hand of Mr. Whittaker: which indeed resemble the original pages so much, that, at first sight, one might easily mistake them for the latter; but on close and careful examination one cannot help noticing many very characteristic, though small, differences in the single letters. Dibdin in his *Spencerian Catalogue* only mentions that the copy wants eleven leaves, and refers to his "*Typographical Antiquities*," where he describes the Osterley Park copy. According to a written note by Messrs. Longman² attached to the Althorp copy, and to Mr. Blades' account³ of the book, these leaves were the following: 1. Sig. l_j (fol. 98); 2. Sig. r₇ (fol. 152); 3. Sig. r₈ (fol. 153); 4. Sig. T₄ (fol. 357); 5. Sig. T₅ (fol. 358); 6. Sig. ee₃ (fol. 427); 7. Sig. ee₃ (fol. 428); 8. Sig. ee₄ (fol. 429); 9. Sig. ee₄ (fol. 430); and 10. Sig. ee₄ (fol. 431). This statement proved to be not throughout correct, as I discovered when I had done about two-thirds of the text. 1°. There are only nine leaves accounted for. 2°. Sig. ee₃ (fol. 427) is no reproduction, but the original. 3°. Sig. N₃ (fol. 307) and Sig. N₃ (fol. 312) are facsimiles, though not stated as such. The present edition is based on this copy.

John
Rylands?

¹ At the Osterley sale, in May 1885, the British Museum gave a commission of £1800 to their agent, but the copy was sold for £1950. It is very much to be regretted that the English nation lost this splendid specimen of Caxton's printing, containing, as it does, the traditional history of their King Arthur, a national epic.

² This note reads thus:—

Leaves wanting in Caxton's
Morte d'Arthur left with
Messrs. Longman & Co. 21 Feb. 1816.

The whole of l;
Part of r,
The whole of r,
Part of T,
The whole of T,
Part of eeij

A few leaves following to the end of the Work.—LONGMAN & CO.

Also see Note at Nij.

The parts of the leaves in question alluded to in this note must have been removed. I was unable to discover where the "note at N₃" refers to.

³ Blades, vol. ii. page 178: "Imperfect, wanting l_j; r, 7 and 8; T_{iiij} and 5; ee ij. iij, 4, 5 and 6 all of which have been supplied in beautiful facsimiles.

Neither copy has a title.¹ According to Mr. Blades' treatise on Caxton's Typography, the type is No. 4*. The volume is 11½ inches high and 8 inches broad. The lines are all 4½ inches long. Thirty-eight lines make generally a full page, but pages occur with a few lines less, and some with thirty-nine lines. Neither folios nor catchwords are given. Books and chapters commence with woodcut initials, the former with ornamental ones, five lines high; the latter with plain ones, three lines high.² The first leaf of the book is blank. Caxton's preface commences on the second recto, with a three-line woodcut initial. This preface consists of two paragraphs, and finishes on signature iij. On the verso the table of contents, or "rubrysshe," as Caxton styles it, begins, and runs without interruption through thirty-four pages, terminating on the eighteenth verso. The history itself commences on signature a, with an ornamental five-line woodcut initial. The leaves are distinguished by three sets of alphabets, each in eights, intended merely as a direction to the binders, only half of each sheet being marked, in the beginning, alternately, one page with a signature and one without, afterwards four leaves with signatures and four without, these latter being the halves of the signed sheets. In the first alphabet, after z, follows &, also in eights. The second alphabet concludes with Z, and then follow aa, bb, &c., to ee, in eights, but ee has only six leaves, as the book finishes on the verso of ee. R iij is misprinted for sig. S iij, and S ij for T ij. The Althorp copy is beautifully bound in olive morocco by Lewis.

Caxton's helpmate and successor, Wynkyn de Worde,³ printed the next two editions of the "Morte Darthur:" the second in 1498, and the third in 1529, both in folio and black-letter. Only two copies

¹ The title of the present edition is literally repeated from Caxton's colophon (comp. sig. ee, p. 861*, lines 12-18). "Title-pages," says Mr. Blades (vol. i. p. 33), "are purely typographical in their origin, the scribes having satisfied themselves with heading their first page with the *Hic incipit* and name of the treatise. Caxton followed the manuscript practice in this particular; for, with one single exception ('The Chastising of God's Children,' plate Lii. vol. ii.), where the title of the book is printed alone in the centre of the first page, his books appear without any title-page. Wynkyn de Worde adopted title-pages immediately after the death of his master."

² Compare the photographic facsimile specimen page, selected because it illustrates both sorts of initials, as well as some other particulars referred to later on.

³ The title which W. de Worde is supposed to have given to his editions, for his copies also want the title-page, runs thus:

"The Booke of Kynge Arthur and of his noble Knyghtes of the Rounde Table. Printed at Westmestre 1498 folio.

of his impressions are known to exist, fortunately one of each edition. That of 1498 is in Earl Spencer's library, No. 907, and that of 1529 in the Grenville Collection of the British Museum. The first copy, though lacking ten leaves,¹ and having thirteen partly injured by smaller or greater portions of the text being torn away, is of particular interest, as an example of the first attempt ever made of illustrating a text throughout with engravings. These are very coarsely executed woodcuts. Dibdin, who has reproduced several of them in his *Spencerian Catalogue*,² says: "They are very little superior to the

¹ The first leaf of the table; signatures *a*₁; *r*₂; *E*₂; *E*₄; *U*₁; *U*₂; *B*₁; *C*₁; *D*₁; and *E*₂. The damaged leaves are those: *a*₇; *i*₁; *n*₂; *n*₄; *o*₄; *p*₂; *q*₂; *r*₂; *v*₂; *v*₄; *R*₂; *S*₁ and *D*₂. Dibdin also mentions *r*₇ as wanting, but that I found preserved and not damaged.

² (a) Dibdin, "*Bibliotheca Spenceriana*," vol. vi. 403 ff. Lord Spencer's copy has been bound in a very elegant manner in dark-red morocco by C. Lewis. On a visit to Lord Spencer's library on February 1, 1889, at Althorp, I examined this copy and copied as a specimen the last 26 lines, which run thus:

For ye tranſlacōn of this
booke was fynnyſhed . the . ix . yere of the
reygne of kynge Edward the fourth
by Syr Thomas Maleore knyght / as
Ihefu helpe hym^r for his grete myght .
as he is the ſeruaunt of Ihefu bothe
daye and nyghte.

¶ Thus endyth this noble & Ioyous
boke entytled Le morte dathur . Not
wythſtōding it treateth of the ſayd kynge
Arthur of his noble knyght/ of the rounde
table . theyr merueyllous enqueſtes & ad
uentures . thachyeuynge of the Sanc
greall . And in the ende of the dolorous
deth . & departynge out of this worlde
of them al . Whyche boke was reduced
into Englyſſhe by the well dyſpoſyd
knyghte afore namyd . And deuyde .
in to . xxi . bokes chapitred . & enprynt . .
fyrſt by Wylliam Caxton . on wh . . .
foule god haue mercy . A newel . . .
prynted . and chapitres of the ſam . . .
briffhed at Weſtmeftre by Wynk
Worde y^e yere of our lord M.C.
.lxxxxviiij. and ended the .xxv
Marche . the ſame yere.

The points denote that the ends of the lines are damaged.

(b) Dibdin, "*Typographical Antiquities*" (vol. i. pp. 248-52), gives some of the variations from Caxton.

(c) W. C. Hazlitt's "*Handbook*," &c., p. 13.

clumsiest embellishments which distinguish the volumes of the two Coplands; yet to the curious antiquary they have a certain degree of value, and to the bibliographer such a volume, remarkable for the beauty of its execution, as well as for the rarity of its appearance, cannot fail to be held in very considerable consideration." The book is arranged in the following way. Unlike Caxton's, it is printed in columns. The table of contents consists of eight leaves. The ninth leaf is upon sig. ij—as in Caxton's impression—and this leaf and a small portion of the ensuing one—sig. iij—contain a prologue precisely similar to that in Caxton's own volume. The prologue is followed by a summary of the contents of each of the twenty-one books. The text commences on a; the signatures run in three sets: a to v in eights and sixes alternately, v having eight leaves. Then, in Gothic characters, **A**, **B**, **C**, in sixes, **D**, in eights, **E**, in six, **F**, **G**, **H**, in eights, and **I** to **V** inclusively, in sixes; **F** has four, and finally **V** five leaves, the sixth blank leaf probably torn out. The third set, in Roman type—A, B, C, D, E, in sixes; E, being blank.

The British Museum copy,¹ originally in Archdeacon Wrangham's² library, represents the third edition of 1529. It is complete, with the exception of seven leaves of the table of contents and the title-page,

¹ "Bibliographical Memoranda, an Illustration of Early English Literature," Bristol 1816, 4to, p. 398.

² It contains the following manuscript notes, 1° by Mr. Grenville, 2° by Archdeacon Wrangham:—1°. "A singular degree of rarity prevails as to the earlier editions of this romance. It was first printed by Caxton, but the only copy known is wanting twelve leaves and with others much damaged at Althorp. The 2nd edition, by W. de Worde, 1498, is known only in two copies, one perfect, in Lord Jersey's library, the other at Althorp." Mr. Grenville evidently mistook Caxton's for W. de Worde's editions. As far as I could ascertain, there has never been an edition of W. de Worde at Osterley. Compare also C. Hazlitt's "Handbook," p. 13. 2°. "Ames, in his History of Printing, p. 57, Herbert's Edition, enumerates among Caxton's Works, 'La Morte de Arthur,' but Herbert adds:—'I make no question but that Mr. Ames saw the book, but that it is rather extraordinary that he has not told us in whose possession it was, according to his usual custom. I have examined Bibl. Harleiana (it stands, however, No. 372 in Harl. Cat. III. 25), Westiana, Radcliffiana, &c. &c., but have not been fortunate enough to meet with any copy of this Edition or any intelligence where to find one.' But although the above Edition of this curious and interesting Romance from the press of Caxton seems at present unknown, it may be worth stating that it was reprinted by Wynkyn de Worde in 1498 in folio, and also by William Copland without date in the same form. The latter Edition had escaped the research of the illustrious Herbert; but an imperfect copy was purchased by W. Mason at a sale in 1794 for three guineas and a half. It was reprinted by Thomas East without date in folio, and so late as 1634 in quarto. (Beloe's Anecd., i. 43, where see, also, a Memorandum of Dr. Lort's on the year of Caxton's death, 1491.) J. W."

but this defect can easily be supplied, as the contents are repeated before each chapter. The table of contents is printed on signatures aaa_{1-8} , only aaa_8 existing; then follow bbb_{1-8} . The history commences on a , and the signatures run alternately in eights and sixes to v , which has eight leaves. Then follow, in Gothic characters, A, B, C , in sixes, D, E, F, G, H in eights, and I to V in sixes, and finally, Roman characters A to D in sixes, and E with five leaves. On the verso of E , is the ornamental device of the printer, covering almost the whole of the page. The two editions of Wynkyn de Worde do not exactly correspond to each other as concerns the text.¹

The next, or fourth, edition was brought out by William Copland, in the year 1557,² also in columns and folio. The press-work is superior to what is generally observable in works by the two Coplands. The volume has a title-page, running thus :

"The story of the most noble and worthy Kyng
Arthur, the whiche was one of the worthy chrysten, and
also of his noble and valiaunte knyghtes of the rounde
Table. Newly imprinted and corrected. MCCCCIvij.
Imprinted at London by Wyllyam Copland."

There are two copies of this edition in the British Museum ;³ the one is perfect, the other wanting several leaves, which are, however, replaced partly by facsimiles, partly by reprints. On the title-page, above the last line, is a woodcut of a knight on horseback, similar to that of St. George and the Dragon. A woodcut also precedes every book ; after the colophon may be observed the device of the printer. The title and table of contents occupy fourteen leaves. The signatures

¹ The following lines give the beginning of the book as a specimen. The words in brackets are not in the edition of 1498 :—

"Here begynneth the fyrst booke of the [moost] noble [and worthy
prince] kyng . Kyng Arthur sometyme kyng of [grete Brytayne now
called] Englonde [whiche treateth] of his noble actes and feates of armes
[and] of chyalrye . [of] . his noble knyghtes [of the] & table round and
[this volume] is devyded in to . xxi . bookes."

² Dibdin, "Typograph. Antiquities," p. 143.

³ Also one copy in the Huth Library. See Catalogue, vol. i. p. 83. Some of the early cuts, including that of the title, have been illuminated, but the artist fortunately abandoned his task before he had proceeded far

run a to d in eights; e has nine leaves, f to z in eights, and A to O in eights.

Malory's work was then twice printed, once in folio, and once in quarto,¹ by Thomas East, about 1585.² I have not seen a copy of the quarto edition. The folio is in the British Museum—a fine copy, complete throughout. It bears the following title:

"The storye of the most noble and worthy Kynge
Arthur, the which was the fyrst of the worthyys Chrysten,
and also of hys noble and valyaunt knyghtes of the rounde
Table . Newly imprinted and corrected, betweene Paules
wharfe and Baynardes Castell by Thomas East."³

Finally, the "Morte Darthur" was printed for the last time in black letter, in the year 1634, by William Stansby, with the title:

"The most ancient and famous history of the renowned
prince Arthur, King of Britaine. Wherein is declared his
Life and Death, with all his glorious Battailles against the
Saxons, Saracens, and Pagans, which (for the honour of
his Country) he most worthily atchieued. As also, all the

¹ There is one copy also in the Huth Library and another in the library of the Earl of Ellesmere in Bridgewater House. See Collier's Catalogue, page 11.

² Both editions are undated. Thomas East printed, as we know, from about 1560 to 1607. I determined the date 1585 in the following way:—The "Transcript of the Registers of the Company of Stationers of London from 1554 to 1640 A.D." (reprinted privately by E. Arber, 1875) was looked through and the following entry found in vol. ii. fol. 187b:—"Thomas Easte: Receaved of him for his licence to printe these xvj bookes followinge" (then follows a list of sixteen books). Among them is mentioned "King Arthur," and on the same line "Johannes de Vigo." A copy of this latter is in the British Museum, with the genuine date, 1586, attached to it. (Comp. "Catalogue of Books in the British Museum Library to the year 1640," vol. iii. p. 1539.) Thus the book may fairly be dated about 1585, not as the Brit. Mus. Catalogue, vol. i. page 56 states "1560"; this is at least as near as we can get the date.

³ Comp. J. Payne Collier, "A Bibliographical and Critical Account of the Rarest Books in the English Language," 2 vols., London, 1865, p. 31:—"A few of the woodcuts of East's edition are considerably older than the date when he printed; one of them was used by W. de Worde in 1520 before Christopher Goodwyn's poem, 'The Chaunces of a Dolorous Lover.' The block then came into the hands of W. Copland, and having been used by him in his reprint of the 'Morte Darthur' it was subsequently in the possession of East, who applied it to the same purpose in his reprint preceding the 16th book. Thus W. de Worde's 'Dolorous Lover' served the turn, in the hands of Copland and East, to represent a dead man in a white shirt an hundred winters old. At the time the block was employed by East, it had been considerably worn and battered."

Noble Acts, and Heroicke Deeds of his Valiant Knights of the Rovnd Table. Newly refined¹ and published for the delight, and profit of the Reader. London, Printed by William Stanby for Jacob Bloome. 1634."

The work consists of three parts, each having this title separately. Title, preface, and frontispiece occupy four leaves, prologue two leaves, Caxton's prologue one leaf, table of contents five leaves. The first part has signatures A to Z, and Aa to Ii₄, the second A to Z, and Aa to Rr₁, and the third part A to Z, and Aa to Pp₄, all in fours. Caxton's division of the whole, in twenty-one books, is departed from. In each of the parts the chapters are numbered from one to the end. The first book contains cli., the second clxxiii., and the third clxxvi. chapters. There are two copies of this edition in the British Museum.¹ One is quite complete, the other wants the title-page, the preface to the reader, and two leaves of the first part.

Almost two hundred years later (186 exactly) in 1816, the first two editions in Roman type appeared independently from each other, one in two, the other in three volumes 12mo; both being reprints of the last-mentioned black-letter edition of 1634.

The edition in three volumes (F. Haslewood) has the title :

"La Mort D'Arthur, The most ancient and famous historye of the renowned Prince Arthur and the Knights of the Round Table by Sir T. Malory. London. 1816."

and that in two volumes (Walker's British Classics):

"The History of the renowned Prince Arthur, king of Britain with his life and death and all his glorious Battles, likewise the noble acts and heroic deeds of his valiant knights of the round table. London. 1816."

Though both editions are said to be exact reprints, they contain, besides an endless number of mistakes and errors of the worst kind, alterations of the text. In many cases the long "f" has been mistaken for "i," and the "c" for "r," &c. Wright quotes other strange mistakes.

¹ This edition is, as the Catalogue of the Huth Library styles it, "modernised and ignorantly corrupted." Compare my note, p. 13, with regard to the meaning of "newly refined." (Catalogue of the Huth Library, vol. i. p. 53.)

In 1817 there appeared, under Southey's illustrious name, an edition, with the following title :

"The byrth, lyf and actes of kyng Arthur ; of his noble knyghtes of the Rounde Table ther merueyllous enquestes and aduentures thachyeuyng of the sanc greal, and in the end le morte Darthur with the dolorous deth and departyng out of this world of them al. With an introduction and notes by R. Southey. Printed from Caxton's edition, 1485. London, 1817. 8°."

It is supposed to be a scrupulously exact reprint from Caxton's copy in Lord Spencer's library ; but such is by no means the case.¹ Southey wrote the introduction, and gave his name to a bookseller's speculation ; he had nothing whatever to do with the text, the passing through the press of which was entrusted to Mr. Upcott, who, I am inclined to believe, left much to the care of the printers, as the text contains no inconsiderable number of mistakes. And, before all, Lord Spencer's copy still wanted twenty-one pages in 1817, as can be seen from a note by Messrs. Longman, given on page 3, and from the minute pencil paging on the left-hand side of the recto of every leaf. The defect was supplied in a very strange way. Sir E. Strachey, who has investigated this matter thoroughly, writes about it in his introduction thus : "The substitutes for them which actually appear in Southey's edition differ widely from the restored, or the original text. Thus, in chap. xii. of the last book, besides the interpolation of the long passage, 'O ye myghty and pompuous lordes,' &c., which is not in Caxton, there are in the first eleven lines thirty-five variations of spelling and punctuation, besides the introduction of the words 'but continually mourned un—' and 'needfully as nature required,' which are not in Caxton, and the change of Caxton's 'on the tombe of kyng Arthur & quene Gueneuer,' into 'on kynge Arthur's & quene Gweneuer's tombe.' And thus throughout the pages in question—seventeen in number²—

¹ Comp Warton's "History of English Poetry," ed. W. C. Hazlitt. Lond. 1871, vol. ii. p. 189, note 4. Also, Sir Edward Strachey, Introduction, p. xv. London, 1868. 8vo. Globe edition.

² The pages (in Southey's edition) are vol. i. p. 167, line 18, to p. 169, line 17 ; p. 275, third line from bottom, to p. 279, line 5 from bottom ; vol. ii. p. 202, line 13, to p. 204, line 14 ; p. 446, line 5, to end of p. 455.

the spelling constantly, and words and even sentences occasionally, differ from the real text of Caxton.¹

"When at page 113 of volume i. the editor introduces the words 'certayne caufe' to complete the sense, he is careful to call attention, in a foot-note, to the fact that these words are not in the original, but taken from 'the second edition,' by which I presume he means that of 1498. But when he subsequently supplies seventeen pages, which were also not in his original, he gives no hint of the fact; and his reticence has been so successful that for fifty years the interpolations have passed as genuine among learned critics, who have quoted from them passages wholly spurious as Caxton's genuine text. It was only last year that, in collating Earl Spencer's copy with the edition of Southey; I discovered that these passages—to which my attention was directed by Messrs. Longman's note above mentioned—did not correspond with Caxton's text, as represented by Whittaker's restorations; and on afterwards collating them with the Osterley text itself, I found the like result. It remained to trace them to their real sources. This has not been so easy as might be supposed, for though it was evident that Upcott must have had recourse to one or other existing editions, the interpolated passages in fact agree exactly with none of them, but a careful collation of the last four chapters of the book (which include more than half the interpolations, and may be taken as a fair specimen of the whole) with the old texts, leaves no doubt that, with the exception of the first thirty-six lines of chapter x., they were taken, like the two words mentioned above, from the first edition of Wynkyn de Worde (1498) but with spelling occasionally altered, and here and there a small word put in, left out, or changed. These alterations throw an ingenious disguise over the whole; but if we penetrate through this we find that in these four chapters there are only thirteen words differing from those in Wynkyn de Worde's first edition, and these unimportant; while in his second edition (1529), and in those of Copland and East, the variations from Mr. Upcott's text of the same chapters are respectively fifty-seven, fifty-six, and fifty in number, and many of them important in kind: and if we go to the edition of 1634, we find the differences still greater, except as to those

Sir E. Strachey gave an account of these interpolations in the *Athenæum* of Sept. 7 and Dec. 10, 1867, and Feb. 10, 1868.

thirty-six lines supplied from this edition, as they were wanting in the other copy. But the colophon, or concluding paragraph of the book, Mr. Upcott could not take from any of the editions which followed that of Caxton; for though Wynkyn de Worde might, and in fact did, supply at least one or two of the first words, the latter part of his colophon relates to his own edition, and departs widely from that of Caxton, while those in the later editions are still more unlike; and yet Mr. Upcott's colophon is a tolerable, though not an exact, representation of that of Caxton. But his other materials can be ascertained beyond a doubt. They are, the colophon as given by Ames and repeated by Dibdin in a modernised and otherwise inexact form,¹ and that which first appeared in the Catalogue of the Harleian Library,² and was thence copied in the article on Caxton in the 'Biographia Britannica,' and also in Herbert's additions to Ames. The colophons of Ames and of the Harleian Catalogue have important variations from each other and from that of Caxton; and as Mr. Upcott adopts some portions of each which are not found either in the other or in Caxton, we see the manner in which the paragraph in question was compounded. Each stone of the ingeniously fitted mosaic may be referred to the place from which it was taken. We cannot indeed choose positively between Ames and Dibdin, or among the Harleian Catalogue, the 'Biographia Britannica' and Herbert; but as the two paragraphs which are required in addition to that of Wynkyn de Worde are both found in Herbert's Ames, it seems most probable that Mr. Upcott had recourse to that work, though another combination would have served the purpose equally well. That the interpolated passages are not taken from the Osterley Caxton itself, even in the roughest and most careless manner, is quite evident."

In 1856³ follows Thomas Wright's edition, entitled:

"La Mort d'Arthure; The History of King Arthur and of his Knights of the Round Table compiled by Sir Thomas Malory, Knt. edited from the text of the edition of 1634 with introduction and notes by Th. Wright, etc. London. 1856. 8°."

¹ "Typographical Antiquities," by Ames and Herbert, 1785, vol. i. p. 61; *ibid.* enlarged by Dibdin, 1810, vol. i. p. 253. The "Additions" are at the end of vol. iif. of Herbert's edition.

² "Catalogue of the Bibliotheca Harleiana, 1744," vol. iiii. No. 372.

³ A second edition came out in 1866, "carefully revised, and a few errors corrected, and the number of glossarial notes somewhat increased."

Of all hitherto mentioned editions this is the best beyond doubt with regard to accuracy of the text, &c., and when the text of the edition of 1634 is desired, it will be found to answer its purpose everywhere. Besides, there is sound criticism displayed in the introduction, and the notes contain a great deal of most valuable information. Wright says with reference to Malory's work: "A knowledge of it is indeed necessary to enable us to understand the later Middle Ages in one of their important points of view; while it possesses an intrinsic interest, as giving us, in a comprehensive form, a good general sketch of a cycle of romances which through many ages exercised an influence upon literature and art. . . . It has been judged advisable to adopt for the text the latest¹ of the old editions, for it is evident that the choice lay between the last and the first, between this we have selected and that of Caxton; there was no reason why we should not take that of the reprints, which was most readable. This choice was made with less scruples, as no particular philological value is attached to the language of Caxton's edition, which would certainly be repulsive to the modern reader, while all its value as a literary monument is retained in the reprint. On the other hand the orthography and phraseology of the editions of 1634, with the sprinkling of obsolete words, not sufficiently numerous to be embarrassing, preserves a certain clothing of mediæval character, which we think is one of the charms of the book," &c.

Finally, in 1868, Sir Edward Strachey² reprinted Caxton in a modernised edition, entitled:

"Morte Darthur, Sir Thomas Malory's Book of King Arthur and of his Noble Knights of the Round Table. The original edition of Caxton revifed for modern use with an Introduction. London and New York. 1868. 8°. Globe edition."²

¹ I think neither the antiquary nor the philologist will share Mr. Wright's opinion on this subject, especially if he reads what the printer of the edition of 1634 says about his words "newly refined" in his

"Preface to the Reader": "In many places this volume is corrected (not in language but in phrafeology) for here and there king Arthur or some of his knights were declared in their communication to fwear prophane, and ufe superstitious speeches, all (or the most part) of which is either mended or quite left out by the paines and industry of the compositor and corrector of the preffe; so that as it is now, it may passe for a famous piece of antiquity, revived almost from the gulph of oblivion, and rescued for the pleafure and benefit of the present and future times."

² Reprinted, in unaltered form, in 1886.

In his introduction, Sir E. Strachey,¹ besides an essay on chivalry, gives a short account of the origin and matter of the book and describes especially the edition of 1817, as I have mentioned above. Among other things he says: "This present edition is intended for ordinary readers, especially for boys, from whom the chief demand for this book will always come; it is a reprint of the original Caxton with the spelling modernised, and those few words which are unintelligibly obsolete, replaced by others which, though not necessarily unknown to Caxton, are still in use, yet with all old forms retained which do not interfere with this requirement of being readable," &c.²

¹ In my preface to the first volume I have said the Globe edition is "modernised and abridged." As I have seen from an article on this volume in the *Scots Observer* (May 18, 1889), that this statement has been misunderstood, I consider it my duty to say that I hold the opinion that Sir E. Strachey's work perfectly fulfils its purpose,—in fact, it is of all reprints the best; but my term "abridged" is justified: it means that here and there words and little passages are omitted which are not fit for boys and girls to read.—On p. xvii. of his Introduction, Sir E. Strachey says: "The Early English Text Society promise us a reprint (1868!) of the original Caxton, which shall be free from the faults of that of Southey, which meanwhile is, except in the interpolated passages, a very faithful representation of that original for the purposes of the antiquarian and philologist."—I am sorry that I must contradict Sir E. Strachey here. He most likely trusted too much to Southey's authority. I have collated Southey's with the original text of Caxton, and must confess I found no inconsiderable number of errors.

² Besides those reprints, Malory's "Morte Darthur" has appeared modernised and abridged under the following titles:—

1. The Story of King Arthur and his Knights of the Round Table. Compiled and arranged by J[ames] T[homas] K[nowles]. Being an abridgment of "Sir T. Malory's Collection of Legends of King Arthur." With illustrations by G. H. Thomas. London. 1862. 8°.
2. La Morte Darthur. The History of King Arthur. Compiled by T. Mallory. Abridged and revised by E. Conybeare. London. 1868. 8°.
3. La Mort d'Arthur. Abridged from the work of Sir Thomas Malory. The old prose stories whence the "Idylls of the King" have been taken by Alfred Tennyson. . . . ed. with an Introduction by B. M. Ranking. London. 1871. 8°.
4. The Boy's King Arthur, being Sir T. Malory's History of the Round Table. Edited with an Introduction by S. Lanier. Illustrated by A. Kappes. London. 1880. 8°.

In 1886 (London) appeared, as the first volume of the so-called Camelot Classics, an edition of the "Morte Darthur" by Ernest Rhys, under the title "Malory's History of King Arthur and the Quest of the Holy Grail." The text of this edition, however, is not complete, seven out of the twenty-one books in the original edition being omitted, and the reprinted books are modernised and altered from Thomas Wright's edition.

RELATION OF THE DIFFERENT EDITIONS OF
"THE MORTE DARTHUR" TO EACH OTHER.



DR THOMAS MALORY¹ finished the manuscript of his book, according to Caxton's statement, in the ninth year of the reign of King Edward IV.—i.e., about 1470—and he told us from it: "a book of the noble hystories etc. after a copy vnto me delyuerd." All efforts to trace this manuscript in any of the libraries of the United Kingdom or elsewhere, have hitherto proved fruitless, and I think always will; for most likely Malory's manuscript, being intended for the press, existed only in one copy, and this, having been greatly spoiled and damaged during the process of printing, was destroyed after

¹ (a) An almost certain reference to Malory's "Morte Darthur" is found in a book which appeared in 1506, entitled:—

"Pastime of Pleasure, or the History of Graunde Amour and La Bell Pycel: containing the knowledge of the seven Sciences, and the course of man's life in this worlde. Invented by Stephen Hawes, groome of Kyng Henry VII his chamber, dedicated to the king and finished at the beginning of 1506."

In the passage in question (chap. xliii.) Fame appears and promising that she will enroll his name (i.e. Graunde Amour) with those of Hector, Joshua, Caesar, Arthur, etc. says with regard to the latter and his knights that their exploits are recorded "in royal bokes and jesses hyforyall." Comp. Warton, "History of English Poetry," ed. W. C. Hazlitt, vol. iii. pp. 169-188.

(b) Another interesting reference, containing not a very favourable judgment upon the "Morte Darthur," I found in Roger Ascham's book "The Schoolemafter." London. 1570. On p. 81 of The Rev. John E. B. Mayor's reprint of this book (London, 1863) we read:

"In our forefathers tyme, whan Papistrise, as a standyng poole, couered and overflowed all England, fewe bookes were read in our tong, favyng certayne bookes of Cheualrie, as they sayd, for pastime and pleasure, which, as some say, were made in Monasteries by idle Monkes or wanton Chanons; as one for example, Morte Arthure: the whole pleasure of whiche booke standeth in two speciall poyntes, in open mans slaughter and bold bawdrye: In which booke thofe be counted the noblest Knightes, that do kill most men without any quarell, and commit fowlest aduouleres by futeleft shiffes: as Sir Launcelote with the wife of King Arthure his master: Syr Tristram with the wife of Kyng Marke his uncle: Syr Lamerocke with the wife of king Lote, that was his own aunte. This is good stuffe for wise men to laughe at, or honest men to take pleasure at. Yet I know, when God's Bible was banished the Court, and Morte Arthure received into the Princes chamber," &c.

Comp. also Ascham's "Toxophilus." London. 1545. 4°. Preface.

the book was ready. Wynkyn de Worde has evidently printed his edition of 1498 from Caxton's edition, though he does not give any statement to this effect. Either from Caxton's, but more likely from his own, he printed in 1529 his second, in fact the third, edition of "Le Morte Darthur." The copy of this last-mentioned edition, fully described on page 7, was the one from which the variations are quoted, simply because, in the first place, the interval between 1485 and 1498 is very small; and secondly, the copy of 1489 has many deficiencies, while that of 1529 only lacks Caxton's preface, and some passages of the table of contents which can be supplied from the contents preceding the single chapters.

This edition deviates considerably, not only in orthography, from Caxton's, as will be seen from the list of various readings. Words are transposed, now and then added or omitted, and obsolete ones are frequently exchanged for more modern ones.

Whether these variations are introduced by the compositors or by some person who read the proof-sheets must be left undecided, but in some instances the latter seems very probable.

Copland's edition of 1559, the fourth in order, is not, as one would suppose, a reprint from Caxton but from W. de Worde's edition of 1529, which, on collation, was found to agree with it word for word and line for line, but not page for page, owing to the difference in size of the woodcuts which precede each book in the two copies.

About 1585 Thomas East printed his two editions either from W. de Worde or Copland. The similarity of title in Copland's and East's editions inclines me to think that Copland's is the basis.

Finally, the seventh and last black-letter edition, that of Thomas Stansby, 1634, in spite of the different arrangement of the book, some arbitrary alterations and omissions, not to speak of slight differences orthographical and otherwise, is a reprint of East's folio, as the following reasons show: firstly, as already stated by Thomas Wright in his introduction, Stansby's edition wants the contents of one leaf in East's folio edition. (According to Caxton: part of chap. ii., the whole of chap. iii., and almost the whole of chap. iv. of Book XIV.)¹ This leaf bears in East's folio the signature Dd,

¹ Th. Wright has supplied the deficient leaf from Caxton. The editor of the "Morte Arthur" of 1816, in 2 vols., leaves the passage out without mentioning this fact

and has, as well as Dd., the same catch-word, "but." It begins with the words: "but by waye of kyndness and for good," and ends: "for a good horse would beseme you right well but." The coincidence of the two leaves having the same catch-word easily explains the printer's oversight, but at the same time it reveals the mechanical and careless nature of the reprint. Secondly, By the reproduction of some misprints, *i.e.*, in Book XXI. chapter xiii. East prints: "as Iefu helpe *me* for hys grete mygte as *he* is the feruaunt of Iefu both day and night." It ought to run, and so indeed Caxton prints: "as Iefu helpe *him*," &c. Stansby has faithfully reproduced this blunder.

As to the five modern editions, three are reprinted from the edition of 1634—namely, the two 1816 and that of 1856; and two from the original Caxton, that of Southey, 1817, and that of Sir E. Strachey, 1868.

The table on p. 18 gives graphically an idea of the relation of the editions to each other:—

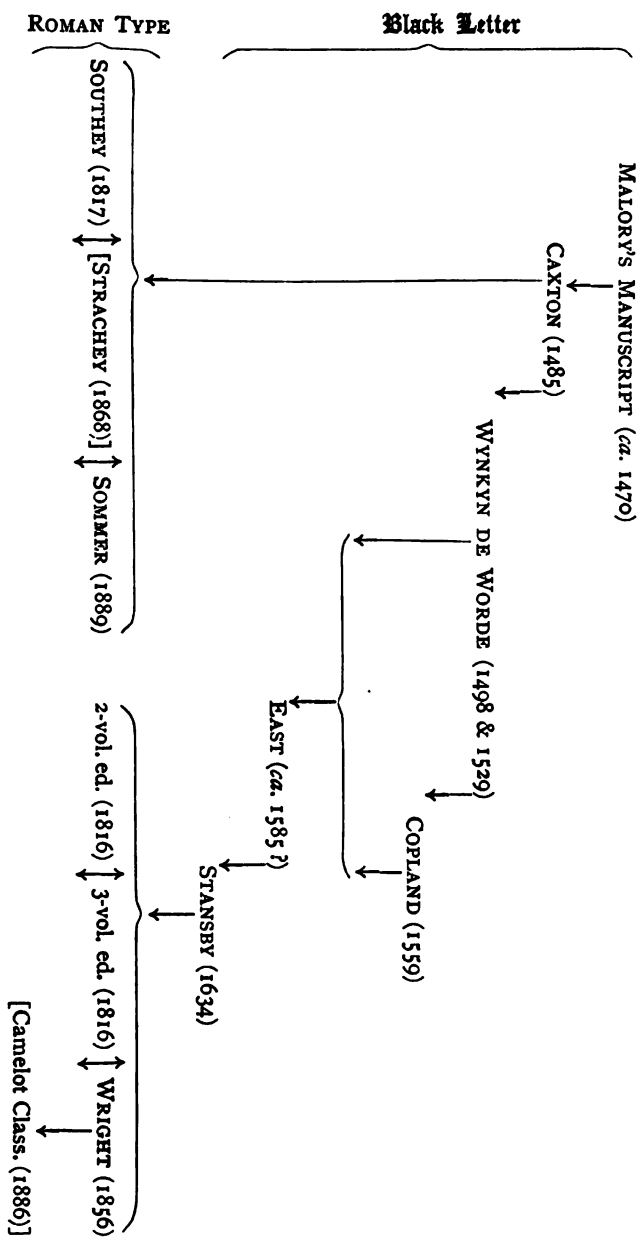
On the Plate facing this page I have, for the sake of illustration, reprinted side by side short passages selected by chance from the principal editions: they will show better than a description the relation the texts bear to one another.

THE PRESENT EDITION.

THE present edition of Malory's "Le Morte Darthur" follows the original impression of Caxton in every respect (save that Roman type has been substituted for Black letter) with absolute fidelity, word for word, line for line, and page for page, and with some exceptions, which are stated below, letter for letter. Black letter has been retained for the chapter headings and at the close of each book, in order to relieve the monotony of the page, but it has not been thought necessary to use Caxton's type in this case. As far as the different type permitted even peculiarities are exactly imitated, *e.g.*,

at all (comp. vol. ii. p. 244). In the three-volume reprint the missing part is supplied, most likely from East's, but with the spelling modernised. The passages in question (pp. 111, 112, 113, 114 of the third volume) are marked by asterisks, but no note or remark alludes to the deficiency.

TABLE SHOWING THE RELATION OF THE EDITIONS OF MALORY'S "MORTE DARTHUR"
TO ONE ANOTHER.



the spacing between books and chapters and in the various lines, the size and position of the initials in wood, the long "f" in the beginning and in the middle of words (those few cases of course excepted where Caxton himself departs from his custom of using the long "f").¹ Thus, wherever the reader opens the present volume he will have a faithful impression of the aspect of Caxton's volume. It is superfluous to add that the orthography has been preserved with scrupulous exactness throughout, and that even the misprints occurring in Caxton's text, with some few exceptions mentioned under No. 6, are to be met with in our impression. All these misprints and irregularities of spelling are marked in a list to which one may refer in any doubtful case. This list also registers the few cases where the present and original editions differ in the spelling of words. To understand, however, thoroughly the principle upon which I have based my edition it is necessary to make the following observations:—

1. Caxton's volume commences with a blank leaf, which, as shown by the signatures, is counted. This leaf is also in the present edition, but it is not counted here, for the simple reason that the coincidence of the signatures in Caxton with the marks of the binders in the present edition should be avoided. Thus, on page 65 the fourth sheet begins, and is marked at the bottom by "E," whereas Caxton's fourth sheet only commences on page 67 (c j).

2. There occur in the impression of Caxton three kinds of "w." (Compare the photographic facsimile: firstly, line 20, in the word "was;" secondly, line 21 in the word "afterward;" and, thirdly, in the same line in the word "toward.") The first kind of "w," according to Mr. Blades,² denotes in type No. 4* the capital "W." Caxton's compositors did not distinguish, as they ought, these "w's" from one another, so that the one denoting "W" frequently occurs in the middle of words and in other places, where it is evidently out of place. I have, therefore, in the present edition, as Roman type does not admit

¹ While preparing the Glossary I noticed, to my great regret, that a few cases in which "f" and "f," have been confounded, have escaped my attention as well as that of three readers at the press. Owing to the minute difference between the two characters, and to the fact that the eye is not trained to distinguish them in an ordinary English text, it is extremely difficult to avoid such mistakes, especially before the paper is pressed, which is generally the case with proof sheets. Fortunately no ambiguity arises from any of these oversights.

² W. Blades' "Typography of Caxton," vol. ii. p. 35, and Plates xviii. and xix.

of marking the three kinds, rendered it by "W" in all cases where capital "W" was to be expected, as in the beginning of a sentence and in proper names, otherwise it is rendered by "w."

3. There are further two styles of "I" used in Caxton's type. (Compare the photographic facsimile, firstly, line 1, and secondly, line 5.) At first it appeared that a difference was made between "i" and "j," but such is not the case; both kinds are used indiscriminately. I have therefore, after some consideration, always rendered it by "I." Moreover, the first kind of "I" occurs more frequently.

4. The character "ȝ" is used in Caxton to express both "z" and "gh." In words where "z" was to be expected I have rendered "ȝ" by "z," otherwise I have preserved "ȝ," *e.g.*, "Cezar" and "knyȝt."

5. Caxton has no fixed rules for dividing words at the end of a line. A word is divided as the space in each special case permits, and as a rule there is no conjunctive hyphen put—*e.g.*, "horfes" is not broken "hor-fes" but "ho rfes." As I found that in many cases mistakes arose from this deficiency, I have for the convenience of the modern reader always added the hyphen where it was to be expected.

6. In some cases where Caxton's compositors evidently confounded "n" with "u," or the reverse, *e.g.*, in "but," I have not reproduced the error. I have done the same in a few cases where "f" and "ff" were confounded, *e.g.*, in "for."

7. In a few cases letters or parts of words are either effaced or did not come out in printing; in such cases the missing matter is supplied in italics, as, for instance, on pages: 203, 25; 221, 17; 251, 33; 258, 34; 271, 26; 274, 14; 304*, 25; 312, 8; 314, 31; 342, 9; 349, 31; 363, 34; 367, 5; 367, 30; 377, 14; 386, 9; 406, 7; 467, 20; 512, 26; 634, 34; 664, 10; 702, 15; 707, 6; 766, 34; 836, 22.

For the convenience of reference the pages and folios, with their rectos and versos, are marked throughout the book, the former at the head, the latter at the foot, of each page. The books and chapters occurring on a page are also indicated at the top; everything, however, not found in the text of the original volume is put in brackets, to preserve, as far as possible, the aspect of Caxton's book. Head-lines are avoided for the same reason, and the various readings, instead of being printed at the foot of each page, are given in a list in the

second volume, and referred to by means of figures (5, 10, 15, etc.) down the outer margin of every page.

The twenty-one pages missing in Lord Spencer's copy, but supplied by Mr. Whitaker's facsimiles, are marked by asterisks added to the paging numerals.

LIST OF ERRORS, OMISSIONS, AND ORTHOGRAPHICAL IRREGULARITIES IN CAXTON'S IMPRESSION.¹

1 18, *for* "kno," *read* know. 2 34, "boookes," bookes.
3 35, "boook," book. 5 8, "boook," book. 6 25, "xvij," xvj.
8 17, "Hrre," Here. 9 2, "lofth ys," loft hys. 11 30, "damofel,"
generally damoyfel; 37, "fy," fyr. 12 20, "boook," book. 14 36,
"hoow," how. 15 20, "triftcum," triftram. 16 21, "lazarote,"
lazarcote. 18 5, "fou3ght," fou3t *or* fought. 27 9, "fauggt," faught.
31 15, "lamentacyn," lamentacyon. 37 20, "nyg3," nyght *or* ny3t.
38 4, "lefey," lefay. 52 15, "Cornewalle," Cornewaile. 55 37,
"poffyng," passyng. 56 31, "here," were. 60 20, "the mand,"
them and; 36, "ruffched," ruffhed. 61 2, "bloood," blood. 62 33,
"dohomage," do homage. 63 10, "Cmyliarde," Camyliarde. 67
31, "af," of. 68 37—69 1, "terme me," ter- me. 74 16, "al one,"
alone. 75 2, "bnt." 78 7, "af," of; 29, "mys fenformed," mysen-
formed. 81 14, "nat," not. 85 23, "the the," the. 86 1, "on on," on
an. 87 30, "werre," werfe; 34, "knyyt," kny3t. 89 19, "Bafdemagus,"
Bagdemagus. 96 25, "yew," yow. 99 6, "handeld," handle;
35, "ouer," euer. 101 6, "Ladegreans," Lodegreans. 110 27, "and
one," on one. 118 11, "Pellinre," Pellinore. 123 38, "fenefcha,"
fenefchal. 132—133, *several words repeated by the compositors.*
134 37, "aduentures," aduenturous. 136 27, "counte ce naun,"
countenaunce. 141 35, "auentures," auenturous. 145 24, "&," x.
147 29, "ef," of. 152 26, "knyghht," knyght. 153 1, 5, "Pellas,"

¹ The first number refers to the page, the second to the line in which the word or words occur. The words marked with inverted commas are such as I found in Caxton, those in ordinary type my corrections, respectively readings. Words marked by asterisks and such in ordinary type with an italic "n" or "u" are such as I have corrected. Those few words marked by a dagger are slips of the press in the present edition.

Pelleas; "Nthurs," Arthurs. 161 26, "counceylleyou," counceylle you; 30, "xy M," xx M. 177 37, "his" *omitted*. 180 17, "wes," was; 31, "rotorned," returned; 32, "for," for. 188 31, "hxm,"* hym. 186 21, "an," on. 187 10, "caaas," cafe; 31, "laake," lake. 189 21, "good," good. 190 35, "&," *superfluous*. 194 15, "Turquyne," Launcelot. 197 34, "for," for. 201 30, "feythe," feythe. 206 8, "Ryyght," Ryght. 207 4, "loue," leue; 14, "of of," of. 209 30, "founed," fwouned. 210 16, "three," there; 32, "hrs," his. 211 1, "and," in. 215 30, "whyffonday," whytfonday. 217 14 and 220 2, "Beumayns," Beaumayns. 233 34, "aftir," after. 235 12, "Noo," Now. 242 20, "te," to. 245, "Cap. xxij," Cap. xxj. 247, *last line a repetition of first line* 248. 248 38—249 1, "ye" *omitted*. 250 27, "knyghtes," knyghtes. 251—252, "xxv" *omitted in the numbering of chapters*. 253 33, "Arthurle te," Arthur lete. 254 29, "haue" *omitted before* "the degre." 255 29, "shal" *omitted before* "haue." 256 15, "Ilelys," Iles or Ilys. 258 30, "encountred" *omitted before* "with"; 34, "Launcelot," Lamorak. 261 32, "gym," hym. 265 1, "Thenme," Thenne; 10, "hem," hym. 266, "xxiiij," xxxiiij; 30, "do," done. 269 26, "maryge," maryage. 270 28, "on," an. 271 4, "dukde," duk de. 272 8, "knowm," knowen. 274 5, "gis," his. 282 23, "neuw," eme. 284 20, "fenefcal," fenefchal. 285 10, "arryuayl," arryual. 291 6, "Tcyftram," Tryftram 38, "he þt," þt he. 297—298, "defende" *omitted between* "knyghte" and "thysel." 305* 26, "racreaunt," recreaunt. 306* 20, "of the best" *omitted after* "one." 311 19, "my," thy. 312 19, "lady les," ladyles. 314 16, "herborouh," herborough. 316, "xix," xxix. 318 11, "an," on. 320 23, "thr," the; 25, "possyng," passyng. 321 28, "flee," fle. 324 1, "ore," fire; 20, "Noo," Now. 330 6, "they"† *omitted before* "coude"; 27, "kay hedyus," kehedyus; 29 "roofe," roofe. 331 21, "Tdeftram," Triftram. 334 23, "he," they. 338 6, "myn," thyn. 347 15, "at euery stroke" *superfluous*. 349 5, "fupoofed," suppoofed; 10, "Launucelot," Launcelot; 12, "vnto," vntil. 351 22, "nyyhe," nyghe. 357 6, "Ryyght," Ryght; 25, "moder," broder. 358 16, "dn," and. 363 6, "thye," they; 29, "Ifoud, Ifoud. 371 29, "was" *repeated*. 373, "xiiij," xxiiij; 1, "kyng Mark," fyr Triftram; 2, "nad," and. 374 25, "fperd," spere. 376 22, "feaufship," felaufship. 378 16, "what" *repeated*. 379 35, "gayne," gawayne. 380, "xvij," xxvij. 382 10, "gooldis," goold

is. 383, "xix," xxix. 385 10, "Northaglys," Northgalys; 15, "it a" *omitted before* "fhame." 386 33, "feaufship," felaufship. 387 10, "there," theyr; 31, "theil," their. 390 22, "ye," he. 400 26, "thrnne," thenne. 403 5, "pryny." 409 30, "we" *omitted before* "to fpeke." 410, "xliij," xliij; 33, "meruyylled," merueyyled. 413 12, "lynyng." 415 9, "is" *repeated*; 10, "bataiylle," bataylle; 36, "couuceyille." 428 27, "Berlnfe." 430 34, "Dyuadan." 432 11, "was" *or* "hym" *superfluous*; 24, "rateyng," raceyng. 437 24, "Tdeftram," Triftram. 438 24, "grane." 439 17, "t" *omitted in* "lygh- ly." 441 2, "adone," adoo. 443 17, "done," do. 449 34 "boook," book. 450 30, "man," may. 454 7, "adnventure." 456 25, "Queneuer," Gueneuer. 458 2, "by" *omitted before* "kyng." 462 23, "your," our. 464 3, "blod," blood; 12, "aud." 464 24, "Elyas," Elyot. 470 20, "&" *omitted after* "Malgryn." 471 17, "kny3," kny3t. 473 2, "he" *repeated*. 475 9, "kuyghtes." 476 13, "pilggrym," pilgrym. 477 8, "deperked," departed. 478 27, "faið" *omitted before* "the queen." 483 28, "Bleoberys," Blamore; 32, "the" *omitted before* "nose"; 33, "therecam," there cam. 484 8, "Bagdemagns." 486 33, "Elyfe," Elyfes. 487 36, "conenable," couenable. 489 9, "dyuer." 490, "xlv, xlvj, xlvij" *omitted in the numbering*; 8, "to" *omitted before* "the felde." 491 7, "Kyuge." 492 15, "one" *repeated*. 494 37, "kyny,"* kyng. 497 16, "Percyuole," Percyuale; 27, "Dyanas,"† Dynas; 33, "pntte." 500 20, "to" *repeated*. 503 4, "Brufe," Breufe; 16, "ener." 504 2, "for," with; 32, "wyhle," whyle. 506 36, "do do," to do. 511 10, "knyeght," knyght; 36, "wherr," where. 515 19, *after* "fuche" "chere" *is evidently omitted*. 516 13, "v,"* a. 518 12, "Palomyders," Palomydes. 521 16, "an" *omitted before* "houre"; 24, "Arthnrs"; 26, "knygyte," knyghte; 29, "Lamorck," Lamorak. 529 16, "af," of. 531 20, "we" *superfluous*. 534 4, "Bleberys," Bleoberys. 535, "lxxij," lxx; 1, "as" *omitted before* "I maye"; 4, "I" *omitted before* "fhalle." 536 4, "make," made. 538 5, "Palomydes," Launcelot. 541 23, "Palmydes," Palomydes; 35, "parfon," perfon. 543 2 *and* 31, "Dorkeney," Orkeney. 545 12, "cammaundement," commaundement. 548 33, "yours," your; 34, "nenam" (?). 553 13, "pilled"; 33, "knygthode," knyghthode. 554 3, "Launceloot," Launcelot; 33, "Trifram," Triftram. 555 7, "do," done; 13, "downe"; 15, "kyuge." 556 33, "Blebeorys," Bleoberys. 558 15,

"tabble," table. 559, "lxviiij," lxxxiiij; 33, "Helynor," Helyor. 561 30, "Epyuogrys." 568 33, "knyytes," knyȳtes. 564 12, "Thenye," Thenne. 566 9, "vppn," vppon. 568 5, "payd" *superfluous*; 25, "retornod," returned. 569 1, "launcelot," palomydes; 9, "ententente," entente. 572 11, "word," world. 574 8, "Queneuer," Gueneuer; 19, "kuewe"; 22, "man ere," manere; 31, "Elaye," Elayne. 575 12, "f shehalle," she shalle; 18, "teld," told. 576 28, "Theune"; 29, "meruelle," merueyll. 577 15, "aduentures," aduenturous. 579 23, "owne," one. 580 24, "rebellions"; 29, "wile," wille. 581 24, "counteuauunce." 582 10, "lanncelot." 585 19, "their," her. 587 26, "brodr," broder. 589 38, *after* "vp-" "on" *omitted*. 590—591, "of" *omitted before* "yow." 591 10, "renne" or "mette" *omitted*. 592 1, "n lyuote" not lyue. 598, "boooke," booke. 596 30, "tho," go. 598 37, "honre." 599 34, "kuowe." 600 32, "be" *omitted after* "ye." 604 8, "fyten," † fyften. 608 2, "aud"; 36, "that," shalt. 609 27, "senfship," shenfship. 614* 6, "thenue"; 28, "marhel," marbel. 616 8, "Abarimathye," Arimathye; 32, "is" *omitted before* "he"; 33, "but he" *repeated*. 618 21, "aduenturrs," aduentures. 620 11, "an other," on other. 623* 6, "perceyne." 624 17, "left," best; 22, "beynge," brynge. 625 16, "good," god; 33, "greto," grete. 626 21, "meeueyll," merueyll; 28, "Ioheph," * Ioseph. 628 24, "loned." 629 34, "fane." 632 5, "thy," the. 633 9, "kayes," keyes. 639 3, "ornot," * or not. 640 11, "morr," more. 641 7, "hard" *probably omitted after* "more." 642, "whiches," whiche is; 15, "recluse," recluse; 18, "commawded." 647 8, "came" *repeated*. 649 16, "be," † he. 650 34, "flay," flay. 651 31, "a" † *omitted*. 658 3, "loetryd," * entryd; 4, "nt," * not. 659 34, "et," † at. 660 24, "knygthode," knyghthode. 664 19, "his" *repeated*. 666 26, "douue"; 27, "of" † *omitted before* "full." 667 36, "thotherr," thother. 669 1, *some words omitted*; 25, "Thenue." 670 27, "aduenturr," aduenture. 678 16, "fyghto," * fyghte; 25, "gonerne." 677 24, "knyȳght," knyght or knyȳt. 679 14, "lauucelot." 680 10, "abone," above; 31, "Aud." 682 38, "floure." 685 19, "one" *superfluous*. 687 11, "sheltes," sheldes. 689 28, "Thns." 691 37, "he" *omitted after* "Certes." 693 26, "werfor," wherfor; 34, "fhyphthat," that fhyph. 694 33, "aad myghde," and myghte. 695 1, "we," the; 10, "bnt." 696 1, "hym" *superfluous*; 16, "brauuche"; 27, "Caym,"

Cayn. 703 29, "kuowe." 705 13, "haue" *omitted after* "we." 710 16, "harme," arme; 20, "fay u," ? faire. 711 38—712 1, *a repetition*. 719 1, "his" *omitted before* "other." 723 16, "me," *probably omitted after* "refembled." 725 15, "hie," his. 733 28, "doth," do. 733 35, "wyncheſter," Weſtmefre. 736 31, "quene," kyng. 737 20, "knytes," knyghtes. 739 4, "launcolot," launcelot. 741 14, "theire," there. 742 2, "kymge,"* kyng. 743 33, "fkynne," (?) kynne. 744 35, "Aud"; 37, "ener." 747 21, "ſeruauytes," ſeruantes. 751 22, "yf," of. 752 21, "me," (?) hym. 754 8, "Tlerfor,"* Therfor. 759 20, "goood," good. 762 29, "launcelat," launcelot. 764 27, "thy," the. 765, "xx," xxij. 766, "xxij," xxiiij; 7, "Inge." 768 13, "Arthr," Arthur. 769 6, "is" *after* "where," *or* 7, "haue been" *omitted after* "blood." 776 26, "were" (?). 777 10, "tabbe,"* table. 778 2, "Melliagaunce," Melliagraunce; 30, "zere" (?) ("ere," W. de Worde). 782 34, "rmoure." 788 25, "bnt." 790 15, "fo,"* of. 790—791, *a repetition*. 792 13, "Triftram," Gawayn; 23, "treuchaunt." 798 26, "Agrauayye," Agrauayne. 799 26, "dyd," hyd (?). 802 8, "raſſyng," (?) raſſhyng. 803 38, "wan," than. 804 32, "a a," a. 805 15, "theyir," theyr. 806 37, "Arthue,"* Arthur; 38, "be" *repeated*. 811 6, "myhapped," myſhapped. 813 30, "your," you. 820 31, "ou." 823, "xiiij," xv; 7, "a" *omitted before* "bold." 828 38, "fpap," fpak. 830, 11, "Neroneus" (?); 19, "Snrlat." 837 33, "Gawyns," Gawayns, 838 14, "nerre," nere. 840 18, "Launcelot," Gawayn. 842 24, "a" *superfluous after* "For." 843 34, "that" *omitted before* "loued." 845 1, "vaynquyſſhe," vanyſſhe. 846 19, "lyne." 848 6, "fowned," fwowned; 24, "fad," fayd; 28, "fef,"* felf. 850 3, "thon"; 9, "af," of; 17, "demyng," demyng; 35, "nener"; 35, "boookes," bookes. 851 5, "Nynyue," *generally* "Nymue." 853 31, "your"; 35, "fewe,"* fewe. 854 38, "fofaken," forfaken. 858* 12, "bnt." 861* 1, "book" *repeated*.

RESULT OF THE COLLATION OF WHITTAKER'S FACSIMILES WITH THE ORIGINAL PAGES.¹

 HE following table shows how far Whittaker succeeded in reproducing the original in his facsimile pages. In the first column are quoted the readings of Lord Spencer's copy as I have reproduced them in my text; the second column shows the readings of the only perfect copy, once at Osterley, now in America.

Leaf l₁ [pages 195 and 196*]*

FACSIMILES.	ORIGINALS.
<i>recto</i> : 5 doe	doo
8 roffhyng	raffhyng
13 bespeckled	besperkled
25 leue	lene
29 myztest	myztyeft
35 fore	fayre
— manayr	manoyr
<i>verso</i> : 12 manore	manoir
23 fays	fayd

Leaf r₁ [pages 303 and 304*]*

<i>recto</i> : 28 palfray	palfroy
34 corne	torne
— xxj	xxij
<i>verso</i> : 8 faunte	faunce
11 reyentyd	repentyd
25 fal wed	falewed
29 fyonas	lyonas

Leaf r₈ [page 305]

<i>recto</i> : 26 racreaunt	recreaunt
30 worlde	world

¹ Leaves: r₁ verso [page 306*]; N₁ recto [613*]; N₁ recto [623*]; ee, recto [855]; ee, verso [857*] and ee, recto [861*] are faultless.

Leaf N₃ [page 614]*

FACSIMILES.		ORIGINALS.
<i>verso</i> :	8 faith	faid
	28 marhel	marbel

Leaf N₈ [page 624]*

<i>verso</i> :	22 beynge	brynge
	29 sheef	shoef

Leaf T₄ [pages 713 and 714*]*

<i>recto</i> :	10 enchere	encheue
	24 bere	bare
<i>verso</i> :	8 ye	yo
	22 twelue	a twelue
	33 escared	escaped

Leaf T₆ [pages 715 and 716*]*

<i>recto</i> :	2 Gatahad	Galahad
<i>verso</i> :	5 departede	departed

Leaf ee₃ [page 856]*

<i>verso</i> :	18 Bleoheris	Bleoberis
	— Clarras	Clarrus
	14 Gohaleaniyne	Gahalantyne
	16 laft	luft
	18 preefthod	preefthode
	21 bodoly	lowly
	29 then	thou
	30 parouey	puruey
	37 fore	fote

Leaf ee₄ [page 858]*

<i>verso</i> :	17 wekye	wekyes
	24 houe	haue

FACSIMILES.		ORIGINALS.
<i>verso</i> :	25 So	Se
	29 hamborow	bamborow
	36 bedd	bedde
<i>Leaf ee, [pages 859* and 860*]</i>		
<i>recto</i> :	10 proue	preue
	18 togydere	togyders
	20 bernnyng	brennyng
<i>verso</i> :	12 brefte	reefte
	25 Wyllats de balyaunt	Wyllars de valyaunt
	— Clartus	Clarrus
	29 countreys	countreyes

Previous to the first issue of his Globe edition in 1867 Sir Edward Strachey collated his text of the Southey edition (of course only the doubtful pages), not only with Whittaker's facsimiles, but also with the originals then still at Osterley. He kindly sent me his volumes to London, and thus enabled me to check the American collation. According to Sir E. Strachey, we have to read : Page 305* 33, "hit," *for* it ; 855* 6, "erthyly," erthly ; 858* 20, "cryften," chryften ; 35, "that," then ; 859* 14, "&," and ; 860* 29, "cuntreyes," countreyes ; 39, "hoole," booke.

NOTES ON THE LANGUAGE OF "LE MORTE DARTHUR."

 HE language in which Sir Thomas Malory's "Le Morte DARTHUR" has come down to us in Caxton's imprint offers many peculiar features, and cannot fail to be of interest and value to the philologist. It would be a useful and meritorious task to treat the whole of Caxton's numerous volumes with regard to their linguistic peculiarities ; in short, to write a Caxton-grammar similar to those of the language of Chaucer¹ and Shakspeare.² This

¹ B. ten Brink, "Chaucer's Sprache und Verskunst." Leipzig, 1884, 8vo.

² E. A. Abbot, "A Shakspearian Grammar : an Attempt to illustrate some of the Differences between Elizabethan and Modern English." London, 1870, 8vo.

suggestion can, of course, only be realized when trustworthy editions of all the works issued from the press of the first English printer are within the reach of every scholar.¹ Time and space only allow me to note in brief the most characteristic examples of Caxton's orthography, phraseology, and syntax which attracted my attention during the compilation of the Index and Glossary.

If we adopt the common division into three periods of the English language—viz., Old English till 1250, Middle English till 1485, and from thence onward Modern English—our text belongs (taking in consideration that it was in manuscript in 1474, eleven years before it saw the light of day) either to the close of Middle English or to the opening of Modern English. And, indeed, whilst resembling in many respects the familiar language of Chaucer's poetry, it has also a marked modern colouring, and is akin to the language of Shakspeare and his predecessors. Being thus the product of a period of transition and change, it is not surprising to find on every page, in every line, the strife of ancient and modern forms. No uniform orthography existed at that time, and the art of printing, still in its infancy, was incapable of effecting such an innovation.

Just as the first printed books closely resemble the manuscripts they were intended to replace, so their language is like that of the manuscripts, the orthography is that of the individual scribe, and here and there abbreviations and contractions occur, though not to the same extent as in the manuscripts.

Caxton's orthography, as I prefer to call it, instead of Malory's, believing that Malory's text underwent a considerable change while passing through the press, is, to say the least of it, most remarkable; what it is like can be best seen from some examples.

The Modern English word *means* occurs in the following different spellings:—1. "menes" (394 35); 2. "meane" (11 30); 3. "moyne" (16 11); 4. "moyan" (10 23); 5. "moyane" (6 4).

Realm is spelled: 1. "reame" (39 34); 2. "royame" (11 2);

¹ Dr. L. Kellner, in his forthcoming edition of Caxton's "Blanchardyn & Eglantyne" (Early-English Text Society), of which he kindly submitted to me some proof-sheets of the opening pages of the Introduction, has devoted himself to the study of Caxton's syntax. He quotes not only from his text, but also from the "Foure Sonnes of Aymon," ed. by Miss O. Richardson (E.-E. T. S.), 1885, and from my edition of "Le Morte Darthur." To judge from what I have seen of it, his work will be a most valuable contribution to the study of the English tongue.

3. "reaume" (45 8); 4. "royalme" (4 11); 5. "realme" (67 5); 6. "royaume" (160 15).

Thorough: 1. "thorough" (1 12); 2. "thorowe" (37 16); 3. "thorou" (235 16); 4. "thurgh" (59 12).

Hair: 1. "hayre" (657 16); 2. "hayr" (27 27); 3. "heyre" (362 19); 4. "here" (83 22).

Whither: 1. "whyder" (378 10); 2. "whydder" (702 28); 3. "whyther" (384 15); 4. "whether" (219 15); 5. "wheder" (297 21).

The Glossary will disclose many more examples of a similar character.

Many words which in Modern English differ in meaning and orthography are spelled alike in Caxton: *e.g.*, "here" (*to hear*); "here" (*the hair*), "here" (*here*); "hede" (*the head*), "hede" (*heed*); "herte" (*heart*), "herte" (*hart*); "mete" (*meat*), "mete" (*meet, fitting*), "mete" (*to meet*); etc.

Compounds of different particles which generally form one word nowadays are written in two: *e.g.*, "to gyder"; "by nethe"; "by caufe"; likewise all pronouns with "self," as "her self"; "hym self." In Caxton "self" has no plural, or rather the plural *selves* is always spelt like the singular (comp. 389 6; 198 12). The same is the case with "other," which is also plural and singular (305 12; 361 12; 446 13).

The termination "er" occurs both in the Saxon and in the Norman form: "hongre," "honger."

The final mute "e" is more frequently used than in Modern English: "fente"; "grene"; "hande"; "owne"; "rede"; "none."

Words are not divided according to syllables or roots and terminations, but according to the space. The conjunctive-hyphen is rarely employed.

The prefixes "be-" ("bi-" or "by-"), "for-," "to-," and "male" often occur where unused nowadays, and are mostly separated from the verb.

"*be-*": "bebled" (294 12); "bybledest" (176 33); "beclofed" (601 2); "bedaffhed" (773 31); "befalle" (420 34), etc.; for others see the Glossary.

"*for-*": "forbled" (350 26); "fordone" (384 32); "fordyd" (99 3); "forfende" (727 8); "forfendyd" (727 13); "forfoughten" (87

25); "foriufsted" (421 30); "forthynketh" (82 2); "forwounded" (350 26).

"male": "male engyne" (733 16); "male eafe" (338 2); "male fortune" (392 21).

"to-": "to braft" (204 20); "to cratched" (583 14); "to-forne" (247 20); "to hewe" (338 9); "to rofe" (330 29); "to fheuered" (481 12).

The prefixes "dis-" and "es-" occur once each in a short form: "fcomfyte" (146 38) for "difcomfyte"; "fcape" (92 33) for "efcape."

Two cases are noticeable in which the prefix has been separated from the verb and placed at the end of the sentence.

"for ye haue the water to paffe ouer" (632 22).

"and wold haue ronne fir Triftram thurgh" (526 4).

Something very similar takes place with the preposition *toward*: It is separated, *to* preceding, and *ward* following the noun or pronoun: "to the death ward" (70 27); "to y^e Iuftes warde" (41 12); "comyng to hym warde" (27 17); but at the same time we find examples like the use in Modern English: "toward the caftel" (379 2).

The following contractions are used:—

1. The article "the" with the initial vowel or even "h" of its noun: "themperour"; "tharchbyffhop"; "thabite"; etc.

2. The preposition "to" with the initial vowel of the verb: "tenprynte"; "telcape"; etc.

3. The preposition "at" with the article is contracted in "atte"; "atte requeste"; "atte turnement"; sometimes, however, the form "atte," or "att," and the article occur: e.g., "att the caftel" (408 9); and with the indefinite article: "att a pryuy pofterne" (403 9).

4. The negative "not" with the present tense of to be: "nys"="is not" (127 6; 219 35; 538 4; 748 20).

5. The negative with the present and imperfect tenses of to will: "nyll"="wyll not" (297 32; 506 2); "nylt"="wylt not" (641 17); "nold"="wold not" (705 31).

6. The negative with the present tense of "weten" (to know): "nyft"="he wyft not" (729 12; 677 3).

The old prefix of the past participle, "y," only occurs four times: "y fonde" (699 35); "y barryd" (780 27); "y fette" (822 32); "y fought" (754 1).

Finally I must mention a number of words which are either adopted

from the French originals in their proper form or disfigured. Such are: "peramour," "paramour"; "per-" or "paraenture"; "maulgre," "malgre," "maugre"; "per de," "per di," "par dieu"; "roche"; "lesses les aler" (*herald's cry*); "pounte."

The epithets of many proper names: "le breune"; "faunce pyte"; "de les yles"; "les auoultres"; "le fyfe de roye"; "le" or "la blaunche maynys"; "le" or "la beale"; "le fyfe vayfshoure"; "maledyfaunt"; "bien penfaunt, beau viuante"; "le fyfe de dieu," once corrupted "le fyfe dene"; "le" or "la cote male tayle"; and finally, "le morte darthur," etc. It is remarkable that the definite article of the masculine and feminine genders is constantly misapplied.

Some cases may also be mentioned where the French and the Saxon form of the same word are placed in a pleonastic way beside one another, the first forming a sort of adverb for the second: "oute excepte" (102 11); "enuyronne aboute" (628 12); and "vnmefurably oute of mefure" (640 22).

Whilst the orthography of common names is thus often perplexing, this is still more the case with personal names. The name of the same person occurs in such different spellings that it is often difficult to identify its bearers, and in many cases it can only be guessed at from the context. Some examples will speak best:

"Mellegaunt" (479); "Malegeaunt" (480); "Melyagaunt" (482), "Melyagaunce" (356); "Melyaganus" (257); "Mellyagraunce" (780); are all names of the same man.

"Berlufes" (436); "Berlyfes" (*ibid.*); "Berfules" (423); and "Berlufe" (427).

The lady or "damoyfel" of the lake is called "Nymue" (115), and "Nyneue" (118).

Another knight, "Gromere Gumorfon" (258), *i.e.*, son of *Gumor*, is called elsewhere "Grumore gummursum" (256), and very likely the form "Gromore somyr Ioure" (799) is another corruption, as it only occurs once. Indeed, the names offer many difficulties, and I was not surprised to find that Sir Edward Strachey, the only one of the previous editors of "Le Morte Darthur" who ever attempted to compile an Index of Names and a Glossary, has made many mistakes in his Index. He speaks of three "Gromeres," whereas they are all one and the same person. He mentions two "Vryens," whereas there is only one: "King Vryence," or "Vriens of the land of Gore,"

husband of "Morgan le fay." The same error occurs with "Gracian," "Grastian," and "Gratian"; "Epinegris," "Epynogrys"; "Gillemere" and "Gilmere"; "Lamerake of Wales" and "Lomarake of Galis"; "Melyot de Logres" and "Melyot de Logurs"; "Neroneus" and "Nerouens"; "Pertilope" and "Pertolepe"; and some others.

The numerous epithets are most puzzling: "the valyaunt," "the son of," "the aduenturous," and the like. Persons often have epithets characteristic of others, and the same person has different epithets; of course this caused much confusion. There are, for instance, two "Galahads," "Galahalts," or "Galahaults," one the son of "Launcelot" and "Elayne daughter of King Pelles"; the other, son of "Sir Breunor of Surlufe." Both are surnamed "the haute prynce." In "Vwayne's" case the reverse takes place; he has three different epithets. In the first two hundred pages he figures without any epithet, later on he is once "Vwayne les auoutres," once "le fyfe de roy Vreyne" (comp. Index of Names, etc.), "les aduenturous," "le" or "la blaunche maynys," etc.¹ In the "table or rubryffhe" and once in the text (page 38) his name is spelled "Ewayne le blaunche maynys." Sir Edward Strachey in his Index has three different persons.

Names of places afford still more difficulty. Not to speak of the poor geographical and chronological knowledge of those days that identifies "Camelot" with "Winchester," or that speaks of a *Westminster Bridge* in the fifth century, the spelling of the names of cities, countries, etc., is so bad, and the original names are so much disfigured, that in many cases it is, despite the greatest efforts, absolutely impossible to identify them. Compare, for instance, on page 163 the enumeration of the different parts of the Roman Empire: "Arrage"; "Ambage"; "Cayer"; "Ertayne"; "Pounce"; "Cateland"; etc. etc.

After these general remarks I proceed to enumerate a few of my observations, which must not be supposed to exhaust the subject.

I. The personal pronoun of the second person of the plural is rendered in Caxton by "ye" and "yow," the former representing the nominative, the latter the accusative; if there should be met anywhere "ye" for the accusative it is most probably a mistake

¹ Compare text, page 667, lines 32 and 33: "Vwayne les auoutres that fometyne was fone of kynge Vryens"; and page 401, 5-6: "V. le fyfe de roy Vreyne / and fomme callid hym le blaunche maynys."

due to the compositors, who misinterpreted the abbreviation in the manuscript.

My is invariably rendered by "myn": "myn ende" (755 32); "myn vnhappyne" (753 22).

It is generally spelt "hyt" or "hit" (61 5; 148 6); *them* is replaced by "hem" (85 21; 631 26); and *their* is written "her" (643 25; 816 11).

Hym felf stands for *he*: "and the noble name that hym felf had" (567 5); and *he* stands for *hym felf*: "he weneth no knyght so good as he" (202 11).

These, the plural of *this*, occurs in the form "this": "this thre yere" (61 21); "this feuen yere" (207 16).

Which is both a relative and an interrogative pronoun, and refers to persons as well as things: "whiche was fomtyme the rycheft woman of the world" (652 31).

Who, or *he who*, is mostly rendered by "the whiche": "Ban thy fader the which was" (660 17).

That what is rendered by "that that": "for now I fee that that hath ben my defyre" (723 8).

In many cases the relative pronoun is entirely omitted, an infrequent usage in Modern English; some examples will best illustrate the practice.

"There is no maker can reherce the tenthe parte" (562 32); "fende hym a gyfte shalle please hym" (101 2); "a knyght wold fyghte for hym" (127 8); "found one was fair and ryche" (84 5); "for here ar no moo wille haue adoo with me" (443 5); "for there is no tonge can telle the Ioye" (708 34); "there was a monke broughte him vnto a tomb" (627 31).

What is sometimes used for *some* or *any*: "*what* by land *what* by water" (556 19); "delyuer hym to *what* poure man ye mete" (39 7).

Each other or *one another* occurs in the following forms:—1. "*other*": "they smote other in the sheldes" (97 8); 2. "*eche other*," either separated or together: "eche salewed other" (659 28); "eche of hem drefid to other" (109 37); "how ij bretheren flewe eche other" (98 27); 3. "*eueryche other*": "wounded eueryche other dolefully" (97 21); 4. "*eyther other*": "wounded eyther other" (142 32); finally, 5. "*to gyder*": "they loued to gyder" (707 25); "they kyffed to gyder" (725 19).

Both, written "*bothe*," is mostly placed at the end of the sentence: "vnto my grete dommage and his bothe" (134 10); "I am so hurte and he bothe" (134 11); "bothe his hors and he" (accusative!) (112 30); "conserue me and you bothe" (709 35).

Al, alle (= altogether) is used adverbially in order to give more stress; it has the sense of *entirely*: "al only" (832 16; 573 26); "al dede" (715* 33); "tale al hole" (855* 26); "al to long" (133 2); "alle to hewe hym" (513 9); "braft it vpon hym alle to sheuers" (554 14); "were foughten wyth al" (29 14)

The imperative is frequently followed by the pronoun.

II. The Saxon or possessive genitive is used more frequently than to-day, and with regard to things as well as to persons. There are different ways in which it occurs. 1. *s* is added to the nominative, the use of the apostrophe being entirely unknown, the *s* being considered as a remainder of the old genitive: "Lots wyf" (425 12); "Bryfens wytte" (573 34); "mans herte" (670 21); names terminating in *s* remain unchanged: "Pelles doughter" (612 11). 2. *es* is added to the nominative¹: "Mordredes wyllle" (839 15); "Cadores fone" (860* 17); "mennes bodyes" (52 22). 3. *ys* (*is*) is added to the nominative: "childis" (37 3); "Markys party" (463 30); "Tyrreis fhelde" (749 15); "Percyualis fyfter" (91 28). In the plural no *s* is added: "lyftes ende" (734 33); "feuen kynges Realmes" (814 14); "knyghtes names" (101 31).

A few instances occur where the *s* is omitted in the singular: "atte brydge foote" (589 17); "at the raunge ende" (573 34); and "fir Patryse dethe" (733 13).

The plural of nouns is formed by the addition of "*s*," "*es*," and frequently "*ys*" or "*is*." Such plurals are: "handys" (61 29); "fallys" (477 5); "gatys" (459 37); "dedys" (838 13); "membrys" (649 34); "ornementys" (711 16); "complayntys" (562 31); "meanys" (840 14); "buryellys" (851 11); "lordis" (829 23); and many others.

Many abstract nouns only used in Modern English in the singular occur in the plural, such as: "valyaunces, prowesses, appertyces" (173 14); "adyfes" (308 14); "wronges" (373 12); "ententes"

¹ Cases like the following: "fowles helthe" (705 25); "worldes ende" (649 35); "woodes fyde" (745 24), cannot be enumerated here, as the *e* occurs already in the singular.

(247 26); "refcowes" (502 10); "buryels" (466 23); "myrthes" (500 1; 562 21); "lyfers" (474 35).

In other places we find the singular employed where we should expect the plural: "two *myle* hens" (267 36); "a thousand *pound*" (785 32); "fourty *pounde* a pees" (853 19); "a thre myle Englysshe" (437 8); "a thyrtty *couple* of houndes" (434 12). The addition of the indefinite article in the last two examples is as remarkable as in the following: "a large amendys" (plural!) (438 4); "a ten dayes afore" (396 13); and "fewe a felauship" (53 33).

Often the article, as well the definite as the indefinite, is omitted: "I put caas" (600 30; 608 17); "neuer spak word" (451 33); "wythin short tyme" (78 19); "in short tyme" (707 24); "for fone" (8 25); "at auauntage" (560 35); "yeue ansuer" (38 12); "in deferte" (708 17); "As worldes shame" (785 16); "I cast me neuer to be wedded man" (758 22).

The substantive "*heuen*" is used both with and without the article: "under heuen" (804 9); "toward —" (723 7); "from —" (699 1); "fader of —" (710 35); "lady of —" (273 33); on the other hand: "under *the* heuen" (87 14); "to *the* —" (681 11); "toward *the* —" (659 1); "up to *the* —" (659 3).

The substantive "*loue*" is treated as a masculine noun: "loue is free in hym selfe / and neuer wille be bounden / for where *he* is bounden," etc. (762 22).

Not unfrequently substantives are treated as adjectives: "quenes *forcereffes*" (187 27); "*traitour* knyght" (289 34); an example of the independent genitive occasionally occurs: "take that hors *of his yefte*" (841 24).

The substantive "*maner*" is used in connection with other nouns with or without "*of*": "maner *of* wyfe" (811 28); "— *of* disportes" (800 21); "— *of* knoulechyng" (733 13); "— *of* nobleffe" (770 36); and in other places: "ony manere knyghte" (762 18); "in ony maner wyfe" (680 21); "in this — wyfe" (74 22); "alle — aduentures daungerous" (803 18).

III. The adjective precedes or follows the noun, the former more frequently than the latter: "feest Royal" (401 4); "leges englysshe" (428 35); "knyghtes aduenturous" (410 9); "sege perillous" (452 4); "table round" (429 22).

The use of two or more adjectives with a noun differs greatly from

that of Modern English. One generally precedes the noun, whereas the other follows as a sort of apposition joined by "*and*," with or without the article: "a grete wounde and a peryllous" (412 26; 442 21); "a pyteous complaynte and a dolorous" (435 7); "a horryble lybard and an old" (579 5); "a good *old* man and an *auncyent*" (616 1); "to a strong towre and an hye" (672 37); "a ryche kyng and a myghty" (621 1); "a *moche* man and a large" (802 16); without the article: "wylde beestes foule and horryble" (844 6); "grete botes and smal" (841 12); "the moost merueillous man of the world and moost aduenturous" (663 2); "in the best maner and freest" (773 32).

In a few cases the adjective takes an *s* in the plural, but only in words of French origin: "moost valyaunts men" (83 31); "the mescreaunts Sarafyns" (135 30).

Sometimes the adjective is treated as a substantive: "he shalle haue many his better" (579 32).

The comparison of adjectives is very peculiar; all, whether *monosyllabic*, or *bi-syllabic* with the accent on the second, or terminating in *-le* with preceding consonant, or ending in *y*, indicate comparison not only by adding *er* to the comparative and *est* to the superlative, but also by putting *more* or *most* before them. Some superlatives may be found without *most*, and some comparatives without *more*: "more gladder" (218 23); "— leuer" (269 11); "— reufullyr" (425 26); "— wrother" (405 2); "— rychelyer" (580 33); "— heuyer" (749 26); "— nobler" (842 24); "— hotter" (725 19); "— largelyer" (754 10); "— blacker" (651 30); etc. etc.; "moost curteyft" (394 29); "— worshipfullest" (361 35); "— meschyeuouft" (413 32); "— profytelyeft" (733 32); "— nobleft" (747 15); quite exceptionally: "mooste noble" (367 21); "moost orgulift" (840 6); etc. etc. Without *more* or *most*: "valyaunter" (447 17); "falslyer" (520 10); "traitourlyer" (520 11); "oftyner" (566 3); "fyerfer" (181 31); "horrybleft" (296 3); "valyaunteft" (454 21); "famoseft" (278 25); "merueillouft" (278 23); "freyffheft" (763 23); etc. etc.

Most is used like an adjective with nouns: "*moost* coward" (502 12); "*moost* kyng" (840 29); "*moost* vylayn" (414 35). The same is the case with *moche*: "a *moche* man" (802 16).

The negative before a comparative is *not* or *no*: "not lenger" (723 9); "noo lenger" (735 14).

Instead of the adverb *very*, adjectives and adverbs are preceded by "full," "right," "passyng," "passyngly": "ful bolde" (841 14); "ryghte parfyte" (695 34); "passyng wyfe" (35 8); "passyngly wel" (763 8).

IV. Here and there occur irregular or obsolete forms of preterites, infinitives, and past participles; these are registered in their respective places in the Glossary. Present and preterite have often the same form, *e.g.*, "*come*," which is both present and preterite: "By than come in to the field" (57 34); "Sone come merlyn" (38 26).

The past participles generally end in *en* or *n*, as "abyden," "ryden," "comen," "holpen," etc.; some participles are, however, to be found where the final *n* is dropped: "undertake" (340 34); "ryde" (82 16); "founde" (434 34); "befalle" (420 34); "be" (147 10); [comp. "*ben*" (203 22)]; "take" (715* 32); "discomfyte" (766 26); "benome" (674 23); "bete" (667 8). There occur also some shortened participles; *e.g.*, "fond" (590 18) for "founden" (246 36).

The plural of the present tense is formed in "*-eth*," but many forms of the Midland plural "*-en*" occur: "faiden" (140 29); "pleafen" (101 17); "vsen" (128 14); "speken" (425 27); "comen" (280 12); "bryngen" (771 4); "floryfthen" (771 4); "defyen" (632 24); "defenden" (632 25); "fygnefyen" (682 36); "repayren" (643 22); "putten" (149 10); "ben" (101 91; 1 12; 801 3; 445 1); etc. etc.

The second person of the singular has often no inflexion: "thow goo" (107 7); "thow doo" (593 30); "thow took" (111 15); "thow were" (66 15); but: "fawest thou" (66 15).

The auxiliary *to be* has the form *be* for all persons singular and plural in the present tense: "god be not thy friend" (70 28); "it be taken" (78 12); "we be not yet come therto" (704 29); "why be ye" (94 28); "ye be welcome" (89 32); "volumes be made" (3 8).

The auxiliary *to do* is not used in negative and interrogative sentences: "knew not" (100 3; 97 6); "gate ye" (41 32); "come ye" (86 12). But *to do* is used in connection with other verbs in order to increase the emphasis: "do made" (1 7); "dyd do ranfak" (174 11); "made do crye" (92 9); "dyd do calle" (180 34); "dyd do cere" (174 22).

Once "*done*" occurs as second person plural: "confyderyng the grete dedes of armes I haue sene you *done*" (444 33).

Many verbs are treated as reflexive which are no longer such now.

adays. The reflexive pronoun is not *myself*, *thyself*, *himself*, *themselves*, but "*me*," "*the*," "*hym*," and "*hem*" (*them*). Only very rarely forms with *self* are to be met. Such is, *e.g.*, the case: "hydest thou thy self" (834 1); "the rofe her self" (82 28); whereas: "he roofe *hym*" (95 35); some examples are subjoined: "I assente me" (71 12); "I compte me" (342 12); "I shalle remembre me" (381 17); "I wyllle repose me" (417 1); "I complayne me" (650 2); "I drede me" (745 29; 767 24). Other verbs used as reflexives are: "to rest" (131 3; 183 19); "excuse" (367 30); "bethink" (239 31); "arme" (137 23; 90 33); "defende" (404 1); "drawe" (385 3); "torne" (39 35); "retorne" (46 11); "byhaue" (24 18); and many others.

Many verbs are used impersonally: "me oughte to doo" (214 16); "me semeth" (127 28); "me lyketh" (74 13); "me lyft" (90 27); "hit lyketh the" (222 10); "how lyketh yow" (215 26); "it myffortuned me" (418 17; 557 12); "hit fore forthynketh me" (643 12); "as it telleth" (64 31); "as it reherceth afore" (105 11); "hit fortuneth" (364 21); etc. etc.

The active voice is frequently used instead of the passive: "for to nouriffhe" (37 1); "herde a grete horne blowe" (529 11).

In phrases expressing a wish the pronoun generally precedes the verb: "god yow faue" (541 5); "fayre knyght god the bleffe" (745 13); "god yow blyffe" (758 21); "god me forbede" (207 8).

Many verbs are conjugated with *to be* instead of with *to have*: "were mette" (561 22); "was become" (366 15); "is become" (68 16); "was ryden" (151 7); "was arryued" (367 15); "I am come to the dethe" (706 4); etc.

The short dative is not strictly necessary after some verbs: "fente to me" (3 13); "tolde to Lucius" (11 12); "graunte to hym" (12 27); "gyuen to hym" (15 2); "tolde hym" (15 29); "graunte hem me" (213 17); etc.

Make in the sense of *to bid*, *to order*, is generally constructed with *to*: "made to yelde" (13 22); "made alle lordes to come in" (44 4).

V. The use of the prepositions differs greatly from that of the present day, and is arbitrary in many respects. To enumerate all the differences would take too much space, but I subjoin a few of the most noticeable examples:

By: "*by* my dayes" (842 11); "now do *by* me what ye lyft" (371 31).

Of: "*defyred of*" (29 18); "*receyued thys shelde of*" (26 16); "*fyr L. was rebuked of the quene*" (24 15); "*reunge hym of his enemyes*" (63 15); "*praid the king of accord*" (37 27); "*prayd hym of his knyghthode*" (767 23); "*made hem clene of her lyf*" (plural!) (40 15); "*lyberal of his expense*" (518 20); "*haue pyte of hem*" (181 31).

Til, until: "*til a tree*" (380 10; 389 18; 630 3); "*til a frende*" (385 28); "*untyl hym*" (752 9).

With: "*affayled with xij knyghtes*" (18 19); "*eten with lyons*" (107 3); "*came with kyng Arthur,*" i.e., to his court (99 26); "*many questions with her*" (37 9); "*afhamed with hym felse*" (654 33).

At: "*ask counceil at hem*" (47 10); "*come at the castel*" (37 12); "*oute att wyndowes*" (236 31).

For: "*that they be content for*" (134 24); "*complaynyng for*" (19 31).

On: "*thynke on me*" (627 12; 708 6); "*trowest thou more on thy harneis than in thy maker*" (710 18); "*compleyned on*" (10 12), comp. "*for*"; "*kneled on his knee*" (489 21); "*upon his owne knee*" (524 9).

In: "*come in the courte*" (68 22); "*put hem bothe in the erthe*" (84 6).

Further, some phrases constructed with different prepositions: "*leyd fyege unto hym*" (64 14); "*on the castel*" (64 8); "*aboute the toure of London*" (852 7); "*aboute sir L.*" (852 7); "*blewe the felde*" (490 10)¹; "*blewe unto lodgyng*" (549 14); "*blewe to the felde*" (766 8); etc.

In two passages the preposition *with* seems at first sight to be omitted, as it is generally used under similar circumstances, but such is not the case; the examples denote a sort of instrumental case: "*I shold flee the myn owne handes*" (556 11); "*I shall flee the myn owne handes*" (849 12).

VI. Many conjunctions have a pleonastic *that* after them, which in a few cases is used in Modern English: "*after that*" (23 5; 19 4);

¹ Another example where a verb governs the accusative is: "*I discharge the this Courte*" (727 7).

"how —" (25 5; 434 31); "wherfore —" (1 6); "but —" (3 5); "by caufe —" (84 27); "why —" (114 9); "fauf —" (171 1); "though —" (77 27); "or —" (451 27); "tylle —" (690 26).

To with the infinitive is, with very few exceptions (33 4), generally preceded by "*for*": see 30 22; 38 32; 567 2; 657 9; etc. etc.

Unless is rendered by "*but yf*": 417 15; 514 14; 52 2; 91 18; sometimes by "*but and*": as 61 11.

And replaces *if*: "and kyng Lot had ben" (87 16); "and he lyue" (92 35); "and I wold" (70 26); occasionally "*and yf*" occurs: "and yf I myght lyue" (98 8).

As is constantly used for *as if*: "as he hadde ben dede" (393 28); sometimes "*as though*": "as though he had ben dede" (393 31); "as though he myght not haue gone" (253 6).

Where and *lyke* are often followed by "*as*": "lyke as god wil" (395 22; 555 24); "where as came" (14 4).

Without stands for *unless*: "without ye doo me homage" (75 3); "without ye haue my counceyll" (85 14).

Ne is often used for *nor* or *neither*, and at the same time is part of the negation (compare below, No. VII): "whos vyrgynyte ne was perysshed ne hurte" (703 10); "I care not ne doubte hem not" (221 5); "ne none of myn elders" (74 35).

For occurs sometimes in the sense of *because* or *as*: "but *for* tho aduentures were with wyld beeftes / and not in the queft of the Sancgreal / therfor the tale," etc.

VII. In this paragraph I bring together a few syntactical remarks:—

The negative is usually double, much as in French, sometimes even threefold: "It may not be by no reafon" (214 35); "there nys none other boote" (209 6); "myght not abyde no lenger" (130 38); "but in no wyfe he coude not" (377 5); "*neuer* erst *ne* myghte *no* knyghte knewe the truthe" (703 28); "neuer had I foo grete nede of no knyghtes helpe" (305 4); "ne lete me not be fhamed" (654 16); "but of that fhame ne reke I noughte" (684 14); "for thy pyte ne haue me not in dyspyte" (711 4). There occur a few cases where only "*ne*" is used: "that I ne lay ten tymes where" (717 11); "ne had your tydynges ben" (699 36).

Inversion is often used; regularly after *therefore* and *thenne*: "therfor cam I hydder" (735 13); "therfor fhalle I neuer loue the

no more" (727 6); "thenne was he not a lytel fory" (714* 31); "thenne wote I" (571 14). In many cases, it appears, inversion is used to emphasize certain words: *e.g.*, "an holer man in his lyf was he neuer" (207 38); "as for my ladyes name that shal not ye knowe for me as at this tyme" (216 5); "and crystend wyll I be" (490 2); "and vnto the dethe he is lured" (753 31). A number of such examples are to be found throughout the work.

The subject is often changed and the verb omitted: "and so she yede to the knyght that she loued / and he her ageyne" (404 25).

Occasionally the subject is entirely omitted in the second part of the sentence: "for they bare no harneis ageynft the / nor none wold bare" (825 5); "Marke euer haft thou ben a traytour / and euer wyll be" (496 11).

Direct and indirect speech occur in the same sentence: "But for her loue that gaf me this whyte shelde I shalle were the" (141 30); "ij ladyes to take the child bound in a cloth of gold / & that you delyuer hym" (39 5); "G. fente to kyng Arthur for focour and that he hye hym for I am fore wounded" (170 32); "and thenne the kyng commaunded his knyghtes to take that naked man with fayrenes / and brynge hym to my castel" (370 15-18).

Not is occasionally used elliptically: "and there he thoughte to affaue his armour and his spere for his hurte or not" (755 18).

The use of the infinitive of the perfect tense is further remarkable in sentences such as the following:—"he rode to haue foughten" (18 12); "wolde haue had Arthur to haue cryed hym mercy" (131 27); "he wende he shold haue dyed" (392 29); "for ye haue sene me thys day haue had grete traueylle" (412 15); "for ye neded not to haue doubted no knyght" (402 15).

In conclusion I shall quote some sentences which are most peculiar in their construction: "and he that was vpon hym the whiche was the noblest hors in the world strayed hym myghtely and stably" (755 24); "There is in this Castel a gentylwoman whiche we and this castel is hers and many other" (705 13); "yf ye wold aske how he lyued / he that fedde the peple of Israell with manna in deserte / foo was he fedde" (708 18); "and not foo hardy in Gawayns hede" (487 27).

LIST OF THE VARIOUS READINGS BETWEEN CAXTON'S AND WYNKYN DE WORDE'S EDITIONS.

 HERE exist differences between Caxton's text and Wynkyn de Worde's editions of 1498 and 1529. I have decided upon giving the various readings from the third edition (1529): firstly, because the lapse of time between the first and second edition is too short to allow of manifest change in the language; secondly, on account of the imperfect condition of the only known copy of the second edition; lastly and chiefly, because all later Black Letter editions, and all modern reprints, with the sole exception of Southey's and Sir E. Strachey's, can be traced back to Wynkyn de Worde's edition of 1529.

Concerning the variations between the first and third edition of Malory's "*Le Morte Darthur*," I may state, that they consist of alterations as well as of omissions and additions. Whether Caxton's text was purposely revised previous to the third edition being sent to press, or whether the changes were made by Wynkyn de Worde's compositors during printing,¹ it is obvious that the alterations were made with the intention of modernising and of rendering the text more readable, although this intention has not always been strictly carried into effect. Sometimes only the position of words in a sentence is altered; now and then a whole sentence is either entirely omitted or replaced by another one; and in many cases obsolete or difficult words are replaced by more modern ones. Sentences begin with capital letters, as do all names of persons and places. Full-stops and commas are distinguished; "þ" is throughout rendered by "y," whereas "gh" is never rendered by "3," nor "them" by "hem" or "their" by "her," &c. Occasionally I observed that some of Caxton's terms were misunderstood and wrongly rendered, but on the whole, W. de Worde's text is superior to Caxton's, both in exactness and correctness: I can hardly call to mind a misprint. If we take

¹ Observing that the variants are periodically more or less in number leads me to conclude that at least two different hands dealt with the text. In the whole 861 pages of Caxton's volume only one page (105) corresponds absolutely to Wynkyn de Worde's text.

into consideration that in those days philology did not exist, and that no one cared to reproduce a text with scrupulous exactness, the variations are rather improvements upon Caxton's text, for many errors are corrected, words, and even whole passages, often added, which, to conclude from the sense, Caxton's compositors evidently omitted. From the point of view of the modern critic it is, however, apparent that owing to these changes Caxton's text had already in 1529 lost its most characteristic peculiarities.¹

The difference of orthography in both texts is so considerable, that to quote all variations in this respect would be almost equal to reproducing the whole of W. de Worde's second edition. But as W. de Worde's orthography is consistent, and all passages quoted are rendered exactly, one can easily form an opinion about his spelling.

The following list contains only the various readings of "Le Morte Darthur" itself, as the Preface of Caxton is wanting, and the Table of Contents is not complete in the Grenville copy. The Clarendon figures refer to the pages, the ordinary Roman ones to the lines. All words included in brackets are those omitted by W. de Worde. As W. de Worde prints throughout "Kyng Arthur," whereas Caxton frequently simply puts "Arthur," I have not thought it necessary to register each single case.

Book i.

35. ¶ Here begynneth the fyrft boke of the moost noble and worthy prince kyng Arthur sometyme kyng of grete Brytayne / now called Englande whiche treateth of his noble actes and feates of armes & chyualrye / and of his noble knyghtes of the table roude and this volume is devyded in to .xxi. bokes; 2, of Englonde; 3, regned there; myghty and a noble; 4, longe tyme warre; 5, named; 7, a ryght fayre; 8, and Igrayne was her name; 9, to the; 10, bothe accorded; 11, her grete; 12, lyke as; 20, As foone; 21, wonders; 26, at your commaundement; for than haue ye; 30, wonders; 33, he had; 36, & that other hyght.

¹ Compare what is said, p. 13, about Mr. Wright's characterisation of Thomas Stansby's edition. The number of variants which I quote here amounts to nearly ten thousand; I estimate that about double the amount of variants exists between Caxton's and Stansby's editions.

36. 2, and he put hym selfe ; 7, Igrayne kyng ; Than ; 8, to kyng ; 13, gete yow ; 27, vnto kyng ; 29, tary lōge ; 31, bounden ; 32, he faid y^t he ; 34, to me.

37. 1, whan that is ; 3, as moche as ; 5, this nyght ye ; 10, But be ware ye make ; 12, So as they had deuyfed it was done ; 19, and begate on her Arthur the fame nyght ; 20, & or day ; 27, betwene ; 34, were accorded.

38. 10, vnto ; 11, Than was she ; 12, Fere ye not ; 22, fere ; 26, came ; 27, wyllt ; 36, vnto me ; As.

39. 1, As Merlyn had deuyfed ; 4, the quene ; 6, in ryche cloth of golde & delyuer hym ; 11, owne breftes ; 15, in ; 23, moche ; 25, to L. ; And within a whyle he was passyng ; 27, there is none ; 29, loke that ye ; 30, before hym to morowe ; 34, appertenaunces ; 38, yelded.

40. 1, belonged vnto ; wherefore I. the quene ; 8, shold come to L. afore Xmas ; 9, that as Iesu was ; 16, to god ; 18, lyke to ; 23, a fote of heyght ; 24, and letters of golde ; 26, of E. ; 23, cōmaūde you ; 30, all the ; 31, all the states ; went for to ; 35, to be knowen.

41. 7, to the field ; 10, Kay ; 12, toward the I. / fyr Kay had ; 14, Arthur to ; I wyll with a good wyll ; 20, Arthur alyghted ; he went ; 23, he pulled ; 30, to fwere.

42. 2, fir Ector ; 7, Therwith fyr ; 9, affay you ; to ; 12, With a good wyll ; 14, Kay also and my brother ; 16, ne of ; 18, hym to ; 21, fyr E. ; 29, sofred ; 31, done fyr ; 32, whyle that ; 34, And vpon the .xij. daye ; 35, for to affay ; 37, but onely A. ; many grete l.

43. 2, be gouerned ; 5, both day ; 7, And at C. ; 8, but none of them ; 13, And yet ; 14, theyr kyng ; 16, purueye of the ; 17, that myght be gotten ; 18, as Kyng V. ; 20, and fyr B. ; 31, kneled doune all at ones ; 32, forgauē it ; 33, offred it vp to ; 34, and was made.

44. 1, to the lordes ; 6, vnto kyng A. ; 9, for to be ; 15, tyme as for the ; enemy vnto the kyng ; 18, a parte of Wales ; 19, and all through ; 21, Than the kyng ; 23, Coronacyon ; 25, vnto this ; 26, Gore whiche brought with hȳ ; 27, to this feest there came ; & with hym ; 34, Than was kyng A. glad ; 37, and sente vnto.

45. 2. receyue gyftes ; 4, And that ; 5, betwene ; 8, the rule ; 10, this answere vnto kyng Arthur ; And for this cause ; 11, men of armes ; 13, afore ; 15, Merlyns comynge ; 16, berdles boye ; 18, begoten ; 19, vpon ; wyfe of Cornewayle ; 22, Vtherpendragon ; 23, who so euer ; 24, and or that ; 26, many moo realmes ; 31, for to come safe and to go safe ; 32, assurance was ; he sholde not fere ; 6, wyll not.

46. 2, vnder nethe ; maylle whiche was good and fure ; 4, Kay the Senefshall ; 6, mette togyder ; but lytel mekenes / for there was ; 11, returned to ; 18, vnto ; 20, that ye had ; 21, to y^e worfte ; 31, king ; 33, vnder hym ; 7, them backe.

47. 1, all the knyghtes ; 6, to London ; 9, be auenged on hym ; 10, of them al ; 17, and was fayre ; 18, I shal tel you fyrs ; 21, vnto ; 22, duke also / and but yf ; 23, make hym felfe ; 25, this case ; 28, the one ; 34, worfte ; 35, that our kyng fende vnto the two.

48. 1, to ; 4, vpon ; 6, in moost pleafaunt ; 15, our prifoners ; 18, grete strengthe ; 19, and the other two ; 20, vnto ; 23, at the thyrd ; 25, but that he ; 32, Than they ; 38, delyuered them freyght.

49. 1, better ; 4, taryed ; 5, & had as good chere as ; 8, Ha ha sayd kyng B. & B. ; our ; 13, to kyng ; haste they ; 24, the Senefshall ; 28, had waffhed & were ryfen.

50. 1, couched ; 2, y^t was called Ladynas ; 7, And whan ; he quykly horfed ; 11, downe hors and man ; 12, none that ; 13, came in fyrfly ; 20, wonders wroth ; 22, to waxe ; 27, to Syre G. ; 28, to counseyle ; 30, to bedde ; 31, morowe ;—and after went to.

51. 3, fared ; 6, on horsbacke and on fote ; 17, vnto kyng A. ; 20, told them that ; 26–27, where the kynges enemyes ; 34, that the fyxe.

52. 3, armes whiche ; 6, that he wold ; 10, Than kyng Lot swore ; 13, Ewayns ; 29, And soo by ; 35, wonderfull.

53. 9, that they made ; 11, fayre felde ; 22, for than they wyll ; you haue but ; 25, and the barons ; passynge ; 26, done anone ; morow ; 34, fyrfly agayn ; 35, well and meruaylously.

54. 2, whan ; 4, to ; 13, to ; 14, to ; 21, and smote doune ; 23, to ; 32, In the meane ; 34, whiche ; 35, y^e hors fete ; 36, Cradelmont.

55. 2, an hors ; 4, wonder therof ; Cradelmont ; 7, to ; 11, kerued ; 15, y^t hyght ; 16, smote down ; 20, vpon ; 24, bothe sholder ; into y^e felde ; 25, fyr G. ; fuche rescowe ; 29, fyr G. ; 34 and 36, fyr L.

56. 4, trembled ; 6, a stronge ; 8, Vryence ; 11, kyng A. ; 16, fyr G. ; 17, And than ; 19, Cradelmans ; 26, Cambenet ; wyll ; 27, aparte ; 31, So anone they as they had ; 35, the uaunt warde ; two kynges.

57. 2, Cambenet ; 3, on them with ; 6, put backe ; 7, as the men of Inde ; 12, world is ioyned to ; 16, by y^e aduysse of ; a knyght ; 17, if ; 18, whan it is nede ; 19, may for you ; 20, tyll they ; 21, as a bowe shotte ; 23, whiche ; 25, theyr armes ; 28, bothe the partyes ; 32, knyght / & was but ; 34, as a fyers ; 35, ha ha ; 36, now shall we be dyscomfyted.

58. 5, and sorowe ; 8, to hurtle togyder ; 9, with theyr ; flewe

downe ryght ; pyte to ; 10, and a grete multytude fledde ; 11, wyth the hondred ; 13, dedes of ; 14, wyth ; 16, smote hym a myghty stroke vpon ; 17, whiche afonyed ; Than was king ; 18, set vpon hym ; whan that other sawe that he ; 22, cut in twayne ; hors also ; 23, with ; 26, Ban with grete dylygence voyded the hors / and came and smote at the other so egrely vpon the helme ; 30, By that tyme ; 31, that founde ; 35, no man myght ; 38, therwith he.

59. 1, helme with fuche force ; 2, cutte hym in two peces / that the one halfe fell on the one fyde / & the other on y^e other fyde / & kyng A. ; hors & ledde ; 5, grete nede ; 7, myn hurte ; 11, a newe ; 17, in the felde ; 18, & theyr knyghtes asssembled ; 19, all dyscomfyt ; 22, grete dedes ; 23, not ; vnder heuen ; 30, knowe ; 35, ye must take ; 37, vpon.

60. 2, almoost ; For kyng A. ; 3, therefore they ; 5, loke that ; fuche an ; 7, for to flee ; 9, we be ; vnto me ; 15, And they fwore that ; the one vnto the other ; 16, who that ; 17, Than anone ; 29, whiche ; valyaunt ; 32, of Gorre ; 33, with grete ; 34, as fast as ; theyr horses ; 35, good knyghtes ; 37, thyckest.

61. 3, kyng A.'s vifage ; 6, vpon ; 7, to ; haue ye ; 8, thousand ye haue ; 10, you ; ye wyll ; 11, yf ye tary on ; 12, and theyrs ; 13, to ; 14, rewarde well ; 15, ryght well ; 16, for there may ; 18, this daye ; 21, these thre yeres ; hurte ; ne greue you ; 23, to kyng A. ; 24, in hande ; 27, these thre yeres ; 28, y^t ye haue gotten ; 29, kynges that be here ; 32, at a nede ; able ynough ; 36, gyuen them ; 38, go fe ; whiche.

62. 4, told hym ; 8, the werfte ; 8, caused Bleyfe his mayster to wryte them ; 10, caused hym ; 13, stode ; 15, all furred ; 21, thou chorle ; 22, the whiche ; 23, place where as ; 26, smyled at hym ; 29, sporte ; 36, begate vpon her ; and his ; 37, rounde t. ; 38, stronge warre vpon.

63. 1, Leodegraunce ; 2, bycause ; 3, the ordynaunce ; 4, they all ; 7, Than Kyng A. ; 16, doughter vnto ; [Camlyard] ; 17, and after ; 18, as it shal be shewed here after ; 19, these two kynges took ; 20, on bothe theyr ; 21, kyng A. ; 22, do in these ; 25, many good ; malyce of ; 29, not nede fayd ; 31, for or . xij . monethes be past ; 32, he shal ; 33, haue reuenged ; 34, one day ; 35, as it shal be shewed here after ; 36, whiche ; 37, as ony be now ; vnto.

64. 1, whiche ; to ; [the] ; 2, Vryence lande ; 5, that there was ; 6, lawlesse ; 19, on the water and the lande ; 23, of Scotlande ; 26, lordes and gentylmen ; Northwales / whiche ; 28, man of good men also ; 30, ordynaunce that belongeth to warre for to ; 31, reherceth ; 33, Than after that k. B. and k. B. were departed.

65. 3, keft ; 5, mothers ; 6, she departed ; Than on a tyme y^e ;

7, ryght fore; 10, land many; 13, damage; 14, awoke; ryght penyfe of; 15, for to put awaye all thefe; 19, his hors; longe after; 25, fate there alone; 26, nombre; 30, whyle that; 34, a fote to; 36, Arthur vnto the knyght; 37, that beeft; 38, haue kyllled.

66. 3, that hors; 4, thefe . xij . monethes; eyther; 6, Kynge P.; 10, to kyng A.; 11, thy defyre is in; 12, to; 13, is myn; 16, I wolde be cōtent; 17, passed forth; 14, grete study; 19, came M.; 21, penyf & heuy; 22, for here euen now; moost merualyest; 26, and also who; and also one whome; 32, M. departed; 34, was gladde; a ryght wyfe man; 36, kynge A.; dyuers; 38, that olde.

67. 3, late wherfore; 4, lyen; 12, moche shameful deth as; into; all quykke; 13, As they thus; 14, horses; 17, hym that; 18, kynge A. faid vnto M.; 25, & all that were there myght here; 26, Beware Vlfius; 29, fyr Vlfius; for to; 30, that fayth; 31, caufe; grete warre that ye haue had; 34, ye sholde neuer haue had; halfe; whiche; 35, your grete lordes / barons and gentylmen.

68. 1, god and you; 2, vpon; 11, to; 13, than fyr V.; 15, that I bare; 18, kyng V.; 19, bothe his; 21, whiche; 33, hym there; 26, Myles; 27, some good; 32, done to; 36, were pyte; 37, he cometh to aege.

69. 2, he shall be in; 6, must graūte; 7, will my lorde; 8, body that; 10, that in the same maner; 11, withoute any questyon or; 12, sir G.; 18, ende of his; 21, it were; dyd; 25, but of whens; 26, they ran; 27, fyr G.; 29, his spere; 33, gaue hym; 34, vpon; [and gate him wynde]; 37, where as; moone.

70. 2, his lyfe faued; 6, may ye; or; 8, wyll I hold; vpon; 10, shall be within these fewe dayes; 12, as wrothe as they; 14, And by and by; 16, belonged to; that it be; 17, in the mornynge afore daye; 21, whiche chafed M.; 22, them a good pace; & cryed to; 24, fled away; you; 25, crafte; 26, yf I; 27, thy deth; towarde thy d.; 29, paulyon by it; 30, knyght fate all; 37, defende it.

71. 1, [anone]; 2, drewe; 3, [said the knyght]; 6, speres ynough; 7, two good; loke one; 8, theyr myght; 9, kynge A.; 11, [ones]; good; 16, y^e myddes; 17, fore angred; drewe; 22, thought it was; 23, fuche a vauntage; 24, & so alyght; dressed h̄y to kyng A.; 26, where they; 27, was all bloody; 28, to batayle; 29, two wylde bores; eyther of them; 33, to the kynge; 36, But as to.

72. 2, a passynge; 8, reame in; 25, & faue one; 26, the one shall be named P. & that other L.; 27, & they shalle telle; 28, begoten son; 30, vnto an heremytage; where as was; 33, & the

kyng; 34, And fo Merlyn & he departed; 37, lake whiche; 38, a brode.

73. 2, the hande; Merlyn to the kyng; the fwerd; 4, sayd y^e kyng; 8, therwith came; 9, to kyng A.; 10, the kyng; 11, whiche y^e arme holdeth yonder; 12, Syr kyng; damoyfell of the lake; 14, king A.; 15, ony gyfte that; 16, vnto; 19, barge; 22, to the lande; 23, Than kyng A.; 25, for he is not; 27, gyder a grete whyle; 28, hym to; 29, It is well; 30, quod kyng A.; 34, my counfeyle is; 37, to wyfe; 38, aduys me.

74. 1, kyng A.; vpon; 3, king A.; 6, no bloode; 7, on to; 9, king A.; 10, and fo; 11, the kyng; 19, The meane; hastily from; 20, And he was; 28, lacked for; 30, thy; kyng A.; 32, to a; 33, for to; 35, longe he.

75. 1, I fe well; 3, homage vnto me; 6, hym well; 9, hym / and that fhall he fynde; 13, on Maye daye; 23, by cause that; 25, what for loue.

¶ Here endyth the fyrst boke of kyng Arthur.

Book ii.

¶ Here after foloweth the seconde boke of the noble and worthy prynce kyng Arthur.

75. 31, sone whiche; 33, kynges at y^e tyme; 35, vpon.

76. 4, that; 7, Than king A. let; 9, castel thus was; 12, as them; came a damoyfell whiche; 14, told hym; 16, and she; 22, a good knyght / and; 24, [and withoute treason]; 26, fwerd of the scawberd; 27, for it; and it be; 35, scawberd.

77. 4, streme; 6, but none myght; 9, kyng; 11, I am gretely; 12, It so happened that; 15, knyghte / whiche; to; This knyght was named; 20, his herte reyfed; 21, for by cause; 24, was there; 25, [fo departyng]; 27, to suffre; 28, be poorely; 29, other lordes; 31, but by cause of; araye; 33, to; it is no nede; 34, ony more; befemeth; 36, not all onely; rayment.

78. 2, rayment and clothynge; trouth; 4, scawberde; 5, vpon; 7, & many; 8, Truly; 9, best man; 11, ascheue; sayd the damoyfel / gyue; 13, by force; 15, in this; 17, to me; 22-23, as grete pite as euer I knewe; 23-24, y^e gretest sorowe y^e myght be; 27, I byleue; 29, myffe enformed; 31, courte with my good knyghtes; 32, that ye shal; 33, for youre; 34, but as now at; 37, that ye wyll not; 38, all my; all that is amyffe and that.

79. 1, [grete]; 9, had promysed; 11, whiche ye; 14; yf it; 16, & though I haue bothe theyr hedes I force not; 22, thyng of

you; 23, Lake there / by whose meanes was slayne his owne moder; 25, demaunded; 28, in the prefence; 30, I was moche; 31, vnto; 32, My lord; 33, this lady; 34, & wytchecraft.

80. 3, y^e hafte ye; 21, full rychely buryed her; 22, was in king A.'s courte a knyght that; 24, & he was a proude; 25, beft knyghtes; 27, accounted of more prowesse than he was; 29, kynge A.; 30, wroth with; 33, to kynge A.'s courte; 34, it was; 35, to you.

81. 7, her brother; 9, whiche; 10, drawe; scawberd; yf he were; 11, hardy; 14, ye do / sayd Merlyn / wolde to god; neuer; 17, wherfore it shalle; 18, for there is not lyuynge; 19, lord kyng A.; 20, pyte it is for; 21, and as for; 25, as fast as his hors coude renne; 27, cryed to hym and sayd; 28, wyll not; 29, helpe you; that noyfe; 32, am I come; 36, am comen; 37, that ye haue done.

82. 2, whiche; 3, of his knyghtes; fymple to me; 7, to me; for one of vs; 8, speres in all hafte they myght; 9, the kynges sone of Irland; 10, that his spere wente alle to sheuers; 11, smote hym with fuche a myght; 12, and Balyn; 17, rydyng myght galop; 18, than she; 25, to; 26, fast / that in no wyfe he myghte take the fwerde; handes; 27, but he; 28, And whan; 30, grete loue / she had vnto fyr Launceor; 34, them; a foreft; 35, aspyed the; 38, sayd B.

83. 1, wende lytell; 3, pryfonyng; 6, And anone B.; vnto his; 7, all his; 8, how that; 10, full fore; 11, vnto yow; 12, heuy of mynde; kynge A.; 14, the erthe; 15, for kynge; atte the; 18, do fo &; 19, Brother sayd B. let; 21, as fast as; 24, [it]; 26, defence; 29, loue and fauour; 31, thou wel; B. that; 36, rydyng whiche was named; 38, by one of the.

84. 1, kynge M.; 7, bothe theyr; [How]; 12, in doying; [in]; 13, vnto; 14, this place; 27, dyd not faue; 29, coude not nor myght; 35, in many.

85. 9, for to telle; as at this; 10, fyll euyll; 11, the two; 12, but I; 34, yf he had not; 35, the kynge thus.

86. 5-6, what they be; 10, in the fpryngynge; [thenne]; 16, vnto; 20, euer was of; 22, beholden; full euyll; 24, knowe or it be longe; 26, vpon; afore dyner; myghty hooft; 30, myghty; for he; mocke; So Nero hymfelfe; 35, he had therof worship.

87. 4, had grete meruayle therof; 5, that they; 10, that whyle; 11, through my; 12, is slayne many; yf we; 14, to matche vs; 16, yf kyng L.; 17, and all his people sholde haue ben destroyed and slayne; 18, knewe well that; 22, is it better; 23, the moost party; 24, vpon kynge A.; 25, for he and his men; wery of fyghtynge; 30, worft; 31, dyd grete; 33, abode & withftode; not

euer; 34, was shold; 36, had wedded; 37, by cause; [the whiche was Arthur's fyfter].

88. 3, [called]; 5, with his; 8, to; 10, many a; 24, and his tombe stode by it selfe aparte; 26, made them to be ouergylte with fyne; fygne and token; euery ymage helde a; 28, them all; 31, sayd to kynge A.; 32, the .xij. tapers; 33, of the holy; 34, shall also be ascheued; tolde vnto kynge A.; 37, fyr P.

89. 1, brother Balan; 2, Now by; 4, ferre of ony; for I am; 5, to god; 7, for as I tolde you ye; as longe as; 9, afterward; 12, flayne; 14, a knyght named; 25, paulyons dore; 26, grete forowe; 28, amende it; 33, forowe; 35, and gentylnes; that ye wylle; 37, so rode.

90. 1, my lorde; the cause of; 4, nedes go; 8, the good knyght B.; 9, there the damoyfell; [euen]; 13, and garde; 14, traytour knyght; the whiche; 15, where as; 16, may best; therof I; 17, to you by my; 19, vpon; 20, & also how y^e trechery was done by y^e; 29, for I am; 32, as longe as my; 36, good knyght.

91. 2, to me; 8, to haue gone; 10, came many men; 11, And whan; 12, by cause he; And than; 13, vp vpon the walles and lepte ouer into; 15, sayd that; 19, fyluer dyffhe; 20, that there; 21, but that; 23, her lyfe; 26, all that nyght; 29, she dyed; 33, herd one.

92. 7, despyte that; 15, and had; 20, to a; 22, wyll I not; 26, to the; 29, said y^e.

93. 10, to hym; for to; 11, arose vp; 23, folowed hym; 36, kyng P.

94. 13, for that stroke turned hym to; 15, neuer mete more; 34, you; 36, to.

95. 11, the two; 30, this entent y^t it shold afwage; 32, that ladyes loue.

96. 1, he dressed hym from thens; that he had; 10, And therwith he; 20, [not].

97. 3, in reed; 4, And whan; 7, it sholde not be he; 8, and smote eyther other; 11, fore bryfed; 16, brake his helme; 21, eche other greuoufly; 22, to; 23, reed of theyr blode; 25, fmytten eyther other; 26, the world; 33, to; 36, went; 38, bebledde.

98. 7, to the destruccion of vs bothe; 9, the ylle; 20, that place; 21, wepynge chere and sayd; 23, the sacrament and blyffed body; 29, And anone; 32, by the handes of his owne broder; 34, morowe; 35, vpon; [that].

99. 2, also a bedde; lye in; 6, Than M.; to handle; 12, this world; 21, and crafte; 33, meruayllouft; 35, euer; 36, as they were.

¶ Here endeth the seconde boke of kynge Arthur.

Book iij.

¶ Here foloweth the thyrd boke of the noble and worthy prynce kynge Arthur.

100. 1, after y^t; 6, but kynge A. full well; 8, moche ruled; 14, ony fayre lady; 16, Leodegraunce; Camelyarde; whiche L. holdeth; 18, gentyllest and; 25, pryuely; 32, to; 35, and of; 36, that it.

101. 5, but I lacke fyfty; 6, kynge L.; 12, he made grete ioye for theyr comynge; [and that ryche presente]; 15, to; 16, pleasaunt; 17, Than in; 19, honourablest; 22, Merlyn made the best spede he myght and founde. xxviiij. good knyghtes; coude he fynde; 24, archebyffhop; fente for 25 fyeges of this table rounde; 27, to; 30, in the fyeges; 36, to; 37, must so do.

102. 11, [oute]; 25, bothe daye and nyght; that he myght be made; 33, Aryes the.

103. 22, to; 26, to; 27, morowe; 31, kynge P.; 33, the fyrft that.

104. 4, ye be; 5, had; 6, & sayd; vnto; 8, fyr G.; 9, whiche; not do so; 14, fyr G.; 18, wente vnto; 30, to kyng A.; 35, with hym by force; 36, mone; bycause.

106. 3, of the whyte harte; 4, fyr G.; 9, wolde haue folowed; 10, on the other; 22, helme so harde; 25, fyr G.; 27, chaced; 28, harte that; 30, [drawe].

107. 5, y^e dombe beestes; 24, to the; 27, Me repenteth it fore; 28, to haue stryken at the; 32, But for drede; 33, vpon; 34, behynde hym also.

108. 4, well thynke; 5, here aboute; 7, sayd thus; 9, Thou haft also; whiche is vnto the grete shame for euermore; 12, fuche a; that he had nygh felled; 15, one of them; 17, wonders; bothe slayne; 21, fyr G.; moone; 24, On the morowe erly came; 25, whiche; 28, whiche wyll; 31, or that; 32, kyng Lots sone of O.; 34, spede for; 38, the heed of the whyte herte.

109. 3, Her heed; 4, mane of his hors; And in this maner he rode forth towarde C.; 5, to y^e courte; 6, & so he was. And shewed how he flewe; 8, to; 9, vylaynously slayne; 12, hym euer; 19, [Amen]; 20, and he; 21, forth his waye a good pace after; 22, whiche; 23, more than his spere; 24, In what entent dost thou smyte my hors; 25, way said the dwarfe; but that thou shalte fyrft iuste with yonder knyghtes that abyde in yonder paelions that thou feest; 26, 32 & 33, fyr T.; 30, [alle]; 33, yelded.

110. 2, y^e myddes; 3, lowe that it went thorough the fyde;

9, to ; that we ; 13, Langdok ; 15, to ; 16, you to gyue ; 19, hors anone ; & come on & ryde with me ; 22, through a forest ; 24, renewed ; 25, his spere ; 26, foo came ; 27, lye therin on a payllet ; And than he ; 28, [therin] ; 29, And ther ; 30, anone the lady awoke & went ; 32, What wyll ye do ; Wyll ye take away ; 34, to this place ; 36, mette withal or it be longe / and also euyl handled ; abyde it.

111. 2, forth on ; 4, fyr T. ; 5, fuche lodgyng ; 14, and fayd ; 16, and fawe he ; 17, and armed ; 19, and fmote eche other y^t bothe hors and men fel to the erth ; 20, they lyghtly ; 23, & also they brake ; 25, ground ; and they had bothe ; 28, & made hym fall to the groude ; 33, brachet & the / or els flee the.

112. 3, fyr T. ; 4, this fals ; 6, I am ryght fory and lothe ; whiche I haue graunted you ; 7, make you ; that whiche ; 8, agaynst you . He can not make amendes sayd the damoyfell ; hath slayne ; 9, [afore myn owne eyen] ; whiche was ; 10, than euer he was ; no mercy vpon hym ; in so moche that I ; 11, whiche ; 13, as knyghtes auenturous do ; and for all that I coude do or saye / he fmote of my brothers heed ; 20, for whan ; 30, fyr T. and his hors ; 32, them ; sayd he ; 33, late was ; 36, gentyll ; yf.

113. 3, gladde ; 4, but that his father ; 11, made grete ; 14, full of good ; 15, do outrage ; 22, bytwene ; 24, fake . Kyng P. wold not ; 28, And as ; [there] ; 29, laye there ; 30, with her loues swerde ; So as ; 31, labouryng man ; 32, kyng P. ; 33, poore man ; 34, moone.

114. 2, nere cosyn ; 5, her frendes ; 6, ye ryde ; 7, them yet ; lady is in the keepyng ; 9, tyll that ; 11, rode he ; 12, sayd to her ; court of ; 14, be two ; 16, owne pleafure ; 17, them in fonder ; 18, why they ; 25, quod kyng P. ; in there all sodeynly as ; 28, you also ; 30, vnto hym ; 31, more for her ; yow bothe ; 33, knyght ; 37, [are] ; fawe ; 38, he was wroth and fyerfly and lyghtly lepte.

115. 1, and in grete hafte drewe out ; 5, and therwith he ; 7, had seen ; buffet y^t the other had ; 12, with a ; 13, kyng P. ; 15, I lacke ; kyng P. ; [but] ; 22, morowe ; and after ; 26, P. kyng of ; 28, man as ye be ; 29, What is now ; kyng P. ; 30, Syr sayd he ; 31, that is in that ; 35, vpon.

116. 1, 3, 4, kyng P. ; 4, gretely welcome there ; 5, also gretely ; 8, [and there] ; 9, wherwith ; 10, and anguyffhe ; of ioynt ; 12, where as ; 17, kyng P. ; 22, frō ; 26, that they ; 35, hath receyued ; 38, towarde Camelot.

117. 2, where ; 4, moone ; 5, I myghte ; 8, kyng P. ; of this lady ; 12, vnto kyng A.'s courte ; 14, and that ; 16, labour and ; 18, where ; 19, with fair ; 20, vpon ; 22, kyng A. ; glad ; 24, all

the; 25, from the begynnyng vnto the endyng; the quene; 27, kyng P.; 28, fauyng your honour; 38, very cowarde.

118. 7, may well; 8, all deftenyes; 9, that fyr G.; 10, fone vnto; 14, gaue them landes that; outrage; 21, worldly; ¶ Here endeth the thyrd boke of kyng Arthur and of his weddyng.

Book iv.

¶ Here foloweth the fourth boke of the noble and worthy prynce kyng Arthur.

118. 24, Than after; 25, and of; befelle; 27, courte with hym; 28, whiche; hyght Nymue; 30, her in euery place; 33, vpon; vnto kyng; 34, & that for.

119. 2, fwerde Excalybur; 9, And than; from kyng A.; 11, fo euer; 21, no; 22, [fame]; 29, peryll; 30, And than; 31, waye as they wente; 36, put hym awaye.

120. 1, whiche; [grete]; 2, crafte &; 6, And than; and there made; 13, to kyng A.; flewe all that they founde afore them; 14, grete pyte; 19, who wylle; 29, hardyer; 31, fo euer; 35, tydynges came; to the.

121. 9, or it be day; 10, fhall fo flee of; not one; 12, the; 15, he and his knyghtes beyng in; 17, the quene; Kay; 21, we are all; 22, cryed he than; 23, to kyng A. & sayd to hym; 31, than for to; 32, to be; 34, [euen]; 38, vndertake two.

122. 2, therwith fyr K.; 4, fadom depe; 6, [all]; 8, fell downe; 9, that he brake his necke; 11, vpon; to the fholders; 14, as longe as I; [all]; 15, in Humber; 16, noble dedes; 22, kyng A. founde; 24, let we hold vs; [and]; 25, hooft espye; 26, forowe; not be able to helpe; 28, forowe; 29, downe fro; [all]; [but]; 30, on the right hande and on the lefte; 33, full mekely; 34, and she came anone; 35, for the vyctory of that daungerous batayle.

123. 3, and sayd; 4, haue knowledge; 7, kyng A.; 8, not paf; 9, rounde table; 10, buylde; 12, call it; 15, forowe; And whan; 18, to; 20, good knyghtes of the table roude; 22, beft that; 24, bothe olde; 26, the other half; 32, kyng P.; 34, [best]; 37, wel worthy fyr Kay the Senefshall.

124. 5, all the dayes of; 6, Now sayd; 14, & that knowe I full well; 15, and he; 16, but he doth; 20, And whan; 22, as afore is reherced; 23, wonders; 24, was fo; 25, Courte of kyng A.; 26, he alyght; 29, agayne to; 33, tyll men; 35, and by.

125. 3, moone; 4, to; 6, that he; 10, courte of kyng A.; And fo; 12, kyng A.; 25, harte there; 26, kyng A.; aboute hym;

28, cam strayght; 29, kyng A.; 33, by that tyme; 34, on all; 35, and gaue; [all].

126. 3, [ryght]; 6, belonged; 7, they were; 9, [as]; 12, [fuche]; 14, ryche; 15, ryght easely; 16, all that; 19, was aboute a two; 20, And also; 23, Than sayd kyng A. / what; 27, The lord; is named; 32, But that; 33, his prowesse; 35, people & comynalte.

127. 1, very coward; 4, do nothyng; or elles; 6, is no; 7, that wyll; fyr Damas; 8, that wold; 9, in a wayte; to take; 11, in to; 16, fyr D.; 20, [alle]; 21, not tell; 22, quod she; 23, or elles ye shall neuer escape w^t your lyfe; 25, yf I may be delyuered with this and alle.

128. 1, kyng A.; 2, this batayle; 5, fyr A.; 9, And whan; 15, And with; 18, stronge of herte; to morowe; 21, defyreth; 22, haue; 24, that; 25, a ryche quene for euer; 29, Quene Morgan; 30, done as; or elles; 35, hym to.

129. 10, moone; but for all; 11, in hande; 12, fyr A.; 13, fyr O.; 15, scawberde; 16, morowe; 17, in hande; 18, hertely; 19, [al]; 20, to his; 22, morowe; kyng A.; 23, go to; 24, [and fo Arthur herd a masse]; on; 28, of the; 31, was vp on; 36, [&].

130. 3, theyr fheldes; [hede]; 4, grounde; 5, drewe; And in y^e; 6, thus fyghtyng; 7, had put; 11, to do theyr; 12, fyr A.; 13, so that for; 14, fore that he; 15, fast frō; 18, was fore adrad; 20, fyr A.; 21, to; 24, grounde; 27, bothe wroth; 29, that he; 31, a droppe of; 37, as dyd kyng A.

131. 8, fyr Accolon; brake; 10, [fure]; 13, began to saye thus; 19, my lyfe lasteth; 22, leuer so often dye than to yelde me to the / for though I lacke wepen & am wepenles yet shall I; 24, to thy; 31, and worthynesse; 34, be so; 37, [alle]; 38, and quykly gate.

132. 1, [al]; he aperceyued clerely; his good; 4, by fyr Accolons fyde; 8, to; 11, and have loft; 12, vpon; 15, nose and mouth; 24, quod; 26, for than; 33, fyr A.; 35, And quene M.

133. 2, man whiche she moost hateth in this; 3, the moost; 4, as her; 6, with her; 9, fyr A.; 11, for to haue; 12, fyr A.; 13, the trouthe; that you wyll; 14, 16, fyr A.; 17, O my gracyous lorde; 18, you not; 22, blame the; 24, soo be auenged; 27, [alle]; 30, [are]; 31, to vs bothe; 35, that there were; 37, [the]; full fore.

134. 1, that in all y^e worlde lyueth; our moost fouerayne lyege lorde and kynge; 2, grete myshappe and grete myfaenture; 3, agaynst my kynge and; 8, one of my owne knyghtes; 9, to; 10, haue; 14, a very proude; 15, no thyng worth of; 17, this maner of fourme; 20, than on; 21, no erraūt knyghtes; 23, kepte in

pryson; 24, that thou content them; 28-29, I wylle that in all goodly hafte ye come; to me and to my; 31, auauunce; 33, as dooth your; you of your; 34, grete goodnes sayd fyr O. and I promyfe you that from hens forth I shall be at; 37, whiche; ryght fore.

135. 1, Wolde god; 5, for to; 7, fals engyn & treason and; 8, [euer]; 10, youre perfone; 11, short fpace; 14, my selfe; 16, So than; 17, on; 19, furgyens and leches; 20, dayes after; 22, So whan; 23, on horfbacke; to; 25, that I; 27, that kynge; 29, how he lay; 30, damoyfell.

136. 1, Ewayne; 2, wakened; 5, her his; 6, the swerde vnto M.; 7, & she; drewe; 10, for to; 15, sayd Morgan haue; 20, therto I; 21, fyr A.; 22, to; 24, fyr A.; 27, countenaunce outwarde; 28, and yf she; 29, faue her lyfe; 34, quene G.

137. 2, the moofte; 4, Arthur laye; that he; 5, answered her and sayd that he had layde hym downe; 8, tyll I awake hym my selfe; fro her; 17, wonders wroth; and he; 22, hors that; 25, And as they rode they; 27, lady late; 30, fast after; 31, of her; 32, And whan; 37, fo heuy.

138. 2, nedes be; 3, So anone [with al]; 9, that he came; [So]; 11, wyll / for my brother A. is gone; 12, my brother fyr A.; 16, you well; 17, with a; 19, that knyght; what he wolde do; 21, sayd she; 25, of me; 35, Tell hym not that . . . but for the loue of; 37, hym that.

139. 6, kynge A.; to; 11, to the; 14, morowe; 16, in that; 17, one by another; 27, vpon; 32, sayd she; 34, man.

140. 2, wonders; 7, fyr A.; 11, Ewayne was charged; 13, cofyn Ewayne; 18, fyr Gaherys; 20, tyll they; 23, vpon two grete horfes; 26, vpon it; 35, & alfo; somme cause.

141. 5, Ewayne; 6, is lyuynge; 7, Iuftyng; 15, vpon; 21, fyr M.; 22, [and the hors back]; 24, fyr M.; 30, myn here in y^e stede; 31, And than; 34, feke; a knyght auenturous.

142. 2, to; 4, in this worlde; vs two; fholde matche; 6, yf he were; 8, more weyker; ye are; 18, two sheldes that; 20, arofe vpon; 21, drewe; 22, drewe; 26, not accordynge for; 29, to; 38, euenfonge tyme; febled fore.

143. 2, waxed than; 6, I perceyue; 8, wordes; 12, Marhaus place; 13, I merueylle; 15, nor gentylwomen; 16, [tho]; it is the; 19, wytyches and enchaütereffes; the mooft parte of them; 20, ony man; 24, And as y^e frensishe book reherfeth; 26, as fyr L.; 27, Bors de Gaule; [fyr Pellias]; 28, fyue knyghtes; 29, [lytel]; 30, [the]; 32, had [all thre] there.

144. 6, So longe they rode tyll they; 7, and aboue; 20, [be];

[one]; 24, god spare; 27, shall we chose eueryche; 31, Than sayd; 33, Than sayd.

145. 1, them to; 3, monethes; [and]; 4, eche knyght; 9, where as; 12, morowe; 16, moone; 18, to god; 20, to you; 22, to that one; 24, G. sawe x knyghtes; 25, made; 30, & fmote them downe bothe; 31, And whan.

146. 4, veryly sayd; and yf that he; 6, that hit; and honour to; 8, wolde be gladd to; 10, me semeth; Ryght thus; 11, that other; 12, on that; of the launde ther; 14, dwarfe whan he came nyghe to the knyght sayd; 19, put it to his iudgemēt; 20, euen so be it; And than; 21, they two; 22, in to my handes; ye fyr; 24, bytwene; 25, And so whan the damoyfell was; 33, vnto.

147. 1, go our way; 3, they were bothe accorded; 5, demaūded; 7, bothe hand and; 10, euen now more; 11, he is named; 15, and also the; 18, at thofe; 21, but y^t he; 22, the thre; 25, was there; 31, by cause; 38, to the worste.

148. 4, fomytyme; 6, alle this; [hyt]; 11, nyghte in the mornynge; goo seke; 12, that I can; 23, that grete; 27, moone; and; 31, A my good frende; 32, that ye wyll tell me; 34, and am.

149. 2, therfor I praye the; 5, vnto; 6, do suffre; for to take; 8, afore this tyme; I neuer one fayre worde; 10, that euer she may; her knyghtes take me and; 12, for to be; but so; 13, not take me; 18, to her; 20, haue her loue; 21, [all]; 22, Whan they . . . y^e one to the other / they chaunged; 27, [in]; Than fyr G.; 31, [foo]; 32, to alyght; 33, [her]; 34, fyr G. told; that his; 35, fyfters.

150. 2, for that ye; 3, [to]; may; 16, And than it was; 18, bedde made; 23, agaynst y^e faythfull promeffe that he made to fyr P.; 24, had not; 31, theyr beddes; 33, went; 34, in a; 36, herte almoost; 38, lenger abyde.

151. 2, [faste]; 4, thus to; 5, not flee; 6, and left them slepyng; 9, ony man; might make; 10, to; 11, streyght to; where as they; 12, grete shame for hym; 13, and than he; 14, forth his; 17, and faythfull seruyce that; 19, I be; 20, [oute]; 21, vnto her; 23, to his; 24, the gretest forowe that euer man herde; 25, And than; the lady E.; wakened out of; 27, that it was; 28, fyr P. also; 29, me y^t; 36, [his]; 37, moone; cause of his forowe; 38, Than the; how that.

152. 2, wolde; he were; 3, [sayd she]; that he; 5, euyl a; is now or; 6, presumptuous lady; 7, his lorde and mayster; 8, fo lyenge; 9, had neuer seen; 10, And in the meane whyle; 11, to; that no; 15, [for]; she keft; 16, hym out of measure; 18, [vnto]; now loue; 19, whiche I tofore moost hated of all men lyuynge;

This is ; 21, the lady E. ; 23, Go thy waye hens thou ; no more ; 32, fente fuche ; 34, lorde god.

153. 5, theyr lyues ; 6, returne ; 11, vnto a ; demaunded ; 12, not herborowe ; treatynge ; 17, fo euer ; 18, and my ; 22, and forthwith he shewed to ; 24, come in ; happen that they ; 25, here in this castell ; 30, how he hyght ; 31, with what man ; 32, faid he ; 33, I am borne ; 34, to.

154. 1, of all thy ; 2, for to morrow ; 3, with the ; none other ; 6, encountre ; 7, neuer noo ; 9, wolde reuenge the deth of my . vij . fones ; 10, Syr I requyre you fayd fyr M. ; 11, ye ; 14, and vnto ; 17, the ; to thy chambre where thou ; 23, where they ; 30, fones of the duke ; 31, dyd not touche them.

155. 3, fayd fyr M. ; 4, Than whan ; 6, vnto fyr ; 7, vnto fyr M. ; 8, [vp] ; 9, by a comyn ; 10, Pentecost ; 11, he to come ; his fyxe ; 16, renommed to haue smytten downe ; 19, dayes ; 20, whose name was called F. ; whiche ; 22, comen to ; 28, fayd fyr M. / vseth he to ; 30, bere hym he is fo grete ; 33, was ware of hym ; holy tree ; 36, clubbe of yren [in his hande] & came agaynst fyr M. as fast as he myght dryue ; 37, al to peces & lyght on a stone & al to frusshe it in to y^e erth & there.

156. 3, [in] ; 4, coude not ; 5, [hym] ; 6, he gaue ; many a ; 7, to fall ; in y^e ; 10, [grete] ; 11, all the ; 12, man after ; 13, gretely thanked ; 19, Ofanna ; 24, whiche ; 28, wherfore ; the pryce was ; 29, and the pryce was a Ierfawcon ; 31, that went with hym ; 32, to a ; [the] ; 33, a full curteys lady.

157. 3, fyr Ewayne was ; 4, vnto ; 15, the lady ; foo many ; 16, to ; neyther vpon ; nor ; 17, [no] ; to speke ; 21, vpon your bodyes ; wronge and extorcyon vnto this lady ; the two bretherne ; 24, affygne vs ; playne batayle ; 26, morow ; 28, bothe the ; 32, and after rode ; 34, Than rode they.

158. 2, horfe tayle ; and yet brake not his spere ; 6, auoyded fodeynly ; 8, grete strokes ; 9, passynge fore ; 10, that he ; fought they ; 11, enraged and without reason ; 15, And whan fyr H. fawe that ; 16, vnto ; 19, and fyr H. made grete moone ; 20, vnto her landes ; 24, And than whan it ; 25, [fyr Marhaus and fyre Vwayne] ; 30, And ryght at ; 32, Gawayn had with hym.

159. 2, whiche had ; 4, yf that ; 7, vnto kyng A.'s courte ; 9, were all they of the ; 14, than lyuyng ; 22, had ben slayne in thofe . xij . monethes ; 24, fyr P. ; 25, but that ; 27, so it is ; Frensshe boke ; 30, and fire T. was fore ; 35, where as ; 36, to be ; 37, on fyr L.'s fyde . ¶ Thus endeth the fourth boke of this present volume.

Book v.

¶ Here foloweth the fyfth boke of the noble and worthy prynce kynge Arthur.

160. 1, had rested a whyle after; 11, vnto; 13, vnto the; 16, as it is; 17, as a; 22, and thy; 30, fet vpon; them for; 31, vnto.

161. 9, them for to; 25, in all chrestendom.

162. 3, Yder; [promysed to brynge]; 8, y^t they sholde here theyr; his noble; 13, creature nor prynce; 18, to; 30, tofore ye; 35, so to do; 36, we do you to wyte; 37, his chere and; that ye haue.

163. 1, an other maner man; 4, his grete; 5, fawe in our dayes; 9, and he; 12, wayes in the; 15, of his; Geneweys; 24, to Turkye; 27, Than all; 31, And also he; 35, mountaynes of Sauoye.

164. 9, concluded that . . . shold be arested; 20, la beale.

165. 2, in to; 3, drowned; 13, was; 15, to the bore; 20, a might; 25, hym to; 28, your realmes; whiche ye haue; 32, ye are; 33, right horryble.

166. 1, ye; 2, cōquerour cōfort; foone after; 3, Bireflete; 20, the whiche was full nygh of your blode; 21, ye; 22, a valyaunt; 28, ye fe; 29, there shall ye not fayle to; 30, as I; the realme of F.; kynge A.; 32, and called vnto; 34, and for.

167. 1, them; 2, them; theyr; 4, [euer]; vnto the forlonge; 6, and sayd he wold; [in]; 7, vp the mounte; 11, vnto whome; 16, deed [the]; 17, vnto; 18, [duc]; 20, from the grete; 22, sayd the wydowe; nought by; 25, hath ouer comen &.

168. 4, [murthred]; 6, handes; Than anone; 11, with grete anguyffhe threwe; clubbe of yren; 12, thre damoyfels; 13, vnto our lorde Ihesu Chryft; of the noble kynge A.; 14, was one; 15, whyle aboue; 17, [euer]; so tombeled & weltred; 18, vnto; 19, y^t kepte; 27, and also the grete; take it to you; 28, so that I haue his; 33, vnto.

169. 1, vpon; 2, morowe after the noble kynge A.; grete hoost; 3, countye of; [and]; 4, paulyons; 7, parte therof; 8, made a; 11, kynge A.; 13, to L. the Emperour; [ye]; 17, on horfbacke; 18, pyght in a medowe many; 20, towarde whiche paulyon; 25, or elles; 27, [ye]; 28, fore an angred; 34, was fyr G.

170. 1, drewe; 2, And anone; 6, & than; 8, starke dede on the grounde; came there; 12, grounde; 15, came vnto; 16, vnto; downe right; 25, drewe; 30, passyng grete; & oure; 31, vnto; 32, and hurte; 34, vnto.

171. 6, fame nyghte; 7, morowe; 8, Launcelot and fyr Cadour /

with ; 13, thre score thoufande ; 15, fyr L. ; 23, goodly araye ; 24, manfully ; detrenched ; 26, [of the party] ; farafyns partye ; 29, where so euer ; 30, & his myght ; 33, flyght that ; 34, apparayled ; 35, how his knyghtes.

172. 3, [auf my self] ; 4, knyghtes as I haue ; fyr C. ; 7, this daye ; 14, fyr L. ; 16, of the noble kyng A. and of ; 18, Senatoure that ; 20, [for] ; 24, [for] ; 26, Than anone ; 27, afore ; 28, hastily folowe ; Than was kyng A. pryuely warned ; 30, kyng A. ; 34, the noble.

173. 1, Soyffons ; 2, baners ; 3, and fawe that he was befette ; 5, to ; 9, And he therwith commaüded ; 13, men were ; 14, [appertyces] feates of warre ; 17, in all especyall of them ; in to ; 18, he hymselfe ; 19, as it ; 20, his good ; [as] ; 23, there he ; 24, meruaylous quantite ; 27, heed / & the body flewe . vj . farafyns in the fallynge downe ; 28, [so dyd] ; 29, table dyd full nobly ; batayle endured long ; 31, that ; 32, oftentymes ; 33, longe so ; 34, and at the ; [themperour] ; 37, ouerthwart.

174. 2, his helme ; 3, he his ; 4, Than whan ; 8, vnto the noble conquerour ; 9, [& the trumphe] ; 13, those that ; caufed ; 14, to ferche ; all theyr ; 18, & the kyng of Ethyope ; 19, dyuers other ; 20, thre score ; 21, noble kyng A. ; 22, aromatyke gommies ; he dyd ; thre score folde ; 23, & than ; 25, bodyes were fette ; 27, that were ; vnto ; 33, of me ony ; that you ; 34, vnto ; 35, vnto.

175. 1, fhold suffyfe ; 4, nor aske of me ne of my landes ony trybute ; 7, Lucius lyenge ; 14, [no] ; 16, feynge ; 18, to ; 20, Brabande ; 11, hye Almayn ; 23, maner wyfe ; 24, the noble ; full longe ; 27, tolde hym ; 31, Wycharde ; 32, and also ; 33, ye may gete there.

176. 3, on the nexte morowe ; 4, aduentures ; 5, knight armed ; 6, vnto ; 7, faue onely ; 11, vnto ; from whens [that] ; 23, drewe ; 25, fmote hym ; 28, Than that ; 31, bled fast ; 32, thy blode ; 34, all the leches.

177. 1, fyr G. ; 5, I wyll ; 9, fyr G. ; 16, Alexandrye ; 17, the lord ; 24, arte / & of thy beinge ; fyr G. ; 25, pryce kyng ; 26, for to ; 27, At Chryftmasse ; 33, knyght or knaue ; [thou] ; 34, tell the trouth ; 35, noble courte ; 37, his owne ; 38, fortunèd & comen.

178. 2, than yf ; 3, prouynce of Parys ; 4, fholde haue ; 7, and hath ; of armes of all D. ; 9, to the nombre of thre score thoufande ; men of warre ; 10, flee & hye vs fast fro hens ; wyll do ; to vs ; 11, he blowe no ; 12, here fast ; 13, vpon ; the ones ; 14, nor ; 15, hymselfe ; 16, after hym ; so they ; 17, that ; where as ; 20, who it was that had so hurte & wounded hym ; fyr G. ; 26, hote blood ranne downe ; 32, [vnto] ; 34, many a thousand ; 35, fayd fyr.

179. 9, with them; 14, lepyng; 15, wherfore he; 20, vpon the colde; 23, grete; 27, toward them; 30, many a; 34, fyersly with.

180. 1, And than; 3, gyue backe & flee; 4, well my; 6, a gyaunt named I.; 14, quytte them so well; 15, [and ward]; 16, flayne of fyr G.; 23, hym theyr; and tolde to hym; 26, [noble]; 28, fyr G.; 30, he ben; 34, by his; 36, do make.

181. 3, the kyng [Arthur] and requyryng; 7, ne none of your damoyelles; 13, [for]; 19, [there] a; femed it was moost best; 22, so wanne; & after they wanne; 23, kyng A.; 24, vpon; by the; 25, wonne & goten; sent a cōmaundement; 27, through & came to the; and there; 28, in heuynesse; a knyght of his owne countree to be capytayne; 29, the forefayd; 30, vnto kyng A.; 31, vpon them; 32, his true; 33, and of Pauye; 34, Than king A. rode; 35, there he wanne; 36, all that he foude; wolde; as so went to; 38, of Rome; for to.

182. 1, lord & chefe gouernour or not; vpon; 3, whiche at that tyme; within the Cite of; 4, and they all; largely goodes; 5, they all; 6, Baronny of the R.; 7, hym as; holy creme; to fuche an hygh and noble estate; 8, vnto you sayd kyng A.; 10, there as; 11, crownacyon; 12, the Romayns tell; there he was; 13, solempnyte; 14, certayne tyme; 15, vnto F.; he gaue; 16, deseruyng; 17, none of them; neyther ryche nor; 18, vnto; 19, that he; and be his true subgette al the; 20, that he made; and cōfytued his men vnto grete rycheffe and honour; 21, and all the grete men of estate; togyder afore the tryumphaunt conquerour kyng A.; 22, Noble Emperour blyssed be the eternall god; mortal warre; is all; 23, conquest is; 24, make ony; 25, and hertely praye your noble grace; and also we praye you to gyue; for to; 26, a longe seafon; 27, for to; with grete; 28, kyng A. vnto them; 30, was there; 31, of other baggage & had; 32, kyng A. returned; 33, [not]; [ne take] by the waye neyther take vytaile ne none; 34, truly paye; 36, [his wyf]; with hym.

¶ Thus endeth the fyfth boke of the conquest that kyng Arthur had agaynst Lucius the Emperour of Rome ¶ And here foloweth the fyxth boke whiche speketh of fyr Launcelot du lake.

Book vi.

¶ Here foloweth the fyxth boke of the noble and worthy prynce kyng Arthur.

183. 1, Anone; the noble and worthy; 2, [thenne]; 4, [but];

good knyghtes ; 10, [other] ; 13, wherfore he is ; 14, after that ; 16, certaynly ; 17, ladyes and ; all the dayes of his lyfe ; 18, grete ; 19, a longe whyle ; 21, his brother fyr L. ; 22, [for] ; 23, vpon ; all poyntes ; 24, a grete playne ; 28, vs & ; 29, for of all this feuen yere ; 30, there & ; 32, layde his.

184. 1, slepte ; 4, after those thre ; 5, behelde ; that he had neuer seen ; 7, at all poyntes ; 8, these thre knyghtes that fledde ; [he] ; 9, downe to ; groude ; 10, suche a stroke ; hors and man ; 11, vnto the erthe ; than he rode ; vnto ; 12, more than the length of a spere ; 13, and reyned ; 15, And whan ; 17, [for] ; his brother fyr ; And so ; 18, and had ouertakē ; [&] ; 20, and than he ; [down] ; 23, he vnarmed them ; 29, that was ; 31, which ; 32, [by] ; 36, hangeth ; that belōged ; vnto.

185. 1, ende of ; 3, ony knyght had ; 4, and so he ; 8, and there he ; 9, brother fyr L. ; And anone ; bete vpon ; 11, Anon there ; 13, & fewtred his ; 17, and caught ; 18, and so ; [owne] ; 23, all y^e dayes of ; 26, he toke ; [garte to] vnarmed hym ; sharpe thornes ; 27, and after ; in to ; 31, a slepe ; 32, whan I went frō ; 35, fyr T.

186. 3, heet of y^e sonne ; 6, canape of ; 9, and than ; 12, [for] to ; eche of them sayd she ; 13, vnto ; 23, colde chambre ; 28, sayd the damoyfell ; 31, [fayre damoyfel] ; 33, ony persone.

187. 1, that ye are ; 2, that is now ; 6, is also ; 8, ye one ; ye wyll ; 9, vnto your ; yf ye wyll not do thus / here shall ye abyde ; 10, tyll that ye dye ; 13, be ye ; 14, haue none ; 16, vpon ; 17, lyuyng vnto ; 21, [the] ; to ; that brought hym his ; 23, in all ; 24, sayd she ; 27, am aferde ; quenes wytyches ; 30, that your ; 31, of all the ; that ben lyuyng ; 33, me for to.

188. 1, laft past ; 3, yf ye ; vpon ; 4, morowe ; 7, 11, sayd the damoyfell ; 14, [be she that shall] ; 15, and there ; to abyde me ; 20, and arayed ; 21, vnto his ; 24, & in no wyfe ; 25, ony hyghe ; 29, and so ; 30, and founde there ; 31, [fady] ; 32, [there] ; 33, belonged the.

189. 2, lyghtly out ; 3, lepte after ; 6, flade ; 7, And fyr L. toke hym to his mercy ; 10, my loue & lady ; 12, fyr L. ; was fore ; 13, lately ; 17, [al] ; whiche ; 18, fyr B. ; 19, so fore ; 20, moone ; 21, fyr B. ; a very ; 23, he goodly ; and toke me to his mercy ; 25, you ; are ; 28, often tymes ; 30, fyr B. ; 36, all my ; yf ye ; or myghty of ; 37, than ye ; 38, stode thus talkynge ; daye appered.

190. 2, shewed hym ; towarde the ; 4, As foone ; 5, kynge B. doughter ; 6, than she ; wente ; 7, that it was fyr L. ; 8, hastily ; [from hym] ; [lete] ; 10, there he ; 11, fyr L. ; 12, that was ; 16, fro his hors ; he wente ; 22, wyft ; whether ; 23, wherfore shall

whyle; 24, frendes & kynrede; 25, now on; 26, vnto my; 30, that foule fared with; 32, [here]; 34, trust best; 35, payntyng.

191. 2, so I shall; 7, and [to]; 21, with that falle; 23, A.'s courte; 26, out of ioynthe; fyr M.; 29, his spere; 31, helme pyght; 34, [grete]; fyr L.; all y^e; 35, all to brake.

192. 1, drewe out; 2, gaue eche other; 4, nose and his mouth; on bledynge; and his eeres also; 5, [therwith] his hors; 10, he was hytte; 14, [there]; 18, they promysed; 20, kynge B.; goo feke; 24, knowlege therof; 27, with a; 30, sayd the; 32, as for; 33, sayd the damoyfell; a ryght; 35, as the best knyght is; 36, name is; and of what courte and.

193. 2, that I; 6, done this; 8, and [to]; [dayly]; 9, and defyre damoyfel; 10, to; 12, and vnto; wheron the bacyn henge; 14, ende of; and with fuche a myght that he made the bottom fall out; 16, well nygh; 21, fyr G.'s; 26, the better in his; 31, from the; 32, and than; strenght togyder; 33, and shewed me; 35, the now shortly; fyr T.

194. 1, in theyr; 2, as it was possyble for them to ren; 3, in the; 4, wherof y^e; 8, grete strokes; 9, holde theyr dyntes; 12, [Thenne]; were bothe; 15, Saye on sayd fyr Launcelot; 16, art sayd sir T.; 17, one a; 18, so y^t thou be not he; 21, neuer [to]; [that]; 24, Truly; 26, whiche was; 27, than lyuyng; 28, for and; 29, of an other; to that I; 31, haue vtterly; after myght; 33, I haue.

195*. 1, [that]; be bytwene; 4, [very]; table round; [and]; 6, was ony; 7, And than hurtled; 13, besperpled; 15, [a]; full lowe; 16, That soone; 17, as a lyon; & so he; 18, and than he; afonder; 20, than he went; 22, take ye . . . sayd the damoyfell; ye this; 23, to go & delyuer; 24, And so; fyr G.; 25, lende; 26, fyr G.; 30, excepte your selfe; 34, [owne]; [that].

196*. 1, fyr Kays; 6, say to them that; 8, [that]; 9, hygh feest; I thynke to be; 11, went; 12, [ther]; 13, And forthwith; porter agaynst; 14, that his eyen starte out of his heed; [hastely he]; 15, [dore]; 16, eueryche; 18, bycause he was wounded that he had slayne fyr Turquyne; fyr G.; fyr L.; 20, well all; 22, fyr E.; 28, [euer] belonged; 29, [fatte]; 31, one good; 34, for to.

197. 7, to his; 8, yourselfe alone before; 11, damoyfell; 13, [oute]; 22, longe haft; 24, as T.; 27, du forest; 29, sayd she; 30, go or ryde; 32, But fyr; that ye.

198. 1, this countree; 3, what so euer; But to be; 4, neuer to be / for yf I were than shold I be boude to tary w^t my wyfe; 9, in y^e warres; 10, Or els; 14, rode he; 15, in to; 16, grete longe;

21, a myghty; 22, full of pynnes of yren; 23, vnto the nauyll; 25, [men and wymmen]; 28, wente strayght.

199. 6, of that; stroke; 7, fyr L.; ran after; as fast as he myght; 8, to the foundement; 14, [knyzte]; 15, thou were; dede of worhip; 16, ony knyght dyd; and therof; 19, sayd he; [fyr] 20, [al]; 21, no knyght; 23, theyr lyues / & also many; 27, in to; 29, is the; 30, as his ryght and appertenaunce; 32, & after V.

200. 2, it happened hym; 4, with a; 5, he & his hors were well chered; 12, that came; 13, vpon; with theyr; 14, hymselfe; 16, I sholde be; 25, and therefore; 27, [for]; 35, were we; 38, fyr L.

201. 1, or els not; 2, sayd they / than; 3, as ye; 4, vpon; 7, for to be; 9, knyght swore vpon theyr; 12, so in; 15, chambre wyndowe for to; 16, in the; 19, sayd he; haue done; that I; [for]; 21, [shall ye repose yow]; ye take your rest; 22, and anone there; brought hym; 24, morowe; 31, kyng A.'s courte.

202. 1, had longe; 13, whose name; 14, [that]; 23, on the; one to another; 29, ynough ado to; 30, [euer]; 32, Anone they; 37, my herte ryfeth.

203. 3, myght; 7, whiche ful; 11, at the; 19, so that we; 20, well ye; 25, and the thre.

204. 2, [bothe]; 3, sayd fyr Ector; 11, [al]; 14, [that he was astroyed] that of a grete whyle; 15, I wel fe; 16, and so he; 19, horses ren as fast as; 20, theyr fheldes; brake; 27, [al]; 30, of grete; my lyfe; 34, Now let vs speke of.

205. 9, in to y^e myddes; 21, [called]; 25, that knewe; 26, w^t a loude voyce; 27, you of your; to helpe; 29, fought he; 32, tyl that.

206. 1, logres; 4, [euen]; 6, hyther; yf you; 10, to a lytell; 14, fawe stande by h^y. xxx.; 16, grynned; 17, them fore; 18, redy to do; 21, through them; 25, couerd w^t; 28, wherof he was aferde; 30, As foone as he was; 35, Therwith; [out].

207. 3, I wyll not leue it; 4, ye dyd leue; 6, fyr L.; 8, [me]; 10, sayd she; 13, whiche there lyeth; 14, fyr G. the bastardes lyfte hand; 15, that I; 18, body alyue; 19, haue had; I wolde; 24, [foo]; 27, Nigramus; 30, to; 31, fyr M. laye; [And]; 32, [paf-synge]; [the]; 35, went vnto; 38, a holer; was there.

208. 3, to kyng A.'s courte; 7, [And]; 10, two lytell; 11, y^t came; 13, [aboute]; 14, as she wold; henge fast; 16, In the meane; 18, of y^e worlde; 20, flypte awaye; 21, knowe it; 23, to y^e; 24, [wel]; lady sayd fyr L.; 26, that I may; 32, clymmed; 33, rotten braūche; doune with the braūche; 34, with her.

209. 1, [and]; 2, fyr L.; 3, wolde haue the; 5, [but] as I

commaunded her sayd fyr Phelot; 7, [vnto the]; that an armed . . . shold; 11, other wyfe; 15, the therfro; 16, euer ony; 17, loked aboue; 18, [ther with]; 19, body of y^e tree; 25, Than fyr L.; 32, coude; 33, [foo]; 34, And as soone as; 35, thens & thanked; oure lord god.

210. 1, [out]; 2, many other wayes; 8, why wylte; to; 11, [two]; 16, tofore god; there; 18, named; 19, to kepe me; 21, fyr L.; 23, & the lady; 24, other fyde; but that y^e; 25, [fyre]; 26, rydyng after vs; [foo]; 28, stroke; 30, [he sayd and]; 32, from his; drewe; 33, [al]; caught fyr L.; 36, wyll not; 38, fyr L.

211. 1, in my; 3, neuer doo; 6, vnto; 7, fyr L.; 8, me thy name; 9, fyr L.; 13, a fore; for fyr L.; 14, [many]; 21, and as the frenshe boke sayth; 22, to; 28, full glad of; 30, fyr K.; 33, now and than; 34, had taken.

212. 6, whan he was in daüger to haue ben slayne; 11, Than anone; [ther] came; 16, they vnderstode; Than fyr M.; 18, all the; 20, by y^e doughter of; 22, [for]; 24, Gahalatyne tolde; 25, they thre; [fame]; 26, [that]; 30, bothe of. ¶ Thus endeth the, etc. ¶ Here after foloweth the story; whiche was called, etc.

Book vii.

¶ Here foloweth the feuenth boke of the noble and worthy prynce kyng Arthur.

213. 1, plenare; 3, solempne & hygh; 6, had euer; 7, all other hygh; 9, some grete aduenture or; 11, before; 17, at [the]; 19, faue thofe; 20, an encountre; 22, accomplifshed; 25, [al]; 29, fcyvence & roume; 30, went; 31, bygge yonge; drewe; 32, to kyng; 33, blyffe you; 35, for to; [and requyre you]; 37, to me.

214. 1, ne losse; And as for the fyrst gyfte; 2, this fame; 3, that ye; 4, your petycyon; 5, sayd he / this; 6, to me; these; 11, conceyte; 12, sayd he / as for that be it may be; 15, nor my; I wolde fayne knowe; 16, That haue I meruayle of; 17, thy owne; one of the; 18, [one]; noble kyng A.; vnto the stewarde fyr K.; 21, haue; 24, had ben comen; 25, and harneys; [fo] he hath asked; 27, that is to saye; 30, men that had brought hym; 37, fyr B.

215. 3, [& brothe vpon]; 4, brought vp & fostred; 15, nerer; 16, [as] fyr L.; 18, euery nyght; 19, alle thofe; 21, knewe of ony; 24, where as were; 25, y^e barre ne; 27, Pentecost; 29, yerely he; 30, on; 31, had herde of; And than came; 34, came in; 35, [in to the halle].

216. 1, that here in your courte ; 3, What call ye ; 5, sayd she ; not be knowen ; 16, that bē here ; 18, Than with these ; 26, fyr L. ; 34, that his hors.

217. 2, [as] ; 3, of fyr ; 4, hym that ; [al] openly ; 9, of the kechyn ; for to ; 11, sayd / yet ; 14, what fyr B. ; 15, that it ; 19, to hym ; 21, the spere ; 28, [they] ; 30, to auoyde his ; 31, put his.

218. 9, the vttermest ; 13, [fo] ; 19, I shal tell you ; 21, sayd he ; 23, sir L. ; now more ; 25, nor drynke ; 27, go on his iourney ; 31, also fyr L. ; that it ; 32, what kynne ; 33, vnto.

219. 1, haft gotten in ; 3, haft slayne ; 6, wafsher of dyffhes ; 7, fyr B. ; ye lyft ; 9, of kynge ; [fo] ; 10, or I shal ; 14, So as they thus ; 15, [euer] ; 20, as the knyghte was bounden ; 21, vnto the theues one at the fyrst stroke ; 25, & than ; 29, fyr B. ; 30, of the ; 35, done is but.

220. 2, tofore ; 3, for to ; 5, of her ; 9, morowe ; 18, [vpon other] ; 19, eche at other egrely ; 21, in to ; [he] ; 22, vnto the lande ; 30, knyghtes hors ; 32, and myght ; 33, shamefully.

221. 4, sayre language ; 7, for yf thou ; 10, that ye ; 11, So thus ; 12, the chode ; 16, by it ; 18, Whan the damoyfell fawe ; the blacke knyght ; 20, the valey ; I thanke you ; 22, came to the damoyfell and sayd ; 25, has ben sedde ; 26, Wherefore cometh he in ; 29, wold god that ye wold ; or elles ; yf ; 31, to daye ; for I ; 34, the whiche is ; 35, Syr they ; 36, [for] ; [that].

222. 1, well be ; 2, neuerthelesse how ; [as] ; he is ; 5, his fete ; 6, his harneys ; 14, fro the lyghtly ; not a ; 16, thou arte ; 17, vpon ; 19, fyr B. ; 21, stacke ; 23, fyr B. ; 25, in a ; 26, dyed forthwith ; And whan fyr B. ; 27, [thenne] ; 29, nyghe her ; to hym . Awaye ; 30, go oute ; 32, as thou haft slayne ; 33, through thyn ; is a knyght that ; 34, flee backe ; 35, fyr B. ; 36, away for hym ; 37, wyll flee me.

223. 2, than thus to rebuke me aldaye ; 3, I fele ; 4, or truly ; 7, dryuynge ; 9, of her ; 10, sayd she ; 14, [that] ; 17, fyr B. ; 20, notes ; 21, that lightly ; 24, anone they ; out their ; 26, fyr B.'s hors ; 28, groude ; lightly auoyded ; 29, his fete ; fyr B. ; 30, [al] ; 31, champyons ; bledde fore ; 33, why stāde ; 35, for to se ; fuche a stynkyng boye [fo] ; a valyaunt.

224. 1, [the wede ouer grewe the corne] ; The grene knyght herynge thefe wordes was afhamed / & incōtynent he gaue fyr B. a myghty stroke ; 3, through out ; fyr B. ; 4, of the damoyfels language ; 6, fyr B. threwe hym downe ; 7, And incontynent ; 8, fyr B. mercy ; 9, graunte hym his lyfe ; 10, fyr B. ; 11, whiche is comen ; 12, haue slayne ; [falsē] ; 13, thou kechyn page ; 15, fyr B. ; 17, my lyfe ; O sayre ; 23, [the] not ; 26, for yf ; 35, grete nede ; I am fore adradde ; 37, morowe.

225. 1, vnto; 2, alwayes the damoyfell; 3, [as]; 4, and fet hym at a; Me thynketh meruayle; 5, why that; 16, went vnto theyr rest; 18, fyr B.; 19, morowe; 24, commaūdemēt; 25, and where so euer; 26, fyr B.; and whan I; 27, [that]; 31, Than departed; 34, the yet / and flee away.

226. 5, thou shalte; thou; 12, in paulyons & vpon skaffoldes; 13, at that castell; 14, and there he fawe; a page and; 17, fo anone he armed hym / and toke his hors hastely; 18, whiche was all reed; 19, belonged vnto hym; 20, [that]; nyghe fyr B.; 22, here is; 23, not your brother; whiche has ben; 26, vnhappy knaue; flayne your; 27, and [this]; 28, fawe hym ouercome; 29, with his owne; 30, I can not be; 31, And with this; bothe the; 34, to other; 35, as now here; and; 37, the damoyfell cryed out.

227. 4, fyr B.; wonders fore so; 5, and grete meruayle it was to beholde; 8, vnto the; 9, [with me]; 17, thanke ye now; 18, all that; 19, And so; [thenne]; 21, fyr B.; 24, morowe; 25, [dyned] brake theyr faste; fyr B.; 28, fyr B.; 32, fyr B. and the damoyfel departed.

228. 1, fyr B.; 8, you to wyte; 9, yf I; 11, mete with the; 12, man of moost; in y^e; 13, it well; 14, it be; 15, within a whyle they; before; a fayre cite; 18, goodly to; 19, is fuche / that whan; 20, he lyeth; for to; 21, and all gentylmen; 23, or thynke; fyr B.; 26, there he; 27, [there]; 28, bothe men; 34, fyr B.; 36, for yf.

229. 1, fayle hym; 3, sayd sir B.; 8, I well; 11, myle hens; 13, or damage; 15, that this; nor of; 16, hath layde; 18, this good; 19, it were grete shame to me yf I withdrewe me now; 24, I haue meruayle; of man; 26, for more fouler nor more; 27, rule nor rebuke; 34, batayles; 37, [it].

230. 3, you or; 4, sayd she; 6, sayd fyr B.; 7, as ye ought to; 8, fyr B.; speke thus; 9, fayre to me; gretely myne herte; 13, to knowe whether; 14, vnto; fyr B.; 17, wel sayd he / than; 18, vttermest; 19, And whan fyr B.; 20, all the myght that; [euer]; brake; 24, gaue eche other; 25, they fo; fell bothe; 27, many places; 31, [though hym lothe were] fyr B. [aboue]; ouerthwarte vpon hym; 33, for to.

231. 1, knowe well; knyghte my broder; 6, these knyghtes; 34, morowe.

232. 1, On the morowe; 3, fyr P.; awaye; 4, sayd she; 5, fyr P.; 6, laundes; 9, fyr B.; 12, lady is; 20, And for this cause he taryeth; 25, fyr B.; 31, fyr L.

233. 3, fyr B., haue a good; [and]; 4 cam of; 8 [thenne]; 9, fyr G.; 13, knoweth not; 15, and brought a; 17, lady dame Lyones; 20, the lady; 23, du lake was; 26, sayd he; 27, shold

do; 28, fayd the lady; were stronge; 29, de brewfe & that; 30 was called.

234. 1, [to fore]; 2, erth; 6, here befyde; and thyder; 11, & whan thou haft thus done / go to; 13, [to] drynke; 17, & good courage; 19, none other thyng; 25, waye; betoke; 26, vnto; 34, [but]; 36, and fyr G.

235. 6, in scorne; 7, not for hym; reed knight; 8, and yf so be that I; 12, we of; 13, fyr B.; 14, on the; there a maffe; 16, vnto a; 17, as were; 23, henge shamefully nyghe; [ful]; 27, vnto this; 32, fyr B.; 33, I thus.

236. 1, [for]; for in; 5, fyr B.; 9, vnto the; 10, stronge walles; 12, bette vpon; 18, vnto hym; 19, batayle with hym; 21, whiche as; 25, wyll I worshipfully wyne; 26, vnto; 27, fo egrely; 28, knyghtes lepte there out; 30, that were.

237. 2, mery and; 5, fyr B.; 7, fayd he; [for]; 9, glad chere; 11, ground; her; 15, fyr B.; 17, it is a grete; 18, for yf; 21, company; 23, els dye in the quarell; 25, yonder grete elmes; Fye fye for; fyr B.; 26, and fuche shamefulnes; 27, & the ordre of; 28, thy detestable; 30, me and make me agast; 32, And yf; thou be; 33, all the myght they had.

238. 1, in the; 3, bothe to the groūde; with the reynes; 7, that the; 10, they lyghtly; 13, reled bothe; 18, wolde not; 19, bothe wynde; ftakerynge; pantyng; 20, fo that; 21, and whā; 22, went; 23, [at]; 24, two wylde; [fometyme]; 25, grounde grouelynge; at; 26, of theyr owne; 28, lykelyeft; 29, fore hewen; 33, but full fore he bought or espyed; 35, eche other; a whyle.

239. 4, for them to; it on; 6, vnto the; 8, and ioyfull; 9, he fterte vp fodeynly and badde; [of the reed laundes]; redy to doo; 11, the reed; 12, fyersly; 16, on; fell downe; 18, damoyfel; 20, fo that; And whan; 21, arofe vp; 23, caught; 24, togyder a newe; 26, out of the reed knyghtes; 28, groūde; 29, for to; and than the reed; 32, hanged fo; 34, fo many; 35, [ful]; 36, ye your.

240. 2, [els]; that as; 4, vnto the tyme that I had; 8, alle this; 13, prayed fyr B.; 14, [to your]; 16, all fayd; better to take homage; 18, [for]; for by; 20, al y^t be here; 22, fyr B.; 24, as al; 25, [that he] &; 28, that he; 31, he aske; 32, that he hath had; 35, And than whan.

241. 2, damoyfel L.; vnto; 5, and fo; 9, in the lady Lyones grace; 16, to the; 18, a full noble; 29, whiche; 32, hym at al poyntes.

242. 2, entre in; 6, in armes worshipfully; 9, this / that ye;

[and]; 10, haue had; 11, and kyndnes; that I haue; 18, and honour; and also; 19, be / soone gone; you me; 20, vnto you; shall neuer; 21, vnto; 23, moone & sorowe; 24, whether he rode; 27, coude haue no; 28, so on the; 29, and his armure and rode tyll it was noone; 30, vnto a; 34, fyr B.; 37, haue hym in a wayte.

243. 2, haue your watche; wyfe ye; 3, from hym; [ye]; 5, that the dwarfe; 6, name is; 8, this dwarf; 9, to your; 10, [that]; 11, name is; or els I shall; 13, as ye haue defyred; 14, departed and rode bothe daye and; 15, slepyng by a water syde; and had layde; 16, [for to slepe]; sawe y^t; 18, toke hym; 20, armure and alle that to hym belonged; was; 22, of helpe; 23, therwithall; fyr B. awoke; 24, fyr G.; 31, nexte waye.

244. 2, and a; 3, the poore; passed by me; a knyght that is called; 5, but I coufeyle you that ye folowe hym not; 7, within these two; & therefore; after hym; 8, to hym; Leue we now to speke of; 10, of the; 12, was borne; 13, that he was; [yf]; me the trouth; 14, for euer; 17, vnto; 18, vnto the; [of]; 19, [and] now; 20, now I praye; agayne vnto; 21, tyll he; 23, or [that]; you moche; 29, in hym; 30, a curteis and mylde man / the; 31, well saye; 33, as I haue reuyled hym; 35, fyr B.; [in]; 37, sayeng thou.

245. 10, not he; 15, aboue all other knyghtes; 16, wold I; 19, [ryght]; 21, agaynst your persone; owne will; 23, here in this; I than; 28, down from his hors; 29, many euyl; 31, and there was fyr G.'s wyfe.

246. 1, there came forth in to the hall; 5, tyme thought in hymselfe. Ihesu wolde to god; 6, she is; 7, bothe of; 9, his vnderstandynge; 10, went to; 12, fyr G. espyed; [thenne]; 15, that he; 17, to hym; ye be; 18, bestowed; 28, sholde not lyue; 29, to my; 34, my lorde kyng A.; 36, be gretely; 38, vnto [the].

247. 2, faythfully to; neuer none; 3, And than; 6, how that; 10, damoyfel L. whiche; 12, plyght theyr trouth vnto; 19, was knowne; 22, in that thyng / as that; 26, entent; the one with the other; tyll; 27, [At]; 29, to his; sayd he; 35, And anone he; 36, [there he]; 37, comynge towarde hym; a grete lyght.

248. 3, a grymme; 5, swerde in his; went; 8, the same; 9, [al]; 11, to the erth; fyr G. lepte; 12, and quykly; [fro the body]; 13, stande on his fete; [foo]; 15, And than; 16, Than came he; sawe that; 18, dyshonoured; 19, vnto his fyfter dame Lyones; 20, so fore; sayd dame L.; 22, [my]; 23, I am not ashamed; 25, [it]; fyr G. also; 26, ne by my; 27, is done; And than anone; 29, with [al]; 30, heed of the deed knight; 32, heed stode; 33, it was;

it was afore; 34, the same knyght; [vp]; 35, ledde hym; with her.

249. 2, the damoyfell L.; 3, and also to; 7, that at the; 8, [that]; 11, she hadde; 15, armed anone; and than; 17, to the; 18, strayned so hymself; [foo]; 19, brafte out; 24, and whan he had thus done; 25, And whan he was; 27, so loude; 28, herd her; 30, but the grete; 31, [there] no tongue may; 32, as though she; 33, the damoyfel; 34, gobbettes.

250. 1, whiche ye; 2, sayd the damoyfell L.; done; auowe it; 3, for your; 4, for vs; 5, man on lyue; 7, Now leue; 11, and they all yelded; And after; 14, vnto the other two; 15, & they all; [and]; 16, fyr P.; 24, [Soo]; kynge A.; 27, [with hym]; 29, What is your wyll; 30, sayd he; I am called; 32, ye shall wyte; 33, whiche is; 35, [that euer had the better of me]; 36, and he charged and; vnto your grace and wyll.

251. 3, as moche as lyeth; 6, [And as to the]; 8, [And]; 9, rounde table; 11, [more]; a custome; 12, I haue; it at; 15, that I had; them that; 16, [al]; [of] fyr; 17, ye may; 18, vnto; 20, of the euyl wyll & enmyte that he had cōmyfed agaynst them bothe; 24, for all; 25, [one]; 33, euer ben; 35, kyng A.

252. 3, Perearde; 4, kyng A.; 5, in kynge A.'s courte; 7, table round; fyr P.; 8, vnto; 11, two manly; 16, to theyr; 17, at theyr; 18, with a grete nombre of; 21, in the space of . xv . yeres; 25, is a grete; 28, me now fore.

253. 2, feke a; 4, yf I; 10, monethes after; 15, & therfore; 17, vnto her brother Kynge A.; 19, of his; grete plente for to; 20, well be; 24, had all; we all; 25, of grete; 26, that he; 29, mocke &; 36, is to me grete ioye.

254. 2, go feke; 7, & I doubte not but that she; 8, as ye; 9, quod kynge A.; 10, & in all hafte a messenger was; that rode bothe nyghte; 14, the messenger to ryde; 15, y^e hafte possyble; 19, shall I rule myselfe; 21, maner wyfe; 23, as I wote; 24, my lord the; 29, yf it; 31, valure; 32, Than dame; vnto; 38, be thus.

255. 4, fro thens; for that; 6, where as; 7, & than she; 9, so fore; 11, as a knyghte sholde do; well hole; 17, commaūde; 24, than answered; 26, at kynge A.'s courte; with fyr; 35, as we; 36; quod fyr P.; 37, in all E.

256. 4, [ther]; 10, on the fyde; 15, yles; grūmurfum; 18, Gaunter; 20, [this] fyr T.; 21, tyme was not; 26, knyghtes dyd; 28, fyr G. & his two bretherne fyr A. & fyr G.; 35, and also fyr S.

257. 1, [al]; 7, many other; 9, and fyr G.; 10, the noble; many moo / whiche were to longe to reherse; 11, to speke of; 20,

his dukes / his erles / his barons / & all his ; 21, and fyr Ironfyde ; 22, of ynde ; 23, maner of wyfe ; [not] ; 25, neyther of ; 26, nor of ; nor at the ; 30, of it self ; 31, And this is ; 32, turne it vnto ; in to the lykenes of.

258. 6, vnto ; 8, and al maner of mynstralsye ; 10, on the daye of y^e ; 11, was done ; 12, vnto ; 13, anone there ; 17, fyr G. ; 24, fyr A. ; 34, fyr Lamoracke ; whiche.

259. 1, eyther of them ; 2, & fyr L. ; 3, [and alle] ; 5, Gaunter ; 7, vnto ; 13, fyr Ewayne ; 16, fyr P. and his ; [and man] ; 17, came in ; out of the ; 20, of noble ; them ; 22, reed ; whiche ; 27, them two ; 28, eche other ; 30, Bleoberis ; 31, that grete ; Bleoberis ; groude ; 33, vnto the.

260. 3, [redy] ; 4, nor knowlege of ; kynge A. of Irlande ; 9, there came ; kynge B. ; 10, groude ; 11, and kyng B. ; 15, herde that ; [and] ; gate hym ; 20, [fame] ; 23, fyr L. ; [for] ; 25, [vpon] ; 33, yet I wolde not do it ; 35, [thenne] ; a grete.

261. 3, was a ; 4, fyr B. ; [there] ; 5, mette to gyder ; 6, worft ; 8, hym ageyn ; 9, came there ; 12, [And thenne came in fyr G. ; and knewe that it was fir L.] du lake that ; 16, L. du lake ; whiche demed ; 21, worfte ; 26, vnto ; 28, whiche ; 29, fyr T. ; 32, loueth hym agayne ryght hertely ; 38, vnto.

262. 2, fayd they ; 3, mocke y^e ; 9, [that] ye ; put on ; 13, all the people fawe ; 21, maner of ; asked of ; 22, on ; 23, as nygh fyr G. ; 25, [helme] is ; 27, wherby all ; 28, of king A.'s partye ; for hym / and ; they preced ; 31, began to double ; 34, fyr G. herde ; 35, and than he.

263. 7, of his best ; 9, That is well ; 12, tell her ; and that I ; 13, vnto her ; 14, ye haue ; 16, lorde fyr ; 19, to rest hym ; 21, haue gone ; 22, as well his hors as hymselfe ; [So this] ; 24, that wonder it was to fe ; 26, wayters ; 27, streight vnto ; 29, answered hym ; 30, fayd he say ; 32, A.'s loue ; 34, that wolde ; 37, And than the ducheffe went vp ; 38, fawe the.

264. 5, the ducheffe ; 10, this maner & forme ; by strete or by way ; 11, vnto ; 14, that in ; 15, [vnto hym and] ; so that ; 16, I maye knowe ; yf I may ; 17, than wyll I ; 18, with my ; ryght well ; 23, lyghtly redy ; 24, to his ; 26, some of them ; 27, fawe neuer ; 28, chere al ; 32, of her ; 33, fayd he ; 35, and than fir ; 36, vp vnto a.

265. 3, vnto ; 4, wolde fayne ; 5, vnto ; 6, & than ; and his ; 9, but onely ; 10, all brake ; 11, lyke a noble ; 14, [in] ; 15, full harde ; 16, [dyd] recouered after ; 18, and than ; 19, which was ; 25, whiche ; 30, where as ; knyght came ; 31, is he comynge ; 36, rest hym there.

266. 4, all but ; 6, moone and ; 10, your commaundement ; 12, whiche sayd ; 17, the same proude ; 19, with the ; 23, he alyghted ; [they] ; a grete ; 24, that lasted more ; 27, vnto my lord kyng A.

267. 1, on ; 5, on euery fyde ; 8, amelynge ; 12, and after ; 15, fyr G. ; 18, eche other ; 20, was many ; 21, a kynde ; them bothe ; 22, I ought ; 24, [me] ; hym moo ; 27, rode longe tyme with ; 28, [dyd] ; staunched ; 30, knowledge ; 31, bere you ; 34, befallen to me here ; 35, she ; vnto.

268. 1, Than was there ; 10, vnto fyr G. ; 12, and as ; 13, hyr fone fyr G. ; 16, fuche a ; 19, [ryght], his neuewe ; was it ; 30, Than go ; 32, to be done ; 34, make ; redy she dyd ; 36, [fo].

269. 1, [And] amonge ; 3, many goodly lokes ; 5, quene G. ; 10, vnto her what ; 12, [that is] ; 23, dystresse [hit] ; [And] also ; 26, was there ; 28, [nexte] folowyng ; 29, is a ; [the] ; 31, messengers vnto ; 32, at the day of his ; 36, payre of bedes of.

270. 3, in the waye ; 4, [Lord] ; of Orkeney ; L. du lake ; 6, du lake ; 10, and vnmercyable ; and treason ; 15, the gudyng of ; 16, on ; 17, archebysshop ; 19, fyr G. ; 24, vnto ; 31, [this].

271. 2, euermore ; than he ; 3, chiefe sewer ; 4, came in ; 8, at the ; 9, moche better ; 12, to fyr G. ; 19, had delyuerd ; 24, was all ; 25, reuelles and ; 28, [as] ; 29, none of them ; 31, and he ; 34, vnto ; 35, fyr T. ; 36, and he dyd ; 37, made fir ; 38, vnto.

272. 4, had grete wonder of his noble dedes ; 10, a ful noble ; the hyftory ; the noble kyng A.

Book viij.

¶ Here begynneth the eyght boke of the noble and worthy prynce kynge Arthur.

273. 1, There was ; 3, this kynge M. ; was as ; lykely a man ; 6, and she was a ryght fayre lady and good ; 7, all hole ; 8, Wales and Irland / and also of Scotlande ; 14, And so ; 17, a certayne time ; 21, no maner meanes ; coude neuer ; 22, a day she let ; ordeyne for hym as he rode on ; 23, hunter ; 27, wyfe myffed ; 28, [also as] ; 29, streyght vnto the ; for to ; 30, ferre within ; 31, fast to ; trauayle ; 32, and her ; 35, [the] ; that the depe ; none other bote.

274. 1, there was ; 2, that ; moone and forowe ; [here] ; 8, good frende vnto ; me fe I praye you my ; 14, beseche ; 15, whan my fone shall be chrystened / let hym be named ; 16, as [a] ; therewithall ; 17, vp her ; in the same place . Than ; 18, the shadowe of ; 19, so forthwithall ; 27, grete barons & lordes ; 28, and grete

moone; [Thenne]; 29, the meane; 30, morowe; 33, no tong can telle it; 34, bury; her full; 35, he let the chylde be chriftened.

275. 3, the yonge T. was well; 4, vpon a tyme; 9, to be put; in to a; 11, to the; 16, [al]; & dyed; 17, [Melyodas]; 18, paffynge heuy; kyng M.; 22, y^e wyne; where as the; was in; 23, was moost; therof; 29, thus sayd; 34, that she; 35, the land; [the].

276. 1, downe; his father; 2, [ageyne]; 4, sayd his father kyng M.; 11, I praye; 13, [thenne said the kyng] and; 15, So yonge T.; 18, and at; 20, T. his sone; 23, his sone yonge T.; 26, coude well; 34, that we neuer rede of no.

277. 1, that so vfed hȳfelfe therin; 2, [beefstes of]; 9, shalle vse vnto the worldes ende; 11, that is of gentyll blode; 13, yonge T. continued in; 15, M. his father; 17, [fyre]; 18, she neuer hated; 19, [Trystram] hym; and euery; 20, someuer he; 22, to; 23, whiche; wynters afore tyme; 26, this answere and sayd; 28, that we.

278. 2, round table; 3, fyr M.; 4, vnto hym; 6, we of; 9, fyr M.; 10, the rounde; 11, dedes ben; 13, to this; 17, so whan; 18, that there was; Irland the noble knyght fyr M.; 19, [kyng Marke] he; moone & forowe; *line 20 omitted*; 21, he knewe; 22, that feason; 24, styll in his shyppe on; 25, whiche; 29, many cryes; 31, foo be; [terme] as longe as he lyued; 32, of Cornewayle sayd; 33, vnto; 34, at that; 35, called the; of alle the; 37, it were labour loft.

279. 7, [that]; 8, the castel of T.; 9, [of] this; 12, fyr T.; 14, the coūtree of C.; 18, my sone; 20, the rounde; 25, fyr T.; to gyue; vnto; 29, And than; and so; 31, from the doughter of; whiche; 33, & in the lettres.

280. 2, doughter of the kyng of Fraunce; 4, for pure; 6, here after in y^e hystory; 7, vncle; 9, And so Trystrā went vnto; 11, to the vttermest with; M. of Irlande; 12, come ye; 14, & wyte ye well that; 16, made of body and; 18, are ye; [ageyne]; 20, [yf]; 22, [fyr] T.; 23, [But] And; And forthwith whan he; 25, whiche; thus; 26, [for]; vnto the; 27, tell vnto; 28, that I; but yf; 30, or els of a; 33, fyr T. sayd; [that]; 34, knowe; bothe of; and of; 35, [fyre]; 38, ryght hertely welcome.

281. 1, vnto me; And than; 5, that his name was; 9, [of] fyr; 11, yonge fyr T.; 12, lytell vefell; he and his; vnto hym; 13, so that fyr T.; 14, maner of thyng; 16, wyte ye well there; 17, for to; and to; 20, For to make fhorte; that whan; 26, for to; 27, [thenne]; 31, his feruaunt G.; 32, shadowe; vpon; 34, [the noble knyght]; 35, And than he.

282. 1, [ageyne]; 2, vncle; 3, bury my; 4, that I; for no;

10, And so; 13, thus vnto hym; 16, handes; 18, thy shyppes; [And]; 22, haue I; 23, at my vncles; 24, & to; 25, [And]; ye; 26, that ye; for to; 27, with you / for ye; of the best; 29, ye haue it wyll doo me good to haue adoo; 30, fyth y^t I was borne of my mother was I; and also fyth; 31, I haue taken the hygh ordre; ryght wel; 32, as ye are; 33, ye well; M. of Irlande; 34, to wyne; 36, for to; Cornewayle for euer.

283. 1, And whan the good knyght fyr M.; 2, hym lyft; than sayd he thus; 3, the for to; 4, that no worshyp; [none]; 5, that for; 7, the rounde; And than; 9, all to the erthe; 11, drewe; anone and keft theyr; 13, as it had ben two wylde bores that ben couragious; 14, a longe whyle; 15, of theyr strokes; brestes; 16, sawe it myght; 17, lyke two; 18, and were bothe fore; 19, [fresshly] on euery syde; 26, [euer]; 27, vpon his; and the; fyr T.; 28, abode styll in; arofe vp & threwe his; 30, vnto; 31, euer styll his owne; 33, dooft thou withdrawe y^e; 37, sayd no; went.

284. 4, Than anone; and wente towarde; 5, vnto; 16, his seruauent; 18, to the; 21, were his woundes; 22, wepte right; 25, [euer he]; 26, to haue dyed of the; had gyuen h^y fyrst; 27, with his; 28, hole therof; 31, So the kyng; 34, warraunt hym his; whiche was a full; 35, and vnto; vnto alle.

285. 1, in to the; 3, [Thus said the lady vnto the Kyng]; 4, had well herde what the lady sayd; forthwith he let; 5, and well; 8, in to; 9, quene were; 10, arruyunge; 11, had they neuer herde in I.; 14, wounde; he asked; 15, [then]; 16, fyr T.; have ben thus; 19, [here]; that in; I haue had; 21, fyr M.; [ful]; 22, the round; 28, so whan; his wounde [hym]; 29, that there was; 30, And within a; 32, [mayde and]; fyr T.; 33, a grete; 34, vnto fyr T.; 35, was wel; bothe of the.

286. 1, this fyr; 2, many grete; 3, ryght well fyr T.; 5, well that; 6, fyr T.; fyr P.; 8, fyr T.; 12, y^t sholde wyne her / sholde wedde; 22, wyll be; [to]; fyr T.; 23, [for]; 24, fyr T.; 34, [said la beale I.].

287. 3, Gunret; 8, vnto fyr T.; 9, sayd he; 16, Hebes; 19, that countree; 20, sayd he; 21, that of; 22, on me; morowe; 24, fyr T.; 31, all in whyte both; 33, as whyte as it; 35, and fyr T. to hym ageyne.

288. 4, that la; 7, And than was there none that wold; with fyr Triftram; 8, sorfoke fyr T.; 9, Hebes; 11, and so after; 14, and anone; 20, And then fyr T.; 22, And whan; 23, fore his; hym all; 24, fyr T. vnto hym; 26, and also; [not] vnto; 28, nor in lyke wyfe; 29, fyr P.; now am I; 30, And than; 32, threwe it; 33, vnto the; Ifoud was; 35, whiche; garde so.

289. 2, or not; 3, world that; 4, fyr L. du lake; 9, that she had neuer seen; 10, [thenne]; 13, where la beale I. kepte hym; 14, full good; 18, and set by more; 23, her doughter la beale I.; 29, [there]; 33, [thenne]; 35, vncle.

290. 1, for she loued fyr T.; 2, ryght well; 3, [alle]; in all the haste that she myghte; 4, and than she fought in her cofre that she had; founde and toke; 5, was taken; her brothers heed fyr M.; 6, And than anone; 7, vnto fyr T.'s swerde whiche; [fo]; 8, the fame pyece; vnto the fame swerd; 9, than as mete as euer; was first; And so forthwith; 10, caught that; 11, vnto T.; 14, [Thenne]; to [the]; 16, fell on her knees tofore hym / fayenge; & husbände; 20, hath heled; 21, [the] kynge A.; 25, that than was; 28, to mounte on; 29, [the] agaynst; 30, wyll I; 32, [for]; 33, so that thou; 35, my broder fyr M.

291. 1, shal I; 2, [fir]; 11, fyr T.; 17, as a good; 18, shold do; 19, sholde do; 21, fyr T.; 22, your goodnes; 23, that my; 24, [fo]; 27, the goodnes of your lordship; 33, and [at].

292. 3, of your; neuer yet; 4, vnto; 9, there agaynst I; [feythfully]; 11, [to]; 14, full grete moone; 17, all he sayd; 20, let hym; or [that euer]; from hens; 22, whiche; 26, whiche; 32, wherof; was passyng; 37, So than by.

293. 8, well fir T.; Whan kynge M.; 9, he was anone stryken with iealoufy; 11, badde hym faye that as; 12, nexte nyght; and charge hym that he come not to me but yf he be; 15, & sayd; 16, y^t I; at the tyme she; 18, had ben with; 19, on; from fyr S.; than sent; 22, to fyr T.; 26, the tyme was; 29, [vpon] fir; 30, on his; 31, sodeynly kynge M.; 34, vpon the; 36, fuche a stroke; hym fore that; 37, was longe; [euer].

294. 2, bothe to; [cold]; 3, [alle]; 4, lady fore; 6, she full fayre welcomed; 7, armes swetely; 9, they lyghtly; 10, pleasure; 12, nether shete; 15, and forthwith he; 16, fyr S.; 19, fawe he; 20, sayd he than; 21, [alle]; drewe out his; 22, shalt thou; 24, [alle]; fyr S.; Tell me; 25, [to me]; 26, towarde me; 27, fyr S.; 28, sayd she; 29, fyr S.; 33, Than anone fyr T.; 34, [al]; fyr S.; 35, to brake in peces.

295. 1, drewe; [fast]; 2, full fore strokes; Syr; 5, fyr S.; 6, spurred his; 7, ryght fyrefly; 13, and whan they sawe hym lye so / they toke hym vp and brought; 14, vpon; or [that] he was; 15, Marke also; 17, wyft not that it had ben kynge M. that had; 20, neuer after loued; 21, moche fayre; yet loue; 22, past on; 24, no more haue; 26, slyppe ouer; 29, fyr B.; vnto fyr B.; 31, And this fyr B.; vnto kynge Markes courte; 33, [that]; 34, And whan; faye fo.

296. 3, to kyng M.; 4, the whiche me; 6, And than fyr B. chose; 7-8, and anone he fet her vpon horsbacke behynde his fquyer / and so he toke his hors & rode forth on his way . Whan; 11, than anone he; 12, his wyfe; fyr B.; 13, were wroth; was thus gone; 16, And than; 17, a domoyfell that; in y^e moost foul-est maner; 19, [be]; 21, herte longe tyme; 22, her in this wyfe; 23, here present; [And]; 26, that sir S.; than it; 27, [good]; [euer]; 28, out of this; Soo within; 30, fore beten; and in poynte of; for as he; 32, hath fore; [heuy]; 33, courte ryght heuy ther-of; And whan; 36, his spere; [fast]; 37, the whiche; 38, [forth]; [euer].

297. 1, through y^e; 4, it was; me than now; 6, the one; 10, of whome the one; 11, fyr S.; fyr D.; 13, [hem]; 14, the two; 15, not to; 20, And anone; [alle]; 23, sayd to hym agayne; 25, [hit]; is but; 27, your; 29, on the; 30, hanfell; 31, [fo]; [that]; 32, wyll or not.

298. 6, than he; [he]; 8, as [the]; 9, a grete buffet; 12, Are there; kyng A.'s courte; 13, grete shame; say dyshonour; 15, you bothe; It is so sayd; and that; 16, you; 17, vnto; 22, glad that; 23, fyr T.; 26, sir D.; So fyr T.; 27, [on ward]; 28, B. rode with; 29, wyfe; 31, tyll [that]; 32, ouertaken sir B.; 33, [he said] fyr knyght; 34, [doo neyther] not; sir B.

299. 2, [fame]; 3, myle two knyghtes; 4, [euer]; 5, fyr B.; 6, The one told; that he hyght; 7, that other told me he hyght fyr D.; 9, good men; 10, [grete]; 11, but for all that it be so that; 12, or that ye; 13, [Thenne]; you than; 16, myghtyly with theyr; 20, [de ganys]; 21, vnto fyr T.; 22, vs two; Saye on [what ye wille]; 23, I shall answere you agayn; 24, 28, sir B.; 29, fyr M.; 30, good knyght; 33, Now so god; 35, [that]; 38, ben fyfters; whiche is called.

300. 4, that I haue vnto; 5, fyr B.; 9, and vnto; [that]; 10, fyr T.; 12, fyr B.; 15, thou were; 17, other ladyes; 18, no femblaunt to; 22, [alle]; 32, me agayne; sayd she; 33, ye were; 35, [euer].

301. 1, where my; 2, fyr B.; 7, to her; 9, her sake I shall; 10, [a] lady; 13, [sythen] she hath refused me / and as; 14, knowe her; 15, and departed one from an other; And [foo] sir; 22, And these; 23, of alle the; 33, that fyr T. sholde be slayne.

302. 13, and that other was; 19, them fore; 24, for grete; 26, fyr B. de Ganys and; 27, his brother; 31, [by].

303*. 4, fyr B.; 8, sommonyng; or [that]; 10, had herde; 11, but for; 12, and yf ony; 13, murther or treason; 15, was in those; And whan; 17, knewe well that; [that he]; 18, and was also comen

of; Than was; 21, and wente vnto; 22, going by fir T.'s paulyon; moone; 24, [that]; 28, [my]; 31, therwith fyr T.; 34, turne.

304*. 2, with his; 3, downe to the groude; 4, [thenne] Come on thy; 7, And he sayd; 8, fauce; 10, And than fyr; 11, repented; enemye; 14, [that]; 15, come there; and how; 16, of Irlande was; 23, charge the to brynge me; 24, And so G.; 27, whiche; 29, Lyones; 30, that ye; he wyll; 31, on good; 32, [anone]; 33, but a lytell company; 35, kynge A.; 36, But anone; 38, that ye fhewed.

305*. 2, do you feruyce; 3, A worshypfull knyght; 4, for neuer; 6, kynge A.; 9, or elles to; 10, wote well; 11, that all these; 12, [for]; 13, in fyght or batayle; 14, grete goodnes that ye; to me; 16, in hande for; 17, [that] ye; is this that; 18, be sworne vnto me; 25, were redy; 26, rather dye; 31, fyr B.; 32, vnto; 34, fyr B.; 35, yf he were.

306*. 2, and wente vnto; and other; 4, And than; 5, T. de Lyones; 6, theyr charge; And so; 7, whiche behelde; 8, had slayne; 9, and also; he had; the noble knyght fir P.; 11, for to; 12, vnto his; [dere]; 13, that we are; maner a man that fyr L. du lake is; 15, kynrede; 16, in ony; for to be; 17, fyr B.; 20, one of the best of; 21, but well may it; hym to; 23, me vnto hym; fyr B.; 25, and that knowe I ryght well for; 26, be my spede; fyr B.; 30, his grete; 31, And anone; 32, drewe; and put his.

307. 1, lyke two wylde; 6, [there]; 11, out of hande; erth; 16, And whan; 19, on that other; 22, whiche; 25 [my]; 27, may well here that; 29, I do this batayle; 31, this good; 32, to fyr T.

308. 2, in to theyr; than the; whiche; 4, fyr B.; 5, well faye; 6, [and]; 8, fyr B.; 9, oute of hande; 10, his aduerse partye; 11, fyr B.; 17, eche other and; 18, eche other; the two bretherne made; 19, of them fyghte; 22, euermore; 27, And than; 28, all the estates that; as moche of hym as euer they myghte make; 32, on a.

309. 2, of you that; 4, vnto his; 5, [that]; 6, that ye; Syre sayd fyr T. / yf I dyd so than were I; 7, and sholde be false of; 8, and therefore; 9, ye haue; let me haue la; 10, for to; 11, vnto myne vncl; 13, someuer it shall; [for]; 14, were me; 15, that may be in; 16, So for to; a shorte; 18, And than; 19, la beale I.'s mother; [to her and] vnto; 23, drynke vnto; 25, to G. and to dame B.; 26, fyr T. and la beale I. toke; 31, So fyr T.; 33, whiche; 34, And than they.

310. 1, eche other; loue neuer; 2, wele nor woo; [it]; 4, And so longe; 6, [by]; reft; 10, lorde of that castell whiche; 11, yf so

[it] were ; y^t the same fyr B. ; 12, y^e straūge knyght and his lady to be put to ; 13, so euer ; 15, lady dye [bothe] ; 18, that a ; to them ; 19, cherysse ; haue grete ; fyr T. ; 20, that the lord ; 21, here in ; 24, ben theyr gestes / it is a full euyl custome ; 25, whan ony ; 26, lord of this castell ; the weykest ; 28, with h̄y be ; 29, lady is ; 30, Now so ; 31, a ryght foule and.

311. 2, in a ; 4, for to tell ; morowe ; 5, to batayle ; 6 fayd the ; 9, lacke ; 10, belongeth ; 11, vnto ; 12, and put hym & ; out of pryfon ; 13, whiche was ; 15, there all ; 16, holdyng ; 17, by the hande all muffed ; 18, lady was ; 20, than thyn ; 21, yf that ; 22, Syr knight sayd fyr T. ; 23, horryble custome ; 24, to lese myne owne heed ; 28, ryghtfull ; 30, with myne owne handes ; 31, vpon his ; 32, therwithall ; 33, drawen in ; 34, he turned his lady aboute in ; 36, neuer fawe ; 37, smytten of.

312. 4, that thou and thy lady ; 6, and for ; 8, trouthe ; 9, all the ; for of ; 10, neuer none ; yf thou ; 14, vnto ; yf she ; 15, of thyne ; fyr T. ; 17, [clene] ; 19, fyth I haue lost my ; 21, as fast as theyr horsfes myght renne ; 22, [clene] ; 24, reled here ; 25, the erth ; 27, nymble ; [euer] ; 28, coude ; 30, full myghtyly ; 34, hurtlyng.

313. 1, wouēd other full fore ; 3, as than fyr T. was ; 4, and the byggest ; 13, that was ; 19, they wente to horfbacke with grete ; 20, [Thenne] ; 21, so myghtyly ; 22, groude ; lyghtly as ; 26, & thus ; 32, fawe so many ; 34, vnto fyr G. le ; 35, vnto me.

314. 1, a very grete ; 2, G. vnto fyr T. ; there is but ; 3, vnto me ; dye . I wyll rather ; 4, sayd fyr T. ; 5, than for the myght of your owne ; 7, in to ; And there ; [alle] ; 8, and there he began hard ; 11, vnto you a grete ; 13, gretely blame hym ; 20, for askynge of his ; 22, with the hondred knyghtes ; 25, were the good knyght ; 28, [sir] T. de ; 32, Than sayd fyr G. vnto ; 36, by the fayth of my body ; 37, be more ; as there.

315. 5, moost his ; 8, in the ; came word ; 9, vnto ; 10, whiche ; 11, had fought w^t ; 13, fast to ; 15, kynge C. ; 17, behynde hym ; 20, [outher] ; 30, drewe out theyr ; 32, it wente through ; 35, fmote of.

316. 2, and vnto ; 5, tyll I ; 9, nobleffe ; 11, there made ; many grete ; 13, dured longe ; and whan ; 16, whiche was ; 17, and gentylwoman ; 19, handes & fete vnto ; 22, [for] ; And whan ; 23, her gentylwoman dame B. ; ful heuy ; 25, by cause she ; 26, for to put ; 28, fyr P. ; 29, vnto her ; 31, vnto you ; 33, fyr P. ; 34, but half ; 35, vnto ; here sayd the quene I.

317. 1, Than sir P. ; vnto the ; 6, quene I. ; 7, fyr P. ; thynke vpon ; 9, defyre is ; 10, none yll ; 18, me the ; 20, fyr P. ; 23, or ; 29, sir P.

318. 1, not longe enioye her ; 2, for to ; 8, So the ; 9, fo rode ; 10, kyng M. ; [no wyfe] ; not be ; 12, [to] hunte ; 13, am I ; 14, [owne] ; 16, & than this knyght sayd to hym ; 23, fyr P. ; 24, fyr T. ; sayd he I ; 25, 27, fyr L. ; 33, wyft not ; 35, fayre well.

319. 1, ledde her vnto ; 2, castel therby ; hym lyghtly ; 3, fyr P. ; 4, vntyll ; 11, And than ; 12, out at ; 13, all the gates ; 15, bothe his ; 16, lyke as it had ben a man that had bē ; 17, whiche recked not of ; 18, to sir T. ; 19, wyfte that ; 21, this day am I ; 23, I knowe fyr ; 24, that I am not in ; 27, fyr L. ; 28, vnto deth ; 31, & he had not ben.

320. 2, your grete ; to the ; 6, to hym and sayd ; 9, that he ; 12, enemy ; 13, ende of ; make you ; 15, your mortall enemy ; 16, ony worde spekyng ; 19, fyr T. ; 20, So lyghtly ; 22, a stronge ; 27, for [dole and] ; 29, that other ; 31, & by caufe ; 33, [alle] ; 35, I knowe well.

321. 1, And than she ; 2, thy ; 3, to your ; 4, that is right fore ; 15, And than anone ; fetch home ; 18, the whiche was ; 24, smytten hym ; 26, pulled it ; 27, kynge M. ; 28, traytour knyght ; 29, [that] ; 31, at the kynge ; 34, vpon the ; his nose ; 35, forthwith fyr T. wente.

322. 1, [he] ; in to the ; 5, vpon his ; 6, whan the ; 7, there afore ; 16, no where so ; 20, by all ; 24, vnto the ; 26, quene and sir T. went ; 29, tentes to be pyght in the ; 31, for to ; 35, y^e twenty.

323. 2, gretely sayd ; 4, [wel] ; 6, sayd kynge M. ; 7, [other] ; 8, me thynketh ; 10, and therfore ; 14, for the noble knyght fyr L. ; 23, at a ; 26, with hym ; 29, And so anone.

324. 2, thou arte ; 5, thy ; 6, the ; 12, & ye haue a caufe why to faye ; 13, hymselfe ; 14, smyte ; 23, all garnysshed w^t gold ; 28, L. du lake ; 30, horne . And thā sayd fyr L. vnto that knyght ; 31, that horne ; 34, vnto.

325. 1, yf that ; vnto ; 3, tolde hym ; 6, la beale I. ; his quene ; ladyes moo ; 8, and so fware ; 9, that the quene ; ladyes also ; 12, as ony ; 14, vnto ; 20, And than alwayes ; 21, for to ; 25, And than ; 28, I. the quene ; 32, whiche ; 33, and bounde ; 35, other remedy ; that nedes he ; he vnto them all.

326. 1, [for] ; 2, [to take] ; 3, ye are ; good & ; 4, vnto ; for to ; 5, well faye ; yet met ; 6, that I ; or somewhat better than he ; 7, thy vauntinge ; 8, that thou makest yet shalte thou ; 9, my best frende ; 17, and toke ; 18, and than he ; 19, flayne ; And than ; 21, to sir ; 23, that he ; & fhette ; 29, whiche ; 32, towelles ; 34, Ifoud was ; ledde awaye ; fyr A.

327. 3, And than anone fyr T. toke ; where as ; 4, I. was ;

9, wente ; that he fell ; 10, And it fortun'd there ; 11, [hand] ; 12, And therewith fyr T. ; 13, flewe ; 14, told to ; 15, in y^e forefayd ; [euer] ; 16, haue flayne ; 17, he was gone ; than he ; 18, so straye ; 19, neuer wyte ; fyr T. ; 20, Than whan ; 22, thought well that ; 23, and was fore dyspleased / & endured ; 25, she toke a ; 26, vnto ; 28, for y^e ; 29, in all y^e hafte to go ; 31, helpe you ; 33, ryght glad ; 34, fayd fyr T. ; 35, that may helpe.

328. 1, whiche ; 2, vpon kyng H. ; 6, vnto ; 8, for to ; 9, went ; 10, for to ; 13, he coude ; dyd there ; 16, and he flewe more ; 17, same daye ; was than ryght ; 20, vnto you ; it fayd ; 21, beholdynge ; 22, [grete] ; 23, his sone fyr Kay hedijs ; 24, I. le blanch'e mayns ; 26, that sir ; 27, he had almoost ; 29, fo at ; 31, abedde togyder / than ; 32, hymselfe ; his first ; 33, fo sodeynly ; all abafshed & ; 34, he made her ; 35, fleshely coniuccion ; neuer had.

329. 1, that there ; 3, whyle ; fyr S. ; 5, vnto the ; there he ; 7, And than ; 9, false vnto ; 10, faye [ye] to hym [this] ; 14, [that] ; to be his ; 16, for to go agayne in to ; 23, fyr T. ; 26, ladyes fake ; [in].

330. 5, & those fyffhers ; 6, that they ; 7, whiche was a ; 13, vnto a ryght ; 15, me fore ; 18, [euer] ; 20, fyr L. ; 21, on the ; 22, A.'s courte ; 24, we agayne ; 28, that drofe ; 29, L. was ; to roue ; 31, 33, fyr S. ; 34, hate in the world.

331. 2, fyr S. ; 4, your man vnto ; 7, vnto a ; 20, nothyng [by] ; 24, erly they ; 27, fayre knyght ; 31, vpon [a] ; 32, [that is] fo that ; 37, to me.

332. 1, had fayd ; 3, ye gaue ; 7, put many ; 12, in kyng A.'s ; [y] lyke ; 15, hath not ; hurte me ; 28, for to ; 29, be there for.

333. 1, that there ; 6, vpon one ; 10, wente ; 17, And whan ; 20, in to ; and take the best ; 27, flee euery ; 28, hors ; go playe ; 31, for to ; 34, [moost].

334. 1, for here ; 5, none [haue] therof ; 8, fyr S. ; 9, vnto fyr S. ; 11, he ruled it ; 20, So fyr L. toke his leue & rode toward ; 21, sir T. & his wyf & ; 24, he meruayled ; to sir L. ; 26, vnto an ; 28, fayd he [the heremyte] ; I gretely ; 31, euyl ; 35, fraüchys.

335. 8, [And] ; 9, speke also ; sir L. ; 11, wordes ; 15, [they faide] ; 16, thy lyf ; 17, behynde one than ; 20, your parte ; 23, flewe ; 25, demaüded [hym] ; Syr knyght fayd he ; 28, that came rydynge ; fyr F. ; 29, lately ; fro my hors & ; 30, [doo foo] ; 33, myne owne ; By my fayth fayd ; 34, to medle no more ; 36, the roud ; 37, spare hym ; cryed on hym.

336. 1, [whyte] ; 2, [to Iuste with the] ; 13, fyr L. ; 14, fayd he ; 16, you well ; 29, to ; 30, or elles ; 35, fay dyshonour.

337. 3, And fo they ; 5, deed to the groude ; 8, & fo armed hym

& mounted on horfbacke ; 12, thou were ; 14, eche other & dressed ; 16, as two ; [preued] ; two houres longe ; [So] ; 19, hate in the worlde ; 20, where as ; 24, hath done ; 25, [alle] ; 31, for y^e hygh ordre of ; 32, to you ; 33, they dressed them agayne to ; 34, other fore ; 35, where as ; fyr B.

338. 2, your diseafe ; A [knyght] ; 4, fuche a auantage ; as you had me ; 6, thyn euyl ; 11, fyr B. ; 12, more that one agaynst that other. ¶ And thus endeth the . viij . booke. ¶ Here after foloweth, etc.

Book ix.

¶ Here begynneth the . ix . boke of the noble and worthy prynce kyng Arthur.

338. 15, There came in to the ; 16, & a bygge made ; 18, of kyng A. ; 19, was good & ; 20, sayd the yonge man ; 22, am comen ; 27, Syre sayd he ; 28, and vpon a daye as.

339. 5, noble ; 9, good and a myghty knyght ; 12, he is ; 13, that is in ; 16, kyng A. ; 22, that this lyon ; 32, claue it in ; 33, and so the lyon fell down deed ; 34, [by scorne] ; 35, kyng A. ; 36, of my lyfe.

340. 1, [al] ; 4, moche as ; 5, me fo ; & fo ; 6, [me] ; 7, Than on the ; 8, kynges courte ; 12, sayd the damoyfell ; 13, this black ; and many ; vnto ; 14, And he that oughte this ; was a ryght good ; 15, to ascheue a ; 16, hym that ; 19, on euen ; whiche ; 20, there was none ; 21, vnto ; 24, vnto this ; 26, this blacke ; speke a ; 29, that well is.

341. 1, go ye ; 2, ye wyll ; 5, [pon me] ; that I maye knowe ; 6, shold be ; 8, knyghte ; 9, he fyr ; may ye ; 11, blacke shelde ; 15, therwith ; [all] ; 16, a grete ; 24, And than ; 25, after fyr ; so there ; 26, in all haste made ; 28, fawe fyr ; 29, to hym & ; 31, mocked fyr ; 34, longe chydyng hym.

342. 1, with fyr ; 5, done the ; 6, fyr B. ; 9, sayd he ; 15, fyr B. had done ; 16, [hand] ; 18, hym a ; 20, fyr B. ; 21, fyr P. ; do batayle with ; 23, fro theyr ; 25, company of ; 26, [thenne] ; 31, and the ; 32, anone fyr ; 33, other knyght ; 34, grounde ; And than ; 35, others hors ; 36, than fyr ; 38, woüded that knyght.

343. 1, hors to the erth as ; And than ; 2, had mette ; and that knyght toke ; 4, [Orgulous] ; there fyr ; pursewed hym foo nygh / that he claue his heed downe to the sholders / & so fell downe deed to the erth ; 5, so anone ; 6, that his ; 9, them all ; to a ; 13, chambre was ; 18, And so ; 22, to yonder ; 26, toke his ; 27, [fayre] ; and hurled through the thyckest of them ; 29, knyghtes redy ; 34, vnto.

344. 1, vnto; [alle]; 5, Ye may preue it sayd fyr; 8, that fyr; 14, [and maulgre oure hedes]; 15, agayne vnto; 16, all togyder how that; 17, And than she let falle downe; 18, but lytel; 21, not [yet]; 23, vnto the; 26, full wyly; 29, fyght on; 32, worfe on; 35, to many; 38, rode away [sure].

345. 1, And whan; 2, he herde; fyr la cote; 5, me helpe; 7, all you; 8, fuche an; 9, sayd the noble knyghte fyr; [that]; 12, fyr T.; 13, to her agayne; 19, ouertook fyr; 21, [thenne]; 22, al the; 23, the damoyfel Maledyfaunte rebuked fyr la cote male tayle full vncurteyfly; 24, lefte of fyr La cote male tayle; 25, whyle; 26, in excusynge; 27, of the fayre damoyfell I.; 29, le blanchche; 30, alwaye.

346. 1, yf so were; 5, and for to; 8, vnto; there they fawe standynge before them; 10, with fyr; there fyr; 11, And after that; 16, after fyr; 19, that profered; 25, hym goodly; 27, [thenne]; 33, [al] he felle.

347. 3, In good sayth; 5, [alle]; forth vntyll he; 8, at the; 11, hym in; 12, through out the body and through the hors arson; 14, and full egrely they; 15, stroke that; bestowed they were stryken in sondry wyse / so they auoyded; 17, [passynge]; [alle]; 18, in to the castel; 19, called [the]; 20, and was a grete; 21, on; 22, fell to; 25, in a lytell; 26, and at the; [to]; 27, and therewith; lepte vnto hym; 29, than he; 30, vnto his mercy and grace; 32, kyng A.'s courte; 34, [thenne]; And whan fyr.

348. 3, for to; he had; 4, they that were; 7, for he is the best knyghte in the world that dyd; 10, a noble; 11, and fyr; 13, than she; 14, heuy and forowfull; 17, & gretely they thanked hym; 19, & sayd; all true & loyall; 20, [euen]; 22, and you sir; 25, handes; whiche fyr; 26, awaye from; 33, a ryght good; 34, but he.

349. 5, vnto hym; [that] he; 13, vnto the; 14, a full fayre; 16, many gentylmen & yeman that sayd; 23, entre fyrft; 25, am taken pryfoner; 26, for to; 30, that one; 33, fyr P.; soone after; 34, fyr P.; 35, fyr la; 37, began full harde to assayle fyr.

350. 4, on bothe; but [he]; 5, he gate; And so than; 6, [thenne]; 10, them two; 14, they two; 22, [euen]; 23, [forth with all]; grete meruayl; 26, for what; 29, yf ye had; 31, dedes and valyauntnes; 32, [to] you grete; euer I; 33, [al].

351. 5, I was; fyr P.; 6, ye truly; 8, fyr P.; me at this tyme; fyr la; 13, fyr P.; 14, grete; as the hurle wynde had borne hȳ towarde; 18, drewe; 25, handes; pryfoners; 30, hym down; 35, fyr P.; 36, on.

352. 6, so that he; 10, so that he wyll; 11, his fyue; 14, fyr P.; 16, ruled by kyng A. / yf ye be soo pleased; 18, rested; tyme;

22, there came; 24, [thēne]; 25, frō all; 27, by cause; 29, gaue vnto; 32, rode vnto; 33, [holy].

353. 2, fyr Brevnor le noyre; 4, [after]; called fyr; 5, and a myghty; 14, was maryed; 15, vnto hym; 16, yf it; 21, hym & sayd he was.

354. 1, knyght and a well made man all; 2, a clere fouitayne or welle; 3, nere vnto hym; to a grete oke; 5, that was by y^e welle; 17, thou hast well; to me; 18, an other grete spere; 21, gaue hym a; 23, afore hym; drewe out; 26, on; 27, out his; 31, yf thou.

355. 17, I knowe well; 18, [my]; 19, [alle]; 20, sayenge; 21, as vnto; 26, [nor] for; 28, This meane; 36, [it].

356. 1, And to make shorte tale fyr P.; 5, with them on; 6, may men; 7, at euery tyme; 8, by euyll; 9, vnto a; 13, And than the; 14, at a; 16, say vnto hym; 17, there as; 19, and rode fondry wayes; 21, hors to; 25, vnto; 26, a lametable; 28, [with]; 29, shadowe of the wode; 35, sayd they; L. du lake.

357. 2, sayd they we; 4, yet dayes of my lyfe of; 11, And so eyther; 15, it is pyte and; 22, preue it; make it; 25, vnto; 26, now bereth [the]; 29, And than; 30, came rennyng; 31, so myghtily; 32, vnto y^e; 34, as it had ben two.

358. 1, fyr M.; 2, knyght and man; to harde and to; 4, wonders fore; so as; 5, there came; 6, anone fyr L.; them bothe; 7, for ye; 8, A.'s courte; 9, fyr M.; 12, that quene; 14, for to; 15, vnder her; 16, & we; 22, not therfore; 23, be the; 24, is y^e; 27, yf ye; 31, [you] but; 32, [that] she.

359. 13, be it [that]; 15, T. de Lyones; 17, was comen; Syr T. answered; 18, Kay the Senefshall neuer in no place that; 19, ony good; 20, T. de L. yf it; 21, my right name; 24, lyuyng in the world; 28, tyl that one; 29, fall fro his hors; 33, so as; at theyr.

360. 2, [he] sayd but; 4, In y^e mornynge; 6, and so; 7, And than; du vaffher; 9, downe from his hors; 11, fayne knowe; 12, name is; on your way with me; 13, for to; 14, where as; 15, at that; 18, not to that; 19, you of your; 20, for to; 26, whiche; 27, defyreth moost to haue youre; 30, [yet]; 31, for to be; 32, man now; 33, excepte it be; 37, hym ony.

361. 2, cause was; 11, after hym; & whan; 12, sir B.; 20, slayne hym; 21, vnto; 24, feke [after]; 25, [fame]; 30, sayd she; 33, for as this [fame].

362. 5, [lytel]; 7, his fete; 9, and the one; 12, with his swerde drawn in his hande; 13, forthwith all fyr T.; 14, down deed to the erth; 15, to y^e other knyght; and with the pomell of his swerde

he fmote hym so harde that he fell fro his hors & brake his ; 16, vnto ; 17, that vntrue ; 21, his waye forth ; damoyfell ; 22, So whan that ; 23, he full ; 24, hym to tell hym his ; tell it hym ; 26, his owne ; 30, downe from ; so done ; 31, kynge A. ; your owne ; 33, whiche I. ; vnto ; 35, knowe.

363. 4, where as ; 5, [holy] ; 6, by the ; 7, a good & a trusty ; 9, to kynge M.'s courte ; 13, I may ; 15, to a ; 16, affygnd them ; 18, pen can ; 21, myght neuer . . . the very pure loue ; 23, how fyr K. ; 26, grete pyte ; 34, he [had] foude ; 35, to fyr K.

364. 1, came to ; 6, me [the] ; 9, whiche she dyd ; 11, virgyn ; wel fayd he vnto ; 12, to me ; 13, [alle] ; 15, vnto ; 17, Marke fat ; 27, hym vnto ; 28, for to ; 32, whiche was ; 34, spere in the ; agaynst.

365. 2, fadel to the erth ; 3, And than ; 4, rode forth ; 5, than anone ; 6, vnto hym ; 11, fore & made forowfull ; And than ; 17, wyte what tydynges there was ; 19, se how ; 21, place shall ye fynde h̄y ; 22, And than ; 23, that ony woman myght make ; 27, his waye from ; 29, none take ; 34, euer ony ; 35, wente ; 36, lady of the.

366. 2, me to playe ; 3, & the damoyfel ; 4, So vpon ; 6, armure & went in to y^e wyldernes & brake ; 12, the harpe ; And so wolde ; vnto ; 13, the melodyous fowne therof ; 18, [somme] ; 22, fyr D. ; 24, by a fayre ; 27, to ; 30, so brought ; 31, as weete as ; to lepe ; 32, on theyr ; 35, [she] went.

367. 3, be [foo] ; 4, yf I ; 9, vnto other ; 16, alone from his ; 18, pyte that ; 20, that moost ; 23, bothe armed ; 29, our lorde god ; fory and dyspleasaunte ; 31, hymselfe ; good frendes ; 32, to ; 35, on ; 37, at hym.

368. 3, [to the erthe] ; 5, vnto one ; 10, Beware ye ; that ye ; 11, naked foole ; 19, whiche ; 20, or that ; 26, T. his neuewe ; 27, the quene ; 29, full nyghe ; 30, for to.

369. 2, of my loue fyr T. ; 6, stronge toure ; 11, the swerd ; 12, [a] ten ; 16, go out at ; 17, this fyr T. ; 19, And than fyr T. ; 20, it happened ; 25, to the ; 26, to rest hym ; 27, fyr T. ; 28, [and toke the hors] ; 29, drewe ; 30, on his ; 34, where it ; [foo] ; 35, fmote ; wente.

370. 9, madde man ; 11, on the ; vnto the ; 12, to the welle ; 13, the kynge ; 17, softly ; 21, nor wyft not fro whens he came ; 22, happened ; 25, And than ; 28, and asked ; man was ; 30, & resteth hym ; 33, [here] afore this tyme ; 35, And la beale I. had ; 36, had gyuen.

371. 1, Ifoud was ; 3, loue she had vnto hym ; 5, than she ; 13, that as ; 14, shall knowe ; 18, whan ye may ; 19, and as ye ; 22,

moche anger ; 24, la beale I. departed ; 26, brayed ; [al] ; 28, that it is he ; So the kyng ; 31, now ye may do w^t me ; 33, So many ; 36, of Cornewayle.

372. 3, were his foes ; 5, fyr D. ; [for] ; 7, vnto ; 9, you ; 11, & than they ; 14, [thenne] ; 16, in the shypphe he sayd thus ; 17, tell them ; 20, [Quene] ; 23, [Pluere] ; 32, am I ; 35, my waryson ; tell ye ; 36, the rounde ; 37, I am.

373. 2, And therwith he ; 4, nexte lodgyng ; 7, all on an hepe to y^e groude ; 9, with his good wyll iuste with ; 17, from them & rode ; 20, And so there was ordeyned for fyr L. ; 23, for to ; 24, of this ; 26, where as ; 28, Bors / fyr Bleoberys / fyr E. and ; 29, they all ; 31, that they fet ; 32, as well as we.

374. 1, as for to ; or two or ; 7, [by your fheldes] ; 10, me for to ; 12, that thy ; 13, loke on ; 14, [to] do ; wolde to god ; had neuer ; 17, eyther fawe other ; 18, yf cause were ; 22, [by] fir D. ; 29, had iusted ; 31, to ; 33, vnto theyr ; 37, forth on ; 38, and [to the] heerdmen.

375. 2, there aboute ; 3, nygh here ; 4, custome there is ; be lodged ; he fyrft ; 6, be within ; 7, So there is an euyll lodgyng ; 9, be ye not ; 10, forfak your ; 11, and yf ye ; 13, lodged ; ben two noble ; 14, be lodged ; 19, had thought ; to haue taken theyr rest ; 20, gate ; 22, [aray] ; 27, And so therwith ; 28, and there fyr G. ; 30, and fyr P. gaue fyr D. a fall ; [thenne was hit fall for fall] ; 31, And than must ; and that ; 32, [fo] ; & hurte ; 33, had gyuen hym ; 36, to do batayle ; 38, whiche wolde.

376. 2, fuche two ; 8, them bothe ; 9, you bothe ; And than ; 13, he badde fyr G. ; 14, had no lust ; 15, And than ; a longe whyle ; 17, thre grete ; 23, desyred ; 24, of the ; 26, vnto ; 33, But as foone as.

377. 4, fyr P. ; to knowe ; 5, 8, And than ; 9, than wyll I rather ryde ; 13, to iuste with hym ; 14, soo past ; 17, of a ; 20, for the good knyghtes ; 21, lete feke ; 22, for fyr T. ; 24, at those iustes & turneyment ; 28, at the grete ; 29, to kepe hym and ; 30, called and cryed ; 31, and ouercomen ; 32, he incontynent ; towarde h̄y for to iuste ; And whan fyr K. fawe hym come / than he refused hym / and ; 33, sayd fyr ; 34, so shall I ; with an ; 35, rode on his waye ; 38, keft downe.

378. 3, whiche ; 5, for to ; 6, with hym ; 12, doth lede ; 14, drewe ; 17, [ryght] ; 18, sayd the damoyfell ; [and] ; 19, shall tell you all as it is ; 20, sayd she ; my lady quene ; 21, kynge A.'s syfter hath ; [a] ; and espye ; 23, [fyrft] ; with ony ; with theyr wyles to Morgan ; 26, for to.

379. 7, whiche ye ; 11, sayd fyr G. ; 21, whiche ; 22, hym

well ; 25, paffynge gladde ; 32, for yf he ; 34, B. saunce pyte ; 36, and so there.

380. 5, so well ; 9, for to rest ; vnto a ; 16, forgotten the ; 19, this damoyfell B. ; 22, And than ; 23, longe & ferre ; 24, And than ; 26, sayd sir T. ; 27, tyll the ; 32, whiche was.

381. 7, [ynough] ; 11, and knewe that ; 12, a knyght of C. ; I was ones ; 13, by fortune it ; 17, may fe my ; 26, a myghty black.

382. 2, to fyr P. ; 7, where as ; 9, vnto yonder ; 10, of gold ; 11, ye vnto hym ; 13, and so ; 15, And than ; 16, that anone ; which ; 17, at a vaūtage ; 22, G. his squyer ; hym ones agayne ; 25, reuenge hym to morowe ; 26, he shall fe me ; 30, he may be ; 32, be reuenged vpon hym ; 36, to.

383. 3, [with hym] ; I wyll do that I may sayd fyr B. And there fyr L. ; 5, and had a grete ; 10, And than ; 12, that other ; 16, forth on his waye ; By my fayth ; So than ; 19, hastily vnto ; 22, and the cause why ; 25, [hym] ; 30, hym to iuste ; 31, telle me what is thy lordes name / and whiche is he ; vnto fyr L. ; 32, [the good knyght] ; In goddes name ; 33, For by my knyghthode / there ; in the worlde that I ; 34, wolde rather ; with fyr P.

384. 1, And than eyther of the ; grete & huge ; 2, And than sayd fyr D. ; 3, [foo] ; 5, I can not byleue ; 7, and there fyr ; 9, myghtely ; made hym to auoyde the sadell ; 10, he had not ; 14, to rest ; 15, hym where ; 16, that on ; 17, of this ; [that] ; 18, came fodeynly ; 23, and on the ; 26, full fore [alle that dyd abyde] ; 27, and than he rode forth on ; 28, vnto a ; & there ; 34, to sir T. ; 35, for to.

385. 3, vnto kyng ; 4, of the ; 6, a grete ; 8, they fared ; 9, And than there ; 15, gretely what thought it a shame ; 16, hym a ; 17, vnto ; 20, fyr T. there ; 28, than ye ; 29, you my fayth ; 30, you more ; of yours ; 31, more on my ; 33, caught hym ; [fo fore] ; and pulled ; 34, [hors] ; 35, And fyr T. ; 36, And than fyr P.

386. 2, nothyng fay ; 6, Syr P. on the nexte morowe returned from the partye of ; 12, and also ; 13, his ryght ; 14, [as] ; 17, the [ouer] euenyng afore ; 18, on y^e ; 23, that fyr P. ; 25, wolde I be on my lorde kyng A.'s fyde but for his fake ; 26, party / there was rēnyng and smytyng vpon helmes ; iusted agaynst ; 30, And than came in fyr T. ; 32, that myght ; 33, haunted amonge ; 35, with a grete^e meyny of.

387. 2, alle the ; 5, ben his good frende ; 6, awaye with the ; 8, were as good as a ; 9, was theyr ; 10, And than ; 12, So fyr ; 14, [fore] ; 21, kyng A. ; 23, [And] ; 24, I sholde shame myfelfe ; [al] ; 26, vpon [the] ; 27, and those . xx. ; 28, alwaye togyder ; & [fo] ; 30, noble dedes ; 31, leuer to ; than to ; 34, to his ; 37, it shame.

388. 1, And than ; to the ; 2, sayd to hym ; Syr I praye you ; 3, ye shall ; 4, to many ; to fewe ; 5, [chere and] ; 10, the knyght with ; 13, lyke and semblable ; 19, on theyr ; 22, on his ; 25, that [with] the wynde therof myght.

389. 3, morowe ; wyll I ; 10, sayd she ; but for ; and so she ; 15, crye of a man ; And than ; 16, in to the ; 17, founde he ; 18, vnto a ; ben out of his mynde ; 22, And the squyer toke ; as fast as ; 23, agayn and tolde ; 24, So she rode ; 32, sayd he ; 35, and than ; 37, ouer his nauell.

390. 1, So fyr T. ; 2, hym fast ; 3, fyr P. ; am sayd fyr T. ; 6, and yf ; 8, there and ; Than sayd fyr ; 11, yf ye ; fyr T. here ; 13, for to ; 18, sayd to fyr P. ; 19, that he ; vnto his ; 22, that he ; 26, fyr T. was ; went ; 30, to fyr ; 31, where as ; 32, on the.

391. 10, With that ; 17, were remounted ; So kyng A. ; 18, [he] gate ; 20, on fote ; 23, And than ; 30, And than ; 33, at fyr T. ; 34, with his spere ; 35, So fyr.

392. 1, So fyr T. ; 3, [thenne] ; 5, [alle] ; 8, assayled kyng A. ; 9, dyd grete feates ; 14, so grete ; 15, gate he ; 17, And than ; cryed on hygh ; [the] ; 18, for to ; 19, put down ; 24, [he] ; 26, [there] ; stouped lowe his heed ; 30, And fyr L.

393. 1, fyr D. ; 3, the grace of ; 4, fyr P. ; 5, for to ; 9, [to hym] ; 11, or in to ; 15, [thenne] ; 17, And whan ; made a ; 25, his vttermest ; 26, & mette ; 27, & had a ; 38, for to go in to.

394. 4, than he ; 7, Northgales in conclusyon ; 8, with the ; 14, contrarye that crye ; 18, worshyp of ; 21, than yf he ; 25, and [foo] ; [alle] ; 26, vnto ; 29, [moost] ; 31, [whanne] as he ; his helme ; 33, sayd thryes ; 34, And than.

395. 16, [the] dayes ; 18, all thefe ; 26, for yf I ; 28, knyght dyd ; 31, promyse you ; 34, And than ; 35, them that ; [And] ; 38, nere hand ; & oute.

396. 7, he put of his ; 9, there came ; 14, & yf it ; 20, What thyng bare ; 22, the good knyght fyr P. ; 24, now lyuyng ; 26, [owne] ; 32, to fyr D.

397. 3, whyle ye hadde ; 4, And than ; 6, [old] castel ; 10, fyr L. ; 11, causer of ; 17, Than sir L. ; to brynge ; 18, here ben . x . ; 20, tyl we ; 22, that yf I ; 23, with me vnto this ; 25, Fyrst [was] ; 26, fyr Bleoberys [and] ; 27, fyr Lucas the butler ; 28, fyr L. and fyr G. ; 30, all to gyder ; 31, that stode bytwene foure hye wayes ; 32, in foure partyes for to ; 33, with the damoyfell dame ; the whiche was ; 34, for to ; 35, myght renne.

398. 1, And whan ; to hym ; 2, [faunce pyte] ; thou fals ; 9, B. fauce pyte ; 12, Lucas ; whiche ; 13, where fyr T. was ;

14, for none ; 15, but for to ; So the ; 19, y^e whiche was ; vnto ; 20, tel hym ; 30, fyr L. ; fyr D. ; 35, [foo].

399. 5, du roy ; 8, And whan ; bote / he ; 15, vnto the ; 19, and tolde vnto fyr D. ; 24, So came there ; 25, So fyr ; 26, went ; the chambre of ; 28, And withoute ; 32, wolde euery day ; hate that was ; 33, And alwaye ; but lytel ; 36, [alle] ; 38, owne.

400. 1, it / and kepte them ; 2, had ynough ; 5, of [his] ; 8, may saye ; 9, hath he ; 10, taken hym ; [for] ; 11, that almoost he dyed ; 12, [speke and] ; 14, in many ; 15, wente ; 18, owne meafe ; And than asked kyng M. of ; 19, were of hym ; 22, turneyment and iustes ; 29, were bothe ; 30, Thā it was ; 32, gete [hym].

401. 4, vnto that ; 5, fome folke called ; 10, wente ; 11, And so ; 19, iuste with hym ; 21, man / and had a grete fall on the erthe ; 22, sayd he ; For [fyre] ; 32, not so moche as one here.

402. 3, hym lyenge on the groude ; 7, or [that] ; 8, was there ; for to ; 11, it was not I that dyd hurte hym ; 12, vnto ; 13, vpon you ; for al ye ; 14, be nought ; Ewayne to be caryed ; 15, heled of his woudes ; 23, sayd kynge M. ; 25, [is] an ; 27, [al].

403. 1, to a lake ; 3, shadowe ; 5, were all ; 13, and hyt ; 14, as fayre as the ; 15, hors was ; 17, full wrothe ; And than ; fyr knyght ; 18, felowe yf I can ; 19, [fo] ; with an ; 23, quyte & clene a spere length / so that ; had nygh ; 24, [al] ; 25, set fyr K. agayne vpon his hors ; fyr G. & fyr K. went ; to kyng M. & fyr A. ; 26, them for to ; tell them ; or els they ; 27, And than ; 28, This knyght that smote downe fyr Kay / is ; and therefore beware ; 29, vpon you.

404. 2, [all] ; 13, kynge Marke / fythen ; 14, for to gyue ; 15, [alle] ; 16, rode forth ; 17, [Soo] ; 18, there they rested ; 20, whiche had ; 21, for to ; 22, asked them ; was in ; 24, they had not ; 33, went.

405. 1, he myffed ; 2, he [the] ; 4, for to ; 5, one of his legges and an arme ; 6, so than ; and his ; vnto fyr D. ; 8, Nay nay ; ones hath ; 11, Now leue we hym & turne we ; 14, & fyr P. & fyr D. ; 25, how ye can shifte ; [it with] ; 27, [thenne] ; 31, they pleafed ; 32, And with that ; be glad & make good chere ; 33, herde I ; 35, to haue ben put to dethe ; [foone after this] ; 36, he thought 38, [bothe].

406. 2, to fyr D. ; 4, whan ony ; 6, vnto ; 7, bothe his ; anone whan ; 8, I me repent ; 14, thou shalt ; & all your ; & your ; 15, where someuer it please you ; 16, fyr knyght shalte ; vnto two of my ; 18, shewe & tell ; 19, and kynge Meliodas was my father ; 20, I am neuewe ; 25, [and] that all ; 27, knyght fyr T. ; for to be ; 31, And than ; 32, hole and ; 33, toke his hors ; 34, vnto a.

407. 1, And fo ; 2, grete moone ; 8, for to ; but wyll be ; 9, of y^e ; 11, B. faūce pyte ; 12, and fayd to fyr D. Syr knyght ; 16, And than ; 17, vnto a ; where she ; 21, fro this ; [he] ; 24, on ; 26, defende me ; 27, late ago prifoner ; 28, I knowe ; 31, [Quene] M. le fay ; 34, So the quene.

408. 1, the to ; yⁿ wylte ; 4, as foone ; 6, sheelde vpon the ; 7, hath ; 9, [for me] ; 12, So the ; 15, quenes heed ; 18, vpon ; 22, not knowe ; 27, as paramour ; 29, to the.

409. 2, And than ; 3, fay as paramour ; and his ; for to folowe after ; My fayr ; for certaynly ; 6, vpon hym ; 9, fayd M. le fay ; 12, And for your ; 13, or els bete hym well ; 14 my ; quene M. le fay ; 15, with that ; 19, vnto fyr T. ; 25, And than ; for to ; 28, vnto a ; 30, leue we ; 31, and than ; 32, his mayfter ; 34, very lytell ; 35, than holde ; 36, for the ; 37, may no lenger ; 38, or euer that I.

410. 1, And with full grete ; 2, vnto ; 3, And whan ; 4, she let ; 6, to be put ; 12, It is not ; 28, of Scotlande ; 31, [there] ; 34, [gretely] ; 35, And than was.

411. 3, to kyng ; 5, and to ; 7, And than ; 11, vnto hym ; 15, fuche dedes ; 18, lytell Brytayne ; 23, euer kyng ; eyen were ; 24, But euer ; that it was grete wonder to ; bothe on the ryght ; 27, of Scotlande ; 29, that the ; 31, les blaūche ; 34, fayd he.

¶ Thus endeth the fyrft booke of fyr T. de L. ¶ Here after foloweth the feconde booke of fyr T.

Book x.

¶ Here begynneth the feconde booke of fyr T. and the . x . booke of this present volume. ¶ How fyr T. iufted and fmote downe kyng A. & fyr Vwayne & wolde not tell them his name.

412. 1, Than fayd kyng A. / yf ye ; ye be ; 2, thofe armes ; 4, vndefyred ; 5, And as ; 10, Syr fayd fyr T. ; 13, [and] that ; 15, that I had ; [And therefore ye are a vylaynous knyght to afke bataille of me confyderynge my grete traueylle] ; 18, you not ; 21, and than ; 22, [al to pyeces] ; 24, groude.

413. 5, that he fell down to the ; 6, hym aboute ; for to ; 9, our pryde ; 11, Vwayne by the holy rode ; 16, moone and ; 21, one knyght ; 25, in to the ; 26, [foo] ; vpon that ; 29, to them ; 31, whose name ; 32, [called] ; 33, & thus he fayd ; 34, medle with vs ; yf ye ; 36, from vs.

414. 1, from his ; 3, he drefsid ; 6, they had felte his strokes / they ; 14, [my] ; 15, Syr fayd he ; 17, whiche I ; 24, am fore ; 25, [thenne] ; 26, ony fayle ; 29, thofe ; 30, on myn ; 31, where as.

415. 2, vpon ; 3, for to bury ; 6, or that ; this knyght fyr ; 11, maner of wyfe ; let it not be out of your ; remembraunce the ; 14, assayle you ; [that] ; 16, in to that ; 18, haue I a lust ; 19, fro theyr ; 23, By god ; 25, ende of ; 27, on his ; 33, vnto the grounde ; 38, after this.

416. 1, reft ; 2, fyr P. ; 5, ye are ; 7, for to ; 9, yf that ; it shall be an ; 11, departed asonder ; [their] dyuers wayes ; 13, where as ; 15, sayd she ; 18, those ; 19, whiche ; 22, out the body ; 24, grete woo / but I requyre you tell me your lordes name ; 25, is sir G. ; 27, and had good lodgyng ; 32, couered.

417. 3, and he sayd that he sayd it ; 6, he keft me down ; 9, he mette with me and with hym ; 10, was called fyr P. ; 12, full fore ; 16, haue foude hym ; 17, And he answered and sayd / my ; T. de Lyones ; 19, forth on his ; 21, you fayre knyghtes ; 22, None that are very good ; 27, that same ; 28, that we ; 29, of the kynge grete vylany ; of quene G. ; 34, wold in no wyfe ; 35, and gone ; requyred them to tell hym theyr ; 36, [foo].

418. 1, he refted ; 4, there befyde ; 6, not ben ; 8, of the ; on horsbacke ; 9, in the mornyng ; 12, [and] they questyoned ; 18, fyr S. ; 24, Than he came ferther with his hors ; vnto ; 27, grounde ; 30, as fast as they ; coude ; 33, vnto them ; fythen that ; you downe ; groude ; 36, sayd bothe.

419. 1, that ye ; 3, me to do it ; 7, the very cause ; why that ; 10, [and yf I be hurte I shalle not be able to doo bataille with hym] ; 11, fyr S. and fyr Dodynas ; 12, [alle] ; Fayre knyghtes sayd fyr Trystram ; 17, lyghtly escape from vs ; But gentyll ; 19, fyr S. ; 21, forth on ; 25, in y^e fame ; 26, the fayr ; y^e whiche ; 32, trueft louers ; 33, fyr L.

420. 3, nyghe vnto ; 6, and theyr ; the myghte ; that theyr horses coude renne ; 7, [their] horses ; 8, Than as soone as ; 9, they auoyded ; 10, lyke men ; 12, [out] ; 13, [neuer] neyther of them ; vnto other ; 15, I haue grete meruayle ; 16, vnto ; 22, moone ; 23, y^e blode ; 25, therfore I requyre you yf it ; 29, Syr sayd he ; 32, moost loue ; Now fayre ; 34, therwithall ; 36, [And there with alle sir T. kneled adoune / and yelded hym vp his fuerd] ; 38, [all].

421. 3, toke vp ; streight vnto ; [they] ; 4, and [with] ; whiche ; 5, vnto ; 9, sayd vnto ; 10, are ryght hertely ; 12, this countree ; 13, [had] ; 15, that I here not ; 16, dyd mete ; 17, that fyr T. was there ; 20, vnto this ; 21, and how ; 23, moone ; 26, fyr B. ; 30, where as ; 32, vs bothe wonders fore ; 33, that fame ; 35, than / what.

422. 1, maner of knyght ; hym not ; 3, yf ye knowe not than

do I / for I enfore you that it was fyr L. du lake ; all togyder at ones loked ; 10, and ledde hym vnto the rounde ; 12, all with one ; 17, the begynner ; 20, are ryght hertely ; vnto ; 22, fyr T. ; 24, I am lothe ; to do in ; 29, [letters] ; 32, nobleffe ; 33, afore by ; 34, full well.

423. 8, on fyr T. for his ; 9, [that] ; 10, [bothe] ; went out ; 14, [men] ; 17, [had] ; 18, were the noble knyght ; 19, & the quene la beale I. was passyng gladde ; 22, [for] ; 23, fyr B. ; 24, fyr A. ; demaunded a ; 26, asked the ; 28, sayd the ; 29, now lyueth.

424. 2, vnto the ; 3, and hath made ; 6, heuy and fory ; 9, vnto ; 11, he euer ; 12, what thyng ; 13, shamefully dysposed ; 15, now lyuyng ; 16, for to ; 18, A false ; 20, fyr A. ; 23, thou wel ; 25, fyr A.

425. 2, repofed ; 3, vnto ; or not ; 5, vpon ; 6, vnto a tree ; 8, and moone ; pytefullest ; 12, mother vnto ; and vnto ; 13, for your ; 14, nere to ; 15, [Fayr] ; made a ; 16, it is well ; 19, [a] sheelde ; 23, are of ; [there] ; 24, that lyueth ; 27, that lyueth ; of hym speketh ; 28, ialoufy ; 29, [ony] fuche a ; 32, of hym shame ; 33, as ony ; 35, Well than sayd.

426. 4, make it ; 6, and he ; 10, egged ; 11, anone smote ; 12, fore on his sheelde ; hors croupe ; 17, after and ; 19, sayd he ; 20, your fper ; 21, [with fwerdes] forbare hym longe ; 22, smote hym many ; 23, Whan ; that he ; he waxed ; 25, fore vpon ; 26, vnto ; 27, chere with you / me thynketh ; 30, leue for to ; as ye ; Syr gramercy ; 31, are not ; with kyng ; 32, sayd to hym ; for to ; 35, vnto a ; 36, for to ; the whiche he ; 37, for to.

427. 2, that ye ; 3, was there ; 6, vnto a ; 7, ende of that brydge ; 10, one is called fyr ; 11, that other is called fyr ; 12, fyr D. ; 13, alwayes ye are layde to the groude ; Than was ; 15, and ranne agaynst fyr T. ; and there ; 16, fente to ; 17, for to ; wolde he ; 18, iuste agayne ; in to the ; 19, and they prayed ; 21, that hyght ; 25, fyr B. ; 27, [owne] ; And also ye wolde haue ; yf I had ; 34, none euylle ; And it is.

428. 2, are & euer haue ben ; 3, and go aboute / is but ; 7, went vnto theyr ; 10, and the ; 14, the to leue ; for he gooth vnto ; 16, vnto my ; [with hym] ; 17, I haue not his ; 18, fyr D. ; 20, vnto ; 23, out of his ; 24, fyr D. ; 27, 29, fyr B. ; 32, And fo ; 34, had rydden [forth] aboute a four myle [englyfhe] ; 35, [tyl that] ; vnto a ; where as.

429. 3, quod kynge ; 4, this iustynge ; knewe well that the knyght was ; 6, he wolde rather that ; 7, wold [not] iuste with hym ; 12, for to do ; 16, on that ; 20, on theyr waye ; 21, for to ; sayd to hym ; 22, rounde table ; not in ; 25, for to ; 27, maner of

wyfe ; 28, ye not ; 29, fore hated ; vnto you ; 30, yourfelfe foo ; y^t ye ; 31, a grete ; 35, ye are.

430. 1, vnto a ; 2, where as ; he prayd ; 3, refted ; 6, thofe knyghtes that were of ; 7, of his ; 8, demaunde you ; not yet ; 9, fyth that I iufted with hym / & he gaue me ; 10, ye ought to haue no ; 13, thought euer ; fo as ; 14, towarde them ; 15, A.'s courte ; 19, le cuer hardy ; 28, were tyed ; 29, yonder I fe ; 31, we are ; 34, rode from ; 37, the sheelde ; 38, rounde table.

431. 3, [thenne] ; 4, fyr L. or fyr T. ; 11, had refted them ; 13, all arraūt knyghtes ; 15, he was ; 16, [alle] ; 17, answered he ; 26, kyng Marke ; 30, That am I lothe ; 33, rode forth [on] ; 35, where as.

432. 1, quod fyr G. ; 8, and [my] ; 10, by the fayth that I owe to god ; 11, fyr D. was armed ; 13, fyr D. ; 15, vnto a ; 16, on as faft as his hors ; 18, nyghe vnto ; 22, [all] ; faft as he ; 25, And whan ; 26, fyr D. ; chace fo ; 27, as they had ben ; 28, for to fe ; 29, were hurte ; 30, with his ; 31, he made kyng A. laugh ; 35, in that way.

433. 1, come ; 4, paffe by the ; 8, faye foo ; 10, agaynst fyr D. ; 11, nerehande ; 14, [Knyght] ; 19, fir V. anone ; 21, vnto ; 22, knyght arraunt ; 26, that I ; 29, to them / and reherfed vnto them ; [of hym] ; 36, but onely ; behynde the other company ; 37, for he was ; [and D. had his harneis].

434. 1, and alwayes ; 2, hym moche ; 3, to the wordes that kyng M. fayd ; 5, a page / and fayd to hym ; 6, Ryde lyghtly vnto ; maner that standeth fo fayre ; vnto ; 7, of that maner / and ; for to ; me fome ; 9, knyght that I am ; 10, is to faye in ; 11, he went ; 12, as yf that it ; aboute a ; 13, page ; [his way] ; as he was bydden ; 14, he told ; 15, whiche ; 16, [lord] ; 17, fyr P. ; 21, And than ; 26, therwith [alle] ; 32, [that] ; he was as heuy as they ; fyr V. ; fyr D. ; 34, that I.

435. 9, whiche ; 12, haue ye not mette ; that had a ; 13, hedes therin ; 15, wente ; Syr I thanke you ; 17, late in the euenynge ; 20, from his ; fyr D. was ; 26, other ladyes ; 27, loue you ; blame you ; 29, [the] I ; 30, you ; 38, that it was.

436. 2, where as he had ; for to ; 3, to fyr A. ; 4, there redy ; 5, kynge A. ; 6, togyder / and by ; fyr A. ; 7, in the ryghtwyfe ; 11, whiche ; 14, vnto hym ; 16, fayd he ; [ye] ; 20, I am ; 21, ryghtwyfe ; 22, that noble ; 24, whiche ; 25, thynges hyd and vnknownen ; 27, ryghtwyfe ; it sprange vnto ; 28, vnto ; 34, [the loffe of] ; & [of].

437. 1, that fyr T. wepte ; 2, vnto ; 3, [to] yonder ; knyght kynge M. vnto your prefence agayne ; 4, requyre yow ; ageyne to

me; 6, all the; 14, so whan; the noble knyght fyr L.; 16, vnto the; knyght fyr L.; 21, the kynge [Marke]; 22, [that]; 27, A.'s courte; the same; 29, flat vnto; erth before; 33, your heed; 34, or elles had I; 35, by his; 36, [to] as.

438. 5, and a fals diffymuler; 6, them two; 10, euer he; 11, be ye; 12, ye are; 14, and yf; 16, yf that; 17, are ye rydyng; 19, ye not of; 24, set by; 26, coude not; 29, not for fere or; 31, [same]; mette togyder.

439. 1, than foure; 2, bothe so moche; 14, and also fyr P.; 15, the one y^e other; 22, Syr sayd fyr Dinadan; 24, ye shall; [now]; grete and noble; 28, fyr D.; 29, so that; 30, Sir knight; y^t my; 31, brother vnto fyr S.; [and noble]; 32, [I we] ben; 34, hertely for; of that; 35, name and what ye be; & here I; fayth that I owe to god; 36, but moche more rather [be] auauunced vnto grete honour and worship; 38, vpon my.

440. 8, well knowe; 20, yf [that]; 21, sayd fyr P.; 23, owne brother; whiche; 26, knowe it that she; 27, yf that; 30, as they fate; 31, rydyng with a; 32, And than he; 33, vnto.

441. 1, that thou; vnto the ordre; 2, that thou; 3, [for]; 5, beseche the; deale with it; 6, fyr P.; 7, beholde your dedes; there came; 9, And anone; 11, vnto the; 13, [alle]; 14, vnto the grounde; 18, And vpon the walles . . . there were; whiche; 22, the fadels; of theyr; 31, [euer was]; what so euer knyght he be; 33, [alle].

442. 2, [thorou the bented shelde and]; 5, to rest you; 8, you afore; 10, and that ye; 12, fyr P.; that I wold; 13, in hand; 15, that ye wyll iuste; 18, those two; 21, [alle]; 24, for all; he lefte; 25, This seyng fyr D.; 26, knyght with the reed sheelde; But the knyght; 27, bare hym clene ouer his hors tayle; 28, But the knyght wolde not suffre; 29, with theyr horses; [and]; arraunte knyghtes.

443. 8, and locked; 11, vnto fyr D.; of no; 14, vpon hym; 15, fyr D.; 17, haue had; 18, fyr P.; 22, pages; 24, he alyghted to rest; 25, at the fountayne; 27, [ye] of; 29, sayd he; 31, fyr P.; 33, [all]; 34, made hym redy for.

444. 1, fyr P.; 3, and [to]; 4, fyr P.; 8, [foo he]; 10, or that [euer]; 13, cutte infonder; 16, ouercouered; full fore; Somtyme; 17, foyned; somtyme; 19, with a stroke of a spere; 20, fyr P.; 23, vnto fyr P.; am I lothe; 31, hym mercy; 33, that I; 34, batayle with me; 36, bothe his; 37, Syr P.; 38, [fore].

445. 1, haue fought; [not]; 3, that no force / for I shal; 4, but that you; 5, you the better all the; 6, I excepte the same; 7, [excepte] of my; 9, [bothe]; and staunched; 10, in a; them well and

eafely all that ; 12, fyr Ewayne and ; 13, vnto A.'s courte ; 14, [the kyng]; 15, [thurgh the forest] ; 16, hyt them ; 17, and sporte at ; 18, and [at] ; all they ; 19, that had ; 20, yf [that] ; 23, vnto a ; where that ; mother is ; 24, made a ; 25, vnto my ; 26, why wylte ; not ones ; 27, that his ; the noble ; 29, let vs turne ; 30, and fyr D. ; 32, whiche ; vpon a ; 33, fyr G. ; whiche was ; 35, well at ease.

446. 1, towarde the ; of my lorde kyng ; 4, reft ; me a whyle ; 6, not to longe ; I wyll ; 8, By my fayth ; fyr D. ; 9, talent vnto fyr T. ; 10, fyr D. ; 12, to you ; 20, and sayd / wyte ; 29, for a ryght ; 31, bytwene vs sayd fyr D. ; 32, that fame ; 33, A. laye ; 38, excepte.

447. 1, fyr D. ; 2, and [of] ; 7, he fwele four ; [how] ; 8, quod kyng A. ; 9, [very] ; 10, more better ; 11, all the ; 14, endured ; fyr P. had ben there ; 16, My lorde sayd fyr T. ; 17, in all ; 18, to you ; 21, that dyd ; 22, the kyng [Arthur] ; that that knyght ; vnto ; 23, fyr D. ; 24, fyr P. also ; 25, fere me ; fyr P. ; 29, fyr T. fyr L. nor fyr D. ; 31, for to wyne.

448. 3, the whiche came ; 6, he had fmyten ; 8, all the other ; 10, [noyfe &] ; 16, his fadell ; 19, fyr D. ; 27, gyuen to hym ; 33, Than sayd kyng A. ; 34, And whan ; 36, downe from ; 37, vnto hym for to.

449. 2, of eche other ; 3, and in lyke wyfe was ; 5, [at hym] ; 6, bycause he had put them vnto ; 7, fyr G. ; 8, vnto them ; 14, kyng P. ; 19, ouer this mater ; of fyr G. & his bretherne ; 20, speke we ; vpon a ; sayd to ; 21, requyre you & praye you for to gyue me a ; 29, vnto god & vnto ; 32, wyll fwere that ; 34, [there] swore.

450. 1, hard faftned ; 2, fhall be well ; afterwarde ; 4, for to ; 5, for to ; 8, wyft that ; 16, them to be accorded ; 17, or elles ; 18, and the [mooff] ; 21, the noble knyght ; 23, or flee that ; 24, vnto our lorde Iesu Chryft and vnto the hyghe ; 31, can byleue ; is full well ; 35, was to the.

451. 3, on Aryes ; 5, all thefe ; 6, also in ; 12, vnto ; 13, for to ; that yonge ; 18, hym a ; 20, fyr A. ; 22, loue of his father ; 26, all his ; 33, had neuer spoken.

452. 3, hym vnto ; 5, vnto the ; 6, And whan ; 9, whiche was moche ; 10, prayfed there ; 11, for theyr ; 12, was to the ; 16, appoynted ; 17, [there] he ; 18, tofore that ; 20, And than ; 25, vnto theyr ; 27, the hote blode ; 28, ye may ryght well wyte that ; 29, [al] ; 30, a man ; 31, to hym thus ; 32, a grete ; 33, whiche.

453. 1, fyr G. ; 2, yet thou ; 4, it is ; 12, that I ; 13, and therfore ; 19, kyng A. ; 23, was fyr Launcelot ; other of the rounde table ; 27, & I am fure ye ; 28, [the] whiche ; yf fir ; 30, than all ; 31, [the noble] ; 32, for than were gone two ; 34, that ye.

454. 4, a fleynge; 9, [alle]; 10, for to; 11, 13, fyr M.; 14, fyr A.; 17, 18, fyr D.; 24, [alle]; 25, Fayre knightes sayd he / ye fhall knowe that my name is fyr D.; 27, 29, 32, 35, fyr D.; 28, out of all; 32, euer; 33, fyr B.; 34, was fyr; 36, his owne; 37, fayd fyr D.; all he.

455. 1, for to make shorte tale; 2, from his; 5, fyr D.; 10, fyr D.; 18, [out]; 19, whose name; and a; 20, 25, kynge A.; 25, [of the] quene; 32, & the quene and fyr L.

456. 1, and [the]; 2, L. du lake; answered and sayd [and to make short tale]; 7, fyr T. de Lyones; 9, fyr L.; 13, for to; 14, kynge M.; to morowe sayd; 17, Than fyr T. and la beale I. sayd / we pray you; 18, ye wyll; 23, [as] at; 27, than as; 33, [of] his.

457. 2, vpon many; vpon his; 4, L. du lake; in his mynde; 5, And than; 6, his moost enemy; 8, And than; 11, on fyr T.; 12, had redde; 23, fyr D.; 25, seruauent to; 27, yet I loue; 29, fyr D.; 31, by all thefe thretenynges; 32, neuer no man; gete ought of hym.

458. 2, made by kynge M. [the] whiche; 3, instrument; 5, and [to]; 7, that he; fore wounded; 9, rest; 11, the Seneschall; 12, with a; 13, nyghe vnto; 14, fyr E.; 15, y^t his; 17, he wolde; 19, [thenne]; 20, thus . Syr; 22, that ye; 24, than sayd; 25, for to; 27, Whan fyr T. vnderftode; 28, the kynge; 29, fofte hackeney; 35, may I.

459. 1, yet all guaryfshed and hole; 3, rest you; 5, kynge M.; for to go to T.; 6, to rest; 9, Markes blode; 10, grete and myghty; 13, And the good knyght fyr D.; 14, with his; 15, was grete brekyng; 16, fmytyng of good knyghtes . And euer; 17, of all; 21, folowed them fafte; 23, portcoleys; 25, fyr T. sent; 26, he wold come; he were hole; for no fooner coude he do hym god; 28, fyr E.; kynge M. yelde; 29, may [not]; 34, to the castell of T.; 35, [wonder]; 37, vnto.

460. 4, ryght glad; 11, vnderftode hym; 12, hym [his]; 13, hym an; 14, Than sayd; [thus] vnto; 18, [alle]; 19, fyr E.; 20, to kynge; 21, for to; 23, [that] it; 27, fyr E. wyft it; 30, dyf-comforte you not for one; 31, of y^e world.

461. 7, Elyas y^e; 10, vp agayne on; 11, [alle]; mette [with] fyr E. the capytayne; 14, euery party; 17, they of without; 20, ony more; eyther partye; 21, fyr E.; 23, go vnto; than was he; 24, this fyr E. the capytayne fente; defpyte & angre whether; 28, flee myn; euer here after; 29, And than; 30, lord & capytayn fyr E.; for to; 33, all his; 34, was beft to do.

462. 2, Notwithstandynge all this sayd no knyght coude be founde that wold fyght with h̄y; 5, fyr E.; 6, without that; 8,

sayd they al ; in hand ; 10, for to rest ; 11, yf I ; 13, and told hym where he ; 18, was with ; 19, fyr E. ; 21, may not demaūde ; 28, playne feelde ; 29, to me his ; 31, [a] feuen dayes here ; 32, with hȳ to morowe ; 33, meffenger was ; 34, Herken vnto my wordes felowe sayd ; 35, to make ; 36, vpon his ; 38, rounde table.

463. 3, vttermest ; 4, [all] ; 6, [alle] ; 8, the ende ; 12, that one from that other / and they ; 14, went vnto ; 17, as there had ben a ; 29, there grete ; on the ; 31, kyng Marke ; all shamed ; [all] for ; 32, the frenshe ; 37, whiche afore.

464. 1, fyr E. ; 3, vnto the ; 10, he dyed ; to kyng M. ; 11, fyr E. ; 12, for to ; 13, harmes and domages ; 20, let vs ouer passe this ; 22, [at] ; 23, ioye of the vyctory whiche he had / bycause the Seffoynes were so put ; 24, Elyot ; 26, T. de Lyones ; of the lay ; fyr D. ; 28, that fyr D. ; 29, Elyot ; 30, vpon my ; 31, Than as kyng M. was at meet Elyot the harper came in ; 33, fyr D. ; 36, wrothe with hym.

465. 2, Eliot ; *line 7 wholly omitted* ; 10, And than ; 11, deuysed vnto fyr L. and vnto ; 12, But for ; 14, made & ordeyned by ; 17, whiche befell ; 19, fyr B. whiche ; 20, vpon a ; 21, after that the ; 22, prynce fyr ; 23, of them he ; 24, was day ; 28, the other ; 29, fyr B. ; 30, set vpon ; 33, that this ; 34, & also y^t fyr B.

466. 1, beyng out ; and lackynge naturall reason ; [he] ; for the noble prynce fyr B. ; 2, & cōmaūded them to ; 4, as y^e father ; 6, fyr B. ; 10, sayd to hym [thus] ; 13, I myght haue had ; 14, fyr B. ; that yf ; 17, for to ; 20, A. his wyfe ; 22, but that ; 28, to ; 30, Lorfelyn ; 31, chylde Alysaunders ; 32, rode her waye.

467. 2, fynde A. ; 3, fyr S. ; 4, vpon payne ; 8, sayd she ; 10, 11, fyr S. ; 11, fone A. ; 15, [euer] ; 19, [al] ; fyr S. ; 25, rested herselfe ; vnto the ; 26, that was ; 30, cofyn to her ; 31, and the [that same] ; told dame ; 33, dame A. ; tyl that her fone A.

468. 1, fyr B. ; vnto dame A. ; 3, made a ; 4, sayd Anglydes ; 6, fyr B. ; 9, I am content that it be ; dame A. ; 10, for to make ; constable came ; 12, God be ; 13, euer were tolde to me ; constable fyr B. ; 15, all be ; 18, dame A. ; 19, sayd vnto hym these wordes ; [fwete] ; 20, and vpon the ; of knighthode ; 24, And whan ; 28, that for ; 30, tofore my face in my prefence ; the which I ; 31, to you now.

469. 3, [all] ; fyr A. ; vnto ; 6, [that] I may ; 7, vnto god and vnto ; 9, fyr A. ; and well armed ; 11, [a] ; 12, none of them ; 13, for to go to ; 14, fyr A. ; 15, [tyme] ; 16, false traytour ; 21, drawen ; M. thou come ; nere me ; 24, & traytourfly ; 25, praye god sende fyr A. ; 27, fyr A. ; 34, nor yet fyr D. ; 36, for to ; 37, and also fyr S. ; faued his lyfe.

470. 2, [alle]; 3, vnto; 4, of the noble; he fholde; in the gouernaunce of fyr L.; 6, And fo; to fyr A.; 8, and counfeyle; the knyght whiche had; 9, fyr A.; cōmaunded hym for to; 10, nedes must I do fo; 13, [euer]; in thyne owne countree; 15, Wherewith kyng M. was wonders; 16, and vnto; 18, in a; 19, fuche as were; 20, and Breuse; 21, but that; 23, the yonge knyght fyr A.; 26, and that alwayes he bare; 27, dyenge daye; for to; vpon; 28, fyr A. was; for to; 29, vnto; 31, degree; whiche turneymente kyng C.; 33, whiche was.

471. 2, for to; 4, quod M.; 9, was fyr; And y^e other; 11, the one; fyr G.; fyr Garaunt; 12, tolde quene; 13, by a; 14, damoyfel of; 20, vnto the; 21, fyr A.; 22, vnto her; [thus]; 23, with a knyght of this; 24, the whiche is; 25, vnto me; and his name is called fyr M.; 28, fyr A.; 29, body I wyll; 30, Than forthwith [all]; 33, full egrely; fyr A.; 34, and fyr; 35, fyr M.

472. 1, yet shalt thou; 2, quod fyr A.; 4, wylde bores; and fmote vpon theyr; 7, came quene; 8, this fyr; 10, daungeroust; 12, fyr A.; fo he; 13, on his fete; 14, for fyr; 17, rāmes or bores; fell bothe; 19, fyr M.; 21, fyr A.; 23, fyr M.; for the; 24, [good]; 25, pryde; 26, fayd fyr; 29, to me; 30, for I promyfe the faythfully as I am flee thee; 33, Than agayne; laft fyr; 34, fmote fyr; he raffhed; 35, and lyghtly; 36, thus done; 37, vnto hym; 38, mounted but he fell downe flatte on the erth for feblenes.

473. 1, The damoyfel of the castell feynge that / layde fyr A. in a; 2, neyther fete nor myght; 3, the grounde; 6, & gaue hym; 7, mornynge after; 9, was he; 13, wente to; 14, bad hym; 18, fayd she; 20, vnto a; 21, fayd fyr; 23, them to; 24, and to wedde togyder; 25, in a; 27, not but; vnto her; 28, whiche at; 29, quene M.; to fyr; 30, fayd fyr A.; 31, fayd quene.

474. 2, fyr A.; 3, bycause he; 5, to quene; 8, fyr A. laye; 10, yf ye; 12, fyr A.; 13, fayd she; 15, [Quene]; 17, fayd fyr; 18, rather than; 19, a pleasure; So god helpe me; 21, fayd fyr; 23, for to be; 24, that is a; for he is; 26, he wyll; 29, ye shall; 31, fyr A.; 33, fayd fyr; 35, fent to.

475. 2, longe afore that; 4, that vpon; 6, fyr A.; 12, styll in the; 14, [a]; and a daye; 16, that there; 19, for to goo on; 21, whiche was; 23, vnto kyng A.; 24, that may; 25, the knyght; 28, grete landes; 29, vpon her; as fyr A.; vpon his; 31, [the] erth; 32, but that there; 33, with fyr; 34, fyr S.

476. 3, ryght well; fayd fyr A.; And than; 4, And whan; than she; 5, none other; 7, whan fyr A.; 10, [the] lyfe; 11, Fayre lady fayd he / my name is fyr A.; 12, fayre damoyfel fayd he /

tell me; 14, eche other; 16, talked togyder; 17, fyr H.; and he asked; 21, And there; 22, And fyr; 24, fyr A.; 27, for to; [and repofe hym]; 28, had holpen; 29, dame Alys; 30, [her]; 32, vnto this damoyfell; 35, vnto the noble knyght fyr L. Truly fayre lady; 36, fyr A.

477. 1, to fyr T.; [Thēne]; 3, that other; de les; 6, on fote; 7, [a]; 9, he was; 10, he was; 12, fawe that; on his; 14, thought to haue; 15, had holpen; 17, on her; forthwith; 19, vnto fyr A.; 21, fyr A.; 22, out his; she fawe; 23, & Mordred alfo in to; 24, fyr A.; 26, paffyng wroth; 27, had fo; 28, dame Alys; 33, reherce them all; within thofe; 34, or [with].

478. 2, frenfhe booke; 3, tyll that; 4, whiche hyght; [good]; 7, & fyr A. lorfelyn; 8, that fyr; 9, vnto; 10, vnto fyr L.; 11, that he; 12, forowe was; 13, vnto; 18, came vnto; all his; 19, let doo crye; 21, for to; wyll well; 22, wyte you wel that I may; 24, of your goodnes to gyue me lycence for to; with a; 25, fo that fyr; 26, take you vnto his; fyr G.; 27, than fayd quene G.; take fuche knyghtes w^t me as pleafeth; 29, anone the quene; for to; 32, G. the haute prynce.

479. 2, [and] prynces; 3, many noble; 4, at the fyrft; 7, the range; 8, was all; 11, of them gate; grete fperre; 16, vpon his; 19, fyr B.; 20, he was wonders wroth; 26, bothe [the]; 27, partyes; 34, And whan.

480. 2, this fyr Melyagaunt; 3, with a; 4, a fperre; fame tyme; his father met; 5, vnto whome; 6, fone fyr; 7, that he; 9, And fo; fyr M.; 11, fote togyder; there fyr; 12, [there]; fyr Galahalt the; 15, vnto the; 16, the whiche; from her; 17, And that fame knyght; 21, go to fuche; 24, take it vpon hym & graūte to you; 28, and [to]; 29, And than the; 32, And than they drewe [out]; 35, loued fyr; 37, fyr P.; [self].

481. 2, in doubte; 18, vnto fyr; 19, nothyng myght byte; 20, And whan; 21, [wyft and]; downe to the; 22, was ryght fore; 23, fyr P.; 25, fayd fir; 28, another ryght foone; 29, vnto you; A fyr fayd fyr P.; 30, are at; 32, fo there came fyr; 33, G. the haute prynce; fo harde with; 34, But fyr.

482. 1, whan fyr; 2, that he; 4, not fyr; 6, was fyr; the haute; 9, fyr G.; 10, fyr D.; 12, fyr M.; 13, not fallen; 16, vnto the worfte; 18, fyr S.; 19, Than [the]; 20, to lodgyng; 22, fyr P.; 23, And anone; 25, fyr A.; 26, to fyr G.; fyr P.; 27, fyr A.; 29, fayd fyr; 30, Whan the Haute prync; 33, were bothe; 36, fyr A.

483. 1, fyr P.; 4, wente to; 5, fyr M.; bycaufe that; 15, Than there came in; 18, fyr A.; 21, a grete; 22, vnder y^e horfes; 23,

began fyrft; 24, Syr G. fir Gawaynes; 26, & smote downe fyr; man to the erth; 27, And than; 28, fyr Blamore de ganys fyr B.'s; 29, and there eyther of them; with theyr speres; [theyre]; 32, his nose / mouth and eeres; 33, by y^e helpe of.

484. 1, [there]; 2, whiche; fyr Elias le; 6, well as he; 7 fo that; 8, vnto; 10, there came fyr; 12, was a grete bourder / and; 15, fyr P.; [thus]; Syr here; here by; 18, 20, fyr P.; 20, So [the]; 21, [they] were; 24, vnto; 25, therwith [alle]; [in his hand]; 32, fyr G. the Haute; 33, than they two; 35, fyr P. [alle]; 36, vnto.

485. 8, Now begynneth; 11, fyr S.; 13, mother / and how he appeled an erle before kyng A. / for he made; 14, on our; 26, So whan duke; 27, fyr L.; 29, vpon payne; none of them sholde touche hym; 34, lefte hande.

486. 2, neuer no; 3, fyr L. vnto; 5, where on horsback; vnto; 6, whiche; 7, full myghtely agayne; 10, ouerthrewe many good; And there; 11, on the ryght hande and on; 12, drewe abacke; 13, And therwith [all] the Haute pryce let; vnto; 14, the degree; 15, fyr P. and fyr B. de ganys. And fyr S. and fyr E. fought on fote; 17, were they; 19, vnto the; 20, in bothe her; 22, And in lykewyse dyd fyr D.; 23, no man there; 25, morowe after fyr G. the; 27, came in the meane seafon; 31, croupe / fo that he fell to y^e erth; 32, vnto fyr; 33, fyr E.; So whan.

487. 2, fyr P.; 3, [a] shorte; 4, [for]; 5, fyr A.; 6, thus smyte; 7, [alle]; 10, fyr P.; 11, iuste ony; fayd fyr; 14, of them gate; in theyr hande; 15, that fyr P.; brake; 16, [alle]; 20, vnto; 22, fyr L.; 25, O fyr; 27, fyr G.'s; 29, to me; kyng A.; 30, [the] whiche; 36, couenable.

488. 2, vnto; where as; 4, whiche was; vnto; 5, knyght farafyn whiche; fyr C.; 7, this fyr; 8, letted; 10, that fyr; 14, vnto her; to fyr C.; 17, fyr P.; 18, fyr C.; 19, rode to; 20, fyr G. the; 21, redy [the]; 22, afore fyr; 23, [at]; 25, fyr D.; 26, and fyr D. smote; 28, was a iester & a; 33, fawe fyr; 35, [that] ye; and [the noble].

489. 6, and to the; fyr D.; 9, at fyr; 10, [the] dyner; 11, let blowe; and fyr C.; 14, downe to the; 15, drewe theyr; 17, 18, fyr C.; 18, fyr P.; 20, gaue vnto fyr; 21, made hym to knele vpon one of his knees; 22, fyr P.; arofe vp lyghtely and gaue hym fuche a buffet vpon; 23, [ry3t]; 24, [Corfabryn]; 25, fyr C.; 26, worfte that thou canst; 27, a stenche; fo that; 30, fyr P.; 32, vnto fyr L.; 34, fyr C.; 38, fyr P.

490. 3, a vowe; tyll that; 7, And fo dyd bothe; 10, to the; 12, there; 14, other / [and]; 15, cast from theyr horses downe to the grounde; 17, whiche were; 19, grounde; 21, toke a; 22, [alle];

23, drew out; 25, many knyghtes; 27, there were many knyghtes that fledde; 28, sayd to them; so frō; 30, all y^e; 33, fayre bretheren; vpon your; 34, Duryng thes wordes there came.

491. 4, fyr B.; 5, vpon the duke C. of Claraūce; 6, erle [of]; 8, he at hym; 9, vnto; 11, fyr D.; and he; 15, And whan; 16, he sawe; 17, [and that he gatte betwixe two dyffhes]; he ferued; 18, fayd vnto hym thus; 21, [wel]; fyr D. vnto fyr L.; 23, [fir D. faid L.] And I enfore; 24, neuer mete the no more / nor also with thy; 25, meteth with me; 26, be so; buystous spere; 27, fyr L.; make euer; 29, Quene G.

492. 5, holpe; 8, they began; 13, [there]; to make; 15, two; 16, ye may beholde; 18, that we; 23, the raungell; 26, fyr G.; 27, where as; 28, all armed; 29, fyr D.; 31, vpon hym; 32, with grete scornes they; 34, so they; 35, And than they; 36, vnarmed hym; them all; 38, so brought in.

493. 1, were there; 2, fyr D. vnto fyr L.; 3, assent of them all; 16, that I shall; 19, so euer; 20, vnto my; that I was; 21, [that] whan; 31, fyr L.

494. 1, And than; 9, there fet; 13, fyr T. had he; 14, brused many knyghtes; 18, y^e other were; 19, nothyng so fore behated; 20, in the; 21, Syr neuwe; am full; 22, God thanke you my; 23, And than; for to be; in to an; 24, hors lytter; fygne of grete; neuwe; 27, for to ete; 29, for to be; in to; 31, for to; 32, and his; 34, Whan the quene la; how fyr T.; she sent; 35, fyr T. was; 36, fyr S.; wyfte that; [&] anone he had knowlege that; 38, fyr S.

495. 2, [as] by; 5, [there]; 6, and [there]; 8, fyr S.; 9, & gaue an other a grete woūde; but fyr; 10, on his; 13, tyll [that]; 18, he had fayd; 19, and by; 23, Returne we vnto; 26, were able to bere; 28, let bury; 29, within a; 31, vnto warre; 34, do make.

496. 1, [dyd] made; 6, forthwith; 14, lyke a traytour; that I; 19, other lettres; 21, vpon the farafyns; 22, vnto fyr.

497. 5, fyr P.; 7, streyghte to; 9, how he had; 12, ye well; moost noble; 13, yf that; 17, no more so; 20, for to; 21, that she is; 23, And so; 24, y^t kyng; 26, And than anone; 29, for to; the farafyns; 31, Dynas the Senefshall; 32, farafyns; than he anone in all the haste he myght put; 38, Whan la beale I.

498. 8, to that purpose; 9, and vnto fyr S.; 14, to her worde; 15, had deuyfed; 18, with those; 21, this countree; 22, countree foure; 23, whiche; 27, and for to; 29, And whan; how all these; [thus]; 30, were ouerthrowen; vnto fyr; 31, how that; 34, fyr T. was there; 35, ryght glad.

499. 1, that fyr T. rode; and than he rode after hym; 2,

ryght grete ; 4, the whiche ; 5, put y^e castell in to theyr gouernaunce as theyr owne ; 6, was ryght well ; 7, [Royall] ; 14, vnto her lorde kyng ; 21, of his ; 26, on this ; 27, were not glad ; 28, by this crye whiche ; 30, at vs ; 37, & [to] la.

500. 1, [in] ; 2, [goo] ; 11, rechace ; 15, vpon a ; 16, me gretely ; 17, that ye ; 18, also well ; 19, for to ; and [to] ; 26, for to ; 27, drynke of that welle ; 28, vnto ; espyed that ; 29, helme vpon his heed ; 33, fyr B. ; so forthwith [alle] ; 34, to them ; the good ; 35, that one to that other.

501. 1, fayd fyr Breufe faunce pyte ; 2, well fayd he ; 4, bycause kyng ; 7, the quene ; 8, in this ; 10, fyr P. ; hastily shal ; 15, vpon a ; 18, and a ; 19, that wyll ; 21, A.'s courte ; 25, fyr B. ; 26, fyr P. ; 30, hors and man ; 31, [thus] ; 33, vttermest ; 34, for all ; whiche ; 37, [euer] ; 38, was fore.

502. 1, after hym ; and [thorough] ; 2, B. faunce pyte ; fledde thus ; 3, [euen] ; 4, the one ; that other ; 5, and that other hyghte fyr Harry le ; 6, fyr P. de Galys ; 7, [of his tyme] ; 8, fyr B. ; these thre ; 9, cryed aloude ; 13, is fyr B. ; yf that ; 14, ony mercy ; here with ; 18, And whan ; 19, hymselfe alone ; 22, And so than ; 25, euer he ; 28, on y^e erth [thenne] ; vnto hymselfe that fyr B. faunce pite was neuer ; 36, grounde ; 37, dedes & actes ; 38, vpon.

503. 1, put vnto ; 2, B. faunce pite ; 3, And whan ; 4, vnhappy wyll ; 5, And than ; 7, vnto the ; as though he wolde ; And whan ; 9, shame of thyselfe ; 11, bothe hors ; 19, 23, fyr B. ; 23, he is of all cowardes the ; [knyghte] ; 27, fyr E. ; 28, had mette ; 29, 32, fir B. ; 30, and forowe ; 33, fyr P.

504. 2, with hym ; 3, all redy ; fyr B. ; 5, 6, fyr P. ; 7, fyr E. ; 8, nor no ; 12, fyr P. ; 14, fyr P. ; 23, And whan ; 24, fyr L. was dede ; 26, arose vp ; 28, mete togyder ; [wyde] ; man myght ; 32, A.'s courte.

505. 3, for to ; 7, to daye ; 8, had flepte ; grēnyng ; 9, [and his hors stode by hym] ; 11, vpon ; 12, fayd quod ; 13, quod fyr ; 17, [And] as ; knowe ; 18, fyr D. ; 19, tell me ; 21, fyght but yf ; 22, for to ; 23, styll houed ; 24, come ; 25, that wyll ; 26, It is the ; 29, whose ; 30, fyr E. ; 31, [ful] ; 35, fyr D. ; 37, all arraunt ; 38, one for to ; another ; fyr E.

506. 1, whether he wyll or not ; 2, Than fayd fyr D. ; 3, [al] ; 4, fyr E. ; 5, how is it with you now ; 6, Me thynketh that ; ryght well ; vpon ; 7, ony good ; now reuenge my shame ; 9, from hens ; 13, fyr D. ; 14, moche the ; 16, And soo fyr T. rode ; 18, what meaneth ; 22, than was ; but a ; 23, [for] ; by cause he fayd well ; 24, is but a ; vnto vs ; 25, yf fyr L. ; 26, vpon those ; 27, incontynent he ; 28, a lytell ; 32, hors croupe ; 34, as he serued the

fyrft knyght / foo he ferued hym ; 35, gate them vpon theyr fete as well ; 36, and theyr ; to do ; vnto the vttermest.

507. 3, vs not ; 5, fyr G. ; brother vnto ; 6, vnto the noble ; 8, is grete ; 9, ye that ben ; 11, in all ; 12, but late agone (as I herde saye) that ; 13, whiche ; 17, waye as he dyd ; 18, [ther] than had it ben nede to haue ben many moo knyghtes than ; 19, [all] ; them and rode ; 20, And so ; 21, sayd the one to ; 25, sayd quod ; drewe ; 26, myghty buffet ; 27, from his ; and [he] ; 28, And than fyr T. turned hym vnto fyr G. / and he ; 31, rode freyght ; 33, before ; 34, [fyr] she fayd.

508. 1, is of all men the ; 2, and is also a good knyght ; 6, for to ; 7, that he hath ; 9, And euen so ; 17, reft ; 18, [there] ; 22, [that] he ; 23, fyr D. ; A.'s courte ; 24, rounde table ; 26, the noble knyght fyr T. ; 27, sayd fyr D. ; 31, vnto you ; 32, but yf that ye ; 33, fyr D. ; 36, whiche.

509. 1, good and noble ; 8, fay vnto ; ye are ; 10, that I ; 11, la beale I. ; 20, whiche ; 22, tyll he ; 24, [he] ; 26, whiche ; 29, hym wylfully ; brake his ; 30, fyr D. began ; 31, to drawe out his fwerde ; 33, fyr D.

510. 9, a knyght arraunt ; dresfynge ; 10, for to ; 12, fyr T. ; 22, A fyr D. ; 24, grete ioye ; this fyr ; 27, how he was ; 29, there came ; 36, fyr G.

511. 2, and perceyue full well ; 6, demed in hymselfe ; Than the ; 7, dressed his sheelde and drewe out ; for to ; 21, praye you fyr T. ; 26, and ye owe me euyll wyll ye may ; 29, cōmaūde me ; [ryght] ; 31, fyr D. ; 36, well ynough ; 37, of Ioyous garde.

512. 1, castell of ; 5, fyr P. ; 9, fyr D. ; fyr G. ; 10, [there] lasted ; 15, [but he wanne the degree] ; that he ; 17, that he ; 26, to fyr G. ; 28, fyr A. ; fyr G. ; fyr M. ; 32, fyr G. ; 36, Truly sayd ; [& foo] I wold I had ; 38, [or] on fote.

513. 2, [in] all the dayes of my lyf ; 3, And whā the degree was ; 4, fyr A. ; fyr G. ; 11, doth it ; 12, fyr G. ; 13, drawe me to ; 14, fayd fyr ; 15, fyr D. ; 22, kynrede ; 23, 25, fyr P. ; 28, [said sir T.] ; 29, be he neuer ; [nor foo] ; 30, and byge ; 31, [knyghtes] full ofte ; 32, is nought ; 33, said sir T. ; 34, [owne] ; 35, [Soo] ; 36, herde a dolefull crye ; 37, vessell couered.

514. 2, and his company alyghted ; [And] ; 3, [and entred] ; [And] ; 6, [was] ; [the] ; 8, Than he was ware of ; 10, sayd he what ; 13, [fire said the maronniers that] ; 17, [that somme of vs] we may ; [as wel as other] ; 18, [foo] as ; [maronniers] ; it shall be ; 21, to ; 22, recōmendacyon / and vnto ; 29, that this ; a ryght ; 31, maner of ; 37, worfhyppfull estates ; [be] ; 38, for to.

515. 6, feuen dayes ; 9, fyr G. ; 18, as ye are ; 20, to his ; 27,

moche the worfe ; 29, that I ; [euer] ; 30, am not ; 35, forth on ; a lytell ; 36, rydyngē all armed.

516. 4, that knyght ; 5, kepe hym well ; 7, hym to the groude . And that knyght ; 9, full hard ; 10, to leue ; 14, he tombled vp fo ; 15, and there he ; 16, to haue dyed ; 17, fore of ; 18, they departed and rode ; 19, comyng agaynst ; 21, fyr B. ; 23, that other ; 25, whiche at ; 26, [the] whiche ; 29, vnto la ; 30, it vnto ; fyr B. ; 31, ye therwith ; 33, kepe the ; 34, all the myght that theyr horses coude renne ; 35, And so the kyng.

517. 4, or that be ; 5, redy to iuste with me ; to fyr T. ; 8, agayn lyghtly ; 9, sadde strokes ; 11, sayd fyr D. ; 14, fyr S. ; 15, to fyr D. ; 16, 18, fyr D. ; 17, fyr T. ; 18, fyr G. ; 20, fyr G. / that hors and man fell to ; 21, to fyr D. ; 26, in to the ; 28, fyr D. ; 29, bare the helme of ; 31, there good ; and spote ; 32, to do to kepe them from laughynge ; 35, vnto.

518. 3, was fast on slepe ; 4, in to the whiche ye ; [in to] ; me therto ; 6, the whiche ; 7, they that were ; 11, was well ; 12, And than ; 14, fuche [a] ; wolde I ; 15, So there ; 19, our lord ; 25, shall do ; 26, by our kynge ; 30, fyr E. ; 31, fyr P. ; 33, of two chyl dren ; 34, had in so grete fauour ; 35, his blode so well ; 37, hym and his ; 38, for to haue.

519. 1, ony rule ; 3, hym as them lyft . And ; 7, as it is euer ; 8, he wyll not therwith be suffysed ; 12, be well ware ; 15, these false ; 16, all armed ; 19, two false ; the one that ; 22, vnto ; 23, vnto the deth ; 27, that I ; 28, vnto ; 33, as I haue.

520. 1, and tenemētes that ; possessed in all ; 2, fyr E. ; 3, his maker ; 6, and that I ; 7, came to ; 9, vpon me / and reunge ; 10, [nor lord] ; 11, This was ; 13, our kynge ; 14, on his ; 15, ye possesse ; 20, of the worlde ; 21, am comen ; 24, at my hertes ease tyll that ; 27, we that ben ; 30, two false ; kepe it ; 33, that ye ; me for to ; 38, nygh vnto.

521. 1, vpon ; 3, here in this countre ; 4, [euer] ; 5, fyr P. ; 9, of kynge H. ; 12, and he that ; 13, in hande ; 14, drewe ; 15, many a ; 16, And thus they fought more ; 18, bothe his ; 20, was curteys ; 21, fyr knyght ; 22, ye be better ; 24, fyr P. ; 25, that hyther am comen ; 26, vnto fyr ; 27, ben now lyuyngē ; 28, the seconde fyr T. ; 29, & the thyrde ; 31, It is well sayd quod ; 32, vnto ; 33, vnto my.

522. 6, was not there / whiche is the best ; 7, fyr H. ; 10, [that was] ; 12, of the courte of ; 15, for moche ; 17, they let ; to the two ; 18, comen a ; 20, in a castel ; 22, He is ryghte ; 28, the whiche is not yet christened ; 29, and yf he ; 30, for to ; 31, vnto ; 36, faythfull ; 37, also well.

523. 1, [the] whiche; 2, [full]; 6, fyr H.; 7, that other hyght fyr; 11, [that]; 14, vnto the; 15, thus he fayd; fir H. and fyr; 17, [that]; for to; 19, whiche; 29, as euer; 31, fyr H.; 33, pryde & presūpcyon; 34, on the grounde.

524. 3, two or thre tymes; 4, Wherof fyr P.; 5, [al]; 6, grounde; 8, a myghty stroke; made him to fall vpon one of his; 9, they bothe; 11, two wylde; 12, on the erth; 13, reftyng; two large; brethed them; 17, a sorowfull doole; 21, had endured well an; 22, vpon his; as well as; 24, vnto; wherfore hāgeft; 28, fell vnto; 29, groūde; And than he starte lyghtly to hym and rasshed of; 32, hym vnto; 35, for to; [alle]; 36, [as]; 37, all the.

525. 1, So than were; 3, [as] at; 5, than he; 6, they that were in; knewe; 11, So fyr T.; 12, within [the]; 15, goodly knyght; 19, fyr D.; 24, for to; 26, for to rest; And so; 30, spake vnto; asked hym where were those; 32, are ye; 33, that ye are.

526. 3, withall; 4, through fyr T.; 5, thwarte the myddes; 6, grounde; therwithall; drewe; 8, for to; 10, [that] he; 11, hors by the brydell; 12, than he turned; 16, he fmote his; 21, fyr E.; 22, now bereth lyfe; 23, tell me yf ye; 24, fyr T.; 26, fyr E.; 28, is fyr; 31, fyr E.; rode vnto; 34, fyr P. talked vnto fyr T.; 36, so well.

527. 1, for to; 3, quod fyr D.; 8, sawe quene; 9, was fo; y' vnnethes he; 10, vnto theyr; but fyr; 12, morowe; 14, bothe la beale I. & they; 18, 19, fyr G.; 20, full fayre; 22, of fyr; 23, So came a squyer to fyr; 25, elles [to]; 26, that I bydde; come with; 27, sayd fyr; 31, shall encoūtre; 32, Than the; told fyr G. his answere; 34, fmote fyr.

528. 1, a grete; there came; 5, there came; of fyr; 9, [ryghte]; 10, [euer]; 14, fyr G.; vnto fyr G.; 15, this fyr; hathe ben; 19, thyrde was; 20, fyr D.; 21, that they [four knyghtes]; 23, as longe as; 27, [all]; 29, hors and man; 30, fyr V.; fyr S.; 34, fyr G.; 37, sayd fyr; 38, fyr G.

529. 1, he y' is; 3, la beale I.; 4, tyll [that]; 9, here; 11, a [grete]; 12, by that horne; 18, vnto a; 19, sholde be; 20, vnto; 23, vnto our; 27, his naturall; 29, And whan; 32, wente vnto; 33, that the.

530. 4, not knowe; than fyr T.; 5, I [haue]; meruayle me moche; 7, fyr G.; 8, vs two; 9, vnto hym; [for] to; 14, tyll they; 15, cause that; 18, I can not tell you yet; 19, be vnto I; 25, fyr G.; 31, 32, fyr S.; [thenne]; 35, tyl that; 36, holpe fyr; 37, holpe vp fyr; 38, to theyr; they vnlaced his.

531. 2, hym ayled; 3, gaue hym; 4, an other as good agayne; fyr P.; 7, nedes; 8, that ye; 10, fyr S.; 13, fyr G.; 15, sayd fir;

16, [alle]; fyr P.; 20, shall we; 25, was in; 28, I. where she; 31, Scotlande; 32, them do; 33, thofe; fyr L.; 34, not shewe you no certaynte; 35, of a certeynte it ben they.

532. 2, [lyghtely]; 3, roude table; 4, Kay went; 10, cofyns to; 11, and that; 19, so that; 24, & so bothe his hors & he fell to y^e grounde; 26, sayd kyng; 27, hath iusted full; 32, my two; 33, feuen of my; 36, whiche were.

533. 1, whiche rydeth vpon; [myghtely and]; 3, made to be set on horsback; thofe two; 4, whiche fyr E.; fyr S.; 6, out his; 9, all other; 11, not to doo his parte on the; 13, wonder of hym; And there; 14, whiche rode at that tyme vpon a; lyke vnto; And he; 15, that rode vpon a; And he lykened fyr G.; 16, two egre; 28, thofe.

534. 3, fyr L.; 5, [foo]; 6, 12, kynge A.; 7, fyr L.; 14, let euery; 15, forth togyder; 16, foo that; 18, groude; 22, tombled to the groude; 23, from his; 24, And than [the noble]; 26, how that; 38, [that] thou.

535. 4, quyte it; 14, in this; 22, she began to wepe; 25, with a grete spere / so that fyr T.; 26, euer that; 29, for to rest hym; 30, foo whan; 33, meruaylous dedes of armes; [none of]; wyft.

536. 3, knewe that; was agayne vpon his hors; 4, made; 7, in hymselfe that he; 10, that hym; that yf bothe; 17, of his dedes; 20, [hym]; 24, [euer]; fyr D.; 31, [outher] and; 35, there came.

537. 6, to fyr L.; 7, of his; 8, vnto the; 9, groude; 11, Ryght so were; 14, but yf it; 15, body for body; 16, And whan; 20, whiche was; 21, and clene from; 22, [naked]; [& so]; 23, ryghte fyrfly; well that; 24, [worshypful]; 26, vnto thy felfe; 27, fyr P.; 28, for to; 29, knowe that I neuer dyd; 30, in all; 31, [at]; 32, that I shall; whyle my lyfe lasteth; And yf; 33, from the gretteft worfhyp that euer I had or.

538. 1, the trouth; 4, yf that; 5, Launcelot ye; haue borne; 6, that your; 9, [this day]; 11, [all]; 14, meruaylous dedes of armes; 18, Lyftynoyse; 22, there were; 28, and so well; kynge and the knyghtes had grete; 29, of hym. And than; 30, that fyr P.; 31, to rest hym; 32, bothe on fote and on; 34, degree; 37, fyr D.

539. 1, and vpon; 2, ryght gladde; 6, all other knyghtes; the degree; all the; 10, rested; 13, a ferre; well be; 16, [the] deuyll; 19, thou werest; 20, fyr D.; 21, of none; in all my; 24, yf fyr L.; 25, good quarell; is [to]; 30, for to be; 32, on the morowe.

540. 5, had I; 6, fyr P.; whyle I lyue; 17, morowe; 18, Triftram & la beale I. were redy with fyr P.; 22, that the kynge &

fyr L. ; 23, [ryde] and la beale I. ; fyr L. ; 25, kyng A. ; 26, whiche ; 27, all poyntes ; 31, fyr L. ; 34, wyll [be].

541. 2, fyr L. ; 5, rode & came vnto her ; graciously falewed her ; faue you fayr lady ; 7, to ; 8, Thou vncurteis ; 10, Kyng A. ; 11, but alway ; 14, his spere ; fawe the ; 24, full strongly ; 27, fuche a falle ; sayd vnto ; 28, must nedes ; 33, though I haue ; 37, it had ben.

542. 4, vnto fyr ; 8, and thou ; 9, before my ; 10, that thou ; 11, the kynge ; 13, [that] he ; 14, knewe ; 16, one of them ; that he wolde ; 20, tell it hym ; 21, [someuer] ; 22, vttermest ; [ony] ; but that fyr L. ; 24, sayd fyr P. ; 26, not yet ; 28, [said fire Triftram] ; 29, [And] ; 30, fyr P. ; 32, made vnto ; 33, that they.

543. 2, Lucan the Butler ; 3, there at ; 4, of Scotlande ; 6, bothe so fyres ; 7, they fell bothe ; grounde ; 9, there in ; 11, And in lyke wyfe fir G. ; 12, kynge A. ; 13, L. du lake ; 14, fyr L. ; 15, hym doo ; meruaylous dedes of armes ; 18, sayd vnto fyr ; 20, fyr P. ; 23, Syr sayd fyr P. ; 24, I haue done ; 25, fyr P. ; to deceyue ; 26, I must ; 27, befeche you ; And yf nede be ; 29, [thenne] ; 34, he had grete meruayle of hym ; 37, meruaylled gretely.

544. 2, vnto you ; 3, none euyl ; 6, vnto fyr T. ; 7, for to ; 11, whiche now ; 14, all the people there ; double the dedes of armes that ; 22, those of ; 24, how he doth ; 26, 28, fyr L. ; 28, it nedes must ; 34, that he.

545. 1, came there ; 4, the noble knyght fyr L. ; 10, grete wonder ; 13, forbore ; kyng A. ; 15, T. de Lyones ; se how ; 17, in this ; 20, fyr L. ; 22, that fyr ; 24, Triftram is of ; 26, As kynge A. ; 29, let theyr eyen go frō fyr T. ; 32, haue done ; 34, for to ryde ; 36, vpon his.

546. 4, for ony ; 7, that we ; 8, plucked vp now ; 10, sayd fyr D. ; 12, T. smyled ; vnto fyr D. ; 18, So than whan ; vnto a ; 21, whiche ; 22, that ye wyll lende.

547. 1, and brake them vnto theyr ; 2, dressed them togyder ; 3, full egrely ; meruayled moche ; 4, with hym so ; 8, strokes that one to that other ; 12, for she ; 19, that sayd vnto hym ; 21, whiche was ; 24, sayd vnto ; 26, to rest you ; 27, by cause that ; 32, full well apayde ; 33, not that he was fyr T. ; 34, well that he was ; 35, fought they ; 38, fyr L. ; whiche must.

548. 3, rather than ; 4, shold be ; 5, for to ; 7, was all ; 8, a grete ; 9, groude ; 10, & to ; 11, haue ye smytten ; 14, And than ; 16, that fyr ; 17, hym downe ; 22, hym comynge ; 23, [that] ; 24, for he ; 29, and fyr D. ; 34, 35, fyr L.

549. 4, gaue vnto ; 5, fyr L. ; you all ; 16, wonders wrothe ; had seen ; 17, vnto the ; 18, nor fyr ; 22, fyr G. and fyr D. ; 23, vnto

theyr; And alwaye; 27, that fame; that here is; 28, none of vs; only nede; 31, y^t from; I not; 35, [A]; 36, [longe].

550. 4, ouermoché for me; 8, fyr P.; 12, whose name; 13, that good; 15, neuer he yelded hym to me; 18, it you; vnto theyr; 20, and so fet them at theyr table and wente to meet; 21, And whan la beale I.; 22, [thenne] her colour; 25, my dere lorde; 28, vnto your; 32, for alway; 33, [al]; 38, [fore] fyr L.

551. 2, [fo] ye; 4, holde you excused; 6, [at that tyme]; 7, came in to theyr; 10, vpon vs; 27, fyr L.; 30, foo fayre; 32, that I do knowe; 34, [the noble knyght]; 35, for ye are; And thus.

552. 1, of dyuers thynges; iustying; 4, My lorde sayd fyr T.; fyr D.; 5, fyr G. of Orkeney; 6, kyng A.; fyr G.; 7, it was; 8, fyr D.; [to haue]; 10, fyr L.; 12, he with; 16, moche people; 17, fyr P.; 18, by cause he; fyr L.; 23, [ryght wel]; 24, other maters; 26, [hertely]; 27, no rest; 28, fyr G. / and fyr D.

553. 2, vnto; 4, la beale I.; 6, her standing; 12, [alle]; and than he brake; 13, drewe; 15, fyr P.; 20, with the; 21, drewe; 22, And than; 23, vnto; 25, 27, 29, fyr L.; 28, do here; [this day] many; 31, ye knowe not; 32, vnto hym; 34, fyr D.; wonders dedes of.

554. 1, [& worship]; 4, gate them; 7, vpon hym / that; 8, of Scotlande [with their Knyghtes]; 10, prysoners; 13, brake it; 15, with his; 18, [du lake]; 19, hym the hors; 21, fyr L.; 23, gentyll brother sayd fyr L. [vnto his broder]; 26, vnto; 27, and with a; 29, dedes of; 34, dyd / and moost specyally; 35, gretely therof.

555. 2, vnto them; 5, to vs; 8, fyr P.; 10, yow well; 12, fyr D.; 14, And after that fyr; 15, of Scotlande; 19, fyr P.; 25, vnto; 29, voyce vnto; 32, rode vnto; 33, E. de Marys; and quene la; 35, came to hym; 36, & y^e kyng of; 37, that rage.

556. 4, were [in]; 6, had spoken; vnto the gate of; 7, there fyr P.; all on; 8, fyr D.; is fyr; 9, sayd fyr T. / wyll; 10, 12, fyr P.; 14, me wroȝfully; as ye dyd; 16, fyr P.; 18, fyr B.; 20, rested them; 21, dayes; 29, not be mery; 30, And so at; 34, as [the].

557. 7, la beale I.; 11, I wolde to god; 12, it [is]; 15, as ye had there; 16, fyr P.; 20, sayd y^e; 33, were ryght forowfull; 34, vnto fyr P.

558. 2, not abyde; 5, a [fayre]; 6, hym whiche; 7, and [ther with he]; 10, ye not; 11, fyr P.; 15, ye be none; ye; 17, sayd fyr; 18, ye well that I am fyr P.; 20, [two]; wyte ye; 21, ben truly; 23, 25, fyr E.; 25, vnto other; 27, fyr P.; 30, sayd fyr; 33, none; 35, fyr P.

559. 1, fyr E.; 3, ye euer; 4, fyr P.; 6, me the foulest; 8, had not done; 15, fyr E.; 17, alas the; 18, sayd fyr; 19, as this; two

of his ; 21, vpon his ; than beyng ; 24, toke our rest by this ; 25, here vnto me ; 26, this same ; 28, on horsbacke ; 29, so fore ; 31, ferre more ; 32, sayd fyr.

560. 1, vnto an ; 2, toke his rest ; 3, for to ; vnderne the ; 6, aboute a x. ; 9, the whiche ; 10, [he] ; 13, sayd fyr ; 15, gate vp ; 16, drewe out ; [and their sheldes] ; 18, [at the last] ; 22, [and badde hym take his lady] ; 23, vpon his fete / for he ; 24, sayd lady ; fyr E. ; he had ; 25, hym for to gete her ageyne ; 27, one that hyght fyr ; 28, sayd she ; 29, lyfe that he hath lost ; 30, fyr P. ; 31, [A] ; 34, sayd fyr ; 35, largely ; to haue me at a vauntage ; 36, [fir] ; 38, [not].

561. 2, went to ; 3, on fote ; 7, [duryng] ; fyr P. ; 10, is fyr ; 12, ye wel ; 19, And than ; 20, vnto ; 24, fyr E. ; 25, vnto ; 29, fyr P. ; for to ; 30, fyr E. horfed and his lady ; 31, amblyng hors ; 35, wolde ledde them.

562. 3, [thenne] ; this may be ; 7, downe and ; 8, [many] ; 9, Fayre felowes ; fyr P. ; 14, wente to ; 20, wyte thou ; 31, [that] ; 33, fyr P. ; 34, for to ; 36, haue yelded me.

563. 5, whiche ; 6, iustyce done on hym ; 11, so ledde ; 12, fyr P. ; 13, at the ; 18, vnto them ; 20, and vnto ; 22, [alle] ; 24, from his ; 25, herde before ; 27, As fyr T. ; 33, whiche ; 35, toke.

564. 1, come he put on ; 2, how fyr P. was ; 3, to [his] ; 3, 5, fyr L. ; 6, for to ; [foo] ; 16, sayd fyr ; 19, yourfelfe as well ; 20, for hym ; And than ; 22, brake ; 23, drewe out ; 24, and within ; 25, but that they were layde vnto the erth ; 28, fyr P. of his handes ; 30, Than was ; 31, ryght well ; 32, bycause that ; 37, from the.

565. 3, that ye ; 8, fyr L. du lake ; 10, many ; 12, and vnto fyr P. ; 19, vnto the ; that ye wyll sporte with me ; 22, or els soone ; 27, had put of his helme ; 29, fyr P. ; 30, vpon his.

566. 3, grete ioye ; 6, fyr D. ; 9, had grete ; as he was wonte to be ; 18, that the whiche ; [all] ; 22, neuer more ; 27, y^t there ; 30, vnto a ; 33, of the [that noble] ; 34, whiche were meruaylously well made / and full ; 35, pyteously sayd ; 37, vnto ; 38, [and troubled].

567. 2, to haue flayne hym ; 3, But fyr T. ; 5, that he had hymselfe ; 7, herde all thy ; 8, all thy ; 13, fyr P. ; 15, of the worlde ; 16, as it ; 18, loued the quene la ; 20, or elles ; 27, as [to] ; 29, fyr T. ; 30, fyr P. ; 36, vnto the ; 37, fyr P.

568. 3, the quene la ; 4, daye of batayle ; 5, [that we shalle doo bataille] ; 8, fyr P. ; 9, am feble & lene ; 10, of the quene la ; rest me ; tyll that ; 12, as that daye ; 13, to fyr P. ; 14, me ones ; 17, where at that ; 18, sayd fyr ; 20, kepte your ; 23, [he] rode ; 27, a thre ; 28, that y^e batayle ; 30, of his thygh and wounded hym ryght fore / and the ; 31, [hurte hym] ; 33, streyght ; with full ; 36, hurte

that he had in his; 37, that myght; 38, vnto hym; euer fyr Trystram.

569. 1, that fyr Palomydes; bycause that; 12, and the thyrde; 13, So thus fyr P.; 15, for to; 17, and that fyr T.; 19, fayd fyr; 25, for to; And bycause thou; 30, hole and founde; fyr P. that as; 34, fyr T.; am I.

570. 2, by lykelyhode; 4, is now; 7, toke his armure & rode; 9, after fyr P.; 20, [Allas]; 22, fayd fyr L.; 28, euer now & than.

Book xi.

571. 1, of fyr T.; 6, on; 9, Kynge A.; 14, fyt in that syege / is yet; 16, [ther]; 17, whan the; 19, tyl vpon; 20, the brydge; 23, ye are welcome; 28, [and dayes]; 31, G. hathe done.

572. 5, in those paynes; called one of; 6, in that; well fyue; 8, tyme that y^e; 12, fayd vnto; 13, landynge & prayfynge; 14, almyghty god; 16, vnto god; and alle; [both]; 17, god / and fayd; 21, do it; 35, fyr L.; 36, name is fyr Pelles / kynge.

573. 1, nygh cofyn; 2, [And]; 4, at the; in her byll; 6, as though all; 8, there came; 13, kynge Pelles; 15, ye well; 16, whiche ye; kynge P.; 17, full fayne; 19, dame E.; 24, came there; whiche was called; 25, vnto kynge P.; 26, well that; 27, ye must werke; by my; 28, for to lye; doughter E.; 29, O the mooft fayre lady; 30, kynge P.; 31, this dame.

574. 1, lady quene Gueneuer; 3, that fame; 4, this dame; 5, his doughter E.; to that; [vnto the castel of Cafe]; 8, vnto hym femynge; 13, And as soone as; 14, so madde; 16, that the lady E.; 17, was the; dame E.; 19, that the; 21, vnto fyxe of the clocke on the morowe; 27, fayd he; 28, am I.

575. 3, A thou; thou thus; 4, she answered & fayd; 8, a wyfe; 9, may not put this blame to you but to her that; 12, for her; 13, foo deceyued; 15, yonge lady dame E.; 20, [and]; whiche; 25, And as soone as her tyme; 29, fonte stone; 32, [the] whiche; 34, that he myght wedde her; 35, vpon a; 37, fayd she.

576. 6, brydge; 7, to you; 13, hors tayle; lyke as an; 18, vnto the grounde; began for; 22 as a; 26, dame E.; 28, moche where; 30, ye not; for all this; 32, me fore; the chylde that she had in; 34, dame E.; 35, vnto god that the childe myght.

577. 1, there came; 2, her byll; 3, And anone there; 4, y^e bare the; 6, and also fhall; 11, vanysshed awaye; 12, may well be called; 14, trouthe; kynge P.; 15, here come; 17, late ago; 18, to wete; 28, kynge P.; for to be; 31, whiche was; 34, to bedde

in to; 35, aboute y^t; But whan; 36, he made all the people to auoyde; 38, so [he] layde; [doun].

578. 1, whiche he; 2, whiche came; And so; 7, [there]; all armed; 8, drawn in; 9, sayd to fyr B.; 10, sayd fyr B.; 12, so at; 13, hym alwayes; [that]; to a; 14, went; there refted; 15, refted hym; 16, a newe; 20, and the; 21, smote hym so fore that he fell downe; to fyr B.; 22, sayd that knight; 24, that at; for to be; 25, as [a] pryfoner and ouercomen; 28, for to reſte h^y; 30, dores or; 31, he had grete meruayle of it; there fell many.

579. 1, [all]; 4, of his lorde kynge; 9, [alle]; 11, grete adders; 14, to go; 17, doue that euer he ſawe / with; 20, all y^e; 21, four fayre; that bare foure tapers; 23, ſame ſpere; 25, vnto ſir; ye vnto; 28, that he; 30, that of; 32, in theſe.

580. 7, [for]; 8, wente; 10, rode vnto; 13, fyr L.; 14, fayre E.; 15, vnto fyr L.; 27, for to; vnto; 33, beſeen than ſhe was.

581. 4, was [ſene]; 9, was fore aſhamed; 11, not ſe her / nor yet ſpeke; 14, that fyr L.; to her; 16, well that; dame E.; 17, her gentylwoman; 18, nerehande ſleeth me; 22, dame E.; 27, nygh vnto her; 28, quene had; 35, fyr L.

582. 2, vnto your; 7, came vnto; 8, be ye a ſlepe; 12, toke his; 13, vnto her; 14, them in the; 19, her gentylwomen; 21, agayne vnto the; all how ſhe had ſpedde; 22, [ſals]; 29, in his.

583. 9, therwithall; 11, [alle]; 18, and vnto; [fayr]; 19, [lady] dame E.; herd quene G.; 21, at the; 26, for to loue; 27, hym aboute all other; all this; that hath; 29, and a cauſe; 30, hath; 33, I warne and charge you dame E. ſayd the quene / that whan.

584. 7, ſayd [the]; 9, there abyde; 11, a grete; 13, bay wyndowe extraught out; 15, Elayne / I can not tell you; 19, grete rebuke; 20, grounde; 22, ſorrowfulleſt grone; 23, ony man; 25, ye may; vnto; 26, an hete; 27, [euer]; 29, ſayd dame E.; may [do]; 30, [and wete]; 31, or as; a good cauſe I haue; 33, ſayd dame E.; 34, I fere me y^t I ſhall neuer ſe hym.

585. 6, ſhe began to wepe; as ſhe had ben; Fy vpon; [de ganys]; 10, leder of vs all; 15, fyr E.; fyr L.; 17, groūde; a deedly; 18, was comen to herſelfe agayn; 19, her handes; 21, wote well; 27, and in wayes; as well bothe at; 28, and enquirye.

586. 1, So than at; 4, be ye goynge; 5, fyr M.; 12, was comen vnto; 23, he [there]; 28, whiche; 30, ſayd vnto them; 34, bothe her; fyr A.; 36, not abyde here.

587. 1, [thenne] ſayd ſhe; 2, [thenne]; 5, manfully; 8, whiche of; 12, As ſoone as ſhe came agayne to her ſelfe; 13, ynough for them; [foo]; 22, vnto y^e ſquyer; 23, than that he had answered; 24, fyr A.; 26, an euyll; 28, and to flee; 29, they pulled; 33, and [they].

588. 7, and lyghtly; 8, shall ye; 11, quyeckly; 12, went; 14, [thow]; his lorde; 16, fyr G.; 18, fyr A.; 19, cause said fyr A.; 25, And than they; 26, two wylde; 27, so within; 30, a lytel; had downe; 31, to the; 34, buryed; 36, but in no wyfe.

589. 4, fyr A.; for thou; 8, not sayd fyr P.; 9, so they rode tyll; 10, they came; 12, of stone; 13, bandes; 19, & that I; 20, [euer]; 25, drewe; 27, and went; 29, [one]; 31, [euer]; 36, vnderne the; 38, vpon.

590. 2, [euer]; 3, he myght fynde; 4, in a Toure; 8, yf that; [my]; 10, hym the best; 11, chere that he coude deuyse all; 13, how [that]; 15, bydde my brother that he; for tell hym I am; 16, for to; 19, and [to]; trust vnto; 22, daye whan I; telle them that; 23, fee that; 30, is now; 34, ye were; 35, [they] did.

591. 1, of yours; 2, vnlykely; 5, [And]; 10, they mette; 13, [we]; to; 16, with theyr [noble]; 19, [ryghte]; 21, vpon; 23, a well fyghtynge [knyghte]; 26, a lytell; 28, the of gentylnes; 29, sayd the other; neuer before; 30, neuer no maner of; the whiche; woudded and hurte me so daungerously; 31, of the roude; 35, that haue; 36, for to; 37, [with your handes].

592. 2, vnto a; 5, [that] ye haue slayne me; 6, he wyll; 9, vnnethes I may; 14, god; that was at; 18, who [that]; holy vessell; 19, of that; 20, [al]; were bothe; 21, lymme and hyde; 22, vnto almyghty god ryght deuoutly; 26, is a parte; 32, amended it as.

593. 1, [longe]; haue knowynge. ¶ Here endeth the . xj . booke of this present volume . And here after foloweth the . xij . booke.

Book xij.

593. 4, a lytell of fyr E.; 5, [of]; 7, which; 10, faue his sherte; And thus; 11, in to a; 12, [by]; 14, there lened agaynst a tree; 17, gaue with; 21, bothe the; 23, for helpe; 25, menyuer; 27, good frende; 28, haft; 29, not [to]; nygh me.

594. 5, come [so]; 6, [Thenne]; vnto hym; 9, groude; as though; 10, braft out at; [the] nose / and eres; 12, there he crepte in to; and in that bedde there; 13, and lyghtly she; 14, on the; 15, as though; 18, where y^e madde man was; 20, is no; 28, fyr B.; 29, thou in all haste on; 34, and came.

595. 3, vntyll; 7, Thus fyr L. was; 12, was fyr; 15, theyr fwerdes; 23, his cheynes; and from his; 24, hurte fore bothe his; 30, [there].

596. 1, he was fory; that he had bounde hym; 4, halfe a;

5, in a mornynge; 8, bothe on; & [some] on; 9, And at the last fyr L.; 11, bounde to; 13, vnto; 15, vnto a; 17, hym sodeynly and roue; 18, of fyr L.'s hors; fyr L.; 20, the huckle bone; 21, gate hym on; 22, drewe out; 23, and whan he sawe; 24, came vnto; 25, [home]; 28, And than the; 29, ouertake; 30, than no; 32, me ryght; 35, waye fast / and in his waye he.

597. 5, full grete; 9, to the; 13, of [his]; and wexed; 15, in to the; 16, had borne; 21, [ouer]; 22, neuer more; 23, theyr legges / and some theyr; 25, for to rescowe; 28, they all; 29, vnto his; 31, there were [but] fewe or none that wolde; 33, whose name; 34, & [fo] he; kynge his vncler for to.

598. 2, [fyr] C.; 3, And so fyr; 11, for to; 15, where as; whan dame E.; 17, [alle]; 18, downe to; 19, [thus]; 20, went; 21, vnto her; 22, hymselfe; 26, spote me; 27, byleue it; sayd she; 28, that he sholde be dysfraught; 29, sayd kynge P.; 30, vnto hym; 38, after [the].

599. 1, kynge Pelles; all the; 3, all this; vpon; 5, where as; 7, & vncouered; 8, was all; 9, [that he]; 12, & dame E.; 13, and thus he sayd. O good lorde Iesu; 15, how [that]; 16, man / all out; 17, ye haue; 18, tyll that; 19, welle fyde; 21, so ye; 26, kepe it secrete and; 29, [for] to; out of the countree of; 30, than a; 31, euer [that]; 32, Fayre lady E.; 34, well how; 35, [that]; vpon you; 36, on the morowe; 37, me [for].

600. 8, & that my; 13, [alle]; vnto her; 19, gretest; and also ye; 21, of the noble knyght fyr L.; 27, as moche to faye; 28, [euer]; 32, [here]; 33, ye well; 35, asked; [of] mercy; 36, as longe as.

601. 2, enclosed with; 12, on a; as though; 13, all to breke; 14, fyxe myle; 16, loke that thou; 17, all the knyghtes that ben there / that; in [the]; 18, that his; 19, all knyghtes; 22, drewe many; 25, dyd fuche dedes; 26, frenshes booke; 27, [all the]; yet there; 31, so as; fayre castel; 32, in to it; 33, none fynde; 34, that other; vpon her.

602. 1, asked her who; 2, sayd the lady; 3, is dame; 5, well faye now; 12, the damoyzell / ye; 14, that shall; 16, vnto; 17, vntyll I knowe; maner [a] of; 20, E. de Marys; [and] here; 21, fyr P. passed; 22, vnto; sayd to the; vnto the; 23, that here; 25, there ye shall fynde; 30, groude; And than; drewe out theyr swerdes; 32, two wylde; 34, [there]; 36, knyght as ye are; 38, you as ye are a.

603. 2, whiche; 5, that are; rounde table; 6, felowe in kynge A.'s courte; 10, [thenne]; sayd vnto hym; 12, your ryght name; fyr L. answered & sayd; 14, Benwycke; 15, by [the] quene G.;

17, [yonder]; 18, Now fyr I praye you for; 23, had grete; 24, there she; 25, the greteft chere that she coude deuyfe; 27, was there.

604. 1, we of; in [the]; 2, fayre lady; 3, we vnto; 4, whiche; 6, fo as they rode thus; of kyng B.; 10, thofe two; 12, morowe after; 15, A.'s courte; 18, hym vnto; 22, within fhorte fpace after theyr departyng they; 24, was fyr; 25, make hym; 27, turne vnto; 29, came vnto; 35, may ryght well; 36, wolde neuer.

605. 5, vnto; 6, vnto the; 18, but he; 26, began to tell of all the aduentures how; al the tyme; 28, mal fet / as moche to faye; 31, she wolde; 32, Than afterwarde; grete ioye.

606. 3, haue founde; 4, And fo the kyng helde hym ftyll and fpake; 13, [thus]; 19, yere and more; 21, of the Sancgreall; 23, fayd la beale I.; 26, vnto; 29, la beale I.; 30, ye are.

607. 1, ye whiche; 3, [all] the; 5, his worfhyp; 14, myfelf alone; 18, at his lady la beale I.; 21, had almoost; 26, neuer yet; 27, y^t myght; 30, therwithall; 32, in an; 34, fyr P.

608. 1, his grete; 6, wylte; 8, thy malyce; fyr P.; 10, the difhonour; 12, that I knowe; 14, well thy; 16, afke you; 17, the cafe; 18, at all poyntes; 23, Wyte thou well fyr P.; 25, fyr P.; 29, wylte not; 30, is chryftened [many a daye]; 32, whiche; 34, but one; 35, be chriftened.

609. 2, ony lenger; 3, whiche; 5, fyr P.; 7, on a; 8, he full; 9, that ye wyl tell; fayd he; 10, rounde table; 13, ye fe that; 16, fyr G.; 17, requyre you; 20, brother vnto; 24, or elles I hym; 25, or [euer]; 26, your grete; 28, fyr G.; 32, yet as well as; 38, And than.

610. 1, drewe; 2, [al]; 4, Than they; 5, [to gyders] that one vpon that other; lyke two noble; 6, whiche; but alwaye; 13, [woode]; 14, and than he; 15, groude; 17, fyr P.; paffyng fore; & alwaye; 22, fyr T. had flayne hym; 23, fyr P.; a full; 24, fyr P.; 25, at a; me a daye; 26, no good; 29, Than fpake fyr P. and fayd vnto fyr T. . As for to; 30, ony more; 31, fyr P.; that I haue done vnto; 32, but and yf it pleafe you we may; 33, Ifoude / kyng Markes wyfe; 34, dare well.

611. 1, her and bycaufe of her I; 3, whiche; 5, greuou & fadde; 6, well fay; no man; of fo grete a myghte and ftrengethe; 7, were the noble knyght; 8, lord fyr T.; 9, [fame]; 10, vnto; I wyll be clene; 11, [now]; we wyll; 12, all togyder; of my lorde kyng A.; fo that we may be; 13, of Pentecoft; 14, ye haue fayd; fhall it be done; your euyll; 16, Suffrygan; whiche; 18, came afore; 19, cōmaunded to fyll a grete; 24, were kepyng a courte ryall of the mooft noble knyghtes of all the worlde; 25, table were there at

that tyme; 27, fyr G.; 28, the noble; 30, towarde Ioyous garde;
 ¶ whiche was drawen; here after fhall folowe; is called.

612. therfor vpon all; bleffid lord Iefu haue thou mercy / that
 by the vertue of thy bytter passyon our fynnes may be forgyuen vs .
 And at the laft day of our iudgemēt / that we may come to thyne
 euerlaftyng kyngdome in heuen . Amen.

Book riij.

612. 3, they all herde; & than all the tables were couered /
 redy to fet theron the meet; 8, And than the kyng sayd; blyffe
 you; 9, shewe; may ye; 10, kyng A.; fyr L.; 12, [on] w^t me; 13,
 that she; 14, what is your wyll; fyr L.; 15, knowe and vnderftande;
 16, I fhall; 17, to fadell; his armure; 18, vnto fyr; 26, he fawe;
 27, to open the; 31, ware lyenge.

613*. 4, Soo god; 5, hath brought; 6, as they ftode thus; 7,
 whiche; 10, sayd the ladyes; 11, for to; 13, behelde y^t; 14, fawe
 he was; 23, fayleth hym not; 25, of my lorde; 28, vnderne.

614*. 2, that sayd; 4, they all; a full; 11, that none; 18, fayde
 trouthe sayd kyng A.; 20, [fo] that; 23, kyng A.; 25, than sayd
 the kyng; 28, as it had ben; 29, and a ryche; 32, he by whome
 I; 34, thefe; 35, that ye be.

615. 1, to it; belongeth not; 2, for to; 7, my fayre; 8, ye
 ones; sayd he; [good]; 11, therwithall; kyng A. vnto fyr G.;
 17, sayd fyr G.; 18, kyng A.; 19, And than he badde fyr P.;
 21, therwithall; vpon the; 22, at it; not ones; 23, no moo; 25,
 kyng A.; 26, alle the knyghtes; 27, the yonge; 28, no knyghtes;
 31, but for all that / the hall; 32, they were all.

616. 2, that knewe; 7, that is of; 9, wherfore; 15, fyne ermynes;
 16, olde man; 17, folowe after me; 19, olde man; [thus]; 20, fyr
 G. the good knyght; 21, old man; 23, for ye haue; 25, Pechere;
 26, vnto them; that I fhall; 33, none but that he were.

617. 1, fyr B.; 4, had grete; 6, that he; 8, vpon kyng;
 9, lye [by]; fyr G.; 12, knyghtes of the roude table; 13, went;
 14, fyr G.; 18, [ryght]; hath; 21, vnto the; 27, to; 31, furete.

618. 2, in to y^e fawberde; 4, vnto you; 5, was belongynge
 vnto; 9, fyr B.; 11, all the other; 13, and she; 14, [that]; 15,
 fyr L. answered; 16, [with]; [how]; doynge ben; 17, to daye;
 mornynge; fyr L.; 19, now [he]; 20, be openly proued a lyer;
 one now; 22, fet [to]; 25, fyr L.; 27, yet are; 30, tell you; 32,
 And fo the damoyfell toke her leue &; 34, rounde table.

619. 5, longed to; 6, all the meanyng of [for this entent];

7, fyr G.; 9, they all; 13, for to take; 14, And so he dyd; 16, in the; there he began; 18, and exceded all; 22, quene Gueneuer; 23, And whan; 25, it is no; 32, well faye that; 33, of all the; the estates; 34, Camelot mynstre; And soo after that they wente to souper.

620. 1, *wholly omitted*; 4, to ryue; 9, [afore]; knyght that; 11, on other; dombe; 19, vnto god; his [good]; 20, kynge A.; ought gretly; 21, Iesu Chryft; 26, ony lenger; 33, & auowed the fame; 34, *wholly omitted*; 35, And anone; 36, gaynsfay.

621. 5, for there; many dye; 10, in to his eyen & sayd; 11, fyr G. fyr G.; 13, more here; 20, is to me grete; 22, [ther] y^t no tongue myght; 26, bycause those knyghtes sholde departe; 30, that haue.

622. 1, [and]; theyr ladyes; 2, fyr G.; 4, fyr L.; 7, [of the world]; 8, and so therefore; 10, Than was; 11, sayd vnto the quene / Madame in as moche as ye knowe it of a certaynte; 14, fyr G.; 16, he rested hym; daye lyght; 18, wente he; fyr G.; & vnto; 19, kynge A.; sayd agayn; 20, fyr G. fyr G.; 24, thou wylte; 29, that there; 31, to the; fyr L.; fyr G.; 33, were all; 37, had taken; y^e Sancgreall.

623*. 1, by [the]; 2, rounde table; 5, [and helde her]; 6, fo that; apperceyue; 7, went in to the; 8, O fyr Launcelot; 9, to [the]; 10, sayd fyr L. / I praye; 13, [he] be to you; 15, vpon; 20, lord of that castel; 26, best lyked; 27, fyr G.; so he; 30, to a; 31, he was; 32, of two; rounde table; 33, and that other was; 34, vnto hym; 35, to souper.

624. 1, sayd they it; 3, but yf; or els; 5, this straüge; 6, 8, fyr G.; kynge B.; 8, I agree; 9, [me]; 10, 16, kynge B.; 15, and therefore; 17, the best; 19, fyr G.; it wyl; you [to]; 20, ye knowe; [that]; you here; fyr G.; 21, [good]; 22, the whiche sholde brynge; 23, a two; in a; 24, [And]; a goodly; 26, in the; 27, kynge B.; 29, and threste hym; 37, from me.

625. 1, nor [for]; 5, to no; vnto fyr; 6, kynge B.; asked hym; 7, I am fore wouided sayd he / & full harde; 8, to an; 10, and his wounde was loked vnto; 14, king B.; 16, fyr G.; 17, his armure; 19, to god; 20, 23, 25, fyr G.; 21, that shall; 22, fyr V.; 27, . xxx . yere; that toke; 28, [hooly]; and at; 30, vnto a; 31, came vnto.

626. 1, the whiche; 2, vpon a; 4, vnto; that he; 6, [there]; 7, vnto the; 11, Tollome; kynge E.; 13, and than anone; 14, vpon; 16, smytten of; he bare; 18, & touche; 22, than was; 25, or not; 26, whiche at.

627. 1, deth bedde; 2, made grete; 4, thou shalte [departe]; 5, [of yours]; on the; 6, ryght gladly sayd Ioseph; the sheelde;

7, in to y^e; 11, but that; 13, no man; 14, fyr G.; 15, shall haue it; 16, the whiche; 25, fyr G.; besought hym; 26, tyll that; 27, wyll ye; 28, hygh ordre; 29, vpon me; And so; and than they; 31, full grete; 33, where as was; 34, sayd he I deme.

628. 1, fyr G.; 6, nere me; 7, fyr G.; 8, but quickly; 9, lepe out therof; 12, voyce that sayd; [enuyronne]; 13, hurte the; 16, curfed body; 20, [in the Tombe]; [for]; 21, hardnes; 26, was but; 27, fyr G.; 28, all that; on the; 33, fyr G.; [that]; 34, vpon you; 37, me [a]; 38, fyr G.; Than sayd fyr M.

629. 2, graunte you sayd fyr G.; 7, vnto a; on that; 9, for to; 10, that thou goo not; 13, not there; 14, fyr M. vnto fyr G.; 17, 19, fyr G.; 18, Nay I pray; 21, fyr M. rode; 30, come; 32, defende.

630. 5, A fyr M.; 7, that other; 8, he sayd. Sir; 10, fyr G.; 13, fyr M.; 16, And fyr; 18, 20, fyr G.; of the leues; 20, [euer]; And than; 22, vnto the grounde; 25, of the; 30, it pleafeth god; 36, the space of.

631. 2, fyr G.; 3, in hand; 9, were so; 11, of a true and good lyuer; 14, of the holy; for to be; 17-18, [and no knyghtly dedes in worldly werkes]; 18, is the; 19, from fyr; 21, and these were; 22, holy knight fyr G.; 23, and the; doth signyfye; 24, entyerly; fyr M.; withoute ony; 26, fyr G.; betoke; 28, fe you; good helth; fyr G.; 29, he toke; 32, that was; 33, alwayes wonte; or that he.

632. 4, sayd thus; [thow] now; vnto; 5, all the wycked; 7, Whan as; 10, the whiche hyghte; 12, 14, fyr G.; 16, knyght sayd the olde man / to returne; 17, sayd fyr; 18, his armures; 20, that sayd; 22, for to; here ouer this; sayd fyr; 23, And so he departed; And than he; 24, sayd. Syr knyghte; 25, forbyd you that; 26, Fayre felowe sayd fyr G. I am comen [for]; 27, Syr sayd the squyer; 28, fyr G.; 31, fawe fyr; 32, fyr G.; 33, they all for; 34, Than fyr.

633. 5, fyr G.; 6, vntyll; 8, the whiche sayd to hym; 10, strete; 11, & they sayd; 12, And than; came vnto; 14, here [to]; 15, and wycked custome; 16, fyr G.; 17, all those; 20, sayd fyr G.; And thā the gentylwoman; 21, rychely bounden; 22, ye this; 23, And whan; 24, there a; vnto fyr; 27, whiche; 29, a ful fayre; 37, vpon a; 38, to me.

634. 4, yere tofore; 9, fyr G.; 10, [these]; 12, her yonger; 14, to do; vnto the dukes; 15, on the; 16, one vnto fyr; [that] fyr G.; 17, fyr G. and fyr V.; 18, And than he toke; 19, to god; 20, y^e history; after that; was departed; 21, many dyuers; 22, so at; vnto y^e; where as; 23, the very way; 24, for to folowe; vnto; 25, fyr M.; 26, had done; Truly; 27, all the; 32, he is blyffull; 33, stode thus; 34, grete ioie.

635. 6, came vnto; 8, And than; banyffhed; 12, one of y^e feuen; 20, and fro whens he came; 21, sayd he; 26, called hȳ; 27, sayd the good man; 28, you vnto; 32, so euer he gooth; 34, for truly; 36, by your two all alone; 37, y^e he.

636. 2, [Ihesu]; 3, whiche; 4, good knyght fyr G.; 6, thral-dome; 13, *wholly omitted*; 15, rounde table; 16, had rydden; 20, and speketh; [we]; of the noble knyght fyr G.; 22, vnto a; 24, but none of them bothe; vpon his fone; 26, and fyr; foo harde; 27, bothe hors; 29, and yf the swerde had not; 31, Thefe; were; 34, certaynly; fyr L. and fyr P.

637. 1, whan fyr G.; 2, withall with the; 3, frowarde them; fyr G.; 5, within a; 6, with an; vs aske; 8, came vnto; 11, vnto a; 14, not well; 17, to a; he put of; 18, he wente vnto; 20, [clene]; 21, [clene]; 23, a greate; 25, came agayne; 26, and his; 30, bothe.

638. 3, And thus a greate; 5, but he coude fe no; 8, fyr L.; 9, vp ryght; 11, the holy; to me; 12, this greate maladye; vpon; and vpon; 15, this maladye; 17, agayne with the candelstycke; fyr L.; 18, it became; 20, 21, afterwarde; 21, vp ryght; 22, Than anone; 23, Certaynly; 24, ryght hertely / for; haue ryght greate; 25, whiche hath had neyther grace nor; 26, durynge the tyme that this holy vessell hath ben here present; 27, that this same knight is defouled with some maner of deedly synne / wherof; 36, so they.

639. 1, hymselfe vp ryght; 2, there seen; 3, he herde; 10, had more; 11, vnto his; 13, that his helme; was taken; 15, wretched-nesse; 21, and also; 24, foules of the ayre; Than was he; 26, he well; 27, a wylde; 28, vnto an hygh mountayne / and there he; 29, to; 30, fyr L.; vpon bothe his knees; [on]; 31, that he had done; fyr L.; 32, the heremyte to hym and; his confeffyon; 34, of the noble; 35, whiche; 36, and gretely magnyfied. And now it is so / my; 37, and caytyfe of the world; Than the; 38, so fore.

640. 6, with your; 9, ought for to gyue vnto god; 10, to you; 11, to god; 12, to drede; 15, and made full heuy chere; 16, tell me trouth; 19, whiche; 22, [and oute of mesure longe] many yeres; 32, the heremyte by his fayth that he wolde no more come in her company. Loke.

641. 1, here tofore; 2, [hand]; meruaylle therof; 3, that a; 7, more harder; 8, neyther by; 11, [of] grace; 13, for to; you [the]; 14, & hath gyuen you; ye haue; 15, all tymes; ye came; 16, you no; ye shall; 17, ye wyll or not; 18, bytterer; 21, I shall; 23, lorde Iesu Chryft; 25, coude not fynde one in all; 27, in the; 28, with leues; 32, neyther; 33, Certaynly; 37, enioyned.

642. 1, so he; prayed hym; ¶ Here leueth the story; and so

endeth the . xiiij. booke of this present volume. ¶ Here after the . xiiij. booke whiche treateth of the noble knyght fyr P. ; etc.

Book xiiij.

642. 8, G. his fone; 9, here aboue reherfed; 11, whiche; 12, and anone; 14, fayd he; 15, So whan; 16, made passyngre grete; gretely she loued; 17, all other knyghtes of the worlde; for so of ryght she; 18, that the; shold be; 19, fyr P.; 21, vnto.

643. 1, I was somtyme called; 3, so moche my; 4, grete pyte; [that]; 5, she was; 6, ye ony; from your; 7, herde not of her in a grete whyle; haue dremed; 8, Certaynly; 12, our lyfe; 15, fayd his aunte; [this]; he oughte; 18, handes; 22, reforte vnto; 29, suche a; 30, that sholde; 33, do to the achyeuynge of; 37, and of.

644. 1, whiche herde; 3, fyt therin; [al]; 4, whiche; And than; 6, vpon; 12, that is; 14, folowe after; 17, [there]; 21, And after; 22, that was well closed; 24, in to a; 25, full good; there all; 26, a masse; 35, were all.

645. 1, how his; 3, vnto our; 4, and fayd on hygh; 5, layde hym; 6, for to; 8, vnto; 9, receyued it; and he; 16, that hyght; 17, alwayes; 18, vpon a; 20, tyll that; 23, whan; 24, may ones; 27, the knyght; 29, ye shall openly se that your; & or than; 31, aboute a thre; 34, [that] ye be; & knyght of.

646. 1, and knewe his; 2, made of hym; 5, that was [dedely]; 6, and fayd / of; 8, grounde; 10, groude; 14, [me]; 17, groude; 19, for to; 20, or els; 23, sawe sir G.; had grete; 25, [And thēne he]; 33, me or defyre me; 37, may I not; 38, hym you; ony other man.

647. 1, in my lyfe so; 4, ryghte well; 10, rydynge after; 12, [sir]; 13, why [fyr]; that of me; fayd the yeman / that; hath taken from; 14, me by; 15, so euer he; 16, that I sholde do; 19, folowe; how ye; 20, mouēd vpon; 28, forth his.

648. 1, [grete] euyl; 8, yndly; fyr P.; 14, tyll; 15, that rored; 18, passe ouer it; 19, the fygne; on his; 21, & makynge; 22, to hym; 23, [the] whiche; 27, sawe he; 28, [the] whiche; 34, as soone as.

649. 2, the moost; 3, and there till; 4, [hym]; 7, Whan fyr P.; 8, that / he; the whiche; 9, put of; 11, lyke a; 12, hym with his hande vpon; and gaue thankynge vnto god; 14, hym vnto the place that he came fro; 15, story; 16, he was; the whiche; 18, perfytely in almyghty god our sauour and redemer Iesu Chryft; 19, more in confyderacyon; 20, the noble knyght fyr P.; 21, that

no; 22, hym nor peruerte hym out; for to endure and perfeuer; 27, there mette with hym two; 29, & that other; 35, who was her; 37, and wyfte not where she became.

650. 3, to me; 4, fayd he; 7, [as he gat his pray]; 8, [Saye me for what cause ye flewe hym]; 9, well that; 10, a more; 16, faue fyth; 17, And therfore; place someuer; 20, his vifion; 25, at the border; 28, good man; 29, rounde table; 31, duresse and myferye; neuer am I; 32, ye not; yf ye; 33, hygh ordre of knyghthode; and also of; 34, and sholde be; nor mystrust that; sholde hurte nor fere you.

651. 2, She that; 3, lyon (fayd the good man); 23, lyon that; 24, [and he ftryked hym vpon the back]; 27, come; 31, was a; 32, was rychely befeen; 34, in to this.

652. 4, And than; 5, fayd fyr P.; who tolde; 6, [Now] Damoyfel fayd fir P.; 10, [knyghte]; 12, shall fommon; 13, [to fulfyll]; 14, [now]; 15, to a; 16, in to that; 18, was his; drowned; 21, lately; truly madame fayd he / I haue eten; 23, good & holy; 29, me this.

653. 4, taken from hym; 8, gete them; 9, And bycause I; 11, that is; 12, & yf she; 16, to brynge; 21, meet ynough; 22, [ynough]; table moche meet; 23, And there was so grete plente that fyr P. had grete meruayle therof; 25, as hym; withall; 29, his loue; And than; 30, for bycause; 31, [euer]; 32, chafed.

654. 1, ye fayre lady; 3, what someuer shall; 4, that I moost defyre; 9, vpon the; 12, on his; 13, withall; 15, cryed out; 16, [ne]; 17, that was nere; 18, in to the; 20, cryenge / that; 21, that all; 26, my good; 27, felf [a]; 28, that whiche; 29, whiche is my; 32, oryent come; 33, And than was.

655. 1, how he had done fyth he departed from hym; 2, that lad me; 3, fynne / & tolde hym all; 4, ye her not; [Syr] nay fayd he; 9, vpon the.

Book iij.

656. 1, Now whan; 11, fayd he; 12, [good man]; here deed; 14, a relygyous man; 18, & an; 19, so hardy; but that he wolde; 26, where as; 31, [the] whiche; 32, fawe that; 33, vnkel [the].

657. 9, vpon a day; 12, for to haue; 13, no more; 14, preferred hym; 15, [alle]; 16, man the; 21, in the fyre; 22, and yet was; on the; 24, skynne peryfled; 26, haue tolde you the trouth; 27, with an horrible; 31, countree fayd the good man; 33, may ye; 35, longe of; were ye.

658. 3, fayd fyr; 4, on the; 5, Than fayd fyr; 8, you skynne;

and gretely; 10, of the holy; 15, [thenne]; 16, fyr L.; 19, more nerer; 23, good herborowe; ease you; 27, toke of; 28, to the; 29, he myght neuer agayn; 31, hym that he had a vyfyon. That hym thought there; 32, all be compassed.

659. 1, [the] heuen; 2, Than fyr L.; 3, to heuen; 4, opened; & that an; 16, his helme; 17, And whan; 21, vnto; 22, had almoost; 24, & toke his hors; 30, fyr L.; 34, at a.

660. 1, Now fyr L.; 2, haue vnderstande; 3, this. After the; 7, a ryght holy; 10, Lyfyas; 12, [there]; 15, 22, [the] whiche; 19, that thou; 22, begate vpon; 24, an erthely synner; 27, fyr L.; 34, [and to alle] vnto.

661. 1, fyr L.; 4, moche the; 7, praye thou onely vnto god; 10, that it greued; 19, theyr horses; 20, all vpon; 21, wherof fyr L. meruayled gretly; 23, vnto the worste; 24, [there]; 26, bothe hors; vnto; 30, doo fuche dedes; 32, to wery; wyne hym.

662. 1, that he; 3, all they; 6, and than; 9, forowe and fayd. Neuer; 10, [neuer]; but that; the better; 13, in despayre; 15, he there; 17, to pasture; 18, fyr L.; 20, lightly turned; 22, he became; Than he armed hym and; 25, fyr L.; 26, bycause he; 28, what he wente; 31, he told her; 32, for to tell.

663. 1, fyr L.; 2, meruayloust; 3, & the; 7, lord Iesu Chryft; 9, for to; 10, the good kynge; 12, clothed in; tell the; On the daye; 22, vnto that; 24, in the; 29, were foo; 31, vnto; 37, with the.

664. 9, vnto god; 12, toke the water; with a; 14, and without any worde spekyng; 15, passed forth; he became.

Book xvi.

664. 23, and all that whyle coude he fynde; vpon a; 24, that fyr G.; 25, of them made; so that; 26, they two talked vnto the other and.

665. 2, they all; 3, [haue]; 5, fyr P.; 6, nor of; [foure]; 7, no erthly; 9, and yf; four knyghtes; 11, yf [they] those knyghtes; 12, remenaunt of vs knyghtes of the rounde table to recouer it; [as] fyr E. and fyr G.; 13, vpon a; 14, was all to wasted and broken; that it femed; 16, & than those two knyghtes; and there they were in theyr; 17, And soone after they fet; 18, And so as fyr E. and fyr G. spak; 19, of other; 20, full straunge & meruaylous aduentures in dremynge. And fyrst of fyr G.; that he; 22, the whiche; 23, [al]; one of the thre; 27, Let vs go hens; 33, fyr G.

666. 1, fyr E.; 3, of one; 4, vnto the; 8, And than; 10, of that; 12, fro whens he came; thus alwaye slepyng sir E. dremed that he and his brother fyr L. rode vnto the tyme they came; 14, where at that tyme was; 15, that sayd; 17, a lytell; fyr G. & fyr E.; 18, out of theyr slepe; And eche of them; 19, fyr E.; 20, fyr L.; 22, the hande was; 23, the same hande henge; [ryght]; 24, full clere; 25, than it; 26, where it became; there came; 27, sayd vnto them; full of; 29, come vnto; of the holy; 30, fyr G.; fyr E.; 31, haue herde; 33, that we; 34, squyer that; 35, vpon a; fayre and curteyfly; 36, fyr G.; can ye; vnto ony; Here within a lytell; 37, is one sayd the squyer; 38, on fote.

667. 2, in all this; 3, where as; well armed; 6, none that; [and] Now; 7, fyr E.; fyr G.; 9, eyther of them dressed to other for to; 11, and theyr mayles; that one; than that; 12, fyr G.; 15, fadelles downe to the grounde; Than anone; 16, fyr G. arose; vnto his; 18, for to; fyr G.; 21, here by; 22, fyr G.; 24, you the waye; Than fyr G.; 25, And so fyr G. lepte vpon the same hors behynde hym for; 26, longe they rode tyll they came vnto; where as; [wel]; 27, and maker; Than this knyght that was wounded to deth prayed fyr G.; 29, fyr G.; what maner knyght he was / and what was his name / as he knewe; 30, Than the hurte knyght answered; & haue ben; 31, thou and I were sworne; 32, and wyte ye well that my; 33, fyr V.; whiche; 34-35, and haue laboured in the quest of the Sancgreall / as thyselfe fyr G. and many other knyghtes haue done. And my deth I praye to god that he wyll forgyue it the. For now from hens forth it shall be sayd / that the; etc.

668. 1, fyr G.; is thus; fyr V.; [moche]; 4, vnto; 5, and vnto all those of the rounde table; 6, for the; 7, fyr G. began; & in lyke wyse dyd fyr E.; fyr V.; 9, foule departed; 11, his name to be wryten vpon his tombe; 12, So than; fyr G.; fyr E.; 13, they rode; 14, 15, vnto; 17, there was; where as; 18, he that; 19, he espyed; 20, and full curteyfly; 21, sayd the heremyte; hath brought; fyr G.; 22, Syrs; 24, for to; 25, fyr G.; 26, whiche he had; fyr E.; 30, that ben; 31, at no tyme; 32, table ordeyned and founden; 34, be vaynquysshed nor ouercomen; 35, that she; And at the.

669. 1, dyd etc; 2, fet and grounded; 3, And all those bulles; very proude; 5, grete fynnes and for theyr outragious wyckednesse; 6, is for to; 7, excepte; the whiche; 8, whyte bulles; 9, ony spotte or wemme; 11, euer sythen; 12, all his offence; 13, And wherfore; by theyr; for bycause that they; 14, and in; no maner of pryde; 17, of the holy; withoute ony; 18, 19, in to the; 25, the heremyte N.; fyr E.; that fyr; 27, the whiche; 29, whiche is;

30, That is to meane; 31, fro his; sayd the heremyte / and hath; 32, vnto; [lowde]; all his; 33, vefityed and clothed; 34, the whiche.

670. 3, vpon in; flepe dremynge; ¶ And also; 5, that he; 7, that men; [hit] to; 8, nyghe vnto; 9, hym as he that; 11, down for to drynke; 13, And bycause he had serued; 17, and there shall he; 20, where as; 22, not into; 24, of our lord I.; 27, of the holy; 28, Certaynly; fyr G.; that fele I; 32, [gladly].

671. 2, ye are; 4, well saye; 5, fyth that; neuer flewe; 6, tyll the tyme he come to; 8, And were not that he is fo; 9, lyke to; fyr G.; 10, well his; 11, a full holy; 13, fyr G.; 14, wyll nothyng; 17, these wordes; to god; 18, agayn fyr G.; 19, [that] ye; 22, vnto oure lorde; 23, fyr G.; 25, afore &; 26, Than fyr G.; 27, fyr E.; 28, vnto a; 31, fyr B.; 32, vpon; 33, knewe full well that.

672. 1, fyr B. / I am; 7, [that]; 8, fyr B.; 10, bothe in to; 13, wylte ete; 14, sayd fyr B.; 16, I well; 21, scarlot; tyll that; 24, therof / and felte; 25, Helyne; 29, ony leues; 31, his byll; 34, fyr B.; 35, that the; dyd not aryse; 36, and rode forth his; So aboute; tyme by.

673. 2, a lusty yonge; and a fayre; 4, to his fouper; 6, of his; 7, And so he did as he was bydden; 13, there came; 16, Prydan; 17, made grete; 22, the whiche; 23, I am; 24, toke vnto her; in kepyng; 27, chace; 28, to me; 33, that she wyll haue.

674. 2, fyr P.; 4, fyr B.; 5, wolde he; 8, And than; 9, Hym thought there; that one; 10, as ony; and that; 12, Yf thou; 15, and went awaye / And than; 19, she departed; 20, vnto a; 22, lyke to lylyes; 23, haue taken from the other her; 24, that the one; 25, came [oute]; 28, groude; 31, fyr B. awaked; 34, fyr B. her; so they; 35, And anone.

675. 1, Than fyr B.; his armure; 2, for to take; his refeccyon; 5, so departed; 8, me grete; 11, shall withdrawe; 12, that had; [that] his; 13, make all the landes to reioyse; 18, grounde; 19, fet theyr; 21, ranne downe by theyr; more greter; 22, [more] than; fir P.; 23, a full good; 24, this fyr; 27, backwarde; 31, or elles; 33, neuer more; 34, shall be towarde her; fyr B.

676. 1, fyr B. vnto; [tho]; 2, that he; 3, to her; 7, [wel]; 10, vnto an; 11, vnto a; 12, And on the; 13, fyr B.; 15, of [the] two; 16, fyr L.; 20, in more; 21, all bloody; 22, [euer]; 24, for to; 25, loked on; 31, where as; 32, he came nygh her; that he was a; 33, haue had; 34, to hym; 35, ye are; [in]; 36, to the.

677. 1, whiche as I; [that]; you a knyght; 3, fyr B.; 4, that he wyft not; 8, sayd all; 10, fyr L.; none of these; 11, for our

ladyes sake; 12, And so he dressed; 13, ladde the; to hym . Syr;
14, leue your; 15, was all; 17, 21, fyr B.; 19, fyr B. bete; 22, of
hym at; [fir]; 24, I shall gladly do it sayd fyr B.; 26, there as;
27, For yf I; 29, foreft sayd fyr B.; 30, not with; 32, [not]; had
taken from me; 34, As she stode thus.

678. 1, fyr B.; made they; 3, fyr B.; 5, to god; 6, So than;
fyr L.; 8, man whiche was; vpon a; 9, a beer; 10, sayd fyr B.;
11, a lytell space ago; fyr B.; 13, [for]; 14, in a thycke; 15, fyr L.;
16, grounde; 17, there a; 19, he that; 21, [lyghtely]; 22, of the;
23, vnto the; the waye vnto; 24, sayd the man; 29, vnto; & than
wyll we come hyther; 30, fyr B.; 31, you sayd fyr B. / that ye wyll
tell; 33, whiche befell me; fyr B. began; 34, [foo moche].

679. 1, sayd the preest / I shall; 4, the as; 7, for to; noo fere
ne for noo drede that; 10, conquere the prayse and the vaynglorye;
11, yf thou; fyr L.; 15, full easely; 18, for to; 19, he asked; 22,
declaracyon; 24, fyr B.; 36, no more; neyther for.

680. 1, lady of estate; 2, B. sayd they; we all; 4, lady whiche;
6, was all; 11, fyr B.; 14, 17, [ryght]; fir B.; 19, [that]; 21, sayd
fyr B.; of wyfe; 22, [hym]; 26, A sayd fyr B.; 27, vp in to; 34,
Than fyr B. loked.

681. 3, within hym; leuer than he had lost his foule / they;
4, [than he his]; And so; 5, vnto the; that sodeyne chaunce; was
ryght fore; 6, full grete; And with that; 7, a full grete; 10, he
dyd brynge; 11, to heuen; 13, forth his; 16, he was; 18, yf that;
22, fyr B.; 23, that he; 29, rychely serued; 31, fyr B.; 32, that
he was; 35, in [the]; a foule.

682. 6, lorde Iesu Chryft; 10, it dooth; ye toke; 11, ye shall;
14, the whiche; 17, but she is ryght fayre and beaufull; 18, byrde
that ye sawe; Sathan the feende of hell; 19, [how]; 21, in maner
and condycyon the very seruantes; 23, full euyl; And whan;
32, fyr L.

683. 3, [for]; 11, vnto a; 16, on the one; 17, fyr B.; 23, tyll
vpon; 25, grete ioye; 27, fyr L.; fyr B.; 33, ye haue ryght well;
from hensforth.

684. 3, fyr L.; 4, but dethe; 5, [in]; 7, Syr B.; 8, for thou
arte; 11, thou be; at thyne; 12, yf thou do so; vpon y^e; as
thou; 13, on; 14, thyne; that synne; I not; 17, 18, fyr L.; 19,
[fwete]; 21, [to] fyr L. cared not; 23, he wold; Whan fyr L.; 24,
otherwyse do; not ryfe; 25, fyr B.; 26, [fo] fore; 28, fyr L.; fro
his; 29, for to; 32, had he; 34, sayd he; vnto fyr; 35, on me.

685. 2, one of; 3, condycyoned; Now so god helpe me; fyr
L.; 5, Certaynly; 7, fyr L.; 9, went backward; 12, [foo]; that
fyr C.; a knyghte of; 13, as it was; 15, how fyr L.; 18, fyr B.;

Syr L.; 20, fyr L.; 27, ony more; 28, fyr L.; he put; 30, Than fyr; 33, fyr B.; 34, fyr C.; 35, fight; yf that fyr C. flee hy; 38, be his.

686. 1, for to haue; 2, on his; [hym]; tyll that; fyr C.; 3, fyr L.; 4, and had; 5, so that; so moche; 10, Certaynly; fyr L.; 12, fyr B.; he arofe &; 16, cryed fyr C.; and fayd; 18, [it]; 19, [for] to; 20, of his helme. Whan fyr C.; 21, Fayre lord Iesu Chryft; 24, [here]; 25, fyr L.; 27, fyr C.; 29, goddes sake; 32, on the; yf I may; 33, [hand] fayd fyr L.; fyr B.; 35, to daye.

687. 2, not gretely; 4, lorde god I besече the; some myracle; 6, fyr B.; 7, Than herde; fyr B.; 10, in the; 11, [two]; 12, so that; 14, fyr B.; 15, fore that god; 20, agaynst you; 21, [gladly]; 25, vnto hym; 26, [in the myddes of]; on his; 28, And he rode; 29, vpon the; 30, there he; 33, was anone so darke; 34, not fe nor.

688. 2, [lye]; And than he; 4, was all; and [he]; 5, fyr B.; do ye not knowe me; 6, Certaynly; 8, And than fyr P.; 9, made of other; for to here; 10, fyr B.; how that; 12, [hand]; 13, in to; 16, but the good knyght fyr G.

Book viij.

689. 1, As fayth; fyr G.; 2, fyr P.; 3, he rode; 4, foude there; 5, [the] whiche; 7, y^t he; 8, [wonder]; 9, within were; 10, And whan; 12, put forth; 13, sell to; 15, dyd there; 16, meruayled therof; fyr G.; 20, [the haute prynce]; 21, that wolde; 23, fyr G.; 25, fyr E.; 26, fyr G.; 27, loue bycause; 30, fyr G.; 31, that ther; no man; 32, he became; fyr G.; 33, vnto fyr E. / the wordes are true; fyr L.; 36, that is in; and certaynly.

690. 1, of a; fyr E.; 2, 3, fyr G.; 4, in to the; 6, fyr G. and fyr E.; 7, 8, fyr G.; 10, And so; 11, full glad whan; that he; So whan; 13, 16, fyr G.; 15, that; 17, whiche; 18, Than fyr; 19, 22, fyr G.; 25, So the damoyfell; myght gallop; 26, that was; 27, that was clofed; 28, with [a]; hygh and stronge; 29, with fyr; 31, the damoyfell fayd to her lady. Madame; 32, all this nyght; 33, dyned and slepte a lytel.

691. 1, and he were bothe; 2, fyr G.; fayre sheelde and a; 3, and rode tyll; 4, fyr B.; fyr P.; 7, fayd the damoyfell; 10, bothe receyued hym; 12, vnto a; 13, Than fyr G. toke of; 14, shyppe came; 16, [hard]; 17, fayd fyr; 19, comen hyther; 21, A fyr; fir B.; yf that; 23, sholde lacke nothyng; fyr G.

692. 1, that am; 2, y^t ye; 4, in y^e shyppe; 5, it wyll; in it;

6, fyr P. knewe; 10, fyr G.; 12, within; they foude it fo; 14, fyr G.; 16, scawberd; 18, in it; 24, it / shall; 28, he shall; 30, whiche he; 33, fyr P.; 35, Syr B.; 36, fyr G.; as reed as.

693. 1, scawberde; 3, vnto the; fayd fyr; 4, scawberd; 7, vnto all; [al] onely vnto; 30, scawberde.

694. 1, whiche femed; 3, poorely to accounte; 5, He that; 6, yf that; as I; 10, to be; 11, a quenes; 14, fyr P.; 18, necessitye; I shall be; 19, vnto; 20, fyr P.; aboute a; of our lorde; 21, the brother; 22, than foure; 24, in [to] the; 25, it befell; 26, and therin; 29, out of that; 31, man fawe; 32, 33, for to; 38, of the swerde; ouer this.

695. 4, was in; 7, the one of the other; 8, kynge M.; 13, the scawberde; 14, vpon the bedde; 16, yf ye; 20, O lord; 25, fyr G.; in these; 36, therewithall.

696. 1, [hym]; 4, fyr G.; 6, beddes hede; two fayre; 8, ony blode; 9, [thre]; 15, that; 16, And bycause; 17, in to y^e groude; 20, came vnto; 23, that was; whyte became as grene as ony; 24, oute; 33, [and fee]; that tyme that; 37, and of; 38, [dyuerse].

697. 2, he displeased them; 3, voyce answered; 4, vnto; 6, vnto man; 7, forowe or heuynes; that fame; 8, kynge Salomon; 13, a pure; 14, as was; 20, that she; 26, and the best; 27, vnto; 28, all other; 29, and also that shall; 33, take ye.

698. 3, [dyd]; 5, for to; 7, at the beddes fete; 8, was the kynge; 10, so bygge a; 13, shall neuer; 17, fayd the carpenter; 19, as the carpenter; 22, well make; 26, done full; 27, they coude not tell; 32, [Now shalle ye here a]  Of the wonderful tale, etc.; 33, king S.; with a small; 34, kyng S. was.

699. 4, in the hyltes; 8, was fore; 10, in to the; and it; 11, of it; 13, kynge S.; 16, were acertayned; 17, withoute ony; 19, they founde; fyr P.; 20, a wrytynge; 21, fro whens; 22, fyr G.; 24, fayd fyr P.; 35, well founde; for truly; 36, your techynge ben; 37, vpon the; 38, the thre felowes; ryght name.

700. 3, 4, scawberde; 5, vnto fyr; 8, fyr G.; 9, that it; 15, Fayre damoyzell; fyr G.; 17, that other shyppe; 19, it happened; 24, fir G.; 26, they spake; 28, A.'s courte; 29, ye are euyll arryued; 30, cheef fortresse; 33, be comen; 34, fayd they; 35, [in].

701. 2, sholde they dye; 3, therewithall; renne togyder; 5, vpon hym; and in lyke wyfe; fyr G.; fyr B.; 7, had leste; 8, they began; 9, the knyghtes of the; 10, strongest; folowed after; 11, soo they; 12, right / and; So whan; 13, whiche they; 14, fyr B.; 17, he wyll; 18, 23, fyr G.; 23, put of; 25, ben of the courte; 27, yf ye myght; 28, worlde shall; ye neuer; 29, fyr G.; 32, [that]; [lord] the; [not]; 36, And bycause.

702. 2, to bete; 6, y^t they; 9, that our; 10, fir G.; 13, whiche; fyr G.; 14, had he neuer seen; 15, full tendyrly; 18, fyr G.; 19, it. Sir G.; 22, his helthe the; 23, fyr G.; 24, as he; [Ryght]; 25, fyr P.; 29, vnto a; 30, where as; 31, entred in; 32, vnto.

703. 4, other vnto; 5, thynde vnto; 6, theyr siege; where as; 8, that sayd thus; 9, in to the; of the; 10, was not; 11, grounde; 13, themfelfe; 16, ye are; 18, to whome; 19, vnto an; 30, in the; 31, that from; 33, on the; 34, vnto; 35, vnto a; 36, [them].

704. 5, fyr P.; place fo euer; 6, she is; oute of the castell; 8, a gentylwoman; 12, fyr G.; 13, that of; 14, as longe as; fyr P.; 15, my sayth; 19, vnto; 21, came there; well a; all armed; 22, vpon; 25, are the; doo ye; 27, 29, fyr G.; 30, And fyr G.; 32, whome that; wolde abyde; 33, but that they; 35, helde theyr; 36, there came.

705. 4, we are; 6, accorde therto; 8, fyr G.; 12, the trouth; 13, we haue; 14, other moo; 16, to a; 18, full of the; 20, her helth; 21, therwith; 22, fyr P.; 23, fyr G.; Certaynly; and yf; 26, vnto my; 29, than euer; 30, on the; 31, or not; All that; 34, was brought forth tofore her; [the] whiche.

706. 1, So anone there came one forth to; 3, vnto; 6, fyr G. fyr P. & fyr B. start; 7, her blode; 8, Than whan; 9, fyr P.; muft dye; 11, in to a; 13, vnto the; 15, shall fyr G.; 16, So whan fyr B.; 17, he graüted; 18, voyce sayd; 20, vnto the; 22, hym / the; 29, vnto the; 30, lyghtnyng and reyne; 34, lorde god; 36, aferre; 37, vnto; 38, fyr G.

707. 6, *wholly omitted*; 7, [Now] the story saythe; fyr G. and fyr P.; 10, for to wete; betyde of them; 12, but that they ne were; 13, whiche; 19, eueryche of them; 22, fyr P.; fyr G.; 24, toke they; 26, The story sayth; fyr L.; 29, toke his; 32, he had; 33, a grete.

708. 2, his armure; 3, [foo]; 4, and oores; 5, moost fwetefst fauour; 7, [fwete]; 9, on the; 10, daye lyght; 12, fyr L. behelde her; 13, a wrytyng; wherin he found all the; 17, in lykewyfe fedde hym; 19, vpon a; 26, fyr L. went towarde hym; 27, Syr ye; 28, him his name; 29, fyr L.; 31, fyr L. / are ye fyr G.; 38, [to] them.

709. 1, And anone as fyr G.; 3, & that; 4, 9, fyr L.; 6, fyr G.; 9, tyll now; 11, fyr L. and fyr G.; 13, where as; 16, bycause thofe; 18, [therof]; [of alle tho aduentures]; 21, crosse of stone; 24, vpon; 25, Syr G.; 26, lepe; 27, ryde where; 28, vnto hym full curteysly; 29, vnto hym; [fwete]; 30, of our lorde; fyr L.; 31, vnto the; 34, my fone fyr; fyr L.; 35, vnto the father of heuen for to preferue.

710. 1, bothe you and me; fyr G.; 2, fyr G.; fyr L.; 5, vnto god; haue a fyght of the holy; 6, vpon a; 8, that opened; 13, [foo] armed; he went vnto; 14, the two; he set; 15, came there fodeynly; that; hym vpon; 17, y^t sayd; 18, more in thy; 20, fyr L.; 22, that thou; 28, fyr L.; 32, moche for to; 34, that the.

711. 1, fyr L.; he wyfte; 4, my foule; here; 6, that whiche; 7, and with that there; 8, as though all; 10, vnto hym; fyr L.; 12, & was ryght heuy; one of them; 19, vnto fyr L.; there were; 22, fyr L.; 23, that the; 24, haue falle; 25, grounde; 26, he came; 28, foo he; 30, [hit]; 32, it all to brent; 33, groude; [that].

712. 2, on; 3, day lyght; fyr L.; 4, [that]; 7, neyther stande; 15, fyr L.; 16, as many; whiche [euer]; 17, lyke vnto a; 19, was better; 21, the greate; 24, can tell; & yf my sone had not; 27, as many nyghtes; how it was a; 34, of my.

713*. 1, [that]; 6, ye fe more of; 8, fyr L.; 10, achyeue; 14, fyr L.; 16, And thā; 17, whiche had; 18, 24, kynge Pelles; 19, 22, fyr L.; 20, kynge made; 25, on y^e; 28, that was there / and; of theyr; 29, chese hall; than it was fo that; 35, that a; vnto; 36, knocked myghtyly.

714*. 1, [there]; 4, that hath; 5, Than was he wonders; 8, countree and realme; 9, fyr E.; vnto the noble knyght fyr L.; 10, kynge P.; [of] that; 11, fyr E.; 14, A lorde god; 15, fyr G.; 16, [to] me; 17, his courser myght ren; 18, And than; 23, vnto god; 24, vnto an abbey; 25, he had grete chere; 28, lettres of gold; 29, y^e whiche; 30, he not; 31, fyr L.; 32, yf it had; fyr G.; 34, domage to.

715*. 1, vnto; 2, as fyr G.; 4, to C.; 5, as he; and quene G.; 7, thre of them; that were fyr G. / fyr E. / and fyr L.; 8, other whiche; Than all; 9, And kynge A.; 10, [many]; fyr G.; 11, fyr L.; 13, fyr G. / fyr P. and fyr B.; 15, wolde god; 16, fyr L.; 18, *wholly omitted*; 19, that fyr G.; 20, vnto; 22, on the; 23, fyr G.; 24, [the] whiche; a longe; 25, Sir G.; 26, [fo]; 32, is fo taken; 33, was of deed oldnes; Whā fyr G.; 34, hym in his armes.

716*. 1, sayd kynge M.; 4, 8, fyr G.; 7, that; 14, that fyr L.; 16, But Ioseph of; 17, And there he founde; fyr L.; 20, it is a; 21, to an ende; 22, all the knyghtes; 23, fyr G.; 24, they lad hym; vnto a; 25, vpon a steyses; 28, that hath; 32, [wynter]; fyfty yeres; for to; 33, 35, sir G.; 36, in to the.

717. 3, fyr P.; 5, vpon a; 7, at a; that rode; 9, eche; 10, other theyr aduentures; fyr B.; 11, there men; 15, them all; was there made; 16, he knewe well; 19, fyr B.; 20, yf [that]; foudred it agayne togyder; 21, 22, fyr P.; to fyr G.; 24, toke he; 28, vnto sir B.; a full.

718. 3, fyr G.; hyed fore to be; 12, waye agayne; Syr G.; 14, & anguyffhe as ye se / haue I; 26, that fayd; 34, the droppes.

719. 1, the whiche; 5, toke he; 6, a wapher; in the lykenes; 11, vnto a; 12, vnto fyr G.; 13, And than; 14, as he was bydden / fo he did [anone]; fayd he ye; 26, to fyr; 27, so after; 29, he fayd; 30, fayd fyr G.; [will].

720. 1, vnto; 3, where as; 8, fir G.; 11, wyll I; 14, fyr G.; 16, [after]; bothe his; 20, vnto a; 22, that fayd thus. Myne owne; 25, lorde fayd they; vs foo [thy synners]; 26, [wel]; 30, fyr G. vnto; [that]; 31, that ye wyl falewe; 32, and all the felawshyp of the; 33, that yf; in those partyes; 34, fyr G. / fyr P. and fyr B.

721. 2, [of] before; 6, passynge glad; for to; 8, and fyr; 9, vnto; [that] he myght; 10, And foo; tyll at the last a; 13, Syr P.; 14, for to; 15, fyr G.; 18, that whan; 21, vnto fyr G.; 23, than he; 26, 29, fyr P.; fyr B.; and fyr; 31, fyt croked; 32, 34, 37, fyr G.; 36, he ranne; 37, there arose.

722. 3, fyr P.; 8, [whiche]; 14, [that]; 24, fyr G.; 25, for to; 27, that couered; 29, saye theyr deuocyons; the same daye; 30, after y^t fyr G.; 31, vnto; 33, whiche had.

723. 2, sakerynge of; fyr G.; 3, vnto hym; 4, that whiche; 5, fyr G. began; ryght fore; 8, that whiche; 9, good lorde; 11, vnto fyr; 12, whome I am; 14, [the] whiche; 15, [that]; 16, resembled me in two; One is that; 17, And the other is in that; 18, [haue ben and]; 19, fyr G. went to fyr P.; 25, vnto; 27, his two; 31, for to; 32, fyr P. and fir B. sawe fyr G.

724. 1, was he; 3, 8, 9, fyr B.; 4, bycause he; 8, fyr G. 12, by good; 13, And than; 14, where kyng A.; made greate; 15, demed all; 17, kyng A.; 19, fyr B.; 20, his two; 21, was fyr G. and fyr P. [and hym felf]; 22, Than fyr L.; 24, vnto; 25, Syr G.; [owne]; 29, fyr G.; for to; 30, this vnstedfast; 31, fall true; fyr L.; 32, Than fyr; 35, me redy; 36, whyle I haue lyfe; 37, fayle you.

Book xviij.

725. 4, that alle the knyghtes; 7, And specyally; 12, as the frenshhe; for to; 15, in his; 17, vnto god; 18, vpon the; 19, had done; 20, [hand]; 21, moost specially; 22, So it; 24, whiche; 27, alwayes as.

726. 3, to hym thus; 8, haue in tyme past; fyr L.; 11, my deferuyng; [that] my; 15, fone fyr G. / fyr P. / or fir B.; 19, that speke; 20, this place; 23, and rydde; 24, where as; 32, [my pleafyr]; 36, so she.

727. 2, [wel]; 4, of me; 5, fayd she; 7, charge; [this]; 8, wythin this courte; forbydde the; 13, forbydden; 19, whiche fore; 21, whiche somtime; 22, whose name; 23, Fayre cofyn fayd; 25, forbydden; 29, fyr L.; 31, I rest; 33, cofyn I; 37, with a; 38, [nor].

728. 1, but all onely; 2, of outwarde sorowe; 3, nor yet; 4, the frenshe; 7, in y^e cite of; 12, [for]; 16, [fir] La; 18, fyr A.; 19, vnto; 21, [four and twenty]; 23, deynty meetes and deyntes; 29, of all; 34, that a good; 35, fyr P.

729. 1, toke one of the poysoned apples; 2, [foo]; 7, fyr G.; 9, [wel]; 11, right fore; 15, vnto the vttermest; And thervpon; 17, none of them; 18, [all]; 19, the dyner; so fore; 20, *wholly omitted*; 21, fodeyne crye; vnto; 22, And meruayled gretely what it myght be; of theyr; and the fodeyne deth of the good knyghte fyr Patryce; 25, quene G.; 31, of her.

730. 2, whiche; 3, vnto; 7, praye you; 8, for to come vnto this; 14, [almighty]; 17, a ryghtwyfe; 18, kyng A. I gyue you day this; 19, ye be; 21, may ye; 27, Than answered the quene; 28, nor; 32, that fore; 34, that ye go vnto fyr B. and praye hym to do that batayle for your; 36, ryght wel I perceyue fayd kyng A.; 37, those twenty; 38, you in felawshyp togyder; was so traytourly flayn.

731. 3, I can not; 5, full soone; 6, on your; 7, kyng A.; who someuer hath; on his; 8, on; 19, nor yet; 20, haue ye; 22, [by]; I gretely; me how; 24, as ye; 32, to me; 33, kyng A.; 34, in a certaynte.

732. 3, me of; 12, come; 15, hertely / & so departed; 17, Brafyas; 18, happely come; 21, fyr M.; yf he be; 23, fyr B.; 25, vnto the; 27, gretely displeafed; 29, [all]; but that; 35, and the moost; 36, alwaye.

733. 5, was alwayes; 6, alwaye she; 9, a grete; vnto; 13, she oughte hym; 14, the . xx . knyghtes; 15, well saye / that it was for good; 18, some of vs; 20, not pleased; 25, [for]; 28, do; 29, fayd fyr B.; 32, profytablest; 33, past forth; 34, [maner of] the; 35, to the.

734. 3, & there was made a grete; 6, nor for; 7, ryghtwyfe; 11, quene G.; vnto; 13, contrary therto; 17, soone preue; 20, the so; vnto almighty god my maker; 21, thy malyce; 27, but that; 28, to mounte vpon; 29, M. de la porte; 30, a spere; 34, where as; out of a; 35, armed at all poyntes.

735. 1, you to; 8, I can not shewe you fayd; 11, vnto; 13, vnto the; 20, meruayled they; 26, ranne the one agaynst the other; 27, But fyr L.'s; 28, grounde; and had a; 29, and dressed; 32, lyghtely from; 34, to batayle.

736. 1, many sadde; 3, they had bē two; 4, a full; 6, groude; 7, for to; 8, therwithall; 10, ryght fyerfly; 13, grounde. And; 14, for to haue; from his; 16, as an ouercomen knyght; 17, [thy]; but onely; 18, no maner of; 21, clerely I; 24, where as kyng; 25, vnto; other louyngly; 26, vnto hym; 27, And than the; 28, to rest; 30, that he was the noble knyght; 32, by the hand.

737. 6, or in; 7, kyng A.; 8, you of youre; 9, downe vpon the; 10, where as she; 17, in the; 18, whiche was called; 27, fyr P.; 29, of y^e feeft; to the entent; 31, to whome; 33, [was].

738. 3, vpon y^e; 12, forth vntyll; daye the; 13, kyng A.; 24, not goo; 26, [noble]; 27, fyr G.; 28, vnto; 30, that the; 34, paffynge heuy and wrothe; 36, which is.

739. 1, vnto her and thus she; 3, wyll faye; 6, vnto fyr; 8, to the quene; 9, [madame]; 10, as at; 11, wyll I; 13, vnto; 14, [ageynfte] all; 15, quene G.; 17, are many; 18, for to; 21, on the; 22, after brake; 23, so departed; so longe tyll; 24, that now is called; 25, vnto an; whiche; 27, [dyd] walked; 29, quod kyng; to all; 30, were there; in yonder; 31, [now]; wyll full well; 32, towarde whiche we; 33, many meruaylous dedes of armes.

740. 3, So as; 4, & in his chambre vnarmynge; 5, vnto; hym reuerence; 6, maner that he coude; 9, is to moche; 12, whiche were; 14, the fame day that; 16, fyr L.; 18, those iustes; wyghty; 20, I beseche you; 23, you hertely; 25, haue his; 27, [that tyme] the; 29, frenshe booke; 37, for by cause.

741. 1, of hers; 7, neuer or this tyme; [erft]; 8, damoyfell; 9, it vntyl that; 11, the faye; 13, in the mornynge; 14, for the; 17, for to; 21, whiche now is called W.; 23, there was; 26, they foiourned; day the; 27, began to blowe; 31, yf fyr; 32, whan fyr; 34, of Scotlande; 35, vpon kyng A.'s fyde.

742. 4, this one; 5, moost noble; 10, [fast]; 14, Scotlande; 17, and also; 23, there came; 26, le cueur; 31, [thenne].

743. 3, on our; 8, and fyr G.; 19, in the; 20, wote well who he; [as]; 23, but alway me; 24, by cause he; 25, yet bere; 27, [euer]; 29, whiche; 35, to hym.

744. 7, vnto the grounde; 9, abode styll; 10, vpon; 11, Scotlande; grounde; 14, gate hym; 15, bothe hors; grounde; 17, began to drawe; 18, [y] hurte; 20, vpon; grounde; 23, fyr A.; by that tyme; 25, [all]; 31, maner of wyse; 34, there lyenge; 35, after; 37, ony man; And alway; 38, was with.

745. 1, smote [doune]; 4, rounde table; 5, vnto king; 6, [he] is; 8, let blowe; 9, to the knyght; 22, [al]; 26, sayd he; 28, it almoost; 29, fayne helpe you; 30, drawe; 32, [alle]; [ryght]; 33, [al].

746. 2, [fo]; 3, I do now; 6, fyr L.; 8, whiche; [fulle]; 10, vnto; and hath; 11, his possessyons; 13, For alwaye; 18, vnto that; 21, ende of; [fast]; me in; 24, whiche is; 25, ryght fore; 28, that was; And whan; 38, was fomytyme.

747. 3, where as the moost noble knyght fyr L. was; 6, alwaye; 14, hyde ye; 17, fyth that; for Chrystes; 24, by that; 25, ryght well; and came to hymselfe agayne; 26, as it is now in thefe; 33, and his; 34, was the.

748. 4, moost greteft; 10, landes I haue; 13, or [knowe]; not wyte; 14, [man]; [good]; 20, he is; 21, without; 22, not beftyre; 23, shall knowe; yf I may; 25, and rode vpon two hackneys; 26, But as he wente so he; 28, to L.; 30, where as; was lodged; 31, for to take his rest; 32, to hym; and also his fayre; for to; 33, tydynges he knewe; 35, whiche; 38, dare make it good.

749. 1, forty valyaunt; 2, and ryghte; 4, that good; 5, the whiche; man that euer after; 7, [fir]; 10, he came; 19, for to let; 21, yf it wyll please you to; 22, vnto his; 27, a greate.

750. 17, [and]; 25, as ye thynke best; 26, ryght fore; 27, [Ryght]; 29, came vnto; 33, hym sayd; 34, to his.

751. 1, fyr L. meruaylously; but what; 2, after hym for to; kynge A.; all his courte; 3, vnto all; was the noble knight fyr; 6, heuy & a sorowfull; 9, for angre and wrath; 11, sayd vnto hym; 15, that he; is but; 16, befeche you; 17, sayd the quene; 19, grete turneymēt; 20, reed sleue; 22, that be of his; 25, Notwithstandynge; 26, sayd fyr B. / faye; 28, quene G.; 29, meruayle it were.

752. 2, that; 5, the fayr mayde; 7, as fayre; 9, vnto hym; vnto her; 10, how fareth; 13, [that]; 14, vnto; 16, vnto the; 21, her to hym; 25, be full; 31, to angre; 34, to grete.

753. 6, came to; 10, warnynge therof; 12, [with whome he was]; 13, curteys knyghte; 16, vnto the; 19, wepte full; 21, vnto hym thus; 29, of all; where as; 33, or [my]; 34, ye are; 35, hertely welcome; ye say ouermuche to please me.

754. 1, [the] whiche I fought; 2, you euerychone; 3, nyghe; was through; 5, not ben; 6, and frendship; 16, by his; whiche he; 24, whiche by no maner of; [not].

755. 1, that there; 5, styll with; 7, Than they abode there almoost; 10, vnto the father nor wyfe vnto her; 12, dyspleased; 15, for to; 17, at all poyntes; 19, he spurred; 22, So that; 23-24, and hym that was vpon hym / the whiche was the noblest knyght of the worlde / he stered hym vygorously / and he styfly and stably kepte; 27, for to gete his; 31, helpe me; 32, vnto; 33, vnto the grounde; 34, measure grete sorowe; 35, and dole.

756. 3, bothe false; and why; 7, ryght wroth; he sayd to

them . Let ; 8, in to the ; 11, of [hym] his body ; 16, for by cause ; stronge ynough ; 19, [hit] ; yf I ; 27, And than ; 29, I oughte.

757. 10, there present ; 16, of Scotlande ; 20, at the same tyme fyr B. de G. ; 21, he had smytten ; 30, maner of.

758. 4, yf that ; were strongly ; 5, ony man ; [the] lyfe ; 10, la blancher ; 11, they were ; 12, so on ; 14, and her two bretherne fyr T. & fyr L. ; 16, that ye ; 17, [Now] ; 18, for your ; 19, you vnto ; 20, y^e mayde E. ; 21, but certaynly ; be maryed ; 22, [man] ; 23, sholde I ; 26, fayr damoyfel ; 28, [yet] ; 34, fayre mayde ; 35, the damoyfell.

759. 4, doune to y^e groude ; gentylwomen ; 5, made euer ; 10, vnto hym thus ; 11, do therto sayd ; 12, 15, me vnto ; 15, nor late ; 19, ryght well ; 22, fythen that ; 25, came to ; 29, And also ; 33, whiche made ; 35, And alwaye ; 36, aboute a ; she felte ; 37, throue.

760. 2, sayd she ; 5, is that ; 6, god vnto ; I neuer loued ; 10, for to haue ; 11, whiche I ; be an ; 12, swete sauour Iesu Chryst ; 13, [on the] ; 15, out of all ; 19, wolde endyte ; 21, she had ; 23, in to ; 27, where as ; 28, put in a ; 35, and all ; 36, put on ; 37, barge to ; 38, ony man.

761. 1, and [the] ; 3, in to the ; barge ; 4, it myght mene ; 6, Go ye ; vnto ; 7, fyr A. ; 8, thre ; 10, bedde that euer they sawe ; 11, ende of the ; 12, thre ; 13, had soude ; 14, [foo] ; 16, went in ; 17, a fayre gentylwoman lyenge ; 20, the lettre ; 21, told the kynge therof ; it in his hande ; 22, I am ; 23, [So] than ; 24, And the kynge ; certayne men to wayte ; 28, it open ; 29, my lorde fyr L. ; 32, yet for my soule that ye praye ; 35, art a knyght peerles.

762. 1, of the ; 4, vnto hym ; 5, had herde ; 6, that I am ; 8, my wyll ; vnto her ; 15, or elles ; 17, whiche ; 22, kyng A. ; 27, wente ; 28, And on the ; rychely buryed ; 30, the roude ; 31, And than whā all was done ; 33, for by cause ; 36, sorowe y^e I endure ye take ; 37, passed forth.

763. 2, [foo] ; 3, the rounde table ; 4, vntyll ; [thenne] ; 5, there were ; that who someuer ; 8, all the ; 9, moost was ; 12, [at] ; 13, to hym many of his ; aduysed them ; 15, vnto ; 18, [and] ; 19, toke a partye ; 20, made [that] of the ; 21, [of the] & the Iustes ; 22, full glad ; 23, maner that they coude ; 24, and whan he was comen she sayd to h^y in this maner ; 26, For at ; 28, so there ; 31, cloth of golde ; 34, [haue] ; 35, whose name.

764. 1, to rest ; 2, ease y^t ; 3, Whan fyr L. ; were redy they departed ; 5, And so ; vnto ; 11, And alway ; 15, houdes ; 16, that this ; 20, for to ; 21, that the ; 23, hynde whan she ; 24, to y^e soyle ; hounde ; 25, fast after ; [veray] ; 26, there came the ; 27, whiche ;

by her houde ; [that she had] ; 30, [foo] by ; 31, brode arowe ; 33, whiche ; 34, than whan ; fayd vnto her ; 35, bare thou ; 36, made the.

765. 2, and our lorde ; 5, now haue ye ; 6, as well as he ; 7, drewe ; & the heed abode ; 8, [he] ; vnto ; [more] ; 10, so hurte ; 11, nor the heremyte wyft not ; 15, shedde at that tyme ; 16, that fyr L. ; 18, knyght that ; 28, also broughte ; 35, Scotlande.

766. 1, good knyghtes ; 2, kynge Chalaunce ; 5, whiche ; 7, fet vpon ; 8, vnto ; 22, full stronge ; 23, of fyr ; 27, fyr G. ; 32, vnto them.

767. 6, grounde ; And in lykewyse ; 11, groude ; 13, [and] fo ; 17, where as ; 21, kynge A. ; 24, G. of Orkeney ; 25, be harde ; 30, fyr G. / and that anone ; [al] ; 31, to rest ; 35, frensſhe boke ; 37, as fast as he myght vnto fyr L. ; fayd thus vnto hym.

768. 5, [noble] ; 9, brake ; 14, lay there ; 20, hurled ; 27, gretely whan ; 32, that he had ; 36, on ; 38, straye and ryght harde.

769. 2, almoost nyghte ; 5, vnto kynge A. ; 7, blode ben ; me all ; that they ; 11, worſhypfullyer ; 12, me alwaye ; vpon payne ; 13, is fyr L. hymſelfe ; 21, my beſt ; 22, and yf he ; 36, and gate hym a.

770. 2, kynge A. ; 3, they answered with a ; 4, were all ; 7, wente ; 15, also in lyke ; 19, for to ; 22, me to fe ; 26, [more] ; 27, for to ; 28, in [a] ; 30, man ſhamed ; 32, where as ; 33, cowarde wyll ; 34, knyght wyll ; 35, were made ; to kynges ; 37, vnto his.

771. 10, in lyke ; 13, [a] raſe ; 17, & put awaye true ; 26, vnto god ; 28, feuen dayes ; 34, lycorous.

Book xix.

772. 7, luſty May ; 9, erly in ; 10, the mornynge ; 13, [outher in fylke outher in clothe] ; 18, [the Senefchal] ; 20, [le cure hardy] ; [of the foreſt ſaueage] ; 21, & fyr P. ; 22, [that was called the knyghte of the reed laundes] ; 23, [the loue] ; thoſe ; 24, on the morowe ; 25, mayenge with y^e quene ; [in woodes and medowes as hit pleaſyd hem] ; 27, purpoſed to haue ben ; with the ; 28, her purpoſe at that tyme ; 29, the whiche.

773. 3, he had ; as y^e frenſſhe ; 5, [for] by ; 6, yf fyr L. ; 8, that the ; 12, they neuer ; 16, hygh feeft ; 18, that [there] ; 19, in theyr ſtedes that were ; 27, [for] to ; 28, the beſt ; 31, [moſſes] ; 33, well armed ; 34, of areeſt.

774. 2, thynkeſt ; [for] ; 4, for to ; 5, the hygh ordre of ; 9, that I haue ; 10, many yeres ; 11, a vauntage ; 12, [all] ; [noble] ; 13, all with one voyce & fayd ; wete ye well ; 16, grete auauntage ; 17, on

vs; 18, as leue; 19, otherwyfe; 20, fyr M. sayd; 24, [none]; 25, with theyr; 26, [fyr Ladynas]; 28, fyr P. / fyr Ironsyde & fyr P.; 30, [ten]; 31, [the boldest and]; 33, cryed and sayd; 36, [not].

775. 1, fyr M.; 2, my [owne]; 11, [their horfes]; 15, knowlege; 19, come and fe me; and that he; 20, thou not; 21, And so y^e; 22, mouëd vpon his; 23, from them as fast as euer his hors myght renne; 24, fawe the chylde; well that; 27, But the chylde went from; 28, vnto quene G.; ye be; 30, not lyghtly come.

776. 3, [that] in; to flee; 4, not to haue; 8, in her; the frensfhe; that fyr; 10, as he; 15, onely that; 20, there was none myght; 22, a poyntement; 23, and went with; 24, that that mooft; [that]; 28, for to; 31, to me vnto the; where as; 32, yf I am; 34, he full; 35, and on alle.

777. 1, and as the frensfhe; 3, for to; ouer the ryuer of; Lambeth; 4, [fame]; where; 5, [noble]; 6, [that] he; trace; 7, vnto a; & therin; 8, to turne; 12, vpon thy fete; 20, fyr L.; 21, sayd fawe; 23, whyle on fote; was he; with his armure / theelde and spere; 26, [for] to; 27, ryght fore; 28, by [hym]; the whiche; 30, for to; 34, fayne speke; 37, thought to; 38, and sayd. Fayre.

778. 2, fyr M. castell; 4, droue forth as fast as he coude; 6, quene G.; 7, wyndowe waytynge; 10, to; And than the quene; 15, [Ha]; 17, haft ben; in a cart; 18, lykened hym; 21, to fuche; 23, vnto the gate of the; 26, thou false; 28, I shall; with the; 30, ere; brake; 32, was come; 33, to the quene and.

779. 1, ye myght well; 3, is done; 5, in to your; 6, fyr M.; 7, [alle] in to; 10, and all your knyghtes and ladyes; to W.; 11, in to your; 12, than alway; 13, stryfe is made / the more; 15, whiche; for to; 16, he sayd; forth here; 17, vnto hym; 18, wherfore aske; 20, dyspleased than; 25, peasybly; handes; 28, ye are; 30, and full; [A]; 31, yf I; 33, to you; 35, I haue; 37, well that.

780. 1, bereth [the]; 4, [euer]; 6, so that ye; 9, to her; 11, knyghtes were; 12, so fore wounded; 13, of his comynge; 16, had fet; 18, the one vnto the other; 23, vnto our; 26, vnto a; in to a gardyn; 27, [y] barryd; 28, for to; 30, he forthwith; 32, the whiche; 34, let [ye].

781. 1, wounded were; 4, it was shewed vnto; [all]; 8, [by her chamber]; 9, they lacked; 15, perfone with me at this tyme; And than; 17, vnto a; where as; 21, of [many]; 22, myght come in vnto her; 26, for the loue of you; 27, [he]; 28, a grete; 30, of fyr L.'s hande; 32, And so to passe forth; 33, went to; 34, and so he toke.

782. 1, and came to his; 8, And so forth; 11, fyr L.'s hurte hande; And whan; 12, in hymself; 13, vnto; 16, it well that

it was ; 19, lyege lorde ; 21, & that I wyll ; 23, to them ; 28, fyr M. faye nay with your ; 32, well that ; 34, demed that fholde hyde his ; in this.

783. 1, A ha / what ; 4, the whyles ; 5, fay and make good / that my ; 8, haue ye ; 11, it with ; 12, fyr L. ; 15, alfo what ; 18, batayle that is done ; 19, as vnto that ; 23, is a ; 26, to the ; 27, Vpon what day ; 30, must do batayle ; I beseche ; 31, ye are ; 32, in the ; 34, of those condicyons ; vnto all ; 35, knewe me / I vsed ; [with] ; 36, to be in the ; vsed treason ; 37, fyr M.

784. 1, ye all may ryde vnto ; 2, And than ; vnto ; 3, fetures ; 6, peryls leest ; 7, is as ; But alwaye ; that dealeth ; 8, man ofte ; in to ; 9, And as ; 12, [ful of] vpon ; 13, made semblaunt as though he had not wyft ; 17, put out of the waye ; 19, pafte forth ; 20, he had ; horfe lytters ; 23, many other ; wente to ; 24, tolde vnto ; fyr M. ; 26, batayle togyder ; 27, aferd that ; 34, Now returne we vnto ; 35, full grete ; 37, by her.

785. 2, come oute ; 4, defende it fayd ; 8, or feke or els in ; 10, [at] ; 11, or els ; 16, fhamme (fayd fyr L.) ; 20, to stronge herted ; 27, where as ; 29, [the] whiche ; 31, was there ; 32, he comaunded ; 33, to god.

786. 1, gallopynge ; 5, And therfore he ; for to ; 6, for to brynge ; [du lake] ; 9, good lord ; may well ; 11, so that ; 13, now fayd ; 18, quene G. ; 20, but that ; 32, all them that were present ; 37, And so than ; [els].

787. 5, vnto fyr L. ; 8, grounde ; 11, as an ; 15, And than ; 16, towarde ; 17, fholde haue ; 25, and the ; 28, Whan fyr M. herde that / he ; vp on ; 31, vnto his ; 37, were they.

788. 8, hym vpon ; 12, be buried ; 14, made moche of ; 15, [hand] ; 17, Hungary ; whose name ; 21, the whiche hyght ; 22, Hungary ; 29, [the] whiche ; 32, tyll that the best ; 33, And in this maner ; 34, her vaüt.

789. 1, fyr Vvres moder ; 3, whiche was a ; 4, with her ; 8, So at the last she ; 9, [by fortune she came nyghe] to the ; 10, at kyng A.'s ; 11, Caerleyll ; 12, how ; 13, that countree for to haue her soone heeled ; 15, countree ; 16, lorde kyng A. ; 17, the whiche ; 21, vnto the tyme that ; 24, couëtree ; 26, a full ; 27, fayd she ; 29, kyng A. ; come hyther ; 30, and yf ony ; 37, fyr V.

790. 2, brother by my ; 7, ten knyghtes ; [that tyme] ; 12, in hymselfe that he had ben a ; 14, out of the ; vpon the grounde ; 15, of cloth of gold ; 16, [noble] ; 17, [for] ; 18, for to suffre me softly to handle thy ; 19, fyr V. ; as it shall please you ; 20, here at ; 22, on ; Than after kyng A. ; 26, Anguyffhe ; 30, Chalaunce ; 33, Gyngayne ; 34, thre were.

791. 4, & fyr G. & his fones fayled ; 6, whiche ; 7, So there ; fyr L. ; 13, fayled euerychone ; 15, whiche ; 18, Sadocke ; 20, there came ; fyr Grumwors fone ; 21, whiche at that tyme ; 22, one of the strongest knyghtes of the worlde ; frensshe booke ; 23, this fyr S. le breufe and fyr L. ; 26, S. le breufe ; 27, maner of wyfe ; 28, L. du lake ; 29, of them promysed vnto other ; 32, and fuche other wylde ; whiche ; 34, as of all the ; 35, to knowe ; 37, Than there came in ; and fyr T. whiche ; 38, but this fyr T. was.

792. 1, A. the cowerherde had ; begate all these knyghtes ; 3, whiche was one of the ; [one] ; 8, whiche ; 13, whiche was ; by the noble knyghte fyr T. ; 15, le blanke whiche ; vnto ; 19, whiche was ; vnto ; 21, false traytour ; 22, Marke slewe ; 29, fyr A. Lorphelyn ; 30, [slewe kyng M.] ; 31, the corps ; 35, whiche ; 36, Neroueus.

793. 5, A. le graunte ; 8, whiche ; 13, fyr Robert ; 14, whiche ; 16, by his ; 18, 19, whiche was ; 19, vnto them ; 20, G. of Orkeney ; 26, whiche came ; and anone it was ; 27, kyng therof ; 29, downe from ; vnto ; 31, vnto her.

794. 3, alle those that had ; ferched fyr V. ; 12, to that entent ; 15, as ye be ; 16, and yf ye ; 18, countree ; 22, sayenge thus ; 25, and I shame ; 28, sayenge to hym ; 29, [the] whiche is full fore ; 38, [alle].

795. 1, feuen yere tofore ; 2, thre other ; 10, [in] ; 11, vnto god ; 12, deuysed ; 14, bygge ; Than kyng A. ; 15, sayd he ; 17, fyr V. ; 19, of an ; 20, so on ; 22, make shorte tale ; 24, them bothe ; 29, vnto ; this knyght ; 33, but alwaye ; 34, in the courte ; 35, But euer.

796. 2, [du lake] for to ; 3, ouerskyppe ; 6, despyte of those knyghtes and ladyes that ; 7, he had ben ; 8, galous ; 10, after [that] ; 12, dyd in those ; 13, of Le cheualer ; 15, vnto the deth.

Book xx.

797. 1, At the season of y^e mery moneth of ; 4, and be gladde ; 7, [fast] ; 8, there besel ; [and vnhap] ; the whiche ; 10, longe of ; 11, fyr A. ; 12, these two knyghtes ; 14, vnto ; 16, [alle] ; 19, & knowe ; 27, fyr A. ; 28, I byleue ; 31, knowe well ynough ; 33, it vnto ; 34, Ye shall not do it by ; for yf there ; 35, wrathe.

798. 3, ben a better knyght ; 7, as whā ; 13, hyde it ; 20, ought I ; euylle of ; 21, [al] ; 22, now is the ; 25, kyng A. ; 26, fyr A. ; whiche I ; 28, and [to] ; 31, And we knowe all ; 34, kyng A.

799. 1, for I tell you fyr ; 10, and for his quene ; 20, fyr A. ; 22, hym full ; 23, vpon ; 26, vnto them ; 27, and thus were ; 31, Gromore somor ioure ; 36, with quene G. ; 38, I alway drede me moche.

800. 1, whiche ; for to ; 6, noo doubte ; 12, that I wyll ; 14, safe and founde ; 15, vnder nethe his ; 16, And so that noble knyght wente forth in his mantell / and put ; 20, fyr L. ; 22, therof to make mencyon ; as it is ; 25, and with . . . sayd thus ; 31, [there] ; 32, I praye you hertely let me haue it.

801. 2, many valyaunt ; 4, no refyft ; 7, stande in ; 8, neuer thus ; 10, alwayes [in one] ; 18, and poore ; to my ; 19, day that ; 23, for to ; 24, owne dere ; 27, shall haue ; 33, well that ; 38, quene G.

802. 3, lorde Iesu ; 4, therwithall ; 7, daffhed at ; chambre dore ; 8, daffhyng ; open the ; 13, fyr L. ; 15, a bygge ; whiche was called fyr C. ; 21, And than fyr L. ; 25, Let be ; 28, no fuche ; 31, and before ; 32, [outher els ye all that] ; 34, knyghte oughte to do ; came vnto ; 35, I wyll ; [hit].

803. 1, myne owne ; false traytour ; 3, wyll let she to ; that we ; 6, dore wyde open ; 9, he had ; to the cold ; 10, of all ; 11, a buffet ; 14, vnto an ; 17, maner of yll ; and daungers ; 25, to his ; 26, So whan ; 27, was at that tyme ; 28, [why be ye all armed] what may this meane ; 31, were so dremynge ; 35, nede someuer ; 36, ye had ben in ; 38, than euer.

804. 2, I befeche you ; 3, be of a ; 5, we all ; welth ; 8, all whiche ; that ye ; 9, is no ; 10, but that ; 11, no meanes ; 12, those that ; 13, [that] ye ; 21, wolde fayne ; 23, do what I may ; 25, you or not ; 26, to hym ; 29, with fyr V. ; 31, made knyghtes ; one of them ; 33, fyr H. ; 35, whiche ; Lorphelyns sone ; 36, dame A. ; [and she] ; 37, [and].

805. 3, and anone they ; 4, & on ; 5, and what ; 7, score good and valyaunt ; 8, that I ; 9, well wyllynge ; 15, [and treason] ; 19, is not ; 21, [I wote well as is] as ; 32, it pacyently ; 33, our lorde god.

806. 2, yf ye ; chrystened of ; 3, ony wrong ; 6, otherwyfe ; 10, and the quene dye so ; 11, O good lord Iesu ; 13, and from ; 14, ye that be of my ; 16, doo yourfelfe ; 19, to be done ; 20, we thynke that the best ye may do is this / that ; 22, to be supposyd that yf ye ; 23, or els ; 31, ryght lothe ; 32, for to ; 35, me moche ; 38, sholde rescowe.

807. 2, dyd not he kepe ; 4, your bothe aduyfes ; 6, be that ; 9, vnto ; 11, home agayne ; [and loue and thanke] ; 17, slewe that noble knyght ; 18, a sharpe groüded ; 22, well that ; 26, yf it ; on the ; 29 a lytell ; 31, whiche whan ; 34, rode streyght ; and beten.

808. 3, dyd ye take hym; 5, fyr C.; 8, A Iesu; 12, wyll holde; 13, kyng A.; but that; 14, [the] deth; 15, to [the]; 19, be the; 27, [it] is; 31, knyghte alyue; 35, whiche he had.

809. 5, [I dare faye]; 6, ony vylony; 14, A. vnto fyr G.; 15, for trewly; no grete; 17, and also he had almoost; 18, . xij . good; 27, of my fones; 32, that ye wyll; 33, best araye; 35, receyue her.

810. 1, do in my lyfe; 2, that I; 3, lady quene; fuche a; 7, vnto fyr; 10, [the] whiche; fall there; 12, vnto kyng; 22, vnto her; 28, one whiche; 29, her iudgement; 30, quene was; vnto; and also that she was; 31, warnȳge therof; 35, [ful].

811. 4, whiche were; 7, fyr G.; 15, vnto quene; 17, that the quene; 26, many knyghtes; were fory of; 27, to; 32, he was reuyued he; 33, ony crowne; I haue now.

812. 2, haue I; 4, neuer more; 8, [telle]; 9, nygh go; 11, all erthly men; 15, [that] he; 18, tyll that; 20, sayd the kyng; 23, [fayre]; 25, the kyng; 29, had; 31, kyng A.; 36, in the; And fo for to; 37, yf he had not.

813. 4, the man / your two bretherne; 6, all the good of; 9, fyr L.; 10, [euer]; 11, fyr G.; 13, to haue ben with; 16, the man; 17, is all; 18, downe in a fwoune; 21, ranne vnto; 23, and my; fyr G. also; 25, fell downe in a fwoune; reuyued agayne fyr G. spake & sayd; 28, be buried; 30, myne owne lord; 32, that ye wyll tell me; 34, neyther of them bothe.

814. 1, [of hem both]; 4, My moost gracyous lord & myne vncle sayd; 6, that now; the whiche; 9, vnto the; 16, herde; 19, [he sayd]; 22, kyng A.; 23, and in y^e; 24, to asssemble; 27, all how; 29, where as; 30, many a; 38, bothe within.

815. 1, and fyr G.; 2, [al]; 4, full stronge; 5, not ryde; 6, wolde fuffre; 9, So it; on a; [tyme]; 10, to; 12, [al] it is; ye laboure at; 14, out my selfe; 16, fyr L.; 17, in the; 20, thou well; 21, wyll be; 22, and the noble; whiche; 25, [lord and]; 26, wyte you.

816. 4, [as ony is lyuyng vnto her lord]; 11, or that; 15, my gracyous; 17, that I had; [grete]; 19, as she; 22, in a; 26, that my; 28, it shall; 31, vpon thy; 33, [and]; 36, with thyne; 38, by Iesu sayd fyr L.

817. 1, vnto; 3, fyr L.; 4, false recreaūt; 6, that I; vnto the; 7, me fore; 8, that it; 9, for none; 13, haft destroyed; 16, as ye my; 17, [ye] haue; 18, and that; 20, but wyte; that I; 21, for it; [on hand]; 24, Than sayd fyr G. vnto fyr L.; 26, at fuche a vaūtage; 28, I shall haue but; 29, [the noble].

818. 2, vnto them; and fyr S. his brother; 4, & to hym sayd thus; 5, that we; 6, fyr G.; vnto you; we beseche you; 8,

[playnly]; 14, loth to do it; 20, is not this; 26, than on the morowe; 32, in [a]; 33, myddle batayle; 35, as valyaunt.

819. 5, vnto the; 6, moo other; [And]; 8, was there; 13, moche damage and hurte; 19, for to; 24, vnto hym thus; 26, vttermest; but euer; 29, was agayne; 32, rode forth; 34, for to reft; 35, deed bodyes.

820. 3, So on; 4, [there]; as grymme; 7, had done hym; 8, all the; 10, furyously; 11, groude; ioyned togyder; 12, a grete; 15, were bothe; 17, that ye; 19, they doo you; 20, For alwaye; 23, at ony vauntage; 24, told hym; 29, fete lockes; slayne on bothe partyes; 30, withdrewe; And so dyd kynge A.'s party. And than; 32, and his party entred in to theyr; 33, deed bodyes; falue to; 35, not halfe so; orgulous or proude; 38, whiche was.

821. 1, moost noble; 10, the Bulles; wyft not; Gladly he wold accorde with; 18, not be reproued; 20, with hym; 22, vnto; 23, vnto kynge A.; 25, fyr L. for to; 26, as she; 29 [fayd fyr L.]; 31, [euer]; 32, this that; fure for me & myne.

822. 1, that she; 2, for to; 4, for to drede; 5, and my; 6, to were dyftressed; 13, before me; 14, knowlege; 16, [thenne]; ye may faye; 17, lorde kyng; for my lady the; 19, for kynge A.'s loue; 22, kyng A.'s; 24, all they; 25, to the; 27, had with her; 29, vpon; 32, and fet; 33, And quene Gueneuer; 36, vnto; 37, in to; 38, euery man.

823. 3, fate in his fete; 7, many a; [ther]; 9, kynge A.; 10, not one; 12, spake he vnto the moost noble kyng A. full knyghtly / and lyke a man of grete honour; 13, that by; 15, vnto you; 16, [that] he; 18, vnto you; 20, grete; 21, the tyme; 23, lorde and kynge; 24, vnto grete; 30, agaynst . xiiij . knyghtes.

824. 1, kynge A.; 3, lord and kynge; 4, that I; 5, [yow]; 6, done you in diuers; 8, for to; 9, and in; 12, [many]; 13, myne au aunt; 17, T. de Lyones; L. de Galys; 18, to them; 19, was neuer; 21, full glad; 25, full well; 26, pulled you; 28, your face; 31, fyr T.; 32, of [his]; 37, for to.

825. 4, twayne; 11, fere y^t; 13, all erthely knyghtes; 16, that I fhold; 18, [noble]; 25, cause to make; 26, [that]; 31, is none; 35, [holyer & more]; 36, vnto theyr; than that my; [kyng &].

826. 1, [fire G.]; all the; 3, had ben; 6, it shall please hym; 7, the my; 10, fyr L.; 16, for to; 19, warnynge; 21, that thou; comen hyther; 22, yf that; 23, [fayd fyre G.]; 24, [owne]; 30, fayd these wordes.

827. 1, varyable; mutable; is no; 6, haue had; 10, [as wel]; 11, with your neuewe fyr; 12, for to werre; 14, I beseche you; 20, with you; Ye no; 24, or [that]; 27, quene G.; 28, all the

knyghtes ; 30, fende me worde ; ye be noyed ; 31, with ony ; let me haue knowlege ; 32, yf that ; 33, And so therwith ; 34, openly that all they that were there myght here hym ; me fe ; 37, vnto.

828. 1, but that they all ; 2, of theyr wyttes ; 3, so whan ; for to ; 5, waye to ; 6, And afterwarde he ; 8, sir L. departed ; 9, [holy] ; 10, y^t ; do as he ; 12, fore at my herte ; 13, banyffhed man ; 16, was banyffhed oute of this realme ; 18, departed afonder ; 23, countree ; is none ; ben here ; 24, for dyuers ; is this ; 25, Courte of kynge A. ; 26, take parte ; 28, [as] well for ; 30, I thanke ; 31, as to fuche ; 32, [for] to.

829. 5, and in ; 6, your grete ; 11, whiche ; vnto his ; 16, for to ; 17, And well an ; 19, departe from hym ; 21, where as ; 22, for to ; 26, his good ; 27, vnto ; 28, had establyffhed ; 30, And he made fyr ; to be crowned ; 32, whiche ; 33, whiche was.

830. 1, departed his hauour ; 2, those of his ; 3, And fyrst he made fyr B. duke of ; 15, hym erle ; 16, the good knyght fyr P. ; cou tree of Prouence ; 17, Langedocke ; 18, gaue hym ; 20, Angeo ; 25, [to] ; 27, [made] ; 31, all his ; 32, his quene ; kyng A. ; ouer the see.

831. 1, these tydynges ; vnto ; 2, & that they ; 3, [full] ; 4, is grete ; 7, whiche was ; 8, gyue you ; 12, all alyauntes ; 13, vnto fyr ; 14, and your ; 15, hath caused ; ouer ryde our ; 17, hyde vs in ; the good knyght fyr G. to ; 19, they were without y^e walles ; 20, [lyke] ; we are ; 25, spake all with one voyce ; 26, ryde out ; 28, whiche ; 31, yet my lordes (!) ; we are full ; [for] ; 32, warryoures that other whyle made kyng C. and my father kyng B. / & myn vn cle kyng Bors for to obey ; 36, defyringe hym to take a tratyce.

832. 1, his warre ; 3, vnto the ; 4, whose name was fyr L. ; [&] that sayd ; 6, for to ; 7, fyr L. ; 9, that are ; 10, wold that ; 11, vnto kyng A. ; 14, kyng A.'s ; ryght gladde ; 23, by cause her ; 25, vnto ; 26, ye shall faye ; 27, to fyr L. ; it was but ydle labour / now to fende to myne ; 29, y^t now ; 31, to god ; vnto the ordre of ; that I ; 34, vnto her ; 35, where as.

833. 2, that stode about hym fayd ; 5, in the myddes ; lyghtly be ; 11, and for euery of vs ; 13, as at ; on the ; 14, as the ; 15, sawe how ; was besyged ; 17, them wyghtly ; 18, armed at all poyntes ; 21, that dare ; 24, And so he ; 25, And anone sir B. ; 26, there came ; 27, vnto ; for to ; 29, ryghte spytefully ; was so fyers / that he ; 32, And thus ; [he] ; 34, of peple there was ; 35, that fyr G. ; 36, vpon a grete courser.

834. 1, doost thou hyde ; 4, kynne euery deale ; 5, than his ; fayd all ; 6, vnto fyr ; 13, a recreaunt knyght ; cōmaunded to fadell

his; 14, [lete]; 17, whiche; that I; 22, you halfe; and haue; 24, moche as; 27, to a bay; 28, fayd vnto fyr L. Syr L.; 30, began to arme; 33, [all]; 37, that there; 38, come nyghe.

835. 4, horses myght as fast as they; 7, [&] Than; 10, in many; 11, whiche an; 12, gyuen hym; 14, his owne; 17, they shold; 18, And all this; G.'s fake; 19, yf that; 20, that his; 25, had of hym grete wonder; 30, and his brethe; 31, fadde strokes; 33, [that] he; 36, Than whā fyr L.

836. 1, began he to stretche; hymselfe; 2, fayd to hym thefe wordes; 3, that ye; 6, vpon the; 7, and than; 8, thou thyselfe; 10, Syr I shall; 11, the grace of god fayd fyr L.; wyte you; 13, in to one of; 14, And anone there were leches; [&] whiche ferched his wounde; 15, falued it; 16, ye shall; 17, brynge out my; 21, warre began; 23, well seen; 27, of kyng; 28, they within; 29, aboute a thre; 33, Benwyck; 34, on hyghe; 38, foule sayenge.

837. 1, wyte you well; 4, thou traytour; [fayd he]; 6, y^t; 10, were at an ende; 18, for to; 20, they ranne; 24, full quykly auoyded; 27, for though.

838. 3, houres contynually; 4, fyr L. had grete; [for]; hymselfe; And after that y^e; 5, felte veryly; 6, myght and strength; [and that his grete power was done]; 7, haue I well; 22, to the; 27, towarde the towne.

¶ Thus endeth the .xx. boke. And here after soloweth the .xxj. boke / whiche is the last booke of this present volume. In whiche all those that dyspose them to eschewe ydelnesse whiche is mother of all vyces / redyng hystoryall maters. Some wylling to rede in deuoute medytacyons / of the humanyte and passyon of our sauour Iesu chryst. Some in lyues and paynfull martyrdomes of holy fayntes. Some in moralyfacyon & poetycall storyes. And some in knyghtly and vyctoryous dedes of noble prynces conquerours / as of this present volume of this noble conqueroure kyng Arthur / somtyme kyng of Englande may openly knowe the lamentable deth of hym and the noblest chyualrye of the worlde knyghtes of the rounde table / caused by fyr Mordred his sone and the subiectes of this realme.

839. 2, [that]; 6, he was; 8, to W.; toke [the]; 15, maner [of]; 18, [she took the toure of London]; [and]; 22, was deceyued; 23, And to make shorte; 37, [thou]; 38, that I vtterly defy the.

840. 1, that I ought; 2, where as; that my; [&] it is; 3, an abhominable; 5, heed to be stryken of; 6, curse; 8, And whan the bysshop herde that / he fledde; 10, was a relygyous heremyte;

12, fought vpon; 14 [meanys]; 15, hym not; 18, fyege fro fyr; & that he; 19, for to be; 20, to wryte letters vnto; 21, vnto hym; 27, hym than; we all; 28, [ye not]; 30, knyghtes & men of worthyp; 31, not we Englyfthe men; holde vs; [them]; 34, Alas alas.

841. 2, towarde D.; 6, fangled; 9, carakes; 11, vpon the; was there; 20, noble knyght; 25, there he; [thenne] whan he came to hȳfelfe agayn; 26, [fyr G.]; 34, wounde that; L. du lake; of the; 35, yf fyr L. had; 37, I my felfe am caufer.

842. 1, cankered; 5, vnto; a lettre; 6, [thenne]; 7, [thenne] fyr G.; 8, he had ben; 12, vnto the; 14, whiche thou; 16, vnto my; 20, for to; 21, that fame; 28, & vncle kyng A.; 29, whiche is; hymfelfe; he wolde; 32, yf she had; 33, lorde & vncle.

843. 1, the as thou arte the; 3, and also; 8, fyr G. betoke his foule in to the handes of our lorde god; let bury; 9, castel of D.; 11, to kynge A.; 13, on; 19, made to bury them; And those that were fore wounded he caufed; 22, wrongfully; 23, the noble; 24, vnto the see fyde vnto S.; 27, vpon a; 29, vpon that traytour fyr M.; 31, Southery; 33, and vnto kynge A.; 34, that loued; 35, And so vpon.

844. 1, hym thought he; 2, vnto a; 5, and a depē; 8, that he; 13, in a flombrynge; 14, kynge A. thought that there; hym verily; 16, fo whan; [thenne]; 18, the alyue; 20, that ben comen; 21, the ladyes; 22, a man; 23, in a ryghtwyfe; 25, to you; 27, bothe ye; 31, men that; 32, vnto you; his mooft; 34, profre hym; 36, & shall rescowe.

845. 2, lyghtly; 12, grymly; 15, And after the dayes of kynge A. to haue all Englande to his obeyssaunce; 17, So than; 20, And than; 24, for [I]; 25, dyd warne; that yf; 27, euer standeth before; 28, that my; vpon.

846. 1, [than]; 4, rode he; 6, raffhyng; 8, But alway; 10, dyd there ryght nobly; sholde do; 11, he neuer; 14, groude; 16, [wode]; 20, [one]; the Butler; 22, kyng A.; 24, vnto myne; 25, [were]; fyr M. is; whiche; 28, to fyr L.; 29, whiche hath wrought all this woo; 32, on hym; My good lord; remembre well your dreame that ye had this nyght; 36, be god.

847. 1, is done; 7, vnto hym; 11, with all the; 12, vp to the ende; 13, that he helde; 15, banne; therwith; fell downe; 17, [de butlere]; 24, and he was; 25, went; 32, by myne aduyfe; 33, you vnto.

848. 1, aketh fo; 4, warned me; 5, vp [the] kynge A.; on the one; 7, that lyfte / that some of his; 9, kynge A. came to hymfelfe agayne; 11, 17, 20, kynge A.; 12, vnto me; fo to; 14,

than I haue; 15, for to; 22, vnto; 24, thou shalte se there; 26, And soo; 27, [the] hafte; 29, in to; 33, fayd he; 35, kyng A.; 36, [ageyn].

849. 1, it synne; 4, fayd he; 7, two tymes; 8, vnto me; 12, I cōmaunde the; And yf; 17, water as ferre; 21, vnto; 22, had seen; fro hens; 23, kyng A.; 31, those thre quenes set them downe.

850. 1, kyng A.; 3, for to; 4, euer more; 13, vpon; 14, [was] newly; 15, had banysshed; 16, buried; My fayre; 18, whiche brought this deed corps; 30, your owne; 31, fyr B. abode; 32, whiche had ben; 35, no more wryten in my copy of the certaynte of his deth; 35, *from* "wryton," *to next page*, 1, "redde," *is omitted*.

851. 2, a barge; 3, [quene]; 5, Nymue; 6, whiche; fyr P.; 11, vnto his; 14, not of a certaynte; it was; 16, it playnly; 17, Some men yet; 19, Iesu Chryft; 24, we here; 26, And so; [theyr]; 28, that her lord kyng A.; 29, she stale; 36, that was a.

852. 9, wonders wroth [oute of mesure]; 10, now I repēt me; 11, [euer]; 12, to my; kyng A.; [doleful] lettre of fyr G. / that my lorde kyng A.; 19, wyte ye; 23, & fyr; 28, ye go se; 33, for to; 34, see & arryued at D.; 36, enquiryed of men; kyng A. was.

853. 4, 5, kyng A.; 9, tombe of fyr G.; 10, full hertely; 12, ale as the myghte ete and drynke; 13, dealed; 17, fyr L. offred fyrft; 19, *from* "& also," *to* 20, "pounde," *is omitted*; 20, to nyght; 21, vpon his; And in; 22, called vnto hym; 23, thus he fayd; 28, and grete; 29, haue herde; 37, man neyther.

854. 1, westwarde; 2, vnto a; 4, thre tymes; 7, this chere; 8, whiche; 9, to call; vnto me; And whan; vnto her; 10, [to all the ladyes]; 11, [hath] all; 13, wyte ye well fyr L.; 15, helth; for to haue; 16, Iesu chryft; at the dredefull daye of dome; 17, synfull creatures; 19, vs two; 20, neuer loke; And ferthermore I; 21, behalfe ryghte straytly; and that vnto; shortly thou; 23, the fyr L.; not ones; 24, for bothe; me & the; 25, go thou vnto; 26, I beseeche you; 27, lord god; 29, now returne; in to my; 32, you vnto; 33, please god; & specially to praye for you; 34, may not; 35, ye faye well fayd he.

855*. 3, in the quest of; 4, my lady dame G.; 5, you vnto; me vnto; 6, haue I; 8, me for to; realme and countree; 10, [euer]; 11, [yf] that; ony good; 13, neuer more; 14, fuche thynges; And so they; 17, as though they; 27, threwe abroad; 37, [for].

856*. 3, ryde through all Englonde to seke; 4, vnto; 8, came vnto; whan he sawe; 13, [sir Blamour]; 14, abode there styll; 15, sawe that; 20, but that; 21, dyd lowly; 24, & in; 26, so that; 27, vnto; 28, hym towarde A.; 29, by that tyme; thou come; 30,

puruey the ; 31, and brȳge you ; bury it ; 32, thryes vnto fyr L. ; 34, or it was ; 36, this vyfyon ; 37, on fote ; they wente.

857. 5, or she dyed ; 7, for to ; 10, And this ; 11, all these two ; vntyll ; 14, Dirige at nyght and the masse on the morowe ; 17, his feuen ; [hors] ; 18, holy & deuout ; 20, tyll they came to G. ; 27, & than she ; 28, after in ; put in to ; 29, styll vpon the grounde ; 30, ye are ; 32, well myne ; 34, none ende ; 35, and call to mynde her beaute / her bounte / and her nobleffe ; was as well ; 36, kyng my lorde A. as with her ; And also whan I fawe the corpes of that noble kyng and noble quene so lye togyder in that colde graue made of erth / that somtyme were so hyghly set in moost honourable places / truly ; 38, my wretched ; how I through.

858*. 1, and through my prefumpcyon and pryde ; 2, the whiche ; euer were ; 3, of theyr ; 4, sanke & imprest ; so in to ; that all my naturall strengthe fayled me / so that I ; 7, but cōtynually morned vntyll he ; And than ; 10, was as than ; shorter by a cubyte ; 12, but nedefully as nature requyred somtyme he ; & alwayes he ; 13, vpon ; G.'s tombe ; 15, nothyng.

¶ O ye myghty and pompous lordes shynynge in the glory transitory of this vnstable lyf / as in regnyng ouer grete realmes and myghty grete countrees / fortyfied with stronge castels & toures edified with many a ryche Cite . Ye also ye fyers and myghty knyghtes so valyaunt in aduenturous dedes of armes Beholde beholde / se how this myghty conquerour kyng Arthur / whome in his humayne lyfe all the worlde doubted . Ye also this noble quene Gueneuer whiche somtyme fate in her chayre adourned with golde / perles & precyous stones / now lye full lowe in obscure fosse or pyt couered with cloddes of erth and claye . Beholde also this myghty champyon fyr Launcelot / pereles of knyghthode / se now how he lyeth grouelyng vpon the colde moulde / now beyng so feble and faynt / that somtyme was so terryble / how & in what maner ought ye to be so desyrous of worldly honoure so daungerous . Therefore me thynketh this present boke called la mort d'arthur is ryght necessary often to be radde . For in it shall ye fynde the moost gracyous knyghtly & vertuous warre of y^e moost noble knyghtes of the worlde / wherby they gate prayfynge cōtynual . Also me semeth by y^e ofte redyng therof / ye shall gretely desyre to accustom your selfe in solowyng of those gracyous knyghtly dedes / that is to faye / to drede god / and to loue ryghtwyfnes / faythfully & couragiously to serue your souerayne prynce . And the more y^t god hath gyuen you the tryumphall honoure / the meker ye ought to be / euer feryng the vnstableness of this deceyuable worlde . And so I passe ouer and turne agayn vnto my mater ; 15,

¶ So within ; 19, that ye wyll gyue ; 20, vnto a ; 21, but a ; 24, I wyll now ; 25, I praye you gyue ; 27, vnto ; 29, Bamborow ; 33, all his ; 34, went all ; 35, byffhop that ; 36, on a ; 37, came vnto.

859*. 5, vpon one daye ; 6, towarde heuen ; 18, with the corps ; 19, vnto ; 27, had fought ; 30, E. de Marys ; 32, fynge the feruyce full lamentably ; 33, [wepe].

860*. 3, [that] ; of none ; 9, thou were ; 12, in the reste ; 15, vnto his ; 17, whiche was ; 25, Vyllyers le valyaunt ; 34, was bothe ; 36, that fyr L. ; [for] so to do ; 38, and turkes ; they dyed ; 39, hole booke.

861*. 8, For translacyon of this boke was fynysfhed . [The Colophon see on the Plate facing page 17].

LIST OF NAMES AND PLACES.¹

- Abbay of the black Crosse**, 402
Abbay, the whyte, 623
Abbay of nonnes, 612
Abbey of la beale aduenture, 123
Abblasoure, castel of, 631
Abel, son of Adam, 696
Abilleus, Abelleus, syr, 111, 112
Ablamor of the Maryse, 107
Accolon of gaulle, syr, 89; follows a hart with Arthur and Vryence, 125; comes into the power of Morgan le fay, 126; awaking in the morning he finds himself in a deep well; a dwarf comes to ask him if he would fight for Morgan le fay, he promises to do it, and receives Excalibur and the sheath, 128; tells sir Ontzlake of his intention to fight with the knight, 129; fights with king Arthur, 130; nearly overcomes him, but by Nymue's intervention drops Excalibur, 131; is thrown down by Arthur; tells him Morgan le fay's commission, 133; is brought to an abbey and dies of his wounds, 135, 136; 138; 140
Adam, first man, 696
Adtherp, syr, 318, 319
Agente,² earldom of, given to syr Clegys by syr Launcelot, 830
Aglouale, syr, brother of Percyual, 256; 258; 451; 586, 587, 588, 589; 636; 790
Agrauayne, syr, brother of syr Gawayne; comes with queen Morgause and his brothers to Arthur's court, 65; assists at his father Lot's burial, 88; fights in a tournament near the Castel peryllous, 258; marries the niece of lady Lyonesse, 270; is thrown down by Palomydes, 433; defeated by Breuse saunce pyte, 454, 455; fights against Tristram, but is overcome, 507; kills Lamorak with his brothers, 512, 513; accuses with Mordred queen Gueneuer, 726; is at the queen's dinner in London, 728; is smitten down by Launcelot, 743; does not rejoice with king Arthur in Launcelot's return, 759; is sent by Arthur to examine the barget, 761; fights in a tournament at Candlemas, 766; thrown down by Launcelot, 767; rides out maying with the queen, 772; is smitten down by Mellyagraunce, 774; handles Vrrre's wounds, 790; is the cause of king Arthur's death, 796; accuses the queen openly of adultery, 797;

¹ This is the first complete and critical Index to "Le Morte Darthur" ever compiled. There occur about 850, and, counting all the various spellings, nearly 1000 names in the text. It was a tedious and difficult task, on account of the bad orthography and carelessness with regard to the names of persons. As the geography of the whole book is confused and unintelligible, I have abstained from giving any conjectures. In cases where I felt sure, I have stated my opinion. The numbers refer to the pages. In some cases I have stated in foot-notes the readings of names of persons and places as they occur in the French and English sources respectively, in order to show how little one can depend on them.

² Agente may be either Agen, a city in France, capital of the department of Lot and Garonne, a bishop's see, or the Agendicum (afterwards Sens) of the ancient Gaule; perhaps also Araegenus (Argentan).

- tells king Arthur about her, 798; advises the king to go hunting and to take the queen by surprise, 799; comes to capture Launcelot, 800; calls him a traitor, 801; is killed by Launcelot, 803; 805; 809; 823
- Aguarus**, syr, nephew to the dead man whom syr Launcelot finds in a chapel, 656, 657
- Agwysaunce**, **Anguyssaunce**, kyng of Ireland, 52; 54; 56; 60; 257; 259, 260
- Aladuke**, lord, 171
- Alardyn of the Ilys**, syr, 106
- Albons**, St., 39
- Aleyn**, syr, 427
- All halowmasse**, **al halowmas**, 49 (the mass or feast of all Saints, 31st of October)
- Almayn**, 162; 175; Germany
- Almesburye**,¹ 851; 856*, 857*
- Alphegus of spayne**, syr, 788
- Alps**, mountains, 162
- Alyduke**, **Alyduk**, syr, a knight of the round table, not identical with the above Aladuke,² 196*; 728; 744
- Alys la beale pylgrym**, 475, 476, 477; becomes wife of Alysaunder le orphelyn
- Alysaunder the grete**, the myghty Conquerour, 1; 177; 827
- Alysaunder le orphelyn**, son of kyng Marke's brother prynce Boudwyne, comes with his parents to the court of king Mark, 466; is taken to the Castel Magouns, after his father's death, to be educated, 467; is made knight and receives his father's doublet, 468; is well equipped, 469; Trystram advises him by letter to go to Arthur's court, 470; he does not follow the advice; smites down four knights of Morgan le fay and fights and overcomes Malegryn, 472; is taken to Morgan le fay's castle, where he promises, in order to get healed, to stay twelve months, 473; a damoyssel helps him, 474; he fights against several knights, 475, 476; becomes enamoured of Alys la beale pylgrym and marries her, 477, 478; 744; his death referred to, 792
- Alysaundrye** (? country or city), 163
- Amant**, syr, 423, 424; 436
- Ambage**, country of, 163 (? one of the provinces or towns of the Roman Empire)³
- Andred**, **Andret**, syr, nephew of kyng Marke, cosyn to syr Trystram, 297; 321; 325, 326; 368; 401, 402, 403, 404; 459
- Anglides**, **Anglydes**, wife of Boudwyn and mother to Alysaunder le Orphelyn, 466, 467, 468, 469
- Anguysshe**, kyng of Ireland, once mistakenly (161) called kyng of Scotland, sends to king Mark to ask truage for Cornwall, 277; receives the wounded Tramtryst in his country, 285; arranges a great tournament, 286; asks Trystram why he does not fight, 287; allows Trystram to leave his country safely, 290; is summoned by Bleoberys and Blamor to appear before king Arthur, 302; has to send within three days a knight who will fight for him, 304*; gladly accepts Trystram's offer, 305; yields to Trystram's wish to save Blamor's life, 307; takes Trystram to Ireland and tells all the people about his valiant deed, 308; gives his daughter la beale Isoud to Trystram as wife for king Mark, 309; 314; 372; 410, 411; 529; 554; 738; 741, 742; 757; 763; 765; 790
- Anguyssaunce**. See **Agwysaunce**
- Anioye**, duke of, 830; Dynas the seneschal is made duke of A. by Launcelot
- Annecians**, syr, god-son of kyng Bors, 60

¹ Almesbury is a town in Wiltshire not far from Salisbury. Originally the name was Ambrosebury, then Ambresbury, and from this has been made the present name.

² E. Brook, "Morte Arthur" (Thornton MS.), in his Index, apparently considers Aladuke, Aliduke, and Alidoyke as names belonging to the same person.

³ "Morte Arthur" (Thornton MS.) reads "Ambyganye."

Annoure, lady, a sorceress, 361, 362
Ansirus, *Anserus*, duke, 475; called
 le pylgrym, father of Alys
Antemes, syr, 63
Anwyk, 858*; one of the places
 where Launcelot's body is supposed
 to be buried, perhaps identical with
 Ioyous gard
Anyause, kyng, 673; 675
Arabe, mounte of, 168; in Wales
Arabye, 163; Arabia
Arbray, castel of, 495
Archade, syr, 482, 483
Archbysshop of Caunterbury, *see*
 Caunterbury
Argustus, sone of kyng Harlon, 663
Arguys, syr, 459
Armathye, *see* Ioseph
Armynak, syr Lauayne is made erle
 of Armynak by syr Launcelot,
 830
Arnolde de Brewse, 220; 233; 259
Arrage, country of, 163 (? one
 of the provinces of the Roman
 Empire)^f
Arrok de greuaunt, syr, 793
Arrouse, erle, 483
Arroy, foreste of, 144
Arthur, kyng of Brytayne, son of
 Vtherpendragon and Igrayne, be-
 gotten in the castel of Tyntigail,
 37; born, delivered to Merlyn, who
 takes him to Ector, 38; rides with
 Ector and his son Kay to London;
 pulls a sword out of a stone, and
 gives it to Kay, 41; pulls the
 sword out again before Ector;
 promises to make Kay seneschal
 after his becoming king, 42; draws
 the sword out again before the
 lords and commons at Christmas,
 Candlemas, Easter and Whitsun-
 tide, and is crowned king of Eng-
 land, 43; makes Kay seneschal,
 Baudewyn of Brytayne constable,
 Vlflys chamberlain, Brastias war-
 den of the north; goes to Wales;
 orders the next feast of Pentecost
 to be celebrated at Carlyon, 44;
 many kings and lords refuse to
 recognise him, 45; speaks to the

rebellious; fights against them
 with his sword Excalibur, 46; kills
 many knights; goes to London and
 assembles his lords and barons; by
 Merlin's advice, and with the assent
 of the lords, he sends for the kings
 Ban and Bors, 47; receives Ban
 and Bors, and gives in their honour
 a great festival and tournament at
 Hallowmas, 49, 50; fights against
 the seven kings, 51-62; delivers
 king Lodegrean; sees his future
 wife Gueneuer for the first time,
 63; rides to Carlyon after Ban's
 and Bors' departure, 64; falls in
 love with Lot's wife, his sister,
 whom he does not yet know; begets
 on her Mordred, who afterwards
 destroys him; has a marvellous
 dream; the next morning, to dis-
 tract his thoughts, goes to hunt;
 meets the questing beast; a knight
 takes his horse away, 65; Merlyn
 finds him pensive; tells him that
 Igrayne is his mother; returns to
 him as a child and as an old man,
 66; is told that God is dissatisfied
 with him; asks Ector and Vlflys
 about his birth; sends for Igrayne,
 67; finds that Merlyn has told him
 the truth; embraces Igrayne, 68;
 makes Gryflet knight, 69; receives
 the ambassadors from Rome; re-
 fuses to pay the truage; saves
 Merlyn from some ruffians, 70;
 meets Pellinore, fights with him, is
 thrown down, and his sword broken,
 71; by Merlyn's intervention he
 is saved from death; is healed by
 a hermit; returns with Merlyn,
 72; sees in the middle of a lake a
 hand holding a sword; promises a
 gift to the lady of the lake, and
 gets the sword; intends to fight
 with Pellinore, but is dissuaded by
 Merlyn, 73; learns the qualities of
 Excalibur; refuses to send his
 beard to king Ryons; on the con-
 trary, threatens to conquer his
 country, 74; in order to avoid
 Merlyn's prophecy with regard to

¹ "Morte Arthur" (Thornton MS.) reads here "Orcage."

Mordred, he orders all children¹ born on May-day to be destroyed; Mordred, however, is preserved, 75; cannot pull out the sword of a damoyssel sent by Lylle of Avelion, 76; requests Balyn to remain in his court, 78; hears from the lady of the lake the name of the sword; refuses to grant her the gift she asks; banishes Balyn from his court, 79; orders the lady of the lake, killed by Balyn, to be richly buried, 80; hears from Merlyn that Balyn has defeated and taken prisoner king Ryons; prepares his army to meet Nero, Ryons' brother, 86; overcomes king Lot by Balyn's help, 87; buries king Lot with great honours, and orders a monument to be erected on his tomb, 88; gives Excalibur to the charge of Morgan le fay, his sister, 89; graciously receives Balyn again, and tells him to fetch back a mourning knight, 89; orders this knight, who is killed by Garlon the Invisible, to be richly buried, 90; by Merlyn's advice he overcomes gradually all his enemies; tells Merlyn his wish to marry Gueneuer; after in vain trying to dissuade the king, Merlyn yields to his desire and sends to king Lodegrean, 100; receives Gueneuer and the round table with a hundred knights; tells Merlyn to find out the best knights of the country; grants young Gawayn's desire, 101; grants the wish of Aries the cowherd, 102; makes Tor, Pellinore's son, and Gawayn, his nephew, knights, 103; is wedded with great solemnity to Gueneuer in St. Stephen's Church at Camelot, 104; is displeased with Gawayn for killing a lady, 109; gives armour and a sword to Tor as reward for his valour, 113; receives Pellinore, 117; gives lands and properties to his knights; tells them to be brave and virtuous,

and makes them to swear that they would keep his orders and the principles of the round table, 118; is warned by Merlyn to keep his sword, 119; holds a feast at Camelot; returns to Cardoylle; hears that several kings have invaded his country; goes to defend his country; takes Gueneuer with him to the north, 120; is attacked unexpectedly during the night, but is saved by the courage of his knights, 121; defeats his enemies; thanks God for the victory, 122; wishes to replace the knights of the round table killed in the battle, 123; prefers Tor to the son of Bagdemagus, 124; hunts with Vryens and Accolon; they follow a hart; they find a little ship, 125; twelve damoyssels receive the king and his companions; they are well entertained and go to rest; the next morning Arthur finds himself in a dark prison, 126; is ready to fight and to deliver all the prisoners, 127; prepares at once to fight; receives by a damoyssel a sword like Excalibur, 129; fights with Accolon, who has Excalibur, 130; is nearly overcome, but is saved by the damoyssel of the lake; gets Excalibur, 131; recognises the treason; overcomes Accolon; forces him to tell all he knows, 132; pardons Accolon, 133; is healed in an abbey, and sends Accolon's body to Morgan le fay, 135; is robbed of the sheath of Excalibur by Morgan le fay; follows her, 137; refuses, by the advice of the lady of the lake, the cloak of gold and jewels sent by Morgan le fay, 139; receives Gawayn, Vwayn, and Marhaus, 159; sends word to the emperor Lucius, in answer to his demand for truage, that he will make war against him, 160; consults with his lords what to do, 161; sends the ambassadors back

¹ This passage is most likely suggested by the well-known Biblical incident of Herod's murder of the children. It is very similarly told in the Huth "Merlin."

and prepares for war, 162; trusts his kingdom to Baudewyn and Constantyn, takes leave of Gueneuer, goes to sea at Sandwich, 164; has a marvellous dream on the ship, which a philosopher interprets to him, 165; arrives at Barflete in Flanders; resolves to fight against a giant, 166; goes to St. Mychels mount and kills the terrible giant; pikes the giant's head on a pole and shows it to all people; gives all the riches and treasures of the giant to his people, reserving for himself his club, 167, 168; sends Gawayn, Borce, Lyonel, and Bedewere to Lucius to ask him to leave the country, 169; fights against the Romans, 170, 171; overcomes them, sends the prisoners to Paris, 172; fights again, does personally great deeds of arms, kills the giant Galapas; is hurt in the face by Lucius, 173; cleaves Lucius' head with Excalibur; defeats the Romans entirely; orders the wounded to be attended to, and the dead to be buried, 174; continues his victorious career through Lombardy and Tuscany, 175; conquers many cities, 181; comes to Rome; gives rich reward to his allies and knights; returns home; is received by Gueneuer at Sandwich, 182; keeps his court, 183; receives Pedyvere at Winchester; holds Whitsuntide with his knights; is glad of Launcelot's return, 211; hears from Kay and others of Launcelot's valiant deeds, 212; grants to Gareth two wishes, 214; allows him to take the adventure of damoyssel Lynet, 216; receives at Pentecost all the knights that Gareth has overcome, 250; asks news about Gareth, 251; declares to the queen of Orkeney, who reproaches him for having badly received her son, that he did not know him, 252; tells her how Gareth came to his court, and consoles her, 253; sends to lady Lyonesse; she comes to him; they agree to have a great festival on

Assumption day near Lyonesse's castle, 255; comes to the Castel peryllous beside the yle of Auylyon, 256; seeks Gareth in vain, 262; finds him at last, and is very happy for his sister's sake; wonders that Lyonesse does not come; sends to fetch her, 268; finds that Lyonesse and Gareth love each other; orders their wedding to take place at next Michaelmas, 269; comes to Kynkenadon; gives Lynet to Gaheris as wife, and the niece of Lyonesse to Agraunayne, 270; Breunor le noyre comes to his court, 338; finds out that Breunor is a brave man, 339; makes him knight and gives him a quest, 340; comes into the Forest perillous, is kept prisoner by lady Annowre, 361; is saved by Trystram, whom he does not recognise, 362; is at the tournament near the Castel of Maydens, 384-87; does great feats of arms; is thrown down by Trystram, 391; rides to Launcelot's help; seeks Trystram, 395; declares he never saw a knight doing so well as Trystram; makes a great festival, 395; blames Launcelot for Trystram's departure; sends ten knights out to seek him, 397; hears by a lady that the shield of Trystram is made by Morgan le fay to dishonour him, 411; fights against Trystram, but is overcome, 412; is pleased at Trystram's arrival at his court; gives him the seat of Marhaus at the round table, 422; is very angry at king Mark's unknighly behaviour, 436; allows Launcelot to bring back king Mark, but orders him to spare his life, 437; pardons Mark again, 438; hears how his fool Dagonet had frightened king Mark, 445; is glad at Dynadan's return, 446; asks him about his adventures; orders a tournament to take place near a priory, 447; meets Lamorak, 448; reconciles Trystram and king Mark, 449; makes Percyual knight, 451; is told by Launcelot that Gawayn and his brothers seek to destroy Lamorak, 453; hears

from Trystram and Isoud; writes to them, 455; gets a letter from king Mark, 456; understands by this letter the king's evil intentions, 457; 487; 499; 532, 533; fights against Dynadan, 534; is thrown out of the saddle by Trystram, 535; 536; 539, 540; wishes to see la beale Isoud; is smitten down by Palomydes, 541, 542; 545; comes with Launcelot to call on Trystram and Isoud; praises Isoud's beauty, 551; asks Trystram why he fought against him in the tournament; reproaches Palomydes, 552, 553, 554; goes to Camelot with his knights, 556; hears about the knight who shall sit in the Syege Peryllous, and win the Hooly Grail, 571; meets Elayne, mother of Galahad, 581; makes Helyn le blanck, the son of Bors, knight of the round table, 604; sees Launcelot again after his madness, 605; keeps Whitesuntide at Camelot, 612, 613*, 614*, 615; 618, 619, 620, 621; rejoices in his knights' return from the quest of the Sangreal, 725; is asked by Mador de la porte to burn Gueneuer; blames the queen for having offended Launcelot; tells her to find a knight who is ready to fight for her, 730, 731; Gueneuer tells him that Bors will take up her cause, 733; 736; thanks Launcelot for having saved his wife, 737; 741; sees on the Thames a barget; sends Kay, Brandyles, and Agravayn to see what is in it; goes to see himself; finds a letter in the fair maiden's hand, 761; sends for Launcelot; asks him to bury the maiden, 762, 763; 766; 769, 770; 786, 787; thanks Launcelot for having again rescued his queen, 788; receives Vrre's mother; resolves to handle Vrre's wounds, and to ask all his lords and knights to do the same, 789, 790; asks for Launcelot, 793; declares if Launcelot cannot heal Vrre's wounds, there will be no knight able to do it, 794; thanks God for Vrre's healing; makes a great tournament;

makes Vrre and Lavayn knights of the round table, 795; asks why the knights quarrel, and hears of the love between Gueneuer and Launcelot, 798; listens to Agrauayne's advice; goes hunting, 799; learns from Mordred what has happened, 807; sentences Gueneuer to death, 808; consults with Gawayn, 809; tells Gareth and Gaherys to be present at the queen's death, 810; hears that Launcelot has delivered the queen, and killed, amongst many others, Gareth and Gaherys, and faints for great sorrow, 811; tells Gawayn about all, and regrets that through this fatal deed all his court is destroyed, 812, 813; resolves to go to war against Launcelot, 814; besieges Ioyous gard, 815; fights against Launcelot and his knights, 818, 819, 820; receives letters from the pope, 821; gets Gueneuer again; is inclined to pardon Launcelot, but prevented by Gawayn, 823; 829; leaving the government of his country in Mordred's hands, he crosses over with Gawayn and many knights to attack Launcelot in his own country, 830; 832; besieges the city of Benwyk, 833; 835; falls sick for Gawayn's sake, 837; receives news from England that Mordred has made himself king, 838; arrives at Dover and fights against Mordred; is nearly out of his mind when he hears of Gawayn's death, 841, 842; lets Gawayn be buried in the chapel of Dover Castel; goes to meet Mordred at Salisbury, 843; has a wonderful dream; Gawayn's ghost appears to him, and warns him not to fight the next day, 844; sends to Mordred to offer him Cornwall and Kent, and to make peace, 845; fights desperately, 846; wants to kill Mordred, but is wounded to death by his dying son; falls down to the ground, 847; regrets that Launcelot is not there; tells Bedwere to throw his sword Excalybur into the sea, 848; feels that Bedwere deceives him; repeats his order, and

finally declares he would kill him if he refuses to throw the sword into the sea; is carried by Bedwere to the shore, and received by four queens in a little boat, 849; declares to Bedwere he wishes to go to the valley of Avylyon to heal his wounds; requests him to pray for his soul, 850; 861*

Arundel, castel of, in Southsex,¹ *see* **Magouns**, 467

Arystause, erle, 790

Aryes, the Cowherd, also called **le vayshere**, 102, 103; 430; 791

Astamor, syr, 728; 791

Astlabor, kyng, 558; 561

Astolat, townne, according to Malory it is in "Englysshe called Gylford," 738, 739.

Astolat, fayre maiden of. *See* **Elayne le blank**

Asye, 163, Asia

Auffryke, 163, Africa

Avelyon, lady lylle of,² 76; 81

Avylyon, yle of, 255, 256; vale of, 850

Babyloyne, country of, 724

Bagdemagus, **Basdemagus**, kyng of Gore, 89; 124, 125; 188; 190, 191, 192; 212; 254; 260; 479, 480; 483, 484; 486; 493, 494; 623*, 624*, 625; 714*; 716*; 831*

Balan, brother of **Balyn**, syr, 63; 79; 82, 83, 84; 86, 87, 88; 97, 98, 99

Balyn, **Balen le Saueage**, syr, called the knyght with the two swerdes; as poor knight in Arthur's court, desires to pull out a sword, 77; succeeds; thanks the king for his kindness, 78; strikes the lady of the lake's head off; is banished from the court, 79; tells his squire about

his misfortune; resolves to overcome king Ryons, in order to gain Arthur's favour again, 80; fights against Launceor, 81; kills this knight; is sorry for it; meets his brother Balan, 82; tells him his plans, 83; finds Merlyn, 84; recognises him again through his disguise; follows his advice; takes Ryons prisoner, 85; brings him to Arthur's court and gains the king's good grace, 86; helps the king in the battle against Nero, 87; comes to Arthur; is told to fetch back a knight, 89; finds the knight, who is ready to go with him, but is killed by Garlon; goes with the dead knight's lady into a forest, 90; buries the knight; comes to a castle; refuses first to give his lady, but afterwards yields; hears a noise, 91; promises his host to help him; comes to the castle of king Pellam, 92; kills Garlon; fights with king Pellam and gives him the dolorous stroke, 93; is taken up by Merlin, who tells him that they shall never meet again in this world; promises his help to a knight whom he finds in the forest, 94; goes to the castle and finds the knight's lady in the arms of another; fetches him to see his lady, 95; is warned to go no farther; hears a horn; comes to a castle; exchanges his shield; is again cautioned by a damoyse, 96; finds his brother as a red knight; does not recognise him, and is not recognised by his brother on account of the strange shield; fights against his brother, 97; kills him, and receives himself mortal wounds; dies; is buried by Merlyn, 99; 419

¹ The identification of Magouns with Arundel in Southsex is of course Malory's idea. The original French MS. does not contain anything of the sort; there is only spoken of "li chastians de magance."

² Thomas Wright, "Morte Darthur," vol. i., page 59, note 3, suggests that Lady Lylle of Aueylyon may be a corruption of "lady de l'yle d'Aueylyon," simply meaning the lady of the yle of Aueylyon. Wright, without having seen the original version, has conjectured rightly; Huth, "Merlin," i. p. 213, indeed, reads: "la dame apielee la dame de l'isle d'Avalon."

³ King Bagdemagus dies and is buried on page 714*; Galahad visits his tomb on page 716*; on page 831 he is said to have spoken again to Launcelot. As Malory used different versions, such anachronisms are natural and not infrequent.

- Bamborow**, 858; one of the names of the place where the body of syr Launcelot was supposed to have been taken to; perhaps another name for Ioyous gard
- Ban of Bewwyck**, kyng, 47, 48, 49; 51; 53; 56; 58; 60; 64
- Bandes**, kyng, 488
- Baramdoun**, 843; Barham Down, near Canterbury
- Barflete**,¹ in Flanders, 166
- Barnard**, Bernard, of Astolat, father of Elayn le blank, 739, 740, 741; 748, 749; 758, 759, 760
- Basdemagus**. *See* Bagdemagus
- Bawdewyn**, Baudewyn of Bre-tayn, 43; 44; 46; 164; 746; 756
- Bayen**, 829; supposed name for Benwyk
- Beale valet**, castel of, 455
- Bearne**, 830; Bearn, a former province of France; syr Vyllyars the valyaunt is made erle of Bearne by syr Launcelot
- Beaumayns**, surname given by syr Kay to Gareth, *meaning* Fair-Hands. *See* Gareth
- Beaume**, 829; another supposed name for Benwyk
- Bedegrayne**, bataylle of, 53-64; castel of, 51, 52; 62; forest of, 51
- Bedewere**, Bedyuere, syr, 166; 169, 170; 257; 743; 792; 846, 847, 848, 849, 850, 851; 860*
- Belangere**, constable of the castle of Magouns, 467, 468, 469
- Bellangere le beuse**, son of Aly-saunder le orphelyn, 743; 792; 804; 819; 828; 830
- Bellangere le orgulous**, syr, 792
- Bellaus**, syr, 60
- Belleus**, Bellyus, lord, 189; 212
- Bellinus**,² a fictitious kyng of Bre-tayne, 161
- Bellyaunce**, Belleaunce le orgu-lus, syr, 337, 338
- Bellyas of Flaundrys**, syr, 56 (per-haps identical with syr Bellaus, 60)
- Bendelayne**, syr, 264, 265
- Benoye**, country of, 478
- Benwyk**, by some called bayen, by others Beaume, also spelled Benwyck or barwyk, 48, 49; 51; 63; 119; 829; 833; 836; 842
- Berel**, Beriel, syr, 170; 172
- Berluse**, Berluses, Bersyles, and Bersules, syr, 423, 424; 427, 428; 436
- Bernard of Astolat**. *See* Barnard.
- Berraunt le Apres**, Baraunt, ge-nerally only called the kyng with or of the honderd knyghtes, 44; 52; 54; 56, 57, 58; 60; 388; 390, 391; 394; 491; 517; 530; 738; 748; 757; 765, 766; 768; 790
- Bertelot**, Bertolet, syr, 595
- Black crosse**, abbay of, 402
- Black knyght**, the. *See* Perard
- Blamore**, Blamor, or Blamour de ganya, syr, 259; 295; 299; 303; 305, 306, 307, 308; 311; 345; 372; 386; 397; 410; 483; 728; 744; 790; 804; 830; 856*; 860*
- Bleoberys de ganya**, syr, 57; 295, 296, 297, 298, 299, 300, 301; 305; 308; 342; 344; 373; 376; 385; 397; 399; 410; 416; 421, 422; 479; 483; 485; 501, 502, 503, 504; 534; 555; 556; 728; 743; 768; 790; is made duke of poyters, 830; 856*; 860*
- Blewe knyght**, the. *See* Persaunt of Inde
- Bleyse**, mayster of Merlyn, 61, 62
- Bloyas de la flaundres**, syr, 55
- Bloyse de la caase**, syr, 60
- Blyaunt**, syr, 594, 595; 603; castel of, 600, 601
- Bohart le cure hardy**, syr, 793; son of kyng Arthur
- Bochas**, 2; Boccacio (Caxton's Pre-face³)

¹ I did not find any town in Flanders that could be possibly supposed to be Barflete. As can be seen from the Thornton MS., Flanders is Malory's addition. Barflete is an old spelling for Barfleur, in the peninsula of Cotentin, Normandy; it is the harbour from which William the Conqueror set out for England in 1066.

² "Morte Arthur" (Thornton MS.) reads here "Belyne."

³ The work referred to by Caxton is a book printed in the year 1475 by Georg Husner in Strassburg (folio). It contains 155 leaves, 55 lines making a full page; it

Boloyn,¹ godefray of, 1 (Caxton's Preface)

Book, the frenashe, the book, booke, or the Romaunce referred to, *i.e.*, Malory's French and English sources, 40; 63; 143; 182, 183; 207; 211; 227; 233; 271; 284; 311; 328; 333; 353; 363; 393; 396; 399; 408; 463; 475; 478; 480; 536; 554; 571; 580; 601; 701; 740, 741; 744; 752; 757; 767, 768; 773; 775; 776; 777; 780; 788, 789; 791; 796; 799, 800; 811; 817; 822; 835; 837; 842; 858

Borre, 62; child of kyng Arthur and the damoyseel Lyonors

Bors, Boroe de ganyas, syr, son of kyng Bors, 143; is sent as messenger to Lucius, 169, 170; 172; is numbered among the noble knights, 232; fights with the red knight, 259; meets Trystram, 373, 374; 386; 390; 397; 410; smites down Bromel; comes to kyng Pelles, 576; is told that the child Galahad is to sit in the peryllous syege; is confessed; he has a child with the daughter of king Brangoris; goes to bed in a room with many doors; declines to unarm himself, 577; sees a great spear that comes straight towards him; the point of the spear burns; it hurts him on the shoulder; a knight comes and asks him to fight with him; they run against each other; he smites the knight down, and orders him to go to Arthur; sees many arrows come through the window; afterwards a hideous lion; he cuts his head off, 578; then he sees suddenly a dragon with a golden inscription on its forehead; when he has killed the dragon, appears an old man, who sings about Ioseph of Arymathye; sees the Holy Grail;

the old man speaks to him, 579; sees a sword hanging over his head; hears a voice which tells him that he is not yet worthy to be in this place; the next morning he leaves the place, and finds Launcelot; tells him all he has seen, 580; when Elayne tells him about Launcelot, he rebukes her; goes to seek Launcelot, 584; goes to Gueneuer and blames her for her behaviour; goes with Ector and Lyonel in search of Launcelot, 585; sends a message to Gueneuer, 586; comes to king Brandegore; finds his son, Helyn le blanck, and takes him with him to Arthur's court, 604; 612, 613*; 669; meets a man of religion on a donkey, and is recognised by him as one of the knights of the Sun-greal, 671; is told that the Holy Grail can only be got by sinless people; has to eat bread and drink water, to wear a garment; sees a great bird, who kills himself in order to feed his young ones with his blood, 672; is lodged in a tower; refuses a fine dinner, and asks for bread and water; hears the lady's story, 673; offers to be her champion; has a vision while he sleeps; rises and goes to the chapel, 674; refuses again to eat; fights with Prydam, and overcomes him, 675; gives the land back to the lady who is the right owner of it; meets two knights who lead his brother Lionel bound with them; wishes to deliver his brother; there comes a lady who implores his assistance, 676; he is doubtful what to do; prays for his brother and succours the lady; kills the knight, 677; twelve knights lead him to the lady's father; he refuses to stay with them, and goes to seek his

has no title-page and is without pagination and registration. On fol. 1 recto it commences: "*Ioannia Bocacii de Cercaldis historiographi prologus in libros incipit.*" It ends on fol. 155 verso: "*Finit liber nonus & ultimus . . . de casibus virorum illustrium.*" The eighth book contains one chapter entitled "*De Arturo britonum rege.*"

¹ "Godefray of Boloyn" was printed by Caxton in 1481. The book has no title-page, and the pages are not numbered; 142 leaves, and 40 lines to a full page. After a Preface and Table of Contents occupying eight leaves, it begins on fol. 9: "Here begynneth the boke intituled Eracles, and also of Godefrey of Boloynne," &c.

brother; finds a man of religion, who comforts him, and tells him that his brother is dead; then he interprets his visions, 678; is led to a high tower, where he is well received, and finds a fair lady, 679; the lady makes love to him, and declares, if he does not love her again, she would throw herself down from the tower, 680; he resists the temptation; the demons disappear; he thanks God; comes to an abbey and stays there; tells the abbot his intentions, 681; the abbot explains to him the meaning of the trees, 682; comes into a forest and meets a man who tells him about a tournament; finds his brother; is very pleased, but his brother rejects him, 683; is compelled to fight against his own brother; kneels down before the feet of his brother's horse; is trodden down, but is saved by the hermit, 684; prays for the hermit's life; Colgreuance appears in the extreme moment and separates the brothers, 685; after Colgreuance is overcome, Lyonel attacks him again; with tears in his eyes he takes his sword, 686; on the point of killing Lyonel, he hears a voice which tells him to stop; both are separated by a cloud, and become unconscious; the voice tells him to leave his brother and to seek Percyual; comes to an abbey; finds a ship, enters it, and falls asleep, 687; awaking, he sees Percyual and tells him how he came into the ship, and what temptations he had, 688; meets with Galahad, 691; touches a sword, 692; 699; 701; 704; 707; 715*; 717; 721; 723, 724; 727; is sent for, and requested to fight for the queen, 731; the king entreats him to yield to Gueneuer's wish; he promises to do so; rides to Launcelot, and tells him all; appears at the court again, and is blamed by his fellows, 732,

733; declares the queen is innocent, and makes himself ready to fight for her, 735; tells Arthur that a better knight than he has taken up the queen's cause, 735; 743; 751, 752, 753; finds Lauayne, who tells him where Launcelot is; is taken to Launcelot, 753; tells Launcelot that the queen is angry with him; sees the maiden of Astolat, 754, 755; is sent by Launcelot to the tournament; comes to Arthur and tells him about Launcelot, 756; reproaches the queen; fights at the tournament; smites twenty knights down; returns to Launcelot, 757; 763; 766; 769; 791; 799, 800; 803, 804, 805; 807; 819; is made king of the lands formerly belonging to Claudas, 829; 833; 855*, 856*; 858*, 859*, 860*

Bors, kyng of gaule, 47, 48, 49; 53; 56, 57; 60; 63, 64

Boudwyne, the noble prynce, brother of kyng Mark, father of Aly-sander the orphan, 465, 466, 467; 469

Braban, 175; Brabant

Bragwayne, Brangwayne, dame, mayde of La beale Isoud, wyfe of kyng Mark, 309; 316, 317; 327; 353; 369, 370; 380; 389, 390; 397, 398; 404, 405.

Brandegore, Brandegoris, Brangorys, kyng of stranggore, 52; 54; 56; 577; 604

Braundel, Brandyles, syr, 257; 359, 360, 361; 430, 431, 432, 433; 761; 772, 773, 774; 776; 792

Bracias, Barcias, Brasias, or Brastias, originally a knight of the duke of Cornwall, is made "wardeyn to wayte vpon the northe fro Trent forwardes" by kyng Arthur, 37, 38, 39; 44; 46; 48, 49; 53, 54, 55, 56; 60; 62; becomes afterwards a hermit in the forest of wynde-soure, 727; 732; 764

Brenius,¹ a fictitious king of Bry-tayne, 161

¹ The Thornton MS. has here the form "Bremyne" (line 277); there is moreover a third king of the name "Bawdewyne" mentioned.

- Breunor**, syr, of the castel **Pluere**, 310, 311, 312
- Breunor**, **Brewnor le noyre**, generally called **La cote male tayle**, 214, 215; comes to Arthur's court; is called, on account of his bad-shaped coat, **la cote mayle tayle** (*mal taillé*), 338; tells his father's death; kills a lion in the king's absence, 339; is made knight, 340; takes the adventure of the black shield; smites down **Dagonet**; is mocked at by the damoyssel, 341; is thrown down by **Bleoberis**; requests the lady not to scold him any more; smites down **Mordred**, 342; fights against a hundred knights, and overcomes them by a lady's assistance, 343; joins his damoyssel, and is laughed at again, 344; meets **Launcelot**; is continually rebuked by his lady, 345; smites a knight down, but is taken by five knights prisoner to a castle, 346; is delivered by **Launcelot**, 347; rides with him, 348; enters a fortress, 349; overcomes several knights, and is grievously wounded, 350, 351; refuses **Plenorius'** castle, provided this knight is ready to come to Arthur's court; gets the castle of **Pendragon** and all the surrounding land; comes back to Arthur's court, 352; weds the damoyssel **Maledysaunt**, 353; 728; 791
- Bruse saunce pyte**, **Breunis**, the **broune knyght wythoute pyte**, 265; 271; 304; 379, 380; 397, 398; 407; 414, 415; 421; 454; 470; 483; 500, 501; 566; 568
- Bretayn**, little or **petyte**, **royame** of, 164; 411; duchesse of, wyfe of **Howel**, cosyn of **Arthur**, 166, 167
- Bretayn**, **Grete**, 175; 626; **Britannie**, lat. gen. for **Britanniae** (*Caxton's Preface*), 2
- Briant**, **bryaunte**, **Bryan de la foreyst saueage**, syr, 56; 60; 106
- Bromel la pleche**, syr, 575, 576
- Bruse**, syr, 595
- Bryan of the Ilys**, syr, 115; 256; 258; 347, 348; 352
- Bryan de lystynoyse**, syr, 196*; 792
- Bryaunt of Northwalys**, syr, 382, 383
- Brysen**, dame, mayde of **Elayn** the daughter of **kyng Pelles**, 573, 574, 575; 580, 581, 582; 584; 598, 599
- Burgoyne**, **Burgoyne**, 164; 169; **Burgundy** or **Bourgogne**
- Cador of Cornwaille**, syr, 161, 162; 164; 171, 172
- Calabre**, 163; country of **Calabria**
- Callyburne of paue**,¹ syr, 170
- Calydone**, 692; country of (?)²
- Cambenet**, **Candebenet**, **Canbenec**, **Canbenek**, **Eustace**, duke of, 52, 53; 56, 57; 60
- Cambynes**, duke, 492
- Camelerd**, **Camelard**, **Cmyliarde**, land of, 8; 63; 100
- Camelot**, according to *Caxton's Preface*, a town in **Wales**; called in *Englysshe wynchestre*, as stated several times in the text,³ 2; 83; 99; 104; 111; 116, 117; 120; 123; 126; 135; 159; 302; 423; 436; 439, 440; 451, 452; 605; 612; 738; 741; 748; ryuer of, 414

¹ The Thornton MS. gives here no name, but speaks of "a paynyme of Perse." *Callyburne* is the name given to Arthur's sword in this romance. *Malory* may have profited by this name, as he generally calls that sword "*Excalibur*."

² "*La Queste del Saint Graal*," ed. F. J. Furnivall (1864) for the Roxburghe Club, reads here, p. 182, "qui conuerse in calidoine."

³ *Camelot* is neither situated in **Wales** as *Caxton* states, nor is the English *Winchester* identical with it. *Camel*, near *South Cadbury*, *Somerset*s, is the place where the remains of the old city of *Camelot* are still to be found.—I am indebted to *Sir Edward Strachey* for submitting to me a lecture delivered by *J. A. Bennet*, at a public meeting in *Somersetshire* in 1887, which endeavours to establish the claims of *Cadbury* and *Camelot* to be the places referred to in the romance. There is besides an interesting account given of the different quotations of these places in other English writers.

- Candelmasse, Candalmasse, Candelmas, 43, 765; Candlemas, the candle feast, a festival of the Rom. Cath. Church in honour of the second purification of the Virgin Mary, February 2nd**
- Canterbury, Caunterburye, town of, 839; 843; archbysshop of, 40; 42, 43; 46; 49; 101; 270; 839, 840; 850, 851; 855*; 857*; 859*, 860***
- Capadoce, 163; country of Cappadocia, province of Asia Minor**
- Carados, kyng of Scotland, 44; 46; 52; 257; 260; 303; 306; 315; 377; 385, 386; 470; 790**
- Carados of the dolorous toure, syr, 256; 258, 259; perhaps identical with kyng Carados**
- Carados, syre, 148**
- Carbonek, Carboneek, castel of, 644; 690; 713; 717**
- Car de Gomoret, syr, 471**
- Cardaf, capytayn, 175**
- Cardok, syr, 791**
- Cardol, syr, 49**
- Cardoylle, cyte of, 120; Carlisle**
- Cardycan, castel of, 589**
- Cardyf, place, 361; 829, 830; Cardiff**
- Carleil, Carleyl, town of, 789, 790; 795; 807; 810; 822; castel of, 799; suffrecan of, 611**
- Carlyon,¹ cyte of, 44, 45; 51; 64; 67; 73, 74; 215; 250; 456**
- Carteloyse, castel of, 700**
- Case, castel of, 574**
- Castel blank, 594, 595**
- Castel Orgulous, 342, 343**
- Castel peryllous, besyde the yle of Auylyon, 255, 256; 353**
- Castor, syr, 597, 598; 600**
- Cateland, 163; country of (?)**
- Caulas, syr, 60**
- Cayer,² 163; (?)**
- Caym, 696; brother of Abel and son of Adam and Eve**
- Cesar, Iulius, conquerour, 1; the fyrst emperour of Rome, 160**
- Chalaunce, Chalenge, Challyna, Chaleyna, duke of Claraunoe, 484, 485; 491; 766; 790**
- Champayne, 169; Champagne**
- Chappel peryllous, 205, 206**
- Charlemayn, Charles the grete, 1 (Caxton's Preface)**
- Charyot, castel, 186**
- Chestelayne, syr, 180; child and ward of syr Gawayne**
- Claryaunoe, syr, de la foreist saueage, most likely identical with Claryaunoe, or Claryaus, kyng of Northumberland, 52; 54; 56; 60; 790**
- Clarysyn, countesse, 181**
- Claryus, Clarrus, Clartus, Clarras of Cleremont, or of clere mounte, syr, 792; 805; is made a duke of Normandy by syr Launcelot, 830; 856*; 860***
- Claudas, kyng, 47, 48; 63; 119; 164; 580**
- Claudyne, son of kyng Claudas, 720**
- Clegys, syr, sometimes called of Sadok, 175; 792; 805; 830; received from Launcelot the erldome of Agente**
- Cleremond, syr, 175**
- Cloddrus, syr, 792**
- Clyasar, syr, 663; son of kyng Pelles**
- Coleyne, 163; † Cologne**
- Colgreunaunoe, Colgreunance, de gorre, syr, 60; 376; 685, 686; 793; 799; 802; 808**
- Collybe,³ sea of, 690; (?)**
- Colombe, Columbe, lady, 84; 419; 426**
- Comange, erle of, 830; this is the dignity given to Hebes le renoumes by syr Launcelot**
- Constantyn, son of Heleyne, kyng of England, 161**
- Constantyn,⁴ countrey of, besyde Bretayne, 166**

¹ This is Caerleon-upon-Usk, the Roman Isca Silurum.

² The Thornton MS. reads here "Crete." I am led to think that the copy of the MS. that Malory used was very badly written; this only would explain such blunders.

³ "La Queste del Saint Graal," ed. F. J. Furnivall (1864), reads here, page 179: "si entreient en vne forest qui duroit ius'a la mer, et estoit chele forest apielee chelibe," &c.

⁴ This is the Cotentin peninsula, in the North-west of Normandy, supposed to be named after the Emperor Constantine.

- Constantyn**, son of syr Cador of Cornewaylle, 164; 720; 792; 860*
- Corbyn**, castal of, 575; 603; cyte of, 597; pounte (i.e., bridge) of, 571; 576
- Corneus**, duke, 49; father of Lucas the bottlere
- Cornewail**, **Cornewaille**, **Cornewayle**, duke¹ of, or also called duke of Tyntagil, 35; 37; marches of, 64; country of, 75; 255; 277; 278; 291; 302; 309; 325; 334; 367; 370; 402; 404; 423
- Corsabryn**, syr, 488, 489
- Cradoks mantle**, 2 (Caxton's Preface)
- Cradulmas**, **Cardelmans**, **Cradelment**, kyng of Northwales, 52; 54, 55, 56; 60
- Crosselme**, syr, 791
- Cryst**, **Cryste**, lord Ihesu, 94; 98; 128; 152; 620; 694; incarnation of, 1 (Caxton's Preface)
- Crystmas**, **Cristmasse**, 40; 43; 763
- Curselayne**, syr, 799
- Cypres**, 163; † Cyprus
- Cyte**, the reed, 519, 520; 522, 523
- Dacie**, 2 (Caxton's Preface); lat. gen. for Daciae
- Dagonet**, syr, fool of kyng Arthur, 341, 342; 366, 367, 368; 432, 433; 445
- Dalan**, syr, 454
- Damas**, syr, 126, 127, 128, 129; 134
- Damaske**, 163; Damascus, city in Syria
- Damyete**, 163; † Damietta, town in Egypt
- Daname**, syr, 398
- Darras**, syr, 396, 397, 398, 399, 400; 405, 406; 792
- Dauyd**, kyng of Iherusalem, 1 (Caxton's Preface); 697
- Degrane saunce velany**, syr, 793
- Delectable yle**, 520
- Denmarke**, country of, 718; kyng of, 120
- Dodynas le saueage**, syr, 156; 259; 297; 298; 394; 418, 419; 528; 742; 772; 774; 791; 855*, 856*; 859*, 860*
- Dolphyne**, 178; † Dauphiny, a late province of France
- Dolorous gard**, 828: thus was the Castel Ioyous gard afterwards called (see Ioyous gard)
- Dornar**, **Dornard**, syr, 259; 281; 451
- Douer**, castal of, 2 (Caxton's Preface); 841; 843; 855*; town of, 51; 181
- Dragon**, description of, 165; spytyngye fyre, 572
- Dryaunt**, syr, 322; 324
- Duchemen**, duke of, 179
- Durnore**, syr, 791, 792
- Dynadan**, syr, 259; 372, 373, 374, 375, 376; 382; 384, 385; 388; 392; 395, 396; 398, 399; 405; 407; 417; 426; 429, 430, 431; 434, 435, 436; 438, 439-447; 450; 454; 457; 458; 464, 465; 479; 481, 482; 484; 486; 488, 489; 491, 492, 493; 505-511; 513; 515, 516; 525; 529; 532; 534-538, 539; 545-555, 556; 591
- Dynas**, syr, seneschal of kyng Mark, 256; 322; 363; 371; 401; 404, 405; 458, 459, 460, 461; 466; 469; 495; 497, 498; 792; 805
- Dynaunt**, syr, 369, 370; 373
- Ebel**, syr, 518; 520
- Ector**,² syr, father of syr Kay the seneschal, 37, 38, 39; 41, 42; 60; 67, 68
- Ector de Maris**, syr, brother of syr Launcelot, asks a forester if he knows any adventures, 184; beats on the basin; fights with Turquyne and overcomes him, 185; 196*; 203; 211; 232; 302; 373; 386; 397; 410; Gueneuer complains to him, 411; does great deeds of armes in the tournament at the priory, 447; is smitten down by Launcelot, 479; 485, 486; is thrown down by Bleoberis, 502, 503, 504; 534; smitten down by Tristram, 537; 545; 554, 555; 560; 566; 585; fights with

¹ Geoffrey of Monmouth, "Hist. Brit.," calls him Gorlois dux Cornubiae; in the Huth "Merlin" and in the ordinary "Merlin" he is called "duc de Tintaguel."

² He is called "Auctor" in the Huth "Merlin;" "Antor" in the ordinary "Merlin."

- Percyual, 591; sees the holy vessel, and is healed by it, 592, 593; 601, 602, 603; asks Launcelot to return to Arthur's court, 604, 605; meets Gawayn, 664; finds an old chapel; has a wonderful dream, 665; has a vision; tells Gawayn about it; hears a voice that tells him he cannot come to the Sangreal, 666; wishes to joust with a knight, 667; weeps; comes to Nacyen, and tells him all about the vision, 668; Nacyen explains it to him, 669, 670, 671; 689, 690; 714*, 715*; 727, 728; 743, 744; 768; 791; 818; is crowned king of Benwyk, 829; 856*; 859*, 860*
- Ector of Troye, 827 (*see also* Hector)
- Edward of Canaruan, syr, 792
- Edward the Fourth, kyng of England, 1; 861 (Caxton's Preface and Colophon)
- Edward of Orkeney, syr, cosyn of syr Gawayn, 532, 533; 793
- Edward of the reed castel, syr, 156, 157, 158
- Edwardes, St., shryne, 2 (Caxton's Preface)
- Eester, feste of, 43; 163
- Eestland, quene of, 187
- Elamyne,¹ 163; ? a province of the old Roman empire
- Egglame, syr, 73
- Egypte, 163; 174; Egypt
- Elayne, the daughter of kynge Pelles, and mother of syr Galahad, 574, 575, 576; 580, 581, 582, 583, 584, 585; 598, 599, 600, 601; 603; 605, 606
- Elayne, wyfe of kyng Nentres, 38
- Elayne, wyfe of kyng Ban, 119
- Elayne le blank, the fayre mayden of Astolat, 740, 741; 748, 749, 750, 751, 752; 754, 755; 758, 759, 760, 761
- Eleynore, daughter of kyng Pellenore and the lady of the rule, 117, 118
- Elyan, Helyn, Hellayne, once Elayne le blank, le blanck, child that syr Bors begot on the daughter of kyng Brangoris, 577; 604; 672; 792
- Elyazar, syr, once spelt Olyazar, son of kyng Pelles, 717 (comp. 663)
- Elyas, capytayn of the Sessoyns, 458, 459, 460, 461, 462, 463, 464
- Elyas de gomeret, syr, 471
- Elyot, harper, once misprinted Elyas, 457; 464, 465
- Elys, Elyses, Elyse, la Noire, syr, 484; 486
- Elyzabeth, quene of Lyonas, mother of syr Trystram, 273, 274; 291
- Emerause, syr, 60
- England, 35; 38; 45; 75; 159; 255; 273; 286; 302; 329; 423; 494; 580; 586; 599; 789; 814; 821; 838; 841; 845; 851, 852; 859*, 860*; Englyshmen, 840
- Epynogrys, Epynegrys, syr, son of the kyng of Northumberland, 256; 258; 505, 506; 526; 532; 558, 559, 560, 561; 742, 743; 793
- Ermynyde, syr, 792
- Ertanax,² a fish, 692; found in the ryuer of Eufrate
- Ertayne,³ 163; ? province of the old Roman Empire
- Estorause, cyte of, 722
- Estrake, 830 (?); syr Vrre is made erle of, by syr Launcelot
- Estsex, 843; county of Essex
- Ethelwold, syr, 179
- Ethyope, kynge of, 174
- Ettard, lady, 147; 149, 150; 152, 153; 793
- Eufrate, Eufrates, ryuer of, 163; 692
- Europe, the large, 163
- Euaungelystes, the four, 36; 109; 117; 703
- Eue, 696; first woman
- Fuelake, kyng, 625, 626, 627; 645; 660 (*see* Mordrayns)
- Ewayns le blaunche maynys, son of kyng Vryens (*see* Vwayne)

¹ Thornton MS. reads here "Elamet."

² "La Queste del Saint Graal" reads here, p. 183: "si conuerse el flun d'eufrate, et non mie en autre aigue, et chil poissons est appeles ortenians."

³ Thornton MS. reads here "Irritayne."

Excalibur (Cut steel), kyng Arthur's sword, 46; 79; 89; 128, 129, 130; 132; 135; 137; 173; 174; 848, 849

Faramon's (kyng of Fraunce) daughter, 279; 287; 371

Feldenak, syr, 170

Felelolye, **Felelolle**, 769; 795; syster of syr Vyre

Felot of Langduk, syr, 110

Felot de lystynoyse, 156

Feraunt, syr, 179; of Spayn

Fergus, erle, 155, 156; 365; 371; 380; 455; 466; 469

Flanedreus of the castel of ladyes, syr, 60

Flaundres, 162, 163; 166; 175

Florence, **Florens**, syr, 175; 179, 180

Florence, syr, son of Gawayn, 790; 809

Florydas, syr, 179; 181

Florys, syr, 181

Forest peryllous, 361; 716*

Four Stones, Castel of, 83

Foyse, erle of (1), 830; dignity conferred by syr Launcelot on syr Plenorius

Fraunce, gaule, 47; 163; 166; 273; 276; 286; marshal of, 161; lordes of, 829

Frolle of the oute yles, syr, 335, 336, 337

Gahalantyne, **Gahalaytyne**, **Galahantyne**, **Gahalatyne**, syr, 190, 191, 192; 212; 790; 856*; 860*

Gaherys, **Gaheryse**, syr, brother of syr Gawayn, 65; 88; 105-108; 193, 194; 211; 237; 256; 258; 375, 376; 385; 393; 395; 400-405; 410; 421; 425; 452, 453; 483; 487; 490; 507; 512, 513; 532; 587; 728; 743; 766, 767; 790; 809, 810; 812, 813; 816, 817

Galagars, syr, 123

Galahad, **Galahalt**, **Galahault**, the haute prynce, son of Launcelot and Elayne, daughter of kyng Pelles, 94; 99; 571; is begotten, 574; christened and brought up, 575; 577; 581; 583; 597; 600; 605, 606; 611; is brought by twelve nuns to Launcelot, who makes him knight, and wishes to take him to

VOL. II.

Arthur's court, but he declines, 613*; comes with an old man to the court, without shield and sword; the old man declares that his companion is the desired knight, and leads him to the Peryllous syege; he sits down in it, 616; is greatly honoured, and recognised as the son of Launcelot; tells the king that the adventure of the sword belongs to him, 617; he draws it out of the stone; in a great tournament, given in his honour, he overcomes all knights save Launcelot and Percyual, 619; is asked by the queen about his father; she tells him he need not be ashamed of his father; is led to Arthur's chamber and rests on the king's bed, 622; rides in the quest without a shield; comes the fourth day to an abbey, 623*; in this abbey is kept a white shield; it is brought to him; he takes it, and his arms, mounts his horse, and leaves his fellowship; comes to the white knight, 625; is told about the origin of the shield, and that he is destined to carry it in the quest of the Holy Grail; promises to make Melyas, his squire, knight; is led to a tomb in a church by a monk, 627; he is unarmed; enters the tomb; a voice tells him not to approach; he advances; smoke in the shape of a man comes out; he finds a dead knight in the tomb; he returns to the abbey to rest himself; the next morning he makes Melyas knight, and leaves the place, 628; leaves Melyas, who takes the left-hand road; comes to save Melyas, who has attacked a knight for the sake of a golden crown, 630; a good man tells him why Melyas did not succeed; he rides forth, 631; enters an old chapel to pray there; a voice tells him to go to the Castel of Maydens, and rid it of its bad customs; a very old man points this castle out to him; he goes thither; meets seven knights, 632; attacks them, and forces them to flight; an old man

L

brings him the keys of the castle; he opens the gates; is welcomed by many people; hears from a gentlewoman that the seven knights will return again at night; receives a horn of ivory; blows it; a priest comes to tell him the history of the castle, 633; the knights of the castle do him homage; hears next morning that the seven brothers are slain by Gawayn and Vwayn, 634; meets Launcelot and Percyval, but they do not know him; fights against them; throws Percyval down; a recluse tells him that he is the best knight of the world, 636; Launcelot and Percyval, on hearing who he is, follow him, but he escapes them, 637; saves Percyval; follows his adversaries, 646; 688; comes into a waste forest and has many adventures; takes his way to the sea; comes to a castle and helps the knight at a tournament; is recognised; smites Gawayn down; leaves secretly the place, 689; comes to the castle of Carboneck; sleeping in an hermitage, he is called away by a lady, who takes him to another castle, 690; from there he proceeds, with the maiden and the lady, to the sea, where they find a ship; Bors and Percyval are in it, and welcome him; he enters the ship; it starts; he asks them about the ship; finds another ship, 691; he enters it with the lady and his fellows; finds a bed and a crown of silk and a sword, 692; likes to draw the sword; arrives in Logrys, 693; 696; 699, 700, 701; the dying earl Hernox requests him to go to the maimed king to heal his wound, 702; 704, 705, 706; departs from Percyval, 707; meets Launcelot his father, 708; tells him about his sword, and remains with him half a year in the ship; a white knight comes to tell

him that he has been long enough with his father; they part from each other, 709; comes to king Mordrayns, who kindly receives him, 715*; buries the king; comes to a forest, and finds a well with boiling water; puts his hand into it; the water ceases at once; comes to Bagdemagus' tomb; quenches the fire in an abbey; passes the night in it, 716*; follows Percyval; finds him; they come to Carboneck; Galahad joins the pieces of the sword, 717; nine knights come to salute him, three from Gaul, three from Ireland, three from Denmark; four ladies bring a sick man on a bed to him, who has a golden crown on his head, 718; is kissed by Ioseph of Arimathia; receives the holy sacrament; is told to take some of the blood of the spear with him; heals the maimed king; leaves with Percyval and Bors the other knights, 720; prays long and instantly; comes to Sarraas, 721; is made king of the holy city; orders a table and a precious chest to be made for the Holy Grail, 722; sees closely the holy vessel; prays God to take his soul from him; kisses Bors and Percyval; sends greetings to his father Launcelot; dies, 723; is buried, 724

Galahad, Galahalt, Galahault, the noble or the haute prynce, syr Breunor's sone, duke, lord, syr, of the countrey of Surluse, 257; 260; 313, 314; 445; 478; 480-484; 488, 489; 491; 493; 528; 738; 742; 745; 748; 757; 765, 766

Galapas, a giant, 173; killed by kyng Arthur

Galardoun, syr, 416

Galatyn, 176; name of Gawayn's sword

Galfrydus, 2 (Caxton's Preface); Geoffrey of Monmouth¹

¹ The first printed edition is that of I. Cavellati, Paris, 1508, fol.: "Britanie utriusque regu & principu origo et gesta insignia ab Galfrido Monemutensi ex antiquissimis Britannici sermonis monumentis in latinu sermonē traducta; & ab Ascensio cura &

Gallacye, 163; Galatia, province of Asia Minor

Galleron, Galeron of Galway, syr, 609; 611; 742, 743; 791; 799

Galyhodyn, syr, 256; 259; 397; 492; 527, 528 (a kynge wythin the countrey of Surluse), 529; 728; 743; 768; 804; 830; 856*; 860*; syr Launcelot makes him duke of Sentonge

Galyhud, syr, 256; 397; 728; 743, 744; 768; 830, 831; 856*; 860*; syr Launcelot makes him erle of perygot

Galyndes shield, 196* 5492

Garaunt of Camlyard, syr, 471

Gareth of Orkney, brother of syr Gawayne, surnamed Beaumayns, 65; 88; comes to Arthur's court leaning on two men's shoulders as if he were unable to walk, 213; asks two gifts of king Arthur, the first being that he should feed him one year; is called Beaumayns by Kay, 214; is patronised by Launcelot and Gawayn, 215; asks for his second gift, the adventure of damoyssel Lynet; the lady mocks at him, and calls him kitchen knave, 216; beautifully fitted out, he leaves Arthur's court and follows the lady; he throws down Kay, who rides after him; fights against Launcelot, 217; tells Launcelot his real name, and is made knight by him; overtakes the damoyssel, who continues to abuse him, 218; follows a man whose master has been taken by six thieves; delivers this knight, 219; stays the night with this knight; comes to a water; fights against two knights in the water and overcomes them, 220; fights with the black knight, 221; kills him, and follows the damoyssel, 222; meets the green knight, 223; throws him down, but grants him his life on the condition that he goes to Arthur's court, 224; stays with the green knight; the damoy-

ssel still mocks at him, 225; encounters with the red knight, 226; conquers him also, and sends him to Arthur, 227; meets with the blue knight Persant of ynde, 228, 229; defeats him also; now Lynet asks his forgiveness for her bad conduct, 230; spares Persant's life on the condition that he goes like his brothers to king Arthur; hospitably received at Persant's house, he spares his daughter, and is so much the higher esteemed, 231; tells Persant that he is going to fight for lady Lyonesse, and that Launcelot made him knight, 232; finally discloses to him his right name, 233; receives a message and food from lady Lyonesse by her dwarf, 234; after having reposed himself at the hermitage, he rides forth to meet the red knight of the red lands; his damoyssel encourages him, 235; he blows the horn, 236; sees lady Lyonesse at the window of her castle; fights against the red knight, 237, 238; is newly encouraged by the sight of lady Lyonesse, but nearly overcome; Lynet reminds him of his former success; defeats finally the red knight, 239; at the request of Lynet and the knights of the castle, he grants him his life if lady Lyonesse pardons him, 240; is unarmed, and his wounds are dressed; desires to see Lyonesse; rides to the castle, 241; is not received, and mournfully leaves the place, 242; lays himself down to sleep; finds his dwarf gone; learns from a man that Gryngamor has taken his dwarf away, 243; comes to Gryngamor's castle and asks for his dwarf, 244; is well received at the castle, 245; sees Lyonesse; becomes deeply enamoured of her; is told by Gryngamor that his sister loves him again, 246; is very happy, 247; fights against a knight; is sorely wounded, 248; fights against another knight,

and cuts his body into a hundred pieces, but is much worse wounded, 249; is healed by Lynet, 250, 251, 252, 253; asks Lyonesse not to tell Arthur where he is, but to propose a great tournament to be held at her castle on Assumption Day, 254; is healed and strengthened by Lynet's drugs; hears by the red knight from Arthur, 255, 256; receives a ring from Lyonesse, by which he can appear in different colours, 257; appears at the tournament; fights bravely and excites general admiration, 258; 260; spares Launcelot, who recognises him, 261; gives his ring to the dwarf; forgets to take it again; comes back to the tournament in his ordinary shape, and is recognised by a herald, 262; he, however, disappears from the field; comes to a castle and asks lodging, 263; is taken in and well treated, and starts the next morning, 264; fights with Bendelayne, and gives him a mortal wound; is attacked by twelve of his knights, but bravely resists them; comes to a castle which is in the power of the brown knight; he overthrows him and kills him, 265; meet the duke de la rouse, and defeats him, 266; is hurt by a knight, who is no other than his brother Gawayn; Lynet appears in time to tell them; he is very happy to find his brother; Lynet dresses their wounds, and rides to fetch Arthur, 267; Arthur and Morgawse and many knights and ladies come to see him, and are highly pleased to have finally found him, 268; tells Arthur that he loves Lyonesse, 269; is wedded at Michelmas, in the castle of Kynkenadon, to Lyonesse, with great solemnity, 270, 271, 272; 510; 512; 517; rides with Trystram, 530, 531, 532; is compared by Arthur to an eager wolf, 533; is thrown down by Ector de Maris, 534; is horsed again by Trystram, 535; 539; 543, 544; 547, 548, 549; 552, 553; 555, 556; 728; does great deeds of

arms at a tournament, 757, 758; 766, 767, 768, 769, 770; handles Vyre's wounds, 793; is killed by Launcelot, 811, 812; 816, 817

Garlon the inuysybel, syr, 90; 92
Garlot, country of, 38 (kyng Neuntres)

Garnysse of the mount, syr, 95

Gallie, 2 (Caxton's Preface); lat. gen. for Galliae

Gaule (France), 49; 718; 720

Gaunter, syr, 202, 203

Gautere, Gauter, syr, 256; 259; 792

Gawayn, Gauwayn, Gawayn, kyng Arthur's nephew, son of kyng Lot of Orkeney; Gauwayn's skull kept in Dover Castle, 2 (Caxton's Preface); comes with his mother and brothers to Arthur's court, 64; comes again with his mother to his father's burial, 88; requests Arthur to make him knight, 101; is made knight, 103; declares he will slay Pellinore, 104; accompanies Vwayne, 140, 141, 142, 143; rides forth with the youngest of the three ladies, 144; finds a knight who is lamenting, 145; is asked to decide who shall have the lady, the knight or the dwarf; leaves the decision to the lady; fights with two knights; his lady is taken from him, 146; he accords with his adversary, and passes the night at his house; hears about Pelleas, 147; meets Pelleas; consoles him, and promises to help him to win Ettard's love, 148; promises to be true and faithful to him; rides to Ettard's castle, 149; forgetting his promise, he falls in love with Ettard and stays with her, 150; Ettard finds out that he has told her an untruth; leaves her, 151; 154; meets Marhaus and Vwayne again, 158; is sent for by Arthur, 159; is sent as messenger to Lucius, 169; kills a knight of Lucius who speaks ill of the "Bretons," 170; is sent with Florence to find provisions, 175; steals away from his fellowship; meets a knight of Tus-kany; fights and overcomes the knight, who is called Pryamus,

176; tells Pryamus first that he is page of Arthur, afterwards that he is knight of the round table, 177; is told by Pryamus how there are many knights close at hand to fight against Arthur, 178, 179; comes back with many provisions and great treasures; requests Arthur to make Pryamus knight of the round table, 180; 203, 204; 211; sees at Pentecost three riders coming, and tells king Arthur about it, 213; is angry at Kay, and protects Beaumayns, 214; asks him to come to his chamber; offers him gold, 215, 216, 217, 218; 232; 241; 251, 252; 254; 256; 258; 261, 262, 263; fights with his brother Gareth, 267, 268; 270; 287, 288; 315; takes away a sleeping knight's lady; fights with this knight; is smitten down, 336; meets Trystram; warns him to mistrust his damoyzel; goes with him to the castle of Morgan le fay, 378, 379; 410; 416; meets Trystram, 417; 421, 422; 425; 430; passes all his fellowship, 447, 448, 449; 452; is said to have slain Pellinore; is angry that Gaherys slew his mother, 453; is not trusted by Lamorak, 493; is said to have feloniously slain Lamorak, 504; 507; 513; 528, 529; 532, 533; 571; 586, 587; at Arthur's request he tries to pull the sword out of the stone, 615; 617; makes a vow to go in the quest of the Holy Grail, and induces the greater part of the knights to follow his example, 620, 621, 622; comes to the white abbey and asks for Galahad, 634; meets Gareth and Vwayne; goes to the Castel of Maidens; comes to an hermitage and asks for lodgings; tells the hermit his life; is blamed, 635; declares he cannot do penance, and leaves the hermit, 636; rides long without finding any adventures; meets Ector, 664; they ride together more than eight days; come to a chapel; they fall asleep, and have a strange dream, 665; they see a hand which holds a bridle

and a candle; a voice tells them that for want of faith they cannot come to the Holy Grail; they ask a squire for a hermit, 666; Gawayn meets a knight; is wounded, but smites him down; takes the knight to an abbey to die there; there this knight tells him that he is Vwayne, the son of king Vryence, 667; buries him; comes to Nacyen; tells him his adventures, and learns the signification of his dream and vision, 668, 669, 670, 671; is smitten down by Galahad, 689; is borne into a castle; a physician tells him it will take him a month to recover; he declares that his quest is done, 690; 714*; returns to the court, 715*; is said to like much fruit at dinner, 728, 729; 737; 741; 743; 745; rides to seek Launcelot; comes to Astolat; finds out that the knight with the red sleeve was Launcelot, 748, 749, 750, 751, 752; 754; smites down twenty knights, 757; 759; 766, 767, 768, 769; 791; dissuades his brothers from accusing Launcelot, 797, 798, 799, 800; tells king Arthur not to act overrashly; supports Launcelot, 808, 809; refuses to assist at Guenether's punishment, 810; 812; hears of Gareth's and Gaherys' death; will at first not believe it, 813; swears to revenge his brothers and to make war against Launcelot, 814; accuses Launcelot of murder and adultery, 815, 816, 817, 818; fights against Launcelot's knights, 819, 820; 823, 824; declares he will not be accorded with Launcelot, even if the king is inclined, 825, 826, 827; comes with Arthur into Launcelot's country, 830, 831; induces the king to refuse Launcelot's request for forgiveness, 832; comes before the gates of Benwyck and insults Launcelot, 833, 834; fights against Launcelot; his strength increases till the middle of the day; Launcelot is in great danger; finally Gawayn is overcome, 836; challenges Launcelot again; they fight again, 837; he is again defeated

- and sorely wounded, but yet he is not contented, and will fight for a third time as soon as he has recovered; has to return to England, 838; is found half dead in a boat; tells Arthur that the hour of his death has come; acknowledges that he was the cause of the last terrible war, 841; is set up; writes a letter to Launcelot; asks his pardon, and requests him to come to help Arthur, 842; receives his Saviour; dies; is buried in the chapel of Dover Castel, 843; his ghost appears to king Arthur and warns him not to fight the next day, 844, 845; 852; his tomb is visited by Launcelot, 853
- Gawdelyn, syr, 588
- Gaynus, nyghe cosyn to Lucius, 169
- Germanye, 175; germanie, lat. gen. for germaniae, 2 (Caxton's Preface); comp. Almayn
- Geryne le grose, or only Geryn, syr, 473; 488
- Gherard, a knyght of walys, 180
- Gherard de breusse, syr, 220; 233
- Glastyngburye,¹ monasterye of, 2; (Caxton's Preface); 851; 856*
- Glatysaunt beest, also glastyngge. See Questyngge beest
- Godard, town, garneson of, 178
- Godefray of boloyne, 1 (Caxton's Preface)
- Godelake, syr, 257
- Goneryes, Gonoreys, Gomoryes, syr, 480; 482
- Goodewyn, Godewyn, syr, a baroun, 587, 588
- Goothe, castel of, 644
- Gorre, Gore, land of, 139; 499; 716*; quene of, 187
- Gouernayle, seruaunt of syr Trystram, 276; 281, 282; 296, 297; 304; 309; 319; 326, 327, 328; 353; 364; 380; 384; 418; 420
- Gracian, Grastian, Grasian, Gracyens le casteleyne, syr, 50, 51; 60; 63
- Grece, 163; Greece
- Grene knyght, the. See Pertolepe
- Gromere Gromorson, grummure gummursum, syr, a knyght of Scotland, 256; 258
- Gromore somyr Ioure, syr, 799; probably identical with syr Gromere Gromorson
- Gryflet, le fyse de dieu, once mistakingly spelled le fyse the dene, sone of Cardol, 49, 50; 54, 55; 60; 68, 69, 70; 121, 122, 123, 124; 287; 431, 432, 433; 530; 636; 742, 743; 767; 792
- Gryngamore, syr, brother of lady Lyonesse, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246; 248, 249, 250; 254, 255; 257, 258; 268, 269
- Gryp, erle, 328
- Gueneuer,² Gwenener, daughter of kyng Lodegrean of Camylarde, wyfe of kyng Arthur, 63; 100, 101; 104; 117; 121; 136; 164; 167; 182; 187; 201; 203; 207; 211; 258; 329; 339; 358; 389; 410, 411; 417; 422; 439; 455, 456; 482, 483; 485, 486; 489, 490, 491, 492; 557; 572; 580, 581, 582, 583-586; 606; 622, 623; 725, 726-731; 734; 739; 751; 757; 759; 761; 763; 772, 773, 774, 775; 777, 778; 780, 781; 786; 796, 797; 800; 816; 821; 828; 830; 851, 852, 853, 854; 857*
- Gumret le petyte, syr, 287
- Guy of Camylard, syr, 471
- Guyart le petyte, syr, 792
- Gwenbaus, syr, brother of Ban and Bors, 50
- Gwymyart de bloy, syr, 54
- Gwynas de bloy, syr, 55, 56; 60; not impossibly the same as syr Gwymyart

¹ Glastonbury is a town in Somersetshire, said to have been founded by Joseph of Arimathea. The ruins of the famous abbey are still to be seen. About the abbey of Glastonbury, and its signification for the introduction of Christianity into Britain, see W. W. Skeat, "Joseph of Arithmathie," an alliterative romance, A.D. 1350 (from the unique Vernon MS., Bodleian Library, Oxford), E.E.T.S. 1871, Introd. p. xxiii. ff.; also Paul's and Braune's "Beiträge," Halle a.S., vol. iii., p. 304, ff., F. Zarncke, "Zur Geschichte der Gralsage," and A. Nutt, "Studies on the Legend of the Holy Grail," ch. ix.

² "Hist. Brit.": Guanhumara.

- Gyan, 829; Guienne, late province of France; syr Ector de marys was made by syr Launcelot kyng of Benwyk and kyng of alle Gyan
- Gyaunt of St. Mychaels Mount, 167; killed by kyng Arthur
- Gylbert the bastard, syr, 205; 207
- Gyllemere, Gylmere, syr, 202, 203; 792
- Gyngalyn, syr, 790; 799; son of syr Gawayn
- Hard roche, castel of, 408
- Harlon, kyng, 663
- Harre le fyse lake, syr, 502; 792; 804
- Harsouse le berbuse, syr, 476
- Haruys de le marches, syr, 477
- Hebes le renoumes, Heles,¹ syr, 287, 288, 289, 290; 791, 792; 804; 830
- Hector of Troye, 1; 177; 827. *See also* Ector
- Hectymere, syr, 792
- Helake, syr, nephew of kyng Hermaunce, 523, 524
- Hellawes, the sorceresse, 207
- Hellyas le grose, syr, 660; one of the seven kings overcome by kyng Euelake
- Helyor le preuse, syr, 559, 560
- Helyn, or Helayne, le blanck, 604; 792. *See* Elyan, child of syr Bors
- Helyus, Helyas, syr, nephew of kyng Hermaunce, 519; 523, 524
- Herawde, lord, 171
- Herlews le berbeus, syr, 90
- Hermaunce, Harmaunce, kyng and lord of the reed cyte, 514; 518, 519, 520
- Hermel, duke, 95
- Hermonye,² 163; † Armenia, a province of the old Roman Empire
- Hermynde, syr, brother of kyng Hermaunce, 521, 522
- Hernox, erle, 701, 702
- Heruys de la forest saueage, syr, 793
- Heruys de reuel, syr, 86; 123
- Heruyn, syr, 683
- Heryngdale, lord, 171
- Hewe de la montayne, syr, 383
- Hewgon, Heugon, syr, 476
- Hooly Grayle. *See* Sanogreal
- Hongre, Hongry, country of, 788; Hungary
- Hontlake of wentland, syr, 114, 115
- Howel, syr, kyng or duke of litle Bretayne, cosyn of kyng Arthur, 166, 167, 168; 328; 766
- Hue of the reed castel, syr, 157, 158
- Humber, ryver, 120, 121; 513; 517; 520; 525
- Huntresse, a lady who wounded syr Launcelot with an arrow, 764; 770
- Hurlame, kyng, 693
- Hyllary, 164; St. Hilary, a festival, the 13th of January
- Hymeson, syr, 407, 408, 409, 410
- Ider, syr, sone of syr Vwayne, 162
- Idres, kyng of Cornwayle, 52; 54; 56; 64
- Idrus, syr, the good knyght, 170; most likely identical with syr Ider
- Igrayne, wyfe of kyng Vtherpendragon, and mother of kyng Arthur, 35, 36, 37, 38; 45; 65, 66, 67, 68; 189
- Ireland, Ire lond, Yreland, 45; 81; 164; 175; 255; 283; 301; 499
- Ironsyde, syr, the reed knyght of the reed laundes, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 239, 240, 241; 245; 250, 251; 254; 259; 261, 262; 271; 728; 792
- Isoud, la beale. *See* La beale Isoud
- Isoud la blaunche maynys, daughter of kyng Howel of Brytayne, 327, 328; 330; 334; 345; 453; 411

¹ The form Heles occurs in the eighth book several times for Hebes. In the French "Tristan" the name is always spelled "Hebes." This is either a misprint in the Caxton, or a mistake on my part, as it is often very difficult to distinguish le and be, these being in Caxton's type double letters.

² The "Morte Arthure" (Thornton MS.) reads here "Ermonye."

- Israhel**, chyldren of, 1 (Caxton's Preface)
- Iagent**, castel of, 426; near Camelot
- Ianeweyes** warryors, 163; † Genoese soldiers
- Iherusalem**, 496; 625; 641
- Ihesu**, Ihesus. *See* Cryst, lord Ihesu
- Ionas**, a king overcome by kyng Euelake, 660
- Iordanus**,¹ Iordans, syr, knyght of the duke of Cornwall, 37, 38
- Ioseph of Armathyes**, Armathe, Armathye, once corrupted into Abarimathye, fyrst bysshop of Crystendom, 94; 573; 616; 625, 626, 627; 645; 660; 716*; 718; 723
- Iosue**, duke, 177; 697
- Ioyous** gard, castle of, afterwards called Dolorous gard (somme men saye it was anwyk, & somme may say it was bamborow), 288; 302; 499; 506, 507; 517; 525, 526, 527; 563, 564, 565; 568, 569, 570; 601; 611; 807; 811; 814; 821, 822; 828; 858*, 859*
- Ioyous yle**, 601; 604
- Iubaunce**, a gyaunt, 180
- Kay**, Kaynus, Kaynes, syr, son of syr Ector, seneschal of kyng Arthur, 41, 42, 43, 44; 46; 49; 54; 60; 166; 172; 200, 201; 203, 204; 212; 214; 217; 257; 339, 340; 359, 360; 377; 379; 387; 402-404; 417; 421; 426; 553; 614; 728; 742, 743; 761; 772; 790
- Kaynus le straunge**, Kay de straunges, syr, 553; 791
- Kehydins**, syr, son of kyng Howel, brother of Isoud la blanche maynys, 328; 330; 332; 334; 353; 356; 363, 364; 367; 567
- Kente**, 843; 845; county of Kent
- Kyng wyth the honderd knyghtes**. *See* Berraunt le Apres
- Kynkenadonne**, Kynke kenadon, castel of, 213; 269, 270
- La beale Aduenture**, abbay of. *See* Abbey
- La Beale (beale) Isoud**, Isoulde, daughter of the kyng Anguysshe of Ireland, wyfe of kyng Marke, and love of syr Trystram, 164; 285, 286, 287; 289; 291; 301; 308, 309, 310, 311; 316-321; 323; 325-329; 345; 353; 355; 365; 367, 370-372; 380; 401; 409; 423; 368; 425; 435; 455, 456; 464; 497-500; 507-509; 516, 517; 527; 531, 532; 535, 536; 538; 540, 541; 545, 546, 547; 549, 550, 551, 552, 553; 558, 559; 566-570; 606, 607; 610
- La beale regard**, a castel, 473, 474, 475, 476
- Labor**, kyng, 693
- La cote mayle tayle**. *See* Breunor le noyre
- Ladynas**, or **Ladynas de la rouse**, a knight of kynge Ban, 50; 60
- Ladynas of the forest saueage**, 772; 774
- Lake**, kyng of the, 123
- Lake**, lady of the, 73, 74; 79, 80. *See also* Nymus
- Lambayle**, erle of, 492; 790
- Lambegus**, syr, 318, 319; 321; 326; 792
- Lambehythe**, 777; Lambeth
- Lamerak**, Lamorak de galya, 72; 226; 232; 259; 261; 271; 322, 323-325; 330-338; 354-359; 363; 372; 390; 410; 425, 426, 427; 433; as knight with the red shield, 441, 442, 443, 444, 445-455; 486, 487, 488; 490; 493; 507; 512
- Lamyel of Cardyf**, syr, 793
- Landok**, duke of, 830; province of Languedoc, in the south of France; syr Palomydes is made a duke of L. by syr Launcelot
- Lardans**, syr, 55
- Launcelot de galya**, 258; brother of syr Percyvale
- Launcelot du lake**, syr, son of kyng Ban of Benwick and Elayne, originally called Galahad, 84; 99; Merlyn comes to king Ban, there

¹ Here Geoffrey's "Hist. Brit." has "Iordanus de Tintagol." The Huth "Merlin" reads "Jourdain."

he sees young Launcelot, who is first called Galahad; he prophesies that he will become a man of great worship, 119; 143; suddenly¹ introduced, 171, 172; excels all other knights; is a great favourite of Gueneuer; sets out with his nephew Lyonel to seek adventures; lies down to sleep under an apple-tree, 183, 184, 185; is found asleep by four queens; taken to Morgan le fay's castle; does not know how he came there; hears that he is a prisoner, 186; refuses Morgan le fay and her companions; on condition that he will help her father, king Bagdemagus, in a tourney, a damoyse! promises to deliver him, 187; escapes from the castle by the maiden's help; comes to a pavilion, and enters it to repose himself there; the owner of the pavilion finds him, 188; they fight together; Launcelot overcomes the knight; explains to him how he came thither; tells his name; asks the knight to come to Arthur's court, 189; comes to an abbey, where the damoyse! expects him; her father is sent for; is well received; he tells Bagdemagus to send him three knights with white shields, 190; comes to the tournament; throws down Mador de la porte and Mordred; fights against Gahalan-tyne, 191; overcomes him also; returns to Bagdemagus' castle; is much cheered; starts to seek Lyonel; is told by a damoyse! that there lives near at hand a strong knight, 192; he beats on a basin; rides along the gates of the manor of this knight, Turquyne; sees Gaherys tied to a horse, and meets Turquyne, 193; fights against him, 194; overcomes him; delivers Gaherys, 195*; tells Gaherys to deliver the other knights out of prison, 196*; fights and defeats Perys de foreyst saucage, 197; tells the damoyse! his ideas about love, and leaves her; smites a fellow down who tries to

prevent him from passing a bridge; comes to a castle, 198; kills three giants; delivers sixty ladies; the castle is called Tyntygayl; departs from there, 199; is lodged at the house of an old gentlewoman; sees Kay in great distress; jumps out of the window; fights and throws down his persecutors, and compels them to yield themselves to Kay, 200; returns to his lodging; the next morning he takes Kay's armour and shield, and rides forth before Kay awakes, 201; is mistaken for Kay; overcomes three brothers, Gaunter, Raynold, and Gylmere, and bids them go to queen Gueneuer and render themselves to her grace; meets Sagramor, Ector, Gawayn, and Vwayn; is attacked by them, 203; throws them all four out of their saddles, and disappears; comes into a forest; sees a brachet, 204; follows the brachet to a wounded knight; is told that this knight is Gylbert the Bastard, and that he can only be healed by a piece of cloth and a sword which must be fetched out of the Chappel Peryllous, 205; engages himself to go to the Chappel Peryllous; arrives there; enters it in despite of many knights, 206; takes the cloth and sword; comes out; refuses Hellawes the sorceress; heals Gylbert, 207; catches a falcon which has escaped to a tree; is treacherously attacked by its owner, 208; gets with great efforts out of this difficulty, 209; meets a knight and a lady; the knight kills the lady; Launcelot sends him to Gueneuer, who shall punish him for his bad behaviour; comes in Kay's armour to the court, 211; all his valiant deeds are told to Arthur, 212; 214, 215, 216; fights with Gareth, 217; makes him knight, 218; 226; 232, 233; 241; 251; 254, 255, 256; 260, 261, 262; 270; 272; 300; 303*; 305*, 306*, 307, 308; 315, 316; 322, 323, 324; blames

¹ Launcelot is here very abruptly introduced; how he came to Arthur's court and how he was made knight, as well as the early part of his life, are entirely omitted.

Trystram for being faithless to Isoud, 329; 333; 336; follows Breunor le noyre, 345; gets a letter from Trystram; answers it; throws down Nerouens de lyle, 346; comes to the castle of Pendragon, 347, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352, 353; 357, 358, 359; 361; 376, 377; 381; 383, 384; 387; does wonderful feats of arms; the prize is given to him, but he renounces it in favour of Trystram, 394, 395; 397, 398; 400; 404, 405; 408; 411; meets with Trystram; they do not recognise each other; Merlyn's prophecy is realised; they fight together a terrible combat near the tomb of Launceor and Columbe; neither of them overcomes the other, 420; tells Arthur about his meeting, 421, 422; 431, 432, 433; follows king Mark and brings him back to Arthur, 437, 438, 439; 441; 445, 446; 448; 453; cautions Trystram to beware of king Mark, 454, 455; reads the letter which Mark sent to Gueneuer, blaming her for her relation to Launcelot, 457; 463; 470; 476; 479; 482, 483, 484, 485, 486; 489, 490, 491, 492; gets the prize in a tournament, 493, 494; receives a ring from la Beale Isoud, to tell him that Trystram is at the tournament, 498; gives Trystram and Isoud his castle Ioyous gard, 499; 506; 509; 513; 533; smites Trystram down, 534; recognises Trystram, and is sorry, 535, 536; his horse is smitten down by Palomydes; pardons him, 537, 538, 539, 540; throws down Palomydes, 541, 542, 543, 544, 545; 547, 548, 549, 550; comes with Arthur to Trystram and Isoud, 551, 552, 553, 554, 555; 557; 561; 563; delivers Palomydes, 564, 565; 570; comes to the bridge of Corbyn; is received with cries: "Welcome, Launcelot, flower of all knighthood," 571; delivers a lady from great pains; fights with a dragon at a tomb, 572; has a sight of the Holy Grail, 573; begets Galahad on Elayne, daughter of

Pelles, 574; will kill Elayne, but afterwards pardons her, 575, 576, 577; is told that, though he is the strongest knight in earthly things, he is not so in heavenly ones, 579, 580, 581; sleeps again with Elayne, 582; leaps out of a window; becomes mad and runs into a wild forest, 583, 584, 585, 586; 588; 591, 592; wanders about; lives on water and fruit for two years; comes to a tree on which hangs a white shield and two swords; he takes one of them, and beats with it on the shield; a knight clad all in scarlet appears, 593; Launcelot is taken to Selyuaunt's castle, 594; one day he breaks his fetters, and delivers Blyaunt, Selyuaunt's brother, 595; sees a great boar; follows it and kills it, but is seriously wounded, 596; taken to an hermitage; runs away, and comes to Corbyn, 597; is found and recognised sleeping in a garden by Elayne, 598; is brought into a tower and healed from his madness by the Holy Grail; is told how he came into the country; requests them not to tell anybody who he is, 599; calls himself le chevalier malfet, 600; lives with Elayne in the castel Blyaunt, which he calls Ioyous yle; has the better of five hundred knights, 601; fights with Percyual, 602; tells him who he is, 603, 604; resolves to return to Arthur's court; does so, and is well received, 605, 606; 611; is fetched away from the table round to go to an abbey, 612; finds his son Galahad, and makes him knight; returns to the court, 613*, 614*; 617; hears from a lady that, since Galahad's arrival, he is no longer the best knight of the world, 618, 619; 621, 622, 623*; fights with his son Galahad, and is smitten down, 636; comes to a chapel, wishes to enter, but finds no door; lays down to sleep near a cross, 637; sees how a knight is healed by the Holy Grail; his helm and sword are taken away, 638; hears a voice, which tells him to go away

from this holy place; finds out that his sins prevented him from touching the Holy Grail; goes to a hermit, 639; the hermit tells him that his life had displeased God; he must never have the queen's company; he promises it, 640; is told about the signification of the words that the heavenly voice said to him, 641; repents his sins, 642; gets a new horse, helm, and sword; rides forth from the hermit; comes to a chapel, where he finds a dead old man, 656, 657; is told to put the hair of the dead man next to his skin, and not to eat any meat as long as he is in the quest of the Holy Grail; sleeps the night at a cross; has a vision, 658; smites a knight down; comes to a hermit and asks him about his vision, 659, 660, 661, 662, 663, 664, 665, 666; 669, 670, 671; 679; 707; meets his son Galahad; passes half a year with him on a ship, 708, 709, 710; 712, 713*, 714*; 724; loves Gueneuer still; all his thoughts are with her, 725; tells her he must hold afar from her, 726; is banished from the court by her, 727, 728; 730, 731, 732; fights for the queen against Mador de la porte, 734, 735; overcomes him, and is again graciously received by the queen, 736, 737, 738, 739; comes to Bernard of Astolat; the fair maiden of Astolat, Elayn le blank, falls in love with him, 740; asks him to bear a red sleeve of hers at the tournament, 741; departs secretly with Lauayne, 742; fights bravely in the tournament; nobody knows him, but some suspect him, 743; smites down thirty knights; the prize is given to him; is seriously wounded, 744, 745; is taken to Baudewyn of Bretayn, a noble surgeon, 746; is recognised by him, 747; 751; Elayne of Astolat comes to him and nurses him, 752; Bors finds him, and tells him about the queen's displeasure, because he bore the red sleeve, 753, 754; tries to mount his horse and

to handle his arms; his wounds burst out again, 755; sends Bors to a tournament, 756; refuses to wed Elayne of Astolat, 758; rides away with Lauayne, 759, 760, 761; buries the maiden of Astolat; is pardoned by the queen, 762; promises to wear a sleeve of gold for the queen, 763, 764, 765, 766, 767, 768, 769; is hurt by a bow-shot in the thigh, 770; 773; 775, 776; comes to deliver the queen out of Mellyagraunce's castle; rides on a cart; is called le chevalier du chariot, 777, 778, 779; goes in the night to the queen's chamber, 780, 781, 782; agrees with Mellyagraunce to fight for the queen in fifteen days, 783; is taken in a trap and thrown into a deep cave, 784; is delivered by a damoyssel; rides forth to Westminster, 785; comes to the place where the fight is to take place, 786; fights against Mellyagraunce, 787; kills him, 788; 791; 793, 794; handles Vrre's wounds and heals him, 795, 796, 797, 798, 799; goes to the queen, 800; speaks to her in her chamber, while Mordred and other knights of Gawayn's kin are before the door, 801; opens the door; takes Colgreuance's armour; kills some knights; forces the others to flight; returns to Bors, 802, 803; calls his knights together and tells them what has happened, 804, 805, 806, 807, 808, 809; delivers Gueneuer in the moment when she shall suffer death by fire; kills many knights, among them Gareth and Gaherys, 810, 811, 812, 813; withdraws with Gueneuer to Ioyous gard and is besieged by Arthur and Gawayn; is insulted by Gawayn, 815; justifies himself, and requests Arthur to pardon him, 816, 817, 818; fights against Arthur's host; orders his knights to spare Arthur, 819, 820; the pope sends to him, to order him to send back Gueneuer, 821; takes Gueneuer back to Arthur, 822; asks Arthur again to pardon him, 823, 824; makes

- great offers, 825, 826; takes leave of Gueneuer, 827, 828; returns to his own country with his faithful knights and rewards them with his lands, 829, 830; is besieged in his city of Benwyck by Arthur and Gawayn, 831; sends a lady and a dwarf to king Arthur to request him to make peace, 832; Gawayn comes before the gates of Benwyck and uses bad language against him, 833; tries to reconcile him in vain, 834; fights with Gawayn, and after a hard battle overcomes him, 835, 836; fights again with Gawayn and defeats him, 837, 838, 839, 840, 841; 844; receives Gawayn's letter; returns to England; finds that he comes too late, 852; goes to Gawayn's tomb; goes to seek Gueneuer, 853; finds her in a convent; his offers are refused, 854; becomes a monk, 855*; has a vision, 856*; buries Gueneuer, 857*; becomes weaker from day to day, 858*; dies, and is buried with great honours in Ioyous gard, 859*, 860*
- Launceor, Launcyor, syr, son of the kyng of Ireland, 80, 81, 82; 419**
- Laundes, erle of the, 830; this dignity is conferred on syr Bellangere le bewse by syr Launcelot**
- Laundes, lady of the, 286**
- Laurel, dame, 270; niece of lady Lyonesse; becomes wife of syr Agrauayne**
- Lauayne, syr, son of syr Bernard of Astolat, 740, 741, 742, 743, 744, 745, 746, 747; 750, 751, 752, 753; 755; 762, 763, 764, 765, 766, 767, 768, 769, 770; 780, 781, 782; 786; 795; 801; 804; 820**
- Le cheualer du charyot. See Launcelot du lake**
- Le cheualer malfet. See Launcelot du lake**
- Leomye, syr, 172**
- Listinoyse, country of, 499**
- Lodegreauunce, Lodegryaunce, Lodegreans, Lodegrean, Ladegreans, kyng of camylyard, father of quene Gueneuer, 63, 64; 100, 101**
- Logrys, realme of, 332; 367; 400; 404; 411; 419; 498; 520; 599; 601; 606; 691; 693; 714; 719; 724**
- Lombardye, country of, 178; lordes of, 180**
- Lona3ep, Lone3ep, castel of, 509; 512; 524, 525; 527; 529; 533; 559; 562, 563; 594**
- London, cyte of, 40; 44; 47; 76; 728; 839; toure of, 840; 842**
- Longeus, syr, 94**
- Longtayne, kyng of the yle of, 120**
- Lorayne, duchye of, 102; duke of, 175; 178**
- Lorayne le saueage, syr, 117**
- Lott,¹ kyng of Lowthean and of Orkeney, father of Gawayn, etc., 37; 46; 52; 54; 56; 59; 86, 87; 104; 108; 148**
- Louel, syr, son of syr Gawayn, 790; 809**
- Lucas the bottlere, Lucan the bottler, Lucanere the butteler, son of the duke of Corneus, 49, 50; 54, 55; 60; 398; 543; 743; 767; 792; 832; 845, 846, 847, 848; 850**
- Lucyus,² the emperour of Rome, 160; 163, 164; 169; 172, 173, 174**
- Lyanowre, duke, 633**
- Lylle, lady of auelyon, 76; 81**
- Lylle, kyng of, 171**
- Lymosyn, in gyan, 830; Limosin or Limousin, as well as Guienne, are two ancient provinces of France**
- Lynet, the damoyssel saueage, systre of lady Lyonesse, 216, 217, 218, 219-242, 243; 246, 247, 248, 249; 267, 268; 270; 341, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 347-353**
- Lyonas, country of, 273, 274; 280**
- Lyonesse, Lyones, lady, becomes wife of Gareth of Orkenay, 232;**

¹ "Hist. Brit.": has "Lot de Loudonesia" (Lot of Lothian). Huth "Merlin" reads "Loth d'Orcanie."

² "Hist. Brit.": "Lucius Tiberius." "Morte Arthure" (Thornton MS.) reads either "Lucius" or "Lucius Iberius."

- 234; 237; 239; 242; 244, 245,
246-249; 254, 255; 257; 263;
268, 269, 270
- Lyonel, Lionel, syr,** 169, 170; 183,
184, 185; 190; 192; 196; 397;
585; 604; 612, 613; 676, 677,
678, 679; 682-686; 743, 744;
818; becomes king of France, 829;
855*
- Lyonors, erlys doughter,** 62
- Lyonses, lord of the country of**
payarne, 48; 56; 60
- Lysays, one of the seven kings over-**
come by kyng Euelake, 660
- Lystynoyse, country of,** 499; kynges
of, 529; 538
- Lytyl Bretayne, royaume of,** 164
- Machabeus, Iudas, 1** (Caxton's
Preface); 177
- Macydone, 163; Macedonia**
- Madok de la montayne, syr,** 383
- Mador de la porte, syr,** 191; 212;
728, 729, 730; 734, 735, 736, 737,
738; 799
- Magouns,¹ castel of, called, according**
to Malory, Arundel in southsex,
467; traitours of, 494, 495
- Maledysaunt, damoyse, afterwards**
called bien pensaunt, or beau
viuante, 340, 341, 342, 343, 344,
345; 349; 353
- Malegryne, Malgryne, syr,** 256;
258; 470, 471, 472
- Malorye, Maleore, Thomas, syr,**
3; 861* (Caxton's Preface and
Colophon)
- Manassen, Manessen, cosyn of syr**
Accolon of gaule, 138, 139
- Manuel, kyng or duke of walys,** 660;
his daughter is mentioned in con-
nection with Ionas
- Margawse, Morgause, quene, wyfe**
of kyng Lot of Orkeney, and mother
of syr Gawayn, 38; 64; 88; 233;
252, 253, 254; 268, 269; 357
- Marhalt, kyng, father of syr Mar-**
haus, the good knyghte, 529
- Marhaus, syr, brother of the quene**
of Ireland, knyght of the table
round, the good knyghte, 141, 142,
143, 144, 145; 153, 154, 155-159;
172; 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283,
284, 285; 291; 422, 423
- Mariet de la roche, syr,** 60
- Mark, Marke, kyng of Cornewaile,**
uncle of syr Trystram, husband of
la beale Isoud, 83; 273; 278; 280,
281; 291-296; 301; 317; 321,
322-325; 363; 367, 368; 400, 401-
406; 423-430, 431, 432, 433-437;
445; 449, 450; called kyng Fox,
455, 456, 457; 460, 461-469; 478;
493, 494, 495, 496-498
- Marrok, syr,** 172; 793
- Marsyl, kyng of the yland of Pomy-**
tayn, 483; 485
- Mary, Marye, saynte, vyrgyne,**
677; 697; 703
- Masauke, erle of,** 830; syr Launce-
lot conferred this dignity on syr
Selyses
- Matto le breune, syr,** 368
- Maurel, syr,** 172
- Maydens, castel of,** 377; 380; 384;
388; 408; 423; 512; 632; 634
- Melane, 181; Milan**
- Meliодas quene, second wyfe of**
kyng Meliодas, doughter of kyng
Howles of Bretayne, stepmother of
syr Trystram, 275, 276
- Mellegaunt, Malegeaunt, Melya-**
gaunt, Melyagaunce, Melyaga-
nus, Mellyagraunce, syr, son of
Bagdemagus, 257; 356, 357, 358,
359; 479, 480; 482, 483; 773, 774.

¹ Comp. my note to "Arundel," p. ix.—Through the kindness of Lady Milbanke, of Earham, Chichester, I was enabled, while staying under her hospitable roof, to visit Arundel Castle, the seat of the Duke of Norfolk (February 14, 1890), and to inquire on the spot about the possible identity of "Arundel" and "Magouns"; there is, however, nothing whatever known on this subject at the castle. Arundel is probably mentioned for the first time in the will of Alfred the Great. Some indisputably certain references to "Arundel" are to be found in the Chronicles of Robert of Gloucester, Peter Langtoft, and Robert Manning of Brunne (see the editions of Hearne, Oxford, 1724 and 1725, printed again 1810), on the occasion of the arrival of the Empress Maud in England and her reception at Arundel Castle. (For further particulars see James Dallaway, "A History of the Western Division of the County of Sussex, etc., London, 1819, 4to, vol. ii. pp. 83 and 95 ff.)

775, 776, 777, 778, 779, 780, 781, 782, 783, 784, 785, 786, 787
Melot de la roche, syr, 54
Melyas, Melleaus de lyle, syr, 628, 629, 630; 634, 792
Melyodas, kyng of Lyonas, father of syr Trystram, 273, 274, 275, 276; 292, 293
Melyon de Tartare, syr, 586
Melyon of the montayne, syr, 791; 799
Melyot de logurs, logrys, syr, 115; 206, 207; 212; 257; 742, 743; 779; 799
Melyot, castle of, 89
Menadeuke, syr, 791; 830
Merlyn, **Merlyon**, meets in a beggar's array Vlfius; tells him that, if Vther will reward him, he shall have his wish realised; comes to Vther, 36; declares the child must be delivered to him immediately after its birth; comes to the king again to lead him away from Tyntigayl, 37, 38; carries the infant Arthur to Ector; asks Vther before all the barons who shall be king after him, 39; advises the archbishop of Canterbury to call the lords together, 40; justifies Arthur, and tells how and by whom he was begotten; comes to Arthur, 45, 46, 47, 48; passes the sea; returns to Arthur, 51, 52, 53; 61; goes to his master Bleyse to make him write about Arthur's battles; comes to Arthur as a beggar, 62, 63; comes as a child, and afterwards as an old man, to the king, and tells him that Igrayne is his mother, 66; shows himself in his ordinary shape; tells Arthur that he has committed a great sin, and slept with his sister, and that God is angry with him, 67; gives witness as to Arthur's birth, 68; is saved from three ruffians by Arthur; tells Arthur again he must die, 70; 72; shows Arthur the sword in the lake, 73; tells the king that the sheath is worth ten swords, 74; is more blamed for the murder of the children than Arthur, 75; tells the king that the damoyssel who brought the sword was the

falsest lady of all, 80, 81; buries Launcelot and his lady; prophesies that in this very place shall be done a battle between Launcelot and Trystram; and tells Balyn, that for the death of the lady he must do the dolorous stroke, 84; comes disguised to Balan and Balyn, and shows them how to overcome king Ryons, 85, 86; makes king Lot's tombstone, and tells them the tapers will not burn after his death, 88; predicts the great battle between Arthur and Mordred near Salisbury, and other things, 89; tells Balyn that they will not meet again in this world, 94; buries Balyn and Balan, and makes a golden inscription on their tomb, 98; makes a bed in which nobody should ever lie in without becoming mad; tells Arthur about the dolorous stroke, 99; tries to dissuade Arthur from wedding Gueneuer, but afterwards yields and sends for her, 100; finds out the best knights for the round table, 101; tells Arthur why there are two places void at the round table, 103; 113; becomes enamoured of a damoyssel that Pellinore brought to the court, and follows her everywhere; tells the king that he shall soon be gone, and how he will miss him, 118; warns him further to keep well his sword and the sheath; teaches the damoyssel many of his crafts; goes to Benwyck, where he sees young Launcelot; prophesies of his great glory, and tells that his first name was Galahad; then he goes away with the lady; shows her a great rock; he goes under it, and the lady causes by her crafts that he can never come out of it, 119, 120; delivers king Melyodas out of prison (!), 274; 419; 523; is said to have made the round table in token of the roundness of the world, 643
Meuer of Blood, sheath of syr Galahad's sword, 700
Mondrames, syr, 626
Monkes, abbay of, 140
Mordrayns, kyng, 695; 715*
Mordred, syr, son of kyng Arthur

from his own sister, kyng Lot's wife, is begotten, 65; escapes with his life; is found by a good man, and nourished till he is fourteen years old; then he is brought to the court, 75; 87; shall be one day against his own father, 89; 190; is thrown down by Launcelot, 191; rides with la cote male tayle; is thrown down by a knight of the castel Orgulous, 342, 343; blames the damoyssel Maledysaunt for rebuking la cote male tayle, 344; seeing Launcelot, he leaves their company, 345; gives his shield and armour to Dagonet, 432, 433; is smitten down by Breuse saunce pyte, 454, 455; tries to lead Alysaunders horse away, 477; 487; 512; gives Sir Lamorak a mortal wound, 513; 532; 590, 591; tries to find fault with Launcelot, 726; 742, 743; does not join the knights to receive sir Launcelot on his return, 759; 766; is thrown down by Launcelot, 768; 791; declares he will accuse queen Gueneuer, 797; tells king Arthur, 798, 799; goes with twelve knights to capture Launcelot, 800; calls him a traitour, 801; is grievously wounded, but escapes, 803; comes to Arthur to tell him about Launcelot's deed, 807, 808; is made chief ruler of England during Arthur's absence, 830; forges letters stating that Arthur is killed in a battle; assembles the parliament, and is crowned king of England; asks Gueneuer's hand; besieges Gueneuer in the Tower of London; defies the Archbishop of Canterbury, 839; hears of his father's return; excites the barons to make war against Arthur; finds many followers, 840; fights against Arthur at Dover, 841, 842; gathers his knights at Baramdown to fight another battle, 844; agrees to make peace on condition of receiving Cornwall and Kent, 845; fights at the risk of his life; all his knights

are killed; is wounded to death; dying, he kills his father with his sword, 847; 850, 851, 852, 853
Morgan le fay, Arthur's sister, wife of king Vryence, of the land of Gore, 38; 67; 88, 89; 123; 126, 127, 128, 129; 132; 139; 186, 187; 324, 325; 332; 373; 378, 379; 407-412; 440; 457; 470, 471; 473, 474; 572
Morganore, **Morganor**, sencial of the kyng of the honderd knyghtes, 55; 58; 302; 792; once mistakenly called kyng M.
Morgause, Arthur's sister. See **Margawse**
Morris, forest of, 402
Mortayse, **Mortoyse**, water of, 652; 707; 727
Moryans, of the castel of maydens, syr, 60
Morys de la roche, syr, 54
Morys, syr, 172
Moyses land,¹ marquys of, 180
Mychels, St., 169; mounte of, 167
Myles of the laundes, syr, 117
Mylis, syr, 68
Nabon le Noyre, syr, 330; 332, 333
Nacyen the heremyte, 618; 621; 627; 660; 668, 669; 694, 695
Nanowne le petite, syr, 330
Nappus, a holy man, 660
Naram, syr, 75
Nauntys, cyte of, in Brytayne, 64
Nentres,² **Nauntres**, kyng of the land of garlot, or garlott, or garloth, 38; 52; 54; 56; 60; 64; 790
Nero, syr, brother of kyng Ryons, 64; 86, 87, 88
Nerouens, **Neroneus**, **Neroueus**, syr, 346; 348; 792; 804; 830
Normandy, duke of, 830; this dignity is conferred on syr Clarrus by syr Launcelot
Northfolk, 843; Norfolk
Northgalya, **Northwalys**, kyng of, 188, 189, 190, 191, 192; 212; 377; 383; 385, 386; 391; 534, 535; 545; 738, 739; 742; 745; 755, 756, 757; quene of, 187

¹ The Morte Arthure (Thornton MS.) reads here "the maches of Mees" (Mets).

² In the ordinary "Merlin" he is called "kyng Nanters of Gerlot."

- Northumberland**, country of, 62; 77; 80; kyng of, 538; 738; 742; 745; 768
Nygramous, castel, 207
Nymue, Nyneue, the lady of the lake, 115; 118, 119; 131; 139; 151, 152, 153; 159; 361, 362; 737; 793; 851
Ontlake, syr, 126, 127; 129; 137, 138
Orgulous, castle, 342, 343
Orkeney, quene of. *See* Margawse
Ossaise, Ossayse, of Surluse, syr, 490; 492
Ouerne, 830; Auvergne, a late province of France; syr Gahalantyne is made a duke of Ouerne by syr Launcelot
Oute yles, quene of, 187
Ozanna le cure hardy, syr, 156, 430; 433; 742, 743; 791, 792
Paas peryllous, 226
Palamydes, Palomydes, syr, the sarasyn, the good knyghte, 342; 344, 345, 346, 347; 357; 365, 366, 367; 372; 375, 376; 381, 382; 386; 390, 391; 393; 395, 396; 399; 400; 405; 413, 414, 415, 416; 419-421; 435; 438, 439-445; 447; 455; 481, 482; 484; 486; 489; 493; 500-504; 510; 512-515; 517, 518; 520-537; 541-546-570; 606-611; 728; 742; 757; 766-769; 804; 818, 819, 820; 828; 830
Pampoylle, 163; † Pamphylia, a province of Asia Minor
Pardyak (!), erle of, 830; syr Nero-neus is made erle of P. by syr Launcelot
Parys, cyte of, 171, 172; 178
Pase, erle of, 474, 475
Passe Brewel, 380; name of syr Trystram's horse
Patryce, Patryse, syr, a knyght of Ireland, 728, 729; 734; 736, 737, 738
Pauye, land of, 181; † Pavia, town and province of Northern Italy
Payarne, country of, 48
Pedyuere of the straye marches, syr, 210, 211; 578
Pellam, kyng of Lystyneyse, 91, 92, 93; 99
Pellandrys, syr, 351
Pelleas, Pellias, syr, a knyght, admirer of lady Ettard; afterwards becomes husband of the lady of the lake, 143; 147, 148, 149; 151; 159; 202; 737; 768; 772; 775, 776
Pelles, kyng, father of Elayne, mother of syr Galahad, 572; 574, 575, 576, 577; 580; 597, 598, 599, 600; 612; 616; 618; 660; 663; 695; 714*; 717; 718
Pellinore, Pellinre, kyng, syr, the knyghte with the straunge beeste, 37; 66; 72, 73, 74; 103; 377; 449
Pellogris, syr, 351
Pellounes, Pillounes, Pellownus, syr, 351; 380, 381
Pelownes, castel of, 563
Pendragon, castel of, 346; 348; 352
Pentecoste, penthecost, 43, 44; 158, 159; 208; 213; 606; 612; 620; 763; Whitsuntide
Perard, syr, the black knyghte, 221, 222; 231
Percyual, Persyual of walys, syr, 72; 232; 256; comes to Arthur's court; is made knight, 451; a damoyssel, that has hitherto been dumb, suddenly speaks, leads Percyual to the seat on the right hand of the Siege peryllous, and dies soon after, 452; Percyual seeks Trystram, 496; delivers him out of prison, 497; 502, 503, 504; sets out to find Launcelot, 586, 587, 588, 589, 590; fights with Ector, 591; both are wounded to death but healed by the Holy Grail, 592, 593; 601; finds Launcelot and Galahad, but he does not recognise the latter, 602, 603, 604; 619; 636, 637; comes to a recluse who is his aunt, 642; is told of his mother's death and that a red knight who has not his equal has been with him, 643; comes to a castle and prays there, 644; is told about the Holy Grail, 645, 646, 647; is tempted, 648, 649, 650, 651, 652, 653, 654, 655; 687; meets Bors, 688; finds Galahad, 691; enters a ship with Bors and Galahad, 692; 694; 702; 704, 705, 706, 707; 715*; 717; 720,

- 721, 722, 723; dies, after having passed one year in serving God at an hermitage, 724
- Percydes, Persydes, a knyght, 381, 382; 385; 390; 395; 589, 590**
- Percyuale's syster, 91; 699; 702; 704, 705, 706; 708; 722**
- Perrymones, syr, the reed knyghte, 226, 227; 250; 259; 270; 793**
- Persant, Persaunt of inde, syr, the blewe knyghte, 228, 229, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234; 250, 251; 255; 257; 261; 270, 271; 728; 772; 774; 776; 793**
- Pertelope, Pertolype, Pertilype, syr, the grene knyghte, 223, 224, 225; 231; 250; 252; 259; 270; 793**
- Perygot, a kind of falcon, 208**
- Perygot, erle of, 830; this dignity is conferred on syr Galyhad by syr Launcelot**
- Peryn de mountebeliard, syr, 90**
- Perys de foreyst sauage, syr, 197**
- Pescheours, Peschere, kyng, lord, 616; 638**
- Petersaynt,¹ land of, 181**
- Petypase of wynkelsee, wynchelsee, 257; 791; 799**
- Petyte Bretayne. See Lytle Bretayne**
- Pharyaunce, syr, 48; 56, 57; 60**
- Phelot, syr, a knyght of the kyng of Northgalys, 208, 209**
- Placidas, syr, 51**
- Playne de amours, syr, 349**
- Playne de force, syr, 349**
- Playns, erle of, 683**
- Plenorius, syr, 350, 351, 352, 353; 782; 804; 830**
- Plessaunce, land of, 181; Placenza, in Italy**
- Pluere, castel, 310; 372**
- Polycronycon,² 2 (Caxton's Preface)**
- Pomytayn, Pometayne, yland of, 483**
- Pope of Rome, apostle pope, 496, 497**
- Portyngale, 163; Portugal**
- Pounce, 163; † Pontus**
- Powlis,³ church of, 40; St. Paul's Cathedral**
- Principum, de casu, 2 (Caxton's Preface); a book by Boccaccio. See Bochas**
- Prouynce, 830; Provence, a former province of France; Sir Palomydes is made a duke of P. by syr Launcelot**
- Pryamus, syr, 177, 178, 179, 180; 182**
- Prydam le noyre, syr, 673, 674**
- Pynel, a good man, 54**
- Pynel, Pyonel, syr, 728; 737**
- Quene of the waste landes, 642, 643; a recluse, aunt of syr Percyual**
- Questynge beest, beste Glatysaunt, glastyng beest, "that hadde in shap a hede like a serpente's hede, and a body like a lybard, buttocks lyke a lyon, and foted lyke an herte, and in his body was suche a noyse as it had been the noyse of thyrty coupel of houndes questyng," 65, 66; 355, 356; 434; 445; 480; 500, 501; 520; 523; 611**
- Raynes, town in Brytayne, 857***
- Raynold, Reynold, syr, 202, 203; 792**
- Reed Castle, 156, 157; Powis Castle**
- Reed Cyte, 518, 519, 520; 522, 523**
- Reed knyght, the. See Perrymones**
- Roche deure, 410**
- Roche, lady of the, 157**
- Roche peryllous, 695**
- Rochestre, bishop of, 821**
- Roerge, erle of, 830; Rouergue, a former province of France, forming now the department of Aveyron; Syr Menadeuke was made erle of Roerge by syr Launcelot**
- Romaunce, the frensshe, 182. See Book**

¹ The "Morte Arthure" (Thornton MS.) reads for this form, line 351, "Petyrsanda."

² Ranulphus Higden's "Polychronicon," printed by William Caxton, 1482, fol., black letter. I have seen the copy in the British Museum.

³ Of course, St. Paul's Cathedral did not exist in the days of king Arthur, and therefore "some men" were wrong.

- Romayns**, 161; 163; 170, 171, 172; 178
Rome, cyte of, 273; pope of, 211; publyke wele of, 160; the empyre of, 163
Rouse, de la Rowse, duke, 264; 266; 271
Rule, lady of the, 117
Byons, kyng of Northwayls, once; of all Ireland, and many yles, 62; 64; 74, 75; 83; 85, 86
Sadok, Saduk, syr, 256; 259; 467; 469, 470; 494, 495; 498; 532; 543; 792; 830
Safere, Safyr, syr, 232; 258; 439; 445; 470; 485, 486, 487; 558; 561, 562; 608; 742; 804; 818, 819; 828
Sagramour le desyrus, syr, 156; 203; 211; 256; 259; 287; 297, 298, 299; 377; 379; 390; 418, 419; 475; 528; 586; 772; 774; 791
Salamon, king of Iherusalem, 696, 697, 698, 699
Salisbury, 89; 727; 843; **Salisbury**, a town in Wiltshire
Sanam, erle, 62
Sanogreal, Sangraille, Sangrayll, Sangraylle, sank greal, hooly Grayle,¹ 88; 91; 94; 99, 100; 124; 159; 455; 571; 592; 599; 602; 606; 615; 617, 618; 620, 621; 631; 635; 638; 641; 643; 645; 650; 657, 658, 659; 663; 665, 666, 667; 669, 670, 671, 672; 674; 682; 703; 711; 713*, 714*; 717; 721, 722; 724, 725, 726; 854; 861*
Sandwoche, 162; 164; 182; 825; **Sandwich**, in Kent
Sarasyns, 61; 64; 163; 171; 188; 465
Sarras, cyte of, 625; 645; 706; 719; 721
Sauseyse, syr, 480
Saynt Mychels mount, 167
Saynte Mary. See **Mary**
Saynte steuyns, chirche of, in Camelot, 88; 104
Scotland, 45; 75; 159; 255; 273; 286; 499; 586; 859*
Scottes, or Scotland, kyng of, 410, 411; 420; 531, 532; 554; 557; 738; 741, 742; 744; 757; 765, 766
Sege, syege, peryllous, 571; 577; 614, 615, 616, 617; 660
Segwarydes, syr, 256; 258; 294, 295; 300, 301; 330, 331, 332; 334; 439; 517; 561; "his wyfe," 293, 294; 296; 298; 300
Selyses of the dolorous toure, syr, 793; 804; 830
Selyses, syr, nephew of the kyng of the honderd knyghtes, 530
Selysaunt, syr, 594, 595, 596; 604
Semound the valyaunt, syr, 482
Sentonge, duke of, 830; **Saintonge** a former province of France; syr Galyhadyn is made a duke of S. by syr Launcelot
Sentraille de lushon, syr, 326
Sentrayle, syr, 792
Seruage, yle of, 330; 334, 335
Seruause le breuse, syr, 791
Sessoynne, 172, 173; 458, 459; 463, 464 ? Soissons
Sherewood, forest of, 62
Soleyse, kyng of, 120
Sorhaute, cyte of, 64
Southfolke, 843; **Suffolk**
Southland, sarasyns of, 178
South marchys, the, duke of, 154, 155
Southsex, 843; **Sussex**
Spayne, country of, 788
Spolute, 181; **Spoletto**, town and duchy of Italy in the Ecclesiastical States
Stroke, the dolorous, 88; 99; given by syr Balan the worshipful knyghte to kyng Pelles
Suppynabylls, Suppynabyles, syr, 329; 792
Surlat, erldom of, 830; (?) ; conferred on syr Sadok by syr Launcelot
Surlouse, forest of, 106; very likely **Sorlouse** and **Surluse** are identical
Surluse, Surlouse, country of, 349; 405; 478; 488; 499; 512
Surrey, 843; county of Surrey

¹ For an exhaustive account of the literature of "The Holy Grail," see Alfred Nutt's "Studies on the Legend of the Holy Grail," London, 1888, 8vo.

- Surrye**, 163; **Sowdan**¹ (sultan) of, 174; **Syria**
Symyan, tombe of, 716*
Syuarne, ryuer, 632; † **Severn**
- Table round**, or the **Round Table**, 44; 62; is the property of king **Lodegrian** of **Camylard**, 101; is brought to **Arthur** with a hundred knights as dowry of **Gueneuer**, 102; eight of the best knights are killed, 123; they are replaced, 124; 153; 160; 163; 165; 175; 180; 183; 185; 193; 195*; 212, 213; 251; 261; 267; 278; 296; 336; 347; a feast of, 417; 422; 424; 448; 493; 502; names of the knights, 532; 552; is to be broken when the holy vessel goes about, 573; 586; 612; 614*; 618, 619; knights of, are fed with all sorts of meat; vow to depart in the quest of the **Holy Grail**, 620; a hundred and fifty knights go in the quest, 623*; 638; signifies the world; **Merlyn** made it round because the world is round, 643; 650; 685; many of the knights are destroyed in the quest of the **Holy Grail**, 715*; the remnant returns to **Arthur**, 725; **Launcelot** wins the prize of all the knights, 746; 759; 766; 769; the knights handle **Vrre's** wounds, 791, 792; 800; thirteen knights are killed, 808; fellowship is broken up for ever, 829; 861*
- Tarce**, 163; **Tarsus**, now called **Tarasso**, seaport of **Cilicia**, **Asia Minor**
- Taulas**, a giant, 155
Tauleas, a giant, 369; 372
Taulurd, a giant, 155
Temse, river, 728; 736, 737; 760, 761; 777; **Thames**
Terrabyl,² **tarabil**, castel of, 36, 37; 83
Tirre, **Tyrre**, syr, 740; 749; 758; 760
Tolleme, kyng, 626, 627
Tor, syr, son of kyng **Pellenore** by the wife of **Aryes** the cowherd, therefore called **Tor le fyse aries**, le **fyse vaysshoure**, 102, 103; 109, 110, 111, 112, 113; 359, 360; 427; 429, 430; 444; 791
Toure, the dolorous, 271
Towre, lady of the, 98
Tramtryst. See **Trystram**
Tremble, port³ of, 181
Trent, river, 44; 51
Tristram, **Trystram**, syr, son of kyng **Melyodas** of **Lyonas**, 84; 143; 164; 234; 256; 259; 261, 262; 271, 272; is born, 273; christened **Trystram**, i.e., sorrowful birth, 274; is in danger of being poisoned by his stepmother, 275; prays for her, and obtains her pardon from his father; is sent to **France**; learns the **French** language, to handle arms, to play the harp and other instruments; gives much time to hunting and hawking, 276; all the terms of hunting and hawking are invented by him,⁴ 277; requests his father to let him fight for the truage of **Cornwall** against **Marhaus**; receives a letter from the daughter of the king of **France**,

¹ The form "**Sowdan**," the Middle-English **soudan**, for **sultan**, seems to have entirely escaped **Wright** as well as **Strachey**. The former passes it over in silence; the latter mentions it separately in his **Glossary** without giving an explanation.

² **Geoffrey** of **Monmouth**, "**Hist. Brit.**," calls this castle "**castellum Dimillioe**." In the ordinary "**Merlin**" as well as in the **Huth "Merlin"** in the corresponding passage this castle is only spoken of as "**a second castle**," and no name is given. The name "**Tarabel**" occurs, however, in the **Huth "Merlin,"** i. pp. 241, 252-261, where it is the castle in which the army of king **Ryons** is defeated and where king **Lot** is killed. Where the place was situated I am utterly unable to ascertain.

³ The "**Morte Arthure**" (**Thornton MS.**) always reads "**Pounte**" for "**port**."

⁴ There are a considerable number of **MSS.** in the **British Museum** which treat of hunting and hawking—e.g., **Cotton Vespasian B. xij.**, "**The Mayster of the Hunt**"—but none of them bears the title "**Syr Trystram's Book**," nor can I find any reference in them to the existence of such a book. The earliest printed book on this subject in English is **Lady Juliana Berners' "Booke of St. Albans,"** printed for the first time by the schoolmaster-printer of **St. Albans** in 1486 (reproduced in facsimile by **William Blades**,

279; comes to king Mark; is made knight, 280; goes to meet Marhaus; finds him near his ship, 281; fights with him, 282; overcomes him, 283; returns to Mark; is wounded with a poisoned spear; can only be healed in the country where the spear is made, 284; goes to Ireland; gains the king's favour by his harping; calls himself Tramtryst, 285; Isoud, the king's daughter, nurses and heals him; requests him to fight at a tournament, 286; is nearly discovered; appears on a white horse, and with white shield and harness, given to him by Isoud, 287; makes Hebes le renoumes knight; overcomes Palomydes, 288; is discovered through his sword, 289; leaves the court of Anguysshe, 290; takes leave of Isoud, 291, 292; after calling on his father, returns to Mark's court; becomes, as well as king Mark, enamoured of the wife of Segwarydes; meets Mark, and smites him down, 293; is betrayed by the wife of Segwarydes, who fights against him, 294; Trystram throws him down, and rides to Tyntagil, 295; is rebuked by a lady; rides after Bleoberis, 296; meets Sagramor and Dodynas, and smites them both down, 297; joins Bleoberis and the wife of Segwarydes, 298; fights against him, and overcomes him, 299; the lady refuses to go with him, 300; returns to Tyntagyl; is sent to Ireland by king Mark to ask for Isoud's hand for him, 301; is driven to the coast of England; smites down Ector, 302; hears that king Anguysshe is accused of treason; resolves to help him, 303*; comes to the king, 304*; is accepted, and Anguysshe promises to give him

whatever he will ask, 305*; fights against Blamor, 306; overcomes him, but requests the kings to save his life, 307; is joyfully received by Anguysshe, and goes with him to Ireland, 308; asks for Isoud's hand in the name of king Mark; returns with Isoud to Cornwall; on the way takes a love drink with her, 309; fights against Breunor, and rids the castel Pluere of its bad customs, 310, 311, 312, 313, 314, 315, 316, 317, 318, 319, 320; is betrayed by his cousin Andred; king Mark lifts his sword up to kill him, but Trystram puts him to flight, 321; kills two brothers, knights of king Mark, and wounds about thirty other knights; is sent for by the barons, and reconciled with Mark, 322; refuses to do anything that is against his knight-hood; fights with Lamorack, 323, 324; goes daily and nightly to Isoud; is taken by Andred and twelve knights; they bind him and intend to kill him; 325; asks his cousin Andred for mercy; breaks his fetters, and escapes; defends himself in a chapel, where his men join him, 326; delivers Isoud; is hurt by a poisoned arrow; goes to Bre-tayne, to king Howel's daughter, Isoud la blanche maynys, to get healed, 327; becomes enamoured of her, and marries her, 328; hears that Launcelot blames him for his conduct, 329, 330, 331, 332, 333, 334, 335; 344, 345, 346; 348; receives a sorrowful letter from Isoud, Marke's wife; resolves to go to see her; is driven ashore near the Castel peryllous; leaves his fellowship with Kehydus, 353, 354; fights and overcomes Lamo-rack; is henceforth his friend,

1881, 4to), later by Wynkyn de Worde and many others. In this book Trystram is once thus alluded to:—

“Wheresoeuer ye fare by fryth or by fell,

My dere chylde take hede how Tristram dooth you tell.”

From some passages in another book, “The Noble Art of Venerie and Hunting,” by G. Tuberville, London, 1611, 8vo, it appears, however, that in days past there existed a “Book of Syr Trystram.” Comp. p. 40, “Trystram's lore;” p. 96, “for noble Tristram's sake;” p. 148, “Yet our Tristram reckoneth the bore for one of the foure beasts of Venerie;” p. 174, “but our old Tristram calleth it hallow.”

355, 356; 359, 360; is told that Arthur is in great danger, 361; saves him, but does not tell him his name, 362; sails to Cornwall, 363; reproaches Isoud for faithlessness, 364, 365; is mad; comes to a lady, but soon escapes; lives with shepherds in a wood; throws Dagonet into a well, 366, 367; the rumour is spread by Andred that Trystram is dead, 368; kills the giant Tauleas, 369; is taken to Marke's court; is recognised by a little brachet, which was given to him by the daughter of the king of France, 370; is banished from the court of Mark for ten years, 371, 372; is told that Launcelot is in great danger, 373; fights against thirty knights, 374, 375, 376, 377, 378, 379, 380, 381, 382, 383, 384, 385, 386, 387, 388, 389, 390, 391; fights with Launcelot; is wounded; leaves the field, 392; smites down Palomydes, 393; wins the field, 394, 395, 396, 397, 398; Trystram comes to a castle; its owner recognises in him the knight who killed his sons, and he is put into prison, 399, 400, 401; 404; is still in prison, but is assured that Darras will not kill him, 405; falls sick; is delivered out of prison; reposes himself, and recovers; leaves his fellows, 406; comes to a castle to ask for lodging; is well received, but learns that he has fallen into the hands of Morgan le fay, 407; the queen promises to set him free on condition that he carries a shield which she will give him in the tournament near the castel of the hard roche, 408; smites down Hemyson, a lover of Morgan le fay, 409; stays with a knight; arrives at the castle where the tournament takes place, 410, 411; fights with Arthur, 412, 413, 414; agrees with Palomydes to meet with him in a fortnight at the tombstone, 415, 416, 417, 418; comes to the tombstone, 419; fights with Launcelot, thinking that he is Palomydes; at last they recognise each other, 420; goes to king

Arthur, 421; is made knight of the round table, and gets the seat of Marhaus, 422, 423, 424, 425; 427; 431; 435, 436; 438; 441; 448; is reconciled with king Mark, 449; returns to Cornwall with him, 450, 451; 453; 456, 457; is seriously wounded at a tournament; is asked to fight against the Sessoyns, 458; tells the messenger that he will come as soon as he is recovered; comes with ten of Arthur's knights, 459; asks leave to do what he thinks best; destroys the ships of the Sessoyns by fire, 460; fights successfully against them, 461; fights with Elyas, the captain of the Sessoyns, 462, 463; kills him, 464, 465, 466; 469, 470; 493; fights in a tournament; is grievously wounded; king Mark, under the pretext of nursing him, takes him to a castle, gives him a drink, and, when he is under the influence of this charm, puts him into prison in another castle, 494; receives a forged letter from king Mark, 495; refuses to yield to his request, 496; is delivered by Percy-uale, but imprisoned again by king Marke, 497; is delivered again by Dynas and flees with Isoud; appears at a tournament of king Arthur, 498; receives Ioyous gard from Launcelot for his residence, 499; they live very happily there; one day he meets Breuse saunce pyte, and soon after Palomydes, 500, 501; 505, 506, 507, 508, 509, 510, 511, 512, 513; finds a ship; enters it; reads the letter which the dead king has in his hand, 514; gives Palomydes the adventure; comes to a castle; is recognised by the owner as the knight who slew his brother; departs, 515; the knight follows him; he fights against him and overcomes him, 516; fights against Beraunce; rides to Ioyous gard, 517; 521; receives Palomydes after his return from the Reed cyte, 525, 526; rides with Isoud, both arrayed in green, to Lona3ep; meets on the way

Galyhodyn, who wants to take Isoud from him; he smites him down, 527; meets Gawayn, Vwayn, Sagramor, and Dodynas, 528, 529; declines to tell Arthur his name, nor which party he belongs to, 530, 531, 532, 533; is brought to the ground by Launcelot; gets the horse of the king of Northgalis, 534; throws Arthur out of the saddle; reappears in red harness; smites down five knights, 535, 536; smites down Ector, 537, 538, 539, 540, 541, 542, 543; fights very bravely, 544; rides secretly out of the field, 545; arrays himself all in black; returns with Dynadan to the tournament; smites down three knights, 546; fights against Palomydes, who has disguised himself; afterwards with Launcelot, who does not recognise him, 547; helps Dynadan; is recognised by Launcelot, 548; gets the degree of the day; returns to his pavilion with Isoud, 549; hears from Isoud about Palomydes' falsehood; pardons him, 550; receives Arthur and Launcelot in his pavilion, 551; tells Arthur why he was against him, 552; meets with Kay, and throws him down from his horse and three other knights as well; surpasses all other knights, 553, 554; returns to king Arthur's party; the prize is given him again, but he refuses it in favour of Launcelot; returns to his pavilion, 555; returns to Ioyous gard to rest himself seven days, 556, 557, 558, 559; 561; rides to the castel Pelownes to save Palomydes, 563; meets Launcelot, 564; requests him to stay with him at Ioyous gard, 565; hears how Palomydes, alone at a well, talks about his love for Isoud, 566; reproaches him for his perfidy, 567; agrees to fight with him, in fifteen days, near Camelot;

returns to Ioyous gard; one day, being out hunting, he is shot in the thigh by an archer, 568; tells Palomydes that he cannot fight at the day fixed, 569; gets great renown by his valiant deeds of arms; the people of Lyonas send him letters and presents, 570; 606; meets, unarmed, Palomydes, yet fights with him, 607, 608; takes Galleron's armour, shield, and sword, and fights again with Palomydes, 609; overcomes him, 610; leads him to Carleil and causes him to be christened, 611; his death referred to, 768; 807

Tryan, syr, 427

Turkes, or myscreantes, 860*

Turkye, 163; Turkey

Turquyne, syr, 185; 193, 194, 195; 197, 198; 211, 212; 256; 261; 824

Turnaunce, yle of, 694

Tursank, erle of, 830; (†) this dignity is conferred on syr Malyas de lyle by syr Launcelot

Tuskane, 175, 176; 181; Tuscany, a grand duchy in Italy

Tyntagil,¹ Tyntigayll, castle of the duke of Cornwayle, 35; 37; 45; 68; 199; 278, 279; 284; 292; 294; 301; 364; 367; 370; 403; 455; 458, 459, 460, 461; 497

Vlbawes, Vlbause, erle of Surluse, 491, 492; 790

Vlfyus,² syr, a noble knyght, the confidant of kyng Vtherpendragon, 36, 37; 43; 48, 49; 53, 54, 55; 60; 62; 67, 68

Vlfyn, heremyte, 690; very likely identical with syr Vlfyus

Vrbyne, cyte of, 181

Vrre, syr, 788, 789, 790, 791, 792, 793, 794; 801; 804; 820, 821, 822-830

Vryence,³ Vryens, kyng of the land of gore, 44; 52; 56; 64; 89; 123, 124, 125, 126; 140; 257; 260; 760; 790

¹ Tintagell is a small town in Cornwall on the coast of the Bristol Channel.

² "Hist. Brit." has "Vlfynus de Ricaradock;" Huth "Merlin" reads "Ulfin;" the "ordinary Merlyn" (MS. of the University Library, Cambridge) reads "Vlfyn."

³ "Hist. Brit." reads "Vrianus;" Huth "Merlin" has "Urien."

- Vtherpendragon**, kyng of England, sends for the duke of Cornwall; gets enamoured of Igrayne; assembles his lords; declares war against the duke, 35; besieges the duke in vain in the castel of Terrabil; becomes ill; calls Merlyn by the advice of Vlfius; promises Merlyn to deliver him the child, 36; comes in the shape of the duke of Cornwall to Tyntagyll, sleeps with Igrayne, and begets Arthur; marries Igrayne after her husband's death, 37; tells Igrayne the secret, and orders the child to be delivered to Merlyn, who gives it to syr Ector, 38; becomes again ill; defeats his enemies; by Merlyn's advice he calls the barons together, and recommends them to make Arthur king of Britain; dies, 39; 43; 45; 66; 70; 75; 100; 199
- Vwayne, Ewayne, le fyse de roy Vryence, le or la blaunche maynys, les auoultres, les auoutres, les auowtres, les auenturous**, 38; 136; 140, 141, 142; 145; 156, 157, 158, 159; 203, 204; 211; 256; 397; 401, 402; 411, 412, 413; 420; 430; 433, 434; 486; 528; 543; 586; 623; 625; 634, 635; 667, 668; 791
- Vagon**, castel of, 623
- Vale**, erle de, 656, 657; kyng of, 120
- Vaunce, Vawse**, lady de, 85; 155
- Vyterbe**, city, 181; Viterbo, town in Italy
- Vycecounte**,¹ vale of, 181
- Vyllyers, Vylyars, le valyaunt**, syr, 791; 804; 830; 856*; 860*
- Wade**, 225; Wate²
- Walys**, 38; 44, 45; 64; 121; 156; 159; 162 (west); 255; 273; 286; 586; 660; 859*; kyng of, 538; 545; Wales
- Wandesborow, wadisborow**, castel of, 61; 64
- Waste landes**, quene of, 642, 643
- Well, Callahadys** (Galahads), 716*
- Wentland**,³ country of, 114, 115
- Westmynstre, westmestre**, 730; 733; 760; 763; 772, 773; 776, 777, 778, 779; abbey of, 2; 861* (Caxton's Preface and Colophon); chirche of, 737; brydge of, 777
- Wyndscore, Wyndsoure**, 727; forest of, 763
- Wysshard, wychard**, syr, 175; 178
- Wynchestre, wynchester**, 2 (Caxton's Preface); 739; 742; 751; 753; 755. According to Malory, W. is the English for Camelot: *see* Camelot
- Wyndesan**, cyte of, 64
- Ynde**, 168; India
- Yorke**, 164; York
- Yrland**, 164. *See* Ireland
- Ytalye**, 162. *See* Italye

¹ The "Morte Arthure" (Thornton MS.) reads here once "Vale of Viterbe," in another passage "the Viscownte of Valewnce."

² According to the Wilkina Saga, he was the son of Wilcinus and the mermaid Wachild. He is often confounded with Tor. (Comp. "Wade": Lettre à M. Henri Ternaux Compans, par Fr. Michel; Paris, 1837.)

³ This is most likely "Gwentland" in Monmouthshire.

GLOSSARY.¹

A, i. *prep.*, = in, on; ii. *interj.*, expressing pain or surprise, 303* 24; 860* 1; iii. *prefix*—(1) for *prep.* *a* and for Icel. *á* = on (*abak*); (2) for O.F. *a-* and Lat. *ad-* (*abated*); (3) for A.F. *a*, O.F. *e-*, *es-*, Lat. *e-*, *ex-* (*abasshed*); (4) adding intensity to the notion of a verb, A.S. *á-* for *ar-*, O.H.G. *ar-*, Goth. *us-* (*aboughte*); (4) for *prep.* *at* and Icel. *at* (*adone*); (5) for *prep.* *of* (*adrad*); (6) for A.F. *an-*, O.F. *en-* from Lat. *in-* (*apayre*).

abak, *adv.*, 131 30; backwards;—A.S. *on-bæc*.

abasshe, *v.*, to abash, cast down; **abasshed**, *p.p.*, 62 28; 615 32; **ashamed**, alarmed; **abeysshed**, *p.p.*, 392 26;—O.F. *esbahies-* from *esbahir*.

abate, *v.*, to beat down, to calm; **abated**, *pt.*, 158 4;—A.F. *abatre*.

a bedde, 800 21; in bed.

abhomynable, *adj.*, 165 34; **abominable**;—A.F. *abominable*.

abreide, *v.*, to start up, to draw (a sword), to thrust out, to blame; **abraide**, *pt.*, 389 20; **abrayed**, *pt.*, 289 21;—A.S. *abregdan*.

abrode, *adv.*, away, 845* 28.

abyde, *v.*, to abide, await, remain, endure; **abode**, *pt.*, 87 33; **aby-**

den, *p.p.*, 691 6; 702 16;—A.S. *á-bidan*.

abye, *v.*, to buy, to pay for; **aboughte**, *pt.*, 238 33;—A.S. *ábycgan*.

abylement, *sb.*, 64 30; dress, clothing;—O.F. *habillement*.

accept, *p.p.*, 3 4; for *accepted*.

accompanye, *v. inf.*, 314 35; to associate with somebody;—O.F. *accompaignier*.

accomplysshe, *v.*, to achieve, to accomplish; **taccomplysshe**, *inf.*, 177 9; **accomplysshed**, *p.p.*, 1 (see *complysshe*);—from O.F. *acompliss-*, *p.prs.* of *acomplir*.

acompte, *v.*, to count, calculate; *prs.*, 410 20; *inf.*, 622 38;—Late Lat. *acomptare*.

accord, *sb.*, agreement, peace, 37 27;—Lat. *ad* and *cord-* from *cor*;—O.F. *acord*.

achyeue, *v.*, to bring to an end, achieve; *inf.*, 27 4; **achyeued**, *pt.*, 14 36; **acheued**, *pt.*, 570 8; **thachyeuyng**, *pr. prs.*, 861* (Caxton's Colophon). See also *encheue*;—O.F. *acheuer*.

acquyнтаunce, *sb.*, 380 22; acquaintance;—*deriv.* of Late Lat. *adcoqnitare*, O.F. *acointer*.

acquyte, *v.*, to acquit; *prs.*, 176 6;—O.F. *aquiter*.

¹ What is said about the List of Names and Places can be repeated here: this Glossary is the first ever compiled to "Le Morte Darthur." As I am preparing a Caxton Dictionary for all the works of England's first printer for which I have accumulated the material in the course of my studies, I have been able to give to this Glossary more the form of a small Etymological Dictionary. Many words, however, owe their acceptance only to their orthography. The numbers refer to pages and lines. In the etymological part A.F. is written for *Anglo-French*; A.S., *Anglo-Saxon*; Goth., *Gothic*; Icel., *Icelandic*; Lat., *Latin*; Late Lat., *post-classical Latin*; M.E., *Middle English*; O.F., *Old French*; O.H.G., *Old High German*; O.Merc., *Old Mercian*; O.North., *Old Northumbrian*; O.S., *Old Saxon*; Sans., *Sanskrit*; W., *Welsh*. I have always given the different spellings of every word that occur in the text.

- actually**, *adv.*, 146 32; bravely, actively;—*Lat. actualis*.
- Adieu**, *adv.*, 393 16; to God, farewell;—*Fr. à Dieu*.
- admoneste**, *v. pres.*, 173 5; to bring to mind, to warn, admonish;—*Late Lat. admonitare*, *O.F. amonester*.
- ado**, *sb.*, fuss, trouble, difficulty, 443 5; to haue adoo with, 73 26; ado with her, 62 35; had lytyl ado to cause, 36 16; adone, 441 2.
- adoubted**, *adj.*, afraid, 481 2.
- adrad**, *p.p.*, frightened, put in dread, 59 19; 435 6; **adradde**, 654 44;—*A.S. of-drad*.
- aduant garde**, *sb.*, vanguard, 56 35;—*O.F. avantgarde*. *Compare vaward*.
- aduysson**, *sb.*, vision, apparition, 27 15;—*Lat. ad and visionem*. *Compare vysyon*.
- afer**, *adv.*, afar, at a far distance, 706 36;—*A.S. of feorr*, *O.S. fer*, *Goth. fairra*.
- aferē**, *v.*, to frighten, terrify; **aferd**, *p.p.*, 70 23; 187 28; 656 20;—*A.S. á-færan*.
- affyaunce**, *sb.*, faith pledged to, trust, confidence, 841 30;—*A.F. affiaunce*.
- afore**, *adv.*, *prep.*, before, 97 2; 135 5;—*A.S. on-foran*.
- afterdele**, *sb.*, disadvantage, 173 33;—*A.S. æft and dæl*.
- ageynward**, *adv.*, against, towards, 550 33.
- agon**, *agone*, *p.p.* and *adv.*, gone away, ago, 435 14; 526 25; 634 4;—*A.S. a-gán*.
- agreue**, *v.*, to bear heavily on, to grieve, to oppress; **agreued**, *p.p.*, 43 11;—*Lat. aggravare*.
- aknowen**, *p.p.*, known, 295 16;—*A.S. a-cnāwen*.
- al**, *sb.*, *adj.*, *adv.*, all; **al dede**, 715* 33; **alle to hewe hym**, 513 9; **alle the hole Iustes**, 552 1; **al to long**, 132 2; **al only**, 882 16; **foughten wyth al**, 29 14; **alle to sheuers**, 554 14;—*A.S. call, all, al*.
- alaye**, *v.*, to quiet, alleviate; **alayed**, *p.p.*, 718 16;—*A.S. a-leogan*.
- allygeaunce**, *sb.*, the duty of a subject to his lord, but at 760 11 it seems to be synonymous with forgiveness, alleviation.
- almery**, *sb.*, cupboard, press; **almeryes of Salysbury**, 724 24;—*Lat. almaricolum*.
- almesse**, *sb.*, alms, charity, 221 26;—*A.S. ælmesse*.
- al one**, *adj.*, *adv.*, alone, 74 16; **allone**, 849 38;—*A.S. al, eal, and án*.
- alowde**, *adv.*, aloud, 452 1;—*A.S. on and hlūd*.
- allwayes**, *adv.*, always, 831 37;—*A.S. al and weg*.
- al ther**, *gen. pl.*, of all, 134 2;—*A.S. ealra*.
- Alyaunts**, *sb. pl.*, aliens, strangers, 831 12;—*Lat. alienus*.
- alyghte**, *v.*, to alight, to get down from a horse, to descend; to lighten; **alyghte**, *pt.*, 403 24; 242 31; 267 4; **alyght**, *pt.*, 184 20; **alyghted**, *pt.*, 167 5; **alyghte**, *p.p.*, 266 23;—*A.S. á-lihtan*.
- amase**, *v.*, to amaze, stupefy; **amased**, *p.p.*, 844 12.
- amble**, *v.*, to move at an easy pace; **ambelynge paas**, 197 11;—**hacney**, 234 24;—**meule**, 267 8;—*O.F. ambler*, *Lat. ambulare*.
- ambuler**, *sb.*, an ambling horse; 561 30;—*O.F. ambleur*.
- amendys**, *sb. pl.*, amends, reparation, recompense, 107 15;—*Lat. a and menda*; *O.F. amende*.
- ammonysshement**, *sb.*, admonishment, exhortation, 688 11;—*O.F. amonestement*.
- amounte**, *v.*, to ascend, rise; to amount; **amounted**, *pt.*, 416 20;—*A.F. amunter*, from *Lat. ad montem*.
- amys**, *adj.* and *adv.*, amiss, wrong, 731 26;—*A.S. a, missian*.
- anger**, **angre**, *sb.*, affliction, sorrow, wrath, pain, 416 24; 539 29; 797 8;—*Iscl. angr*.
- anguyssahe**, *sb.*, anguish, 390 28;—*O.F. angouisse*, *A.F. anguisses*, *Lat. angustia*.
- anker**, *sb.*, anchor, 281 22;—*A.S. ancor*, *Lat. ancora*.

- anon, *adv.*, at once, instantly, soon, 43 35;—A.S. *on an*.
- anuyld, anuyld, *sb.*, anvil, 40 22, 26;—A.S. *anfilt, onfilt*.
- apaye, *v.*, to satisfy, requite, please; apayed, *p.p.*, 767 1;—O.F. *apayer*, Lat. *ad, pacare*.
- apayre, *v.*, to harm, diminish, impair; apayre, *prs.*, 102 13;—O.F. *ampeirer*, Lat. *in peiorare*.
- apease, *v.*, to appease, calm; appeased, *pt.*, 32 4;—O.F. *apaisier*, Lat. *ad, pacem*.
- apeche, *v.*, to hinder, to impeach, to charge with crime, to cite before a court; apeched, *pt.*, 6 32; apeched, *pt.*, 30 17; appeche, *inf.*, 424 23; apoeche, *prs.*, 424 28;—corrupt. of *empeche*, O.F. *empecher*, Lat. *impedicare*.
- apoynte, *v.*, to agree, arrange, prepare; apoynted, *pt.*, 522 30;—O.F. *apointer*.
- apparail, *sb.*, apparel, dress, 418 7.
- apparaille, apparaylle, *v.*, to make ready, fit up, furnish, dress, attire; apparaylled, *p.p.*, 125 27; *pt.*, 447 32;—O.F. *appareiller*.
- appele, *v.*, to call to, to bring before one, appeal; appeled, *pt.*, 21 29;—Lat. *appellare*.
- apperceyue, *v.*, to perceive, to understand, to notice; apperceuyued, *pt.*, 247 36;—Late Lat. *apperceipere*.
- appertenaunce, *sb.*, appurtenance, that which appertains or belongs to, 89 34; 184 17;—O.F. *apurtinaunce, appartenance*.
- apperteyne, *v.*, to appertain, to belong to; apperteyneth, *prs.*, 452 5;—O.F. *apertenir*.
- appertyce,¹ *sb.*, open display, proof, or evidence of valour; appertyces, *pl.*, 178 14.
- appoyntement, *sb.*, agreement, appointment; appoyntementes, *pl.*, 821 19. Compare poyntement, 468 11;—O.F. *apointement*.
- aprouche, *v.*, to approach; aprouched, *pt.*, 178 11;—Lat. *approprare*, O.F. *aprocher*.
- apres, le, surname of Brevnor, king of the hundred knights;—Lat. *asper*, O.F. *aspre*, zealous, courageous.
- a purpos, 509 29; on purpose, intentionally;—O.F. *a purpos, propos*.
- arage, *v.*, to put in a rage, to render furious; araged, *p.p.*, 162 32;—Sans. *rabh*, Lat. *rabere*, O.F. *rager*.
- a rase, *v.*, to pull up by the roots, to tear off; *inf.*, 771 13;—Lat. *eradicare*, O.F. *esrachier*.
- aray, *sb.*, array, dress, 36 15;—O.F. *arei*.
- araye, *v.*, to array, to dress; arayed, *p.p.*, 7 13;—O.F. *areier*, A.F. *arayer*.
- ardant, *adj.*, ardent, 653 31;—O.F. *ardant*, from *arder*.
- a reeste, *sb.*, stop, arrest, custody, 773 34;—O.F. *arest*.
- arere, *v.*, to draw back, to withdraw; areryd, *pt.*, 524 5;—from A.F. *arere*, *adv.*, Lat. *ad retro*.
- arette, *v.*, to reckon, count, accuse; aretted, *p.p.*, 2 11;—Lat. *reputare*, O.F. *aretter*.
- areyse, *v.*, to raise, arouse; areyeda, *pt.*, 465 23.
- armyuestal,² *adj.*, warlike, martial, 138 15;—¹
- aromatyk, *adj.*, aromatic, sweet-scented, 174 22;—from Late Lat. *aroma*.
- arraunt, *adj.*, errant, 404 6;—O.F. *errant*.
- arryuayl, *sb.*, arrival, 285 10;—Lat. *adripare*.
- arson, *sb.*, bow of the saddle, 678 22; 768 9; arsson, 191 30;—A.F. *arcon*.
- aryse, *v.*, to arise; *inf.*, 478 25; aroos, *pt.*, 471 35; aysen, *p.p.*, 659 26;—A.S. *arisan*.
- aryue, *v.*, to arrive, to come ashore; aryuen, *p.p.*, 700 22;—Lat. *adripare*, O.F. *arriuer*.
- asake, *v.*, to ask; *inf.*, 462 21 (frequently *axe*); asked, *pt.*, 70 4;

¹ Compare W. Caxton, "Ovid's Metamorph," book xi. ch. 22 (edition of the Roxburghe Club, 1819): "He was wyse, dyscrete, and full of al appertyse."

² Wynkyn de Worde reads "armyuestall." I have not come across this form in any of the great number of texts I have read, nor can I find the word in any dictionary. It probably owes its existence to a misprint.

- axed, *pt.*, 7 1; 460 12; axyd, *pt.*, 179 15;—A.S. *axian*, *axian*.
 a sonder, *adv.*, asunder, 725 1;—A.S. *on sundran*.
 aspye, *sb.*, spy; aspyes, *pl.*, 753 1;—O.F. *espier*.
 aspye, *v.*, to look after, to watch, to search; aspyed, *pt.*, 82 18;—O.F. *espier*.
 assaye, *v.*, to examine, try, attack; *inf.*, 71 17; assayed, *pt.*, 25 35; 42 7;—A.F. *assayer*.
 assomone, *v.*, to summon, to command to appear in court; *inf.*, 275 17;—Lat. *ad, submonere*.
 assote, *v.*, to dote upon somebody, to be deeply enamoured, smitten; assotted, *p.p.*, 4 25; assoted, *p.p.*, 118 32;—O.F. *asoter*.
 assoyle, *v.*, to loosen, to absolve, explain; *inf.*, 855* 30; assoyled, *pt.*, 642 1;—Late Lat. *absoluere*, O.F. *assoldre*.
 assuraunce, *sb.*, assurance, 462 35.
 astonye, *v.*, to stupefy, amaze, astonish; astonyed, *p.p.* and *pt.*, 194 5; 511 4; 703 12;—Lat. *extonare*, O.F. *estoner*.
 asure, *sb.*, azure, 165 5; 526 19;—Late Lat. *læzur*, O.F. *asur*, *azur*.
 atte, contraction of at, *prep.*, and the *def. article* the—atte bore, 596 17; atte ende, 707 18; atte last, 107 11; 713 37, &c.; but at the laste, 71 30; att armes, F. *aux armes*! 53 5; atte castel, 88 16; atte feste, 8 27; and many others.
 atteyne, *v.*, attain; *inf.*, 4 2;—Lat. *attingere*, O.F. *ateindre*.
 attones, *adv.*, at once, instantly, 379 13; 646 9
 at travers, *adv.*, *prep.*, right through, 717 7;—F. *à travers*.
 atwo, in two, 537 5;—A.S. *on, an*, and *twō*.
 auke, *adj.*, turned the wrong way, perverse, sinister, 312 17;—Icel. *afugr*.
 aulter, *sb.*, altar, 43 34; 580 1;—Lat. *altare*, O.F. *auter*, *alter*.
 aunoyent, *adj.*, old, 616 1;—A.F. *auncien*.
 auaunce, *v.*, to advance; *inf.*, 103 24;—O.F. *auancer*.
 auaunt, *sb.*, boast, vaunt, 683 28; 788 34; 824 13;—O.F. *avant*.
 auauntage, *sb.*, advantage, superiority, 240 18; 412 19;—O.F. *auantage*.
 auaunte, *v.*, to speak proudly, to boast, commend; auauntest, *pres.*, 176 16;—Late Lat. *ad* and *vanitare*, O.F. *avanter*.
 auaylle, *v.*, to avail; auaylleth, *pres.*, 224 23; auaylyd, *p.p.*, 181 6;—Lat. *valere*.
 auaentre, *v.*, to put the spear along the side, in order to attack one's adversary; also to throw a spear (Spenser); auaentryd, *pt.*, 97 7; 145 27;—Lat. *ad ventrem*.
 auaenture, adventure, *sb.*, chance, occurrence, jeopardy, risk, 83 15; aduentures, *pl.*, 803 18; by aduenture = by chance, 20 2; 36 14; *v.*, to risk, to venture, 69 1;—O.F. *auenture*.
 auoutres, auoultres, awoutres, les, the adulterer; epithet of Vwayne, son of king Vryence;—Lat. *adulterum*, O.F. *auoutre*, *adutre*.
 auowe, *sb.*, vow, promise, 154 7; *v.*, to bind with a vow;—Late Lat. *advocare*, O.F. *avoer*.
 auyse, *v.*, to advise, to give advice, to observe, to consider; auysed, *pt.* and *p.p.*, 35 24; 402 26;—Late Lat. *advisare*, A.F. *avisar*.
 awayward, *adv.*, *adj.*, away, wayward, turned away, 242 23;—A.S. *on weg*.
 axe, *v.*, to ask. See aske.
 ayde, *sb.*, aid, help, assistance, 10 38;—O.F. *aider*.
 ayene, *prep.*, *adv.*, *conj.*, again, towards, opposite to, in return for, 342 8;—A.S. *ongean*, *ongeagn*.
 ayenst, ayenste, *prep.*, *conj.*, against, 377 28; 516 19.
 babblynge, *sb.*, babbling, 834 29.
 bacyn, *sb.*, (1) basin, cymbal; (2) a light kind of helmet, 184 37;—O.F. *bacinet*.
 bak, *sb.*, back, 787 36;—A.S. *bæc*.

- bande**, *sb.*, frontier; **bandes**, *pl.*, 789 8;—O.F. *bodne*, *bonde*.
- banysshe**, *v.*, to banish, put under a ban; **banysshed**, *pt.*, 402 18;—O.F. *banniss*—from *bannir*.
- baptym**, *sb.*, baptism, 651 3, 20;—O.F. *baptisme*.
- barayne**, *adj.*, barren, 764 17; 765 3;—O.F. *baraigne*.
- barbe**, *sb.*, beard, or anything resembling it; jags or points which stand backward in an arrow, dart, or spear; fishhook; **barbys**, *pl.*, 764 32;—Lat. *barba*.
- barbour**, *sb.*, barber; **barbours**, *pl.*, 176 34;—A.F. *barbeor*.
- barbycan**, *sb.*, a kind of watch-tower, an outwork to defend the gate of a castle, 168 25;—O.F. *barbacane*.
- bargayn**, *sb.*, business, strife, combat, bargain, 581 36;—O.F. *bargaine*.
- barge**, *sb.*, a bark, boat, 122 15; 849 29;—O.F. *barge*.
- barget**, *sb.*, bark, boat, 830 29; 760 28 (diminut. of the former).
- Baronage**, *sb.*, the men, vassals of a feudal chief; assembly of the barons, 461 33;—O.F. *barnage*.
- Baronry**, *sb.*, an estate representing the property of a baron; a barony of lands, 157 2; 795 29.
- Baroune**, *sb.*, baron, 587 18; **barons**, *pl.*, 39 27;—A.F. *barun*.
- barre**, *sb.*, bar; **barrys**, *pl.*, 326 25;—O.F. *barre*.
- bataill**, **batayll**, *sb.*, (1) the battle, the fight, 61 2; 62 6; 342 5; (2) the army (Lat. *acies*), 57 21; Northern **bataylles**, 58 7;—O.F. *bataille*.
- bate**, *v.*, bate, abate, grow less; **bated**, *pt.*, 131 12;—O.F. *batre*.
- batilment**, *sb.*, a parapet with embrasures on the top of a building, originally only used on fortifications; **batlement**, 846 1;—O.F. *bastillement*.
- bauowre**, *sb.*, beaver; the part of a helmet which is moved up and down, covering the face, and allowing the wearer to drink; the shade over the eyes, 195 17;—O.F. *baviere*.
- bawdy**, *adj.*, bawdy, dirty, filthy, wanton, 218 36; 224 15;—O.F. *baude*.
- bawme**, *sb.*, balm, aromatic plant, fig, anything that heals or soothes pain, 174 21;—Lat. *balsamum*.
- baye**, *v.*, to bark; **bayed**, *pt.*, 110 29;—O.F. *abaier*.
- bayne**, *sb.*, bath, 289 22; 755 16;—O.F. *baine*.
- beale**, *adj.*, beautiful, epithet given to Isoud, and to the castle Beale valet;—Fr. *belle*.
- beare**, *sb.*, the bear, 651 31;—A.S. *bera*.
- beaume**, *sb.*, beam, ray of light, 620 5;—A.S. *béam*, *beamian*.
- beaume**, *sb.*, trumpet; **beamous**, *pl.*, 861 1;—A.S. *béme*, *býme*, O.Merc. *béme*.
- beaute**, **beaulte**, *sb.*, beauty, 17 23; 28 29; 857* 35;—O.F. *beaute*, *beauté*.
- beau viuante** = Fr. *beau vivant*, well living, well behaving; epithet of the damoyssel Maledysaunt.
- beblede**, *v.*, to cover with blood;
- bebled**, *pt.*, 294 12; *p.p.*, 782 10;
- bebledde**, *p.p.*, 130 16;—A.S. *beblédan*.
- beclose**, *v.*, to enclose, surround;
- beclosed**, *p.p.*, 601 2;—A.S. *bi*, *be*, and A.F. *clos*.
- become**, *v.*, to become, to come, to befall, suit; **become**, *p.p.*, 68 16; 366 15;—A.S. *be-cuman*.
- bedasshe**, *v.*, to cover with dashes of colour or adornment; **bedasshed**, *p.p.*, 713 21.
- bee**, *sb.*, a jewel, ring, 269 36;—A.S. *béah*.
- beeste**, *sb.*, beast, 6 31; **beestes**, *pl.*, 648 30;—Lat. *bestia*, O.F. *beste*.
- befalle**, *v.*, to befall, happen; **befalleth**, *pres.*, 765 19; **befelle**, *pt.*, 75 35; 772 1; **befallen**, *p.p.*, 658 2; **befalle**, *p.p.*, 420 34;—A.S. *befeallan*.
- beforne**, **biforne**, *prep.*, before, 221 32; 306* 6; 518 7;—A.S. *biforan*.
- beginne**, *v.*, to begin; **begynneth**, *pres.*, 490 11; **begonne**, *p.p.*, 5 7; 405 9;—A.S. *beginnan*.
- begrype**, *v.*, to seize, to take hold of; *inf.*, 692 31;—A.S. *begripan*.
- behang**, *v.*, to deck, to clothe; **behang**, *p.p.*, 125 31;—A.S. *behon*.

- behated**, *adj.* or *p.p.*, hated, much hated, 494 19;—from A.S. *be* and *hatian*.
- beholde**, *v.*, to hold, to behold; *inf.*, 40 31; **beholden**, *p.p.*, 887 36; 762 11; **behelde**, *pt.*, 472 8; 859* 36; **beholdyng**, for beholden, 42 24; 86 22;—A.S. *behealdan*.
- behote**, *v.*, to promise; *inf.*, 284 33; *prs.*, 92 12; **behycht**, *pt.*, 444 12; 724 30;—A.S. *behitan*. *Compare* *byheste*.
- behoue**, *v. impers.*; **behoueth**, *prs.*, needs, 811 10; 625 5;—A.S. *behōfian*.
- beke**, *v.*, to bake; **bekynge**, *p.prs.*, 167 33; **baken**, *p.p.*, 196* 32.
- beleue**, *v.*, to leave, to be left, to remain; **belefte**, *pt.*, 284 35;—A.S. *belāfan*.
- belle**, *sb.*, bell; **bellys**, *pl.*, 856* 21;—A.S. *belle*.
- bemone**, *v.*, to bemoan, lament, *prs.*, 518 25;—A.S. *bimānan*.
- bende**, *sb.*, band, stripe, 481 27;—A.S. *bend*.
- bended**, **bented**, *adj.*, having bands of different colour, 441 34; 442 2; 488 5;—deriv. from the substantive.
- benime**, *v.*, to take from, deprive; **benome**, *p.p.*, 658 4; 674 23;—A.S. *beniman*.
- benyghte**, *v.*, to be overtaken by night; **benyghted**, *p.p.*, 587 17; 690 10;—A.S. *be* and *neahht*.
- berde**, *sb.*, beard, 7 8;—A.S. *beard*.
- bere**, *v.*, to bear; **boren**, *p.p.*, 694 22; **bare**, *pt.*, 67 36; **beren**, *plur. prs.*, 277 7;—A.S. *beran*.
- bere**, *sb.*, bier, 646 31;—A.S. *bār*. *Compare* O.F. *biere*.
- bereue**, *v.*, to bereave; **byreue**, *prs.*, 168 14; **berafte**, *pt.*, 578 34; **berafte**, *p.p.*, 814 27; **bereued**, *p.p.*, 44 7;—A.S. *birēafian*.
- beryels**, *sb. pt.*, burial, tomb, 287 7;—A.S. *byrgels*.
- besaunte**, *sb.*, a gold coin named from Byzantium; **besauntes**, *pl.*, 155 15;—O.F. *besant*.
- beseme**, *v.*, to beseech, appear; **besemeth**, *prs.*, 222 14; 551 33; **bisemeth** yow not, 76 19;—A.S. *be* and *sēman*.
- besette**, *v.*, to fill, occupy, surround, beset; **besett**, *p.p.*, 551 33;—A.S. *bisettan*.
- beskyfte**, *v.*, to remove hastily; *inf.*, 119 37;—A.S. *be* and *sciftan*.
- bestad**, **bestadde**, **bystad**, *p.p.*, hard bestead, sorely imperilled, overcome, 125 21; 179 25; 824 7;—A.S. *be* and *stede*.
- besture**, *v.*, rouse, instigate, stir; **bestured**, *pt.*, 536 20;—A.S. *be* and *styrjan*.
- bestayl**, **bestyal**, *sb.*, cattle, 125 29; 180 20;—O.F. *bestail*.
- besuette**, *v.*, to sweat, perspire, *p.p.*, 612 6;—A.S. *be* and *swoetan*.
- besynes**, *sb.*, business, activity, care, industry, 481 16;—A.S. deriv. of *bysig*.
- bete**, *v.*, to beat; **bete**, *pt.*, 746 20; **bete**, *p.p.*, 667 8; **betyn**, *p.p.*, 228 3;—A.S. *bēatan*.
- beteche**, *v.*, to entrust, assign, recommend; **betaught**, *pt.*, 681 26; **bytaughte**, *pt.*, 199 35;—A.S. *bettēcan*.
- bethynke**, *v.*, to think, plan, reflect; **bethouzte hym**, *pt.*, 182 31; **bethoughte hym**, *pt.*, 289 31;—A.S. *biþencan*.
- betrapped**, *adj.*, adorned, covered, 808 34.
- betyde**, *v.*, to happen, to betide; **betyde**, *prs.*, 847 1; **betyd**, *pt.*, 870 3; **betyd**, *p.p.*, 267 34;—from A.S. *tīd*.
- beuer**, *v.*, to tremble, to quiver; **beuerd**, *pt.*, 56 4;—? A.S. *biþian*.
- bien pensaunt**, surname of the damoyssel Maledysaunt;—Fr. *bien pensant*, well thinking.
- bifalle**, *v.*, to befall; **bifel**, *pt.*, 85 1; **bifelle**, *pt.*, 780 27; **befallen**, *p.p.*;—A.S. *be-feallan*.
- biforne**. *See* *beforne*.
- bisee**, *v.*, to look, to arrange, appoint, manage; **bisene**, **be sene**, **besene**, *p.p.*, equipped, 44 32; 64 37; 78 6;—A.S. *bisson*.
- bitake**, *v.*, to commit, entrust, recommend; **bitoke**, *pt.*, 472 3; **bitaken**, *p.p.*, 42 18.
- blast**, *sb.*, a blowing, 96 9;—A.S. *blēst*.

- blanche maynys, le or la**, surname of Isoud and of Vwayne;—Fr. *mains blanches*, white hands.
- blede**, *v.*, to bleed; *inf.*, 91 21; **bledde**, *pt.* and *p.p.*, 8 1; 71 25;—A.S. *blēdan*.
- blee**, *sb.*, colour, complexion, 176 32;—A.S. *bléo*.
- blesse**, *v.*, to bless; *imperat.*, 745 13; **blysse**, *imperat.*, 753 21;—A.S. *blētsian*.
- blossomme**, *v.*, to blossom, *pres.*, 771 3;—A.S. *blōstmian*.
- blowe**, *v.*, to blow; *inf.*, 529 11; 542 33; **blewe**, *pt.*, 13 16; 109 30; 766 8; **blowen**, *p.p.*;—A.S. *blāwan*.
- blyndefeld**, *adj.*, blindfolded, 138 18;—A.S. *blind* and M.E. *fellen*, to strike.
- blythe**, *adj.*, blithe, cheerful, 281 8;—A.S. *blīðe*.
- bobaunce**, *sb.*, pride, vanity, splendour, pomp, 523 12; 751 25;—? O.F. *bobant*.
- bole**, *sb.*, the body or trunk, 209 3;—O.Norse *bolr*.
- bondage**, *sb.*, captivity, slavery, 408 19, 21;—O.F. *bondage*.
- bone**, *sb.*, boon; *originally* a prayer, petition; *secondly*, answer to a prayer, a gift, a favour, 276 2; 316 30; 422 21;—Icel. *bón*.
- boost**, *v.*, to boast; *inf.*, 176 17;—W. *boetio*, *boetiau*.
- boote**, *sb.*, boat, 96 28; **bote**, 706 11;—A.S. *bāt*.
- boote**, **bote**, *sb.*, remedy, succour, amendment, boot, 209 6; 585 8;—A.S. *bōt*.
- bord**, *sb.*, table, board, 515 22; **boordes**, *pl.*, 104 25;—A.S. *bord*.
- bordoure**, *sb.*, border, frontier, 349 13;—O.F. *bordure*.
- borowe**, *sb.*, pledge, security; **borowes**, *pl.*, 240 34;—A.S. *borh*.
- bote**, *sb.*, (1) boat, (2) remedy. *See* **boote**.
- bote**, *v.*, to amend, to help; **bote**, *pt.*, 130 12; **boote**, *pt.*, 130 18. *Compare* A.S. *bōt*, *bētan*.
- bott**, *sb.*, butt, the point, handle, button of a sword or of the helmet, 69 18; **but**, 185 1; **butte**, 191 31;—O.F. *boter*, to push, butt, thrust.
- bottlere, botteler, butlere**, *sb.*, the butler; surname of Lucas son of Corneus.
- bounde**, *sb.*, boundary, limit, frontier; **boundys**, *pl.*, 47 23. *Compare* **bandes**.
- bounte**, *sb.*, bounty, liberality, kindness, 78 33; 539 26;—O.F. *bonteit*.
- bounteous**, *adj.*, kind, liberal, 733 7.
- bourde**, *v.*, to sit at table, or to play, to jest; **bourded**, *pt.*, 410 22;—? O.F. *bourder* or A.S. *bord*.
- bourder**, *sb.*, glutton, or gambler, 455 6; 508 2.
- bowe**, *sb.*, bough, branch; lodge of **bowes**, 629 23;—A.S. *bōg*, *bōh*.
- boystous**, *adj.*, boisterous, rough, 491 26; 648 17;—?
- brace**, *v.*, to embrace; **braced**, *pt.*, 551 25. *See* **embrace**.
- brachet**, *sb.*, a small hunting dog, brach, a bitch pointer, 104 22;—O.F. *brachet*.
- bragge**, *v.*, originally to crack, to make a noise, to boast, brag; **bragge**, *pres.*, 169 33;—Icel. *braka*.
- braule**, *v.*, to make a loud noise, to quarrel noisily; **brauled**, *pt.*, 405 19;—?
- braundysshe**, *v.*, to shake or wave, as a brand or weapon, brandish; **braundysshing**, *part. pres.*, 427 8;—O.F. *brand*.
- braune**, *sb.*, brawn, originally flesh of the boar, the fleshy muscular part of the body, the muscular strength, 596 20; 781 30;—O.F. *braon*.
- brayde**, *sb.*, a quick movement, a start, a while, a moment (W. de Worde has *brethe*), 835 30;—Icel. *bragð*.
- breche**, *sb.*, breeches, drawers, 593 10 (*sing.*);—A.S. *brēc*, Icel. *brækr*, *pl.*
- brede**, *adj.*, broad. *See* **brood**.
- brede**, *v.*, to breed, produce; **bredde**, *p.p.*, 427 3;—A.S. *brēdan*.
- brede**, *sb.*, breadth, 814 23;—A.S. *brēdu*.
- breed**, *sb.*, bread, 719 6;—O.North. *brēad*.
- breke**, *v.*, to break; *inf.*, 401 32; **brack, brak, brake**, *pt.*, 8 7; 48

- 18; 71 9; broken, *p.p.*, 386 14; 590 12;—A.S. *brecan*.
- þrenne**, *v.*, to burn; *inf.*, 88 32; brente, *pt.*, 65 11; brenned, *pt.*, 666 24; brent, brente, *p.p.*, 10 10; 64 6; brennyng, *p.prs.*, 711 15;—Icel. *brenna*, Goth. *brinnan*.
- breſt**, *sb.*, breast, 676 17;—A.S. *bréost*.
- breſte**, *v.*, to burst; braſte, braſt, *pt.*, 95 25; 142 11;—A.S. *berſtan*, Icel. *breſta*.
- brethe**, *sb.*, breath, vapour, voice, word, 711 30;—A.S. *bréad*.
- breuſe**, *le*, surname of ſyr Seruaſe;—?
- breue**, *v.*, to shorten; *inf.*, 856 1;—Lat. *brevis*.
- broche**, *sb.*, brooch, ſpear; broches, *pl.*, 167 34;—O.F. *broche*.
- broche**, *v.*, to pierce through, to ſpur; broched, *pt.*, 58 24;—A.F. *brocher*.
- brood**, brode, brede, *adj.*, broad, 72 38; 99 15; 578 5;—A.S. *bráð*.
- browe**, *sb.*, broth, ſoup; broweys, *pl.*, 214 28;—from A.S. *bréowan*, *p.p.*, *browen*.
- brunte**, *sb.*, the ſhock of an onſet; bruntes, *pl.*, 835 31;—? Icel. *bruna*, to advance with the ſpeed of fire.
- brutyll**, *adj.*, brittle, fragile, 129 36;—A.S. *bruton*, *pt. pl.* of *bréotan*.
- brym**, *adj.*, fierce, furious, angry, 820 4 (W. de Worde has *grymme*);—A.S. *bréme*.
- brymme**, *sb.*, margin, ſhore, brim, 648 17;—Icel. *brim*, A.S. *brymme*.
- bryſe**, *v.*, to crush, break, to wound ſeriously; bryſed, *pt.*, 97 11; 471 33;—A.S. *bryſan*, O.F. *briser*.
- brutyſſhe**, *adj.*, Britiſh, 2 20.
- buffet**, *sb.*, buff, heavy blow, 58 24; buffette, 204 14; buffettes, *pl.*, 835 7;—O.F. *bufe*, *bufer*.
- bur**, *sb.*, a broad iron ring juſt below the grip of a ſpear to prevent the hand from ſlipping, 847 12;—?
- burbel**, *v.*, to bubble; burbelynge, *p.prs.*, 415 17; burbyl, *inf.*, 764 8.
- burgene**, *v.*, to bud, bloſſom; burge-neth, *prs.*, 797 2.
- burgeis**, *sb.*, burgeſſ, 741 24;—O.F. *burgeis*.
- buryellys**, buryels, *sb. pl.*, the burial, 466 23; 851 11;—A.S. *byrgels*. See *beryels*.
- buſſhement**, *sb.*, ambuſh, 11 9;—O.F. *en-buſchement*. See *enbuſſhement*.
- butte**, *sb.*. See *bott*.
- bottom**, *sb.*, 755 27; ? bottom, A.S. *botm*, or ? equal to “button,” ſcab of a wound, Fr. *bouton*.
- but yf**, = unleſs, 52 2; 91 18; 471 15; 514 14.
- by cauſe**, *conj.*, becauſe;—A.S. *be* and Lat. *cauſa*.
- by happe**, *adv.*, by chance;—A.S. *be* and Icel. *happ*.
- byheſte**, biheſte, beheſt, *sb.*, promiſe, 1 22; byheſtes, 861 6; 759 16;—A.S. *behæſ*.
- bylde**, *v.*, to build; bylded, *p.p.*, 169 38;—? A.S. *bold*.
- byleue**, *v.*, to believe; *inf.*, 3 36;—A.S. *ge-lýfan*.
- bylene**, *sb.*, belief, 760 4.
- by lowe**, *prep.*, below, 110 3;—A.S. *be*, *bi*, and Icel. *lág*.
- bynde**, *v.*, to bind; bond, *pt.*, 787 36; bounden, *p.p.*, 691 18;—A.S. *bindan*.
- by nethe**, *prep.*, beneath, 614 23;—A.S. *beneoðan*.
- byſeche**, *v.*, beſeech, implore, requeſt; *prs.*, 760 10; byſeohynge, *p.prs.*, 3 24; 78 34;—from A.S. *bi* and *ſécan*, *ſécean*.
- byſſhopryche**, *sb.*, biſhopric, 860* 21;—A.S. *biſcop* and *rice*.
- byte**, *v.*, to bite; bytynge, *p.prs.*, 125 24; boot, *pt.*, 104 25;—A.S. *bítan*.
- bywaryd**, *p.p.*, = too good, 246 18; *figurative uſe of to beware = to ſpend*.
- by yonde**, *prep.*, beyond, 207 1; beyonde, 2 33;—A.S. *be-* and *geond*.
- caas**, *sb.*, caſe, chance, circumſtance, 374 18; 730 27;—Lat. *caſum* (acc.), O.F. *cas*.
- caban**, *sb.*, ſmall room, cloſet, cabin, 135 1;—O.F. *cabane*.
- cankeryd**, *p.p.*, corrupted, 842 1;—O.F. *cancre*, Lat. *cancer*.
- canne**, *v.*, to know, to be able; conne, *inf.*, 176 34; 820 22; canne, *fiſt pers. pres.*, 501 1;

- canst, *second pers.*, 209 13; ye
con, *pres.*, 269 22; coude it, *pt.*,
457 36; couthe, *pt.*, 279 8;
coude, *pt.*, 3 5; 377 5;—A.S.
cunnan.
cantel, *sb.*, piece, bit, edge, 58 20;
71 25;—O.F. *cantel*.
capytayn, *sb.*, captain; captayn,
175 32;—O.F. *capitain*.
carre, *sb.*, cart, carriage, 175 7.
carryks, *sb. pl.*, small ships, 841 9
(ed. of 1634 has *caraks*).
carue, *v.*, to carve, to cut; carf, *pt.*,
55 10; carfe, *pt.*, 58 20;—A.S.
ceorfan.
causer, causer, *sb.*, author, he who
causes something, 209 28; 269 21;
762 7;—Lat. *causa*.
caytyf, *sb. and adj.*, wretch, miserable
captive, 758 27;—O.F. *cattif*.
cedle, *sb.*, a small leaf of paper con-
taining some writing, schedule, 842
6; sedyl, 842 22;—O.F. *schedule*.
censer, *sb.*, censer, pan in which
incense is burned, 578 5; senser,
549 18;—Lat. *incensorium*.
cere, *v.*, to cover with wax; *inf.*, 174
22; cered, *p.p.*, shrouded in waxed
cloth, 174 22; 857* 26;—Lat.
cerare.
certaynte, *sb.*, certainty, certitude,
750 20; certeynte, 511 34; cer-
tente, 851 1;—O.F. *certainte*.
chaas, chace, *sb.*, hunting, pursuit,
hunting-ground, 174 7; 526 32;—
O.F. *chace*.
chace, *v.*, to hunt; chacynge, *p.p.*,
210 3;—O.F. *chacer*.
chacer, *sb.*, hunter, 485 11.
chafed, *p.p.*, 658 26. See *chauffe*.
chaflet, *sb.*, a small stage, platform,
844 1;—dimin. of O.F. *chafaut*.
challenge, *v.*, to accuse, claim, charge;
chalengyd, *pt.*, 401 6;—O.F.
chalenger.
chambre, *sb.*, chamber, 572 1;—A.F.
chambre.
champayn, champayne, *sb. and adj.*,
field, level country, 58 11; 170 6;
—A.F. *champaigne*.
chappel, *sb.*, chapel, 495 29;—A.F.
chapele.
chappytre, chapytire, *sb.*, chapter,
2 15, 16; 4 32, 34;—O.F. *chapitre*.
charbuncle, *sb.*, carbuncle, precious
stone, 176 9;—O.F. *carbuncle*.
charge, *sb.*, load, responsibility, im-
pressive command, 85 25;—A.F.
charge.
charyot, *sb.*, chariot, 760 27;—O.F.
chariot.
charyte, *sb.*, charity, 685 19;—A.F.
charite, O.F. *caritet*.
chastysement, *sb.*, chastisement,
627 18;—deriv. of O.F. *chastier*.
chastyte, *sb.*, chastity, purity, 668
20;—O.F. *chasteit*.
chaundeler, *sb.*, candlestick, 688 5
(on the same page, line 17, occurs
candelstyk);—O.F. *chandelier*.
chauffe, *v.*, to heat, to become hot;
inf., 174 28; chauffed, *p.p.*, 742
33; chafed, *p.p.*, 658 26;—O.F.
chauffer.
chayer, *sb.*, chair, stool, seat, 91 34;
629 24;—O.F. *châiere*.
chere, *sb.*, face, time, treatment;
what chere, 108 26; straunge
chere, 281 16; good chere, 148
33; heuy chere, 640 15;—A.F.
chere.
cherete, *sb.*, charity, love, friend-
ship, 518 34; chyerte, 621 23;
816 6;—O.F. *cherte*. See also
charyte.
chese, *v.*, to choose; *imperat.*, 296 5;
—A.S. *céosan*.
cheualer du charyot, the knight of
the chariot; cheualer malfet, *i.e.*,
le cheualer qui a mal fait;—sur-
names of syr Launcelot.
child, *sb.*, child, child of a noble,
young knight, page; childis, *gen.*
sing., 87 3; 88 11; 775 16; chyl-
dren, *pl.*, 1 21;—A.S. *cild*.
chirche, *sb.*, church, 40 19;—A.S.
cyrce.
chirche, *v.*, to perform with any one
the giving of thanks in church;
chirched, *p.p.*, 575 31;—from
A.S. *cyrce*.
chircheyerd, *sb.*, churchyard, 628
16;—Icel. *kirkju-garðr*.
chorle, *sb.*, peasant, ruffian, 62 21;
70 23; 519 8;—A.S. *œorl*.
chyef, *sb. and adj.*, chief, head, upper
part, principal; 1 9; 3 7; 176 9;
—A.F. *chief*.

- chyerte, sb.** *See* cherete.
chyualry, sb., chivalry, the knights of Christendom, 47 22; **chyualryes, pl.**, knightly acts, valiant deeds, 8 21, 30;—A.F. *chivalrie*.
clater, v., to make a rattling noise, to clatter; *inf.*, 582 26; **clatered, pt.**, 582 29.—*Compare* A.S. *clatrung*.
cleche, v., to seize, grasp; **cley3te, pt.**, 185 17;—*f*
clene, adj. and adv., clean, entirely; **clene armed**, 638 35; **clene out of his mynde**, 585 2; **clene of her lyf**, 40 15; 611 10;—A.S. *cléne*.
clennes, sb., purity, cleanness, 672 6;—A.S. *clénnas*.
clepe, v., to call; **cleped, p.p.**, 347 19; 722 15;—A.S. *cleopian*.
clerenes, sb., brightness, clearness, 707 33;—A.F. *cler*, with A.S. term. *-nes, -nysses*.
cleue, v., to split asunder, cleave; **clauē, pt.**, 98 4; **clafe, pt.**, 107 9;—A.S. *clifian, cleofian*.
close, v., to close, enclose, cover; **close, p.p.**, 417 25;—A.F. *clos*.
cloystre, sb., cloister, convent, monastery, 854 3;—A.F. *cloister*, O.F. *cloistre*.
clubbe, sb., club; **clubbes, pl.**, 155 34; **clubbis, pl.**, 46 38;—Icel. *klubba*.
clyff, sb., cliff, 700 30;—A.S. *clif*.
clymbe, v., to climb; **clamme, pt.**, 208 32;—A.S. *climban*.
clymber, sb., he who climbs, 208 27.
clyppe, v., to clip, to shear; **clypped, pt.**, 366 20;—Icel. *klippa*.
clyppe, v., to embrace; **clypped, p.p.**, 307 21; **clyppyng**, 150 35; **clyppyngē, 582 17**;—A.S. *clyppan*.
cofre, sb., box, coffer, 290 4;—A.F. *cofre*.
cogges, sb. pl., cockboats, 164 30.
cognoyssaunce, congyssaunce, cognoissaunce, sb., knowledge, indication, 260 4; 416 32; 529 26;—A.F. *conisaunce*.
cole, sb., coal, charcoal, 694 16; **coles, pt.**, 140 1;—A.S. *col*.
coller, sb., collar, 369 29;—O.F. *coler*.
comberaunce, sb., encumbrance, 76 21;—O.F. *encombrer*.
combred, p.p., embarrassed, 777 24;—O.F. *encombrer*.
come, v., to come; *inf.*, 4 1; **come, pt. (!)**, 38 26; 57 34; **came, pt.**, 5 18; 805 9; **comyn, p.p.**, 85 9; **comen, p.p.**, 280 34; **came, pt.**, 3 22; **comen, pl. pres.**, 425 27; 725 9; **come, p.p.**, 706 4; 804 4;—A.S. *cuman*.
commaundemente, sb., order, commission, 848 36; **commaundementes, pl.**, 806 4; 828 24;—O.F. *comander*.
compte, v., to count; *pres.*, 842 12;—O.F. *compter*.
complisshe, v., complete, accomplish; **complissed, pp.**, 213 22. *See* **accomplysshe**.
comyn, adj., common, 727 3;—A.F. *commun*.
comynal, adj., common, 155 9;—Lat. *communalem*.
comyns, sb. pl., the commons, inhabitants, citizens, 41 4; 43 26; 46 38.
comynycacyon, sb., communication, information, news, 13 10; 28 25; 38 23;—Lat. *communicationem*.
conceyte, sb., conceit, 123 23;—Lat. *concupere*.
conduyte, v., to lead, conduct; *inf.*, 465 12;—O.F. *conduire*.
conduyte, sb., conduct, guidance, 108 34; 428 15;—O.F. *conduit*.
conferme, v., to confirm; **confermed, pt.**, 575 30;—Lat. *confirmare*.
conne, v. *See* canne.
connyngē, sb., learning, knowledge, skill, 8 13;—A.S. *cunnan*.
conyes, sb. pl., coneys, rabbits, 387 12;—O.F. *conyn, conil*, A.F. *conyng*.
coost, sb., rib, side of the human body, 110 4;—A.F. *cooste*.
cop, sb., cup, tankard, 234 9; **coupe, 701 21**;—A.F. *cupe*.
coper, sb., copper, 184 37;—Late Lat. *cuprum (cyprium)*.
corde, v., to accord, agree; **cordyng, p.p.**, 51 3;—O.F. *acorder*.
coronacyon, sb., coronation, 44 1.
corps, sb., body, corpse, 761 13; **cors 857* 16**;—A.F. *corse, corps*.

- coste**, *sb.*, **coast**, 302 8;—O.F. *coste*.
coste, *v.*, (hunting term) to keep in parallel course with the animal;
costed, *pt.*, 764 19;—O.F. *coste*.
coste, *sb.*, cost, expense; **costes**, *pl.*, 372 20;—A.F. *cust*, *coust*.
cote, *sb.*, hut, cottage, 167 26;—A.S. *cot*.
cote, *sb.*, garment, coat, 338 26; 672 21;—A.F. *cote*, O.F. *cotte*.
counceille, *v.*, to consult, to deliberate together; *inf.*, 722 21.
counceyl, **counceyle**, *sb.*, consultation, deliberation, plan, purpose, advice, 599 26; 600 32;—O.F. *conceil*.
counterfete, *v.*, to counterfeit; *inf.*, 495 34; **counterfeet**, *p.p.*, 129 36;—from O.F. *countrefet*, *p.p.* of *contrefaire*.
countray, **countrey**, **countre**, *sb.*, the country, 138 26; 139 3; 244 23;—O.F. *contrees*.
coupe, *sb.* See *cop*.
courage, *v.*, to encourage; *inf.*, 235 26;—O.F. *corage*, *courage*.
coure, *v.*, to sit close together; *inf.*, 797 6 (W. de Worde has *cover*); 831 16; **coureth**, *pres.*, 607 4;—? W. *curian*, *cur*.¹
cours, *sb.*, course, 97 9; 415 31;—A.F. *cours*.
courser, *sb.*, a steed, 134 20;—A.F. *coursier*.
courtelage, *sb.*, garden, courtyard, 153 11; 668 17.
couenaunt, *sb.*, a covenant, 317 22;—A.F. *covenant*.
couerte, *sb.*, shelter, defence, 197 9.
couyn, *sb.*, conspiracy, craft, deceit, trickery, 633 29;—A.F. *covine*.
cowardyse, *sb.*, cowardice, 429 31;—O.F. *cowardie*.
coyfe, *sb.*, coif, cap, 283 23; 689 23;—O.F. *coife*, *coiffe*.
cracke, *sb.*, crag, rock; **crackys**, *pl.*, 326 24;—W. *craig*.
craft, *sb.*, might, power, craft, deceit, 88 31;—A.S. *craeft*.
creast, *sb.*, crest, summit, 167 31;—O.F. *creste*.
creatoure, *sb.*, creator, 759 38;—O.F. *creatur*.
creature, *sb.*, creature, being, 764 4.
credence, *sb.*, belief, faith, 162 31;—O.F. *credence*.
creme, *sb.*, the sacred oil used in anointing, chrism, 403 16;—O.F. *creme*.
crofte, *sb.*, an underground cell or chapel, 716* 18;—Lat. *crypta*.
croke, *v.*, to bend, to turn aside; **croked**, *p.p.*, 563 10;—Icel. *krókr*.
croppe, *sb.*, crupper, hinder part of a horse, 82 12; **croupe**, 298 4;—O.F. *crope*.
crowpers, *sb. pl.*, plates covering the horse's crupper, or straps of leather fastened to the saddle and passing under the horse's tail to keep the saddle in its place, 238 2.
cryppyl, *sb.*, cripple, 721 38;—deriv. from A.S. *crēopan*.
crysten, *adj.* and *sb.*, Christian, 1 9; 1 11; 585 11; *v.*, to christen; *inf.*, 39 9; **crystend**, **crystened**, *p.p.*, 490 2, 3, 5; **uncrystned**, *p.p.*, 38 26;—A.S. *cristnian*.
culpaple, *adj.*, guilty, 784 16;—O.F. *culpaple*.
cure hardy, *le*, surname of a knight Ozanna, meaning *le cœur hardi*, the courageous heart.
curroure, *sb.*, runner, courier, 344 6;—O.F. *courrier*.
cursydnes, *sb.*, malice, wickedness, 198 11;—deriv. from A.S. *cursian*.
curteyn, *sb.*, curtain; **courtayns**, *pl.*, 783 6;—O.F. *courtine*.
curteys, *adj.*, courteous, 109 14; **curtest**, *superl.*, 860* 4; **moost curteyst**, 394 29;—A.F. *curteis*.
curtoyse, **curtosye**, *sb.*, courtesy, 3 31; 16 32; **curtosy**, 831 14;—A.F. *curteisie*.
cushyn, *sb.*, cushion, 790 15;—O.F. *coissin*.
daffysh, *adj.*, shy, modest, foolish, 409 10;—?

¹ The Welsh word *curian* has generally the sense of sitting in a corner through fear, as, e.g., 831 27; but 797 6 and 607 4 the sense seems to be that of the Modern French word *roucouler*.

- dale**, *sb.*, dale, valley; **dales**, *pl.*, 243 29;—A.S. *dæl*.
moysel, **damoisel**, *sb.*, damsel, 73 3, 4;—A.F. *damoysele*.
dampne, *v.*, condemn, sentence; **dampned**, *pt.*, 656 23; *p.p.*, 275 36; 683 5;—O.F. *damner*.
re, *v.*, to dare; **dar**, *first pers.*, 61 21; **darste**, *second pers. pres.*, 505 18; **durste**, *pt.*, 51 27; 278 22; 466 32;—A.S. *dear*.
dastard, *sb.*, a coward, 344 4.—*Compare* Skeat, Dict.
daunynge, *sb.*, dawning, 566 10; 781 35.
dawe, *v.*, to become day; **it dawyd**, 691 13;—A.S. *dagian*.
dawe, *v.*, to moisten, sprinkle with cold water; **dawed**, *pt.*, 585 18;—from A.S. *déaw*.
debate, *sb.*, strife, discord, 440 11; 761 30;—A.F. *debat*.
debonair, *adj.*, mild, gentle, 694 18;—O.F. *debonaire*.
deceyuable, *adj.*, deceitful, 519 2.
dede, *sb.*, deed; **dedes**, *pl.*, 87 31; **dedys**, *pl.*, 838 13;—A.S. *déd* (*dēd*).
dede, *adj.*, dead, 82 4; 715* 33; **deed**, 847 15;—A.S. *dēad*.
defade, *v.* See **dyffade**.
defame, *v.*, to spread about a rumour, to slander; **defamed**, *p.p.*, 731 34;—A.F. *diffamer*.
deffaulte, **deffaute**, **defaulte**, **defaute**, *sb.*, defect, fault, 108 26; 480 19; 609 2; 785 3, 5;—A.F. *defaute*.
deffende, *v.*, to defend, protect, forbid; **deffended**, *pt.*, 836 28; **defenden**, *prs. plural*, 632 25;—A.F. *defendre*.
defowle, *v.*, to tread down, rebuke; **defowled**, *p.p.*, 141 28; **defoyled**, *p.p.*, 77 1;—O.F. *defouler*.
defye, *v.*, to defy, mistrust; **defyen**, *prs. pl.*, 632 24;—A.F. *defier*.
degree, *sb.*, (1) degree, price, distinction, 420 37; 513 3; (2) different classes of a people; **degreys**, *pl.*, 394 17;—O.F. *degre*, *degret*.
dele, *sb.*, deal, share, 86 33; 834 4;—A.S. *dæl*.
dele, *v.*, to deal, share, divide; **dalte**, *pt.*, 853 13;—A.S. *dælan*.
delyte, *sb.*, delight, 726 32; **delytes**, *pl.*, 247 26;—O.F. *delit*.
demene, *v.*, to manage, to behave; **demenyd hym**, *pt.*, 23 7;—O.F. *demener*.
demene, *sb.*, power, possession; **demyns**, *pl.*, 673 28;—O.F. *demeine*.
demure, *adj.*, sober, modest, staid, 613* 14;—O.F. *de murs*, *meurs*.
departycyon, *sb.*, departure, 397 11; 621 7;—deriv. of O.F. *departir*.
dere, *v.*, to harm; *inf.*, 61 21;—A.S. *derian*.
dere, *adj.*, dear, beloved, 61 16;—A.S. *dēore*.
dere, *sb.*, deer, wild animal, 519 16;—A.S. *dēor*.
derke, *adj.*, dark, 116 15; 687 33;—A.S. *deorc*.
descryue, *v.*, to describe, relate; *inf.*, 412 1;—O.F. *descriore*.
desdayne, *sb.*, contempt, disdain, 727 4;—A.F. *dedeigne*, O.F. *desdein*.
desert, *sb.*, merit, 726 11;—A.F. *deserte*.
deserte, *sb.*, desert, waste land, 708 17;—from Lat. *desertus*.
desguyse, *v.*, to disguise; **desguysed**, *p.p.*, 767 29; **dysguysed**, *p.p.*, 767 30;—A.F. *degiser*, O.F. *desguiser*.
desmaye, *v.*, to dismay; *imperat.*, 38 12, 22; **desmayed**, *p.p.*, 132 26; **dysmayed**, *p.p.*, 388 24;—O.F. *esmaier*.
despoyle, *v.*, to despoil, strip; **despoyled**, 466 23; **dispoyled**, 231 20; 657 20;—O.F. *despoiller*.
desteynye, *sb.*, destiny, 846 38;—deriv. from O.F. *destiner*.
dethe, *sb.*, death, 564 15;—A.S. *dēap*.
deure, *adj.*, hard, 410 25;—O.F. *deure*.
deuoyr, **deuoyre**, *sb.*, devoir, knightly duty, 251 5; 829 10;—O.F. *devoir*.
deuyse, *v.*, arrange, order, decide; **deuysed**, *pt.*, 39 1;—A.F. *deviser*.
deye, *v.*, to die; *inf.*, 224 14;—Icel. *deyja*, O.S. *dōian*.
deyntee, *sb.*, a delicacy, worth, pleasure, 161 5;—O.F. *daintie*, *deintee*.
deyse, *sb.*, dais, platform in a hall, 213 30;—O.F. *deis*.

- dictatour, *sb.*, dictator, one invested for a time with absolute authority, 160 8;—Lat. *dictator*.
- discomforte, *v.*, trouble, discomfort; *imp.*, 804 11;—O.F. *desconforter*.
- discomfortune, *sb.*, 56 38;—? for *discomfyture*.
- discomfyte, *v.*, to defeat, to put to flight; *discomfyte*, *p.p.*, 57 36; 74 23; *discomfyt*, *p.p.*, 626 4; 639 18; *discomfyted*, *p.p.*, 86 3; *discomfyte*, *p.p.*, 766 26; 698 15; *scomfyte*, *p.p.*, 146 38;—O.F. *desconfire*.
- discomfyture, *sb.* See *dyscomfyture*.
- disparple, *v.*, to scatter, or to become scattered; *disparplyd*, *p.p.*, 798 24; *disperplyd*, *p.p.*, 164 3;—O.F. *desparpillier*.
- displeasyre, *sb.*, displeasure, anger, cause of irritation, 867 29; 541 34;—O.F. *desplaisir*.
- disseuer, *v.*, to separate; *disseuered*, *pt.*, 611 27;—A.F. *deseuerer*.
- distourble, *v.*, to disturb, trouble; *distourbled*, *p.p.*, 566 13;—O.F. *tourbler*.
- disworship, *sb.*, shame, disgrace, 105 3;—*dis* and A.S. *weorðscepe*.
- dobblet, *sb.*, doublet, 467 16; 679 32; *dobblett*, 468 26;—O.F. *doublet*.
- doctryne, *sb.*, instruction, doctrine, 8 38;—Lat. *doctrina*.
- dole, *sb.*, charity, dole, share, portion, 858 11;—A.S. *dāl*.
- dole, *sb.*, grief, pain, sorrow, 94 14; 421 23;—O.F. *doel*, *duel*.
- domage, *sb.*, damage, loss, 59 5; *dammage*, 59 5; 72 8; *dommagis*, *pl.*, 56 23;—O.F. *domage*.
- dome, *sb.*, doom; day of dome, 709 34;—A.S. *dōm*.
- domme, *adj.*, dumb, 451 33;—A.S. *dumb*.
- doon, *v.*, to do, put, make, cause; *inf.*, 8 19; *doth*, *pres.*, 759 20; *doon*, *p.p.*, 11 16; *dūd*, *pt.*, 65 12; 758 31; *done*, *p.p.*, 848 8; *doo*, *imperat.*, 8 33;—A.S. *dōn*.
- dote, *v.*, to dote, to be foolish; *doted*, *p.p.*, 505 26.
- dottage, *sb.*, dotage, a doting, excessive fondness, childishness of old age, 118 26.
- doubel, *adj.*, double, 95 34;—O.F. *double*, *double*.
- doughty, *adj.*, brave, valiant, 189 36; *doughtely*, *adv.*, 220 28;—A.S. *dyhtig*.
- douue, *sb.*, the dove, pigeon, 573 4;—Icel. *dúfa*, O.S. *dúba*.
- dower, *sb.*, dower, 181 14;—A.F. *douayre*.
- drede, *sb.*, dread, fear, terror, 209 32; 486 9.
- drede, *v.*, to dread, to fear; *pres.*, 745 29; *dredde*, *pt.*, 209 33; 670 7; 784 9; *dradde*, *pt.*, 311 37; 687 15; 775 14; *drad*, *pt.*, 492 29; 784 4;—A.S. (*on*-)*drēdan*.
- drededful, *adj.*, dreadful, 709 34.
- drenche, *v.*, to drown; *drenched*, *p.p.*, 652 18;—A.S. *drencean*.
- dretoche, *v.*, (1) to vex, oppress, torment; (2) to dream, to be disturbed by dreams; *dretched*, *p.p.*, 808 31; *dretchyng*, *p.pres.*, 859* 7;—A.S. *dreccan*.
- dretenchid, *pt.*, 171 24; ? for *detrenchid*, from *detrenche*, *v.*, to cut to pieces;—O.F. *detrancher*.
- drinke, *v.*, to drink; *drank*, *pt.*, 759 35; *dronke*, *pt.*, 494 28; *dronken*, *pt.*, 15 35; *drenken*, *p.p.*, 574 13;—A.S. *drincan*.
- dromounde, *sb.*, dromedary, Arabian camel; *dromoundes*, *pl.*, 164 30;—O.F. *dromedaire*.
- droupe, *v.*, to droop, to be dismal, cast down; *inf.*, 881 19; *droupyng*, *p.pres.*, 354 7;—Icel. *drúpa*.
- dryue, *v.*, to drive; *dryuend* (imperfect *part. pres.* for *dryuyng*), 223 7;—A.S. *drifan*.
- dubbe, *v.*, to dub a knight by a stroke with the flat of a sword; *inf.*, 25 31; *dubbed*, *p.p.*, 12 32;—A.S. *dubban*.
- duc, *sb.*, duke, 181 12;—O.F. *duc*.
- duche, *adj.*, Dutch, 2 35.
- dure, to last, to endure, *inf.*, 118 33;—A.F. *durer*.
- dwarf, dwarf, *sb.*, a dwarf, 110 15, 21;—A.S. *dwæorg*, *dwæork*.
- dwelle, *v.*, to dwell, to rest, remain; *inf.*, 36 29; *dwelde*, *pt.*, 61 38;

- dwellid**, *pt.*, 763 35; **duelled**, *pt.*, 337 6;—A.S. *dwellan*, Icel. *dvelja*.
- dyffade**, *v.*, to fade away, to cause to fade; **dyffaded**, *p.p.*, 566 15; **defaded**, *p.p.*, 566 13.
- dyghte**, *v.*, to order, to rule, to prepare, adorn; **dyȝte**, *p.p.*, 93 24; **dyght**, *p.p.*, 186 24;—A.S. *dihtan*.
- dynte**, *sb.*, blow, stroke; **dyntes**, *pl.*, 593 11;—A.S. *dynt*.
- dyryge**, *sb.*, name of an anthem in the Mass for the Dead, beginning, in Latin, with the words, "Dirige, Dominus meus," 857* 14.
- dyscomfytur**, *sb.*, defeat, 11 12;—A.F., *desconfiture*.
- dyshobeye**, *v.*, to disobey; *prs.*, 856* 36;—O.F. *desobeir*.
- dysplese**, *v.*, to displease; *inf.*, 839 32;—O.F. *desplaisir*.
- dysport**, *sb.*, pleasure, recreation, mirth, 62 30; **disportes**, *pl.*, 800 21; **disporte**, *v. inf.*, to cheer, amuse, 327 9;—O.F. *se desporter*.
- dysseyue**, *v.*, to deceive; **dysseyued**, *p.p.*, 838 11;—O.F. *decever*, *decevoir*.
- echone**, *adj.*, each one, 202 23; **eche** one, 144 20; 497 3;—A.S. *ælc an*.
- edder**, *sb.*, adder; **edders**, *pl.*, 579 11;—A.S. *nædre*.
- edgyd**, *p.p.*, edged, having borders, 426 10.—Compare A.S. *ecg*.
- eere**, *sb.*, the ear; **eerys**, *pl.*, 192 4; **erys**, *pl.*, 371 5;—A.S. *ēare*.
- efte**, *adv.*, again, afterwards, 294 1; 479 17; 849 2;—A.S. *eft*.
- egre**, **egyr**, *adj.*, eager, fierce, sharp, 54 33; 71 16; **eygyrlye**, *adv.*, 887 25;—A.F. *egre*, O.F. *aigre*.
- elder**, **eldar**, *adj.*, *comparat.*, older, elder, 105 23; **elders**, *pl.*, ancestors, 185 15; **elthers**, *pl.*, 807 4;—*comparat.* of A.S. *eald*.
- ellys**, *adv.*, otherwise, else, 14 31;—A.S. *elles*.
- embassatour**, *sb.*, ambassador; **embassatours**, *pl.*, 160 7; 162 7;—O.F. *ambassadeur*.
- eme**, *sb.*, uncle, 280 7;—A.S. *ēam*.
- emeraude**, *sb.*, emerald, 696 8;—O.F. *esmeraude*.
- emonge**, *prep.*, among, 1 10; 737 4;—A.S. *onmang*.
- enbatalled**, *p.p.*, ranged for battle, 173 2;—O.F. *en* and *bataille*.
- enbrace**, *v.*, to embrace; **embraced**, *pt.*, 444 33;—O.F. *embracer*.
- enbrayde**, *v.*, to wake up, to start, to twist, † to remind; **enbraydest**, *prs.*, 817 25;—A.S. *bregdan*.
- enbroudre**, *v.*, to embroider; **enbroudr**, *p.p.*, 378 16; 747 6;—A.F. *embroyder*.
- enbush**, *p.p.*, taken in an ambush, 65 23; 125 20.
- enbushement**, *sb.*, ambush, 50 10; 53 17;—O.F. *embuscher*.
- enchauffe**, *v.*, to make hot, to heat; *inf.*, 752 7; **enchauffed**, *p.p.*, 653 32; *pt.*, 677 30; **enchafed**, *p.p.*, 649 10;—O.F. *enchauffer*.
- encheue**, **enchieue**, *v.*, to achieve, to perform, fulfil; *inf.*, 340 15; 794 6; **encheued**, *p.p.*, 42 34; *pt.*, 99 27. See also *achieue*.
- encline**, *v.*, incline; **enclynest**, *prs.*, 663 22; **enclyned**, *p.p.*, 57 12;—O.F. *incliner*.
- encountre**, *v.*, encounter, meet, fight; *inf.*, 57 17; **encountred**, *pt.*, 342 14;—O.F. *encontrer*.
- endented**, *p.p.*, having teeth, cut like a saw, notched, jagged, marked with inequalities like a row of teeth, 391 7; 396 21;—A.F. *endenter*.
- endlong**, **endlonge**, *adv.* and *prep.*, along, 193 11; 524 16;—A.S. *and lang*.
- ne**, 147 10. † corruption of *even*, as Wynkyn de Worde reads, which sometimes occurs in A.S., contracted *enn*.
- enele**, *v.*, to administer extreme unction; **enelyd**, *p.p.*, 858* 27;—O.F. *en* and *oil*.
- enemytee**, *sb.*, enmity, 251 20;—O.F. *enamistiet*.
- enewe**, *v.*, to colour; **enewed with whyte**, 110 24;—A.S. *in* and *heow*.
- enfelaushippe**, *v.*, to associate with, to become one's fellow; *inf.*, 315 4.—Compare Icel. *fēlagi*.
- enforce**, *v.*, to endeavour, to strive;

- enforceth hym self**, *prs.*, 574 7;
enforce your self, *imp.*, 756 30;
 768 28;—O.F. *enforcer*.
enforme, *v.*, to teach, to inform;
enformed, *p.p.*, 193 33; **mysen-**
formed, *p.p.*, 78 29;—A.F. *en-*
fourmer.
engendre, *v.*, to engender; *inf.*, 572
 25;—O.F. *engendrer*.
engyne, **engyn**, *sb.*, craft, device,
 engine, understanding, 440 13;
 677 30;—A.F. *engin*.
enherytaunce, *sb.*, inheritance, 467
 32;—Lat. *in*, O.F. *heriter*, and term.
-ance.
enherytour, *sb.*, inheritor, person
 who inherits or may inherit, heir,
 177 16;—Lat. *in*, *heritator*.
enleuen, *numb.*, eleven, 53 7;—A.S.
endleufon, *endleofan*.
enoynt, *v.*, to anoint; **ennoynted**,
p.p., 403 35; 821 16;—A.F. *enointer*.
enpayre, *v.*, to make worse, injure;
enpayred, *pt.*, 597 12;—O.F.
empeirer.
enpoysonne, *v.*, to poison; *inf.*, 728
 33; **enpoysond**, *p.p.*, 728 32;—
 O.F. *empoisoner*.
enprynte, *v.*, to print; *inf.*, 1 8;
temprynte = to emprynte, *inf.*, 1
 34;—O.F. *empreindre*.
enquere, *v.*, to inquire; *inf.*, 100 30;
 —O.F. *enquerre*, Lat. *inquirere*.
enquest, *sb.*, enterprise, adventure,
 16 37;—O.F. *enqueste*.
ensample, **ensaumple**, **ensamble**,
sb., example, instance, 1 4; 76 32;
 160 24;—A.F. *ensample*, *essample*.
ensiewe, *v.*, to follow; *inf.*, 162
 23;—O.F. *ensuire*.
enstraunge, *v.*, to alienate, make
 strange; **enstraunged**, 759 30;—
 O.F. *estranger*.
ensure, *v.*, to assure, insure; *inf.*,
 205 19; 654 1;—O.S. *asseurer*.
entente, *sb.*, intention, heed, purpose,
 36 24; 95 30; also, contents, 761
 28;—O.F. *entente*.
enterdyte, *v.*, interdict, excommuni-
 cate, to forbid communion; **enter-**
dytynge, *p.prs.*, 821 5;—Lat.
interdicere.
entere, **entiere**, **entyere**, *v.*, to inter,
 bury; *inf.*, 274 34; 419 28; 495
 28; **entered**, *pt.*, 588 34; **enterid**,
p.p., 40 1;—O.F. *enterrer*.
entermete, *v.*, to meet, to come to-
 gether; *inf.*, 456 32;—A.F. *entre*
 and A.S. *métan*, O.S. *mótian*.
enterpryse, **enterpryce**, *sb.*, enter-
 prise, undertaking, 514 33; 515 4;
enterpryses, *pl.*, 511 24;—O.F.
entreprise.
enterpryse, **emprise**, **enpryse**, *v.*,
 to undertake, to commence; **en-**
prysed, *p.p.*, 3 15; 4 13; **enter-**
prysed, *pt.*, 14 32; **emprised**, *pt.*,
 16 37.
entiere, *v.* See *entere*.
entiere, *adj.*, entire, whole, 296 21;
 —O.F. *entier*.
entraylles, *sb. pl.*, the entrails, 168
 10;—A.F. *entrailles*.
entre, *sb.*, entrance, 688 22; 710 9;
 —O.F. *entrer*.
entremedle, *v.*, intermeddle, mingle;
entremedled, *pt.*, 711 31;—O.F.
entremealer.
entrete, *sb.*, treaty, 37 29, 30;—Lat.
in and O.F. *traiter*.
entyerement, *sb.*, burial, interment,
 7 33; **enterement**, 88 18;—A.F.
enterrement.
escape, *v.*, to escape; *inf.*, 461 20;
escaped, *p.p.*, 461 37; **scape**, *inf.*,
 92 33;—O.F. *escaper*, *eschaper*.
enuenyme, *v.*, to envenom, poison;
enuenymed, *p.p.*, 284 28; 327
 24;—A.F. *envenimer*.
enuyronne aboute, *adv.*, about, 628
 12;—O.F. *environ*, A.S. *on-blutan*.
ermyn, *sb.*, skin of ermine, animal of
 the weasel tribe, 616 15;—O.F.
ermine.
ermytage, *sb.*, hermitage, 850 9;
heremytage, 90 34.
ermyte, *sb.*, hermit, 72 31; **here-**
myte, 384 33;—A.F. *eremite*
(heremite).
erst, *adv.*, formerly, first, 442 8;
 463 28; 683 21;—A.S. *ærest*.
eschewe, *v.*, to avoid, eschew; *inf.*,
 726 1;—O.F. *eschever*, A.F. *eschuer*.
establysshe, *v.*, to establish; **estab-**
lysshed, *pt.*, 182 14;—O.F. *establis-*
from établir. See *stablyssahe*.
estate, *sb.*, state; **estates**, *pl.*, ranks,
 classes, 311 14;—O.F. *estat*.

- estures**,¹ *sb. pl.* (Caxton reads *estures*), (1) being, nature; (2) the inner part of a house, chambers (for *estres*), 784 3;—O.F. *estre*.
- eure**, *sb.*, use, custom, 59 7.
- euen**, *sb.*, evening, 40 15; 435 17;—A.S. *ēfen*, *ēfen*.
- eueryche**, *adj.*, every one, every, 144 27; 145 4;—A.S. *ēfre* + *ēlc*.
- euerychone**, *adj.*, every one, 186 12;—A.S. *ēfre* + *ēlc* + *ān*.
- euyn**, *adv.*, even, equal, 849 25;—A.S. *efen*, *efn*.
- expense**, *sb.*, expense, cost, 518 20; **expencys**, *pl.*, 585 24;—from Lat. *expendere*.
- expowne**, *v.*, to expound, interpret; **expowned**, *p.p.*, 27 16; *pt.*, 27 35;—Lat. *exponere*, O.F. *expondre*.
- eyder**, *adj.*, either, 313 21;—A.S. *ēgper*.
- eye**, *sb.*, eye; **eyen**, *pl.*, 112 9; 435 28;—A.S. *ēage*.
- eygyrlye**, *adv.*, eagerly. See *eger*.
- eyle**, *v.*, to trouble, afflict, hurt; **eyleth**, *prs.*, 407 2; 511 19;—A.S. *eglan*.
- facyon**, *sb.*, shape, fashion; **facyons**, *pl.*, 692 17;—O.F. *fason*, *façon*.
- fadom**, *sb.*, fathom, 847 9;—A.S. *fæðm*.
- faile**, *v.*, to fail; *inf.*, 42 28; **fayled**, *pt.*, 42 9; **failled**, *pt.*, 57 29;—A.F. *faillir*.
- falle**, *sb.*, fall; **fallys**, *pl.*, 477 5;—from A.S. *feallan*.
- falle**, *v.*, to fall; **fell**, *pt.*, 43 3; **falle**, *prs.*, 3 38; **fyl**, **fylle**, **felle**, *pt.*, 30 11; 71 16; 93 31; 122 4; 847 15; **falle**, *p.p.*, 98 35; **fallen**, *pl. prs.*, 213 17; **fallen**, *p.p.*, 625 25;—A.S. *feallan*.
- fantasye**, *sb.*, fancy, imagination, 285 33;—O.F. *fantasie*.
- fare**, *v.*, to go, fare, behave; **ferd**, *prs.*, 56 12; 536 18; **farne**, *p.p.*, 595 9; **farynge**, *p.prs.*, 289 10; **faren**, *p.p.*, 235 34;—A.S. *faran*.
- faucon**, *sb.*, falcon, 208 32;—A.F. *faucon*.
- faute**, *v.*, to fail, to be wanting, to stammer; **fawte**, *prs.*, 101 5; **fauted**, *pt.*, 388 23;—Lat. *fallere*. Compare O.F. *faite*.
- faueour**, *sb.*, favour, 338 2;—O.F. *faveur*.
- fay**, *sb.*, fay, fairy, person endowed with supernatural powers (surname of Morgan, king Arthur's sister);—O.F. *faë* (*fee*).
- fayne**, *v.*, to feign; **fayned**, *p.p.*, 2 7; 403 31;—A.F. *feindre*.
- fayter**, *sb.*, impostor, vagabond, pretender, 87 14;—O.F. *faitour*.
- feale**, *v.*, to feel; **feale**, *prs.*, 360 29; **felte**, *pt.*, 611 6;—A.S. *fēlan*.
- feaute**, *sb.*, track, trace, 205 1; 764 26;—O.F. *feute*.
- feaute**, *sb.*, fealty, fidelity, the oath sworn by the vassal to be faithful to his feudal lord, 227 26; 437 37; **fealte**, 181 32;—O.F. *fealte*.
- feble**, *v.*, to become weak, to make weak; **febled**, *pt.*, 142 38; 759 36;—from O.F. *feble*, *foible*.
- fede**, *v.*, to feed; **fedde**, *p.p.* and *pt.*, 717 34;—A.S. *fēdan*.
- feest**, *sb.*, feast, festival, 401 4; 417 14; **fest**, 44 24; **feste**, 44 36;—A.F. *feste*.
- felaushyppe**, *v.*, to associate; **felaushypped**, *pt.*, 352 23;—Icel. *felagi*, A.S. *scipe*. Compare *enfelaushyppe*.
- felle**, *v.*, to fell; **feld**, *p.p.*, 204 27; **fellyd**, *p.p.*, 97 17, 27; 836 12;—A.S. *fellan*.
- felon**, *sb.*, traitor, villain, 550 30;—A.F. *felon*, *feloun*.
- felonsly**, **fellonyaly**, *adv.*, feloniously, cruelly, disgracefully, 453 10; 455 5; 504 22.
- felyshyp**, *sb.*, fellowship, company, 840 30;—Icel. *felagi*, A.S. *scipe*.
- fende**, *sb.*, enemy, fiend, 136 11; 655 7;—A.S. *fēnd*.
- fer**, *adj.* and *adv.*, far, 135 12; 832 23; **ferre**, 303 15; **ferther**, *comparat.*, 273 30;—A.S. *feorr*, O.S. *fer*.
- ferdful**, *adj.*, frightful, terrible, timid;—A.S. *fēr* and *ful*.
- ferre**, *sb.*, fear, 590 3;—A.S. *fēr*.
- ferre**, *v.*, to terrify, to frighten, fear;

¹ Compare Walter W. Skeat's notes to Chaucer's "Legend of Good Women," p. 175.

- fere**, *prs.*, 287 30; 409 15; **feryd**, *pt.*, 400 32;—A.S. *fēran*.
ferhewen, *p.p.* hewn, beaten, 238 29;—A.S. *for* and *heāwan*.
fete, *sb.*, deed, knightly feat; **fetys**, *pl.*, 641 36; **feates**, *pl.*, 1 38;—O.F. *fet*, *fait*.
fette, *v.*, to fetch; **fette**, *pt.*, 65 22; **fette**, *p.p.*, 101 4; **fetohe**, *imperat.*, 103 13; **fetche**, *prs.*, 98 10;—A.S. *fetian*.
feutre, *v.*, to put a spear into its rest; **feutryd**, *pt.*, 202 20; 433 17.
fewter, *sb.*, the rest for a spear, 185 13;—O.F. *feutre*.
feyster, *v.*, fester, to corrupt or rankle, suppurate, become malignant; *inf.*, 788 31. *See* Skeat, Dict.
feyth, **feythe**, *sb.*, faith, 63 28 (by the feythe of our bodyes); 519 27;—O.F. *fei*, *feid*.
feythful, *adj.*, faithful, 149 23.
flacked, *sb.*, flask, bottle, 309 29;—O.F. *flasque*.
flagan, *sb.*, drinking vessel with a narrow neck, flagon; **flagans**, *pl.*, 284 4;—O.F. *flacon*.
flatlynge, *adv.*, flat, 321 24; 736 7;—Icel. *flatr* and A.S. *ling*.
flay, *v.*, to skin, to cut off in flags; **flayne**, *p.p.*, 74 27;—A.S. *flēdn*.
flee, *v.*, to fly, flee; **fledde**, *pt.*, 73 27; **flay**, *pt.*, 689 13;—A.S. *flēogan*, *flēon*.
flēme, *v.*, to put to flight; **flēmyd**, *p.p.*, 635 8; 828 13;—A.S. *flēman*.
fleashe, *sb.*, flesh; *but also* meat, 658 10;—A.S. *flēsc*.
flete, *v.*, to float, swim; **fletyng**, *p.prs.*, 614 28;—A.S. *flēotan*.
flore, *v.*, to flower, flourish; **floreth**, *prs.*, 771 20;—O.F. *florir*.
floryssahe, *v.*, to flourish, to cause to prosper; *also*, to brandish a weapon; **florysshēn**, *pl. prs.*, 771 4; **floryssheth**, *prs.*, 771 6;—O.F. *floriss-*, from *florir*.
flynge, *v.*, to send forth, fling, rush; *inf.*, 589 11;—1 Swedish *flänga*.
folye, *sb.*, folly, 2 12; **foly**, 121 36;—A.F. *folia*.
foolyssahe, *adj.*, foolish, lustful, silly, 505 6;—O.F. *fol* with A.S. *saff*.
-lic.
for, *i. prep.*, for, by, in spite of, for fear of; *ii. conj.*, because, in order that; *iii. prefix*—(1) having the sense of destruction, loss = A.S. *for-*; (2) replacing *before* = A.S. *fore*; (3) replacing the prep. *for*; (4) standing for O.F. *for-*, Lat. *foris*.
forbere, *v.*, to forbear; **forborne**, *p.p.*, 847 7;—A.S. *for-beran*.
forblede, *v.*, to bleed, to lose blood; **forbledde**, *pt.*, 463 23; **forbled**, *p.p.*, 350 26;—A.S. *for-* and *blēdan*.
force, *sb.*, force, matter, consequence; no force, it matters not, 72 35; I take no force, 79 17; 762 36; 775 6;—A.F. *force*.
fordele, *sb.*, advantage, 173 33.
forder, *v.*, to advance, promote, further; **forordered**, *pt.*, 229 34;—A.S. *fyrðran*.
fordo, *v.*, to destroy, perish; **fordyd**, *pt.*, 99 3; **fordone**, *p.p.*, 334 32;—A.S. *fordón*.
fore cast, *sb.*, that which is contrived beforehand, 805 14;—A.S. *fore*, Icel. *kasta*.
foreye, *v.*, to forage; **foreyeng**, *p.prs.*, 175 30;—O.F. *forager*.
foreyn, **forayn**, *adj.*, foreign, strange, 573 1, 22;—O.F. *forain*.
foreyst, **forest**, *sb.*, forest, wood, 51 15; 60 28;—O.F. *forest*.
forfende, *v.*, to defend, forbid; *prs.*, 727 8; **forfendyd**, *p.p.*, 727 13;—A.S. *for* and O.F. *(de)fendre*.
forfette, *sb.*, forfeit, crime, 695 22;—O.F. *forfet*, *forfait*.
forfeture, *sb.*, forfeiture, 39 38; 302 29;—O.F. *forfeture*.
forfighte, *v.*, to tire by fighting, to weaken; **forfoughten**, *p.p.*, 87 25; 105 35;—A.S. *for* and *fœhtan*.
forgete, *v.*, to forget; *inf.*, 381 16; **forgeten**, *p.p.*, 380 16; 840 34; **forgeten**, *pl. prs.*, 726 17;—A.S. *forgitan*.
forgiue, *v.*, to forgive; **forgaf**, *pt.*, 43 32;—A.S. *for* and *gifan*. *Compare* **foryeue**.
forhede, **forheed**, *sb.*, forehead, 333 9; 648 19.
foriusted, *p.p.*, unable to fight any longer, exhausted, 323 35; 421 30;—A.S. *for* and O.F. *adjouster*.

- forlond, *sb.*, foreland, cape, a point of land running into the sea, 167 4;—*Icel. forlendi.*
- forlonge, *sb., adj.*, a furrow long, or the length of a furrow, forty poles, the eighth part of a mile, 166 25; *furlonge*, 354 13;—*A.S. furh*, (the furrow) + *lang*.
- formest, *adj. superl.*, first, foremost, 342 31; 347 9;—*A.S. fyrmest.*
- forsothe, *forsoth, adv.*, truly, indeed, 581 5; 645 35;—*A.S. for* and *sōð*.
- forswere, *v.*, to forswear; *for-sworne, p.p.*, 150 14;—*A.S. for-swerian.*
- forth, *adv.*, forth, henceforth, throughout; *forth dayes* = far advanced in the day, 804 19;—*A.S. forð.*
- forthynke, *v.*, to repent; *inf.*, 711 11; *me forthynketh, pres.*, 82 2; 648 12; *forthoughte, pt.*, 712 31;—*A.S. forþyncean.*
- fortune, *v.*, to happen, to make fortunate; *hit fortunied, pt.*, 218 2; 364 21;—from *O.F. fortune.*
- forwounded, *p.p.*, desperately wounded, 350 26;—*A.S. for* and *wundian.*
- foryeue, *v.*, to forgive; *inf.*, 79 32; *foryaf, pt.*, 48 32;—*A.S. forgyfan.*
- foryeuenes, *sb.*, forgiveness, 251 14; 563 19.
- foster, *sb.*, nourishment; *foster broder*, a male child, fostered or brought up with another of different parents, 42 29; *comp. nourished broder*, 41 10;—*A.S. fōstor.*
- foster, *sb.*, forester, one who inhabits a forest, or has the charge of it, 671 28;—*O.F. forestier.*
- fostre, *v.*, to foster, support; *fostred, p.p.*, 250 23;—*A.S. fōstriān.*
- fourde, *sb.*, ford, passage, course, 184 35;—*A.S. ford.*
- fourme, *v.*, to form; *fourmed, p.p.*, 824 17;—*O.F. former.*
- foyle, *v.*, to tread down, to trampel on; *foyled, p.p.*, 771 27;—*O.F. fouler, foler.*
- foyne, *sb.*, a foin, thrust, prick, 248 7; 847 9; *foynes, pl.*, 351 19;—*O.F. fouine.*
- foyne, *v.*, to thrust, to beat with a sword; *foynynge, p.prs.*, 217 33; *O.F. fouine (see Littre).*
- frānceis, *sb.*, freedom, liberality, prerogative, 334 35;—*A.F. française.*
- frende, *sb.*, friend, 274 8;—*A.S. frēond.*
- fresshe, *freysshe, adj.*, fresh, new; 350 29; *freyssheyst, superl.*, 763 23; *fresshest, superl.*, 773 32; *fresshely, adv.*, 239 12;—*A.S. fersc.*
- fronte, *sb.*, front, forehead, 588 27; *frounte*, 191 1; *frunte*, 87 31;—*A.F. frount, frunt, O.F. front.*
- fulfeythful, *adj.*, (1), faithful, 522 36.
- furfare, *v.*, to perish, fare ill, destroy; *fur fared, pt.*, 190 30;—*A.S. for-feran.*
- fyaunce, *sb.*, promise, confidence, trust, 39 2;—*O.F. fiance.*
- fyendly, *adv.*, hostile, warlike, adverse, 572 27;—*A.S. fēondlic.*
- fyre, *fyre, sb.*, fire, 183 18; 275 38;—*A.S. fyr.*
- fyers, *adj.*, fierce, strong, bold, brave, 57 34; *fyerser, comp.*, 181 31;—*O.F. fers, fiers.*
- fyghte, *v.*, to fight; *inf.*, 127 8; *fyghtynge, p.prs.*, 426 28; *faughte, pt.*, 159 28; *fought, pt.*, 71 27; *faughte, pt.*, 65 12;—*A.S. feohian.*
- fylle, *sb.*, the amount of anything that a person can stand; *fylle of fyghtynge*, 426 28;—*A.S. ful.*
- fylle, *sb.*, colt, filly, young animal, 388 23;—*A.S. fyllo.*
- fynde, *v.*, to find; *inf.*, 590 12; *fond, pt.*, 205 26; *fonde, pt.*, 316 5; 757 32; *found, pt.*, 84 5; *fonden, p.p.*, 360 24; *founden, p.p.*, 246 36; 585 21; *founde, p.p.*, 484 34;—*A.S. findan.*
- fyse, *sb.*, son;—*O.F. fis, fie.*
- fytløke, *sb.*, fetlock, tuft of hair growing behind the pastern-joint of horses; *fytløkys, pl.*, 61 2;—? *A.S. fōt* and *locc.*
- gad, *sb.*, a wedge of steel, a sharp-pointed instrument, a graver, 657 13;—*A.S. gad.*
- gadere, *v.*, to gather, collect, assemble; *gadre, inf.*, 51 35; *gad-*

- red, *pt.*, 6 20; 668 17;—A.S. *gaderian*.
- galeye**, *sb.*, galley, a long low-built ship with one deck, 164 30;
- galeyes**, *pl.*, 841 9;—A.F. *galeye*.
- galhous**, *sb.*, gallows, 796 8 (the 1634 ed. has *gallous*);—A.S. *gealga*, *galga*.
- gap**, *sb.*, an opening made by rupture or parting, cleft, 403 7;—Icel. *gap*.
- garderobe**, *sb.*, wardrobe, place where dresses are kept, 177 25;—O.F. *garderobe*.
- gardyne**, *sb.*, garden, 588 13; **gardyns**, *pl.*, 771 20;—A.F. *gardin*.
- gare**, *v.*, to make, to cause; **garte**, *pt.*, 121 28; 185 26;—Icel. *göra*.
- garet**, *sb.*, a look-out on the roof of a house or castle wall, watch-tower, 200 6;—O.F. *garite*.
- gar-make**, 825 25–26;—¹ This form is an evident tautology, as *gar* (Icel. *göra*), M.E. “to *ger*,” is equal in signification to “make.”¹
- garneson**, *sb.*, guard, garrison, 178 8;—O.F. *garnison*.
- garnysse**, *v.*, to supply, to equip, to provide with; *imperat.*, 35 30; *prs.*, 51 8; **garnysshed**, *pt.*, 825 33;—O.F. *garniss*, from *garnir*.
- gate**, *sb.*, gate; **gatys**, *pl.*, 459 37;—A.S. *geat*. Compare *yate*.
- gauntelet**, *sb.*, a gauntlet, the iron glove of armour, 778 30; 780 9;—O.F. *gantelet*.
- gayn**, *adj.*, direct, near, convenient, ready; **gaynest**, *superlat.*, 248 31;—Icel. *gegn*.
- gaynsaye**, *v.*, to deny, dispute, contradict; *inf.*, 2 30;—A.S. *gean* and *secgan*.
- geaunte**, *sb.*, giant, 11 5; **gyaunt**, 97 26; **gesuntes**, *pl.*, 12 5;—A.F. *geant*.
- gentyl**, **yentyl**, *adj.*, worthy, excellent, noble; **gentylst**, *superl.*, 422 15; **yentyllest**, *superl.*, 860* 10;—A.F. *gentil*.
- genytours**, *sb. pl.*, genitals, exterior organs of generation, 168 9;—O.F. *genitoirs*, Lat. *genitorium*.
- gerfaukon**, *sb.*, a kind of falcon, 156 29;—Lat. *gyrofalconem*. See also *iarfaucon*.
- germayn**, *adj.*, closely allied, derived from the same stock, of the first degree, 89 19;—Lat. *germanus*.
- geste**, *sb.*, guest; **gestes**, *pl.*, 310 24;—A.S. *gæst*, *gest*.
- gete**, *v.*, to gain, get, to beget; **gatte**, *pt.*, 297 27; **geteth**, *prs.*, 47 33; **gat**, *pt.*, 68 8; **gate**, *pt.*, 41 32; 763 2; **goten**, *p.p.*, 61 28; 63 24; **yate**, *pt.*, 39 7; 91 9;—A.S. *gitan*.
- gladde**, *adj.*, glad, 401 2;—A.S. *glæd*.
- glade**, *v.*, to make glad, to render merry; **gladeth**, *prs.*, 180 4; **gladen**, *pra. pl.*, 797 4;—A.S. *gladian*.
- glastyng**, *p.prs.*, making a noise like a dog, barking; the **glastyng** **beest**. Compare *questyng*.
- glatysaunt** (the *glatysaunt* **beest**), barking;—*p.prs.* of O.F. *glatir*, *glatisant*.
- glayue**, *sb.*, sword, 110 26; 807 18;—O.F. *glaiue*.
- glemerynge**, *p.prs.*, glimmering, 592 19;—A.S. *ge-leoman*.
- gloton**, *sb.*, glutton, 168 6;—A.F. *gluttun*.
- gnaste**, *v.*, to gnash the teeth; **gnasted**, *pt.*, 206 16;—Icel. *gnastan*.
- gonne**, *sb.*, gun; **gonnes**, *pl.*, 839 26. Compare Low Lat. *gunna*.
- gone**, *v.*, to go; **gost**, *prs.*, 70 27; **goth**, *prs.*, 733 17;—A.S. *gán*.
- gomme**, *sb.*, gum; **gommes**, *pl.*, 174 22;—O.F. *gomme*.
- gouernaunce**, *sb.*, government, behaviour, 334 12; 405 30; 478 26;—O.F. *gouvernance*.
- Gouernayle**, name given to syr Trystram's tutor and servant, meaning rudder, management, leader.

¹ I can only explain this strange form (the hyphen is here not inserted in my edition, but is found in the Caxton) by supposing that the compositor, by breaking the word and printing “*gar-*” at the end of one line, forgot what he was to do, and put “*make*” at the beginning of the next. Malory most likely wrote “*gar-nysshe*” as in line 33 of the same page.

- Gramercy**, *adj. sb.*, grant-mercy, many thanks, 426 30.
- gras**, *sb.*, grass; put hem to gras, 85 1;—A.S. *græs*.
- graunte**, *adj.*, great, 565 20; **graunte sir**, 696 3; **graunt mercy**, 804 15;—O.F. *grand*.
- graunte**, *v.*, to grant, give, allow, agree; *inf.*, 762 16; **graunted**, *p.p.*, 12 27; **graunted**, *pt.*, 760 31;—A.F. *graunter*.
- graythe**, *v.*, to prepare, to dress; **graythed**, *pt.*, 171 34;—Icel. *græða*.
- gree**, *sb.*, step, degree, worthiness, price, 447 31; 588 34;—O.F. *gre*.
- greece**, *sb.*, grease, 219 1; the hart of greese, 566 22;—O.F. *graisse*.
- Grece**, *sb.*, Greece, the country, 163.
- grekysshe**, *adj.*, Greek, 2 35.
- grede**, *adj.*, greedy, 179 23;—A.S. *grædig*, *grædig*.
- greese**, *sb.* See *greece*.
- grette**, **grete**, *adj.*; **gretter**, *comp.*, 38 8; **grettest**, *superl.*, 40 17;—A.S. *græt*.
- grese**, *sb.*, step, stair; *pl.*, flight of steps; **gresys**, *pl.*, 716* 25;—O.F. *gre*.
- greunaunce**, *sb.*, hurt, grievance, 205 17;—O.F. *grevance*.
- greue**, *sb.*, grove, thicket; **greuys**, *pl.*, 208 35;—A.S. *gráf*.
- grone**, *v.*, to groan; **gronyng**, *p.pr.*, 288 37;—A.S. *grónian*.
- grose**, le (surname of Hellyas and Geryne), meaning the great, the stout;—O.F. *gros*.
- grutoche**, *v.*, to grumble, grudge; *inf.*, 177 37;—O.F. *groucher*.
- gryef**, *sb.*, grief, 342 10;—O.F. *gref*.
- grym**, **grymme**, *adj.*, fierce, horrible, heavy, 98 18; 845 12; **grymly**, *adv.*, 206 31;—A.S. *grim*.
- gryffon**, *sb.*, griffin, 65 10; 176 8;—O.F. *griffon*.
- grype**, *v.*, to grip, to seize; **grypped**, *pt.*, 193 29; **gryped**, *pt.*, 239 23;—A.S. *gripan*.
- grysly**, *adj.*, horrible, dreadful; **gryslyest**, *superl.*, 584 22;—A.S. *grislic*.
- guldyssh**, *adj.*, gilt, golden, 408 13;—deriv. from A.S. *gyldan*.
- guttas**, *sb. pl.*, the bowels, 169 9; 778 14;—A.S. *gut*, *geotan*.
- guyse**, *sb.*, way, manner, dress, behaviour, 747 26;—O.F. *guise*.
- gyfte**, *sb.*, gift, present, 69 7; **yeftes**, *pl.*, 458 5;—Icel. *gipt*.
- gyue**, *v.*, to give; **my herte gyueth me to the**, 214 10; 580 20; 708 29; **gaue**, *pt.*, 101 3; **gaf**, *pt.*, 46 36; 115 3; **yene**, *inf.*, 38 11; **yeuen**, *p.p.*, 44 9; 61 36; 518 6; **gyuen**, *p.p.*, 15 2;—A.S. *gifan*.
- gyle**, *sb.*, guile, deceit, fraud, 77 2; 174 2;—O.F. *guile*, A.S. *wil*.
- gyrde**, *v.*, to gird; **gyrd**, *pt.* and *p.p.*, 76 17, 19;—A.S. *gyrdan*.
- gyrdyl**, *sb.*, girdle, 849 16;—A.S. *gyrdel*.
- gysarme**, *sb.*, battle-axe, 248 2; **gysarms**, *pl.*, 155 4;—O.F. *guisarme*.
- gyse**, *sb.*, guise, manner, wise, 62 17;—A.S. *wise*.
- gyse**, *sb. pl.*, geese, 62 17;—A.S. *gés*.
- haberion**, *sb.*, habergeon, a piece of armour to defend the neck and breast, 677 18;—O.F. *hauberjon*.
- hackney**, *sb.*, small horse, nag, 304 33; **hakeneis**, *pl.*, 50 22; 448 32;—A.F. *hakemat*, *hakemey*.
- haft**, *sb.*, handle, 692 20; 848 27;—A.S. *hæft*.
- halle**, *sb.*, hall, 264 19; **holle**, 264 22;—A.S. *heol*, O.F. *halle*.
- hale and how**, pull ho! a cry of sailors, 286 13.
- halse**, *v.*, to embrace; **halsed**, *pt.*, 304 37;—A.S. *healsian*.
- handed**, *adj.*, skilful, strong; the fayrest and largest handed, 218 27;—from A.S. *hand*, *hond*.
- handsel**, *sb.*, handsel, gift, earnest-money on a purchase, 297 30;—Icel. *handsal*.
- hangers**, *sb. pl.*, testicles, 474 18;—A.S. *hangian*.
- hange**, *v.*, to hang; **hangen**, *pl. pr.*, 184 36; **henge**, *pt.*, 193 12; 463 38;—A.S. *hange*, from *hōn*.
- harneis**, *sb.*, armour, 406 14;—O.F. *harnois*.
- harnest**, *p.p.*, equipped, 324 23; **harnysed**, *p.p.*, 773 33.
- hastynes**, *sb.*, haste, hurry, 841 33.

- hate**, *v.*, to be called; *heteth*, *prs.*, 216 3;—A.S. *hatan*.
hauberk, *sb.*, a coat of ringed mail, armour protecting the neck, 58 21; 82 11;—O.F. *hauberc*.
hauke, *sb.*, hawk; *v.*, to hawk, 208 20;
hawkyng, 276 33;—A.S. *heafoc*.
haute prynce, the, the high prince; surname of Galahad son of Launcelot, and of Galahad of Surluse.
haue, *v.*, to have, to take; *inf.*, 756 8; *hadde*, *pt.*, 489 28;—A.S. *habban*.
hayre, *sb.*, hair, 657 16; 718* 11;
here, 83 22; *hayr*, 27 27; *heyre*, 362 19;—A.S. *hær*, *hér*.
hede, *sb.*, heed, care, 714* 27;—from A.S. *hédan*.
hede, *sb.*, head, 311 19; *heed*, 311 20; *heede*, 311 27; 465 1;—A.S. *hēafod*.
hele, *sb.*, health, soundness, salvation, 705 20; 720 8;—A.S. *hælu*.
helme, *sb.*, helmet, 195 18; *helmet*, 195* 17; used for "men," 191 10;—A.S. *helm*.
helpe, *v.*, to help; *halp*, *pt.*, 91 28; 155 8; *holpen*, *p.p.*, 125 4;—A.S. *helpan*.
helthe, *sb.*, health, soundness, salvation, 631 88; 702 22;—A.S. *hælb*.
hem, *pron. pl., dat. and acc.*, them, 87 27; 47 4; 85 21; 631 26;—A.S. *him*, *heom*.
heme, *v.*, to make a buzzing sound like bees, hum; *hemyng*, *p.prs.*, 583 2.—Of imitat. origin.
hens, *adv.*, hence, 267 36;—M.E. *hennes*, A.S. *heonan*, *hionan*.
heraude, *sb.*, herald; *heraudes*, *pl.*, 533 24;—O.F. *heraud*, *herault*.
her, *pron.*, their, 47 2; 101 13; 643 25; 816 11;—A.S. *hira*, *heora*.
herberowe, *sb.*, lodging, shelter, 243 35; *herberow*, 158 11; *herburgh*, 427 19; *herberowes*, *pl.*, 263 36;—Icel. *herbergi*.
herberowe, *v.*, to lodge, to provide shelter; *herborowed*, *pt.*, 180 19.
here, *v.*, to hear; *inf.*, 850 5; *herde*, *p.p.*, 703 33;—A.S. *hēran*.
here, *sb.*, hair. *See hayre*.
hermyte, *heremytage*. *See ermyte*, *ermytage*.
herken, *v.*, to hearken, listen; *inf.*, 366 13; *herke*, *imperat.*, 703 36;
herkened, *pt.*, 447 3;—A.S. *hyronian*.
herte, *sb.*, heart, 393 2; *hert*, 457 24;—A.S. *heorte*.
herte, *sb.*, hart, 566 22; *hert*, 65 17;—A.S. *heorot*, *heort*.
heruest, *sb.*, harvest, 815 9;—A.S. *haerfest*.
herytage, *sb.*, heritage, 652 38;—O.F. *heritage*.
hete, *sb.*, a hit, 584 26;—from Icel. *hitta*.
hethe, *sb.*, heath, 845 31;—A.S. *hæð*.
hethen, *adj.*, heathen, 2 31; 643 22;—A.S. *hæðen*.
heue, *v.*, heave, raise; *prs.*, 72 12; 847 18;—A.S. *hebban*.
hewe, *sb.*, hue, colour, 165 9;—A.S. *hiw*.
hewe, *v.*, to hew, to knock; *hewe*, *pt.*, 463 18; *hewen*, *p.p.*, 27 26; 97 38;—A.S. *hēawan*.
heyer, *sb.*, heir, successor, 164 27.
hey3te, *sb.*, height, 165 19;—A.S. *hēah3u*, *hēh3u*.
hit, *hyt*, *pron.*, it, 61 5; 131 37; 148 6;—A.S. *hit*.
ho, *interj.*, stop! hold on! 61 9.
hole, *adj.*, whole, entire, 722 24;—A.S. *hāl*.
holsome, *adj.*, wholesome, 100 26.—Compare Icel. *heilsamr*.
holte, *sb.*, a wood, holt, a wooded hill, grove; *holtys*, *pl.*, 175 34;—A.S. *holt*.
honger, *sb.*, hunger, 652 27; *hongre*, 651 35;—A.S. *hungor*.
holde, *v.*, to hold, observe, keep; *hylde*, *pt.*, 48 19; *holydyn*, *p.p.*, 44 22; *helde*, *pt.*, 59 20.
houe, *v.*, remain, hover, wait about; *houed*, *pt.*, 145 15; *houynge*, *p.prs.*, 99 28.
hool, *adj.*, whole, sound, 36 12; *holer*, *comp.*, 72 19;—A.S. *hāl*.
hoolly, *sb.*, holly, 155 34;—A.S. *holen*, *holegn*.
hoost, *hooste*, *sb.*, host, army, 36 4; 61 3;—A.F. *ost*, *host*.
hore, *adj.*, hoar, hairy, white or grayish-white, aged, 96 5; *holtes* hore, 853 9;—A.S. *hár*.

- hors lytter**, *sb.*, a vehicle containing a bed, drawn by horses, 399 14;
hors lyttar, 89 20;—A.S. *hors* and O.F. *liitiere*.
horsbere, *sb.*, horse-bier, carriage or frame of wood for bearing the dead to the grave, hearse, 135 23.
hostage, *sb.*, preparation for battle or war, 463 6;—A.F. *hostage*.
hostry, *sb.*, inn, 80 5.
houghbone, *sb.*, the bone at the joint on the hind-leg of a quadruped; the back part of the knee-joint, 596 20;—A.S. *hoh* and *bán*.
hous, *hows*, *sb.*, the house, 100 16; 143 12;—A.S. *hus*.
housel, *v.*, to housel, to administer the Eucharist; **houseld**, *p.p.*, 452 7; 702 4; **howselyd**, *p.p.*, 858* 25;—from A.S. *húsel*.
how be it, *adj.*, howbeit, notwithstanding, 317 10.
hurte, *v.*, to hurt; **hurte**, *p.p.*, 134 36; 703 10; 764 32; **hurte**, *pt.*, 20 14;—O.F. *hurter*, *heurter*. Compare A.S. *hyrt*, wounded.
hurtle, *v.*, to rush, to dash against, to throw down; **hurtled**, *pt.*, 71 29; 195* 7; **hurlynge**, *p.prs.*, 226 36; **hurled**, *pt.*, 764 32.
husbondman, *sb.*, working farmer, husbandman, 166 7;—Icel. *húsbondi*, A.S. *man*.
hyde, *v.*, to hide; **hyd**, *p.p.*, 62 24; 77 37; **hydde**, *pt.*, 719 23; 849 2;—A.S. *hýdan*.
hyder, *adv.*, hither, 110 34; 521 25; **hyther**, 215 5; **hydder**, 761 23;—A.S. *hider*, *híðer*.
hyderto, *adv.*, hitherto, 846 35.
hyhenes, *sb.*, highness, 487 36;—A.S. *héah*, *heh*, and *nysses*.
hyhe, *adj.*, high, 670 27;—A.S. *héah*.
hye, *hyhe*, *v.*, to hie, hasten; **hyhe**, *imperat.*, 465 7; **hyhe me**, 80 13; **hye yow**, 37 10;—A.S. *higian*, *higan*.
hylle, *sb.*, hill, 714* 15; **hyllys**, *pl.*, 175 34;—A.S. *hyll*.
hylte, *sb.*, hilt, handle; **hylyts**, *pl.*, 95 36;—A.S. *hilt*.
hynde, *sb.*, hind, female of a stag, 764 17;—A.S. *hind*.
hyr, *pron.*, her, 109 4;—A.S. *hire*.
hystoryal, *adj.*, historical, 1 3;—Lat. *historia*.
hyther, *adv.* See *hyder*.
hyt, *pron.* See *hit*.
hytte, *v.*, to hit; **hyt**, *pt.*, 71 15; **hitte**, *pt.*, 412 23;—Icel. *hitta*.
incontynent, *adj.*, *adv.*, incontinent, immediately, at once, 162 21;—Lat. *incontinent*, from *incontinens*.
incoronation, *sb.*, coronation, 44 24.
indignacyon, *sb.*, indignation, 43 14;—Lat. *indignationem*.
infydeles, *sb. pl.*, the infidels, heathen, 168 38; **mysoreantes**, *pl.*, 860 38;—Lat. *infidelis*.
intronysacyon, *sb.*, enthronement, coronation, 182 11.
ire, *sb.*, anger, 313 23;—Lat. *ira*. See also *yre*.
ialous, *adj.*, jealous, 203 9; 407 32;—O.F. *jalous*.
ialousye, *sb.*, jealousy, 298 3; (*ialousnes*, 407 32);—O.F. *jalousie*.
iape, *sb.*, joke, jest, mockery, 113 11;—from O.F. *japper*.
iaper, *sb.*, jester, buffoon, 335 35.
iarfaucon, *sb.*, a kind of falcon, 254 31; **ierfaucon**, 601 21;—Lat. *gyrofalconem*. See also *gerfaucon*.
iaiy, *sb.*, jay, bird of the crow family with gay plumage, 582 30;—O.F. *geai*.
ieopardy, *sb.*, jeopardy, hazard, danger, 108 15.
ieoparde, *v.*, jeopard, jeopardise; *inf.*, 74 15; 471 30;—from O.F. *jeu parti*.
iesseraunte, *sb.*, a short cuirass of fine mail; **iesseraunce**, 619 11;—O.F. *jaserant*, *iaseran*.
iocounde, *adj.*, joyous, pleasant, 249 6.
iuge, *v.*, to judge; *pr.*, 134 14; **iuged**, *pt.*, 109 12; *p.p.*, 564 15;—O.F. *juger*.
iugement, *sb.*, judgement, 152 30;—A.F. *jugement*.
iuste, *v.*, to joust, encounter, approach; **ioustyng**, *p.prs.*, 41 16;—A.F. *jouster*.
iuster, *sb.*, champion, 71 10; **iustar**, 441 29.
iustes, *sb. pl.*, tournaments, 41 12;—A.F. *joustes*.

kay, *sb.*, key; **kayes**, *pl.*, 633 9;—*A.S. cæg, cæge.*

kechen, *sb.*, kitchen, 214 27; **kechyn**, 215 17;—*A.S. cȳcene, cȳcen.*

kele, *v.*, to cool; *inf.*, 421 1; **keleth**, *prs.*, 771 31;—*A.S. cēlan.*

kempe, *sb.*, warrior, champion; **kempys**, *pl.*, 223 31;—*A.S. cempa.*

kepar, *sb.*, keeper, 139 29.

kepe, *sb.*, heed; 294 10; 629 29.

kepe, *v.*, to keep, observe, regard; *inf.*, 831 35; **kepe**, *imperat.*, 364 14; 407 12; **kepest**, *prs.*, 472 21;

kepte, *pt.*, 326 20; **kepte**, *p.p.*, 42 25; 406 15;—*A.S. cēpan.*

kertyl, *sb.*, kirtle, short gown, or tunic, 168 8;—*A.S. cyrtel.*

kerue, *v.*, to carve; **keruyng**, *p.prs.*, 693 28;—*A.S. ceorfan.*

ketche, *v.*, to catch; *inf.*, 229 12; **caughte**, *pt.*, 58 34;—*O.F. cacher.*

keuer, *v.*, to cover; **keuerd**, *p.p.*, 416 32;—*A.F. couvrir.*

keuerchyef, *sb.*, asquare piece of cloth, 172 10;—*O.F. couvre-chef, couvre-chef.*

keueryng, *sb.*, the covering (of a shield), 663 35; **keuerynge**, 448 7.

knaue, *sb.*, knave, servant, 177 31; **knaus**, *pl.*, 177 32;—*A.S. cnafa.*

knowlege, *sb.*, knowledge, 31 4; **knouleche**, 749 11.

knowleche, *v.*, to acknowledge, to learn, to tell; *inf.*, 162 21; **knowleched**, *pt.*, 14 19;—from *A.S. cnawian*, with the Icel. suff. *-leikr.*

knowlechyng, *sb.*, the acknowledgment, acknowledging, 822 14; 773 13.

knowe, *v.*, to know; *inf.*, 182 1; 216 5; **knowen**, *prs. pl.*, 379 17; 729 8;

kno (I), *p.p.*, 1 18; **knowen**, *p.p.*, 549 30; **knewe**, *pt.*;—*A.S. cnāwan.*

knyghthode, *sb.*, knighthood, 354 24; 767 33;—*A.S. cnihtād.*

knylle, *v.*, to knell; *inf.*, 856* 6;—*A.S. cnyll*, a knell.

knytte, *v.*, to knit, bind, join; **knyt**, *p.p.*, 450 1;—*A.S. cnyttan.*

kutte, *v.*, to cut; **kytte**, *pt.*, 781 29.

kybbet, *sb.*, cubit, a measure employed by the ancients equal to the length of the arm from the elbow

to the tip of the middle-finger, 856* 10;—*Lat. cubitus.*

kyen, *sb. pl.*, cows, 103 16;—*A.S. cȳ*, from sing. *cū.*

kylle, *v.*, to strike, kill; *inf.*, 764 13; **kyld**, *p.p.*, 65 38; **kylled**, *pt.*, 327 13; **kylled**, *p.p.*, 826 19.

kynde, *sb.*, kind, nature, race, 582 28; 708 36;—*A.S. cȳnde, gecȳnd.*

kynne, *sb.*, kin, kind, generation, 88 31; 513 19;—*A.S. cȳnn.*

kynreed, *sb.*, kindred, 243 5; **kynred**, 243 11;—*A.S. cȳnn and rōden.*

kysse, *v.*, to kiss; **kyst**, *pt.*, 78 38; 68 20; **kyssed**, *pt.*, 82 36;—*A.S. cȳssan.*

laddre, *sb.*, ladder; **laddres**, *pl.*, 180 37;—*A.S. hlæder.*

ladyl, *sb.*, ladle, a large spoon for ladling or dipping out liquid from a vessel, 219 6;—*A.S. hlædel.*

lady les, *adj.*, ladyless, without a lady, 312 19.

langage, *sb.*, language, 405 19;—*A.F. langage.*

langaged, *adj.*, having a way of speaking, 272 11.

langer, *v.*, loiter, saunter about; **langerynge**, *p.prs.*, 369 21.

lande, *sb.*, land, country; **landes**, *pl.*, 830 34; **lendes**, *pl.*, 831 31.

lappe, *v.*, to wrap; **lapped**, *pt.*, 274 18; 737 2; **lapped**, *p.p.*, 205 35. *See Skeat, Dict.*

largesse, *sb.*, bounty, largess, 539 26; **your largenesse**, 134 23;—*A.F. largesse.*

lasshe, *v.*, to dash against; **lasshyed**, *pt.*, 203 4; **lasshed**, *pt.*, 403 38; 472 33.

late, *adj., adv.*, slow, late, lately, 652 21;—*A.S. læt.*

laton, *sb.*, brass, bronze, 88 25; **latoen**, 184 37;—*O.F. laton.*

laughe, *v.*, to laugh; **laugh**, *prs.*, 99 8; **lough**, *pt.*, 45 29; 99 8;—*A.S. hleghan.*

laules, *adj.*, lawless, 64 6.

launde, *sb.*, a wild, bushy plain, a waste field, 145 14, 23;—*A.F. launde.*

lawde, *sb.*, praise, 747 35;—*Lat. laudem.*

lawe, *sb.*, law; **lawes**, *pl.*, 760 14.

- layne, *v.*, to hide (in Old Norse the verb has this meaning, whereas in A.S. *lignian* means to deny); *inf.*, 798 14; *prs.*, 747 14.
- laye, *v.*, to lay; *inf.*, 887 7; laydest, *second p.prs.*, 887 8; leye, *imperat.*, 206 32; layde, *p.p.*, 126 14; laid, *pt.*, 188 34; layen, *p.p.*, 29 22; laide, *p.p.*, 760 27; leyd, *pt.*, 658 30;—A.S. *legan*.
- layte, *sb.*, lightning, 706 30.
- lazarcote, *sb.*, hut or cottage for lepers, 16 21; 876 35;—Church Lat. *lazari* and A.S. *cot*.
- leare, *sb.*, cheek, face; learys, *pl.*, 871 4;—A.S. *lira*.
- leche, *sb.*, physician; leches, *pl.*, 871 4;—A.S. *læce*.
- lecheoure, *sb.*, glutton, dissolute person, 727 3;—A.F. *lecheur*.
- lechery, *sb.*, lewdness, 641 33;—A.F. *lecherie*.
- lede, *v.*, to lead, carry; *inf.*, 378 12; lede, *prs.*, 621 32; lad, *pt.*, 54 4; ladde, *pt.*, 9 5; ledde, *pt.*, 11 29; 581 28; ledde, *p.p.*, 549 15; ladde, *p.p.*, 54 38; 319 7;—A.S. *lædan*.
- leder, *sb.*, leader, guide, 387 35; 753 26.
- leder, *sb.*, leather, 448 4;—A.S. *leper*.
- leed, *sb.*, lead, 174 23;—A.S. *lead*.
- leef, lyef, *adj.*, dear, beloved, glad, 101 16; 849 8; leuer, *comp.*, 71 36; 745 21; moost leuest, *superl.*, 144 35;—A.S. *læof*.
- legacyon, *sb.*, legation, the person or persons sent as legatees or ambassadors; but here the word means their patent as such, 175 10;—O.F. *legation*.
- lege, *sb.*, a league; leges, *pl.*, 428 35; leghes, *pl.*, 601 14;—O.F. *legue*.
- legeaunce, *sb.*, allegiance, 177 17;—O.F. *ligeance*.
- lene, *v.*, to lend, grant; *imperat.*, 740 8; *inf.*, 96 25; 374 5;—A.S. *lænan*.
- lene, *adj.*, lean, 102 3;—A.S. *hlæne*.
- lemman, *sb.*, lover, sweetheart, 11 31;—A.S. *læofman*.
- lepe, *v.*, to leap; lepte, *pt.*, 104 26;—A.S. *hlæpan*.
- lepe, *sb.*, a leap, jump, 104 26.
- lerne, *v.*, to learn, teach; *inf.*, 197 10;—A.S. *leornian*.
- lese, *v.*, to lose; *inf.*, 450 13; lose, *inf.*, 312 3; lese, *prs.*, 59 37;—A.S. *læosan*.
- lesses les aler, cry of the heralds at a tournament to start the knights, *laissez les aller*! let them (horses) run, 786 28.
- leste, *superl.*, least, 145 30;—A.S. *læst*.
- lete, *v.*, to let, cause, leave; late, *imperat.*, 168 24; 846 30; lete, *imper.*, 754 10;—A.S. *lætan*.
- lette, *v.*, to hinder, to make late; *inf.*, 453 37; 841 10; letted, *p.p.*, 11 11;—A.S. *lættan*.
- leued, *adj.*, covered with leaves, 191 6;—from A.S. *læaf*.
- lewde, *adj.*, unlearned, ignorant; lewdest, *superl.*, 74 32;—A.S. *læwed*.
- leyser, *sb.*, leisure, 126 10; 667 23; leysers, *pl.*, 474 35;—A.F. *leisir*.
- lieutenaunt, *sb.*, lieutenant, 427 23;—A.F. *lieutenant*.
- londage, *sb.*, landing, coming ashore, 841 10.
- long, *adj.* and *adv.*, tall, long, 86 29; not longer, *comp.*, 82 33; longest, *superl.*, 757 23;—A.S. *lang*.
- longe, *adv.*, dependent on, or owing to, 657 35; generally in M.E. *i-long*;—A.S. *gelang*.
- longe, *v.*, to belong; longyng vnto vow, 59 28; longed, *pt.*, 43 1.
- lose, *v.*, to set free; lose, *imperat.*, 589 13; losed, *pt.*, 24 28; loused, 564 27;—A.S. *læsan*, *læsian*.
- lothe, loth, *adj.*, hostile, hateful, grievous, unpleasant, unwilling, 151 33;—A.S. *lād*.
- lotles, *adj.*, without harm, uninjured, 419 7.
- lordes, *sb. pl.*, the aristocracy, contrary to the "comyns," the people, 41 4; 43 26;—A.S. *hlāford*.
- lous, loos, *adj.*, free, loose, 366 27; 389 21;—A.S. *læas*.
- lough, *pt.* of laughes.
- lune, *sb.*, a leash, a thong of leather by which a falconer holds his hawk; lunys, *pl.*, 208 13;—M.H.G. *lîne*.

- luske**, *sb.*, a lazy, idle, good-for-nothing person, 219 6.
- lyar**, *lyer*, *sb.*, liar, 84 38; 823 19, 28;—A.S. *lēogere*.
- lybard**, *sb.*, leopard, 355 31; 533 15; 572 23; 579 5;—O.F. *libbard*.
- lyberte**, *sb.*, liberty, 3 37; 821 33;—O.F. *liberteit*.
- lyckly**, *adv.*, likely, 205 19;—A.S. *līclīc*.
- lycours**, *adj.*, lecherous, dainty, 771 34;—deriv. from O.F. *lecher*.
- lyef**, *adj.*. See *leef*.
- lyft**, *adj.*, left, 387 2. See *Skeat*, Dict.
- lyfte**, *v.*, to lift, 125 5;—Icel. *lyfta*.
- lygement**, *sb.*, 686 24 (W. de Worde has *alegement*; Sir E. Strachey reads *aligement*); † ligament, bandage, or alleviation.¹
- lygge**, *v.*, to lie; *inf.*, 181 26; **lyggest**, *prs.*, 841 26; **lyggynge**, *p.prs.*, 150 31; **leyne**, *p.p.*, 715* 21; **layne**, *p.p.*, 188 34; 581 11; **lay**, *pt.*, 717 11; **lyen**, *p.p.*, 35 12; **lyenge**, *p.prs.*, 761 10;—A.S. *licgan*.
- lygnage**, *sb.*, lineage, descent, parentage, 177 16; 451 14;—A.F. *linage*.
- lygne**, *sb.*, line, 177 15;—A.S. *line*, Lat. *linea*.
- lyke**, *v.*, to please; *impers.*, hit **lyketh** the, 222 10; how **lyketh** **yow**, 215 26;—A.S. *līcian* (*līcan*).
- lymme**, *sb.*, limb, 844 9;—A.S. *lim*.
- lyste**, *sb.*, mind, desire, lust, 376 14.
- lyste**, *v. impers.*, to desire; **me lyst**, 71 34; **ye lyst**, 61 20;—A.S. *līstan*.
- lyste**, *v.*, to listen; **lystned**, *pt.*, 708 21; 710 23; **lest**, *pt.*, 485 37;—† A.S. *hlīstan*, *ge-hlīstan*.
- lystes**, *sb. pl.*, the lists, the enclosed field for the tournament, 306 27;—A.F. *listes*.
- lytel**, *adj.*, small, little, 714* 31; **lytil**, 59 15;—A.S. *lytel*.
- lythe**, *sb.*, joint, limb, member, 116 10;—A.S. *līð*.
- lyttyer**, *sb.*, a vehicle containing a bed, 784 20; **lyttar**, 39 20; **lytter**, 399 14;—O.F. *litiere*.
- mageste**, *sb.*, majesty, 721 20;—Lat. *majestatem*, O.F. *majestet*.
- make**, *v.*, to make; **maade**, *pt.*, 759 26; **maad**, *pt.*, 7 23; **maad**, *p.p.*, 2 6; **made**, *pt.*, 17 15; **made**, *pt.*, 28 34;—A.S. *macian*.
- makeles**, *adj.*, matchless, 822 15; 540 26.
- maker**, *sb.*, maker, writer, author, 562 32; **makers**, *pl.*, 860* 31.
- Maledysaunt**, name given to a damsel going with syr Breunor; = *mal disant*, ill speaking.
- male ease**, *sb.*, sickness, indisposition, uneasiness, 338 2;—O.F. *malaise*.
- male engyne**, *sb.*, evil disposition, malice, wickedness, wicked trick, 733 5 (*compare* Spenser's "Faery Queene," *Malengin*);—A.F. *malengin*.
- male fortune**, *sb.*, misfortune, accident, 356 8; 392 21;—O.F. *mal fortune*.
- male tayle**, *la cote*, surname of syr Breunor; *la cote mal tayllée*, the badly shaped coat.
- malyce**, *sb.*, evil, malice, 784 31;—A.F. *malice*.
- manoyre**, *sb.*, manor, house, castel, 193 14; **manoir**, 134 17; **manayr**, 195 35; **manore**, 196 12;—A.F. *manere*.
- marbyl**, *sb.*, marbel, 138 3;—O.F. *marbre*.
- marche**, *sb.*, district, province, border of a territory, border lands; **marches**, *pl.*, 297 22;—A.F. *marche*.
- mare**, *sb.*, mare, female of a horse; **mares sone**, 779 22; **marys sone**, 837 27;—A.S. *mere*.
- mareyse**, *sb.*, marsh, tract of low wet land, a morass, swamp, 205 5; **mareis**, 413 17; **maryse**, **marys**, 208 8;—O.F. *marois*.
- maronner**, **maryner**, *sb.*, sailor; **maronniers**, *pl.*, 514 10; 518 2; **maryners**, *pl.*, 236 13.
- marre**, *v.*, to injure by cutting off a part, to mar, disfigure; **marred**, *p.p.*, 584 3;—A.S. *āmýrran*.

¹ As the passage in the text runs "be to me a lygement of penaunce vnto my foules helthe," it is very probable that the prefix *a-* is dropped after the indefinite article.

- martre**, *v.*, to torment; **martred**, *p.p.*, 707 18;—A.F. *martirer*.
- maese peny**, *sb.*, offering at the altar, 762 29.
- matchecold**, *adj.*, having holes within the parapets of the walls for pouring stones or molten lead through, machicolated, 226 8.
- matere**, **mater**, *sb.*, matter, material, stuff, subject, 425 34; **maters**, *pl.*, 727 18;—O.F. *matere*.
- matyns**, *sb.*, morning prayer or service, 40 19;—O.F. *matins*.
- maugre**, *sb.*, ill-will, 405 28; 807 12.
- maulgre**, **magre**, *prep.*, in spite of, 714 21; 70 35; **maulgre her (thy) (your) hede**, 418 19; 437 32; 701 36;—O.F. *maugre*.
- may**, *prs.*, may, can, 4 2; 85 26; **maye**, 759 23; **maiste**, *second pers. prs.*, 848 24; **maxste**, 131 14; **mayst**, 472 30; **maist**, 405 24; **my3t**, *pt.*, 111 35; **myght**, *pt.*, 2 11; **myghte**, *pt.*, 754 4;—A.S. *mæg*, *meachte*, *mihite*, *inf. mukan*.
- maye**, *v.*, to go maying; **mayeng**, *p.prs.*, 772 10.
- maylle**, *sb.*, mail, defensive armour for the body, formed of steel rings or network;—O.F. *maille*.
- mayme**, *sb.*, bruise, injury, lameness, the deprivation of any essential part; **maymes**, *pl.*, 57 10;—O.F. *mehaing*.
- mayme**, *v.*, to render lame, defective, paralyse; **maymed**, *pt.*, 87 2; *p.p.*, 108 20.
- mayneal**, *adj.*, homely (generally in M.E. *meyneal*), 430 35.
- mayntene**, *v.*, to support; *inf.*, 657 1; *prs.*, 291 20;—A.F. *meyntener*.
- mayntene**, *sb.*, royal household, means of support, maintenance, 163 4;—O.F. *meyntien*.
- mayster**, *sb.*, master, governor, 151 38;—O.F. *maistre*.
- maystresse**, *sb.*, mistress, 538 3;—O.F. *maistresse*.
- maystrye**, *sb.*, mastery, 42 6; **maystry**, 467 36; **maystryes**, *pl.*, 215 24; 542 9;—O.F. *maistrie*.
- medle**, *sb.*, medley, fight, combat, 56 6;—O.F. *medle*.
- medowe**, *sb.*, meadow; **medowes**, *pl.*, 202 3.—Compare A.S. *mædwe*.
- meagre**, *adj.*, meagre, lean, 568 9;—O.F. *maigre*.
- mekely**, *adv.*, meekly, 122 33;—from Icel. *mjúkr*.
- mencyon**, **mensyon**, *sb.*, commemorative inscription, mention, 571 17; 788 12;—O.F. *mention*.
- mene**, *v.*, mean, signify, intent; **ment**, *pt.*, 296 20;—A.S. *mēnan*.
- merueyllous**, *adj.*, marvellous, 614 5; **meruayllous**, 5 2; **merueilloust**, *superl.*, 278 35;—O.F. *merueillos*.
- merueyille**, *sb.*, marvel, wonder, 236 7; **meruayl**, 3 1; **merueill**, 235 10; 241 18; **merueyles**, *pl.*, 723 17;—O.F. *merveille*.
- merueyille**, *v.*, to wonder, to be astonished; **meruelle**, *imperat.*, 576 29; **merueyled**, *pt.*;—O.F. *merveiller*.
- mery**, *adj.*, merry, pleasant, bright, 404 28;—A.S. *merg*.
- meschyef**, *sb.*, mischief, ill-fortune, 210 7; 651 35; *vb.*, to come to mischief, to be destroyed or injured;—O.F. *meschief*.
- mescreaunt**, *adj.* and *sb.*, miscreant, not believing, infidel; **mescreaunts**, **Sarasyns**, 185 30; **myscreantes**, *pl.*, 465 30; 860 38; **mescreaunts**, *pl.*, 406 11;—O.F. *mescreant*.
- mesel**, *sb.*, leper (here probably leprosy is meant), 705 16;—A.F. *mesel*.
- messenger**, **messagyer**, *sb.*, messenger, 254 40; 277 27; *pl.*, 423 16;—A.F. *messenger*.
- mete**, *sb.*, meat, food, meal, feast, 551 11;—A.S. *mete*.
- mete**, *adj.*, fitting, suitable, meet, 290 9.—Compare A.S. *mēte*.
- mete**, *v.*, to meet, encounter; *inf.*, 94 15; **metten**, *pl. prs.*, 10 33; **mette**, *pt.*, 11 36; **mette**, *p.p.*, 855 1; **met**, *p.p.*, 83 19;—A.S. *mētan*.
- meuable**, *adj.*, movable, 827 1.
- meue**, *v.*, to move, suggest; *inf.*, 40 33; 821 29; **meued**, *pt.*, 87 35; 884 8; **moened**, *p.p.*, 779 18;—A.F. *movoir*, Lat. *mouère*.

- meule, *sb.*, mule, 267 35; mules, *pl.*, 186 7;—O.F. *meule*.
 meyny, *sb.*, household, retinue, company, 480 35; 525 7; *meyne*, 165 14;—O.F. *meisnee*.
 moche, *adj.* and *adv.*, great, much, 35 37; 86 7; a moche man, 802 16.
 mocke, *v.*, to mock; *mocked*, *pt.*, 12 24; *mocked*, *pt.*, 19 35; *mocked*, *p.p.*, 87 15;—O.F. *moquer*.
 moeued, *p.p.*. See *meue*.
 molle, *sb.*, a mole, 289 1;—from A.S. *molde-warp*.
 mone, *sb.*, the moon, 408 13;—A.S. *mona*.
 montayne, *sb.*, mountain, 264 36; *mountayne*, 266 11; 662 15;—O.F. *montagne*.
 monstre, *sb.*, monster, 704 34;—O.F. *monstre*.
 moost, *adj.* *superl.*, greatest, principal, chief, 46 5; 502 12; 695 8; 840 29;—A.S. *mōest*.
 mordre, *sb.*, murder, 118 15;—A.S. *morðer*.
 more, *adj.* and *adv.*; *comp.*, more, greater, 218 23; 425 26; *moo*, 45 26; 415 28; 443 5;—A.S. *māra*, *mā*.
 morne, *sb.*, morning; on the morne, 89 11; to morne, 89 10 (*but also* to morrowe, 70 16, 17);—A.S. *morgen*.
 morne, *v.*, to mourn; *morneth*, *pres.*, 117 8; *mornying*, *p.pres.*, 146 27; 406 1;—A.S. *murnan*.
 morsel, *sb.*, morsel, 675 3;—A.F. *morsel*.
 mortalyte, *sb.*, mortality, 459 24;—O.F. *mortalite*.
 mote, *sb.*, note on the huntsman's horn; *motys*, *pl.*, 223 20;—O.F. *mot*.
 mote, *first pers. sing.*, may, must, 67 9;—A.S. *mōt*.
 mountenaunce, *sb.*, amount, duration, 218 1; 444 10; 463 22;—A.F. *mountance*.
 mowe, *v.*, to be able; *inf.*, 122 26;—? A.S. **mugan* (*compare* Sievers' Gram.).
 mowth, *sb.*, mouth, face, 848 10;—A.S. *mūð*.
 moyane, *sb.*, means; by the moyane, by means of, 6 4; 21 19; *moyan*, 10 23; *moyne*, 16 11; *meane*, 11 30; *menes*, 394 35; *meanys*, *pl.*, 840 14;—A.F. *mene*, O.F. *meiain*, F. *moyen*.
 muffle, *v.*, to wrap up as with a muff, to blindfold; *muffeld*, *p.p.*, 311 17;—O.F. *mofle*, *moufle*.
 multiplyer, *sb.*, one who multiplies or increases, 652 25.
 murdre, *v.*, to murder; *inf.*, 152 15.
 murtherer, *sb.*, murderer, 251 10; 428 32.—*Compare* A.S. *morðor*.
 muse, *v.*, to ponder, wonder; *musyd*, *pt.*, 457 1;—O.F. *muser*.
 musyke, *sb.*, music, 276 31; 422 19;—Lat. *musica*.
 myddel, *adj.* and *sb.*, middle, waist, 72 1;—A.S. *middel*.
 myghty, *adj.*, mighty, 621 1; *myghtyest*, *superl.*, 438 34;—A.S. *mīhtig*, *meahtig*.
 mykel, *adj.* and *adv.*, great, much, 37 3; 371 22; 434 2;—A.S. *micel*.
 myle, *sb.*, mile, 430 25;—O.F. *mile*.
 myn, *pron. poss.*, my, 686 34;—A.S. *mīn*.
 myneuer, *sb.*, meniver, white fur with black specks, ermine, 593 24;—O.F. *menu ver*, *menu vair*.
 mynster, *sb.*, minster, monastery, 613 29; 620 1;—A.S. *mynster*.
 myre, *sb.*, mire, dirt, 112 11; 140 26.—*Compare* Icel. *myri*.
 myrthe, *sb.*, *sing.*, mirth, joy, 37 37; *myrthes*, *pl.*, 500 1; 562 21;—A.S. *myrgð*, *myrð*.
 mysaventure, *sb.*, misfortune, accident, 184 2;—O.F. *mesaventure*.
 mysbyleners, *sb. pl.*, infidels, 631 12; *mysbeleuyng men*, 178 38; *myscreantes*, 860 38.
 myscomforte, *v.*, lose courage, despair; *imperat.*, 460 30.
 mys creature, *sb.*, cripple, monster, disfigured creature, 692 8.
 mysdede, *sb.*, bad deed, fault, crime, 683 32;—A.S. *misdeð*.
 mysdoo, *v.*, to do amiss; *inf.*, 181 7; *mysdoo*, *p.p.*, 686 22.
 mysease, *sb.*, uneasiness, 367 27.
 mysere, *sb.*, misery, 84 34;—Lat. *miseria*.

- myshap**, *sb.*, misfortune, accident, 134 2; 472 24.
myssay, *v.*, abuse, rebuke, slander; *inf.*, 342 9; **myssaid**, *pt.*, 341 23; **myssayenge**, *verbal noun*, 229 33; **myssayed**, *pt.*, 229 34.
mysse, *v.*, to lack, miss; *inf.*, 78 38; **myst**, 405 1; **mys**, 731 18;—A.S. *missan*, *myssian*.
myster, *sb.*, need, want; *also* business, art, occupation, trade, 57 18; 59 5; 224 35;—O.F. *mestier*, *mester*.
natural, *adj.*, natural, 406 3; 649 2;—O.F. *naturel*.
nauel, *sb.*, navel, 199 9; 645 1; **nauyl**, 167 19;—A.S. *nafele*.
ne, *adv.* and *conj.*, not, nor, 109 16;—A.S. *ne*.
nece, *sb.*, niece, 717 36;—A.F. *nece*, *niece*.
necligence, *sb.*, negligence, 771 12;—O.F. *negligence*.
nemly, *adv.*, nimbly, actively, quickly, 596 17;—A.S. *numol*. *See* **nymel**.
nerre, *adj.* and *adv.*; *comp.*, nearer, 838 14;—A.S. *néarra*.
nether, *adj. comp.*, lower; *adv.*, below, 294 12;—A.S. *neodera*, *neotra*.
newe fangle, *adj.*, new fangled, marked by the affectation of novelty, desiring new things, 841 5.—*See* Skeat, Dict.
next, *adj.*, = nearest, 760 35.
neyder, *neg. pron.* and *conj.* *See* **nother**.
neye, **neyhe**, *v.*, to neigh (horse); **neye**, *inf.*, 186 1; **neyhed**, *pt.*, 415 20;—A.S. *hnægan*.
neysshe, *adj.*, tender, soft, 641 8;—A.S. *hneace*.
noblesse, *sb.*, nobility, worthy behaviour, 99 4; 387 29; **nobyl-nesse**, 585 12;—A.F. *noblesse*.
nobley, *sb.*, splendour, dignity, nobility, assembly of nobles, 316 9; 422 32;—A.F. *noblei*.
nobyl, *adj.*, noble, of noble birth, 849 1;—A.F. *noble*.
nold, *pt.*, *s.*, would not, 705 31. *See* **nylle**.
nombre, **nomber**, *sb.*, number, 1 26; 601 23; 633 11;—O.F. *nombre*.
nonnarye, *sb.*, nunnery, 854 2;—O.F. *nonnerie*.
noselynge, *adv.*, on the nose, headlong, 695 21;—A.S. *nosu* and *gelang*.
not for thenne, *adv.*, nevertheless, notwithstanding, 680 7.
nother, *neg. pron.* and *adv.*, neither, 214 14; **nouther**, 775 21; **neyder**, 818 18; **neyther**;—A.S. *náhwæðer*.
notoyrly, *adv.*, notoriously, 1 11;—Late Lat. *notorius*.
not withstandynge, *adv.*, notwithstanding, 453 1.
nourisshe, *v.*, to feed, nourish; *inf.*, 37 2; *prs.*, 38 35; **nourisshyng**, *p.prs.*, 38 27, 34; **nouryashed**, *p.p.*, 39 10;—O.F. *noriss*, *p.prs.* of *norir*.
now and now, *adv.*, now and then, 211 33.
noughte, *neg. pron.* and *adv.*, nothing, not, 684 14; 831 16;—A.S. *náwíht*.
noyous, *adj.*, hurtful, annoying, 701 2.
noyre le, the black, surname of syr Breunor, probably wearing black armour.
nourytur, *sb.*, food, nourishment, 6 6; **nurtur**, 276 24;—O.F. *nouriture*.
nygromancye, *sb.*, magic, sorcery, necromancy, 38 5;—O.F. *nigromance*.
nylle, *first* and *third pers. sing.*, will not, 45 27; **nyl**, 81 32; 297 32; **nylt**, 641 17;—A.S. *nyllan*.
nymel, *adj.*, quick, nimble, active, 312 27;—A.S. *numol*.—*Compare* **nemly**.
nys, *third pers. sing.*, is not, 39 28; 804 9; *etc.*
nyst, *third pers. sing.* and *pt.*, knew not, 190 22; 677 3; 729 12; 784 13; 821 10;—A.S. *nytan*.
obeyssaunce, *sb.*, obedience, 45 25;—A.F. *obeissaunce*.
ofte, *adv.*, often; **oftsydes**, oftentimes, 173 32; **ofte**, 686 16, seems to be misprinted for **efte**, = again;—A.S. *oft*.

oke, *sb.*, oak, 208 23;—A.S. *œc*, *œc*.
 oldenes, *sb.*, age, old age, 715* 33;—
 A.S. *ældnysse*.
 olyfante, *sb.*, elephant; olyfantes,
 236 15;—O.F. *olifant*.
 on, *prep.*, on, at, in, among; on lowde,
 564 35; on lyue, 100 20; on
 slepe, 880 12; on hyghe, 149 27;
 on parte (separately), 56 27;—A.S.
an, *on*.
 onles, onlesse, *adv.*, unless, 47 22;
 446 6.—See Skeat, Dict.
 ony, *pron. neg.*, any, 292 18; 415 28;
 —A.S. *ænig*.
 oost, *sb.*, host, inn-keeper, 200 6;—
 O.F. *oste*, *hoste*.
 or, *prep.*, *conj.*, *adv.*, before, ere, 237
 19;—? A.S. *ær*.
 ordenaunce, *sb.*, order, command,
 array, provision, 51 24;—A.F. *or-*
dinance.
 ore, *sb.*, ear, 708 4;—A.S. *ār*.
 orgule, *sb.*, pride, 858* 1;—O.F.
orguel (compare A.S. *orgel*).
 orgulous, *adj.*, proud, 827 19; moost
 orgulist, *superl.*, 840 6;—O.F. *or-*
gueilleus.
 orgulyte, *sb.*, pride, 418 9; 523 33.
 ornemente, *sb.*, ornament; orne-
 mentys, *pl.*, 711 16;—O.F. *orne-*
ment.
 orphelyn, *sb.*, orphan; surname of
 Alysaunder;—O.F. *orpheline*.
 oryent, *sb.*, the East, 654 32;—A.F.
orient.
 oryson, *sb.*, prayer, orison, 645 6;—
 A.F. *oreison*.
 oth, *sb.*, cath, 52 1;—A.S. *að*.
 otys, *sb. pl.*, oats, 111 7;—A.S. *āte*.
 ouche, *sb.*, clasp, socket of a precious
 stone; ouches, *pl.*, 822 2 (M.E.
 generally *nouche*);—O.F. *nouche*,
nouche, *musche*.
 ought, *sb.*, aught, anything;—A.S.
ā-wiht.
 outraguously, *adv.*, excessively, 444
 32.
 oute excepte, excepted, 102 11.
 outrage, *sb.*, outrage, insult, 472
 24;—O.F. *oltrage*, *outrage*.
 oute taken, *p.p.*, excepted, 540 26.
 Compare oute cepte, 589 23.
 outhur, *conj.*, either, 140 4; 470
 21; 726 13; 772 13; outhur

els = otherwise, 812 26;—A.S. *ā-*
hwæðer.
 outragiousyte, *sb.*, outrage, 118 4.
 ouer, *prep.* and *adv.*, over, above,
 beyond;—A.S. *ofer*.
 ouer gouerne, *v.*, to govern over;
 ouer gouernyd, *p.p.*, 43 2.
 ouer hylle, *v.*, to cover; ouer hylled,
pt., 444 16.
 ouer hyp, *v.*, pass over, omit; *inf.*,
 796 3.
 ouer moche, too much, 414 21;
 ouermoeche, 193 36.
 ouersee, *v.*, observe, survey, despise,
 overlook; *inf.*, 346 5;—A.S. *ofer-*
seon.
 ouerslyp, *v.*, pass over, omit; *inf.*,
 295 26.
 ouerthwart, *sb.*, adverse circumstance,
 239 14.
 ouerthwarte, *adj.*, across, over,
 against, 359 25; ouerthwart, 524
 25; ouerthwartly, *adv.*, 338 25.
 owe, *v.*, to have, possess, to have to
 be obliged to; oughte, *pt.*, 1 10;
 44 9; ou3t, *pt.*, 1 37; 188 3; me
 oughte to doo, 418 17; 557 12;—
 A.S. *āgan*.
 owre, *sb.*, hour; owrys, *pl.*, 190 3;
 heure, 266 24; 463 22;—Lat. *hora*.
 oynement, *sb.*, ointment, 255 14;
 oynement, 248 31; oynementes,
pl., 836 15;—A.F. *oignement*.
 paale, *adj.*, pale, discoloured, 468 25.
 paas, *sb.*, pace, step, passage, 81 25;
 a softe trottyng paas, 564 38;
 a grete paas, 563 32; more than
 a paas, 89 37; paas peryllous;—
 A.F. *pas*.
 pacyently, *adv.*, patiently, 18 7.
 pagent, *sb.*, a pageant, scene, theatre;
sing., 544 24; pagents, *pl.*, 516 16;
 553 26.
 paleys, *sb.*, palace, 722 3; palais, 722
 31; palays, 615 29;—O.F. *palais*.
 palfray, *sb.*, saddle-horse, palfrey, 308
 28; palfrey, 104 30; palfroy, 82
 18;—A.F. *palefrei*.
 palour, *sb.*, parlour, conversation-room
 in a nunnery, 452 21;—O.F. *parloir*.
 paltocke, *sb.*, jacket, paletot, a loose
 garment; paltookes, *pl.*, 177 27;—
 O.F. *paletocqus*.

- pappe**, *sb.*, breast, 39 11; **pappys**, *pl.*, 148 33;—from the first cries of an infant for food.
- par**, *per*, *prep.*, by, with; **par dy**, 401 30; **per dieu**, 492 15; **per de**, 242 19 (*par Dieu*); **paramour**, **peramour**, lover, applied to either sex, 92 4; 138 4; 407 30; **peramours**, *adv.*, 679 4; **peradventure**, **peraventure**, **paraventure**, by chance, 81 32; 229 25; 540 34; 808 33.
- parage**, *sb.*, family, kindred, descent, birth, 220 5;—A.F. *parage*.
- parel**, *sb.*, word, word of honour, 119 29;—O.F. *parole*.
- pareille**, *adj.*, like, similar, 161 25;—O.F. *pareil*.
- parfyt**, *adj.*, perfect, 592 20; 695 34; **parfytely**, *adv.*, 649 18;—O.F. *parfeit*, *parfit*.
- parlement**, *sb.*, parliament, conference, 829 29; **parlemente**, 889 5;—A.F. *parlement*.
- parson**, *person*, *sb.*, person, personage, 67 27; 541 35;—Lat. *persona*.
- party**, *sb.*, part, portion, side, 147 46; **partyes**, *pl.*, 291 26;—A.F. *partie*.
- passage**, *sb.*, passage, way, narrow path, 53 20; **passaye**, 53 20;—O.F. *passage*.
- passe**, *v. inf.*, 830 27; to pass, surpass; **paste**, *pt.*, 762 37; **past**, *pt.*, 781 2; **passed**, *pt.*, 830 32;—A.F. *passer*.
- passyng**, *p.prs.* of to pass, used as *adv.*, surpassing, very, 38 29; sometimes it has the adverbial termination **passyngly**, 53 25; 763 8.
- pauyment**, *sb.*, pavement, 190 6;—Lat. *pavimentum*.
- payement**, *sb.*, payment, reward, 197 23;—O.F. *payement*.
- paylet**, *sb.*, pallet, pailasse, a small bed, 89 23; 110 27.
- payne**, *sb.*, pain, penalty; do his payne, do his utmost, 820 16;—A.F. *paine*.
- paynture**, *sb.*, picture, 190 25;—A.F. *painture*.
- paynym**, *sb.*, originally heathendom, paganism, but incorrectly used in the sense of a pagan, heathen, 400 27; **paynyms**, *pl.*, 1 13;—A.F. *paenisms*.
- paytrelle**, *sb.*, breast-plate of a horse in armour; **paytrellys**, *pl.*, 238 2;—A.F. *peitrel*.
- pees**, *sb.*, peace, silence, 37 25; 386 2; 581 18;—A.F. *pees*, O.F. *pais*.
- pelour**, *sb.*, pillar, column, 93 27;—A.F. *piler*.
- penaunce**, *sb.*, punishment, sufferance, penance, repentance, the punishment inflicted by a penitent on himself, 211 18;—O.F. *penance*.
- pensel**, *sb.*, pennon, little banner, 488 13; **pensell**, 489 19;—O.F. *penoncel*.
- perce**, *v.*, to pierce; **perced**, *pt.*, 675 15;—A.F. *percer*.
- percloos**, *sb.*, partition, enclosure; 644 33;—O.F. *parclos* (*p.p.*).
- perdycon**, *sb.*, perdition, destruction, 648 24;—O.F. *perdition*.
- pere**, *sb.*, pear, 663 33;—A.S. *pera*.
- pere**, *adj.*, equal, 165 34; 177 20; **pyere**, 664 7;—A.F. *per*.
- perfeccon**, **perfectyon**, *sb.*, perfection, 855* 5;—O.F. *perfection*.
- peron**, *peroun*, *sb.*, tombstone, platform, 414 28; 421 14; 568 16;—O.F. *peron*.
- perpetuel**, *adj.*, perpetual, 160 24;—O.F. *perpetuel*.
- persecucion**, *sb.*, persecution; **persecucyons**, *pl.*, 645 14;—from Lat. *persecutus* (*persequi*).
- perteyne**, *v.*, to belong, appertain; **perteyneth**, *prs.*, 679 16;—Lat. *pertinere*.
- perylle**, *sb.*, peril, danger, 415 30; 548 36;—O.F. *peril*.
- perysahe**, *v.*, to parish; **perysahed**, *p.p.*, 703 10;—O.F. *periss*, *p.prs.* of *perir*.
- petycon**, *sb.*, petition, 214 5;—Lat. *petitionem*.
- petyte**, *le*, surname of syr Guyart; the short, or the small.
- philosopher**, *sb.*, a wise man, philosopher, 165 25;—Gr. *φιλόσοφος*.
- pierles**, *adj.*, without equal, 761 35; 500 2; **pyerles**, 322 15; 435 33;—A.F. *per* and A.S. *læs*.

- plenour**, *adj.*, plenary, full, complete, 213 1 (Wynkyn de Worde reads *plenare*);—Low Lat. *plenarius*.
- plente**, *sb.*, plenty, 586 24;—O.F. *plente*, *plentet*.
- pleasaunce**, *sb.*, kindness, pleasure, 829 27;—O.F. *plaisance*.
- pleasaunt**, **playsaunt**, *adj.*, agreeable, pleasant, 8 29, 35;—O.F. *plaisant*.
- pleasyr**, *sb.*, pleasure, 248 24; **plesyr**, 268 32;—A.F. *pleisir*.
- plomme**, *sb.*, knot, tuft, cluster, number joined in a mass, 60 19;—*?*
- plonge**, *v.*, to plunge; **plonged**, *pt.*, 243 30;—O.F. *plonger*.
- plyte**, *sb.*, state, condition, 152 5;—O.F. *plite*.
- plyte**, *v.*, to pledge, *inf.*, 148 31; **plyghte**, *pt.*, 149 21;—A.S. *plihtan*.
- pomel**, *sb.*, knob, a boss, 99 5; **pomell**, 82 22;—O.F. *pomel*.
- ponting**, *p.prs.*, panting, gasping, breathing quickly, 288 20.
- portecolys**, *sb.*, portcullis, a sliding door of cross timbers pointed with iron hung over a gateway to be let down in a moment to keep out an enemy, 91 9;—O.F. *porte coleice* (Littré).
- postel**, *sb.*, apostle; **postels**, *pl.*, 720 10;—A.S. *apostol*, A.F. *apostle*.
- posterne**, *sb.*, postern, back gate, 289 13;—O.F. *posterne*.
- potestate**, *sb.*, ruler, governor, 174 30.
- ponte**, *sb.*, bridge, 571 20;—O.F. *ponte*.
- poure**, *adj.*, poor, 7 13; 8 23; 471 30;—O.F. *poore*.
- pouse**, *sb.*, pulse, 712 5;—O.F. *pouls*, *polz*.
- puerte**, *sb.*, poverty, meanness, 84 34; 746 10;—O.F. *poverté*.
- powdre**, *sb.*, powder, 165 22;—O.F. *poudre*.
- poyntelynge**, *p.prs.*, aiming at somebody, 578 2.
- poyntement**, **poyntemente**, *sb.*, appointment, agreement, 463 11; 845 29;—O.F. *apointement*.
- poysond**, *p.p.*, poisoned, 729 1;—from O.F. *poyson*, Lat. *potionem*.
- pray**, *sb.*, prey, 650 7; **praye**, 176 14;—O.F. *proie*, A.F. *praie*.
- praye** (?), *sb.*, prayer; **prayes**, *pl.*, 859* 22;—A.F. *preiere*.
- praye**, *v.*, to pray; **praide**, *pt.*, 240 2; **praid**, *pt.*, 401 16; 767 33;—A.F. *preier*.
- preche**, *v.*, to preach; *inf.*, 645 13;—O.F. *precher*.
- press**, *sb.*, a press, throng, 60 37; 77 22;—A.F. *presse*.
- prefyxt**, *p.p.*, prefixed, 839 11.
- preste**, *sb.*, priest; **preest**, 634 10;—A.S. *préost*.
- pretende**, *v.*, belong to; **pretendith**, *prs.*, 64 30.
- preue**, *v.*, to prove, try, test, 66 15; 214 34; **preued**, *p.p.*, 353 5;—O.F. *prover*.
- preuy**, *adj.*, privy, secret, 58 17; **pryuyest**, *superl.*, 51 15;—A.F. *prive*.
- preyse**, *v.*, to praise; **preysed**, *pt.*, 19 11;—from O.F. *preis*.
- procourour**, *sb.*, procurator, a governor of a province under the Roman emperors, 160 9; 162 10.
- profecye**, *v.*, to prophesy; **profecyed**, *pt.*, 419 30;—O.F. *profecier*.
- profer**, *sb.*, offer, promise, proffer, 215 14.
- proferre**, *v.*, to proffer, offer; *inf.*, 210 37; **profryst**, *prs.*, 176 13; **proferre**, *inf.*, 184 31, means, evidently, advance, prefer; **proferd**, *p.p.*, 147 33; **profered**, *pt.*, 759 15;—Lat. *proferre*.
- profetyly**, *adj.*, accomplished; **profetylyest**, *superl.*, 733 22;—compound of the substantive *profit* and adverbial suffix *-ly*.
- prowesse**, *sb.*, prowess; **prowesses**, *pl.*, 173 14;—A.F. *pruesses*.
- pryce**, *sb.*, price, value, excellence, 555 25;—A.F. *pris*.
- prycke**, *v.*, to prick, hurt, spur, ride fast; **prycked**, *pt.*, 661 9; **pryckynge**, *p.prs.*, 647 10.
- pryker**, *sb.*, rider, horseman, 178 5.
- prysonement**, *sb.*, imprisonment, prison, 88 3.
- prysonne**, *v.*, to put into prison; *inf.*, 802 27;—from O.F. *prison*, *prisun*.
- pryuate**, *sb.*, privacy, secret counsel, 456 19;—A.F. *privele*.

- purfyl**, *v.*, to embroider on an edge, 7 8;—O.F. *pourfiler*.
- pursyewe**, *v.*, to pursue, to follow after; **pursyewed**, *pt.*, 7 18;—O.F. *poursuir*.
- purueye**, *v.*, to provide; *inf.*, 38 26; 40 36; **purueyed**, *pt.*, 75 17; **purueyed**, *p.pr.*, 51 23; 86 24;—A.F. *purveier*.
- puyssaunce**, *sb.*, might, power, 75 8; 413 38;—O.F. *puissance*.
- pytour**, *sb.*, picture, 340 10;—Lat. *pictura*.
- pyece**, *sb.*, piece; **pyeces**, *pl.*, 71 32;—O.F. *piece*.
- pyere**, *adj.* See *pere*.
- pyerles**, *adj.* See *pierles*.
- pyghe**, *v.*, to pitch, fix, to pick; **pyght**, *pt.*, 84 3.
- pyke**, *v.*, to pick, to steal; **pyked**, *pt.*, 411 6.
- pylgremage**, *sb.*, pilgrimage, 166 35;—from O.F. *pelerinage*.
- pyllar**, *sb.*, plunderer; **pyllars**, *pl.*, 847 26;—from O.F. *pillier*.
- pylle**, *v.*, to plunder; *inf.*, 847 27;—O.F. *pillier*.
- pyller**, *sb.*, pillar, 589 11; **pelour**, 98 27;—A.F. *piler*.
- pylowe**, *sb.*, pillow; **pylowes**, *pl.*, 781 8;—A.S. *pyle*.
- pynt**, *sb.*, pinte, 746 1;—A.S. *pynt*.
- pyte**, *sb.*, pity, 711 4; 754 32;—O.F. *pito*.
- pyteous**, *adj.*, pitiful, 32; 435 7; **pyetous**, 5 16;—O.F. *pitous*.
- pytte**, *sb.*, pit, pool, ditch, 98 18; 664 2;—A.S. *pytt*.
- quakyng**, *p.pr.*, trembling, 136 7;—A.S. *owacung*.
- quere**, *sb.*, choir, 859* 22; **quyre**, 859 31;—O.F. *choeur*.
- queste**, *sb.*, (1) an inquiry, jury, verdict, 109 1; (2) chase, search, enterprise, 109 11;—O.F. *enquête*.
- queste**, *v.*, to bark, make a noise like a dog; **quested**, *pt.*, 371 5; **questyng**, *p.pr.*, 65 29.
- questyon**, *v.*, to question, examine, ask; **questyoned**, *pt.*, 254 24; 418 12;—Lat. *quaestionem*, *quaerere*.
- quod**, **quoth**, *pt. sing.*, said, told, 60 10; 61 34;—A.S. *oweðan*.
- quyete**, *sb.*, quietness, 829 2;—from Lat. *quietus*.
- quylt**, *sb.*, quilt, thick coverlet, 95 17;—O.F. *cuille*.
- quyte**, *adj.*, quit, 455 13; 465 7;—from O.F. *quiter*.
- quyte**, *v.*, to requite, repay, settle; *inf.*, 92 1; *pt.*, 159 27;—O.F. *quiter*.
- race**, *v.*, to scrape, to tear off; **raced**, *pt.*, 72 1; **reaced**, *pt.*, 72 4; **rassyd**, *pt.*, 524 29;—O.F. *raser*.
- race**, **rase**, *v.*, to run, to race; **rasyng**, *p.pr.*, 217 33; 194 11; **rateyng**, *p.pr.*, 432 24;—A.S. *ræsan*.
- rak**, *sb.*, rack, the grating above the manger, 668 28; 669 1; **rake**, 665 22;—from A.S. *ræcan*.
- ramme**, *sb.*, ram; **rammes**, *pl.*, 71 29;—A.S. *ram*, *rom*.
- rancour**, *sb.*, old grudge, spite, violence, 313 24;—Lat. *rancor*.
- ransake**, *v.*, to search; *inf.*, 171 2; 174 11; **ransakyd**, *pt.*, 630 34;—A.S. *ræsn*. See Sievers' Gram.
- raumpe**, *v.*, ramp, to seize or scratch with the paws, to rage; **raumpyng**, *p.pr.*, 339 31;—A.F. *raumper*.
- raundon**, *sb.*, force, violence, impetuosity, 109 37; 142 10; 675 15;—O.F. *randon*.
- raunge**, *sb.*, range, space occupied by anything moving, 142 2; 481 10; 492 23; 578 34;—O.F. *range*.
- raunson**, *sb.*, ransom, 178 14;—A.F. *raunson*.
- rauyssahe**, *v.*, to seize with violence, to be greatly delighted; **rauyshed**, *p.p.*, 527 4;—A.F. *ravir*.
- rayment**, *sb.*, raiment, clothing, dress, 331 25.
- raynes**, *sb.*, fine linen, so called from Rheims, 857* 26.
- rechate**,¹ *sb.*, the calling back of the

¹ In the alliterative romance-poem, "Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight" (about 1360 A.D.), edited by Richard Morris for the E.-E. T. S., 1869, from MS. Cotton: Nero. A. x., forms of a verb "recheat" occur—viz., "rechatand" = blowing the recheat, line 1911;

- hounds, originally the air which the hunters blow on their horns, when the hounds have lost their game to call them back from pursuing a counter-scent; *v.*, to blow the recheat, 500 11 (hunting term). Wynkyn de Worde and ed. 1634 have *rechace*.
- reche*, *v.*, to reach, attain; *raught*, 385 33; *raughte*, *pt.*, 265 16; *roughte*, *pt.*, 684 22; *retche*, *inf.*, 597 21;—A.S. *rēcan*.
- recke*, *v.*, to care for, to regard; *prs.*, 221 1; *reke*, *prs.*, 684 14; *retchyd*, *pt.*, 819 17;—A.S. *reccan*.
- recluse*, *recluse*, *sb.*, a female anchorite, 642 10, 15;—A.F. *recluse*.
- recountre*, *sb.*, encounter, fight, meeting, 213 20;—O.F. *rencountre*.
- recresant*, *adj.*, recreant, defeated, 71 37;—A.F. *recraunt*.
- recueylle*, *v.*, to recoil; *inf.*, 180 3;—O.F. *reculer*.
- rede*, *sb.*, advice, 847 32;—A.S. *rēd*.
- rede*, *v.*, to give advice, to take counsel, to advise; *prs.*, 70 33; 244 5; 783 4;—A.S. (*ge*)-*rādan*.
- rede*, *v.*, to read; *inf.*, 8 26; 4 9; *redde*, *pt.*, 3 9; 4 8; *redde*, *p.p.*, 762 1;—A.S. (*ge*)-*rādan*.
- redoubte*, *v.*, to fear; *redoubted*, 823 12;—A.F. *redouter*.
- redresse*, *v.*, restore, repair, to make up again; *inf.*, 398 28; 443 21;—O.F. *redresser*.
- redy*, *adj.*, ready, 35 31;—A.S. (*ge*)-*rāde*.
- reed*, *adj.*, red, 514 1;—A.S. *rēad*.
- reest*, *sb.*. See *reyste*.
- rehersail*, *sb.*, rehearsal, 822 25; *rehersal*, 611 34.
- reherse*, *v.*, to rehearse, enumerate; *inf.*, 45 27; 562 32; *reherceth*, *prs.*, 105 11; it *rehercyth*, *prs.*, 75 27;—A.F. *rehercer*.
- reioyse*, *v.*, to rejoice; *prs.*, 797 3;—O.F. *rejoir*.
- rele*, *v.*, to reel, roll about, stagger; *relyd*, *pt.*, 238 13;—from A.S. *reol*, *hreol*.
- relece*, *v.*, to release; *prs.*, 481 29; *relece*, *prs.*, 461 28;—A.F. *re-lesser*.
- remenaunte*, *sb.*, remnant, 9 20; 39 24;—A.F. *remenant*.
- remeue*, *v.*, to remove; *inf.*, 104 20;—O.F. *remuër*.
- remysson*, *sb.*, remission, forgiveness, 856* 28.
- renne*, *v.*, to run; *ranne*, *pt.*, 821 25; *ronne*, *pt.*, 368 34; *ronne*, *p.p.*, 407 33; 526 4;—A.S. *rin-nan*.
- renoume*, *sb.*, renown, 57 37; *renomme*, 3 34; *renomme*, 4 2; *renome*, 187 27;—O.F. *renon*, *renom*.
- renoumes*, *le*, the renowned, the famous, surname of Hebes.
- repayre*, *v.*, to go to; *repayren*, *prs. pl.*, 643 22;—A.F. *repeirer*, *repairer*.
- repreef*, *sb.*, reproof, 324 33; 382 8.
- repreue*, *v.*, to reprove; *repreuyd*, *pt.*, 7 23;—O.F. *reprover*.
- resemblaunt*, *sb.*, countenance, appearance, 649 6;—from O.F. *resembler*. See *semblant*.
- resonable*, *adj.*, reasonable, 548 14;—A.F. *resonable*.
- resorte*, *v.*, to go frequently to a place; *resorted*, *pt.*, 725 24; *resortes*, *sb. pl.*, place much frequented, resource, 725 23;—O.F. *ressortir*.
- reste*, *sb.*, rest, repose, 461 15; 764 2;—A.S. *rest*, *raest*.
- retraye*, *v.*, to retire, to draw back; *retrayed*, *pt.*, 280 29;—O.F. *retraire*.
- restraynte*, *sb.*, restraint, limitation, 567 6;—O.F. *restraint*.
- reuful*, *adj.*, piteous, compassionate; *reufullyr*, *comparat.*, 425 16;—A.S. *hréow* and *ful*.
- reule*, *sb.*, rule, behaviour, 387 31;—A.F. *reule*.

"recheated" = blew the recheat, line 1466. The form "rechace," which Wynkyn de Worde has, occurs in "Three English Metrical Romances" edited by John Robson, 1842, for the Camden Society. There, on page 3, in the tenth stanza, we read, "The king blue a rechase."

- reule, v.**, to rule, to govern; **reulyd**, *p.p.*, 187 24;—A.F. *reuler*.
reuelacyon, sb., revelation, 202 4;—O.F. *revelacion*.
rewe, sb., row; by **rewe**, 77 6;—A.S. *rāwe, rēwe*.
reygne, sb., rule, kingdom, 861* 8;—A.F. *regne*.
reygne, v., to reign; **reygned**, *pt.*, 34 28; **reygneth, pres.**, 4 5; 83 14; **regne, inf.**, 133 8; **regned**, *pt.*, 35 2;—A.F. *regner*.
reyse, v., to raise; **reysed**, *pt.*, 77 20;—Icel. *reisa*.
reyste, sb., a support for the spear, 564 34; **reystys, pl.**, 237 6; **restys, pl.**, 194 1; **reest**, 430 37;—? O.F. *rester* or A.S. *rest, ræst*.
rodde, sb., rod, staff, 162 33; **rodde**, *pl.*, 366 20;—A.S. *rōd*.
rok, sb., rock, 330 2; **roche**, 410 25;—O.F. *roche*.
rome, sb., space, room, 213 30;—A.S. *rūm*.
rome, v., to roam, ramble, wander about; **romed**, *pt.*, 165 13; 289 23.—Compare O.H.G. *rāmen*. See Skeat, Dict.
roofe, sb., roof, 93 32;—A.S. *hrōf*.
rore, v., to roar; **rorynge, p.p.**, 396 8; **roryd, pt.**, 648 15;—A.S. *rārian*.
rote, sb., root, 798 4;—Icel. *rót*. Compare A.S. *wrót*.
rote, v., to rot; *inf.*, 698 13;—A.S. *rotian*.
roted, p.p., practised, skilled, experienced, 472 9;—O.F. *route, rote*.
roten, adj., rotten, 641 20;—Icel. *rotinn*.
rownsepyk, rounsepyk, sb., a branch with others attached to it, 209 18, 23.
roy, sb., king, le fyse roy Vreyne, epithet of Vwayne.
royal, adj., royal, 401 4; 499 7; **moost royallest, superl.**, 215 29. See **ryal**.
royalte, sb., royalty, royal state, 101 9; **ryalte**, 182 13;—O.F. *royalte*.
royame, sb., kingdom, 1 5; 11 2; 72 29; **royalme**, 4 11; **royamme**, 160 15; **reaume**, 45 8; **reame**, 39 34; 40 3, 7; **realme**, 67 5;—A.F. *realme*, O.F. *reaume*.
rubrysshe, sb., literally, red ochre, red earth for colouring; *later*, the portions of books in red ink, index, register, 6 1;—Lat. *rubrica*.
russet, adj., russet, rusty, reddish-brown, coarse, rustic, 62 17;—A.F. *russet*, O.F. *rousset*.
rusahe, v., to rush; **russhed, pt.**, 60 35; 132 13; **rosshynges, p.p.**, 195 8; **rasshed, pt.**, 217 32; 472 3.
ryal, adj., royal, 2 38; 160 2; **ryallest, superl.**, 168 5;—A.F. *roial, reial*.
ryalte, sb. See **royalte**.
ryde, v., to ride; **rode, pt.**, 106 19; 757 25; **roode, pt.**, 105 15; **ryde, p.p.**, 82 16; **ryden, p.p.**, 116 15; 151 7;—A.S. *ridan*.
rynde, sb., rind, bark, the skin of fruit, 671 22;—A.S. *rind*.
ryse, v., to rise; **rasyth, pres.**, 202 37; **rysen, p.p.**, 49 28;—A.S. *risan*.
ryuage, sb., bank of a river, 721 2;—O.F. *rivage*.
ryue, v., to rive, to tear; **roofe, pt.**, 95 35; **roof, pt.**, 27 21; **rafe, pt.**, 596 18; **rofe, pt.**, 82 28; 654 23; **ryuen, p.p.**, 75 18;—Icel. *rífa*.
sabel, sb., sable, animal of the weasel kind, 601 7; (?) **sable**, 176 9;—O.F. *sable*.
sadel, sb., saddle, 403 18; **sadell**, 471 35;—A.S. *sadol*.
sak, sb., sack, sackcloth, 437 19;—A.S. *sacc*.
sale, sb., hall, 713 29;—A.S. *sæl*, Icel. *salr*, A.S. *sæl*.
salewe, v., to salute; **salewed, pt.**, 215 35;—O.F. *saluer*.
samye, sb., a rich silk stuff, often interwoven with gold or silver threads, 73 1; 687 30; 760 30;—O.F. *samit*.
sarpe, sb., girdle; **sarpys, pl.**, 822 30.—Compare O.H.G. *scharpe*, O.F. *escharpe*.
saterdag, sb., Saturday, 665 13;—A.S. *Sæter-dæg*.
sauf, adj., safe, healed, made whole, 316 31; 584 21; **sauf gard, sb.**,

- 561 28; safe-keeping;—A.F. *sauf*, O.F. *sauf*.
saufte, *sb.*, safety, security, 290 33; 628 13;—A.F. *saufte*.
saulter, *sb.*, psalter, musical instrument; *saulters*, *pl.*, 859* 1;—O.F. *sautier*.
saunce, *prep.*, without; *saunce pyte*, surname of Breuse, without pity; *saunce velany*, without villany.
saueage, *adj.*, savage, wild, impetuous; Lynet is called the *damoyse* *saueage*, and Balyn is surnamed *le saueage*.
saueour, *sb.*, the Saviour, 592 3; 706 21;—O.F. *saveor*, *salveor*.
saunour, *sb.*, smell, savour, pleasantness, 592 17;—O.F. *saveur*.
—*sawe*, *sb.*, a saw, saying, 519 8; old *sayd sawe*, 754 6;—A.S. *sagu*.
saye, *v.*, to say; *sayne*, *third pers. plur. pres.*, 187 30; *saist*, *prs.*, 67 28; *seith*, *prs.*, 138 25; *sayd*, *seid*, *said*, *pt.*, 41 37; *saiden*, *sayden*, *third pers. plur. pt.*, 40 25; 140 29; 202 10; 422 12;—A.S. *seegan*.
scalde, *v.*, to boil, to burn with hot liquid; *scaldynge*, *p.prs.*, 571 28;—O.F. *eschalder*.
scape, *v.* See *escape*.
scatere, *v.*, to scatter, disperse;
scateryd, *pt.*, 206 21;—A.S. *scateran*.
scathe, *sb.*, hurt, harm; *scathes*, *pl.*, 464 13;—A.S. *scæða*.
scathe, *v.*, to harm; *inf.*, 90 3;—A.S. *scæðan*.
scaubart, *sb.*, scabbard, 78 17;
scauberd, 89 7; *scaubard*, 135 26;—M.E. *scaubert*. See *Skeat*, *Dict.*
scaffoldes, *sb. pl.*, 884 21. See *skaffolde*.
scoffer, *sb.*, mocker, 488 28;—cognate with O.Fries. *schof*, a scoff.
scoule, *sb.*, school, 38 4;—Lat. *schola*.
scomfyte, *v.* See *discomfyte*.
scoute, *sb.*, spy, scout; *scoute watche*, 58 5;—O.F. *escoute*.
scripture, *sb.*, Holy Scripture, 721 22;—Lat. *scriptura*.
sease, *seace*, *v.*, to cease, discontinue;
sease, *inf.*, 836 38; *seaced*, *pt.*, 475 10; *seasse*, *seace*, *imperat.*, 155 3; 179 4;—O.F. *cesser*.
seate, *sb.*, seat, 424 4;—A.S. *seto*, *seotu*.
seculer, *adj.*, secular, 724 4;—Lat. *secularis*.
sedyl, *sb.* See *oedle*.
see, *v.*, to see; *inf.*, 3 26; *seeth*, *prs.*, 60 7; *sawe*, *pt.*, 761 17; *sene*, *p.p.*, 206 13; *seen*, *p.p.*, 3 9; *sawest*, *second p.pt.*, 118 31;—A.S. *seon*.
seekne, *v.*, to become sick, to get weak; *seekened*, *pt.*, 858* 7; *sekene*, *inf.*, 84 25;—from A.S. *seoc*.
sege, *sb.*—(1) seat, (2) siege, 439 7; *siege*, 422 28; *seges*, *pl.*, 235 19; 532 3; *syegyng*, 237 20; *syge*, 64 14;—A.F. *sege*, O.F. *siege*.
seke, *adj.*, sick, 86 8, 11; 493 30;—A.S. *seoc*.
sekenesse, *sb.*, sickness, 406 9;—A.S. *seocnes*.
selar, *sb.*, ceiling, canopy of a bed, 698 24 (edit. of 1634 has *seeler*);—? deriv. from *ciel*.
semblable, *adj.*, like, 177 20;—O.F. *semblable*.
semblaunt, *sb.*, countenance, appearance, 224 25; 710 25;—A.F. *semblant*.
semely, *adj.*, seemly, 205 10;—A.S. **semelic*.
senate, *sb.*, senate, assembly of the senators, 174 35; *senatours*, 175 5.
senceall, *sencial*, *sb.* See *seneshall*.
sendale, *sb.*, a fine cloth, 174 23;
sendel, 202 5; 616 4;—O.F. *cendal*.
seneshall, *sb.*, seneschal, steward; *sencyall*, 86 34; *senceall*, 42 30; *sencial*, 55 13; *senescha*, 123 38;—O.F. *seneschal*.
senser, *sb.* See *censer*.
serche, *v.*, to search; *inf.*, 64 3; 135 19; *sarche*, *inf.*, 351 7; *serched*, *pt.*, 461 17; *p.p.*, 464 15;—O.F. *cercher*, Mod.F. *chercher*.
serkelet, *sb.*, a wreath, or band for the head, 144 13; 147 16;—O.F. *cerdet*, dim. of *cerole*.
seruage, *sb.*, thralldom, servitude, 372 31; 408 31;—O.F. *servage*.

- serue**, *v.*, to serve; **seruedest**, *prs.*, 671 20;—O.F. *servir*.
seruyse, *sb.*, service, 251 3;—O.F. *servise*.
seruytour, *sb.*, servant, 457 25;—Lat. *servitor*.
seson, *sb.*, season, 858* 33;—A.F. *seson*.
sette, *v.*, to set, place, appoint; **sette**, *pt.*, 62 34; 65 24; **sette**, *p.p.*, 3 19;—A.S. *settan*.
seurte, *sb.*, surety, 241 10; 617 31; 657 6;—A.F. *seürte*.
seueratly, *adv.*, separately, 127 12;—deriv. from *seuer*, to separate;—O.F. *sevrer*.
sewayr, *sb.*, bearer of dishes, 271 3;—A.F. (*as*)*seöwr*.
sewe, *v.*, to follow, attend on, persecute; *inf.*, 641 38; 647 19; **sewed**, *p.p.*, 630 23;—O.F. *seür* (*porseür*).
seye, *v.* See *saye*.
seynt, *adj.*, saint, holy, 418 11;—O.F. *saint*, *seint*.
shaftmon, *sb.*, a measure from the top of the extended thumb to the other end of the fist or palm, about six inches, 248 8;—A.S. *scæft-mund*.
shape, *v.*, to shape, form; **shope**, *pt.*, 138 2; **shapen**, *pl. prs.*, 698 24; **shapen**, *p.p.*, 102 31; 341 10;—A.S. *scæpan*.
shelde, *sb.*, shield, 266 26; **shild**, 98 5; **sheltes**, *pl.*, 687 11; **shylde**, 69 18; **sheld**, 69 20;—A.S. *scyld*, *scield*.
shelded, *adj.*, provided with a shield, 888 25.
shende, *v.*, to harm, damage; *inf.*, 831 14; **shente**, *pt.*, 235 27; **shente**, *p.p.*, 482 29;—A.S. *scendan*.
shenship, *sb.*, disgrace, hurt, 235 33;—from A.S. *scendan* and *scipe*.
sherte, *sb.*, shirt, 210 38; 452 30; 634 31;—Icel. *skyrtu*.
sherthuradaye, *sb.*, the Thursday before Easter, so called from the custom of shearing or shaving the beard on that day, 719 32.
shete, *sb.*, sheet, 200 18;—A.S. *scete*, *softe*.
shethe, *sb.*, sheath, 76 26; 695 13; A.S. *scæth*.
shette, *v.*, to shut; **shitte**, *pt.*, 713 33; **shytte**, *pt.*, 414 8; **shytte**, *p.p.*, 9 15; 448 8; 710 30; **shette**, *p.p.*, 319 13;—A.S. *scyttan*.
sheue, **shewe**, *v.*, to show; **sheuyng**, *p.prs.*, 666 21; **shewed**, *pt.*, 46 4; 762 12; **shewed**, *p.p.*, 762 12;—A.S. *scæwian*.
sheuere, *v.*, to break into shivers; **sheuered**, 110 2;—Icel. *skifa*.
shoke, *pt.*, shook, 821 30;—A.S. *scōc*, from *scacum*, *scacan*.
sholder, **sholdre**, *sb.*, shoulder, 176 6; 281 33;—A.S. *soulder*, *souldor*.
shote, *v.*, to shoot, rush; **shotyng**, *p.prs.*, 102 23; **shots**, *pt.*, 770 13; **shot**, *pt.*, 764 29; **shotte**, *pt.*, 827 12;—A.S. *scōtan*.
shoure, *sb.*, shower, hard attack, 822 3;—A.S. *scūr*.
shoue, *v.*, to shove; **shouen**, 699 10;—A.S. *scōfian*.
showte, *v.*, to shout; **showted**, 173 12;—Icel. *skrija*.
shrede, *v.*, to cut; *inf.*, 831 11;—A.S. *scōadian*.
shrewde, *adj.*, wicked, malicious, 365 7.
shryche, *sb.*, a cry, shriek, 745 34.
shryche, *v.*, to shriek, screech; **shryched**, *pt.*, 850 5; **shryked**, *pt.*, 752 14;—Icel. *skriakja*.
shryue, *v.*, to confess, prescribe penance; **shryuen**, *p.p.*, 26 28, 36; **shryued**, *pl.*, 759 37;—A.S. *scōrfan*.
shyne, *v.*, to shine; **shone**, *pt.*, 403 13; 710 10;—A.S. *scīnan*.
shyrly, *adv.*, clearly, brightly, 759 3;—A.S. *scīrlis*.
sister, *sb.*, the sister, 139 30; **suster**, 101 37;—A.S. *swuster*, *sweoster*.
sith, *adv.* and *conj.* See *sythen*.
skaffolde, *sb.*, stage, an elevated platform, scaffold, engine of war for besieging a town; **skaf-folde**, *pl.*, 766 7; **skaffoldis**, *pl.*, 191 7; **schaffoldes**, *pl.*, 484 21;—O.F. *escalfaut*.
skarmussahe, *v.*, to skirmish, to fight slightly and irregularly; **skarmussahed**, *pt.*, 181 21;—O.F. *escarmoucher*.

sklaunder, *sb.*, scandal, slander, 726 1; 731 2; 779 28; **sklaundre**, 321 20;—A.F. *esclaundre*.
skumme, *v.*, to skim, to sweep, to examine the position and strength of the enemy; *inf.*, 52 30;—from Icel. *skuma*.
skyfte, *sb.*, shift, change, 211 16; 499 31.
skyfte, *v.*, to shift, to part asunder, to change, to remove; *inf.*, 405 25; **skyfte**, *pt.*, 405 31;—A.S. *scifian*.
skynne, *sb.*, skin, 657 24;—A.S. *scinn*, Icel. *skinn*.
slade, *sb.*, a valley, 188 26; 203 28;—A.S. *slad*.
slake, *sb.*, a little valley, hollow, gap or pass between two hills, 189 6.
slake, *v.*, to become slack, cease; *inf.*, 726 4;—A.S. *slacian*.
slee, *v.*, to slay; *inf.*, 831 21; *prs.*, 182 15; **slough**, *pt.*, 65 11; 165 31; **slewe**, *pt.*, 468 29; **slayne**, *p.p.*, 754 3;—A.S. *sléan*.
sleer, *sb.*, murderer, he who kills somebody, 679 13.
slente, *v.*, to slant, to slope; **slented**, *pt.*, 689 24;—Swedish *slinta*, *slenta*.
sleyghte, *sb.*, skill, cunning, trick, falsehood, 788 7;—Icel. *slagd*.
slommer, *v.*, to slumber; **slomerynge**, *p.prs.*, 165 2; **slommeryd**, *pt.*, 364 23;—A.S. *sluma*, the slumber.
slough, *pt.* See *slee*.
slyde, *v.*, to slide; **slode**, *pt.*, 58 21; 365 2; 463 33;—A.S. *slidan*.
slyppe, *v.*, to slip; *inf.*, 106 26; **slypped**, *pt.*, 404 33;—A.S. *slipan*.
smyte, *v.*, to smite; **smote**, *pt.*, 757 25; **smyten**, *p.p.*, 471 13; **ok smyte**, 644 21; 681 14;—A.S. *smítan*.
sobbe, *v.*, to sigh convulsively, to weep; **sobbed**, *pt.*, 726 36;—A.S. *soefian*.
socoure, *v.*, to come to one's assistance, to help; *inf.*, 413 38;—O.F. *succurre*, *soscorre*.
soden, **sodayne**, *adj.*, 83 3; **sodenly**, *adv.*, 82 7;—A.F. *sodeyne*.
soiourne, *v.*, to stay, sojourn, abide; **soiourned**, *pt.*, 143 35; **sud-**

germed, *pt.*, 182 14;—O.F. *sojorner*, *sojourner*.
solace, *sb.*, solace, rest, pleasure, 623 24;—A.F. *solas*.
solemnacyon, *sb.*, the act of solemnising, 270 22.
solempnly, *adv.*, solemnly, magnificently, 328 30;—A.F. *solempne*.
solempnyte, *sb.*, festivity, 270 18;—A.F. *sollempnitee*.
somette, *sb.*, summit, 174 2;—O.F. *som* and dim. suff. *-et*, or *sommeite*.
somme, *pron.*, some, 323 2;—A.S. *sum*.
sonde, *sb.*, a sending, gift, message; **sondes**, *pl.*, 840 13.
sonder, *adj.*, apart, separate, sending, 406 36; in **sondyr**, 195 19; a **sondre**, 199 5; in **sonder**, asunder, 116 38; 725 1;—A.S. *onsundran*.
sonne, *sb.*, sun, 370 30;—A.S. *sunne*.
soppe, *sb.*, a sop; **soppes**, *pl.*, 673 7;—Icel. *soppa*.
sorceresse, *sb.* and *adj.*, sorceress, 143 19; 207 27; **queens sorceresses**, 187 27;—O.F. *sorcerease*.
sore, *adj.* and *adv.*, sore, painful, greatly, violently, 38 11;—A.S. *sár*.
scrsery, *sb.*, sorcery, 79 34;—O.F. *soiserie*.
sote, *v.*, to be deeply enamoured of somebody; **soted**, *p.p.*, 508 30. See *assote*.
sothe, *sb.* and *adj.*, truth, sooth, true, 712 34;—A.S. *sóð*.
soude, *v.*, to pay, strengthen; **souded**, *p.p.*, 717 20;—O.F. *souder*.
souder, *v.*, to solder; **soudered**, *pt.*, 695 12;—O.F. *souder*.
soune, *v.*, to sound; **sounded**, *pt.*, 209 20;—A.F. *soner*, *suner*.
soupe, *v.*, to sup, drink gradually; **scuped**, *pt.*, 126 10;—O.F. *souper*.
souper, *sb.*, supper, 126 9;—A.F. *soper*, O.F. *souper*.
souse, *v.*, to plunge into the water; **sowsyd**, *pt.*, 366 28; **soused**, *pt.*, 17 33;—from O.F. *sause*, *sauce*.
southard, *adj.*, southward, 158 8.
sowdan, *sb.*, sultan, 174 17;—O.F. *souldan*, *soudan*.

- sowle**, *sb.*, soul, 681 35;—A.S. *sáwel*, *sáwle*.
- spaynysshe**, *adj.*, Spanish, 2 35.
- spaynyardys**, *sb. pl.*, Spaniards, 163 27.
- spede**, *v.*, to speed, prosper, succeed; *inf.*, 51 18; 74 34; *spedde*, *p.p.*, 123 5; 466 10; *sped*, *p.p.*, 111 8;—A.S. *spédan*.
- spede**, *sb.*, success, speed, 289 15;—A.S. *spéd*.
- speke**, *v.*, to speak; *inf.*, 761 11; *spack*, *pt.*, 20 23; *speken*, *pl. pres.*, 425 27; 726 19; *spak*, *pt.*, 48 35; *spake*, *pt.*, 68 3; 466 20; *spoken*, *p.p.*, 2 33; *spoken*, *pl. pt.*, 700 26;—A.S. *specan*.
- spende**, *v.*, to spend, use; *spendynge*, *p.prs.*, 587 13;—A.S. *spendan*.
- spere**, *sb.*, spear, 585 28;—A.S. *spers*.
- sperhawk**, *sb.*, a sparrowhawk, 601 34;—A.S. *heafoc* and *spearwa*.
- spore**, *v.*, to spur; *spored*, *pt.*, 71 7;—A.S. *sporan*.
- sprenge**, *v.*, to sprinkle, to diffuse; *sprente*, *pt.*, 699 3;—A.S. *sprengan*.
- sprynge**, *v.*, to spring; *spronge*, *p.p.*, 486 27;—A.S. *springan*.
- spycery**, *sb.*, spices, 578 6;—A.F. *spicerie*.
- spyrr**, *v.*, to inquire, ask; *spyrrred*, *pt.*, 852 36;—A.S. *spyrian*.
- spyrytueltees**, *sb. pl.*, acts independent of the body, pure acts of the soul, things belonging to the church, 724 9;—from Lat. *spiritualis*.
- stablysshe**, *v.*, to establish; *stablyssed*, *p.p.*, 44 10; *stablyssed*, *pt.*, 118 12; *stablyssed*, *p.p.*, 860* 35;—O.F. *establis* (*establisant*), from *establi*.
- stabylte**, *sb.*, stability, 829 9;—from Lat. *stabilitatem*.
- staf**, *sb.*, a staff, stick, 109 23; *stauys*, *pl.*, 47 1;—A.S. *staf*.
- stakker**, *v.*, to stagger, to reel from side to side; *stakkerynge*, *p.prs.*, 464 6;—Icel. *stakra*.
- stale**, *sb.*, stall, state, station, prison, 179 3;—A.S. *steal*.
- stale**, *pt.* See *stale*.
- stande**, *v.*, to stand; *inf.*, 44 2; 472 13; *stode*, *pt.*, 881 22; *stondynge*, *p.prs.*, 58 31; *standeth*, *p.prs.*, 80 36;—A.S. *standan*.
- stark**, *adj.* and *adv.*, strong, firm, severe, thoroughly; *stark dede*, 141 26; *a stark coward*, 148 21; *starke deed*, 847 15;—A.S. *stearc*.
- staunche**, *v.*, to make stagnant, to stop the flowing blood; *inf.*, 176 34; *staunched*, *p.p.*, 177 1; *staunched*, *pt.*, 706 7;—O.F. *estancher*.
- stede**, *sb.*, place; in my stede, 375 10; *stedys*, *pl.*, 230 27;—A.S. *stede*.
- stede**, *sb.*, steed, horse, 236 35;—A.S. *stéda*.
- stete**, *v.*, to steal; *inf.*, 137 9; *stale*, *pt.*, 869 11; 457 19;—A.S. *stelan*.
- stere**, *v.*, to stir, to move; *inf.*, 40 33; 630 3; *stered*, *pt.*, 755 19;—A.S. *styrrian*.
- stere**, *v.*, to steer, lead, direct; *inf.*, 760 29; *stered*, *pt.*, 56 12; *styred*, *pt.*, 760 37;—A.S. *stýran*, *stéoran*.
- sterre**, *sb.*, star; *sterres*, *pl.*, 658 32;—A.S. *steorra*.
- sterte**, *v.*, to start; *sterte*, *pt.*, 66 12; 94 36; *starte*, *pt.*, 168 6; 882 19;—Icel. *sterta* and A.S. *steortan*.
- steuen**, *sb.*, voice, command, time of performing an action, 92 35; 858* 19;—A.S. *stefn*.
- steyer**, *sb.*, stair, ladder, 736 23;—A.S. *stéger*.
- stole**, *sb.*, a robe, stole, 656 16;—Lat. *stola*.
- stonien**, *v.*, to stun, to amaze with a blow; *stonied*, *pt.*, 58 17; *p.p.*, 107 22; *stoned*, *pt.*, 107 9;—from O.F. *estoner*. Compare *astonye*.
- stoupe**, *v.*, to stoop; *stouped*, *pt.*, 206 26; 391 22;—A.S. *stúptan*.
- stoure**, *sb.*, conflict, agitation, commotion, 180 15; 675 25;—O.F. *estour*.
- strake**, *v.*, to give a quick blow, to dash, to hit; *inf.*, 500 11; *straked*, *pt.*, 370 14;—from A.S. *strícan*.
- straungenes**, *sb.*, strangeness, 242 9;—O.F. *estraunge*.

strayte, *adj.* See streyte.

streame, *sb.*, stream, river, 144 7;—

A.S. *stréam*.

strene, *sb.*, race, progeny, 622 8;—

A.S. *stréon*.

stretche, *v.* to stretch; stretched,

836 1; stretched, *pt.*, 213 26;—

A.S. *streccan*.

streyte, streyghte, *adj.* and *adv.*,

straight, strict, narrow, 79 26; 457

38; strayte, 327 18; 435 14;—

A.F. *estreit*.

strend, *sb.*, strand, bank, shore, 687

19; stronde, 708 3;—A.S. *strand*.

stryde, *sb.*, a long step; strydes, *pl.*,

131 30; strydys, *pl.*, 238 14;—

from A.S. *stridan*.

stryffe, *sb.*, strife, fight, 840 23;—

A.F. *estrijf*.

stryue, *v.*, to strue; stroof, *pt.*, 10

17;—O.F. *estriver*.

stryke, *v.* to strike, rub, to move

quickly; *inf.*, 84 32; strake, *pt.*,

122 3; stryken, *p.p.*, 122 12; 133

34; 607 21; 842 36;—A.S. *strican*.

stycke, *v.*, to stick; stycketh,

prs., 93 9; stack, *pt.*, 248 33;

stack, *pt.*, 40 23; 69 29;—A.S.

stician.

stynge, *v.*, to sting; stonge, *pt.*, 845

32; stongen, *p.p.*, 845 33;—A.S.

stingan.

stynte, *sb.*, stint, portion allotted to

somebody; stynte of my land, 72

18; stynte of my crowne, 269

21;—? A.S. *stytan*.

stynte, *v.*, to stint, to cease, pause;

stynteth, *prs.*, 205 28; stynte,

pt., 56 13;—A.S. *stytan*.

styrope, *sb.*, stirrup, 304 36;

styropes, *pl.*, 481 14; steroppes,

pl., 487 17;—A.S. *stig-ráp*.

subgette, *sb.*, subject; subgettys,

pl., 163 17.

subgette, *adj.* or *p.p.*, subject, de-

pendent, 163 25;—Lat. *subjectus*.

substance, *sb.*, substance, contents,

762 1;—Lat. *substantia*.

sudgerne, *v.* See sojourne.

sufferaunce, *sb.*, patience, endur-

ance, 539 26;—A.F. *suffraunce*.

suffrecan, *sb.*, assistant, deputy of a

bishop, 611 16, 19;—Late Lat.

suffraganeus.

suffycyaunt, *adj.*, sufficient, 828 35;

—A.F. *suffisant*.

suppynge, *sb.*, little draughts; sup-

pynges, *pl.*, 370 19;—from A.S.

súpan.

suraunce, *sb.*, assurance, 45 32;—

O.F. *seurance*.

surgeon, *sb.*, surgeon, physician, 285

28; surgens, *pl.*, 284 32; sur-

gyens, *pl.*, 174 14.

surmyse, *v.*, surmise; surmysed, *pt.*,

821 34;—from O.F. *p.p.* *surmise*.

sursengle, *sb.*, girth, belly-band of a

saddle, surcingle; sursenglys, *pl.*,

238 2;—O.F. *sursangle*.

suspecyon, *sb.*, suspicion, 287 24;

729 18;—O.F. *suspeziun*, *souspeçon*.

sustene, *v.*, to sustain; *inf.*, 667 25;

—A.F. *sustener*.

swalowe, *sb.*, a whirlpool, gulf, 691

27;—Icel. *svelgja*.

swappe, *v.*, to strike, to fall sud-

denly; swapped, *pt.*, 210 29.

swerded, *adj.*, having a sword, 333

25.

swere, *v.*, to swear; sware, *pt.*, 275

31; sworne, *p.p.*, 9 12;—A.S.

swerian.

swerue, *v.*, to swerve; swarued, *pt.*,

636 30;—A.S. *sweorfan*.

sweuen, *sb.*, dream, 53 1; 859* 7;—

A.S. *swefen*.

swough, *sb.*, sound of the wind, sigh-

ing, swoon, 165 20;—from A.S.

swógan.

swoun, *sb.*, swoon, 97 10; swowne,

93 32; *v.*, to faint, to swoon;

swouned, *pt.*, 466 21.

syb, *sb.* and *adj.*, peace, relationship;

related, 103 11;—A.S. *sibb*.

sydelyng, *adj.*, from the side, side-

ways, 524 10;—A.S. *síde* and

? *gelang*.

syge, *sb.* See sege.

sygne, *sb.*, sign, 127 36;—A.F.

signe.

sygnefye, *v.*, to mean, signify, to

compare; sygnefeyeth, *prs.*, 408

17; sygnefeyen, *pl. prs.*, 631 23;

682 36; sygnefied, 703 19; 715*

30;—A.F. *signefier*.

sygnette, *sb.*, mark, the privy seal, a

seal; sygnetty, *pl.*;—dimin. of

O.F. *signe*.

sygnyfyocacion, *sb.*, signification, meaning, 165 25;—O.F. *signification*.

syker, *adj.*, trusty, sure, secure, 240 34; 621 10. Compare O.S. *sikor*, O.H.G. *sichor*.

sykernessee, *sb.*, security, 157 28.

syng, *v.*, to sing; *songen*, *p.p.*, 579 14; *songe*, *p.p.*, 464 35; *songe*, *sb.*, the song, 464 35; 465 5;—A.S. *singan*.

synke, *v.*, to sink; *sanke*, *pt.*, 59 2; 858* 4; *syneked*, *pt.*, 888 18;—A.S. *sincan*.

synne, *sb.*, sin, 711 27; *syns*, *pl.*, 407 6;—A.S. *syn*, *sinn*.

synner, *sb.*, sinner; *synnar*, 712 22.

syse, *sb.*, size, 178 21; *syses*, *pl.*, 500 6;—from O.F. (*as*)*sis*, (*as*)*sise*.

sythen, *adv.* and *conj.*, since, afterwards, 69 6; 430 9; 644 2; *syn* (contracted form), 96 21; 98 10; *sith*, 715 25; *sythe*, 1 24;—A.S. *sibban*.

sytte, *v.*, to sit, befit; *inf.*, 103 37; 717 12; *sat*, *pt.*, 104 27; *satte*, *pt.*, 65 25; *sydden*, *p.p.*, 103 31;—A.S. *sittan*.

taccomplyssahe, *v.* See *accomplyssahe*.

take, *v.*, to take; *toke*, *pt.*, 69 22; *take*, *p.p.*, 715* 32; *taken*, *p.p.*, 78 12;—Icel. *taka*.

tale, *sb.*, account, narration, tale, reckoning, 623 1;—A.S. *taln*.

talent, *sb.*, desire, appetite, inclination, 446 9;—O.F. *talent*.

talowe, *sb.*, tallow, 219 1;—M.E. *talgh*.

tame, *v.*, to conquer, crush, subdue; *tamyd*, *pt.*, 97 16; 111 23; 657 24;—A.S. *tamian*.

tapre, *sb.*, taper; *tapres*, *pl.*, 579 21;—A.S. *tapor*, *taper*.

tatche, *sb.*, quality, mark, sign, fault; *tatches*, *pl.*, 77 36; 103 20;—O.F. *tache*.

taylle, *sb.*, tail, 165 21;—A.S. *tegl*.

taylle, *sb.*, tax, tallage; *taylles*, *pl.*, 161 25;—O.F. *taille*.

teche, *v.*, to teach; *pres.*, 142 26; *inf.*, 645 13;—A.S. *tecan*.

tempils, *sb. pl.*, the temples, 55 26;—O.F. *temples*.

temptacyon, *sb.*, temptation, 648 26;—O.F. *temptation*.

tene, *sb.*, grief, vexation, injury, 94 14; 177 3;—A.S. *teona*.

tere, *sb.*, tear; *teres*, *pl.*, 621 10;—A.S. *tear*.

the, *th.*, definite article; *thabyte*, 34 21; *thachyeuement*, 30 11;

thaduenture, 7 17; *tharche*, *bysshop*, 34 20; *thappoynte*, *ment*, 14 20; *thassumpcion*, 254 27; *thavys*, 18 3; *thadvyse*, 377 35; *theffecte*, 160 26; *thembas*, *satours*, 162 7; *themperour*, 4 27; 70 7; *thermytage*, 34 20;

tharth, 857* 28; *thescape*, 16 9; *thexcellent*, 1 32; *thexpo*, *sycion*, 11 4; *thold*, 91 16;

thoryent, 165 10; *thother*, 177 18; 721 15; *thystorye*, 1 34, 37; 699 15;—A.S. *ða*, earlier form *ða*.

thenne, *adv.*, then, than, 395 7;—A.S. *þenne*.

theym, *pron.*, *dat.* and *acc.*, them, 8 14;—A.S. *þeim*.

thise, *pron. pl.*, these, 494 5;—from A.S. *þes*, *pl.*, *þás*, *þás*.

tho, *pron. dem.* and *def. art. pl.*, those, 49 12; 59 26;—A.S. *þá*.

thonder, *sb.*, thunder, 409 21;—A.S. *þunor*.

threde, *sb.*, thread, 657 18; *thredys*, *pl.*, 699 28;—A.S. *þræd*.

thrange, *v.*, to press; *thrange*, *pt.*, 479 29;—A.S. *þringan*.

threste, *v.*, to thrust; *threst*, *third pers. pres. sing.*, 58 15; *threstyd*, *pt.*, 180 1;—Icel. *þrýsta*.

threte, *sb.*, threat, menace; *thretys*, *pl.*, 457 31;—A.S. *þræt*.

threte, *v.*, to threaten, to menace; *threted*, *p.p.*, 520 31;—A.S. *þrétian*.

throte, *sb.*, throat, 482 13; *throtes*, *pl.*, 151 13;—A.S. *þrotu*, *þrotu*.

thrulle, *v.*, to pierce, traverse; *thrulled*, *pt.*, 343 28;—A.S. *þyrlian*.

thryes, *adv.*, thrice, three times, threefold, 142 34; *the thryes*, *myghte*, 143 26;—A.S. *þriva*.

thurgh, *prep.*, through, 59 12

- thorough, 1 12; thorowe, 37 16; thorou, 235 16;—A.S. *þurh*.
 thwart, *adv.*, thwart, through, across, 173 37;—Icel. *þvert*. Compare Skeat, Dict.
 thyder, *adv.*, thither, 62 33; 684 35; thydder, 681 24;—A.S. *þider*.
 thyghe, *sb.*, thigh, 13 33; thyes, *pl.*, 29 8; 60 33;—A.S. *þéoh*, *þeo*.
 thylk, *adj.*, that, such, 181 29;—A.S. *þylc*.
 to, (1) *prep.*, to, at, in, upon, into, against, as, until; *temprynte*, 1 34; *tenprynte*, 1 37; 4 13; *texersyse*, 4 1; *tespye*, 171 17; (2) *prefix*, asunder, in twain, to pieces;—A.S. *tó*, *tó*.
 to breste, *v.*, to burst asunder; to brast, *pt.*, 204 20; 482 15;—A.S. *to-berstan*.
 to cratche, *v.*, to scratch, to tear to pieces; to cratched, 583 14.
 to forne, *adv.* and *prep.*, before, 247 20; 507 33; to fore, 1 11, 14;—A.S. *tó-foran*.
 to gyder, to gyders, *adv.*, together, 397 30; 471 33;—A.S. *tó-gædere*, *tó-gædre*.
 to hewe, *v.*, to hew in pieces; *inf.*, 513 9; to hewe, *pt.*, 338 31;—A.S. *to-héarwan*.
 tokenynge, *sb.*, signification, 663 6;—A.S. *tácnung*.
 tomlle, *v.*, to tumble, leap; tomlled, *pt.*, 507 26;—A.S. *tumbian*.
 torneoye, *v.*, to make a tournament, 6 18; *torneyng*, *p.prs.*, 10 30; 23 3;—O.F. *tournoier*.
 to ryue, *v.*, to tear, to rend to pieces; to rofe, *pt.*, 330 29;—Icel. *rífa*.
 to sheuer, *v.*, to smash, to reduce to shivers; to sheuered, *pt.*, 69 27; 71 15; 87 28; *p.p.*, 481 12;—Icel. *skífa*.
 tournament, *sb.*, tournament, 22 38; turnement, 494 13; *turnementys*, *pl.*, 763 25;—O.F. *tournoiment*.
 towel, *sb.*, towel, 719 2; tuell, 404 32;—A.F. *touaille*, O.F. *toaille*.
 towre, *sb.*, tower, 45 11; toure, 256 17; tour, 46 1; towres, 97 20;—O.F. *tur*, *tour*.
 traine, *sb.*, train, treachery, stragem, deceit; *trainys*, *pl.*, 378 22;—O.F. *trahin*, *tráin*.
 traitourly, *adv.*, treacherously, like a traitor, 402 10;—A.F. *traitur* and A.S. *lic*.
 trak, *sb.*, track, trace, 435 15.
 trappe, *sb.*, trap, 32 10;—A.S. *treppe*.
 trapped, *adj.*, adorned with trappings, 97 3;—from O.F. **trap*, cognate with Mod.F. *drap*.
 trappere, *sb.*, trappings, ornaments, 58 22; *trappours*, *pl.*, 371 16.
 trase, trace, *v.*, to trace, to trace one's way, to rush along; *tracyd*, *pl.*, 463 18; *tracynge*, *p.prs.*, 217 33; *trasynge*, *p.prs.*, 194 11;—O.F. *tracer*.
 trauaille, *sb.*, work, labour, toil, trouble, 97 12; *trauail*, 599 33;—A.F. *travail*, *travaille*.
 trauaille, *v.*, to work, torment, toil; *inf.*, 273 33;—A.F. *travailler*.
 trauserse, *adv.*, in twain, across, 526 5;—O.F. *traverse*.
 trauserse, *v.*, to run across; *trauercyd*, *pt.*, 463 18;—O.F. *trauser*.
 tray, *sb.*, grief, affliction, 94 14;—A.S. *trega*.
 traytour, *sb.* and *adj.*, traitor, 321 28; 849 6; *traitour knyght*, 289 34;—O.F. *traitor*.
 treason, *sb.*, treason, 729 25; *treson*, 76 24 (Malory says: "For the custom was such at that time that all maner of shameful death was called treason," 729 26, 27);—A.F. *treson*, *traison*.
 trecherye, *sb.*, treachery, trickery, 76 24;—A.F. *tricherie*.
 trede, *v.*, to tread; *trade*, *pt.*, 778 13; 784 10;—A.S. *trédan*.
 trenchaunt, *adj.*, cutting, 792 23;—O.F. *trencher*.
 trespass, *sb.*, trespass, 79 32;—O.F. *trespas*.
 trest, *sb.*, † (hunting term), 764 14; Wynkyn de Worde reads *treste*.

¹ I have tried to find the exact meaning of the word "trest;" it seems to be "a station appointed in hunting." Wright says it must be found in some treatise on

tretabyl, *adj.*, treatable, 308 14.
tretyce, *tretys*, *sb.*, treaty, 153 12;
 207 3; 861 36;—A.F. *tretiz*.
troncheon, *sb.*, truncheon, broken
 piece of a spear-shaft, 69 29;
truncheon, 93 6;—O.F. *tronçon*,
tronchon.
trouthe, *sb.*, truth, 38 13;—A.S.
tréowð.
trouthplyte, *v.*, to engage seriously,
 to promise; *inf.*, 247 13;—A.S.
tréowð and *plihhtan*.
trowe, *v.*, to believe; *trowed*, *pt.*,
 666 13; *trowe*, *prs.*, 331 38; 432
 14;—A.S. *tréowan*.
truage, *sb.*, tribute, 7 1; 70 4;—
 O.F. *treuage*.
trusse, *v.*, to pack, pack off; *trussed*,
pt., 649 16; 829 16;—O.F. *trusser*.
tuell, *sb.* See *towel*.
turnement, *sb.* See *tornement*.
turret, *sb.*, small tower, 140 23; 141
 17;—O.F. *tourette*.
tweyne, *num.*, twain, two, 87 20;
 166 34; 483 6;—A.S. *twégen*.
twyes, *adv.*, twice, 91 37; 516 9;—
 A.S. *twiges*, *twiwa*.
tyde, *v.*, to happen; *prs.*, 847 1;—
 A.S. *tidan*. Compare *betyde*.
tydynges, *sb. pl.*, tidings, news, 699
 36;—from Icel. *tíðindi*. Compare
 A.S. *tidan*.
tye, *v.*, to tie; *tayed*, *pt.*, 41 20; 73
 18; *tayed*, *pt.*, 198 29; 806 9;—
 A.S. *tigan*.
tyere, *v.*, to tire, exhaust; *inf.*, 661
 32;—A.S. *teorian*.

tylle, *conj.* and *prep.*, till, to, against,
 690 26; *tyl*, 757 31; *til a tree*,
 380 10; 389 18; 610 3; *til a*
frende, 885 28;—Icel. *tíl*.

vbbye, *sb.*, wafer, sacramental bread,
 719 6;—M.E. *oblé*, *oveléte*, O.F.
oublee, A.S. *ostlæte*, Late Lat. *oblāta*.
vmbecast, *v.*, to cast about, consider,
 ponder; *pt.*, 764 25.

vmbre, *sb.*, shade, umbrage, 274 18;
 281 32;—Lat. *umbra*.

vnbockel, *v.*, to take off, unbuckle;
inf., 516 38.

vncopele, *v.* (hunting term), to
 uncouple, loose dogs from their
 couples, set loose, disjoin (compare
 Shakspeare, "Tit. Andron." ii. 2);
vncoupelynge, *p.prs.*, 500 10.

vncouth, *adj.*, strange, unknown, 105
 31;—A.S. *un-cūð*.

vncurteis, *adj.*, not polite, rough, un-
 refined, 151 30; *vncurtois*, 541 7.

vnderne, *sb.*, the time between sun-
 rise and noon, or between noon
 and sunset, a meal-time, 242 29;
vndern, 835 18; *vndorn*, 618 28;
vndorne, 574 21;—A.S. *undern*,
 O.S. *undorn*.

vndernethe, *prep.*, underneath, below,
 362 6; *vnder nethe*, 548 27;—
 A.S. *under* and *neob-an*.

vnderstande, *v.*, to understand;
vnderstanden, *p.p.*, 166 31; *vn-*
derstonde, *inf.*, 4 16; *vnder-*
stood, *pt.*, 348 11; *vnderstode*,
pl., 461 21;—A.S. *understandan*.

hunting; I have not, however, come across it in any of the treatises on the subject (compare my note to "Trystram"). Sir E. Strachey says "trest" is the participle of *trere* (*tirer*).—In "The Story of England," by Robert Manning of Brunne, A.D. 1338, ed., from MSS. in the Lambeth and Inner Temple libraries, by F. J. Furnivall, the word occurs, page 30, line 856, evidently in the same sense: "att a triste to schete, Brutus was set." The Glossary, page 836, explains *triste* as *tryste*, *trysting-place*, appointed station, and quotes as etymons O.Icel. *traust*, O.Fries. *trast*, *trust*, most likely on Prof. Skeat's authority. In R. Morris's ed. of "Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight," verses 1146, 1170, 1712, *tryster*, *trysteres*, the stations allotted to different persons in hunting, occur.—Mr. Henry Bradley has endeavoured to explain the origin of the word "trest." In a letter to the *Academy* of January 18, 1890, he says: "I do not know whether Romanic philologists will entertain the suggestion that *terra* may, in Gaul, have given rise to a derivative of the form **terristrum*, **terristra*, with the accent fluctuating between the first and second syllable. If this hypothesis be admissible, it will, I suppose, account for the forms *tristre*, *terestre*, *tertre*, and also for the twofold sense in which *tertre* occurs; and the original English meaning of *tristra*, *tryst*, would be a 'portion of ground' assigned to each person in certain modes of hunting. The wider sense 'rendez-vous,' might easily have been developed from this, and it is very likely that the word would be at an early period confused with *trist* = *trust*."

- vngladde**, *adj.*, unhappy, 499 27.
vnhelmed, *adj.*, without a helmet, 565 27.
vnmaymed, *p.p.*, not wounded, sound, 515 8.
vnmesurably oute of mesure, *tautol. phrase*, greatly out of measure, exceedingly, 640 22.
vnnailed, *p.p.*, broken, unriveted, 97 29.
vnnethe, *adv.*, scarcely, 127 18;
vnnethes, 143 1;—A.S. *unedæ*.
vnslayne, *adj.* or *p.p.*, alive, not slain, 515 8.
vnstabylnesse, *sb.*, unstableness, 671 11.
vnwyker, *adj.*, uncertain, 724 30.
vntrouthe, *sb.*, falsehood, lie, untruth, 702 1.
vnwympeled, *p.p.*, unveiled, 476 7.
vp, *prep.* and *adv.*, up; **vp so doune**, upside down, 206 12; 654 13; 706 32;—A.S. *up*, *upp*.
vtaa, *sb.*, the octave of a festival, 164 8;—A.F. *utaves*, O.F. *oitauves*.
vterraunce, *sb.*, extremity, the uttermost, 218 9;—O.F. *oultrance*.
vtermest, *adj. superl.*, the extreme, the utmost, 128 2; 567 34;—A.S. *útor*, *uttor*, and *meste*.
valewe, *sb.*, value, 78 37;—O.F. *valu*, *valuë*.
valyaunce, *sb. pl.*, valiant deeds, 173 14;—O.F. *valance*, *vailance*.
valyaunt, *adj.*, brave, valiant, 297 26; 482 18; **valyaunts men**, 83 31; **valyaunter**, *comp.*, 447 17; **valyaunttest**, *superl.*, 454 21;—O.F. *vaillant*, *valant*.
valyauntnesse, *sb.*, brave behaviour, valour, 608 14.
vanysshe, *v.*, to vanish; **vanysshed**, *pt.*, 85 1; 627 23;—O.F. **vanisse*, from **vanir*.
vanytee, *sb.*, vanity; **vanytees**, *pl.*, 855* 1;—Lat. *vanitatem*.
varlet, *sb.*, servant, squire, young vassal, 187 4; 403 10; **varlette**, 434 5;—O.F. *varlet*, *raslet*.
varyaunt, *adj.*, changeable, fickle, 827 1;—Lat. *variant*, from *variare*.
vaute, *sb.*, vault; **vautes**, *pl.*, 2 38;—O.F. *vault*, *volte*, *route*.
vaward, *sb.*, vanguard, 86 31;—A.F. *avaunt garde*.
vayshere, **vaysshoure**, *sb.*, the cowherd, father of syr Tor;—O.F. *vachere*, *vachier*.
velowet, *sb.*, velvet, 822 24;—O.F. *velu*.
venery, *sb.*, hunting, 568 27;—O.F. *venerie*.
venetrete,¹ *v.*, ?; **venetreted**, *p.p.*, 604 32;—? Wynkyn de Worde has also *venetreted*; ed. 1634 has *euill intreated*; Sir E. Strachey reads *so entreated*. The meaning is evidently “badly treated.”
vengeable, *adj.*, revengeful, full of vengeance, 834 19.
vengeaunce, *sb.*, vengeance, 367 20; 466 34;—O.F. *venjanee*.
ventayls, *sb. pl.*, the movable front of a helmet, covering the face, through which the wearer breathes; sometimes it means the whole front of a helmet, 516 15;—M.E. generally *aventayle* (compare Shakspeare, “Troilus and Cresside,” line 1557);—A.F. *aventaille*.
venym, *sb.*, poison, 285 2;—O.F. *venin*.
veray, *adj.*, true, 4 15; 565 33; 592 15;—A.F. *verai*.
vermyn, *sb.*, a worm, vermin; **vermys**, *pl.*, 500 9;—O.F. *vermine*.
vessel, *sb.*, vessel, ship, 284 16; **vessalle**, 282 1;—O.F. *vaisse*, *veissel*, *vessel*.
veyne, *adj.*, vain, 679 10;—Fr. *vain*, Lat. *vanus*.
vouchesaufe, *v.*, to sanction, vouchsafe; *inf.*, 720 25;—O.F. *voucher* and *sauif*.
voyce, *sb.*, voice, 695 21; 707 13; **voys**, 580 6; 840 22;—O.F. *vois*.
vygyl, *sb.*, vigil, eve of a feast or fast day, 612 1;—Lat. *vigilia*.

¹ The form “venetreted” is evidently a misprint, though I cannot explain it. The M.E. verb “entreten” is used for “to treat,” in the good as well as in the bad sense; therefore Sir E. Strachey’s reading “so entreated” is satisfactory.

vylayn, *adj.* and *sb.*, villain, ugly, detestable; **vylaynat**, *superl.*, 450 13;—O.F. *vilain*, *vilein*.

vylony, *sb.*, villany, 832 18;—O.F. *vilenie*.

vyloynsly, *adv.*, villanously, 508 8.

vyolle, *sb.*, vial, small bottle, 178 27;—O.F. *viole*, A.F. *fyole*.

vysaged, *adj.*, having a face, 213 26;—from A.F. *visage*.

vyser, *sb.*, visor, the perforated part of the helmet in front of the face, 181 6; **vysure**, 289 8;—O.F. *visiere*.

vytaille, *sb.*, provision, 64 29; **vytilled**, *p.p.*, provisioned, 45 13;—A.F. *vitaille*.

wade, *v.*, to wade; **wade**, *pt.*, 156 4;—A.S. *wadan*.

wagge, *v.*, to shake to and fro, to nod; **waggyng**, *p.prs.*, 787 20; **wagged**, *pt.*, 787 18.—Compare Icel. *vagga*, a cradle.

wallop, **wallope**, *sb.*, gallop, pace of a horse while lifting the fore and hind feet together, 69 14; 114 9.

wallope, *v.*, to gallop, to leap in running, to ride at a galloping pace; *inf.*, 179 33; **wallopped**, *pt.*, 415 30; **wallopt**, *pt.*, 202 17; **wallopte**, *pt.*, 204 6;—O.F. *galoper*.

walowe, *v.*, wallow, to roll about; **walowynge**, *p.prs.*, 168 16; **walowed**, *pt.*, 242 27;—A.S. *weahcian*.

walshe, *adj.* and *sb.*, Welsh, Welshman, foreign, foreigner, 3 10; **walysshe**, 767 30;—A.S. *wælic*.

wanhope, *sb.*, despair, 678 12.—Compare M.Du. *wanhope*.

wanne, *v.*, to wane, to grow less, to ebb; *inf.*, 849 5;—A.S. *wanian*.

wappe, *v.*, to wap, to lap; *inf.*, 849 5 (probably from the sound of the sea).

ward, *sb.*, care, heed, regard, keeping, 285 27;—A.S. *weard*.

ward, *sb.*, ward, one under the care of a guardian, 180 15;—A.S. *weard*.

wardeyn, *sb.*, warden, 44 14;—A.F. *wardein*.

warison, *sb.*, reward, property, 372 35;—O.F. *warison*.

wasse, *v.*, to wash; **wesshe**, *pt.*, 178 29; **wasshed**, *pt.*, 380 11; **wasshen**, *p.p.*, 49 28;—A.S. *wascan*.

wast, *sb.*, waist, the middle part of a human body, 589 11; **waste**, 295 7;—M.E. *wast*, O.H.G. *wahst*.

waxe, *v.*, to wax, grow; **waxt**, *pt.*, 130 31; **waxte**, *pt.*, 463 23; **waxed**, *pt.*, 856* 26;—A.S. *weaxan*.

wayte, *sb.*, watch, guard, 726 10; 761 24;—from A.F. *wayter*.

webbe, *sb.*, sheet of thin plate of lead, 857* 27;—? A.S. *webb* or *web*.

wede, *sb.*, weed, garment, 702 33; **wedys**, *pt.*, 539 11;—A.S. *wéde*.

wede, *sb.*, weed, wild herb, 224 1;—A.S. *wéod*, *wíod*.

weder, *sb.*, weather, 587 2; **wheder**, 653 15; **whether**, 366 25;—A.S. *weder*.

wedlok, *sb.*, marriage, 451 4;—A.S. *wedlac*.

welde, *v.*, to govern, possess, have power over; *inf.*, 172 2; **weldeth**, *prs.*, 168 2; **welde hymself**, 294 1;—A.S. *wealdan*.

wele, *sb.*, weal, prosperity, 310 2; 804 15;—A.S. *wela*, *weola*.

welthe, *sb.*, wealth, 400 8;—from A.S. *wela* with the suff. *-th*.

weltre, *v.*, to welter, to roll about; **weltred**, *pt.*, 168 14; **weltryng**, *p.prs.*, 168 15.—Compare A.S. *wealtan*.

wende, *v.*, to go, to turn; **wente**, *pt.*, 6 19; 136 2; 761 9;—A.S. *wendan*.

wene, *v.*, to ween, suppose; **wene**, *prs.*, 163 2; **weneth**, *prs.*, 81 33; **wende**, *pt.*, 40 5; 404 21;—A.S. *wénan*.

wepen, *sb.*, weapon, 92 24;—A.S. *wāpen*.

wepenles, *adj.*, without arms, 98 20.

werche, *v.*, to work; **werches**, *prs.*, 848 1; **worcheth**, *prs.*, 643 17; **wroughte**, *pt.*, 120 3; 378 28; **worche**, *inf.*, 135 10; **worched**, *p.p.*, 199 13; **wrouzt**, *p.p.*, 403 31; **wyrchyng**, *p.prs.*, 120 2;—A.S. *wyrcean*, *wercan*.

- werke**, *sb.*, work, 3 27;—A.S. (*ge*)-*weorc*, *work*.
werre, *sb.*, war; **werrya**, *pl.*, 198 9;
werres, *pl.*, 659 10;—O.F. *werre*.
werre, *v.*, to make war; *inf.*, 673 20; **werrith**, *prs.*, 682 13;—A.S. *werrian*. Compare O.F. *werreier*, *guerrier*.
wers, *adj. comp.*, worse, 46 22;
werse, 47 34; **worse**, 297 4;—A.S. *wyrs*.
werst, *adj. superl.*, worst, utmost, 839 37;—A.S. *wyrst*.
werwolf, *sb.*, man-wolf, 793 17;—A.S. *wer* (man, husband) and *wulf*.
wery, *adj.*, weary, 664 29;—A.S. *wérig*.
wesshe, *pt.* See **wasshe**.
wete, *v.*, to know, to observe, to keep, guard; *inf.*, 1 13; 433 26; **wiste**, *pt.*, 402 9; **wist**, *pt.*, 373 14;
wetest, *prs.*, 379 14; **wyste**, *pt.*, 82 13; 205 14; **we wote**, *prs.*, 59 30; **I wote**, *prs.*, 110 19; 422 3; **thou wotest**, *prs.*, 72 10;—A.S. *witan*.
wey, *sb.*, way, 36 25; 51 15;—A.S. *weg*.
weyke, *adj.*, weak; **weykely**, *adv.*, 794 21; **wayke**, 857* 2; **weykest**, *superl.*, 144 29;—Icel. *veikr*, A.S. *wac*.
wheder, *sb.* See **weder**.
wheder, *adv.*, whither, 297 21;
whyder ward, 438 17; **wheder ward**, whitherward, 341 6; **whether**, 219 15; **whyder**, 378 10;
whyther, 297 21; **whydder**, 702 28;—A.S. *hwider*.
whole, *sb.*, wheel, 827 1;—A.S. *hwéol*.
whelp, *sb.*, young of a dog and of beasts of prey, puppy, 694 4;—A.S. *hwelp*.
whether, *sb.* See **weder**.
whether, *pron.*, which of the two, 238 28; *conj.*, whether, if, 244 1;—A.S. *hwæðer*.
whyder, **whydder**. See **wheder**.
whylest, *adv. and conj.*, while, whilst, 725 1;—from A.S. *hwíl*.
withinforth, *adv.*, inwardly, inside, 836 28.
withoutforth, *adv.*, outside, 836 28.
withsay, *v.*, to contradict, to renounce; *inf.*, 615 17;—A.S. *wið* and *secgan*.
withstande, *v.*, to resist; *inf.*, 760 16; **withstand**, *p.p.*, 76 6;—A.S. *wið* and *standan*.
woful, *adj.*, sorrowful; **wofullest**, *superl.*, 407 3;—A.S. *wéa* and *ful*.
wol, *prs.* See **wylle**.
wolde, *pt.* See **wylle**.
wonder, *adj. and adv.*, fearful, wonderful, 689 8; 837 35. Compare A.S. *wundor*, *wundrian*.
wonderly, *adv.*, wonderfully, 300 23.
wonne, *pt.* See **wynne**.
wonte, *adj.*, accustomed, 831 27.
wood, *sb.*, wood, tree, forest, 56 2;
wode, 85 19;—A.S. *wudu*, *widu*.
wood, **woode**, *adj. and adv.*, mad, raging, 58 32; 401 8;—A.S. *wód*.
woodenes, *sb.*, madness, 55 36; 396 2;—A.S. *wódnysa*.
worcheth, *prs.* See **werche**.
worte, *sb.*, plant, herb, vegetable;
wortes, *pl.*, 668 18;—A.S. *wyrt*.
wote, *prs.* See **wete**.
wowe, *v.*, to woo, to request;
wowed, *pt.*, 784 36;—A.S. *wógian*.
wrake, *sb.*, destruction, misery, mischief, 797 35; 854 22;—A.S. *wracu*.
wrathe, *v.*, to become or to make angry; *inf.*, 374 18;—from A.S. *wrāð*.
wreke, *v.*, to wreak, to urge, punish, avenge; **wrackyd**, *p.p.*, 531 17;
wroken, *p.p.*, 107 5;—A.S. *wrecan*.
wroth, **wrothe**, *adj.*, wroth, fearful, angry, 401 8, 14;—A.S. *wrāð*.
wrou3t, *p.p.* See **werche**.
wrynge, *v.*, to wring, press; **wryng-ynge**, *p.prs.*, 167 8; **wrange**, *pt.*, 389 36; **wrong**, *pt.*, 168 14;—A.S. *wringan*.
wrythe, *v.*, to writhe, to twist;
wrythed, *pt.*, 242 27; 582 23;
wrothe, *pt.*, 595 27;—A.S. *wriðan*.
wyde where, *adv.*, far and wide, 340 29.
wyght, *adj.*, active, swift, strong, 344 30; 467 34; 799 22;—A.S.
wyle, *sb.*, guile, trick, a sly artifice;
wyles, *pl.*, 424 11;—A.S. *wíl*, *wile*.

- wyllar**, *sb.*, one who wills, or wishes;
well wyllars, *pl.*, 465 11;—from
 A.S. *willan*.
wylsome, *adj.*, dreary, doubtful, 247
 11.
wyl, *wylle*, *prs.*, will, 402 12; 719 22;
I wol, *prs.*, 59 8; **thou wilt**, *prs.*,
 38 27; **he wol**, 70 36; **wylt thou**,
 102 5; **woll ye**, 42 22; **wold**, *pt.*,
 39 28; 402 26; **thou woldest**, 48
 28;—A.S. *wille*, *wolde*.
wyly, *adj.*, wily, full of tricks, 135
 38; 288 32.
wymmen, *sb. pl.*, women, 83 28;
 407 10;—A.S. *wifmen*.
wympeld, *p.p.*, veiled, 531 59.
wyn, *sb.*, wine, 275 22;—A.S. *win*.
wynded, *p.p.*, having much breath,
 512 8;—from A.S. *wind*.
wynne, **wyn**, *v.*, to win; *inf.*, 80
 15; 148 19; 312 20; **wan**, *pt.*,
 44 16; **wonne**, *pt.*, 134 13;
wonne, *p.p.*, 105 77; 388 27;
 513 32;—A.S. *(ge)winnan*.
wyrchyng, *p.prs.* See *werche*.
wyt, *sb.*, wisdom, intelligence, wit,
 reason, 50 20; **wytte**, 99 3;—
 A.S. *(ge)witt*.
wyte, *sb.*, blame, 75 24; 88 11.
wyte, *v.*, to blame; *prs.*, 133 32;
 556 14; *inf.*, 575 9;—A.S. *witan*.
wytted, *adj.* or *p.p.*, clever, having
 wit, 253 27.
wyttely, *adv.*, cleverly, 472 15.
- y**, (1) **I**, *pron. pers.*; **y gaf**, 46 36;—
 A.S. *ic*; (2) **y**, *prefix* = *ge*; **y**
barryd, 780 27; **y fonde**, 699 35;
ynombred, 178 7; **y sette**, 822
 32; **y sought**, 754 1;—A.S. *ge*.
yate, *sb.*, the gate, 39 7; 91 9;—
 A.S. *geat*.
ye, *adv.*, yes, 100 14; **yls**, 93 16;—
 A.S. *gese* (*gea* and *-se*).
- yede**, *pt.*, went, 97 36; 110 30;
 150 33; **yode**, *pt.*, 185 31;—A.S.
ge-ēode.
yefte, *sb.*, gift, 481 24; **yeftes**, *pl.*,
 453 5;—A.S. *gift*, Icel. *gipt*.
yelde, *v.*, to pay, yield; *inf.*, 15 31;
 24 13; *prs.*, 71 34; **yelded**
 (*hym*), *pt.*, 13 23; 16 3; **yelden**,
p.p., 13 1; **yolde**, *pt.*, 189 23;
yolden, *p.p.*, 180 29;—A.S.
geldan.
yelle, *v.*, to yell; **yellynge**, *p.prs.*,
 654 20;—A.S. *gellan*.
yeue, *v.*, to give; *inf.*, 38 11; **yeuen**,
p.p., 44 9; 61 36; 412 4; 518 6;
forýaf, *pt.*, 43 32;—A.S. *gifan*.
Compare gyue.
yland, *sb.*, island, 422 34;—A.S.
íglanð.
ylle, *sb.* and *adj.*, bad, ill, 208 27;
 648 1;—Icel. *illr*.
ynde, *sb.*, dark-blue colour;—O.F.
inde, Lat. *India*.
ynowe, *adj.* and *adv.*, enough, 101
 1; **ynow**, 71 6;—A.S. *genôh*.
yole, *sb.*, Yule, Christmas, 177 25;—
 A.S. *gēola*.
yoman, *sb.*, youth, servant, 646 36;
yemen, *pl.*, 845 2.—See *Skeat*,
Dict.
yongthe, *sb.*, youth, 276 31;—from
 A.S. *gēogud*, *giōguð*.
yre, *sb.*, anger, spite, 58 28; 391 22;
 418 22;—Lat. *ira*. See *ire*.
yssue, *sb.*, issue; **yssues**, *pl.*, 36 3;
 —A.F. *issue*.
yssue, *v.*, to issue; **yssued**, *pt.*, 403
 10.
ytalyen, *adj.*, Italian, 2 35.
- þere**, *sb.*, ear, 778 30 (*Wynkyn de*
Worde has ere; ed. 1634, *care*:
Sir E. Strachey reads ear);—A.S.
ēare.



STUDIES ON THE SOURCES OF "LE MORTE DARTHUR."

INTRODUCTION.



WHETHER we adopt with Milton, Temple, or Littleton the theory that King Arthur, the hero of the Round Table cycle of Romances, belongs to mythology, because the earliest English chroniclers, Gildas and Bede, make no mention of him, or accept, with Hume and others, the account William Caxton sets forth in his Preface to Malory's *refacimento*, we cannot deny that the Arthurian romances have exercised an immense influence upon the literature, not only of England and France, but of all European nations. Whether real or mythological, the imposing personage of King Arthur has become immortal; he lives on in song and tradition, and many a place-name throughout Britain testifies his renown. Generation after generation has read with interest and enthusiasm of the noble Arthur and his valiant knights; England's first poets have not hesitated to make their verse a vehicle for the praise of this national hero.¹ It is equally remarkable and interesting, that all that has been written in England on this subject, be it in prose or in verse, be it in English, Latin, or Norman-French, can be traced back to a common source, and forms, as it were, the links of one immense chain running throughout the history of English literature.

¹ See the posthumous work by J. Ritson, *The Life of King Arthur, from ancient historians and authentic documents.* London, 1825. 8vo. And for a general idea of the prose romances; J. Dunlop, *The History of Fiction, being a critical account of the most celebrated prose works of fiction, &c.* 3 vols. 2nd ed. London, 1816. Vol. iii., "Romances of Chivalry." A third edition was published London, 1845. *History of Prose Fiction* by J. C. Dunlop. New edition. Revised, &c., by Henry Wilson. London 1888. 2 vols. 8vo.

Beginning with Nennius' *Eulogium Britanniae* sive *Historia Britonum*¹ and Geoffrey's *Historia Britonum*, the most important of these links are: Wace's *Brut*, Layamon's *Brut*, Langtoft's and Robert of Gloucester's chronicles, Huchown's *Morte Arthure*, and English translations and metrical romances,² by unknown authors belonging to the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries. Malory's work follows, and this, be its shortcomings what they may, is unique of its kind. It appeared at the most favourable moment, at a time when the taste for metrical romances,

¹ *Eulogium Britanniae* sive *Historia Britonum*, auctore Nennio, Ber. Angl. Script. Veter., tom. i. 1684, fol.; ed. C. J. Bertram, as *Brit. Gentium Hist. Antiq. script. tres*, London, 1757, 8vo; ed. Havniae, 1758, 12mo; ed. W. Gunn, *The "Hist. Brittonum,"* commonly attributed to N., from a MS. in the Vatican Library, Rome, with Engl. vera., facsimiles of the original notes, and illustrations, London, 1819, 8vo; ed. of the Engl. Hist. Soc., 1838, 8vo; transl. by J. A. Giles, with notes, &c., Bohn's Antiq. Library, 1847, 8vo; San Marte (A. Schulz), *Nennius und Gildas*, Berlin, 1844, 8vo; and, lastly, H. Petrie's *Monumenta Historica Britannica*, or materials for the history of Britain, &c., London, 1848, fol.

² As to Geoffrey's of Monmouth *Historia*, &c., Wace's *Brut*, Layamon's *Brut*, Peter Langtoft's *Chronicle*, see note 1 to Book V.

A translation of *Le Roman de Merlin* in prose, *Merlin*, or the early History of King Arthur, MS. in the Cambridge University Library, ed. H. B. Wheatley, *Early English Text Society* (referred to later on by E.E.T.S.), 1865.

The English metrical romances referred to are:—

(1) *Le Morte Arthur*; Harl. MS. 2252, ed. F. J. Furnivall. London, 1864. 8vo.

(2) *La Morte Arthure*; Thornton MS. Lincoln Cathedral Library, ed. E. Brock. E.E.T.S., 1871. Its sources are treated by P. Branscheid, *Anglia*, viii. 179-236, Hallenser Dissertation.

(3) *Arthur*; MS. *Liber rubrus Bathoniæ* (library of the Marquis of Bath), ed. F. J. Furnivall. E.E.T.S., 1864 and 1869. Source: Geoffrey's of Monmouth *Historia*, &c.

(4) *The Auntes of Arthur at the Tarnewathelan*; Douce MS. Bodleian Library, Oxford; Thornton MS. Lincoln; Ireland MS. Hale; ed. for the last time by Sir F. Madden, 1839. See H. Lübke, *The A. of A. at the T.*, part I, Berliner Dissertation, 1883.

(5) *Merlin and Arthour*; MS. of Lincoln's Inn, London; Auchinleck MS. Edinburgh, ed. for the Abbotsford Club, 1837.

(6) *Sir Gawayn and the Grene Knight*; MS. Cotton Nero A. x. Brit. Mus., edited by Sir F. Madden, 1839; by R. Morris, E.E.T.S., 1869. Miss Martha Carey Thomas, *Sir Gawayne and the green knight*, a comparison with the French *Perceval*, preceded by an investigation of the author's other works, and followed by a characterisation of Gawayn in English poems. Dissertation Zürich, 1883. 8vo.

(7) *Golagrus and Gawayn*; printed edition of 1508, H. 30. a, Advocates' Library, Edinburgh; John Pinkerton, in *Ancient Scottish Poems* (1420-1586), London, 1786, vol. iii.; reprinted in facsimile, Edinburgh, 1827; Sir F. Madden, 1839.

(8) *Lancelot of the Laik*; MS. K.K. I. 5, Cambridge University Library, ed. W. W. Skeat. E.E.T.S., 1870. Source: "*Le Roman de Lancelot du lac*."

(9) *Sir Tristrem*; Auchinleck MS. Edinburgh, ed. E. Koelbing. Heilbronn, 1878-82.

(10) *Ly beaus Disconus*; MS. Cotton A. ii., Brit. Mus.; MS. of the National Library, Naples; MS. of the Lincoln's Inn Library, London, ed. J. Ritson, 1802.

Several of these romances are analysed in J. Ritson's *Ancient English Metrical Romances*, and in George Ellis, *Specimens of Early English Metrical Romances*, &c., London, 1805, 3 vols., 2nd ed. revised by J. O. Halliwell, London, 1847. Compare, further, B. ten Brink, *Early English Literature*, translated by H. M. Kennedy, London, 1887, 8vo; Geoffrey of Monmouth, pp. 134-36; Wace's *Brut d'Engleterre*, pp. 139-42; Graalsage, p. 171; Tristansaga, 175; Layamon's *Brut*, pp. 188-92; Sir Tristrem, pp.

of which such numerous English and French specimens existed, had died out. "Moreover," as Robert Southey remarks in his Introduction, "at that time the English language had not yet found its way among the higher classes, and the English prose style was wholly unformed. . . . Had the volumes from which it is compiled existed in English, Sir Thomas Malory would not have thought of extracting parts from them, and blending them into one work. This was done at the best possible time; a generation earlier, the language would have retained too much of its Teutonic form; a generation later, and the task would have devolved into the hands of men who performed it as a trade, and equally debased the work which they interpreted and the language in which they wrote." From the day of its appearance, "*Le Morte Darthur*" has been the source of every production having for its theme King Arthur and his knights; it was freely used by Spenser in his "*Faerie Queene*;" it has supplied England's present Laureate with the material for his "*Idylls of the King*,"¹ and inspired Swinburne to write his "*Tristram of Lyonesse*"² and Matthew Arnold to compose his poem "*Tristan and Iseult*."³

The Arthurian romances have been, and still are, very popular; this vitality, though partly due to their national character, is in the main owing to another cause. It is the intimate connection with the legend of the Holy Grail that has rendered them immortal. What chivalry, with all its warlike prowess, was unable to effect by itself, was achieved by chivalry blended with Christianity. As long as Arthur's knights vowed themselves solely to worldly adventures they were like ordinary men; but when they entered upon the quest of the Holy Grail, the search for the supernatural, the struggle for the spiritual stamped upon them immortality.

Besides the Merlin, which presents the national story of Arthur, and the spiritual story of the Holy Grail, the Arthurian cycle has incorporated two other branches, viz., the "*Lancelot*" and the "*Tristan*." All are represented in "*Le Morte Darthur*."

237-41; *Arthur and Merlin*, p. 244; *Adventures of Arthur at Tarn Wadling and Gawayn and the Grene Knight*, pp. 327-35;—E. Koelbing, *Vier Romanzen-Handschriften*, *Englische Studien*, vol. vii., 1884, pp. 177-201.

Compare, further, Bishop Percy's Folio MS., ed. by J. W. Hales and F. J. Furnivall, London, 1867, vol. i. pp. 142-64, *Sir Lambewell* (see *Fragments*, Malone, 941, and Douce, ii. 95, Bodleian Library); 103-18, *The Marriage of Sir Gawayne*; 501-7, *King Arthur's Death*; vol. ii. pp. 58-77, *The Green Knight*, a popular version of *Sir Gawayne and the Grene Knight*, and pp. 404-99, *Libius Disconius*. Several other metrical versions and their MSS. are mentioned in the chapters where they are concerned.

¹ W. Willenweber, Tennyson's *König's Idylle*, "*Coming of Arthur*." *Herrig's Archiv*, vol. lxxviii., 1889.

² A. Charles Swinburne, *Tristram of Lyonesse*. London, 1892. 8vo.

³ Matthew Arnold, *Poems*. London, 1869. 2 vols. 8vo.

The origin and relationship to one another of these branches of romance, whether in prose or verse, are involved in great obscurity, and though Belgian, Dutch, English, French, and German scholars have long endeavoured to throw light on these questions, comparatively little has been done; it would almost seem as if several generations were required for this gigantic task. The words of Professor Gaston Paris, to whom, among living scholars, the widest knowledge of this subject may safely be attributed, do but represent the feeling of every scholar who has essayed to thread this intricate maze: "J'ai entrepris depuis quelque temps une exploration méthodique de ce grand domaine poétique qu'on appelle le cycle de la Table Ronde, le cycle d'Arthur, ou le cycle breton. J'avance en tâtonnant, et bien souvent, revenant vingt fois sur mes pas, je m'aperçois que je suis perdu, dans un dédale inextricable,"¹ &c.

Little wonder, then, if the history of the theories in this field of literature is already extensive. I can, in this place, only give below² a brief enumeration of the principal works upon the subject, and would refer the reader more particularly to M. G. Paris' treatise,

¹ See *Romania*, vol. x. p. 465.

² The groups are, according to the names of the nations, in alphabetical order; the names of authors in each group are chronologically arranged. For the relation of the theories to one another, I refer the reader to chapter iv. p. 97 ff. of Mr. A. Nutt's *Studies* &c., described below.

I. Ch. Potvin, *Chrestien de Troyes. Perceval le Gallois ou le Conte du Graal*. Société des Bibliophiles Belges. Mons. 1865-66. 6 vols. 8vo.

Eugène Hucher, *Le Saint-Graal, ou le Joseph d'Arimathie, première branche des romans de la Table ronde, &c.* Le Mans, 1876-78. 3 vols. 8vo.

II. W. J. A. Jonckbloet, *Roman van Lancelot xiii^e eeuw*. Naahr Het (Eenig-bekende) Handschrift der Koninklijke Bibliotheek s'Gravenhage. Vol. i. 1846, vol. ii. 1849. 4to.

III. Sir Walter Scott, *Sir Tristrem*; a metrical romance of the thirteenth century by Thomas of Ercildoune, called the Rhymer, from the Auchinleck MS., Advocates' Library Edinburgh, 1804. 8vo.—Prof. Koelbing's edition, see on the next page.

Sir Frederic Madden, K.H., *Syr Gawayne*, a collection of ancient romance-poems by Scottish and English authors, relating to that celebrated knight of the Round Table, with Introduction, Notes, and Glossary. London, 1839. 4to.

Alfred Nutt, *Studies on the Legend of the Holy Grail, with especial reference to the Hypothesis of its Celtic origin*. London, 1888. 8vo.

See also *Göttingische gelehrte Anzeigen*, No. xii., 10. Juni 1890, pp. 488-528, H. Zimmer's Criticism on Alfred Nutt's theories concerning the origin of Holy Grail.

Herbert Coleridge, *Essay on Arthur*, reprinted in F. J. Furnivall's edition of the *Harl. MS.* 2252. London, 1864. 8vo.

IV. Th. C. H. Hersart de La Villemarqué, *Contes populaires des anciens Bretons précédés d'un essai sur l'origine des épopées chevaleresques de la Table Ronde*. 2 vols. Paris, 1842. 8vo.

H. de La Villemarqué, *Les Romans de la Table Ronde et les contes des anciens Bretons*, 3^{ème} édition (of the preceding work) considérablement modifiée. Paris, 1860. 12mo. See also the same author's *Myrdhin* or *l'Enchanteur Merlin*.

Paulin Paris, *De l'origine et du développement des Romans de la Table Ronde*, *Romania*, i. p. 457. P. Paris, *Les Manuscrits de la Bibliothèque du roi*, 7 vols., Paris,

"Les Romans en vers du cycle de la Table ronde," in vol. xxx. of "Histoire littéraire de France."

The theory of M. G. Paris on the origin and history of the Arthur-saga, set forth in the Introduction to this study, has lately been challenged by Professor H. Zimmer, in his two learned dissertations, specified below.¹

1836-48, 8vo. P. Paris, *Les Romans de la Table Ronde mis en nouveau langage et accompagnés de recherches sur l'origine et le caractère de ces grandes compositions* 5 vols., Paris, 1868-77, 16mo.

F. G. Bergmann, *Sur l'origine et la signification des Romans du Saint Graal*. Strasbourg, 1842. 8vo. An English translation of this appeared under the title, "The San Gréal, an Enquiry into the origin and signification of the Romance of the S. G." Edinburgh, 1870. 16mo.

Gaston Paris, *Histoire littéraire de France*, vol. xxx. pp. 1-270, les versions en vers et l'origine des Romans de la Table Ronde. G. Paris, *La littérature française au moyen-âge*, Paris, 1888, 16mo. G. Paris, *Romania*, vol. x. pp. 465-96, Lancelot; vol. xii. pp. 457-534, Le Roman de la charette; vol. xv. pp. 461-602, and vol. xvi. pp. 288-363, Tristan. G. Paris and J. Ulrich, *Introduction to the Huth Merlin*.

V. San Marte (Albert Schulz), *Gottfried von Monmouth Hist. Reg. Britannie und der Brut Tysilio*, Halle a. S. 1854, 8vo. San Marte, *Die Arthur-Sage und die Märchen des roten Buches von Hengest, Quedlinburg und Leipzig*, 1842, 8vo. San Marte, *Beiträge zur bretonischen und celtisch-germanischen Heldensage, Quedlinburg und Leipzig*, 1847, 8vo. San Marte, *Die Sagen von Merlin*, 1853, 8vo. San Marte, *Parcival Studien*, Halle, 1861-62, 8vo.

F. Zarncke, *Zur Geschichte der Gralsage*, in *Paul's und Braune's Beiträge*. Halle a. S., 1876. Vol. iii. pp. 304-334.

A. Birsch-Hirschfeld, *Die Sage vom Graal, ihre Entwicklung und dichterische Ausbildung in Frankreich und Deutschland im 12ten und 13ten Jahrhundert, Eine litterarhistorische Untersuchung*. Leipzig, 1877. 8vo.

Eugen Koelbing, *Die nordische und die englische Version der Tristan-Sage*. Part I.: *Tristrams Saga ok Isondar* (1878). Part II.: *Sir Tristrem* (1882). Heilbronn, 8vo.

Wolfgang Goltner, *Die Sage von Tristan und Isolde. Studie über ihre Entstehung und Entwicklung im Mittelalter*. München, 1887. 8vo.

Paul Maertens, *Zur Lancelotsage, eine litterarhistorische Untersuchung*. Vol. v. pp. 557-706, of *Böhmer's Romanische Studien*. (Comp. Roman. x. 307, 477.)

¹ Professor H. Zimmer's two articles referred to above are (1) *Criticism of M. G. Paris' treatise* in vol. xxx. of the "Histoire littéraire de France" in No. 20, pp. 785-832, of *Göttingische gelehrte Anzeigen*, October 1890; and (2) the supplement to the first article: *Bretonische Elemente in der Arthursage des Gottfried von Monmouth*, in *Zeitschrift für französische Sprache und Litteratur*, vol. xii. pp. 231-56.

The essence of these two most ingenious articles, which show their author's deep knowledge and critical acumen, may be summed up as follows:—

(1) The "matière de Bretagne" did not reach the poets of northern France through Wales, as M. Gaston Paris conjectures, but through the "doppelsprachigen und francoisierten Bretonen." Through Geoffrey of Monmouth's remarkable "*Historia regum Britannie*" the French poets of the north became more intimately acquainted with material which had been, very probably, familiar to them for a long time.

(2) Geoffrey certainly invented the frame and the sequence of events of his stories, but not the incidents forming their basis. The latter he drew from various sources (Nennius, Gildas, Welsh Heroic-Sagas, Bretonic sources). He dealt freely with them as best suited his purpose, and this explains the misplacing and amplification of various incidents; but he cannot be credited with having altogether invented anything. Books 8-11 of the "*Historia*," &c., are peculiarly marked by richness of detail, and deal with a

Sir Thomas Malory "reduced," as Caxton tells us, his work from certain books in French, and, indeed, no less than fifty-six times in the course of the work are these sources referred to in terms such as "the frensshe booke maketh no mencyon," 40, 18; "as it telleth in the booke," 63, 18; "for as the frensshe book saith," 28, 4, &c. (See "List of Names and Places," vol. ii. under "Book.")

The term "reduced" is to be taken literally, the materials worked up into "Le Morte Darthur" being about ten times as long as the book itself. It has long since been recognised that these "French books" must have been the different branches of the Arthurian romances referred to above, but how far this was so, and what particular versions were used, has not as yet been investigated. In two cases, at least, the French book is an English one, as we shall see hereafter.

Before entering upon the detailed critical examination of the relationship of "Le Morte Darthur" to its different English and French sources, I think it well to point out the various versions made use of by Sir Thomas Malory, and to give a description of them.¹

The romance of "Merlin" must be considered as the basis of the first four books. There exist three different phases of this romance—the prose-rendering of the "Merlin" by Robert de Boron,² the

period which forms the background or basis of the Welsh tradition. If Geoffrey had not had popular sources at his disposal for this part of his work, how can this richness of detail be explained? how can the interruption of the chronicle-like character of his work in this part be accounted for? especially when we consider that at an earlier period he might have invented whatever he chose, without meeting such a strong contradiction as in the portion treating the fifth and sixth centuries.

(3) M. G. Paris improperly applies Britannia to modern England, instead of to modern Brittany. Wherever Geoffrey uses in his "Historia," &c., *Cambria* (ii. 1, iv. 19, vi. 16, vii. 4, viii. 14, 15) or *Gualia* (ii. 1, iv. 19, xii. 20; compare xii. 19) he can only refer to Wales. The "*Liber Britannici sermonis vetustissimus*," which, as he says, was brought to him ex Britannia, by his friend and contemporary, Archdeacon Walter of Oxford, can only have its origin in Brittany. Geoffrey was acquainted with the fact that the romantic Arthur-saga of the "Bretonen" deviated considerably from the saga then flourishing in Wales, from which he also derived several incidents for the mosaic of which his "Historia" consists, and this may be considered as the cause for attributing his work, full of unheard-of events, to the "bretonische Quellen."

"Criticism and further research," is the conclusion of the learned author's dissertation, will have to teach us if this theory of the origin and history of the "matière de Bretagne" does not, at least to some extent, show the impossibility of the theory set forth by M. G. Paris in his Introduction to *Les Romans en vers du cycle de la Table ronde*, vol. xxx. pp. 1-19 of the *Histoire littéraire de France*.

¹ See the letter I published on this subject in *The Academy*, London, January 4, 1890.

² Of the poem of Robert de Boron only 504 verses are preserved in the unique MS. of the Bibliothèque Nationale, No. 20047. It was printed by François Michel under the title, "Roman du Saint-Graal," Bordeaux, 1841 (vv. 3515-4018); reprinted in the Appendix of "The History of the Holy Grail," edited by F. J. Furnivall for the Roxburghe Club, London, 1863, 4to, pp. 41-46. G. Weidner, *Der Prosaroman, Joseph von Arimathia*, Oppeln, 1881, 8vo. The prose-account of "Merlin" is, however, much interpolated, and contains more details than the original poem by R. de Boron.

"Ordinary Merlin," and the "Suite de Merlin,"¹ wrongly attributed to Robert de Boron.

The "Merlin" by Robert de Boron, and the "Ordinary Merlin" are, taken together, represented by MS. 747 of the Bibliothèque Nationale, the French MSS. Add. 10292, ff. 76-216, and Harl. 6340 of the British Museum,² the unique English MS. of the University Library, Cambridge (which is an almost literal translation of the French text), edited by Mr. H. B. Wheatley for the Early English Text Society, as "Merlin," or "The Early History of King Arthur;" a fragment of a similar MS. to that of the Cambridge University Library is preserved in the Miscell. MS. Rawl. No. 1370, pp. 315-17; part of the Huth MS.,³ and finally several printed editions⁴ of the beginning of the sixteenth century. Chapters

¹ Compare Messrs. G. Paris and J. Ulrich, "Merlin," *Société des Anciens textes français*. Paris, 1888. 8vo. Introd. pp. xxiii. ff.

² Add. MS. 10292 is written on vellum early in the fourteenth century; three columns of fifty lines each go to a full page. The borders are illuminated as well as the initials. There are 177 miniatures in the MS.—Harl. 6340, ff. 1-292 verso. Paper fifteenth century; double columns with thirty-five lines each. Mr. Ward, in his "Catalogue of Romances" (pp. 343-44), says about the two MSS., "Add. is not so full as the text of the printed editions," "Harl. is written at a greater detail than the text of the printed edition."—The fact is that both texts are exactly alike, representing only different stages of the French language; both, therefore, contain more than the printed Merlin. I have tried to fix the date of Harl. MS. 6340 by the help of the water-mark in the paper, which is a bunch of grapes. I found a very similar mark, though not absolutely alike, in the paper on which the Mazarin Bible is printed in 1455. I believe the MS. may fairly be dated "between 1445 and 50." The MS. in the University Library, Cambridge, is, with very few exceptions, an almost literal English translation from a very similar MS. The division of the text into paragraphs, however, which agrees in the French MSS., is different in the English one.

³ The Huth MS., which I saw on the occasion of a visit to the Huth Library, June 19, 1890, was written at the end of the thirteenth or the beginning of the fourteenth century. It consists of 229 leaves small folio. Belonging originally to the "fameux M. Du Cange d'Amiens," it passed into the possession of "Comte Corbière," and became finally the property of Mr. Alfred Huth, London. (For more particulars see the Catalogue of the Huth Library, and Messrs. Paris and Ulrich's Introd.)—As to its contents, the Huth MS. consists of two different parts, which are not, however, materially separated. The first part occupies ff. 1-75^a, the second ff. 75^b to the end. The first part has again two different sections: (a) from f. 1-19^b is a copy of the prose-romance "Joseph d'Arimathie" by Robert de Boron (not reprinted by Messrs. Paris and Ulrich, for reasons stated in their Introd. p. vii.); (b) from fol. 19^b to 75^a is the prose-rendering of the Merlin by R. de Boron, and the same version, though not always literal, as MS. Add. 10292. From fol. 75^b to the end the text of the Huth MS. is unique in its French form.

⁴ Anthoine Verard printed two folio editions in 1498. The same type is used in both, but the second edition was entirely re-set. There also exist three quarto editions printed at Paris in 1505, 1510 (?), and 1528, and one at Rouen, 1520 (?). Although these printed texts relate the same events to a certain extent, they differ widely from the MSS.; whilst, as a rule, less detailed, they at times contain episodes lacking in the MSS.—*Le Roman de Merlin, Remis en bon François et dans un meilleur ordre (d'après l'original attribué à Robert de Boron) par S. Boulard*. Paris, 1797. 3 vols. Vellum. 16mo.

1 to 18 of the first book are drawn from this version. By "Suite de Merlin" is understood the unique text represented by the Huth MS., from fol. 75^a to the end. It has to be remarked that the Huth MS. is not quite perfect, breaking off in the midst of the adventure of Gawayn, Vwayne, and Marhaus with the three ladies; thus we lack a positive source for the last few chapters of the fourth book, Malory's account being consequently the only known version extant.

The fifth book is not, as M. Gaston Paris supposes (Introduction to the Huth Merlin, p. lxxii.), drawn from the "Ordinary Merlin," but it is a rendering in prose of the English metrical romance, "La Morte Arthure," represented by the unique Thornton MS. in the library of Lincoln Cathedral,¹ which has been several times printed, with occasional references to the English chronicles. This romance is the work of the Scotch poet, Huchown, as conclusively shown by Professor M. Trautmann,² who must also be credited with having first pointed out that Malory made use of it, but his contemptuous reference to Malory as a "Zusammenstoppler" is unjustified, as my studies will show. The sixth book is taken from the "Lancelot"³ as represented by about a dozen French MSS. in the British Museum, all more or less complete and resembling one another; several MSS. in the Bibliothèque Nationale; and several printed editions⁴ of the beginning of the sixteenth century.

As to the seventh book, I can trace no part of its contents in the numerous MSS. I have studied. It cannot be denied that there exists some slight resemblance between the romance entitled "Le beaus Disconus"⁵ and Malory's narrative, but it is not sufficient to

¹ The Thornton MS. in the Lincoln Cathedral Library is a collection of poems and essays on various subjects (comp. Sir Frederic Madden's *Intro. to "Syr Gawayne,"* London, Bannatyne Club, 1839). The *Morte Arthure* was printed from this MS. for the first time in 1847 by J. O. Halliwell, in 1865 by the Rev. George G. Perry, and in 1865 and 1871 by E. Brock, the two latter editions for the E.E.T.S. I have used the latest of these.

² Professor Moritz Trautmann, in his treatise on the Poet Huchown, *Anglia, Zeitschrift für Englische Philologie*, Halle a. S. 1868, vol. i. p. 143 ff.

³ The MSS. of the *Lancelot* in the British Museum are these:—Lansdowne 757; Royal 19 C xiii., 20 B viii., 19 B vii., 20 C vi., 20 D iv., 20 D ii., 14 E iii., Additional 17443, 10293, 10294; Harl. 4419, 6341, 6342. From Royal 14 E iii. and Add. 10294 Dr. F. J. Furnivall printed, in 1864, his edition of "*La Queste del Saint Graal*" for the Roxburghe Club. These MSS. are all more or less deficient; some of them contain only a very small part of the *Lancelot*.

⁴ Ant. Verard printed the *Lancelot* in 1494 twice. For both editions the same type is used, but it was re-set throughout for the second edition. There appeared further an edition in 1513, 3 vols., quarto (printed for Philippe le noire, Libraire, &c.), and in 1533 another folio edition (Jehan Petit).

⁵ *Ly beaus Disconus*: (1) MS. Cott. A ii. Brit. Mus.; (2) National Library, Naples; (3) Lincoln's Inn Library. See E. Koelbing, *Englische Studien*, vol. i. p. 121.—Comp., further, *L'Hystoire de Giglan filz de messire Gauvain qui fut roy de Gallas etc.* Et de



establish any connection between them. This book relates the adventures of Gareth, a brother of syr Gawayn, how he came disguised to King Arthur's court, and was nicknamed by syr Kay "Beaumayns." The whole book has the character of a folk-tale, and differs greatly from the general run of Arthurian adventures. I am inclined to doubt its originally belonging to the Arthurian cycle, to which it may have been adapted by Malory, or by some unknown writer before him, from some now lost French poem. This conjecture is strengthened by the fact that in none of the versions which I have read, and which are represented in Malory's work, is any, even the slightest, reference made to Gareth's exploits on his way to the castle of Lady Lyonesse, or to this lady, her sister Lynet, her brother Gryngamor, or the five brothers whom Gareth overcame and sent to Arthur's court.

In the eighth, ninth, and tenth books Malory follows the prose-version of "Tristan," represented by MS. No. 103 of the Bibliothèque Nationale¹ and by several printed texts of the end of the fifteenth and beginning of the sixteenth centuries, copies of which are in the British Museum.² This version, which is generally attributed to Lucas de Gast,³ differs greatly from the so-called enlarged "Tristan" by Hélié de Boron,⁴ represented by MSS. Add. 5474, Royal 20 D ii., and Egerton 989 in the British Museum. The chapters xxi. to xxviii. of the tenth book, however, are taken from "The Prophecies of Merlin," represented by two fragmentary MSS., Add. 25434 and Harl. 1629, in the British Museum. These chapters narrate the adventures of Alysaunder le orphelyn and the great tournament of Surluse, and, as they are the only part of Malory's sources which has never been printed, I have edited them faithfully, and printed them in the Appendix⁴ to this volume.

The eleventh and twelfth books are again drawn from the above-mentioned "Lancelot," save the last three chapters of the twelfth book, relating the fight between Trystram and Palomydes, which are not to

Geoffroy de Maience son compaignon: tous deux cheualiers de la table Ronde. Lyon, 1503. 4to.—Ritson, *English Metrical Romances*. London, 1802. 8vo. Vol. ii. *Lybeaus Disconus*.—*Histoire Littéraire de France*, vol. xxx. p. 180.

¹ M. G. Paris says, *Romania*, vol. v. 1886, note, p. 481: "Les éditions n'ont pas été faites sur ce ms. même, mais sur un ms. très voisin, qui ne diffère du 103 que par de détails de style," &c.

² The "Tristan" has been printed oftener than any other romance. The first edition dates from Rouen, 1484, two volumes in one, folio. Then follows Verard's edition, Paris, 1505 (?), folio. Other editions appeared at Paris, 1520, 1533, 1554, 1577, and 1586. I have based my treatise on the edition of 1484.

³ As M. G. Paris has shown most ingeniously in the Introduction to the *Huth Merlin*, the two names "Lucas de Gast" and "Hélié de Boron" are fictitious.

⁴ Information about the MSS. containing these adventures precedes my edition in the Appendix to the present volume.

be met with in any of the above-named versions of the "Tristan."¹ At the end of the twelfth book Malory says, "Here ends the second book of syr Trystram that was drawn oute of Frensshe, but here is no rehersal made of the thyrd book." It is not quite clear what is meant by this third book, as the source which Malory follows for his whole account only consists of two books; therefore he must either refer to the so-called enlarged "Tristan" ascribed to Hélie de Boron, or he knew another third part which we no longer possess. I believe that he meant the "Tristan" as enlarged by Hélie de Boron, because the references he makes to Trystram's death in the eleventh chapter of the nineteenth and in the sixth chapter of the twentieth book, according to which Trystram suffered death from being stabbed by king Mark from behind, correspond exactly to the account given in that version: "Ensi comme tristram aloit harpant devant la roine yseut enguise de menestrel & li rois march le fiert par derriere dun glaue" (Add. 5474, fol. 290 verso). Very similar is the account given in the romance of "Méliadus";² there the King Meliadus dreams that King Mark stabs his nephew "iusques a la croix parmy le corps."

The thirteenth to the close of the seventeenth book represent the Quest of the Holy Grail as it is found in the "Lancelot," and as we can avail ourselves of it in Dr. Furnivall's³ edition for the Roxburghe Club (1864) from MSS. Royal 14 E iii. and Add. 10294 in the British Museum.

The eighteenth book follows apparently two versions: the "Lancelot" and the English metrical romance "Le Morte Arthur" as represented by Harl. MS. 2252. Here Malory greatly alters the sequence of events. Perhaps he knew a version which combined the peculiarities of both versions. The twentieth chapter of this book and the introductory lines of the first chapter in the twentieth book are, as well as some other passages in the two last books of "Le Morte Darthur," evidently Malory's own.

As to the nineteenth book, I agree with M. Gaston Paris (Romania, xii. 1883, pp. 459-534) that Malory, besides the "Lancelot," had another source from which he drew the first part of the episode of Malegeaunt and Gueneuer; or else that a previous version existed combining the two accounts. The last four chapters of this book, describing the handling of syr Vrre's wounds, cannot be traced. I

¹ In MS. 5474, fol. 301, col. 2, an account is given of the christening of Palomydes, but it differs widely from Malory's version.

² Méliadus de Leonnoys. Paris, 1528. Folio.

³ La Queste del Saint Graal, ed. by F. J. Furnivall for the Roxburghe Club. London, 1864. 4to.

believe Malory adapted them from some now lost French lay. The enumeration of all the knights who, at Arthur's request, handle Vyre's wounds is undoubtedly Malory's own; he seems, as I can prove from other instances, to have had a great predilection for such catalogues of names.

The twentieth and twenty-first books are a prose-rendering of the English metrical romance, "Le Morte Arthur," as given in the Harl. MS. 2252;¹ the "Lancelot" may occasionally also have been used.

It must, however, be observed that all the MSS. mentioned here

¹ "Le Morte Arthur." Edited, from the Harleian MS. 2252 in the British Museum, by F. J. Furnivall. With a prefatory essay by the late Herbert Coleridge on "Arthur." London and Cambridge, 1864. 12mo. When studying "Le Morte Arthur," I noticed that the Harl. MS. 2252 needs emending in its present shape, as the first half presents anomalies in the narrative. I made a suggestion to that effect in a letter to *The Academy* of Nov. 15, 1890. Ll. 832-951 are, as they now stand, misplaced; they belong to the episode of "Guenever and Mador de la porte;" they interrupt the episode of "Lancelot and the fair Maiden of Ascolot." If ll. 952-1181 are inserted after l. 831, the first-mentioned episode is continued and completed. This deficiency has escaped Messrs. F. J. Furnivall (edition of *Le Mort Arthur*, 1864), G. Ellis (*Specimens of Early English Metrical Romances*, Lond. 1805, vol. iii. pp. 308-387), and H. G. Ward (*Catalogue of the Romances in the MSS. of the British Museum*, pp. 405-6). These gentlemen only state that the Harl. MS. lacks one or two leaves after fol. 102.

I have satisfied myself, by an examination of the binding of the portion of the volume which contains "Le Morte Arthur," that the MS. wants one leaf. It is thus arranged:—

1. Ff. 86-101 form a "gathering" of eight sheets, i.e., sixteen leaves.
2. Fol. 102 is a single leaf.
3. Ff. 103-14 form a "gathering" of six sheets, or twelve leaves.
4. Ff. 115-130 form a "gathering" of eight sheets, or sixteen leaves.
5. Ff. 131, 132, 133, and 133* represent two sheets, or four leaves.

It is obvious from this analysis that it was intended to write the MS. on paper arranged in "gatherings" of eight sheets. On fol. 102 another handwriting begins. The new scribe, probably forgetting the intended arrangement, did what often happens, viz., he wrote on the second leaf of the same sheet, of which fol. 102 is the first half, and the second leaf is the very folio missing in the MS. If it had been otherwise, there ought to be a corresponding leaf missing between ff. 114 and 115, which is not the case.

The gap which is caused by the deficiency of the folio can be filled up as nearly as possible by ll. 832-951, which are, as above stated, misplaced. By transposing these lines into the gap after fol. 102, the episode of "Guenever and Mador de la Porte" becomes a complete whole if we omit ll. 912-927, because they are to a certain extent repeated by ll. 1318-1331 (comp., e.g., ll. 916, 917, and 919 to ll. 1318, 1320, and 1321), and also ll. 928-951 as being an apparent contradiction to ll. 1467-1503.

How did this confusion arise? I venture to think that I can satisfactorily answer this question. The poet, while transcribing the French prose into English verse, finding that he had so far abandoned his source that it was impossible for him to connect his narrative with the ensuing events, re-wrote a part of his work, and very likely marked the portions which he wished to be omitted. The scribes afterwards neglected or did not understand his indications, and so the Harl. MS. contains a certain portion twice, which varied only in the end. Thus, the folio missing after 102 evidently contained ll. 832-911 + two lines rhyming with ll. 1318 and 1319—and completing ll. 1318-1323 to a

as the sources of "Le Morte Darthur" can only be styled thus in so far as they contain the same versions as those Malory actually had before him when compiling his work; in no case can we assert with certainty that this or that is the very MS., or even a faithful copy of it, which the compiler had before him.

After these general remarks, I now proceed to critically examine the sources, one by one, not as they are arbitrarily arranged in "Le Morte Darthur," but according to the great branches of Arthurian romances, to which the single parts belong. In accordance with this arrangement, the plan for my studies on Malory's sources is as follows:—

I. "Merlin," or the early history of King Arthur. (a) The "Merlin by R. de Boron," book i. 1-7; (b) the "Ordinary Merlin," book i. 8-18; (c) the "Suite de Merlin," book i. 18-28, books ii, iii, and iv. 1-25; (d) "La Morte Arthure," by Huchown, book v.

II. "Lancelot," or the later history and the death of King Arthur (a) Book vi.; (b) book xi.; (c) book xii. 1-10; (d) books xiii.-xvii.; (e) book xix.; (f) "Le Morte Arthur," Harl. MS. 2252: (a) book xviii., (b) books xx. and xxi.

III. "Tristan," or the adventures of Syr Tristram. (a) Books viii.-ix.; (b) book x., except 32-50.

IV. "The Prophecies of Merlin," or the adventures of Alysaunder le orphelyn, and the great tournament of Surluse. Book x. 32-50.

In the table¹ facing this page I have endeavoured to give the reader, graphically, an idea of the relative length in pages, of the number of chapters of the twenty-one books of "Le Morte Darthur," and of their relationship to the principal branches of Arthurian romance.

The shorter side of the table is divided into twenty-one equal parts, according to the number of books; on each of these parts, as a basis, is constructed a rectangle, the longer side of which is determined by the number of pages each book fills up in the Caxton. As the tenth book is the longest, and runs through one hundred and fifty-eight pages, the longer side of the table is divided into one hundred and sixty parts, marked by the numbers, 10, 20, 30, &c., and each representing one page of the Caxton. The twenty-one

stanza of eight lines—or eighty-two lines, the exact number of lines contained by several folios of the Harl. MS.

If these proposed emendations are accepted, the episode of "Guenever and Mador de a Porte" would consist of (1) ll. 832-910; (2) two lines + 1318-1671, and, thus arranged, would be in accordance with the account given of the episode by the various MSS. of the "Lancelot" in the British Museum, and with that of Malory's "Le Morte Darthur," book xviii. chaps. iii. to viii.

¹ The table is set up in type from the original drawn up by myself.

rectangles, therefore, are graphically the whole of "Le Morte Darthur," each single one showing the volume of one book. It is not quite clear why Caxton, who owns, in his Preface, to have divided Malory's work into books and chapters, has distributed the material so very unequally. He might very well have arranged the contents of his eighth, ninth, and tenth books into six books of lengths proportionate to the rest.

The inner columns on the right and left side of the table contain in Roman figures the numbers of the books; the outer columns indicate in Arabic figures, on the right the number of pages, on the left the number of chapters of each single book. The brackets on the left, outside the table, link together such books of "Le Morte Darthur" as belong to the same branch of Arthurian romance. Inside the twenty-one rectangles are quoted, in exact proportion to the number of pages to which they correspond, the English and French romances which contain the same versions as those Malory had before him, whereas, outside, on the same level with each rectangle, are named the MSS. and printed editions containing those romances.

I. THE "MERLIN," OR THE EARLY HISTORY OF KING ARTHUR.

A. THE "MERLIN" BY ROBERT DE BORON.

BOOK I. CHAPTER I.-VII.: THE HUTH MS.

HE "Merlin" by Robert de Boron has to be considered as the source of the first seven chapters¹ of the first book of "Le Morte Darthur." From the remark page 40, 11, "the Frensshe booke maketh no mencyon," we may presume that Malory used a French MS., though, as we shall see later on, he cannot always be trusted; where he speaks of the "Frenssche booke," he has sometimes availed himself of an English one. His MS. was evidently much like ff. 19^b-75 of the Huth MS., Add. 10292, and Harl. 6340 of the British Museum, or MS. No. 747 of the Bibliothèque Nationale. As Robert de Boron's Merlin is accessible to all readers in the fine edition of MM. G. Paris and J. Ulrich, I have based my remarks upon their text (pp. 98-146), though the Huth MS. does not represent this text in its best form.² This portion is also

¹ Sir E. Strachey in his Globe edition altered the division of the chapters in book I. As M. G. Paris has quoted from the Globe edition, I must state that chapters i.-vii. of my edition correspond to chapters i.-iv. of the Globe edition.

² "Le deuxième morceau (fol. 19^b-75) est également (comme le 'Joseph d'Arimathie') la mise en prose d'un poème de Robert de Boron, du *Merlin*, dont nous ne possédons que 504 vers sous leur forme originale. Cette mise en prose se retrouve dans un grand nombre de manuscrits; mais elle n'a pas encore été imprimée, si ce n'est dans les éditions des xv^e et xvi^e siècles. C'est ce qui nous a engagés à publier la leçon du manuscrit Huth, bien qu'elle soit loin d'être bonne." A brief abstract of the contents of the "Merlin" is printed in the first volume of July 1775 of the "Bibliothèque Universelle des Romans," pp. 109-140. I intend to publish "Le Roman de Merlin," in an autotype facsimile (two-thirds of the original size) of Add. MS. 10292, as the basis for my forthcoming "History of the Merlin-Legend in England and France."

accessible in Mr. H. B. Wheatley's edition of the MS.¹ in the Cambridge University Library, and in the rare impressions of the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries. Finally, I must mention the version of "Arthour and Merlin," an English metrical romance from the first quarter of the fourteenth century, No. 27 of the Auchinleck MS., Advocates' Library, Edinburgh.²

The library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, contains in MS. No. 80 the "Merlin" by Henry Lonelich the Skynner,³ which I understand is going to be edited for the Early English Text Society by Miss Mary Bateson and Prof. E. Koelbing. This version, though of importance for the study of the Merlin-Legend in England, does not concern us here. (Compare the chapter on "The Ordinary Merlin.")

¹ Though the subject-matter of the MSS. is exactly the same, they do not always agree literally, not to speak of the different periods of the language they represent. The English translation, though closely following the French original on the whole, occasionally omits or adds small passages. It is impossible to say whether these alterations were introduced by the translator, or were present in the copy from which he translated. As an example, I have printed a small portion side by side of—

HUTH MS. FOL. 57a.

Ensi departi la cours, et ains qu'elle fust
departie pria li rois a tous ses barons que
il fuissent arriere a la Penthecouste si
comme il avoient esté a cele feste, et
aussi a toutes les dames. Et chascuns
l'otroie moult volentiers. Et quant li dus
de Tintaguel se departi de la court, li rois
le convoia et hounera moult. Au departir
si dist li rois a Ygerne tant seulement que
il volott bien que elle senst que elle empor-
toit son cuer avec lui. Et elle n'en fist
anis samblant que elle l'entendist. &c.

CAMBRIDGE MS. FOL. 21^b.

Thus hilde the kyng that feeste that yet
is with-outen wif and was so supprised
with the love of ygerne that he wiste not
how to do / and thus departed the court /
but firste the kyng praid alle the barons
to be at Cardoel at Pasch and so he prayed
alle the ladies, and thei graunted to be ther /
Whan the Duke of Tintagel departed fro
[the] court the kyng hym conveyed and
gretly hym honoured at theyr departyng /
and whan he hadde hym a while conveyed
he toke leve, and yede though the court
in his othir necessitees &c.

Compare further my notes in the "Ordinary Merlin." I may here at once state that, while comparing the French MS. texts with Mr. Wheatley's, I repeatedly noticed trifles which appear to be mistakes on the part of the editor; in addition to these cases, I came across several passages where the inter-punctuation distinctly shows that the editor misunderstood his text. I am afraid a minute collation of the text with the MS. would confirm my fears that this text is not absolutely reliable, as the texts of the E.E.T.S. generally are. I am inclined to think Mr. Wheatley entrusted somebody who was no expert with the supervision of the press-work. For my purpose, and with the French MSS. at my side, the text was sufficient, but whoever supplies the critical apparatus to The English Prose-Merlin must collate it again with the original.

² The English metrical romance in the Advocates' Library, Edinburgh, Auchinleck MS. No. 27, was edited as "Arthour and Merlin" in 1837 for the Abbotsford Club by W. B. D. Turnbull. An analysis communicated by Sir Walter Scott to G. Ellis is to be found in the latter's *Early English Metrical Romances*, 3 vols., 1805, vol. i. pp. 233-307. Part of a MS. similar to the Auchinleck MS. No. 27 is also in the library of Lincoln's Inn, No. 150. The first eighteen chapters of Malory correspond to ll. 2249-4394 of "Arthour and Merlin." Professor Koelbing has promised a critical edition of this romance.

³ From this MS. Dr. Furnivall edited Lonelich's *History of the Holy Grail*. London, 1874-78. E.E.T.S. Extra Series, Nos. xx., xxiv., xxviii., and xxx.

It is at once noticeable that Malory has considerably condensed the narrative of his source. This part of his work is not merely translated, but re-told and in the strict sense of the word "reduced." The following observation shows to what extent this "reduction" is carried. The first seven chapters of the first book fill nine pages (35-44) of my edition; this portion answers to forty-eight pages (98-146) of MM. G. Paris and J. Ulrich's edition; a page of the former contains a little less than a page of the latter. Malory's account is thus "reduced" to about a fifth of the original. The portion of the Huth MS. corresponding to the first chapter of "Le Morte Darthur"¹ begins fol. 56^o thus:—

"Chi endroit dist li contes que Merlins s'em parti d'Uter Pandragon et vint en Norhomerlande a Blaise, se li dist ces choses et ces establissemens de cele table et maintes autres choses que vous orrés en son livre. Et ensi demoura Merlins plus de deus ans qu'il ne vint nient a court. Et ensi fu un grant tans que li rois tint acoustumeement sa court a Carduel, tant que une fois (56^a) avint un jour que il prist talent le roi que il semonroit tous ses barons, et i amenaissent tout lor femes et un et autre. Ensi les fist li rois semondre al Noel. Et envia par tout ses lettres. Ensi comme li rois l'ot commandé si le firent. Et bien sachiés que il i vint grant plenté de damoiseles, de pucies et de chevaliers. Je ne puis ne ne doi tous chiaus dire qui a cele court furent mais vous conterai chiaus et celes dont mes contes parole. Tant voel je bien que vos [tu] sach(i)és que li dus de Teintaguel i fu, et si i amena sa feme Ygerne."

Malory modifies this story considerably. In order to have a beginning, he speaks of great wars which the king has made against the mighty duke of Cornwall, and of a peace arranged "by the meanes of grete lordes." The visit of the duke and his wife to the court as related by Malory gives the impression of a festival of reconciliation. In the "Ordinary Merlin" both the duke and his wife are introduced into the story here for the first time. To facilitate the understanding of the narrative, and to throw light on various incidents not intelligible in Malory, I here give a brief *résumé* of the "Merlin" up to the point where Malory takes it up.

When² Our Lord had descended to Hell and rescued Adam, Eve and many others with them, the fiends, alarmed, assemble and consult how they can get mankind into their power again. After debating a long time, they arrive at

¹ MS. Add. 10292, ff. 92^b-94^d; Harl. MS., 42^b-47^b; Cambridge MS., ff. 21^a-25^a ed. H. B. Wheatley, pp. 62-74; Auchinleck MS. No. 27, ed. 1837, lines 2249-2504.

² This is a synopsis of Huth MS., ff. 19^b-56^d; Add. MS., ff. 76^a-92^a (ff. 1-75^a being occupied by "li comencemens de lestoire del saine graal"); Harl. MS. ff. 1-42^a; Cambridge MS., ff. 1^a-21^a, print. text, pp. 1-64; Auchinleck MS., ll. 1-2248 (in this version the sequence of events is greatly altered. The council of the devils, &c., occurs l. 639 ff.).

Compare, further—1. The above-mentioned "Merlin" by Lancelot (Corpus Christi

the conclusion that they must have a man endowed with their powers, and ready to beguile his fellow-creatures. One of them, who has great power over a woman, declares himself ready to beget a child which shall become the obedient instrument of their will. This fiend, with the woman's connivance, ruins her husband, kills his cattle and horses, slays his son, drives the woman to hang herself, and finally causes the husband's death through all these misfortunes. The man leaves three daughters, whom the fiend now endeavours to ensnare. The youngest is seduced by a young man, and becomes pregnant. As, according to the law of the time, every woman who falls has either to become a prostitute or to die, the unfortunate girl is brought before the judges; they condemn her, and secretly bury her alive. A holy man, later on described as Blaise, goes to the two surviving sisters, consoles and advises them. The elder sister lends him an open ear; not so the younger. The fiend, dissatisfied with the intervention of Blaise, now sends a woman to the younger sister. This woman describes to the girl all the pleasures that are waiting for her, and persuades her to leave her sister, who would only try to prevent her from partaking of them. The girl follows her advice, and abandons herself to all men. The elder sister tells Blaise what has happened, he cautions her against the fiend, advises her to be good, always to make the sign of the cross before going to sleep, and never to stay in the dark. On a Saturday, the fiend induces the younger sister to go with some young men to see the elder one; all are in an excited state, they quarrel, the elder reproaches the younger sister with her conduct, and is beaten. In her indignation she throws herself dressed on her bed, forgetting all Blaise has advised her. The devil profits by this moment and renders her pregnant. Awaking, she perceives her misfortune, but is unable to explain it. She goes again to Blaise and tells him what has happened. He refuses at first to believe her, but soon finds out that she tells the truth. He cautions her to be chaste for all her future life, and promises her absolution. Her state soon becomes publicly known; she must acknowledge that she is pregnant, but she cannot tell who is her child's father. Nobody believes her statement; Blaise consoles her and promises to assist her. She is summoned before the judges. Blaise persuades them to lock her up till after her delivery. She is put into a tower and watched by two women. After some time the child is born. As the offspring of the devil, he knows the past, and receives from God, for his mother's sake, knowledge of the future. The child's body is covered with hair, a fact which frightens both the mother and the two women. He is christened, and called "Merlin," after his mother's father. When he is eighteen months old, the women declare they will stay no longer. The

College, Cambridge, MS. No. 80); 2. (a) Harl. MS. No. 6223, British Museum; (b) MS. No. 150, library of Lincoln's Inn, London; (c) The "Merlin" in Bishop Percy's Folio MS. (edited by J. W. Hales and F. J. Furnivall, London, 1867-68, 3 vols., Merlin, vol. I. 417-496); and (d) Douce MS. No. 236, Bodleian Library, Oxford. A critical examination of the relationship of these four English metrical versions to one another and to the English prose-version would be an interesting and meritorious task. Of course I cannot attempt to enter upon it here, but I believe, as concerns the latter question, that both the English metrical and prose-versions go back directly to the French prose-version, of course to various and slightly different MSS.

mother weeps and implores them, and is fearful on account of her impending judgment. But the child suddenly opens his lips and tells his mother to fear nothing. She is so terrified that she drops the child on the ground, but he is not hurt, and goes on speaking to her. The two women are much frightened, and tell other people the wonder they have witnessed. The time of the trial approaches. The mother laments and cries, but the child smiles and comforts her. Both mother and child are brought before the judges. Blaise also appears. Again examined, she persists in her first declaration: she does not know the father of her child. The judges refuse to believe her. The child now declares that his mother is innocent, and requests Blaise to give evidence in favour of his mother and to fix the date of her conception. One of the judges declares that all this will be useless; she must by all means give the name of the father of her child. "I know my father better," suddenly says Merlin to the judge, "than you yours; not my mother, but yours, ought to be burnt."—"If you can prove what you say," replies the judge, "your mother shall be released." The mother of the judge is subsequently sent for, and soon confesses that Merlin is right, for indeed a priest is the judge's father. To spare his own mother, the judge now acquits Merlin's mother; he questions the child about many things, and learns from him that a fiend has engendered him, that he has a knowledge of the past from the devil, and the power of discerning future things from God. Merlin's mother is set free; the priest, on hearing of his disgrace, drowns himself. This chapter finishes with conversation between Blaise and Merlin. The latter asks the former to write a book of all he will tell him; Blaise agrees, on condition that Merlin shall never beguile him. Merlin then gives him the details for the history of Joseph, of Alain, and of the holy vessel, and finally of his birth.

Merlin tells Blaise that he will be sought by some men from the west who have promised to kill him, but, when they find him, they will have no power to carry their promise out. He will go with them, but Blaise will go to those who keep the holy vessel.¹

King Constance of Bretayne has three sons: Moyne, Pendragon, and Vther;

The Huth MS. and the Cambridge MS. differ in this passage considerably. The former, fol. 31b: "Et quant je m'en irai avec iaus, tu t'en iras en ces parties ou les gens sont qui ont che saint graal, et tous jours mais sera ta painne et tes livres retrais et volentiers ois de toutes gens. Mais il ne sera pas en auctorité, pour chou que tu n'es pas ne ne pues estre des apostles. Ne li apostle ne misent vnques riens en escrit de nostre signeur que il n'eussent veu et oi, et tu n'i mès riens que tu ales [n'ales] veu et oi d'antrui que de moi.

"Et ensi comme je sui obscurs et serai enviers chiaus ou je ne me vaurrai esclairier, ensi sera tous li livres celée, et peu avenra que ja nus en face bonté. Et tu l'en porteras quant je m'en irai avec chiaus qui me verront querre. Si sera Joseph [et li livres des lignies que je t'ai amentees] avec le tien et le mien; et tu avras ta painne finée et tu seras teuls comme tu dois estre en lour compaignie; lors si assamblera tes livres au sien, si sera bien la [ma] chose prouvée de ma painne et de la tole. Ensi en avront mierchi, se iaus plaist. Et il proieront nostre signour por nous. Et quant li doi livre seront assamblé, si i avra un biel livre. Et li doi seront une meesme chose fors tant que je ne puis dire, ne drois n'est, les privees paroles de Joseph et de Jesucrist. 'Et Engleterre

he dies, and Moyne, his eldest son, becomes his successor; he is young and has no energy, and soon Vortiger his seneschal has all the power in his hands. The heathen make war against the king; Vortiger declines to lead the army, and the king is entirely defeated. Vortiger is requested by the barons to become their king; he does not refuse, but declares he could not do so as long as the king lives. Moyne is now murdered by twelve of the barons, and the crown is offered to Vortiger, who, whilst severely blaming the murderers, accepts it. The two younger brothers, Pendragon and Vther, are led abroad by their guardians. When the murderers ask for their reward, Vortiger orders them to be torn by horses. Through this cruel act Vortiger loses his popularity, and the relations of the murdered barons commence to rebel against him. He overcomes them all, and expels them from the country. His people begin to hate Vortiger. To consolidate his position he makes an alliance with the Saisnes (Cambridge MS. has Danes or Saisnes), and marries one of Hangus' [Aungier's] daughters, though she is a heathen. For his personal safety he intends to build a strong tower. The work is begun, but three times the ground-walls break down as soon as they are erected. Nobody can account for this strange occurrence. The king asks his wise men. They are unable to answer his question, but read in the stars that a fatherless child would cause them all to die. They agree to tell the king his tower would never be finished unless the mortar be mixed with the blood of the fatherless child; this child must be killed as soon as he is found, and before he has a chance of saying a single word to the king.

To get this child into his power, Vortiger sends out twelve messengers, after making them swear that they would kill the child as soon as they found him. Four of them soon come to a town and pass by a group of children playing. Merlin is among these children, and, knowing that the messengers are looking for him, he hits one of his playmates very hard with his stick, so that he swears at him and calls him fatherless boy. Having thus attracted the messengers' attention, he tells them, he is the child they are seeking. On condition that they save his life, he agrees to accompany them. He takes leave of his mother, who goes into a convent. He bids good-bye to Blaise, and advises him to go to Northumberland, where he promises to come to him now and then and to give him information about all that has to be put into the book. He prophesies Arthur's future glory, which shall also form a subject of the book.

n'avolt adont eut encore roi crestien; ne des rois qu'il avoient esté ne me tient a retraire fors tant que a cist conte monte.'

"Ore dist li contes que un roi avaint en Engleterre qui avoit non Constans. Et icil" &c.

The corresponding passage in the English text, fol. 8^a, is much shorter; it runs thus: "And I shall go with hem; and thou shalt go in to that partyes, where they be that haue the holy vessell. And euer here-after shall thy boke gladly be herde, and he that will knowe the lyf of kynges whiche were in the grete Bretayne be-fore that cristendom come, be-holde the story of Bretons. That is a boke that *maister Martyn* traunslated oute of *latyn*, but here rested this matere. And turneth to the storrye of *Loth* a crysten kyng in Bretayn whos name was *Constance*."

My endeavours to find a clue to the History of the Britons which is said to be translated by Master Martin proved fruitless.

While passing through a town with the messengers, they meet a fellow who carries some leather, which he has just bought to mend his shoes with. Merlin begins to smile, and, being asked the reason, declares the man shall die before he reaches his house. Two of the messengers, who follow him, see him indeed fall dead on the road. In another town they see the burial of a child; the father follows, crying. Merlin laughs again, and declares, not this man, but the priest who chants, ought to cry, because he is really the child's father. They go to ask the mother of the deceased child, and find out that Merlin has said the truth.

Finally they arrive at Vortiger's residence; fearing punishment because they have spared Merlin, the messengers request him to help them. He tells them to relate to the king all the wonders they witnessed on the road, and also that Merlin would tell him why the tower broke down. Merlin is brought before Vortiger. All the wise men who have advised his death are present. He tells them that they wished to kill him because they knew well that he had power to kill them. Below the tower, he explains, is a great water, and below this water are two dragons, one red and one white. These two dragons upset the walls by stretching their limbs. As soon as the dragons come to daylight, the white would kill the red one, and then die. The king at once gives orders to dig out the foundation, and they find everything as Merlin said. Soon after, the tower is finished. Being asked about the signification of the dragons, Merlin wishes first to see all the wise clerks; he declares to them he will spare their lives if they will do as he wishes; as soon as they promise that, he asks them to give up their art. The white dragon signifies the two sons of King Constance, the red one is Vortiger. These two sons will come back, and land near Winchester, and destroy him. Then Merlin goes to Blaize.

Vortiger summons his people to assist him, and proceeds to Winchester to await the arrival of Pendragon and Vter. On the day named by Merlin, the two brothers arrive in a vessel. Vortiger is abandoned by all his people, who go over to the side of their legitimate Sovereign. He retreats to his strong castle, is besieged, and finally burnt in it. Pendragon is made king. He first directs his arms against Aungier. He besieges him more than six months in a castle called Vysee. The five barons who had formerly found Merlin declare that nobody but he would be able to advise how to take the castle. Pendragon despatches messengers to seek Merlin. He appears to them, and tells them the castle can only be taken after Aungier's death; they will find three barons dead when they return to the king; further, they cannot find Merlin unless he wishes to be found, and that will happen when the king goes personally to speak to him in the forest of Northumberland. On their return, the messengers find that three barons have died. They begin to think that the man they met was Merlin himself. When Pendragon hears the news of the messengers, he entrusts the command to his brother Vter, and goes to seek Merlin. One of his men meets an ugly fellow, who keeps wild beasts. This fellow declares he could tell where Merlin is if he liked. The king is told he shall meet Merlin at the next town. Upon his arrival there a messenger from Merlin tells him that his brother Vter has killed Hangus

[Aungier]. The king sends messengers to Vter to inquire if this news be true. On the way the messengers meet Vter, who comes to announce the death of Aungier to Pendragon. One day a man comes to the king, requesting him to assemble all the people who pretend to know Merlin. He privately discloses to Pendragon that he himself is Merlin, and that he is going to make himself known to all people. He further explains that he had warned Vter to be on his guard against Hanguis [Aungier], and how the latter had been killed. He promises to speak to Vter in eleven days. He then goes to Blaise, whilst Pendragon returns to his brother, who confirms all that he tells him, and adds that the man who warned him had promised to come to him in eleven days. On the day in question, the two brothers wait anxiously; a messenger comes to Vter from his mistress with a letter. Then Merlin appears under different disguises to Vter, and finally discloses himself. The two brothers entreat Merlin to remain with them and to become their adviser. He promises to be always at their disposal when they are in need of his service. By Merlin's advice, Pendragon makes peace with the Sarazins, who leave the country.

One of the barons, jealous of Merlin, declares that all the wonders he does are nonsense, mocks at him, and says he does not believe in him. Three times, differently disguised, he asks Merlin about his death. The first time Merlin tells him he would break his neck in falling from his horse, the second time he would be hanged, and lastly he would be drowned. The baron exults over this contradiction, but before long the threefold prophecy is fulfilled. In future Merlin will only tell things of which the truth shall be known after they have happened. Merlin's book of prophecies is commenced.

After some time Merlin announces to Pendragon that the Saracens will return with a strong army to revenge Hanguis' [Aungier's] death; he then points out to him the means by which he can defeat them, and declares one of the brothers shall die in the battle, and the survivor shall erect him a great monument with his help. As he says, so it happens. The Saracens arrive; a great battle takes place near Salisbury. A red dragon appears on the sky, the Britons are victorious, but Pendragon is killed. Vter is made king. He buries the fallen Christians, and by Merlin's advice adopts the name Vterpendragon. Merlin, to honour the memory of Pendragon, transports great stones from Ireland to his tomb, and erects an everlasting monument.

Later on he reveals to Vterpendragon the great secret of the two sacred tables of Christ and Joseph of Arimathea, and induces him to make a third one. Vterpendragon is ready to carry out this advice, and commissions Merlin to erect the round table at Carduel in Wales.

On Whitsuntide next the king comes to Carduel, and Merlin erects the round table. He has selected fifty of the best knights of the country. One seat, however, is left vacant, to be occupied after Vterpendragon's days by a man who shall also accomplish the adventure of the void place at Joseph's table. Then Merlin declares he has to leave the king for a long while. He goes to Blaise. In his absence some of his enemies ask about the void seat, and request permission to try it. They say Merlin is dead, and the king grants them their desire. A knight tries the seat, but disappears into the ground. Merlin returns and reproaches the king. He advises him that to honour the table he

ought to keep all his great feasts at Carduel. The king promises to do so, and calls all his barons with their wives, daughters, sisters, or nieces, to Carduel for the next Christmas. Among the guests are the duke of Tintaguel and his wife Ygerne.

Thus the duke and Ygerne come, like all other invited guests to the court, to assist at the festivities. Malory does not mention "Carduel," where the festival takes place.

Both Ordinary Merlin and Malory agree, then, in stating that Vther, as soon as he sees Ygerne, is smitten with her charms, and endeavours to gain her favours "*car ele estoit moult preudefeme et moult biele.*" In the Ordinary Merlin follows a detailed account of the various means employed by Vther to reach his end; this is much shortened by Malory, and told in ten lines (p. 35, 10-20). In Malory all takes place on the first and only visit. The Ordinary Merlin speaks of three visits, and tells the episode thus:—

Vther sends valuable presents to all ladies, so that Ygerne cannot refuse the most precious one. When the festival is over, all barons and ladies return home, after having promised to return "*a la Penthecouste.*"¹ On parting with the duke and Ygerne, Vther does them great honour, and tells Ygerne that she carries his heart away with her. At the next festival Vther pays the duke and his wife still greater honour, "*si fist le duc et Ygerne seoir decouste lui,*" and makes them great presents. They go home again. Vther feels wretched, and suffers greatly. He can only think of Ygerne. At last he complains of his pains to "*deus des ses privés.*" They advise him to announce another great festival which shall last fifteen days. Vther follows this advice. All his guests return to "Carduel,"² and among them the duke and fair Ygerne. Vther now confides all his sorrows to his "*consillier*" Vrfins,³ and asks him what to do, as he feels he must die if he cannot have Ygerne. Vrfins replies: "*Vous estes moult mauvais, qui pour le desir d'une feme cuidiés morir. Qui oi ains parler de feme qui bien fust priie et requise et (la) on peust donner a li et a cheus qui sont entour li, que elle ne fesist sa volenté?*" He advises the king to make her great presents, and promises to help him with all his power. If the king takes care of the duke, he will speak to Ygerne. He then speaks to her, and offers her great jewels; she refuses to accept them. Ygerne: "*Pour coi me veuls tu donner ces jouaus et ces biaux dons?*" Vrfins: "*Pour vostre sens et por vostre grand biauté. Ie ne vous puis riens donner, que tout li avoir le roi sont vostre, et tous ses cors a vostre plaisir et a vostre volenté faire.*" I. "Comment?" V. "Pour chou

¹ The Cambridge MS., in contradiction to Huth and Add. MS., reads here "Pash."

² All MSS. agree in stating that this visit (which is to last fifteen days) takes place at "Penthecouste," therefore the Huth and Add. MSS. are wrong in stating that the first visit took place at Whitsuntide, and they contain a contradiction.

³ The Huth MS. reads, on pp. 100-119 and 164-65, "Urfin" and "Urfins," on pp. 166-68, "Ulfins." Add. MS. has always "Vlfins."

que vous avés le cuer de lui tout entirement, et est vostres et obeist a vous." I. "Dou quel cuer dites vous?" V. "Dou roi." I. "Dieus! comme est li rois traitres, qui fait samblant del duc amer et (de) moi [veut] honnir! Vrfin, gardés que ja mais n'en parlés," &c. She threatens to tell her husband. Then Vrfin tells the king what has happened. Another day Vrfin advises the king, when they are at table, to send a beautiful golden cup to Ygerne, requesting her to drink out of it for his love. Vther gives the cup to the duke, requesting him to send it to his wife. The duke feels greatly flattered by this honour, and sends the cup by a knight named Bretel to Ygerne. When she receives the cup she is very angry, but she cannot, before her ladies, refuse to comply with the king's wish, as her husband sends the cup. She blames Vrfin severely for this new "traison." After dinner the king comes with the duke to Ygerne's chamber. She suffers much all day. At night she reveals all to her husband, adding, "Et je vous pri que vous m'en menés, car je ne voel plus estre en ceste ville." The duke is very much surprised at his wife's disclosures. He shares her indignation, and resolves to carry her wish out without any delay. He calls his knights together, bids them to be ready at nightfall, declaring that he will later explain all. During the night the duke, his wife and suite leave the court and return home.

When the rumour of the duke's sudden departure reaches the king in the morning, he complains to his barons that the duke has offended him by going away without giving notice or taking leave. They are all ignorant of what has happened, and advise Vther to send messengers to the duke, bidding him to return and to justify his conduct. The duke plainly refuses to obey the king's orders; when the messengers are gone, he tells his people the cause of his departure from the court, requesting them to help him with all their power against Vther. They promise to do so. Upon the receipt of a negative answer, Vther applies again to his barons for advice. They tell him "que il le fache desfier auant a quarante iours." Their advice is acted upon, and the king asks them, "que au chief de quarante iours fuissent a Tintageul comme pour hostoyer." Both parties prepare for war. Vther enters with his army into the duke's country, and burns and ravages it. He soon hears that "li dus estoit a une part en un de ses chastiaus, et sa femme en lautre." He besieges the duke in "en son chastiel," but he cannot conquer this castle. Vrfin finds him one day crying, and, when told the reason, advises him to send for Merlin. Vther is afraid that he has offended Merlin, for he knows, without telling, that he is in need of his help. Vrfin comforts the king. One day, when Vrfin rides through the host, an old man wishes to speak to him; he tells him that the king's troubles are well known to him, and for a fair reward he would point out the man who alone could help Vther. Vrfin tells the king. Both go the next day to the appointed place where Vrfin is to find the old man. On their way thither they find a cripple, who accosts them. Vther bids Vrfin to speak to the cripple. The latter says he is sent by the old man, and bids Vrfin ask Vther who he is. Vther guesses at once that the old man and the cripple are one and the same person, namely, Merlin.

This detailed narrative is thrown by Malory into the first chapter. All the main features of it are to be recognised in Malory's account. Comp. 35, 32, "within forty dayes," with "quarante iours." Malory gives to the castle in which Igrayne is the name Tyntagil, and "Terrabyl" to the one in which the duke is besieged. This name does not occur in the corresponding passage of the "Merlin," but later on, as I shall state (see edition of the Huth MS. vol. i. 241; 252; 261) Malory omits the appearance of Merlin as cripple.

II. (Huth MS., folios 60^d-65^a.) Returning to the camp, Vther and Vrfn find Merlin in his true shape at the royal tent. The king is delighted at his coming, "car il n'est nus hom qui mieus or vous puist aidier de l'amour d'Ygerne." Merlin will help the king to realise his wish, provided he engages himself by oath to grant whatever gift he will ask "sauve s'ounour"; Vrfn has to swear likewise. Vther assents to that: "Lors fist li rois apoter les sains, et illuecques jura li rois et Vrfins que Merlins lour devise que li rois li donra che que Merlins li demandera." Merlin then explains to them how he intends to carry out his covenant. He will give Vther the semblance of the duke, to Vrfn that of Bretiaus, to himself that of Iourdains, the latter being two of the duke's knights. They will all three go to Tintageul, but they must leave the castle again early in the morning. The king bids his barons to be on their guard, but, by Merlin's advice, tells nobody whither he goes. When Vther, Vrfn, and Merlin are near Tintageul, the latter rubs their bodies and his own with an herb, and are immediately transformed into the shapes of the duke, Bretiaus, and Iourdains. They pass the castle door without any difficulty, as the people think the duke has come to see his wife. Vther goes to Ygerne's chamber, passes the night with her, and begets Arthur. In the morning the rumour spreads in the town "que li dus estoit mors et ses chastiaus pris." Vrfn and Merlin come, in their disguise, and tell the duke [*i.e.* Vther] his people believe he is dead. He declares: "Che n'est pas merueille se il le cuident, car jou issi en tel maniere dou chastiel que nus n'en sot mot." He takes leave of Ygerne, and all three leave the castle hastily. Now Merlin asks his gift: he wishes as soon as he is born to have the son whom Vther has begotten on Ygerne the previous night. Vther grants it. Merlin then washes them with the water of a river, and gives them their natural semblance back. Upon his return to the host Vther finds the rumour confirmed; the duke was really killed during a sortie which he made during the king's absence. Vther feigns sorrow for what has happened, and declares he will make amends to Igerne to the best of his power. Vrfn then acts very ingeniously: he tells the barons the king needs their advice; they ask him for his opinion; he gives it reluctantly, lest they should think he is false. They assure him of their high opinion of him. Vrfn says: "I would advise the king to make peace, and reconcile Ygerne and the duke's relations by all

¹ MS. Add., ff. 94^a-96^r; Harl. MS., ff. 47^b-51^a; Cambridge MS., ff. 25^a-28^b, ed. pp. 74-86; Auchinleck MS., ed. 1837, ll. 2205-2636.

means." His advice is adopted and communicated to the king, who gladly accepts it, and acts accordingly. He sends for Ygerne and all her relations. Merlin comes to Vther and tells him that Vrfin gave this counsel; he is a wise and true knight; he himself could no better advise him. He reminds Vther of his promise; the child's mother might not like it, but it must be done; he would not come again to him till after the child's birth; in the meantime, he would only speak to Vrfin. Vther will soon marry Ygerne, but he must not tell her that he slept with her. Then Merlin goes to Blaise. The king is advised by his council to make peace with Ygerne. He praises Vrfin for having suggested the peace. The same advice is given to Ygerne and her friends. She agrees to make peace. One of her friends asks the king's messengers what amends his lord intends to make. They cannot yet say, but advise the lady and her friends to come to Vther. They all come to Carduel. Vther asks his barons what amends he should make. They declare they dare not tell what they think, and request the king to give them Vrfin as their adviser. Vrfin is of opinion the king should marry Ygerne, and Lot of Orkanie her daughter. Vther's and Ygerne's councils consider the matter and agree there is no better way out of the difficulty. Being asked for their opinions, Vther and Lot agree, and so does Ygerne. All are pleased with the results, and convinced that never did king make such amends to his vassal. Thus Vther marries Ygerne, Lot d'Orkanie her daughter. Lot has five sons, Mordres, Gauvains, Agraunain, Guerrehes and Gaharies. The second daughter of the duke, Morgans, marries king Nentres of Sorhaut; a third daughter, named Morgue, is put into a convent, "et elle aprist tant et si bien que aprist les set ars, et si sot mierveilles d'un art que on apiele astrenomie, et elle en ouvra moult tost et tous jours, et moult sot de fiske, et par cele fiske fu elle apielee Morgue la fee. Les autres enfans adrecha li rois tous, et moult ama les parens le duc."

The second chapter of "Le Morte Darthur" is a simple abridgment of this. Besides one point of importance at the beginning, some slight variations are noticeable at the end. Malory states here, contrary to the version of the Huth, Add., Harl., and Cambridge MSS., that Ulfyns received the semblance of Brastias, and Merlin took that of Iordanus; those MSS. relate that Ulfyn became Iordain, and Merlin took Bretel's semblance. Only the Auchinleck MS. agrees in this point with Malory. This fact shows that the MSS. which Malory and the poet of "Arthour and Merlin" had before them had a common descent.

Malory calls Lot king of "Lowthean and of Orkenay;" only mentions that Morgawse (Morgan) is Gawain's mother, omitting the names of the other three sons, most likely for the reason that he wished later to refer specially to Mordred's birth. Nentres is called king of Garlot, a name "Elayne" is given to the second daughter, and it is stated that Morgan (Morgue) married king Vryence the father of Ewayne le blanche maynys. The Cambridge MS. of Merlin



has Nentres of Garlot, Morgein, but does not mention the names of Elayne and Morgawse.¹ The modifications may therefore be either attributed to Malory or to the source from which he translated.

III.-V. (Huth MS., ff. 65^a-72^a.) "Ensi ot li rois Ygerne et la tint tant que la grossece apparut, et tant que li rois gisoit une nuit avec li, si mist sa main sour son ventre et demanda de qui elle estoit grosse." Ygerne tells her husband, with tears, how, the very night when the duke was killed, a man in the semblance of the duke came to her to Tyntagail, and begot the child on her. The king consoles her, bidding her not to tell this secret to anybody, and requesting her to deliver the child, as it is neither hers nor his, to the man he will point out to her. She consents. Vrfin, told about this, declares the queen is indeed "sage et loiaus," as she revealed to the king what so strongly compromises her; he praises Vther for having so well carried out Merlin's orders, "car il ne poroit en autre maniere avoir l'enfant."

After six months Merlin comes to Vrfin; both go to Vther. Merlin declares Vrfin has freed himself somewhat of the guilt towards Ygerne, but not he himself. Vther reassures him by saying he is so wise that he will surely find means to do so. Merlin says, to this Vther must help him; he knows a "pseudomme" in this country, who has a good wife, just delivered of a boy; the man is not very rich. Vther should request him and his wife to swear that they would bring up the child he will send them, and to put their own child to another woman. Auctor, this is the man's name, is sent for; Vther tells him he was told in a dream that he is one of the best men in his kingdom, and then requests him to take the child he will send him instead of his own. It is only after long hesitation that Auctor and his wife agree; Vther richly rewards them. When the moment of Ygerne's delivery arrives, Merlin comes to Vrfin, bidding him to tell Vther to give orders that the child should be delivered immediately after its birth "au pseudomme qui sera fors de la sale." All is done according to Merlin's advice. The child is born and delivered to a man at the door. Merlin takes the child to Auctor, and tells him to christen him "Artus."

"Lonc tans" after these events, Vther falls dangerously ill. His enemies, profiting by this opportunity, invade his country and defeat his army. Merlin comes to the king's assistance. He announces to him, if he wishes to conquer his enemies, he must make himself to be carried in a litter in front of his army. Soon after the victory he will die, and see him only once again. Vther acts upon Merlin's advice, and is victorious. He is a good and charitable king, and does a great deal of good. But he gradually becomes weaker

¹ MS. Add., fol. 96^r, reads, "nextres de garloc"; Harl. MS., fol. 50^r, "nantres de garlot." Neither of the two MSS. gives the names of the other two daughters of the duke. The Auchinleck MS. reads, ll. 2611-2630, Nanters king of Garlot marries Blasine, Ygerne's daughter, and has by her a son named Galaas. Lot marries the second daughter, Belisent, and begets Wawein, Guerches, Agreuein, and Gaheriet upon her. The third took king Vriens of Schorham as husband; their son was Ywayns.

² MS. Add., ff. 96^r-100^r; Harl. MS., ff. 51^a-57^a; Cambridge MS., ff. 28^b-33^b, ed. pp. 86-101; Auchinleck MS., ed. 1838, ll. 2637-2928.

and weaker, and at last dies. The barons send for Merlin, telling him the king is dead. Merlin denies it. They insist on their statement, saying the king has not spoken for three days. Merlin approaches Vther's bed; the dying king shows by his looks that he recognises Merlin, who draws near him and tells him his son Artus shall be king after him. Vther replies: "Merlins, priés li pour Dieu que il prit a Ihesucrist por moi," and gives up his ghost.

When the king is buried with all honours, the barons assemble to consult upon the succession to the throne. They have recourse to Merlin, and ask his help. Merlin declares himself unable to help them in such an important affair, but advises them to wait till Christmas. Being asked if he will come to Logres by that time, he tells them they will not see him before the election has taken place. Merlin, after parting with them, goes to Blaise "et se li dist ces choses que il savoit qui a venir estoient."

Artus grows up in the meantime, and loves Auctor well as his father; Auctor on his part hardly knows whether he loves Artus or Kay, his own child, better. At All Saints before the Christmas when the barons are to assemble at Logres, Kay is made knight. At Christmas Auctor leads Kay to Logres, where the clergy and all knights assemble; Artus accompanies them.

All pray ardently, many a man hoping that God would elect him to become king. After the mass, one of the holiest men of the country, the archbishop, tells them why they are assembled: "pour le sauvement de vos ames, et pour l'ounour de vos vie[s], et pour veoir le myracle que nostre sires fera hui, si li plaist, por nous douner roi pour maintenir sainte eglyse et pour desfendre le peuple et tout le roiaume."

On Christmas Day, leaving church, people find a square stone block before the church. An anvil is attached to it, and in it sticks a bright sword. They return and tell the archbishop. He comes and casts holy water on it, and recognises written in golden letters the following inscription: "cil qui osteroit cele espee, il seroit rois de la terre par election Ihesucrist."

Nine¹ worthy men and five¹ members of the clergy are charged to watch the stone. Great difficulties arise as to the succession in which the barons shall try the sword. The archbishop blames them greatly; after long hesitation and quarrelling, they accept the disposition of the archbishop. He then expounds the miracle to the people. All the barons assay to pull the sword out, but none succeeds. The miracle remains unachieved till New Year's Day. On this day a tournament is to take place; Kay, having no sword, sends Artus home to fetch it. Artus carries out his order, but can find no sword at home, and returns dismally. Passing the cathedral, he sees the sword in the stone; as the knights and priests have gone to assist at the tournament, he goes in, takes hold of the sword, pulls it out without difficulty, and brings it to Kay. Hearing that it is the sword from the stone, Kay takes it to his father, boasting that he has achieved the miracle, and must become king. Auctor, refusing to believe his son, bids him tell the truth. He then

¹ The Cambridge MS., fol. 32^b, reads here: "Than was the ston delivred to x worthi men to kepe, and to two clerkes."

relates how Artus brought it to him. Turning round, Auctor finds Artus standing behind him. He requests him to put the sword back again. Artus does so. Now Kay is bidden to try. He pulls to the best of his power, but cannot move the sword.

Malory reproduces the main points of this account, but he varies now and then noticeably in details. According to him, Vther tells Igrayne, in the course of the conversation opening chapter iii., that he is the father of her child. Ulfyns is not, as in the source, the constant intermediary between the king and Merlin, who deal directly with one another. Contrary to the source, Malory describes (Auctor) Ector as a man of means: "he is a lord of fair lyselode in many partyes in England & walys." Malory further deviates from the source by stating that the child, after its birth, was delivered to the man "at the posterne" by "two knights and two ladies;" the source relates that Igerne entrusted it to a maid in whom she had great confidence. According to Malory, there elapse but two years between Arthur's birth and Vther's illness, whereas the source states "long tans." This alteration makes it extraordinary that young Arthur should accompany Ector and Kay to London. St. Albons as the place where the battle between Vther and his enemies takes place is evidently Malory's invention. The archbishop is not surnamed "of Canterbury" in the source. Malory probably derived this addition from the English metrical romance (Harl. MS. 2252) "*Le Morte Arthur*." The source only speaks of the "monstier," the cathedral where the barons assemble previous to the election, not of "the grettest chirche of london."

According to Malory, the stone with the sword is entrusted to ten knights, whereas the source speaks of nine knights and five members of the clergy.

The oath which Ector bids Kay take before telling all he knows of the marvellous sword, and Ector's attempt to pull out the sword, are Malory's additions.

VI.-VII. (Huth MS., ff. 72^a-75^a.¹) Young Artus, who is then asked to assay the sword, pulls it out for a second time. Embracing him, Auctor tells him that he will become king, and adds that he is not his real father. Artus, who loves Auctor well, is deeply grieved by this news. The latter then tells how he has taken care of him almost since the moment of his birth; how his wife had nourished him, and given her own son Kay to another woman. For all this kindness, "I request you now," says Auctor, "to promise me by a solemn oath: 'quant vous serés rois que vous faciés vostre frere senescal de vostre terre (en) en tel maniere que pour fourfait que il face

¹ Add. MS., ff. 100^a-101^a; Harl. MS., ff. 57^a-60^a; Auchinleck MS., ed. 1838, ll. 2929-3020; Cambridge MS., ff. 33^b-35^b, ed. pp. 102-107.

ne perde le senescauchie, que tous jours tant comme il vivra autres senescaus ne soit. Et se il est fel et faus et vilains, vous le devés bien sousfrir, que toutes les mauvaises choses qu'il a n'a il prises se par le norriche [norrechon] non qui l'alaita, et pour vous norrir est il si desnaturés." Artus complies with this request. Afterwards Auctor tells the archbishop and all people that the king is found, for Artus has achieved the miracle of the sword. Artus pulls the sword out for the third time, in the presence of all the clergy and the barons. The archbishop embraces him, and "commenche a chanter en haut: Te Deum laudamus." When Artus has replaced the sword, many barons try to pull it out, but none succeeds. The barons are very dissatisfied that a young man, of such low descent, should become their king; they demand that the election be adjourned till Candlemas. On Candlemas Artus withdraws the sword for the fourth time from the stone. Now the barons ask a further delay till Easter. On Easter Sunday Artus removes the sword for the fifth time. The barons demand again postponement of the election till Whitsuntide, stating that they wish to test Artus. They speak to him, and ask him to postpone the coronation till Whitsuntide. He readily consents, and speaks kindly to them. They are surprised to find him so wise and liberal. At Whitsuntide all the barons and dignitaries of the church return to Logres. On the eve of Whitsunday the archbishop, "par le comun conseil et par l'escort des plus des barons," makes Artus knight. Before all the people the archbishop then asks the barons if they will recognise Artus as their king. They answer: "Sire, nous nous i acordons bien, et volons de par Dieu que il soit rois sacrés, en tel maniere que se il i avoit nul de nous viers cui il enust nule male volenté de chou qu'il ont esté contre son sacre et contre s'election dusques a hui, que il lour pardoint a tous communement." They kneel down before Artus; he weeps from emotion, and forgives them. The archbishop then bids him fetch the sword, "et la justiche dont vous devés desfendre sainte eglise et la crestiienté garder." On Whitsunday he kneels down before the stone and pulls the sword for the sixth time; he carries it to the altar, and is crowned king.¹ When the people come out of the cathedral the stone has disappeared. The "Merlin" by Robert de Boron then ends: "Ensi fu Artus esleus a roi, et tint la terre et le regne de Logres lonc tans a pais."

¹ At the request of Mr. A. Nutt, Mr. G. Hartwell Jones of University College, Cardiff, who wished for information on some points in the Arthurian romances, sent me the following reference from a Welsh account of "The History of the Blessed Oil," translated from the Latin original of Lucas. The following lines are Mr. Jones' literal translation of the Welsh text:

"This is the beginning of the account of the Blessed Oil turned out of Lucas' book from Latin into Welsh.

I. Nasciens, a cousin of Bredyr af Efrog, the chief of the knights of the Round Table, from the time that Merddin established it under Uthur Pendragon, until a part of Arthur's age. And then Nasciens went as a hermit to the Chapel Perilous in *Frys Urydin* (= Glastonbury), and he so pleased God, that an angel used to come to minister his mass, as Arthur himself saw when Mary sent the golden cross to Arthur, which is in the Monastery of Glastonbury, where Arthur himself placed it. And for that reason he

In these two chapters Malory and R. de Boron agree in most points. In Malory's account, besides slight changes, there are some features noticeable which are not to be found in any of the MSS. I have seen. Malory changes Auctor's part somewhat. According to him, Auctor asks Arthur, only after the latter has declared, "And yf it euer be goddes will that I be kynge / ye shall desyre of me what I may do," that he should make Kay his seneschal. Malory relates that Arthur pulls the sword out of the stone for the first time before the archbishop and the barons on the "twelfth day," whereas R. de Boron says this took place on the same day that Arthur had achieved the sword feat for the first time, when he previously brought it to Kay.

Malory further says: "The archbishop of canterbury by the prouydenche of Merlyn" selects the best knights to be with Arthur. R. de Boron does not mention Merlin here at all, nor does he quote the names of Bawdewyne of Bretayne, Ulfyns, and Brastias; he only relates that Kay is made seneschal. The former three knights are also mentioned by Malory at the end of chapter vii. As to Ulfyns and Brastias, as they are the two knights who were the confidants of the duke of Tyntagil, Malory may have anticipated them from the "Ordinary Merlin," but Bawdewyn is not mentioned in any of the

carried a green buckler with a white cross, and Mary's image on its right arm, sitting in the upper part of the shield (or, with the right hand stretched to . . .).

II. And that Nasciens by the command of the Holy Spirit, wrote the whole account of the Holy Grail, with whom Blaes (=Blaise) the hermit agrees, and that agrees with a book that Merddin brought to the Glass chapel, rehearsing the prowess of Arthur and his knights. And the book bears witness that Joseph as the son of Joseph of Arimathea, was consecrated Bishop in Dinas Farar and was ordained with Blessed Oil, which seven angels of heaven brought to Joseph and his son, and his twelve nephews, his sister's sons, and four hundred other people, the nearest to him in faith and creed and religion. And a command came from heaven to bid Joseph and all the multitude come to the island of Britain, and bring the oil with them, and so they did.

III. Koel was then king of Britain. And this oil Dyfrig (=Dubricius) the Archbishop received to consecrate Arthur as king, when he drew the sword from the stone in *Caer Fudei* (sic); and for that reason he overcame all inroads, and his crown and arms are the High Relics of the kingdom, for that he was consecrated with the Blessed Oil from heaven. And it was given to Arthur to destroy every unspiritual oppression from among the Saints and Christians. And then that oil was lost without any one knowing where it became until the time of Thomas of Caer Gaine (Canterbury) retired to escape from Henry, King of England.

IV. And Thomas went to Pope Alexander to the city of *Sange*, for there the Bishop of Rome was at that time," etc. etc.

This is a very curious text obviously connected with the "Queste del Saint Graal," but containing matter that may possibly be older than the version in the hitherto known texts of that romance. The account of Nasciens' (Seraphus') shield, is different from that in the Vulgate-Quest (compare the "Lancelot"), and seems influenced by the account Nennius gives of Arthur's shield. The text is either a Welsh adaptation of the Merlin, now lost, or of a now lost French version of that romance. The form Bredyr for Peredur is unusual; also Nasciens' relationship to Peredur. Nasciens in some versions of the Quest is Galahad's uncle.

romances I have seen, except in the Thornton MS. "*La Morte Arthure*."

Contrary to R. de Boron, Arthur is knighted by Malory on Whitsunday, shortly before the coronation.

The "comyns" which Malory mentioned do not occur in R. de Boron's *Merlin*, and must be anticipated from the "Ordinary Merlin"; Malory evidently omits intentionally the statement that the barons test Arthur, and, after finding him wise and liberal, no longer oppose his election.

Where Malory found the information for the last portion of chapter vii. (p. 44, ll. 3-20) I am unable to say. I am inclined to believe ll. 3-9 are his own invention; ll. 10-20, which form a prominent paragraph in Caxton's impression, are partly his own, partly derived from the "Ordinary Merlin." The offices of "constable," "chamberlain," "wardeyn," are mentioned nowhere else.

B. THE "ORDINARY MERLIN."

BOOK I. CHAPTERS VIII.-XVIII.: ADD. MS. No. 10292.



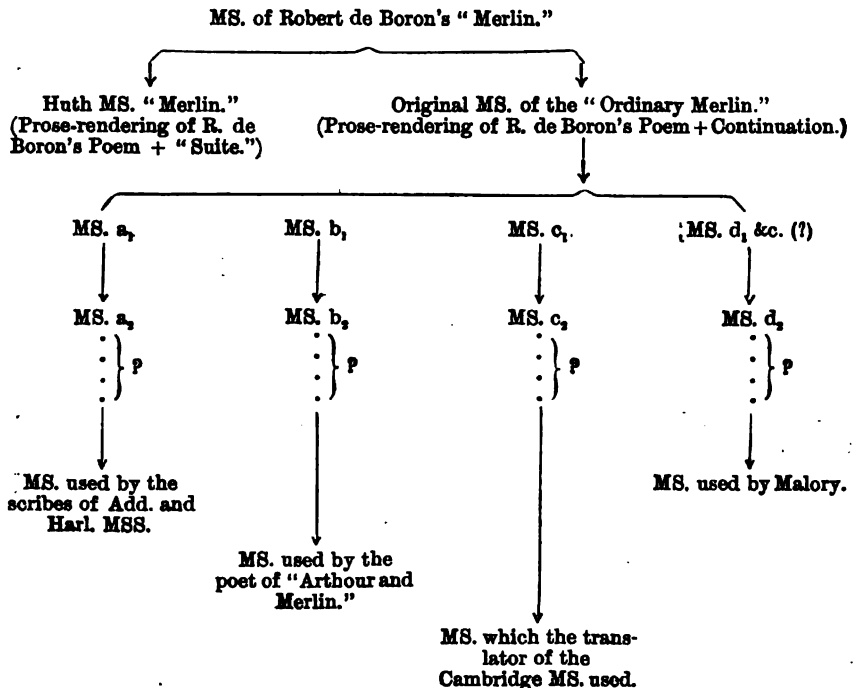
FROM the beginning of the eighth to the end of the eighteenth chapter¹ the "Ordinary Merlin" requires examination as Malory's source. As this portion is at times in contradiction with Robert de Boron's "*Merlin*," the pseudo-Boron, the writer of the "*Suite*," omitted it, so that it does not figure in the Huth MS., and we have to recur to the MSS. mentioned on page 7—viz., Add. No. 10292 and Harl. No. 6340 of the British Museum, MS. No. 747 of the Bibliothèque Nationale, the English translation of "*Le Roman de Merlin*," MS. of the Cambridge University Library,² and, finally, the English metrical romance, "*Arthour and Merlin*," Auchinleck MS. No. 27, Advocates' Library, Edinburgh.³

¹ Chapters viii.-xviii. of my edition correspond to chapters v.-xvi. of the Globe edition.

² It would lead me too far from my path were I to undertake the interesting task of determining the relationship of the English translation to its French originals of the *Merlin* with regard to the additions in the former. Are these additions to be found in any other French MS. having another origin than the Harl. and Add. MSS., or are they the English translator's additions? Several passages reminded me greatly of Wace and Layamon, and the hypothesis that the English translator added to his original text such information as seemed good to him is not at all improbable. Perhaps Dr. W. E. Mead who is, I understand, to supply in a fourth part the critical apparatus to Mr. H. B. Wheatley's text, will throw light upon this question.

³ Harl. MS., ff. 60^b-62^d; Cambridge MS., ff. 35^b-38^a, ed. pp. 108-14; Auchinleck MS. ed. 1837, ll. 3070-3182.—Also the rare imprints of the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries may be consulted.

Comparing these three versions—for Add. and Harl. MSS. and, I believe, also the MS. No. 747 of the Bibliothèque Nationale represent the same version as Malory's—I found that, although these MSS. have so many features in common that their descent from a common original is unquestionable, they all possess marked, though insignificant, variations, such as additions, omissions, or slight modifications of incidents. It is, of course, impossible to determine exactly their relationship to one common original and to one another; but I think the theory about to be set forth will be allowed to possess plausibility. Robert de Boron's poem was put into prose and continued in the "Ordinary Merlin." Various MSS. descended from the original MS. of the "Ordinary Merlin," copied either from the original or from one another. During this process the scribes, who either wished to add matter of their own to their copies or misunderstood their original, introduced variations. It can thus be explained that the four MSS. used by the scribes of Add. and Harl. MSS., by the poet of "Arthour and Merlin," by the translator of the Cambridge MS., and finally by Malory, all differed slightly, while the three latter at least present considerable additions. Graphically, this theory would be expressed thus:—



As I was unable to discover the MS. Malory used, I have taken

The continuation of Robert de Boron's poem by the false R. de Boron begins in the middle of a chapter (as it also does in the other MSS., without any paragraph mark), thus, on folio 101^d :—

Quant li baron virent les riches presens & les riches ioiaus que li rois
 artus lor offroit si le tindrent a moult grant desdaig . & distrent de tels
 i ot que moult estoit fol quant il dun homme de si bas lignage auoient fait
 roy & seignor deseure aus & de si riche terre," &c.

They cannot suffer this, and declare they refuse to accept the presents and to recognise him as their legal king. When Artus sees their threatening attitude, he fears treason and saves himself, "*si issi hors de la maistre forteree & ce estoit a carlion.*" After fifteen days Merlin comes to the barons in town. They receive him well, and lead him to a palace from which one has a fine view on "*le riuiere de thamise.*" There they ask Merlin how it is that the archbishop has crowned Artus without their consent. Merlin explains to them that the archbishop could not have done better, for none of them is of nobler birth or worthier to bear the crown than Artus; he is not, as they think, the son of Autor and brother of Keu. If they send for Autor and Vlfin, they will hear the truth from him; they ought also to speak to Artus. The barons follow Merlin's advice. [fol. 101^o.] Bretel is subsequently despatched to Artus to ask him to come to meet the barons with the archbishop "*de brite*" and "*de logres.*"¹ Bretel delivers his message to Artus, and also tells Vlfin that the barons wish to see him and Artus.

Malory anticipates the name of "Carlyon" as the locality where the festival takes place, from a later passage in his source describing Arthur's flight from the tower. As concerns the kings who are men-

¹ Harl. MS., fol. 61^a, reads: "larceuesque de briste et larceuesque de longres;" Cambridge MS., fol. 36^b, ed. p. 110, "the archebisshop and the bisshop of logres."

tioned as coming to this feast, Malory and Add. MS. agree, save that Malory omits the name of the king of Scotland, Agustans—probably because he always calls him later on Agwysans king of Ireland—and adds that of the king with the hundred knights. In the numbers of knights which these kings bring with them variance only exists in the cases of Vriens, Carados, and Agustans; these have respectively, according to Add. MS., five, six, and five hundred knights; according to Malory, four, five, and six hundred. The "messengers" who, in Malory's account, take the presents to the kings and are "shamefully rebuked" by them, as well as the "beardless boy" as an epithet for Arthur, are not in Add. MS. Malory does not relate, like the "Ordinary Merlin," Arthur's flight from the city of Carlyon, but that he gathered his five hundred men (by-the-by, his own addition) and went with them into the tower. Both Malory and the "Ordinary Merlin" agree in stating that Merlin comes on the fifteenth day to the kings at Carlyon. Merlin's reference to Aunor and Vlfin as witnesses, and Bretel's despatch to King Arthur, are omitted by Malory; he adds, however, the prophecy: "And who saith nay / he shal be kyng and overcome alle his enemyes / And or he deye / he shalle be long kynge of all Englonde / and haue vnder his obeysaunce Walys / yrland and Scotland / and moo reames than I will now reherce," and Lot's and the other barons' scorning of Merlin.

IX.¹ At the appointed time, Artus, without arms, but wearing a short "haberioun desous sa cote," the archbishop and Aunor go to the palace. As anointed king, and for the sake of the archbishop, the barons, despite their animosity, receive him honourably. When all are seated, the archbishop addresses the barons, but they request him to let Merlin speak first. [fol. 102 recto.] Merlin rises and gives a short account of Artus' life from the moment of his conception to the day when he achieved the sword feat, winding up by bidding the barons ask Aunor and Vlfin. On being asked, both confirm Merlin's statement; Vlfin presents the covenant between Merlin and Vtherpendragon, with the royal seal. The archbishop reads it to them. The people are astonished, and regret that they have refused to acknowledge Artus.

When the barons perceive that the people incline to Artus, they declare they will and cannot acknowledge a bastard as their king. The archbishop tries to appease them, but in vain. The barons depart in wrath, and prepare for war. The archbishop and the people are faithful to Artus. He returns to the castle, requesting his followers to prepare themselves as best they can; "et furent por tout & l qui distrent quil li aideroient iusqua la mort." [fol. 102 verso.] The barons in the town consult whether they had better attack or besiege Artus in the castle. Merlin comes to them, and exhorts them to

¹ MS. Add., ff. 102^v-103^f; Harl. MS. ff. 62^d-64^d; Cambridge MS., ff. 38^a-40^r, ed. pp. 114-120; Auchinleck MS., ed. 1837, ll. 3070-3400.

leave off opposing Artus, who is their king by right; they will only get the worst of it. "Ore a bien li enchanteres parle," say the barons, and laugh at him. Returning to Artus, Merlin bids him not to be afraid, as he will assist him.

Artus consults with Merlin, the archbishop, Autor, Vlfin, Keus, and Bretel upon the situation. Addressing Merlin, Artus requests him, as he has been his father's friend, to be his adviser now. Merlin assents. He tells Artus how the knights of the Round Table, which was founded and established during his father's reign, have gone abroad, "por la desloialte quil virent naistre en cest pais." They abide now in the country of Carmalide. There reigns the old king Leodegan; his wife is dead; an only and beautiful daughter is his heiress. Leodegan has had long wars against Rion, a powerful and cruel king, who has already overcome twenty-five crowned kings. With their beards he has adorned a mantle, and this is held before him daily at mealtime and on state occasions. He has made a vow never to stop until he has conquered thirty kings. He still wars against Leodegan, and if it were not for the knights of the Round Table he would have overcome him. Artus ought to help Leodegan, who will give him his daughter to wife, "a qui li roialmes apent & ele est moult bele & ione & vne des sages del monde." But before he goes to Carmelide he must garnish his towns and castles. The archbishop will excommunicate all who refuse to do him homage. Merlin will help him. The archbishop goes on the walls; Artus prepares his people. Merlin gives him a banner "ou il ot moult grant senefiance. Car il i auoit .i. dragon dedens si le fist fremer en vne lance & il ietoit por samblant fu & flambe par la bouce . si auoit vne keue tortice moult longue. Cil dragons [fol. 103 recto] dont ie vous di estoit darrain si ne sot onques nus ou merlins le prinst," &c. Artus entrusts the banner to his seneschal Keu. In the meantime the barons have pitched their tents before the castle. Merlin casts an enchantment upon them and sets all their tents on fire. He bids Artus sally out and fight against them. A great battle ensues. Many people are killed. Artus personally does great feats of arms, and routs his antagonists. The rebels collect themselves at some distance and hold counsel. Nantres of Garlot, a strong, but young and impetuous knight, is of opinion that the war would be ended immediately if they killed Artus. He is himself ready to achieve this task. He takes "vne lance courte & grosse al fer tranchant" and runs against Artus. They fight; after a short time Nantres is thrown out of the saddle. King Lot d'Orcanie rushes to Nantres' assistance. Artus also throws him down over his horse's crupper. Nantres' and Lot's knights come to their lords' rescue, and horse them again. Artus pulls out the sword which he took out of the stone, "qui ieta ausi grant clarte comme se doi¹ chierge i eussent este alumees. . . . Et les lettres qui estoient escrites en lespee disoient quele auoit non escalibor & cest .i. non ebrieu qui dist en franchois trenche fer & achier." He hits a knight on the shoulder so hard that he cleaves off his whole left side. He deals on the right and on

¹ Harl. MS. agrees with this statement, but Cambridge MS., fol. 39^a, ed. p. 118, reads: "that it glistered as it hadde be the brightnesse of xx^e tapres brennynges."

the left terrible strokes; nobody can abide before him. [fol. 103 verso.] When the vi kings see so many of their people slain, they resolve to rush at Artus all at once. By this violent attack Artus is borne down from his horse. Keus, Bretel, Autor, Vlfin, "et lor lignage" hasten to his rescue. Keus strikes king "aguistant descoce qui estoit arrestes sor le roy artu," and king Karados. Vlfin fights against Nantres, Bretel against Ydres. Artus lies on the ground; several knights deal him violent strokes on the helmet. Keu finally fells king Lot, relieves Artus, and horses him again. Artus rides against Ydres and brings him down. The battle becomes furious. Artus kills with Escalibour many knights and horses, "si quil mismes en estoit tous sangleus & souillies si durement quil ne paioit en ses armes ne taint ne vernis." Ydres is, however, horsed again, and the vi kings depart discomfited, "car de tout lauoir quil i aporтерent ne reporterent il vaillant .ij. d⁷. que tout ne fu ars & bruli del feu que merlins fist descendre sor les tentes." Artus returns to "Carduel en gales." He asks everywhere for the "soldoiers," and distributes horses and armours among them, and thus gains their love so much that they are ready to risk their lives for him. Then he fortifies his castles and towns.

Malory describes the short "haberioun" which Arthur wears when he comes to meet the barons as "a Jesseraunte of double maylle," and states that, besides the archbishop, not Autor, but Baudewyn of Bretayne, Kay, and Brastias accompany him. The meeting itself is greatly shortened, and the most prominent features, such as the archbishop's and Merlin's speeches, Ulfin's producing the covenant, &c., are omitted. The three hundred and fifty knights faithful to Arthur are only three hundred in Malory. The epithet "enchanteres" given by Lot to Merlin becomes in Malory's narrative "dreme reder." Lines 19-20 of page 46 are either Malory's addition or he found a remark of that sort in his MS. Malory omits Arthur's council with Merlin, Autor, Ulfin, and Bretel, Merlin's advice to go to king Leodegan, the banner, &c., and modifies the first fight between Arthur and the rebels by greatly abridging it, thus omitting Nantres' proposal to kill Arthur and his attempt to carry it out. Malory, who is generally inclined to see things through the magnifying glass, says the sword which Arthur pulled out of the stone, i.e., Excalibor, "gaf light like xxx torches," whereas the Cambridge MS. has "twenti tapres," and Add. MS. "doi chierge." That Malory was not entirely master of his subject is shown by the fact that here, following the "Ordinary Merlin," he calls the sword which Arthur draws out of the anvil Excalibor, whereas, on page 79 (book ii. chap. iii.), forgetting this, and following the "Suite de Merlin," he declares the sword which the lady of the lake gives Arthur is called Excalibor.¹ Malory

¹ Compare later on my note to chapters xiv.-xvii. of book i. chap. 3.

further omits the enchantment which Merlin casts upon the enemy, and the fire which he throws on their tents. He states that Merlin bids Arthur leave off fighting against them, contrary to the "Ordinary Merlin," and, on the other hand, he omits Arthur's distributing large gifts among the poor in order to gain the hearts of the people.

X.¹ "Si auint quil tint court a logres sa cite qui ore est appelee londres² en engleterre le iour de nostre dame en septembre." He dubs many knights, distributes lands and rich presents, and gains much love. Merlin comes to him. In Vlfin's presence, he tells Artus of a hermit who lives in a wild forest of "Norhumberlande;" this hermit has been his friend ever from his infancy; he saved his mother from death. Merlin then tells his mother's story, and many events that took place before Artus' birth. [fol. 104 recto.] King Loth has five sons, "dont tu engendras lun a londres quant tu estoies escuiers," &c.³

"Et dautre part en la petite ertaine a .ij. rois qui sont frere & ont a feme .ij. serors germaines." Ban "de benoyc" and Bohors "de gaunes," are their names. They are on a war footing with a powerful neighbour. Merlin advises Artus to send for them; they will readily do him homage. After making Artus swear never to disclose who he is, he retires to Northumberland. King Artus is much cheered by his people, and excites general admiration by his chivalry and strength. At Hallowmas he asks all his people to come and do him homage. Bretel and Vlfin are despatched as messengers to the kings Ban and Bohort, to request them to come at Hallowmas to Artus' court. They cross the sea, and arriving "en la petite ertaine" find many towns pillaged and destroyed. [fol. 104 verso.] They come to the city of "benoyc apele ore borges en herri" belonging to king "Claudas de la deserte." This Claudas was warring with Ban for a castle. Without declaring war, Claudas had invaded Ban's country and ravaged many places. Ban defended himself in a great and strong castle, which Claudas could not conquer. Gracien, a brave and noble man, defends it, "si en ot fait son compere que li rois bans li auoit leue si apeloit on cel enfant banin⁴ & cis

¹ Add. MS., ff. 103^v-105^f; Harl. MS., ff. 64^d-66^d; Cambridge MS., ff. 40^b-44^a, ed. pp. 121-31; Auchinleck MS., ed. 1830, ll. 3400-3600.

² Compare my note and quotation of the Cambridge MS. (fol. 49), p. 44. London was first called "the newe troye," because its founder (Brutus) came from there.

³ This passage on fol. 104^r of Add. MS. runs on thus: "& ils sont blau vallet si a non li aines gauains & li autres agraains . & li tiers gerrehes . & li quars gaheries & li plus lones mordres. Et saces bien que gauains sera li plus loiaus cheualiers qui onques nasquist enuiers son seignor si sera .i. des boins cheualiers del monde & qui plus vous amera & vous essauchera tant come il viura enuiers tout le monde nis enuiers son pere & ne doutes onques que ce sera cil pour qui vous raures toute uotre terre si seront tout uotre homme por doutance de lui viers vous humiliant & obeisant. Et li rois nantres a .i. fil qui moult est blaus ualles & a non galescins . & vriens en a .i. qui a non yuains li grans qui de toutes bontes de cuer sera plains & cil & gauains tameront & serviront iusqua la mort . & saces bien quil ne seront adoube de nul homme denant que tu les adouberas icil te feront maint fil de haut baron uenir a toi por lamor daus & de lor compaignie te serviront. Et dautre part en la petite ertaine a .ij. rois," &c.

⁴ Harl. MS. agrees with Add. MS., but Cambridge MS., fol. 41^b, ed. p. 124, reads:

banins fu perrenoumes de moult haute proece en la court le roy artu dont li contes ne parole mie cil endroit." Bretel and Vlfín continue their way till they come to the castle of "trebes," where they find king Ban's wife Helaine, a most beautiful woman. Bohort had married Helaine's sister. Asking for king Ban, they learn that he is with his brother Bohort. Departing from Trebes, the two messengers meet seven knights of Claudas scouring the country. These knights ask them to surrender themselves or pay toll-money. [fol. 105 recto.] Vlfín defies the knight who has asked them, and tells him it is very discourteous to ask travelling knights for money. Bretel, hearing this, runs against the knight and bears him to the ground, saying: "ore i chi logier tout por loisir & garder le chemin si que nus ni past dont vous naues le treu ou boin paage," and rides after Vlfín. When the seven knights see their leader slain, two of them pursue Vlfín and Bretel, who encounter and overthrow them. Two more meet the same fate; the others flee. At night the two messengers arrive at the "chastel de benoyc." They alight before the principal gate, leaving their horses in the care of a squire, enter, and ask for the two kings. Ban and Bohort are at council together. Pharien, a knight of Ban, comes, receives them politely, and leads them to the chamber where are Ban and Bohort, and with them "leones of palerne."¹ When they are seated, Ban and Bohort ask them the reason of their visit. They tell how Merlin had advised king Artus to invite them to his court. The kings declare they cannot well leave their country, as they are at war with Claudas. Bretel and Vlfín bid them have no fear, but trust in Merlin's power and wisdom. The two kings finally declare themselves ready to go to Artus' court on the third day. They treat the messengers very hospitably. Bretel and Vlfín relate their adventure with the seven knights. Leonces of Palerne, who was in "la grant bertaigne" in the days of Vtherpandragon, is very kind to them. On the third day the two kings start with the messengers, leaving their treasures to the care of their cousin german Leonces and to Phariens "et li senescaus de benoic et cil de gaunes." In

"and made his compere a godsons of hys, that he hadden houe fro the fontstone, and was cleped after the kynge ban Bawdewyn," &c.

N.B.—There occur in the Cambridge MS. four peculiarly marked letters, imitated in type in Mr. H. B. Wheatley's text—viz., þ, ð, l, and n. I have not thought it necessary to reproduce these peculiarities in the few passages I quoted from that text.

¹ In the Cambridge MS., fol. 43^a, ed. p. 129, several lines are intercalated here: "And thei a bode till that the two kynges hadde made ende of her counseile / And as they a bode so com to hem a knyght that highte leones, and brought with hym a knyght that he moche loed / and his name was Pharien / thise tweyne come to the messagers, and hem asked what thei were / and thei ansuerde that thei sholde sone knowe / yef it plesed hem to abyde so longe till thei hadde seide theire message to the two kynges / And when these other herde hem so sey thei a vised hem better and knewe hem wele / And than thei toke hem in armes and made hem grete ioye / as thei that longe tyme had to geder loved from theire childehode. And than thei asked yef thei hadde grete haste / and thei ansuerde Ye right greta."—All passages which I quoted from the "Merlin" ed. H. B. Wheatley, in this section, I have collated with the MS. in the University Library, Cambridge, and restored the original form of the MS.

case of need, they bid them send news at once to "bertaigne." "Si lor douna li rois bans son anel a ensenges."¹

While Ban and Bohort are on their way to his court, Artus, by Merlin's advice, garnishes his towns and castles. Merlin tells him that Bretel and Vlfyn have successfully delivered their message, after overcoming seven knights. They are now on their way back, and the two kings with them. Artus must receive Ban and Bohort with great honour; he ought to go and meet them, and have the streets of Logres, through which they pass, gaily decorated. Merlin continues: "si faites caroler toutes les puceles & les damoiseles de ceste ville & aler encontre aus chantant hors de la ville." Artus does as Merlin advises him.

When Ban and Bors approach, Artus, with his barons, and the archbishop "brete"² meet them with a procession. When they arrive at the palace, Artus honours them greatly, and gains the favour of their suite by large presents. It is a Sunday; after attending the mass, which archbishop "brete" in person sings, they go to dinner in the "maistre palais." Kex, Lucans, Vlfyn, Bretel, and girflet serve at table. After dinner, a great tournament takes place. All the knights are divided into two parties of about seven hundred each; there are about "iii. del roialme de benoyc qui se tournerent a vne part." Ban, Bors, their brother a wise clerk, who knows more about astronomy than any clerk except Merlin, Artus, the archbishop, and Autor look at the tournament from a window of the castle.

Malory states that Arthur removes to London, in accordance with the "Ordinary Merlin," from which, however, he greatly varies afterwards. He replaces the dubbing of knights, the distribution of gifts, the information Merlin gives about Blaise, the allusion to Lot's sons and Mordred's birth (p. 47, ll. 7-25), by a council of the barons, in which Arthur tells them he heard from Merlin that the six kings will shortly renew hostilities, and requests them to speak to Merlin, after they have declared themselves strong enough to resist. Merlin tells them that the enemies have found four new allies, and Arthur cannot overcome them "onlesse he haue more chyualry with hym than he may make within the boundys of his own reame." For this reason Merlin advises him to send messengers to the two kings.

Bretel and Ulfyn's journey to Ban and Bors is summarily told by Malory. Contrary to all other versions, they fight against eight instead of seven knights. Malory skips the war between Claudas and the two kings entirely. In this paragraph occurs, in Add. and Harl. MS., the name "Banin," corresponding to "Bawdewyn." As both versions agree that this knight was afterwards renowned at Arthur's court, I

¹ This passage is unintelligible in the Add. and Harl. MSS. Ban, according to the Cambridge MS., did not give his ring; he only showed it to them, declaring they ought to believe whoever came to them; and, delivering this ring, gave them an order from him.

² Harl. MS. "briste"; Cambridge MS. "the archbissshop"; Auchinleck MS. "Brice."

cannot help thinking that there must be some relation between him and the "Bawdewyn of Bretayne" repeatedly mentioned in "Le Morte Darthur," but in none of the other versions. In the "Ordinary Merlin" the messengers deliver their message orally, not, as Malory states, by letter. Contrary to his source, Malory states that the messengers receive large presents, and return first to Logres, the kings following soon. Malory then skips the means by which the two kings protect their country in their absence, thus omitting the ring, though he mentions it later on in two passages, where it is entirely unintelligible. Malory only mentions Kay, Lucas, and Gryflet as serving at table, leaving out Ulfyns and Bretel.

Finally, the window from which Arthur and his guest look at the tournament is replaced by "a place couerd with clothe of gold lyke an halle with ladyes and gentilwymmen."

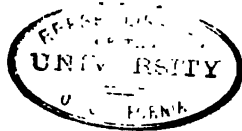
XI.¹ A fight between Gifles and Ladinas opens the tournament [fol. 106 recto]. Being both strong and valiant knights, they attack one another so violently that their spears break and both fall to the ground, so that all think them dead. The other knights now range themselves either on Gifles' or Ladinas' side, and a general jousting begins. Lucans, a cousin of Gifles, distinguishes himself greatly, and does so much "que nus ne pooit ses cops souffrir." Gifles and "the other knight" are horsed again. Through the united efforts of Gifles and Lucans, the knights of "benoyc" are driven back. Three hundred fresh knights come to their assistance, and the "estour" becomes very hot. Many a knightly deed is performed, but Gifles and Lucans surpass all the rest.

In the afternoon Keux appears on the scene from an ambush; he suddenly storms in with five hundred knights well horsed "ausi comme li faucons ou li ostoirs se fiert es estormeus." Keux earns great worship on the one side, Gifles and Lucans on the other. After them the best knights are: "Maurut de la roche, Guinas li blois, Drians de la forest salvage, Belyas li amoureux del chastel as puceles, Flandrins li blans, Graciens li blans li chastelains, Drulios² de la Case, Bliobleheris de la deserte, Meliadus li blois, Mediaus li crespes, and Placides li gais."³ Now Ban's knights exert themselves so much that they drive their adversaries back to the place where the tournament started. Artus' knights, perceiving this, redouble their efforts. Keux is the foremost of all; he would indeed be a first class knight, "se ne fust . i . poi de parole dont il auoit trop." Many people refuse to go with him "as auentures" in Logres, as the story will relate afterwards. This is not his

¹ Add. MS., ff. 105^v-108^v; Harl. MS., ff. 66^d-73^d; Cambridge MS., ff. 44^a-49^a, ed. pp. 131-146; Auchinleck MS., ed. 1830, ll. 3600-3735.

² Harl. MS., fol. 69^r, "Dulios."

³ Cambridge MS., fol. 45^r, ed. p. 135, reads thus: "and the beste after hem was Marke de la roche / and Guynas le Bleyas and drias de la foreste sange / and Belyas the amerouse of maydens castell / and Blyos de la casse, and Madyens le crespes / and flaundryns le blanke, and Grassien the castelein / and placidas le gays."—Blioberis and Meliadus li



fault, but that of his nurse; his mother was a wise and good woman, &c. First Keux turns against Ladinas, who is foremost in striving to beat back the knights of Logres, throws both him and Gracien de Trebes to the ground with the same stroke, but his lance breaks in pieces. He pulls out his sword, and cries, "Clarence lensegne au roy artus." This encourages the knights of Logres to do better than ever. Keux distinguishes himself so much that Artus, [fol. 106 verso] Ban, and Bohort praise him unanimously. Keux' example spurs Lucans; he rides against Blioberis, and brings him down; he also breaks his lance, but dismounts, and continues to fight with his sword. Gifles then returns to the field, and seeing two fellows (the Cambridge MS. reads, page 136: "and saugh Blioberes and two of hys felowes that leyde on kay") attacking Keux, he rushes to his rescue. One of them, "Placides," has smitten Keu on the helmet "que tout lauoit enbronciest sour larchon de la sele." Gifles smites Blioberis so hard that he must fall from his horse; then turning against Placides, disables him too from fighting any more. This friendly aid is the cause of lasting friendship between Keux and Gifles. Soon after that Gifles perceives Gervas, who has done them great harm; he pulls out his sword, and strikes so violently at him, "que li fus en vole contre mont & se lespee ne li fust torneel el puig leust." Great noise and cries arise. Gervas' and Keux' fellows come to their assistance; the tournament receives a new impetus. Towards the evening the three kings descend from the palace to the field, and, seeing "quil se tenoient si par ingal," give the signal for leaving off fighting. At supper the tournament is discussed. The prize is given to Keux, Lucan, and Gifflet.

When the tables are taken away, Artus, Ban, and Bohort, with their brother Guinebans, retire to a chamber looking towards the garden on the river (Cambridge MS. p. 138 has "river of temse"). Noticing Vlfin and Bretel in the garden, Artus begins to laugh. The two knights are sent for, and the king asks them to tell him truly their adventure with the seven knights of Claudas. Both declare that Artus knows already as well as they how it happened. Ban, surprised, asks by whom Artus can have known it.

blois are omitted; for Drulios or Dullos is written Blyos.—In the Auchinleck MS. ll. 3601-12, these names are thus forced into the necessities of the metre—

3601 The best was Lucan the boteler,	Placides, and eke Driens,
A yong knight of grete power,	3602 Hollas and Graciens,
With outen the steward Kay,	Marliaus and Flaundrins,
3604 He was a knight of gret noblay;	Sir Mellard and eke Drukins,
Grimfies, Maruc, and Gumas,	And al so Breoberuis,
Ich of hem wel noble was;	3605 These born oway the priis.

[While reading the proofs of this portion of the present volume, Prof. E. Koelbing honoured me with a copy of his excellent edition of "Arthour and Merlin," herausgegeben nach der Auchinleck Hs. nebst zwei Bellagen, Leipzig, 1890, 8vo, as vol. iv. of "Altenglische Bibliothek." Prof. Koelbing's former splendid and learned editions are the best evidence of the thoroughness of this present work, and I am sorry that I could not avail myself of it sooner. Here, and again later on, I could collate my quotations from Turnbull's edition with it. These lines correspond to 3591-3602 of Prof. Koelbing's edition, and the following points are corrected:—3602, gret; 3603, withouten; 3611, also.]

They tell him through Merlin. Both Ban and Bohort now wish to see Merlin, about whom they have heard so many marvellous things. Merlin is sent for. A long conversation follows. Merlin tells a part of his life; [fol. 107 recto] closely examined by Guinebans, he answers all questions correctly. He then advises the two kings to become Artus' vassals. The two kings are ready to do so, provided Merlin vows he will be true to them. When the kings are gone to bed, Merlin and Guinebans talk long together; Merlin teaches the latter "*maint biau ieu.*"

Next morning,¹ after mass, Merlin swears to Ban and Bohort to be faithful to them, and that Artus is indeed the son of Vther and Ygerne; in confirmation of Merlin's words, Vlfin also swears. Then the two kings do homage to Artus, "*et li rois artus les rechut moult simplement en plorant.*" The joy is greater this day than before. After dinner they hold counsel: Artus, Ban, Bohort, Merlin, Vlfin, Bretel, and Kex. Merlin delivers a speech, saying all are worthy men, but he knows them better than they themselves; they all ought to help the worthy king Artus; he will advise them as well as he can. They know that Artus is not yet married; he (Merlin) knows a maiden of royal blood, Guenievre, the daughter of Leodegan of Carmelide. Her father is hard oppressed by Rion, "*qui est del lignage as iaiaens,*" i.e., giants. If this king Rion conquers Carmelide, he will not tarry to attack Logres. Thanks to the knights of the Table Round, Leodegan has thus far resisted all attacks. Therefore he advises them to go with Artus to Carmelide and abide a year or two with Leodegan; he will proffer Artus his daughter as a wife.

Ban and Bohort ask Merlin what will become of their country in their absence, as they have evil neighbours. Merlin tells them they need not fear; by following his advice they can but gain, for "*il fait moult boin reculer por loing saillir & scacies que por .i. denar que vous perdres par decha vous en gaaigneres .C. par dela.*"² On this side they will lose neither castles nor towns, and on the other side they will gain a kingdom, which, as long as Artus lives, will be a strong protection for them. Ban declares Merlin wiser than any of them. [fol. 107 verso.] They must make preparations, and before they go to Camelide they have to fight a great battle against the rebels "*en la forest de bedingran,*"³ but they need not be afraid. Ban asks Merlin if it be advisable to send for auxiliaries to Gaunes and Benoyc, and whether they would arrive in due time. Merlin declares he will go and fetch them, as he can do it quicker than any other man, and haste is necessary, as the battle against the rebels will take place at Candlemas "*es pres de bedingran.*" They

¹ This passage is somewhat different in the Cambridge MS., fol. 47^a, ed. p. 149: "Whan these thre kynges weren a bedde and at her ese that nyght the storrye seith that they lay till on the morn that thei ronge to messe right erly for it was a litill a fore halow messe / Than com Merlin and a woke hem and opened the two wyndowes towarde the gardyn / for he wolde that thei hadde lyght ther ynne and they hem clothed and a rayed and yede to the mynster / and the archebisshop sange the messe," &c.

² Cambridge MS., fol. 47^b, reads here, p. 142: "for a peny that ye lese on this side ye shall wyne tweyn on that side."

³ Cambridge MS. "bredigan."

ought to hasten hither with their people, marching day and night. Merlin further declares he will be at Gaunes the next evening. All are amazed at this news. Artus ought to gather "chevaliers, serians & arbalestriers" as many as he can get, and also send great quantities of food to the part Merlin has pointed out. Every man should have food for forty days (Cambridge MS., "fifteen"). Then Merlin asks Ban for his ring that he may show it to Leonce of Palerne as a token that he comes from his lord. This brings the astonishment of the two kings to its climax; they find Merlin knows what they thought they and Leonce alone knew. They assure Merlin that they have full trust in him, and deliver the ring to him. Merlin then goes to Blaise, telling him all that has happened, and he writes it in his book. The next morning he arrives in Gaunes, shows Leonce the ring, and tells him what Ban and Bohort wish. Leonce assembles a great host at Benoys as quickly as he can, thirteen days before Christmas. He places garrisons in those towns and castles most exposed to the attacks of Claudas. "*Lambegues vns damoisiaus qui moult estoit loiaus, bons & preus de son cors,*" is put into the principal fort of Gaunes. Benoys is defended by "*le seignor de haut mur.*"¹ Trebes is entrusted to the care of Banin (Cambridge MS., Baudewyn) the son of Gracien, the godson of king Ban, and in this castle stay the two queens. "*Amont loir*" (Cambridge MS. has "*At Mouloir*") is given to the care of Placides. After making these arrangements, they convey the host secretly to the sea, where Merlin has indicated, and take ship for "*la grant bertaigne.*" Artus in the meantime has carried out what Merlin had advised. He has gone as privily as possible with a great host to "*bedigran,*" and also accumulated large store of provisions. To prevent spies from entering the land he stations many watches. No man who does not belong to Artus' party can cross this march until after Candlemas. "*Les menues gens*" marvel greatly at all these arrangements, which they cannot understand.

Malory and the "Ordinary Merlin" agree in the statement that seven hundred knights of Logres and three hundred of Gaunes take part in the tournament, and that it is opened by a fight between Gryflet and Ladinas. The appearance of Gryflet here is another proof how little Malory is aware that the "Ordinary Merlin" and the "Suite" contain contradictory accounts, for we shall find the same Gryflet, who fights here as a valiant knight, described later on, in the twenty-first chapter of the same book, as requesting knighthood at Arthur's hands that he may go and fight the knight of the fountain.

On the whole, the eleventh chapter corresponds with what is related above, save that many incidents are omitted, whole paragraphs skipped, and slight modifications introduced.

The small "*hakeneis*" on which the kings in Malory ride to the

¹ Harl. MS. agrees, but Cambridge MS. has "*Rahier de haut mur.*"

- ✓ field where the tournament takes place are not in the source; the chamber looking into a garden where Arthur, Ban, Bors, and Gwenhans, &c., sit in council becomes "a garden." All that happens during this council is skipped by Malory, as well as, later on, the distribution of the forces in Gaunes, when the host is sent to Logres.
- ✓ The river "trent" is not mentioned in the MSS., and the numbers of the forces of Logres and Gaunes, as well as Merlin's return with the auxiliaries from "gaunes" and "benoyc," are anticipated from a later period of the narrative. Dover as the port of arrival is only found in Malory; the MSS. simply state "tant quil vindrent en la grant bertaigne."

XII.-XVIII.¹ The vii kings [fol. 108 recto] are very sorrowful at their discomfiture, but, instead of acknowledging Artus, they swear to take revenge upon him. "En vne marche qui estoit entre le roialme de gorre & le roialme descoche" they hold a parliament. All incline to renew the war and destroy Artus. They agree to gather a great army "en la prairie de bedingran." Their forces are these: "Li dus escant de cambenic atout .v. hommes armes;" "li rois tradelmans de norgales atout .xj. hommes;" "li rois de norhomerlande qui auoit non clarions atout .xij. hommes;" "li rois des chent chevaliers qui moult estoit hardis et preus atout .xiii. hommes;" "le roy loth de leonois et dorcane atout .xii. hommes;" "li rois karados benbras de la terre destraignor atout .xj. a armes;" "li roys nantres de garelot atout .xj. hommes;" "li rois vriens atout .xj. a armes." They all arrive gradually at the rendezvous; they send out spies and foragers, but they find nothing, and thus have to get provisions from their own countries. When they are all assembled they have more than .xlM. men.

Merlin with the knights of Gaunes crosses the sea, soon lands in Great Britain,² and hurries to Artus' host. On the fifth day they arrive "en la

¹ Add. MS., ff. 108^a-113^b; Harl. MS., ff. 73^d-83^d; Cambridge MS., ff. 49^b-60^b, ed. pp. 146-177; Auchinleck MS., ed. 1838, ll. 3735-4394.

² The Cambridge MS., fol. 49^a and ^b, ed. pp. 146-47, has a paragraph not to be found in the French originals: "And so thei sailed till thei com to the bloy bretaigne / and it is reson that the boke do yow to vndirstonde whi it is so cleped / this is the trouthe after that the distruxion of troye it fill so that two barouns departed and fledde the contrey and oute of the londe for doute of the Grekes / of these two barouns that fledde the londe come grete plente of peple and the name of that oon was Brutus / whiche dide a ryue in this countrey and did do make a Citee that / in his lyve was cleped the newe troye / for that he was come oute of troye / and the londe was cleped in worship of his name Bretaigne / for that his name was Brutus / and longe tyme after the dethe of this Brutus com anothir kynge in to this londe / that hight logryns / This logryn amended gretly the Citee / and made towres and stronge walles enbatailled and whan he hadde thus ame[n]ded it he chaunged the name and cleped it logres in breteigne for that his name was logryn and this name dured in to the deth of kynge Arthur / but after his deth and the deth of his barouns that thourgh Mordred and Agraunyn eche slow other on the playn of Salisberi as the boke shall reherse her after the deth of launcelot that was the sone of kynge Ban of benoyk / And so it fill after that ther was a grete pestelence and

forest de bedingran." The men of both hosts are glad to see each other. They rest for eight days.

From fol. 108^o, lines 16-35, the text of both Add. and Harl. MSS. must be corrupt; at least it is unintelligible. The following paragraph in the Cambridge MS., ff. 49^b, 50^a and ^b, ed. pp. 148-50, would fill up the gap, no outward traces of which are, however, apparent in either MS.:—

"And than come Merlin to the wardeyns of the hoste and seide I go to fetch the thre kynges for thei shull do beste at this nede than eny other / And thei seide to Merlin in game / loke ye bewar of the tother parti for we here sey that thei do manace yow sore / I knowe that well quod Merlin / but thei shall neuer haue ouer me no power / and I do yow to wete that thei haue reson to hate me / for thei haue no werse enmy / ne noon that may do hem so grete damage as I shall do as longe as thei be enmyes to the kyng Arthur / but I haue it not yet begonne / but be well ware that noon isse oute of this hoste / ffor than the harme myght neuer be restored / ffor alle Arthurs enmyes ben loigged here faste by vnder the castell of bredigan / And thei be acompted xl^{li} wele horsed men / And of oure party we be but xxv^{li} and therefore we moste be wisely gouerned / or elles we sholde alle lese /

Sir quod Vlfin another ought rather to go on this message than ye / Nay quod Merlin I can better lede hem in safte than eny other so that thei shall not be seyn ne knowe of no man / Now goth a godes name seide the barouns / and as hastely as ye may come to vs a geyn / And Merlin departed anon fro hem so sodenly that thei knewe not where he was become / And than thei blissid hem for the grete merueyle that thei hadde therof / And than thei departed and yede a bouthe in the hoste and sette soche gouernaunce that noon was so hardy to meue ne to sette a fote oute of the hoste ne of her loiggyng / And thus thei a bode iiij dayes that thei ne herde no tydings of the thre kynges ne of Merlin / And as the boke seith the same nyght that Merlin departed fro the hoste, he come to logres be fore euesonge where as he fonde the thre kynges full pensif and hevy for the contrey that was so wastid and distroyed / Than com Merlin so sodenly amonge hem that thei wiste not fro whens he com / And a noon thei hym clipt and made grete ioye / and after thei asked hym how he hadde spedde seth that he fro hem departed and he seide right wele and badde hem make redy to go into the oste ffor ther after the barouns dide a bide.

slaughter of barouns and of the mene peple / and for that the losse was so grete the mene peple cleped it the bloy bretaine / ffor that her hertes and her thoughtes were so bloy and so blake for theire frendes that thei hade so loste for myschaunce of synne /

Now haue ye herde the cause why this londe was cleped the bloy bretaine / The tother baron that fledde oute of troye was cleped Corneus / This Corneus was of the lygnage of Geautes and in that contree that marched to bretaine and he was right a mervlouse knyght and was moche and stronge / and made townes and Castelles and men cleped the contrey Cornewalle in bretaine / ne neuer after yet this name ne left / And of hym come the Geautes as seith the frenshe book that moche harme haue don to the bretouns wherof this book shall reherse yow here after and also of the meruelles that befall in their tyme / but now returneth the tale to Merlin that cometh in the see and with hym bryngeth the socour and helpe to kyng Arthur oute of the litill breteigne / "

How sir quod kynge ban is oure socour than Iooms Ye quod Merlin thei be loigged by Arthurs oste in the myddell of the launde, in the foreste of bredigan / and thei be xv^m horsemen / and also of Arthurs x^m / But on that other party is moche peple for ther be x kynges crowned and a Duke / and thei haue in their companye l^m horsemen / New god helpe vs quod Arthur for this is a grete peple / Ye quod Merlin yet is ther more with this myschef than all this ffor thei be gode knyghtes and of high prowesse but be the feith that I owe to kynge Arthur that is my lorde I hope with the helpe of god to do so moche thourgh the witte that he hath me sente that in euyl tyme come thei ther / for thei shall haue so moche to done that thei shall not a gein yow endure / But ther shall be a bateile and that shall be grete / and moche slaughter ther shall be of men and horse but on owre partye shull not be deed above ȝij / but on their syde shall be deed thowsandes and that shall yese / And therfore a noon aray yow for after soper we will ride / And also do lede with yow vitaille for iiij dayes / for it is not to a bide lenger / And whan that thei vndirstode that Merlin hadde seide / a noon thei made redy and araide hem of alle thynges that was nedefull and than yede to soper at gode leyser / And than the kynge asked Merlin yef thei sholde hem arme / And he seide nay for it sholde do hem to moche gref / ne thei sholde haue no drede of no man lyvinge be that wey as he wolde hem lede /

Whan thei hadde souped, thei cloded hem warme as thei myght for the froste was grete / and the mone shone clere / and they passed on her journey / And ne were no mo than xxv^m what oon and other / Whan thei were alle on horse bakke Merlin rode before and the thre kynges and Autor that satte vpon a grete stede which the kynge made hym on to ryde / to be with hem in company / but he wolde haue abiden with gode chere yef the kynge wolde / In this manner thei rode all nyght / and Merlin was Guyde till thei com in a grete foreste where thei a lighte till here mete was made redy / Than thei ete and dronke of soche as thei hadde brought with hem for thei hadde Inough / "

Merlin abides with the three kings, who make him good cheer. Then he draws them aside; he reminds Artus that, though he is still so young, he has already the responsibility of such a great realm upon himself; the barons do not think anything of him, and "les menus pueples" know but little of him; all this makes his position so much more difficult. He has already given them large presents, but he must do it again and again; thus only can he gain the hearts of the people. [fol. 108 verso.] Merlin further tells them that in the piece of land on which they stand a great treasure is hidden, but Artus must not raise it till he has delivered the battle, as he will have "asses a departir dautre cose." But he must take care of this plot of ground. Merlin leads them to a place where the three kings can see the treasure, pointing out a fountain to them, by which they may always find the place again. It is very cold, for it is January, eight days before Candlemas. Returning to their host, they rest two days. On the third day Merlin bids them attack the rebels. He tells them to divide their people, but the enemy must not know they are there till they see them, and this will take place "deuant le iour .ij. lieues"; for if the

enemies see them, they will be overcome without doubt, as the rebels are much more numerous, but they need not be afraid, the victory will be theirs. All is done as Merlin advises. Keu, as the leader of "la premiere eschiele," carries the king's banner; with him are "Gyffes, Lucans, Mauruc de la roche, Guinans li blois, Drians de la forest saluage, Belias li amoureux, Flandrins li bers;" altogether four thousand men. The second "eschiele," under the command of Lucans, consists of three thousand men; the third "eschiele" is led by Vlfin, and consists of four thousand men; with it rides king Artus; Merlin "va deuant sor . i . grant cheual noir & les conduist." Ban and Bors arrange their men thus:—The first "eschiele," led by Pharien, with Bohort's standard, consists of three thousand mounted knights; in it are Ladynas, Moret de la voie, Palet de Trebes, Gracien li blois, Blioberis, Meliadus li noirs. The four thousand men forming the second "eschiele" are conducted by Leonce de Paerne. King Bohors leads the third "eschiele," of four thousand men, and king Bans the fourth, also of four thousand men; his seneschal, Aleume (Cambridge MS., Aliaume), carries his standard. Under cover of darkness this host proceeds to its destination.

The story now speaks of the "sesnes dirlande et des y rois qui marchioient a la terre des rois qui le roy artu guerroyent." The kings Brangoyres, Margaris, and Hargodabrans, nephews of "Aminaduc le roy des sesne," who was an uncle of "Augis le sesne," slain by Artus' father, upon hearing of the war between the vii kings and Artus, invade the country of the former. They had for a long time ravaged "Cornuaille," but Artus drove them away.

While Artus' host approaches them, the xi kings are careless, unheeding impending danger. They go to bed at even, without placing sentinels. They all sleep together in the tent of the King of the Hundred Knights. [fol. 109 recto.] In the middle of the night Lot has a dreadful dream. "Car il li estoit auis quil ueoit vn uent leuer si grant & si fort quil abatoit tous lors maisons et le clochier del monstier. Et apres vint . i . tounoires & . i . espars si grans que tous li mondes trambloit de paor. Et apres ce venoit vne grant aigue si bruiant, quele amenoit toutes les maisons aual & vne grant partie de la gent & il meismes estoit en grant peril de noier en laigue." He rises, awakens his companions, and tells them the dream. The kings are of opinion that they will have to fight soon. They awaken their knights, and bid them search the country round, and ascertain if it be free from enemies. They then arm themselves in all haste. Merlin informs the other party; they attack the scouts, who flee. Merlin shouts to them that Artus has come to defend his country. The scouts return to the camp, crying, "Treason," "As armes." All rise in confusion; the disorder is indescribable. To complete their distress, Merlin sends them ". i . si fort vent & un si grant estorbillon" that their tents are blown up and many of their things carried away. Artus' men rush among them, and kill a great many. The x kings at last rally some way off, in a plain by the side of a little river, and summon their dispersed host by trumpet signals. They find that they have only twenty thousand men; the rest of their army are in flight or slain. Merlin advises Artus to attack at once, marching straight against them, whilst Ban and Bors attack the forest side. When Artus comes to the ford,

"keus mut si angoiseusement a toute lenseigne quil portoit que li sien furent outre passe." The rebels have twenty thousand men; Artus' division only consists of four thousand. Keur' "eschiele" is so hard set upon that, unless they get succour, they cannot sustain the onset. Vlfin crosses the ford, and comes to their help. A violent battle takes place; the clanging of the arms can be heard a mile off. [fol. 109 verso.] Bretel now arrives with the third "eschiele;" but no sooner has he passed the little river, than Vlfin is thrown down from his horse in the *mêlée*. Bretel rushes wildly into the field, throwing to the ground the first knight who comes in his way. King Clarion rides against him; they run so vehemently together that both break their spears, fall from their horses, and lie motionless on the field. Keu comes to Bretel's rescue, and three kings to Clarion's, so that now twelve of the rebel army fight against eight of Artus' men; a very hot fight follows. Gifles and Lucans on the one side, Brangoires, Yders, Aguisicans, and Vriens on the other, are overthrown. Keu greatly distinguishes himself; he succeeds in remounting Gifles, giving him Nantres' horse, and then grievously wounds king Loth. When the King of the Hundred Knights sees Keu doing so well, he rides with forty knights, who elected him their leader, so wildly against him that they throw him down from his horse and give it to king Loth. Lucans and Gifles mount Keu again, while the King of the Hundred Knights and king Loth procure horses for the three kings Brangoires, Yders, Aguisicans, and for the duke Esconde de Cambeninc. Artus has now crossed the ford, and hastens to the assistance of his knights. Finding Vlfin afoot, he drives violently against "Tradelmant le roy de norgales," throws him off his horse, and gives it to Vlfin, who again joyfully returns to the thick of the fight. Artus personally does marvellous feats of arms. When the King of the Hundred Knights sees Tradelmant on the ground, he furiously attacks Artus, smiting him very hard on the helmet; in his indignation, Artus returns him such a dreadful stroke that he destroys his shield and cuts his horse's head clean off at the ears. Kex gives a stray horse to Autor; Autor smites Marganor, the seneschal of the King of the Hundred Knights, down, and gives his horse, to Bretel. [fol. 110 recto.] Bretel, finding Lucans on foot, and Gifles hard pressed by fourteen knights, rides to their rescue. The first knight he meets, he cleaves to the teeth, he cuts the second's arm off, and the shoulders of a third. When Gifles perceives that he has help, he fells a knight and gives his horse to Lucans; the latter, in order to avenge his shame, rushes furiously back into the medley, meets Aguisicant, the king of Scotland, and throws him off his horse. When Mauruc (Cambridge MS., "Mares") sees himself free, he rises and returns to fight. He finds Flandrins and Belias struggling to remount two of their fellows, but they cannot succeed, on account of the violent battle, till Mauruc joins them. On the other side of the field Artus fights valiantly. By chance the cry arises that Artus and one of his antagonists are on the ground; both parties rush to the spot and rescue the two kings. Artus fights like a lion; nobody can resist him; he rescues Keu and Gifles, who are thrown down by Loth, Nantres, Brangoires, and Vriens. Keu and Gifles then attack the kings. On the other side, Vlfin, Bretel, and Autor fight against the duke of Cambeninc,

Tradelmant, and "le roy de norhumberlande," and drive them towards the spot where Artus is performing marvels of arms. Indeed, if it were not for Artus' personal valour and glorious deeds, the rebels, who are all strong and noble knights, would have been victorious. In the decisive moment Ban and Bohort break forth with their men from the wood. The kings consult what to do. Loth declares they must by all means be avenged upon Artus. The King of the Hundred Knights, Carados, Nantres, the duke of Cambeninc, Clarions king of Northumberland agree with Loth and praise his courage. Loth then develops his plan. Four of them must fight against Ban and Bors, coming out of the ambush; the other five must abide where they are, and resist Artus and his knights as long as they can. They must endeavour with all their power to hold the battle by the side of the river, so as not to be surrounded and prevented from retreating. Thus they would lose less by abiding than by giving way. [fol. 110 verso.] This plan is unanimously adopted as the best possible under the circumstances. Loth, Aguisant, and the duke of Cambeninc advance with twelve thousand men, arranged in six "eschieles," towards the strait between the river and the wood. Brangoires, Vriens, Nantres, Clarions, and Tradelmans abide in the field with seven thousand men against Artus. The battle lasts till nightfall.

Ban and Bohort, with Leonce, Gracien, and Phariens, attack first Ydres' "eschiele," and drive it back upon that of Anguyscant. Leonce rushes to the assistance of Pharien's people. Both together drive the enemy back upon the division of "le roy (!) cambeninc;" all are inclined to flee, but the valiant duke encourages them to abide. King Bohors then enters the battle with his standard, "& lenseigne iert ynde a menues bendes dorfrois de belic si menuement, com pot faire a langhes dont li baligot li batoient dusqua sour le col del cheual." When king Yders sees him, he exclaims: "ha sire dus, deffendes vous pour si que diex nous deffenge hui tot de mort & de ma-haig." The King of the Hundred Knights asks his companions, in astonishment, who this knight with the standard is. From his banner they think it must be Bohort, but they cannot explain how he comes there suddenly from Gaunes. Carados runs against Bohort, encounters him violently, and both break their spears. Declaring he wishes to find out "comment li breton seiuent armes porter a cheval," Bohors gives his standard to his godson Blaaris. After that he rushes among them, and does great deeds of arms. The King of the Hundred Knights comes with two thousand knights to the assistance of Carados, but, despite all that, they have a very hard time of it. Bohort surpasses all by his valour, and the battle lasts long.

[fol. 111 recto.] Then Ban enters the field, giving his banner to his seneschal. The banner is thus described: "a couronnes dor & darsur a bendes entravers de uert, comme herbe de pre, & les langues dont il en i auoit .vi. batoient a antiaume¹ le senescal iusquas poins & par desus les oreilles del cheual," &c. When they see Ban the kings are convinced they can resist no longer. Loth declares with tears in his eyes that all is lost. Ban is no less valiant than his brother. Loth, the King of

¹ Cambridge MS., fol. 55^r, ed. p. 163, reads "Antony his stiwarde."

the Hundred Knights, and Marganor run all three against Ban; the King¹ of the Hundred Knights smites him so mightily on the shield that the cantels fly into the middle of the field. "*& quant li rois bans le voit si li anuie moult. lors haue courecouse sespee, & le lieue contre mont si enquide ferir le roy des .C. cheualiers parmi le hiaume. & cil qui se doute del colp senbronce & fiert le cheual des esperons. & li rois bans ataint le cheual sour la couuerture de fer dont il estoit couuers si le colpe tout outre & le cheual ausi iusquenterre si trebuche, tout en .i. mot.*" Brangoire, who now runs against Ban, is overcome as well. Ban defends himself successfully, but his horse is slain. In the critical moment, Artus arrives. He cleaves with a heavy stroke the first knight he can get hold of, and gives his horse to Ban. Now the kings can no longer sustain the attack; they begin to flee in all directions, pursued by Artus and his allies. When they arrive at a bridge, Morganore makes a last fruitless attempt to rally his men. While Artus is pursuing his enemies Merlin appears, and bids him leave off and be satisfied with what he has done to-day. He must now return to his country, and reward and honour his friends.

[fol. 111 verso.] Merlin tells them he must go to Blaise, who writes in his book all that happens. After Artus has defeated the ten kings and a duke, he orders his knights to pitch their tents on the meadow near the forest and take a rest, "*& se firent escargater² si dormirent iusqual iour.*" After dinner Artus orders all the spoils to be put in a heap, and then the three kings distribute all among their knights, "*a cels quil sorent qui enorent mestier as vns plus & as autres mains selonc ce quil estoient,*" &c. Artus sends all his men home, save xl, whom he wishes to accompany him to Carmelide; Leonce and Pharien conduct the men of Ban and Bors home "*por lor terres garder & que li rois Claudas ne lor forfesisst riens.*" When the knights return to their homes, they buy "*fiefs & rentes,*" and live on them honourably all their life.

Artus, Ban, and Bors abide for some time at "*bedingran qui estoit la maistre cité de la grant bertaigne et de carmelide,*" waiting for Merlin. On the day after their arrival at Bedingran, the three kings are by the waterside after dinner, "*por veor les pres & les gardins.*" Suddenly they notice how "*un grant vilain*" comes across the meadow by the side of the river. He carries a bow in his hand and arrows in his girdle. On the brook are "*anetes salvages*" bathing. The fellow kills one with an arrow, and by a second shot he kills "*un malart.*" Both birds he attaches to his girdle. When he approaches the kings, Artus asks him if he sells the birds; he answers yes. When Artus asks him again how much they cost, the fellow remains silent, "*& il ot chaucies vns grans solers de vache & ot uestu cote & surcot de burel & caperon si fu chains dune coroe neuee de mouton & sestoit gros & lons &*

¹ Cambridge MS., p. 164, Loth strikes Ban's shield.

² Cambridge MS., fol. 56^b, ed. p. 166, has here the following additional passage:—
"And leonce and Pharien hadde the gouernaunce of the wacche and Giffet and lucas the botiller / Pharien and leonces kepte towarde the wode and Giffet and lucas towarde the medowes and alle the tother lay and rested hem till day /"

noirs & hirechies." He says to Artus, after a while, he will give him the birds as a present, though he has not the heart to give away the third part of his riches, rotting in the earth, and that is neither his "honour" nor his "preuche." When the three kings hear that speech they are greatly surprised; they ask the fellow who told him about the treasure; Merlin, says he. When Vlfm comes out of the chamber, he at once recognises Merlin, [fol. 112 recto] who addresses him as "*Dans senescaus*," and offers him the birds for his king's supper, though he had not the courage to give some part of his treasure to a poor man. Keu and Bretel also recognise Merlin at once, and begin to laugh. The kings ask them why they laugh, and when they are told the reason, cannot believe it, and are dismayed. Vlfm goes with Merlin into a chamber. When they come out again, Merlin has his ordinary semblance and the kings welcome him heartily. Artus says he will eat the birds for love of him. All stay together in joy and pleasure "*jusquau miquaresme*." Merlin makes Artus acquainted with a beautiful maiden named "*Lisanor*," the daughter of the late count "*Seuain*," the heir of the castle "*Canparcorentin*." She comes, with many barons of the neighbourhood, to do Artus homage. By Merlin's advice, Artus speaks privately with her, shares her bed, and begets "*Lohot*"¹ upon her. At Mid-Lent he parts with her, and goes with his knights to Carmelide.

The eleven kings, greatly downcast at their defeat, ride all night, and have to suffer much from hunger and cold. At Sarhaut, a city of king Vriens, they stop, attend to their wounded, and recover from the efforts of the last day. On the third day they receive from "*Cornuaille*" and from "*Orcanie*" news that "*li sesne*" have invaded their countries. [fol. 112 verso.] They have laid siege to the castle of "*Vambieres*" (Cambridge MS., p. 172, "*Vandeberes*"). This fills the measure of their misfortune.

At king Brangoire's request, they assemble in king Vriens' great hall. All are deeply depressed and discouraged. Clarion asks Brangoire what he can advise them. Brangoire first confirms the news of the siege of Vambieres, and then declares, if their countries are dear to them, they must at once act, and not pass the time in mourning over their fate. He then enumerates various sources to which they cannot apply for succour. Leodegan de Carmelide is powerless at present, being at war with Rion. "*Peiles de Listinois*" nurses his brother Pelinor, who suffers from an ailment "*dont iamais naura garison tant que cil vendra laiens qui les auentures du saint graal metera a fin*." King "*Alain*" is ill himself, and will only recover when the best knight of the world asks him, "*dont cele maladie li vint & quel choses li gaus est que len sert*."² They must therefore only depend on themselves, and consider

¹ Cambridge MS., ed. p. 171, "*Hoot*."

² Cambridge MS., ff. 58^b and 59^a, ed. p. 173, has here the following additional passage — "*And of the kynge of Sorloys ne may we haue no socour / ffor Galehaut the sone of the Geaunte of the oute yles werreth vpon hym and will that that holde his londe of hym and he hym diffendeth as he may / ne of the kynge Berennain ne may we haue no socour / ne of the kynge Anadonain ne of the kynge Clamadas / for alle these werreth / and Calchous that is cosin to the kynge de Cent chifualers that now for vs hath traneyled god guyte it hym / And I knowe wele as soone as Galehaut may haue con-*

what is best to be done. Merlin has greatly harmed them by advising Artus to send for Ban and Bohors; as long as Merlin is there they can never prosper. All their attention must now be concentrated upon saving their countries from "cel pueple mescreant." Tradelmant then rises and advises the two kings, in a speech, to collect their forces and to fight against "li sesne." All agree with him, and praise his courage. They ought to garnish the "cite de huidesanc" with a great many people and provisions. Loth declares he cannot see how this can be done, because Merlin knows all their plans; he will tell Artus, who will do them great harm. The King of the Hundred Knights says Artus is not thinking for the present of attacking them, as he has gone with his allies, Ban and Bohort, to stay with king Leodegan. He therefore favours Tradelmant's plan, but afterwards thinks they must conquer a strong castle called "la roche as sesnes" "dont une pucele est dame qui moult est gente & est seur au roy hargodabrant." They finally agree to garnish "les mares de galone," "gorre," "cornuaille," and several parts of "orcanie." They recruit their armies from all parts of the country, but they do not get a single man from Artus' land. The first city which they fortify is "Nantes en bertaigne;" King Ydres is placed there with three thousand men. He has frequent engagements with "li sesne," and guards the country well. The second city is "huidesant." This king Nantres of garlot occupies with three thousand men. He is received with great joy by the inhabitants. He fortifies the strong tower of the town, and gradually collects from the neighbouring country a host of about seven thousand men.

The twelfth to the eighteenth chapters recount the rather complicated events which make up the battle of Bedegrayne, and which are doubtless told with over-great length in the "Ordinary Merlin," requiring some reading to be thoroughly understood, but are nevertheless perfectly clear and intelligible. Malory's reproduction is, in many respects, a muddle. He discards the fine plan of the battle which the writer of the "Ordinary Merlin" carries out in detail; he never tells us how Arthur's, Ban's, and Bor's men are divided, nor how their enemies arrange their forces, and omits, in addition to these prominent features, many others of hardly less importance. Had I to give an opinion on this portion of Malory's work, in so far as the reproduction of the "Ordinary Merlin" is concerned, I should describe it as a poor specimen of re-telling a story. It is scarcely worth while to examine in detail the differences between the two accounts, and I shall only point out the most important points.

In Malory "six kings" find five more allies, whereas in the "Ordinary Merlin" the numbers are seven and four; both agree, of course, in stating that eleven kings go to war against Arthur, Ban, and Bors.

quered these two remes / that than he will come renne vpon vs / for he desirith nothings
so moche as for to haue the reame that was Vtherpendragon / thus can we no counsell
but god of his mercy vs helpe and rede" &c.

Though Malory relates that the eleven kings engage themselves to one another by oath to resist and if possible to destroy Arthur, he does not state that this council takes place in a marshland between Scotland and Gorre, but gives us the impression that it took place at Bedegrayne.

Concerning the eleven kings, only eight are mentioned on the occasion of the parliament by Add. and Harl. MS., nine by the Cambridge MS., and eleven by Malory in accordance with the Auchinleck¹ MS. In the first two MSS. the rebels are—(1) The Duke of Cambenic $\frac{m}{v}$ men, (2) Tradelmans (Cradelmans) of norgales $\frac{m}{vi}$, (3) Clarion of norhomerland $\frac{m}{iii}$, (4) the King of the Hundred Knights $\frac{m}{iii}$, (5) Loth vij, (6) Karados of Strangoire vij, (7) Nantres vj, (8) Vriens vj. Later on in the battle are further mentioned Brangoire, Idres, and Agusant. In the Cambridge MS.² the order and forces are as follows :—(1) Duke Escam of Cambenyk $\frac{m}{v}$ men, (2) Tramelens of Northwales $\frac{m}{vj}$, (3) Clarion $\frac{m}{iii}$, (4) the King with the Hundred Knights $\frac{m}{iii}$, (5) Loth $\frac{m}{vij}$, (6) Carados of Strangore $\frac{m}{vij}$, (7) Ventres of Garlot vij, (8) Vrien of Gorre $\frac{m}{vij}$, (9) Ydiers of Cornewaille $\frac{m}{vj}$. The ninth king, as can be seen in the later part of the MS., is Brangore, and the tenth Aguysans.

Malory and the English metrical romance, *Arthour and Merlin*, name the following eleven kings, though in a somewhat altered order, probably due in the latter case to the metre :—

MALORY.

1. duke of Candebenet vM.
2. Brandegoris of stranggore vM.
3. Claryuans of Northumberland
iiiM.
4. kyng of the C. knyghtes iiiM.
5. Lott vM.
6. Vryence vjM.
7. Idres of Cornewaille vM.
8. Cardelmans vM.
9. Agwysaunce of Ireland vM.
10. Nentres vM.
11. Carados vM.

ARTHOUR AND MERLIN.

11. Erl Cambernic vM.
2. Brangores of Strangore vM.
1. Clarion viiM.
4. king of the 100 knights ivM.
5. Lot viiM.
8. Vriens viM.
9. Yder vM.
3. Cradelman viM.
10. Angvisaunt of Scotland viM.
7. Nanters viM.
6. Carados viiM.

I have quoted these names in detail, to point out, what has already been mentioned on the occasion of the disguise of Vlfyn and Merlin, that the Auchinleck MS. and Malory's MS. must have had the same archetype. Here is further proof, as the complete list of the names is

¹ Auchinleck MS., fol. 222^b, c, d, ll. 3735-3794.

² Cambridge MS., fol. 49^a, ed. p. 146.

only in Malory and the Auchinleck MS., and King Brangore only occurs in these two versions with the epithet "of Strangore."

I might point out that Malory (anticipating, perhaps, from the Tristan), with one single exception, noted in my List of Names and Places, vol. ii., always calls Anguisaunce king of Ireland, whereas in the "Ordinary Merlin" he is king "of Scotland."

Malory estimates the forces of the rebels at sixty thousand men (fifty thousand foot and ten thousand horsemen), agreeing with the Cambridge MS., but differing from Add. and Harl. MSS., which have "forty thousand." None of the MSS. mentions a siege of the castle of Bedegrayne. Malory had already anticipated Merlin's return from Gaunes in the preceding chapter, but had much curtailed it, omitting the long conversation between him, the two kings, and Arthur, and all mention of the treasure and the division of the armies into smaller detachments under special commanders. Malory has only a hint of "li sesne," whom he calls Sarazens.

King Loth's dream in the tent of the King of the Hundred Knights, as told in the MSS., becomes in Malory "a dream of the King of the Hundred Knights," and is very imperfectly rendered.

When the kings collect their forces afresh after the first defeat, the MSS. state they have twenty thousand men, Malory fifty thousand. The elaborately described plan of the battle is hardly to be recognised in Malory's story. Here and there the repetition of an incident testifies to the relation between Malory and the MSS. in the shape of a common archetype of both.

It is worth noting that, on page 55, Malory, in accordance with the MSS., speaks of Morganore as the seneschal of the King of the Hundred Knights. This knight is quickly promoted; on page 58 he figures by the side of his former lord as King Morganore. I cannot identify the "lardans" mentioned by Malory on page 55, 15.

In the beginning of the fifteenth chapter the two knights "belias and flandrens" are rendered by Malory "bloyas de la flaundres" and "Gwynas." Having run two names into one with its epithet, Malory, in want of another, replaced the second knight by Gwynas, mentioned a short while before. Blaaris,¹ the godson of Bors, who carries the standard of the latter, is called "Bleoberys" by Malory. The detailed description of Bors' standard is missing, and that of Ban is referred to in the unintelligible words: "kyng Ban as fyers as a lyon with bandys of grene / & therupon gold." A curious sight indeed!

On page 58 of chapter xvi. occurs a passage almost literally trans-

¹ Blaaris may probably be an earlier form of Bleoberis.

lated by Malory. Compare ll. 14-25 with the passage I have quoted on page 50 from the Add. MS.

The description of Arthur's fighting and of his being covered with blood occurs in the "Ordinary Merlin," but much earlier, as will be seen from my quotation on page 36.

The end of the battle of Bedegrayne, in the first half of the seventeenth chapter, is Malory's own composition. Owing to the fact that I did not content myself with reading only the portion of the "Merlin" here concerned, but read the whole of it for the purpose of finding more material, I had the pleasure of discovering that the incident of the forty knights was suggested to Malory from a much later passage of the narrative, forming, as it does, a prominent feature of the expedition of Arthur, Ban, Bors, and Leodegan against Rion and his allies. These forty knights, or, more correctly, forty-two or forty-three, go to the rescue of Cleodalis, the seneschal of King Leodegan. The list of their names occurs in the Add., Auchinleck, Harl., and Cambridge MSS. As this passage affords an instructive instance, not only of the relationship of the MSS. to one another, but also of the way in which the scribes dealt with proper names, I have transcribed it from the four MSS., and exhibited the four paragraphs on the table facing this page. In the metrical version represented by the second and third columns,¹ the numbers of the knights only agree to a certain extent with those in the Add., Harl., and Cambridge MSS. The poet was evidently unable to adapt all the names to the exigencies of his metre.

I here subjoin the names in the four versions which disagree most; the fifth column gives such names as certainly or probably correspond to them in "Le Morte Darthur."

I.	II.	III.	IV.	MALORY.
2. Bohors	Bohort	Bohors	Boors	Bors
8. Lucans	Lucan	Bricanc	Lucas	Lucas
9. Giffes	Griffes	Gilles	Giffiet	Gryflett
10. Mauruc	Marec	Moret	Maret	Melot, Mariet
11. Drians de la forest, de la forest sauualge				Briant de la foreyst sauuage
12. Belyas	Belias	Belizas	Belias	Bellans, Bellyas

¹ The eighty-eight lines of the Auchinleck MS. forming the second and third columns of the plate were originally copied from the edition of the Abbotsford Club (ll. 5419-5506), but through the kindness of Prof. Koelbing I was enabled to collate them with the text of his forthcoming edition (ll. 5409-5496). Excepting that I have not restored the letters "b," "3," "&" of the MS., expanded into "th," "y" or "gh," "and," these lines faithfully represent Prof. Koelbing's text. The variants in the Abbotsford edition are these:—5410, aflight; 16, by; 20, aſin; 27, Dors; 28, Ich; 33, forest; 37, Flaundin; 40, And hardi; 45, Bliovel; 51, Aladane; 53, Iglacides; 59, y-hote, Iervas; 92, Y wis; 94, he bar; 96, As y.

I.	II.	III.	IV.	MALORY.
13. Flandrins li- bres	Flaundrin	Flandrins le bret	Flaundryns le bret	Flaunedrens of the castel of ladyes
14. Ladinas	Lamnas	Ladynas	Ladynas	Ladynas
16. Aucales	Aucales	Aucalec	Anticoolas	Anneclaus ?
17. Blois	Bliovel	Bloys	Blios ¹	Bloyse
19. Canode	Canode	Cariode	Canade	
20. Meleaudan	?	Meleadan	Meliadus	
21. Iesmeladant	Aladan le crispe	Iesme ladenc	Aladan the crespes	
22. Placides	Isalcides	Placides	Placidas	Placidas
23. Lampades	Lampades	Lampades	Lampadys ²	
24. Jervais lanches	Jerias	Jeruassantes	Jerobas lenches	
27. Calogreuant	Calogrenand	Galogrenant	Calogreuant	Colgreuance
29. Agraueil	Agrauel	Agrenoul	Agresianx	Anneclaus ?
30. Ollacles	Cleades	Ollacles	Chalis	? Caulas
31. Guinnes	Gimires	Guirres	Grîres	? Gwynas
33. Merangis de port le gues	Merangis	Merangus du port les gînes	Meranges de porlenges	
34. Gornains ca- drus	Goruain	Gornaulx cri- adus	Gosnayns ca- drus	
36. Lilaïs hardis	Blehartis	Luays hardiz	Lays hardy	
37. Amadan lor- guellous	Amandauror- gulous	Amadam lor- guilleux	Annadius the proude	
38. Osenains	Osoman	Osenains	Osenayn	
39. Galescounde	Galescounde	Galesunde	Galescowde	
40. Gales li chans	? Craddoc	Galles le che- uaulx	Gales	
41. Blaaris	Bleheris	Blarys	Bleoris	Bleoberys

Malory replaces Ban, Bors, and Arthur by Lyoneses and Phary-
aunce; then quotes Ulfyus, Brastias, Ector, Kaynes, Lucas the bottelere,
Gryflett le fyse dieu (! do de carduel), and Mariet de la roche—all, with
the exception of Ector (who in the MSS. precedes Ulfyn), in the same
order as Add., Harl., Auchinleck, and Cambridge MSS. He then inter-
polates Gwynas de bloy, a corruption evidently of some other name.
Hereafter follow, as in the MSS., Briant (for Driant) de la foreyst
sauuage and Bellaus. This latter knight is called in Add. MS.
Belyas li amoureux, and in the Auchinleck MS. Belias the lord of
Maiden castel; this suggests to Malory, or perhaps to the scribe of
the MS. he used, to make two knights of him—i.e., Bellaus and
Moryaus of the castel of maydyns; I explain the form Moryaus as a
corruption of Amoureux or Amourous. Of the remaining knights only
Ladynas, Bloyse, and Calogreuance are to be identified. Probably
Malory got tired of the enumeration, and satisfied himself with twenty-
three names.

The black horse on which Merlin is said to appear in Malory is not

¹ The printed edition has "blois del casset," and ² "leopades."

mentioned on this occasion in the "Ordinary Merlin," but at a much earlier period, as I have stated on page 47.

"Li Sesne" (the saene or the sarazyns in the English MS.) is rendered by Malory "the Sarazyns." The Castle of "Vambieres" in the French MSS., "Vandeberes" in the English MS., corresponds to Wandesborow or Wandisborow. The whole paragraph relating to the wars of "li sesne" is skipped by Malory. "Sherewood" is only to be met with in "Le Morte Darthur." The description of Merlin's disguise given by Malory closely follows that of all MSS.; on this occasion only does Malory refer to the treasure which is hidden under the ground where the battle has taken place. "Lysanor" is "Lyonor" in Malory; her father, "conte Seunain," becomes "Sanam," and the child Arthur begets on her, called "Borre," later on, page 792, "Bohart," is called "Lohot" in the French MSS. and "Hoot" in the English MS. The name of "Antemes" occurring at the end of the eighteenth chapter is a corruption of "Aleume" in the French MSS. and "Aliaume" in the English MS. The remarks which Malory makes on the visit of the three kings to Leodegan, and on their expedition against King Rions, are gleaned from the "Ordinary Merlin," but they are of so general a character that it is difficult to trace the original in them.

The words, "and there hadde Arthur the fyrst syght of gweneuer the kynges doughter of Camlyard / and euer after loued her / After they were weddyd as it telleth in the booke," are Malory's addition. He omits the version of Arthur's wedding to Gueneuer as told in the "Ordinary Merlin," in order to adopt, later on, the version of the "Suite de Merlin." The episode of the false Gueneuer which forms such a prominent feature of the "Ordinary Merlin" is passed over in silence.

Arthur's parting with Ban and Bors, and Merlin's remarks upon the situation of the eleven kings, are made up by Malory.

The passage, "For these xj kynges shal deye all in a day by the grete myghte and prowessse of armes of ij valyaunt knyghtes as it telleth after / her names ben Balyn le Saueage and Balan his broder that ben merueillous good knyghtes as ben ony lyuyng," is derived and anticipated from the "Suite."

The latter half of the eighteenth chapter, i.e., the portion on page 64, closely follows, save for some considerable omissions, the "Ordinary Merlin." The "cyte of Sorhaut in the countrey of kyng Vriens" is mentioned as the resting-place of the eleven kings; but the council in the great hall of King Vriens, and the speeches by Brangoire, Loth, and Tradelmant, are not related in full, though a brief mention is made of them. The list of the kings who cannot come to their assistance is omitted, but hinted at by the passage: "as for kyng Lodegryaunce he loueth Arthur better than vs / And as for kyng

Ryence / he hath enough to do with Lodegreans / for he hath leyd syege vnto hym;" "cel pueple mescreant" corresponds apparently to "laules."

The castle "la roche as sesnes" is not mentioned by Malory. The "marches of Cornewayle / of walys and of the northe" correspond to "les mares de galone, gorre, cornuaille," and several parts of "orcanie." The cities fortified are the same in Malory and the MSS.: "Nantes en bertaigne" is the "cyte of Nauntys in Brytayn," and "huidesant" ("Wydesans" in the English MS.) is "Wyndesan" in Malory. The MSS. state that Idres and Nantres of garlot have each three thousand men; in "Le Morte Darthur" they have "four thousand."

The last seven lines of this chapter, referring to King Rion and his brother Nero, forming a sort of link between the "Ordinary Merlin" and the "Suite," are anticipated from the latter.

C. THE "SUITE DE MERLIN."

a. BOOK I. CHAPTERS XIX.—XXVIII.

FROM the nineteenth chapter of the first book to the end of his fourth book Malory follows what I have above described as the "Suite de Merlin," represented by the unique Huth MS. (ff. 75^a-230^b), and partly by a book printed (1498) at Burgos, Spain, entitled "El Baladro de sabio Merlin."¹ For the purpose of the following investigation I shall divide the contents of the "Suite de Merlin" into four parts, answering to the four books of "Le Morte Darthur." Firstly, book i., chapters xix. to xxviii., representing ff. 75^a-98^o of the Huth MS. (vol. i. pp. 147-211 of the printed text); secondly, book ii., ff. 98^o-150^o (vol. i. pp. 211 to vol. ii. 60); thirdly, book iii., ff. 150^o-183^o (vol. ii. pp. 60-139); and fourthly, book iv., ff. 183^o to the end 230^b (vol. ii. pp. 140-254). M. Gaston Paris has already outlined my task in his Introduction.²

¹ See Introduction to the Huth MS., pp. lxxii.-lxxx.

² *Ibid.* pp. lxx.-lxxii. M. G. Paris says, after pointing out that Malory made use of the "suite de Merlin" for his first four books: "Les quatre premiers chapitres du livre i, sont tirés de Robert de Boron; puis, pour les ch. v-xvi, Malory s'adresse au Merlin ordinaire. Au ch. xvii, il commence à suivre notre texte (Déjà dans le ch. xvi, il y a un mélange de notre texte; mais nous nous bornons à des indications sommaires, laissant le soin d'une comparaison minutieuse au futur éditeur de Malory), et, sauf quelques modifications ou additions que nous ne relevons pas, et surtout sauf de fortes abréviations, il ne le quitte pas jusqu'à la fin du livre i. Il le prend au début, et termine

XIX.-XXI. p. 50, 21. A month after his coronation Artus holds a court royal at "Carduel en gales." The wife of King "Loth d'Orkanie," Artus' half-sister, comes, with many knights and ladies, to pay him a visit. She is accompanied by her four sons, Gavains, Gaharies, Aggravains, and Guerrehés; Gavains, her eldest boy, is only ten years old. The queen, a woman of marvellous beauty, impresses Artus deeply. He loves her passionately, and finds that his passion is returned. Neither being aware that any blood relation exists between them, they yield to their passion. "Mordrec" is conceived—the son who afterwards causes Artus' death, "dont vous porrés oir viers la fin du livre."¹ Shortly after the queen has returned to her country, Artus dreams one night a strange dream: "qu'il estoit assis en une katiere, si comme il l'avoit commandé, et de seur lui avoit si grant plenté d'oisiaus que il s'esmerilloit dont il pooient tout estre venu. Et quant il ot veue celle samblance, se li fu avis que d'autre part revenoit avolant uns grans dragons et moult grans plenté de griffons avolant et alvient parmi le roiaume de Logres et a mont et a val. Et partout la ou il aloient argoient conque li encoutroient, et apries iaus ne demoroit chastiaus que tous ne fust ars et destruis, et ensi metoit a gast et a destruction trestout le roiaume de Logres. Et quant il avoit chou fait, il revenoit tantost et assailloit lui et tous chiaux qui avoec estoient, si que li serpens ochioit et metoit a mort tous chiaux qui avoec le roi estoient. Et quant il avoit chou fait, il couroit sus au roi trop vilainement. Et lors commenchoit d'ans deus la bataille trop dure et trop felenesee, si avenoit que li rois tuoit le serpent, mais il remanoit trop durement navrés, si que a morir l'en convenoit." The king is uneasy about this dream; the next morning, to distract his thoughts, he rides out hunting with his knights. In the hot pursuit of a hart, he loses his suite. After a while, his horse, exhausted, breaks down. Tired and disappointed, Artus sits down by the side of a fountain. No sooner has he done so than he hears a noise like that caused by the barking of thirty or forty hounds. Looking up, he perceives a "beste moult grant, ki estoit la plus diverse qui onques fust veue de sa figure quit tant estoit estraingne de cors et de faiture, et non mie tant

son livre i, à la page 211 de notre édition, avec l'épisode des enfants exposés.—Le livre ii, dont le début est assez singulier et semble un commencement de toute l'œuvre, est consacré à l'histoire de Balain (appelé Balin le Sauvage); il comprend dix-neuf chapitres, et se termine à la p. 60 de notre t. ii.—Le livre iii, comprenant quinze chapitres, raconte le mariage d'Arthur, le renouvellement de la Table Ronde et la triple aventure de Gauvain, Tor et Pellinor; il correspond à ce qui, dans notre t. ii, va de la p. 60 à la p. 139 environ, mais la fin est très abrégée d'une part et de l'autre contient quelques traits qui manquent dans notre manuscrit.—Le livre iv, divisé en 28 chapitres, comprend toute la fin du ms. Huth, et en plus, comme nous l'avons remarqué ci-dessus, p. xlix, n. 2, le dénouement de la triple aventure d'Ivain, Gauvain et le Morhout.—Avec le livre v, Malory reprend le *Merlin* ordinaire, et au livre vi, il est en plein dans le *Lancelot*, dont toute la première partie paraît lui avoir manqué."—M. G. Paris' indications are based upon Sir E. Strachey's Globe edition, in which the division of the chapters of book i. is altered. The above-mentioned i.-iv. correspond to i.-vi., and v.-xvi. to vii.-xviii., and book xvii. to book xix. of my edition.

¹ This remark shows that the author of the "Suite" intended to, and perhaps actually did, continue his account to Arthur's death.

defors comme dedens son cors."¹ The beast drinks out of the fountain; Arthur looks at it in amazement, as he has never seen anything like it. When the beast has quenched its thirst, it returns with great noise into the wood. Arthur follows it with his eyes as far as he can; he is so struck "que il ne savoit se il dormoit ou il se veilloit." When it disappears, he sits down again and is more pensive than before. The arrival of a knight startles him. The knight asks him if he has seen a strange beast pass by. Artus answers in the affirmative, declaring that the beast cannot have gone far. The knight sighs, and wishes he had a horse so that he might finish the quest. He tells Arthur that the adventure of this beast must be achieved by one of his family, and he has already followed it for more than a year. While they talk a squire arrives with a horse for Artus; he wishes to mount it and follow the beast, but the knight prevents him, declaring he would act meanly in depriving him of his quest. After a long discussion Artus yields the horse to him; they agree to meet one day at the fountain to fight each other.

When the knight is gone, Artus, bidding his squire go and fetch him another horse, sits down, and abandons himself again to his gloomy thoughts. He is a second time aroused, by the arrival of Merlin in the semblance of a child of four years old. The child says he comes from distant countries, and is astonished at finding a knight alone and pensive; "nus hom qui riens vaille doive penser a chose dont il puet bien trouver conseil." Artus is struck with the wise speech of the child, but declares God alone could advise him. "You cannot think nor do anything without my knowledge," continues the child. "'Sire que vous estes esbahis pour noient.' You ought not be frightened because you have seen your death in your sleep, for you have dreamt lately." Artus is greatly surprised at this knowledge of the child, who tells him his dream exactly. He thinks the fiend has come to him, and expresses his suspicion. "You are the fiend and the enemy of Christ," says the child, "for you have committed a great sin; you have lain with your sister." Artus denies this, declaring that he has no sister. "I know well who your father and mother are, and where your sisters live." However pleasant this news is for Artus, he still believes he has the fiend before him. "If you will believe me, I shall tell you all about them." Artus consents. "You are of royal blood, the son of a king and a queen. Your father was a brave and good knight." Artus answers: "If it be so as you say, I shall not rest until I have subjected the greater part of the world; but tell me who was my father." "Vters Pandragons," declares the child. "O that my people might know that," exclaims Artus, "how they would envy me." "Before six months pass," says the child, "I shall make it known to them that you are the son of Igerne and Vterpandragon."

In the course of conversation the child again mentions that Artus has carnally known his sister, but for the love of his father, who thought much of

¹ M. G. Paris remarks: "Il manque ici quelque chose; cf. *Malory* i, 17" (chapter 19 of my edition): "and the noyse was in the bestes bely lyke vnto the questyng of xxx coupyl boundes."

him, he would not reveal the secret to any one. "How can you have known my father, being so young? Thou liest, child." Merlin then vanishes, and reappears shortly as an old man of eighty, so feeble that he can hardly move. Artus speaks to him, and tells him that he saw a little while before a child who told him things which were known to nobody but himself. The old man says, "*Il n'est nule si celee chose que elle ne soit decouverte.*" Then he asks Artus, "What ails you?" Artus tells his dream again. The old man expounds it: There is a knight begotten, but not yet born. He will one day destroy the realm of Logres, and cause many a noble knight to die. Artus asks where the child will be born. The old man refuses to tell him. A long discussion follows on this point. At last the old man declares the child will see the light of day on the first of May. Artus tells of the beast he saw near the fountain. "*Che est,*" says Merlin, "*une des aventures dou graal; another man, better than I, who is not yet born, will tell you some day: Percheval li galois, the knight's son, who followes the strange beast.*" "Now pray tell me one thing which I long to know," says Artus. The old man answers: "I know what you wish to hear; you would like to know who your father was. I shall tell you and your people all about the circumstances accompanying your birth and childhood; '*je suis chius qui ne me celerai jamais viers toi. Saches que je suis Merlins li boins devins dont tu as toutes fois si parler.*'" Afterwards Merlin tells Arthur about his conception, birth, and bringing up. When Artus asks for advice how to hide his sin, Merlin declares he cannot advise him without himself committing a great sin, but he will bear witness for Artus before his people.

The arrival of Artus' suite brings this conversation to an end. Artus returns with his knights to Carduel. According to Merlin's advice, he sends for all his barons, also for Igerne and her daughter, to come shortly to Carduel.

All assemble on the appointed day; Vlfin and Auctor are also present. Merlin speaks with the two latter secretly. Morgain is the most beautiful of all ladies, but, adds the writer, she became very ugly afterwards when she gave herself to the fiend.

In the evening, when the whole court is assembled, Vlfin rises and, according to Merlin's arrangement, declares that he is much surprised how Artus can allow a lady who committed a great crime, by suppressing a child of hers, to be at his court. Artus is angry with Vlfin, and bids him be careful in his statements. Vlfin insists on what he has said, declaring himself ready to prove it on the best knight of the court if he be inclined to back the lady. Artus commands him to name the lady. When Vlfin pronounces Igerne's name, Artus, turning to Igerne, declares she must, if Vlfin speaks the truth, either find a knight to prove her innocence or suffer the consequences of her conduct. "*Car ciertes tel dame com il dist ne deveroit pas a mon regart remanoir ou siecle, mais estre condampnee pardurablement ou estre mise dedens terre toute vive.*" Igerne is terrified, but, though knowing well Vlfin's accusation is founded upon truth, she declares that she is sure somebody will defend her. Vlfin starts up again; addressing the barons of "Logres," he repeats his accusation in strong terms, defying Igerne to deny it. Artus continues

to feign great surprise. Igerne is so frightened that she does not know what to say, and at last cries: "Ha! Merlins, mandis soies tu! En ceste doulour m'a[s] tu mise, car tu eus l'enfant et en fesis ta volenté." Merlin, who, to conclude from what is said later on, is present disguised, rises, and asks her why she accuses Merlin, who has done her and her husband so much good. "He may have done us good in the beginning, but later on he proved a scoundrel, because he carried off our child," replies Igerne; "nay, he would not even wait till the child was christened, because he wanted it for the fiend." Merlin says he could give a better account of this story, "car vous ne le porries mieus savoir que je fach," and asks Artus if he would allow him to do so. Igerne must take an oath to acknowledge what Merlin says, if it be true. She agrees, provided Merlin tells her who he is. Merlin wishes to begin his story, but Igerne advances towards him, declaring emphatically he must tell his name before he says a word. Merlin suddenly assumes his true shape, in which she had seen him many years before, and says that, if she now knows not his name, he will tell her; it is Merlin. Igerne continues, after recognising him, "I knew well that you have caused me all this trouble, but now tell the king what you have done with the child." Merlin smiles, and, turning to the king, declares he will comply with the lady's wish, but first he must tell why he carried the child off. Artus asks him if he is really Merlin; he answers that he is truly; the barons of "logres," who know Merlin, but are ignorant of Artus' knowledge of him, affirm it. Merlin then gives a faithful account of everything that happened from the moment when he was called to help Vther till he gave the child to Auctor. He now asks Auctor to give back the child. Auctor relates that he loved and nourished the child tenderly, and points out Artus as the man this child had grown into, calling all his neighbours to witness. Merlin then asks the barons if he has not done well, and exhorts them to love their king well, who descends legitimately from Vther. All are glad at this unexpected revelation. Artus embraces and welcomes his mother. A great festival is arranged, which lasts "quinze jours tous pleniers."

Malory follows this account very closely on the whole, though he shortens it greatly, and leaves out many important incidents. There are but few points to be registered where Malory alters the source. As we have seen, he already alluded, at the end of chapter xviii, to the "Suite de Merlin." In order to have the means of joining the two versions, he begins the nineteenth chapter with the statement: "After the departyng of kyng Ban and kyng Bors," and adds that Lot's wife comes, or is sent, "to aspye" Arthur's court. This is not in the Huth MS. His account of Arthur's dream is so much curtailed that it is difficult to recognise the original in it. Contrary to the Huth MS., Malory relates that Arthur falls asleep after the beast is gone; probably the passage which I have quoted above, that Arthur did not know, for amazement, whether he was asleep or awake, caused this alteration. The names of Pellinore and Palomydes, as followers of the

questing beast, are not named on this occasion in the Huth MS. Malory's statement, that the child was fourteen years old instead of four, is more probable; perhaps the copy of the MS. which he used contained "fourteen." The dialogues between Arthur and the child and the old man, and afterwards with Merlin, are greatly condensed, and various important incidents omitted. The line, "for I shalle dye a shameful deth / to be put in the erthe quyck / and ye shalle dye a worshipful deth," are an anticipation of a later passage of the "Suite de Merlin," as I shall point out.¹

The latter part of this episode is much weakened through Malory's condensation, and deprived of its most prominent features. Ulfyn accuses Igrayne directly. Merlin's stratagem arranged with Ector and Ulfyn, Arthur's feigned ignorance of and surprise at the whole story, Merlin's disguise, and the final denouement of the situation when it has come to its climax through Merlin's story and his demanding the child from Ector, to whom he had given it, and Ector's pointing out Artus, are all points omitted by Malory. The festival arranged in the celebration of this joyful event, according to Malory, lasts, not fifteen, but only eight days.

XXI. p. 68, 22-XXIV.² One day during this festival, when Artus is at table, "*et ot eut le premier mès,*" a squire arrives with a knight mortally wounded, and helmetless. The squire rides right up to the table, descends, puts his master "*a la terre, qui estoit jonchie d'erbe verde,*" and says aloud, so that all can hear him: "King Artus, you are by God's grace the lord of this country; avenge my master, for he is killed by a proud knight abiding in the neighbouring wood. Artus is wroth at this news; but soon becomes pensive, "*ne n'entent pas a chose qui li escuiers dia.*" Merlin startles him by saying he must not be moved so deeply by an adventure of this kind; it would not do, as he will have many such adventures. "As this is the first adventure which happens at your court," "*si me poise moult que li comenchemens en est teuls, car li signes en est malvais et anieus.*" He wishes Artus to have it put down in writing into a great book, and all later events also, and tells him after his death the adventures will make up a large volume. This, he says, he tells him that he may meet future adventures vigorously. Artus then asks the squire where the knight who has killed his master is to be found; he is told he has in the wood a "*paveillons tendu d'encoste une fontaine,*" and compels all knights passing by to joust with him. Before his "*paveillons*" stands a tree all covered with "*glaives et escus.*" Artus says he must be a very strong knight, and asks Merlin what to do. Merlin declares he can and will advise him, and will always do so as long as he is the lord of this country, but after him no man will be able to govern it, "*car il ne varrant mie tant.*" The wrong that this knight has done must be

¹ Ed. G. Paris and J. Ulrich, p. 178. Huth MS. fol. 86^d. ² Huth MS. ed. pp. 174-196.

avenged by one of Artus' knights. Upon these words a young man steps forth, "Giffès li fieus Dou," a great favourite of the king, and requests Artus to bestow on him as a gift the order of knighthood, and to trust him with this adventure. In vain does Artus try to dissuade Giffès, telling him he is too young to meet such a strong knight; Giffès prays so earnestly, reminding him of his faithful service, that he finally yields to his request, and promises to dub him on the next morning. The wounded knight is then brought into a chamber, and taken care of; but his wounds are incurable, and he dies on the third day. Merlin tells Artus, in the evening, that Giffès cannot sustain the knight of the fountain, who is no other than the one who follows "*la miervillense beste*." Artus must save him; he will afterwards become one of his best servants, and be the last man who sees him alive. The allusion to his death makes Artus again pensive; Merlin, noticing it, comforts the king, and declares he will not die as long as he (Merlin) is alive. "*Tu mouras a honour, et jou a honte. Et seras richement ensevelis et je serai tous vis mis en terre. Et c'est bien honteuse mort.*" Artus then asks Merlin, if he cannot, through his great wisdom, prevent such death. Merlin does not answer this question, but says, "*Ore laissons a parler de ceste chose,*" "let us rather speak of Giffès." Immediately after Giffès is dubbed, he will go to meet the knight, who will overcome him through his great strength. To save his life, Artus shall ask him, as a first gift, to return immediately after the combat. On the next morning Giffès is dubbed, receives a horse, and splendid armour and a sword. Artus says to him: "*Je voel que si tost que vous averés jousté au chevalier, ou bien vous en kiece ou mal, que vous en repairiés sans plus faire, soit a pié ou a cheval.*" Giffès promises this, and starts.

When the king is at dinner, twelve very old men clad in "*blanc samit*" arrive, each an olive branch in his hand. After saluting Artus, one of them says: "*Rois Artus, che te mande li empereres de Roume a qui tout li signeur terrien doivent obeir que tu envoies a Roume tés treus que tes roïames doit,*" &c. Artus boldly replies, he owes the Roman emperor nothing; he holds his kingdom from God. They may tell their emperor that he is unwise to send him such an order, "*que je sui chius qui riens ne li renderoie, ne riens ne terroie de lui.*" If the emperor comes into his country, he may be sure he will never see Rome again. If they have to deliver another such message, they ought to take good care not to come into his country a second time. If they were not messengers, they would be differently dealt with. The messengers defy Artus, and bid him be aware of the consequences of his disobedience. "*Ales vous ent 'fait li rois' car bien avés fait vos messenger.*" When they are gone Artus speaks to his people about the strange message of the emperor.

When Giffès has left the court, he hastens to the fountain in the wood. He there perceives before the "*paveillon*" a great black horse, and a shield hanging on a little tree. Giffès throws the shield down. The knight comes out, and asks him why he has done that, and when he was made knight. When Giffès tells him that he was dubbed only that morning, the knight asks him to renounce the unequal fight, he himself being "*uns des plus*

renommés chevaliers." But Giffles insists and threatens. The knight laughs at him. They fight. Giffles is thrown down and severely wounded in the first bout, "le fiert si durement qu'il li perche l'escu et l'aubierc, se li met par mi le costé senestre le fer de la glave a tout grant partie del fust, si que li fers parut de l'autre part." The knight, sorry for the young fellow, whom he thinks he has killed, dismounts, looses Giffles' helmet, and puts the vizor up. Giffles soon recovers, arises, takes his shield, mounts his horse, and saying: "Certes, sire chevaliers je ne puis dire que vous ne soïés preudom et boins chevaliers; assés savés mieus ferir de la lanche nue je ne cuidois; mais se Dieus me consaut, se je eusse plus congiet de faire enviers vous [que] de lanche, ja pour chou que je sui navrés ne remansist que je ne vous essaïsse a l'espee." The knight replies: "Certes sire juvenes chevaliers vous avés assés cuer pour commenchier une grant chose. Nostre sires vous doinst le pooir de vous eslever, car ensi ser(i)és vous uns des boins chevaliers dou monde." Then Giffles returns to the court. Artus is glad to see him back alive, and orders his wounds to be dressed. He much admires the courteous behaviour of the knight at the fountain, and exclaims enthusiastically, "Pleust ore a Dieu que je le resamblasse." He continually thinks of the knight, and cannot sleep. He gets up, and bids a squire prepare his arms and his horse secretly. The latter tries to dissuade the king, but Artus tells him he will be back "a eure de prime." Outside the town Artus mounts his steed and rides forth into the wood. At daybreak he sees, on his way, Merlin chased by "trois vilains." Artus threatens them, and, frightened by the appearance of an armed knight, they leave off and flee. Merlin tells him, he is wrong when he thinks he has saved him from death; Artus himself is in greater danger than he. He further tells Artus that he knows he has come out to fight with the knight of the fountain; he will not be able to resist him, for want of a good sword, and ought to return. But Artus is bent on fighting; he asks Merlin why the three men chased him. Merlin replies that he angered them by foretelling their near death. One will be killed by his comrades, the other two hanged. Artus asks if this be true. Merlin tells him that, quarrelling about a horse which they have bought on the road, and of which each claims his share, two, who are brothers, will kill the third, their cousin. The justices of the next town they come to, will hang them "as chaisnes meismes que il averont aporte dou bos."

When they approach the "paveillons" Merlin suddenly vanishes. Artus provokes the knight. They fight. The first and second bout are without result. In the third attack Artus' horse is thrown down, but rises quickly and flees into the wood. The knight dismounts, and asks Artus if he will give up the battle; on his answering No, they continue to fight on foot with their swords. Each gains an advantage in turn. The king, being young, is more agile than the knight, already advanced in age. Soon Artus' sword breaks against the harder one of the knight; the knight, seeing it, "se [ne] pensa qu'il le metra jusques a paour de mort pour savoir s'il en porroist traire parole de couardise, car de tant set il bien qu'il est drois hardis." But Artus covers himself with his shield and endeavours to avoid the blows of the knight, who greatly admires his conduct. "You see how matters stand," he says to Artus; "surrender yourself to my mercy, or I shall cut off your head."

" Certes, dans chevaliers, ' fait li rois, ' vous estes fols de ce requerre. Ia se Dieu plaist pour paour de mort ne dirai parole qui a honte me peust torner, car certes je donc plus honte que je ne faich le mort." Then, suddenly throwing his shield away, he runs up to the knight, grasps him round the hips, lifts him more than a foot from the ground, and throws him violently down, " et puis le rue a fine force desous lui, si qu'il le tient entre lui et la terre," and pulls off his helmet, but, in default of a weapon, he cannot kill him. In the agony of death, the knight presses Artus so tightly that the latter loses hold. Seizing the moment, the knight starts to his feet, brings Artus to the ground, and is about to cut his head off, when, at the supreme moment, Merlin appears, and cries: " Chevaliers ne le touchies ne plus ne li faites de mal, car tu feroies le royaume de Logres orfenin de boin signour." " Is this Artus ? " asks the knight ; when Merlin says Yes, the knight still wishes to kill Artus, but Merlin throws an enchantment upon him, so that he falls asleep upon Artus. Then Merlin says to Artus, " Ore pues tu veoir que mieus te vaut mes sans que ta prouche." When Artus has recovered himself, he thinks Merlin has killed the knight, and reproaches him, for he was one of the best knights of the world. Merlin says the knight is only asleep. Artus now acknowledges how much he needs a good sword.

This account deviates from that in corresponding chapters of " Le Morte Darthur " in various, though insignificant, points. The name of the knight slain by the knight of the fountain whose servant comes complaining to Arthur, according to Malory " Mylis," is not mentioned nor does the name occur in any shape in the rest of the " Suite de Merlin." It is Malory's own, or he derived it from the MS. he had before him. Arthur's deep thought on receiving the news of the knight's misfortune, and the subsequent dialogue with Merlin, are omitted. Merlin's statement that Gryflet will be the last knight who shall see Arthur alive is alluded to by the words, " abydyng with yow the terme of your lyf," but Malory forgets that, in his twenty-first book, Bedewer is the knight who is with Arthur in the moment when he is received by the four queens to be taken to the ile of Avelion. In the prose-Lancelot Bedewer's part is acted by Gryflet. The passage referring to Arthur's and Merlin's different ways of dying occurs, as above mentioned, in Malory's twentieth chapter. Malory suppresses the dialogue between Arthur and Merlin on this occasion. The " dyuerse colours " of the shield and the spear of the knight of the fountain are Malory's additions. The incident of the arrival of the twelve ambassadors from the emperor of Rome is misplaced. In the Huth MS. it precedes Gryflet's fight with the knight, whilst Malory relates it after Gryflet's return from the fountain. Malory omits the description of the twelve ambassadors here, but makes use of it in the first chapter of book v., as I shall show later on. The reason why the three men pursue Merlin, their story, Merlin's attempt to dissuade Arthur from fighting until he gets a good sword, and his sudden disappearance upon their arrival at

the fountain are all omitted by Malory. Malory greatly modifies the meeting of Arthur with the knight at the fountain, and their subsequent fight. The squire who brings the spears, the rest the two fighters take, and the comparison of their fighting to that of "two rammes" are Malory's own. The passage of the Huth MS., "*Si vausisse mieus, se Dieus me consaut, avoir pierdu le milleur chastiel que j'aie que tu l'eusses ensi ochis,*" corresponds to Malory's "I had leuer than the stynte of my land a yere that he were on lyue." The name of the knight of the fountain, Pellinore, his two sons "Persyual of walys" and "Lamerak of walis," and the remark that the latter is going to tell Arthur Mordred's name, are not mentioned upon this occasion in the Huth MS.

XXV.-XXVI.¹ Merlin takes Artus to a hermit, by whom his wounds are dressed. After two days he is healed. Merlin leaves with him. After a while they come to a lake. Merlin asks Artus what he thinks of the water; Artus declares it is so deep "*que nus hom ne s'i meteroit qui ne fust peris.*" "In this lake," continues Merlin, "is the good sword of which I told you." Suddenly they see rising out of the water, in the middle of the lake, a hand with a beautiful sword; "*et estoit viestus li bras d'un samit blanc, et tenoit la mains l'espee hors de l'iaue.*" Artus is anxious to get this sword, but he does not see how. Merlin bids him wait till God advises him. While they stand on the bank, a lady on a small black horse arrives in great haste. After saluting them, she says: "I know well you crave the sword, but it is folly; you cannot get it." Merlin speaks kindly to her, declaring he well knows that they can only get the sword through her, as she has enchanted the lake; he then requests her to give the sword to Artus. The damsel finally agrees, provided Artus promises to grant her the first gift she asks from him. She then walks over the water, fetches the sword, and gives it to Artus. Merlin thanks the damsel, recommends her to God, and she departs.

When Artus admires his sword, Merlin asks him what he thinks of it. Artus declares there is no costly thing in the world he would take in exchange for it. "Which do you value most," continues Merlin—"the sword or the sheath?" Artus answers, "The sword is worth a hundred sheaths to me." Merlin replies: "*Certes, sire, or sai ge bien que vous estes povrement conaissans de la bonté que la damoisele vous a faite. Saichies vraiment que li fuerres vaut mieus que teuls dis espees ne font; car il est d'un cuir qui a tel viertu que ja hom qui sour lui le porte ne perdera sanc ne ne recevra ja plaie mortel, pour quil soit armés a raison.*" "This," he continues, "will be stolen from you by Morgan, who will give it to her friend, that he may overcome you." This story will be told later on. "When you have lost it," says Merlin further, "you will then appreciate its value." After leaving the lake, they pass the knight's "paveillons," but he is not there. On being asked, Merlin tells Artus what has become of the knight: some time before,

¹ Huth MS., ed. vol. i. pp. 196-201.

another knight, Hegan, from the city of Camaloth, came into this country; the knight of the fountain fought and overcame him, and he fled towards Carduel, chased by his adversary. He will soon pass by us. Artus has a great mind to test his new sword, but Merlin dissuades him this time. When Artus asks Merlin how the damsel could walk over the water, the latter tells him: "Vours est qu'il i a un lac grant et miervilleusement profont. Et en mi lieu de cel lac a une roche ou il a maisons biele et riche et palais gran et miervilleus; mais il sont si tout entour clos d'encantement que nus qui par dehors soit nel puet veoir, s'il n'est de laiens. Et la ou vous veistes que la damoisele se mist n'avoit il point d'iaue, ains est uns pons de fust que chascuns ne puet pas aperchevoir. Et par illuec endroit passent cil qui laiens vont, car il voient le pont che que autre gent ne voit mie." Approaching the town, they pass the knight of the fountain returning to his "paveillons." "Il ne li disent riens ne autressi ne fist a eus, ains passent outre, si s'en entra li rois en la chité." All his people are delighted to see Artus back safe and sound. The same evening, Artus' sister Morgain is wooed by king Vrien. Artus gladly gives him his sister in marriage, and adds: "grand partie de son regne et li douna un chastiel que on apieloit Taruc," close by the sea, and very strong. Their wedding is celebrated soon afterwards with great splendour. The first son is Yvain. After the wedding, Artus goes to Carlion.

XXVII.-XXVIII.¹ When he is at table one day, a knight richly appelled comes and demands, on behalf of king "Rion de Norgales," who has already conquered eleven kings and adorned a mantle with their beards, Artus' beard in token of submission. Artus laughs, and tells the messenger he must have made a mistake in coming to him, "car je n'euch onques barbe, trop suis encore jovenes, et se je encore bien l'avoie ne l'aroit il pas." He bids the messenger tell Rion, if he should venture to invade Logres, he will run the risk of never seeing his own country again. After his departure, Artus tells his people he never heard of such a proud and foolish demand; he then asks them if any one knows Rion. A knight named Narran declares him to be a very strong knight, who never began a war without terminating it victoriously.

One day, when the time is close at hand for the child to be born who should destroy him, Artus tells Merlin he has determined to lock up all the children born at that period in two or three strong towers until he finds out which of them he must kill. Merlin replies that all his efforts will be fruitless; he will never discover the child, as his fate is inevitable. Artus, in spite of Merlin's words, carries out his plan. He proclaims throughout Logres that all children born at a certain time should be delivered to him. More than "cinc cent et cinquante" children under three weeks old are brought to him.

King Loth's wife is also delivered of a son, christened Mordrec. According to Artus' instructions, Loth tells his wife the child must be sent to her brother. His wife agrees. "Lors fist li rois metre l'enfant en un berchuel qui molt

¹ Huth MS., ed., vol. i. pp. 202-212.

estoit biaux et riches. En che que la mere metoit l'enfant dedens le berchuel, il avint que il se hurta el chief desus, si qu'il ot une grant plaie en mi le front qui puis i parut tous les jours de sa vie." The king is angry. The cradle is then put into a ship, and many ladies and gentlemen accompany the child; they have orders to tell Artus that they bring his nephew. Thus they depart from "la chité d'Orkanie." The second night at sea a heavy storm arises, the ship is wrecked, and all are drowned except the child, who is carried ashore in his cradle by the waves. A fisher finds the cradle and carries it home to his wife. The wife is highly pleased, and declares they must nurse the child; the rich cradle is a gift of providence. But the husband thinks differently. The child, being of noble or royal birth, ought to be brought up better than they can possibly afford; he prefers, therefore, to carry what he has found to the lord of his country. To this the wife reluctantly agrees. So they take Mordrec to Nabur li Derrées, who has a little son only five weeks old, Sagremor, afterwards called Sagremor li Derr[e]és. The two children are brought up together. The wound which the child has on the head is cured. The name Mordrec was found on a slip of paper in the cradle, but no information whatever about his parents.

Artus intends at first to kill all the children gathered in the towers, but is advised in a dream rather to expose them to their fate in a ship without "pilot." "Et adont se il pue[en]t eschaper de tel peril, bien mousterre Jhesucris qu'il les aime et qu'il ne veult pas la destruction des enfans." Artus ships the "set cent [MS. has "viint"] et douze"¹ children. But our Lord takes pity on the children, the ship is driven ashore near "Amalvi," where king Oriens reigns, the father of Acanor, who was afterwards surnamed "Le lait Hardi." Oriant is greatly surprised to find so many children in the ship; an old knight suggests that they probably come from Logres. The children are carried to "le chastiel as Gen[v]res," which is built for them and thus called "pour l'amour d'eua." There they are nourished "comme il lour convint." The barons of Logres are very angry at the treatment of their children, and mourn for them "que nus plus." They ask Merlin what they can do "de ceste desloiauté que chis rois a faite." Merlin calms them, and persuades them that Artus has done that "pour le commun pourfit dou roiaume de Logres." The false Robert de Boron adds: "Et sachiés que ceste chose n'est mie fable, ains est aussi verités comme vous vées vue je parole a vous." Merlin then comforts the barons by assuring them their children are not dead; they will see them return safe and sound after ten years. At last Merlin succeeds in reconciling the barons with Artus.

The twenty-fifth to the twenty-seventh chapter in Malory are an even more shortened reproduction of the source than before. As above stated, Merlin's suggestion that Arthur should postpone the fight with the knight of the fountain until he had a good sword, and Merlin's remark, when they approach the lake, that they will find a sword there, are omitted, but soon after Malory, forgetting this, makes Merlin say,

¹ Compare fol. 96^r: "cinc cent et cinquante."

"yonder is that swerd that I spak of."¹ According to Malory the damsel is already upon the lake, and comes to Arthur, whereas in the "Suite" she arrives from afar on a small black horse at great speed. The description of the lady's walking on the water and fetching the sword, and Merlin's following explanation of the enchanted palace and the invisible bridge, were, it appears, too improbable for Malory; with him the damsel simply bids Arthur take "yonder barge," and row himself over the lake to get the sword, which Arthur, with Merlin's help, really carries out, himself receiving the sword from the hand which holds it above the water. Arthur's reflections on the sword are suppressed by Malory, but come in somewhat later in a different form. The knight who flees from the knight of the fountain towards Carduel is called Heglan in the Huth MS., Egglame in Malory, and Carduel becomes Carlion. Merlin's prophecy that Arthur shall lose the sword through his sister, &c., is omitted by Malory. The "crafte" which, according to Malory, Merlin employs to render the knight of the fountain invisible to Arthur and *vice versa*, is Malory's addition. The description of the enchanted lake, &c., is suppressed, as well as the wedding of Morgan and Vrien, and their rich endowment by Arthur.

Malory's abridging process in the three last chapters is carried to an extreme in the twenty-eighth chapter. Folios 96^a-99^a of the Huth MS., pp. 203-212 of the printed text, are represented by fifteen lines on p. 75. Malory omits almost all above stated as occupying these folios.

β. THE SECOND BOOK.²

I.-IX. When Artus is one day at dinner, a knight, exhausted and covered with blood, on a horse in the same state, enters the palace, and announces that King Rion has invaded the country, and burns and ravages towns and villages. Several castles are already in his possession. Asked where he saw Rion last, he says at the castle of Tarabel. The knight is properly looked after, and orders are sent to all barons to come "erramment" to Camaloth "sans nul autre delay." In spite of this urgent statement, the

¹ It is somewhat surprising that in the "Suite de Merlin" the sword which Arthur withdrew from the stone previous to his coronation is never mentioned. Escalbor is, according to the "Suite," the sword which Arthur gets out of the lake, as stated in the Huth MS., fol. 101^a: "'Or saicies,' fait elle, 'que l'espee est apielee par son droit non Escalbor.'" But according to the "Ordinary Merlin" the sword which Arthur withdraws from the stone is called Escalbor. Compare, e.g., Cambridge MS., fol. 39^a: "And it was the same swerde that he toke oute of the ston; and the lettres that were write on the swerde seide that the right name was cleped Escalbourc, whiche is a name in ebrewes, that is to sey in englissh, kyttynge, Iren, tymber, and steill," &c. Compare also my remarks, at p. 36, on the ninth chapter of book i.

² Huth MS., ff. 99^a-150^a; vol. i. p. 212 to vol. ii. p. 60 of the printed text.

barons only assemble in about three months, to the number of more than four thousand, "dont li plus couart quident estre preu et hardi."

One day, before Artus is starting on his expedition against Rion, a beautiful, richly dressed damsel arrives at the court and declares that her "dame de l'isle d'Avalon" sent her to ask Artus' assistance; unless she finds help at his court, she cannot find it anywhere else. "Lors oste de son col un mantiel dont elle estoit affablee," and shows Artus a sword, girt round her waist, and says to him: "saches que je n'en puis mie faire si ma volenté que je la puisse traire del fuerre ne desçaindre [descainbre] d'entour moi, car che n'est mie chose qui soit a feme otrée, ne a chevalier s'i(l) n'est li mieudres chevaliers de cest pais et li plus loiaus sans trecherie et sans boisdie et sans traison. Mais qui teus sera, si porra denoer le(s) renges [regnes] de l'espee et apporter avec soi l'espee et delivrer mo(i) de che dont je sui malement encombrée; car tant que je l'eusse tout dis avoec moi ne porroie jou jamais avoir ne bien ne repos."

Artus marvels greatly; he thinks any one might withdraw the sword from the lady's girdle. The damsel tells him he is mistaken, and repeats her former declaration. Then Artus, saying that he will do it first, not because he thinks he is the best knight, but because he is king, and in order to give his barons a good example, endeavours to pull the sword out, but fails. All barons who attempt after him to draw the sword out have the same ill success; only one poor knight from Northumberland does not try. "Chis avoit esté desirètes de par le roi de Norhumberlande pour un parent le roi qu'il avoit ochis, et l'avoit [on] mis em [om] prison plus de demi an, si en iert de nouviel issus. Et pour chou estoit il si povres qu'il n'avoit si petit non. Mais s'il estoit povres d'avoir, il estoit riche(s) de cuer hardement et de proueche," &c. Artus tells the damsel she must try her fortune elsewhere. She begins to cry, declaring that she has already been at Rion's court, but no knight of his could free her from the sword. "'Ha! Dieus,' fait elle, 'si m'est ore avis qu'i(l) me converra dès ore mais souffrir ceste painne, cest martyre et ceste douleur, et si ne l'avoie je pas deservi.'" Then the poor knight steps forth, and asks the damsel to allow him, "par courtoisie," to attempt pulling out the sword. The damsel does not believe that he can do it, as she thinks he cannot be a better knight than all those in the hall who have failed. The knight replies, angrily, that one ought not to judge a person's quality by his poor appearance. He lays his hands on the sword and takes it out of the girdle without any difficulty, and says: "Or vous en poés aler toute delivree quant il vous plaira, mais l'espee me remanra, car il m'est avis que je l'ai gaaignie." He then pulls it out of the sheath and feasts his eyes on its splendid workmanship. When he has replaced it, the damsel tells him that he is evidently the best knight of all, but that it would be unwise of him to keep the sword. The knight declines to give it back. The damsel then tells him, if he keeps it, he will kill with it the man whom he loves most in the world. She adds another marvel that will happen: "anchois que chis ans soit passés vous combateres vous a un chevalier qui vous occirra de l'espee et vous lui. . . . Ore le portes, se il vous plaist, que bien sachiés que vous em portés vostre mort avoecques vous." The knight nevertheless keeps the sword, but he will no longer stay at the

court, where they have shown him "que povretés fait tenir mains preudomes vil." He bids his squire get ready his arms and his horse.

On hearing this, Artus is ashamed, and, requesting the knight to stay, promises him large amends, bidding him ask whatever gift he chooses, and he will grant it; but the knight declares he cannot stay this time. While the other knights are still conversing upon the adventure that has happened, a lady on horseback arrives and declares that Artus owes her a gift. When the king recognises her as the lady who gave him the sword at the lake, he acknowledges the fairness of her claim. She tells him "que l'espee est apielee par son droit non Escalibor;" then she asks as her gift the head of the poor knight who has just achieved the sword. Artus is quite "esbahis" and does not know what to do; he cannot comply with her request. The lady tells him the knight has killed her brother. The poor knight, hearing the damsel demand his head, steps forth, declaring he has for three years sought her, who had poisoned his brother, follows her, and strikes her head off with one blow. Taking up the head, he goes to Artus, and tells him that it belonged to the most disloyal damsel "qui onques entrast en votre court." Artus is very angry at the knight's conduct: he would never have thought any knight would dare to do that before him. "Car certes gringnour honte ne me peust nus faire que d'ochirre damoisele devant moi qui estoit en mon conduit, que je devoie garandir," &c. The knight kneels down and implores Artus' pardon, but he refuses, and bids him leave the court.

The knight then takes the lady's head and goes to his "ostel." He tells his squire that he has found and killed the damsel whom he has sought so long, but also that by his "fourfait" he has lost "le compaignie de la court et l'acointance del roi." The squire is sad, and cries, but the knight consoles him, saying that he will soon regain the king's favour, for he will bring him the head of his worst enemy, King Rions. He then bids his squire go to Northumberland and show the damsel's head to all his friends. The squire asks him where he can find him upon his return; the knight answers: "Je cuic que tu me troveras en la court le roi Artu(s). Car ains que tu revienngnes avrai jou, se Diu plaist, faite ma pais viers le roi." They both depart; the knight with his sword goes where he thinks to find King Rion, the squire on his errand to Northumberland. Folio 103 is missing here in the Huth MS.¹

On folio 104 a speech of Merlin is continued. The damsel who had come to the court with the sword has a brother, a good and valiant knight, but she

¹ M. G. Paris adds here, in his edition, p. 223, the following note:—"Le fol. 103 manque dans le manuscrit. Voici en bref, d'après Malory (l. ii, c. 4) ce qui y était raconté: Un chevalier d'Irlande, appelé Lanceor, demande et obtient d'Artu la permission de suivre le chevalier exilé pour le punir de l'affront qu'il a fait au roi. Merlin arrive, et explique ce qui vient de se passer; la demoiselle qui a apporté l'épée attachée à sa ceinture (et qui est encore devant le roi) est la plus perfide qui ait jamais existé. Le discours de Merlin continue par les premiers mots du fol. 104, qui commencent cet alinéa."

loved a knight of Logres, one of the most wicked and disloyal men ever alive. Her brother and her lover met one day by chance ; they fought together, and the brother happened to kill the lover. The damsel wished to punish her brother and kill him, and addressed herself to "la dame de l'isle d'Avalon" for assistance. This lady gave her the sword and told her : "Il convient que chis qui ceste espee deschaindra soit li mieudres chevaliers de sa contree et li plus loiaus et sans toute trecherie," but she added, he who would deliver her from the sword would kill her brother and thus revenge her lover. All this, continues Merlin, will really happen, but unfortunately the two best knights of Logres will die. "Certes il me samble et si est voirs que elle eust mieu deservi mort que cele qui orendroit morut ichi." When the damsel¹ hears that "li rois s'acorde a Merlin," she leaves the court.

Then Artus asks Merlin how he can punish the knight who has disgraced him by killing the damsel before him. Merlin replies : "Ha ! sire, ne parlés ja de sa mort. Certes c'est damage qu'il ne doit durer longuement, car a merveilles est preudom et boins chevaliers." In the next ten years no knight will die whose death will be so lamentable as this knight's. Merlin prays Artus and the barons to pardon him his "meefait," he deserves pardon, as is proved by his achieving the feat of the sword. He will shortly make large amends for the wrong he has done. Artus wishes to know who he is. Merlin says : "Je vous [di] qu'il a a non Balaain[s] li sauvages, et est, che sai ge bien, li millours chevaliers du monde, par coi je le plaing." Artus and his barons believe what Merlin says, and forgive Balaains. Then Artus asks Merlin about King Rion : "Me porra il nuire de noient ?" Merlin replies : "Chevauche, roi, aseur, que nostre sires te fera assés gringnour honnour que tu ne cuides, ne il ne t'a pas mis en la hauteche ou tu iés pour si tost faire trespuchier. Pour chou ne t'esmaier car il te secourra en tous lieux, se che n'est par vo defaute [defaite]. Ensi parole Merlins au roi et le chastie del chevalier." In the meantime the "chevalier d'Irlande" starts from his "ostel" and nearly reaches Balaains at the foot of a mountain. He does not know him very well. When he has so far approached him that his voice can be heard, he cries out to him : "Dans chevaliers, tornés cha cestui escu, u je vous ferrai derriere, si arois gringnour honte." When Balaains understands the knight's desire, he stops and asks him "a cui tu iés ?" When the knight tells him he comes from Artus to revenge upon him the "fourfait" which he has done to the court by striking the damsel's head off, Balaains tries to dissuade him from his intention, but in vain ; the Irish knight insists. So they fight. Balaains receives first a heavy stroke by the knight. "Et cil (the Irish knight) li vint de si grant oirre comme il pooit de cheval traire, se li perce l'escu et brise li la glaive en mié le pis, mais de la seie ne le remue. Et li chevaliers (from the context, and according to Malory, this refers to Balaains) le fiert si durement qu'il li perce l'escu et li ront les mailles dou hauberc et li met parmi le cors la glave si que li fers a tout grant partie del

¹ The damsel who came with the sword to the court is meant. It is somewhat puzzling that, after all the other events have been told, she is mentioned again here. I am inclined to believe this passage is out of place.

fust apparut de l'autre part. Il vint de grant forche, si l'empaint a terre par desus la crupe dou cheval. Et au retraire qu'il fait de la glaive se taist cil qui sent la destrece de la mort." Balaains, not thinking he has killed his adversary, prepares for another bout, but soon perceives that he does not stir, and that the ground is covered with blood. He is sorry for the knight's death, and because he has added to his former "fourfait" another cause for Artus to dislike him. He is thus reflecting, when a damsel on horseback arrives at great speed. She dismounts immediately, throws herself on the corpse on the ground, and, finding that life has already departed from the body, breaks out in loud cries and laments. "Cele se pasme et repasme. Et quant elle est a chief de pieche revenue de pasmison et elle a pooir de parler, elle dist a Balaain : 'Ha ! sire, deus cuers avés ochis en un et deus cors en un, et deus ames ferés perdre pour une.' Lors prent l'espee au chevalier (the Irish knight's) et le traist dou fuerre et dist : 'Amis, après vous me convient aler. Car il me samble bien que j'aie trop demouré de la mort ; se elle fust aussi douce comme ceste me samble, onques gens né morussent si a aise comme nous fesissions.' Lors se fiert de l'espee par mi le pis si durement qu'elle se met la pointe par mi le cuer. Et lors se tient pres dou chevalier, ne onques Balaains, qui l'espee voloit oster des mains quant il vit que elle se voloit occirre, ne se puet si haster que elle ne s'en fust ferue [furue] anchois." This unexpected event astonishes Balaains so much that he does not know whether he is awake or asleep ; "si dist que loiaument amoit la damoisele et que il ne cuidoit pas que en cuer de feme peust entrer amour si vraie." While still meditating upon what he can do with the bodies, he perceives his brother Bala(i)n¹ coming fully armed out of the near forest. He has only one squire with him. They recognise each other "par les armes." When Balaains comes near his brother "il gieta son hyaume fors de sa teste, et lors le veissiés plourer de joie et de pitie, et li dist : 'Ha ! frere, je ne vous cuidai ja mais veoir. Par quel aventure estes vous delivrés de la dolereuse prison ou vous estiés ?' Et il¹ (i.e., Balaan) respont que la fille le roi meismes l'en delivra, et se elle ne fust, encore i demourast il. 'Mais quel aventure,' fait il (i.e., Balaains), 'vous amenoit cha ?' 'Certes, Balaains [balaam], on me dist au chastiel de[s] quatre perrieres que vous estiés delivrés, et que on vous avoit vent a la cour le roi Artus. Et pour chou venoie je cha. si grant oirre que je vous i cuidois trouver.'" Balaain then tells his brother all that has happened : "tout qu'il a veu et de le court et de l'espee et de la damoisele qu'il ochist, pour coi il s'est si tost partis de court ;" how he killed the Irish knight, and how the damsel slew herself before he could prevent her. Balaan admires her great love, and declares, for the sake of her faithfulness unto death, his brother ought in future never to refuse a lady who craves his help.² "'Et de ces cors, frere

¹ On account of the identity of the names of the two brothers in the MS., one has to be very careful in distinguishing between them, especially if they are referred to by "il."

² This is a trait which Balaain has in common with Gawayne ; compare my analysis of the "Suite" later at p. 105.

Balaain, qu'en porrons nous faire?' Et il dist que il n'i set metre conseil, se Dieus li ait."

While they are still consulting, a dwarf arrives riding as fast as his horse can go. When he sees and recognises the two bodies, "il commence a faire trop grant duel et detirer ses chevians et debatre ses paumes ensamble." He first asks the two brothers which of them killed the knight. "Et Balaains respont: 'Por coi le demandes tu?' 'Pour che,' fait, 'que je le voel savoir.' 'Et je te di,' fait il, 'que je l'ochis, mais che fu sour moi desfendant, ne onques ne m'en fu biel,'" &c. The dwarf then asks who killed the damsel. Balaain explains that she killed herself "pour l'amour del chevalier." The dwarf then tells him that the Irish knight was "uns des vaillans chevaliers del monde, et estoit fieus de roi;" by killing him Balaain has "pourcachie" his own death. His relations will seek him wherever he goes. "'Or ne sai,' fait li chevaliers (i.e., Balaain), 'qu'il en averra, mais il m'en poise, non mie pour doutance des ces parens, mais pour l'amour le roi Artu(s) qui chevaliers il estoit.'"

While they speak thus there comes out of the forest "li rois Mars qui puis ot a feme Yseut la blonde, si comme chis contes meismes devisera apertement pour chou que conter i convient pour une aventure dont li Graa[u]s parole." Mars was but lately crowned, and is only seventeen years old. He goes to Artus to help him in his wars, "car toute sa terre estoit sougite au roiaime de Logres." He also inquires about the two bodies, and resolves, when he has heard the sad story, to honour them "pour l'amour et pour la loiauté." He orders all his suite to dismount, and search the country round to find the most beautiful and the richest "tombe," "car bien saciés que je sui cil qui ja mais ne me remuerai de ceste place devant qu'il soient enterré ensamble en tel lieu meisme ou il rechurent mort." In a church a tomb having been found such as the king desires, the Irish knight and his lady are put into it, and Mars has letters engraved on the stone: "*Chi gist Lancer* [this is the first and only passage where the name occurs in the "Suite"] *fius au roi d'Irlande, et dalés li gist Liens s'amie, qui pour le duel de li s'ochist si tost comme elle le vit mort.*" Mars orders "une crois de fust biele et riche" to be erected at the head of the tomb, on which was plenty of gold, silver, and stone "de deverses manieres." As Mars is about going on, Merlin arrives "en samblance d'un fort vilain, et commencha a escrire au cieuf de la tombe lettres d'or qui disoient: '*En ceste place assamblent a bataille li dui plus loial amant que a l'our tans soient. Et sera cele bataille la plus miervilleuse qui devant eus ait esté ne qui après cele soit sans mort d'oume.*'" Then he looks at his writing and "commencha a escrire en mi lieu de la tombe et escrit deus nons, et estoit li uns des nons *Lancelot dou lac* et li autres *Tristrans.*" Mars is greatly surprised that "uns vilains si rudes put che faire," and asks him who he is. Merlin replies he will not now say, but Mars shall know it "a icel jour que Tristrans li loiaus sera pris avoec s'amie," and then he will hear such news about him (i.e., Merlin) as will greatly displease him. Turning to Balaain, Merlin asks him why he allowed this damsel to kill herself. Balaains answers: "Je ne me poc si haster que ele ne se fust ochise ains que je li peusse oster l'espee de la main." Merlin says: "Tu ne seras mie si lens,

comme tu fus chi, quant tu ferras le dolereus cop par coi toi roiaime en seront a povreté et en essil vint et deus ans."¹ Balaains also asks him who he is, but Merlin says he must not know his name for the present. Then Balaain says: "May God forbid that what you say be true, for if I were sure that your prophecies are to be relied upon, I should kill myself 'que ne t'en fessise menteour,' for then my death would be worth more than my life." Merlin disappears after this; neither Mars nor the two knights know what has become of him. He soon meets Blaise, and has a conversation with him.² Mars and the two brothers then part; the former takes his way towards Camalaoth and the latter two "pour aler a l'ost le roi Rion." In the last moment Mars asks Balaain for their names. Balaain, who does not wish his brother's name to be known, answers for him: "Saichiés que quant vous orrés parler du chevalier as deus espees,³ che ert de lui." Mars is well satisfied with this answer, for he deserves this name well, "puis que il porte les deus espees."

The two brothers, on their way towards the host of Rion, soon meet Merlin on foot, and "en autre samblance." He addresses them, and asks them whither they go. Balaains replies, "Que nous porroit il valoir que se nous le te disons?" Merlin says he could certainly be of such use to them that the next night they could bring to an end the plan they had conceived. To test him, Balaain asks him what they were about doing. Merlin answers, "'Je sai que vous alés querant le damage au roi Rion de tous vos pooirs.' You

¹ The passage goes on:—"Et saces que onques si dolereus ne si lais ne fu fais par un homme ne n'ert comme chis cope sera, car toutes dolours et toutes miseres en averront; si m'est avis que nous avons recouvré en toi Evain notre mere: car tout aussi comme par ses oeuvres avint la grant dolour et la grant misere que nous tout comparons et es painnes sommes de jour en jour, aussi seront [c]il de trois roiaimes en povreté et en essil par le cop que tu ferras. Et tout aussi comme il avoit desfens (desfendu les—) del dolereus fruit a mengier, et ensi a il desfens (desfendu) del haut maistre meismes de che faire que tu feras. Si n'averra mie ceste dolour pour chou que tous ne soies li mieudres chevaliers qui orendroit soit el monde, mais por chou que tu trespaseras le commandement que nus ne doit trespaser, et mehalngneras (menchongneras) le plus preudomme viers nostre Signeur qui orendroit soit el monde. Et se tu savoles comme cest[e] dolours sera grans et comme elle sera chierement comparee, tu diroies que uns seuls hom ne fist onques si grant dolour en terre comme tu meteras, si sera encore tele eue que tu vaurroies mieus estre inors que tu eusses cel cop feru."

² "N'il n'ot mie grantment alé quant il encontre Blaise. Il li vient a l'encontre et li fait joie grant et miervilleuse et li dist: 'Blaises, bien soiés vous venus. Ore m'acquiterai jou que je vous ai pramis en Norhumberlande; car j'ai assés pensé comment vous peussiez mener vo livre a fin. Alés vous ent en Camalahot et illuec m'attendés. Et quant je revenrai de la honte le roi Rion et de (ve) veoir le mescheant chevalier comment il se provera en ceste grant bataille. . . .' Lors li demande Blaises quant il culde revenir. 'Dedens un mois,' fait il, 'm'avras tu. Et sés tu ou tu me trouveras? Dedens Camalaoth meismes.' Et Blaises se part maintenant de Merlin, si que li uns s'en va d'une part et li autres d'autre. Mais ore laisse li contes a parler de Merlin et de Blaise et retorne a Balaain et a son frere."

³ The French metrical romance "Li chevaliers as deus espees" [Meriadues], edited by Prof. W. Foerster, Halle, 1877, 8vo, though it begins with the episode of the demanding of Artus' beard by King Rìs, differs altogether in its contents from the adventures of the "chevalier as deus espees" in the "Suite de Merlin."

cannot carry out your intention in the way you think, but you will reach your aim if you adopt my advice, 'se cuers ne vous faut.'

Both Balaain and his brother are greatly surprised at the man's knowledge, and ask him what he advises.

"So know, then," says Merlin, "'que li rois Rions, qui chi près est herbegiés a tout son ost, a pris un parlement de venir a nuit gesir avec la feme le duc des Vaus; si saichies qu'il s'en partira de son ost pour venir au chastiel ou la dame demeure. Si tost comme il sera anuitié verra, en sa compaignie quarante chevaliers, dont li un serout armé et li autre desarmé. Et par mi celle terre verra il armés d'un espee vermeille et montés seur le gringneur cheval de toute sa compaignie: a ches enseignes le porrés vous connoistre,'" &c. The brothers are astonished and glad to hear the news, but do not yet believe all Merlin tells them. To disperse their doubts, Merlin offers to go with them, and abide by them until he points out King Rion. All three then continue their way until they come "en une grant montaigne ou il avoit grant plenté d'arbres." Thither Merlin leads them, bidding them make themselves and their horses easy, and wait until Rion arrives. Merlin remains with them and they converse together. Balaain tries to find out Merlin's name, but in vain. The enchanter only replies: "je vous di qu'il sera plus parlé de mon sens apriès ma mort qu'il ne sera de vostre proueece."

When the moon "fu levee biele et clere," Merlin bids the brothers prepare themselves, for the king approaches. They see first a squire on a great horse pass at full speed. Merlin explains to them that this squire is a messenger to the duke's wife to tell her that Rion is coming to her castle, and encourages them to do their best: "A ceste fois vous di jou, biau signour, pour chou que vous poés a che point d'ore metre pais ou royaume de Logres et vengier le roi Artu(s) del homme dou siecle qui plus le puet nuire." The two brothers mount their horses and take their swords and shields and wait in the shade of the trees. They can from their resting-place overlook a great plain, which "duroit bien uit liues englesques de lé et tant de lonc," but they are invisible. After a little while they hear King Rion's suite approach; the hilly, narrow path only allows "que il n'i pooit aler fors que uns seus chevaliers." The two brothers are inclined to rush at once at them, but Merlin holds them back, telling them he knows the right moment. When twenty-two knights are visible, Merlin asks the two brothers if they remember by what signs they can recognise Rion. At these words the knight "a deus espees" can no longer be kept back, rushes against Rion as fast as his horse can run, "Et le fiert si qu'il durement li perche le hauberc, car escu n'avoit il point, et li met par mi le costé destre le fer de la glaive, qu'il apart de l'autre part; mais il ne la prist mie si parfont que la plaie fust morteuls," and bears him to the ground. Balaain turns against the others, and first kills the nephew of Rion. Then the two brothers advance together against the knights, and "commencent a departir grand caus et d'une part et d'autre, et abatent chevaliers et font trebuchier des chevaux." The knights who follow the king, as they gradually ascend the mountain, thinking King Artus' whole army is there to meet them, take to flight, but the path is so narrow that twenty-eight are killed and twelve taken prisoners. The two brothers return to Rion and loose his helmet, to give him

air. When he opens his eyes again, they tell him he must die, and lift up their swords. Rion, seeing that, cries for the fear of death: "Ha! franc chevalier, ne m'ochiés mie; vous poés plus gaaignier en ma vie que en ma mort; car de ma mort ne vous puet il nul preu venir, mais de ma vie si fait, ne il n'est riens que je ne faiche pour ma vie sauver." The brothers recognise the truth of the king's words, and, after making him promise to do what they bid him, agree to spare his life. The remainder of the knights must make the same promise, or be killed.

Merlin then comes to them, takes them apart, and says to them: "Through God's grace you have performed to-day a great deed; now, if you wish to 'acquarre l'amour et l'acordance dou roi Artu[s],' I advise you to conduct your prisoners to the castle of Tarabel, where you will find him if you hasten 'vous trouverez qu'il ne sera pas encore couchiés quant vous verres la,' and disappears again. Balaain bids Rion and his fellows go at once to Tarabel, and surrender themselves to Artus, "de par nous deus." Balaans, however, says: "Je ne voel mie de par nous deus, mais de par le chevalier as deus espees." Rion declares he is so weak that he cannot ride thither, and is put upon "une biere chevaucherece." The two brothers conduct the king and his knights to Tarabel. When they arrive before the gate, they say to the porter: "Take these prisoners before King Artus, and watch them well that they do not escape." Merlin had come before the two brothers to Artus, and found him still awake, speaking, "en sa cambre au roi Marc et a quatre autres barons," about the war. He announces the defeat and capture of King Rion. Artus cannot believe this wonderful news, but Merlin assures him that he will soon see Rion in his hall. Then Artus exclaims: "Ha! Dieus, beneois soies vous, quant vous (a) si grant hounour me faites sans ma deserte!"

Rion and his twelve knights are soon introduced. The king lifts himself up as well as his grievous wounds allow, and says to Artus: "Rois Artus, a toi m'envoie(i) en ta prison li chevaliers a deus espees, qui [m'a conquis] par le grignour miervelle que je onques veisse, a l'aide d'un seul homme, et si avoie avec moi chevaliers quarante armés." The twelve knights also surrender themselves. Artus orders physicians to attend to their wounds; then he asks Merlin who has done this valiant deed. Merlin tells him: "The knight who killed the damsel, and whom you sent away, has achieved the wonderful feat of arms." Artus declares that is amends enough for the "four-fait;" no mortal knight ever did anything equal to this deed. Merlin bids Artus prepare himself for war; on the next day he must meet Nero, the brother of King Rion, and his brother-in-law, King "Loth d'Orcanie," who is angry with Artus, as he thinks his son Mordrec has been drowned with the other children in the ship. He should send messengers to Loth and try to appease him and gain his friendship. Loth, who is already "a deus lieues englesques a tout son ost," receives the messengers unkindly, and bids them tell Artus: "que a m'aide a il failli et a tous les biens que je li porroie faire, se li mousterrai au plus tost que je porrai(et) que je ne li doi pas aidier, mais nuire a men pooir de tant comme je li porrai." The messengers try in vain to dissuade Loth from this dangerous resolution. On receiving the reply, Artus is very sad, but Merlin comforts and encourages him, declaring that God will

give him this very day great honour. He ought to confess all his sins against God.

The introductory lines of the second book (p. 75, 30-34) are Malory's addition; they form a sort of link between the first and second books. On the whole, Malory faithfully reproduces the account given in the "Suite." Now and then he alters slightly, and frequently shortens the French text. The knight who delivers the damsel from the sword is called Balyn by Malory from the moment when first mentioned, whereas in the source the name is only disclosed to Arthur by Merlin after he has left the court. Malory makes out of the French "*la dame de l'yle d'avalon*" a proper name, viz., "lady lylle of auelion"—a mistake pointed out, as I have mentioned in my List of Names and Places (vol. ii. p. 153), by Mr. Wright in his edition. Sometimes, but comparatively rarely, the English is a literal translation of the French text. In the detailed analysis of the "Suite" I have always quoted such passages, and need not, therefore, repeat them here. Malory dealt with his text more freely than sagaciously, often reproducing incidents of secondary importance, and, on the other hand, omitting important facts, thereby often rendering his text obscure. The reference to King Ryons, p. 76, 27, does not occur in the "Suite" in the corresponding place, but much later.

In the beginning of the third chapter Malory, contradicting what he has said in chapter ix. of book i., calls the sword which Arthur received from the lady of the lake "Excalibor," and thus shows he was unaware that the "Ordinary Merlin" and the "Suite" are at times contradictory.¹ On page 79, 23-24, Malory states that the lady of the lake, who asked Arthur for the head of Balyn, "had slayne Balyns *moder* by her menes," whereas the "Suite" states she is "*cele qui arastes de venin mon frere*." The reference on the same page, ll. 34-36, "for this same lady was the vntruest lady lyuynge . . . and she was causer that my *moder* was brente thorow her falshede and trechery," is not to be traced in the "Suite" in any form.

Malory does not mention that the lady who brought the sword leaves the court when Merlin tells Arthur of her wickedness.

The sweetheart of the Irish knight, "Lancer," is called "Lione" by the Huth MS., "Colombe" by Malory.

The prophecies of Merlin, forming the chief contents of chapter viii., are faithfully reproduced by Malory. Compare, *e.g.*—

Huth MS., fol. 107^a: " 'Rois,' fait Merlins, 'che ne te dirai je pas, mais tu le savras encore icel jour que Tristans li loiaus sera pris avoec s'amie, et dont te dira on teuls nouvelles de moi qui te desplairont.' "

¹ Compare my remarks at page 36.

Malory, p. 84, 22-25: "at this tyme said Merlyn I will not telle / but at that tyme whan syr Trystram is taken with his souerayne lady / thenne ye shalle here and knowe my name / and at that tyme ye shal here tydynges that shal not please yow /"

The contents of chapter ix. are considerably abridged from the corresponding portion of the "Suite." "La femme le duc de Vaus" is, in Malory, "lady de Vance."

In the "Suite" King Ryons is accompanied by forty knights, and a squire is sent in advance to inform the lady of the king's arrival. In Malory King Ryons is accompanied by "three score of knightes," and twenty knights are sent in advance to the "lady de Vance."

The details of the fight of the two brothers against King Ryons and his knights are skipped by Malory.

The passage of the "Suite" where Arthur, by Merlin's advice, sends messengers to King Lot, who had allied himself with King Ryons because he was angry at Arthur for the supposed death of Mordrec, &c., is not reproduced by Malory.

X.-XI. Artus does all Merlin tells him. He has "bien mil chevaliers sans les serjans a piet et a cheval. Et establi errant dis batailles." He awaits with them in a plain the arrival of the enemy, and admonishes them "de bien faire, si que l'onnoir dou roiaume de Logres ne fust le jour perie par defaute d'eus."

Balaains and Balaans, after delivering their prisoners to the porter at the castle of Tarabel, go to an "hermitage qui près d'illuec estoit a une liue englesque." Balaains knows the hermit well, and for this reason they are well received. In the morning the hermit tells them that the armies of Artus and Rion are to meet shortly "en bataille campel en une plainne cha devant." The two brothers resolve to go thither and help Artus. They soon perceive the host of Nero. The latter had received the news of his brother's capture, but carefully concealed it from his barons, who would not fight without their king.

The battle soon begins. Artus and his knights have a difficult task, their enemies being more numerous. The two brothers take part in the battle and do wonderful feats of arms. "Il metent les mains as espees et commencent a departir as uns et as autres grans caus, si abatent chevaliers et ochient, et esrachent hyaumes de testes et escus de cols, et font ambedui grant mierveilles d'armes, voiant leur anemis, que nus nes voit qui n'en soit esbahis. Et se auchuns me demandoit de la quele espee c'estoit qui li chevaliers a deus espees [que il se c.] se combattoit, je respondroie que che estoit de la soie et ne mie de l'espee qui fu a la damoisele; car de cele espee ne se combati il onques devant le jour que il fu mis ou camp contre Balaan, son frere, si qu'il ocist par mesconnaissance son frere de cele espee, et ses freres le rochist de cele meismes, si comme Robers de Borron le contera ja avant a la seconde partie de son livre."

Great was the battle on that day "en la plaine de Tharabel," and Artus personally did great feats of arms, and acquainted his enemies with the goodness of the sword "Escalibor," "car il en ochist de sa main de la propre espee, ains que la bataille fust finée, plus de vint chevaliers et en mehaigna plus de quarante." Kés the seneschal and a young knight, "Hernil de Rivel," also greatly distinguish themselves. But nobody surpasses the "chevaliers a deus espees." Artus, seeing his deeds, says to Gifflet, "che n'estoit pas chevaliers comme autres, mais hom nés sour terre pour destruction de gent."

While the battle is going on Merlin goes to Loth, and reproaches him that he, who was always loyal to his lord in his youth, "de devenir desloiaus et monstrier tout apertement ta desloiauté au peuple" now he is getting old. Loth declares he cannot act differently; although he was always his friend, and even his brother-in-law, Artus has destroyed his son. Merlin says this is not true, and is ready to show him his son Mordrec "tout sain et tout vif dedens deus mois." Loth does not believe it. Merlin prophesies he will gain no honour if he goes to battle. Several of his barons endeavour to persuade Loth to act according to Merlin's advice, but in vain; he declares "toutes voies que ja n'en fera riens." When Merlin sees that he cannot persuade Loth, he puts an enchantment upon him and delays him "dusques a eure de tierce," when the news arrives that Artus has completely defeated King Rion's army under the command of Nero. Now Loth is angered, "et regarde tout entour lui pour savoir se il veist Merlin; car il li voloît coper la teste, pour chou qu'il estoit ore bien apercheus que Merlins l'avoit enchanté et fait atargier tout de gré." After hesitating a while, Loth decides upon attacking Artus.

In the meantime Merlin has gone to Artus and told him of Loth's arrival. Artus is dismayed, but his barons encourage him: "Rois ne t'esmaie mie, mais chevauce tout asseur, que nostre Sires te conduira et te metera au dessus de tes anemis en tel maniere que tu averas victoire la ou il avront toute deshounour."

One of the knights of Artus, the one who had long chased the "diverse beste," "chis qui puis meismes engendra Parcheval, si comme chis contes le devisera apertement," comforts Artus most of all, and tells him "je sui li chevaliers a qui vous veistes siure la diverse beste. Et par la bonté que je savois en vous vous sui ge venus aidier, ne mie por chou que je regne tiegne de vous, che savés vous bien." Then the two hostile armies encounter each other, and a cruel battle follows. Owing to Loth's personal courage, his men hold their ground, but he sees well how strong and brave his adversaries are. Directing himself straight against Artus, he deals him such a heavy stroke with the sword "si fiert le cheval si durement qu'il le trenche tout par mi les espaulles, si que li chevaus chiet mors a la terre et li rois si tresbuce par dessus le col." The knight "a la diverse beste" comes to Artus' assistance, and strikes Loth so hard "que li hyaumes ne la coife de fer nel garandist qu'il nel pourfende tout jusques ens espaulles. Il estoit son cop, si fait voler le roi Loth a terre." This event is the signal for Loth's men to flee; many are killed, and the battle

ends with a complete victory for Artus.¹ Artus orders all slain knights to be buried "en une roche qui moult estoit profonde et dessus fist faire une eglyze." Not so much care is taken with the other bodies, "K'en terre furent mis et par bos et par plaingues." Twelve kings are killed in the battle; these Artus "fist metre ensamble en l'eglise saint Estevene de Camalaoth, et fist escrire chascun dessus son nom." King Loth is especially honoured: in the very place where he was killed is erected a church "apielee l'iglise de saint Jehan."

His wife and his four sons, "qui moult estoient biel enfant," come to the burial. King Uriens and Morgue his wife, "si enchainete que elle estoit toute preste d'avoir enfant," also come thither. Gavains, the eldest son of Loth, mourns the loss of his father most, and declares: "Ha! sire, tant m'a endamagiet dolereusement li rois Pellinor qui vous a occhis, et tant a nostre lignage abaissiet et apovri par la vostre mort! Et li roiaumes de Logres meismes certes en sera plus povris qu'il ne fust a set millours rois qui i soient. Ja Dieus ne place, sire, que je face chevalerie qui soit loee dusques que j'en aie prise tele vengeance que on en doit prendre, c'est ochirre roi pour roi." All are surprised at the boy's words.

Artus, fully enjoying his great victory over thirteen kings, declares he will celebrate his last success "as octaves."

"Lors fist faire douze rois de metal seurargentés et dorés richement, et avoit chascun en son chief une couronne d'or, et avoit chascuns escrit son non en son pis devant. Et avoec chou fist faire un roi en samblance dou roi Loth, au plus samblant que on le pot faire. Apriès ces rois fist faire un autre roi plus dis tans riche que tuit li autre n'estoient, et fu fais en samblance dou roi Artu(s). Et quant toutes ces ymages furent parfaites, li treize furent fait en tel maniere que chascuns tenoit en sa main un candeler, mais li autres, cil qui estoit fais en la samblance dou roi Artu(s), tenoit en sa main une espee toute nue en samblance qu'il manechast les gens. Quant toute cele oeuvre fu accomplie, li rois fist metre les ymages en la maistre fortorece de la tour en haut dessus les creniaus, si que tout cil de la chité le v[e]oient apertement, et tint chascuns des rois un gros chierge alumé. Et en mi lui des douze estoit l'image le roi Artu(s), assés plus haut qu'il n'estoient tint, et tenoit s'espee en sa main et faisoit samblant qu'il manechast cheus qui entour lui estoient. Et cil toutes voies li estoient enclin aussi comme il li criaissent merchi d'auchun mesfait."

When all is finished the feast begins at Camalaoth, and lasts eight days "tous pleniers." On the first day, when Artus looks at the burning tapers,

¹ "En si furent desconfit cil d'Orkanie, si rechiurent chelui jour tel honte que lor fu reprochié longuement, et tout dis lour fu mise la traisons devant qu'il avoient fait en camp pour desloial et pour traitour et mauvais de lour lige signour. Et il furent discomfi, et ocist [li uns] Pellinor le roi Loth d'Orkanie. Et tout si fil quant il vinrent a chevalerie [voudrent vengier la] honte [de leur pere] et de tout lour parenté, dont Gavains [il; tout ce passage est gravement altéré] ochist puis [Pellinor et] Melodiam aisé fil, et Agloval ochist il en la queste del saint graal, si comme mes sire [meismes] Robiers de Borron le devisera apertement en son livre. Mais se Percheval li gentius chevaliers, qui freres estoit Agloval, seunst la mort Agloval a chelui point que elle avint, il eust Agloval vengiet sans faille, a che qu'il amoit Agloval plus que nus freres amast autres."

he says to Merlin: "I wish they would burn for ever 'en tel maniere que il n'estainsissent point de nuit et de jour ne par vent ne pour plueve.'" Merlin says he will make them burn longer than Artus thinks, and enchants them, declaring they will not be extinguished "devant que l'ame [me] departira du cors." On that day two wonders shall come to pass in this country: "car je serai livrés a mort par engin de feme" and the "chevaliers as deus espees" will deal the dolorous stroke against the will of Our Lord, thereby causing the adventures of the Holy Grail, "especiaument ou roiaume de Logres." And then will begin a terrible time for "toute la grant Bretaigne," which will last "sans doutance" for twenty-two years.

Artus wishes to know the details of these events, but Merlin only tells him that when the tapers cease burning a great darkness will come "ens en mi lieu du jour tout par mi ceste terre, si qu'il ne verront goutte entour eure de midi." On that day Artus will be hunting; he will have just dismounted by a fountain to kill the beast, when such darkness will come on that he will not know what has become of the beast, and will be in great fear. Merlin prevents further inquiries by declaring: "Ja nel savrés par moi, ne vous ne autres." Artus then asks after Pellinor and the two brothers. Merlin informs him he will not see the two brothers so soon as he imagines, and when he does see them at last he will not be pleased, "car il vous feront tout anui par meeconnissanche."

So they talk about various things. Merlin advises the king to take good care of the sheath, for he will never find such a wonderful thing again. On the same day Rion does homage to Artus and returns into his country. The tapers are the subject of conversation for a long time. When Morgain understands what wonders Merlin has done by magic, she resolves to gain his favours in order to learn from him the art of magic.

Merlin soon becomes enamoured of the beautiful woman, and confesses his love. Morgain demands of Merlin that he should teach her so much of his art that no woman on earth shall know more than she. Merlin agrees, and she is a docile pupil, "et moult li plot la scienche d'ingromanchie et l'art." She gives birth to a child, which receives the name of "Ywain." When she has reached her aim, she discards Merlin.¹

She loves a handsome and valiant knight of Artus' court above all men. Artus, who has great faith in his sister because she is always with him (he ignores the reason why), one day gives her the sheath, and bids her keep it well, as nothing on earth is so dear to him. Morgain, surprised, tells her lover, and at his instigation asks Artus about the virtue of the sheath.¹ When she has learnt its marvellous property, she again tells her lover, who expresses the desire of possessing it. Morgain, to gratify his wish, orders a skilful man to come into her chamber and tells him to make a sheath exactly like the one she gives him. He succeeds; no one who does not know can distinguish the two sheaths. One day as she shows the two sheaths to her lover, they hear Artus entering the hall on his return from

¹ Morgain's *liaison* with Merlin, and her love for the knight, whose name is not mentioned in the "Suite," have later on two analogous episodes—that of Merlin's love for Nivene and that of Morgain's love for Accolon of Gaule.

hunting. Frightened, they conceal the two sheaths in a bed, "*l'un dessus l'autre, et l'espee dessus un tapic*," and run away. Morgain forestalls Artus, and welcomes him on his return. After a while she returns to the room, but is unable to recognise the genuine sheath. "*Lors li avint, ensi comme a Dui plot, que elle prist le boin fuerre et mist dedens l'espee, mais elle le cuide faire autrement.*" The other sheath she gives to her lover, who takes it, and "*bien cuida estre paiiés.*" The same week he fights against a knight in a forest, and finds that the sheath is of no use, for he receives grievous wounds and loses much blood. He thinks Morgain has deceived him, and wishes to take revenge upon her.

One day whilst out hunting Artus and this knight are separated from the other company and converse with one another. The knight then discloses to Artus what he knows: "*'Vairs est que Morgne vostre serour vous het, et si ne sai por coi c'est; mais cele haine par est si grans que elle pourcache vostre mort toutes voies en toutes manieres que elle puet.'*" The other day she asked me to swear to her that I would kill you. When I replied that I was unable to do that without incurring certain death, she told me she would give me '*tel garnement*' that I would neither lose a drop of blood nor receive mortal wounds. Then she gave me the sheath of a sword, promising that if I would carry out her desire she would make me rich '*a tous les jours*' of my life. But as I am '*vostre hom liges*,' I tell you all about it, and bid you to be careful."

Artus, dismayed at this revelation, resolves to punish his sister severely for "*ceste desloiauté.*" He asks the knight to give him the sheath, and with it returns hastily to his castle. But Merlin, who knows all "*par ses agais et par son enchantement*," when he sees Artus returning, fearing he would kill his sister, whom he (Merlin) loves dearly, saves her. She asks him to stay in her chamber while she rides away, and to tell Artus that the sword and sheath had been stolen from her, and for fear of his wrath she ran away. Merlin agrees to this for her love; she at once orders her palfrey to be saddled "*et repont laiens le fuerre que elle gardoit, pour chou que le roi ne le trovast,*" and leaves the castle.

When Artus returns, Merlin meets him with the tale of Morgain's return to her country because by some misadventure the sheath has been stolen from her. Artus, now suspecting the knight of stealing the sheath and telling an untruth, pulls out his sword and strikes his head off with one blow. Then he asks Merlin to fetch back Morgain. He gives her the sheath the knight has given him, requesting her to guard it better in the future.

Uriens, Morgain's husband, often comes to Artus' court, because his wife is continually there, and also because he loves Artus well. They have a son, seventeen years of age "*et biaux et preus et gracieus*," who is on the point of being dubbed. He is called Baudemagus. This young man likes best to be in company of Loth's sons Gavain and Gahariet, though he is six years older than Gavain.

One day after dinner the three young men, Baudemagus in the middle, having on his right Gavain, on his left Gahariet, meet Merlin. "*Et il les prist a regarder et commencha a airer de mal talent et de courouch,*" and says

aloud to them, so that several people can hear him: "Ha! Baudemagus, a ta destre est par cui tu periras, si est damages, car en cest pais ne morra en ton vivant ne a ton tans plas sages prinches de toi." These words are told to Artus, who has them written in a book, and, though he cannot at that time understand them, he afterwards finds out that Merlin's prophecy was true.

Thus Baudemagus is much spoken of. Saigremor, who brings up Mordrec, and who has just come to the court, tells Uriens that he may be proud of having such a son. "Sire, moult vous devés esgoir de si bonne norreture comme vous avés fait en Baudemagus." He does not know in the whole land a "damoisiel qui tant fache a prisier comme il fait," and he would thank God if he gave him such an heir. Uriens is highly pleased, and declares he loves his son well. Suddenly Merlin steps forth and says: "Li rois Uriens se puet plus esgoir de sa norreture que vous ne faites de la vostre, et esgoira; car il verra sa norreture venir a bien, et vous verrés que la vostre vous fera morir ains vo(u)s jours d'une glaive ague trenchant." The one of them will kill the other, and they can say that they have placed the lion by the side of the lamb. "Tout ensi s'esjoira li uns en la mort de l'autre. Et chelui jour averra que la bataille morteus sera faite en la plaingne de Salesbieres, quant li haute chevalerie del roiaume de Logres sera tournée a mort et a destruction." All are astonished, but Artus says: "Che sont des propheties Merlin. Mettés ceste en escrit avec les autres."

The tenth and eleventh chapters of "Le Morte Darthur" are a much curtailed account of the corresponding section in the "Suite." One recognises in Malory's story the incidents of the source, though in many cases considerably altered, several important features being omitted. Merlin's statement that Nero has more than a thousand knights on horseback besides "les serjeans a piet" is rendered by "a grete host," and the "dis batailles" in which Arthur arranges his forces are attributed by Malory to Nero. The hermit to whom the two brothers repair after having delivered their prisoners to the porters at Tarabel, and who informs them of the impending battle between Arthur and Nero, is omitted by Malory. The description of the battle is much abridged; that Balyn does not use the enchanted sword upon this occasion and Arthur's use of Excalibor are omitted by Malory, though he agrees with the "Suite" in stating that on that day Arthur killed twenty knights and maimed forty.

"Hernil de Rivel" is "heruys de reuel" in Malory. Merlin's delaying Lot by enchantment and prophecy is only indicated.

Arthur's remark on the valour of the two brothers occurs in Malory, but Gifflet, to whom Arthur makes it in the "Suite," is not mentioned.

The name of "Pellinor" which Malory introduces is not mentioned here in the "Suite," this knight being only referred to as "li chevaliers a qui vous veistes siure la diverse beste."

"The chirche of seynt Stephen in Camelot," which Malory mentions, corresponds to "saint Estevene" in the "Suite;" but the "eglise de saint Jehan" erected where Lot is slain is not mentioned by Malory.

Gawayn's oath to avenge his father's death is also omitted, but, in anticipation of the passage on fol. 129°, it is stated that he avenged his father ten years after receiving knighthood.

In the "Suite" Arthur overcomes thirteen kings; in Malory, twelve. The eight-day festival in celebration of his victories does not occur in Malory, and Merlin's prophecies are only indicated.

The "liaison" of Morgain and Merlin, the episode of the sheath, the knight loved by Morgain, &c., are omitted. Malory, evidently confounding this knight, unnamed in the "Suite," with the "Accolon" mentioned later on in the "Suite" and also in the fourth book of "Le Morte DARTHUR," gives him the name "Accolon." The birth of "Ywain," who, to judge from the "Suite," is Merlin's offspring, is not mentioned by Malory.

The friendship between Bandemagus, the son of Vrience, and Gawayn and Gaheriet, King Lot's sons, and Merlin's prophecies regarding them, are partly omitted, partly told as if Merlin had addressed them to Arthur.

XII.-XVI. One day about dinner time the king, "se sentoit un poi pesant," has his tent pitched on a meadow before the castle, and sends away all his men except one chamberlain. He cannot sleep, as something disagreeable fills his mind. Suddenly hearing the noise and neighing of a horse, he gets up quickly and finds his people asleep. "Et il voit deviers le chastiel de Meliot venoit uns chevaliers armés de toutes armes, et faisoit le gringneur del monde." The knight laments aloud; he knows not what he has done to deserve such great pain. Artus speaks kindly to him and asks him why he is so sad, but the knight refuses to say; it is not in Arthur's power to help him. He rides away, and the "chevaliers as deus espees" soon after arrives. Artus, pleased to see him, bids him be welcome. In addition to the great service he has already done for him, he asks him to follow the knight who has just left, complaining and lamenting.

Balaains remounts his horse, rides as fast as he can after the knight, and soon overtakes him "au piet d'une montaigne." At the knight's side rides a damsel, who asks him why he laments so much; if he cannot achieve the quest, some one else will. The knight replies: "Je vauisise mieus estre mors passé a dis ans qu'il me convenist a suivre ceste aventure." In the meantime Balaains approaches, greets the knight, and requests him to return to Artus. At first the knight refuses, but, seeing that Balaain is resolved to take him back to Artus at all costs, yields on condition that Balaain binds himself by an oath, in case anything happens to him, to take up the quest in which he is engaged, also to take him under his "conduit." He bids Balaain ride in

front of him. They have almost reached Artus' tent, when the knight, struck by a spear directed by an invisible hand, suddenly cries out that his death has come. Balaain dismounts, and convinces himself of the sad truth. The dying knight bids him follow the quest on his horse, which is better than Balaain's, and go to the damsel whom he saw with him: "*Cele vous merra la ou vous, devés aler, et vous mousterra en brief terme chelui qui m'a ochis.*"

Artus had been a witness of the last events. Balaain is grieved at such a good knight's death while under his safeguard. He draws the spear from the knight's wound, and, bidding Artus farewell, sets out to join the knight's lady, to bring his quest to an end and to revenge his death. Artus, greatly dismayed at this marvellous event, does not know what to do. People come and ask him who killed the knight. Artus answers, "*Ne sai, se Dieus m'ait.*" Merlin joins them, and says Artus need not be surprised at this adventure; much stranger ones will happen in his time. He should bury the knight with due honour, and have written on his tomb: "*Chi gist li chevaliers mesconneus.*" Artus will have great joy on the day when he learns the name of the dead knight.

[The last paragraph of vol. i. of the edition of the Huth MS. speaks about the Book of Robert de Boron.]¹

The "*chevaliers as deus espees*" is badly received by the damsel, who tells him plainly he has caused the death of the best knight in the world, who had trusted himself to his safeguard. She does not think that Balaain is capable of bringing the dead knight's quest to an end, and, leaving him, she goes to a castle. He enters, sadly, into the wood. After a while he meets a knight with greyhounds returning from hunting. The knight, noticing his despondency, asks him the reason. He declares his readiness to help with all his power, but Balaain refuses. The knight, however, is not so easily satisfied; wishing to know what the matter is with Balaain, he seizes the horse's bridle. Balaain requests him to let go, unless he wishes him to commit a "*velounie*." The strange knight, seeing he cannot reach his aim by kindness, resolves to use force; he rides home quickly to fetch his arms, soon overtakes Balaain, and, after asking him again in vain, challenges him to fight. Balaain unhorses him in the first bout. The knight wishes to get up again and continue the fight, but Balaain now makes up his mind to yield to his request, and tells him the cause of his sadness.

Finishing his story, Balaain tells his companion that the death of the knight can only be avenged by means of the "*tronchon meismes*" by which he was slain, and which is in the possession of the damsel who accompanied him.

The knight now declares that he will become his companion in the quest.

¹ "*Or laisse li contes a parler dou roi et de Merlin et parole del chevalier as deus espees. . . . Et sacent tuit (que tout) cil qui l'estoire mon signeur de Borron vauront oir comme il devise son livre en trois parties, l'une partie aussi grant comme l'autre, la premiere aussi grande comme la seconde, et la seconde aussi grant comme la tierche.*" The first part of Borron's book ends here, at the beginning of the quest; the second at the beginning of the grail, and the third at the death of Lancelot and King March, &c. —Compare the Introduction of the Huth "*Merlin*," and in the present volume, p. 147.

They soon after meet Merlin disguised "vestus d'une robe [roule] d'un conviers toute blanche." Balaain does not recognise him. Merlin first tells them that they will not long enjoy each other's company, and adds that the invisible knight's name is Gallan, who is brother of Pellehan. He advises Balaain to give up the quest on which he is engaged, as it will cause him to strike "un coup dont [averra] si grant duels el roiaume de Logres et si grans maleurtés que onques gringnor dolour n'avint ne gringnour pestilence par le cop de l'espee qui fu n'a gaires fais entre le roi Lambor et le roi Urien qui amendera [auerra] par le cop de la lanche vencheresse," &c. But Balaain's resolution is not to be shaken. Merlin then leaves them, but follows them "comme cil qui voloit veoir toutes voies coument il lour avenroit."

Their way leads the two knights to "une chimentiere." Balaain, though unaware that it was Merlin that spoke to him, rides on thoughtfully in front. Suddenly his companion, who rides behind him, is struck dead by an invisible lance. Balaain's efforts to bring him back to life are all in vain; he is dead, and Balaain abandons himself entirely to grief at this new misfortune.

A hermit who passes by finds him in that state, consoles him, and tells him that a valiant knight ought never to give way to grief as he has done. They bury the body of the slain knight; Balaain accompanies the hermit to his house, and stays the night with him. On the next morning they perceive the following inscription on the tomb: "*En ceste chimentiere vengera Gavains le roi Loth son père; car il tranchera le chief au roi Pellinor es premiers dis ans qu'il avra recheu l'ordre de chevalerie.*" Balaain is amazed at this terrible prophecy, for he well knows that Pellinor is one of the best knights alive.

While they are still wondering, "un escuier" sent by Merlin arrives, and tells them that the inscription was made by the latter, and will be faithfully fulfilled. Balaain takes leave of the hermit and rides after the damsel, whom he soon finds reposing "devant une crois." He relates his adventure, which reminds her of the death of her "amis." Both continue their way. "A eure de viespres" they arrive at a well-fortified castle. "Et li chevaliers aloit devant et la damoisele après. Et si tost comme il se fu mis el chastiel, cil d'amont laissent avaler une porte coulliche, si qui li chevaliers fu dedens et la damoisele dehors. Quant il se vit enclos et il set bien que le damoisele est remese la fors, il ne set que il puist faire; car retorner ne puet il ne cele venir avant."

The damsel outside cries aloud for his assistance. He jumps down from his horse, mounts a tower which he finds open, and sees how two knights have got hold of the damsel, and make her swear to fulfil the custom of the castle. Seeing no other way, Balaain leaps down from the tower, and arrives sword in hand; the two knights flee, but the damsel has already sworn.

While they explain matters, the gates of the castle are opened again, and out come ten well-armed knights. They bring Balaain's horse with them, and tell him he is free; but they ask the damsel to act according to the oath she has taken. A damsel issues from the castle bearing "entre ses mains une escuieele d'argent assés grant par raison." She tells Balaain's damsel that she must comply with the custom of the castle and fill the dish with her blood: if she does it willingly, they will consider it "a grant cortoisie;" if she

refuses, she will be considered "desloiaus et a parjure," and be compelled to do it. Balaain's companion replies: "Before I make up my mind to risk my life I must know for what purpose you want my blood, 'car se preus en peust venir, je nel refuseroie pas; mais se il n'en devoit venir bien ne mal, je ne m'en mesaiseroie en nule maniere, a che que je voi tout apertement ma mort, che m'est avia.'" The damsel from the castle tells her that the lady of the castle has been long suffering from a terrible disease "comme est de liepre." All remedies have hitherto proved fruitless against this disease, but "un seul homme viel et anchien" had told her she could get well again through the blood of "une pucielle vierge en volenté et en oeuvre, fille de roi et de roine."

For this reason they compelled every damsel approaching the castle to give a dishful of her blood. After this explanation the damsel who came with Balaain declares herself ready to do what others have done before her, but she fears the loss of so much blood will cause her death. Balaain in vain tries to dissuade her from giving the blood, for if she dies, nobody will lead him to the quest. The damsel reassures him, and expresses the hope that she will survive.

Led back into the castle, she is bled at both arms. She does not die; on the contrary, she is well enough on the following day to accompany Balaain. "This custom," adds the pseudo Robert de Boron, "will be continued unto the day when the lady of the castle is healed by the blood of 'la serour de Percheval le Galois,' as the story will relate 'en la grant queste dou graal.'"

Balaain and the damsel continue for four days without finding any adventures worth mentioning, and all subjects of conversation are exhausted. One evening they come to the castle of "un vavasour moult pseudomme" at the edge of a wood, and are hospitably received. When at table, they hear "la vois d'un homme qui moult se plaignoit angoisseusement, et dura cele plainte tant comme il sirent au mengier." When the table is cleared, Balaain asks his host who complains so bitterly "en une des chambres de chaisens." The knight tells him that it is his son, who a little while before received a dangerous wound from an invisible lance. When Balaain tells his adventures with the invisible lance, and mentions that it belongs to a knight named Garlan, a brother of King Pellehan, the knight tells him that he can explain the mystery now. "About a year ago," relates the host, "I defeated this Garlan twice at a tournament, and, as he could not otherwise be revenged upon me, he declared he would hurt my 'millour ami,' and how well he carried out his threat is proved by my wounded son." "Would God," exclaims Balaain, "that I could find him!" The host then tells him: "Ore vous dirai comment vous en exploiterés. Voirs est que li rois Pellehans de Listinois tenra grant court et efforchie de diemenche en huit jours, au chastiel del (des) pallès perilleus. Et a cele feste doit servir chis Garlans et servira, je sai de voir, si seront illuecques tuit li pseudomme de maint roïame." This is joyful news for Balaain. Asking his host how his son's wound might be healed, he learns that an old man, who stayed at his house some time ago, had told him his son could only be healed by the



blood of the knight who had wounded him, and he added that "Merlins li sages divineres" had bid him tell the knight so. Balaain declares that he will bring Garlan's blood, but the host wishes to accompany him.

On the next morning Balaain, his damsel, and his host start on their way. They ride for a whole week, and arrive, without any adventures, at the castle where "li rois Pellehans" holds his court. Only such knights are admitted as are accompanied by a "serour" or "amie;" Balaain's host must thus stay outside. Within, Balaain and his damsel find many knights and ladies "comme se tout cil dou roiaume de Logres i fuissent assamblé." Balaain is led into a chamber, as is also the damsel, and they receive new dresses. When asked to leave his sword behind, Balaain refuses, declaring it to be against the custom of his country.

At table Balaain asks his neighbour to the left who Garlans is. The neighbour points him out, and adds that he is "le plus merveilleus chevalier dou siecle." Balaain then asks why he is so marvellous, and learns that, when he is armed, "nus le puet veoir tant come il se veult celer." "How would you punish him," continues Balaain, "if Garlans had wronged you?" "I would attack him where I could find him," replies the neighbour. Balaain then reflects a long while on what he has to do. He sees clearly, what a daring thing it is to attack Garlans at the open court. Abandoning himself to his thoughts, he forgets to eat and to drink. Garlans, who serves at table, notices it, comes close to him, and "li donne grant cop en la fache, qu'elle en devint toute vermeille," and insults him. This is too much for Balaain; he rises, reproaches him with all his treachery, strikes him dead, and exclaims: "Hostes, or poés prendre del sanc Garlan a la garison de vostre fil;" and "Damoisieles, bailliés moi le tronchon de quoi li chevaliers fu ferus devant les pavillons." When the damsel hands it to him, he strikes Garlan again with it, and exclaims: "Ore ne m'en chaut que on face de moi, car j'a[i] bien ma [que] queste achievee."

Great disorder follows, the king bidding them to seize Balaain. But Balaain challenges the king himself. The king accepts, and gives the order that none of his knights should touch Balaain. He takes up "une grant perche de fust," and runs against "chelui qui tenoit l'espee traite, ne mie cele dont il ot la damoisielle livree a mort, mais une autre." When Balaain sees him come, "il ne le refuse pas, ains dreche l'espee. Et li rois le sousprent a une traverse, si fiert en l'espee si durement qu'il le brise par devant le heut, si que li brans en chiet a terre et li pions. . . ."¹

¹ Here a gap occurs in the Huth MS. M. G. Paris gives the following note:—"Il y a ici dans le manuscrit une lacune de deux feuillets; on ne peut la combler qu'imparfaitement à l'aide du récit abrégé de Malory (l. ii, chaps. xv et xvi): Balaain, ayant eu son épée brisée, court dans une salle voisine puis de chambre en chambre, dans le palais, pour trouver une arme, et est poursuivi par le roi Pellehan. 'Enfin il entra dans une chambre qui était merveilleusement et richement tendue, et il y avait un lit couvert de drap d'or, le plus riche qu'on puisse imaginer, et quelqu'un couché dedans et auprès était une table d'or pur, portée sur quatre piliers d'argent, et sur la table était une lance merveilleuse, étrangement travaillée.' Balaain prend cette lance et en frappe Pellehan, qui tombe pâmé; mais aussitôt le château s'écroule avec fracas, et Balaain lui-même perd

In the twelfth chapter Malory again follows the original more closely, though shortening it considerably. In the "Suite" the knight who comes to Arthur's tent with Balyn is not named, but only referred to by the words, "li chevaliers mesconnens," and the name of the knight who rides invisible and kills him is only disclosed to Balyn by Merlin upon a later occasion. Malory inserts a name for the former knight, viz., "Herlews le berbeus," and on his first appearance states the invisible knight's name as Garlon.

Malory does not mention that Balyn follows the damsel and is badly received by her, nor that he leaves her, when she goes to a castle and he to a wood, where he meets another knight. This meeting is only outlined; Balyn's fight with that knight is not mentioned at all. Here again a name occurs in Malory which is absent from the "Suite," viz., "Peryn de mountebeliard." As long as the Huth MS. remains the unique French text of the "Suite," it is impossible to say whether Malory inserted these names, or whether he found them in the MS. he had before him. As to the surname "mountebeliard," it is found in Robert de Boron's "Merlin," where he speaks of "monseigneur Gautier, qui était de Monbéliard."¹

Merlin's prophecy, that Balyn will not long enjoy the company of the knight, and the attempt to dissuade Balyn from continuing his quest, are not in Malory. In the "Suite" it is only here that Merlin discloses to Balyn the name, "Garlon," of the invisible knight, a brother of King "Pellehan." The statement that Gawayn will avenge his father's death ten years after receiving the order of knighthood occurs here in the "Suite," whereas Malory, as mentioned on a previous occasion, has already anticipated it, and repeats it here.

The "escuier" who, in the "Suite," informs Balyn and the hermit that Merlin has made the inscription, and that it will be verified, is omitted by Malory. Malory places Balyn and the damsel together at the hermit's house, whereas in the "Suite" Balyn, after parting with the hermit, rides after the damsel and joins her at a cross.

connaissance. Il reste ainsi trois jours au bout desquels Merlin vient le délivrer. Les explications que Malory donne sur ce 'douloureux coup' ne sont certainement pas celles qui étaient dans notre texte puisqu'il y est question de Galaad au lieu de Perceval; toutefois elles doivent être en partie identiques; et il est bon de les reproduire: 'Et le roi Pellehan (Pelleham) resta ainsi beaucoup d'années grièvement blessé, et n'aurait jamais été guéri, jusqu'à ce que Galaad, le haut prince, le guérit dans la quête de saint graal; car dans cet endroit il y avait une partie du sang de notre seigneur Jésus-Christ, que Joseph d'Arimathie apporta en ce pays, et c'était lui-même (Joseph) qui était couché dans ce riche lit. Et c'était la même lance dont Longin frappa notre seigneur au cœur. Et le roi Pellehan était du sang de Joseph, et c'était le plus prud'homme qui vécut alors, et ce fut grand pitié de sa blessure, car ce coup amena beaucoup de deuil, de trouble et de chagrin.'

¹ Compare also Introduction to the Huth MS., p. ix., note.

The incidents relative to the arrival of Balyn and the damsel at the castle, and the damsel's compliance with the custom of the castle, are re-told by Malory in a slightly altered and considerably abridged form, as are also the events related in chapters xiv. to xvi. A portion of chapters xv. and xvi. (p. 93, 20, to 94, 14) of Malory's *rifacimento* are the only known version extant, as the Huth MS. has a gap of one folio in this part.¹

XVI.-XIX. [Huth MS., fol. 138^a.] . . . "[ge] soit en pasmisons, si le baille a Merlin." Merlin calls him by his name, "Balaains, oeuvre les ieus." Balaain gradually comes back to himself, and wonders where he is. Merlin says to him: "Tu és encore, chiés le roi Pellehan, ou tu as tant fait que tous li siecles ki te connistera t'en harra dès ore mais et portera male voellanche." Balaain does not say a word in answer to this reproach; he only asks Merlin how he can go away, as his quest is fulfilled. Merlin consents to lead him out of the castle, telling him, if the people had the slightest idea that all this mischief was caused by him, "nus hom ne vous garandiroit qu'il ne vous detrenchaissent tout ains que vous fuissies venus as portes." Balaain then asks for the damsel who accompanied him, and learns that she lies dead "en mi che palais."

Balaain is greatly afflicted, but gets up and is led out of the castle by Merlin, who points out to him "de malades et d'enfers et de mors" in the court. Balaain has all his arms except the sword, "qu'il avoit perdue, si comme li contes l'a ja devisé." Merlin finds him a good and strong horse, and tells him that he is kind to him for the love of Artus, whose knight he is. Balaain is grateful to Merlin, and declares he will be his knight wherever he has need of him. Then they part from one another. Merlin returns into the castle. Balaains continues his way. He soon finds his host slain by "un creniel de mur," and all the land around in a state of great desolation and destruction: everywhere dead bodies lie about. "Il trova si dou tout destruit le roiaime de Listinois qu'il fu puis de tous apielés li roiaimes de terre gastee et li roiaimes de terre forainne," &c. Wherever he comes Balaain is cursed by the people as the cause of their misfortune; he finds no place where he is welcomed.

One day he meets in the wood a knight who sits on the grass "et pensoit si durement que nus ne puet estre plus pensis." Balaain speaks to him, but, bidding him flee the spot and not disturb his reflections, the knight falls back into the same state of pensiveness. Balaain withdraws, but waits at a distance in order to see what the knight will do. "Entour eure de nonne," the knight sighs, and begins to complain of a lady, whom he has expected in vain. He can no longer wait for her and will commit suicide, for his pain is unbearable. Balaain, seeing that, comes forth and dissuades the knight, promising his help at the same time if he will reveal the cause of his grief. The knight, hearing this, asks who Balaain is. When Balaain tells his name, the knight knows him well. He then relates that he is the lover of the daughter of the "duc de Harniel." The lady has promised to come to him, that

¹ Compare M. G. Paris's remark, which I have reproduced at pp. 90-91.

he might carry her off into his country ; but she has not kept her word Balaain offers to go and see why she has not come. The knight leads him to a ditch, which he must cross, but there is only a narrow "fus," which is very dangerous. The knight then points out the damsel's chamber, and Balaain makes himself ready to go thither. He crosses the ditch, passes the garden, and enters the house. He finds the chamber, the bed in it unoccupied, but he sees some warm garments. He now returns into the garden, and finds there "dessous un pumier la damoiseie leisant sour une kieuete pointe de samit moult vermeil. Et la tenoit uns chevaliers entres ses deus bras moult estroitement embrachie, et avoient mis a lour cheve(u)s moult grant plenté d'erbe qui lour valoit autant comme feisist uns oreilliers, et dormoient ambedui si fermement comme se il n'eussent dormi en un mois entier." Balaain looks at the knight, and finds him very ugly. Indignant, he returns to the other knight, and, bidding him follow, leads him to the place where the two are still asleep. The sight of his love in the arms of another overwhelms the knight, who swoons away. When he recovers, he reproaches Balaain severely for destroying the happiness of his life, and, cursing him, pulls out his sword and cuts the two lovers' heads off. When he has done this, he breaks out in lamentations, and at last slays himself. Balaain curses his fate, returns from the scene of this unhappy drama, and rides away. He soon meets a squire, who "s'en aloit son droit chemin viers la fortereche dont il venoit." Balaain stops him, and tells him what has happened, and that he will find there the three dead bodies. He adds that he has told him the sad adventure "pour che que je voel que elle soit mise en escrit. Car après nos mors quant elle sera ament(i)ue a nos hoirs, elle sera moult volentiers escoutee et oie, car trop est merveilleuse," &c. The squire tells the people what Balaain has told him.

Balaain continues his way, and comes one day to a castle. Near it he finds "une grant chimentiere" and in it a new cross bearing the following inscription : "*Oe tu, chevaliers errans qui vas querant aventures ? Je te deffenc que tu n'aïlles de chi pres dou chastiel. Et sache que elles ne sont mie legieres a vn chevalier.*" Balaain reflects a while, and then, despite the inscription, resolves upon going to the castle. When a little nearer, he meets "un vavasour viel et anchien," who says to him : "Sire chevaliers, vous avés passé les bonnes, il n'i a mais riens del retorner." From the castle he hears a horn blowing, and says to himself, smilingly : "Qu'es che ? Me tiennent il a pris, qui cornent de prise ?" Then he sees more than a hundred damsels, "karolant et dansant et chantant," who come out of the principal gate of the castle and bid him welcome. The seneschal of the castle tells him that the damsels are so merry because they will see him joust with the "chevalier de la tour de l'isle," as it is the custom of the castle that any strange knight who comes thither must fight with the "seigneur de ceste tour." Then he points out the tower to him in the middle of the island. By the riverside he finds a little ship ready to receive him. Before Balaain enters it, the seneschal advises him to take another shield, as his own does not seem in good condition. Balaain takes it, but a damsel steps forth and says to him : "Sire chevaliers, chou est tout de la mesqueance que vous avés vostre escu

cangié: se vous l'eussies a vostre col, vous n'i morussies hui, ains vous reconneust vostre amis et vous lui. Mais ceste mesqueance vous envoie Dieus pour le fait que vous fesistes chiés le roi Pellehan en lieu de venganche, si n'est mie la venganche si grans comme li fais le requestist. Che vous mande Merlins par moi."

Balaain is frightened for a moment by this announcement, especially as it comes from Merlin, but he soon regains heart, and continues his way courageously. He arrives at the island, is put ashore, and the "maronnier" ask him what he is thinking about. They tell him he has no more time for reflection; he must go to battle. He then prepares himself for the combat. Looking towards the castle he sees "les murs et les crenniaus tous vestus de dames et de damoiseles, qui estoient montees pour la bataille veoir." Balaain curses them and those who established the custom of the castle, and vows to himself, if Our Lady helps him to escape from the battle, to destroy the castle.

His adversary comes out of the tower, all armed in red,¹ on a horse as white as snow. When Balaain sees him, he cannot help thinking of his brother; his heart tells him that the knight is his brother, but the different arms lead him to think he is mistaken.

So the two brothers come face to face as mortal enemies. A terrible fight ensues, as both are wonderfully strong. In the first bout they throw each other from their horses, so that they lie some time on the ground as if dead. But they soon recover, and continue the terrible fight. The place where they fight is speedily covered with blood. They soon are so exhausted that they must rest for a while. Leaning on their shields, and looking at each other, they cannot help admiring each other. Then they renew the combat. The first who withdraws from the battle is the knight of the tower. He says to Balaain, "You have killed, but not overcome me." Balaain says the same to his brother, "car certes vous estes li mieudres chevaliers que je onques encontraise, si en ai moult encontres que j'ai trouvés et moult vaincus," &c. "Mais pour Dieus, ains que je soie a ma fin venus, me dites, se il vous plaist, vostre non, si que je sache qui m'a mort." Then his brother tells him his name, adding that he is the brother of the best knight in the world. When Balaain hears this, he swoons away. His brother creeps up to him, unlaces his helmet, and looks at his face for a long time, but cannot recognise him, so much have blood and wounds disfigured the face. When Balaains finally comes back to his senses he says: "Ha! bian frere, quele mesaventure chi a! Je sui cil as deus espees dont vous parlés, qui vous a ocbis, et la mesqueanche i est si grans que vous me raves mort. Maleoit[e] soit la coustume de cest chastiel et tout cil qui l'acoustumerent! Car il nous estuet morir devant nos jours." So the two brothers bewail their sad fate, but it is a consolation to them that they will be buried together.

¹ It is not uninteresting to observe that, like Balaain, Perceval has to fight against a red knight (see Hucher's edition of the Didot MS. of "Perceval," pp. 415-505). Also Galahad, according to the "Queste of the Holy Grail," on his first appearance at Artus' court, is described as "un chivaler a unes armes uermelles."

While they are thus lamenting, the lady of the castle and tower comes to them. The lady was living at the castle with only "sis serjans," "sis demoisiesles," and "set chevaliers." Many years ago, a knight who did not trust her had made her promise him by an oath that she would never leave the place. The lady in return had made him swear the same. After a while, the knight, feeling the want of martial exercise, established the custom of the castle, that no knight should pass by without fighting with him; if he was overcome, the lady, the castle, the tower, and all the country became the property of the victorious knight, who had, however, to continue the custom; thus Balaan had become the proprietor of the castle.

The two brothers request the lady to let them be buried where they have slain each other, in the same "vaissiel." When the lady hears they are brothers, she is greatly surprised, and, promising that she will carry out their wish, begins to cry for pity. She calls her people, bids them disarm the knights and carry them into the tower. But Balaain requests her not to move him from the spot, but to send for the chaplain "et mon sauveur, car je me muir." His brother asks the same. The lady at once carries out their wishes; they both receive their Saviour; when they have repeated the request that the lady should be sure to bury them together, they can say no more. Towards the "eure de viespres" Balaans expires first, and then Balaain, who was the elder brother. The people of the castle are deeply grieved. They do as the lady commands them, put the two bodies into the same grave, and write Balaans' name on it, but they do not know his brother's. Merlin suddenly arrives and bids them trouble no more; they have done their duty, the rest they should leave to him. He then writes on the grave the following additional inscription: "*Chi gist Balaains li chevaliers a deus espees, qui fist de la lanche vencesse le cop dolereus par coi li roiaumes de Listinois est tornés a douleur et a esuil.*" Then Merlin remains in the island "une lieue et plus, et fist illuec enchantemens assés diviers." On the tomb he establishes a bed so strange that whoever sleeps in it loses his senses and his memory. This enchantment lasted till "Lanscelos" the son of King "Ban de Benoic," came into the island; but not he himself, but "un anelet"¹ which he had, and which "descouvroit tous enchantemens," put an end to it. After Merlin had made the bed, and other wonderful things, "que je ne vous puis pas ichi deviser, car bien vous

¹ "et cel anelet li avoit donné la damoisele del lac, si coume la grant hystore de Lanscelot le [de la] devise, cele meisme ystoire, qui doit estre departie de mon livre, ne mie pour chou qu'il n'i apartiegne et que elle n'en soit traite, mais pour chou qu'il couvient que les trois parties de mon livre soient ingaus, l'une aussi grant coume l'autre, et se je ajoustaisse cele grant ystore la mo[is]e[n]e partie de mon livre fust au treble plus grant que les autres deus. Pour chou me couvient il laisser celle grant ystoire qui devise les oeuvres de Lanscelot et la naissance, et voel deviser les neuf lignies des nations, tout ensi coume il appartient a la haute escriture del saint graal, ne n'i conterai ja chose que je ne doie, ains dirai mains assés que je ne truis escrit en l'ystoire dou latin. Et je prie a mon signeur Helye, qui a esté mes companis a armes et en jovenche et en viellece, que il pour l'amour de moi et pour moi un poi allegier de cele grant painne prenge a tranlater, ensi comme je le deviserai une petite branke qui appartient a mon livre, et sera celle branke apielee li contes del brait, miervilleusement delitable [de la table] a oïr et a raconter," &c.

seront rementeues el conte quant tant et lieus en sera," he takes the sword of Balaain, breaks off the handle, and puts another on. Then he asks a knight, "qui devant lui estoit," to essay the sword. But he tries in vain. Merlin tells him, smilingly, no knight in the world can handle the sword, but Lancelot will come into the island, carry off the sword, and kill with it whom he most loves. Then Merlin writes on the handle: "*De ceste espee morra Gavains.*" Gavain's brother Gahariès found this inscription afterwards, but he thought it was wrong; "mais puis en ochist Lancelos Gavain apriès la mort Gahariet, si comme la vraie ystoire le devise vers la fin de nostre livre."

After this Merlin made an iron bridge, which can only be crossed by the best knights of the world. "Au chief del pont par deviers le chastiel, la ou li passages commenchoit, fist il metre un perron de marbre; dedens cel perron embati il une espee par enchantement, et de l'espee mist le fuerre en tel maniere qu'il vous fust avis qu'il ne tenist riens et que on le peuust avoir trop legierement; mais non peuust." On the handle of the sword he writes: "*Chis qui premiere essaiera ceste espee oster de chi premiere en sera navrés.*" On the "perron" he writes: "*Ja ceste espee ne sera di chi oster fore par la main le millour chevalier del monde, ne ja nus ne s'en haatisee d'oster, s'il ne se sent au millour chevalier de tous, car il li mekerroit.*" The stone was floating on the water the day when Galaas came to the court, "moult longement et fu veus en maint pais, et ala tant de lieus en lieus qu'il vint puis a Camalaoth." The island was afterwards called the island of Merlin, or the island of the marvels. Then Merlin goes to Carduel to the court of Artus, who has just knighted Baudemagus.

In the last chapters, though still considerably shortening and slightly altering his source, Malory follows it more closely than in the earlier chapters. Only few variants of importance have to be mentioned.

Malory, as on former occasions, inserts a name for the knight whom Balyn meets near the tower in the wood, viz., "Garnysse of the mount" where the "Suite" mentions no name. "The duke Hermel" in Malory is "le duc de Hermiel" in the "Suite."

In the seventeenth chapter Malory omits the squire whom in the "Suite" Balyn meets returning to the castle when he leaves it, and to whom he tells how the two knights and the lady, whose bodies he will find in the garden, came by their death, so that he might explain it to the people of the castle. Malory evidently refers to this in the words "when Balyn sawe this he dressid hym thens ward / lest folke would say he had slayne them." The words of the old man who tells Balyn that he has passed the bounds, "il n'i a mais riens del retorner," are thus rendered: "therefore torne ageyne and it will availle the."

Towards the end of chapter xviii. Malory twice misunderstands the French text. He writes: "when this knyghte in the reed beheld Balyn / hem thought it shold bee his broder Balen by cause of his

two swerdys," whereas the "Suite" has "Et quant cil a deus espees le voit, il li souvient maintenant de son frere," &c. Further, Malory states : " Ryght so cam the lady of the Toure with iiij knyghtes and vj ladyes and vj yomen vnto them ;" whereas the "Suite," relating how this lady came to the castle and why the strange custom was established, and how she stayed for many years there without leaving the place, says : " ne n'avoit en sa compaignie que sis serjans et sis demoisieles qui tous tans la servoient, et set chevaliers tant seulement."

In the nineteenth chapter Malory follows the "Suite," but adds the last eight lines (p. 99, 31-38), as the "Suite" does not say that Merlin told Arthur about the end of the two brothers.

γ. THE THIRD BOOK.¹

I.-V. Upon his return to the court, Merlin is well received and greatly cheered. Artus tells him that of late his barons have often blamed him for not having as yet selected a wife, and asks his advice in the matter, as, like his father, Vtherpandragon, he will do nothing without him. Merlin declares the barons are quite right, for a powerful king like Artus ought to be married. He asks if Artus has not yet met a woman whom he likes better than any other. Artus declares that of all the women he ever saw Genevieve, the daughter of King Leodegan of Carmelide, has pleased him best ; if he cannot get her, he does not care to marry at all. Merlin admits that Genevieve is certainly the most beautiful woman known to him, but such great beauty may easily become dangerous. But if Artus has set his heart upon her, he will help him as best he can. Genevieve's beauty, he adds, might eventually be useful to Artus : " Et che dist [fist] il por Ga(a)lehot, qui devint ses hom liges et li rendi sa terre la ou il l'avoit toute gaaingnie, et tout che fist il pour l'amour de Lancelot." Artus does not understand these obscure words. At his request Artus gives Merlin a hundred chosen knights and many "escuiers et valès," and sends him to King Leodegan to ask for his daughter's hand on Artus' behalf.

Leodegan receives Merlin well, and gladly accedes to Artus' request ; in fact, he is proud to get such a noble king as son-in-law. He would readily give all he has to Artus if he would accept it, but, as Artus has enough, he will only send him the round table. At present this lacks fifty knights ; he had wished to fill their places again, but a wise man told him that the table would soon pass into the hands of one who would be better able to make up the number of knights to the original hundred and fifty. Merlin tells Leodegan that the wise man has said the truth, for the table will come into the hands of one " qui la maintenra en gringnour pooir et en gringnour force que elle ne fu onques."

¹ Huth MS., ff. 150^v-183^v, ed. vol. ii. pp. 60-139.

Leodegan then assembles the hundred knights of the round table, and tells them that henceforward they will belong to another and more powerful master than himself. He admonishes them to do him honour; for their new lord will love them as a father. The knights are highly pleased with this news; they well know how valiant a knight Artus is. After three days Merlin starts with Gennevre and all the knights. Leodegan is more sorry for the loss of his knights than for that of his daughter: he kisses them first, his daughter last. When they are near London, where Artus resides at this time, Merlin sends and asks him to come with a splendid suite and meet Gennevre and the knights. Artus does as he is told, "*si les rechuit tous a moult grant honnour.*" The wedding-day is fixed. Merlin asks Artus to select fifty worthy knights, but Artus declares Merlin knows better than he, and requests him to do it for him. All the "*preudommes*" of his kingdom are summoned to Camalaoth "*a la feste de sa feme.*" When they are all assembled, Merlin selects forty-eight knights, and says to them: "*Dès ore mais convient il que vous vous entramés et vous tenés chiers, car pour l'amour et pour la douchour de cele table on vous serés assis vous naistera es cuers une si grant joie et une si grant amisties que vous en lairés vos femes et vos enfans pour estre l'un avoec l'autre, et pour user ensamble vos joveneches. Et nonpourquant ja vostre table ne sera a mon tans dou tout parfaite ne assoumee devant que a cest lieu se venra asseoir li boins chevaliers, li mieudres des boins, chis qui metera a fin les perilleuses aventures del roïame de Logres lau tout li autre faurront.*" Then he shows Artus and all knights their seats, and pointing to one says, "This is the perilous seat; remember it well when I am dead." When they ask Merlin why this seat is perilous, he tells them that no knight except the best of the world can sit in it, and he will not long occupy it. Artus wishes to know when this knight will come. Merlin gives an indirect answer, saying that the king will know great grief before he comes, and afterwards will not live much longer, for the dragon he saw in his dream will destroy him. Artus then reproaches Merlin for reminding him of this sad event in the midst of his joy, but Merlin declares he does it with intention; Artus ought to always think thereon; thereby he will appear humbler before his Creator, who has placed him in such a high position.

Merlin then tells the hundred knights that he has chosen forty-eight companions for them, and bids them live in peace and concord even as the apostles did. When all are seated, "*li archevesques de Cantorbile fist sour eus maintenant la beneichon,*" and the other "*clergies*" pray for them.

After this Merlin bids the knights do Artus homage, and swear that they will do him as much honour as they can. When they have done this and returned to their seats, each finds his name on his seat. Merlin tells them the letters are a token that God is pleased with them.

Afterwards Gavain asks his uncle Artus to bestow a gift on him. When it is granted, he asks Artus to dub him on his wedding-day. Artus consents. Gavains and seven other "*damoisiaus*" whom Artus dubs for the love of his nephew watch "*a la maistre eglyse de saint Etevene de Camalaoth.*" The next day there arrives on a "*maigre et las ronchin trotant un vilain qui amenoit un sien fil jovene enfant de l'aage de quinze ans sour une povre*

jument." He enters the palace and asks for Artus. When he is brought before the king, he salutes Artus and says that his great renown has induced him to come before him, for he has heard "*que nus n'est si hardis de toi demander aucun don que tu ne soies aussi hardis dou donner,*" and therefore he asks the king to bestow on him a gift that will not cost him anything. When the king declares he will grant what he asks, the man jumps down from his "*ronchin,*" kisses his feet, and his son does the same. Then he requests Artus to make his son knight. Artus declares he will do what he has promised, but he would like to know who has advised the man, for he thinks he has asked too much. The father tells him that he felt that also, but his son urged him to do what he has done; he is "*uns laborans de terre,*" and has thirteen children, of whom "*onze*" (!) work like himself, but the son whom he has brought with him refuses to do that, and declares his wish is to become knight. All the barons begin to laugh, but Artus remains serious and "*ne tient mie ceste chose a gas.*" He asks the young man if he really wishes to become knight, and receives the answer: "*Sire, il n'a riens el monde que je desire autant comme estre chevaliers de vostre main et estre compains de la table reonde.*" "Then may God grant that you become a good knight," replies Artus.

When Gavains and his companions enter, Artus bids them fetch "*reubes et dras et armes et espees.*" And all are clad, according to "*la coustume en la grant Bretagne,*" in white velvet. "*Et adont estoit li jors que li rois Artus devoit espouser sa feme,*" and on which the knights of the round table were to swear to one another the oath of fidelity. All repair "*a la maistre eglise.*" And the festival was so splendid that it baffles all description, for there were "*rois et dus et contes*" so many that it is impossible to name them. Artus and Gennevre wear crowns. After the mass Artus asks the names of the man and of his son. The father is "*Arès li vachier(e)s*" and the son's name is "*Tor.*" "Then," says Artus, addressing himself to Tor, "you will henceforth be called '*Tor li fieus a Arès.*'" Tor is the first knighted. Merlin steps forth and declares Tor will become a good knight, for he is of high birth. Arès is greatly mistaken if he thinks that Tor is his son; he ought to know better and tell the truth, or he (Merlin) will disclose it. Tor prays Merlin to be silent, and not dishonour his mother.

Then Gavain and the others receive the order of knighthood. The festival takes its course; the joy is great. All the seats of the round table are occupied except "*li siege[s] perilleus et li daerrains sieges.*" Artus wishes to know why this "*daerrains lieus est vius [viex].*" Merlin replies, it will be filled when it pleases God; he could have easily filled it, as there are many good knights there. Artus must first sit in the "*premier lieu,*" and Merlin will put a knight like him "*el daerrain.*"

On the next morning, before mass, King Pellinor arrives; he dresses himself beautifully, and, kneeling down before Artus, tells him that he has come to see his feast, and that he holds him the worthiest of all kings, and therefore will do him homage. "*Et maintenant li tent le penne de son mantiel.*" Merlin again steps forth, and asks Artus to thank and welcome Pellinor, for he is as worthy as Artus himself. When Artus does as Merlin advises him,

the latter tells all the barons: "bien sachiés que en cest jour d'ui sera nostre table toute enterine, ne mais dou siege perilleus." But nobody understands the sense of his words until he leads him to the vacant seat of the round table. Artus and all rejoice and praise Merlin, except Gavain, who tells his brother Gahariet that this very Pellinor, who is so much honoured, killed their father. The two brothers agree to be revenged upon Pellinor, and swear that neither will act without the other.

When all are at table and have nearly finished their dinner, Merlin speaks, telling them they will soon see three marvellous adventures, of which Gavains will undertake the first, "Tor li fuis a Arès" the second, and King Pellinor the third. All are much surprised at these words, but while they are still discussing Merlin's prophecies there arrives in the garden "un chierf les grans saus, et un braket apriés, et après venoit une demoisiele at tout trente muetes de chiens." "Li chiers" was quite white, but all the other dogs (!) were black. The damsel is very beautiful and dressed as a huntress. "Li chiers" enters the great hall where all the knights are. "Et lors li saut li brakes, et aert le chierf par derriere en la quisse et le tient si fort qu'il en porte la pieche." The "chiers" now saves itself by leaping over a table and running away. A knight who is one of the guests rises, seizes the "braket," mounts his horse "et s'en vait a tout le braket si grant oirre coume se tous li mons le (ca)cachast, et vait disant a soi meismes que bien a faite la besoigne pour coi il vint a court." When the damsel sees the knight carrying her "braket" off, she cries after him that he would do better not to carry the "braket" away. She then enters the hall, and, finding neither "li chiers" nor the "braket," complains to Artus and asks him for redress.

Merlin then comes forth, and bids her say no more; she is in a place where she will always get back what she has lost. "Why do none of the knights follow the 'chiers' and the 'braket'?" replies the lady. "Because it is the custom 'en ceste ostel' that no knight can take up a quest until the tables are cleared," explains Merlin, and requests Artus to observe this custom as long as he lives. Then Merlin tells Gavain that the adventure of the "chierf" is his—he has to bring its head to the court; and to Tor he assigns the adventure of the "braket"—he has to bring both knight and "braket," dead or alive, back to the court. The other knights blame Merlin that he exposes "ces deus enfants" to such great danger of death. But Merlin assures them that with God's help both will finish their adventures.

While these adventures are still being discussed, a knight, fully armed, enters the palace on a great white horse, rides up to the lady, lifts her up, seats her on the neck of his horse, in spite of her struggling, and makes off in great haste. The damsel cries for help to Artus, and requests him to deliver her. Merlin says to the barons, "Now ye see the three adventures which I announced;" then turning to Pellinor: "'Rois, qu'en dirés vous? Iceste daarrainne aventure est vostre a achievev,' for you must deliver the lady and bring her back to the court."

The opening lines of book iii. are, like the last lines of book ii., Malory's own composition; by these links he seemingly endeavours to

join the two portions of the narrative more closely than in the "Suite." The first five chapters represent summarily, and with many inaccuracies, modifications, and omissions, the corresponding section of the "Suite." The remarks Merlin makes with regard to Guenever (p. 100, 25-28) differ widely from those in the "Suite;" Malory evidently misunderstood his text. Merlin's demand for a company of knights for his expedition to Leodegan, and the fact that he went thither with forty knights and many squires, are entirely omitted. According to Malory, Merlin settles his affairs at Leodegan's court with great speed; it almost seems as if he returned immediately after his arrival.

In the next chapter, besides various omissions, Malory states that Merlin could find only "xx & xiiij" good knights; and a little farther on he declares the "viiij and xx" sat in their seats. These quotations are evidently based upon errors, for the number must be xxxviiij, as the "Suite" states, and as Malory himself admits l. 32 of the same page: "But two syeges were voyde." Merlin's prophecy regarding the perilous seat and his address to the knights of the round table are skipped.

As usual, Malory differs from the "Suite" in mentioning at once the names Aries and Tor, and further alters the source by stating that Artus demanded Aries to bring his other sons before him, and that he found a great difference in them from Tor. Merlin's disclosure that Tor is son of King Pellinor and Aries' wife before her marriage is here anticipated by Malory from two later passages; in the "Suite" it is made partly after Tor's return from his quest, partly after King Pellinor's. By this anticipation of events King Pellinor's arrival at Arthur's court is varied considerably from the account in the "Suite;" Arthur already knows that Tor is Pellinor's son. Forgetting that he has already described the dubbing of Tor in the third chapter, Malory follows the "Suite" in the fourth, and states: "but Tor was the fyrst (knight) he made at the feest."

The "Suite" only states that the wedding took place "a la maistre eglyse," having previously mentioned that Gawayn and his companions watched the knight before the wedding "a la maistre eglyse de saint Estevene de Camalaoth."

Malory's fifth chapter is a brief outline of this section in the "Suite," with several insignificant modifications.

VI.-VIII.¹ When the tables are cleared the knights start on their quests. Gavain takes leave of Artus and of his brothers, save Gaharies, who accompanies him as his squire. Tor and Pellinor also arm themselves, the former

¹ Huth MS., ff. 158^a-167^b, ed. vol. ii. pp. 80-101.

following the knight who carried off the brachet, the other knight who carried away the damsel. Gavain's adventures are told first.

When he has ridden some distance with his brother, they come to a castle called "Anbe," and, after passing it, to a meadow, where two knights fight, "et tant avoit ja duré la mellee qu'il avoient ansdeus lour chevaus occhis et estoient entrenavré si durement k'il avoient trop (tout) pierdu de sanc, et che n'estoit pas grant merveille, car il n'i avoit chelui qui(l) n'eust trois plaies u quatre, grans et profondes." Gavain stops, salutes them, and asks them why they fight so vehemently. He learns from them that they are two brothers, who wished to decide which of them is the worthiest to take up a certain quest. To Gavain's inquiry concerning the quest, they answer, they come from Camalaoth, where they saw the king's festival. On their way they suddenly met "un chierf tout blanc, qui trente muetes de chiens cachoient, ne n'i avoit nului, ne chevalier ne veneor (venoit) ne sergant nul après, ne houme qui de la cache s'entremist fors les chiens." As they both wished to follow the stag, they began to quarrel, and finally fought. Gavain tells them he never met two more foolish knights, who nearly killed one another for nothing. He makes them promise never to fight each other again. They ask his name; he cannot tell them, but if they go to Artus' court, and ask for the knight to whom Merlin assigned the first adventure, they will hear who he is. After having inquired in which direction the stag went, Gavain continues his way. Towards the hour "de viespres" he comes to a valley, through which flows a river, broad, but not deep. Gavain wishes to cross, but from the other bank a knight cries out that if he comes over he must fight with him. Gavain proceeds, and is really attacked by the knight when approaching the opposite bank. Gavain receives a terrible blow, but succeeds in unhorsing the knight, who soon starts up again, and asks Gavain, who is going on, to fight with him on foot and with swords. Gavain says it disturbs his quest, but if he wishes he will fight. They again attack each other, but after a short time Gavain cleaves the knight to the teeth, and thus performs his first feat of arms after receiving knighthood. His brother Gahariès praises him greatly, and expresses the hope that if his brother always strikes so mightily he will soon revenge their father.

Gahariès finds the track of the stag again, and the brothers continue their way. The day is long and hot "coume le jour de la Magdalainne." They have not gone far when they hear "les brakés qui glatissoient apriès le chierf et estoient assés prè(u)s d'eus." They increase their speed, and soon get sight of the stag followed by the hounds. The hunt rushes through the forest with great noise, and soon leads to "une plaigne," where the brothers see a strong castle. The stag runs through the open gate, the hounds follow, and soon catch and kill it in a great hall of the castle. When the stag is dead the hounds "le laisserent devant eus gesir et se couchierent tout en tour aussi coume pour lui garder."

When Gavain and his brother reach the spot, they see a knight, fully armed except shield and sword, coming out of a chamber and making great lament at the death of the stag, of which his lady had requested him to take care. He

pulls out a sword, and begins to chase "les brakès" and to kill those he can get hold of. Gavain bids him, for God's sake, to leave off killing the hounds. The knight refuses, as the hounds have killed in his very house "la beste el monde que il plus amoit." Gavain replies that the hounds only did their duty, but he who kills them is a bad knight. The knight, angry at this provocation, declares he must punish Gavain. Gavain dismounts, cuts off the stag's head, and says he will take it with him to Artus' court. While doing this, he notices that the knight has already killed two of the "brakès;" this grieves him much, and he vows to avenge them. Turning round, he sees the knight to whom he spoke return fully armed, who defies him. They fight, but Gavain, quicker and lighter than his antagonist, soon overcomes him; the other implores mercy, but Gavain refuses it. While they are still talking, Gavain raises his sword to strike his head off; at the moment a damsel, "amie au chevalier," throws herself on him, and by mishap the sword strikes off the damsel's head, which rolls a long way off. Gaharies is terrified, and declares that this is a great "vilonnie."

When Gavain sees what he has done, he releases the knight, on condition that he goes to Artus, "et illuec te meteras en la prison me dame la reine Geneuvre de par chelui qui ot l'aventure dou [de] chierf en don." Gavain further commands him to take with him the two "levriers" which he has killed, one before him, one behind him, on his horse. The knight, seeing that he cannot refuse without risking his life, promises to carry out these orders. After mourning over the body of the damsel, he rides off with the two "brakès" to Artus' court.

When the knight is gone the two brothers consult together as to what is to be done. They decide to stay where they are for the night, and return early next morning to the court. While they are talking and wondering at the beautiful castle before them, four knights come out of it, reproach Gavain for the felonious murder of the damsel, and violently attack him. Though he is exhausted and his adversaries fresh, he bravely resists them, retreating to a wall so as to cover his back. He would no doubt have got out of the difficulty had not an archer, suddenly coming out of the castle, wounded him in the arm with a "saïete envenimee." His brother Gaharies strikes the archer dead. Gavain is so weakened through the shot that he can no longer hold himself up, but falls to the ground, and the four knights are already going to cut off his head when a damsel arrives and bids them not to kill but to imprison him, "Car teuls puet il estre que tous li ors dou monde ne le garandiroit que je ne le fesiasse a duel morir." The four knights immediately obey, and put the two brothers into prison. Gavains feels wretched, and laments bitterly. At daybreak he finds that his arm is much swollen and "estoit assés plus gros que la cuisse d'un homme." He tells his brother, if help is not soon sent him, he must die. Both abandon themselves to their grief. The lady of the castle, who is at a window from which she can see the two brothers, hearing their complaints, takes pity on them, and tells them, though they have so outrageously acted in her house, she will release them if they take an oath to do what she asks them. They promise, and Gavain steps forth and "tent sa main et celle em prent la fianche." Gaharies would do the same, but the lady first asks him

if he is a knight; when he answers in the negative, she refuses to accept his word and hand. The two brothers are then allowed out of their prison. The lady looks at Gavain and asks him who he is; he replies that "li rois Loth d'Orkanie" is his father. The lady then says that the nephew of Artus ought not to have forgotten himself so much as to kill a lady, but for this ill deed she will inflict a punishment upon him. The two brothers are armed and mounted. Gavain receives the head of the stag, as it belongs to his quest, and hands it to Gaharies. Then the lady asks his name. When he tells her his name is Gavains, she continues; "Gavains il convient que vous le cors de ceste damoisiele que vous avés occhise portés devant vous seur le col de vostre cheval dusques a la court." Gavains consents. So the dead body is placed before him on his saddle, and the head of the damsel is attached, "par les treches," round his neck.

The lady then bids Gavains go thus to the court, summon all ladies, tell them how he slew the damsel, and submit to whatever punishment they will inflict upon him. The brachets are put "en laisses deus et deus," and the lady offers one of her "vallés," but Gaharies declares this is unnecessary, for if he leads the first couple, the others will follow.

In this manner the two brothers ride back to Camalaoth, and do not stop until they have come to the palace. Gavain is unarmed and helped down from his horse. When his swollen arm is seen, there is great alarm; but Merlin says the wound is not dangerous, and Gavain will soon recover. "Et saichiés que ceste aventure poés vous bien tenir a une des aventures de[1] saint graal, si en verrés dès ore souvent avenir de plus crueus et de plus felonnes que ceste n'est." The queen and all ladies of the court are called together, and, when they are seated "entre les chevaliers," Merlin delivers a long speech.¹ At the end, he advises Artus, whenever a knight starts on a quest, to make him swear to faithfully relate it afterwards; if on his setting out this custom was neglected, he ought to swear upon his return. Artus promises to act upon this advice. Thus Merlin makes Gavain the first to subject himself to this custom. After he has sworn, he tells his quest from beginning to end as it happened, so that Merlin, who is supposed to know all things, declares he has told the truth. After this Merlin asks the queen and her ladies "que elles vous [to

¹ The contents of Merlin's speech are briefly these:—"Rois Artus aventureus, you were marvellously conceived and brought up, and when you came as a young man 'entre tes hommes liges' they did not know you, but God knew you, and through his grace you became lord of them all and occupy your high position; thus, as you were engendered by a wonder, you received your crown in a wonderful manner. You may well understand that so many wonders did not come about for nothing, 'ains sont seneffiances et commencement de cheus qui devoient avenir en ton ostel et en ta subjection et en maint autre lieu. Et pour chou di jon que tu dois estre apielés rois aventureus et tes roiaumes aventureus.' Also know that as adventure gave you the crown, adventure will take it from you. No living man knows better than I do all these things, and be sure all I ever told you will come to be fulfilled. Wherever you are, many adventures will come about; your knights will have to go through many hard battles, and they will often suffer 'hontes et laidures et vilonnies.' But as you cannot follow each knight of yours in his quests, you must, in order to know his value, make him swear, before starting, to tell you the truth," &c.

Gavain] en doinsent tel penitanche, de la dame que vous avés occhise, que vous la tiegniés et que vous en soiiés tenus pour cortois de tenir le." The ladies then withdraw to consider the case, and return after a while with the verdict. As a penance for his deed, Gavain must swear "sor sains" never in his life to lay his hand again on a damsel; to help any lady who will ask him for help, unless her request be against his honour. For this latter reason he was ever after called "li chevaliers as damoiseles."¹

Merlin prophesies that Gavain will become one of the most renowned knights of the round table; only one knight will be able to overcome him, but "cele bataille dont je vous parole ne sera mie a mon tans." He then asks him to promise, by an oath, that he will never in future refuse to give mercy to any knight who asks it. This also Gavain swears to do.

Addressing himself to Artus, Merlin tells him that he will not live much longer,² and advises him to keep some clerks for the purpose of writing down all the adventures that happen in his time.

The adventure of Gawayne forming the contents of chapters vi.-viii. is, save considerable omissions and modifications and a few additions, faithfully retold from the French source. Malory does not mention the castle of "Anbe," to which, according to the "Suite," the two brothers first come.

The meeting with the two brothers who have fought against one another is much modified by Malory. In the "Suite" Gawayne speaks kindly to them, and requests them to promise him, as a gift, that they will never again act so foolishly and nearly kill one another for no cause. When they ask him for his name he says he cannot tell them, but if they go to Arthur's court and inquire about the knight who had the first adventure they will hear it. Malory, on the contrary, relates that Gawayne, after reproaching the brothers, wishes to fight with them unless they yield themselves to him and promise to go and do the same to Arthur. The names which Malory gives to the knights, "Sorlouse of the forest" and "Bryan of the forest," occur later on in the "Suite," as does the name "Alardyn of the Ilys."

In the next episode the "Suite" states that one lady, apparently

¹ One cannot help noticing that the adventure of Balaain, who strikes a lady's head off when she demands his own from King Arthur as a gift, is very similar to this adventure of Gawayne. Compare p. 74.

² The passage in the Huth MS., fol. 167^b, is this:—"Sire rois," fait Merlins, "or diras que vous ferés. Saichies que je ne serai pas dès or en avant gramment au siecle, et ne mie ou tans ou je mieus vaulsise estre pour veoir les miervilleuses aventures qui avenront espesement. Et pour chou que vous ne troverés pas gramment qui vous conselle se la grasse dou saint esprit nel fait voel jou que vous dès or en avant fachiés metre en escrit toutes les aventures dont on contera en vostre court la verité, pour chou que après nos mors sachent nostre hoir, li povre et li riche, les merveilles qui averront au tans le roi aventureus. Et aliés chaliens cinquante clers qui ne fachent autre mestier fors que metre en escrit les aventures de la court ensi coume elles averront as estranges et as privés."

the lady of the castle, appears and requests the four knights to save Gawayne's life, and to put him into prison until they know who he is; Malory, probably for the sake of symmetry, has "four ladies," and omits all mention of the prison. The remainder of Gawayne's quest is much curtailed by Malory. The conversation between the lady of the castle (whom Malory again replaces by "four ladies") and Gawayne is likewise altered in parts. Merlin's remarks regarding Gawayne's wound, the advice to Arthur to assemble the ladies, his speech to the king before the open court, and the proposal relative to the swearing of knights starting on adventures; his prophecies that Gawayne will become one of the most renowned knights of the round table and not be overcome save by one knight; finally, the advice to Arthur to have all the adventures of his knights written down by fifty clerks, and the allusion to his (Merlin's) approaching death, will all be looked for in vain in "Le Morte Darthur."

IX.-XI.¹ "Tor li fuis a Arès," after leaving Artus' court in pursuit of the knight who carried off the brachet, soon comes into a great wood. When he has advanced "une grant lue englesque" he finds on his right two tents pitched in a meadow. At the entrance of either tent hang a new shield and a lance. Recognising "les esclos" of the knight whom he seeks, he pays no attention to the tents, but continues his way. When he has gone about "une arbalestree" beyond he sees a dwarf, who approaches him, and strikes his horse with a stick so hard that it starts back a lance's length. Tor angrily asks the dwarf why he has struck his horse. The dwarf replies, he is a coward for passing the tents without jousting with their tenants. "I have no time," declares Tor, "as I am following a knight." The dwarf now tells him that before he can continue his way he must show them he knows how to handle the lance. When Tor understands that, he reluctantly makes up his mind to joust, though his need of continuing his way be so great. "'Ne t'esmaie pas,' fait li nains; 'preudom ne puet perdre par delai, et tu porras auques esprouver se tu vaurras nient.'" After saying this, he blows a horn, and immediately a knight rushes, fully armed, out of one of the pavilions, and rides against Tor, who meets him bravely. In the very first bout Tor unhorses the knight, so that he falls and breaks his arm. Then catching the knight's horse, he leads it by the bridle to the dwarf, declaring "c'est li commencement de chevalerie que j'ai commenciet." No sooner has he said this than the second knight advances against him. Tor throws him, too, out of the saddle, so that in falling "brise li glaive si que li fers en remest a chelui ou costé seniestre." Seeing them both on the ground, Tor pulls out his sword and returns to the first, who is going to get up. Tor gives him a mighty stroke "par mi le hyaume," so that he falls down again, and rides over him "si que tout le debrise, et cil se pasme de l'angoisse qu'il sent." He then ties his horse to a tree, pulls off the knight's helmet, and is about to strike his

¹ Huth MS., ff. 167^v-173^v, ed. vol. ii. pp. 101-115.

head off, when the knight cries for mercy, which is granted to him on condition that he will go to whatever prison Tor directs. Tor then returns to the other knight, raises his sword with both "puins," and deals him such a terrible stroke "*que il li fait les ieus estinceler en la teste*," stunning him, so that he has no power to rise again. Taking hold of the helmet, he pulls with all his might, but the straps are too strong, he must first cut them with his sword. This knight surrenders on the same condition as his companion. Tor commands them to go to Camalaoth, and yield themselves on his behalf to Artus.

When Tor is mounted again, he asks the dwarf to give him another sword. The dwarf gives him a good and strong one, and requests him, as a gift, to allow him to become his servant, "*en lieu d'escuier*." Tor grants the request, and bids him mount on the horse given him to hold. On the way Tor asks the dwarf if he knows who the knight is whom he saw, and is told that he is "*uns des boins chevaliers de ceste terre*," named "Abelin." The dwarf will lead Tor to the place where he can find him.

After crossing the wood for some time, they arrive at a meadow where they see several "pavillions." Before each hangs a "vermel" shield, but one shield is white. "This," declares the dwarf, pointing out the pavilion with the white shield, "belongs to the knight you seek; he is the master of the knights who occupy the others, and the 'braket' is also there." Tor rides up to the "pavillion," dismounts, and enters. Inside he finds a damsel sleeping on a bed, and the "braket"; when he will take it, it begins to bark, and awakes the damsel. Seeing an armed knight whom she does not know, the damsel quickly rises and flees to another pavilion. Tor takes the "braket," carries it to the dwarf, who is about to ride off with it when a damsel comes and asks Tor to give the "braket" back unless he wishes to fight with its owner. Tor tells the damsel that this dog was taken away from Artus' court, and thither he will carry it back; if any knight is offended, he may come after him. The damsel tells him he will not reach Camalaoth "*sans contredit*," but he rides away with the dwarf and the dog.

The night soon overtakes them, and they repair to the "ostel" of a hermit which the dwarf knows in the neighbourhood. They are as well received as the poor hermit can afford, and pass the night there. On the next morning after mass they continue their way. They have hardly gone half a mile when they hear the noise of horses behind them. On looking back, Tor recognises the knight who carried the "braket" off, and who now comes after him "*comme se la mors le chacast*." He makes himself ready to fight, and when the knight comes nearer he defies him, and reproaches him for having taken the "braket" from the damsel.¹ The other does not reply, but rides against Tor. A violent combat follows, many terrible blows are dealt on either side, and "*dura la mellee cruele et felenesse dès devant eure de prime jusques a eure de tierche*." Both are exhausted from their great efforts and the loss of blood. When Tor notices that his antagonist grows fainter, "*se li commencha a donner grandismes [grandesimes] cols de s'espee trenchant*," wounding him more than

The damsel is meant who came on Arthur's wedding to Camalaoth.

ten times. He then says that, considering what a brave fighter the knight is, he shall be spared if he promises to go to whatever prison shall be assigned. The knight rejects this offer, declaring he would rather die a hundred times "*que une seule fois dire et faire chose que tornast a recreandise.*" Tor then renews his blows, brings the knight to the ground, and, tearing off his helmet, bids him surrender or die. The knight does not answer, but a damsel suddenly arrives and asks Tor for a gift; as she is the first damsel who asks him such a favour, Tor assents, and hears now that she wishes to have the head of the conquered knight. Tor is reluctant to fulfil this demand, but the damsel tells him that the knight is one of the most disloyal "*en la grant Bretagne.*" The knight now implores Tor, first, not to believe what the damsel says, and, when this is of no avail, the damsel's forgiveness and intercession. But the damsel refuses, as he has killed her brother, and bids Tor do what he has promised her. Tor resolves to kill the knight. While he dresses himself to strike the final blow, the knight tries to escape, but Tor overtakes him, and strikes off his head, which flies away "*plus d'une toise loing del bu.*" The damsel runs after the head, takes it up, and, thanking Tor greatly, invites him to rest at her castle. Tor consents, and is led by the damsel to a castle not far away. The inmates of the castle, seeing the head and hearing of Tor's victory, bless and thank him for freeing them from their mortal enemy. He is well entertained, passes the night there, and leaves the next morning for Camalaoth, accompanied by good wishes and thanks. He is requested whenever his way should bring him again into their neighbourhood, to call at the castle.

When he arrives at Camalaoth he finds Gavain already back, but not Pellinor; he is warmly welcomed and made much of. After having sworn by the saints to tell the truth, he relates his adventures. Artus is delighted. Pellinor is the only one missing, but Merlin says he will soon come back, and then asks Artus what he thinks of Tor, whom he deems the son of a "*vakier.*" Artus replies he cannot be of such base descent or he would never have achieved what he has done. "*You know him better,*" declares Merlin, "*than he knows himself, for he does not know who his father is; when you see Pellinor by his side, you will soon know who his father is; know that 'Pellinor l'engenra en la feme d'un vakier, et ot le pucelage de li. Et ensi fu engenrés Tor. Mais pour chou que li vilains ot a feme la damoisele cele semaine meismes que elle fu despucelee cuida il vraiment que Tor fust ses fies, mais non est.'*" Then Artus laughs, and asks if the damsel was a "*gentius feme.*" Merlin replies she was only "*une pastorele*" whom the king found in a meadow, where she pastured her cattle; "*mais ele ert de si grant biauté plainne qu'il em prist au roi envie; si geut a li et engenra Tor.*" Artus is much amused at this disclosure, and declares he wishes to see them all three together. When Merlin tells him that Pellinor will be back that very day, Artus asks him to send for the cowherd's wife.

Malory's account of Tor's quest is not only, as is usual with him, greatly abridged, but, especially in the latter portion, presents several features not to be found in the "*Suite.*"

In the ninth chapter Malory adds on his own account that the first

of the two knights against whom Tor fights, when he is overcome, says: "But syr I have a felawe in yonder paelione that wille have adoo with you;" also that Tor asks the two knights for their names. These names, viz., "Felot of Langduk" and "Petypase of wynchelse," as in similar cases, are not in the Huth MS. The name of the knight whom Tor follows is only mentioned once in the "Suite," viz., when Tor, having accepted the dwarf's services, and asked him if he knew the knight who carried off the brachet, the dwarf answers: "Sire, oil bien. Sire, il a non Abelin." Malory mentions the name repeatedly, though not on this particular occasion, in the forms "Abilleus" or "Abelleus." The "pluisours pavillons en une prairie" with the shields attached to them, which latter are all "vermel fors uns seuls qui estoit aussi blans comme nois," correspond to Malory's "two paelions euen by a pryory with two sheldes / And the one shylde was enewed with whyte / and the other sheeld was reed."

In the beginning of Malory's tenth chapter the "paelion with the white shield" becomes "a white paelion." In opposition to the "Suite," Tor finds in the first pavilion "thre damoysels" sleeping "on a paylet," and only in the second, i.e., in the "pavelion" with the red shield, "one damoysel" and "the whyte brachet." But, according to Malory, when this lady is awakened by the barking of the brachet and perceives Tor, she flees "with all her damoysels" (!) to the other "paelion."

Later on in the same chapter, in the "Suite" Tor reproaches the knight, who says no word, whilst in Malory the knight Abilleus reproaches Tor.

Several passages in the eleventh chapter are Malory's own composition, viz., p. 112, ll. 10-12: "and he hadde had grace / and I kneled half an houre afore hym in the myre for to saue my broders lyf that had done hym no dammage," &c. On the same page (ll. 30-38), in the "Suite" the lady does not ask Tor for his name, nor is her "husband" mentioned, she being apparently unmarried.

The statement that Tor arrived on the "thyrdde" day after leaving the lady at the court is not to be found in the "Suite."

The passage (p. 113, 4-7) "for he wente from the Court with lytel socour / but as kyng Pellinore his fader gaf hym an old courser / and kyng Arthur gaf hym armour and a swerd / and els had he none other socour," is in contradiction both to the "Suite" and to Malory's previous statements.

Lines 10-17, forming the conclusion of the eleventh chapter, are Malory's composition, probably intended as a substitute for Arthur and Merlin's conversation regarding Tor, Merlin's disclosures about his birth, and his announcement that Pellinor will return from the quest the same evening, and, finally, Arthur's wish to see Pellinor, Tor, and the wife of

Aries side by side, and the order to Merlin to fetch this lady to the court—of which Malory, as I have mentioned at p. 101, anticipated the substance in the third chapter of the third book.

XII.-XV.¹ When King Pellinor leaves Camalaoth on the quest of the knight who carried the damsel off, he meets after a while "un varlet seur un ronchin maigre et las," and asks him if he has seen a knight carrying off a lady. The varlet did see the knight, and tells the king that the damsel cried much, and that the knight rode "droit viers Braait."

When he has gone "entour deus liues englesques" through a wood, Pellinor finds a beautiful damsel sitting by a fountain, and having before her a mortally wounded knight. The damsel cries and laments, and implores Pellinor's help, but he passes by her, eagerly following his quest. When the damsel sees that he does not return, she cries after him: "Ha! chevaliers mauvais et orgilleus, Dieus te doinst que tu aies aussi grant mestier d'aide que ge ai orendroit et que tu soies aussi esgarés coume je sui esgaree, et proier puisse(s) tu par bescing, ne n'aies grignour aide ne gringnour secours que j'ai de toi!" Pellinor hears her complaint, but does not turn back. The damsel faints after speaking; when she recovers and finds her "ami" dead, she stabs herself with the dead knight's sword.

Pellinor comes "après eure de viespres" across "un vilain qui menoit busche," and asks him if he has seen a knight carrying off a lady. The man has seen them, and adds that when the knight passed the pavilion of a knight in a valley not far off, the knight stopped him, declaring the lady "estoit sa cousine germainne," and that after this both knights began to fight for the lady, and were probably still engaged. This news pleases Pellinor greatly. He quickens his horse's pace, and soon finds the truth of all the man has told him: the damsel is sitting "sour l'erbe verde toute esplourée avoec les damoisieles et avoec les escuiers," and the two knights are still fighting desperately. Pellinor looks on at the fight, then rides up to the damsel, and, telling her that she was wrongfully carried away from the court, is about to take her with him, but the two squires "saillirent sus," bidding him not steal the lady from them, but ask the two knights who are fighting for her.

Pellinor then rides up to the two combatants, and bids them leave off for a moment. He tells them that he has come from Artus in order to take the damsel back to the court, and asks the knights why they claim her. The one declares she is his cousin german, whom he wishes to take back to her parents, who long to see her; the other claims her as the prize of his courage and prowess, shown in taking her away in the face of King Artus and all his knights and bringing her thus far. Pellinor says that neither of them can have her, as he must take her to Artus. When the two knights hear this, they make friends, and turn against Pellinor. The one who carried off the lady pierces Pellinor's horse in the left side with a spear, so that it falls down

¹ Huth MS., ff. 173^a-181^d, ed. vol. ii. pp. 115-135.

dead. To punish this bad deed, Pellinor cleaves him to the teeth with a mighty stroke. When the other knight sees his companion's fate, he says it would be foolish on his part to continue the fight against Pellinor, as he is greatly exhausted; moreover, he understands that Pellinor has no bad intentions towards his cousin, but that he came "*por s'ounour et pour vengier le de chelui qui a forche l'en menoit.*" He further prays Pellinor to protect her well, as she is a king's daughter, whose delight is hunting. Pellinor promises to take good care of her; he asks the knight for another horse, which is readily given him, with the request, as it is now too late for returning, to come and stay with him.

The next morning Pellinor receives a good horse and starts with the damsel for Camalaoth; "a prime" they come through a deep valley "*moult aineuse a chevauchier,*" as it is full of stones and rocks. The damsel's horse stumbles, and she falls so unhappily on the ground "*seur le brach seniestre que elle cuida bien avoir l'espaule desliuee,*" and suffers great pains. Pellinor dismounts and takes her in his arms, and is much frightened lest she die. After a while she feels better, for the fear of having broken her arm was more than the actual pain; but she cannot ride again yet awhile. Pellinor carries her to a tree, gathers grass as a pillow for her head, and requests her to try and sleep. He doffs his helmet and eases himself and his horses, then sits down by the side of the damsel, falls asleep, and does not awake until the evening.

The cold of night awakens the two sleepers. They have slept too long, and must now stay where they are until morning. The damsel has entirely recovered from her fall.

While they are talking to one another, two knights meet by chance exactly where they are, one coming from, the other going to, Camalaoth. The former tells the latter he has been at Artus' court and seen how powerful he is, how devoted his knights are to him, and he thinks that "*se tout li roi de l'isle de mer veuient seur lui a ost, il ne les douteroit pas une keneule;*" he will therefore return to his "*signeur*" (?) and tell him to give up his hope of doing harm to Artus. The other now tells him that all this will not help Artus, for he is going to his court with a marvellous poison. One of Artus' knights has promised his "*signeur*" to give Artus the poison in his drink. After recommending one another to God, the two knights part, the one riding towards Camalaoth, the other through the wood.

When they are gone Pellinor declares to his damsel his pleasure at their having overslept themselves; the damsel agrees, and says: "*Sachiés que nostre sires nous fist chi endormir pour oir ches nouvies pour garnir le roi Artus; car il ne li plaist mie qu'il miu(e)re encore par si grant desloiauté;*" let us therefore hasten to the court without further delay." Pellinor reassures the damsel, saying, "We need not fear for him, because Merlin, who loves Artus well, is with him, and knows beforehand all that will happen." So they sleep again, and start at daybreak for Camalaoth.

They soon pass the fountain where the damsel implored Pellinor's help, and find her body and the knight's already devoured by wild beasts, save the bones

and heads. Pellinor is very sad at this sight, knowing himself to be in some measure the cause of the damsel's death; his companion wonders, and mocks him for mourning the damsel's death so much; she thinks Pellinor's sorrow is for the damsel. Pellinor then tells her the reason of his sadness. They bury the knight's body at a hermitage, and take the lady's head with them to Camalaoth. The hermit promises to sing a mass for the knight.

"Droit a eure de viespres" they arrive at Camalaoth. Artus welcomes Pellinor and congratulates him on the successful achieving of his quest, for he loves him well. When he has taken the oath, Pellinor faithfully relates his adventures and shows them the damsel's head, adding that he fears she, as well as the knight, died through him. Artus also thinks he might at least have saved the damsel's life by succouring her. Merlin then steps forth, and asks Pellinor if he knows who the damsel was. Pellinor does not know her, but would fain do so. Merlin cannot tell him at present, as he wishes, but will say so much that Pellinor, if wise, will understand.

Merlin then asks if Pellinor remembers how, two years ago, when bearing his crown at a festival "a Montor," a fool asked him to take it off, or "li fieus del roi ochis le t'ostera, et ensi [la] perdras. Et se tu la pers, che [ne] sera grant miervelle, car par ta mauvaisté et par ta negligence (en) lairas tu ta char devourer a lions chelui an mesmes que tu seras mis en autrui subjection." Pellinor well remembers the fool's words, and understands that, in so far as he has done homage to Artus, the first part of the prophecy has been fulfilled, but as to the second part, he cannot understand it. Merlin tells him, if he cannot understand it now, he soon will; if the son of the slain king does not deprive him of his crown, the fool has lied, but it will so befall, to the great sorrow of the "roiaume de Logres." Pellinor again asks the damsel's name, but Merlin has disclosed all he can; the rest will be learnt soon enough; if he did not fear to anger Pellinor, he would tell him "une autre chose." Pellinor is anxious to know as much as possible, and promises Merlin that he will not be angry whatever is revealed to him. Merlin then asks him if he remembers the words of the damsel; on Pellinor saying Yes, Merlin continues: Because this damsel, was "aussi boine puciele et aussi boine vierge," Our Lord has heard her prayer, and Pellinor will also die "par defaute d'aide," and thus another prophecy made to him on the day of his coronation will be fulfilled, for, when he received the crown from the archbishop and bishop, he prayed to God that he might not die "par mesqueanche," and a voice from heaven spoke to him: "Rois Pellinor, tout aussi coume faudras a ta char te faurra ta char, et che sera 'pour coi tu morras plus tost.'" Pellinor acknowledges that Merlin is right in this; he has often thought over these mysterious words without being able to grasp their meaning, and he requests Merlin, for God's sake, to explain them to him if he can. But Merlin refuses, and says, in excuse, that he has no right to reveal the things "que li haus maistres a establies a sa volenté;" nobody in the world but himself knows it. Pellinor, hearing this, resigns himself to the will of God; Merlin declares he cannot do better, for no man can alter God's decrees. Artus interrupts them with the request to talk no more about death, "car par celle voie couvenra il passer et vieus et jovenes, ja nus n'échaperà."

Tor's mother is then introduced. Artus takes her, Merlin, Tor, and "douze des plus haus barons" into a chamber. Merlin bids the woman tell, in the presence of her liege lord, King Artus, who is the father of Tor, for they know well from his appearance that he must be of noble birth, and not the son of a poor labourer. The woman is much surprised, and blushes, but soon recovers herself, and, turning to Merlin, asks him who he is that pretends to know more about her affairs than herself. Merlin tells her his name, and adds, to-day he is in this shape, but she may see him some day in another one. The woman replies, she has often heard that he is a devil's son, and is not surprised to hear that he can take various semblances, for devils have that power, and thus, may a man be ever so wise, they will sometimes succeed in deceiving him. Her shrewdness makes all the barons laugh. Merlin declares that, if she refuses to tell the truth, he will reveal it. This greatly irritates the woman, who abuses Merlin, and declares that he is much worse than other devils, for while they endeavour to hide men's sins, he wishes to make them known openly. He may be sure God will not be pleased with him, for he does not urge her to confession for the love of God, but only because he wants to show off his knowledge. The barons are greatly amused, and ask Merlin if he does not think the woman is very wise. Merlin replies that, were it not for her goodness, he would not let her talk to him in such wise. Then, turning to Artus, the woman says: "I will tell you the truth; Tor is not the son of my husband, 'ains l'engendra uns chevaliers cele semaine que je fui espousee meismes, si gut a moi u je vauissse ou non, che set bien Dieus.' I have never heard who he was. 'Et sachiés que il m'eut puciele, ne je n'avoie pas d'aage quinze ans quant il engendra Tor.'"

Merlin asks her if she would recognise the knight if she saw him; she thinks not, as she only saw him once. Merlin now takes Pellinor by the hand, and says, "See, this is the knight." Both blush. Merlin then tells Pellinor so many details¹ that he has no longer doubts, and acknowledges the truth. The woman also declares that all Merlin said is true; she recognises Pellinor by a wound on the left cheek, which at that time was quite fresh.

Turning to Tor, Merlin says, "Now you can see that you are a king's son, for, if it were otherwise, you would never have longed so much to become a knight, as you have done." To Pellinor he says: "Sire, or avés autant gaaignié coume perdu car vous avés gaaignié et recouvré l'un pour l'autre."² Neither Pellinor nor any one else understands these words, but Merlin refuses to say more, and only bids Pellinor love his son well, for he will turn out a good knight and do him great honour.

¹ Merlin says briefly this to Pellinore: "You found her near a 'buisson' with 'un levrier et un mastin'; you had sent all your men away for a hermit to whom you had spoken about confession 'a trois archies d'un chastiel que on apieloit Amint.' When you saw the beautiful woman, you dismounted, asked her to hold your horse until you were disarmed, 'et geustes deus fois a li meismes, la ou elle faisoit trop grant dual.' When you had satisfied your desire you told her that she would have a child, and, mounting again, you intended to take her with you, but she fled and cursed you. Then you took her 'levrier' with you, declaring you would keep it for her love."

² Merlin indicates by this remark that Pellinor has lost a daughter (for the damsel, as is told later on, was his daughter) and found a son.

This news fills all present with great joy. Father and son embrace each other, saying how pleased and proud they are at having thus found out their near kinship. The mother takes leave of Artus and gives her son good advice.¹

Artus afterwards asks "la damoisiele caceresse," when he has given her back the stag and hounds, if she is satisfied; she declares that she has got all she could ask, and will now return to her own country. Artus asks if she cannot make up her mind to remain at his court and with his queen; he will do her much honour. Merlin, greatly pleased, advises Artus to do all he can to keep her, for she is "vaillans," "sage," and of noble birth, being the daughter of a king and a queen. The queen joins her husband in entreating the damsel, who at last promises to remain with them for some time. She tells them her name is "Nivienne," the daughter of a nobleman of "la petite Bretagne," but she does not say that she is a king's daughter.²

On the morrow Merlin tells Artus, knowing he will keep it secret, that the damsel whose head Pellinor brought to the court was his daughter; the knight who was with her was her cousin german, who was charged to lead her to Artus' court. This was why he told Pellinor that he had lost as much as he had gained. Artus also wishes to know what Merlin meant by saying that Pellinor's flesh would fail him one day as he has failed his flesh. Merlin at first hesitates, fearing that Artus, though willing to keep the secret as long as he (Merlin) stays at the court, may disclose it when he has gone. He tells Artus that only when he has left him will he find out what a friend and adviser he was; nevertheless, Artus will soon forget him, though the time will come when he would willingly give half his kingdom to recall him. Artus admits this may be true, but again requests Merlin to tell him what he wishes to know. After making him swear to tell nobody, Merlin explains to him that, twelve years hence, King Pellinor, exhausted and wounded in a quest, will be found by the son of the slain king (i.e., Gawain), who "le metra a outranche." Left half dead on the spot, he will lie in "pamisons" until the "eure de viespres." Then, opening his eyes, he will see two knights passing; one is Kex, the other his son Tor. Kex will flee; Pellinor will recognise Tor and implore his help, but Tor will not recognise his father, and will not listen to his words. At eve the son of the slain king, finding him, will recognise him, and strike his head off. Artus says it is a great pity that he cannot

¹ The mother's words are briefly these:—"Biaus fleus, you were brought up in poverty, and Our Lord has so much loved you that he has raised you so high; do not forget your Creator, that he may not forget you. For as he is mighty to make you great and powerful, he is mighty to humble you and 'de (vous) metre a nient.' This remember well. God gave you one soul: if you render it to him, you will be a wise and true knight; if you give it up to the fiend, it would certainly have been better for you 'que vous fuissies laboreres de terre et povres aussi coume sont vo autre frere.'"

² "Et sachent vraiment (que) tout cil qui le conte mon signeur Robert de Borron escoutent que ceste damoisiele fu cele qui puis fu apielee la damoisiele dou lac, cele qui norrist grant tans en son ostel Lancelot dou lac, ensi comme la grant ystoire de Lancelot le devise. Mais ceste ystoire del saint graal n'en parole pas gramment, anchois tient une autre voie et dist."

prevent this. Merlin tells him he can no more alter that than he could prevent the child of Artus and his sister, who is to destroy the land, from living. Artus, terrified, asks if the child is not dead, and hears from Merlin that he is alive and brought up with another child of his age by a baron, who loves him well. And he will one day slay his half-brother. Artus makes the sign of the cross, and curses the hour of the child's birth. Merlin tells him, further, that all the other children whom Artus exposed in a ship are sound and well, for a rich man found them, and brings them up in a tower, but the unlucky child is not with them, but far away.

After talking long to Artus, Merlin retires and goes to Blaise, who "demouroit encore a Camalaoth," and tells him all the adventures which have happened and will come about in Logres, that he might have his book in good order when Merlin leaves "la grant Bretagne."

Malory's account of Pellinor's quest in the last four chapters of book iii. is not only, as usual with him, much curtailed, but also presents in the fourteenth and fifteenth chapters traits in addition to those of the source.

Malory omits in the beginning of the twelfth chapter the "varlet" whom Pellinor meets not long after leaving Camalaoth, and who tells him that a knight and lady had ridden "droit viers Braait."

In the episodes of the lady imploring Pellinor's help, and of his meeting with the two knights who fight for the lady who was carried off, there are slight, though insignificant, changes. The name of the knight whom Pellinor pursues, "Hontlake of wentland," is not to be found in the Huth MS.

As against the "Suite," in Malory Pellinor takes the horse of Hontlake, whom he slew. The stay of Pellinor and the lady at the knight's house is told at greater length than in the "Suite."

The contents of p. 115, 24-35, and p. 116, 1-6, which relate how the knight asks Pellinor for his name, gives his own name, "Meliot de Logurs," that of his cousin, "Nymue,"¹ mentions the knight who occupies the other pavilion, "Bryan of the Ilya," and gives details about him, and finally promises to come some day with him to Arthur's court at Pellinor's request, are all absent from the "Suite."

In the fourteenth chapter Malory disagrees with the "Suite" in so far as he relates that the knight whom Arthur loves well has promised "our chyuetayns" to poison his lord, where the "Suite" in the corresponding passage has "mon signeur"; further, by attributing to the knight who comes from Camalaoth King Pellinor's words to his lady: "Il ne nous en couvient onques estre en esmai, car Merlins li sages prophetes est a court qui ne soufferroit en nule maniere que li rois

¹ This name corresponds to "Niuiene," occurring later on in the "Suite."

fust ensi trais," &c., in the form: "Beware of Merlyn for he knoweth all thynges by the devyls crafte."

The contents of the fifteenth chapter only slightly resemble the corresponding portion of the "Suite." Guenever's reproach to Pellinor: "ye were gretely to blame that ye saued not this ladyes lyf," and Pellinor's reply: "ye were gretely to blame and ye wold not save your owne lyf & ye myzt / but sauf your pleasir I was so furyous in my quest that I wold not abyde," &c., are—the former, an adaptation of some similar remark of Arthur on the same occasion; the latter, Malory's invention.

The long conversation between Merlin and Pellinor, Merlin's prophecies to the king, his references to prophecies previously made to him, on the occasion of a festival at "Montor," by a fool, and on the day of his coronation by a voice from heaven, his final refusal to tell him any more for the present, as he has no right to reveal the will of God—all these points are missing in "Le Morte DARTHUR." Malory, on the contrary, anticipating the contents of the conversation between Arthur and Merlin about Pellinor, makes Merlin at once tell Pellinor that the damsel whom he did not succour was his daughter "Elayne," whom he begot on the "lady of the rule," and she was led to Arthur's court by her cousin "Myles of the landys," who was, however, slain by "Lorayne le saueage." Neither of the names occurs in the "Suite."

P. 118, ll. 1-6, are also anticipated, with considerable modification, from the conversation between Arthur and Merlin, whereas ll. 6-23, forming the conclusion of the third book, are evidently Malory's composition, being a brief recapitulation of what has already passed.

Finally, Malory omits the examination of Tor's mother by Merlin in the presence of Arthur, Pellinor, Tor, and twelve barons, and all details connected with Tor's birth, having, as already stated, summarily anticipated these points in the third chapter. Also Arthur's, Merlin's, and Guenever's invitation to the lady of the lake to stay at the court (in the "Suite" her name, "Niuiene," is first mentioned on this occasion), the long conversation between Arthur and Merlin about Pellinor, Mordred, and the children whom Arthur exposed on the sea, and finally the statement that Merlin, after leaving Arthur, went to Blaise (who was then still at Camalaoth) in order to give him an account of the past and future adventures in Logres, and thus complete his book previous to his departure from Great Britain, are all absent from Malory's account.

8. THE FOURTH BOOK.¹

I. Merlin soon becomes deeply smitten with the "damoisiele chaceresse," Nivienne, who is only fifteen years old, and of great beauty and wisdom. She stays about four months at the court, where Merlin sees her every day and treats her with great respect. When Nivienne perceives his love for her, she declares, one day, she will return his love if he promise to teach her such of his "enchantemens" as she would fain know, and swear by his "main nue" never to do aught "par enchantemens" that could displease her. Merlin then teaches her many things in the hope that the damsel will yield, but he hopes in vain.

About this time Artus receives a letter from "li rois de Norchomberlande, un roiaume qui marcissoit a la petite Bretagne," requesting him to send his daughter Nivienne, who stays at his court, back to him. Artus asks the damsel if she will go or stay; much as she likes staying, she will comply with her father's wish. Merlin offers to accompany her; the damsel is greatly displeased by this news, for she hates Merlin, but does not like to refuse him.

So on the morrow they depart together from Camalaoth, ride to the coast, cross the sea, and after some time arrive "sain et haitié" in the country of King "Ban de Benoic." The damsel's companions are in great fear, as King "Claudas de la Deserte" is at war with Ban. At night they arrive at the strong castle of "Trebe." King Ban is not there, only his wife, the queen "Helaine," the most beautiful woman of "toute la petite Bretagne." She had at the time only one son, called "laiens par cierté Lancelot, mais il avoit non en baptesme Galaas."

When Queen Helaine understands that the "damoisele de Norhomerlande"² has come, she is much pleased, and receives her hospitably. After dinner she orders her little son to be brought "pour chou que la damoisele le vaist." After long admiring the beautiful child, she exclaims: "Certes, bele creature, se tu pues tant vivre que tu vieignes en l'aage de vint ans, tu seras li non pers de tous les biaux." Merlin and all present laugh at this remark, and the former tells Nivienne that he will live more than fifty years, and will excel all knights before and after him. Then Nivienne kisses the child repeatedly. When he is carried to his chamber, Helaine tells the damsel how much she wishes her Lancelot were already grown up, for their neighbour King "Claudas de la Deserte" gives them much trouble. Merlin says that Lancelot will one day punish Claudas for all his ill-deeds, and "you will live to see it, for I have but told you the truth."

On the next morning Nivienne and Merlin leave "Trebe," and continue their way. They soon come into a fine wood called "En Val," because it

¹ Huth MS., ff. 183^v-230^v, ed. vol. ii. pp. 139-254.

² Here the "Suite" has the following parenthesis:—"Ne ne cuidiés pas, entre vous qui oés ces contes, que chis [que chou est] Norhomerlande dont je parole soit li roiaume de Norhomerlande qui estoit entre le roiaume de Logres et celui de Gorre; che seroit folle a cuidier, car chis Norhomerlande estoit en la petite Bretagne et [en] (li autres) Norhomerlande en la grant."

covered the greater part of a valley. Merlin asks the damsel if she would care to see "le lac Dyane," of which she heard speak so often. As she shares the tastes of "Diana," the damsel would like to see it. Merlin then leads her to the lake. By its side is a marble tomb; therein is buried "Faunus," whom "Dyane" loved much, but whom she killed by the greatest disloyalty of the world. Niviane desires Merlin to tell her how Diane killed Faunus.

Merlin consents, and tells her briefly this: "Dyane, as you well know, 'reigned' at the time of 'Vergille,' long before Christ's birth. She loved the woods above all. After having hunted in all the woods 'de Franche et de Bretagne,' she settled by the side of this lake, and there erected 'son manoir.' So she lived for a long time in this wood. The son of the king to whom all this country belonged fell in love with her, left his home and his parents, and lived with her in the 'manoir.' Soon after Diane met, whilst hunting, another knight, 'Felix,' and became enamoured of him. Felix, though a brave knight, was poor, and feared the mighty Faunus; therefore he did not venture to return Diane's passion. To overcome this obstacle Diane resolved to destroy Faunus. Near the lake was a tomb filled with enchanted water, having the property of healing all sorts of wounds. One day Faunus, sorely wounded by a wild beast, repaired to the healing waters, but found them gone. Diane advised him to enter the grave undressed, when she would cover it over and put in wholesome herbs, which would soon heal him. Faunus, suspecting nothing wrong, did as she told him. When the lid was put on the tomb, Diane had melted lead poured into it, so that Faunus died a terrible death. Then Diane went to Felix and told him how she had rid herself of Faunus. The story of this unnatural cruelty so disgusted Felix that he pulled out his sword, seized hold of Diane's tresses, and with one stroke separated her head from her body. The body was thrown into the lake, and for this reason it was ever afterwards called the 'lac de Dyane.'"

Niviane now wishes to know what has become of Diane's "manoir," and learns that the father of Faunus had destroyed it, and all that belonged to Diane, after his son's death. The lake and its neighbourhood please her so much that she would fain pass her life there, and asks Merlin, if he loves her as much as he says, to erect a new "manoir" in the very place where Diane's stood. The knights who accompany her can do as they like—stay with her or return to her father; they make up their minds to stay. Merlin fetches "machons et carpentiers" and builds by the lake several houses so rich and beautiful that no king nor prince "en toute la petite Bretagne" could boast of possessing aught like them. When all is finished, Merlin by enchantment renders the houses invisible, so that no one who does not belong to Niviane's "maisonie" can see them. Merlin stays with Niviane for a long time in this palace, and while he loves her best of all in the world, she hates him "pour chou que elle savoit bien que il baioit a son purcelage;" she would fain be rid of him, but knows not how, he is so wise. But she has already learned from him so much "d'ingromanchie" that she can by her enchantment prevent his reading her thoughts.

One day Merlin tells Niviane that Artus has escaped a great danger through the valour of Keu "qui a deus caus occist deus rois." Niviane

reproaches him for abandoning Artus. Merlin explains to her that he is in "la petite Bretagne" for two reasons—for her sake first, and then because he knows that he will be put to death, immediately he returns to "la grant Bretagne," through "puison (prison) ou par autre chose." Nivienne asks him why, if he foreknows, he does not prevent his death. He then tells her that he is so much enchanted that he does not know by whom he must die. He still knows much relating to others, but nothing concerning himself; he might destroy the enchantments, but would lose his soul, and he prefers the destruction of his body "par aucune traison" to that of his soul.

This revelation pleases Nivienne greatly; she only wishes to be rid of Merlin. Shortly afterwards Merlin tells Nivienne that Artus runs a new danger through his sister Morgain, to whom he has confided his good sword Escalibor; Morgain has given it to a knight whom she loves, and to Artus an imitation. On the next day he will have to fight against this knight, who has "Escalibor" and will not lose a drop of blood. Artus is thus in great danger of death, unless God takes pity on him. But God wishes to punish him because he has committed a great sin. Nivienne wishes to know what this is, but Merlin does not tell her. She then implores Merlin to do all he can to preserve Artus; if he go to Great Britain, she will accompany him and protect him from the dangers he fears, she loves him so much. Merlin cannot resist Nivienne's urgent entreaties, and starts with her for Great Britain. Nivienne takes with her two knights and four valets. The knights are her cousins, and know how much she hates Merlin. Crossing the sea, they direct themselves towards Logres. On the first day they meet with no adventures worth mentioning; on the second day, starting from a beautiful castle, they come "a eure de tierche" to a great plain, treeless, "fors deus ourmes," which are marvellously great and "parcreu." Between the "ourmes" is a cross, "et dalés la crois avoit bien tombes cent et plus." By the sides of the cross stand two chairs as rich and beautiful as if they were made for an emperor; each of them is protected from the rain by an arch of ivory. On each sits a man holding a harp in his hands, while other instruments are round them. Merlin tells those who are with him that whoever hears the sound of the harps loses power over all his members, and falls to the ground dead. Many a valiant knight and many a beautiful damsel passing there had to succumb to the terrible spell. But now Merlin will destroy the enchanters for ever. He stuffs his ears as well as he can, that he may not hear the sound of the harps, "et fait aussi comme uns serpens qui repaire en Egypte que on apiele aspis, qui estoupe de sa keue l'une des ses oreilles et l'autre en terre bonte, pour chou qu'elle n'oie le conjurement de l'enchanteor." Nivienne and her knights and valets fall down from their horses "en pasmisons." When Merlin sees that, he vows that he will so revenge the pains his "amie" has to suffer that it shall be spoken of for ever. Then he makes his "conjuremens" and attacks the enchanters, who lose their senses and the power of moving a limb, so that a child can kill them. When Nivienne and her people come to their senses again, they tell Merlin that they have been in a most dreadful state; they felt as if "les prinches et les menistres de infier" had tied their limbs, and as if they were going to die.

Merlin bids them dig two holes in the ground. When finished, he puts each enchanter, with his chair, into a hole, throws in plenty of "souffre," lights it, and destroys the enchanters through "la calours del souffre." He then asks Nivienne if she thinks he has taken sufficient revenge on them. She and her knights declare that he has earned the gratitude of all the world by destroying these fiends. But Merlin is not yet satisfied. "Lors vait il meismes prendre trois des lames qui estoient dessus les tombes des preudhommes qui li enchanteour avaient fait morir, si en met deus dessus chascune des fosses, si k'il en avoit une entre deus entre chascune, par quoi on pooit bien veoir le feu qui dedens la fosse estoit." "This fire," says Merlin, "will last to the day when Artus dies, and till then the bodies of the enchanters and their chairs will remain untouched by the fire as they are now. This great marvel I have done that all people may have a proof that I was the greatest 'sages de nigromanchie' that ever lived in Logres; did I not know my end to be near I should not have taken this trouble 'car assés moustraisse de mon sens a mon vivant.'" All agree that Merlin has proved himself by this wonder "li plus sages des sages." The story now returns to Artus.

The first chapter of the fourth book of "Le Morte Darthur" corresponds to this detailed account of the "Suite." Malory links together the third and fourth books by the words: "After these questys of It felle so," &c. Merlin's love to Nivienne, called either "Nyneue" or "Nymue," is only briefly mentioned. Merlin's revelation to Arthur of his own approaching end, and warnings to the king to take good care of his sword and sheath, are partly additions, partly repetition, by Malory of an earlier passage of the "Suite;" e.g., "Also he told kynge Arthur that he shold mysse hym / yet had ye leuer than al your landes to haue me ageyne," &c.

Merlin and Nivienne's journey to Brittany, and all that takes place there, is either unnoticed by Malory save the episode at Trebe, where they see young Lancelot and his mother Elayne, or just hinted at in the words: "Merlyn showed her many wonders."

Merlin's death as related in the seven last lines of the first chapter is anticipated by Malory from a much later portion¹ of the "Suite."

II.-V.² After the departure of Merlin and Nivienne, Artus stays five days at Camalaoth, "a grant joie et a grant feste," and then removes to Carduel "une ville bieles et riche et bien assise chité." There, one day, whilst with his barons, he receives news that "li rois de Danemarche et chis d'Irlande, qui estoient frere, et li rois del Val et li rois de Sorelois et li rois de l'Isle Lontaigne" have invaded his country with a great army; they are burning

¹ The original form of this name appears to have been Ninian, which was later transformed by the scribes to Niuiian, Niuiene, and even Viuiene.

² Huth MS., ff. 204^b-207^a, ed. vol. II. pp. 191-198.

³ Huth MS., ff. 191^a-197^b, ed. vol. II. pp. 159-173.

and ravaging towns and villages, and have already conquered three or four castles "par devers Sorelois." This news greatly angers Artus, who at once sends to all his vassals to follow him with their forces, whilst he himself decides to march against the enemy without delay and with such forces as he has. His barons try in vain to dissuade him, and to induce him to wait until his knights have gathered. As he loves Guennever much, he asks her to accompany him with her ladies. When the five kings hear that Artus approaches "Norgales," they hold a council of war. They do not venture to attack Artus in the open field, they know him and his knights too well. A knight, a brother of one of the kings, advises them. "Artus," he says, "has taken his quarters 'seur l'Ombre a l'entree d'une forest que on apiele (apieloit) Marsale,' in order to wait for King Pellinor. He has no idea that we know him to be there already. Let us hasten thither and surprise him; we can reach the place towards morning." This plan is unanimously adopted, and the kings, already sure of success, after eating and drinking well, start on the expedition. At daybreak they arrive near Artus' quarters. The king and the queen are already up and dressed; Gavains, Keu, Giffès li fieus Do (dou), have come unarmed to the royal tent to hear mass. Suddenly the cries "Trahi!" "Trahi!" are heard and the five kings with their army attack Artus' men on all sides. Artus and his knights seize their arms as quick as they can. A badly wounded knight advises Artus to take the queen across a small stream where she may wait in safety till Pellinor's arrival. Artus, Gavains, Keus, and Giffès lead the queen to the stream—i.e., "le Hombre"—but find it too deep. While they are still debating what to do, the five kings arrive. The confusion is great, Giffès and Gavains advise crossing over, Keu declares he must first fight; boasting he will kill two of the kings, he turns his horse and rides against them; he unhorses the first king whom he meets. Gavain follows, and with his sword fells a second king, mortally wounded, to the ground. Giffès does the same with a third king, and Artus with a fourth. After Keu has broken his "glaive," he takes "l'espee" and strikes the fifth king so hard that the head and helmet fly far off. His companions praise Keu, and declare he has kept his promise well. The queen has passed the Humber in the meantime; the others are about to follow, but the queen shows them a "gué" which she has found. The enemy follow, but, not knowing the "gué," come to a passage where the river is deep, and thus more than two hundred are drowned.

Artus, hearing that the queen herself found the "gué," decides that henceforth it shall be called "li gués la roine." When the knights of the five kings find their lords slain, they stop "et commenchierent a faire le gringnour duel et le gringnour plourison que vous onques oissies," and, thinking Artus' men are gone, disarm. But Artus' men, who had fled to a near wood when unexpectedly attacked in the early morning, have rallied. When told by a wounded knight that the five kings are slain, and their people are mourning them, they break forth from the wood and attack them. Another hot combat follows, with the result that the hostile army is almost entirely destroyed. When Artus on the other side of the Humber hears the noise of battle, he crosses over again and comes to the assistance of his men; but when he arrives all is over and the enemy defeated. "Et quant il (Artus) ot ceste nouviele,

il descent et oste son hyaume et tent ses mains viers le ciel el dist: 'Peres des chieus, beneois soies tu que ensi me mès au dessus de mes anemis, ne mie par ma proueche ne par ma valour, mais par t'aide et par ton secours.' Artus then has his losses counted, and learns that more than five hundred of his knights and "serjans" are slain.

While this is being done a messenger from Pellinor announces that his lord and king is near at hand, and will shortly be with Artus. The messenger is sent back to bid Pellinor welcome, and tell him that the enemy is already defeated.

Thus the attack of the five kings is successfully frustrated. The remainder of their army when they learn their defeat and death, return to their countries. To perpetuate his gratitude to God for the success, Artus erects in the place where his knights were slain, "une abbeie biele et riche en l'ounour de nostre dame;" this abbey is after its completion called "la Biele Aventure." After this Artus returns to Camalaoth, his favourite residence. Morgain, his sister, always stays with Gueneuvre, as well as her son Yvains, but *he* has no love for his mother, as she does not love his father Urien. Indeed, Morgain hates her husband as much as her brother, but loves a knight of the name "Achalons," who is born in "Gaule que on apiele ore Franche."

Upon his return to Camalaoth, Artus finds that eight of the knights of the round table were killed in the battle. He asks Pellinor's advice as to filling up their places. Pellinor selects four old and four young knights. The four young knights are Gavains, Giffiès, Keus, and for the fourth place Pellinor recommends two knights, Baudemagus and his son Tor, leaving it to Artus to determine which of them he thinks worthier. Artus decides in favour of Tor. The four old knights are "li rois Uriens, et li autres li roi Lach, li tiers Hervieus de Rinel, et li quars a a non Galligars li rous." Artus accepts Pellinor's suggestion. On the next day, when these knights are to be received as companions of the round table, each finds his name written on the chair he is to occupy, instead of the name of the late occupier.

When Baudemagus sees that Tor, who is younger than himself, is preferred to him, "il se commencha a blasmer et a hounir et a pourvillir et dire a soi meismes: 'Ha! Baudemagus biaux et malvais, jouvente perdue et gastee et santé et vertu mal assise et mal emploie, membres fors et bien fais et pour noient,'" &c. On the next morning after mass, Baudemagus bids his squire bring his horse and arms to a place outside the town, which he indicates. When the squire finds his master there, he requests him to grant him a boon, and allow him to accompany him. Baudemagus grants this request. The squire arms him, he mounts his palfrey, the squire his "ronchin," leading "le destrier" and carrying his master's arms and sword. After a little while they pass by a cross; Baudemagus dismounts, kneels down, prays and "jura seur la crois, oiant le varlet, que ja mais en la court le roi(s) Artu(s) ne retournera devant qu'il ait conquis en bataille cors a cors aucun des compaignons de la table reonde et qu'il ait tant fait d'armes et prés et loing que on die communement qu'il soit bien dignes de si haut siege comme li sieges de la table reonde." The squire, who hears this oath, understands his master's intentions, and tries to persuade him to return for his father's sake, but without success.

They then ride forth and have many adventures, but these are not told by the writer of this book, as "messires Helyes compains" has undertaken the translation of this portion, to "un poi alegier" his "painne," &c.¹ Artus and his knights are much grieved when they hear of Baudemagus' departure, for they loved him well. Pellinor declares he would rather see Baudemagus in the seat of the round table than Tor.

Arthur's successful war against the five kings, which forms the subject of the second, third, fourth, and fifth chapters of book iv., is a *résumé* of the corresponding portion of the "Suite," with comparatively few modifications and omissions.

"Carduel" is spelled "Cardoylle" in "Le Morte Darthur;" "Sorelois" of the Huth MS. corresponds to "Soleyse," and "l'Isle de Lontaigne" to "the yle of Longtayne," in Malory.

The letter which Arthur, according to Malory, has written to Pellinor, praying him to come as quickly as he can, "with suche peple as he myght lyghtlyest rere," is not mentioned in the "Suite," nor is the circumstance that Arthur's barons are "prynely wrothe."

In the beginning of the third chapter, Malory, contrary to the "Suite," states that Arthur and Guenever and the knights are asleep when the five kings make their unexpected attack, whereas in the "Suite" the king and the queen are already dressed, and some knights have come to their tents to hear mass.

The last part of this chapter varies still more from the "Suite." The queen crosses the river in a barge, her discovery of a ford, afterwards called in her honour "the queen's ford," being omitted.

Malory also omits that many enemies are drowned in the Humber, and further deviates from the source by relating that Arthur seeks his men who have fled, and that when he has gathered them defeats the remainder of the army of the five kings, and slays "xxx M" of them. The "Suite" mentions no number on this occasion.

In chapter iv. Arthur's loss is two hundred soldiers and eight knights of the round table; in the "Suite" more than five hundred.

¹ "This part," continues the writer, "is not separated from my book, 'pour chou que elle n'en soit, mais pour chou que mes livres en soit mieudres et ma painne un peu allegie.' All those who wish to hear the history of the Holy Grail may know that unless they hear 'ceste branke la plus delitable a escouter qui soit en tout le livre,' they do not hear it completely. For there was no wiser and more courteous knight at Artus' court than Baudemagus, who was afterwards crowned king 'del roiaume de Gorre.' Helyes has already begun the translation of the 'branke,' which is one of 'les branques del graal,' without which 'on ne porroit pas bien entendre la moitiene [partie] de mon livre ne la [tierche] partie. Mais ore en laisserons a parler, car mes livres n'a mestier d'amasser paroles wiseuses et retournerons au roi Artus.'"

As far as the eight knights are concerned whom Pellinor, at Arthur's request, selected to fill the places of the eight slain in battle, Malory reverses the order, naming first the old and then the young knights. The names: "Uriens; li rois Lach; Hervieus de Rinel; Galligars li rous," of the "Suite," are represented in "Le Morte Darthur" by "Vryence; the kynge of the lake; Heruyse de reuel; galagars." "Giffles or Gifflet li fiex Do" appears in Malory as "Gryflet le fyse the dene."

In chapter v. Baudemagus' squire finds written on the cross that his master must not return to the court unless he has overcome a fellow of the round table, and rendered himself worthy to occupy a seat at the round table; whereas in the "Suite" this is Baudemagus' own vow, pronounced after saying his prayers in his squire's hearing. I am unable to say whence Malory drew the information for the line, "And ther by the way he founde a braüche of an holy herbe that was the sygne of the Sancgraill / and no knyght founde suché tokens but he were a good lyuer;" it is not in the Huth MS. A passage to this effect may have occurred in the copy of the "Suite" used by Malory, or he may have added it in imitation of analogous accounts in the Quest of the Holy Grail. Baudemagus' visit to the stone under which Nivienne had placed Merlin by her enchantments, Merlin's great moan, and the fruitless endeavours to remove the stone are anticipated from a later part of the "Suite" (fol. 208^b), as I shall point out.

VI.-XI.¹ On the third day² after the departure of Baudemagus "au lundî matin," Artus summons his knights and "veneours" to go out hunting with him into the wood of Camalaoth. They soon find a stag and follow it, "si commenchierent en tel maniere la cache grant et pleniére." Artus, Uriens, and "Accalon(s) de Gaule li amis de Morgain" are much better mounted than the other knights. The stag is swift, and when they have followed it more than ten English miles, most of the knights have to stop, as their horses are exhausted. Artus, Uriens, and Accalons follow it until the afternoon; they too must then abandon the pursuit, as their horses "estoient mort sous (sour) eus."

When Artus turns round and looks for his people, he finds only Vrien and Accalon. Vrien advises the king to walk on, as he knows they must shortly reach a deep river "portant navie," where the stag will very probably be drowned: "Car a chou que li chiers a grant caut et grant soif, il buvera ja tant que li cors li partira, et ensi le couvenra a remanoir mort en la rive." Artus asks his two companions about his suite. Accalon says there is no chance of seeing them that day, as they were not so well mounted; they had to remain behind; he strongly advises going on, lest night overtake them.

¹ Huth MS., ff. 197^b-212^a, ed. vol. ii. pp. 174-210.

² There is no paragraph mark here in the Huth MS.

Artus says: "Ne puet chaloir se la nuis nous sousprent. Nous irons gesir a un mien chastiel qui est près de chi a deus liues." After a while they reach the river and find the stag really as Vrien had anticipated. He lies on the river-bank, and, having drunk overmuch water, cannot stir a limb. One of the hounds "se tenoit a sa gorge si fierement qu'en [qui] ne li puet estordre." Artus kills the stag "et corne prise," hoping that the sound of the horn will bring his suite thither, but they are too far away for the sound to reach them. While they still busy themselves with the stag there arrives on the river "une nef couverte de drap de soie aussi vermeil coume une esclate." All is covered; one can only see the twelve "navirons qui nageoient moult hastivement." The ship stops where they are; Artus, wishing to know what the ship contains, bids his companions go with him on board. Everything on the ship is fitted in the most sumptuous style. Twelve damsels come out of a chamber, kneel to Artus, bid him welcome, and request him to pass the night on board, as it is already late. They promise to do their best to make Artus comfortable. The king and his companions gladly accept their invitation. When the three knights have rested and refreshed themselves, they are led to a chamber, where a table is already dressed for them. They enjoy everything thoroughly, and indeed they could not have got anything better at Camalaoth. After dinner Artus is taken by the damsels to a chamber in the middle of the ship, where he finds a rich bed. After the exhausting day, the three knights sleep soundly.

When they awake on the morrow, all three are in different places. Vriens at Camalaoth, "couchié entre les bras Morgain sa feme;" Artus in a dark prison chamber, where he finds about twenty knights with him, who all complain that they are "tout au lit de la mort." "Accalon se trouva en un praiel plein d'erbes et d'envoiseures si près d'une fontaine, qu'il n'i avoit pas un piet entre lui et la fontaine," the water runs out of a little silver tube and a great marble-stone lies there, "si que cele iaue aloit par un conduit en une tour haute et miervilleuse qui dejouste le praiel estoit." When Accalon finds, on awaking, that he is still dressed in the gown the damsels gave him the night before, and that neither Artus nor Vrien is with him, he grieves, thinking that they must have been bespelled and betrayed by the damsels. Accalon curses "et le vregiet et la fontaine et les damoiseles et la tour canques il voit au monde," adding, if "biaus sire Dieus" would do his will, he would confound all the women of the world, by whom valiant knights are betrayed. He believes the damsels who served them last night were "fantosmes ou dyables."

While thus giving vent to his indignation, Accalon sees a dwarf "petit et gros, et ot les cheviaus noirs et la bouche grant et le nés petit et chaunis." The dwarf greets him from Morgain, requesting him to fight the next day, "a eure de tierche," against the knight whom she described to him some time ago, and, as a pledge, she sends him "Escalibor, la boine espee le roi Artu(s) a tout le fuerre." The sight of the sword fills Accalon with delight; he embraces the ugly dwarf, and overwhelms him with questions: "When did you see Morgain? Am I far from Camalaoth? How came I hither? Who is the knight I have to fight? When will the fight take place?" &c. The dwarf cannot

answer these questions to Accalon's satisfaction. Accalon is about two days' journey from Camalaoth, but the dwarf knows not how he came thither, unless through the adventures and enchantments "de Bretagne." The fight will take place "après eure de prime" close by the place where they are.

While they are thus talking, knights and damsels come out of the tower, bid Accalon welcome, and express their delight at having found him, as he is the man to do them a great service.

Meanwhile Artus, as above mentioned, is in a dark prison. The twenty knights with him curse their fate continually, saying they are betrayed and delivered to a certain death. Artus asks them if they are far from Camalaoth, and tells them what extraordinary adventure brought him thither. All are indignant at this abominable treachery and magic, and would fain know who he is, but he only tells them he is from the court of King Artus. They then relate how they came into this prison. "We are here in a place 'a deus jornees de Camalaoth par deviers la terre au duc de la More,' in a tower called 'la tour de l'agait.' The lord of this tower, named Domas, is one of the most cruel and felonious knights living, for he captures knights passing by and imprisons them. He has a brother who is, on the contrary, one of the worthiest knights of the country; he lives 'de chi a une liue.' The brothers have each his share of their father's estate, but are at odds concerning a rich manor at the entrance of the wood, which both claim, the one because he has more riches than his brother, who is a better knight. Domas is told by his brother that if he wishes to have the manor he must conquer it from him personally, or through another knight. But being a coward and disinclined to meet his brother himself, he acts according to the advice of his cousin, captures knights who pass by, and imprisons them if they decline to take up his cause. Thus it is we are here, for we have refused to espouse a bad cause, and prefer to suffer the hardships of the prison."

Artus does not share their opinion; he would rather fight than remain in captivity. He adds that he is more anxious for his companions, Vrien and Accalon, who were bespelled with him, than for himself. His fellow-prisoners know Vrien well and pity him, but Accalon is unknown to them. About the "eure de prime" a damsel speaks to the prisoners through a window. She feigns ignorance of Artus, though she knows him well, being one of the instruments by which Morgain carries out her evil plans. Artus thinks he must have seen her before at the court, and tells her so, but she declares him mistaken, she never went there, being the daughter of the lord of the tower, and having always stayed at home. She further announces that the hour of Artus' death has come, unless he make up his mind to fight against a knight. Artus answers he is ready to fight if all his fellow-prisoners are freed. The damsel tells the lord of the tower, and Artus is delivered out of prison. All wonder at his strong and healthy appearance. As he does not wish to be recognised, he humbles himself much before the lord of the tower, "et s'assiet a ses piés." He then hears that he is to fight against one of the lord's enemies. Artus is ready to fight provided the lord promises, "sour sains," to release the prisoners. The lord of the tower swears this, and the knights are set free. Artus is told that he is to fight on the morrow.

The story now speaks of Morgain. She hates her brother Artus, not

because he has in any way wronged her, but "pour chou qu'il est us et coustume que les desloiaus gens et les mauvaises heent tout dis les preudomes et ont vers eus rancune qui tousjours dure," and because he is the most valiant and most "gracieu" of all her kindred. She hates her husband Vriens no less, and would, provided "que gent ne le seussent," have killed him long before. All her affections are concentrated on Accalon, and to give him renown, and, if possible, make him king, she has resolved to sacrifice her husband and her brother. When she hears of the quarrel of the two brothers, she is glad. She promises Domas, who comes to her for help, that by means of her enchantments she will soon put a knight in his power who will take up his cause.

When, shortly afterwards, Domas' brother, wounded in a combat, comes to her for help, she also promises it to him. As she likes this brother better than Domas, she resolves to send him Accalon, armed with Excalibur. To deceive Artus she sends him the forged sword, but Accalon does not know that Artus is to be his antagonist.

The story then returns to Merlin. After destroying the two enchanters, he rides with Nivienne and her company to the castle of a "vavasseur," where they stay for a while and are most honourably received. Merlin loves Nivienne so much that through her he dies. She knows what his intentions are with regard to her, and she hates him. She discloses to her cousin her wish to destroy Merlin as soon as she can, "Car je ne pourroie avoir cuer de lui amer, se il me faisoit dame de toutes les riqueses qui sont desous le throsne, pour chou que je connois qu'il fu feus d'aneni et que il n'est pas coume autre homme."

One day, whilst crossing the "forest perilleuse," night overtakes them, and they have to stay where they are under the open sky. They make a big fire, and eat of the provisions which they have brought from the castle. After supper Merlin tells Nivienne "chi prés entre ces roches vous pourroie jois moustrer la plus bièle petite chambre que je sache, et fu toute faite a chisel, et en sont li huis de fier, si fors que qui seroit dedens, je cuic que jamais n'en isteroit." Nivienne thinks the chamber in the rocks is only occupied by "dyables et bestes sauvages," but Merlin says: "At present you are right, the chamber is not inhabited, but some hundred years ago there lived in this country a king named Assen, who had a son, Anasten. Both were good men and valiant knights. The son loved the daughter of a poor knight 'de si grant amour que morteus hom ne pooit plus feme amer.' The father, hearing this, tried to persuade his son to give up his love, and, when his entreaties proved fruitless, threatened to slay his son's sweetheart before his eyes. To prevent this, Anasten, with his friend's help, had this dwelling cut out of the rock. Thither he retired with his love, and lived long and happily. They died the same day, and were buried together in the place where they spent their life of love."

Merlin's tale pleases Nivienne much. Now, thinks she, the time has come to carry out her plan, and rid herself of Merlin. She is loud in admiration of the two lovers who forsook all for love's sake. Merlin declares he has done the same for her (Nivienne); to be with her he has left Artus "et tous les haus houmes dou roiaume de Logres" of whom he was "sires." She feigns to love

him much, and, giving him in ambiguous words to understand that she will at last yield to his entreaties, asks him to lead her to the chamber, where they may pass the night.

Merlin, delighted, orders two valets to take torches and lead Nivienne to the place. They find a chamber "toute peinte a or musique" (*sic*), and so beautiful that Nivienne declares she has never seen its like. Merlin tells her this is only the place where they had their meals; he will now show her their bedroom. This, too, is much admired. Pointing to a tomb, Merlin declares that below it the two lovers rest in peace. He lifts a covering "d'un vermeil samit ouvret a or et as bestes moult cointement," and shows her a stone of red marble. He advises her not to see the bodies, as they do not look well, "mais lait et orible." But Nivienne insists upon seeing them, and asks Merlin to lift up the stone. He cannot refuse her, removes the stone, which is so heavy that ten men would have had difficulty in removing it, "pour coi on doit croire que plus li valut illuec ses sens que sa forche."

Now they see the two bodies wrapped in white velvet, but they cannot distinguish faces or limbs. Nivienne declares, if she had for "une eure de jour" God's power, she would put the souls of these two lovers "ensamble en la joie qui tousjours mais lour durast." She means to pass the night there, and Merlin expresses the wish to stay with her.

So they order their people to make their beds, "et elle se coucha erraument et aussi fist Merlins, mais che fu en un autre lit." When Merlin is asleep, Nivienne rises and bespells him so that he can stir no limb; then she calls her people, and asks them if she has enchanted the enchanter well. They move him, and find him like a dead body. "Now tell me," says Nivienne to them, "what I shall do to him who has followed me 'non mie pour m'ounour, mais pour moi despire et pour moi despuceler.'" One of her men would have her let him kill Merlin, but this proposal she rejects.

She then bids her men throw Merlin's body into the grave. They do so, and put the stone over it, and Nivienne "commenche a faire ses conjuremens si joint si et seele la lame au sarcu et par conjuremens et par force de paroles," so that no one but herself may open it and see Merlin, dead or alive. She does so at the request of Tristram, as "la droite ystoire de Tristram le devise, et la branke meesmes del brait en parole, mais che n'est mie gramment." Baudemagus came on the fourth day to the place, when Merlin, still alive, could be heard lamenting, and, desirous to know who it was who thus lamented, tried in vain to remove the stone, but Merlin told him that only she who by her enchantments replaced the stone on the tomb could remove it. This adventure is told in "li contes del brait."¹

¹ "Et saichies que li brais dont maistre Helies fait son livre fu li daerrains brais que Merlins giesta en la fosse ou il estoit, del grant duel qu'il ot quant il aperchut toutes voies que il estoit livrés a mort par engien de feme et que sens de feme a le sien sens contrebata. Et del brait dont je vous parole fu la vois oïe par tout le roiaume de Logres si grans et si lon[s] coume il estoit, et en avinrent moult de miervelles si coume la branke le devise mot a mot. Mais en cest livre n'en parlerons nous pas pour chou qu'il le devise la, ains vous conterai chou qui nous appartient."

When Niviane has shut up Merlin in the tomb, she closes the door of the bedroom as well as she can, but "*d'enchantement ne fist elle riens*," and passes the night with her suite in the first room. In the morning she starts, after closing the outer door, but in such wise that whoever is led thither by adventure can enter. She proceeds to the place where Merlin has told her the combat will take place, and arrives in time. The story returns to Artus.

After Domas has sworn to deliver the prisoners and Artus has engaged to fight, Domas sends to his brother to tell him he has found a knight, and is answered that his brother also has a champion. The combat is fixed for the morrow "*sans faillir*." Shortly before it takes place, a damsel comes to Artus, hands him a sword like Escalibor, and tells him that his sister Morgain sends him greeting and his sword, that he may be sure of success. Artus, who suspects no treachery, thanks the damsel and his sister.

On the morning, Artus, fully armed, "*fors de hyaume et d'escu et de lanche*," goes to mass. He then asks Domas to go with him to the meadow. But Domas bids him wait till the knight arrives. At the "*eure de prime*" a valet, "*sour un grant ronchin*," announces the arrival of Accalon.

Artus rides a palfrey, and orders his "*destrier*" to be taken to the meadow. When the two brothers have covenanted before all their knights "*que chieus tenra la terre a qui Dieus en donra l'ounour de la bataille*," and twelve knights have been selected "*qui durent le camp garder*," the combat begins.

Bearing in mind the issue of the fight, the two combatants do their utmost, and wound each other most grievously. Artus loses much blood, but Accalon, thanks to the sheath of Escalibor, loses not a drop. Had it not been for Artus' strength and great valour, he would have been overcome and slain. The people looking on are inclined to stop them, for they pity the two valiant fighters, but the two brothers are not to be reconciled.

"*Après eure de midi*," when, after a short rest, Accalon has called Artus back to fight, the king deals such a violent blow on Accalon's helmet that his sword breaks, and he only keeps the handle in his hand. This unlucky accident saddens Artus greatly, but he preserves his composure of mind, and covers himself as well as he can with his shield. Accalon cannot but admire this valiant conduct. He says to Artus he sees well that he is one of the best knights he ever met, but requests him to yield, as he must see he cannot resist much longer without a sword. But Artus will not hear of surrender. Accalon then essays to strike him dead with a violent stroke; Artus meets it with his shield, but is thrown to the ground and touched by the sword so that the blood bursts in many places out of his body. The people looking on curse the hour in which this mortal combat "*fu emprise*," for they perceive that the best knight who ever carried arms will meet his death.

In the extreme of peril Niviane arrives. When she sees Artus in such danger she is frightened, fearing lest he be wounded to death. When Accalon raises Escalibor, she bespells him so that he can strike no blow, but drops the sword. Artus, profiting by the respite, springs up, seizes it, recognises his sword Escalibor, and is aware of his sister's treachery. He then rushes

upon Accalon and tears the sheath from him. Niviane takes off her spell. Accalon's wounds begin to bleed as soon as the sheath is taken from him. Now Artus bids him surrender, but Accalon refuses. Artus seizes him by the helm, throws him to the ground, cuts the straps of his helmet, and beats him on the head with the handle of his sword, so that the blood streams out through the mails of the hauberk; and declares if he does not yield he shall die. But Accalon would rather die than yield. Artus then asks his name, and hears to his great surprise that he is Accalon his knight, his companion in the hunt two days before. He further asks him who gave him the sword. Accalon, who has no idea that it is Artus who asks him, says: "Sire, mal la pressise je l'espee! Car la seurtés de li m'a fait morir." He will tell the truth on condition that all be related to Artus. He then tells how he got the sword from Morgain, and for what purpose.¹ He also mentions that he had received the sword more than a year ago. When he has finished, he asks Artus who he is. When Artus tells him that it is his king against whom he has fought, Accalon implores his pardon, assuring him he did not know him. Artus pardons him; on his return to Camalaoth he will take revenge on Morgain "si grande que onques de feme desloiaus ne fu si grande prise."

Turning to the witnesses of the combat, Artus bids them to make peace as they please; he and his adversary, having recognised one another as friends, will not renew the combat for the world. Accalon then tells the people what has happened—how he nearly slew his liege lord, the noble and valiant King Artus, whom they see before their eyes.

Malory's account of the hunt in chapter vi. agrees, save for considerable abridgment and some few omissions, with the "Suite." The passage: "By thenne it was derke nyghte / and there sodenly were aboute them an C torches sette upon alle the sydes of the shyp bordes and it gaf grete lyghte," is evidently the outcome of Malory's imagination, unwilling that Artus enter the ship in darkness.

In this portion of book iv. Malory alters the sequence of incidents. The "Suite," after mentioning how the three knights awake, one in his wife's arms, one in prison, the third near a well, deals first with Accalon, then with Artus, and lastly with Vriens, whilst Malory tells first of Arthur; had the "Suite" been followed, most of chapter viii. would precede chapter vii.

"Domas" in the "Suite" corresponds to "Damas" in Malory. The second brother, whom Malory calls "Ontzlake," is only referred to in the "Suite" as "li frere."

¹ "si me fist cest don pour chou que elle m'amoit par amours tant comme pooit feme amer homme. Et pour la grant amour que ele avoit a moi peurcachast elle volentiers la mort de son frere, se elle en eust le loisir, et me fesisit couronner dou roiaume de Logres, se elle peüst en nule guise; mais elle ne le fera ja mais, car je sui venus a ma mort."

The names of "le duc de la More" and "la tour de l'agait," which occur in the "Suite," are not in Malory.

The statement on p. 127, 12-14, "& many good knyghtes haue dyed in this pryson for hongre to the nombre of xvij knyghtes," is not founded on anything in the "Suite." Contrary to the "Suite," where Arthur declares himself ready to fight as soon as his fellow-prisoners have told him about the quarrel between the two brothers, Malory relates how the damsel of Morgan le fay tells him he must either fight or die.

Malory passes over Arthur's humility in presence of Damas to avoid recognition. The paragraph which follows in the "Suite" and describes Morgan le fay's stratagems, having already, as mentioned at pp. 83-84, been anticipated by Malory in book ii. chapter xi., where he confounds some other knight with Accalon, is not repeated here. The account in the "Suite" how the two hostile brothers apply to Morgan for a champion, and the details connected with this episode, are omitted by Malory. Accalon's awakening is on the whole a *résumé* of the account in the "Suite," but his conversation with the dwarf is slightly modified; *e.g.*, there is nothing in the "Suite" answering to the following passages:—"And what damoyssel that bryngeth her the knyghtes hede whiche ye shal fyghte with al / she wille make her a quene," nor, "Now I suppose said Accolon she hath made alle these craftes and enchauntement for this bataille," &c.

The "chevaliers et dames et damoisieles" who come from the tower to welcome Accalon, telling him they have long expected him as the man whose valour would deliver them from an enemy, are replaced in Malory by "a knyght and a lady with syxe squyers," and it is later on that Accolon offers Ontzlake to take up his quarrel and fight against the knight his brother is going to send.

The "fayre maner by a pryory" to which Accolon is taken is not in the "Suite." Merlin's last days, his crossing the perilous forest with Nivienne, the lovers' story, the description of their dwelling and tomb in the rock, and the many details connected with this episode are not in Malory, who refers very briefly to Merlin's death at the end of book iv. chapter i.

Malory's account of the fight between Arthur and Accolon differs from that of the "Suite" in so far that Arthur very soon suspects that Accolon has Escalibor, because "at euery stroke that Accolon stroke he drewe blood on" him.

The appearance of Nivienne, the lady of the lake, at the supreme moment, prepared for in the "Suite" by various references in previous chapters, stands entirely by itself, and is thereby unintelligible, in "Le Morte Darthur," Malory having previously omitted Merlin's

warning to Niviane about Arthur's danger, and the fact that Merlin returned with her to Great Britain at her request.

The "Suite" has nothing answering to Malory's words: "But syre Arthur pressed vnto Accolon with his sheld / and gaf hym with the pomel in his hand suche a buffet that he went thre strydes abak," &c.

Arthur's conversation with Accalon, ending with their mutual recognition, is slightly modified by Malory.

XII.-XIX.¹ When the people hear Accalon's words they are dismayed, and, kneeling, implore Artus' mercy. He pardons them if they will keep his name and presence secret until he is back at Camalaoth. The people lead Artus to the two brothers, and tell them: "'Entreclamés vous quite de ceste bataille, car ceste bataille ne puet plus estre ferue.' For if you continue your war, he who has fought this battle will destroy you and your heirs if God does not help you." The two brothers, surprised at these words, wish to know the names of the two champions, but are told: "'Vous le savrés, plus tost que mestiers ne vous seroit. Mais otroiés vistement la pais d'une part et d'autre.' Et cil l'otroient, qui ont toute pauour de ceste nouvielle, et s'entrebaissent et viennent maintenant au roi et a Accalon," and take them to a nunnery in the neighbourhood, where they have their wounds examined and dressed. Accalon's wounds are so sore that he dies on the fourth day. Artus remains a week, and is then so far recovered that he can ride again. Until Accalon's death nobody knows who Artus is. But on the fourth day, when Accalon has expired, Artus bids them put the body on a horse-litter and send it by four men to Camalaoth; these are bidden to greet Morgain his sister, and tell her that her brother Artus sends her the knight "que elle amoit de tout son cuer." They must further tell her that Artus has got back Escalibor and the sheath, and that on his return he will punish her for her treachery; if she flees, he will follow her whithersoever she goes.

The story now returns to Urien. The same hour Artus awakes in prison and Accalon in the meadow near the well, Urien awakes by his wife's side. He is surprised, but not "esbahi," for Morgain's spells have made him forget what happened on the day before. He soon falls asleep again.

When Morgain sees him sleeping, she calls a damsel, one of her confidants, and tells her they will never have a better opportunity of killing her husband. The damsel is quite ready to do anything for Morgain, but courage fails her to kill the king. Then Morgain determines to do it herself, sends the damsel to an adjoining room, and bids her fetch a sword. The damsel dares not refuse her.

But Yvains, Morgain's son, "qui se gisoit si près d'illuec qu'il n'avoit entreus deus fors une courtine," has heard all. He gets up quickly, dons his clothes, and watches his mother. When the damsel brings her the sword with trembling hand, Morgain says it can now be seen she knows how to

¹ Huth MS., ff. 212^a-230^b, ed. vol. II. pp. 210-254.

strike. Just as Morgain nears her husband's bed, Yvains cries out: "*Ha ! feme maleuree et plainne de dyable et d'anemi, sueffre toi !*" seizes his mother's arm, tears the sword from her hands, and says: "Were you not my mother I would strike you dead; you have well deserved death for planning to slay your lord and husband, the best man I know in Logres. People say you are in alliance with the fiend. I ought to be called '*fieus de dyable*' rather than Merlin, '*car nus ne vit onques que li peres de Merlin fust dyables mais je vous ai veut et dyable et anemi droit.*'"

When Morgain sees her son's wrath, she kneels and implores his forgiveness, pleading the fiend possessed her and she knew not what she did. "God has sent you to save your father," she continues, "for, had I killed him, I should have been condemned for ever. Therefore I implore you to keep secret what you saw." This Yvain promises.

When Vrien awakes, his memory has come back to him; he thinks of the marvel that befell him, and asks his people how he came hither. They know no more than he does. Morgain, entering the room, asks him what has become of Artus. Urien tells her about the beautiful ship and the damsels, and declares he does not know how all has happened. Morgain then advises him to go back to the wood and find Artus. He does so, comes to the river and finds stag and hound, but no trace of the ship. After searching the wood and the surrounding country without result, Urien and his people return to Camalaoth, where the news fills all with grief. Some believe Artus and Accalon have met an adventure which they wish to achieve, and will then return. On the seventh day after the hunt, Accalon's body arrives. When the four guardians say that King Artus sends the body of this knight, the queen is sent for, but the four declare they have orders to deliver their message to Morgain. Morgain being sent for, they say, so that all hear it: "King Artus, your brother, sends you greeting, and this body of Accalon, the knight whom you loved so much. He also informs you that he has Escalibor again, and that he will punish you for your treachery wherever you go."

Morgain at once recognises what has happened, but, to prevent suspicion, tells the messengers how foolish they are to bring her such news; her brother only bade them to do so "*pour gap et pour envoiseure et pour savoir quele chiere je feroie de ceste chose.*" The others, having no notion of the real facts, believe Morgain. Accalon is buried "*ou moustier saint Estevene, qui adont estoit la maistre eglyse de Camalaoth.*" Morgain secretly gives vent to her grief at her lover's death.

She calls the twelve of her damsels most devoted to her, and explains her situation, bidding them make themselves ready to fly with her. She then asks Gennevre's leave to go to her "*roiaume de Garlot*" to settle important affairs which brook no delay. The queen, who likes Morgain little, is glad to be rid of her, and grants her the desired leave. Morgain starts with her twelve damsels and some knights—in all, some thirty people—on horseback. She rides straight to the place where Artus is, as she desires to take away from him Escalibor and the sheath. Near the abbey she leaves her suite behind, and goes thither alone. Arriving "*a eure de midi,*" she inquires how the king

is, and learns that he is asleep. She goes to his chamber and finds him alone, holding Escalibor in his hand, and the sheath at his feet. She takes the sheath, hides it under her cloak, and departs. Returning to her suite, she bids them mount quickly and ride to Garlot.

When Artus awakes and finds the sheath gone, he asks his knights if anybody was in his room while he slept. They tell him that a lady whom they did not know was there. From the description, Artus recognises his sister Morgain. He orders his best horse to be saddled at once, and starts in pursuit with one of his knights. After a while he meets a cowherd, and asks him if he has seen a lady pass on horseback. The cowherd tells him he saw a lady and a damsel join several other damsels and knights at a "bosquel" and then ride off together in the direction of a great tree, which he points out.

Artus rides on eagerly in the direction indicated, and soon perceives, "en une plainne" at the entrance of a wood, a company of knights and ladies, whom he takes for his sister and her suite, and urges his horses to greater speed. Morgain, hearing riders behind her, turns round and recognises Artus. She cries to her suite that her brother follows them, and will kill them all without fail if he reach them. She knows full well that it is "pour cest fuerre que Dieus maudie." But he shall not have it; she will put it in such a place that it can never be of use again to either king or knight. When they come to a deep lake she throws the sheath into it, and, as it is heavy, it sinks immediately.¹ Her people anxiously consult her what to do. She tells them, if her spells had power over him, he should never see Camalaoth again, but, unfortunately, a damsel who came but lately to this country "l'a si garni por paour" of her that her spells are of no avail. But for herself and her suite she will work a marvel that shall be spoken of as long as there are Christians in Great Britain.

Then she works her charms, and transforms herself and all her people—damsels, knights, the valets 'a pied,' and horses—into stone. They can move no limb. When Artus comes to the place, he says to the knight who accompanies him, after making the sign of the cross: "Par foi, c'est Morgue maserour et toute sa compaignie qui sont mué en pierre." Then he looks at them, and points out his sister and various knights whom he recognises. The knight asks him if he cannot find the sheath. He answers No, and adds that God has punished his sister and her people for all their wickedness by transforming them into stone. Then they return.

When Artus is gone, "Morgue redesfist son encantement," and all instantly recover their true semblance. She asks her people if they saw her brother. They tell her they did, and add, had they had power to move, they

¹ "Et elle prent le fuerre et le gete dedens le lac tant loing coume elle puet, et il fu pesans, si afondra maintenant a tel eure qu'il ne fist puis bien a homme del monde fors a Gavain le neveu au roi Artus a une seule bataille qu'il fist puis encontre Naborn l'enchanteour pour la biele fee qui Marsique estoit apielee. Et celle Marsique li bailla chelui meisme fuerre, si (se) qu'il le porta en la bataille. Mais après che qu'il ot la bataille finée ne fu il onques saisis de fuerre, ne ne sot puis que il devint, si coume cis contes meismes le devisera apertement quant lius et tans en sera."

would have fled, so much they feared him. After this incident they start for Garlot, and they ride so fast that they reach it within a week. One day they find, at the entrance of a wood, a knight on the point of throwing a man, whom he holds in his arms naked and blindfolded, into a pond "*plains de vermine anieuse*." Morgain asks him who the naked man is. The knight tells her that he is a traitor who has dishonoured his wife; he means to throw him into the same pond into which he has thrown his wife. The other implores Morgain, for God's sake, not to believe the knight. Asked who he is, he tells her he is a knight of Artus, and his name is Manassés de Gaule. Morgain knows him well; he is a relation of Accalon de Gaule, whom she loved most in her life; she will deliver him for the love of Accalon. Saying this she enchants the knight who holds Manassés, so that he falls like a dead man. Then she cuts Manassés' fetters, and asks him if he recognises her. The knight says Yes; she is Morgain, Artus' sister. Morgain tells him she has delivered him, not for love of Artus, but for that of Accalon, and asks him what he wishes her to do with the other knight. Manassés would do to the knight as the knight intended to do to him. At Morgain's bidding, he undresses the other knight, throws him into the pond, and dons the other's dress. Morgain then asks him, in return for the service done him, to go to Artus, and say what he saw, and add how she transformed herself and her suite into stone, and, had it not been for the lady of the lake's protection, she would have killed him. But this lady of the lake knows most of "*nigromanchie et des enchantemens*" of all people in the world, for "*li souverains des devineurs*," whom she put alive into the earth, taught her. Thus they part.

When Morgain comes back to Garlot, she is well received by her people, and settles in a castle "*que on apieloit Tugan*." In this castle she establishes a custom "*moult mauvaise et moult anieuse*," but later,¹ not at this time.

Artus, after being deceived by Morgain, returns to the abbey, stays there a day, and then proceeds to Camalaoth with one knight. All are highly pleased to see him back; it was feared he was lost. When he is unarmed, he sends for Vrien, and asks him about the ship, telling him what things happened to him. Vrien tells him that he awoke on the morrow in his bed, by the side of Morgain. When Vrien asks him if he knows anything about Accalon, Artus reveals Morgain's treachery. Then, turning to Ywain, he bids him leave his court: the son of his sister (*le dyable*) cannot be a worthy knight; Artus will not act in the same way towards his father, who has proved a good and faithful knight up to now.

Yvain, ashamed and deeply grieved, knows not what to reply. Hiding his face in his "*mantiel*" to conceal his tears, he goes to his "*ostel*."

¹ "Car elle mist en mi la maistre sale de laiens une tombe: dedens la tombe mist elle un escrit qui estoit en une boiste d'ivoire, et dedens l'escrit estoit devisee la mort le roi Artu(s) et chelui qui le devoit occire, et s'i estoit la mort de Gavain et le non de chelui qui a mort le devoit metre." Merlin gave her this writing, telling her never woman's eye should look at it, before the adventures came about, without dropping dead instantly. The story will show that this tomb causes much harm, as many a valiant knight has to pay for his curiosity with his life. Lancelos' encounter with Hestor des Marès and Gavains is told in "*la vie de Percheval*."

Gavains, who loves him, goes with him and comforts him, assuring him that he believes him to be innocent, and a valiant knight. Yvain requests his company, and Gavains consents. They order their squires to make ready at once their horses and arms, and start when all is prepared. Outside the town they pass a newly erected cross. There Yvains dismounts, kneels, and says: "se Dieus li ait et li saint, qu'il n'enterra mais en la court avant deus ans, se forche ne l'i amainne tele dont il ne se puist escondire." Gavains and the two squires hear this oath. They pass the first night in "une abbeie de moines," where they are well received.

After hearing mass on the next morning, they start, and ride for two days without adventures. On the fifth day "a eure de tierche," as they are talking to each other, and wondering that they have met with no adventures since their departure from Camalaoth, they find "damoiseles qui karolaient entour un arbre, et pooient bien estre a douze. Et devant elles avoit deus chevaliers tous armés montés seur deus grans chevaus, et estoient ambedui si apresté qu'il n'i failloit fors que del poindre. A l'arbre entour qui les damoiseles karolaient avoit pendu un escu tout blanc sans entreaingne nule, et ensi coume chascune passoit par devant l'escu, elle rakoit et escopissoit desus et disoit: 'Dieus doinst honte a celui qui te suelt (qui tel set) porter, car il nous a mainte honte porcachie!'" Gavains and Yvains approach. Yvains makes out that they are defying "li Morhous," one of the best knights alive and brother to the queen of Ireland, because he hates the damsels of this country so much "qu'il lour fait toutes les hontes et toutes les laidures qu'il puet." Gavains is surprised that "le Morhout" suffers them to treat his shield thus if he is the good knight Yvains describes. Yvains tells him the damsels are so bold because they are protected by the two knights. Gavains thinks he could not love "le Morhout," who hates the damsels, but wishes he would come and prevent them insulting his shield.

While the two are speaking, a valet on the top of a tree cries out that "le Morhout" is coming. The damsels, hearing that, fly to a tower close at hand, so frightened are they as one never saw women. But the two knights abide and prepare to fight. In the meantime Le Morhout comes at great speed on a noble steed. When Gavains sees him, he says to Yvain: "Here is, certes, an excellent knight, to judge by his bearing; the more the pity is it that he is not courteous to the ladies." As Le Morhout approaches, one of the knights rides against him with such force that his sword breaks in pieces upon Le Morhout's shield. Le Morhout returns the stroke so vehemently that he dashes man and horse to the ground, and, in falling, the man breaks his neck. Without stopping, and passing over the first knight's body, Le Morhout turns against the second one, and with one terrible stroke kills him. Then riding up to his shield, and finding it "lait et vilain," he exclaims: "Ha! Dieus, tant me heent morteument les desloiaus, les larrenesses qui ensi ont mon escu avilleni et porvillié, l'escu que je tenois si chier, pour l'amour de cele qui le me donna, que je ne l'osoie porter pour chou qu'il n'usast!" He throws away the shield he bears, takes down the white one from the tree, and begins to clean it. "Et quant il l'a bien ters, si le coumenche a baisier et sus et jus et a faire la gringnour feste del monde."

Hanging it round his neck, he declares he will kill every damsel he comes across, to avenge the disgrace they have done to the shield.

Noticing Gavains and Yvains, he asks them, without saluting them, where they come from, for he sees at once they are strangers. When they tell him they come from "Orkanie," and have seen, in passing by, how the damsels insulted his shield and how he overcame the two knights, and now intend to continue their way in search of "*aventures et joustes et chevaleries*," he tells them they need go no farther; he is quite ready to joust with them. Gavains, in reply, acknowledges his valour, but, as he offers them combat, he will not be let go as long as they are sound and well.

Thus saying, Gavains prepares himself for jousting, but Yvains entreats him to let him have the first bout; Gavains, says Yvains, is a stronger and a better knight than himself, and can avenge him if he is overcome, but he is not strong enough to do the same for his cousin Gavain. Yvains and Le Morhout begin to joust. Yvains deals the first stroke, but his sword breaks in pieces on his antagonist's shield. Le Morhout is more successful: he strikes Yvains so fiercely that the sword enters the left side, causing a great wound, though not mortal, and unhorsing him, when Le Morhout rides over him, so that he fears all his bones are crushed. Gavains cannot but admire the strength and valour of Le Morhout, and gives vent to his feelings in terms of surprise, such as: "*Dieus, tant a grand chose en un preudomme! Dieus tant est cest homme poissans tant il vaut et tant il puet!*" &c.

Having finished his reflections on Le Morhout's prowess, Gavains prepares to encounter him. In the first bout Le Morhout brings him to the ground with a violent stroke, but, fortunately for Gavains, does not wound him seriously. Gavains rises quickly, takes his "*espee*" in hand, and runs to meet Le Morhout, who spurs against him. Yvain, seeing his cousin on foot, is sad, and says: "*Alas! we have ill-luck that one man should bring us both to the ground; we shall never have honour at court.*" Gavains tells Le Morhout he ought to dismount; it is not courteous for a horseman to fight against a man on foot; if he will not do so, he will kill his horse, and this will be his fault, but Le Morhout's shame. Le Morhout thanks Gavains for reminding him of this, dismounts, ties his horse to the tree where the white shield formerly hung, and, returning, protests he will fight "*as brans*" to the uttermost with Gavains. The latter says no word.

A long and violent fight follows. Le Morhout gives Gavains such a blow on the steel helmet that the sword enters into it more than a finger deep, but Gavains sustains the stroke bravely and returns it, but Le Morhout, stepping back, avoids the stroke. They fight long and desperately, and about the "*heure de midi*" are both so tired and exhausted that they must repose "*pour recouvrer force et alainne.*"

"*Quant heure de midi fu venue et il se furent un poi reposé, Gavains, qui estoit de tel maniere que an [toutes] saisons li doubloit sa force entour heure de midi et croissoit et amendoit plus qu'a nul autre homme.*" Suddenly he feels light and strong again, and recalls Le Morhout to battle with a fierce blow on the helmet. The fight is renewed, and Le Morhout, who was never overcome by any knight, is highly surprised to see how fresh and lively



Gavains is after such a long and exhausting combat. He has to do his best to cover himself and to parry Gavains' strokes.

The fight lasts "jusques viers nonne," and then Gavains' strength begins to wane "car sans faille cele forche qui li venoit entour miedi acoustumeement ne li duroit pas très bien jusques a nonne." But, nevertheless, this gift had helped him often before, and will help him again, so that he will overcome every knight who fights with him, "fors seulement sis": Lancelos; Hestor de[s] Marès; Booirs li essiliés; Gahariés; Tristrans li amoureux, "li niés le roi March;" and the sixth is Le Morhout. "And may all who read this story know," adds the writer, "que li Morhous dont je parole chi fu cil Morhous que Tristrans li niés le roi March occhist en l'isle saint Sanson pour le treuage qu'il demandoit de Cornuaille."

When Le Morhout perceives Gavains becoming weaker and weaker, he tells him they have fought long enough, and ought to cease. He will not praise either Gavains or himself, but he is sure such a battle as they have fought has not taken place in Great Britain for the last ten years. If they continue, they will kill each other, and that would be great pity.

Gavains accepts this noble offer, and, thanking Le Morhout, says he has done him great honour by asking what he should have asked, being "li plus jovenes" of them. "As you wish," continues Gavains; "our quarrel, too, has no meaning; we are not mortal enemies; let's cease fighting, and I leave you the honour of victory." But Le Morhout declares he will not accept it, as Gavains has deserved it. So they take off their helmets, kiss one another, and swear to be henceforth faithful companions and friends. When Yvain sees this unexpected end of the conflict, he thanks God.

After telling each other their names, Le Morhout praises Gavains highly, saying that he is one of the best knights he ever met. Gavains modestly declares that at the court of his uncle Artus he could find many better knights younger than himself. Le Morhout knows Gavains better than he himself does. He then invites the two cousins to stay with him, and leads them to a valley, where they find "un rechet moult bien fremet assés biel et assés cointe." Valets and squires take their horses, ladies unarm them and see to their wounds, and they are most hospitably received in every respect. Gavains recovers from his wounds after four days, and declares he will start on the morrow after mass. Le Morhout tries in vain to induce him to stay longer, and telling him: "Sire, vous avés fait [tant] pour moi et tant m'avés fait d'ounour que je nel porroie jamais desservir," declares he will accompany him some distance.

On the morrow they ride forth after mass. Le Morhout bids one of his squires accompany him on "le millour ronchin" he can find. After a while he asks Gavains whither he intends going. Gavains tells him he has no fixed destination; he seeks adventures. Then Le Morhout declares he loves Gavains so much for his valour that he will, for his sake, become an errant knight, so that he can have his company and see him oftener.

So these three knights form an alliance, vowing never to separate. The first day they find no adventures. On the second day, while riding towards

"Norgales," they arrive about the "eure de tierche" in the great forest "Arcoie." Le Morhout tells the two cousins that he will lead them to a fountain in this wood where one always finds adventures.

Arrived at the fountain, he bids his companions dismount and go to the fountain's head. There they find three damsels of different ages seated beneath the trees; "car l'une ne pooit pas avoir plus de quinze ans, et l'autre en avoit bien trente, et la tierche en avoit bien setante."¹ When these damsels see the three knights, they rise and greet them, and the eldest asks what they seek. When they tell her adventures, the aged damsel rates them as foolish for leaving their own country. She does not think them hardy enough to achieve the adventures of this land; their bodies are too small. Gavains replies that, though not very tall, he undertakes to fight against any knight she will show him. "Well, then," says the aged damsel, "you can try. Each of you may choose one of us, and we will show you the adventures of this country." The three knights, glad to hear this, declare they are ready for any quest. The aged damsel cannot conceal from them that there is one among the three damsels who can only enter a quest when her companion knight engages himself to stay with her a whole year and protect her from all harm. Gavains and Le Morhout remain silent, but Yvains says, as he is the worst knight of the three, and his companions refuse to take this damsel, he will take her. The aged damsel thanks him much, and tells him he will have her for companion; she wished a knight who would remain with her a whole year. Gavains tells his cousin he has undertaken a difficult task; may God help him to achieve it. Le Morhout, says he, must choose one of the two remaining damsels, as he is the older. Le Morhout chooses the damsel of thirty, and thus Gavains gets the youngest, who is fifteen years old, "qui moult estoit plainne de grant biauté."

In answer to the knights' question if they have horses, one of the damsels goes off, and shortly returns with a squire leading the horses. When damsels, knights and their squires are mounted, the eldest damsel says that, as they know not what is to betide them, they should promise one another to be back in a year's time "a eure de miedi" at the fountain where they met; then they can recount their adventures, and depart whither they list, but she hopes they will go to Artus' court. Coming to the cross, where three ways branch off into the wood, they doff their helmets, kiss one another, and part with tears in their eyes. Le Morhout begs Gavains to be sure to come back at the appointed time; he will long for that day, as he loves no knight better than Gavains. Gavains thanks him, and, after giving good advice to his cousin Yvains, the three separate.

The story now returns to Artus. After the king's dismissal of Yvains, the knights, who love him well, are sad, and Artus has to use all his influence

"Et cele de setante apiele li contes damoisele non mie pour l'age, mais pour chou que elle chevauchoit tousjours desliée, ne ja fesist [si] grant yvier que elle eust el chief fors un chapiel d'or; et se vous di que elle estoit toute blanche de chainn(i)es, et pour chou que elle estoit si channe et aloit toutes voies en guise de damoisele l'apieloit on communement la damoisele chenuë."

to induce Vriens to stay after his son's departure. In the evening, Artus inquires after Gavains, as also the next day. Gaharies tells him that Gavains has gone with Yvains, news which saddens Artus much; he is sorry now that he banished Yvains, as through him he has lost Gavains; he would rather have let Yvains stay.

One day, as Artus sits at dinner in Carduel and listens to Lucan the bottler, Manassés, fully armed, enters the hall and takes off his helmet. He is bid welcome, and unarmed. When Manassés has eaten, Artus asks him if he has seen anything of Gavains and Yvains. Manassés answers No, but he has seen the king's sister Morgain, who saved his life. Artus, hearing his sister's name and not liking the others to hear, asks Manassés privately about her. Manassés tells him all he knows, and also mentions that, if "*la damoisele cacheresse*" had not protected Artus, Morgain would have killed him. Artus tells him that, although he has often seen the damsel huntress, he only knows of her that she is the daughter of the king of Little Britain.

On the morrow, "*a eure de prime*," the lady of the lake arrives with a large suite, but disguised as a lady of sixty, so that Artus does not recognise her. On her entry into the hall, Artus pays her honours as befits her age. She draws him aside, tells him she loves him well, and warns him that Morgain will again try to injure him. A damsel, "*qui est menestre Morgain*," will bring him a cloak, most beautiful, but of such a nature that whoever puts it on will fall down dead. When she comes with the cloak, he should bid her try it first herself, and then he will see the result. If this damsel dies, Morgain will be sad, for she loves her much. Artus thanks her greatly, declaring that no lady ever did greater service to a knight than she to him.

After supper, a richly dressed damsel enters the hall, and, going to Artus, says: "*Rois Artus salus vous mande la plus vaillans damoisele et la plus biele que je sache orendroit el monde, chou est la damoisele de l'isle faee*." Then opening "*un escrin d'argent*" which she carries, she says her lady has heard Artus praised as the best of all kings, and, to honour him, sends him here "*un mantiel de drap de soie si biel et si riche*" as there was never another in the world. Remembering the lady of the lake's instructions, Artus bids the damsel try it first. The damsel declares, being "*feme et damoisele*," she is not worthy of wearing a king's garment. But Artus orders her to do so, and the damsel, "*qui n'entendoit nul mal en cele chose ne ne connoissoit mie de quel forche li mantiaus estoit, si le met a son col et l'affable*." No sooner has she done so than she falls dead. All are terrified at the sight of this wonder, and make the sign of the cross. Artus tells them that this mantle was intended to cause his death.

He then orders a great fire to be lit, and the damsel's body and mantle to be burnt. He then thanks the damsel of the lake, who is still disguised, for the great service she has rendered him, and asks her to beg whatever boon she likes, and he will grant it. The damsel declares she wants nothing. She cares for Artus, and therefore protects him. When Artus says he does not know why she is so kind to him, as he has never done anything for her, she replies: "*Moi ne chaut, se vous ne me servés, vous servés tant de pseudomes que se vous moriés, il n'est pas el monde que s'empresist les fais a soustenir*

coume vous faites." She will go to her country the next day, and requests Artus, in return for the service she has rendered him, to always think as highly of honour and chivalry as he has done hitherto. Artus promises this, but declares he would much rather see her stay and become "la dame de cest ostel;" but she cannot do so. On the morrow she starts with her suite, and Artus returns to Carlion.

"Si laisse ore a tant li contes a parler et de l[a] dame et del roi et de toute la vie Merlin, et devisera d'une autre matiere qui parole dou graal, pour chou que c'est li commenchemens de cest livre."

The last eighteen folios of the Huth MS. contain what Malory relates in chapters xii. to xix. and in a small portion of chapter xx. of the fourth book.

In addition to the characteristic features of Malory's work, as compared with the text of the Huth MS., which have been repeatedly noticed, such as abridgment, omissions, slight modifications, and the insertion of proper names where they are missing in the French text, this portion is peculiarly marked by additional incidents absent from the "Suite" as represented by the Huth MS., and by a different order of the events.

In the beginning of the twelfth chapter Malory and the "Suite" agree in stating that the people, on hearing from Accolon that Arthur himself was his antagonist and is at present before them, kneel down and ask his pardon; but whilst in the "Suite" Arthur pardons them on the condition that they keep his name and the fight secret until his return to Camalaoth, Malory simply lets him say, "mercy shalle ye haue," and adds that they can see the sad consequences of his fighting one of his own knights. The arrangement that Damas, for whom Accolon fought, shall yield to Ontzelake (a name not mentioned at all in the "Suite"), for whom Arthur did battle, "alle the hole manoir with the appertenaunce vnder thys fourme," that Ontzelake shall hold the manor from Damas, and yearly give him a palfrey to ride upon, and all the details connected with this episode, occupying p. 134, 11, to p. 135, 10, are not to be found in the "Suite."

The statement: "Syre said syre Ontzelake / here by is a ryche abbey of your elders foundacyon of Nonnes but thre myle thens," corresponds to the passage of the Huth MS.: "si les amainnent si comme a une abeie de nonnains qui assés estoit près d'illuec." In spite of the grievous wounds both Arthur and Accolon have received, they ride to the abbey. Both accounts state that Accolon dies on the fourth day, but while in the "Suite" his body is carried to Camalaoth by "four" men, in Malory "six" men have to perform this sad duty.

In the thirteenth chapter Malory says: "on a day she (Morgan) aspyed Vryens lay in his bedde sleeping," &c.; in the "Suite" this is

the day after the hunt, when Arthur awakes in prison, Accolon at the well, and Vriens by the side of his wife, as Malory also mentions at the end of the sixth chapter, but does not repeat it on this occasion, as the "Suite" does, but simply says "on a day," without determining the day of Morgan's attempt on her husband's life. Owing to this alteration, Malory also omits that, when Vriens awakes the first time, he has lost his memory through Morgan's enchantment, is therefore not surprised to find himself in his own bed, and soon falls asleep again.

In the "Suite" the damsel whom Morgan bids fetch the sword does so reluctantly and with great fear, not venturing to contradict her mistress, and Uwayne ("Yvains" in the "Suite"), who sleeps close by, separated only by a curtain, hears all his mother tells the damsel. In Malory the damsel goes to Uwayne's chamber and tells him what his mother intends doing.

The second awakening of Uriens, when he has recovered his memory, wonders at being at home, as he remembers going to bed on board ship the night before, inquires about Arthur and Accolon, and finally goes back to the river, by the advice of Morgan, to seek his companions, &c.—all this is omitted by Malory.

In the beginning of the fourteenth chapter Malory writes: "Thenne came tydynges vnto Morgan le fay that Accolon was dede / and his body brought vnto the chirche," &c., whereas, according to the "Suite," Accolon's body is brought to the court. Guenever comes first and questions the porters, who tell her they can only deliver their message in Morgan's presence. Morgan is only then sent for, and she explains to the assembled court that this must be a "gas" of her brother Arthur. Malory passes this over in silence, thus leaving it unintelligible why the knights and Guenever do not imprison her at once. Malory omits the church of St. Stephen at Camalaoth as Accolon's burial-place, but this probably induced his statement that the body was brought to the church.

In the "Suite," Guenever (who dislikes her) grants Morgan, at once and willingly, the leave of absence she desires; in Malory, only after asking her if she cannot wait until Arthur's return, and being told that her business is urgent.

The company of thirty, viz., twelve damsels and knights and squires, whom Morgan takes with her, are not mentioned by Malory.

In the "Suite," Arthur, when, on awaking, he finds the sheath of Excalibor gone, asks his people if any one was in his room while he was sleeping, and is told that a lady whom they do not know, but whom he at once, from their description, recognises as his sister Morgain, came to his room and probably carried off the sheath.

In Malory, Arthur is told that "his sister Morgan" came and took the sheath away under her cloak (!); no one dared refuse her, being his sister.

According to Malory, Arthur bids Ontzelake accompany him, whilst the "Suite" simply states that he asked a knight to ride with him, but gives no name, nor does it even specify, as already noticed, that this knight is one of the brothers.

In the description of the sheath, the words "for it was heny of gold and precious stones" have no equivalent in the "Suite."

The marble statues into which, according to the "Suite," Morgan transforms herself and her company by enchantment, correspond to Malory's "grete marbyl stone;" nevertheless, Malory, following the account of the "Suite," relates that when Arthur comes to the place he recognises various knights and his sister.

The passage, "for by his armyuestal contenance he wold haue caused vs to haue fled," corresponds in the "Suite" to the words: "carnous nel doutons pas petit," so that the French text affords no clue to the curious word "armyuestal."

In the "Suite," the knight who would drown Manassès (Manassen in "Le Morte Darthur") has already drowned his wife, whilst in Malory, to judge from the words "and she shalle haue the same dethe anone," he means to drown her after he has killed Manassen; yet Malory, here agreeing with the "Suite," has no mention of the wife's presence.

Malory also omits the enchantment which Morgan throws on the knight to make him release Manassen.

It is evidently through inadvertence that Malory makes Morgan le fay then ride on to the country "of Gorre" instead of to "Garlot," as in the "Suite."

The fact that Morgan bids Manassen tell Arthur, besides some other details, that she would have killed him had not the damsel of the lake, who knows more about enchantments than any being alive, protected him, is not mentioned by Malory. In the "Suite," Morgan adds that this damsel, who came but lately from Little Britain, has learnt her crafts from Merlin, the enchanter of enchanter, whom she has buried alive.

In the following section Malory does not observe the same sequence of incidents as the "Suite." In the latter, Arthur sends for Urien on his return to Camalaoth, tells him of Morgan's treachery, banishes Uwayne (Yvain) from the court, and Gawayne accompanies Uwayne. They meet the damsels who insult Marhaus' shield; after witnessing Marhaus' (in the "Suite," "Le Morhout") strength and chivalry in the fight with the two knights who protect the

damsels, they fight with him, become friends, stay with him, and set out together on adventures. They find the three damsels. Then Manassen's return and the episode of the mantle are related.

Malory states that, after his return, Arthur is welcomed by his people, who declare Morgan ought to be burnt; then follow Manassen's return and the episode of the mantle; and finally Uwayne's banishment, Uwayne's and Gawayne's departure from the court, their encounter with Marhaus, &c., are told.

The episode of the enchanted mantle, as Malory tells it, differs in various points from the account given in the "Suite."

In the French text the lady of the lake comes to Arthur, with a large suite, in the semblance of a lady of sixty years of age, and tells him that a damsel will shortly bring him a royal mantle, warning him at the same time not to put it on before seeing it on the bearer. According to Malory, the lady of the lake is in her right semblance, and the damsel with the mantle is already before Arthur. Malory skips the statement that this damsel pretends to be the messenger of "*la damoisele de l'isle facee*," but adds a minute description of the mantle not given in the French version.

Malory's statement, "and neuer more spake word after and brente to coles," is either a misunderstanding or an intentional modification of the source. In the "Suite," the damsel drops down dead immediately after putting the mantle on, but the mantle is not the cause of her being burnt to coal, as both her body and the mantle are burnt in a great fire at Arthur's command.

The conversation between Arthur and the damsel of the lake which follows in the "Suite," the reason she gives him for loving him, her refusal to stay at his court and become "*dame de cest ostel*," and her subsequent departure with all her suite are absent from Malory's account. This version of the episode is peculiar to the Huth MS., for, as will be shown later on, Malory brings the lady again, and repeatedly, on the scene in the rest of the fourth book.

The description of Uwayne's banishment also slightly varies from the account given in the "Suite," in which Arthur does not tell Uriens that Accolon mentioned Morgan's intention to kill him also, whilst various details in the "Suite" are not in "*Le Morte DARTHUR*."

In the "Suite," Gawayne and Uwayne learn from the damsels' song that the white shield belongs to Marhaus, and why they dishonour it. According to Malory, Gawayne asks the damsels, and they tell him.

In the "Suite," Gawayne does not reproach the damsels for dishonouring the shield, as he does in Malory's account.

Malory skips the passage in which the "Suite" describes how Marhaus, after cleaning the shield, kisses it, and gives loud vent to his joy.

Uwayne's, and more especially Gawayne's, fight with Marhaus are related by Malory in much the same way as in the "Suite," but it is worth notice that Malory by no means distinguishes exactly between "glaive" and "espee," as does the French text.

Gawayne's question, p. 143, 12-23, why Marhaus hates the damsels, and Marhaus' answer, are absent from the "Suite." The latter makes Gawayne and Uwayne stay four days with Marhaus; Malory, "seven days."

In the description of the damsels whom the three knights meet, Malory deviates from the "Suite" in stating that the eldest has a garland of gold round her head, the second a "serkelet" of gold, and the youngest a garland of flowers.

The reason why Uwayne gets the eldest of the three damsels, Marhaus the one of thirty, and Gawayne the youngest differs in the "Suite" and in Malory. In the "Suite," Uwayne selects the damsel of seventy because his two companions demur to staying a whole year with her; in Malory, because, as the eldest, she has the most experience. In the "Suite," the damsels have horses and the knights are accompanied by their squires; in Malory, "eueryche knyghte sette behynd his lady hym."

The "Suite de Merlin" as represented by the Huth MS. reaches to this point. The adventures of the three knights with the damsels, which form, with some other incidents, the ten last chapters of Malory's fourth book, are not in the Huth MS., and Malory's account is, up to the present day, the only extant version for this portion of the "Suite." The Huth MS. is not only imperfect, but from the remark quoted above in the analysis, that the quest of the Holy Grail now begins, as well as from the statement that the lady took leave of Arthur and returned to her country, we may infer that, for some reason unknown to us, the scribe of the Huth MS. broke off here, and, in order to make his work look complete, quoted a later passage from his original.¹

Having now completed the critical examination of the "Suite de Merlin," as represented by the Huth MS., in its relation to Malory's "Le Morte Darthur," it is natural to ask if the MS. Malory used was a faithful copy of the Huth MS., and if we can attribute to the compiler all the variants between the English and French versions.

As long as the Huth MS. is the only known French text of this romance, it is obviously impossible to answer this question with abso-

¹ Compare also M. G. Paris' remarks on the lengths of the three parts of the false Robert de Boron's work in the Introduction to the Huth MS.

lute certainty; but even at present I am disinclined, after considering all the circumstances of the case, to ascribe all the variants to Malory, but rather hold that many were already present in the MS. of the "Suite" which he used, especially the great number of proper names. I would explain the relations between the Huth MS. and Malory's prototype in much the same way as I explained the relationship of the various MSS. of the Vulgate-Merlin (p. 32)—viz., that various MSS. descended from the original MS. of the "Suite de Merlin" as combined with Robert de Boron's "Joseph" and "Merlin." These were copied in their turn, and during this process special features were introduced by different scribes. The Huth MS. and the one Malory used thus belong evidently to different stages in the development of the MSS., the Huth MS. being, I believe, of earlier date than that used by Malory.

Reserving reflections on Malory's workmanship for a later chapter, it only remains for me here to describe briefly the place of the Huth MS. in the history of the Arthurian romances. This has already been done in the most ingenious manner by M. G. Paris in his Introduction to the Huth "Merlin," and I cannot do better than summarily indicate the conclusions at which he has arrived.

After pointing out that the romance of Merlin as contained in the Huth MS. consists, like the Vulgate-Merlin, of a prose-rendering of Robert de Boron's poem, a "Continuation" of the same, and a "Suite," and that in both cases there is nothing in the French MSS. to indicate where the work of the genuine Robert ends and that of the continuator begins, M. Gaston Paris conclusively shows, by internal evidence, that the author of the "Suite" cannot possibly be Robert de Boron. Further, the writer of the "Suite" must have been acquainted with various romances which we can safely affirm were unknown to Robert de Boron. Thirdly, the "messire Helie," repeatedly mentioned by the false Robert de Boron as his "companion of arms," was in reality a man who lived before him, and the author of a "Conte du brait" now lost.

The "Suite," like the Vulgate-Merlin, was intended to form a link between Robert de Boron's "Merlin" and the "Lancelot" and other romances. Various passages and references in the "Suite" prove that its writer was acquainted with the "Conte du brait," the "Lancelot," "La Mort au roi Artus," and the "Tristan."

As far as the contents of the "Suite" are concerned, it consists of two groups of elements—viz., developments of indications contained in the romances known to the writer, and stories either borrowed from elsewhere or invented by the writer.¹

¹ Compare Introduction to the Huth MS., vol. i. pp. xi-l.

The writer of the "Suite" mentions, on fol. 125^d (ed. p. 212), that his book was to consist of three parts—the first from an undetermined point to where Balvain finds the damsel (fol. 125^d), the second from fol. 125^d to the beginning of the quest of the Holy Grail, and the third from the beginning of this quest to the death of Lancelot and King Mark.

The writer does not state where his first part, which terminates on fol. 125^d, begins, but we can safely say at the beginning of the Huth MS. It thus comprised:—(1) the "Joseph of Arimathea;" (2) the "Merlin" by Robert de Boron; and (3) the writer's own work, occupying 125 folios. Bearing in mind that the second and third parts equalled the first in length, the second would have finished on fol. 250 and the third on fol. 375. As the Huth MS. finishes on fol. 230, we may conclude that part ii. wants about twenty folios, which probably contained the events related in the last ten chapters of Malory's fourth book. The Huth MS. is thus abridged as well as imperfect, and the paragraph relating to the beginning of the Grail quest is anticipated from a later folio (probably fol. 225) of the original MS.

Bearing in mind the indications contained in parts i. and ii. as we have them, M. Gaston Paris concludes that this third part, which likewise comprised some 125 folios, contained a Grail quest, which probably served as a basis to the quest we now possess, and which is incorporated in the "Lancelot," and attributed to "Gautier Map," and also other adventures of Arthur, Lancelot, and Tristan. It by no means necessarily follows that this third part is due to the writer of the first and second parts.¹

¹ Huth MS., *Introd.* pp. lxi-lxiii. M. Gaston Paris says: "Voici au contraire comment nous nous représentons les choses: le *Perceval* de Robert de Boron avait été remplacé par une *Queste du saint graal* où le héros privilégié était non plus Perceval, mais Galaad; ce Roman était mis sous le nom de Robert de Boron, par une supercherie qui se comprend sans peine, puisqu'il était destiné à prendre la place du *Perceval* de Robert. D'autre part le *Joseph* et le *Merlin* de Robert, réduits en prose, continuaient à porter son nom. Notre compilateur a fabriqué avec les éléments que nous avons cherché à reconnaître, sa continuation du *Merlin* pour rattacher le *Joseph* et le *Merlin* à cette *Queste*, et il s'est donné tout naturellement lui-même pour Robert de Boron, auteur réel des deux premiers, auteur prétendu du troisième de ces romans. Comme d'autre part il connaissait les romans de *Lancelot*, de la *Mort Arthur*, de *Tristan* et du *Brait Merlin*, il a semé son œuvre d'annonces et d'allusions relatives à leur récit, et il a complété, par quelques emprunts qu'il leur a faits, la *Queste* qu'il comptait annexer à sa compilation. Il a divisé son œuvre en trois parties dont la troisième seule a un commencement et une fin donnés par le récit lui-même: elle était consacrée presque en entier au saint graal, c'est-à-dire à la *Queste*, sauf des renvois aux autres romans pour la fin des principaux personnages. La longueur de cette troisième partie l'a seule guidé dans la division en deux parties du reste de son œuvre: pour que les trois parties eussent une dimension égale, il a mis dans la première le *Joseph*, le *Merlin* et un fragment de sa

The author of the "Suite" evidently knew still less of England than did Robert de Boron, and the whole bears the unmistakable stamp of French workmanship. According to all probability, it was composed between 1225 and 1230. In comparison with other romances of the same kind, the "Suite" is certainly inferior, from the author's undue tendency to introduce mystical and supernatural elements.

D. "LA MORTE ARTHURE": THORNTON MS.

BOOK V.



FOR the fifth book of "Le Morte Darthur" in Caxton's edition Malory principally used the "La Morte Arthure" by the Scotch poet Huchown as we possess it in the MS. of Robert Thornton in the Lincoln Cathedral Library.¹ Now and then, however, Malory embodies facts into his narrative, in contradiction to Huchown, which he can only have found either in Wace's Brut, in Robert of Gloucester's Chronicle, in Layamon's Brut, or in the "Suite

continuation coupée à l'endroit voulu, dans la seconde le reste de sa continuation. Aussi s'est formée la compilation que nous ne possédons plus telle quelle, et qui a dû d'ailleurs comme nous le verrons, être réduite de bonne heure à une forme à peu de chose près aussi imparfaite que celle où elle nous est parvenue. La troisième partie a été négligée du moment où la *Queste* qu'elle contenait, remaniée en plusieurs points, a été incorporée au *Lancelot*. Quant à la seconde, celle qui nous est arrivée dans le seul manuscrit Huth, elle fut plus tard également délaissée par suite de la concurrence victorieuse qui lui fit l'autre continuation du *Merlin*, celle que nous avons appelée la vulgate," &c.

I cannot help thinking that the attribution of the authorship of the *Prose-Perceval* to Robert de Boron, and the substitution of Galahad for Perceval in the "*Queste*," are rather problematical arguments. On what grounds can we affirm that Robert, of whom we only possess poetry, has also written prose? And how very unlikely is it that a writer or scribe of a "*Queste*" should substitute Galahad for Perceval without most serious reasons. I think it is more probable that there existed from the outset two versions of the "*Queste del Saint Graal*," and that these two versions were later on confounded and mixed up in the "*Queste*" when it was embodied into the "*Lancelot*."—H. O. S.

¹ The relationship of the "La Morte Arthure" of the Thornton MS. to the *Historia Britonum* of Geoffrey of Monmouth, Wace's Brut, Layamon's Brut, and Robert of Gloucester's and Peter Langtoft's Chronicles has been investigated by P. Branscheid, *Anglia*, viii. pp. 179-236, 1885 (Hallens. dissert. 1885). In order to facilitate the comparison of B.'s results and my own, I have adopted the same abbreviations as he so that I understand by:

"M."—Sir Thomas Malory's *Le Morte Darthur*.

"G."—Galfredi Monumetensis *Historia Britonum*. Nunc primum in Anglia novem odd. mssis collatis edidit J. A. Giles; Londini 1844. 8vo. Translated by the same in "Six Old English Chronicles." London, 1848. 8vo.

"W."—Wace's *Le Roman de Brut* (xii^e siècle), publié pour la première fois d'après

de Merlin." Malory has suppressed Huchown's ending, as it did not suit his purpose.

MA. begins with the poet's invocation of God's grace, praying that he may be enabled to write words

"Plesande and profitabill to the popule that themes heres."

Hereafter the readers are requested to listen attentively to the adventures

"Off the ryealle renkys of the Rownde Table."

These knights are noble, wise, "doughty in theire doynge," courteous, and worshipful; they have achieved many marvellous feats of arms; they have overcome the Roman Emperor Lucius. Their expedition against Lucius forms the subject of the romance.

When King Arthur had finished his glorious wars, and conquered many kingdoms and countries, and regained all that King Vther once had in his possession, as "Orgayle," "Orkenay," "alle this owte-isles," "Irelande," "Occyane," "Scottlande," "Wales," "Flaundres," "Fraunce," "Holaund," "Henawde," "Burgoyne," "Brabane," "Bretayne the lesse," "Gyane," "Gothelande," "Grece," "Bayone," "Burdeux," "Turoyne," "Tholus," "Peyters," "Prouynce," "Valence," "Vyenue," "Eruge," "Anyone," "Nauerne," "Norwaye," "Normaundye," "Almayne," "Estriche," "Danmarke," "Swynne," and "Swetherwyke," he dubs his knights and richly rewards them. He appoints his cousins kings of various conquered countries. He then rests, and holds in all royal splendour his Round Table. After spending some time in Britain he goes to Wales "for to hunt at the hartes;" by the consent of his lords he founds "Caerlyone,"

"On the riche reure that rynnys so faire,"

i.e., the Usk.

At "Carlelele" he gathers all his knights at Christmas for a great

les Manuscrits des Bibliothèques de Paris, avec un commentaire et des notes par Le Roux de Lincy. Rouen, 1836-38. 3 vols. 8vo.

"L."—Layamon's Brut or Chronicle of Britain; a poetical semi-Saxon paraphrase of the Brut of Wace. Now first published from the Cottonian MSS. in the British Museum, accompanied by a literal translation, notes, and a Grammatical Glossary by Sir Frederic Madden. London, 1847. 3 vols. 8vo.

"R."—The Metrical Chronicle of Robert of Gloucester, edited by W. Aldis Wright. London, 1887. 2 vols. 8vo.

"P."—The Chronicle of Pierre de Langtoft in French Verse. From the earliest period to the death of King Edward I. By Th. Wright. London, 1866-68. 2 vols. 8vo.

"MA."—Morte Arthure or The Death of Arthur. Ed. from R. Thornton's MS., Lincoln Cathedral Library, by E. Brook. London, 1871. 8vo. E.E.T.S.

I have also looked through "The Cronycles of England," by Douglas, a monk of Glastonbury, and continued by W. Caxton, London, 1480, fol., and afterwards several times reprinted, also once in 1497 at "Andewarpe," by Gerard de leew, but they follow the versions of the earlier Chronicles, and differ in the main points from MA. and M.

festival. A stately assembly of dukes, peers, earls, bishops, &c., surrounds the great conqueror; indeed, there was never so noble a feast seen. Nobody is allowed to depart till ten days have expired. On New Year's Day, when all are feasting, there suddenly appears a senator from Rome with sixteen knights.

M. condenses into three the contents of the first eighty lines of MA. MA. places the great festival at Christmas and the following New Year's Day; W., L., R., and P. at Arthur's coronation at Whitsuntide; in all four it takes place at Carleon; M. specifies neither time nor place. M. also omits the catalogue of the various countries conquered by Arthur, simply stating: "after longe werre" Arthur "rested and helde a Ryal feeste." As against MA., but in accordance with W., L., R., and P., M. speaks of twelve "auncyen men berynge eche of them a braunche of Olyue in token that they cam as Embassatours," &c. G.: "ecce duodecim viri maturæ ætatis reverendi vultus, ramos, olivæ in signum legationis in dextris ferentes."

- Compare W. "Es vous douze homes blans, quenens
D'olive portent en lor mains."
R. "þer come in twelf olde men. wiþ euene pas þere.
Of oliue as in signe. þat hii aȝen pays nere."
L. "þar comen twealf cnihtes,
ohte men and wihte."
P. "U xij. gentils chuvalers venent de meure age."

It is, however, more probable that Malory derived this information from the "Suite de Merlin," as I have pointed out in a former chapter (*supra*, p. 66). The passage in the Huth MS., fol. 85^a, runs thus: "Et en che que li rois mengoit, es vous par laiens entrer douze hommes qui tout estoient vestu de blanc samit. Et estoient tout li homme viel et auchien et tout blanc de kenissure(s), et portoit chascuns en sa main un rain d'olive par senefiance."

When the ambassadors have come into the king's presence they greet him from Sir Lucius Iberius, Emperor of Rome, who considers Arthur as his vassal, and desires him to appear at Lammes next before him at Rome with all his knights of the Round Table, in order to explain why, instead of doing him homage and recognising him as sovereign lord, Arthur rebels against him, and withholds the tribute due from him. In case Arthur disobeys this order, Lucius will invade England and imprison the king. Moreover, the rolls and register of Rome state that Arthur's father paid tribute:

"That Iulius Cesar wane wyth his ientille knyghtes."

Hearing these bold words, Arthur becomes very angry, and looks so fierce that the messengers are frightened, and one of them cries for

mercy, declaring that it was not their fault: they had but to fulfil the orders of him who had sent them.

"Haa! cranaunde knyghte! a cowarde the semez!"

is Arthur's reply. The senator excuses himself, saying Arthur's face is too dreadful to look at: he resembles a furious lion.

M., following MA., as against G., W., L., R., and P., makes the Roman ambassadors deliver an oral message instead of a letter. The contents of the letter or speech are nearly the same in all versions, only more or less detailed. M. speaks of "Emperour Lucius," with the anomalous addition "whiche was called at that tyme Dictatour or procurour of the publyke wele of Rome." G. calls him at first only "Lucius Tiberius," and in the letter to Arthur "Reipublice procurator" (p. 174), and later on "imperator" (p. 196), but evidently in the sense of "chief of the army," as he speaks of the Emperor Leo in other passages. In W. the name is here "Luces," later on "Licius Yber," once describing his dignity as:

"Luces qui Rome em baillie
Et de Rome la signorie,"

but he generally calls him "emperere." In L., "Luces" alone occurs, with the title "kaysere." M. evidently noticed the contradiction in the sources, and tried to avoid it by giving to his "Lucius" all three titles.

In M. and MA., Arthur bids the ambassadors wait for an answer till he has consulted with his dukes, barons, doctors, peers, and knights. M., as well as W. and L., as against MA. and G., relates that several of the knights are so indignant at the Roman message that they start up and wish to punish the ambassadors. But Arthur prevents this, and commands them to conduct the ambassadors to their chambers and provide them with all necessaries. He wishes them to be treated as well as possible.

In MA. follows an elaborate description of the gorgeous entertainment of the Romans (ll. 176-242) not to be found in the other sources, including M.

Compare M. 161, 5. "and that noo deyntee be spared /" and MA. 162. "Spare for no spycerye."

M. 161, 5. "/ For the Romayns ben grete lordes /" MA. 175. "As of the realste blode that reynede in erthe."

With line 7, p. 161, M. takes up the account as given in MA., but considerably condenses it. The remainder of chapter i. relates how Arthur takes counsel with his lords and barons as to what answer he should give to Lucius. MA. and G. describe the council as taking place in the "geauntes toure," "in giganteam turrin;" W. speaks of

"tor perrine, Que lon apeloit Gingantine;" L. only mentions a tower of stone; M. does not give any specification of the place at all.¹ According to all the versions, Cador speaks first, and much to the same effect. M. (161, 10-14) agrees as closely as his conciseness permits with MA. 247-257. Compare especially the following lines of MA. with M.:—

MA. "The letters of sir Lucius lyghttys myne herte!"

M. "Syre this message lykes me wel."

MA. "We hafe as losels liffyde many longe daye."

M. "for we haue many dayes rested vs and haue ben ydle." &c.

Arthur's reply in M. follows G., W., L., and R. more closely than MA. and P. The names Bellinus and Brenius occur in G.; Constantyn is called the son of "Heleyne" by G., W., L., and R., but not by MA. Bawdewyne as one of the kings of Britain occurs only in MA. G., W., L., and R. also mention "Maximian," omitted by M. and MA.

The second and third chapters of the fourth book of M. correspond to ll. 288-750 of MA. MA., M., and P. omit Howel as the second speaker, as against G., W., L., and R. M., which previously has always styled "Anguysshe" King of Ireland, makes him here King of Scotland, in accordance with the other versions. For this speech M. follows MA. very closely, repeating to a great extent the very terms and phrases, as is seen in the following passages:—

MA. p. 10.

- 288 Than answarde kyng Aungers to Arthure hym seluyn,
"Thow aughte to be ouerlynge ouer alle other kynges,

- 290 fore wyseste, and worthyeste, and wyghteste of haundes,
The knyghtlyeste of counsaile that euer corone bare;

I dare saye fore Scottlande, that we theme schathe lympe,
Whens the Romaynes regnede, thay raunsounds oure eldyrs,
And rade in theire ryotte, and rauschett oure wyfes,

- 295 With-owttyne resone or ryghte refte vs oure gudes;
And I salle make myne avowe deuotly to Criste,
And to the haly vernacle, vertuns and noble,
Of this grett velany I salle be venged ones
On þone venemus mene, wyth valiant knyghtes!

- 300 I salle the forthire of defence fosterde ynewe,
fifty thowsande mene, wyth-in two eldes,

M. chap. ii. p. 161.

Thenne ansuerd kyng
Anguysshe of Scot-
land / Syr ye oughte
of right to be above
al other kynges /
for vnto yow is none
lyke ne pareylye in
Crystendome/of kny3
hode ne of dyguyte /
& I counceylye you
nener to obey the Ro-
mayns / for whan they
regnede on vs / they
destressyd oure elders
/ and putte this land
to grette extorcions &
taylles / wherfore I
make here myn anowe
to auenge me on them
/ and for to strengthe
youre quarrel I shal
furnyssahe xx M good

¹ R. has: "E se mette al chastel de geaunterye."



Of my wage for to wende, whare so the lykes,
To fyghte wyth thy ffaamene, that vs unfaire ledes."

men of warre and wage
them on my costes /
whiche shal awayte on
yow with myself whan
it shal please yow /

In MA. follow speeches by the King of Little Britain, "the Walsche kyng," "syr Ewayne," and "Launcelot" which do not occur in any of the other versions. M. and MA. alone speak of "the kyng of lytil Brytayne;" in G. and W. he is named "Hoel," in R. "Howel." The further names in M. of the kings and lords who promise Arthur their assistance are drawn from MA., but the number of soldiers which each pledges himself to send are probably invented by M., as they do not occur in any other version.

M. 162, 2. "the lord of westwallis." MA. 319. "'A! A!' sais the Walsche kyng," &c. 322. "In West Walys i-wysse," &c.

M. 162, 3. "syr Vwayne." MA. 337. "Syre Ewayne fyts Vryence."

"Syre Ider his sone," i.e., Vwayne's, M. 162, 3, is not mentioned in MA. at the place in question, but later on, l. 1490: "Sir Idrus fitz Ewayne thane 'Arthure!' asoryez."

M. 162, 4. "syre launcelot." MA. 368-381. "'By oure Lorde,' quod sir Launcelot," &c.

M. 162, 5-7, represent ll. 395-406 of MA., Arthur's speech, in which he thanks his knights for their readiness and courage, winding up with the words:

"I accounte no kyng that vndyr Criste lyffes
Whilles I see jowe alle sounde, I sette be no more."

MA. 407-418 tells how, after the council, all are merry: music, dancing, and feasting follow each other. On the seventh day the senator asks for the reply, and receives it from Arthur, "after the Epiphanye," surrounded by all his dignitaries. M. suppresses this passage entirely. The reply given to the ambassadors, M. 162, 9-23, corresponds briefly to MA. 419-482, but is more like W. and L. M. and all other versions omit Arthur's order to the Romans to leave the country within seven days, reaching "Sandwyche" on the seventh day, and passing by "Watling Street." He adds that if one of them is found on the eighth day in England, he shall be torn by horses or hanged up for the dogs to gnaw. Differing from MA. 476-478, but agreeing with W. and L., M. relates that Arthur gives large presents to the ambassadors.

M. 162, 25, and MA. 481 agree in stating that Sir Cador is selected by the king to convey the Romans safely to Sandwich; no other version mentions this incident.

According to M. 162, 27 and 28, the ambassadors pass by "Sandwyche," "flaundes," "Almayn," "the montayns," and "all ytalys"; in

MA. 490-91, "Sandwyche"; 493-94, "Flaundrez"; 496, "Almayne"; 497, "Mount Godarde"; 498-99, "Lumbardy" and "Tuskayne."

Upon their return to Lucius they tell him all they heard and saw at Arthur's court: MA. 504-53; M. 162, 29, to 163, 12. The detailed account given in MA. is considerably shortened by M., and again is more like the corresponding passage in W. and L. Here M., forgetting the previous deviation from MA., suddenly speaks of "one of the senatours," and mentions that he and his companions were frightened when they "beholde his countenance," i.e., Arthur's, evidently alluding to the incident already mentioned as occurring in MA., but omitted in M.

Compare, more particularly, M. 163, 4-8, with MA. 522-24:

"Thy nedes this new ȝere, I notifiede my selfene
Be-fore that noble of name *and* neynsome of kynges;
In the moste reale place of the Rounde Table," &c.

Further, M. 163, 9-12, with MA. 534-36:

"The knyghtlyeste creatowre in Cristyndome haldene,
Of kyngs or of conquerours, crownede in erthe,
Of countenance, of corage, of crewelle lates," &c.

The reply of Lucius on hearing Arthur's message, MA. 554-569, corresponds in part only to M. 163, 14-17, but is not to be found in any of the other versions. "Ianeweyes"¹ and "myghty warryours of Tuskane and lombardye" must be M.'s invention.

MA. 570-613 is closely followed by M. 163, 16-32, though much compressed:—

570 Thane sir Lucius lordlyche lettres he sendys
Onone in-to the Oryente, with austeryne knyghtez,
Tille Ambyganye and Orcage, and Alysaundyre eke,
To Inde and to Ermony, as Ewfrates rynny, s,
To Asye, and to Affrike, and Ewrope the large,

and forthwith sente
old wyse knyghtes
vnto these countrayes
folowyng / fyrste to
ambage and arrage /
to Alysaundrye / to
ynde . to hermony /
where as the ryuer of
Eufates renneth in
to Asye / to Aufryke /
and Europe the large /
to ertayne and Elamyne
to Arabye / Egypte

575 To Irritayne, and Elamet, and alle thase owte illes;
To Arraby and Egipt, tille erles and other,
That any erthe occupyes in thase este marches
Of Damaske and Damyat, and dukes and erles;

and to damaaske / to
damyete

¹ The form "Ianeweyes" occurs, I think, in MA. 374: "Emange alle his geauntez genyuers and other." E. Brock quotes in his Glossary, p. 163, "genyuers" as a form unknown to him. I do not know it either, but I think it is a mis-spelling of "genyuees." This is very probable when we read l. 559, "Many geaunte of geene"; 2890, "Iolyan of Iene, a geante."

ffor drede of his daungere they dresside *thems* sone;
580 Of Crete and of Capados the honourable kyngys

Come at his counsaundments, clenly at ones;
To Tartary and Turky, whens tythynges es comene,
They turne in by Thebay, terauntes fulle hugge,
The flour of the faire folke, of Amazonnes landes;
585 Alle thate faillez on the felde be forfette fore euere!
Of Babyloyne and Baldake the buriyche knyghtes,
Bayows with theire baronage bydes no langere;
Of Perce, and of Pamphile, and Preter Iohne landes,

Iche prynce with his powere appertlyche graythede;
590 The Sowdane of Surrye assembles his knyghtes,
fra Nylius to Nazareth, nommers fulle huge;
To Garyere and Galelé they gedyre alle at ones;
The Sowdanes that ware sekyre sowdeours to Rome

They gadyrede ouere the Grekkes See with greuous wapyns,
595 In theire grete galays, wyth gleterande scheldes;
The kyng of Cyprys ons the see the Sowdane habydes,
With alle the realles of Roodes, arayede with hym one;
They saillede with a syde wynde oure the salte strander:
Sodanly the Sarazenes, as theme selfe lykede,
600 Craftyly at Cornett the kynges are aryfede,
fra the ceté of Rome sexti myle large.
Be that the Grekes ware graythede, a fulle gret nombyre,
The myghtyeste of Macedone, with mene of the marches,
Fulle and Prusylande presses with othe,
605 The lege-mene of Lettow with legyons ynewe:

Thus they semble in sortes, summes fulle huge,
Sowdanes and Sarazenes, owt of sere landes,
The Sowdane of Surry and sextene kynges,
At the cetee of Rome assemblede at ones.

610 Thane yschewes the emperour armede at ryghtys,
Arayede with his Romaynes appone ryche stedys;

Sexty geauntes be-fore, engenderide with fendez,

and Cayer (?) / to
Capadoce /

to tarce / Turkye

pounce (?) / and pam-
poylle /

to Surrye

and gallacye / And
alle these were sub-
gette to Rome and
many moo /
as Grece /

Cypres /

Macydone/(Calabre/
Cateland / portyngale
with many thousandes
of spaynyardys)
Thus alle these kynges
/ dukes / and admyrals
assembled aboute
Rome with xvj kynges
attones with grete
multytude of peple /
whan themperour vn-
derstood their comyng
/ he made redy his
Romayns / and alle
the people bytwene
him & Flaundres /
Also he hadde gotten
wyth hym fyfty Ge-
aunts whiche had ben
engendered of fendys
/ And they were or-
deyned to garde his
persone / and to breke
the فرونتe of the
bataylle of kyng
Arthur /

A comparison of these two passages with one another and with the account given in the other versions shows beyond doubt that M. follows or copies MA. Certain variations are, however, noticeable, which it is difficult to explain.

Did M. intentionally alter MA., or did the copy of MA. he saw differ from the Thornton MS.? The sequence of the names of countries, with the exception of a few omissions, being the same in both versions, how can it be explained that M. writes "Cayer" for "Crete," "Turce" for "Tartary," "Pounce" for "Perce," "Gallacye" for "Garyere" or "Galele"? M. omits several places, and adds Calabre, Cateland, portyn-gale. All other versions vary in this account considerably; if MA. had no other source, unknown to us, Branscheid is right in attributing this enumeration of various countries to Huchown.

The remaining nine lines of the second chapter of book iv. in M. only very slightly resemble the corresponding lines in MA., 613-24. As none of the other versions contains any facts like those in M., I am inclined to ascribe this conclusion to M. There is one line which, to a certain extent, suggests that here also M. had MA. before him, if it be admissible to suppose his copy of MA. read "Colone" for "Colome," viz.:

MA. "In the contré of Colome castelles ensegger"

M. "vnto Coleyne / and byseged a castel there by."

M. inserts the names of "Burgoyne" and "the Royame of lytyl Bretayne" from a later portion of the narrative.

The third chapter of book iv. of M. varies considerably from MA. and from all other versions, but MA. has certainly furnished many details.

Compare MA.	624.	"At the vtas of Hillary"
	636.	"In the pales of ȝorke a parlement he haldes"
	633-635.	"He sendes furthe sodaynly <i>sergeantes of armes</i> , To alle hys mariners on rawe, to areste hym schippys; At Sandwyche on the see, salle whens hym lykes."
	640-643.	"I am in purpos to passe perilous wayes, To kaire with my kene mene, to conquere ȝone landes, To owtraye myne enmy, ȝif auenture it schewe, That occupyes myne heritage, the empyre of Rome,"

with M. 164, 7-12: "kynge Arthur / that commaunded all them of his retenue to to be redy atte vtas of hyllary for to holde a parlement at yorke / And at that parlement was concluded to areste alle the nauye of the lond and to be redy within xv dayes at sandwyche," &c.

M. then goes on to state that Arthur leaves his kingdom and his wife, Gueneuer, to the care of "Syre Bawdewyn of Bretayne" and "syr Constantyn sone to syre Cador of Cornewaylle," "wherfore syre

launcelot was wrothe"; but the reason M. adduces, "for he lefte syre Trystram with kyng Marke for the loun of beal Isoulde," is unintelligible. The incident of Gueneuer's fainting, upon taking leave of Arthur, is again drawn from MA., as well as the words, "I wyl that syre Constantyn be myn heyer and kyng crowned of this royaume as next to my blood," though in MA. they occur only when Arthur is dying.

ll. 4316-17. "Constantyne my oosyne he salls the corowne bere,
Aÿs be-commys hym of kynde, ðife Criste wille hym thole!"

It is remarkable that MA. and M. mention "Sandwich" as the place where Arthur's armies gather and set out to sea. The other versions name: G., "Hamo"; W., L., and R., Suthantone, Southamptone, and Suhamptoun. Considering that Arthur planned to, and really did, cross over to Normandy, it is more natural that Southampton should be the port chosen than Sandwich in Kent, a fact which, as Branscheid justly remarks, misled M., whose geographical knowledge is not his strong point, to suppose (166, 4) that Barflete, i.e., Barfleur, was in Flaundes, whereas it is in Normandy.

The fourth chapter of book iv. in M. is, throughout, a proserendering of MA. 756-839. None of the other versions contains such a detailed description of the dream and its interpretation. In order to show as clearly as possible to what extent M. follows MA., I have printed the two texts side by side. The passages in brackets are M.'s additions. M., ignoring perhaps the northern dialect, reads, in line 775 of MA., "bore" for "bere."

MA. 756-839.

The kyng was in a gret oogge, with knyghtes fulle many,
In a cabane enclosede, clenlyche arayede;
With-in on a ryche bedde rystys a littyll,
And with the swoghe of the see in swefnyng he felle.
760 Hym dremyd of a dragone, dredfulle to be-holde,
Come dryfande ouer the depe to drensche hys pople,
Ewene walkande owte of the weste landes,

Wanderande vnworthy ouere the
Bothe his hede and hys hals ware
765 Oundyde of asure, enamelede fulle fair
His shoulders ware schalyde alle in clene syluere
Schreede ouer alle the schrympe with schrinkande poyntes;

Hys wombe and hys wenges of wondyrfulle hewes,
In meruaylous maylys he mountede fulle hye

M. v. chap. iv.

And as the kyng laye
in his caban in the
shyp / he fyll in a slom-
eryng and dremed a
meruayllous dreme /
hym semed that a
dredful dragon dyd
drowne moche of his
peple / and he cam
fleyng oute of the
west /

and his hede
was enameled with
asure / and his shoul-
ders shone as gold /
(his taylle ful of tat-
ters)
his bely lyke
maylles of a merueyl-
lous hewe /

770 Whayme *that* he towchede he was tynt for euer!
 Hys feete ware floreschede alle in fyne sabyll,
 And syche a venynous flayre flowe fro his lyppes;
 That the fode of *the* flawes alle one fyre semyde!

Thane come of *the* Oryente ewyne hyme agaynes,
 775 A blake bustows bere abwene in the clowdes,
 With yche a pawe as a poste, and paumes fulle huge,
 With pykes fulle perilous, alle plyande *thame* semyde,

Lothene and lothely, lokkes and *other*,
 Alle with lutterde legges, lokerde vnfaire,
 780 filtyrde vnfrely, wyth fomannde lyppes,
 The fouleste of *legure* that fourmede was euer!
 He baltyrde, he bleryde, he braundyschte *ther-after*;
 To bataille he bouanex hym with bustows clowes:
 He romede, he rarede, that roggede alle the erthe!

785 So ruydly he rappyd at to ryot hym seluene!
 Thane the dragone on dreghe dressede hyme-a-3aynes
 And with hys duttes hym drafe one dreghe by the walkyne:

He fares as a fawoon, frekly he strykes;
 Bothe with feete and with fyre he feghttys at ones!

790 The bere in the bataille *the* bygger hym semyde,
 And byttes hyme boldiye wyth balefulle tuskes;

Syche buffetes he hym reches with hys brode klokes
 Hys brest and his brastelle whas blodye alle ouer!
 He rawmpyde so ruydly that alle *the* erthe ryfes,
 795 Rynnande one reede blode as rayne of the heuene!

He hade weryede the worme by wyghtnesse of strengthe,
 Ne ware it fore *the* wyldre fyre that he hyme wyth defendez.

Thane wandrys *the* worme awaye to hys heghttes,
 Commes glydande fro *the* clowddex, and cowpex fulle euene;
 800 Towchez hym wyth his talounes, and terez hys rigge,
 Betwyx *the* talle and the toppe tene fote large!
 Thus he brittenyde the bere, and broghte hyme olyfe,
 Lette hyme falle in the fode, fleete where hyme lykes:
 So they brynge *the* bolde kyng bynne *the* schippe-barde,
 805 That nere he bristes for bale, one bede where he lyggez.

his feet ful of fyne
 sable / (and his clawes
 lyke fyne gold) And
 an hydous flamme of
 fyre flewe oute of
 his mouthe / lyke as
 the lande and water
 had flammed all of
 fyre /

After hym semed there
 came oute of thor-
 yent / a grymly bore
 al blak in a clowde /
 and his pawes as bygge
 as a post
 he was rugged lokynge
 roughly /

he was the foulest
 beest that euer man
 sawe / he rored and
 romed so hydously
 that it were meruell
 to here /

Then the dredeful dra-
 gon avauoned hym
 and cam in the wynde
 lyke a fawoon gyuyng
 grete strokes on the
 bore /
 and the bore hytte
 hym ageyne with his
 grysly tuskes /

that his brest was al
 bloddy / and that the
 hote blood made alle
 the see reed of his
 blood /

Thenne the dragon
 flewe away al on a
 hey3te / and come
 doune with suche a
 swough and smote the
 bore on the rydge
 whiche was x fote
 large fro the hede to
 the taylle / and smote
 the bore all to powdre
 bothe flesshe and
 bonys / that it flut-
 teryd al abroad on
 the see

Thane waknez the wyse kynges, wery fore-trauailled,
Takes hym two phylozophirs, that folowed hym euer,
In the seynne science the suteleste fondene,
The cony[n]geste of olergye vndyre Criste knowens;
810 He tolde them of hys tourmente, that tyme that he slepede,

"Drechede with a dragone, and syche a derfe beste,
Has mad me fulle wery; 3e telle me my swefene,
Ore I mone swelte as swythe, as wysse me oure Lorde!"

"Sir," saide they sone thane, this sagge philosopherse,
815 "The dragone that thow dremyde of, so dredfulle to schewe,

That come dryfande ouer the deepe, to drynchens thy pople,
Bothely and certayne thy seluene it es,
That thus saillez ouer the see with thy sekyre knyghtez;
The coloures that ware castyne appone his clere wenges
820 May be thy kyngrykes alle, that thow has ryghte wonnyne;
And the tachessede talle, with tonges so huge,
Be-takyns this faire folke, that in thy fleet wendez.
The bere that bryttenede was abowens in the clowdez,
Be-takyns the tyrauntes that tourmentez thy pople;
825 Or elles with somme gyaunt some journee salle happyne,
In syngulere batelle by youre selfe one;
And thow salle hafe the victorye thurgh the helpe of oure Lorde,
As thow in thy visions was opynly schewede!
Of this dredfulle dreame ne drede the no more,
830 Ne kare noghte, sir conquerour, bot comforth thy seluene;

And thise that saillez ouer the see, with thy sekyre knyghtez."

With trumppez thens trustly, they trisene vpe thaire saillez,
And rowes ouer the ryche see, this rowtte alle at ones;
The comely coste of Normandye they cachens fulle euens,
835 And blythely at Barflete theis bolde are arryfed,
And fyndys a flete there of frendes ynewe,
The floure and the faire folke of fyftene rewmez;
fore kynges and capytaynes kepyde hym fayre,
839 As he at Carelele commaundyde at Cristymesse hym seluene.

And therewith the
kynges awoke anone /
and was sore abashed
of this dreame / And
sente anone for a wyse
philosopher / com-
maundyng to telle
hym the sygnyfyca-
cion of his dreame /

Syre sayd the philoso-
pher / the dragon that
thow dremedest of /

betokeneth thyn owne
persone that sayllest
here / & the coloures of
his wynges ben thy
Royames that thow
haste wonne / And his
taylle whiche is al to
tatterd sygnefyeth
the noble knyghtes of
the round table / And
the bere that the
dragon slough comyng
fro the clowdes / be-
tokeneth some tyraunt
that tormenteth the
peple / or else thow
arte lyke to fyghte
with somme Geaunt
thy self / (beyng
horrible and abhom-
ynable whoos pere ye
sawe neuer in your
dayes) wherfore of
this dredeful dreame
doubte the no thyng
/ but as a Conquerour
come forth thy self /

Thenne after this
soone they had syghte
of londe and saylled
tyl they arryued atte
Barflete in Flaundres /
and whanne they were
there he fond many of
his grete lordes redy /
as they had ben com-
maunded to awayte
vpon hym.

The fifth chapter in M. follows still more servilely, if that be possible, the contents of MA. ll. 841-1262; indeed, almost every word of M. can be traced in MA. It is of course impossible for me to print side by side the whole of the two versions; I therefore give here only the corresponding passages of MA. in the same sequence as they occur in M.

841. Comez a templere tyte, and towchide to the kyng. 842. Here es besyde. 848. In the contree of Constantyne. 843. A grett geaunte. 844. has fretyne of folke mo thane fyfe hondrethe. 846. This has bene his sustynance alle this seuene wynteres. 845. And als fele fawntekyns of freeborne childyre.

Why M. makes a "husband man" of the "templere" is not quite clear. The translation of "freeborne" by "of the comyns" can hardly be considered satisfactory.

852-56. The duche of Bretayne to daye has he takyne,— . . . as scho rade with hire ryche knyghtes.—Ledd hyre to the mountayne, thare that lede lengez.—To lye by that lady, aye whyls hir lyfe lastes.—We folowede o ferrome moo thene fyfe hundrethe.

M. 166, 17-20, correspond to ll. 858-865, but not so literally as the preceding; M. suppresses the eulogy of the duchess in MA.

866-67. As thow arte ryghtwise kyng rewe on thy pople, And fande for to venge theme.—868. "Allas!" sais sir Arthure,—872-73. "I had leuere thane alle Fraunce,—I hade bene be-fore thate freke, a furlange of waye, Whene he that ladye had laghte and ledde to the montez : 876. Bot walde thow kene me to the crage, thare that kene lengez," 880-81. "Sire, see 3e 3one farlande, with 3one two fyrez, Thar filnez that fende, 886. And more tresour 887. Thane in Troye was, as I trowe," 888-89. Thane romyez the ryche kyng for rewthe of the pople, Raykez ryghte to a tente, 892-93. He calles sir Cayous And sir Bedvere 894. "Luke 3e aftyre euensange be armyde at ryghttez, 896-97. ffore I wille passe in pilgremage preuely here-aftyre, In the tyme of suppere 899. In seynt Mighelle mount, ..."

Lines 900-920 of MA. are devoted to an elaborate description of Arthur's accoutrements. After having mounted his steed, he rides to the place where the two knights wait for him. With them he then proceeds to the foot of the mountain. The ride to it suggests to MA. 921-932 a description of the grove through which they pass; it is covered with many a flower, game and birds are plentiful in it, nightingales sing sweetly. M. skips this paragraph, rendering its contents by ll. 1-4 of p. 167.

From l. 5, p. 167, M. follows MA. again.

933. and one fotte lyghttez 935-37. And thenne the kyng kenely comandye hys knyghtez ffor to byde with theire blonkez, and bowne no forthyre,— "ffore I wille seke this seynte by my selfe one,"—

941-42. The kyng coueris the cragge wyth cloughes fulle hye, To the creste of the clyffe he clymbez one lofte ; 949. . . . and enene there he fyndez 950. A wery wafulle wedowe, wryngande hire handez, 953. He saluzede that sorowfulle with sittande wordes, 957-58. thow carpez to lowde ! May zone warlawe wyt, he worows vs alle ! 962. Whedyre buskes thou berne ? vnbysside thow semes ! 972-73. Ware syche fyfty one a felde, ... The freke walde with hys fyste felle 3ow at ones ! 974-75. . . here the ducheze dere Depe doluene and dede. 861. And one of the fayreste that was fourmede euer. 976. He hade morthiredede 978. He has forsedede hir 979. and slitt hir to the nauylle ! 987. I am comyne fra the conquerour, curtaise and gentille, 991. To trete with this tyraunt 989. for mendementede of the pople, 993-94. "3a, thire wordis are bot waste" quod this wif thane, "ffor bothe landes and lythes ffulle lyttille he settes.

M. then adds ll. 23 and 24 of p. 167 on his own account. Lines 998-1042 of MA. are rendered briefly, and partly misinterpreted, by M. in ll. 25-31. MA. describes how the giant possesses a kirtle, all covered with hair and bordered with the beards of mighty kings. Each Easter Eve he receives the tribute of fifteen realms. He has long since desired to have Arthur's beard. He has many more treasures than Arthur or any of his ancestors possessed. If Arthur has brought the beard, he may find the monster reasonable; he has, however, to be careful in approaching him. The giant sups at this season on seven male children, &c. Arthur then declares that he has indeed brought the beard, and is directed to the place where the giant dwells.

1046. The thee of a manns lymme 1047-48. and his brode lendez, He bekesz by the bale-fyre and breklesse hyme semede ; 1049-52. Thare ware rostez fulle ruyde, and rewfulle bredez, Beerynes and bestaile brochede to-geders ; Cowlefulle cramede of crysmede chilydre, Sum as brede brochede, and bierdez thame tournede. 1054. His herte bledez for bale, 1058-59. And hyely hailsez that hulke with hawtayne wordes — "Now, alle-weldand Gode 1060. Giff the sorowe and syte 1062. . . . the fende haue thi saule !—1065. Be-cause that thow killide has thise cressede chilydre, 1070. And for this faire ladye. . . . 1072-73. Dresse the now, dogge-sone, ... ffor thow salle dye this day, thurghe dynt of my handez !"

Lines 1074-1103 of MA. describe the terrible giant: Smoke arises from his mouth, his forehead is like the skin of a frog, his nose like a hawk's beak, his face is covered with hair, his skin hard as that of a "hundefisch," his eyes dreadful and like fire, &c. M. omits this description.

1104-5. Thane stertez he vp And sone he caughte hyme a clubb 1108. The creest and the coronalle 1109. . . . he

crasschede doune at onez ! 1122-23. Ewyne in-to jumette the gyaunt he hyttez, Iust to the genitales, . . . 1129. Bothe the guttez and the gorre guschez owte at ones, 1132-34. Thane he castez the clubb . . . he caughte hym in armez, . . . to cruschene hys rybbez ; 1136-38. Thane the balefulle bierdez bownez to the erthe, Kneland and cryande . . . "Criste comforte 3one knyghte, and kepe hym fro sorowe. 1142. Welters and walowes, . . ." 1145-46. Whilome Arthure ouer and other-while vndyre, ffro the heghe of the hylle vn-to the harde roche ; 1148-49. But Arthur with ane anlace egerly smyttez, And hittez euer in the hulke vp to the hiltz.

In MA., l. 1152, Kay then rushes to the king's assistance ; in M., Arthur and the giant roll together to the very spot where the knights wait for the king.

1178. Onone stryke of his heuede, and stake it there-aftyre, 1180-81. Bere it to sir Howelle . . . And byd hym herte hym wele, his enmy es destruede ! 1183. And sett it on the barbycane, biernes to schewe. 1184-86. My brande and my brode schelde apone the bent lyggez, On the creeste of the cragge, . . . And the clubb thar-by, alle of clene irene, 1190-91. If thow wylle any tresour, take whate the lykez ! Haue I the kyrtylle and the clubb, I coueite noghte elles ! 1174-76. I faghte noghte wyth syche a freke . . . Bot in the montez of Araby, I mett syche another ; He was the forcyere be ferre . . . 1192-94. Now they caire to the cragge, . . . And broghte hym the brade schelde, and his bryghte wapene, The clubb and the cotte afts . . . 1198-99. Be that to courte was comene clamour fulle huge, . . . they knelyd alle at ones, . . .

Lines 1200-7 express the people's welcome to, and admiration of, the noble king and conqueror.

1209. "Thankes Gode" quod he, . . . 1212-13. He somond than the schippemene scharpely ther-aftyre, To schake furthe with the schyre mene to schifte the gudex ; 1218-21. He comande hys cosyne with knyghtlyche wordex, To make a kyrke on the cragg . . . And a couent there-in, . . . In mynde of that martyre, that in the monte rystez. 1223-24. Than blythely fro Bareflete he buskes on the morne, With his batelle one brede . . . 1226. Thurghe a faire champayne.

M. omits "Barflete" and misunderstands "champayne" (field, meadow) for "Champagne," a late province of France, thus again exhibiting his geographical ignorance.

1229. and strekez his tentes 1231-33. Onone aftyre myddaye, . . . Thare comez two messangers . . . ffra the marschalle of Fraunce.

M. states that one of the messengers was marshal of France.

1239. I witter the the emperour es entirde in-to Fraunce, 1241. Brynnez in Burgoyne thy burghes so ryche ;

MA. then continues, to line 1262; the description of the damage done by Lucius and his army: castles are seized, forests felled, goods taken, dukes and douze-peers killed; Arthur's help is urgently needed.

The sixth chapter of M. represents the contents of MA. ll. 1263-1616, with some changes, especially in the proper names. M. reads "Borce" for "Boice;" "Lyonell" for "Berille;" and omits "sir Gryme."

1263-65. The kynge biddis sir Boice, "buske the be-lyfe! Take with the sir Berille, and Bedwere Sir Gawayne and sir Gryme 1267. Saise to syr Lucius 1272-74. Cayre owte of my kyngryke. . . . , In caase that he wille noghte Come for his curtaisie, and countere me ones!" 1279-80. Now thei gray the theme to goo appone grete stedes, Towarde the grene wode. 1284. Behelde 1287. Palaisez proundliche pyghte. 1291-94. . . . arayedede their tentez, On rawe by the ryuere, ... The emperour for honour ewyne in the myddes, Wyth egles al ouer ennelled so faire:

In MA. the emperor and the sultan are going to banquet with sixteen kings, when Gawayne and his companions arrive. M. omits these details, but states "they ordeyned" Gawayne and Bors "to doo the message," and left Lionel and Bedwere in an ambush to wait for them. In MA. all the four knights go to the emperor, where he sits at table; Gawayne is the speaker. Gawayne's speech occupies ll. 1305-1325 in MA., whereas M. condenses it into two lines: 1319-20. "Comandez the kenely to kaire of his landes, Or elles for thy knyght-hede encontre hyme ones." The emperor's reply to Gawayne, MA. ll. 1343-44, is represented in M. by ll. 26-27 of p. 161. Gawayne is indignant at the emperor's insolent words. MA. 1344-45. "I had leuer thene alle Fraunce ffyghte with the" The remark of Borce, "leuer than alle Bretayne or burgoyne," is M.'s addition.

MA. 1346-47, "sir Gayous eme to the emperour," becomes in M., "Gaynus nyghe cosyn to the emperour." 1348-51. Euere ware thes Bretouns braggers of olde, &c. 1352. Thane greuede sir Gawayne at his grett wordes. 1354. With his stelyne brande he strykes of hys henede.—In M. the messengers then ride off as quick as possible to the ambush where Lionel and Bedwere wait for them. The ambush is, as above stated, not mentioned in MA. on this occasion, but later on.

1361-63. And of the Romyans Chasede thurgh a champaigne oure cheualrous knyghtez, Tille a cheefe forest.—In MA. 1364 to 1370 Gawayne kills the foremost of the pursuers; in M. this deed is attributed to Borce. In MA. and in M., Borce is then said to kill another knight, described in MA. as "a paynyme of Perse," by M. as "Callyburne." King Arthur's sword is thus styled in MA. 4193, 4230,

4242; M. utilised the name, as he generally calls Arthur's sword "Excalybor."

1382. Thanne sir Feltemour. 1384. . . graythes to sir Gawayne 1385. ffor grefe of Sir Gayous, ... 1386-88. Thane sir Gawayne was glade; agayne hyme he rydez, Wyth Galuth his gude swerde graythely hyme hyttez;

M. reads "Feldenak" for "Feltemour," and does not mention Gawayne's good sword, which he afterwards calls, l. 26, "galatyn."

The Romans then resolve to retreat, continues MA. 1399. Bot thare chazez one oure mene 1400. ffyfe thosande folke appone faire stedes. But, says MA. 1403. Thare ware Bretons enbuschide This statement has evidently misled M. into supposing that the ambassadors left the ambush when going to the Roman camp. 1407. Thane the enbuschement of Bretons brake owte at ones, 1417-18. The Romaynes owte of araye remouede at ones, And rydes awaye in a rowtte, for reddoure it semys! In MA. the "senatour Petyr" stops them and sends them ten thousand men. 1427-28. The Romaynes redyes thane, arrayez thame better, And al to-ruscheez oure mene 1433. Sir Berylle es borne downe and sir Boice takene.—In M. both Berel and Borce are captured. M., evidently forgetting that he has replaced "Berylle" by Lionel, here follows MA.

1439. Than commez sir Idrus 1443. . . . sir Gawayne 1447. I luke neuer one my lorde the dayes of my lyfe; 1470. Wyth Galuth 1483. . . he broghte forthe sir Borce

Encouraged by this success, MA. continues, the British knights grow bolder. Lines 1490-1516 record the fight of sir Idrus with the senator Peter, how he takes him prisoner, and gives him into the charge of Lionel and Lowell, but not, as M. states, that he "in lyke wyse rescowed syre Berel."

In the remainder of the sixth chapter M. deviates considerably from MA. He does not tell how the knights send a message to Arthur informing him that they have slain 50,000 Romans and taken the senator Peter prisoner. Arthur may ask sixty cart-loads of silver for this distinguished prisoner, &c. Arthur is highly pleased with his knights, and declares that the senator shall not be set free before Ewayne, the only one of the British knights who is wounded, has recovered. In MA. this wounded knight is "Gawayne." M. mentions that the number of Romans slain in that fight is "ten thousand."

MA. 1602-8. Bot in the clere daweyng, the dere kyng hym selfene Comaundyd sir Cadore with his dere knyghttes, Sir Cleremus, sir Cleremonde, ... Sir Clowdmur, sir Clegis, to conuaye theis lordes; Sir Boyce, ... sir Berelle Sir Bawdwyne, sir Bryane, and sir

Bedwere the ryche, Sir Raynalde, . . . sir Richere, Rawlaunde childe, To ryde with the Romaynes in rowtte wyth their feres.

M. states, "vnder the garde of syre launcelot with many knyghtes & of syr Cador." In MA., as I shall show below, Lancelot is on this occasion with Arthur.

The seventh chapter, consisting of 40 lines, corresponds to MA. ll. 1621-1945—i.e., 325 lines. These figures at once show to what extent M. has cut down MA.

MA. and M. state that the emperor wishes to prevent the British conducting their prisoners to Paris. In MA. he sends Vtolfe, Ewanydyre, Sextynour of Lyby, and the kyng of Surrye, with many knights and Sarazens, into a wood, on the way which the British have to pass with the prisoners. M. omits the names, and puts instead "certayne knyghtes and prynces;" on his own account he adds with "syxty thousand men." In MA., Cador, the leader of the detachment conducting the prisoners, despatches Clegis, Cleremus, and Cleremownde to examine the country in advance. M. says, "Launcelot sente certayne knyghtes," &c. In MA., Clegis and his companions soon discover the Roman ambush, and see the enemies, l. 1648:

"Houande in the hye by the holte hemmes."

Clegis cries out to them; they answer. A sort of dialogue ensues (1649-1703) between the two parties. The leaders defy and challenge each other. M. omits this incident entirely. Lancelot is told of the ambush, and resolves, with his ten thousand men, to attack the Romans. In MA., Clegis returns to Cador, tells him what he has seen, and advises him not to attack the Romans, but to retreat, as they are too numerous. Cador scorns the idea, and says, among other things, ll. 1719-1723:

"Sir Launcelott salle neuer langhe, that with the kyng lengez,
That I sulde lette my waye for lede appone erthe,
I salle be dede and vndone ar I here dreche,
for drede of any doggesone in 3one dyme schawes!"

MA. thus expressly declares that Lancelot is not with Cador. Cador addresses his men, exhorts them, and bids them to take noble Arthur as their example. He dubs Ioneke, Askanere, Aladuke, Howelle, Hardelfe, Herylle, and Herygalle knights, and orders Wawayne, Vryelle, Bedwere, Raynalde, Richeere, and Rowlandez childe to wait at a place, which he indicates to them, till their assistance is needed. The British then make themselves ready for battle. The signal is given, and a hard and long combat follows (ll. 1756-1880). The British knights are finally victorious; the Romans are utterly defeated and driven back. M. omits most of these incidents, declaring that Lancelot attacks the Romans, fights manfully with them, and kills "many knyghtes and

admyrals of the party of the Romans and sarasyns;" "there was slayne," he continues, "the kynge of lylye," "Aladuke," "herawde," and "heryngdale." It is not quite clear from his statement whether these knights are British or Roman. He evidently formed the names from those above quoted as dubbed by Cadur before the battle—i.e., Aladuke, Howelle or Hardelfe (?), and Herygalle.

According to MA., Cadur gives orders after the battle to look for the dead knights, and send them to Arthur. He himself leads his prisoners to Paris without further obstacles, and quickly returns to Arthur. He tells the king what has happened. Arthur is very sad, and reproaches him, at first, that he has recklessly endangered the lives of his valiant knights, for many of them are killed, as Berelle, Alidoyke of Towelle, Mawrelle of Mauncez and Mawrene, and Meneduke of Mentoeche. Cadur, however, convinces the king that he could not do otherwise, as the prisoners could not well have been led to Paris without a fight. Arthur, at the end, entertains his victorious knights most splendidly in his own tent.

M. modifies this account. Arthur, on receiving news of the battle, hastens to the spot, and, seeing his knights so bravely fighting, embraces them, and declares that there was never any king who possessed such noble knights as he. Sir Cadur then explains how the engagement came about, and mentions that several of his knights, as Beriel, Morys, and Maurel, have been slain. These names are variations of the above-mentioned ones in MA. King Arthur, on hearing this doleful news, weeps, and declares they would not have lost their worship if they had avoided this battle—a fact which "Launcelot and the other" deny, declaring, "For ones shamed maye neuer be recouered."

The 110 lines of which chapter viii. consists correspond to ll. 1950-2360 of MA.—i.e., 411 lines. It is obvious that here also M. had MA. before him, though he treats his subject very freely, and alters greatly.

The "senator whiche escaped fro the bataille" in M. is not mentioned in MA., where, ll. 1949-50, the senators of Rome, when they hear what has happened, communicate the bad news to the emperor and express their fear lest, l. 1956,

"That schalle turne the to tene and torfers for ever;"

but they do not, as M. states, try to dissuade the emperor from any further operations. P. 171, 20-23, are Malory's own invention. Whereas, in M., Lucius calls "the senator" a great coward, in MA. he gets very angry and "With kynge and with kaysere to consayle they wende, Soueraynges of Sarazenez, and senatours manye;" this council of war is omitted in M., who proceeds, "and anone he sende forth a kynge

whiche hyghte syr leomye." This name "leomye" can only refer to MA. 1971, "To sir Leo be comene," &c. Branscheid¹ plausibly conjectures that when the romance was dictated to the scribe, he misunderstood "to sir Leomie come" for "Leo be comene."

Further traces of M.'s account in MA. are ll. 1973-74, Bot owre wyese kyng es warre to wayttene his renkes, And wysely by the woddez voydez his oste. M. omits ll. 1976-2001 of MA. entirely, where the arrangements of Arthur are fully described. In MA. the command of the rearguard is not entrusted, as in M., to Cador. The combination of the names Lancelot, Bors, Kay, Marrok, and Marhaus must be attributed to M., as well as the remark "shalle wayte on our persone."

MA. 2006-8. Bot the emperor onone enters the vale And fyndez sir Arthure with hostez arayede 2011. . . . , and baners displayede. 2014-15. The mosse and the marrasse, the mounttez so hye, With gret multytude of mene, to marre hym in the wayes. 2020-21. Here es no waye i-wys, ne no wytt elles, Bot feghte with oure foo-mene, for flee may we neuer! The address of Lucius to his soldiers, MA. 2032-43, is considerably modified in M. 173, 5-10. The battle which is then fully described in MA. is shortly dismissed by M. 173, 11-19, "For they shold conteyne an hole volume." Branscheid describes MA. ll. 2044-94 as an intercalation not to be found in the Chronicles, but adapted from some French "gas" by Huchown. M. omits this paragraph entirely, though whether the copy of MA. he had did not contain these lines, or whether he acted intentionally, is impossible to say.

With l. 17 of p. 173 the agreement of M. with MA. again becomes close.

MA. 2119-29. Tille the conquerour come he cryede fulle lowde, "I wende no Bretones walde bee basschede for so lytille, ..." He clekys owtte Collbrande Graythes hymne to Golapas, that greuyde moste; Kutttes hymne euene by the knees clenly in sondyre. "Come downe," quod the kyng, "and karpe to thy ferys! Thowe arte to hye by the halfe, I hete the in trouthe! Thow salle be handsomere in hye, with the helpe of my Lorde!" With that stelene brande he strake offe his hede.

P. 173, ll. 27-34, are M.'s own version of the battle between the British and the Romans described in MA. ll. 2130-2241. The fight between Lucius and Arthur is related in ll. 2242-2256 of MA., where Arthur rushes to the assistance of his hard-pressed knights.

MA. 2257-58. Now they ferke to the fyrthe ffor ferdnesse

¹ Anglia, viii. p. 198. Compare, *ibidem*, the occurrence of the name of the emperor "Leo" in the Chronicles, &c.

of oure folke 2259. The floure of oure ferse mene one fferant stede folloves frekly on the frekes, ... 2268-69. Thare myghte mene see chiftaynes, on chalke whitte stede, Choppe doune in the chaas cheualrye noble; 2273-74. They hewed doune haythene mene with hiltede swerde, Be hole hundreth on hye, ...

P. 174, ll. 9-15, of M. are again M.'s own version (compare MA. 2377-2385), by which he replaces the account given in MA. of the conquest of the Roman camp, with rich stores and treasure, by Arthur's knights.

MA. 2290-91. Bot sir Arthure onone ayeres ther-aftre Ewyne to the emperour 2296. The Sowdane of Surry, and certayne kynges. M. expands the "certayne kynges" by stating "the kyng of Egypte and of Ethyope / whiche were two noble kynges with xvij other kynges of dyuerse regyons."

MA. 2297-2305. Sixty of the cheefe senatours of Rome. Thane they bussches and bawmede thaire honourliche kyngis, Sewed theme in sendelle sexti-faulde aftre Lappede them in lede, lesse that they schulde Chawnge or chawffe, 3if thay myghte escheffe; Closed in kystys clene vn-to Rome, With theire baners a-bowne, theire bagis there-vndyre, In whate countre thay kaire that knyghtes myghte kawe Iche kyng be his colours, ...

MA. then tells, l. 2306, &c., how on the second day two senators and certain knights come barefoot to the king and deliver themselves to his mercy. In M. "two" senators "are found."

MA. 2321. I giffe 3owe lyffe and lyme, and leue for to passe, So 3e doo my message menskefully at Rome. 2342. "Here are the kystis" quod the kyng "kaire ouer the mownttez; 2344. The taxe and the trebute 2348-51. Bott byde theme neuere be so bolde, whylles my blode regnes, Efte for to brawlle theme for my brode landez, Ne to aske trybut ne taxe be nakyne tytyle, Bott syche tresoure as this, whilles my tyme lastez." 2359. Of Inglande, of Irelande and alle thir owtt iles;

The remainder of the eighth chapter, p. 175, ll. 5-17, in M. is made up from ll. 2336-39 and 2352-70 of MA. with considerable modifications.

Chapters ix. and x. of M. represent ll. 2387-2751 of MA. Branscheid pronounces ll. 2385-3205 an intercalation by Huchown from other sources than the Chronicles, a statement in harmony with Professor Trautmann's observation (*Anglia*, i. 146) that Huchown's poem, *Morte Arthure*, contains, ll. 2371-3083, a section which might appropriately be called "Awyntyre of Gawayne." This part of MA., which almost exclusively treats of Gawayne's adventures, is worked by M. into his *rifacimento*. The first eight lines of chapter ix. are supposed to give the

matter of MA. 2387-2482, but, except some of the names, it is difficult to find in MA. what M. tells, except the account of a siege. From l. 26 of p. 175 M. again begins to copy MA. faithfully.

MA. 2483. The kynge calles one Florente . . . 2486-88. ffor theme wantes the flesche and fude that theme lykes. Here are fforestez faire appone fele halues, And thedyre feemene are fiede with freliche bestes! Thow salle foonde to the felle, and forraye the mountes; 2493. Thare salle weende to this viage sir Gawayne hymselfene, 2495. Sir Wecharde 2497. Sir Clegis, (sir Clarybalde) sir Clarymownde.

2498-99. The capytayne of Cardyfe . . . and other. 2501. Now ferkes to the fyrthe thees fresche mene of armes, 2503. hillys . . . 2504. Holtis and hare woddes. 2506. on a mede. 2508-10. fulle of swete floures. Thare vnbrydilles theis blode, and baytes theire horses, To the grygynge of the daye, that byrdez gane synge, 2513-16. Thane weendes owtt the wardayne, sir Gawayne hyme selfene . . . wondyrs to seke, Thane was he warre of a wye, wondyre wele armyde, Baytand one a wattire banke by the woode eynis, 2518-20. Enbrassede a brode schelde on a blonke ryche, With birenne ony borne, bot a boye one, Hounes by hym on a blonke, and his spere holdea.

M. somewhat modifies ll. 2520-23 of MA.: He bare gessenande in golde, thre grayhondes (M., "gryffons") of sable, With chapes a cheynes of chalke whytte syluer, A charebocle in the cheefe, chawngawnde of hewes, 2525-28. Sir Gawayne glyftes on the gome with a glade wille! A grete spere fro his grome he grypes in hondes, Gyrdes ewene ouere the streme one a stede ryche, To that steryne in stour, one strenghe thare he houys! 2529-40, the conversation between the two knights, is shortened by M. MA. has "Lorrayne" for "Tuskane."

The fight between Gawayne and Priamus, MA. ll. 2541-80, is almost literally reproduced by M.

MA. 2541-46. Thane theire launces they lachene . . . Laggene with longe speres one lyarde stedes; Cowpene at awntere be krafes of armes, Tille bothe the crowelle speres broustene att ones! Thorowe scheldys they shotte, and scherde thorowe mailles, Bothe schere thorowe schoulders a schaft-monde large! 2550-51. . . . rusches owtte swerdez, Hittes one hellmes fulle hertelyche dynttys, 2556-64. Tille the flawes of fyre flawmes one theire helmes. Thane sir Gawayne was greuede, and gryoghde fulle sore; With Galuthe his gude swerde grymlye he strykes! Clefe the knyghttes schelde clenliche in sondre! Who lukes to the lefte syde . . . myghte see his lyuere! Thane granes the gome fore greefe of his wondys, And gyrdia at sir Gawayne, as he by glentis And awkewarde egerly sore he hym smyttes; 2570. With the venymous swerde a vayne has he towchede! 2575-85. . . . "thow arte towchede! Vs bus haue a blode-bande, or thi ble change,

ffor all the barbouris of Bretayne salle noghte thy blode stawnche! ffor he that es blemeste with this brade brande, blyne schalle he neuer." "3a," quod sir Gawayne, "thow greues me bot lyttille! Thowe wenys to glopyne me with thy gret wordez! Thow trowes with thy talkynge that my harte talmes! Thow be-tydes tourfere or thowe hyene turne, Bot thow telle me tytte, and tarye no lengere, What may staunche this blode that thus faste rynnes." "3ise, I say the sothely, and sekire the my trowthe, 2587-95. With-thy that thowe suffre me, for sake of thy Cryste, To schewe schortly my schrifte," . . . "3is," quod sir Gawayne, ". . . I gyfe the grace, and graunt, thofe thou hafe grefe seruede, With-thy thowe say me sothe what thowe here sekis, Thus sengilly and sulayne alle thi selfe one; And whate laye thow lenes one, layne noghte the sothe, And whate legyaunce, and whare thow arte lorde." "My name es sir Priamus; a prynce es my fadyre 2598-99. He has bene rebelle to Rome, and redene theire landes, Werreyand . . . 2602-7. He es of Alexandire blode, ouerlynge of kynges, The vncler of his ayele, sir Ector of Troye; And here es the kynredene that I of come; And Iudas (M. has "Machabeus") and Iosue, . . . I ame apparaunt his ayere, . . . Of Alexandere (MA. evidently means Alexandria, the city; M. has Alysaunder) and Aufrike, and alle tha owte landes;" Lines 2608-10 are not exactly rendered by M., who evidently misunderstood them.

2612-22. "I was so hawtayne of herte . . . I helda nane my hippe heghte vndire heuene ryche; ffor-thy was I sente hedire with seuene score knyghttez, To a-saye of this werre . . . And I am . . . schamely supprisede, And be awntire of armes owtrayed for euere! Wille thow for knyghthede kene me thy name?" . . . quod sir Gawayne, "knyghte was I neuer! With the kydde conquerour a knafe of his chambyre Has wroghte in his wardrope wynters and zeres, One his longe armour . . . 2628-32. He made me 30mane at 3ole, and gafe me gret gyftes, And c. pounde, and a horse, and harnayse fulle ryche; Gife I hadde to my hele that hende for to serue, I be holpene in haste, I hette the for-sothe!" "Giffe his knafes be syche, his knyghttez are noble! 2636-42. Now fore the krisome that thou kaghte that day thou was crystenede, Whethire thowe be knyghte or knaffe, knawe now the sothe." "My name es sir Gawayne, I graunt the for sothe, Cosyne to the conquerour, he knawes it hym selfene; Kydd in his kalander a knyghte of his chambyre, And rollede the richeste of all the Rounde Table! I ame the dussepere and duke he dubbede with his hondes, 2644-55. Gruche noghte, gude sir, thofe me this grace happene; It es the gifte of Gode, the gree es hys awene!" "Petire!" sais Priamus, "now payes me bettire Thane I of Pronynce warre prynce, and of Paresche ryche! ffore me ware leuer preuely be prykyd to the harte

(M. alters: "I had leuer to haue ben torn with wylde horses") Thane euer any prikkere, had siche a pryse wonnyne! Bot here es herberde at hande, ... Halle bataile one heyghe, take hede 3if the lyke! The duke of Lorryne, ... The doughtyest of Dolfinede, ... The lordes of Lumbardye The garnysone of Godarde 2657-59. Of Sessoyne and Surylande Sarazenes (M. reads "of Southland") They are nowmerde fulle neghe, ... Sixty thowsande and tene for-sothe of sekyre mene of armez; 2660-71. Bot 3if thou hye fro this hethe, it harmes vs bothe, And bot my hurtes be sone holpene, hole be I neuer! Tak heede to this hansemane, that he no horne blawe, Are thowe heyly in haste, beese hewene al to peces; ffor they are my retenuz to ryde where I wylle, Es none redyare renkes regnande in erthe; Be thou raghte with that rowtt, thou rydes no forther, Ne thou bees neuer rawnsonede for reches in erthe!" Sir Gawayne wente or the wathe come, ... With this wortheliche wye, that wondyd was sore; Merkes to the mountayne there oure mene lenges, Baytaynde theire blonkes ther on the brode mede; 2678-79. Thane sir Whycher whas warre thaire wardayne was wondyde, And went to hym wepand, and wryngande his handes; (M. omits Wychard's reflections, and modifies Gawayne's reply.) 2691. "Sais that he has saluez salle softene vs bothene." M. states that both alighted from their horses; in MA. they are gently taken down by Gawayne's companions. 2704-9. A ffoyle of fyne golde they fandte at his gyrdille, That es fulle of the flour of the four welle, That flowes owte of Paradyce Bet it frette on his flesche, thare synnes are entamede, The freke schalle be fische halle with-in fowre howres. (M. reads "within an houre after.") 2710-16. Then their wounds are cleaned and dressed, and they refresh themselves with wine and provisions, and afterwards put on their armour again. 2717-19. Thane tha awntrende men "*as armes!*" askryes, With a claryoune clere, thire knyghtez to-gedyre, Callys to concelle, and of this case tellys:

The remainder of chapter x. in M. varies considerably from MA. ll. 2720-51. A great number of "clene men of armes" is near at hand concealed in an oak wood. Gawayne advises fighting them, and refers to Florent, the leader of the expedition. Florent on his part thinks them too many, and advises a careful retreat. Gawayne insists, and his advice is carried out. 2751. "We salle proue to-daye who salle the prys wyne."

The eleventh and twelfth chapters of M., except the twenty last lines of chapter xii., represent what is related in ll. 2755-3215 of MA. In this last part of his account of Arthur's war against Lucius, M., though still following MA., condenses more than before, modifies the narrative, and repeatedly intercalates episodes of his own devising.

M. chapter xi. corresponds to MA. 2755-57: florent and Floridas, with

fyve score knyghttez, ffolowede in the foreste, and on the way fowndys, flyngande a faste trott, and on the folke dryffes. M. mentions here a "herde of beestes" which these knights drove before them. He probably did not understand the dialect. 2758-60. Than felewes fast to oure folke wele a fyve hundreth, Of freke mene to the fyrthe, appone fresche horses; One sir Feraunt be-fore, apone a fayre stede. M. calls him "syr Feraunt of spayne." As he is never thus called in MA., M. must have added this on his own account, perhaps induced by "Famacoste" (MA. 2761) in Cyprus, which, as he thought, belonged to Spain.

2762-65. He flenges to sir Florent, and pristly he kryes,—“Why flees thow, falls knyghte?” . . . Thane sir fflorent was fayne, and in fewter castys; . . . to fferant he rydys, 2768. ffulle butt in the frounte he flysches hyme euene, 2771. And brustene his neke-bone . . . 2772-2810 are condensed by M. into four lines, p. 179, 18-21. 2811. When sir Priamous, that prince, persayuede theire gamene, 2813. He wente to sir Gawayne, and sais hym these wordes, 2815. “They are with Sarazenes ouer-sette, mo thane seuene hundreth, 2818. With a soppe of thi mene suppowelle theym ones.” 2819. “I grouche noghte,” quod Gawayne, “the gree es thaire awene! 2823-24. I wille noghte stire with my stale halfe a stede lenghe, Bot they be stedde with more stuffe thane one 3one stede houys.” 2825. Thane sir Gawayne was warre, with-owttyne the wode . . . 2829. The erle Antele the olde . . . M. has here “Ethelwold;” it is probable that he, or the scribe of his copy of Huchown’s poem before him, read “Antele the olde” as “Ethelwolde.” 2833. Than the duke of Lorryne . . . With dowbille of the Duchemene . . . M. contracts these two proper names into one, and writes, “the duk of duchemen.” 2836. Come prekkande be-fore with Priamous knyghttez. 2837-2850 are omitted by M. 2851. Thane gud Gawayne, . . . Alle with glorious gle he gladdis his knyghtes; 2856. Bees noghte baiste of 3one boyes. . . . 2859. . . . the felde schalle be owrs. 2860-82 are condensed by M. into five lines. 2883. “Peter!” sais Gawayne, “this gladdes myne herte! 2887-88. Thay are fewere one ffelde than thay were fyrste nombirde, Be fourtty thousande in faythe, for alle theyre faire hostes.” M.’s statement about “Inbaunce the geaunt” and “syre Gherard a knyght of walys” is not to be traced in MA. There is, 2890, a “Iolyan of Iene, a geante fulle howge” mentioned, who is said to be killed by “one sir Ierante,¹ a justis of Walis.” Also the name of “Gerarde” occurs, but under other circumstances—2896. “And Gerarde es jocunde, and joyes hym the more.” 2897-2915 are related by M. in one line, p. 180, 9.—2915-19. Thane

¹ Branscheid’s remark, Append. III., that Ierante, l. 2890, and Gerarde, l. 2896, are the same person, seems to me very doubtful.

sir Priamous preses to his penowne, ... Reuertede it redily, and a-waye rydys To the ryalle rowte of the Rownde Table. 2920-47 are omitted in M. 2948. Thane sir Gawayne was grefede, and grypys his spere, 2950. Metes the maches of Mees, and melles hym thorowe. M. makes out of "maches of Mees" the "Marquys of Moysses land," killed, according to him, by Priamus. 2952-53. Bot on Chastelayne, a childe warde to sir Wawayne (is slain). The remaining nine lines of chapter xi. and the first line of chapter xii. represent, with considerable alterations and contractions, ll. 2962-3031 of MA. [The episode of the christening of Priamus and his enrolment among the knights of the Round Table, p. 180, 27-35, is Malory's own invention, and is not recorded in MA.]

3032. The kynge than to assawte he sembles his knyghtes. 3034. . . . and skayles the wallis. 3044-46. Thane the duches hire dyghte with damesels ryche, The cowntas of Crasyne with hire clere maydyns (M. writes "Clarysyn the countesse") Knelis downe thare the kyng honede, 3050-58. "We be-seke yow That 3e safe vs to-daye, for sake of 3oure Criste! Send vs some socoure, and saughte with the pople, Or the cete be sodaynly with assawte wonnene!" He weres his vesere with vowe noble; With vesage vertounous, ... Meles to hir myldly with fulle meke wordes,— "Salle no mysse do 3ow, ma dame, that to me lenges; I gyf 3ow chartire of peas, and 3oure cheefe maydens, 3060-65. The duke is in dawngere He salle idene the fulle wele, dout 3ow noghte elles." Thane sent he one iche a syde to certayne lordes, ffor to leue the assawte, the cete was 3oldene; With the erle (M. has "duke") eldeste sone he sent hym the kayes, And seside the same nyghte, be sent of the lordes. 3066-67. The duke to Douere es dyghte, ... To duelle in dawngere and dole the dayes of hys lyue. 3068-3083 are told later on by M. 3088-91. He deuysede and delte to dyuerse lordes, A dower for the duches and hir dere childire. Wroghte wardaynes by wytte to welde alle the londez, That he had wonnene of werre, thorowe his wise knyghtes; Thus in Lorayne he lenges as lordes in his awene, Settes lawes in the lande, as hym leefte thoghte. 3094-3111 are compressed by M. into one sentence: "& after he took his iourney toward Rome." 3112-14. Sir fflorent and sir ffloidas than fowndes before, With ffreke mene of ffrance welle a fyve hundreth; To the cete vn-sene thay soghte the gayneste. M. writes "to the cyte of vrbyne;" the proper name is most probably a misreading of "vn-sene," as no name of that description occurs in MA., but it is just as likely that the scribe of MA. misread "unseene" for Vrbine, as Vrbino is a city in central Italy, capital of Pesaro and Urbino. 3115-17. And sett an enbuschement, als theme selfe lykys. Thane ischewis owt of that cete, fulle sone be the morne Slale discourours, skyftes theire

horses. 3124-25. Thane brekes oure bushement, and the brigge wynnes, Brayedez in-to the burghe with baners displayede.—M. hereafter relates the contents of MA. ll. 3067-83, which in his copy of MA. very likely followed here.—3074-75. The knyghte houys on a hylle, be-helde to the wallys, And saide, "I see be 3one syngne the cyte es oures!" M., confounding l. 3125 with these two lines, misunderstands them entirely. The "syngne" is a banner hoisted by the inhabitants as a token of their readiness to surrender the town, and Florent, not Arthur, notices it from a hill. (Comp. also ll. 3072-73.) 3076-83. Sir Arthure enters anone with hostes arayede, Euene at the vndrone etles to lenge. In iche leuere on lowde the kynge did crye, Of payne of lyf and lym and lesynge of londes, That no lele ligemane, that to hym lonngede, Sulde lye be no ladysse, ne be no lele maydyns, Ne be no burgesse, wyffe, better ne werse; Ne no hiernez myse-bide, that to the burghe longede.—3128-29. Now es the conquerour in Combe, and his courte holdes With-in the kyde castelle, . . . (M. omits "Combe" = Como.) 3131-32. Comfourthes the carefulle with knyghtly wordez; Made a captayne kene a knyghte of hys awene; 3134-3141. The syre of Melane herde saye the cete was wonnene, And send to Arthure sertayne lordes, Grete sommes of golde, . . . Be-soghte hyme as souerayne to socoure the pople, And saide he wolde sothely be sugette for euer, And make hyme seruece and suytte for his sere londes, ffor plesaunce of Pawnce, and of Pawnte Tremble,¹ ffor Pyse, and for Pauy he profers fulle large; M. omits Pyse, writes (here and ll. 327, 352, MA. has the same spelling) "port of tremble;" and finally reads for "of Pawnce" "petersaynt. Comp. l. 352: "Bathe of Petyrsande," and of Pys, and of the Pounte Tremble."¹

3144. And ilke a 3ere for Melane a melione of golde 3147. . . . whilles his lyffe lastis. 3150-51. In-to Tuskane he tourne . . . akes townnes fulle tyte . . . 3161. . . . Spolett. . . . 3164. . . . Viterbe . . . 3165. Avissely in that vale he vetailles his biernez 3167. And one the vicounte londez he visez longe. M. makes of "the vale of Viterbe" the vale of "vyceconte;" it is, however, also possible that l. 3169, "In the Vertennone vale, the vines i-mangez," of which he uses the latter half, "among the vynes," suggested to him "vycecounte." MA. does not state, as does M., that Arthur sent to the senators "to wete whether they wold knowe hym for theyr lord." 3176-77. Bot one

¹ M. reads "Porte Tremble," MA. "Pawnte Tremble." The latter spelling is the more likely; the town in question is Pontremoli, in the province of Massa e Carrara, on the slope of the Apennines.

² Pawnce may probably be written for "Ponte," a town in Italy near Turin, at the confluence of the rivers Orca and Saona.

MA. reads "Petyrsande"; M., more correctly, "petersaynt." Pietrasanta, a town in Tuscany, is meant.

a Seterdaye at none, as seuenyghte thare-aftyre, The konyngeste cardynalle 3179. Prayes hym for the pes, and profyrs fulle large, 3181-85. Be-soghte hym of surrawns Bot a seuenyghte daye to thay ware alle assemblede, And they schulde sekerly hym see the Sonondaye ther-aftyre, In the cete of Rome, as soueraynge and lorde; And crowne hyme kyndly with krysomede hondes,—M. then profits by Arthur's statement, ll. 3213-15, And at the Crystynmesse daye be crowned ther-aftyre; . . . and holde my Rownde Table as me beste lykes.

The end of the fifth book (M. p. 182, ll. 10-38) is Malory's own invention. He states that the "Romaunce telleth" that King Arthur was on a certain day crowned at Rome, but the romance tells nothing of the sort,¹ nor does it record the fact that "the duchye of Lorryne" is given to Pryamous as reward for his assistance. /M. suppresses the last part of MA., ll. 3216-4346, in order to replace it in his twenty-first book by the version of Harl. MS. 2252, "Le Mort Arthur." /

Having thus discussed at full length the relationship of the five first books of "Le Morte Darthur" (i.e., that portion of the compilation which is drawn from various stages of the romance of Merlin) to their French and English sources, I think I have shown with sufficient clearness the style of Sir Thomas Malory's workmanship. I have worked through the remaining books of "Le Morte Darthur" in the same minute manner, but, in view of the necessity of placing some limit upon my work, which already exceeds, by the whole of this present volume, the size originally estimated, I shall only state the result of my investigations in the sections which deal with the "Lancelot," the "Tristan," and the "Prophecies of Merlin."

¹ Unless we assume that Malory, besides a copy of "La Morte Arthure," had a French source, which is by no means impossible.

II. THE "LANCELOT" OR THE LATER HISTORY OF KING ARTHUR.



THE second branch of Arthurian romance represented in Sir Thomas Malory's "Le Morte Darthur" is the "Lancelot." This romance in its vulgate form is generally, though most probably wrongly, attributed to Gautier Map, and consists of four various parts united in a whole—namely, (1) The "Lancelot" proper, dealing not only with the life and adventures of Sir Lancelot, but embodying the adventures of Gawayne, Agravayne, and various other knights of the Round Table, and forming the first and second parts; (2) The Quest of the Holy Grail; and (3) La Mort au roi Artus. The whole is sometimes also called "Le livre d'Artus."

As I have already mentioned in the Introduction (p. 8), there are no less than twelve MSS. and three printed editions of this romance at the British Museum, and at least as many in the Bibliothèque Nationale.

In the MSS. the whole matter is generally divided into the four above-mentioned parts; sometimes only into three, which unite the first and second parts, as, *e.g.*, MS. Add. 10293. The text of these MSS., which belong partly to the thirteenth, partly to the fourteenth centuries, varies considerably in details of style and phraseology, but all relate the same adventures.

The text of the three editions printed at Rouen and Paris 1488, at Paris 1494 and 1513, is, save for orthographical differences, identical, and varies from the text of the MSS., though relating the same adventures, in the same way as the MSS. vary from one other.

As the MSS. are not all complete—in fact, only two, Royal 19 C xiii. (thirteenth century) and Add. 10293-94 (fourteenth century), contain the whole of the four parts, whereas all the rest only give portions—it is difficult to find in any of them a decisive passage for collation. I

being the handiest and most accessible. The portions of "Le Morte Darthur" to be compared with the 1513 edition are these:—

A. Malory, Book vi.: (a) chapters i.-vii.; Lancelot, ed. 1513, vol. ii. ff. 98-ca. 103;—(β) chapters vii.-xi.;¹ ed. vol. ii. ff. 146-ca. 150;—(γ) chapters xi.-xvii. ? .

B. Book xi.: (a) chapters i.-iii.; ed. vol. ii. ff. 105-107;—(β) chapters iv.-vi.; ed. vol. iii. ff. 24-35;—(γ) chapters vii.-xiii.; ed. ff. 67-80.

C. Book xii.: ed. vol. iii. ff. 80.

D. Books xiii.-xvii.: ed. vol. iii. ff. 81-143.

E. Books xviii.-xxi.—a. Book xviii.: (a) chapters i.-viii.; ed. vol. iii. ff. 143-59;—(β) chapters ix.-xx.; ed. vol. iii. 159-64;—(γ) chapters xxi.-xxv.; ? b. Book xix.: (a) chapters i.-v.; ed. vol. ii. ff. 1-16;—(β) chapters vi.-ix.; *ibid.*, ff. 17-23;—(γ) chapters x.-xii.; ? c. Le Mort Arthur, Harl. MS. 2252: (a) book xx.; ed. vol. iii. ff. 164-189;—(β) Book xxi.; ed. vol. iii. ff. 190-202.

A. THE "LANCELOT" PROPER.

a. THE SIXTH BOOK.

a. CHAPTERS I-VII.²



AFTER mentioning (book iv. chapter i.), in accordance with the "Suite de Merlin," that, when Merlin and Nivienne visit Benoye, Queen Elayne, the wife of King Ban, showed them the young Lancelot, whose "fyrst name was Galahad," and after the reference to him, in accordance with the English metrical romance "La Morte Arthure," in chapter vii. of book v., Malory entirely skips his early life, and, without even mentioning his coming to Arthur's court, introduces him in the beginning of the sixth book with a few phrases of a very general character, not only as a knight of the Round Table, but as the knight who—

"in al turnementys and Iustes and dedes of armes for lyf and deth passed al other knyghtes / and at no tyme he was neuer ouercome / but yf it were by treson or enchauntement / so syr Launcelot encreaced soo merueyllously in worship and in honour / therfor is he the fyrst knyght that the frensshe book maketh mencyon of after kynge Arthur come fro rome / wherfore quene

¹ In order to avoid any misunderstanding, I might point out that Caxton misprints, on p. 199, chapter "xii." for "xi."

² Lancelot, ed. 1513, vol. ii. ff. 98-ca. 103.

gweneuer had hym in grete favour aboue al other knyghtes . and in certayne he loued the quene ageyne aboue al other ladyes & damoyssels of his lyf / "

Though it cannot be denied that these few lines remind the reader versed in the early part of Lancelot's life of much therein, they convey hardly anything to the reader unacquainted with the events they hint at; and the supposition that Malory possessed no source for the early life of this most famous of all Arthur's knights can alone account for his not giving, at least summarily, some indications about him, and relating his arrival at Arthur's court.

I fail to see what Malory means by the French book which mentions Lancelot first after Arthur's return from his Roman expedition; it cannot be the "Lancelot," nor is it the "Merlin," in which Lancelot only plays a secondary part; the phrase seems introduced in order to make the abrupt introduction less noticeable.

I shall now proceed to compare the adventures as told in "*Le Morte Darthur*" with the corresponding portions in the *Prose-Lancelot*. For reasons already stated at the end of the *Merlin* section, I abstain from an abstract of the contents, and refer the reader to the detailed analysis of this romance by M. Paulin Paris in his work on the romances of the Round Table.¹

I.² After these general remarks, Malory relates how Lancelot, after having "rested hym longe with play and game," decides upon starting in search of adventures, and requests his "neuewe" (!) Lionel to accompany him. The portion of the *Prose-Lancelot*³ in which these incidents are told differs much, and appears in quite another connection; it forms part of the second part of the "Lancelot" proper, and occurs on fol. 98, &c., of the edition of 1513.

In the P.L., Lancelot and Lionel do not start from Arthur's court after a period of repose, nor does Lancelot request his cousin to go with him in search of adventures. Lancelot has just overcome "le duc Karles" and after having passed a pleasant day with the duke's five sons, and induced them to set free their prisoners, Gaheriet, Guereschies, and Agrauan, he continues his way with Lionel. After riding several days without finding any adventures, they at last come to a great wood. P.L. and M.⁴ agree in stating that one day, when the heat is very great and they are exhausted, they resolve to rest—in P.L. "*desoubz l'ombre dung perron*,"⁴ in M. in the shadow of "a grete Appyl tree." The apple-tree is evidently the older of the two versions, for, later on, in

¹ Paulin Paris, "*Les Romans de la Table ronde*," Paris, 1868-77, 5 vols.

² *Lancelot*, ed. 1513, vol. ii. ff. 98, &c.

³ M. is henceforth substituted for Malory.

⁴ MS. Royal 19 C xiii. f. 187^a: "*sur lumbre dun pomer*"; MSS. Add. 10293, f. 280^c: "*desoz lumbre dun pomier*."

reference to this fact, P.L. gives Lancelot's words "ie me couchay soubz lombre dung pommier." Evidently the source from which were derived P.L. and the MS. from which M. drew had "pommier," which was altered by the scribe or printer into "perron."

In P.L., when Lancelot is asleep, Lionel sees two knights pass at great speed with a damsel; in M., three knights. In both versions a very strong knight follows in pursuit. In P.L. he overcomes the two knights and carries off the damsel; in M. he overcomes the three knights, ties them, with their bridles, to their horses, and thus carries them off with him. In P.L. the damsel cries for help, and thus induces Lionel to follow the strong knight, without awaking Lancelot; in M., the shameful treatment of the three knights is his motive. M. simply states: "& thoughte not to awake syr launcelot;" P.L. reads: "si ne ose lancelet esueillir pour ce quil ne tenist pour couard & riens ne doubtoit autant comme luy."

When the strong knight has overcome Lionel, in P.L. he mounts the damsel on Lionel's horse, throwing Lionel before him over the neck of his own horse; in M., Lionel is tied to his own horse in the same manner as the three knights, and all four are led away by the strong knight to his castle, where, according to M., they are undressed and beaten with thorns, an incident only told later on in P.L.

II. The second chapter in M. and the following paragraph in P.L. speak of Ector de marys (ed. 1513: hector des mares); whilst in P.L., in continuation of events previously told, Ector sets out from the castle "de radigel," where he has overcome "marigart le roux," and delivered a cousin-german (damsel) from some lions, and comes into the forest "que len appelloit terriquen;" in M., in accordance with the modifications of chapter i., Ector, on hearing that Lancelot has started in search of adventures, is angry, and, resolving to follow him, starts from Arthur's court. In M., Ector meets "a man was lyke a foster," of whom he asks if any adventures are to be found in the neighbourhood. The man tells him there is near by a strong castle near a ford. Before the castle stands a fine tree, on which hang many shields and a "bacyn of coper and latoen." He has but to strike the basin and he will hear wonderful tidings. In P.L., Lancelot meets a damsel crying, who tells him, on being asked the reason of her lament, that she saw a little while before a good knight, Lionel, tied under his horse's belly and led away by a most disloyal and felon knight, Terriquen, who is lord of the strong castle close by. Terriquen had Lionel stripped at his castle and beaten with "espines poingnans." In spite of the damsel's warning, Ector determines to fight Terriquen. He soon comes to a strong and lofty tower, before which is a fountain, consisting of a basin of red marble and a vessel "de plombs," into which a silver pipe throws water.

Three pine-trees almost overshadow the fountain with their branches. On them hang forty "glaives," forty-five shields, and five spears. Ector recognises the shields of "aggraul, Sagremors, Keux, gossentin d'estrangort, and brandelis." Behind the fountain he sees a little table with the names of the bearers of these shields, and the mention that Terriquen conquered them in the twenty-fourth year of Arthur's reign. All these details are either omitted by, or strongly modified in, M. Common to both M. and P.L. is the incident that Ector waters his horse—in the former at the river, in the latter at the fountain. In M., in order to see Terriquen, he strikes the basin; in P.L. this incident is not mentioned, but I am inclined to see some connection between the vessel "de plombs" at the fountain and the "bacyn of coper and latoen." Both versions, then, agree that Terriquen, whose name as "Turquyne" is mentioned in M. for the first time on this occasion, overcomes Ector, carries him off to his castle, and only consents to spare his life if he vow to remain his life-long prisoner. Ector refuses, and here M. has the incident, mentioned on a former occasion by P.L., of Terriquen's ordering his people to strip Ector and beat him with thorns. The conversation of Ector with his fellow-prisoners differs save in two points—the inquiry after Lancelot, and the knight's declaration that Lancelot alone can deliver them—in the two versions, being much more detailed in P.L.

III. In the next chapter in M., and in the following paragraph in P.L., Lancelot is spoken of after Lionel had left him sleeping under the apple-tree. (In P.L. neither "pommier" nor "perron" is mentioned.) In P.L. "une belle dame qui estoit royne de la terre de sovestan" passes by him on her way to "norgales" through "sorelois." Four knights carry "vng drap dessus elle sur quatre lances pour le chault que mal ne luy fist." Seeing a horse grazing, this queen conjectures the presence of some errant knight, and calls her "deux dames morgain la fee et sibil le enchanteresse." (The three ladies are said to be, after "la dame du lac," the greatest sorceresses alive, and therefore always keep company together.) In M. four queens pass by, whose names are disclosed later on. The canopy carried by four knights to protect the ladies from the scorching sun is also mentioned, but their attention is attracted by the "neighing" of a great horse. In P.L. the queen and her ladies, seeing the sleeping Lancelot, whom they evidently do not recognise, are so much struck by his beauty that they think he is no earthly being, "mais chose fee," and each wishes to obtain him as "peramour." In M. the four queens recognise Lancelot at once, and each of them declares she must have his love. The contest which follows between the queen and her ladies in P.L., between the four queens in M., is somewhat different, but in both versions Morgain's advice at last

prevails, to enchant Lancelot, and carry him on a horse-litter to the castle "de la charette" (M., du charyot).¹

On arriving at the castle Lancelot is put, according to P.L., "en vne belle chambre et forte," and there the enchantment is taken off him. In M. he is put into a cold chamber, where after some time the spell passes of itself; on awaking, Lancelot remembers in P.L. that he slept under a tree, and exclaims: "Sainte marie ou suis ie / ie me couchay soubz lombre dung pommier."

Both in P.L. and M. a damsel brings him some food, specified in the latter as "souper." The reflections which Lancelot makes in P.L. on awaking from his spell occur in M., though somewhat modified, during the conversation with the damsel.

On the next morning the queen and her two ladies according to P.L., according to M. the four queens (who are named on this occasion, Morgan le fay of the land of Gorre, the quene of Northgalys, the quene of Eestland, and the quene of the oute yles), come to Lancelot, telling him where he is, and that he will remain their prisoner unless he makes up his mind to select one of them as his paramour. In M., as above mentioned, Lancelot is known, and his love to Queen Gueneuer is referred to, but not so in P.L. The answer of Lancelot to the women's proposal, though negative in both versions, differs with the circumstances.

IV.-VI. The fourth and following chapters afford one of the most instructive examples of the way in which the text of these romances was modified in the course of reproduction.

In P.L. the damsel who daily supplies Lancelot with food finds that he grows sadder and sadder, and hardly touches anything. On the fourth day some knights return to the castle from a tournament, and speak about it so loud that Lancelot can hear their conversation from his prison; this increases his sadness still further. The damsel, finding him in this state, is overcome by compassion, and asks his name. He tells her his name, and adds that he is the most unfortunate knight living; misfortune had followed him since he was in his cradle. When the damsel hears that the prisoner is Lancelot, she is highly pleased, and declares, if he will do her a service, she will deliver him out of prison.

In M. the damsel comes to him "at the noone" of the same day on which Lancelot refused the four queens, and, as in accord with former events she knows who he is, at once offers to release him, on condition he is ready to do her a service. The knights returning from the tournament and some other details are not mentioned.

¹ In P.L. the "chasteau de la charrette" is specified by the sentence "qui fut ainsi appele pource qui Lancelot y passa en la charrette celluy iour que meleagant emmenoit la roine genieure au Royaulme de gorre," for the incidents which in M. are only told in the nineteenth book occur in P.L. at a much earlier period.

In both versions Lancelot is ready to do the service the damsel requires, but service and damsel are different in the two versions.

In P.L. the damsel tells Lancelot that her father, "le duc de rochedon," many years ago made war against the king of "sorestan," the husband of the queen in whose castle they are at present. After a long struggle peace was at last arranged between the two antagonists on condition that the damsel, who was then fifteen, should marry a grandson of the "duc" (evidently a mistake for "king"), six years old. Her parents died soon after this treaty, and the king of "sorestan" seized all her land. Her intended husband, who had gone a week before Christmas to Arthur's court, was slain in a forest. She then asked the queen to restore her her land, but was refused. The day before yesterday a brother of the queen asked for her hand, and obtained it and all her lands from the queen against her will. The wedding is to take place next Sunday week. The damsel detests the queen's brother, and refuses to marry him. The favour she asks from Lancelot is to appear on the wedding day, and prevent the ceremony from taking place.¹ At night, when all are asleep, the damsel gives him a horse and arms and lets him out of the castle. When departing, he asks her if she knows about what tournament the knights were talking. She tells him it is one between King Baudemagus and the King of "norgalles," which took place near by in a meadow. King Baudemagus had the worst at the last meeting, having too few knights; but they re-assemble on Thursday "*et il ny auoyt que vng iour entre deux*," from which remark it is evident that the first meeting took place on a "Tewesday," a fact, though in itself of little importance, of some significance in the present case, as we shall soon see.

In M., the damsel, who is the daughter of King Baudemagus, tells Lancelot that "the last tewesdaye past" (compare P.L.) her father was defeated at a tournament against the King of Northgales, owing to the presence of the knights of Arthur's court; the fight is to be renewed on "tewesday next coming," and the service the damsel requires from Lancelot is to help her father on this occasion against the King of Northgales. They agree to meet at an "Abbey of whyte monkes" ten miles distant.

In P.L., King Baudemagus' daughter plays a part in the episode (referred to in the note at p. 182) of Gueneuer's abduction by Meleagant, for she it is who delivers Lancelot out of the prison in the strong tower where her brother Meleagant has put him. M. on this occasion, in the nineteenth book, as I shall point out, does not state that the damsel who then delivers Lancelot out of Meleagant's prison is the latter's sister; but here he omits the daughter of the "duc de rochedon,"

¹ The end of this episode is told in P.L. at a very much later part of the romance.



giving her part to the daughter of Baudemagus, mentioned a little farther on in P.L., as we shall see directly.

When, according to P.L., Lancelot has left the damsel, he rides for some time, until he comes to a pavilion. Finding nobody in it, he pastures his horse, enters, blows out the candles, and goes to bed. After a while the owner of the pavilion returns. Finding his pavilion dark, he thinks his sweetheart has returned in his absence, and goes to bed without more ado. Under the impression that his sweetheart is in the bed, he begins to embrace and kiss Lancelot, but soon perceiving his mistake, and thinking that Lancelot has dishonoured his sweetheart, he throws him out of bed and bitterly reproaches him. When Lancelot realises his situation, he seizes the knight by the throat and shakes him off, gets up, and takes hold of his sword. The knight, seeing this, flees out of the pavilion; Lancelot follows him, overtakes and kills him, and then returns to the pavilion, and sleeps until the birds awake him on the next morning. He rides away without knowing what knight he has slain.

The same incident occurs in M., but the *dénouement* is different. Lancelot does not kill the knight, who surrenders himself, seriously wounded, to Lancelot's mercy, tells him that the pavilion belonged to him, and that he was wont to await his sweetheart there. Lancelot then takes him back to the pavilion, stanches his blood, and dresses his wounds. While this is going on a lady arrives, who begins to lament on seeing "her lord Belleus" grievously wounded. All is explained to her; she asks who Lancelot is, and, on being told, declares she has often seen him, and requests him, in atonement of the wrong he has done to her love, to "cause hym to be made knyght of the round table" on his return to King Arthur. Lancelot consents, and bids them come "vnto the courte the next hyhe feest."

In P.L., Lancelot after riding some time meets four squires leading four white coursers, whilst others follow with a knight's accoutrements. On being asked whose outfit they carry, the squires tell him that all belongs to "gallehodin filz gallehault le seigneur des loingtaines isles," who is going on the morrow to help his "ayeul," the King of "norgalles," in a tournament. When Lancelot has left the squires, he hears a bell ring, follows its sound, and comes to an "abbaye de moynes blancs." He dismounts, enters, and finds there the sister of Meleagant, the same who delivered him out of "la douloureuse prison." Both are highly pleased. The damsel tells Lancelot she has come to this abbey because she wishes to see a tournament which is going to take place on the next day between her father King Baudemagus and the King of Northgales. When Lancelot tells her that he also came for this tournament, she requests him to help her father. M., as I have already mentioned, having attributed the part of the daughter of the duke "de rochedon"

to Meleagant's sister, and having substituted, for the service the former damsel required from him, that of Baudemagus' daughter, now makes Lancelot arrive at the Abbey of White Monks, not by chance, but by appointment.

In P.L. the damsel then invites Lancelot to stay with her, and sends a valet to her father, who stays at some distance "*au chateau de la herpe*." When Baudemagus hears that Lancelot has come to his daughter he is delighted. With a view of hiding Lancelot's presence as much as possible, he resolves to go secretly to the abbey, and chooses only four of his best knights to accompany him. When Baudemagus and Lancelot meet, they are greatly pleased, and try to outdo each other in courtesy. Baudemagus repeats his daughter's request that Lancelot should help him in the morrow's tournament, and Lancelot is ready, provided his name be disclosed to nobody. The next afternoon Baudemagus returns to his quarters, leaving three of his knights with Lancelot, to be his companions at the tournament.

The three knights are also mentioned in M., but many details told in P.L. are altered—*e.g.*, Lancelot tells Baudemagus of his imprisonment by the four queens, his deliverance by the king's daughter, his setting out with Lionel; Baudemagus tells Lancelot he had the worst at the last tournament, thanks to Mador de la porte, Mordred, and Gahalan-tyne. The meeting of the daughter of Baudemagus with the daughter of the King of Northgalis and their conversation in P.L. do not occur in M. Both P.L. and M. state that Lancelot and his three knights have white shields, and go to a wood. The number of knights present at the tournament differ widely in the two versions: in P.L., "*Si estoient assemblez que dune part que d'autre plus de dix mille*;" in M., "*eyght score helmes*" of the King of Northgales and "*four score*" of Baudemagus.

The three knights of King Arthur previously mentioned by M. are now also named in P.L.; but while M. says twelve knights of Baudemagus and six of the other party are killed in the first attack, P.L. only states that Baudemagus' party is driven back. The conversation between the daughters of the two kings who witness the tournament from "*scaffoldis*" as it occurs in P.L. is not mentioned in M.

VII. pp. 191-192, 25. The doings of Lancelot at the tournament are the same in both versions, save for slight modifications, the most prominent feature being the overcoming of Mordred [Mordrec], Gahalan-tyne [Gallehodin], and Mador de la porte by Lancelot. But while in P.L. the King of Northgales, utterly defeated, takes to flight, and the fight has apparently a serious character, in M. the jousting is at last abandoned, and the "*gree*" given to Baudemagus. In P.L., Lancelot does not go with Baudemagus to his castle, but rides straight away

from the tournament in the pursuit of adventures. In M. he goes to Baudemagus' castle, stays the night there, is well entertained, and starts in the morning with the object of finding his "broder" Lyonel. M. is not very particular as to the different degrees of parentage: Lionel is sometimes Lancelot's nephew, sometimes his cousin, and sometimes his brother. Before starting, Lancelot assures the king's daughter that he will be always at her service as a true knight should.

B. CHAPTERS VII.-XI.¹

In P.L., after Lancelot's departure from the tournament, which occurs in the edition of 1513 on fol. 103 verso, there follow over forty folios before M. takes up the narrative again on fol. 146 verso. It is by no means impossible that Lancelot's passing the night with Baudemagus is a simple addition either by M. or by the compiler of the source whence he drew his information, intended to link together the two sets of adventures, which belong to quite different portions of the original.

VII. p. 192, 26-IX. p. 195, 19. In P.L., Lancelot, in search of Hector and Lionel, has met with Boors and Ywain and four other knights at the "chastel du trespas." Lancelot proposes that each of the six knights should ride forth by himself, and all should be back to the castle "a la feste de toussainz." His proposal is accepted, and the knights depart in different directions. Lancelot rides many days "sans nulle aduventure trouuer qui a compter face," arrives on the fifteenth day in the forest where he had lost Lionel, and there meets a damsel.

At this point M. takes the narrative up again, and adds that the damsel's palfrey is white; whereas, in P.L., Lancelot at once asks the damsel if she knows anything about Lionel, according to M., he asks her if she knows of any adventures. The answer the damsel gives is in both cases in accordance with the question: in P.L. she has heard of Lionel, and knows him to be prisoner of a knight in the forest; in M., Lionel's name is mentioned neither by Lancelot nor by the damsel, but the latter, after hearing Lancelot's name, tells him of a very strong knight near by in the forest. In both versions this knight is Turquyne or Terriquant,² and P.L. adds (what in M. occurs only on a later occasion) that he is the brother of "karados le grant le seigneur de la douloureuse tour," whom Lancelot has killed for the sake of Gawayne. The damsel leads Lancelot to the seat of Turquyne.

The descriptions of this place, being a repetition of the former ones,

¹ Lancelot, ed. 1513, vol. ii. ff. 146-ca. 150.

² On the previous occasion the name is spelled "terriquen" in P.L.

deviate again in M. and P.L. in the points mentioned at p. 180, save that P.L. on this occasion, instead of three pine-trees, only mentions one—viz., "*Car moult lui sembloit belle pour ce quelle estoit couverte de branches / & de feuilles de vng pin verdoyant.*" P.L. also adds the names of several knights whose shields hang on the tree, and some remarks are made upon Lionel's shield.

While Lancelot and the damsel are talking, Turquyne arrives, leading, according to P.L., a grievously wounded knight on a horse with him. "There," says the damsel to Lancelot, "you can see '*quel dyable il est,*' and how he puts the knights into his prison."

In M., Lancelot first waters his horse, as Ector had done previously, then strikes the basin furiously, and rides for some time to and fro before the manor gates. At length Turquyne arrives, also with a fettered and wounded knight, who is at once described as Gaheryse, the brother of Gawayn. The words Lancelot and Turquyne interchange and the details of the battle between them agree closely in the two versions, and end in both with the defeat and death of Turquyne.

IX. p. 195, 20, to XII. p. 199, 35. In P.L. the damsel says to Lancelot: "*Sire cheualier suyuez moy si comme vous mauez promys;*" in M., Lancelot says to the damsel: "*damoyssel I am redy to goo with yow where ye wylle haue me.*" In both versions Lancelot has no horse, and wishes first to deliver the prisoners, but the damsel bids him take Gaheryse's horse and tell him to set the knights free. The dialogue between Lancelot and Gaheryse in P.L. is omitted by M., nor are the names of the various knights quoted by M. mentioned in P.L. The remainder of the ninth chapter agrees in both versions, save that in P.L. "*trois varletz amenoient trois sommiers chargez de venoison,*" whereas in M. there comes "*a foster with foure horses lade with fatte veneson.*" The long discussion between Gaheryse and the other knights in P.L. is not in M. In the former version the delivered knights stay one week; in the latter, only one day. M. does not mention, as does P.L., that at length, when Gaheryse is healed, the knights exchange Terriquen's castle for horses, though not very good ones. In P.L., Gaheryse tells them, on parting, they shall find Lancelot at All Saints at the "*chastel de trespas,*" whereas in M. he bids them await Lancelot at the court of King Arthur. In the tenth chapter M., in accordance with P.L., describes Lancelot's adventures when he follows the damsel who had led him to the castle of Turquyne. M. and P.L., whilst both telling how Lancelot kills a knight to whom he is shown, and who steals horses, vary considerably in details. In M. the knight, whose name is disclosed later on (p. 197, 27) as "*Perys de foreyst saueage,*" is not only a thief, but also a "*ravyssher of women.*" In P.L. his name is not mentioned at all, and, though he

is expressly called a horse thief, the other quality attributed to him is only indicated by the sentence: "Et puis si me voulut faire grant villonie pource que ien parloye." In both versions Lancelot bids the damsel ride some distance in front of him. She does so, the knight attacks her, throws her off her palfrey, and, on the damsel's cries for help, Lancelot appears and kills the knight.

From p. 197, 27, to p. 198, 14, M. has nothing in common with P.L. This passage, in which the damsel advises Lancelot to marry, and Lancelot endeavours to explain to her the reasons why he can and will not do so, are probably Malory's invention, an hypothesis strengthened by the moralising tendency exhibited in other similar intercalations. In M., Lancelot and the damsel part after this dialogue. In P.L., Lancelot, at the damsel's request, goes with her and stays at her castle for a whole week, leaving it only, when his wounds are healed, for the purpose of seeking Ector, for he "ne cuydoit point quil (Ector) fust en forteresse terriquant." After wandering for nearly a month, he comes one day to a house in a meadow. Hard by he meets a man clad in white. Lancelot asks this man about Ector, and is told that on the preceding day Ector killed a knight near the house, but afterwards disappeared, leaving no trace, and that he had "vnes armes blanches et vng cheual noir."

"A heure de vespres" Lancelot reaches a hill, where he meets a damsel riding on a white palfrey and carrying "vng esprenier sur son poing;" on hearing that Lancelot wishes to go to the castle, this damsel tries to dissuade him, but fails. Lancelot continues his way until he comes to a bridge.

At this point M. again takes up the narrative. Both in P.L. and M., Lancelot is stopped by a fellow watching on the bridge, whom he kills, but the details attached to this incident vary slightly in the two accounts.

In P.L., Lancelot now enters the castle, hears the noise of a horn, and meets an old man, who tells him that he has done a great wrong in killing the castle porter, and that he will have to pay dearly for it. As he passes on, Lancelot is told by people standing at the roadside that he is approaching his death. Arriving at the principal tower, Lancelot dismounts, ties his horse to a tree, opens "le guichet," and enters. No sooner has he done this than "vne porte coulise" descends between him and the guichet, but Lancelot is not in the least frightened. A valet now steps forth and asks why he has killed the porter; Lancelot gives no answer. At this moment two terrible giants, the lords of the castle, appear, and wish to slay Lancelot, but he overcomes and slays them both after a short combat. An aged lady now brings him the keys of the castle. He opens it, and many

knights, ladies, and damsels advance and do him homage as their new liege, because he has overcome their former lords, the two giants, who had received the castle of Tintaguel three years before from "le duc Corains." When Lancelot tells them who he is, they are highly pleased, and applaud him greatly. He stays at the castle until the next morning.

M.'s account of this last adventure, though it has the same basis, varies in many points from P.L. The damsel who warns Lancelot before going into the castle, and the old man who reproaches him with the death of the porter when he has passed the bridge, are not mentioned by M., their *rôle* being attributed to "al the peple men and wymmen." In M., Lancelot ties his horse "to a rynge on the walle," whereas in P.L. he ties it to a tree. The "moche peple in dores and wyndowes" are not mentioned in P.L. In M., Lancelot cleaves the second knight to his "nauel;" in P.L., only to the "teeth."

The old lady who brings Lancelot the keys of the castle in P.L. is not mentioned in M. The "thre score ladyes and damoyssels" and their story, how they have been prisoners at the castle for seven years and had to do "al maner of sylke werkes for" their "mete," are not in P.L. While adding such details, M., on the other hand, skips various others in P.L.

The "duc de corain" is evidently replaced in M. by "a duke oughte it somtyme that had wedded fair Igrayn / and after wedded Vtherpendragon / & gate on her Arthur." While in P.L. Lancelot stays until the next morning at the castle of Tintaguel, in M. he leaves it immediately.

The adventures which follow after this in M. are not to be found anywhere in P.L., even in a modified form.

7. CHAPTERS XI.-XVIII.

Two-thirds of the eleventh chapter—i.e., from p. 199, 35, to p. 201, 35—and chapters xii.-xviii., or the whole of the remainder of the sixth book of M. relating Lancelot's adventures, such as the rescue of Kay, his riding off in Kay's armour and leaving his own behind, his fight against the three brothers, Gauntere, Gylmere, and Raynold, who mistake him for Kay; his overthrow of Sagramour le desyrus, Ector de marys, Gawayn, and Uwayne; his following the brachet and going to the perilous chapel, his dangerous position on the tree after assisting a lady in regaining a falcon and his being attacked by her husband; his meeting with Pedyuere, his return to Arthur's court, and at last the rehearsal of all his valiant deeds and feats of arms, must have been derived by Malory from another source

than the Prose-Lancelot, in common, as I shall attempt later on to show, with all that relates to Lancelot in "Le Morte Darthur."

On p. 199, l. 35, a paragraph mark and the general character of the contents of the then following lines—"And thenne he mounted vpon his hors & rode in to many straunge & wyld countreyes and thorou many waters and valeyes and euyl was he lodged / And at laste by fortune hym happend," &c.—clearly indicate that the events which follow do not immediately join on to those told before the paragraph mark, but that either Malory, or the writer of the source whence he drew his information, broke away here from the thread of the Prose-Lancelot, and either inserted adventures from another source or invented them himself in imitation of the many similar episodes in other romances. Here I will only mention that I incline to think that, beside the Vulgate-Lancelot, there existed another version of the Lancelot, modified and enlarged, in the same manner as beside the Vulgate-Merlin there exists a "Suite de Merlin," or an enlarged Tristan by the side of the original Tristan, and that Malory knew this version, which we no longer possess. I reserve my conjectures as to the structure of this "Suite de Lancelot," as I might call it, until the end of the section on the Lancelot or the later history of King Arthur.

b. THE ELEVENTH BOOK.

a. CHAPTERS I-III.¹

M. departs from the narrative of P.L. in book vi. chapter vii. (p. 192, 12), and takes it up again at the beginning of the eleventh book, connecting what is to come with the preceding adventures of Tristram by the lines: "Now leue we syr Trystram de lyones / & speke we of syr Galahalt . . . as the Frensshe booke reherceth;" he then narrates Lancelot's adventure with fair Elayne, the daughter of King Pelles, and the subsequent birth of Galahad.

I. In P.L., as we have seen at p. 185, Lancelot rides off into the forest after the tournament, in which he fought for Baudemagus against the King of Northgales, whereas in M. he stays for some time with Baudemagus. In P.L., Lancelot meets, while riding through the forest, a most beautiful lady and a knight. The lady invites Lancelot to come and stay at her castle, and promises him, if he accepts her invitation, to show him on the morrow "la plus belle chose" which he ever saw in his life. Lancelot accepts, is led to the castle, and received with great honour. Whilst he is at table, the lord of the

¹ Lancelot, ed. 1513, vol. ii. ff. 105-107.

castle returns from the tournament with his knights, and cannot praise highly enough the knight who fought so valiantly for King Baudemagus (i.e., Lancelot). The lady then tells him that the very knight is staying under his roof. When the lord of the castle has satisfied himself that this is so by examining Lancelot's shield, he is highly pleased, and pays great honour to his guest.¹

On the morrow Lancelot reminds the lady of her promise. They have their horses saddled, and ride off. After a long while they meet a damsel, who asks the lady whither she leads the knight. When the lady tells her to the castle of Corbenic, the damsel declares she cannot possibly love that knight, for otherwise she would not take him to such a dangerous place.

The lady and Lancelot go on nevertheless, and enter the castle. As they are passing through the principal street, some people say to Lancelot: "sire chenallier la charrette vous attend: & il leur respondit tout bas que se il luy conuenoit entrer en charrette ce ne seroit pas la premiere fois." When they arrive before the chief tower, Lancelot declares he has never seen a more beautiful one. Whilst he is still admiring the structure, he hears a woman's voice. He approaches, and finds that she is the "pucelle que messire gauvain voulut getter hors de la cuue," but failed to do so. The damsel implores him to throw her "hors de ceste cuue qui me brusle." Lancelot complies with her request, seizes her by the arms, and lifts her out of the "cuue." The damsel, seeing herself delivered from her pains, kneels to Lancelot and kisses his feet. "Cela fait," continues P.L., "toute la salle fut remplie de dames, damoysselles et cheualiers," though this "salle" is not previously mentioned. They clothe the damsel, though there is no previous mention of her being undressed, lead her to a chapel, and render thanks to God for her salvation. Then they take Lancelot to "vng cymetiere lequel estoit dessoubz la tour," and show him a tomb, on which the following inscription is visible:—"Ia ceste tumba ne sera leuee deuant que celluy y mettra la main duquel le lyon royal doit yssir / & celluy leuera legierement / et dicelluy sera engendre le grant lyon royal en la belle fille au roy de la terre foraine." Lancelot does not grasp the meaning of these words. The people tell him that, as he has delivered the damsel, he is evidently the man who will also bring to an end the adventure of the tomb; he should therefore open it and see what it contains. Lancelot does what he is bid. When the tomb is opened, a terrible fire-spitting "serpent" comes out. The heat becomes intolerable; all the people flee, and look on from the windows. Lancelot alone stays, covers himself with his shield, and succeeds in

¹ Here occurs a sort of paragraph mark in the printed edition of 1513.

killing the "serpent" after a long combat. This causes great joy; the people cheer him loudly, the bells are rung, he is taken to the palace and unarmed, King Pelles comes to salute and thank him, and tells him that his arrival is a long-awaited-for blessing to his country. He then asks Lancelot's name.

M.'s account varies often. Firstly, the incident of a hermit's coming on a Whitsunday to Arthur, and telling him about the knight, yet "vnborne and vngoten," who is to occupy the void seat, is not in P.L. I believe it was added, either by M. or by the writer of his source, in imitation of the incident on Galahad's arrival at the court (compare book xiii. chapter iv.). Without any connection with former incidents, M. then states that after this feast Lancelot came by chance to the "pounte of Corbyn." Whether there was any river and a bridge near Corbyn I am unable to say; I think the "pounte" means, in the original text, the bridge of the castle of Corbenic. M. omits what is told of the damsel who warns Lancelot against the lady who leads him thither, and of the people who tell him that a cart is ready for him. M. then relates the deliverance of the lady out of the boiling water, and the adventure of the tomb, and is here more detailed than P.L.; *e.g.*, the latter does not mention that Morgan and the Queen of Northgales put the damsel to such torture because they were jealous of her beauty. In M. the damsel, in P.L. the people, lead Lancelot to the tomb. Inconsistencies in both M. and P.L. indicate that both descend from a common source, P.L. directly, M. indirectly; *e.g.*, in P.L., in the first instance it seems that the damsel is outside the tower in the boiling water, whereas afterwards she is clearly stated to be in the tower; in M., in both cases in the tower. Further: M. speaks first, in accordance with P.L., of a "serpent" coming out of the tomb, and afterwards he calls it a "dragon."

II.-III. p. 575, 23. The incidents told in M.'s second and in the greater part of his third chapter are the same as in P.L. with some modifications, additions, and omissions. In M., when Pelles tells Lancelot his name, he adds, "and cosyn nyghe vnto Ioseph of Armathe;" this is not in P.L. Some passages agree almost literally in the French and English texts, such as:

M.: "such a saunour as alle the spycery of the world had ben there."

P.L.: "de si bonnes odeurs comme se toutes les especes dy monde y eussent este respandues."

In P.L., Brisanne, the maid of King Pelles' daughter, is already introduced before the appearance of the Holy Grail; in M., only afterwards. In P.L., Galahad's name is not mentioned on this occasion, as in M.

In P.L. twenty knights lead Elayne to the "chastel de la quase," in M. "xxv" to the castle "of Case."

In M., Brisen gives the magic drink personally to Lancelot; in P.L. she bids a maiden do so.

The description of Lancelot's deception with regard to Elayne, whom he takes for Gueneuer, is related at greater detail in P.L., and some reflections are added on the motives of Elayne and Lancelot in desiring carnal intercourse—Elayne to fulfil a divine calling and that she may conceive the best knight of the world, who is to achieve the Holy Grail; Lancelot, because he loves Gueneuer.

P.L. does not mention, as does M., that, after sparing Elayne, Lancelot declares he will be revenged on Brisen, nor that Elayne entreats Lancelot to come and see her as soon as possible. The remark in M.: "for I haue obeyed me vnto the prophecy that my fader teld me / And by his commaundement to fulfille this prophecy I haue gyuen the grettest rychesse and the fayrest floure that euer I had / and that is my maydenhode that I shalle neuer haue ageyne," are probably suggested by the above-mentioned reflections. The events which follow Lancelot's departure from the castle of Case in the last portion of the third and in the following chapters are derived from a much later portion of P.L.

β. CHAPTERS III.-VI.¹

III. p. 575, 25, to IV. p. 576, 24. The birth and christening of Galahad, as told by M., p. 575, ll. 25-30, are not to be met with anywhere in P.L.; these incidents are most likely the conclusion of what is told and the anticipation of what follows. On the occasion of Boors' first visit to Corbenic, when he fights for "la dame de galuoye" and is heartily welcomed by King Pelles as the cousin of Lancelot, one reference is made to Galahad, though an indirect one—viz., Boors sits at table between Pelles and his beautiful daughter, "car elle ne portoit plus le saint graal par deuant les tables / parce quelle estoit defflouree de sa virginite."

Omitting eighty folios of the edition of 1513, M. again takes up the narrative of P.L. in vol. iii. fol. 24.

All M. relates concerning "Bromel de la pleche," who is no other than the "Brunet du plaissis" of P.L., is strongly modified, and the sequence of incidents is altered. In his search for Lancelot, Boors again comes by chance to the "chastel de Corbenic." At the gate he finds a knight, who forbids his entry, declaring that he has allowed

¹ Lancelot, ed. 1513, vol. iii. ff. 24-35.

no one to enter for the last six months, from his dislike to all who love Lancelot, whom he hates most of all men. When Boors tells him that he is cousin and friend of Lancelot, a long and hard fight ensues. At last Boors gets the better of his antagonist and brings him to the ground, so that he gives up his sword and asks for mercy. In the description of the combat two passages deserve attention—why, I shall state later on: "*Et celluy (the adversary of Boors) alla reculant iusques au pont*" and "*et tant lauoit mene quil estoit sur le bort du pont.*" The knight tells Boors that his name is Brunet du plaissis, and that he hates Lancelot because a beautiful damsel in the castle still loves him. Some time before, he (Brunet) asked this damsel for her love, but she refused, declaring that she loved the best knight of the world, Lancelot du lac. He then resolved to convince her that he was as good or even a better knight than Lancelot, of whom he went in search to Arthur's court. Being told there that Lancelot had been absent from court for the last six months, he returned to Corbenic and took up his station at the gate in order to fight Arthur's knights. Boors grants Brunet his life on condition that he go next Whitsuntide to court, and yield himself to Lancelot's mercy. When Brunet has promised this, "*boort remonta sur son cheual, puis sen alla au chastel par dessus le pont.*"

M. begins with the statement that Bromel de la pleche is in love with fair Helayne, and vows to keep the "*pounte de Corbyn*" for twelve months.

In the fourth chapter M. then simply goes on to say that one day, by chance, Boors came to the "*pounte de Corbyn*" and found there Bromel, who prevented him from passing. Here, as on the occasion of Lancelot's coming to Corbyn, told in chapter i. of this book, where P.L. generally has "*chastel de Corbenic*," except in the three passages which I have above quoted, M. uses the term "*pounte*." A comparison of these passages with M. at once furnishes the key to this anomaly. The archetype of P.L. always had "*pont de Corbenic*;" the scribe of the MS. from which the printed text descends changed "*pont*" into "*chastel*" in the first instance, but afterwards forgot this alteration and wrote "*pont*" in the three I have cited. The fight between Boors and Bromel is told by M. much as in P.L.; in both versions Bromel is overcome, and receives mercy on condition that he goes to King Arthur's court and yields himself to Lancelot.

IV. p. 576, 25-VI. In the remainder of the fourth chapter and in the two following ones M. follows, with but slight differences, the thread of the narrative in P.L., and, though he condenses greatly, he omits hardly anything of importance. Whilst, in M., Galahad's name is already mentioned in chapter iii., in P.L. it first appears in this place.

P.L. contains no passage to the effect of M. p. 576, 30-32: "Meruelle not said sir bors / for this half yere he hath ben in pryson with Morgan le fay kyng Arthurs syster."

The son of Boors and the daughter of King Brangore, called "Elayne" in M., is called "Helyas" in P.L.

The name of "Pedyuere of the straye marches," which M. gives in the fifth chapter as that of the knight whom Boors overcame and sent to Arthur's court, is not mentioned in P.L., where, indeed, this knight is not named at all.

In P.L. the old man who comes to Boors, besides referring to Joseph of Arimathea, mentions also a certain "orpheus lenchanteur qui a fondu le chasteau des enchanteurs en la marche descosse."

Instead of twelve damsels as in P.L., M. only speaks of four in chapter vi.

The last fourteen lines of chapter vi. are a sort of *résumé* of some twenty-eight folios in the edition of 1513, which relate, *inter alia*, the war between Arthur and Claudas.

7. CHAPTERS VII.-XIV.¹

The eight last chapters of book xi. follow, with such differences as I shall point out, the thread of the narrative of P.L.

Upon his return from "Gaulle" (relates P.L. vol. ii. fol. 67) King Arthur resolves to hold a more splendid court on the next Whitsunday at Cameloth than ever took place before, in celebration of his victorious expedition. The news spreads over "escosse," "irlande," and "toutes les isles de mer qui pres dillec estoient," and from all parts of the country knights and ladies come in throngs; it also reaches fair Elayne, the daughter of King Pelles, at Corbenic. At this point M. again takes up the narrative of P.L.

VII. M. says that Elayne took with her to Arthur's court, "xx" knights and "x" ladies and gentlewomen, "to the nombre of an hundred horses" (!), where P.L. states that she took ladies and damsels with her to the number of eighty.

M. does not mention Elayne's taking with her her child, little Galahad, "dessus le col de son palefroy qui estoit for et puissant."

M. states that Trystram, Bleoberys, and Gawayne greet Elayne on her arrival, which is not in P.L.; on the other hand, P.L. states later that three cousins, Boort, Lionel, and Hector, honour Elayne much, for they know her relation to Lancelot "ne ilz ne veoient nulle chose

¹ Lancelot, ed. 1513, vol. iii. ff. 67-72.

si volentiers comme ilz faisoient leur cousin le petit enfant que len appelloit galaad," which M. omits.

P.L. specifies, contrary to M., that the queen bids Lancelot come to her chamber "le mardy apres la pentecouste."

Some slight, though utterly insignificant, differences are noticeable in all that relates to "dame Brysen" and her machinations.

VIII. The eighth chapter is as nearly as possible, save for considerable condensation, a faithful reproduction of the corresponding portion of P.L.

IX. The beginning of chapter ix. is slightly different in M. from P.L. The statement in M. that Gueneuer banishes Elayne from her court is not in P.L., where she leaves the court of her own free will.

In P.L. and in M., Arthur, with a suite, personally accompanies Elayne for some distance on her way home. In P.L., Elayne speaks privily to Boors after Arthur has taken leave of her; in M., before Arthur is gone far, Boors expressly says to Elayne: "and hold my lord Arthur with a tale as longe as you can / for I wylle torne ageyne to Quene Gueneuer and geue her a hete," &c.

X.-XI. The knight whom Boors encounters, after riding for a long time without finding any adventures or trace of Lancelot, is called in M. "Melyon de Tartare," in P.L. "mellic du tertre;" in the latter, a fact omitted by M., he is accompanied by a damsel and two squires.

The knights of the Round Table who, on Mellic's arrival at the court with Boors' message, declare themselves ready, and afterwards set out in search of Lancelot, are, in P.L., twenty-two, of whom the following are named:—Sagremors, Ywain, Agrual, Gaheriet, Gueresches, and Mordrec. M. mentions the names of Gawayne, Uwayne, Sagremors, Aglouale, and *Percyuale*, and adds that with them "rode eyghten knyghtes . . . and soo were they thre and twenty knyghtes." Insignificant as this passage may appear to the general reader, it is most important for the critic. If we look at P.L., we find that Percyuale is introduced and taken away from his mother by his brother Agrual to become one of the knights of King Arthur after this event. In M., on the contrary, Percyual, in accordance with the *Roman de Tristan*,¹ is already a knight of King Arthur (comp. book x. chapter xxiii.); therefore, by adding Percyual, the number of knights, instead of twenty-two, as in P.L., becomes twenty-three, as in M. And the lesson is, that the original versions whence M.'s source and the P.L. were derived stood in a certain relation to each other.

¹ This is one of the few passages which the "Lancelot" and "Tristan" have in common; see my remarks farther on at p. 199.

The short paragraph of three lines concerning Lancelot, p. 586, 22-24, in M. occurs much earlier in P.L., and is evidently misplaced in M. From p. 586, 24, on we must examine M.'s relation to P.L. more minutely to show how M. has met the difficulty that Percival's arrival with Agloul at Arthur's court has already been related in the tenth book. P.L.'s account runs thus:—

When the twenty-two knights who start in search of Lancelot have gone off in various directions, Agrual rides long without finding any adventures, and comes at last by chance to the house of his mother, who is mourning the death of her husband [i.e., Pellinor, whose name, however, is not mentioned] and of her eldest son [i.e., Lamorak, not mentioned in P.L.]. She is pleased to see her son Agrual, whom she has not seen for five years. She introduces to Agrual a youth, handsome, well built, and strong, fifteen years old, and tells him he is her youngest child, and his brother Perceval. The youth pleases Agrual immensely, and he at once declares he will take him to Arthur's court and have him knighted. This grieves the mother, who urges that, as she has already lost *four* of her *six* sons, he ought to leave her Perceval, the only joy she has in the world. At supper Agrual continually looks at the beautiful youth, and thinks what a pity it would be to let him pass away his life in inactivity with his mother. Later on he retires into a garden behind the house. His mother sends Perceval to keep him company. Perceval finds Agrual pensive under an apple-tree. The two brothers talk together. Agrual asks Perceval if he would like to become one of King Arthur's knights. With all his heart, says the youth. Agrual promises him to take him to Arthur's court as soon as he leaves home, bids him tell no one about it, and most carefully to conceal it from their mother. On the fifteenth day Agrual announces his intention of starting on the next morning. He secretly arranges that Perceval shall ask their mother's permission to accompany him for some distance. On the morrow, after mass, Agrual takes leave of his mother, and starts. Perceval, as agreed, asks if he may go some distance with Agrual. The mother consents, but, to his displeasure, sends a squire with him. At a "bosquet" Perceval joins Agrual. They ride together for a long time pleasantly conversing. The squire, who has several times reminded Perceval that they have to return, is at last told the truth. He is very sad, but asks to remain Perceval's servant as a knight, as he was when the latter was "damoiseau." Perceval grants this, provided the squire first go to his mother, tell her about him, and then join him at Arthur's court. When the squire returns to Perceval's mother, "*qui tant aymoit perceval que nul plus si manda le chappelain & se fist confesser / si receut le corpus domini & trespasa le soir / & lendemain elle fut enterree.*" The squire starts for Arthur's court. On the way he comes to a castle, and begs quarters for the night. When he says that he is a squire of Agrual, the lord of the castle kills him, and has his body thrown into a ditch. The day after, Agrual and Perceval, who have stayed at an abbey for two days, pass by the castle, and find the squire's body in the ditch. On asking a damsel and a varlet, who come out of the castle, who has killed the squire, they

learn it is the lord of the castle, in hate of Agrual. Agrual at once makes himself ready to fight, enters the castle, and asks the knight why he has killed *his* squire. The knight, understanding he has before him Agrual, who slew his brother, defies him. They fight. Agrual slays the knight and throws his body into the same ditch as his squire's, which latter he takes, with Perceval's help, to a neighbouring abbey, and buries it.

In M., Percyual, who is already a knight of Arthur's, as stated in book x. in accordance with "*le Roman de Tristan*," starts with his brother Agloul in the search of Lancelot. The two brothers come to their mother's house. The words in M., "who was in tho dayes a quene," may well correspond to those in P.L., "*qui moult estoit de grant lignaige*." As in P.L., the mother tells her sons of their father, Pellinor's, death, and of that of two brothers, but of these only Lamorak's name is mentioned. In M. the mother, in accordance with the passage in book x. chapter xxiii., states that she has four sons—viz., Agloul, Lamorak, Dornar, and Percyual (Tor being an illegitimate child of King Pellinor); it is evidently by mistake that in P.L. she states she has had six sons, four of whom are slain. According to M., Agloul, according to P.L., Lamorak, is the first-born. The mother implores her two sons to stay with her, but they declare they cannot. When the sons take leave of her, she falls down in a swoon. Coming to herself, she sends a squire after them "with spendynge ynough." I am much inclined to ascribe the alterations in this portion to Malory, and not to his source.

The remainder of chapter xi. agrees with the corresponding portion of P.L., save that exceptionally M. has more detail than P.L.—*e.g.*, the name of the knight who slew Agloul's squire is given as "Goodewyn," that of his brother as "Gawdelyn"—a circumstance which seems to indicate that the original source of P.L. and of the MS. Malory used contained more detail than P.L., as I have already mentioned on former occasions.

After this there follows in P.L. the passage which the "Lancelot" and the "Tristan" have in common, and which occurs in M., book x. chapter xxiii., with very slight variations.

Agrual and Perceval continue their way, and arrive at Carduel, at Arthur's court. Arthur and all his knights are very sad; twenty-five knights are in search of Lancelot, yet nobody has heard aught about him. Most depressed of all is queen Gueneuer, "*car elle scauoit bien que tout le mal estoit venu par elle*." On the next day Arthur notices Perceval, and thinks him a fine fellow. After dinner Agrual asks the king to dub his brother Perceval on the next morning; to this Arthur agrees. Perceval watches all night in the principal church of Carduel, and is made knight on the morrow.

Whilst Perceval sits at dinner among the "moins renommes" knights, one of the queen's maids, "de son aage le plus subtile ouuriere du monde," who has never said a word, and for this reason was called "the damsel who has never told a lie," suddenly begins to cry out, and says to Perceval: "sergent de notre seigneur ihesucrist vierge et net viens te seoir au siege de la table ronde empres le siege perilleux." All are "esbahys;" the maid leads Perceval to the seat, and tells him that the perilous seat will be occupied by the good knight whom Perceval will resemble "de virginite," and to the left of the good knight Galahad, Boors will be seated. After asking Perceval to think of her in the quest of the Holy Grail, the damsel retires to the queen's chamber and lies down on a bed. On the fourth day she receives the Lord's body, dies, and is buried with great honours in the principal church of "Cardueil."

M. relates this episode with some slight variations necessitated by the different circumstances of the "Tristan" version, in which, *e.g.*, Lamorak is still alive, and Agrual and Perceval are not, as in the "Lancelot," in search of their cousin Lancelot. M. also mentions the incident of the dumb maiden, and, as this is absent from the "Tristan," he must have drawn it from the "Lancelot."¹

XII.-XIV. At the beginning of the twelfth chapter M., or rather the writer of the source he used, returns to the narrative of P.L., but adapts it boldly to his needs. P.L. relates:

One day in winter King Arthur sits in his castle "caradigant" at dinner, surrounded by knights of various ages. Among the youngest knights is Perceval. Keux, who is Mordrec's table neighbour, after looking for some time at Perceval, says, in his cynical manner, he does not think that Perceval will ever do much; he seems to prefer peace and rest to feats of arms. A fool of the court, who hears this remark, tells Perceval about it, and, without naming them, points out Keux and Mordrec as those who have said it. Perceval is so deeply offended that he resolves to leave the court secretly.

At night, when his brother Agrual and all the other knights are asleep, he gets up and bids one of his [own] squires, in whom he has confidence, get him a horse and arms ready at once. The squire is reluctant, fearing lest Agrual should kill him, but at last does as he is bid when Perceval promises to take him with him. So they ride off. After a time they come to some old ruins. Perceval is tired, and wishes to rest. The squire offers to hold the horses and watch, but Perceval persuades him to tie them to a tree, and to sleep. When the squire has yielded at last and is asleep, Perceval, who wishes to be rid of him, takes his horse and rides off. After wandering about for a long time, he gets out of the forest, and comes to a castle by the side of a great river.

¹ If M. had anywhere drawn from the "Perceval," we might suppose that he got this incident from that romance, for it occurs in Chrétien de Troyes and in all the Perceval stories.

In M. this narrative, though strongly modified, is recognisable. Agrual and Perceval, immediately after burying the squire in the abbey, come, in search of Lancelot, to the castle "Cardycan," evidently the "caradigant" of P.L., and stay there. At night Perceval comes to a squire of Agrual¹ (not of his own) and asks him to ride away with him. The squire's reply is the same as in P.L., and only when Perceval warrants his safety does he obey. As M. does not state that Perceval wishes to get rid of the squire, he omits their stay at the ruins.

In both M. and P.L. Perceval then comes to a bridge near a castle, and finds a knight chained to a stone pillar. This knight, Percydes in M., is called Patrides in P.L. The whole episode is, save some alterations in the sequence of incidents, the same in both versions. At the end P.L. does not mention, as M. does, that Perceval rides with Percydes to the castle and bids the lady give up the servants of the latter, nor that Perceval afterwards stays at Percydes' castle.

The contents of M. p. 590, 18-35, and 591, 1-5, are one of the strongest proofs I can adduce in support of my hypothesis that P.L. and the MS. used by M. go back to a common source. These lines are not intelligible in M. without P.L. Why does Perceval wish Percydes to tell Mordrec and Kay that "or euer he come to the courte ageyne to be of as grete noblesse as euer were ye bothe and mo men to speke of his noblesse than euer they did yow." From P.L. we know the reason—viz., that Keux had, in his conversation with Mordrec, said he did not think much of Perceval, and, through this remark, had caused Perceval's departure from the court. The writer of M.'s source, who altered the narrative in the beginning, forgot to alter it in the second place, and has thus furnished us a clue to his workmanship.

From p. 591, 5, to p. 593, 3, or in the remainder of book xi, M., whilst abridging, follows P.L. closely in describing the mortal fight of Boors and Perceval and their being healed by the Holy Grail.

c. THE TWELFTH BOOK.²

CHAPTERS I.-X.

With comparatively few and slight differences the twelfth book is a reproduction of the contents of the next seven folios of P.L. save for considerable condensation; all variations between the two versions are enumerated in the following pages.

¹ Evidently the writer was led to think, by the squire's being afraid of Agrual, that he was Agrual's squire.

² Lancelot, ed. 1513, vol. iii. ff. 74-80.

I. In M., Lancelot is said to strike the shield hanging at the pavilion "as if x knyghtes" did it; in P.L. the passage runs: "puis commença a frapper sur lescu & fist aussi grant noise comme se . xii . cheualiers se combatissent ensemble." The passage in P.L., "et elle saillit incontinent hors du lict tout en chemise et yssit hors du pavillion," was evidently too realistic for M., as he adds: "and she gat her smock / and ranne oute of the pavillion;" in P.L. the knight fetches it later on out of the pavilion. In P.L. the dwarf does not state, as in M., that he had formerly seen Lancelot at the tournament of Lonezep. The knight whom Lancelot stuns by the violence of his stroke is called "blians" in P.L., "Blyaunt" in M.; his brother, "celinans" in P.L., "Selynaunt" in M. Probably M. did not recognise that, in "blanc chastean," "blanc" is an adjective meaning white, perhaps owing to the difference of the masculine and feminine genders, for he renders it by "the Castel blank," whereas on other occasions, when the adjective is used in connection with a feminine noun, he correctly renders it by "white"—e.g., "abbaye blanche" = white abbey.

II. It would seem to be inadvertence or misunderstanding on M.'s part that Lancelot was fettered when they wanted to give him food at the castle of Blyaunt. In P.L. he was chained and corded to his bed before being carried thither, and loosened when he got his food. In describing Lancelot's treatment at the castle P.L. adds: "& le laisserent aller entreulx en telle maniere quil nestoit empesche sinon de vngs petis anneletz quilz luy misrent es poings et es piedz / affin quil nallast pas trop loing." M. omits this, but afterwards refers to Lancelot's breaking his chain. The names of the two knights in M., "Breuse saunce pyte" and his brother "Bertolet," who follow Blyaunt, are not mentioned in P.L. Whilst, in M., Lancelot sees Blyaunt's need from a window, and runs out "at a posterne" to his assistance after hurting his wrists and ankles in breaking his chains, P.L. states that the two knights follow Blyaunt right into his castle, and, pursuing him from chamber to chamber, they come by chance into the room "ou lancelot estoit gisant tout vestu / et les aultres vont apres en frappant sur luy [i.e., blians] et quant il vit," &c.; then Lancelot "se leua pour luy aller ayder mais les aneaulx quil auoit es piedz blessoient et il se arresta tout quoy si print les aneaulx aux deux mains & les tira de telle force quil les rompit / mais il en eut les mains toutes sanglantes et le cuyr des doys tout derompu."

III. The adventure with the boar, which happens during Lancelot's madness, is told alike in both versions; also his arrival at the castle of Corbenic. P.L. does not state, as does M., that Lancelot, when on entering the town and being molested by children, to frighten them away, "he brake the legges and armes" of some of them, nor that he is at

last saved from the children's attacks by some knights from the castle.

IV. Castor, the name of King Pelles' cousin in M., is not found in P.L. M.'s fourth chapter only differs from P.L. in so far as it states that "dame Brysen" accompanies King Pelles and fair Elayne into the garden where Lancelot sleeps, recognises him at once, and, casting a spell upon him, enables the people to carry him into the tower; in P.L., dame Brysen is not mentioned on this occasion.

V.-VI. These two chapters likewise correspond fairly well, on the whole, to the account in P.L., but some slight confusion seems to have arisen. While, in M., Pelles and his daughter come to Lancelot when he awakes after being healed by the Holy Grail, Elayne is not even present on this occasion in P.L., and only learns Lancelot's recovery through her father. Here again M. mentions dame Brysen in contradiction to P.L. According to P.L., the contents of M. p. 600, ll. 25-37, ought to precede ll. 1-24 of the same page. In P.L., Lancelot only speaks with King Pelles, and arranges with regard to his future with him. Pelles afterwards goes to his daughter and tells her about Lancelot's intentions, and she then proposes to take him to the "chateau que len appelle bliant," "en une yse." To this castle Lancelot goes secretly, accompanied only by Pelles, and only upon his arrival at the castle does he see Elayne and have a conversation with her to nearly the same effect as in M. All this is upset in M., where Pelles decides upon castle Blyaunt as Lancelot's abode, when Elayne, having spoken with Lancelot, comes to her father, and communicates to him Lancelot's wish to stay in one of his castles so that nobody may recognise him. In M., Elayne offers to stay with Lancelot; in P.L., Lancelot asks her as a favour to stay with him. To this modification, or rather confusion, it is also evidently due that M. says: "And thenne after this kynge Pelles with x knyghtes / and dame Elayne / and twenty ladyes rode vnto the castel of Blyaunt," &c. The ten knights and the twenty damsels are actually mentioned in P.L., but under very different circumstances. When Lancelot, after his arrival, has spoken to Elayne and requested her to stay with him, she tells her father, and, by his advice, consents to comply with Lancelot's desire. "Et le roy luy dist quil manderait parmy son royaume vingt des plus belles damoiselles pour luy faire compaignie . . . lancelot eut avec luy dix cheualiers qui tous estoient preux & hardis."

The early part of M.'s chapter vi., p. 600, 22-37, corresponds fairly accurately to P.L., which is, however, more detailed, and in which Lancelot tells the knight Castor (whose name is again not mentioned in P.L.) his name straightforwardly, whereas in M. he only says: "I put caas my name were syr launcelot."

The later portion of chapter vi., p. 601, 1-20, is a much abridged and considerably modified reproduction of P.L. M. makes Lancelot call the island "the Ioyous yle." P.L. has no remark to this effect, but speaks several times of "lisle de ioye" without commentary, and later on says that the island was called thus from the joyous damsels whom Pelles sent thither.¹

In accordance with M., Lancelot is said to call himself "le cheualier mesfait" in P.L.

In P.L., Lancelot asks King Pelles to get him a shield such as he describes to him. When the shield is brought, it is such a strange one that all are surprised, no one having ever seen such a shield: "et sans faulte il estoit le plus diuers que on sceut pour lors en tout le monde car au meillieu estoit plus noir que meure / et de coste la bouche auoit paincte vne royne d'argent / et deuant elle vng cheualier a genoulx comme sil cryast mercy." Only Pelles and his daughter understand the meaning of this picture. Lancelot hangs this shield on a pine-tree, and goes every day to lament before it.

The passage in M., "and euery day ones for ony myrthes . . . he wold ones euery day loke toward the realm of Logrys," occurs in P.L. a little earlier in a but slightly different form. In P.L., Lancelot one day asks a dwarf if he knows of any tournament about to take place near the castle of Blyaunt. When the dwarf informs him there will be one in four days' time at a castle only half a mile distant, he bids him go thither and cry out:

"Le cheualier mesfait mande a tous ceulx qui vont querant los et pris de cheualerie que ia nul ne viendra en l'isle de ioye pour querre iouste que il ne la trouue tant comme le cheualier mesfait y soit. Et se il y a nul qui bataille vueille viengne hardement, car il ny faultra ia."

Many knights come to the island in consequence of this challenge, but Lancelot overcomes them all. The "fayr mayde and a Ierfauncon" which M. mentions as the price to be given to any knight defeating Lancelot is not in P.L.

VII.-VIII. P.L. does not state, as does M., that Lancelot overcomes five hundred knights. M., forgetting that, in accordance with P.L., he has just said that the castle in the "Ioyous yle" is called "Blyaunt," now says: "vnder that Castel / that was called the Ioyous yle." The remainder of chapters vii. and viii. are a *résumé* of P.L., with very small and insignificant variations.

IX. The first part of the ninth chapter, p. 604, ll. 1-27, offers a

"En telle maniere demoura lancelot en l'isle de ioye mais l'isle n'estoit pas ainsi appelle fors seulement pour les damoyelles qui estoient avec la fille au rois perles qui faisoient la plus grande loyeusete que jamais homme voit faire a damoyelle," &c.

fresh point of interest. In none of the MSS. of P.L. is there anything to the effect of these twenty lines, unless in the remark, later on, that when Lancelot and Ector and Perceval return to the court, "Si y trouuerent le roy artus lyon et boort qui eurent amene avec eulx Elayn le blanc qui estoit dune des plus nobles lignes."¹

This incident requires explanation. If we examine P.L., we find that in the second part (ff. 37-38 of the ed. Paris, 1513) is told, in imitation of Lancelot's deception by Brysen, how Boors, staying at King Brangore's court, and deceived by the duenna of the princess, is induced, by means of an enchanted ring, to have carnal connection with the latter. As both are absolutely innocent in this, continues P.L., the fruit of their intercourse is chosen by God as a being of special goodness, is called Elayn le blanc, and becomes afterwards Emperor of Constantinople.

Save in the Quest of the Holy Grail, when Boors confesses to the hermit, and on the occasion I have just cited, P.L. makes no mention of Boors' son. This the writer of M.'s source evidently wished to remedy, by adding how Boors returned to the court of Brangore, and took his son to King Arthur in order to make him a knight of the Round Table.

The last portion of the twelfth chapter is an imperfect and much curtailed account of the matter found in P.L. As some of the incidents of the Quest of the Holy Grail are not intelligible in M. as they stand, I here give a brief account of the last folio of this portion in P.L.:

After Lancelot and Perceval have given up fighting, and Lancelot has embraced his brother Ector, all three go into the castle, where they are received by fair Elayne. Boors at once asks for Galahad, and is told that the child is staying at Corbyn with King Pelles. He further asks Elayne for the details of Lancelot's coming to this place, and is told by her all about his madness and his being healed by the Holy Grail. All pass the evening together in great pleasantness.

On the morrow, Hector asks Lancelot to return with him to Arthur's court. Lancelot at first most emphatically refuses to do so, but when Hector mentions that Gueneuer is longing to see him, he soon declares his readiness to go. He sends to King Pelles, and informs him of his intention to return on the third day to Arthur's court. When Pelles tells young Galahad of his father's intention, the child replies: "My father can do as he pleases, but I wish to be always near him, that he may see me often." An old knight suggests to Pelles that he could well send the child to his (Pelles') sister, who is the abbess of a nunnery in the forest of Camalaoth; and his advice is followed.

¹ Compare MS. Royal 19 C xiii. fol. 280^a, and MS. Add. 10293, fol. 383^b.

Elayne is sad when she hears that both Lancelot and Galahad are going to leave her, but she resigns herself to her father's will. On the third day, when Lancelot rides off with Ector and Perceval, Pelles reminds him that Galahad is his son. The three knights ride straight to Carlyon, where Arthur is residing at the time, and meet there Lionel and Boors with Elayne le blank. All three, more especially Lancelot, are received with great joy, and of all the people Gueneuer is the happiest, in that she has Lancelot again.

In the meantime Pelles has sent Galahad to the abbey of nuns, where he remains "*tant quil fut grant damoyseau de laage de quinze ans. Lors deuint tant beau et tant grant que ie ne croy pas que on trouuast son pareil au monde.*" Not far from the abbey dwells a hermit, who knows through God's grace "*la bonte de lenfant.*" He comes a day after Easter to Galahad, and tells him the time is now come for him to be made knight, and he should enter this high order shaven and clean of all sin. "*Long temps parlerent celluy iour ensemble et lendemain a leure de prime aduint que le roy artus qui chassoit au bois vint illec cuyr messe,*" &c.

The old romance writers were apparently not very particular as regards time. According to "*Le Roman de Lancelot*" as a whole, it seems as if the knights set out on the quest of the Holy Grail on the Whitsunday after Lancelot's return from the joyous island. According to the account, reproduced above, how Galahad remained at the abbey of nuns until his fifteenth year, we have to suppose that several years elapsed between Lancelot's return and the Whitsunday on which Galahad comes to Arthur's court.

The hermit tells Arthur that on the next feast of Whitsun the knight will come to his court who is to sit in the perilous seat, and who will bring to an end the Quest of the Holy Grail; therefore Arthur should be sure to assemble all his knights at that feast. On his return to court, Arthur at once takes the necessary measures to ensure the next feast of Whitsun being one of the finest, in every respect, ever held.

M. omits most of these details—*e.g.*, Galahad's being taken to the nunnery—so that, at the opening of his thirteenth book, one cannot understand how Galahad came to the abbey.

A point which is also contradictory in P.L. is that when Lancelot is taken on the eve of Pentecost to the abbey, he there finds Boort and Lionel. How these two came thither, and for what purpose, is not quite clear, for in P.L., as already stated, Lancelot is said to find these two knights with Elayne le blank at Carlyon when he returns from the joyous island.

B. THE QUEST OF THE HOLY GRAIL.¹

BOOKS XIII.-XVII.



HE thirteenth to the seventeenth books of "Le Morte Darthur" are devoted to the adventures of the knights of the Round Table in the search of the Holy Grail, and it may not be uninteresting to remark that Sir Thomas Malory's is the only known English prose account. As Dr. F. J. Furnivall's edition—"La Queste del Saint Graal,"² from the Royal MS. 14 E iii. in the British Museum, with occasional reference to MS. Add. 10294, to which is prefixed a detailed abstract, page by page, of the contents—is within the reach of every scholar, and as I have convinced myself, by a collation of various portions of his text with the MSS. Royal 19 C xiii., Add. 17443, Royal 20 C vi., and Add. 10294,³ which also contain the Quest, that they only vary in details of style, but not in the adventures told, I have based my critical examination on this edition, having by my side the Rev. R. Williams' edition of the Welsh "Y Seint Greal,"⁴ which possibly represents an earlier stage of the French romance than that represented by any existing French MS.

Malory has shortened his original in this portion of his *rifacimento* less than in any other, and has in many cases limited himself to translating it.

a. BOOK XIII.⁵

In order to show how closely the French text and Malory occasionally agree, I print a portion of the first chapter of the thirteenth book by the side of the French text.

¹ For the history of the various theories concerning the origin of the legend of the Holy Grail, see Alfred Nutt's "Studies," &c. London, 1888. 8vo.

² La Queste del Saint Graal: In the French Prose of (as is supposed) Maistres Gautiers Map, or Walter Map. Written by him for the love of King Henry his lord. Edited by F. J. Furnivall, M.A., for the Roxburghe Club. London, 1864. 4to.—The "Hystoire du saint greal . . . ensemble la queste dudit saint graal" was twice printed at Paris, in 1516 and 1523, folio.

³ The twelve MSS. of the Bibliothèque Nationale, from which the beginnings of the Quest were supplied to Dr. Furnivall by M. B. Michelant, also vary only in details of style.

⁴ Y Seint Greal, &c. Edited, with a translation and Glossary, by the Rev. Robert Williams, M.A. London, 1876. 8vo.

⁵ La Queste, &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall, pp. 1-62.

A la uelle de la pentecouste, quant
tout li compaignon de la table reonde
furent nenu a camelot,
et il orent oi le seruice
il fisent mettre les tables.

a eure de nonne entra en la sale a
cheual une damoisele . et fu uenue si
grant oirre que bien le pooit on ueoir.
Cars ses cheuaus en fu encoiretressuans.
Elle descent, et uient deuant le roy,
et le salua.

Et il li dist "que dieus te beneie."

"Sire" fait elle, "dites moi se
lancelot du lac est chaiens."

"Oil, noir" fait li rois, "en celle
sale" si li monstre.

Et ele ala ou il estoit, si lui dist.
"Lancelot, ie vous di de par le roy
pelles, que uous o moi ueignies en
chele forest."

et lancelet li demande "a qui ele est."
"ie sui," fait elle, "a celui dont ie
uous parole."

"et quel besoingne," fait il, "aues
uous de moi."

"Che uerres vous bien," fait ele.
"che soit de par dieu," fail il, "iou
yrai uolenters."

Lors dist a un escuier "qu'il li meche
la sele de son cheual . et qu'il li
aporche ses armes." Et il si fait
maintenant.

et quant li rois et li autre baron qui
estoient ou palais uoient chou . si
leur empoise mout. Mais nepour-
quant il uoient quil ne peut remanoir,
si le laissent est[re].

Et la roine dist, "que esse lancelet,
nous laires uous a chest iour qui si
haus est."

"Dame," fait la damoisele, "sachies
que uous le rares ains demain eure
de disner."

"Ore y uoist dont," fait la roine,
"que se demain ne deuist reuenir . il
n'i alast huy par mon congiet."

At the vygyl of Pentecost whan alle
the felauship of the round table were
comen vnto Camelot /

and there herd their seruyse

And the tables were set redy to the
mete /

Ryhte so entryd in to the halle a ful
fayre gentlywoman on horsbak that
had ryden ful fast / for her hors was
all besuette /

Thenne she there alyght / and came
before the kyng & salewed hym /
and he said damoysele god the blysse /
Sire said she for goddes sake saye me
where syr launcelot is /
yonder ye may see hym said the
kyng /

Thenne she wente vnto Launcelot
and said syr launcelot I salewe yow on
kyng Pelles be/and half I requyre yow
come with me here by into a forest
thenne syr launcelot asked her with
whome she dwelled / I dwelle said
she with kynge Pelles /
what wille ye with me said Launce-
lot /

ye shal knowe said she whanne ye
come thyder / wel sayd he I wille
gladly goo with yow /

So syr launcelot badde his squyer
sadel his hors / and brynge his
armes / and in all hast he dyd his
commaundement /

Thenne came the quene vnto launcelot /
and said wille ye leue vs at this hye
feest /

Madame said the gentlywoman wete
ye wel he shal be with yow to morn
by dyner tyme

Yf I wyst said the Quene that he
shold not be with vs to morne he shold
not goo with you by my good wyll

M. omits the squire who, according to R.,¹ came with the damsel, and who also accompanies her and Lancelot back to the abbey. M. often adds epithets to words; *e.g.*, "grete" to "valey" (p. 612, 25) where R. only has "une ualee." The squire who, according to M., is ready to open the door is not mentioned in R., where the passage runs thus: "Et quant il sont uenu a la porte, si a parle li escuiers, et on li ouure." R. does not, as does M., state that Lancelot is taken into the chamber of the abbess, but only "en une cambre." In R. "boorth et lionel" lie, not on "a," but on ".ij. beds." The twelve nuns who bring Galahad are only three in R. The conversation between the abbess as to the knight-ing of Galahad in M. is slightly different and shorter than in R. Nothing equivalent to the words "for of a more worthyer mans hande may he not receive the ordre of knyghthode" occurs in R. In M., Lancelot declares he will dub Galahad "as to morne atte reverence of the hyghe feeste;" in R. the nuns say: "nous uoulons que che soit a nuit ou demain." M. neither mentions, as does R., that Lancelot "fist toute la nuit ueillir l'enfant en l'eglize," nor the details of the dubbing on the next day—*e.g.*, that Lancelot puts on one of his spurs, Bors the other.

II. When Galahad has refused to go with Lancelot to Arthur's court, the latter applies in R. to the abbess, and receives the answer: "il n'ira pas ore, mais si tost que nous quiderons qu'il en soit poins et lieux et mestiers, nous li enuoierons." In M., Lancelot and his cousins return to Camaloth "by the houre of vndorn," in R. "a eure de terche." M. omits that Lancelot and his cousins go up "en la sale" and talk about Galahad. Bors declares the young knight must be Galahad, whom Lancelot begot on King Pelles' daughter. Lyonel (R. has "lyoniaus") thinks this very probable. Lancelot does not say a word; try as they may, they get no information from him. In R. the three knights are welcomed by Arthur and Guenever after they have found the inscription on the perilous seat. M. writes "wynters" for "ans." M. omits that Gawayn asks Bors and Lionel how they got on since they left the court. To show the close relation of M. to R., I print the inscription on the handle of the sword:

R. "ia nus ne m'ostera, fors chieux a qui coste iou penderai, et chieux sera le mieudres chiualers del monde."

M. "Neuer shalle man take me hens / but only he by whos syde I ought to hange / and he shalle be the best knyght of the world."

The words "et il respont tous courechies" are translated in M. by "ansuerd ful soberly."

III. In R., Arthur, the moment Gawayn offers to him obey and touch the sword, says, "biaus nies laissies ester," so that Gawayn does not

¹ R. = Royal MS. 14 E iii. as represented by Dr. F. J. Furnivall's edition.

actually make the trial as M. relates. M.'s "a good old man and an auneyent" is in R. "uns anchiens homs uieix." R. and M. have the form "*abarimathie*." M. does not state, as does R., that the old man declares he brings "*le chiualer desire*," nor does he add "*du haut lignage le roi dauid*."

IV. R. has only "*li sieges galaad*," and not, as M., the epithet "*the haute prynce*." M. translates literally "*chil s'asiet tout seurement*" by "*he sett hym doune surely*." M. has, instead of "*mon oncle le roi Pelles*," "*my graunt sir kynge P.*," and instead of "*mon aioul le riche pescheoure*," "*my lord Petchere*," evidently taking "*pescheoure*" for a proper name, and not for the word "*fisher*." In R. the old man is met by "*xv*" squires, not by "*xx*," as in M.

The contents of M. p. 617, ll. 1-5, are slightly different from R. In the latter Bors declares Galahad to be Lancelot's son and "*la fille le roy pescheoure*." A few lines later on, when the queen's ladies have said that Galahad, having achieved the adventure of the perilous seat, may well be supposed to be "*chil qui mettra les meruelles de la grant bertaigne a fin, et par qui li rois mehaignies recheuera garison*," the queen herself asks a valet about Galahad's features, and declares, on hearing that they resemble those of the "*parentei au roy ban*," that he is very likely the child "*que lancelet auoit engenrei en la fille au roi pelles*." Comparing these two latter allusions to Galahad's mother, one would suppose "*Pescheoure*" and "*Pelles*" to be one and the same person, a fact in contradiction to the passage in which Galahad asks the old man to greet "*mon oncle le roy Pelles*" and "*mon aioul le riche pescheoure*."¹

V.-VI. These two chapters, except a few additions, agree almost literally in M. and R. In M.'s fifth chapter Galahad adds, after saying he was sure of finding a sword, and therefore brought none with him: "*For here by my syde hangeth the scauberd*." Farther on occurs a passage relating to the sword attributed to Galahad:

"that somtyme was the good knyghtes Balyn le saueage / and he was a passynge good man of his handes / And with this suerd he slewe his broder Balan and that was grete pyte for he was a good knyghte / and eyther slewe other thorou a dolorous stroke that Balyn gaf vnto my graūte fader / kynge Pelles / the whiche is not yet hole / nor not shal be tyl I hele hym "

It is impossible to say whether M. added this passage on his own account, as recapitulating Merlin's prophecy in the "*Suite de Merlin*," or whether the MS. he possessed contained it. The latter seems to me the more probable; I think it will be found one day that the Balyn story and the "*Queste*," in which Galahad is the hero, hang together.

¹ Compare Alfred Nutt's "*Studies*," &c., pp. 83-86.

The words which the lady of the lake addresses to Lancelot, "yesterday" and "to-day," form an antithesis: "yesterday you were the best knight, to-day you are no longer so." In the sixth chapter, where M. has Gawayne and other knights, R. has "Gauain, yuwains et behors de gamies." In R. the queen looks on the tournament from the "murs;" in M., from a tower.

VII. M. omits "et le fist porter par mi la maistre rue dela uile . le uisaige descouuert" that all might see him, whereas M. says that the queen might see him, but then M. again agrees literally with R. The passage,

"for sir launcelot is come but of the / viij / degre from our lord Ihesu Cryst / and syre Galahalt is of the nynthe degree from oure lord Ihesu Cryst / therfor I dar saye they be the grettest gentilmen in the world"

has no corresponding passage in R.

M. translates the passage in R., "plus clers a chent doubles qu'il n'i ait deuant," "clerer by seven tymes than euer they sawe daye."

When the odours are mentioned which fill the hall on the appearance of the Holy Grail, R. has the passage, which occurs in M. on an earlier occasion (comp. book xi. chapter ii., p. 573, 6) in accordance with the Prose-Lancelot: "que se toutes les espices del monde i fussent entrees et repandues."¹ M. omits some lines referring to Arthur and to his knights when they speak about the wonderful appearance of the holy vessel. In the passage where Gawayne says, if he cannot get sight of the Holy Grail, he will return again, M. adds: "as he that maye not be ageynst the wil of our lord Ihesu Cryste." In M., Arthur declares that he loves his knights as his "life;" in R., as "mi fil ou mi frere."

VIII. In the eighth chapter M. follows R. very closely, and, save some slight differences towards the end, his account is a faithful rendering of his source. On p. 622, 36, M. says, as Arthur wishes to know how many of his knights set out in the quest, he orders them to be counted. In R., Baudemagus suggests that each of the questing knights shall swear to follow it. Arthur accepts this proposal. Baudemagus swears first, then Galahad, Lancelot, Gawayne, Perceval, &c., and thus they find out that they are 150 "et preudomme, que ou n'i sauoit nul couart." M. further omits that Arthur tries in vain to persuade Galahad to take a shield with him, and that he accompanies the questers for a long distance. The old knight whose castle they make their first resting-point is called "Vagan" in R.

IX. In R., Galahad, Baudemagus, and Uwayne go after supper into a "vergier," and under a tree Galahad asks them how they came to this place.

¹ Compare *supra*, p. 192.

In R., Galahad at once declares that his two fellows cannot achieve the adventure of the shield, for it belongs to him, as he has no shield, but, that they may convince themselves, they may essay it.

In R., Uwayne says, "*Certes ie ne sui mie si vaillans ne si disnes que iou li doie prendre*," and these words are attributed in M. to Baudemagus in the form: "I wote wel I am not the lest¹ knyghte of the world," and Uwayne is not mentioned at all. While in M. the white knight strikes Baudemagus on the right shoulder, R. states on the "senestre" shoulder. M. omits what the white knight says to Baudemagus in R.: "*Et pour le pechiet que vous y aues, m'enuoia chi nostres sires / pour prendre eut la venianche selonc le mesfait*." M. makes the white knight tell the squire at once that the shield belongs to Galahad; in R. he promises to tell him when he brings Galahad to him. R. does not mention at all that Baudemagus "laye there longe / & escaped hard with the lyf."

X.-XIII. In the tenth and in the three following chapters M. relates with fair accuracy, though greatly abridging them, the contents of pp. 27-40 of the printed "Queste." In M. the squire does not, as in R., tell Galahad that the white knight wishes to see him; M., however, in harmony with a later passage of R., states that Galahad, after refusing Uwayne's offer to go with him, says the squire shall accompany him. For "*il auint apres la passion nostre signour . xlii . ans*" in R., M. has "*xxxii*" years; and for "*li rois euelac gerroia . i . sien voisin riche homme . Tholomee ot non*," M. has "the whyche was king Euelaks cosyn / a ryche kynge and a myghty Tolleme la feyntes."

The "mordains" in R. is "Mondrames" in M. The "fayr lodge of bowes," and "the clothes couerd upon the erthe," in M., are not mentioned in R. While, in R., Galahad strikes off the knight's "poing senestre," in M. he shears off the whole left arm. The passage in M., "and sire Galahad had sewed fast after him," corresponds in R. to the words: "*Et Galaad ne l'encauche plus, comme chil qui plus ne li a talent de faire mal*."

In R., Melians is said to recover in ". i . mois;" in M. it takes him "seven weeks."

The greater part of the fourteenth chapter, in which one of the monks expounds Melians' adventure to Galahad, is much shortened. The place or castle "the whiche was named Abblasoure" in M. is not mentioned in R., which only has: ". i . iour auint qu'il se parti de chies . i . vauasseure;" it is, however, not impossible that, by some extraordinary misreading (as, indeed, is not uncommon with Malory),

¹ Caxton has "lest," but it seems to me more probable that Malory's MS. had "best."

"Abblasoure" is a corruption of "vanassoure," a form which frequently occurs in the French MSS.

XV. The river "Syuarne" in M. is "seuerne" in R. The words which the old man says to Galahad, in R., concerning the "castiaus as puceles," are in M. attributed to Galahad himself by inadvertence. While, in R., Galahad meets but one damsel, M. speaks of seven. The description of Galahad's approaching the castle of maidens reminds one of the very similar description of Balyn's approaching the castle where he fights against his own brother. He also meets several people who warn him, and an old man says to him almost the very words which on this occasion the damsel says to Galahad.

R., speaking of Galahad after he has put the knights to flight, says: "Et quant il voit chou, si ne les encaucha point, ains vont al pont la ou par ent passoit." The "moche peple," which are numberless in M., are in R. "puceles." In R., Galahad does not blow the horn himself, but asks a knight to do so; nor does he sit down afterwards, as M. states, "on a bedde." The "preest" who in M. comes to Galahad is in R. the same old man who delivered the keys of the castle to him. While in M. "hit is past a seuen yere," it is only ". ii . ans passes" in R.

The "Duke Lyanowre" in M. is "duch linoy" in R.

The passages in M., "Thus she prophecied seuen yeres agone" and "for they hane denoured many maidens," have no equivalents in R.

It is interesting to observe that the name of Gareth, which is generally spelled Guereshes in French texts, occurs in R. in the form "gheroit," and soon afterwards "Gheheries."

XVI. The sixteenth chapter is a summary of pp. 45-48, with slight insignificant modifications. R. has "Agleual," M. "Agloual."

XVII. In R., Lancelot asks Perceval, when they have in vain endeavoured to overtake Galahad, what is to be done. Perceval advises returning to the high road; Lancelot objects to this, and continues his way by himself through the wood until he comes to a chapel. What M. says about Perceval's return to the recluse is anticipated from a later portion of R., which, on this occasion, does not mention what becomes of Perceval. M. forgets to state that Lancelot cannot enter the chapel, but only sees what it contains through the grilled door. In R. the candelabrum has seven candles, in M. only six.

XVIII. Here M. again speaks of "kynges Pescheours" as if he is identical with King Pelles; but he seemingly does not realise that "Pescheours" means "fisher," and treats it as a proper name. Farther on, at the end of this chapter, M. entirely omits the following passage in R. when the knight rides away from the cross: "si tent sa main vers le chiel, et iure que se diex donne, et tout li saint, il ne finera mais

d'esrer deuant che qu'il sache comment ch'est que li sains graaus s'apart en tout [en tant de] lieus el roiaume de Logres. Et par qui il fu aportes en engleterre, et, pour quel besoigne, autres de lui n'en seit vraies nouueles," &c.

XIX. In the nineteenth chapter M., besides several other unimportant points, omits the hermit's comparison of Lancelot to the bad servant in the parable of the talents.

XX. The twentieth chapter is a much condensed abstract of pp. 56-62 of the printed "*Queste*," &c.

β. BOOK XIV.¹

I. According to R., Perceval does not kneel down before the window of the recluse but, "*il hurta a la petite fenestre a la recluse*."

In the vulgate version of the "*Quest of the Holy Grail*," Perceval is the son of king Pellehem, as is clear by the remark at p. 182, where his sister is styled "*la fille au roi pellehem*." M., in accordance with the "*Suite de Merlin*," calls Perceval the son of King Pellinor, and, wherever he mentions him, either makes no reference to his descent or speaks in the sense indicated (comp., *e.g.*, pp. 232, 451, 692 of M.). Premising this, we understand why the passage in R.: "*aves uous talent de morir ausi coume votre frere qui sont mort et ochis par lour outrage . chertes si vous mores en tel maniere, che sera damaiges grans, et votres parentes en abaissera mult*," is rendered by M.: "*I see wel ye haue grete wyll to be slayne as your fader was thorough outrageousnes*."

While the reference in M. to King Pellinor is quite clear, I do not understand that in R. to Perceval's brothers, and consequently to Pellehem's sons.

M. omits that the recluse tells Perceval that he will have greater honour in abstaining from fighting with Galahad, for the latter, Boors, and he himself are the three knights destined to achieve the quest of Holy Grail. While in R. the recluse asks Perceval about "*sa mere et ses parens*," M. states the contrary, but both versions agree in so far as the recluse tells Perceval that his mother is dead.

II. M. omits the long description in R. of the three chief tables which were to come after Christ's birth—first, the table at which Christ often had his meals with the disciples; secondly, the table of the Holy Grail which Joseph brought to England; and, thirdly, the Round Table, which Merlin constructed in imitation of the second table. All this is related with great detail in R., M. only mentions the Round Table, and of this also he omits many particulars.

¹ *Queste de Saint Graal*, ed. Furnivall, pp. 63-101.

The castle of "Goothe," where, in M., Perceval is to find a cousin german (man), is in R. ". i . chastel que leu apiele *gher* v il a vne siewe cousine germaine." The castle where he is to find the maimed king is, in M., Carbonek (*also* Carboneck), in R., "Corbenic." From the accompanying circumstances we can glean that this is the same castle which M. calls on former occasions (pp. 571, 575-76, 597, and 603) "Corbyn," and which in the corresponding passages of the Prose-Lancelot is called "corbenyc." When I compiled my List of Names and Places I had not noticed this, and Malory himself was evidently unaware of this identity. But this simple fact clearly shows that for books xiii.-xvii. M. had another MS. than for books xi.-xii., a fact we shall find useful later on.

III.-IV. M. omits that Perceval, wishing to start at once, is persuaded by his aunt to stay until the morning; further, that she exhorts him to lead a sober life, and not to imitate Lancelot, that he may approach the holy vessel a clean and blameless virgin. In R., Perceval also asks his aunt why she became a recluse, and what has become of her son.

All that relates to King Euelac is told with far greater detail in R. than by M., who entirely omits several points.

While M. states, at the end of chapter iv., that Perceval "sette hym doun," in R. he is nearly out of his senses, "ains chiet sous . i . arbre, et li cuers lui faut." M. further omits that Perceval asks a valet to kill him, and that he abuses himself as a miserable wretch when the valet refuses to carry out his wish.

V.-X. The remainder of book xiv., devoted to the adventures of Perceval, is summarily reproduced by M. Now and then passages show that the MS. M. used must have been related to Royal 14 E iii.: *e.g.*, in the eighth chapter R. has "che est vns drois enchanteres vns multeplieres de paroles;" M., "an enchanter and multiplier of wordes."

The water called "mortayse" in M. is "apiele marcoise" in R.

γ. BOOK XV.¹

In the fifteenth book the adventures of Lancelot are continued. M. here attains his purpose of "reducing" his source more by omission than by condensation, as is shown by the fact that eight pages and a half of the Caxton correspond to twenty-eight pages of the printed "Queste."

I.-II. In R., Lancelot leaves the hermit only on the fifth day, after

¹ *Queste del Saint Graal*, ed. Furnivall, pp. 102-130.

the latter has exhorted him to lead a pious life. He tells Lancelot his chivalry will not help him in the pursuit of the Holy Grail. Merlin was right when he prophesied that only the best knight of the world, he who occupied the perilous seat and surpassed all other knights in goodness, would achieve the Holy Grail and acquire heavenly knight-hood. As the quest is devoted to heavenly and not to earthly matters, any knight who wishes to be in it must be free from sin. On the fourth day the hermit gets, from a brother of his, a horse and armour for Lancelot. Requesting the hermit to pray for him, Lancelot leaves him on the fifth day. After a while Lancelot meets a valet who, on hearing Lancelot's name, declares him to be one of the most wretched people alive, for while the holy vessel was by his side, he did not leave his place to take it; therefore he will have nothing but shame and disgrace in the quest. Lancelot answers nothing, but is greatly down-cast, weeps, and prays to God to help him return to the right path.

At noon he arrives at a hermitage. Here M. again takes up the narrative of R., but while in R. he finds at the hermitage an old man who laments his sufferings, M. says nothing about this, nor that Lancelot pities the old man.

The story of Agras (M. reads "Aguarus") and "le conte del val" (M., "erle de Vale") is told with far more detail in R. than in M. In R. the hermit asks Lancelot to watch the body with him until they bury it. When the hermit learns that his guest is Lancelot, he talks to him long, saying that he was once the best knight of the world, possessing virginity, humility, long-suffering, justice, and charity; but he could not resist the fiend, and fell a victim to him through entering into sinful relation with Guenever. As long as he remains in this condition and does not cry, "God, mercy," with a truly repentant heart, he can only have disgrace and shame. Then the hermit tells him the parable of the wedding. In this quest, likewise, only the virtuous shall eat; the haughty and sinful shall be cast out to destruction. All this M. entirely omits.

III. M. omits in this portion that the old man whom Lancelot in his vision sees descending from heaven, and blessing the knights, gives to the youngest of them the shape of a lion with wings, so that he rises up and flies away towards the clouds, wherein he disappears; further, that Lancelot starts in the morning, after ardently praying for God's guidance.

M. declares that Lancelot meets the knight who took his horse away; in R. the horse is not mentioned, but the knight is said to have taken away Lancelot's arms. Farther on, Lancelot's exchange of the horse on which he then rides for the one the knight had taken from him is not in R.

IV. The hermit's speech to Lancelot in R. is only outlined in M. The name "Nappus" in M. is "Warpus" in R. The second knight, whom M. calls "Nasciens," is called "Chrestiens" in R.;¹ both M. and R. add "en remembrance de son aioul." M.'s "Hellyas le grose" is in R. "Alain li gros," and, finally, M.'s "Lysays" is in R. "Elias." "Ionas" in M. is "Ionaus" in R., and "Manuel's daughter" is "la fille au roi moreneus." M. also omits the hermit's likening the seven kings to seven streams from the lake "Celidoyne."

V. M. only just mentions the tournament between the black and the white knights. The passage, p. 662, 6-8: "Thenne they sayd alle vnto syr launcelot blessid be god / that ye be now of oure felanshyps / for we shalle holde yow in oure pryson / and so they lefte hym with fewe wordes /" is not intelligible; in R. it runs thus: "lancelot, nous avons tant fait que vous estes des nôtres, et que vous estes en notre prison. Se vous en uoles issir, il couvient ke vous fachies notre volentei, et il lor creante, si s'en part maintenant, et les laisse en la forest." In R., Lancelot laments that through his sinful life he has lost his eyesight and his strength. The apple-tree under which Lancelot reposes in M. is a "grant poupelier" in R. M. omits that Lancelot finds at the chapel an old man serving mass.

VI. The sixth chapter in M. is a brief abstract of the contents of pp. 126-130 of the printed text of R. The names occurring are, in M., Clyazar, Argustus, Harlon; in R., "eliezer, Argustes, helain."

2. BOOK XVI.²

M.'s sixteenth book is a very faithful reproduction of the corresponding part of R.; though a little "reduced," no incident of importance is omitted, nor are modifications noticeable.

The first five chapters tell the adventures of Gawayne and Ector, the remainder of the book, or chapters vi.-xvii., being entirely devoted to Boors.

The names which occur in this section in M. chapter xii., "Prydam le noyre" and "Anyause," correspond to "Priadan le noir" and "Amans" of R. In chapter xiv. M. omits the name of the castle ("Cubele" in R.) to which Boors is shown by the yeoman.

¹ I thought at first that M. wrote "Nasciens" by inadvertence for the second knight "Chrestiens" in R., but, on investigating the matter, I found that the "Grand St. Graal"—i.e., the history of the Holy Grail as it is to be found in the French MSS. in connection with the "Merlin"—agrees with M., and gives the list of Nasciens' descendants thus: Celidoine, Marpus, Nasciens, Alain li Gros, Ysaies, Ionaus, Lancelot, Bans, Lancelot, and Galahad.

² *Queste del Saint Graal*, ed. Furnivall, pp. 131-175

An interesting passage occurs in the same chapter. When Boors asks the people who is going to fight on the two sides at the tournament, he is told, according to R., "*del conte des plains et de la veue dame de chaieans.*" The corresponding passage in M. runs thus: "The erle of playns shal be in the one party / & the ladyes newew of Heruyn on the other party." I collated this passage with various other MSS. of the "*Queste*," and found in the earliest MS., Royal 19 C xiii., "*le conte de plains & de la vedue dame de leanz*," and very similar passages in the others. I am inclined to think that M.'s "*ladyes newew of Heruyn*" is some extraordinary corruption of "*de la veue dame.*"

The name "*Calogreuance*," which occurs in chapters xv. and xvi. of M., corresponds to "*calogreuant*" in R.

c. BOOK XVII.¹

In the seventeenth book M.'s account of the incidents of the quest presents more variants from R. than in the preceding one, and the process of abridging the source is carried to a greater extent. This book shows clearly how little consistent is the division of the matter in "*Le Morte Darthur*" which Caxton² in his Preface owns to having introduced. If the same principle were observed in this book as in the former ones which relate the Grail quest, it ought to have been divided into at least three sub-divisions, which are, to a certain extent, marked in the Caxton—viz., (1) chapters i.–xii., (2) chapters xiii.–xvii., and (3) chapters xviii.–xxiii. As my space becomes more and more limited, I must be satisfied to notice only the most important variants between M. and R. which occur in this portion.

I. The epithet "*the haute prynce*" which is frequently given to Galahad by M. is found in R. neither here nor on any other occasion, as far as I remember.

While Ector says to Gawayne in M. "*your*" quest is now ended, the passage in R. runs, "*ore m'est il anis que *notre* queste soit remese, puis que vous estes si durement blechies.*"

The name in M. of the hermit, "*Vlfyn*," to whom Galahad comes does not occur in R. Whether M. added this name on his own account, remembering that Ulfyn figures in the "*Merlin*" as a brave knight and councillor of Utherpendragon, and that knights often turned hermits towards the close of their lives, or whether his source contained it, we cannot ascertain. It is, however, by no means impossible that

¹ *Queste del Saint Graal*, ed. Furnivall, pp. 176–247.

² I do not believe that Caxton actually introduced the division, but that the various paragraphs where he inserted the titles of "*books*" were already marked in Malory's MS.



the name occurred in a version of the "Queste" older than the one represented by MS. Royal 14 E iii.

II. While M. says, "she came to the see / the whiche was called *Collybe*," R. reads, "si entrerent en vne forest qui duroit iusc' a la mer, et estoit chele forest apielee *chelibe*."

The passage in M., p. 691, 1-3: "And whan the mayde was horsed and he bothe the lady took Galahad a fayr child and ryche / and so they departed from the Castel tyl they came to the see syde /" is not at all clear. There is no difference in R. between the "lady" and her "mayde;" the lady who leads Galahad to the castle is the owner of it. Then R. does not mention a child at all, but a "coffre," and the whole passage runs thus: "il monte en son cheual . et la dame prent . i . coffre trop bieles, et le met deuant li . et quant ele fu montee, si s'empart del chastiel, et s'en vont mult grant aleure, et cheuauchent chele nuit mult grant oirre, et errerent tant qu'il vinrent a la mer."

M. omits that they come, as R. states, on the fourteenth day after they have left the realm of Logrya, "en une ille sauuaige" between two rocks.

The passage in R., "car la nef ot toute iour tourne," corresponds apparently to M.'s "for there was a swalowe of the see."

In M. the lady says to Perceval: "Wete you wel that I am thy syster / whiche am doughter of kyng *Pellenore*;" in R., however, "que ie sui uotre seur, et fille au roi *pellehem*." Whether M., in order to be consistent with his previous statements in the "Merlin" and in the "Tristan," changed "Pellehem" to "Pellenore," or whether his source already contained this alteration, it is impossible to say.

III. The "croune of sylke" in M. is in R. "vne couronne d'or," M. being evidently led to this mistake by the "mult riche drap en guise de courtine."

In M. the description of the sword is much curtailed. Where, *e.g.*, M. says: "the one was a serpent whiche was conuersaunt in Calydone," R. reads: "La premiere estoit d'une maniere de serpent qui converse en calidoine plus ke en autre terre, si est apieles chis serpens papagastes." M.'s "Ertanax" is in R. "orteniaus."—The remainder of chapter iii. is very much abridged in M. The "kyng Harlame" and the "kyng Labor" correspond to the "roi vrlain" and the "roi lambar" in R.

IV. Where M. has "oughte to be more harder," R. reads "doit estre plus preus;" the adjective "hard" is therefore used in the sense of the French "hardi." While on p. 626 M. reads "Mondrames," he has in this chapter the more correct form, "Mordrayns." The "yle of Turnaunce" in M. is "l'ille tournoiant" in R.; and the "fende in the porte of peryllous roche" is in R. the "anemi en la roche del port perilleus."

V. The fifth chapter in M. is marked by more omissions than any other, for the contents of about ten pages in the printed edition of R. (pp. 188-197) are condensed to two pages in M. (pp. 695-697).

VI.-XI. Though still "reducing" considerably, M. follows the thread of R.'s narrative more closely in these chapters. The passage in M. chapter vi., "she made them fastned upon the selar of the bedde," corresponds in R. to "et soit uns d'en coste de chest lit, et li autres del autre part . et li tiers si vait par desous."

Whether, in M. p. 699, "a ryche purse by semynge" is a better translation of "vne aumousniere mult riche par semblant" than the editor's "chest" (marginal note) I shall leave the reader to judge.

Through some extraordinary mistake, M. has, on p. 700, "the shethe" was called "meuer of blood," where R. reads "et li fuerres a a non *memoire de sens*."

The castle "that men callê Carteloyse / that was in the marches of Scotland" is, in R., ". i . chastel que on apeloit carchelois et si estoit en la marche d'escoche."

The "erle Hernox" occurring on p. 707 in M. is, in R., "li quens ernous."

An example of M.'s way of occasionally strangely translating the French text is afforded in the opening lines of chapter xi., p. 705: "Ther is in this Castel a gentylwoman whiche we and this castel is hers and many other /"; in R. the passage runs: "Vairs fu, et est, qu'il a chaisns vne dame a qui nous sommes et tint chil de chest pais, et chis chaistiaus est siens, et maint autre."

XII.-XVII. The "water of Mortoyse" occurring in M. on p. 707 is, in R., "l'euue de marcoise."

On p. 712 M. has: "and at the xxv daye befelle hym after myddaye," where R. reads: "et au quinsime iour, entour midi, ouuri les iex."

The contents of the concluding lines of chapter xvii., p. 715*, 5-16, are not so detailed in R., where the corresponding passage runs: "puis erra tant par ses iournees qu'il vint a la court le roi artu, v li un et li autre li fisent mult grant feste . car mout desiroient sa venue, et la venue des autres compaignons, dont il auoit mout pau reuenus . et chil ki reuenue estoient, n'auoient nule riens fait en la queste, dont il ont mult grant honte." As M. adds nothing which he might not have gleaned from former incidents, I think we may safely attribute the last lines of chapter xvii. to him.

XVIII.-XXIII. "Symeu" in R. is "Symyan" in M.

On p. 717 M. writes "fyue days" where R. reads ". v . ans." M.'s reading in this case is evidently the correct one.

The passage in M., p. 720, 28-29, is not very clear: "But the thre

knyghtes of Gaule one of them hyghte Claudyne kyng Claudas sone / and the other two were grete gentylmen /" &c. In R. it runs thus: "et tant qu'il trouuerent estrois de gariles, que claudins [MS. Add. reads: "ortois de gaule, et claudin"], li fiens le roi claudas, en ert li vns, et li autre, de quel terre qu'il fuissent, erent asses gentile homme et de haut lignage." The "kyng of the Cyte whiche was cleped Estorause" is, in R., "li rois de la chite, qui auoit a non escorant."

The "almeryes at Salysbury" in M. are not mentioned in R., the passage running thus: "si furent mises en escrit et gardees en l'abeie de salebieres" and continues: "dont maistres gautiers map traist faire son luire del saint graal pour l'amour del roi henri son seigneur, qui fist l'estoire translater de latin en franchois."

The concluding twelve lines of the twenty-third and last chapter of this book, and of the "Quest of the Holy Grail," are M.'s own composition.

C. "LA MORT AU ROI ARTUS."



THE last books of "Le Morte Darthur," excepting the nineteenth book, relate the events which take place after the return of the knights of the Round Table from the quest of the Holy Grail until the deaths of King Arthur, Queen Guenever, and Lancelot, and correspond to the fourth part of the Prose-Lancelot, entitled "La Mort au roi Artus," a name very inappropriately given either by Malory himself or by Caxton to the whole compilation. The nineteenth book relates an episode which forms the subject of Chrétien de Troyes' "Roman de la Charrette," and is told in the first part of the Prose-Lancelot (in the second volume of the edition of 1513).

A close examination of the last portion of Malory's compilation shows that he cannot have derived his account from the Prose-Lancelot, to which, however, it is equally certain that his source was intimately related. Malory's source is thus either derived from the Prose-Lancelot, or both come from a common original. In the English metrical romance "Le Mort Arthur," as preserved in the unique Harl. MS. 2252, we possess a version which stands in the same relation to Malory's source as that does to the Prose-Lancelot; and of this Malory was aware, for, in his last two books, he often makes free use of the very words of the English poem. But Malory, or rather the author of his source, has altered the sequence of events in this section; whilst, in the Prose-Lancelot and in the English poem, the tournament at Winchester and

Lancelot's meeting the fair maiden of Astolat precede the queen's dinner, the incident of the poisoned apple, Mador's accusation of Guen-ever, and Lancelot's fighting for the queen, Malory in his eighteenth book observes the reversed order. Owing to this alteration of the sequence of incidents, many modifications became necessary; and there are, besides, feats described in Malory's account which are entirely absent from the Prose-Lancelot. The twentieth and twenty-first books follow the "Lancelot" on the whole; but, whilst many incidents are added, others are omitted. I have treated the nineteenth book in this section on account of its relation to the eighteenth and twentieth books, though I should have treated it more properly in the beginning of the section entitled "Lancelot, or the Later History of King Arthur," as its contents are told in a portion of the "Lancelot" which precedes all that Malory relates of him. In order to give the reader at a glance an idea what portions of Malory (M.) correspond to portions of the Prose-Lancelot (P.L.) and to the English metrical romance, "Le Mort Arthur," Harl. MS. 2252 (MH.), I subjoin the following table:—

M.	P.L.	MH.
Book xviii. { chaps. i.-viii. chaps. ix.-xx. chaps. xxi.-xxv.	vol. iii. ff. 143 ^v ; 144 ^r ; 160-66 ^r vol. iii. ff. 144 ^v -160 ^r ?	} ll. 1-1671 ¹ ?
[Book xix.]	[vol. ii. ff. 1-23]	—
Book xx.	vol. iii. ff. 166-190 ^r	ll. 1672-2951
Book xxi.	vol. iii. ff. 190 ^v -202	ll. 2952-3969

a. THE EIGHTEENTH BOOK.

Of all the books of "Le Morte Darthur," book xviii. is at once the most interesting and the most difficult for a critical examination, as the alteration in the sequence of incidents has caused many complicated modifications. To thread the labyrinth, I think it absolutely necessary to give a short abstract of the contents of ff. 143-160 of P.L.; at the head of each section of this abstract I place the number of the chapter of M. to which it corresponds.

I. [P.L. ff. 143^v and 144^r]. On his return to Artus' court from his pilgrimage to Iherusalem, Boors is received with great joy. His story of Galahad's last adventures and death, and all he knows of the "quest of the Holy Grail," Artus orders to be written down. Twenty-two knights of the Round Table are missing, of whom one only is not slain in combat. Gawayn

¹ Compare the emendations I propose as to the arrangement of ll. 1-1671 of "Le Mort Arthur," Introduction, p. 11.

owns to Artus that he alone killed eighteen, and among them Baudemagus. As the adventures of Logres are achieved, Artus, in order to keep up the spirit of his knights, announces a great tournament at Winchester. Lancelot, who led a pious life for some time in obedience to the hermit, again returns to his sin when he comes in contact with Guenever; but, whilst formerly he cautiously concealed his relations with her, he now recklessly neglects all precaution. Agravayn, who greatly dislikes Lancelot because he is a better knight than himself, soon notices the love of Lancelot and Guenever, watches them, and resolves to revenge the wrong which Lancelot does to Artus. Lancelot, wishing to assist, unknown, at the tournament of Winchester, pretends indisposition, and declares he will not go at all. When Boors and Lionel hear this, they offer to stay at home also, but Lancelot insists on their going, assuring them he will be well by their return. Boors and his companions start on the morrow for Winchester. Agravayn, ignorant of Lancelot's intentions, and suspecting he only stays at home for Guenever's sake, goes to Artus and tells him all. Artus does not believe him, but, when Agravayn proposes to watch Lancelot, tells him to do what he likes. He cannot, however, help thinking over the matter, and for this reason refuses the queen's wish to accompany him to Winchester "pour approuver le dit de aggavain."

VIII. p. 738, 12, to XX. [P.L. ff. 144^r-160^r]. When Artus has left for Winchester, Lancelot goes to the queen and tells her his intent; he will go to the tournament in disguise unless she wishes him to do otherwise. Guenever consents. He then leaves Kamalot at night, so that nobody sees him starting. On the next day he comes to a castle where Artus has passed the night. Artus at once recognises, from a window, Lancelot's horse, which he formerly gave him, and a little later, "au saillir d'une rue," Lancelot also, and, pointing him out to Girflet, asks him if he recognises Lancelot, who feigned to be ill. Girflet explains Lancelot's reasons for so doing. Both agree to keep their discovery secret.

Lancelot is lodged near the castle at the house of a rich man who has two sons. When Lancelot notices the shields of the two sons—which, according to the custom of the time, were, like those belonging to new-made knights, of one colour (red) without any mark—he asks his host for the loan of one. The host the more willingly grants his request as one of his sons is prevented, by a recent wound, from attending the tournament. When the other son of the host sees Lancelot, he wishes to know who he is, but cannot find out. He offers Lancelot his company to the tournament; Lancelot accepts, if he will wait until dark.

The host has also a beautiful daughter. This young lady asks Lancelot's squire concerning his master, and the squire, who cannot resist her beauty, tells her that his master is the best knight of the world. When the damsel hears this, she goes to Lancelot, kneels to him, and requests him to grant her a boon. When Lancelot has lifted her up, she prays him to bear her right sleeve at the tournament. Thinking nobody will know him, and that Guenever will not hear of it, Lancelot grants the damsel's request. He then attaches the sleeve to *his lance*. At nightfall Lancelot and the son of his host start.

They stay near Winchester at the house of an aunt of the young knight, as Lancelot wishes to be as far as possible from the other knights. They are hospitably received. On the morrow after mass they make themselves ready. Lancelot sends his squire to find out to what party Boors, Lionel, and Hector belong, and learns that they fight for the Winchester party against the kings of Ireland, Scotland, and Wales. The squire is told to stay at home whilst Lancelot and his companion go to the field. Artus with many knights looks on from a high tower. Lancelot joins the party which fights against Winchester, and fights valiantly. His companion breaks his lance against Hector's shield, and Hector in return strikes him so fiercely that he overthrows him and his horse. The people think the two knights cannot be the sons of the lord of the castle of "escalot" (by this name they were known), especially not the one who has the red sleeve at *his helmet*, for neither of the brothers can strike as Lancelot struck Hector before Gallegantius le gallois and Gawayn. Lancelot then mounts his companion again. Boors unhorses Lancelot, wounding him seriously, but the latter rises and strikes Boors to the ground with a fierce blow.

Gawayn, who is with Artus, seeing all this, says to the king, if Lancelot were there, matters would be different. Artus only smiles. Boors and Ector are mounted again and give Lancelot a deal of trouble, but at last the party to which Lancelot belongs is victorious, and Lancelot carries off the prize. Gawayn expresses his wish to know who the knight in red is. Gaheriet declares he never saw a better knight after Lancelot.

Meanwhile, Lancelot rides off with his companion right across the wood, to find a place where he can heal his wound. They return to the young knight's aunt. There Lancelot's wound is examined; an old knight of the neighbourhood, who knows much about surgery, is sent for, and declares Lancelot must remain there seven weeks. The story then returns to Artus and Gawayn.

Gawayn and Gaheriet follow Lancelot. They soon meet two squires carrying a wounded knight. They hear that a boar has wounded the knight; but the squires have seen no knight with a lady's sleeve at his helmet. They tell Gawayn that the wood is of great extent. When Gawayn and his brother return to Artus, the king smiles again, and says to Gawayn it was not the first time he took trouble without result, nor will it be the last. Gawayn now suspects that Artus knows who the knight is, but Artus tells him nothing. Gallegantin le gallois says, whoever the knight was, he left the tournament severely wounded by Boors. Artus then says, if that be so, Boors will never be sorrier for a wound in all his life than for this one, for he fears it may be mortal. On the morrow the king leaves Winchester, after announcing another tournament "a tanebor du lundi dapres en vng moys."

When Artus is again at the castle of Escalot, Gawayn comes by chance to the house where Lancelot had been quartered, and into the room where hangs Lancelot's shield. Gawayn does not go to the king in the evening, but passes the night with his host and his brothers. After supper the host's daughter asks Gawayn about the tournament. The damsel is greatly pleased to hear that the knight who wore her sleeve on his helmet was the best.

While the damsel, according to the custom of that time, serves at table, Gawayn looks at her and is struck by her beauty, so that he envies the knight with the red sleeve. In the evening Gaheriet speaks to the father, and Gawayn to the daughter. He tells her his name, and offers her his service. But she refuses, as she loves a knight, and has never loved but him. Gawayn offers to fight her knight and to convince her that he is as good as he. The damsel rejects this proposal, as she will not cause the death of two of the best knights of the world. On Gawayn's inquiry after the knight's name, the damsel tells him she does not know it, but she shows him a shield he left with her. This shield Gawayn at once recognises for Lancelot's, and now requests the damsel not to say a word of their conversation to Lancelot. The damsel then tells Gawayn that Lancelot had red armour at the tournament of Winchester, and this dissipates Gawayn's last doubt as to the identity of the victor in the tournament.

Gawayn sleeps but little that night. On the morrow he takes leave of his host and his daughter, the latter requesting him to greet Lancelot. On the road Gawayn tells Artus that Lancelot was the knight in the red armour. "You are right," replies Artus, "and I am glad that I did not trust Agravayn's statements; now you may clearly see they were wrong, for Lancelot is too good a knight to deceive me." Gawayn agrees, and tells Artus that Lancelot, as he once loved Pelles' daughter, now loves a beautiful maiden. Gawayn praises Lancelot much, and advises Artus to retain his good opinion of him, and not to believe anything against him. When Gawayn tells Guenever that the knight with the red sleeve was Lancelot, she refuses to believe it, but Girflet tells her he saw Lancelot's face. Then Guenever urges Gawayn to tell her all, after which she retires to her room in great sadness, and resolves to take revenge on Lancelot and on the damsel.

On the following day Hector, Boors, and Lionel return to court. They inquire at once for Lancelot, but in vain. The queen sends for Boors, and tells him what she has heard, adding that she wished Boors had killed Lancelot. Boors refuses to believe it, and tries to appease Guenever, but without result, as she banishes Lancelot from her court. Boors and his companions stop a week at Kamalot.

One day Artus wonders that Lancelot does not return. Gawayn replies, smilingly, that he thinks Lancelot feels very comfortable where he is. This remark excites Artus' curiosity, and he insists on Gawayn's telling him all he knows about the maiden of Escalot.

This apparent confirmation of Lancelot's disloyalty increases Guenever's anger. She again sends for Boors. The result of their interview is that Boors and his companions leave the court. Guenever had not expected this, and endeavours to dissuade Boors, but in vain. Boors, Hector, and Lionel start with Artus' leave in search of Lancelot; they go to Escalot, but can get no information there about him. After fifteen days' fruitless search, they stop at the castle of "athean," a mile from "tanebor," where a tournament is to take place in three days. The King of Northgales, who is staying at a castle of "plaisance" in the neighbourhood, is glad to hear of the arrival of "la parente au roy ban." He induces the knights to take his side in the

tournament. While all this is going on, Lancelot lies in the house of his young companion's aunt. The young knight loves Lancelot well. After a month, his sister comes and asks him about Lancelot. When she hears of his dangerous wound, she goes nearly out of her mind, and tells her brother who Lancelot is. She stays with Lancelot until he gets better, and her love for him grows from day to day. One day she comes to him in her best apparel, and avows her love. Lancelot is kind to her, but explains that he cannot dispose of his heart. This saddens the damsel greatly; she tells her brother, who endeavours to console her, but without result, as she at once declares her love will cause her death. From a squire of the King of Northumberland who comes to the castle Lancelot hears of the tournament of Tanebor, and that Artus and Guenever will be there. The mention of Guenever's name, and the idea that he cannot be present, excite Lancelot so much that his wound bursts and the blood streams forth. The "maistre chirurgien" tells the squire he has almost killed Lancelot. Lancelot is put to bed, and he does not open his eyes all day long. On the morrow, however, he feigns to be quite well, and announces his intention of going to the tournament of Tanebor. The physician only dissuades him with difficulty from such a foolish and dangerous plan. Lancelot then bids the squire go alone to Tanebor, and remember to Gawayn and Guenever the knight with the red armour and the sleeve, but on no account tell them about his condition.

When the squire comes to the hostel of the King of Northgales, Gawayn also comes to see Boors and his companions. At table, the squire, seeing Gawayn, and remembering Lancelot's folly in desiring to go to the tournament, begins to smile. Gawayn notices this, and asks the reason. When the squire tells him of the foolish knight whom he found at a castle, Gawayn is convinced that the squire has seen Lancelot, and promises him, should he happen to see the queen first, to give her the love of the knight who wore the sleeve on his helmet. Boors and his companions, on hearing this news, are greatly alarmed, and try to learn from the squire where he saw Lancelot. To get rid of them, the squire directs them to a wrong place.

The tournament takes place on the morrow. The knights of four kingdoms fight against the knights of the Round Table. Gawayn and the kindred of Ban gain the victory. Artus is much grieved at Lancelot's absence, and, in order to give him another chance, at once announces another tournament in a month's time in the meadow of Kamalot. Boors refuses to comply with Artus' request to return with him to court. When Gawayn gives Lancelot's message to Guenever, she does not believe it, and declares that not illness, but the fair maiden holds him back, wherefore she hates him. She also tries in vain to induce Boors to return to Kamalot.

On the next day Artus and his suite leave Tanebor. Gawayn, Boors, and his companions go to seek Lancelot. They first go to where the squire directed them, and find that he deceived them, then, by Gawayn's advice, to Escalot. There they still find Lancelot's shield, which Boors at once recognises, but no Lancelot. They ask the old knight where he is. He at first refuses to tell them, but at last, when they assure him they are his

friends and anxious to know how he is, promises to send them on the next day where Lancelot is, and keeps his word. His son who was ill when Lancelot came to the house leads them on the morrow to the aunt's house, where they find Lancelot and their guide's brother in the garden. They are as pleased to see Lancelot as Lancelot is to see them. He tells how sorely he was wounded, but that now he is better and hopes to return to Kamalot shortly. At dinner Gawayn asks Lancelot if he knows who wounded him. Lancelot does not know, but declares, wherever he meets him, he will pay him out. On hearing this Gawayn claps his hands, and tells Boors he will not have a bad antagonist. Boors dares not reply a word. When Lancelot understands, from Gawayn's remark and from Boors' silence, that the latter gave him the wound, he pardons him, as he knew not who he was. All stay together for a week. Boors says nothing he knows about Guenever.

[Then follows a visit of King Artus to his sister Morgain, where he sees pictures which Lancelot painted during his imprisonment there, and also hears about Lancelot's relation to Guenever.]

When Lancelot's wound is healed, the physician tells him he can return to Kamalot. He resolves to do so on the following day. The two sons of his host request Lancelot to allow them to be his knights. He consents. The damsel makes a fresh, but unsuccessful, attempt to gain his love by telling him that she loves him above all the knights of the world and that she will die for him. Indeed, soon after Lancelot is gone she retires to her bed, never leaves it again, and dies. Boors sends the knight who healed Lancelot to the King of Northgales with a recommendation. After a short time Lancelot and his companions reach Kamalot. When Guenever sees him from a window she retires to her chamber. Gawayn goes to see her, but she refuses to hear of Lancelot, feigning indisposition. Artus is absent from the court.

At night Boors goes to Guenever and tries to persuade her to come to the hall, but she persists in refusing. He tells her how often women have caused great mischief, mentioning David, Absalon, Salomon, Sanson, Hector, Achilles, Paris, and Tristan. But all is in vain. When Lancelot hears that Guenever hates him, he decides on leaving the court before Artus' return, and commissions Gawayn to remember him to the king. When they are in the wood, Boors tells Lancelot how angry the queen is with him on account of his wearing the damsel's sleeve. Lancelot is greatly disheartened; Boors endeavours to console him, saying he may be sure that Guenever will soon recall him when she finds out her mistake. He would therefore advise Lancelot to keep with his company in the country, going from one tournament to the other. Lancelot accepts this advice, but will have no company, save one squire. Boors dislikes this idea at first, but gives in when Lancelot remains firm. So they return to their companions, and Lancelot, telling them he has some private affairs to settle, leaves them, allowing but his squire Hagius to accompany him. Before leaving Boors, Lancelot mentions that, in case he comes to the next tournament, he will be in white armour.

II.-VIII., p. 738, 11 [P.L. ff. 160-166]. When Artus returns from his visit to Morgain and hears that Lancelot only stopped one day at the court, he thinks all Morgain has told him cannot be true, for if such love as she described really existed between Lancelot and Guenever, the former would not have left the court so quickly.

On the following day, when the queen dines with Gawayn and other knights, a strange incident happens. A certain knight "*auarlons*," who hates Gawayn mortally, resolves to kill him through poisoned *fruit*. At table the queen presents the fruit to a knight named "*gaheris de Karehan*," who, feeling greatly honoured, at once eats of it. But after a few seconds he falls dead. All rise in great amazement. Artus is told of the fatal incident, and Guenever is accused of murder. Artus acknowledges that, if the queen did the deed, she deserves severe punishment. The knight is sumptuously buried, and an inscription put on his tomb: "*Oy gist le vaillant gaheris le blanc de kaherin le frere de mador de la porte que royne genieure fist mourir par venin*." On the third day after the burial the brother of the dead knight, Mador de la porte, returns; nobody dares tell him. On the following day he finds his brother's tomb in the "*eglise Sainct estienne*," and accuses the queen of murder. Artus tells Guenever of the accusation. She asks a respite of forty days, to find a champion to prove her innocence. To this Mador agrees.

When Lancelot has left Boors and his company, he goes to a hermit and passes the night there. He sends his squire to Kamalot for an "*æcu blanc a troyz bendes de bellif vermeilles et couertures toutes blanches*," which he intends to wear at the tournament so that Boors may recognise him. Lancelot goes, armed with a spear only, into the forest. When it becomes very hot, he dismounts and lays himself down to rest by a fountain. While he is asleep a stag whom Artus' hunters follow comes by chance to the fountain to quench his thirst. An archer, profiting by this moment, shoots at the stag, but misses, and, instead, wounds Lancelot in the thigh. Lancelot starts up to punish the archer, but the latter flees, and, telling his companions what has happened, bids them not to go near the place, as he has hit Lancelot with an arrow. Lancelot tears off a piece of his shirt to stanch the flow of blood, and returns to the hermit, sorry only that for a second time he is prevented by a wound from going to a tournament. He has to remain fifteen days with the hermit. About a month after the incident of the poisoned fruit, the tournament of Kamalot takes place. Many knights take part in it. Artus is sad at Lancelot's absence. So is Boors. After the tournament Artus again asks Boors to return with him to Kamalot and there wait for Lancelot, but Boors refuses, as he wishes to go to the King of North-gales. When Artus returns to Kamalot, Gawayn tells him Lancelot must be either ill or in prison.

On the morrow a richly decorated boat arrives at Kamalot before the tower where Artus is staying. Artus sees it first, and points it out to Gawayn. They go down, enter the ship, and find therein the body of a beautiful maiden; in her hand she holds a letter addressed to the knights of the Round Table, in which it is said that she is the maiden of Escalot, who died

for love of Lancelot, because he refused to return her love. Artus is grieved for this. Gawayn acknowledges his mistake in thinking that Lancelot loved the damsel. Artus tells Ywain and Gaheriet, and the news comes to Guenever. Gawayn explains to her his mistake in stating that Lancelot loved the maiden. Guenever is the more wretched; she feels she has done wrong to her best friend, whom she misses the more as the day for the appointment with Mador draws nearer. The maiden is buried with great honours in the principal church of Kamalot, and her tomb is inscribed: "*Oy gist la damoyselle descalot qui pour lamour de Lancelot mourut.*"

Lancelot, while still convalescent at the hermit's, meets one day in the wood a knight from Kamalot, and learns from him the accusation against Guenever. Greatly surprised to hear that none of his friends had taken up the queen's cause, he resolves to rescue her himself. He asks the knight the exact date of Mador's return to court, declaring he knows a knight who would not wish to see Guenever disgraced. The knight says no one will win honour, as the queen is guilty. A day after this conversation Lancelot meets Hector by chance, and reveals his intention of going to Kamalot. Both meet Boors a few days after, and he at once asks Lancelot if he knows of the accusation against the queen. Lancelot tells him also of his purpose. They go together to a castle called "alfain." Lancelot requests Ector and Boors to return to Kamalot, inquire Guenever's disposition towards him, and let him know when he has overcome Mador; that they may recognise him, he will wear the shield with four "bendes de belif."

Artus and all knights are pleased to see Boors and Ector back, but Guenever is the most delighted, as she hopes that one of them will fight for her. Boors goes to her, and reproaches her bitterly for her bad treatment of Lancelot, who was innocent, as she saw by the arrival of the maiden's body and her letter.

The day appointed with Mador approaches. Artus no less than Guenever feels uneasy, as no knight has declared his intention of fighting for the queen. Artus in vain asks his nephew Gawayn to defend Guenever. The queen kneels to Boors and Ector, imploring them to be her champions. Boors, touched at last, promises her that, in case no better knight takes up her cause on the appointed day, he will do so to the best of his power.

When Mador arrives, the king tells him that, if at the hour "*de viespre*" nobody has decided to fight for the queen, she will have to suffer the due punishment for her crime. At the "*eure de tierce*" Lancelot arrives. Except Boors and Ector, nobody knows him. He dismounts, goes straight to King Artus, and tells him he has heard of the charge against the queen, and wishes to save her honour. The fight takes place. Mador, overcome, asks Lancelot's pardon, and receives mercy. Artus and Guenever receive Lancelot with open arms and thanks.

Before comparing in detail the various episodes of book xviii. in M. with the corresponding ones in P.L., it will be necessary to look at the whole structure of the section. The first question which naturally

offers itself, is: Why has the writer of M.'s source not preserved the same sequence of incidents as in P.L.? The eighteenth book in itself contains no clue to this enigma, but, if we consider books xviii. and xix. together, I think it is not difficult to find an answer. The subject of book xix., though different in many points, agrees with the episode of Guenever and Mador de la porte in two characteristic points: Guenever's danger, and her rescue by Lancelot as her champion. Had the writer of M.'s source—who intercalated the contents of book xix. from a much earlier portion of P.L.—preserved the sequence of incidents in P.L., the two episodes would have immediately followed one another, and the one would have thus weakened the effect of the other.

In M., London and its neighbourhood, in P.L., Kamalot and the surrounding places, are the scenes of books xviii. and xx.

Though M. and P.L. vary in numberless points, the critic's eye cannot fail to distinctly recognise in P.L. the basis of M.'s account. The following points are common to both versions:—

1. Lancelot's relapse into his sinful life after his return from the quest.

2. Lancelot's riding, disguised, to Winchester, and his being wounded there by Boors.

3. The episode of the fair maiden of Astolat.

4. The episode of the dinner and Mador's accusation of Guenever.

5. Three tournaments. The first is placed at Winchester in both M. and P.L., and Lancelot is present and seriously wounded by Boors. The second is at Tanebor in P.L., in M. "besyde wynchester;" Lancelot is unable to be present, owing to the bursting of his wound. The third, finally, is in the meadow of Kamalot in P.L., in M. "besyde westmestre," and Lancelot is kept away by the arrow wound. M. omits Artus' visit to Morgain, which would contradict what he told in the fourth book, where he follows the "Suite de Merlin."

Whether chapter xxv. was part of M.'s source, or whether he added it himself, is difficult to say; it is not in P.L. I incline to believe the reflections on love are Malory's own.

We may now begin with chapter i. Only a few things are noticeable which agree with P.L. One is the welcome of the knights on their return from the quest, but M. omits that twenty-two are dead, eighteen of whom, including Baudemagus, were killed by Gawayn. As M. had already mentioned, at the end of book xvii., that Arthur had the adventures written down, he does not repeat this statement here. M. and P.L. agree, as I have stated, that Lancelot returns to his sinful life and his relations to Guenever, but while P.L. says that, instead of hiding it, as formerly, he now takes no precaution, M. states just the contrary—that Lancelot is careful to avoid slander. This modification of the facts was

necessary to furnish a motive for Lancelot's banishment from the court, which, in P.L., where the episode of the poisoned apple, &c., follows later on, is owing to his wearing the sleeve of the fair maiden at the tournament. According to P.L., the contents of chapters viii.-xx. would precede those of chapters ii.-viii. When Lancelot has left the court, M. and P.L. agree in stating that Boors consoles him, and tells him that, as women are very changeable, he should remain in the country, as probably Guenever would soon see that she had wronged him, and recall him. Brasias, who lives in a hermitage near Windsor, to whom Lancelot goes in M., is not mentioned in P.L., though there also he comes eventually to a hermit's. The remainder of chapter ii. is not in P.L.; it contains such changes as were rendered necessary by the altered sequence of incidents.

We now come to the episode of Guenever and Mador de la porte: M. speaks of a "preuy dyner" Guenever gives to twenty-four knights. Neither the private character of the occasion nor the number of knights is mentioned in P.L., but only the *dramatis personæ*. In M. several names, such as Persaunt and Ironsyde, occur in this list which I feel sure M. added on his own account, indulging his taste for such catalogues of names.

Owing to Mador de la porte's presence, several points of P.L.'s narrative drop out in M.—*e.g.*, Mador's return three days after the death of the knight, and his finding the tomb in the church. The knight who dislikes Gawayn so much that he resolves to poison him is named "auarlons" in P.L., Pyonel or Pynel in M. Gawayn's fondness for fruit, which is so much emphasised in M., and which causes people to think the queen wished to kill *him*, is not mentioned in P.L., nor is the suspicion of the people. M. does not mention, as does P.L., that Guenever herself handed the fruit to the knight, who felt himself greatly honoured thereby. In P.L. only "fruit" is mentioned; in M., "an apple." The knight who dies through the poisoned fruit is, in M., Patryce, a *cousin* of Mador; in P.L., "gaheris de kaheran," a *brother* of Mador.

In M., Mador accuses the queen at once; in P.L., only three days after the incident, when he finds the tomb in the church.

While in P.L. the respite accorded to Guenever is "forty days," it is only "xv" in M. The fifth chapter, though considerably modified in accordance with the altered circumstances, contains several points in common with P.L. The queen, when no knight has declared his intention to fight for her, implores and kneels to Boors, but while in P.L. this humiliation is sufficient to touch Boors' heart, M. makes Arthur join his wife before Boors declares his readiness to fight unless a better knight than himself comes forward. The *dénouement* of the episode agrees in the two versions in some points only. In both, Lancelot arrives at the place from a hermitage. But while, in M.,

Boors makes himself ready to fight, and Lancelot only comes at the supreme moment; in P.L., Boors does not prepare himself at all, but waits, trusting to Lancelot's arrival. In both versions the fight ends with the defeat and surrender of Mador. But the details respecting the queen's name on the tomb, and the disclosure of the real murderer by the lady of the lake, are not in P.L.¹ M. relates the tournament of Winchester, in continuation of this episode, at p. 738, 12. There is, of course, nothing in P.L. that justifies M.'s remark that Winchester is Kamalot; on the contrary, as Arthur goes from Kamalot to Winchester, the two are distinctly differentiated. In this, as in the two following tournaments, M.'s account is marked by a profusion of knights' names and details not found in P.L. While, in M., Arthur wishes the queen to accompany him, and is much disappointed when she declares herself unable to comply with his wish, in P.L., in order to test her, he expressly forbids her to go to the tournament.

Whilst, in P.L., Lancelot goes to the queen and tells her of his intention to go to the tournament disguised, in M. he makes up his mind to go only when Guenever tells him how unwise of him it is to stay at home. P.L. does not mention that Lancelot reveals at once to Guenever his intention to fight at the tournament against Arthur, though also in P.L. that is, later on, the case.

M. and P.L. agree in stating that Arthur recognises Lancelot when passing the castle of Ascalot, and that Lancelot is lodged near the castle with an old knight, but P.L. does not mention that the knight is also a hermit, nor his name, Bernar or Barnard, nor the names of his two sons, Tyrre and Lauayne, nor that of his daughter, "Elayne le blank."

M. omits that the damsel asks Lancelot's squire for information about his master. Whilst, in P.L., Lancelot and his companion are armed in red and the colour of the sleeve is not mentioned, in M. the sleeve is red and the colour of the armour is not mentioned. The "perlys" with which the sleeve is embroidered in M. do not appear in P.L. The aunt of Lancelot's companion, at whose house, in P.L., Lancelot stays near Winchester, is "a ryche burgeis" in M.

The description of the tournament, which occupies pp. 742-45, has only one principal point in common with P.L.—namely, the wounding of Lancelot by Boors, but while, in P.L., Lancelot does not know who has wounded him, he knows it in M. P.L. does not state that the truncheon

¹ The English metrical romance "Le Mort Arthur," Harl. MS. 2252, ll. 1648-1664, relates that, after Lancelot has overcome Mador de la porte, the "squeers" who have served at table when the knight died are cross-examined, and at last one of them confesses that he has poisoned an apple to kill Gawayne. The squire is then "drawen and hongyd, and for-brende, Be-fore syr mador the noble knyghte."

of the spear remains in the wound and is afterwards pulled out by Lauayne.

The statement that the King of the Hundred Knights, the King of Northgales, the King of Northumberland, and Galahaut the haute prynce try to induce Lancelot to stay with them is also absent from P.L.

Whilst, in P.L., Lancelot and his companion return to the latter's aunt, and a physician is summoned thither, in M. they at once go to a hermit, Baudewyn of Bretayne, the same mysterious personage whose name occurs several times in the first books in harmony with the "Merlin." The long conversation between Lancelot and the hermit, and the remark that it was a custom of the time for knights to often become hermits in their old age, are not in P.L.

M. and P.L. state that Gawayn tries in vain to find Lancelot, and is afterwards lodged, by chance, in the place where Lancelot left his shield. M. omits Gawayn's proffer of his love to the fair maiden, and greatly modifies the remainder of this episode by adding some details and omitting others.

Whilst, in M., Lancelot's wound bursts open afresh when he recklessly attempts to ride, in P.L. his emotion on hearing that Guenever will be at the tournament, while he must stay away, causes the accident.

The commission to go to the tournament and greet Guenever which Lancelot gives to Boors in M., is not in P.L.

The parting of Lancelot and the maiden, her death, and the arrival of her body at London are much spun out in M. by many details absent from P.L.

The fact that Lancelot is to wear a golden sleeve in honour of Guenever at the third tournament is not in P.L.

In M. the wound which prevents Lancelot from going to this tournament is inflicted by a lady huntress; in P.L., by one of Arthur's huntsmen.

The details respecting the last tournament mentioned by M. are not all to be found in P.L.

b. BOOK XIX.: "LE ROMAN DE LA CHARRETTE" AND THE PROSE-LANCELOT.

a. CHAPTERS I.-VI.

The nineteenth book of "Le Morte Darthur" consists, as one cannot help noticing at once, of three distinct parts, drawn from at least two different sources: the first part comprises chapters i. to v.; the second, chapters vi. to ix.; and the third, chapters x. to xiii.

The adventure of the carrying away of Queen Guenever by Meleagaunt

also forms the subject of the poem "Le Conte de la Charete," by Chrétien de Troyes and Godefroi de Lagni,¹ and is likewise told in the second part of the Prose-Lancelot, though very differently. The relationship of these two versions to one another is a point of great interest and importance in the study of the Round Table Romances, this being, with the possible exception of the "Tristan" and the poems of Robert de Boron, the only case in which "original and imitation can be compared." The satisfactory determination of this point cannot but greatly facilitate the solution of the problem of the priority in date of the prose or the metrical versions.

The Abbé de la Rue and MM. Paulin Paris, Hoffmann, and others held that the prose account existed before Chrétien's poem.² MM. V. Schmidt, Fauriel, Wolf, Grimm, Gervinus, and H. de La Villemarqué are in favour of the contrary theory. M. P. Maertens finally rejects both theories, and holds the two forms to be independent of each other. M. Gaston Paris, in his learned treatise "Le Conte de la Charrette," Romania, xii. pp. 459-534, has conclusively shown that Chrétien's poem is the direct source of the episode corresponding to it in the Prose-Lancelot. The source which Malory (or the writer of his source) used for the five first chapters of book xix. must have been independent from either Chrétien's poem or the Prose-Lancelot. M. G. Paris has also treated this question, and thrown upon it as much light as is possible with the present Welsh sources at the disposal of scholars who are not "celtisants." I have carefully gone through his account, and, instead of giving a *résumé* of it, I have, in honour of the great French scholar, translated the portion of his article on "Le Conte de la Charrette" entitled "Le sujet du poème de Chrétien," Romania, xii. pp. 498-508.

"Besides Chrétien's poem, which is, as we have seen, the direct source of the episode corresponding to it in the Prose-Lancelot, we possess an entirely independent account of the carrying off and the deliverance of *Guenièvre* in a well-known English compilation, which has been hitherto too little utilised for studies of this kind, the *Book of Arthur*, inappropriately styled *Le Morte Darthur*, composed by Sir Thomas Malory (or Malorye, or Maleore) in 1469 or 1470, and printed for the

¹ Le Roman du Chevalier de la Charrette, par Chrétien de Troyes et Godefroy de Laigny. With an Introduction by P. Tardé. Reims, 1849. 8vo.—See also: G. Ellis, Specimens of English Metrical Romances, &c. London, 1805. 3 vols. Vol. i. pp. 311-327; and Bibliothèque Universelle des Romans, Avril 1777, i. pp. 67-94.—Roman van Lancelot door W. J. A. Jonckbloet. 2 vols. 4to. The Hague, 1846. "Li Romans de la Charrete," printed from MS. Cangé 73, occupies in this edition pp. 1-49 of vol. ii.

² I may add that Prof. W. Foerster, in his Introduction to "Erec und Enide" (Christian von Troyes, Sämtliche Werke III., Halle, 1890, 8vo), pp. xxxvii, &c., pronounces himself in favour of the theory that the prose-romances represent an earlier stage of the Arthur-saga than Chrétien's poems.—H. O. S.

first time by Caxton in 1485, and often afterwards.¹ In Malory's book, which requires a special study, two elements can at once be distinguished: incidents more or less identical with those found in the known French romances, and others not to be found in these. It would be premature to look upon these latter as the outcome of the English compiler's imagination; many stories, formerly attributed to this origin, can now be identified with French episodes, unknown at the time, and it is highly probable that Malory has throughout confined himself to translating, abridging, and now and then modifying his source, or sources. Such is also the case with the nine first chapters of the nineteenth² book, where he relates with considerable variations the adventure forming the subject of the *Conte de la Charete*. Here follows a *résumé* of these chapters.³

"The author himself seems to divide his story into two distinct parts when he tells us, after having mentioned the surname of Lancelot, Chevalier du Chariot: 'and so leve we of this tale le Chevalier du charyot and torne we to this tale.'⁴ It seems, indeed, to me that he has drawn from two distinct sources: the second part, in despite of the differences which separate it from the second part of *Chrétien's* poem, may, after all, derive its origin more or less directly from it,⁵ and I shall not occupy myself with it any longer. But such is by no means the case with the first part. Here we find particular facts, drawn most probably from a source independent from *Chrétien's*.

"Certain, indeed, of these traits are authenticated by various Welsh texts as having belonged to old Celtic stories. It requires no long argumentation to establish that Méléaguant, who carries off Guenièvre in the two French poems, *Chrétien's* and the one Malory followed in his

¹ "I use the edition of Macmillan, 1868, though it is 'revised for modern use;' this is of no importance here."

² "The division into books and chapters is made by Caxton."

³ I have not thought it necessary to give a translation of this synopsis.—H. O. S.

⁴ *Le Morte Darthur*, p. 780, ll. 21-22, book xix. chap. v.—H. O. S.

⁵ "The differences are great, but may nevertheless be the work of a skilful abbreviator and arranger. Thus the trap which Méléaguant uses is happily substituted for the obscure story of the dwarf; the stake on which Guenièvre is to be burnt, which makes the conclusion more tragical, is met with in several analogous stories; Lancelot's generosity towards Méléaguant in the final combat (no less than Guenièvre's nodding to him) is already in the *Prose-Charete*, though without the strange addition of the English romance, a fact which proves that this portion of Malory's story has passed through the *Prose-Lancelot*; moreover, this generosity is an imitation of that which he shows in *Chrétien* towards the knight who has insulted him, and which the prose-writer has repeated. But it is not quite clear why Méléaguant, once delivered from Lancelot, sends Guenièvre back. The compiler, not having at his disposal Bademagu, who was unknown to the poem which furnished his first part, did not know how to overcome the difficulty.'

first part, is no other than the Maelwas or Melwas¹ of the Breton² tradition, to which I have already alluded in my first article on Lancelot,³ who also carries off Arthur's wife. This carrying off is celebrated in Welsh poesy, and the allusions to it there show that in its primitive form it resembled Malory's much more than Chrétien's account of it.

"A note to a curious fragment, the Dialogue of Arthur and his wife, states, in speaking of Gwenhwyvar, that she was Arthur's second wife, and the one whom Melwas, prince of Albany (Scotland), carried off.⁴—A poet of the fourteenth century, David ab Gwilym,⁵ has thrice alluded to this story. But none of these allusions is very clear. The first (p. 220, 153) consists of but one word, and opinions differ as to the sense of this word: the poet, speaking of a sweet sleep which he has had, says that it was sweeter than that of Paul the apostle, sweeter than that of the Seven Sleepers, sweeter than that of Melwas *y glas glog*. 'Sous la grotte verte,' translates M. de La Villemarqué in a letter which he kindly wrote to me on this subject;⁶ Williams, in his *Eminent Welshmen*, translates 'under the green cloak,' and sees in this an allusion to the history of the carrying off. The ordinary sense of *clog* is 'stone;' now, there is an undoubted reference here to some legendary trait unknown to us.—The second passage (p. 106, 73) is longer and more interesting; but its interpretation is difficult. Two English Celtic scholars, Mr. Jenner, of the British Museum, and Mr. Cowell, professor of Sanscrit in the University of Cambridge,⁷ consulted by my learned friend Mr. Ward, have translated the eight lines of which this passage consists in almost the same terms. I give here in French the sense of these lines by the side of the Welsh text.

Och ! nad gwiw-uchenaïd gwas, Hélas !⁸ il ne sert de rien de pousser
un soupir d'amant malheureux,

¹ "The *w* had to pass through *gw* to arrive at *g*; that is why I have preferred the spelling *Meleaguant*."

² "Breton" means here *Welsh*, M. G. Paris using "Breton" indifferently of Wales and modern Brittany, a usage to which exception is taken by Prof. H. Zimmer. See Introduction, p. 6, note.—H. O. S.

³ M. G. Paris refers to his article "Lancelot," in *Romania*, vol. x. pp. 465-96.—H. O. S.

⁴ "Myvyrian Archæology, i. 175; cf. La Villemarqué, *les Romans de la Table Ronde*, p. 10, 59."

⁵ "This poetry has twice been published—in 1759, London, by Jones and Owen, and recently at Liverpool. I owe to Mr. Ward the information which follows." (The first edition appeared, London, 1789, not "1759."—H. O. S.)

⁶ "M. de La Villemarqué, who was the first to refer to this passage of David, did not point out the two others."

⁷ M. G. Paris writes "d'Oxford" by mistake.—H. O. S.

⁸ In order to retain the essence of M. G. Paris' discussion, I have reprinted the French translation. The first passage runs in English thus: Alas! It boots not to give up the sigh of an unhappy lover,—And in vain I would crave for Melwas' cunning:—The thief

I mi alw am grefft Melwas ;	Et je souhaiterais en vain la ruse de Melwas :
Y lleidr, drwy hud a lledryd, Aeth a bun i eitha' byd ; I'r coed fr ai 'r hocedydd, I furiau cainge o frig gwydd :	Le voleur, par illusion et jonglerie, Emporta la belle au bout du monde. Au vert bois alla le trompeur, Aux murailles de branches des cimes des arbres.
A dringo heno, fal hwn, Yn uchel a chwenychwn.	Et cette nuit, comme lui, Je voudrais bien grimper en haut.

by illusion and jugglery,—Carried off the fair one to the end of the world.—To the green wood went the deceiver,—To the walls of branches on the top of the trees,—And to climb this night—Up high I would desire. The translation of the second passage is: The window devouring the life, was a cause of torment,—There, where she was placed to bring the light of the sun: Can I not become old! but there was by sorcery—A window of the same shape as mine;—That was a strange journey, a marvellous adventure,—When once upon a time from Caerleon,—Melwas, by excessive passion went,—Through it (the window) without any fears of love,—In the anxiety of the sufferings of his great love,—Once upon a time, near the dwelling of the daughter of Gogfran Gawr.—H. O. S.

This portion of the present volume was already in the printers' hands when I received a copy of Prof. J. Rhys' "Studies in the Arthurian Legend," Oxford, 1891, 8vo.—In the third chapter of his volume, Prof. Rhys speaks of Melwas referring to Malory and Chrestien de Troyes, without, however, throwing more light on the question. But his translation of the passages from David ab Gwilym differs considerably from the one furnished to Prof. Gaston Paris. Of the first passage two readings are given—viz.:

"Him Melwas 'dan' or 'yn' y glas glog."

"The sleep of Melwas 'beneath' or 'in' the green cloak."

The Welsh text shows in the second passage the variants: "gwiw ochenaid" in l. 1 and "cainc" in l. 6. The translation runs thus:

*"Alas that a bachelor's sigh avails not
For me to invoke the art of Melwas!
The thief that, by magic and illusion,
Took a fair one to the world's end:
To the green wood that juggler went,
To the leafy rampart of a bough—
And to climb to-night aloft like him,
That is what I could wish to do."*

The third passage has the following variants in the Welsh text: l. 1, "Astrus, oedraul;" l. 6, "Gaerlleon;" and is thus translated:

*"Troublesome has been the life-wasting window
Where it was placed to let the sunlight in.
May I die! if it was not of magic make,
A window of this the very counterpart—
Except the course of the wondrous adventure—
That was the one at Caerleon of yore,
Which entrance gave of old to Melwas—
Driven by over-love without love's fears,
The dire plague and pain of mighty passion—
At the house of Giant Ogurvan's daughter."*

These words, *hud a lledryd*, translated here by 'illusion et jonglerie,' may, as Mr. Ward remarks, have a somewhat different sense. If one admits with Stephens that *hud a lledryd*¹ means 'masque, divertissement, jeu théâtral,' one may believe that Melwas disguised himself to carry off the queen. The sixth line at any rate, though by no means clear, indicates that the scene happened in a wood.—The third passage (p. 326, 229) pointed out and translated by Mr. Cowell runs thus:—

Astrur fu 'r ffenestr oesdraul,	La ² fenêtre dévorant la vie a été une cause de tourment,
Lle rhoed ; ddwyn lleufer haul :	Là où elle était placée pour amener la lumière du soleil :
Na bwy' hen a bu o hud	Puissé-je ne pas vieillir ! mais il y a peu par magie. ³
Ffenestr a hon unffunud ;	Une fenêtre de même façon que la mienne ; ⁴
Dieithr hwyl, da uthyr helynt,	Ce fut un étrange voyage, une mer- veilleuse aventure,
Yr hon o Gaelleon gynt,	Quand jadis, de Caerléon,
Y doe Felwas a draserch	Melwas alla, par une passion ex- cessive
Drwyddi, heb arswydi serch,	Au travers [de cette fenêtre], sans aucunes craintes d'amour,
Cur trymhaint cariad tramawr	Dans l'angoisse de la souffrance de son grand amour,
Gynt ger ty ferch Gogfran Gawr.	Jadis, près de la demeure de la fille de Gogfran Gawr.

This daughter of Gogyrfan or Gogfran Gawr is, indeed, the wife of Arthur according to Welsh records, but instead of being the second, Gwenhwyvar, as stated by the annotator of the Dialogue [of Arthur and his wife], she would be the third.—Finally, William Owen, in his *Cambrian Biography* (London, 1803 (not 1813)), says in the article *Melwas*,⁵ 'He arrayed himself in leaves, to lie in wait for Gwenhwyvar and her attendants, who, according to custom, were out on May morning

¹ "I make use of the German translation by Schulz, *Geschichte der walischen Literatur*, p. 62 ff."

² See *ante*, note 8, pp. 235-236.

³ "This is the word *hud*, already mentioned, which properly means 'illusion.'"

⁴ "The piece from which these lines are quoted is entitled : *On an oaken window*."

⁵ "M. de La Villemarqué (p. 59) mistakenly attributed this little story to David ab Gwilym ; he himself, replying to a question I had asked him, pointed out this confusion in his notes, and directed me to the passage in the *Cambrian Biography*. I have moreover to remark, that the translation he gives of this little story contains several additions, suppressions, and modifications."

to gather birch for garlands to welcome the summer, and by means of that disguise he carried her away.¹

"It is difficult to decide the exact value of this passage. Owen does not indicate his authorities; he may well have guessed, without saying it, the identity of Melwas and Méléaguant, and simply taken from Malory the incident of the maying. But the passages of David ab Gwilym, however obscure they may be, leave no doubt upon one point: Melwas, according to the old Welsh stories, carried the wife of Arthur away into a wood, disguised, as it would appear, in a garment of leaves. The lost French poem followed by Malory represents the carrying off in the same way; Méléaguant's disguise is not mentioned, but this trait seems to have disappeared by inadvertence, as the reader is prepared for it by the queen's order that all her companions should be arrayed in green; on their return they are completely covered with herbs and leaves, as is also the ravisher, doubtless in order that he might be taken for one of the maidens, and thus more easily carry off the queen. The fight which in Malory replaces this stratagem does not, therefore, belong to the primitive story, and was perhaps only inserted by the compiler to join (by the story of the wounds) the second part of the episode to the first.

"The French poem of which I postulate the existence as the source of the first part of this episode has perhaps left traces elsewhere than in Malory. The *Crone* of Heinrich von dem Türlin alludes to an adventure of Guenièvre with Méléaguant which I had at first, without more closely examining it, connected with Chrétien's poem, but which now seems to me to have relations with a story differing in some respects from and similar in others to that of Malory. Mr. Warnatsch, in the interesting work² of which I spoke in the beginning of this article, was the first to point out the peculiar features of these allusions in the German poet.

"The first occurs ll. 2098 ff. There is question of a cup out of which only knights without blame may drink:³ Lancelot does not stand this test because, 'contrary to what is becoming a knight, he had entered into a cart,⁴ in pursuance of his vengeance, when Milians carried the queen off against her will; he had lost his horse, and could not for this reason cross on foot the wood full of thickets and briars, nor was he

¹ "It is strange that the author of this short notice does not state how the queen was taken away from Melwas."

² Otto Warnatsch, *Der Mantel*, Bruchstück eines Lancelot-romans des Heinrich von dem Türlin, nebst einer Abhandlung über die Sage vom Trinkelhorn und Mantel und die Quelle der Krone in part ii of *Germanistische Abhandlungen* ed. M. K. Weinhold, Breslau, 1883.—H. O. S.

³ "Heinrich has invented this to match the chastity test imposed upon the ladies; see Warnatsch, p. 114."

⁴ "Uf einen karren: charette or chariot"—(cart—H. O. S.).

willing to turn back before he had found out in what situation¹ the queen was.'—Farther on (l. 5990) the poet, speaking of the vicissitudes of fate, after having quoted different cases, says: 'And thus it was with Milianz, when, through his presumption, he fought Lanzelet for Ginover, near the river, after he had carried her off into his country.'—Finally, after telling us about the test of the enchanted glove (see *Romania*, x. 486), Heinrich (ll. 24496 ff.) again mentions Lanzelet's failure; Keü says to him: 'Sir Lanzelet, you were not pleased when Milianz killed your horse and mine, what time we pursued him, and you had needs enter a cart,² forced thereto by weariness, and I was carried away³ with the queen.'⁴

"The story to which these allusions seem to refer differs both from Malory's and from Chrétien's—from the former, in so far as it mentions, as does Chrétien, a fight near the river between Lancelot and Méléaguant,⁵ and in representing Ké alone as carried off with the queen; from the latter, in so far as it represents, as does Malory, Lancelot

¹ "In welhem urkünde: I do not understand this usage of the word."

I have read "*Diu Crône*" by Heinrich von dem Türlin, edited (for the first time) by G. H. F. Scholl from MS. No. 2779, ff. 131^a–170^b, of the "Wiener Hof-Bibliothek" (V), with variants from Cod. pal. 374 (paper), 495 leaves, Heidelberg (P), vol. xxvii. of the "Bibliothek des Literarischen Vereins," Stuttgart, 1852, 8vo. The passage M. G. Paris alludes to runs, according to V ll. 107–110, thus:

1107 "Ouch wolt er wider wichen
Nicht, unz er erwände,

2109 In welhem urkünde
Diu künegîn bestände."

I understand this passage: "Nor did he like to give it up, until he had found out in which state [*urkünde* in Middle High German means, originally, "document," "token," "sign," "mark"] the queen was."—H. O. S.

² "Uf einen wagen: chariot or charrette."

³ "Und ich wunders wart hin gewüeret: I do not understand what *wunders* can mean here; one would rather expect *gewunt*, 'wounded.'"

The passage in question, ll. 1505–1513 according to V, runs thus:

"Keit sprach: Mit sorgen
Her Lanzelet, vuoret ir,
Dô Milianz in unde mir
Diu ors an dem nâchjagen
Sluoc, und ir 4f einen wagen

Muotet sitzen durch die nôt,
Die in diu mîede gebôt,
Und ich wunders wart hin
Gewüeret mit der künigin."

P has (as the "Anmerkung" to l. 24512, p. 482, states) *wonder* for *wunders*.—As I cannot remember to have come across *wunders* in the sense of "by a wonder," "wonderfully," in connection with a verb in any Middle High German text, I am inclined to think the passage is corrupted. Ké was sorely wounded in the combat; one would thus expect a word like *réwunt* or *totwunt*—"wounded to death," if this did not interfere with the metre. *Wunder* in Middle High German means "the man who wounds."—H. O. S.

⁴ "Keü adds that Lanzelet's error is but a slight one—there must be some other reason for his failure to stand the test, doubtless because he disdained the love of the goddess (gotinne) who reared him. 'I could say more on this point; you know full well the meaning of my speech.'"

⁵ "The form *Milianz* differs greatly from the French, but probably Heinrich had before him another form of the name than that of Méléaguant."

mounting on a cart through fatigue,¹ and not, as in Chrétien, in order to get information as to the way the queen was taken. A trait strange to both known versions is the killing of Ké's horse: in Chrétien he flees after his master is unhorsed, in Malory he is not mentioned. What is said about Milians might make us believe that the poem known to Heinrich finished with the fight between Mélégant and Lancelot, in which the former was definitively overcome;² such may have been the original *dénouement* of the poem followed by Malory, altered by the compiler because he wished to weld to this poem the second part of Chrétien's poem.

"Mr. Warnatsch makes an ingenious observation to establish the fact that Chrétien's poem is not the one to which Heinrich von dem Türlin goes back.³ He says: 'Nirgends berührt Heinrich das Liebesverhältniss zwischen Ginover und Lanzelet. In der Becher und Handschuhprobe sucht er (oft mit grosser Mühe) als Grund des Misslingens meist ein sittliches Vergehen der beteiligten Personen ausfindig zu machen. Das sträfliche Verhältniss Ginovers zu Lanzelet hätte sich Heinrich bei dieser Gelegenheit gewiss nicht entgehen lassen, um bei beiden, wenigstens bei Ginover, dem Seneschal Stoff zu seinen alle Schuld unbarmherzig enthüllenden Spottreden zu leihen. Statt dessen sehen wir, von Lanzelet zu schweigen, in der Becherprobe der Königin überhaupt kein bestimmtes Vergehen vorgeworfen (1282 ff.) und in der Handschuhprobe (ll. 23645 ff.) das Attentat des Gawein ohne eigentlichen Grund als Schuld angerechnet. Heinrich war offenbar in Verlegenheit das Misslingen der Probe bei Ginover (das übrigens, wie schon Romania x. p. 486 gezeigt ist, so gering als möglich dargestellt wird) zu erklären ein sicheres Zeichen, dass ihm von dem Liebesverhältniss mit Lanzelet, welches doch (wenigstens in den Augen des bei den Proben anwesenden Artus) als die grösste Schuld erscheinen musste, nichts bekannt war.

" 'Es ergibt sich somit, das Heinrich zwar die Abenteuer Lanzelets zur Befreiung der Königin, die Fahrt auf dem Karren und anderes,

¹ "In the same way as in Heinrich a wood full of thickets and briars (*gedrengs*) is mentioned which Lancelot cannot cross; so in Malory, when his horse is slain, he cannot get at the archers on account of the hedges and ditches which detain him."

² "In Chrétien, thanks to the intervention of Bademagu and Guenièvre, the combat between Lancelot and Mélégant does indeed remain undecided; so that as an instance in Mélégant's case of adverse fortune, like that of other warriors really overthrown by their adversaries, the example is ill chosen."

³ "Pp. 131-32. On the other hand, I do not understand why Mr. Warnatsch will have it (p. 108, n. 3) that Wolfram of Eschenbach alludes in the *Parsival* to the same poem which Heinrich knew. Wolfram's allusions accord perfectly with Chrétien's. The names are *Lansilot* and *Meljakans*. As to the latter's father, Wolfram gives him the strange name of *Pydicconjuns*, which should come from the *Badegamus* one occasionally finds in the MSS. for *Bademagus*."

beinahe der Erzählung Chrestien's und des Prosaromans entsprechend kannte, doch ohne dass mit dieser Unternehmung die sträfliche Liebe beider in Verbindung war. Erst durch Chrestien oder den Prosaroman oder deren gemeinsame Quelle¹ ist dieses Motiv hineingetragen worden."

"The poem which Heinrich von dem Türlin knew narrates, according to this, the carrying away of Guenièvre by Méléaguant. Lancelot, doubtless informed in the same way as in Malory, followed her; his horse was killed, and he advanced with great difficulty among the bushes and thickets surrounding the ravisher's castle. Disabled by fatigue, he resigned himself to entering a cart in order to continue his way. He crossed a river to enter Méléaguant's land, and found him without doubt at the river-side; he gave him battle, and overcame him, took back the queen and Ké the seneschal, who also intended to deliver her, but was thrown out of the saddle, wounded, and carried off as prisoner. Lancelot accomplished this feat in his quality of faithful servant to Arthur and of valiant knight; there existed no intimate relation between him and Guenièvre.

"Such too, I hold, was Lancelot's part in the poem which served Malory as source for the first part of his account. This compiler² has suppressed the combat of Lancelot with Méléaguant, thinking it enough to bring them face to face once; and this took place in the second part; he also suppressed the river crossed by Lancelot, and did away with Ké's special part, joining to Lancelot nine other knights; we may well believe that, in his source, prowess and fidelity were the sole motives of Lancelot's³ enterprise, and that, in representing the facts otherwise, he was influenced by the Prose-Lancelot, from which he borrowed so much of his compilation."

β. CHAPTERS VI.-IX.

The second part of Malory's account of this episode, *i.e.*, chapters vi. to ix., is not to be found, as it here stands, in any French or English romance known up to the present time. M. Gaston Paris suggests, as we have

¹ "Mr. Warnatsch, when writing his dissertation, had no fixed opinion as to the relation of the two texts."

² "Mr. Warnatsch concludes, from this, that these allusions refer to the supposed *Lanzelet* of *Heinrich*, in which he would have told this story. I have pointed out above how improbable it is that this *Lanzelet* ever existed."

³ "In thus expressing myself, I do not intend to especially refer to Malory; we do not know what is his own in his work, and what that of his original or of his French originals."

⁴ "It is thus, as we have already remarked, that in the poem of Ulrich of Zatzikhoven he aids in the deliverance of Guenièvre, carried off by Falerin; it is thus that Durmart, in the poem devoted to him, takes her from Brun de Morois, and that Gauvain, in the *Crone*, releases her out of the hands of Gasozein."

seen, that, though Malory's account differs considerably from the version of the Prose-Lancelot, it is not impossible that he adapted the corresponding portion of the latter to his purposes. But, be this as it may, we can fairly assert that the source he really used, if not the Prose-Lancelot itself, must stand in some relation to it, and therefore to the poem of Chrétien as well. I shall endeavour here to compare the two versions. The portion of the Lancelot concerned here occupies vol. ii. feuillets 16-23 of the Paris edition of 1513.¹ I give a short *résumé*, quoting such passages of the French text as are either interesting as examples of style, or from their correspondence with Malory's account. I subjoin the summaries of contents of feuillets 1-15² to enable the reader to follow the narrative.

Feuillets 16-23 :—

Lancelot leaves king Baudemagus with the intention of going to "le pont sur ene." He is, however, captured by some knights of B. and taken back to the court. Before he arrives there again, the news of his death has been

¹ I have explained, at the beginning of the sections concerning book vi. pp. 177-78, why I have availed myself of this edition, and also that I consulted the MSS. of the "Lancelot" at the same time.

² Feuillets 1-15 :—1. Comment tous ceulx de la maison du roi artus furent troubles pour Lancelot cuydant que il fust mort. Et comment la dame du lac le alla querir en cornouaille et le mena en son pays & le guarit d'une forcenerie dont il estoit malade.—Comment Lancelot par le conseil de sa dame sen alla embuscher en la forest de kamalot. Et comment mealegant fils du roy de Gorre vint a la court du roy artus pour combattre Lancelot ou vng autre cheualier. 2. Comment ceulx le seneschal sen alla en la forest de kamalot pour combattre contre mealegant & mena la royne avec luy. et comment mealegant le vainquit & gaigna la royne. 3. Comment Lancelot se combatit contre mealegant / et comment son cheual luy fut occis. Et comment mealegant emmena la royne et ceulx le seneschal.—Comment Lancelot alla apres mealegant & monta en la charrette dont il fut laidange de plusieurs / et comment le charrettier luy monstra la royne & mealegant. 5. Comment Lancelot & messire yvain se partirent du chastain ou le nayn luy avoit monstre la royne. Et comment Lancelot coucha avec son hostesse. 7. Comment Lancelot conquist ung cheualier q̄ gardoit la chaussee q̄ nul ny passast sans payer tribut Et comment il mist a fin l'adventure de la tûbe de galehaut de galles. 8. Comment Lancelot descendit en la caue ou estoit la tûbe ardant. Et comment par vne voie luy fut dit q̄'il ne mettroit point celle adventure a fin. 9. Comment Lancelot occist les deux cheualiers qui gardoyent le pas de la forest. Et comment il occist les sergens & le cheualier qui gardoyent le maupas. 11. Comment Lancelot secourut les exiliez que ceulx du pays combatoyent au pas de la petite forest pour les garder qu'ils n'allaissent au deuant de Lancelot. Et comment il occist vng cheualier qui le redarguoit de couardise. Et de ce que il avoit esté en la charrette. 12. Comment Lancelot vainquist quarante cheualiers qui lassaillirent au pas de la forest du plessis dont il en occist sept & les autres sen fuyrent. 13. Comment Lancelot passa le pont de lespees et combatit les lions / et comment le roy Baudemagus luy donna vng cheual et le mena loger en son chastain ouquel la royne genieure estoit en prison. 14. Comment Lancelot & mealegant se combattirent longuement en la presence du Roy Baudemagus et de la royne genieure. 15. Comment le roy Baudemagus par le conge de la royne departit la bataille de Lancelot & de mealegant. Et comment la royne ne tint pas grant compte de Lancelot & sen entra en sa chambre sans parler a luy.

spread. Gueneuer is nearly out of her mind; firmly believing that her indifference has driven Lancelot to his death, she declines all food. B. tries in vain to console her. The counterpart of this soon happens, as Lancelot hears on the road that Gueneuer is dead. He is greatly distressed, and wishes to do away with himself. He is closely watched by the knights. One night, imagining that all are asleep, he tries to strangle himself, but is at the last moment prevented. From "Gabion," about ten miles distant from the court, the knights send messengers to Baudemagus, informing him of L.'s capture. Baudemagus is sorry that, without his authority and against his will, his knights have treated Lancelot so badly. He goes to meet him. The knights are all put into prison; Lancelot intercedes for them. On his return, L. goes to Gueneuer and has a long conversation with her; they are reconciled. "*Beau doulx amy fait elle ie le vous pardonne tout. Et il luy demande se il pourroyt ennuyt parler a elle / car mōlt a grāt piece quil ny parla priueement / et elle dit quelle en est plus desirante que il nest / mais allōs veoir keux le seneschal : si verrons vne fenestre pres de ma chambre par ou vous pourrez bien parler a moy. Car dedans ne serez vo' pas. Mais vous entrerez en ce iardin par ca derriere et ie vous monstreray vng mur par ou vo' entrerez mieulx.*" When all are asleep, Lancelot rises and goes to the window. They talk a long while together; at last L. asks if he may come in. When the queen declares "*Je le vueil bien,*" he endeavours to overcome the obstacles: "*Et il tire hors les fers de la fenestre qui estoient attachez au mur. Il les osta si doulcement que nul nen brisa ne nulle noyse ny eut.*" He at once enters the queen's bed; "*si sent le sang qui de luy descendoyt et cestoyt de ses mains dont il auoyt le cuyr rompu au trenchant des fers / mais elle cuyde que ce soit sueur ne nul deulx ne sē prêt garde.*" At dawn they separate. Lancelot returns through the window, puts the bars back as well as he can, and goes to sleep in his own room.

In the morning, Meleagant, who generally calls on the queen every day, finds her still in bed. He notices that her sheets are covered with blood. Suspecting that Keux has been there, he goes to his bed to see "*sil estoit ainsi aduenue que ses playes feussent acreuees a saigner si auoient assez rendu sang / car ce luy aduenoit le plus souuēt des nuyctz.*" After that he returns to G. and accuses her of adultery. His father has prevented him from doing what she herself allowed Keux to do. Keux, on hearing this terrible charge, is deeply grieved; he is ready to prove by his hands that he is innocent. The queen declares Keux is not guilty, nor in fact is anybody, as her nose bled during the night, as it often does. M. then tells his father about it. Baudemagus awakes Lancelot and asks him to go with him. Getting up, L. sees that he has cut his hands. B. reproaches the queen bitterly. Gueneuer appeals to Lancelot, who is ready to prove her innocence. In vain Baudemagus endeavours to dissuade Meleagant from fighting with Lancelot. The fight takes place and Meleagant is thoroughly defeated; at the queen's desire, his life is spared.

Meleagant is not yet satisfied; he tells his father that he will kill L. before he leaves the country. B. declares if he does anything felonious he will disinherit him. M. leaves the town in the evening. L. starts the next

morning to meet Gawayn. Near the "pont sur ene," a dwarf on a big white horse comes to salute him, and ask him to come to Gawayn, who has bid him say: "quil est au lieu du monde qui plus luy plaist et a tout ce quil desire." He must come alone. L. trusts the dwarf, leaves his companions behind, and goes with the dwarf. They soon come to a small but strong castle. They enter. Lancelot, led into a hall covered all over the floor with rushes and leaves, is impatient to see Gawayn. He advances quickly, but the floor gives away "et il cheut en vne fosse qui auoyt pl⁹ de troys toyses de profond / mais il ne se blessa point / Car len luy auoyt assez mys dherbes." After a while, knights disarm him, draw him out of the trap, and put him as prisoner into a strong tower.

When his companions find that L. does not return by nightfall, they go to a castle near by, and pass the night there.

There they hear that Gawayn has crossed "le pont sur ene;" he has fought against the knight who watches the bridge, and received many grievous wounds. In the morning they meet him. Told that L. has been led away by a dwarf, he goes to Baudemagus' court. All are deeply concerned with Lancelot's disappearance. Baudemagus orders his country to be searched in all directions, but in vain. To deceive his father, Meleagant sends him a forged letter with Arthur's seal, in which he asks him to send Gueneuer back with Gawayn.

Gueneuer and Gawayn return and discover the forgery. All mourn, thinking L. is dead. The court is removed to Kamalot; the queen grieves greatly.

At Pentecost, after mass, the king stands by a window and "il veit venir vng cheualier sur une charrette et auoit aux lymons vng cheual lequel auoit la queue coupee et les deux oreilles: et dessus seoit vng nayn gros & court. Sy auoit la teste grosse & entremealee de chaines. si estoit le cheualier en la charrette les mains lyees derriere le dos en vne chemise sale & despieces: & auoit les deux piedz lyez es lymons de la charrette: et son escu pendoit etc." The dwarf, asked by the king what the knight has done, answers twice: "Autant come les aultres." The knight, on being asked how he might be delivered, declares: "se aulcun cheualier vouloit monter la ou ie suis ien seroie deliure." Arthur declares none of his knights would do that. Soon after comes Gawayn, and, hearing what has happened, begins to weep, remembering how Lancelot had been on a cart. When they sit down to dinner, the dwarf returns with the cart, the knight descends and advances towards the table. All are indignant at such conduct. He must have his meals with the knaves. When Gawayn sees this, he goes to the knight and eats with him. Arthur is angry with this, but Gawayn says, if that knight is dishonoured through riding on the cart, Lancelot must equally have lost his worship.

After dinner the knight of the "charrette" thanks Gawayn, retires to a little thicket near the town, and returns from there soon, splendidly arrayed and armed, with a squire. He seizes some of Arthur's best horses, and declares that he would fight against any knight who would dishonour Gawayn. He again thanks Gawayn and departs. Arthur is deeply offended. "Sagremor," "lucan," "bediger," "girflet," and "keux" follow the knight, but

he overcomes them all. When the king speaks to Gawayn, the cart arrives again, containing a lady, who tells Arthur that he did wrong to ill-treat the knight, who had voluntarily entered the cart for love of Lancelot "du bon chevalier qui y monta;" he is a brave knight, knighted just after Easter, his name is "boort lexille," and he is "cousin germain a lancelot et frere a lyonel." The lady then disappears. When the knight returns, Arthur expresses his regret at having ill-judged him. The knight tells him that the lady of the lake had come in the cart. The queen now wishes to get news about Lancelot. She follows the lady of the lake with Gawayn and others. They find her in a wood. The lady of the lake tells her that L. is in prison, but in good health. She will see him at the first tournament which takes place in the "royaulme de logres." Highly pleased, Guenever returns to Arthur, tells him that L. is alive, but does not mention that he will come to the next tournament. A tournament is soon announced.

In the meantime L. passes a pleasant time in the prison of the "seneschal de gorre." The seneschal is rarely there; his wife honours L. greatly, and soon loves him for all that she has heard about him.

When the time fixed for the tournament approaches, L. becomes pensive and sorrowful. The lady, noticing it, asks him the cause, and is ready, if he promise to love her, to let him go to the meeting. Lancelot goes to the tournament in the seneschal's armour, and does great feats of arms. The queen, who looks on from a scaffold, is highly pleased. At the end he departs suddenly. Nobody can explain this strange behaviour. He comes a second time to the tournament and returns to his prison. It soon becomes known that Lancelot has been at the tournament; and Meleagant, to prevent further attempts of this kind, puts him into a strong tower. After that he goes to Arthur's court and declares: "Roy artus il est vray que ie cōquis celle dame la vers keux le seneschal & lancelot la vint conquerre / mais la bataille fut telle entre nous en la fin que ie luy laissay emmener la royne par tel convenāt que dedans lan se combatroit a moy quant ie len viendroye semondre." Arthur replies to him: "Vous debuez ceans attendre .xl. cours et .xl. nuytz et sil ne reuient ce terme si retournez en vostre pays & au chief de lan reuenez & ce lors a vous ne se combat ou aultre pour luy la royne en emmenerez tout quittement."

In the meanwhile Lancelot is in prison. Meleagant's sister takes care of him; but she hates her brother, and wishes to deliver Lancelot. She contrives to do so by means of a strong cord. They both flee together to the country of the lady's mother. From thence they send to Arthur's court to inquire about Meleagant, and hear that he is waiting for L.'s return.

The day fixed for the combat arrives; Lancelot does not appear, and Gawayn offers to fight for the queen against Meleagant. Then of a sudden Lancelot arrives. He fights with Meleagant, is soon victorious, and M. cries for mercy "mais lācelot ne le veult ouyr Lors vint le roy auant et luy prie et requiert quil ne loccye pas / mais la royne luy fait semblant quil luy coupe la teste / si que lancelot sen apperceoyt bien." Lancelot then kills Meleagant, the queen welcomes him, and he is more honoured and thought of at the court than he ever was before.

Comparing Malory's version of the same episode with this one, we cannot help noticing how many points they have in common. Both the Prose-Lancelot and Malory relate that:

1. Lancelot and Gueneuer have a long conversation, and resolve to see one another at night at an iron barred window of the queen's chamber looking out into the garden.

2. When Lancelot arrives before the window, they converse first a while through it; then Lancelot expresses his wish to enter the queen's room, whereupon she declares that she wishes it as much as he; he breaks the iron bars, cuts his hands, enters the room, and shares the queen's bed.

3. Lancelot leaves the queen at dawn by the window through which he came, replaces the bars as well as he can, and returns to his own chamber.

4. In the morning the queen sleeps later than usual. Meleagant enters her room to inquire after her. He finds her still in bed, and notices the soiled sheets. He accuses the queen of adultery.

5. Lancelot is sent for, comes, declares the queen innocent, and is ready to prove it by his hands.

6. Lancelot is caught by Meleagant in a trap, and imprisoned.

7. A lady who attends on him daily in prison helps him out of it and enables him to be at the right moment on the spot where the battle is to take place for the queen.

8. Lancelot fights with Meleagant, overcomes him, and, noticing the queen nodding her head, cuts off his head.

9. Lancelot is welcomed by the queen, and more thought of at Arthur's court than ever before.

Malory's account differs from that of the prose-Lancelot in the following points:—

1. Malory introduces Lauayne. Lancelot communicates to Lauayne his intention of going at night to the window of the queen's chamber. Lauayne tries to dissuade him from so doing, or to allow him to be his companion.—Upon his return in the morning Lancelot is received by Lauayne, who staunches his blood and dresses his wounds.—Lauayne finally declares himself ready to fight for the queen when Lancelot does not appear.

2. In Malory, Lancelot finds a ladder and carries it through the garden to the queen's window.

3. To conceal his wounds he puts a glove on the hurt hand.

4. Malory does not state that the lady who delivers him out of prison is Meleagant's sister.

5. The queen is to be burnt, unless a knight proves by his valour that she is innocent. Malory omits the following incidents:—

1. Sir Kay, and the bleeding of his wounds.

2. The queen's excuse, that the sheets are soiled through the bleeding of her nose.

3. The intercession of king Bagdemagus.

4. The first battle between Lancelot and Meleagant.

5. Lancelot's imprisonment at the castle of Meleagant's seneschal, and presence at the tournament by help of the seneschal's wife.

6. The story of the dwarf with the knight on the chariot, and the appearance of the lady of the lake.

Are these differences and changes made by Malory or the writer of his source in the version of the Prose-Lancelot?

The introduction of Lauayne need not surprise; he replaces Gawayne, who was not mentioned in the source whence Malory (or the writer of his source) drew the first part of his account. Lauayne's part, in so far as he tries to dissuade Lancelot from going to the queen's window, or to allow his company, Lancelot's refusal, and finally Lauayne's reception of him upon his return, may well be an imitation of Bors' rôle in the second chapter of book xx.; the two incidents are exactly alike.

The introduction of the ladder and the putting on of the glove may easily be explained as Malory's additions.

The stake at which Gueneuer is to be burnt may be in imitation of the similar incident in the eighteenth and twentieth books.

Malory had to omit Kay, his place being taken, in the source whence he derived his first part, by the twelve knights, including himself.

The bleeding of the queen's nose may have been omitted intentionally or by inadvertence.

Bagdemagus could not be introduced here, as he did not figure in the first part.

For the same reason, and because Bagdemagus' daughter has already, in the sixth book, delivered Lancelot out of the castle "du charyot," Malory here does not state who the damsel delivering Lancelot is.

The first battle was unnecessary, and its omission increases the importance of the second.

The imprisonment at the castle of Meleagant's seneschal, and the going to the tournament, as well as the episode of the dwarf with the knight on the chariot and the appearance of the lady of the lake, lengthen the story unnecessarily, and may well have been regarded by Malory as superfluous.

I thus think M. Gaston Paris' suggestion, that Malory, or, rather, the writer of the source he used, may well have adapted the Prose-Lancelot version for his account, more than probable; the only point which is unintelligible in Malory's account, Meleagant's sending Gueneuer back after having got rid of Lancelot, indicates, as M. G. Paris remarks, "that the compiler, not having at his disposal Bagdemagus, who was unknown to the poem which

furnished his first part, did not know how otherwise to overcome the difficulty." I hold the opinion that Malory found the account he sets forth in his xixth book ready made in a French source, which was derived from the Prose-Lancelot + a lost French or Welsh poem.

γ. CHAPTERS X.-XII.

The incidents related in the third part of book xix., *i.e.*, chapters x.-xii., which relate the arrival of a wounded knight, syr Vrre of Hongry, at Arthur's court, the handling of his wounds by all the knights of the court, his final healing by Lancelot, and the festival given in celebration of it, are not to be met with in any known French or English romance. I incline to believe that Malory adapted to his purpose some lost poem, most likely a French one.

The catalogue of names in chapter xi. is evidently Malory's own; one can trace almost all the groups of names in previous chapters. Thus, on page 52, one finds in the same order: Claryaunce of Northumberland, the kyng of the hondred knyghtes; Vryence that was Vwayns fader of the lond of gore, Agwysaunce of Ireland; Carados of Scotland. On pages 491-92, Challeyne of Claraunce, Vlbaws, Lambaile, Arysalaunce. Page 728, Agrawayn, Gaherys, Gareth, Mordred, Lyonel, Ector de marys, Bors, Blamor and Bleoberis de ganyys, Galyhodyn. 804, Gahalantyne, Menadenke, Vyllyars le valyaunt, Hebes le renoumes; 742 and 799, Sagramor le desyrus, Dodgaas le saueage, Melyot de logrys, Petypase of wynchelsee, Galleron of Galway, Melyan de la mantayne, Astamore; 256-57, Uwayne, Aglouale, Tor, Percyuale; 287, Gawayn, Gaherys, Agrauayn, Bagdemagus, Kay, Dodyus le saueage, Sagramor le desyrus, Gumret le petyte, Gryflet le fyse dieu; 767, Lucan the butteler, Bedeuer; 172, Marok; 451, Tor, Aglouale, Lamorak, Dornar, Percyuale sons of king Pellinore. 810-11, Bellyas le orgulous, Segwarydes, Gryflet, Brandyles, Agloual, Tor, Gaunter, Gyllymer, Reynolds, Damas, Pyramus, Kay the straunger, Dryaunt, Lambegus, Hermynyde, Pertylope, Perymones. 196, Bryan de lystynoyse; 202-3, Gaunter, Raynold, Gylmere; 534, Eward of Orkeney, Epynogrys, Pelleas; 270-71, Ironsyde, Pertylope, Perymones, Persaut of Inde; 804, Bors, Lyonel, Ector de marys, Bleoberis de ganyys, Gahalantyne, Galyhodyn, Galyhud, Menadenke, Vyllyers the valyaunt, Hebes le renoumes (Lauayne, Vrre of Hongry), Nerouens, Plenorius; Harre le fyse du lake, Selyses of the dolorous Toure, Melyas de lyle, Bellangere le beuse, son of Alysauder le orphelyn.

A few names occur in this catalogue for the first time, such as: Crosselme, Cloddrus, Seruause le beuse, Hectymere and Edward of Carnaruan. Three knights are twice mentioned, *viz.*, Constantyn syr Cadors son, 790, 29; 792, 8; Dynas, 792, 10 and 13; Hebes, 791, 12;

792, 34. Pryamus is said to have been christened by Trystram, whereas we read, in the fifth book, that Gawayne caused him to be baptized.

c. "LE MORT ARTHUR": HARL. MS. 2252
AND THE PROSE-LANCELOT.

The English metrical romance "Le Mort Arthur"¹ is of greater importance for the critic of the Arthurian romance than has hitherto been supposed, based, as it is, on two French sources, which in some points contradict each other. On p. 11 of this volume I have repeated some emendations which, in a letter to *The Academy* (November 15, 1890), I proposed for the Harl. MS. 2252 as it stands at present. There I had already noticed that ll. 1467-1503² were apparently in contradiction to ll. 928-951, and that several other lines before the gap were repeated after it. I then explained these contradictions by assuming that the poet, while transcribing the French prose into English verse, had so far abandoned his source that, being unable to connect his narrative with the ensuing events of his source, he rewrote a certain portion of his poem, &c. I am now able to substantiate this conjecture; the contradictions are due to the fact that the poet used two different sources for his poem. The Vulgate-Lancelot (P.L.) is the source for the first part, ll. 1-1181, up to the gap, whereas for the remainder of the poem, ll. 1318-3969, from the gap to the end, the poet used the same source as did M. for the two last books of his *rifacimento*. It would far exceed the limits of my present work were I to adduce here all the reasons³ upon which I base this statement, but I may mention a few important points. The first part, ll. 1-1181, of MH. agrees with P.L. against M.

1. The sequence of incidents, different in M., is the same in P.L. and MH.

2. When Arthur has left for Winchester, Lancelot comes, in P.L. and in MH., to Guenever with the intention of taking leave and going to the tournament, whereas, in M., Guenever suggests to him to go.

3. The armour of Lancelot and of his host's son is red and the

¹ An analysis of this romance is to be found in G. Ellis' *Specimens of Early English Metrical Romances*. London, 1805. 8vo. Vol. iii. pp. 308-387.

² I have for convenience' sake adopted the numbers Dr. Furnivall has given to the lines in his edition, though, according to the emendations I have proposed, these numbers would be different for the second part, there being only three lines lacking instead of 135.

³ I hope to publish the materials I have collected, as soon as my time permits, in the form of an essay, "On the Relation of the Metrical Romance 'Le Mort Arthur' to the Prose-Lancelot," in "Englische Studien," edited by Prof. Koelbing.

colour of the sleeve is not mentioned in P.L. and MH., whereas in M. the sleeve is red and the colour of the armour is not specified.

4. Lancelot stays, before and after the tournament, at the house of his host's sister in P.L. and MH., whereas in M. he stays, before the tournament, at the house of a rich "burgeis," and, after it, at a hermitage.

5. When Lancelot hears of the new tournament, to which he cannot go, his wound breaks open through emotion in P.L. and MH.; in M. he overstrains himself by attempting to ride.

6. The maiden's letter, which, in P.L. and MH., reproaches Lancelot with cruelty, does not do so in M.

7. Whilst, in P.L. and MH., Lancelot is absent from court when the maiden's body arrives, he is present in M., &c.

I may now add some of the contradictions between the first and second parts of MH., ll. 944-948. MH. (in harmony with P.L.) tells how the news of the queen's misfortune comes to Lancelot where he is ill; later on, ll. 1484-1495, MH. (in harmony with M.) says that Boors tells Lancelot of the queen's dangerous position. Line 844, MH. (like P.L.) speaks of "frute;" later on, l. 1653, the fruit is specified as an "appele" (as in M.).

A minute examination of the first part of MH. discloses several points which do not agree with P.L., but they are of very secondary importance, and can be explained, without exception, as the poet's modifications of the source¹ in order to adapt his material to the exigences of his metre; thus, in his tendency to avoid proper names, he gives no names for the localities where the events he relates take place.

The second part of MH., ll. 1318-3969, has now to be compared with M.; both M. and MH. vary from P.L. in the same points, but M. has more detail than MH.²

a. THE TWENTIETH BOOK.³

The source which M. used, and which also forms the basis of the English metrical romance "Le Mort Arthur" (Harl. MS. 2252), stands

¹ Such, e.g., as the statement, in ll. 408-419, that the second tournament does not take place when Arthur finds that Lancelot has not come.

² Folios 54-84* of the Harl. MS. are occupied by a metrical life of "Ipomedon" (edited by Professor Koelbing, together with two other English versions of the life of Ipomedon; Breslau, 1889). Considering that in the Harl. MS. the "Ipomedon" is written in the same hand as the first part of "Le Mort Arthur" (the handwriting being of the same date as the poem itself), and comparing Prof. Koelbing's remarks on the relationship of the English romance to its French original with the facts disclosed by an examination of "Le Mort Arthur" and the Prose-Lancelot, it is highly probable that both romances are by the same author; at any rate, the subject deserves examination.

³ Lancelot, ed. 1513, vol. iii. ff. 166-202; Le Mort Arthur, ed. 1864, ll. 1318-2952.

in close relation to P.L., or, rather, was derived from it, with additions and modifications. To get a clear idea of the structure of the common source of M. and ll. 1318-3969 of MH., we must thus compare M., which as a prose-account is richer in details than MH., with P.L., and then state what facts are either common to or different in M. and MH.

I.-II. The opening lines of M.'s book xx. are his own composition. Neither MH. nor P.L. contains anything similar to these few general phrases, which introduce the subsequent events.

In the conversation between Arthur and his five nephews which leads to Lancelot's and Arthur's enmity, P.L. differs greatly from M. Whilst, in M., Arthur only joins Agravayn and Mordred after Gawayne, Gareth, and Gaheris are gone, in P.L. he comes at the beginning of the conversation, all the five nephews being present. When they refuse to tell him what they are talking about, and when Arthur insists, Gawayne and Gueresches¹ go away. Arthur follows and recalls them, but without result. Returning, Arthur summons the other three brothers to a private chamber, locks the door, and again entreats them to tell him. When they still refuse, Arthur gets so angry that he draws his sword and, running against Agravayn, declares he must reveal the truth or die. Then at last Agravayn tells Arthur how Lancelot and Guenever deceive him, and have long done so. Thus P.L. omits the long conversation between the five brothers and Gawayne's enumeration of all the good services Lancelot has rendered them. Whilst in M. two of the brothers, Gareth and Gaheris, hold with Gawayne, in P.L. only one, Gueresches, follows him. In M., Arthur is sorry at what he hears, but wishes to conceal matters as much as possible; in P.L., on the contrary, he is wroth, and eager for revenge upon Lancelot. Both M. and P.L. agree that Agravayn suggests that Arthur should go to the wood on the following day, though in both this suggestion takes place under different circumstances. The twelve knights (and their names) whom Agravayn and Mordred select according to M. are entirely absent from P.L. But, on the other hand, the following circumstances which occur in P.L. are absent from M. When Arthur, after having left the three brothers, appears later on at court, Gawayne and Gueresches notice by his downcast look that he knows what they had tried to hide from him. A messenger brings Arthur the news of Lancelot's victory at the tournament of Caheres over the people of Sorelois and Caheres, but this fails to cheer Arthur; he only thinks what a pity it is such a valiant knight should be a traitor. He then summons the three brothers to council,

¹ There is some confusion here in P.L. between Gueresches corresponding to Gareth, and Gaheriet corresponding to Gaheris.

asking them what he must do to Lancelot, when he returns, in order to be revenged upon him. On this occasion Agravayn suggests the hunting on the following day. Gawayne and Gueresches, seeing that Arthur is consulting with their brothers, the former warns Arthur again to beware the consequences. Arthur tells Gawayne that he is not to be relied upon, and bids him leave them. Gawayne and Gueresches return to their house, and on the way meet Lancelot, with Boors and Ector, and with a great company, returning from the tournament. Gueresches requests Lancelot as a favour to descend at his house. In the evening, at supper-time, all go together to court. Lancelot is greatly surprised that Arthur does not look at him, but receives him coldly. After supper Arthur goes round and invites the knights for the chase on the following day. Lancelot offers to accompany the king, but is refused. At night Lancelot asks Boors if he noticed how Arthur had treated him. Boors answers Yes, and believes that only Agravayn or Morgan can have told Arthur aught unfavourable about Lancelot; all the others love him too well.

On the morrow Gawayne and Gueresches try to induce Lancelot to go with them, but he refuses, feigning indisposition. When Arthur is gone, Guenever sends a messenger to Lancelot, asking him to come to her chamber. Boors, after in vain attempting to dissuade Lancelot from going, advises him to take a secret path through the garden, and not to forget his "espee."

M. omits Guenever's message to Lancelot, but afterwards makes Lancelot say: "sythen the quene has sente for me."

The passage corresponding in MH. to the two first chapters of M. agrees with the latter, but M. has more detail—*e.g.*, the enumeration of all Lancelot's deeds, and, as I have already mentioned, the names of the twelve knights chosen by Agravayn and Mordred. On the other hand, M. repeats several passages from MH.—*viz.* :

MH.

1695. Than werre and wrake thus to be-gynne.
 1747. For to take wyth the dede?
 1753. to morowe on huntynge.
 1754. And sythen send word to the quene
 1755. That ye wille dwelle wyth-oute Alle nyght.
 1780. Off Alle that ye haue gonne hyr tylle,
 Ne greuyd me neuyr yit no wight,
 Ne neuyr yit gaffe myn herte to file
 1783. So mykelle as it dothe to nyght.

M.

- 797, 35. warre and wrake.
 799, 6. I wold he were
 taken with the dede.
 799, 12. to morne on hunt-
 ynge.
 799, 14-15. ye may sende
 the quene word that ye wil
 lye outh alle that nyghte.
 800, 2-3. and neuer gaf my
 herte ageynst no goynge that
 euer ye wente to the Quene
 soo moche as now.

III.-VI. In these chapters M. has much more detail than P.L., though the incidents are practically the same in both. In P.L.,

Lancelot, when he passes through the garden, is spied by a boy, who informs Agravayn. The latter and his company watch from a window how Lancelot goes to the queen's chamber. When he has entered, they rush to the door, and, to their disgust, find it locked. The conversation which Lancelot and Guenever have when they find themselves betrayed is essentially the same in M. and P.L., but M. is more detailed—*e.g.*, he introduces, from the eighteenth book, the knights Urre and Lanayne, who are absent from P.L. Both M. and P.L. agree that Lancelot, finding no armour in the queen's chamber, opens the door, strikes down the first knight who comes in his way, pulls his body into the room, and, with Guenever's help, dons his armour. But this knight is called Calogrevaunce in M., Tamagius in P.L. In P.L., Lancelot only kills one other knight, and then returns to his rooms, whereas in M., besides killing Agravayn and twelve knights, he wounds Mordred. The contents of chapter v. differ much from the narrative in P.L. Lancelot, returning to Boors, tells him what has happened, and is advised to save the queen and retire with her and his faithful knights to his own country; Boors suggests concealment in the forest of Kamalot. The latter advice Lancelot accepts, and orders one of his squires to remain and watch all goings on, and to immediately inform them if anything happens to the queen. The names of the knights who hold with Lancelot in M. are not mentioned in P.L., and while the latter states that "enuiron vint et huyt" go with Lancelot, M. has "a four score."

The contents of chapter vi., the allusions to syr Trystram and to his murder by King Mark, are not in P.L.

MH. agrees in this portion with M., except that the former omits the long conversations, first between Guenever and Lancelot, and later on between Lancelot and his companions, as well as the enumeration of knights.

Several passages of MH. are again literally reproduced by M., such as:

MH.
1852. Now, know thou wele, syr Agrawayne,
Thow presons me no more to Nyght.

1876. Owre knyghtis haue bedrechyd to nyght,
1877. That som nakyd oute of bed spronge.

1890. We shalle be of hertis good
Aftyr the wele to take the wo.

M.
802, 24-25. For wete yow
wel sir Agrauayne ye shall
not prysone me this nyghte.
803, 31-32. . . . were soo
dretched that somme of vs
lepte oute of oure beddes
naked.
804, 5-6. and we haue had
moche wele with yow and
moche worschyp / and therfor
we wille take the wo with yow
as we haue taken the wele.¹

Compare also p. 805, 32-33. "ye shalle take the wo with the wele."

VII.-X. Whilst in M. all the knights, except Mordred, who brings the news to Arthur, are slain, in P.L. only two knights are slain, and the others, as soon as they, from their hiding-place, have seen Lancelot returning to his room, go to the queen's chamber, and seize her in a very disgraceful manner. The remainder of chapters vii.-x. in M. only agrees with P.L. in so far as the queen, condemned to the stake, is delivered by Lancelot, and finally taken to the castle of Ioyous garde. In P.L., Arthur returns about the "eure de none" from hunting; hearing what has happened, he orders Lancelot's capture at his residence, but the knights sent thither soon return with the news of his absence. Arthur decides to punish Guenever with death. He will have her tried at once. P.L. introduces here, and a little later, a certain "roy yon," who advises moderation. The trial takes place; Arthur, with Gaheriet, Mordred, and Agravayn, dooms the queen to the stake. Guenever is immediately led to the place where a great fire is kindled; she looks more beautiful than ever, and people mourn and lament for her. Arthur bids Agravayn guard the place with forty (!) armed knights. Gueresches (P.L. has Gaheriet) goes to the place at Arthur's request, but declares to Agravayn he will not fight against Lancelot, whom he loves well. About eighty (!) knights are present. Lancelot, informed of the proceedings by a spy, arrives at the decisive moment, rushes first against Agravayn, and strikes him dead with one blow. Boors slays Gaheriet. Gueresches, seeing his brothers dead, kills Meliadus le noir and another knight, but Lancelot, who does not recognise Gueresches, strikes him also dead. Arthur's men are all killed, except three, amongst whom is Mordred. Guenever requests Lancelot to put her where she will be safe from Arthur's wrath. Lancelot leads her into the forest. He has also lost three of his knights. When he hears that he has killed Gueresches, he knows that Gawayne will never forgive him. Boors suggests that the queen should be taken for the moment to a strong castle, called "Scalee," which belongs to Keux. His advice is accepted; they go there, and are well received. Keux gives Lancelot, on the morrow, forty knights, who must swear faithfulness unto death to Lancelot, and with them Lancelot goes to Ioyous garde.

When Mordred has fled to Arthur and told him that Lancelot has rescued the queen and killed all the guard, Arthur orders the wood to be searched; this is done, but without result. Carados advises Arthur to send messengers to all ports, forbidding sailors from shipping Lancelot to Benoyc; this is done forthwith. Going to the place of combat, Arthur finds the dead bodies of Agravayn, Gueresches, and Gaheriet, and orders their removal to Kamalot. All who hear the woful tidings are sorely grieved. Gawayne, coming out, thinks the

mourning is for Guenever until he sees the bodies of his brothers. Grieved beyond measure, he vows to revenge them, and swoons on their bodies. All are buried with great honours. The "roy yon" dissuades Arthur from war against Lancelot, who is clearly the best knight of this world. This counsel displeases many, who hate the "roy yon." Mordred is for attacking Lancelot at once, even in his own country. Mador informs Arthur that Lancelot has gone to Ioyous garde, and adds, he would not advise Arthur to attempt to conquer this castle, which is very strong. But Arthur says so long as he has been crowned king he has been successful in his enterprises, and he will not give up the idea of conquering Ioyous garde. He bids his knights make themselves ready for starting on the next day. Lancelot receives news of Arthur's intentions through a servant of Hector, who has remained at the court. He at once prepares to resist Arthur, and sends messengers to King Ban of Benoye requesting him to prepare and fortify his castles in case he be compelled by the circumstances to return to his own country. He also sends messengers for the same purpose to Sorelois and to "la terre foraine."

This short summary will show the great difference between this portion of P.L. and M. When Gawayne, after a few days, has recovered from the shock of his brothers' deaths, he advises Arthur, before warring against Lancelot, to complete the number of the knights of the Round Table. Arthur accordingly assembles the knights, and no less than seventy-two are ascertained to be lacking. Their places are speedily filled up. Herliaus of Ireland gets Lancelot's seat; Heliuor, the son of the king "des ysles estranges," Boort's; Oadans le noir replaces Hector; and the nephew of the "roy de norgalles," Gaheriet. When this is done, the knights have a grand feast. On the morrow, at dawn, the king and all his knights start, and ride all day until they come to the castle "lambort" near Ioyous garde.

In MH., ll. 1904-2112 correspond to chapters vii.-x. of M., and both versions tally closely, with the exception of some passages where the poet of MH. has modified his source, and others where he omits and shortens incidents reproduced by M. The catalogues of names which occur in M. on several occasions are not in MH. At the end of chapter viii. M. states that Arthur lay fifteen weeks before Ioyous garde; in MH. we read "Seuentene wokys." In this section M. does not forget himself so far as to copy the very words of MH., though his phraseology often unmistakably suggests his use of that poem.

XI.-XVIII.¹ The long conversation which, according to M., Lancelot has from the wall of Ioyous garde with King Arthur and

¹ Lancelot, ed. 1513, vol. iii. ff. 173-179; "Le Mort Arthur," ll. 2112-2449.

Gawayne, and which fills almost the whole of chapters xi. and xii., is not in P.L., though something similar occurs there. When Lancelot has heard of Arthur's intention to besiege him, and of his approach, he puts Boors and Hector in ambush with forty chosen knights, who are to attack Arthur's host from behind on a sign, in the shape of a red flag at the chief tower of the castle, being given them. But when Arthur arrives before the castle, Lancelot cannot make up his mind to carry out his plan, and decides upon allowing his enemies a day's rest. In the meantime he secretly sends a damsel to Arthur, asking for peace, and assuring him that what had happened was not Lancelot's fault. Arthur is inclined to yield, but Gawayne objects. The damsel is grieved that Arthur will not be reconciled with Lancelot; he should remember that "*les saiges denineurs*" have told him that "*la parente de ban*" will always have the better of him. To Gawayne the damsel says he is most unwise in preventing an understanding, for he will but gain death in the war. He should remember what the hermit told him when he failed to achieve the adventures of the "*serpent*" and the "*lyepart*" in the house of "*le roy Pescheur*," and he will one day bitterly repent of his obstinacy.

The damsel secretly returns to Lancelot, who is very sad on hearing the result of her errand. Guenever finds him in this dreary mood, and asks him what he intends doing. He declares that, much as he dislikes it, he will fight on the following day, but will spare Arthur himself. On returning to his companions, Lancelot shows a cheerful face, so that they suspect nothing. He tells them they will fight on the morrow. This news is welcome to them; they burn to ride against Arthur's men.

Whilst M., in the thirteenth chapter, only speaks of one battle, P.L. describes two. Some features are common to both versions—*e.g.*, that Boors overthrows Arthur, whom Lancelot remounts; that Lionel is wounded by Gawayne, upon whom Boors endeavours to take revenge. P.L. relates these incidents thus:—When Lancelot has arranged his knights in six "*battailles*" the next morning, he gives to Boors and Hector the signal of the red flag from the tower top. Arthur is then attacked in front and rear. The battle lasts all day. Gawayne fights like a madman, and with his own hand kills thirty of Lancelot's men, not to mention the many he wounds, among the latter Lionel. On the following day Lancelot sallies afresh out of the castle, and another violent battle ensues, in which Arthur's overthrow by Boors and his being remounted by Lancelot occur. But P.L. mentions that Boors is induced to strike Arthur because the latter had killed Lancelot's horse. The bishop who is employed by the Pope is, in P.L., "*leuesque de glouceste*" (Gloucester).

In the following chapters (xiv.-xix.) M. and P.L. disagree in many points. Whilst in M. the bishop goes to Lancelot and bids him, in the Pope's name, return Guenever to her husband, according to P.L. the bishop goes to Guenever. When Guenever understands what the Pope and her husband desire, she bids the bishop wait a while, asks Lancelot, Boors, Ector and Lionel into a private chamber, and tells them the bishop's errand. She offers, if Lancelot is willing, to return to Arthur on condition he allow Lancelot to return to Benoyc with all his company, so that Lancelot shall not lose "*la vulture de vng esperon.*" Lancelot's heart is against this arrangement, but the wish to see the queen's honour re-established wrings consent from him. Boors tells Lancelot he does not know what he is doing, and that he will bitterly repent this step. Ector and Lionel share Boors' opinion. The queen tells the bishop she will come back if Arthur lets Lancelot and his comrades return to their country. Arthur agrees, and the return of Guenever is fixed for the morrow. Lancelot and Guenever take leave of each other for ever, and Lancelot gives her back a ring she had given him when she first knew him, requesting her to wear it henceforth in remembrance of him. On the morrow, Lancelot, accompanied by five hundred knights all dressed in silk, restores the queen to Arthur. The latter would have forgiven him had not Gawayne scouted the idea, and declared he would not rest until he had revenged his brothers' deaths. Ector at once offers to fight with Gawayne, to prove him wrong in charging Lancelot with having slain his brothers intentionally, but Arthur prevents the combat. So Lancelot returns to the castle, and makes ready to start for Benoyc. Before doing so he sends his squire Gaudin to Kamalot with rich presents to the clergy, requesting them to hang up his shield in the principal church, in token of his great love for the town where he received knighthood. His wish is readily complied with by the clergy.

On their return to Benoyc they are joyfully received. Lancelot asks Boors and Lionel to grant him a boon; they assent, and he requests Boors to take "*la couronne de benoic,*" Lionel "*celle de gannes,*" he himself takes the crown of "*gaule.*" At All Saints' the coronation is solemnly performed; when they are all assembled, the news arrives that Arthur, at Gawayne's instigation, has planned to cross the channel and attack Lancelot in his own country.

In MH., ll. 2112-2449 correspond to the contents of M.'s chapters xi.-xviii. Both versions tally closely in this part, except that M. is richer in detail than MH., as is also the French source, especially with regard to proper names. The poet of MH. does not mention the names of Lauayne and Vrre, as, in accordance with P.L., he had not introduced these two knights in his first part. On

the whole, he seems to carefully avoid all proper names as inconvenient for his metre, a reason which may account for his omitting to describe the second tournament in part i., as it would have necessitated the insertion of several names. Many passages of M. suggest that, while writing his account, he had a copy of MH. before him. I only mention a few where the evidence is clear:—

MH.

2198. When the kyng was horsyd there,
launcelot lokys he vppon,
How cortseis was in hym more
Than euyr was in Any man.
2202. He thought on thyngis that had bene ore,
The terès from hys ysen Ranne,
He Sayde, "Allas," wytȝ syghynge sore,
"That euyr yit thys werre began."
The parties arne wytȝ-drawen A-ways, &c.

2214. (Bors was) brems as Any bore.

2254. Then was A bishope at Rome
Off Rowchester, wytȝ-ouren lese;

2353. An hundreth knyghtis, for sothe to saye,

2364. The other knyghtis euerychone
In Samyte grene of heythen lande
And in there kyrtelles Ryde Allone,
And Iche knyght a grene garlande,
Sedillis sette wytȝ Ryche stone,
Ichone A braunche of olyffe in hande;

2356. Launcelot and the quene were cledde
In Robes of a Riche wede
Off Samyte white wytȝ syluer shredde.

M.

819, 29-35. Thenne when
kyng Arthur was on hors-
bak / he lokyd vpon syr
launcelot / & thēne the teres
braust out of his eyen /
thynkyng on the grete cur-
tosity that was in syr laūcelot
more than in ony other man /
& therwith the Kyng rode
his wey / & myghte no
lenger beholde hym / & sayd
Allas that euer this werre
began / & thēne eyther par-
ties of the batalls withdrewe
them, &c.

820, 4. (Gawayne as) brym
as ony bore.

821, 2-3. the pope called
vnto hym a noble Clerke that
att that tyme was there pre-
sente / the *Frensch* book
sayth / hit was the Bishop
of Rochestre /

822, 23-30. . . . an hon-
derd knyghtes / and alle
were clothed in grene
velowet / and theyr horses
trapped to their heles / and
euery knyghte held a
braunche of olyue in his
hande . . . with sarpyss of
gold round their quarters,
&c.

822, 33-34. and she and sir
Launcelot were clothed in
whyte clothe of gold tye-
sew /

The long enumeration of the various parts of his kingdom which Lancelot (M.'s chapter xviii.) gives to his faithful knights is not in

MH., but three passages distinctly show that M. and MH. had a common source :

MH.

2484. Bors made he kyng of gawnes,
2486. lyonelle made kyng of fraunce,
2492. Ector he crownys
 . . . hym kyng of hys fadyr lande,
 And prynce of All the Ryche prese ;

M.

Bors kyng of al
Claudas landes.
 he crowned syr Lyonelle
kyng of Fraunce.
 Ector de marys / he
crouned hym Kyng of Ben-
wyk and kyng of alle Gyan
that was sir launcelot owne
land / and he made sir Ector
prynce of them alle (!).

The other names mentioned by M. make in MH. one line—viz.,
2489 :

"And landys gaffe to Iche A knyghte."

XIX.-XXII.¹ The portion of P.L. which corresponds to the last chapters of M.'s book xx. is one of the weakest parts of the whole romance. Dialogue, which plays an important part in all the French prose-romances, and is the cause of their inordinate length, is extremely prevalent ; episodes which are absolutely out of place, and only produce a ridiculous effect, such as Arthur's defeat of the Roman emperor after being himself defeated at the siege of Gannes, produce the impression that the writer simply wished to fill a given number of pages.

M. and P.L. have features in common in this portion, which form, as it were, the framework upon which the episodes are built, but they often differ widely. Whilst, in M., Arthur seems to start for France immediately after leaving "Ioyous garde," he is said in P.L. to pass the winter agreeably by going from castle to castle and giving feasts. Gawayne alone cannot forget his brothers' deaths, and continually urges war against Lancelot ; at last he wrings from his uncle a promise to cross the channel with an army after Easter. Both versions then agree that Arthur appoints Mordred chief ruler of England during his absence. P.L. adds that Guenever is displeased with this arrangement ; she accompanies Arthur to the sea, and, at parting, has a presentiment that they shall never see each other again. The place, "Cardyf" in M., whence Arthur crosses over to France is not mentioned in P.L.

The "thre score thousand" are in P.L. "forty thousand."

According to P.L., Arthur passes the first night in a camp near

¹ Lancelot, ed. 1513, vol. iii. ff. 180-190 ; "Le Mort Arthur," ed. Furnivall, ll. 2499-2951.



the sea-shore, and only, after counting his forces, on the next morning marches inland, where he finds all castles fortified and on a war footing. Gawayne advises the king to march at once against Gannes, where are Kings Lionel and Boors. Though Ywayne¹ opposes this advice, Arthur marches towards Gannes. Near the town, a damsel comes to Arthur and Gawayne, tells the former he will have no honour at Gannes, and bids Gawayne beware, as the time is fast approaching of which he was told when he left the house of "le roy pescheur" covered with shame. After leaving Arthur, the damsel quickly returns to Boors and Lionel, and informs them of Arthur's approach. They send to Lancelot. A sally against the besiegers is decided upon for early next morning. P.L. does not set forth the different opinions of Lancelot's companions as to the measures to be adopted with regard to their enemies. Lancelot's sending a damsel to Arthur to solicit peace, which occurs in P.L. during Arthur's siege of Ioyous garde, is only mentioned in M. on this occasion.

According to P.L., a battle takes place before Gannes on the next morning, which lasts until the evening; many feats of arms are performed by the knights of both parties, and many are slain. Gawayne fights against Lancelot, and Boors against Ywayne (!).¹ In the following week, the armies of besiegers and besieged fight four times, and many knights are killed.

In P.L., after these events, the story returns to Mordred. Some time after Arthur's departure, Mordred conceives the plan of usurping the royal dignity. Aided by one of his faithful squires, he forges and produces a letter from Arthur in which the latter declares himself wounded to death, and requests his barons to elect Mordred his successor, and to give him Guenever to wife. The news produces great mourning, which lasts a whole week. Several barons believe the story; others are won by Mordred's liberal gifts. After a week, Mordred assembles the barons, and is elected by them King of England. The queen, informed of her late husband's decisions, asks a week's respite for consideration. Having fully realised her position, Guenever summons a faithful knight, Labor, and with him conceives the plan of deceiving Mordred and fortifying the Tower of London. This plan is carried out. Labor provisions the Tower secretly, and wins over many knights for Guenever. When the respite has expired, the bridge is drawn up and Mordred shut out. Guenever sends a squire to Gaule to inquire whether Arthur is really dead, and, if so, to make known her situation to Lancelot.

¹ In the Quest of the Holy Grail, M. and P.L. relate that Ywayne is killed by Gawayne. M. therefore, does not mention his name on this occasion, but P.L. raises him from the dead.

In the last two chapters of book xx. M. speaks of two battles between Gawayne and Lancelot; P.L. only mentions one. P.L. presents other features absent from M.

When Arthur has long besieged Gannes in vain, he reproaches Gawayne for persuading him to undertake this hopeless war. Gawayne knows not what to reply, but resolves to ask Lancelot to decide the war by a combat between them. He first bids a squire go to Lancelot and defy him on his behalf, but when the squire, fearing Lancelot's wrath, refuses, he gets him to ask Lancelot why he avoids fighting with Gawayne. Lancelot answers he has spared Gawayne, not for fear, but for love. One day Gawayne asks a boon of Arthur, and, when it is granted, declares he will fight Lancelot, body to body, and bring the war to an end. Arthur tries to dissuade Gawayne, but in vain. A squire is sent to Lancelot, asking him to meet Arthur and Gawayne. Councils are held; on the one side Arthur, Gawayne, and King Karados,¹ on the other Lancelot, Boors, and Ector, meet. Gawayne then proposes single combat, and requests Arthur, if Lancelot is victorious, to leave the country and return to England. Lancelot replies that, if the matter cannot be otherwise arranged, he will fight, but he would rather have peace, even on humiliating terms. He never slew Gawayne's brothers knowingly. He and Ector offer to become Arthur's subjects, and he personally offers to go into exile on the morrow and remain away for ten years. (M. has a similar incident when Lancelot brings Guenever back to Arthur.) Arthur is moved by these proffers, and inclined to forgive Lancelot, but Gawayne's obstinacy prevents a reconciliation. The combat between Lancelot and Gawayne, being fixed for the next day, Arthur, Gawayne, and King Karados return to their tents; Lancelot, with his companions, to Gannes. Lancelot passes the night in prayer and shrift in the principal church of Gannes.

On the morrow the fight takes place, and lasts for long. We again learn that Gawayne has received from a holy man the gift of triple increase of strength during a certain portion of the day, and all the circumstances connected with this gift are recapitulated. M. and P.L. agree that Lancelot overcomes Gawayne, who receives a mortal wound in the head, and retreats. Lancelot, too, is grievously wounded, and tells Boors he never feared knight in his life, but this day, when Gawayne's strength increased so much, he trembled lest dishonour should befall him.

When Lancelot has left the battle-field, Gawayne is carried on his shield to Arthur. His wounds are at once examined and dressed; the

¹ King Karados, according to former statements of both P.L. and M., had been killed by Lancelot when he rescued Gawayne.

surgeons pronounce none dangerous, save the wound in the head. Gawayne can say no word, and all fear he is going to die. Arthur resolves to abandon the siege. The next day he goes to the city of "meaux," in "gaulle," there to rest until Gawayne's wound be healed.

One day, when Gawayne is already convalescent, Arthur is informed that the Roman emperor has entered Burgundy with a great army, and is advancing against him. Arthur bids the messenger to tell nobody, fearing lest his people depart, when they hear this news. He goes to Gawayne, and, after hearing he is all right again save for the wound in his head, tells him of the impending danger. Gawayne is ready to fight against the Romans, and Arthur declares he would rather die than hold his land of the Roman emperor. By Gawayne's advice, Arthur sends seven knights to the emperor, asking him why he has entered the country. The messengers are told by the emperor that he has come to his own country; there is none in the world that does not belong to him. He has come to revenge the death of the prince "forles dalemaigne," whom Arthur has slain. Arthur must do him homage, and pay tribute, if he wishes to avoid the war.

Arthur then prepares for battle; he arranges his people in ten "batailles." The battle rages furiously, but Arthur's men have a great advantage over the Romans, who are not so well disciplined. Arthur, leading the last "bataille," personally does great deeds of arms, and Gawayne, Keux, and Girflet follow his example. The Roman emperor and a nephew of his distinguish themselves on the hostile side. Gawayne kills the nephew, is violently attacked by the Romans in consequence, receives many wounds, and is injured afresh where Lancelot had wounded him. The emperor, to revenge his nephew, unhorses Girflet, and strikes down Keux, wounding him so grievously that he can live but three days more. At last Arthur kills the Roman emperor, and the Romans are soon after totally defeated. The last hundred are taken prisoners. Arthur bids them carry the emperor's body to Rome, and tell the senate this is Arthur's tribute; other he will not pay.¹

After the battle, Arthur has tidings, by the queen's messenger, of what has happened in his country during his absence, and exclaims:

"Haa mordrec or me faiz tu congnoistre que tu es le serpent que ie vois iadis yssir de mon ventre qui ma terre ardoit & a moy se prenoit / mais onques pere ne fist a filz ce que ie feray de toy car ie te occiray a mes deux mains ne ia dieu ne plaise que tu meurs par autres que les miennes."

¹ Though but very short, this account contains several points also noticeable in the description of Arthur's war against the Roman emperor, as it is given in the fifth book of "Le Morte Darthur," according to the English metrical romance, "La Morte Arthure" (Thornton MS.).

He at once prepares for starting on the morrow. Gawayne is carried by his side in a litter, so that in the event of his death he might be near him. When they are on the sea-shore waiting for the ships, Gawayne asks the knights near him where he is. When they tell him, and also mention that they are going to return to Britain, he prays to God that he may die in the country he loves so well. He tells the knights he will not live another fifteen days, and that he much regrets that death will prevent him from asking Lancelot's forgiveness; Lancelot is the best and kindest man in the world. Arthur, overhearing the last part of the conversation, tells Gawayne his obstinacy has caused all this woe. Gawayne advises Arthur to send for Lancelot, who loves him well, and will help him against his (*i.e.*, Gawayne's) disloyal brother, Mordred; but Arthur says they have done Lancelot too great wrong; he cannot apply to him. Then they take ship and return to Britain.

Having related Arthur's war against the Roman emperor at full length in book vii., M. does not mention it here. Gawayne's repentance is differently told by M. in book xx. It is only there that M. cursorily mentions what has happened in Arthur's absence in England.

In MH., ll. 2500-2951 correspond to M.'s chapters xix.-xxii., and both versions agree, not only in all incidents, but M., on various occasions, incorporates words, phrases, and even whole lines of MH. into his own text, whilst generally, as if to conceal the fact and mislead the reader, adding that the "Frenshe book" says so. The following are the most prominent examples:—

MH.

2556. Lyonelle spekys in that tyde
That was of warrè wyse And bolde,
"Lordyngis, yit I rede we hyde,
And oure worthy wallès holde;
2560. Le[t] them pryke wyth Alle ther pryde,
Tylle they haue Caught bothe hungre and colde
Than shalle we oute vpon them Ryde,
And shredde them downe as shepe in folde.

2564. Syr banndemorgew, that bolde kynge
To launcelot spekys in that tyde,
"Syr, cortessye And youre sufferynge
Has wakend vs wo fulle wyde;

2568. Awise you welle vpon thys thyng,
Yiff that they ouer oure landys Ryde,
Alle to noght they myght vs brynge
Whye we in holys here vs hyde."

M.

- 831, 7-13. Thenne said sir
Lyonel that was ware (!) and
wyse My lord syr Launcelot
I wyll gyue this counseyle /
lete vs kepe our stronge
walled Townes vntyl they
haue hungre and cold / and
blowe on their nayles / and
thenne lette vs fresshely sette
vpon hym / And shrede hem
doune as shepe in a felde (!) /
that Alyaunte may take en-
sample for euer how they
lande upon oure landes /
831, 13-17. Thenne spak
kynge Bagdemagus to syre
Launcelot / syre your cortosy
wyll shende vs alle / and thy
cortosy waked alle this
sorowe / for and they thus
ouer our landes ryde they
shalle by processe brynge vs
alle to noughte whyles we
thus in holes vs hyde /

2572. Galyhud, that Ay was goode,
To launcelot he spekys thare,
"Syr, here ar knyghtis of kynges blode
That longe wylle not droupe And dare;
Gyffe me leue, for croese on Rode
Withe my men to them to fare,
Though they be wers than outlawes wode,
I shalle them sle and make fulle bare.

2580. Off northe gales were bretherne'seuen,
Ferly makelle of streng[th]e and pryde,
Not fulle fele that men coude neyne
Better dorste in bataille byde;
Alle they sayd wyth one steuen,

2585. "Lordyngis, how longe wolle ye chyde?
Launcelot, for goddys loue in heuen,
Wyth galehud forthe lette vs Ryde."

2767. Suche grace had sir gawayne.

2762. And so more than halfe a yere

2802. Than had syr gawayne suche grace,—
An holy man had boddyn that bone,—
Whan he were in any place
There he shuld batayle done;
Hys strength-shuld wex in suche A space
From the vndyr tyme tyll none;

2817. And he felle downe vpon hys syde;

2830. Whan I Am hole, And goyng on hye.

2842. But have good day, my lord the kyng,
And your doughty knyghtis Alle,
Wendyth home, & leue youre werryeng;
ye wyne no worshyp at thys walle.
And I wold my knyghtis oute brynge, &c.

831, 17-22. Thenne sayd syr
Galyhud (I) vnto sir Launce-
lot / syr here ben knyghtes
come of kynges blood / that
wyl not longe droupe / and
they gyue vs leue lyke as
we ben knyghtes to mete
them in the feld and we
shalle alee them / that they
shal curse the tyme that
euer they came in to this
country /

831, 22-28. Thenne spak
seven bretheren of north-
walys / and they were seven
noble knyghtes / a man
myghte seke in seven kynges
landes or he myghte fynde
suche seven Knyghtes /

Thenne they all said at
ones /

syr launcelot for crystes
sake lete vs oute ryde with
sir Galyhud, for we be neuer
wonte to coure in castels
nor in noble Townes /

833, 29. sir Gawayne had
suche grace / &c.

833, 33. halfe a yere.

835, 11-14. Thenne had Syr
Gawayne suche grace and
gyfte that an holy man had
gyuen to hym That euery
day in the yere from vnderne
tyl hye none hys myght
encreaced the three houres
as moche as thryse hys
strengthe /

836, 7. he fyl down on his
syde /

836, 10. thus whan I am
hole.

836, 26. haue good day my
lord the kyng for wyt you
wel ye wyne no worshyp
at this wallis / & yf I wold
my knyghtes oute brynge,
&c.

β. THE TWENTY-FIRST BOOK.¹

A minute examination of M.'s twenty-first book compared with the last ten folios of P.L. discloses many and great differences, but also here the ground-plan of the two accounts is the same, and the incidents common to both establish beyond doubt an intimate, though indirect, relation between the two versions; this fact points out either that the sources of both are derived from a common source, or that P.L. itself is the source of the French romance used by M.

I.-VII. The events which happened in England during Arthur's absence in France, told at an earlier period in P.L., as we have seen, are mentioned summarily and with slight modifications by M. in his first chapter. The intervention of the Archbishop of Canterbury, his curse upon Mordred, Mordred's threat to kill him, and finally the archbishop's turning a hermit are absent from P.L. Both versions agree that, on receiving the news of Arthur's return, Mordred gives up the siege of the Tower of London, and collects his forces, to enable him to resist his father. The reflections on the fickleness of Englishmen, p. 840, 27-35, are apparently M.'s own.

The statement in M.'s second chapter that Mordred marches to Dover, waits there until the arrival of Arthur's ships, then endeavours to prevent a landing, and is finally beaten and thrown back by Arthur and his men, is against P.L., where Arthur meets no resistance on landing, as Mordred is not near Dover at all. Gawayne's last moments, death, and burial are differently told in P.L. and M. In M., after Mordred's defeat Gawayne is found in a boat, half dead. In P.L. the account is as follows:—

When Arthur, after crossing the channel, arrives at Dover, the people willingly open the gates to him, and gladly receive him. Towards the evening of that day, Gawayne sends for Arthur, as he feels his last moment has come. When Arthur arrives, he says briefly this to him: "I am dying. Avoid, if possible, fighting with Mordred, for it will cause your death. If you or any one see Lancelot, tell him that I cry him mercy, and pray to God for his prosperity; also that I request him to come and visit my tomb. Let me be buried at Kamalot, in the same tomb where my brother Gaehriet lies, and have written on the grave: '*Cy gisent les deux freres gaehriet et gawuain que lancelet occist par loultraige de gawuain*,' so that all may know the mischief was caused by my obstinacy, for I, too, have died through Lancelot; the wound he gave me was opened again by the Romans." After this Gawayne expires. Arthur, nearly out of his mind for grief, faints several times over

¹ Lancelot, ed. 1513, vol. iii. ff. 190-202; "Le Mort Arthur," ed. Furnivall, ll. 2952-3969.

the body, and is finally carried away from it. On the next day, agreeably to Gawayne's last wish, he sends his body by a hundred knights to Kamalot.¹

M. varies this account in several points. First he states [adding "the Frensshe book makes mention"] that Gawayne, shortly before his death, writes a letter to Lancelot asking his pardon, and requesting him to come to Arthur's assistance; and, secondly, that Gawayne is buried at the castle of Dover, "and there yet alle men maye see the sculle of hym / and the same wound is sene that syr Launcelot gaf hym in bataill."

In the following four chapters M. and P.L. have but few incidents in common. M. states that Arthur received news of Mordred's collecting his forces upon "Baramdounne;" this is not mentioned at all in P.L., but "the doune besyde Salysbury" where Arthur and Mordred determine to fight is common to both versions. The appearance of Gawayne's ghost to Arthur and the vision of the wheel also occur in P.L., though under different circumstances; but the truce for "a moneth day" and all the details connected with it in M. are absent from P.L., where the incidents are briefly these:—

The day after the departure of the knights with Gawayne's body for Kamalot, Arthur starts with his host in search of Mordred. He pitches his camp at night in a great forest. There, as he sleeps, Gawayne's ghost appears to him surrounded by many poor people, who tell Arthur they have helped Gawayne to conquer the heavenly kingdom. Gawayne requests Arthur to avoid fighting with Mordred until he has asked and received Lancelot's aid. Arthur says this cannot be. The ghost leaves him mourning. On the morrow Arthur continues his way, and makes halt at night in "la prairie de lonedon." There he has, whilst asleep, another vision. A beautiful lady approaches, who takes him up and carries him to the highest mountain, and sets him down upon a wheel; on this wheel are several seats,

¹ The conveyance of Gawayne's body to Kamalot by the hundred knights in P.L. presents some features, absent from M., which deserve mentioning. When Arthur, who accompanied the body for some distance, had returned, the knights continue their way, and come by chance to a castle "belloe," the proprietor of which was one of the bitterest enemies of Gawayne, but his wife loved and admired Gawayne. When the lady learns that the body the knights carry is Gawayne's, she bursts out in loud lamentation, declaring she loved Gawayne best of all knights, and his death is the greatest loss to all dames and damsels they ever experienced. While she is kneeling by the side of the body, her husband rushes out and strikes her with his sword. For this shameful deed the knights who conduct the body kill him, and have, in consequence, to fight with his retainers. After a long battle they are victorious, continue their way to Kamalot, taking with them the body of "la dame de belloe," who, previous to her death, had requested them to bury her by the side of Gawayne, and mention on her tomb that she suffered death for his love. The knights reach Kamalot without further adventures, and carry out their instructions. The people of Kamalot mourn deeply the death of the noble knight Gawayne.

and whilst one mounts, the other descends. Arthur sees that his seat is higher and fairer than the others. The lady tells him he is on the wheel of fortune. He has been the most powerful of kings, but it is the course of this world that they who fill the highest seats must fall. This he will soon prove. After this, the lady turns the wheel, and Arthur falls and hurts himself. In the morning Arthur tells his vision to the archbishop, who endeavours to dissuade him from fighting against Mordred without Lancelot's help, but in vain. Arthur has sworn by the body of his father, Utherpendragon, to fight and punish the traitor Mordred. He continues his way, and arrives on the "champs des alebries," the place which Merlin and the other "devins" have prophesied will be the scene of a terrible battle. When Arthur, in the company of the archbishop, has a look round after supper, he finds a high rock, and upon it an inscription, which the archbishop reads to him: "*En ceste plaine doit estre la bataille mortelle / par quoy le royaume de logres demourera orphelin.*" The archbishop tries again to dissuade Arthur from fighting with Mordred, but again without result.

Returning to his tent, Arthur finds a messenger from Mordred, who sends him word that, if he will leave the country on the next day, Mordred will spare him; otherwise, he must give battle. Arthur sends word back he is ready for battle, and will punish Mordred's insolence. The battle takes place on the morrow. P.L. describes it with much detail, but very differently from M., the two versions only agreeing in the statement that one hundred thousand (!) people are killed in the battle. "Vn peu apres heure de none" of all the fighters only three hundred knights of both parties remain. But four knights of the Round Table survive, viz., "Artus, Lucans le bouteillier, Girflet and Sagremors le desree," and yet the fight is not finished. Mordred kills Sagremors, whom Arthur revenges with such a violent blow that Mordred's armour breaks, "et dit lhistoire que apres louverture de la lance passa parmy la plaie vng ray de soleil si cuidamment que girflet le veit bien dont ceux du pays dirent que ce auoit este signe de courroux a nostre seigneur." When Mordred feels himself thus wounded, he "frappa le roy artus sur le heaulme tellement que nulle chose ne le puet garentir quil ne luy fist lespee sentir iusques au test et du test abbatit il vne piece." Both Arthur and Mordred fall to the ground. The fight continues until only Lucans and Girflet are left besides Arthur, who is mortally wounded.

In M. the battle comes about quite differently. Whilst Arthur and Mordred, accompanied by their knights, are treating for a month's truce, a knight, stung by an adder, pulls out his sword, and this incident is the signal for the battle. The battle itself and Arthur's and Mordred's wounding each other to death vary considerably. P.L. then continues thus:—

When all his people are killed, Arthur, helped by Lucans and Girflet, mounts his horse again (!). All three ride to "la chappelle noire," where Arthur dismounts (!), goes into the chapel, and prays there. Lucans kneels

behind him, and expresses his pity. Arthur stretches his arms towards him, embraces him, "*et estraingnit si durement encontre soy qui luy creua le cuer au ventre tellement qu'onques puis ne parla.*" Girflet, seeing that Arthur has killed Lucans, reproaches him, and gives vent to his grief. They then take horse again (!) and ride until they come, about the middle of the day, to the sea-shore. There Arthur dismounts, unbuckles his sword, and asks Girflet to go to a hill, which he points out to him, and throw the sword into a lake he will find behind the hill. Girflet would like to have the sword, but Arthur refuses him.

M. deviates from this most extraordinary account in several points. First of all Arthur does not, as in P.L., remount his horse after being mortally wounded, ride a considerable distance, stay a long time in a chapel praying, and then still retain so much force as to kill Lucans in his embrace. In M., Arthur is able to walk no more, and the death of the grievously wounded Lucans is caused by carrying his king. The part of Girflet is taken in M. by Bedwere, the former's name not being even mentioned. Both M. and P.L. agree that Arthur asks Bedwere (Girflet) to throw his sword into a lake, that Bedwere (Girflet) deceives Arthur twice before carrying out this wish, and then sees a hand rise out of the water, receive the sword, brandish and disappear with it. In P.L., Girflet first throws his own sword into the lake, then the sheath¹ of Excalibur. P.L. then continues:—

When Girflet returns to Arthur and tells him what he has seen at the lake, Arthur thanks him and bids him go away. Girflet refuses to do this for a while, but at last yields. No sooner has he gone than heavy rain begins to pour, and he takes shelter beneath a tree. While there, a boat full of ladies arrives; they land, go ashore, put Arthur, his horse, and armour into the boat, and row off. Girflet speeds to the spot as fast as his horse can go, but the boat is already fast disappearing, so that he can only recognise Arthur's sister, Morgan. He stays two days near the place, at a hermit's, and then returns to the "*chappelle noire*" to bury Lucans. Arriving there, he ties his horse to a tree, and enters. Before the altar he finds two tombs, one far surpassing the other in beauty. On the one is written: "*Cy geist lucans le bouteiller que le roy artus estaingnit descoubz luy,*" and on the other: "*Cy gist le roy artus qui par sa valeur mist en sa subiection douze royaumes.*" Girflet, overpowered by emotion, swoons away. When he recovers himself, he asks the hermit if Arthur is really buried here. The hermit tells him yes, for some damsels unknown to him have brought the body to the chapel.

When Mordred's two sons receive the news that their father is slain they take possession of the kingdom. Guenever, learning Arthur's death, and fearing the vengeance of Mordred's sons, cuts her hair and takes the veil.

¹ M., in accordance with the statement he made in book iv., that Morgan threw the sheath into a lake, does not mention it here at all.

In M., Bedwere carries Arthur to "the water syde," where a little "barge" with "many fayr ladyes" already awaits them. The remarks of "a quene," Arthur's sister, later on described as Morgan, Arthur's desire to go to the "vale of auylon," and some other details are absent from P.L.¹ M. also mentions that Bedwere comes to a chapel, but not a "black chapel;" P.L. does not mention that the hermit of this chapel is the late Bishop of Canterbury. M. omits Lucans' tomb and the inscriptions. The remainder of chapter vi. (from p. 850, 34, to the end) is apparently M.'s composition, the mention of the names of Morgan, the Queen of Northgalys, the Queen of the "waste landes," and "Nynyne" being another example of his repeatedly noticed predilection for such lists. The opening lines of chapter vii. are also M.'s addition; the line: "*Hic iacet Arthurus Rex quondam Rex que futurus*," occurs at the end of the Thornton MS. "La Morte Arthure." Guenever's entering the convent is differently told in M.; P.L. does not mention "Almesburye."

Comparing M. with MH., we find that both versions agree very closely in this portion, save for such insignificant variations as: The feast which Mordred gives lasts in M. "xv dayes;" in MH., "a Fourtenyght." In M., Guenever is styled his (Mordred's) "vnkyls wyfe;" in MH., "hys faders wyfe." Further, MH. omits the letter which, according to M., Gawayne writes to Lancelot before his death, and states that Gawayne was found dead in the boat. M.'s text suggests throughout that MH. was before him during the compilation of it, but in this part he comparatively rarely forgets himself so far as to reproduce the very words of MH., but passages of the latter sort occur—e.g.:

MH.
3216. A monthe day of trewe moete ye take.

3184. he was wondyr ferd to falle
A-monge the fendys ther that faught,
The whele ouer-tornyd ther wyth Alle,
And eueryche by A lymme hym caught.

3515. "I wylle wende A lytelle stownde
In to the vale of Avelovne
A whyle to hele me of my wounde."

M.
844, 34. ye take a treatyce
for a moneth day.
844, 7-9. and sodenly the
kyng thoughte the whele
torned vp soo doune / and he
felle amonge the serpentys /
& euery beest took hym by a
lymme /
850, 2-3. For I wyl in to
the vale of auylon to heles
me of my greuous wounde /

¹ The ballad "Kinge Arthurs Death" in Bishop Percy's Folio MS. (ed. J. W. Hales and F. J. Furnivall, vol. i. pp. 501-7) contains an account of Arthur's death, which seems to go back to the same source as the accounts of Malory and of the poet of "Le Mort Arthur," (Harl. MS. 2252), though some facts are different. The parts of Lucans (called Lukin, the Duke of Gloster) and Bedever (called Arthur's buttler) are interchanged. Lukin throws the sword into the lake and Bedever dies the same death as Lucans in Malory, compare l. 180, "his bowells gushed to his knee."

3525. A chapelle by-twene ij holtes hore.

850, 2-3. betwyxte two holtes hore af a chapel, &c.

3568. A-way she went, wyth ladys fyve,
To Armysbery, A nonne hyr for to make ;

851, 29-31. Than the quene stale aweye & v ladyes wyth hyr / and soo she wente to almesburye / & there she let make hir self a Nonne / & ware whyte clothes and blacke

3573. There weryd she clothys whyte And blake.

VIII.-XIII. The last six chapters of M. have but few points in common with the last folios of P.L. The former contains many incidents entirely absent from the latter. While, in M., Lancelot is quite naturally informed about the events in Logres through the messenger who brings him Gawayne's letter, it is somewhat surprising that in P.L. also he receives information by "vng messaiger du royaulme de logres," though it is not said who sent this messenger. In both versions Lancelot returns with his faithful knights to England. Save some points in the description of Lancelot's death M. and P.L. have nothing more in common after this. P.L. relates briefly as follows :

When Lancelot has landed in England with his knights, he marches against the two sons of Mordred, defeats and kills them in a battle near Winchester, where his cousin Lionel is slain. Full of grief at all his misfortunes, Lancelot forsakes his people, enters the wood, and comes by chance to a hermitage, where he finds staying with the hermit his cousin Bliomberis, and the former archbishop of Canterbury. They tell him of Arthur's death, and how they came to the hermit after the last battle, to lead a religious life. Lancelot resolves to do the same, and remains with them.

After the battle, Boors and Ector enter the city of Winchester and bury Lionel there with great honour. After having long searched the country for Lancelot, without success, Boors returns with his people to France, Ector remains in Logres, and chances one day upon the hermitage where Lancelot, Bliomberis and the archbishop of Canterbury stay. They all live together for some time, serving God day and night. In the fourth year Ector dies. Soon after his death, Lancelot falls ill. He requests his companions to bury him, if he die, in the tomb of Gallehault at the castle of Ioyous garde. He dies on the "cinquiesme iour doaust." At the time, Bliomberis and the archbishop are not with him, but asleep beneath a tree. Bliomberis suddenly notices the archbishop laugh in his sleep, and fearing lest some demon has taken hold of him, awakes him. The archbishop tells him he has seen a most fair sight, Lancelot surrounded by many angels. They seek him, and find him dead. In accordance with his last wish, they both carry him to Ioyous garde. When the people hear of Lancelot's death, they lament loudly. On the day the body is to be buried, Boors arrives. Gallehault's grave is opened, Lancelot's body is placed therein, and the following inscription is afterwards written on the grave : "*Cy gist Gallehault qui fut Roy des loingtaines yeles & avec luy.*"

repose Lancelot du lac le miel cheualier qui onques entrat au Royaume de logres fors seulement Galaad son fils." After the burial Boors tells them, how a hermit of "Gausle" told him that if he were on this day at Ioyous garde, he would find Lancelot either dead or alive. When Boors has heard how piously Lancelot had spent the end of his life, he resigns his royal estate, and stays with Bliomberis and the archbishop, in imitation of his brother Lancelot.

Comparing this last section of M. with the conclusion of MH. we find many incidents common to both, but also some in M. absent from MH.—*e.g.*, Lancelot's going to Gawayne's tomb and the offering he makes there. Further, whilst in M. Lancelot buries Guenever himself at Glastonbury, in MH. she is only buried there after his death. But on the whole both versions tally closely, nay M. in many cases servilely copies the words and phrases of MH. as in the following instances :

MH.

3626. Thryse she swownyd swyftely there,
3654. I-sette I am In suche A place,
my sowle hele I wyll A-byde
Telle god send me som grace,
3658. That I may do so in thys place
my synns to A-mende thys ilke tyde,
After to haue a syght of hys face
At Domys Day on hys Ryght syde ;

3661. There-fore, syr lancelot du lake,
For my loue now I the pray
my company thow Aye for-sake,

And to thy kyngdome thow take thy way,
And kepe thy Reme from werre And wrake,

3667. And take a wyffe
3671. Ioye And blysse
3687. "The same desteny that yow is dyghte
I wille Resseyve in som house bolde
To please here-After god All-myght;
3690. To please god Alle that I maye
I shalle here-After do myne entente,
And enyr for yow speyally pray,
While god wyll me lyffe lente."

M.

- 854, 4. she swouned thryse.

854, 14-17. I am sette in
suche a plyte to gete my
soule hele / & yet I truste
thorough goddes grace that
after my deth to haue a
syght of the bless d face of
cryst / and at domes day to
sytte on his ryght syde

854, 18-22. Therefore syr
Launcelot I requyre the &
beseche the hartelye for al
the lone that euer was be-
twyxt vs that thou neuer
see me more in the vyssage /
& I comande the on goddes
behalfe that thou forsake
my companye & to thy
kyngdom thou torne ageyn
& kepe wel thy royame from
warre and wrake.

there take the a wyf.

. Ioye & blysse

854, 31- . but the same
deystenye that ye haue taken
you to I wyl take me vnto
for to please Ihesu / & euer
for you I cast me specially
to praye / &c.

There are more such passages in M. which are hardly anything

else but mere transcripts from MH., but I cannot reproduce them all, and must limit myself to the most important ones :

MH.

3714. "nay," sayd the quene, "that wylle I not."
 3853. hyt ys bot hevynesse of yower blode ;
 3879. A-gaynste hym openyd the gatys of hevyn ;
 3884. Syr lancelot eylythe no thyng but gode.

M.

- 855*, 13. Nay sayd the quene that shal I neuer do
 858*, 21. It is but hevynesse of your blood.
 859*, 6. & the yates of heuen opened ayenst hym
 859*, 8. syr Launcelot ayleth no thyng but good.

The last part of the final chapter of book xxi. contains I think incidents of three different kinds ; those invented by M., as Ector's praise of Lancelot and the enumeration of the knights who return to their own land ; those which M. has in common with the Thornton MS. "La Morte Arthure," such as the succession to the throne of England by "Constantyn that was syr Cadores sone of Cornwayl" ; lastly those M. must have borrowed from some French source we no longer possess, such as the statement, that Bors, Ector, Blamour, and Bleoberis undertake a pilgrimage to the Holy Land.

MALORY'S COMPILATION REPRESENTS A LOST "SUITE DE LANCELOT."



F, at the end of the critical examination of all that concerns Lancelot in Malory's *rifacimento*, we cast a retrospective glance at the results arrived at, and bear clearly in mind how Sir Thomas Malory dealt with the English metrical romances, or with the "Quest of the Holy Grail," or with the "Merlin," we can have little or no doubt as to one point : The differences, the altered sequence of incidents, and the additions revealed by a comparison of Malory with the Prose-Lancelot, cannot be attributed to the Englishman, but must have been present in his sources. Malory must thus have derived his information from one or several sources ; these were nearly related to, or perhaps based upon, the Vulgate-Lancelot, and already contained those features noticeable in "Le Morte Darthur" which are at variance with the Vulgate-Lancelot.

What hinders us from assuming only one source for Malory's account of Lancelot ? Contradictions in various portions of the "Lancelot" section would demonstrate the use of several sources, but

none such have been revealed by our close examination of Malory's text. We may thus confidently advance the hypothesis that Malory knew but one source for his "Lancelot" section, and we may explain the existence of this source by analogy from the "Suite de Merlin" and from the so-called enlarged "Tristan." Both these romances, the "Merlin" and the "Tristan," exist in a Vulgate and a modified version; is it not more than likely that such was the case with the most popular of all the Arthurian romances, that of "Lancelot of the Lake"? Just as the modified versions of the "Merlin" and the "Tristan" were intended to replace the infinitely long Vulgate-versions of these two romances, so it was with our hypothetical "Lancelot." Let us call this version, which we assume was used by Malory, the "Suite de Lancelot."

This "Suite de Lancelot" apparently met with no more success than the "Suite de Merlin," though both have the decided advantage over the Vulgate-versions of greater precision and of dealing more exclusively with their heroes. Strange to say, both the "Suite de Merlin" and the "Suite de Lancelot" had well-nigh the same fate, both being rescued from oblivion by Sir Thomas Malory, whose compilation was the only authority for the "Suite de Merlin" until the discovery of the Huth MS. some fifteen years ago, and still continues to occupy this position for the "Suite de Lancelot." We may hope, however, that one of these days, either in France or in England, the confirmation of the hypothesis now urged will turn up.

Assuming, for argument's sake, the existence of such a "Suite de Lancelot," it remains for us to reconstruct its form from the materials furnished us by Sir Thomas Malory's *rifacimento*.

We must first ask ourselves, what portion of the Vulgate-Lancelot this "Suite" was intended to replace. If we glance on the table which faces page 177, and sets forth the relationship of the various MSS. of the "Lancelot" at the British Museum to the printed edition of Paris, 1513, and to "Le Morte Darthur," and if we follow the solid and dotted perpendiculars which traverse the large rectangle forming the frame of the table, we find that all the portions which Malory has in common with the "Lancelot" belong—save a fragment of part i.—to the second, third, and fourth parts. The "Suite de Lancelot" was thus evidently intended to replace a small portion of the first and the three last parts, or, to put the matter more concisely, the contents of vols. ii. and iii. of the edition printed at Paris in 1513.

To get an idea of the structure of the "Suite de Lancelot" we have but to examine the various books of "Le Morte Darthur" dealing with Lancelot. These are:—

1. Book vi. We have seen (*supra*, pp. 178-190) that chapters i.-xi. are derived from the Vulgate-Lancelot, whereas chapters xii.-xviii. contain matter not to be identified therein. These we must, therefore, attribute to the writer of the "Suite."

2. Book xi.

3. Book xii. chapters i.-x.

4. Books xiii.-xvii., or "The Quest of the Holy Grail."

For these five books Malory must have had recourse to the Vulgate-version of the "Queste," &c., which is evident from his contradicting himself several times in the twelfth and thirteenth books, as I have shown, page 214. Whether the "Queste" was originally included in the "Suite de Lancelot," whether it was intercalated therein from the Vulgate, or whether, finally, it occurred there in a condensed form, is of course impossible to say; but I think the latter most likely, and that the writer of the "Suite" arranged the Vulgate-Queste in the same way as he did the remainder of the Vulgate-Lancelot—i.e., he excluded all that did not concern Lancelot or his son Galahad, perhaps even the Boors section. Malory may have substituted the Vulgate-Queste for this curtailed account.

5. Books xviii.-xxi.

It must be left uncertain whether the "Suite de Lancelot" began with the events told at the beginning of Malory's sixth book, or whether other incidents preceded these events; it is, however, very probable, though by no means certain, that the "Suite" began with Arthur's expedition against the Roman emperor Lucius; at least the following facts are suggestive in this connection: Malory remarks, at the opening of book vi., that Lancelot is the first knight whom the "frensshe book" mentions after Arthur's return from Rome. The Roman expedition is found in the Vulgate-Lancelot, briefly told, but resembling Malory's account in its main features—e.g., the imperial embassy to Arthur, the Roman invasion of Burgundy, Gawayne's valour, Arthur's sending the emperor's body to the Senate at Rome, as the tribute claimed from him, &c.—but it occurs in the fourth part, after the fruitless siege of Gannes and Gawayne's being seriously wounded by Lancelot, where it is evidently entirely out of place. Further, by supposing that the "Suite" began with the Roman expedition, we have at once a source for the first part of the English metrical romance "La Morte Arthure" (Thornton MS.)¹ which Malory copies so servilely in his fifth book, and which is devoted to Arthur's Roman war.

¹ Branscheld has succeeded in pointing out (*Anglia*, viii. pp. 179-236) various points which this romance has in common with the old English Chronicles, but I do not think it at all likely that the poet took the trouble to combine his information from so many sources, but rather that he had only one.

The fact that in the two last books, where Malory, besides his French source, had a doublet in the English metrical romance "Le Mort Arthur" (Harl. MS. 2252) he freely used, as we have seen, its very words and phrases, also points in this direction.

From the beginning of book vi.—leaving aside book vii., which is most probably a prose-rendering of a lost French romance of "Syr Gareth"; books viii.—x., which are devoted to the life and adventures of "Syr Trystram;" and books xiii.—xvii., which faithfully reproduce the Vulgate "Queste del Saint Graal"—to the end of book xxi., what Malory relates of Lancelot may reasonably be looked upon as parts of one complete whole, a "Suite de Lancelot."

The existence of such a "Suite de Lancelot" at once explains the numerous difficulties which Malory's text affords to the critic. The last portion (ll. 1318–3969) of the English metrical romance "Le Mort Arthur" (Harl. MS. 2252) represents the conclusion of the "Suite de Lancelot," and thus we have, besides the Prose-Lancelot, which the writer of this romance used for his first part (ll. 1–1181), a second source, which, as we have seen, contradicts the Prose-Lancelot in various points, and which the poet used for his second part (ll. 1318–3969).

As far as Malory's account of Lancelot is concerned, we attribute all modifications, omissions, and additions to the writer of the "Suite de Lancelot," and we can further explain the following points:

Malory, possessing only a "Suite de Lancelot," lacked, was even perhaps altogether ignorant of, the first part of the Vulgate-Lancelot; hence the extraordinary fact that he says nothing of Lancelot's birth and early life, nor even of his arrival at Arthur's court, but abruptly introduces him with a few vague phrases.

Finding Guenever's abduction by Meleagaunt of interest, the writer of the "Suite" embodied this episode, which occurs in the first part of the Vulgate-Lancelot at a later stage, and using partly the account found in the Vulgate-Lancelot, partly some other French, or perhaps even Welsh, source, gave it the form it assumes in Malory's book xix., and then, to avoid the immediate sequence of two such similar episodes as that of Guenever, Mador, and Lancelot, and that of Guenever, Meleagaunt, and Lancelot, altered the sequence of incidents in book xviii. Thus is confirmed¹ the theory of M. Gaston Paris concerning Malory's

¹ M. Gaston Paris arrived at the result that *Malory* must have derived his information for his book xix. from two different sources—viz., the first part from some lost French or Welsh poem, the second from the Prose-Lancelot. In the above-named chapter, I have shown the correctness of M. G. Paris' theory, but I have added: The contamination of the two sources may be attributed either to Malory or to the writer of his source, and the latter seems to me the more probable. Considering now the nineteenth book

book xix., which I have reproduced and completed in the chapter headed "Le Roman de la Charrette and the Prose-Lancelot" (*supra*, pp. 232-249).

The writer of the "Suite" further added the three last chapters of book xix., in which the superiority of Lancelot over all the other knights of the Round Table is shown by his alone being able to heal the wounds of "Syr Vyre." He here shows great ingenuity in presenting his hero Lancelot at the climax of his fame and glory, previous to his disgrace and distress.

All the additions in the eighteenth, twentieth, and twenty-first books, such as the greater detail in all that concerns Lancelot and the enumeration of the various parts of his kingdom which he distributes among his faithful companions (book xx. chapter xviii.), were added by the writer of the "Suite" with a view to justifying the title of his romance more than in the case of the Vulgate-Lancelot, in which very much of the narrative has nothing whatever to do with Lancelot.

When I expressed the hope in the foregoing pages that some day a French MS. might be discovered confirming my theory respecting the lost "Suite de Lancelot," I little thought that I was myself destined to discover a part at least of such a MS. While studying the romance of "Tristan" for the third section of my "Studies on Syr Thomas Malory's Le Morte Darthur," I was led to pay special attention to the British Museum MS. Add. 5474, which contains the so-called enlarged "Tristan," wrongly attributed to Hélie de Boron. Though Malory has not used this version, but only the Vulgate of the "Tristan," for his account of the life and adventures of Syr Trystram, I undertook the drudgery of reading through the entire MS., in the hope of finding some clue to the three last chapters of Malory's book xii., which are not to be traced in the Vulgate "Tristan." And richly were my endeavours rewarded! Besides other interesting points,¹ I found that this MS. (Add. 5474) contains, from fol. 144 recto, col. i. line 2 from the bottom, to fol. 162 recto, col. ii. line 19

in its relation to the other books, and Malory's capacities as a writer, I decidedly transfer to the *writer* of the "Suite de Lancelot" the part provisionally attributed by M. G. Paris to Malory, and assume that Malory found his information for book xix. ready in his French source—i.e., the "Suite de Lancelot."

Considering, further, the fact that M. G. Paris evidently proved that the poem of Chrétien, "Le Roman de la Charrette," is the direct source of the corresponding section in the Prose-Lancelot, that Robert de Boron's poem is the source of the Prose-Merlin, and that the same is the case as regards the "Roman de Tristan," I pronounce decidedly in favour of the theory according to which the poetical preceded the prose-versions.

¹ Discussed later on in the section on the "Tristan," p. 284, &c.

from the bottom, eighteen folios relating to adventures of Lancelot, inserted in the romance, though having no apparent connection with either the preceding or the following incidents,¹ unless it be to the latter, in so far as they relate the conception and birth of Galahad. Subjecting these eighteen folios to a minute critical examination, I found, to my great surprise, that their contents are exactly those of Malory's books xi. and xii., and that their relation to the Prose-Lancelot is the same as Malory's. We have seen (*supra*, pp. 190-205) that—

1. Chapters i.-iii. of book xi. correspond to ff. 105-107 of the Paris (1513) edition of the "Lancelot."

2. Between chapters iii. and iv. Malory omits fifty-five folios of vol. ii. and twenty-three folios of vol. iii., or seventy-eight folios of the narrative of the Prose-Lancelot, and relates:

3. In chapters iii.-vi. of book xi., the contents of ff. 24-35 of vol. iii. (ed. 1513).

4. Again omitting thirty-two folios, Malory relates:

5. In chapters vii.-xiv. of book xi., and in chapters i.-x. of book xii., the contents of ff. 67-80 of vol. iii. (ed. 1513).

A comparison of this fragment of a lost "Suite de Lancelot" with Malory shows that they agree in this arrangement, and, besides, in the following points:—

The last sentences of Malory's book x., referring to the people of Lyonas, and the opening lines of book xi., speaking of a holy hermit who comes to Arthur's court and predicts the arrival of Galahad, who is to fill the perilous seat (which, as I have stated, *supra*, p. 192, is absent from the Prose-Lancelot), at the next feast of Whitsun, occur on fol. 142 recto: of MS. Add. 5474. But while in that MS. Arthur at once makes preparations that the next feast may be as splendid as possible, Malory avoids this anomaly, remembering that he has still to tell the birth of Galahad, who must naturally first grow up before he can fulfil the prophecy of the hermit.

At the top of fol. 142 verso begins a paragraph occupying two folios, and relating to Trystram and Palomydes, which is out of place

¹ The only other MS. at the British Museum, Royal 20 D iii., of this part of the so-called enlarged "Tristan" does not contain these adventures of Lancelot; compare *infra*, p. 285.

² In fol. 142 recto, col. ii., occur two passages which may be useful some day: (1) "et sachent tuit neralement que le latin de lestoire du s^r greal nous denise tout apertement," &c.; (2) "cil sieges auoit este ordenes par le sens merlin si uoie le liure de mon seigneur robert de boron . car il le deuise moult clerement & le moustre tout apertement en si con la haute estoire du saint graal uous fait entendant." The latter passage may well be explained as a reference to the "Suite de Merlin;" compare Messrs. G. Paris and J. Ulrich, vol. i. pp. 65-66.

here, and is repeated later on (compare *infra*, p. 284). It does not interest us here.

On fol. 144 recto, col. i. line 2 from the bottom, the adventures of Lancelot follow exactly in the same succession as in Malory's eleventh and twelfth books.

The eleventh book corresponds to ff. 144 recto to 150 verso, col. ii. line 15 from the bottom. As a characteristic common feature, I may point out that the cursory mention of Arthur's war against King Claudas at the end of chapter vi. of this book occurs under the same circumstances at fol. 149 verso.

Book xii. chapters i.-x. correspond to ff. 150 verso, col. ii. line 15, to 162 verso, col. ii. line 18 from the bottom.

Up to fol. 164 recto, col. ii. line 25 from the top, the incidents above referred to relating to Trystram and Palomydes are repeated, and strongly resemble the contents of Malory's three last chapters of book xii.

The fragment of eighteen folios of the lost "Suite de Lancelot" bears the same relation to Malory's text as we have already found obtaining between the Huth MS. and Malory; whilst there is substantial agreement, the two are not exactly alike. I have hopes that the remainder may some day be discovered.

III. THE "TRISTAN," OR THE LIFE AND ADVENTURES OF SYR TRYSTRAM.



O less than two hundred and seventy-four pages¹ of Caxton's volume—or almost one-third—are devoted to the life and adventures of Syr Trystram. The romance of "Tristan" exists, besides various metrical versions,² in two prose-forms—a Vulgate, consisting of two parts, and the so-called enlarged "Tristan," in reality an enlargement of the second part of the Vulgate.

Whilst the Vulgate is generally attributed in the MSS. to a certain "Lucas de Gast," "Hélie de Boron" is named as the writer of the enlarged "Tristan." I have already stated in my Introduction (*supra*, p. 9) that, as M. G. Paris has conclusively shown in his Introduction to the Huth "Merlin" (pp. xxiii-xxvi), these two names are fictitious.

The Vulgate "Tristan" exists at the British Museum in three fragmentary MSS.—viz., Harl. 4398, Add. 23929, and Harl. 49, and in no less than seven printed editions, which I have already enumerated at page 9.

The text of the three MSS., in so far as we possess it, varies greatly in details of phraseology, much in the same way as we have noticed in the MSS. of the "Merlin" and "Lancelot." The text of the printed editions is identical, save for insignificant orthographical and formal differences. Although these editions contain, on the whole, the same adventures as the MSS., there is considerable variation between the texts of the former and the latter. M. Paulin Paris³ has already stated

¹ (1) Pp. 273-465, or books viii., ix., and x. chapters i.-xxxi. (2) Book x. chapters li.-lxxxvi. (3) Book xii. chapters xi.-xiii.

² Compare Prof. Koelbing's Introduction to his edition, "Die Nordische und die Englische Version der Tristan-Sage." 2 parts. Heilbronn, 1878 and 1882.

³ Paulin Paris, "Les Manuscrits Français." Paris, 1836. Vol. i. p. 135.

that there exists at the Bibliothèque Nationale only one MS.—viz., No. 103 (formerly No. 6776), which agrees fairly, but not exactly, with the printed text—a fact which need excite no wonder. We have already seen that these romances exist originally in an archetype, from which various MSS. are derived, each in turn giving rise to other MSS., and that successive generations of scribes persistently altered their copies, either by inadvertence or from the wish to make them more complete. So it is with the "Tristan" MSS.; they belong to various stages of MS. development, and naturally differ both from one another and from the MS. which was used for the first printed edition. As a rule, when a romance was printed, the MS. itself disappeared, probably owing to the fact that it was generally much soiled and mutilated during the process of printing.

The Vulgate "Tristan" has furnished Malory with the materials for his eighth, ninth, and tenth books. To give the reader, as I have done before, a graphic idea of the extent of the MSS. and their relation to Malory and to the printed text, I have constructed the table facing this page. Let us first consider the lower part of the table. The first column, a long rectangle, represents the 1520 edition of the "Tristan."¹ This edition consists of one volume of two parts: the first containing 154, the second 126 folios; therefore, the long side of the rectangle is divided into 154 + 126, or 280 equal parts, each representing one folio, the division in parts being indicated by the dotted perpendicular after 154. Columns 2, 3, 4 contain smaller rectangles, each representing one MS., the position of each rectangle being determined by the contents of the MS. as compared with the edition of 1520. The fifth column shows what parts of the edition of 1520 correspond to the eighth, ninth, and tenth books of Malory.

The so-called enlarged "Tristan"—i.e., the enlarged second part of the Vulgate "Tristan"—is also represented by three MSS. at the British Museum, viz., Add. 5474, Royal 20 D ii., and Egerton 989,² but it was never printed³ as a whole, though by far the greater part is printed either in the Vulgate "Tristan" or in the "Lancelot." It would seem that hitherto no one had closely examined the enlarged "Tristan;" I have now done so, and the drudgery of reading through the whole of MS. Add. 5474 has been repaid by some very interesting results. First, the enlarged "Tristan" consists of three parts—(a) Adventures

¹ I have selected this edition in preference to those of 1484 and 1505 (?), because in the former the folios are not marked at all, and in the latter there occur many misprints in the numbers indicating the folios.

² For all particulars as to age and completeness, &c., of these MSS. compare H. L. D. Ward's "Catalogue of Romances" in the Department of Manuscripts in the British Museum, vol. i. 1883, pp. 359-364.

³ The account of Trystram's death according to the MS. version was printed by M. Paulin Paris in vol. i. pp. 200-208 of his "Manuscripts Français."

of Syr Trystram forming the subject of the second part of the Vulgate, minus the folios which relate his death and events immediately preceding it. (b) A "Quest of the Holy Grail" considerably modified, but reproducing the main points of the Vulgate "Queste" as joined to the Lancelot, and interspersed with adventures of Syr Trystram and his death. (c) After the death of Trystram follow nine evidently independent sections, the subjects of which are as follows:—The lament of King Mark, burial of Trystram and Iseult, and Sagremor's departure with Trystram's arms towards Camalaoth. Adventures of Galahad and Lancelot. Adventures of Galahad, Bohors, and Perceval before the castle of La Marche, and the knighting of Samaliel. Adventures of Samaliel and Keux the Seneschal. Adventures of Lancelot in a boat, and his arrival at the Palace of the Graal. Palamedes christened and made a knight of the Round Table, followed by adventures of Galahad, Bohors, and Perceval, with an account of the Graal. Encounter of Palamedes and Lancelot, and slaying of Palamedes by Gawayne and Agrawayne. Arrival of Galahad, Bohors, and Perceval at Sarra, and deaths of Galahad and Perceval. News of the deaths of Palamedes, King Baudemagus, and Erec, son of Lac, told to Sagremor; and commencement of his own narrative of the death of Trystram.

The MS. Add. 5474 contains from fol. 1 to 142 recto the adventures told in the second part of the Vulgate "Tristan" [corresponding to ff. 1-176 of MS. Royal 20 D ii.]. Comparing it with the second part of the edition of 1520 we there find, on fol. 29, a complaint of Lamorak de Galles in the verse beginning:

"Sans cuer suis & sans cuer remain
Je nay membre ne pied ne main
Sans amours / en amours me main
Tel que mort et vif men demain" &c.

which occurs in the MS. Add. 5474 on fol. 30.

On fol. 61 verso of the printed text, and on fol. 73 of the MS., is found the lay which the harper Eliot plays before King Mark, beginning thus:

Ed. 1520, fol. 62.

"Tant me suis de dire teu
Que ie me suis apperoeu
Que mon taire a aucun neu
Pour ce mon lay ramentu
du mauvais roy du non sachant
Qui tout mal va a luy sachant
Commence mon lay et faitz mon chant
Bien luy doit diu estre trenchant
Au plus mauvais qui soit en vie
Est venu talent & enuie
Que ie compte sa mauuaise vie
Raison a cestuy fait menue

Add. MS. fol. 53.

"Tant me sui de dire teu
Que iou me sui apercheu
ken mon taire al amenteu
pour cai mon lay amenteu.
Del mauvais roi del non sachant
Qui tout mal uait a sot sachant
Commenc mon lay & fay mon chant
bien li doit diex estre trenchant.
Del plus mauuais qui soit en uie
Mest nenus talent & envie
ke iou cont sa mauuaise uie
Raison a cestui fait menvie.

Roy marc vil dolent & chetif
 Qui a tous biens faire est retif
 Tu es comme li gous metif
 Qui contre le lyon prent estrif." &c.

Rols march vif & dolans chetis
 Ra tous biens faire est arestis
 tu es com li oupleux mestis
 Qui contre lion prent estris." &c.

These two passages exhibit the nature of the variants which exist between the MSS. and the printed text of the "Tristan."

On fol. 53 of the printed text, and on fol. 62 of the MS., is found a metrical letter of Guenever to Iseult, beginning:

"Salus vous mande comme len doit faire
 Royne de mauvais affaire
 Qui genleure estes appellee
 Vostre oenure a trop este oellee." &c.

Fol. 142 recto, col. i. of MS. Add. 5474 [or fol. 175 recto of MS. Royal 20 D iii.] would correspond, as far as the events therein related are concerned, to fol. 117 of part ii. of the edition printed at Paris 1520;¹ at this point the quest of the Holy Grail begins in the enlarged "Tristan." The passage in the Vulgate "Tristan" contains a reference to the quest, but not the quest itself, thus clearly indicating the point where the writer of the enlarged "Tristan" began his work; this passage runs thus:

"En ce temps que tristan et yseult estoient en la ioyeuse garde fu entreprinse la queste du Saint graal. Tristan se mist en la queste & en fut compaignon et par ce eut le roy marc yseult et fist le roy artus la paix & fut le roy marc deliure de prison. A tant laisse le compte a parler de ceste matiere et parle de tristan qui reuenu est a karahes en bretagne auec le roy houel & yseult aux blanches mains sa femme et runalem qui filz estoit au roy houel et fut frere de kehedin et de yseult."

But the writer of the enlarged "Tristan" expressly states that Syr Trystram was the only knight who, for the love of fair Iseult, did not take the oath by which the other knights of the Round Table vowed to start on the quest of the Holy Grail, for which he was severely reprimanded by King Arthur, but defended by Syr Lancelot.

Returning now to MS. Add. 5474, I have to state that fol. 142 recto, col. i. to fol. 144 recto, col. i.² are occupied by a section which

¹ On this occasion I discovered that in the Museum copy of the 1520 edition (634. k. 8), signature v (ff. 115-118) is wrongly inserted before signature t (ff. 109-114).

² The contents of these two folios are briefly these: Tristan and Iseult, having passed the winter at Ioyous garde, are intending to go, towards Easter, for the summer to Leonols, when the news arrives that Arthur wishes all his knights to come to Camelot next Whitsuntide. Tristan resolves to go there, but Iseult declares she will not go. Tristan, hearing this, determines to stay away also, but Iseult convinces him he had better go, as people would blame him for his absence, and would say he only stayed away for her sake. Tristan sees how reasonable Iseult's argument is, and resolves to go, but without other arms than "une espee" and "une glaive"; he will not even

in some points strongly resembles the last three chapters of Malory's book xii.—*e.g.*, whilst Trystram and Iseult are leading a happy life at Ioyous garde, the former happens one day to ride into the wood and meet Palomydes, his mortal enemy; so far both versions agree, but the *dénouement* of this episode is different.

This paragraph begins on fol. 142 recto, col. i. thus:

"Me sire tristram qui en la ioieuse garde demouroit toutes uois auoec la roine yseut estoit auques appareillies entour la pasque auoit grant uolente quil sen alast el roiaume de loenois seiourner tout cest este: & la roine si estoit bien accorde" . . . &c.

It ends on fol. 144 recto, col. i. thus:

"mais a tant laisse ore li contes a parler de mon signour tristram & retourne sour vne autre matiere."

From fol. 144 recto, col. i. to fol. 162 recto, col. ii. line 19 from the bottom, adventures of Syr Lancelot, relating in the same succession the incidents Malory tells in his eleventh and twelfth books, follow in MS. Add. 5474. As I have (*supra*, p. 277) explained the importance of these folios, I need not dwell upon them any longer.

On fol. 162, col. ii. line 20 the same passage noticed on fol. 142 begins again, but is apparently entirely independent from the former. It begins thus:

"Or dist li contes que tristram estoit en la ioieuse garde & demouroit toutes voies auoec sa dame la roine yseut & estoit appareillies el tans paschor pour aler el roiaume de loenoys pour seiourner illeuc tout celui este & la roine meesme si estoit bien accordee" . . . &c.

And it ends on fol. 164 recto, col. ii. in accordance with the different incidents that follow, as compared with the former occasion, thus:

"mais a tant taist ore li contes a parler de tristram & retourne a parler dune autre chose de ceus qui (i) estoient uenu a la feste de pentecoste."

The adventures of Lancelot intercalated into the enlarged "Tristan"

take his squire. All Iseult's remonstrations to persuade him to ride fully armed to Logres are in vain.

On his way to Camelot, Tristan meets Palomydes, who has just slain a knight, and now rides against him, crying, "Tristan, your death has come." Tristan reflects a moment what to do, but then rides fiercely against Palomydes, and deals him a mighty blow. Palomydes neither returns the stroke nor moves. Tristan says to him, "Either you are stunned or you are the greatest coward I ever met." Then Palomydes smiles, and says: "Tristan, you are foolish; do you think I would disgrace myself by attacking my unarmed enemy while I am armed?" He continues he will one day find him when Tristan is also armed, and then they will fight until one of them is dead. When he hears that Tristan intends to ride to Camelot he persuades him to take his horse, which is still fresh, and remember him to King Arthur, Lancelot, and Gaheriet. Thus they part. The christening of Palomydes as Malory relates it is absent from the enlarged "Tristan."

¹ The scribe of the MS. has by mistake put a point under the "e" of "estoient," as a mark of omission, instead of marking the superfluous "i."

are thus preceded and followed by about two folios containing the same matter; how is this to be explained? MS. Add. 5474 by itself furnishes no clue, but if we look at the other MS. of the enlarged "Tristan," Royal 20 D iii., I think the mystery is soon explained. The eighteen folios containing matter relating to Lancelot are absent from this MS., where we find (ff. 174 recto to 176 recto) the contents of the two folios, which are repeated; a clear proof that whilst these folios belong to the enlarged "Tristan" the Lancelot section does not. It may be here stated that MSS. Add. 5474 and Royal 20 D iii., though the one written in France, the other in the Netherlands, relate, save as to this Lancelot section, the same adventures throughout.

We may therefore assume that the scribe of MS. Add. 5474, perhaps with a view of explaining the birth of Galahad, who appears later on in the enlarged "Tristan" without any previous introduction, when he comes at Whitesuntide to Arthur's court in order to occupy the perilous seat, added this section on his own account from another now lost MS. of the "Lancelot." Returning afterwards to the "Tristan," he forgot that he had already told the contents of the two folios, which there precede the "Quest of the Holy Grail," and thus repeated them to a certain extent, but in different words. From the point of view of the modern critic, we have to be exceedingly thankful to the scribe, for, through his addition of the section on Lancelot, he has furnished us the means of substantiating our theory on the existence of a lost "Suite de Lancelot."

The second part of the enlarged "Tristan" contains a "Quest of the Holy Grail," which, though intimately related to the Vulgate-version of the "Quest," yet presents many additional features, which I feel sure will be useful to the critic of this legend;¹ it occupies, up to the death of Trystram, ff. 164-283 in MS. Add. 5474 and ff. 176-291 in MS. Royal 20 D iii. For this section we have a third MS. (written on paper in the year 1475) in Egerton 989, which is only slightly imperfect at the beginning.

The last portion of the enlarged "Tristan" contains, as I have above stated (see *supra*, p. 282), in all the three MSS. nine independent paragraphs.

Comparing the enlarged "Tristan" now with Malory's compilation, we find that both have a considerable portion in common—viz., chapters i.-xxxi. and li.-lxxxvi. of book x.,² and, as far as the MS. Add. 5474 is concerned, also the contents of books xi. and xii.

¹ It thoroughly deserves critical examination.

² This portion Malory might therefore also have derived from the enlarged "Tristan," but compare *infra*, p. 288, &c.

I have also endeavoured to express graphically the results of these investigations. On the table facing p. 280, *supra*, the upper part treats of the MSS. of the enlarged "Tristan" in their relation to one another and to Malory.

Column 1 represents in a long rectangle the MS. Add. 5474. As this MS. has 305 folios, the long side of the rectangle is divided into 350 parts, each representing one folio, and marked by numbers, 50, 100, 150, &c. The two passages which are a repetition in this MS. are marked (though, for distinctness' sake, on an exaggerated scale) by small shaded rectangles at the two sides of the rectangle representing the eighteen intercalated folios on Lancelot.

Column 2 represents MS. Royal 20 D iii., which is slightly imperfect at the beginning. The shaded portion of the long rectangle denotes the eighteen folios on Lancelot absent from this MS.

Column 3 represents the MS. Egerton 989, which only contains the second and third parts of the enlarged "Tristan," and is slightly imperfect at the beginning.

Column 5 represents Malory's compilation. The first long rectangle is what corresponds to book x. in the MSS., then follows a blank, indicating the superfluous passage in MS. 5474, after which follows the section on the "Lancelot," corresponding to books xi. and xii.; finally, a small shaded rectangle represents the three chapters of book xii., which much resemble in their contents the two folios of the enlarged "Tristan" preceding the quest of the Holy Grail.

BOOKS VIII., IX., X.; XII., CHAPTERS XI.-XIII.

S space fails me to print my detailed comparison of Malory's compilation with the romance of "Tristan,"¹ I must content myself with briefly stating the results. The section devoted by Sir Thomas Malory to the life and the adventures of Syr Trystram is by far the easiest portion of his work for critical examination; here more than anywhere else, save only in the "Quest of the Holy Grail," Malory abstains from "reducing." The result of my investigation is that the Trystram-section in Malory stands to the romance of "Tristan" in the same relation as Malory's Merlin-section does to the Huth MS.

¹ For an analysis of "Le Roman de Tristan," see (1) Bibliothèque Universelle des Romans, Paris, 8vo, vol. i., of April 1779, pp. 53-238; (2) Bibliothèque Universelle des Dames, 5^{ème} Classe, "Romans," vol. x., Paris 1787, 12mo.

Malory at once begins (book viii. chapter i.) with the marriage of King Meliadus and Elizabeth and the birth of Trystram; in the romance this only takes place on fol. 20 recto of the edition of 1520. The contents of the whole book viii. fill ff. 20-69 of part i. in this edition, while the contents of book ix. correspond to ff. 69-154 of part i. and ff. 1-19 of part ii.

Malory's tenth book consists of three sections: (1) Chapters i.-xxxi., relating what forms the subject of part ii. ff. 19-61 of the "Tristan;" (2) Chapters xxxii.-l., not to be found in the "Tristan," but relating adventures told in the "Prophecies de Merlin" by "rychart dyrlande;" and (3) Chapters li.-lxxvi., corresponding to part ii. ff. 62-91 of the "Tristan."

Besides these three books, the last three chapters of Malory's book xii. relate to Trystram, and contain similar incidents to those related in the so-called enlarged "Tristan" on the two folios preceding the beginning of the "Quest of the Holy Grail."

Further, Malory alludes twice to Trystram's death—viz.,

1. Page 768, 30, "for and syr Tristram de lyones / outhur syr lamorak de galys had ben alyue," &c.

2. Page 807, 12-19, "That is hard to doo sayd sir launcelot / for by sir Tristram I maye haue a warnynge / for whanne by meanes of treatyce syr Tristram brought ageyne la Beale Isoud vnto kynge Mark from Ioyous gard loke what befelle on the ende / how shamefully that fals traitour kyng marke slewe hym / as he sat harpyng afore his lady la beale Isoud / With a groundyn glayue he threst hym in beynde to the herte."

The death¹ of Trystram is differently told in the printed editions and in the MSS. In the former the account runs thus:—Trystram assists his brother-in-law, Ruvalen, son of the King of Brittany and brother to "Iseult aux blanches mains," in penetrating into a castle where Bedalis, jealous of his wife Gargeolain (a friend of Ruvalen), keeps her in close custody. They succeed in entering, but on their leaving the castle are noticed and followed by Bedalis. Ruvalen is killed, and Trystram seriously wounded with a poisoned lance. The physicians all declare the wound incurable. Trystram, seeing death nigh, remembers that Iseult of Cornwall inherited from her mother a means of healing wounds, by which he had already once been cured after his fight with Le Morhoulte. He sends one of his faithful knights to Cornwall, requesting Iseult to come. On his return the

Compare Romania, xv. pp. 481-510, "La Mort de Tristan et d'Iseult, d'après le Manuscrit Fr. 103 de la Bibliothèque Nationale comparée au poème allemand d'Eilhardt D'Oberg," par M. J. Bédier.

knight is told, in case he brings Iseult with him, to hoist a white sail as soon as he nears the coast of Brittany; if not, a black one. Iseult of Cornwall, in her infinite love for Trystram, succeeds in escaping from Mark. As they near land the knight hoists the white sail, but "Iseult aux blanches mains," when Trystram asks what sail she sees, tells him a black one, hearing which he expires. When Iseult of Cornwall arrives, she finds only the dead body of her love, and she, too, dies for grief upon it.

In the MSS. the account, in accord with the passage in Malory, is as follows:—

One day, as Trystram plays the harp before Iseult, Mark, informed by a spy, secretly approaches and stabs Trystram from behind with a poisoned lance. Trystram, mortally wounded, goes to the castle of the seneschal Dynas. Iseult joins him there, and requests him to take her with him in death. Delighted with this proof of lasting and faithful love, Trystram casts his arms around her, and so close is his embrace that he dies, and with him his love, fair Iseult.¹

If we consider the allusion to Trystram's death in Malory, and the intercalation of chapters xxxi.-l. into the tenth book; if we further examine the additional three chapters of matter relating to Trystram in book xii. (whilst all the rest of books xi. and xii. treats of Lancelot), and have clearly present before us Malory's usual mode of dealing with his sources, and his capacities as an author, we cannot for one moment attribute the whole of the arrangement of books viii.-xii. to him. In explanation of these facts I submit the following theory, which strikes me as highly plausible:—

Malory possessed a MS. which contained:

1. The contents of part i. of the Vulgate "Tristan," as reproduced by him in books viii. and ix.

2. The contents of part ii. of the Vulgate up to the point where, as I have shown (*supra*, p. 283), the quest of the Holy Grail is *mentioned*—identical with part i. of the enlarged "Tristan" up to the point where the quest of the Holy Grail *begins* (see *supra*, p. 285), save, of course, those variants of style and slight and insignificant modifications noticeable between all the existing MSS. of the "Tristan"—but this section was already enlarged by (i.) the *intercalation* (at the point determined by Malory, book x. chapter xxxi.) of the adventures of Alysaunder le orphelyn and the great tournament of Galahalt of Surluse as found attached to the "Prophecies of Merlin," said to be translated from the Latin by Richard of Ire-

¹ Only MS. No. 103 of the Bibliothèque Nationale, which agrees closely with the printed text of the "Tristan," has not got this version of Trystram's death.

land;¹ (ii.) to which were *added* the incidents relative to Lancelot derived from a lost "Suite de Lancelot."

The MS. Add. 5474 was thus evidently of an earlier date than the MS. Malory used, as is shown by the repetition of the two folios before and after the eighteen folios relating to Lancelot, and by the absence of the adventures of Alysaunder le orphelyn and the tournament of Galahalt of Surluse.

This hypothetical MS. which Malory used would therefore consist of three parts (or books), which are clearly indicated. At the end of book vii. (p. 272) Malory says:

"Here foloweth the viij book the which is the *first* book of sir Tristram de Lyones / & who was his fader & his moder / & hou he borne and fosteryd / And how he was made knyghte /"

The first part of the MS. would therefore contain part i. of the Vulgate "Tristan," corresponding to Malory's books viii. and ix.

At the beginning of book x. (p. 412) Malory says:

"Here begynneth the second book of sire Tristram / How syre Tristram smote doune kyng Arthur & sir Vwayne / by cause he wold not telle hem wherfor that shelde was made / But to say the sothe sire Tristram coude not telle the cause / for he knewe it not."

The second part of the MS. would thus contain the whole of Malory's book x. and also books xi. and xii.

The third part of Malory's MS. would contain part ii. of the enlarged "Tristan," from the beginning of the quest of the Holy Grail to the end; Malory, reverting for his account of the "Queste" to the Vulgate-version, refers to the third part of his Tristan MS. at the end of chapter xii. (p. 611) by the lines:

"Here endeth the second book of syr Tristram that was drawn oute of Frensshe into Englysshe But here is no rehersal of the *thyrd* book / And here foloweth the noble tale of the Sancgreal that called is the hooly vessel and the sygnefycacyon of the blessid blood of our lord Ihesu Cryste / blessid mote it be / the whiche was brought in to this land by Ioseph of Armathye / therfor on al synful souls blessid lord haue thou mercy."

These results suggest reflections of a more general character. It was a pronounced tendency of the romance-writers of the later thirteenth century to unite the three principal branches of Arthurian romance, the "Merlin," "Tristan," and "Lancelot," to the "Queste del Saint Graal," a tendency displayed in the "Suite de Merlin" as represented by the

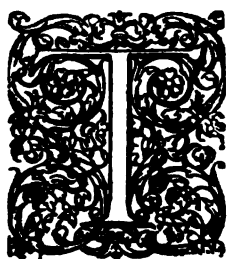
¹ See, for the "Prophecies of Merlin," *infra*, pp. 291-292.

Huth MS., in the hypothetical MS. Malory used for his Tristan-section, and in the Vulgate-Lancelot.

Bearing in mind the threefold division mentioned in the "Suite de Merlin" by the pseudo Robert de Boron, and his reference to Hélié de Boron, and comparing them with the threefold division of Malory's source for the "Tristan" and the fictitious Hélié de Boron's reference to Robert de Boron (quoted *supra*, p. 277), is it not likely that either the writer of the one took the other for model, or that both may be traced to one and the same man? An examination of the indications contained in the Huth "Merlin" as to the "Quest of the Holy Grail," said to form the second part, in comparison with the "Queste" attached to the enlarged "Tristan," will probably throw some light on this interesting point.

IV. THE "PROPHECIES OF MERLIN."

BOOK X. CHAPTERS XXXI.-L.



THE adventures of Alysaunder le Orphelyn, and the great tournament of Galahalt of Surluse, which are intercalated into the "Tristan" and occupy chapters xxxi.-l. of book x. of Malory's "Le Morte Darthur," are preserved in two MSS. of the British Museum—viz., Add. 25434¹ and Harl. 1629.² Both relate the "Prophecies of Merlin" as translated by "mestre richart dyrlande" from the Latin at the command of the Emperor Frederick II. The Prophecies are entirely independent from the ones attached to Geoffrey of Monmouth's "Historia;" they relate to Italy, France, Germany, and very few indeed to Great Britain. A considerable part of the Prophecies is devoted to knightly adventures. Of the two MSS., which are both greatly deficient, Additional is the more complete. The Prophecies, which occupy about two-thirds of this MS., but which are for the greater part missing in Harl., do not here interest us. Fol. 70 verso, line 13 from the bottom, of Add. answers to Harl. fol. 14, line 3 from the top. For about 24 folios the two MSS. agree almost word for word, but the division of the

¹ H. L. D. Ward's "Catalogue of the Romances in the MSS. of the British Museum." Add. 25434. Vellum; end of the thirteenth century; small folio; 184 ff., double columns of 40 lines each. (Flemish Hand.) Coloured initials, of which a few are illuminated; a miniature on the first page.

² *Ibid.* Harl. 1629. Vellum; end of the thirteenth century; quarto; 70 ff., double columns, 40 lines each. Coloured initial; two miniatures on ff. 29 verso and 70; a third has been cut out of fol. 47 verso. On pages where miniatures occur the border is illuminated.

"This MS. has been long misarranged, as is evident by the discoloration of fol. 1, and by the ink-marks on fol. 32 b, left by the inscription of an owner (at the end of the sixteenth century) on the next folio. This inscription is: 'frowlke ap dauid lloyd est possessor.'"

chapters, as well as the orthography, handwriting, and headings, are different. Generally, two or even three chapters of Add. make one in Harl. After fol. 94 verso a gap occurs in Add.; this passage corresponds to Harl. fol. 63 verso, col. ii., line 20 from the bottom. From here to fol. 64 verso Harl. enables us to fill up the gap in Add., but then it also breaks off, leaving us in the middle of the adventure of Palomydes and Corsabryn. Later on, folios 69 and 70 of Harl., relating the adventures of Palomydes and his brother Saphar, and an adventure of Dinadan before the tombs of the cheating merchants and the corrupt judge, correspond again to Add. fol. 107, col. 2, line 8 from the top to fol. 109, col. 2, line 20 from the bottom. Of MS. Add. 25434 the following folios treat of Alysaunder:—75 verso, 76, 77; 137 verso, 138, 139; 143, 144, 145, 146 recto, col. i.; 166, 167; 182; 184. The last leaves are inserted in the wrong order, they ought to be thus arranged:—183 must follow after 181; then there is one leaf missing, after that have to come 182, 184; here the MS. breaks off, and several leaves are missing. The tournament of Galahalt of Surluse is described in folios 77 verso, 78–88; 91 recto, 92, 93, 94.

The "Prophecies" are reproduced to a great extent, though in great disorder, in the third part of the printed editions of the "Merlin," but not the knightly adventures. As there will perhaps never occur a better opportunity of making these accessible to all scholars, I resolved to edit them as an Appendix to the present volume.¹ I have in this edition not observed the sequence of chapters as found in the MSS., but arranged the chapters so that their contents follow one another; I have always stated the folios on which they occur in the MS.

As far as the text is concerned, it is an absolutely faithful reproduction of MS. Add. 25434, a specimen and some missing parts being supplied from Harl. MS. 1629, without any alterations, emendations, or conjectural readings. Parts of words or letters printed in italics are not to be found in the original, but represent the expanded abbreviations in the MSS.

Malory's account of the adventures of Alysaunder and the great tournament stands to that of the MSS. in the same relation as his Merlin-section to the Huth MS.—*i.e.*, both vary in details but agree as to the adventures. As the chapters relating the tournament of Galahalt of Surluse are imperfect in either MS., Malory is for this portion the only existing authority.

¹ I have not found these adventures in any other MS.; therefore I have said on the title of the Appendix, "from the only known MSS." There may very well exist somewhere another MS., and I hope it will be found some day.

CONCLUSION.



T the close of four years' arduous labour upon Sir Thomas Malory's "Le Morte Darthur," it is natural to ask what results have been achieved.

For the first time a reliable text of this great English classic, which has exercised such a wide and lasting influence upon the later development of English speech and poesy, has been made generally accessible to students of philology and literature, whilst its study has been greatly facilitated by the Glossary, the List of Names and Places, and the critical apparatus provided in the Introduction forming vol. ii.

As regards the present volume, I have already briefly indicated in the Preface the outcome of my investigations, but I may fittingly here recapitulate and extend what I there stated.

In the twelfth volume of *Romania*, M. Gaston Paris speaks of Malory's work as "a well-known compilation hitherto too little utilised for critical studies." I think I may fairly claim that it has now been utilised, and that, altogether apart from its interest as prose literature, it has been shown to occupy a most important place in the criticism of the Arthurian cycle.

The researches of M. Gaston Paris, of Professor W. Foerster, of Professor H. Zimmer, and of Professor Rhys have drawn the attention of the learned world afresh to the Arthurian legend and to the innumerable difficulties which it presents to the investigator. I claim that henceforward no researches can be regarded as exhaustive which disregard Malory's compilation, and, further, that his work is by far the best guide to the Arthurian romances in their entirety.

It may, I trust, be considered as finally settled that for several portions of the cycle Malory is our only authority. These are:

1. The last part of book iv.
2. The whole of book vii.
3. The lost "Suite de Lancelot."
4. The lost "Tristan" trilogy.

On the other hand, my examination of such portions of Malory as are common to him and to his sources will, I trust, enable students to discriminate what in him belongs to the older stratum of the Romance-cycle and what are his own additions and modifications. It need hardly be pointed out how important this is in the case of investiga-

tions which deal with early Celtic heroic and mythic legend. Conclusions might otherwise be based upon what is simply a fact of Malory's own invention.

The most important critical result is, I need hardly say, the reconstruction of the "Suite de Lancelot." Although I have provisionally treated this as a modification and a development of the Vulgate-Lancelot, it is quite possible that it may contain older as well as younger elements. I would also direct the attention of future investigators to the Tristan form of the "Quest of the Holy Grail."

As regards the special features of Malory's compilation, I trust I have succeeded in clearly exhibiting his merits and demerits as a writer. I have shown that he sometimes added small episodes of his own composition, though, as a rule, he contented himself with welding into one the diverse materials that were at his disposal, and that not infrequently he literally translated entire passages from his French, or made large transcripts from his English, sources.

We owe the worthy knight a deep debt of gratitude both for preserving the mediæval romances in a form which enabled them to remain an integral portion of English literature, and for rescuing from oblivion certain French versions of great value to the critical student. But truth demands that we should not rate him too highly. To put it mildly, his work is very unequal—sometimes he excels, but often he falls beneath, oftener still, he servilely reproduces his originals. Nor can his selection of material be unreservedly praised. Difficulties in procuring certain MSS. may possibly have occurred of which we have nowadays no idea; yet, giving him the full benefit of this supposition, we must still say that he left out many of the most touching and admirable portions of the French romances, and that he has incorporated others of inferior quality. The most marked and distressing instance is his preference of the trivial and distasteful version of the Merlin and Nivene episode as found in the "Suite de Merlin" to the exquisite version of the Vulgate-Merlin, which, in its mingling of wild romance and delicate sentiment, is perhaps the most beautiful and characteristic story of mediæval literature. Be this as it may, Malory must always be counted as an English classic. I shall be satisfied if what I have done be considered not unworthy his merits and his position in English literature.

APPENDIX.

THE

ADVENTURES OF ALYSAUNDER LE ORPHELYN

AND

THE GREAT TOURNAMENT OF GALAHALT OF SURLUSE.

**FOR THE FIRST TIME EDITED FROM THE ONLY KNOWN MSS. ADD. 25434
AND HARL. 1629 IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM.**

ADVENTURES OF ALYSAUNDER LE ORPHELYN.¹

[Folio 75 verso col. i.]

EN ceste partie dit li contes
 que voirs fu que li rois
 marc de cornouaille ocist vn
 sien frere. & sa serourge
 5 quant ele fot la mort de son mari
 sen foi atout vn sien filz quele auoit
 de lui. que mout doutoit que le des-
 loial son serourge ne le meist amort.
 Et sachiez que en celui iour meismes
 10 quele sen foi atout lenfant len uoia li
 rois marc querre. Et quant il vit quil
 auoit failli a lui tenir. si en fu mout
 courrouciez. La dame sen foi atout
 lenfant iusques au chastel que len ape-
 15 loit magance & cestoit li chastiauf de
 son pere. Et quant li chastelains laut
 venir il li saut alencontre & dist.
 Dame bien veignast Sire fet ele ie
 fui ainsi venue coume cele qui son
 20 mari a lessie mort. A non dieu fet
 celui coument est ce. Sire fet ele li
 traitres renoiez le roi marc la ocis de
 sa main meismes. Et se menfui afoie
 que iai pour de cestui petit enfant
 25 que uous veez que li traitres felon ne
 locest ausi con il a fet son pere.

Dame fet li chastelains cestui chastel
 nest pas miens. [col. ii.] ainz est vostre
 que ainsi le comanda vostre pere quant
 il mourut. & ie fui voz prochains
 parens de par vostre pere & ma fame
 5 est vostre cousinne germainne. assez
 sommes riches que dor que dargent
 que uignobles que de chans que de
 beles rentes. Assez seroiz ici a aisee
 & vo petit enfant en sera bel & riche-
 10 ment nourriz & se dieus & auenture
 doune quil uiegne en aage. assez le
 pourrai adouber cheualier que ie fui
 auques gentil hom & quans de parage
 & se il voudra vengier la mort de son
 15 pere. Je voeil bien que vous sachiez
 que il aura assez que despandre. &
 aura en faide trestout le pooir de
 magance. Sire fet la dame se ie me
 met dedenz celui chastel aurai ie
 20 garde du roi marc. Dame fet li
 chastelains nanil. Et si vos di cer-
 tainnement que se trestout li mondes
 paiens & cretiens venissent ci aost
 banie ie ne douteroie leur efforz que
 25 cest chastel est si fort & si deffen-
 sable que il ne doute nule riens
 nestourmie ne nul asaut ne nul siege.

¹ Some portion of these adventures is also contained in Harl. MS. 1629, of which I give here a specimen :—[Fol. 45 verso, col. i., line 22].—En ceste partie dist li contes que uoirs fu que li rois marc de cornouaille ocist vn sien frere. Et sa serourge quant ele fot la mort de son marie sen fui atout . j. sien fil que ele auoit de lui. car mout doutoit que li desloiauf ses serourges ne le mesist amort. Et sachiez que en celui ior meisme ke ele senfui atout lenfant lenuoia li rois marc querre. & quant il uit que il auoit a li fait si ensu mout courrouciez. La dame sen fui a tout lenfant iusques a vn castiel que on apeloit magance. & cou estoit li castiauf de son pere. Et quant li castelains leuit uenir il li failli a lencontre & li dist dame bien veignant. Sire fait ele iou fui ensi venue comme cele ki son mari alaiffiet mort. Dame fait il comment est cou. Sire fait ele li traitres renoiez li rois marc la ocesi de sa main meisme. & iou men fui asuie car iou ai paor de cestui petit enfant que vous veez. que li felon traitres uel ocest ausi com il a fait son pere. Dame fait li castelains cestui castiauf nest pas mien. ainz est vostre car ensi le me commanda vostre pere quant il morut.

A dont fet la dame fere ie mout bien
affectee atout mon orfelin & aaisiee-
ment le porrai nourrir ci dedenz.

5 **Q**UE vous diroie ie. Lors se mist la
dame dedenz le chastel & sen
uet chief le chastelain & trouua sa
cousinne qui liee fu & dolente de sa
venue. [*fol. 76 col. i.*] Liee de ce
10 lors que la uoit & dolente de famef-
chance & mainte lerne gietent des
eulz & lune et lautre ala sembler &
sentretienent souuent & menu be-
fant. Li chastelains de lautre part
15 en fet assembler tout le peuple de
magance & quant il furent assemblez
il dist apotez moi les sainz & ie iurrai
deuant touz que des or en auant
tendrai magance pour anglediz. La
20 fille du roi ramier de miranceis. Et
lors quant il a iure le seirement il cou-
mande atout le pueple que il en facent
autretant se lonc ce que il tenoient de
magance. Et lors iura vns deuls de
25 leur lame des autres ainsi con li quars
en deuise. Que vous diroie ie mout
bien fu nourriz li petiz orfelins en
magance. & mout embeli & crut. Et
fachiez que dusqua tant que il fu en
aage de receuoir lordre de cheualerie.
30 il ne fot riens de la mort son pere.
que sa mere lauoit bien deffendu atouz
ceus de magance. que en nule maniere
ne li fust descouuert. Quant li petiz
enfes fu en aage de receuoir lordre de
35 cheualerie. Li chastelains em parla
a anglediz & dist. dame fachiez cer-
tainnement que alixandre li petiz
orfelins ne puet faillir a estre preud-
oume. Lordre de cheualerie fera
40 mout bien emploiee en lui. se vous
[*col. ii.*] voulez ie le ferai cheualier
ala feste nostre dame de marz. Et
lors coumenca la dame aplorer & dist.
Or voeil ie la guerre en coumencier
45 en contre li felons rois. Dont ie pri
a cele beneuree dame sainte marie
que mon petiz orfelin venge la mort
de son pere qui fut vns des meilleurs
cheualiers du monde. Je lo fet la
50 dame que il soit cheualier ainsi con
vous lauez deuise. mout fu liez li

chastelains de ce que la dame en loa.
de la cheualerie dalixandre li orfelins.
vn iour auint que il le prist par la
main & dist alixandre biaux sire vous
feroiz cheualier a la feste nostre dame 5
sainte marie. Et lors li giete alix-
andre les braz au col. & le bese &
puis li dist. Sire en ma cheualerie
me uirt en ceste nuit vn homme en
mondormant qui disoit que il auoit 10
este.¹ & encore disoit vne autre parole
qui nest pas mestiers que ie le die.
biax alixandres fet li chastelains songes
est noianz a ce ne baez vous ia. &
alixandre respont & dist. Sire vous 15
dites voir. Et nepourquant ia mes
ne loublieraie ie. Et lors le mist le
mist li chastelains en autre parole. &
dist que il en soit du tot seurs. que il
fera mout richement fet cheualiers. & 20
alixandre la cole & beise plus de . x .
foiz. & dit sire granz merciz. [*fol. 76,
verso col. i.*] Que vous diroie ie grant
ioie & grant feste fist alixandre de
lordre de cheualerie que il deuoit 25
receuoir. Li chastelains se painne &
trauaille de trouuer li riches robes &
beles armes pour lui adouber. Et
mout les trouua beles & riches & ple-
sanz qui pour lui que pour . xx . che- 30
ualiers que il baot adouber pour
amour de lui. Et quant la vegile de
la feste nostre dame fut venue. alix-
andre veilla en liglyse de nostre dame.
& avec lui les . xx . variez qui lordre 35
de cheualerie deuoient receuoir. Et
quant li iourz fu venuz & clerf &
biauf. La mere alixandre sen uet par
deuant la quintainne. Et lors la cou-
menca aregarder. & puis traist de 40
souz son mantel la cote & la chemise
ou son mari estoit ocis qui toutes
estoient en core en sanglantees & lors
les geta de leur quintainne. Quest
ce sont les autres dames. & cele cou- 45
mence apleurer. & dist. veez dames
la cote & la chemise ou li rois alix-
andres fu ocis de la main meismes de
son frere. Li Rois marc de cornoaille.
Et lors tert ses eulz & sen entra en 50
liglyse ou li euesques de miranceis
chantoit la messe.

¹ Harl. reads here "este mort."

QUE vous diroie ie les armes furent
 beneoites & feignies. Et lors
 uist auant berangiers li chastelains &
 donna lordre de cheualerie a lorfelin
 5 alixandre & puis [col. ii.] aus autres.
 Et lors quant il orent iure le seirement
 & berengiers leur ot les espees ceintes
 & donnees les coles. Les nouuiaux
 cheualiers qui leur cheauf estoient
 10 apareilliez deuant liglyse. montent &
 sen vont & coumencent abohourder
 tres deuant les dames & puis sen vont
 a la quintainne. Et quant Alixandre
 li orfelins ot feru en la quintainne.
 15 Il faresta & fist signe aus autres que il
 ne ferissent plus en la quintainne. &
 quant son escuier fu deuant lui venuz.
 il li dist. va ten hastiement au chas-
 telain & li di de par moi que il sen
 20 viengne ceste part sanz nul delaie-
 ment. Li escuier sen ala a esperon.
 & la ou il trouua berengiers si li dit
 tout ce que alixandre li mande. Et
 lors sen uet berengiers & avec lui
 25 toute la cheualerie de magance. Et
 quant alixandre li orfelins vit beren-
 giers. si li dist. Sire cest li songes
 que ie soniai & la parole que mon
 pere me dist. & que il me mousterroit
 30 la cote & la chemise ou il fu ocis.
 Mout sen merueillierent chascun de
 cele auenture. & mout en fu tenu
 grant parlement. Mout pleura alix-
 andre li orfelins la mort de son pere.
 35 mes apres disner fist il assembler son
 conseil. Et leur demande que il li
 dient coument il pourra vengier la
 mort de son pere. Et il li loent
 trestuit que il pour- [fol. 77 col. i.]
 40 chace lamour de tristan. ainz que il
 en coumence la guerre en contre le
 selon Roy marc. & se il ne puet auoir
 lamour de tristan que il pourchace la
 mour de lancelet du lac. & se il na
 45 en contre lui ne lancelet ne tristan.
 delegier pourra vengier la mort de
 son pere. se il a en lui aucune
 proece. Einsi con vous le me con-
 seilliez voeil ie que il soit fet ce dit
 50 alixandre li orfelins. se nous nen
 trouuons meilleur conseil. Atant fina
 leur conseil & porchacierent coument
 il pourroient trouuer la mour de tris-
 tan. mes a celui conseil fu vns traitres

qui maintenant sen ala en cornoaille.
 Et quant il vit le Roy marc. Si le
 prist par la main & li dist. Sire ie
 voeil parler a vous priueement. Et
 quant li selon Roy oi ce. Il sen ala
 5 atout lui en vne chambre qui mout
 estoit & coie & serie. Quant les. ij.
 traiteurs pleins de felonnie furent
 en la chambre li traitre de magance
 parole & dist vn cheualier sui de
 10 magance nez. Sachiez certainement
 que li chastelains de magance deffendi
 a touz ceus qui alui apartenoient que
 pour nule besoingne du monde nus
 de ceus de magance olast venir ceste
 15 part. Or en sui ie venuz pour vostre
 besoingne. & si vous dirai pour coi.
 [col. ii.]

VOIRS fu que anglediz vostre
 serourge sen uist cele part. &
 20 mena avec lui vn petit enfant que len
 apele alixandre lorfelin. Sachiez cer-
 tainement que il fu norriz mout a
 aise. or est il cheualier adoubez. &
 ala feste de sa cheualerie trouua de
 25 seur la quintainne la cote & la chemise
 qui fu de son pere toute en sanglantee.
 Et sachiez que iusques a celui point
 ne sauoit il nule riens de la mort son
 pere. fors tant seulement que il dist
 30 que il auoit songie ce que il veoit. Et
 lors li fu conte & dit que vous locestes.
 & il demanda conseil de prendre
 veniance de vos dont il li fu loez que
 il pourchacast lamour de tristan. Et
 35 se il ne la puet auoir que il pourchace
 lamour de lancelet du lac. Ainz que
 il coumenca la guerre en contre
 vous. Sire ici sui venuz pour conter
 vous ceste chose. ie ne fai ce quil men
 40 auendra pour le conter. mes de ce
 que ie sui venuz ceste part. en sui
 ie en auenture de mon heritage.
 Quant li Rois marc oi ce. il fu si
 durement esbahiz que apainne li puet
 45 il respondre. Et nepourquant achief
 de piece il parole & dist. dant cheualier
 vous mauvez garni de tel chose dont
 ie ne cuidois auoir garde en nule
 ma- [fol. 77 verso, col. i.] niere. Et
 50 se vous auez perdu vostre heritage ie
 vous en donrai adoules & lors li prie

que il ne se parte de cornoaille sanz son congie. & il dit que non fera il deuoir le sache. Lors sen retourna li roif marc entre ses barons. & mande
 5 pour vn cheualier que triftans amoit autretant coume il sefoit dinas. & quant il i fu venuz. li Rois li dist fadoc. Je fai apertement que tu me trichas de la mort de anglediz & de
 10 son filz. que tu deis que tu les auoies en .ij. ocis & ie sai apertement que alixandre fu adoubez cheualiers a la feste nostre dame. Et lors tret sespee & le vouloit ferir par mila teste. mes
 15 fadoc se hurta en lui si durement que il la bati aterre tout en vers. & puis sescrie. A celui cri vint triftans. & dinas & ferguz. Si en fu en coumenciee vne meslee mes la Reyne
 20 yseult les de parti. dont triftans en mena fadoc. iusques a son ostel. & lors li conta fadoc la venture. Que vous diroie ie cele nuit meismes en voia mon seigneur triftan. ferguz en
 25 magance. & manda a son cousin que il sen alast el reaume de logres pour esprouuer sa cheualerie. Et la ou il trouast lancelot du lac si setiengne pour son cheualier iusqua tant que il sen
 30 vendra ceste part. Lors sen ala ferguz en magance et fourni bien son mesage. Et quant alixandre oi celui man- [col. ii.] dement. Il se parti de mangance. Et sen ala el reaume de
 35 logres au congie de samere & de ses amis. Mes atant lessie li contes a parler dalixandre & du Roi marc & vous conterai du tournoiement du haut prince Galeholt & de ses amis.

[Folio 137 verso col. i.]

40 **O**R dit li contes & la uraie estoire le tesmoingne que alixandre li orfelins passa la mer & fu venuz el
 reaume auentureus. il estoit mout
 45 bien montez & [col. ii.] semist en vn chemin qui conduisoit au chastel breuz. El cheuauche tout celui iour sanz
 auenture trouuer qui a conter face. Mes .i. pou deuant vespres auint que
 50 il en contra breuz sanz pitie. El lors

regarde breuz & voit quil estoit armez a la maniere de cornoaille. dont il ne le doute de riens. Ainz li fu auis que il vengeroit sa honte de seur lui. Et se aucuns venist auant qui me deman- 5
 dast de quel honte breuz se vouloit vengier. Je leur respondroie que ce fu la honte que triftans li fist acelui temf
 que il se combati a blonor de Gaunes. Lors escrie breuz & dist danz cheua- 10
 lierf de cornoaille gardez vous de moi. Quant li orfelins alixandre oi ce il fa pareille de la iouste au plus bel que il fauoit. Et lors li lessie courre breuz
 au ferir des esperons son glaiue mis 15
 de seur le sautre. Et alixandre li orfelins ne le refusa de riens. ainz sadresce en contre lui. Mes tieuf fu lauenture de la premiere iouste que li
 orfelins fist que il feri breuz de seur 20
 son escu & le pourfent & li hauberz li deront & descloet & lempaint coume celui qui assez auoit force en lui. Si le rue du cheual aterre mout naurez.
 Et se il ne sen fust pris garde aucheoir 25
 que il fist li fers du glaiue atout le fust [fol. 138 col. i.] eust passe par mi le cors de breuz que il emporta le troncon au parcheoir que il fist. Mes
 il le lance ala trauerse & feri des 30
 mains premierement a la terre. Et li orfelins alixandre passe outre que breuz auoit brisie son glaiue de seur
 lui. Et quant il ot parfourni son poindre il retourne de seur breuz 35
 tout acheual & dist. Danz cheualierf voulez vof la meslee des espees & breuz respondi & dist. Danz cheualierf or est ma honte doublee. pour coi le
 dites vous danz cheualiers fet alix- 40
 andre pour ce que vos estes de cornoaille si mestuet aler vn an sanz armes selonc la coustume de cestui pais.
 Anon dieu fet alixandre cest mauueise coustume a ceus de cornoaille. Et 45
 lors pense alixandre vn petit & a ce facorde que se il dit que il nest de cornoaille sa renoumee ne sera portee
 dun leu en autre. Mes se lencuide que il soit de cornoaille & la coustume 50
 est tele con li cheualiers dit & auenture li doune a outrer les cheualierf mout loing sen ira sa renoumee. Et
 lors hurte son cheual des esperons. &

tint celui chemin a destre & auenture
le conduist a la ioieuse garde. Illec
descendi & fu mout bien herbergiez el
bourc [*col. ii.*].

5 **D**E lautre part breuz monta de
seur vne litiere que son escuier
fist & sen uont a son chastel. Mes-
pechiez fu que alixandre ne locist.
Lors fu breuz des armez & li miref isu
10 venuz & cercha sa plaie & dist que
mout bien le garira. Et quant il fu
gariz il maintint bien la coustume que
de tant con celui an dura il ne porta
armes. Dont ce fu granz profiz en
15 celui pais. Que vous diroie ie alen-
demain se leua alixandre lorfelin &
arma son cors de toutes ses armes &
monta en son cheval & coumande
son oste adieu & mout le mercia du
20 seruise que il li auoit fet & li ostes li
dist que dieus le conduie. Lors entre
el chemin qui conduisoit a la douler-
euse tour. Et cheuaucha tant sanz
auenture trouuer que il fu venuz au
25 pas. Et celui iour meismes auoit li
mires doune congie akarados que il
armaist son cors que il nauoit garde
que sa plaie est bien garie. Et il
estoit montez entrelui & .iiij. cheual-
30 iers & estoient venuz au pas pour
trouuer saphar que len li disoit que il
venoit souuent & menu cele part.
Quant karados vit venir alixandre li
orfelins bien li fu auis que ce fust
35 saphar qui ses armes eust changees
pour [*fol 138, verso col. i.*] deceuoir
ses cheualiers. Il auoit seiourne meint
iour & sentoist entre ses braz grant
force & grant vertu. Lors se mist
40 auant & dist a ses cheualiers & leur
prie du retenir saphar se auenture
nouf fust amere que an .ij. sentissons
la terre. Et lors besse son glaiue &
fiert son cheual des esperons. Et
45 quant alixandre le voit venir il ne le
refuse de riens. Il auoit le glaiue qui
fu breuz & lors li mist de seur le
fautre. Et sentresierent si durement
que voeille ou non karados estuet
50 voidier les arcons & cheoir atterre de
seur la croupe de son cheual. Il estoit
granz et corsuz amerueilles. Si fu

mout decassez de celui cheoir. Et
lors li escrieue sa plaie & la terre
cueure de sanc tout entour lui & il se
pafme. Et quant alixandre ot par-
fourni son poindre il retourne & en 5
fiert vn autre cheualier si durement
que il la bat ala terre atout son che-
ual. Et puis se lance ala autre cheualier
& li errache le glaiue que il tenoit.
Et sadresce vers saphar qui venoit cele 10
part au ferir des esperons. Que vous
diroie ie saphar qui uenoit cele part
ne sauoit que karados fust naurez ne
abatuz ne pafmez. Il ne sauoit ala
quel partie il se tenist. Mes lors quant 15
vient au parferir entre lui & alixandre
tiex fu lauenture que saphar brisa son
glaiue & alixandre le feri si durement
que [*col. ii.*] il la bat atterre par desuf la
croupe de son cheual. Et quant il les 20
atrestouz abatuz il se mist el sentier
dont il auoit veu que saphar venoit.
Delautrepart les .iiij. cheualiers prif-
trent karados & le mistrent de seur son
escu & le conduistrent ala doulereuse 25
tour dont il auoient assez du porter.
Et saphar monta de lautre part & suit
alixandre a esperon & la taint quant
il montoit de seur la chauceie. Et
lors li escrie & dist danz cheualiers il 30
vous estuet combattre amoi aus espees.
Non ferai sire celi respont li orfelins
que la coustume de no pais le deffent.
Et quant saphar oi ce il regarde aus
armes du cheualier & counut erran- 35
ment les armes de cornoaille. Se il
fu courrouciez a desmesure ce ne fet
mie ademander. Et lors oste son
hiaume de son chief & le giete ala
terre & son escu avec & oste son hau- 40
berc & toutes ses armes. Et quant il
fu em pur le cors il demande au
cheualier & dist. Dant cheualier de
cornoaille dites moi se dieus vous
saut coument le fet li bons tristans. 45
Sire fet alixandre vous demandez de
celui que ie ne vi onques mes. Cou-
ment pourroit ce estre fet saphar.
Jaest ainsi con ie le vous di fet alixan-
dre. Lors monta saphar & cheuauche 50
en la compaignie dalixandre iusques
au chastel. Et quant [*fol. 139 recto,*
col. i.] palamedes qui encore gesoit oi
la nouuele que son frere estoit abatuz

par vn cheualier de cornoaille il faut
 en estant & chauca ses chaues de fer.
 Et ~~en~~ dementres ~~que~~ il vouloit vestir
 son hauberc sa plaie li escreu a & il
 5 chei coume morz. Et lors vint de
 feur lui son escuier. Et quant il le
 vit tel atournez il fescrie a haute voiz.
 Et lorf cort cele part & vn & autre.
 Et ~~quant~~ il treuuent palamedes tel
 10 atournez il furent mout courrouciez.
 Et lors vint son mire & li demande
 pour coi il se vouloit ocirre. Et il
 respont que il se vouloit combatre a
 tristans ~~que~~ ot abatu son frere. Certes
 15 fet saphar il nest pas tristans ainz est
 vns cheualierf de nouuel adoubez qui
 onques mes ne feri cop despee.

EN dementres que li mires desloioit
 la plaie de palamedes auint que
 20 . i . varlet sen vint en m ila sale qui
 venoit de la doulereuse tour ou il
 auoit veu karados coume morz. Et
 que . iiij . cheualiers lauioient aporte
 en son escu tout senglant & il estoit
 25 amurz & sanz parler. Retourne
 ameres fet saphar & li di que il est
 abatuz par la main dun cheualier de
 cornoaille. Et fache certainement
 que il est de nouuel adoubez. Celui
 30 fenretourna ameres & fu venuz ala
 doulereuse tour. & la ou karados cui-
 doit que sa- [col. ii.] phar leust abatu
 & celui dist que vn cheualier de cor-
 noaille lauioit abatu qui de nouuel est
 35 adoubez & ausi li auoit dit de saphar
 qui ia estoit desgarniz de ses armes
 pour la coustume maintenir. ha ! fet
 karados houniz sui puis que iai failli a
 porter armes vn an entier. James
 40 ne ferai en sesinne du chastel clarin
 ne de lautre chastel ou sont les . iiij .
 freres qui toute honte me vont fesant.
 Lorf apele vn sien varlet & li dist va
 ten hastiement par touz mes amis &
 45 leur conte ceste nouuele. Et leur
 di que il viengnent ceste part pour
 ostoier. Or vous diroie ie celui var-
 let sen ala & leur conta la nouuele
 atouz les amis pe karados. De lautre
 50 part quant palamedes fu bendez &
 bien & bel il demande ou est li
 cheualiers de cornoaille. Et vn

cheualier respont & dist que il est en
 lostel dune veuee dame. Itant feites
 pour lamour de moi ce dit palamedes
 au cheualier que vous li feites vne
 priere de par moi que il me viengne
 5 veoir & se il ne me vient veoir dites
 lui que ie irai veoir lui & mi ferai
 porter en mon escu. Li cheualiers
 sen ala al ostel de dame regine &
 treue li cheualierf touz desarmez. Il
 10 le regarde & voit ~~que~~ il estoit vn des
 biaux cheualiers du monde & poig-
 noit ses [fol. 139 verso, col. i.] guer-
 nons. onques vn seul poil nauoit en-
 core de feur le guernon. Lors le
 15 salue li cheualierf & alixandre li rent
 son salu. Danz cheualiers fet le
 cheualier du chastel a vous menuoie
 vn cheualiers qui gist malades plaiez
 que vous le veigniez veoir. Et se
 20 vous ni voulez venir il se fera apporter
 encestui ostel en son escu. A non dieu
 fet alixandre celui outrage ne soufferrai
 ie ia. Ainz men irai auec vous
 iusques la ou il est. Et puis men
 25 retournerai arrieres en lostel a ceste
 dame que dieus li doist ioie que si bel
 me recut. An . ij . les cheualiers sen
 vont au palef. Mes ie voeil bien que
 vous fachiez que trestuit courent pour
 30 veoir sa biaute. Il estoit de mi pie
 plus lonc que nus des autres cheual-
 iers. Et auoit le vis couloure & les
 cheueus blois & estoit vn pou cras.
 Et quant il fu deuant le lit de pala-
 35 medes il le salue & li li rent son salu
 & se vouloit leuer en contre sa venue.
 Mes alixandre se mist erramment de
 feur le lit de palamedes pour ce que il
 ne se leuast. Danz cheualierf fet pala-
 40 medes maintes foiz ai ie este en cor-
 noaille onques ni vi si bele fourme
 doume coume vous auez. Coument
 le fet la Reyne yseult. Sire fet alix-
 andre len me vet contant [col. ii.]
 45 que mout bien le fet cele de qui vous
 me demandez. Mes onques ne la
 ui des mes eulz. Dieuf aide fet pala-
 medes nestes vous acointez de tristans
 de loenois. Nanil fire fet alixandre
 50 & ou auez vous donc reperie ce dit
 palamedes. Sire fet il ce ne vous
 dirai ie pas. Mout le regarde pala-
 medes & mout fu engrant de sauoir

qui il estoit. Mes alixandre ne li en descouuri nule riens. Mout prise fa biaute & mout le regarda. Et quant alixandre ot tenu parlement a palamedes vne grant piece il se lieue en estant. & coumande palamedes a dieu. Et il li eue bones auentures & mout li promist son seruise. Que vous diroie ie lors senretourna alixandre arrieres & sen ala alostel a la venuee dame ou li fu bien receuz. & la table estoit dreciee & li souperf appareilliez. Lors li fu leue donnee & il fist & ot a mengier viandes de diuerfes manieres. & la nuit fu couchiez mout aaise dont il dormi iusques alendemain. Et quant li iourz fu venuz & biauf & clerf estoit li tens. Alixandre arma son cors de toutes ses armes & monta en son cheual & coumande la dame adieu & ele li respont & dist que dieus le conduie. Mes atant lessa li contes [fol. 140 col. i.] a parler de ceste auenture & parole de perceual & des prophecies merlin & de lermite.

[Fol. 143 recto, col. i.]

CI en droit dit li contes que lors quant li rois marc de cornoail le fu certains que alixandre li petiz orselins sen estoit alez el reame de logres. Il fu tant dolenz & tant courrouciez con nul plus & dist a soi meismes que des ore mes faura trestouz li mondes apertement sa felonnie. Et lors quant les compaignons de la table roonde en orront parler ia ne se soufferront que il ne viengnent en cornoaille pour vengier la mort du pere alixandre. Mout pensa li felons & a ce sacorde que il en voiera apres ses [col. ii.] amis & le fera ocirre en traison ou par venin ou dune maniere ou dautre. Il apele le traitor de magance & li dist. Sire or iparra alixandre li orselins sen est alez ainsi con vous meismes le mauez conte. Cest voirs ce dit li traitres & que baez vous asere. Je le vous dirai ce dit li rois marc. Je voeil que vous meismes vous metez apres lui. Teissiez sire ce respont li

traitres que il me counoist apertement. Et de lautre part ie ne sui cheualier de preuee se ie venisse deuant son glaive il mocirroit ala premiere iouste. Mes ie vous en conseillearai en autre maniere. En voiez es fores de logres de voz amis & se herbergeront & ca & la. Et puis en voiez apres lui de voz amis & de voz damoisselles mesagieres que tant se trauaillent ca & la que les le truissent. Et lors quant aucunes des damoisselles laura trouuee si li criez merci quele le conduie en aucun leu. Et puis face tant que chief aucun de ceus que vous auroiez en voiez en la forest le conduie. Et il aient le venin asetiez si li doignent erramment & ainsi seroiez vous deliurez de lui. Certes fet li rois marc vous men auez si bien conseillee que ie nenquier meilleur conseil. Que vous diroie ie maintenant en voia li rois marc querre. xv. de ses [fol. 143 verso, col. i.] priez amis. Et quant il furent venuz si leur fist sauoir pour coi il le auoit mandez. Et quant il oirent ce il distrent que il estoient appareilliez pour aler la ou il coumanderoit & il mande les damoisselles venir deuant lui & leur dist que pour amour de lui les estuet traueillier par les fores de logres & ca & la & tant que alixandre soit trouuez. Et lors quant il sera trouuez tant facent que il soit conduiz par aucun enging chief aucun de ces hommes qui parmi les fores de logres seront herbergiez.

QUANT les damoisselles oirent ce eles dient queles ne counoissent le cheualier & que le travail queles feroient seroit painne gastee. Et lors parole li traitres de magance & dist. Damoisselles le cheualier que vous deuez querre est de petit aage. Et lors leur deuise sa facon & dist que encore nauoit il poil de seur le menton. Sire sont les damoisselles il ne remandra pour painne ne pour travail que il ne soit trouuez. Que vous diroie ie li rois marc pleins de felonnie auoit le venin mout bien appareillie. si le de parti aus hommes que il en veoit el reame de logres & mout les pria que

il acheuassent sa besoingne & que au
retourner que il seront tant leur donra
de son auoir que iames ne [col. ii.].
feront se riches non. Et autre tel dist
5 il aus damoisselles. & il li promistrent
que pour defaute deuls ne remaindra
que sabesoingne ne soit acheuee. Et
les damoisselles en distrent autretant.
Li rois marc fist apareillier .ij. nef pour
10 ce que nus ne sa perceust de sa selon-
nie que il vouloit feire. Et quant eles
furent apareilliees. Lors se mistrent
les hommes en vne des nes & les
damoisselles en lautre. Li tens estoit
15 bons & li venz bien portanz. Les
marinners drescent leur voiles au
vent. & se mistrent en haute mer.
Tant sen vont les nef par mi la mer
que les furent ariuees el reame de
20 logres & ce fu auques pres de loue-
zerp. Ilec sen issirent trestuit aseche
terre & seiournerent ilec .iiij. iourz.
Et puis se departent parmi ces forez
ainsi con li rois marc lauait coumande.
25 Les damoisselles furent .xliij. dont cha-
cun de ces hommes en ot .iiij. & puis
pristrent congie lun de lautre. Et
distrent que au chief de lan sa sem-
blent trestuit en celui leu meismes &
30 ausi facent les damoisselles & puis sen-
trecommandent a dieu. Or sen vont
chascun sa uoie & entrent en sentiers
qui conduisoient en diuerses forez lun
sen va en la forest perilleuse & tieuf
35 iot en la forest de kamaalot & tiex en
la forest [fol. 144 recto, col. i.] de po-
menglois & tieus en la forest de bro-
celyande & tieus iot en la forest de lon-
dres. Que vous diroie ie chascun entra
40 en la forest avec les .iiij. damoisselles.
Et sachiez certainement que se dame
dieus nen pense de lorfelin alixandre
il est morz que il ne ne puet tenir
nul sentier que il ne chiee es mains
45 des hommes ou des damoisselles qui sa
mort vont pourchacant. Chascun se
herberge en vne meson que assez en
trouuoit len a celui tens par mi les
forez ou em parfont ou delez le chemin
50 ou delez fontaines & en touz leus.

DE lautre part li felons Rois marc
en voia amorgain ses lettres &
ses prieres que se alixandre li orfelin

cheist en ses mains que le nen preist
en reancon la moitie du reame de
logres. Mes maintenant le feist ocirre.
Et autretel en voia il a breuz & au
Roy claudas de la ferte. Or pense 5
dieus de lorfelin alixandre. Mes atant
lesse li contes aparler de ceste auen-
ture que bien isaura retourner & vous
conterai de morgain la see. [col. ii.]

EN ceste partie dit li contes 10
que nouueles qui tost cou-
rent & par amont & par
aual vint vne damoisselle
au chastel morgain. Et sachiez cer-
tainnement que cele damoisselle estoit 15
mout acointe de morgain & fauoit
mout de son estre. Et lors quant ele
la vit entre les autres dames si la prist
par la main & la trest a vne part &
puis li dist. Dame merueilles vous 20
puis conter dun cheualier qui par mi le
chemin estroit sen vet. Et lors li conte
coument li cheualier auoit abatu
karados & ses cheualiers & coument
il auoit abatu saphar. Et coument 25
ele sen ala apres lui & le vit le visage
descouert & li conta la biaute qui
estoit en lui. Dame fet ele ie men
fui venue a vous que buer fussiez nee
se vous le tenissiez. Quant morgain 30
oi ce ele fu tant liee que nule plus
que puis que il sest mis el chemin
estroit il ne li puet eschaper ce li est
auis. Et lors mande ses cheualiers
que il viengnent deuant lui apareilliez 35
pour monter. Et quant les cheualiers
oient le mandement il sapareillent
au plus bel que [fol. 144 verso, col. i.]
il onques peuent. Et puis montent
& sen viennent deuant morgain apa- 40
reilliez de toutes armes. Et quant
morgain les vit venir ele sen vet
droitement la ou la Reyne de nor-
gales & sebile lenchanteresse la ten-
doient. Que vous diroie ie quant 45
eles virent morgain apareilliee pour
monter. eles parolent lune alaure &
dient pour noient auon nous ici de-
denz muse certes trichiees nous amor-
gain. En dementres queles disoient 50
ainsi auint que morgain dist. Dames
il mestuet aler en vn mien aseire
auques loing de ci. Je vous cou-

mant adieu. mon chastel & quan que
 iai est a vous. Alez dame font elef
 que dame diex vous conduie a sauete
 fetef nouf asauoir de vostre estre ou
 5 ci ou ailleurs que par aventure nouf
 seiournerons ici dedenz vn mois en-
 tier. Mout volentiers le ferai ce dit
 morgain. Et lors sentrebeifent an
 .ij. & la conuoient iusques au monter.
 10 En dementres que morgain vouloit
 monter auint que vn varlet se mist
 agenoulz deuant & puis li dist. Dame
 li roif marc de cornoaille vous salue &
 puis litent vnes lettres & morgain les
 15 prift & brife le feel & coumenca alire.
 Et treuve lettres qui disoient que le
 nouuel cheualier *[verso 144 col. ii.]* de
 cornoaille qui fest mis el reame de
 logres est son anemi mortel. Et se
 20 dieuf & aenture la portast entre ses
 mains que le nen praigne en reancon
 la moitie du tresor de logres. Et lors
 deuifent les lettres la facon de lorfelin
 alixandre & sa coulour et son vis
 25 ainfi con li traitres de magance lauoit
 deuife au selon roi marc.

QUANT morgain vit que ces lettres
 sa corderent au parler dela da-
 moifelle qui la nouuele du cheualier
 30 li auoit apportee ele la rapele & dist.
 ditef moi damoifelle en quex armes
 veistes vous le cheualier fet morgain.
 Dame fet ele il estoit armez a la
 maniere de cornoaille. Et quant
 35 morgain oi ce ele prift le varlet par
 la main & le trest a une part & puis
 li dist. Dimoi varlet se dieuf te faut
 ot li roif marc pourchaciee la mort
 dalixandre en autre maniere fors pour
 40 seulement en voier ses lettres asef amis
 oil dame fet li varlez. Et lors li conte
 toute la desloiaute que li rois marc
 en auoit fete. Et quant morgain oi
 ce ele dist varlet itant voeil ie que tu
 45 dief au roi marc que ie en ferai tout
 mon pooir. Et lors coumande mor-
 gain que toutes ses damoifelles mon-
 tent apres lui & que ia nules nen
 remaingne el chastel. Mout se mer-
 50 ueillent les da- *[fol. 145 recto, col. i.]*
 moifelles de ce que leur dames leur
 auoit coumande. Et nepourquant
 elef montent & sen vont apres morgain

qui ia sen aloit. Que vous diroie ie
 quant morgain ot tant cheuauchie
 quele perdi la venue de son chastel
 ele descent & apele ses damoifelles.
 Et quant elef furent en tour lui
 venues morgain parole & dist il vous
 5 estuet aler par mi ces forez & la ou
 vous trouueriez aucun cheualier si
 fetef tant se il puet estre que vous le
 conduisiez en aucun mien chastel. Et
 10 se vous trouuez que il soit de cor-
 noaille fetef le arester de denz & me
 venez querre. Et se vous trouuez
 que il sen alast en conduit daucunne
 damoifelle escriez li venin la tent se il
 15 ne sen prent garde. Et quant les
 damoifelles oient ce eles montent &
 dient dame ia por painne ne pour
 trauail ne remaindra que li cheualier
 ne soit trouez. Et lors les coumande
 20 morgain toutes adieu. Et se aucun
 venist auant qui me demandast com-
 bien de damoifelles il furent ie leur
 conterai queles furent .C. & .x. que
 25 toutes se mistrent par diuers chemins.
 Et morgain leur auoit coumande que
 cele queste soit maintenue iusqua .vij.
 mois. Quant morgain ot en voies
 ses damoifelles & ca & la ele monta
 entre lui *[col. ii.]* & sa mesniee &
 30 se mistrent el chemin estroit. Tant
 cheuauchierent entre morgain & sa
 compaignie que la nuit fu venue of-
 cure. Lors descent & se herberge en
 son paueillon. Et les tables furent
 35 mises si orent au souper des vian-
 des quele auoit coumande aporter
 apres lui selonc sa coustume. En
 dementres quele seoit au souper.
 Atant ez vous venir cele part .iiij.
 40 cheualiers les .ij. estoient des armez
 & li autre dui armez. Lors descen-
 dent deuant le paueillon. Et quant
 il mistrent leur chief dedenz le pa-
 ueillon il counurent morgain & ele
 45 euls. Lors fu la ioie mout grant
 entreuf apres ce que il se furent entre
 saluez. Morgain coumande que leue
 leur soit dounee apres ce que il se
 furent des armez. Et il fassient &
 50 menient auec morgain. Et se au-
 cuns venist auant qui me demandast
 qui furent les .iiij. cheualiers ie leur
 respondrai que les .ij. qui armez

estoit auoient a non li vns helyanz de gomoret & li autre qui son frere estoit auoit non raz de gomoret & estoient an . ij . prochains parenz du
 5 Roy artus. Lef autref . ij . estoient de tarmelyde & prochains parenz de la Reyne Guenieure. Mes il se tenoient an . ij . ala fausse Guenieure. Mes il se tenoient an . ij . ala fausse Guenieure.
 10 Li uns deuls auoit non [*fol. 145 verso, col. i.*] Gurz & lautre coranz cef . ij . estoient des armez & an . ij . estoient prochains parenz.

15 **Q**UE vous diroie ie lorf demande morgain & dist. Seigneurs quele auenture vous a conduit ceste part. Il distrent quil venoient dun tornoiement qui est feruz la auant auques bel tres
 20 deuant vn chafel. Et qui emporta lenneur ce dit morgain. Anon dieu fet guiz de tarmelyde qui que emporte loneur ie en ai honte & aurai iusqua tant que cestui an sera passez & coranz en aura autre tant. coument fu ce fet
 25 morgain. Dame fet guiz voirf fu que entre moi & coranz estions dune partie & si lauions si bien fet que tuit fuioient deuant nous. Et lors auint par auenture que vn cheualier se mist el renc.
 30 Et fu tel lauenture que il en abati de nostre partie . xl . cheualiers & abati coranz au cop de sespee. Quant ie vi ce si me mis en contre lui mespee enpoingniee & li dounai vn cop amont
 35 de seur le hiaume dont il ne ploia tant ne quant & ie li en dounai vn autre cop. & il passa outre & puis retourna arriere & me prist au hiaume & si me statist aterre. Et puis se mist en
 40 la presse & chaca trestouz ceuf de mapartie horf du champ. Dame quant il sen vouloit aler. Lors li fu au deuant la damoifelle du chafel [*col. ii.*]
 45 tel cele par qui li tournoiementz auoit feru & le fist descendre en son chafel. Et quant il fu des armez la damoifelle nous fist asauoir que il estoit vn cheualier de cornoaille. Dont vous sauez
 50 la coustume de logref & ce quele requiert de seur les corneualois. Dame bien furent . C . cheualiers dune partie qui tuit orent gete leur armes tref deuant le chafel en despit de cor-

noaille. Quant morgain oi ce ele fu tant liee & tant ioieuse con nule plus. Et lors demande & dist. Dites moi
 5 se diex vous faut ou est li cheualiers de cornoaille. Dame fet il la damoifelle du chafel le tient a seiour & si vous dirai pour coi. voirs fu que cele damoifelle est amarier. Et vn sien
 10 voisin ot mande & pref & loing defendant aus cheualiers que nus ne sen ofast entremetre se il ne se veult aincois combatre a lui. Or la la damoifelle trouue pseudoume si le metra en
 15 champ encontre celui sien voisin. Et se dieus li donne lenneur de cele bataille ele le prendra a mari ie le sai apertement. Quant morgain oi ce ele
 20 ele coumence a penser coument ele pourroit destourner celui mariage. A ce sacorde quele sira herbergier en celui chafel. Et quant ele ot fine celui pense ele parole & dit. Signor
 25 cheualier que baez vous asere. [*fol. 146 recto, col. i.*] Je be fet celui que len apeloit Guiz a aler iusques au chafel dune moie antain qui est en
 30 la terre forainne & serai tant ilec que litermes dun an soit passez. Et autretel en dist lautre qui des armez estoit que il sen iroit chief sa seureu en la forest
 35 perilleuse. Que vous diroie ie quant il orent mengie & beu tout par lesir il se lieuent des tables qui de seur lerbe estoient misef se lonc la coustume des
 40 pauillons. il se couchent trestuit en tentef & en pauillons & dormirent iusques au iour. Et a lendemain se lieuent & vn & autre. Lef . iiij . cheualiers
 45 sen vont leur voie & coumandent morgain adieu & ele leur eure bone auenture. Lors monte morgain entre lui & sa compaignie & cheuaucha
 50 tant que il virent celui chafel. Mes lanuit feurint si ne puet ataindre au chafel de iourz. Lorf se herberge en vne valee en son pauillon. A lendemain se leua & monta & cheuaucha
 iusques au chafel. Illec descendi morgain & se herberia dedenz. Mes atant leffe li contes aparler de ceste
 auenture & parole du haut prince Galeholt & de sa compaignie.

[Fol. 165 recto, col. ii.]

OR dit li comtes & la uraie
estoire le tesmoingne que
alendemain leua [verso,
col. i.] li orfelins alixandre
5 auques matin qui mout fu liez de ce
que li iourz estoit venuz que il sen cui-
doit partir dilec. Mes la damoiselle
fu venue deuant lui & li dist. Sire
cheualier vous auez assez gaignie si
10 bele damoiselle con ie sui & si biau
chastel & quan quil iapent & tant me
dites que baez vous asere il vous estuet
combatre a vn mien voisin se vous
voulez que cestui pais soit empes. Or
15 viengne fet li orfelins alixandre que ia
neli faudrai de la bataille. La nouuele
estoit ale amalagrin le felon que vn
cheualier de cornoaille auoit vaincu
le tournoient & sestoit herbergiez
20 avec la damoisele el chastel & il auoit
pris ses armes & monte en son cheual.
Endementres que li orfelins alixandre
& la damoiselle tenoient parlement.
Atant ez vous malagrin venir armez
25 de toutes armes. & montez de feur vn
cheual fort & isnel. Et quant la
damoiselle le voit venir si le moustre
a alixandre. Et quant ille voit il
arma son cors de toutes ses armes &
30 len li auoit apareillie son cheual & il
monta sus erramment & li fu en mi
le vis & dist. Danz cheualiers que
querez que demandez. Et lors respont
malagrin & dist. Danz cheualiers
35 auez vous espousee la damoiselle.
Nanil fet alixandre. mes vous- [col. ii.]
lez la vous espouser ce dit malagrin.
Je en ferai mon vouloir fet alixandre.
Cheualier de cornoaille ce dit mala-
40 grin trop estef orgueilleus & vous qui
nauiez point dorgueil fet alixandre que
alez demandant ainsi armez con vous
estes. puis que sauoir le voulez ce dit
malagrin gardez vous de moi que ie
45 vous deffi autretel vous di ie fet alix-
andre li orfelins. Que vous diroie ie
lors se part li vns de lautre & puis
sentreuiennent au ferir des esperons
leur glaiues mis de feur les fautes.
50 Et puis sentre fierent si durement que
li plus foibles chei ala terre par de
feur la croupe du cheval. Et li plus

puiffanz passa outre au ferir des espe-
rons. Et quant il ot parfourni son
poinde il descent & prist son escu
par les en armes & oste sespee du
fuerre & sapareille de la bataille. 5
Malagrin qui aterre fu abatuz faut en
estant courrouciez & pleins de mau-
talent. Il prist son escu par les en
armes & oste sespee du fuerre & sa-
dresce en vers alixandre. Et quant il fu 10
auques pres de lui il parole & dist.
Danz cheualiers de cornoaille tu mas
houni se mespee ne me venge de toi.
Mes ie voeil bien que tu saches ain-
cois que ie mete main en vous que ie 15
ai ocis de ceste espee mesmes .x.
cheualiers par lou- [fol. 166 recto, col.
i.] trage que cele damoiselle me fist
& .x. en aie ge ocis par mon orgueil &
.x. entraison. Dont ie di apertement 20
que tu nen puez eschaper vis.

CHETIS cheualiers fet li orfelins
alixandre tu as regehie ta mort
de la traïson que tu en as fete tu le
comperras. Je sui estrait du lignage 25
des rois dont ie enprendrai la veniance
garde ton cors que tu es morz. Et
lors li queurt alixandre sus sespee leuee
contremont & malagrin ne le refuse
pas. Lors sentrefierent an .ij. de feur 30
les hiaumes & en a batent ala terre
granz chantiax. Durement se deffen-
dent & asailent lun lautre & mout
sentreblecent aus cox de leur espees
& sentrefont plaies petites & granz. 35
Si vous di apertement que se lun est
vistes & lautre legiers. se lun est preuz
& lautre hardiz. Lun ne doute lautre
Lun nespargne lautre de donner granz
cox & aspres & pesanz. Et lautre ne 40
les pergne de rendre ce que lautre li
preste ainz li rent souuentes forz adou-
bles. Que vous diroie la bataille fu si
dure & si aspre con ie vous ai conte.
Et dura des bien heure de prime ius- 45
ques a uestpres tout parigal. Mes acele
eure auint droitement que alixandre
li orfelins geta vn cop amont de feur
le hiaume & consuit malagrin si dure-
[col. ii.] ment que se il ne fust lanciez 50
dautre part il li eust pourfendue la
teste en .ij. moities ace que lespee
chei de feur vne autre plaie qui li

auoit este faite. Que vous diroie ie de celui cop que malagrin ot receu fu il mout empiriez & mout feuet regardant que alixandre ne le refiere
 5 derechief. Et quant alixandre voit celui semblant bien li fu auis que malagrin nauroit vers lu duree. Et lors auise tant que il le fiert derechief en celui leu meismes & estort
 10 son cop si labat ala terre naurez amort. Et quant il le vit deuant ses piez il parole & dist. Danz cheualiers felons vostre felonnie vous ahouniz tant auez couru que or vous estuet
 15 gisir ala terre maugre vostre. Et quant il a ce dit li errache le hiaume de la teste & le giete en voie & puis li abat la uoitaile & li trenche la teste du bu. Et quant alixandre li ot la teste cospee
 20 il boute sespee vsuerre. Et quant il vouloit monter le sanc le coumenca a asublir que il ne puet monter seur son cheual ainz lestuet couchier ala terre ou il voulist ou non.

25 **L**ORS vint morgain seur lui & dist danz cheualiers ie sai apertement que vous estes durement naurez. dame fet il vous dites voir. vous estes cheuz en tieus [*fol. 166 verso, col. i.*], mains fet morgain qui bien vous saura garir. Granz merciz dame fet alixandre. En dementres que morgain tenoit parlement a alixandre. atant ez vous venir la damoiselle du chastel en la compaignie de
 30 meint preudome. Dont il pristrent alixandre & le mistrent de seur son escu & lemporтерent el chastel & morgain sen ala apres. Et quant il fu conduit en vne chambre morgain sentremist de ses plaies guerir apres ce que li hauberz li fu oste du dos. Et sachiez certainement que il auoit .xv. plaies entre petites & granz & si en
 35 auoit il vne mout perilleuse & mout redoutable por garir. Et nepourquant morgain dist que mout bien le garira. Et lors li benda mout bien ses plaies. mes aincois li mist de sus tel oignement qui mout lempira dont il fu cele
 40 nuit en angosse de mort. Alendemain vint morgain & li eure bon iour & li dist dame au iour sui ie venuz

dont ie ne le cuidoie iames veoir. Mes ala nuit veoir ai ge failli si con ie croi iames la nuit ne verrai. Non fet morgain quest ce que vous dites. Dame fet il iai perdu trestout le pooir
 5 de mes membres. Et lors le deslia morgain & quant il fu desliez ele parole & dist. Alixandre biauf douz amis fe ie vous faz oublier touz max [*col. ii.*] & toute doulour quel loier me donrez
 10 vous. Et il respont & dist quan que iai vmonde & quan que ie puis. Creantez le moi coume cheualier ce dit morgain & alixandre li creante erramment. Et lors li mist morgain
 15 de seur ses plaies tel oignement & si precieus que il en chaca de seur lui toute doulour. Dont il dist dame gari mauez. Je en sui liee fet ele. Que vous diroie ie la damoiselle du
 20 chastel le sefoit si bel & si bien seurir que nul houte malade ne pourroit iames estre miex. Et quant ele vit que il tornoit a garison ele fu tant liee & tant ioieuse con nule pluf.
 25

UN iour auint quele prist morgain par la main & la trest a vne part & li dist. Dame ie vous pri en touz guerredons que vous faites tant pour lamour de moi que alixandre me
 30 praigne a fame. Et quant morgain oi ce ele respont & dist coume cele qui sanz blasme en vouloit estre & dist. damoiselle venez deuant lui & si orroiz coument ie li en proierai.
 35 Et lors la moine deuant le lit alixandre. Mes ele li auoit moult bien deffendu que en nule maniere du monde ne preist la damoiselle du chastel afame. Et alixandre la auoit
 40 creante que ie ne la prendra. Que vous diroie ie quant eles furent deuant le lit. Lors parole [*fol. 167 recto, col. i.*] morgain & dist alixandre or tost du garir que si bele damoiselle
 45 con ceste est voel ie que vous praigniez afame & si uous en pri ie que priez vous en puis que vous ne vous en escondifiez en nule maniere du monde que vous lauez chier
 50 achetez dont ele vous amera moult. Dame fet alixandre qui na du sien mauueisement puet douner. Sachiez

certainnement que ie ne sui pas a moi
pour otroier ce que vous me requerez
ne vous poist pas ce que iendurai illi
estuet baer autre part que amoi aele
5 failli. Quant la damoiselle oi ce ele
embroncha lateste & fu vne grant
piece pensue. Et nepourquant a
chief de piece respont & dist. Sire
cheualier puis que iai failli auous tant
10 feites con la coustume requert. Et
que en requiert la coustume fet alix-
andre. La coustume fet ele requiert
que vous me doingniez a vn autre
cheualier. Mout volontiers le ferai
15 ie fet alixandre alendemain le vous
donrai. Agrant ioie & agrant feste
furent ceus de leenz de leur dame qui
deuoit estre mariee. Et de ce que
malagrin son mauues voisin estoit ocis.
20 Et quant la damoiselle sen fu alee
lorf apele alixandre morgain & dist.
Dame li quieuf donrons nous a la
damoiselle & ele respont & dist. quele
le ueut sauoir de lui meismes. Lors
25 sen ala morgain en la chambre ou la
damoiselle estoit & li dist. Dites moi
aqui baez vous que alixandre vous
doist. Je bee fet ele a vn cheualier
de cef [col. ii.] tui pais que len apele
30 guerin le gros. puis que vous ibaez fet
morgain & vous lauroiz.

ALENDEMAIN auques par tens
se leua alixandre a quelque
paine & sen vint en mi la sale &
35 treue la damoiselle mout acefmee &
dames & damoiselles avec lui agrant
plente & barons & cheualiers en viron.
Et quant Alixandre ifu venuz tuit se
lieuent en contre sa venue. Et quant
40 il furent tuit en pes. Lors parole
alixandre & dist. Ou estes vous dant
guerin li groz venez auant. Et quant
guerin soi nomer il saut auant & dist
fire veez me ci. Et lors prist alix-
45 andre la damoiselle par la main &
dist. Garin tenez que ie vous doing
ceste damoiselle asame & cestui chafel
& quen quil ia pent pour doaire.
Granz merciz fire ce dit guerin & ie
50 ainsi la preng. Grant fu la ioie & la
feste en celui iour que mout furent
liez & vn & autre de ce que guerin li
gros prist leur dame asame. Que

vous diroie ie en dementres que la
ioie en forcoit & morgain la desloial
auoit fet apareillier vne litiere deuant
la porte du chafel. Et lors prist
alixandre par la main & dist. biaux 5
amis venez aual que ceste noise vous
ennuie mout. Je ai fet tendre .i.
pauillon ou vous seroiz sanz noise.
Et alixandre qui de nule riens ne sen
prenoit garde sen ala avec lui. Et 10
quant il fu deuant la porte du
chafel & il vit la litiere [fol. 167
verso] si bien apareilliee & si bel
con nule plus il monta de sus & se
coucha auques bel. Et morgain li 15
douna aboiure de tel vin que il fu
eranment en dormiz. Et ele monta &
toute sa mefiniee & cheuauchierent
tant par leur iournees que il furent
venuz en moins de .iij. iourz a la bele 20
garde vchafel qui fu de sa mere. En
bele garde fu descenduz alixandre li
orfelins & couchiez en vne chambre
mout a aise. Et au quart iour quant
il sesueilla & il ouuri les eulz si uoit 25
que il estoit en vne chambre mout
bien en courtinee. Il fescrie & mor-
gain loi si sen uint cele part & quant
il la uoit si li dist. dame ou sui ie.
biaus amis fet ele en mon chafel ou 30
ie vous garirai auques par tens. Il
mest mout bel alixandre. Et lors li
douna morgain amengier. Et quant
il ot mengie si prist garde de ses plaies
que il nen sentoit nule doulour. Mout 35
fu aaise alixandre tant con il fu bleciez.
Mes des lors en auant que il fu gariz
il fu courrouciez & tant dolent con
nul plus. Mes atant leste li contes
aparier de ceste auenture & parole de 40
la court le Roy artus & de la dame
daualon que merlin enuoia en yrlande
autens que in viuoit.

[fol. 182 recto, col. i.] vous en estes
deceue que ie naim ne moi ne autrui 45
puis que entel leu sui sanz issir de
ceenz. Sire cheualier fet la damoiselle
de ceenz ne puez vous issir se par moi
non & si vous dirai pourcoi. Je fai
apertement que vous auez creante 50
prison ala dame de ceenz. Et si voeil
que vous sachiez quele ne vous retient
pour autre achoison fors seulement

pour faouler sa luxure. Tesiez damoiselle fet alixandre quele est de si grant aage quele ne bee atel chose. En non dieu fet la damoiselle mal la
 5 counoissiez que ie voeil que vous sachiez que tout son espoir & son travail nest se pour faouler sa luxure non. Et tant voeil ie que vous sachiez ce dit li orfelins alixandre que aincoif
 10 que ie me couchasse oſi leide chose & oſi uelle con est morgain trencheroie ie ames . ij . mains an . ij . mes pendanz. Et lors coumenca la damoiselle a rire mout durement & puis
 15 parole & dist.

DANS cheualiers se croire me voulez ia morgain ne beera a vous pour sa luxure. Et si vous deliurrerai de ceenz sanz vous messere des couuenances. Damoiselle fet alixandre iotroi
 20 ce que vous voulez sanz mon creant. Dites moi que vous en baez asere. Sire fet la damoiselle il vous estuet tant amer moi con ie faz vous. que
 25 morgain est ma cousinne [col. ii.] germainne de uoir le sachiez vos. Et puis quele saura que vous estes a moi ele ne beera ia mes a vous. Et ie donrai cestui chastel auquans du pas par nuit
 30 que maintenant i fera meitre le feu & abatre les murs & les torſ ala terre. Dont vous en seroiz deliurez erramment. puis que vous le voulez ainſi fere fet li orfelins ie garderai la piece
 35 de terre armez de toutes armes. ij . anz entiers en contre touz houmes morgain ne me leſſa pas la garde du chastel ainz leſſa mon cors en la garde dautrui dont iene doi garantir son
 40 chastel. Se ainſi le fetes ie men tiens bien apaiez. Lors li court la damoiselle les braz tenduz & le bese & il bese lui & puis en fist autre chose qui apartient au besier. Grant ioie de moine
 45 la damoiselle de lorfelin alixandre & mout se folace & le bese & en fet tout son bon & il coume celui qui rienſ ne ſauoit de cele chose en coumenca asere selonc la coustume. Et sachiez
 50 certainement que cele damoiselle entra en cele chambre pucele dont ilec acele foiz perdi son pucelage. Et quant il ont grant piece de mene en

leur ioie lors dist la damoiselle que maintenant que il verra le feu mis el chastel que il se mete hors par mi la fenestre & aual trouuera armez & cheval anques a sa uolente. Et lors
 5 li mouſtre vne fenestre par ou [fol. 182 verso, col. i.] il pooit aaissement descendre hors du chastel & alixandre respont & dist que bien i descendra a aissement. Et lors le bese la damoiselle & puis le commande adieu & sen
 vet an quans du pas qui mout bien la recut coume celui qui son oncle estoit & frere son pere. Sire fet ele tant manez proicee que ie vous conseillasse
 15 coument vous pourriez estre en ſefine de bele garde. Or est venuz li termes que ie vous metrai dedenz si en fetes tout ce que vous en gist de ſeur le cuer. Quant le quans oi ce il fu tant
 20 liez que nul plus. Et lors la prist entre les braz & la bese plus de . c . foiz & dist. bele niece vous manez mout grant ioie mis au cuer & ia ne maist dieus se vous ne seroiz dame de mon ostel
 25 il mande ſes amis & pres & loinz & les prie que il soient apareilliez darnes & il si furent que moult font liez de la nouuele.

QUE vous diroie ie quant la nuit fu
 venue & il ot apareillie . iiij^e. cheualiers & la damoiselle les conuoie
 iusques alentree de la bele garde droitement la ou ele ſauoit la poſterne
 par ou morgain ſen iſſoit priueement.
 35 Ele auoit vne clef dont ele ouuri la poſterne auques coument. Et lorſ ſe miſt li quans dedenz & auec lui touz ſes amis. La guete auoit mout corne & [col. ii.] mout crie. Lors ſeſtoit acoiffiez.
 40 Mes li quans imiſt le feu de toutes parz erramment. Et quant la gueite vit ce il crie trai trai li ſeus est vchastel de toutes pars. Li chasteſlains ſe lieue & trestouz les autres mes il nont que de
 45 laier fors que ſauuer leur vies il ſe gietent aual par mi les fenestres pour ſauuer leur cors mes il furent erramment pris & retenuz. Mieux leur vient que li quans les giete que il fuſſent
 50 ars que toutes parz estoit li chasteſlains eſpris. De lautre part li orfelins alixandre ſe geta aual parmi la fenestre

la droitement ou la damoiselle estoit
 qui la tendoit & auoit ilec apareillies
 bones armes & bon cheual dont il garni
 son cors & puis monta & fuiui la
 5 damoiselle qui a lostel dune feue en-
 tain le conduist. Ilec le fist descendre
 & estre aaise. Li quans fu tant deuant
 bele garde que toutes les fortrefces
 en furent arsef & misef en cendre. Et
 10 quant li iourz fu venuz il fist abatre
 les murs & les tours & puis fist oster
 les pierres dilec. Et au quart iour en
 voia la damoiselle vn sien varlet en la
 forest daruences pour conter les nou-
 15 ueles amorgain qui moult en fu cour-
 rouciee quant ele en fu certaine. De
 lautre part monta li orselin alixandre
 armez de toutes armes & [fol. 184,
 col. i.] manda & pres & loinz aus
 20 cheualiers de pris que se il osent venir
 veoir la piece de terre ou bele garde
 auoit este que ia ne partiront dilec
 sanz iouste & sanz bataille. Nouueles
 qui tost courent & par a mont & par
 25 aual sen vint vn varlet chief vne da-
 moiselle qui moult estoit & cointe &
 bele. Il conta la nouuele tres deuant
 sa cort & fu oie de meint preudome
 qui mout sentremetoient damer la
 30 damoiselle. Et quant ele oi ce ele
 seurrist vn petit & puis dist. puis que
 celui chr est si orgueilleus. Ja ne
 maist dieus se ie ne ferai autretant
 orgueilleuse con il est ou plus. Et lors
 35 coumande que sa cort & son paueillon
 soit ilec deuant lui. Et bien le sache
 chascun fet la damoiselle que iames
 ne donrai mon cors fors acelui qui a
 outrance le metra & fera ilec sa court
 40 vn an & de mi. Et se auenture aide
 tant au cheualier que il ne soit outrez
 ele li donra son cors & .iiij. iournees
 de terre bien coltiuee & par lonc &
 par le ou il feraen seline de .iiij. tieus
 45 chastiaus que il ne doutent que dame
 diex seulement.

CELLE damoiselle dont ie vous ai
 parle auoit est fille au duc de
 50 rancerf li pelerin qui tout son aage
 auoit vsee saue en pelerinage seule-
 ment & deuant la porte de ihe- [col. ii.]

rusalem auoit este son cors mis en
 terre. Et nauoit de touz enfanz fors
 seulement aielief cele bele damoiselle.
 Dont aloir estoit bouene & tout le pais
 en viron. boueine estoit vne eue fete 5
 auques soutilment. Et dedenz cele
 eue estoit vn *buf* dor que astrogles
 imist autens que il viuoit & cele eue
 sechoit vne foiz en lan si du tout que
 len pooit bien veoir & atouchier le 10
 buf dor. Mes il estoit enchaenez dune
 chaene que nus ne la pooit trenchier
 que leue ne retournaist aincois arriere.
 Que vous diroie ie quant aylief ot fine
 fondit. Maintenant courent ses houmes 15
 cele part ou bele garde auoit este.
 Ilec fu tenduz son paueillon & toute
 sacourt & ele monta de seur vn palef.¹
 . . . & f . . . mist au chemin & A . . .
 . . . tant quele fu v 20
 place. En dem vouloit de
 venture q
 qui ilec
 iouste
 li lessé 25
 con.
 ve
 ue.

 30

[6 lines missing.]

[fol. 184 verso col. i.] & dist danz
 cheualiers nen fetes plus. Quest ce
 damoiselle fet alixandre. Et lors li
 conta aielief coument .iiij^c. cheualiers 35
 la tiennent courte pour prendre afame.
 & ele les atrestouz en vaiz encontre
 lui & se il puet maintenir ce que il
 aempris ele le fera seigneur de .iiij.
 iournees de terre bien coltiuee & par- 40
 lonc & parle dont il gardera a lui .x^m.
 houmes que a pie *que* a cheual. Da-
 moiselle ce respont alixandre fachiez
 certainement que de garder ce que
 ie ai empris en ferai ie tout mon 45
 pooir. Mes se il vient ici aucun qui
 lonour emporte de seur moi ie laurai
 a mestre. vne autre foiz en ferai ie
 mieulz que il men a prendra. Danz
 cheualiers fet la damoiselle ie vous de- 50
 mande vn don qui mout pou

¹ At the places where the points are the MS. is defective. It seems that the letters have been effaced by the influence of humidity.



. ftera & que ie en ferai au
 ers vous. demandez
 alixandre que ie lo
 ie fet aielies que
 5 aume & abatez
 defuelope-
 que vouf
 toute
 felinf
 10 fa
 ifa

[8 lines missing.]

15 [col. ii.] denz que iamef naura mari se
 lui non se il la deigne prendre & se
 il la refusoit afame ele li donroit son
 cors en putage. Et lors abat sa
 guimple & puis dist. Danz cheualierf
 20 len me uet contant que il ne treuent
 fi bele damoiselle en . xv. citez con ie
 fui. or regardez se il metrichent ou non.

25 **Q**UANT alixandre vit la damoiselle
 fi bele riens il cuide certainne-
 ment que toute la biaute du siecle soit
 en lui seulement bien li fu auif quele

soit vns anges descenduz du ciel.
 ha! damoiselle fet il leure que vous
 venistef ceste part soit beneoite. Je
 croi certainement que vous estes
 descenduz du saint paradis. Je voeil 5
 que vous sachiez que force de vostre
 biaute me seroit meller a trestouz voz
 cheualiers se ie neusse emprise ceste
 aenture. Dont ie vouf di vraiment
 que ie me tieng des or mes pour 10
 vostre cheualier & quanque ie ferai il
 fera pour vouf. Et la damoiselle
 respont & dit que iames ne beera fors
 alui seulement. Et lors sentrecou-
 mandent adieu. Et quant la damoi- 15
 selle fu descendue tant liee & tant
 ioieuse con nule plus. Atant ez vous
 venir celui cheualier des autres qui
 plus la tenoit courte de prendre a
 fame. Et quant il vit alixandre touz 20
 armez il coumande a son escuier que
 . . . liace . . . glaiues li aportast &
 de par lui que il enpreigne
 oitie. Li escuiers sen ala a espe.
 Et quant il fu deuant alixan. 25

[End of fol. 184 verso, col. ii.]

GREAT TOURNAMENT OF GALAHALT OF SURLUSE.¹

[Fol. 77 verso, col. ii.]

OR dit li contes que alendemain se leua li hanz princes galeholt auques matin. & ausi firent les barons & les cheualiers qui grant talent auoient de tournoier. Les gresles & les esbrumenz coumencent a soner. & lors furent aporrez les gonfanons el champ. Les cheualiers furent armez & les dames estoient montees aus loges avec la Reyne Gueneure. Et lors coumence li tournoiz de toutes parz. & les cheualiers cheoir ala terre lun ca & lautre la. Dinadan porta celui iour armez non pas a feu de Galeholt, mes auques en repost. & le fesoit si bien que mout fu loee sa proefce. Et quant il vit que lance lot dulac issi del ranc il issi du tournoient. Que vous diroie ie celui iour porta armes li Rois de norgales & le fist si bien alaide de bleoberis de Gaunes & de hector des mares que merueilles auoient [fol. 78 recto, col. i.] fetes que de leur glaiues que de leur espees. Et sachiez que lance lot du lac auoit changies ses armes. et ce auoit il fet por la priere au roi bandemaguz de Gorre. quant hector des mares le vit venir si asprement que de quan quil en controit en son venir fesoit il sentir la feche terre. Il fa drefce cele part au ferir des esperons. & auoit vn glaiue fort & gros. & lance lot en auoit vn autre dont il auoit abatu maint preudoume. Quant il vit hector que il ne

counoiffoit acelui point. Il si adrefce la teste de son cheual. Et sentrefierent si durement que il brisent leur glaiues iusques aus poinz & puis passent outre. & lance lot qui le dur cop senti regarde arrieres lui pour counoistre le cheualier qui si durement iousta alui. Et lors prist vn autre glaiue & retourne cele part ou il voit hector aler. & hector auoit ia recouure vn autre glaiue pour iouster alancelot. Que vous diroie quant il sentreurent il lessent courre lun en contre lautre leur glaiues abessiez & sentrefierent si durement que li plus foibles en senti la feche terre. Lance lot passe outre & son frere hector remest arrieres. Et quant blioberis vit celui cop il sadrefce vers lance lot & tenoit sespee leuee encontremont. Et lance lot qui venoit vers lui son glaiue abessie & le vouloit ferir par mi le piz. bleoberis giete vn cop de sespee & trenche le glaiue que lance lot tenoit & il passe outre sanz iouster alui. Et quant lance lot ot parfourni son poindre. Il retourne & ia li estoit bleoberis en mi leuis sespee empoingniee. Et fiert lance lot amont de seur le hiaume si durement que il le bronche de seur le col de son cheual. Et bleoberis li vouloit douner vn autre cop. mes lance lot sest lanciaz alui & le sest au hiaume si le flatist du cheual atterre. Quant li rois de norgales vit ces cheualiers abatuz & par vn seul cheualier il le prise mout. Et nepourquant

¹ All these adventures of the great tournament are also in the Harl. MS. 1629. I have given the reading of the Add. MS., because it is more complete and the text is better. Only one portion of the former MS. I have copied which is not in Add. See pp. xxxviii and xxxix.

il li leste courre entrelui & les cheualiers de sa mesniee. & eussent ilec pris lancelot a fine force se ne fust li Rois def. C. cheualiers qui le secourut.
 5 Ilec fu vne si grant meslee que aus cox des glaives que aus espees. que se la fussiez acelui point. bien eussiez veu cheualiers abatre a grant plente que dune part que dautre. Li Rois de
 10 norgales quant il ot brisie son glaive dont il en abati vn cheualier de forelois. Il geta sa main & prist le cheual & le donna a hector des mares qui mout durement se deffendoit & li dist
 15 sire montez & il mon isnelement que mout en fu liez. & ostee sespee du fuerre & sadresce vers vn [fol. 78 verso, col. i.] cheualier & le fiert si durement que celui na tant de pooir:
 20 que il peust acheual durer ainz vole a terre & chei de lez blioberis. Et il prist le cheual du cheualier & monta sus erranment. Que vous diroie ie ilec fu grant la meslee & si grant li
 25 chaples que se ce fust mortel bataille si furent il assez a grant meschief. Et quant lancelot vit ce il dist a soi meismes que il ne le soufferra pas. Il tint sespee empoingniee & coumence aserir
 30 adestre & asenestre & a batre cheualiers & cheuaus & errachoit escuz de cox & hiaumes de testes & fesoit si grant merueille darmes acelui point que nus ne leueoit qui ne deist que il
 35 eust en lui la graigneur proesce du monde. Et lors coumencent les cheualiers a foir deuant lui.

QUANT meleagant vit les merueilles que il fesoit. Il counut
 40 erranment que il estoit lancelot du lac. & que pour lui deceuoir auoit il changniees ses armes. il nauoit celui iour feru ne de glaive ne despee que touz iourz auoit regarde par mi le
 45 tournoient se il veist lancelot du lac. or fest aperceuz que ce est il. Que vous diroie ie il auoit prie les cheualiers de sa baniere que il ferissent enz el cheual Lancelot. ou de glaive
 50 ou despee ou ala trauerse si durement que il neust pooir destre acheual. Il hurte le cheual des esperons son glaive

mis de feur [col. ii.] le fautre. & sadresce en contre lui. mes li Rois bandedmaguz son pere auoit tant prie sans li hardiz que il sauoit abon cheualier que il ne ioustast a milui
 5 fors queamelegant son filz. Celui sentes auoit aconduire. iij. cheualiers. Et quant il vit meleagant en champ entre lui & ceus que il auoit a conduire. Il leste courre en contre lui.
 10 Que vous diroie ie meleagant ne pot refuser la iouste de sans li de forelois que trop il seroit tourne a grant viltez & descouuerte fust la desloiaute. Lors sentrefierent andeuls les cheualiers de
 15 feur les escuz. Si durement que voellent ounon leur estuet voidier les arcons & cheoir a terre de feur les croupes des cheuaus. Et lors sentrefierent les autres cheualiers que dune
 20 part que dautre & sentrabatent ala terre souuent & menu. & se ne fussent li cheualier de Gaule qui avec meleagant estoient venuz. Ja sa desense ne li eust mestier. que senes ne leust
 25 retenu a fine force. mes il furent preudomes & hardiz cheualiers si le deliurent dilec & le firent monter en mi le tournoient. La meslee fu ilec grant & merueilleuse que apres les
 30 cox de leur lances trestrent il les espees & sentredourent si grantz coume se il fussent anemis mortieus.

QUANT li hanz princes vit que leure de disner estoit ia passee. 35 il fet soner le cor [fol. 79 recto] en mi le tournoient. & quant li cheualier oient la voiz du cor Il se traient en sus les vns des autres & sen vont chascun a leur gonfanon. La Reyne Guenieure
 40 & les dames & les damoiseles descendent des loges & sen vont conduire la Reyne. Et ele retint avec lui pour disner vne partie des dames & des damoiseles. Les tables estoient drecies & lors fu leue donnee & chascunne sa siet au disner. & menient
 45 a grant lesir. delautre part les cheualiers sen vont a leur ostieus & ostent leur armes & leue leur fu donnee que 50 les tables estoient drecies. Et il sa fient & menient que assez orent

de coi. En demestref que li hanz
princes Galeholt estoit assis au disner
entre lui & ses barons. entre dedenz
son pauillon vn varlet & semist agen-
5 oulz deuant le haut prince & dist.
Sire ci menuoie vn cheualier. Il
vous mande *que* en nule maniere du
monde nenterra en vostre tournoie-
ment pour estre encontre ceus de
10 forelois. non pas pour ce que il ne
ioufast volentiers aeuls. mes il set
apertement que il nen porroit porter
se honte non. Mes il vous requiert
vn don qui de rien nen pirera le pris
15 de vostre tournoiment. volentiers set
li haut prince se li dons que il de-
mande ne doit fausser mon establissem-
ment. Je lotroi fire fet li varlet.
vous li auez doune [*col. ii.*] que il
20 conduira vne damoisele au tournoie-
ment. Et se nus cheualiers est tant
preuz netant iustes qui de seur lui la
pourra conquerre. il la prendra coume
la feue. Et des lors en auant iusques
25 au terme de vo tournoiment face
darmes pour lamor delui. Quant
lancelot oice. si fa percut que il
nosoit venir au tournoiment pour
doute de lui. & pour celui ail pris
30 celui fet. Il coumence a fouz rire &
dist. Sire or iparra alendemain que
ie vous di apertement que li cheualier
aura assez que soustenir. que il ia que
dune part que dautre. assez de preud-
35 oumes qui de seur lui sentremetront
pour la pucele auoir. mes ie de la
moie part la quit du tout. Ha ! chetif
cheualiers ce dist dinadam. ie cuidoie
que tu deusses porter le los & le pris
40 de ce tournoiment. ainsi con tu las
eu iusques ci. & pour seulement la
pouur dun cheualier en as quite le
champ. Certes ia de par moi nen
fera il quitez ainsi legierement. Taifiez
45 ce dist li haut prince. dinadam. que
vous nestes se menaciez non. Encore
nosastes vous meitre le pie au tor-
noiment. Anon dieu ce respont
dinadam. cuidiez vous que ie vous
50 refemble. Et lors coumencent trestuit
aire & dient aucuns. Sire vraiment
le sachiez vous que il fu au tournoie-
ment. mes il idemoura petit. Est ce
[*fol. 79 verso, col. i.*] voir fire dina-

dam ce respont Galeholt. La pour
de ton compaignon en fu la droite
achoisson ce respont dinadam. que
ia mauoit espie quant il oient ce.
Il coumencierent trestuit arire mout
5 durement. Et lors dist Galeholt au
varlet qui deuant lui estoit agenoulz.
que il se leuast enestant & die a son
seigneur que alendemain sera esgardee
sa proesce. & ses preuee. Li varlez
10 fu enestant leuez & le coumande
adieu. & sen retourne a son seigneur &
li conta la nouuele tout ainsi con
vous auez oi ca en arrieres. Et li
hauz princes demande aus barons de
15 leenz que il dient selonc leur auif que
il cuident qui li cheualiers soit. *que* la
damoisele veut conduire au tournoie-
ment. dont ie vos di apertement que
il sacordent la graigneur partie apala-
20 medes. Mes atant leffe li contes
aparler de ceste auenture & parole de
palamedes li mescouneuz.

OR dit li contes *que* palame-
des estoit a cel point mis
25 apres la beste glatissant.
mes vne damoisele len
auoit oste & conduit lauait iusques
en forelois. Ou li [*col. ii.*] tournoi-
menz estoit chascun iour feruz ainsi
30 con vous auez oi conter ca en arrieres.
& la choison coument cele damoisele
lestoit ale querre. ne voeil ie pas
oublier. ainz la vous uoel retrere en
conte. voir fu que en la chambre de
35 forelois auoit vn mout orgueilleus
cheualier qui marchiffoit ala damoi-
sele. Et sachiez que il li auoit chal-
engie sa terre. & la damoisele sen
estoit clamee deuant Galeholt mes il
40 estoit seurpris de grant asere si lenuoia
a vn quans qui marchiffoit aeuls.
celui *quans* auoit non flaimers & li
orgueilleus cheualier auoit non Gozoif.
Li quans en auoit tenu parlement &
45 Gozois en auoit doune son gage
pour prouuer que la damoisele ne
deuoit auoir *point* de terre. Flaimers
auoit doune le iugement que la
damoisele sen deffendist par la bataille
50 & li donna respit de .xl. iours selonc
la coustume. Que vous diroie ie.

cele damoisele sen estoit alee ala court le roi artus mes la court estoit acelui point adaguenet. Ilec auoit vn cheualier malade que len apeloit sagremorf li defreez. Et quant il vit cele damoisele il la counut erramment. Lors la fist apeler deuant lui & li dist. Damoisele pour de faute de ceste court auez vous damage. & perdrez vostre terre. mes fetes le bien. metez vous en ceste fo- [*fol. 80 recto. col. i.*] rest. que ie sai apertement que la beste glatissant ifu veue. & li cheulier qui sen ua apres lui est vns des bons cheualiers du monde. Criez li merci que il se mete en vostre querele. & ditez li nouueles du tournoiement de forelois. La damoisele sen ala erramment en la forest & trouua palamedes. & la beste glatissant. Et lors li conta la damoisele premierement du tournoiement de forelois. Et quant il oi ce. il lessa la queste de la beste glatissant. & quant ele uit quil auoit du tout lessie aler la beste. ele li conta coument ele auoit grant besoing de lui. Et li crie merci que il otroia le secours & sen uint avec lui en forelois & se combati au cheualier & loutra darmes. dont il li cospa la teste voiant li quans naymers. Quant palamedes li ot trenchie la teste. il dist ala damoisele quele sen viengne olui au tournoiement que seil ni entre pour la choison de lui. Ja nen portera ne los ne pris. Et cele damoisele deuoit palamedes conduire au tournoiement ainsi con vous auez oi ca en arrieres. Et sachiez certainement quele estoit vne des beles damoiseles du monde & eust doune a palamedes samour se il ne fust paiens. & se fust paienne ausi coume palamedes estoit. Il sen fust [*col. ii.*] tenuz a bien paieiz.

45 **Q**UE vous diroie ie en forelois estoient andui chief vne veuee dame. La damoisele estoit si richement appareilliee que au tournoiement ne fu veue nule mieuz. fors la Reine Guenieur seulement. Cele estoit appareilliee & acesmee selonc sa gentillesce & palamedes auoit

changiees ses armes & les auoit toutes fresches & neuues. Et auoit en son escu pourtrete tout nouuelement la beste Glatissant. Et autresi auoit il en son hiaume & en ses couvertures & vpanoncel autresi. Celui iour que son varlet li aporta les nouueles de par le haut prince Galeholt que il deuoit estre au tournoiement selonc sa requeste. Lors fu il tant liez & tant ioianz que ia encuidoit auoir porte lenneur & le pris de seur touz les autres. Il sauoit apertement selonc sa requeste que ia pourancelot nauroit destourbier. Sanz ce que son varlet li auoit conte que il le quita deuant le haut prince & deuant mains autres barons. nil nauoit dote fors de lui seulement. A grant feste & agrant ioie fina celui iour. Il estoit en celui ostel toz feus & la damoisele avec lui. & la dame de lostel qui mout estoit & sage & courtoise & auoit vn filz bel & cointes & moult sentremetoit de seruir [*fol. 80 verso. col. i.*] palamedes. Celui iour que palamedes entra en son ostel sen ala il pour prendre les viandes pour lui & li rois de . C . cheualiers li en douna a grant plente. La nuit fu venue oscure & palamedes sen ala coucher auques par tens que mout li tarde que il nest en mi le tournoiement que il icuide tant ferre que bien en orra parler tristans de benoyc. & la reyne ausi. Mes atant lessa li contes aparler de palamedes li paiens. & vous conterai du tournoiement qui fu feruz alendemain.

ALENDEMAIN ce dit li contes leua li hanz princes auques par tens. & arma son cors de toutes ses armes & dist aancelot du lac. que il essaiera premierement le cheualier ala damoisele. Sauoir seil a en lui si grant proece con il en fet le semblant. Et lors coumande les gresles asonner & les estrumanz. Les barons & les cheualiers se lieuent & arment leur cors. Et quant li iours fu venuz biaux & clers. Les gonfanons furent conduit el champ les cheualiers les suiuent

ainsi con il estoient acoustume. Les
dames & les damoiseles conduisrent
la Reyne aus loges. & monterent
avec lui. De l'autre *[col. ii.]* part
5 palamedes conduist sa damoisele qui
montee estoit de seur vn palefroi tout
couuert dun vermeil samit trainant
par terre. Quant la damoisele fu en
mi le champ. Lors coumenca acrier
10 vn des herauz qui le tournoient
auoit acoustume acrier. veez le cheu-
alier ala damoisele. qui pourra ceste
damoisele conquerre de seur lui. il la
pourra prendre coume la seue. Et
15 lors courut cele part le cheualier.
Mes li hanz princes Galeholt qui
montez estoit de seur vn cheual fort &
ysnel & estoit armez de toutes armes
emprist le fess seur lui. Que vous
20 diroie ie. quant li cheualiers virent
ce. il se traient en sus. Et palamedes
qui bien counut que ce estoit Gale-
holt ace que il leuit graigneur des
autres & armez si richement con lui
25 apartenoit. Il auoit vn glaiue en
samain. Et lors leste courre en contre
la venue du haut prince qui ia li
venoit esperonnant. Mes tieus fu la-
venture au ioindre des glaiues que lun
30 ne l'autre ne gagna rien. que ausi
brisa palamedes son glaiue de seur le
haut prince. con il fist de seur lui.
& quant il orent parfourni leur poin-
dres. Il pristrent chascun vn autre
35 glaiue. & sentrelessent courre leur
glaiues abessiez si durement que in-
ques aus poins brisent leur glaiues.
& puis sentrehurtent des cors & des
visages si asprement que li plus preuz
40 deuls en ot assez que soustenir. mes
palamedes fu ace menez que a pain-
[fol. 81 recto, col. i.] nes se tint a cheual.
ains chai tout en uers seur la croupe
de son cheual. Et nepourquant il ne
45 pert ses estriers. ains sa ficha si dure-
ment que il remest es estriers & el
cheual. Et li hanz princes passe outre
& ot parfourni son poindre. & puis
retourne de seur palamedes que bien
50 le cuide outrer darmes. mes il le
treuve autresi vistes con vn lyon
fameilleus. & ot oste sespee du fuerre.
& li reuiet en mi le vis.

LORS oste li hanz princes sespee
du fuerre. & hurte son cheual
vers palamedes. Que vous diroie ie.
Lors coumencent la meslee entreus si
dure & si aspre que li plus forz en ot
5 assez asoustenir. Se li hanz princes
dounne vn cop apalamedes. palamedes
li rent erramment. Lors giete Gale-
holt sespee en contremont. & giete vn
cop apalamedes & le consuit amont
10 deseur son hiaume. Lespee nel puet
en tamer ne tant ne quant. ains chai
de seur le col du destrier palamedes.
& li trenche dautre en outre. & lors
fu palamedes atterre de seur sespiez.
15 Il tenoit sespee empoignee & dist.
Sire descendez. & se ce ne faites. Je
vous ferai estre apie ausi con vous
seistes moi. Lors descent li hanz
princes de son cheual & dist. apala-
20 medes. dant cheualier montez de seur
mon destrier par larius que vous plus
amez vmonde vous empri ie que ie
mentieng pour vaincuz. & vous clain
quite la damoisele. Quant palamedes
25 foi q- *[col. ii.]* ter de celui que il doutoit
coume la foudre. Il fu tant liez con
nul plus. Il monta erramment. & sen
vint la droitement ou la damoisele es-
toit de l'autre part. vn cheual fu amene
30 au haut prince. & il monta erramment
& prist vn glaiue & se mist el ranc. Et
lors vint en contre lui dynadam. qui
bien cuida que il fust si durement
traueilliez que il neust vers lui duree.
35 Que vous diroie ie. entre li hanz
princes & dynadam. lessent courre
lun en contre l'autre. leur glaiues mis
de seur le fautre. & leur cheuaus espe-
ronnant mes tieus fu laventure au
40 ioindre des glaiues que il les brisent
an .ij. lun deseur l'autre. & lors passent
outre pour parfournir leur poindre. &
quant dynadam voit quil ne la abatu.
il oste sespee du fuerre & sadresce vers
45 le haut prince. & quant il le voit venir.
il oste sespee du fuerre & sa dresce vers
lui. Que vous diroie ie. ilec ot vne
bataille si aspre que combien que len
parole de gabois de dinadam. Il es-
50 toit assez preudoume. & quant il estoit
eschaufez de seur aucun cheualier. il
li dounoit assez que soustenir. Si vous
di apartement que se li hanz princes

li dounoit vn cop aspre & pesant. Il li rendoit assez tost. Li gens nestoit pas parigal que dynadam en fesoit tout son pooir pour ce que il le counoissoit
 5 que a outrance le vouloit metre pour lui gaber menu & souuent [*fol. 81 verso, col. i.*] mes li hanz princes ne counoissoit lui. dont il nen fesoit pas son pooir. Ainz cuidoit que il fust
 10 aucun cheualier. auques courageuf & vistes & pleins de hardement. dont il se delitoit mout en sa proefce.

MOUT se combat dynadam & mout sefforce & mout volentiers
 15 menast le haut prince aoutrance. mes il nestoit pas enfant ne tieus cheualiers que len le peust delegier vaincre ainz estoit vn des bons cheualiers du monde. Que vous diroie ie quant
 20 dynadam vit que pour noiant se traueilloit. Il parole & dist sire cheualier assez nous soumes combatuz. Les autres nous attendent pour en coumencier le tournoiement. Se il vous
 25 plest lessons des ormes ceste emprise. & alendemain se vous osez assez me trouueriez deuant voz eulz. & quant li haut princes oi ce. il boute sespee vsuerre & le lessé empes. Quant
 30 ceus qui le tournoiement regardoient virent que li hanz princef auoit quite dynadam. Il coumencierent trestuit arire que bien cuidoient certainement que il le couneust. Et quant
 35 Galeholt ot la rifee que cil denuiron fesoient. il sapercut que il estoit deceuz. & que li cheualiers qui a lui fesoit combatuz. nestoit autre fors que dynadam. Et lors le rapele a la
 40 bataille & il respont & dist. Sire cest atart. Et hurte son cheual des esperons. [*col. ii.*] & sen uet ausi coume se la foudre le chacast & sen ala des armer. De lautre part li hanz princes
 45 Galeholt prift vn glaiue & se mist el ranc. & celui qui de rienf de la moit pour ce que il amoit lancelet du lac. & que namoit autre tant lui. puis que il ne se puet vengier de lancelet il se
 50 cuide vengier de Galeholt. Quant il le uoit en mi le ranc. Il li lessé courre car bien le counut li haut princes quant il le vit venir. & mist le glaiue

de seur le fautre & hurte son cheual des esperons. & quant il rencontre meleagant qui a lui failli aerdre. Il le feri par mi la gorge. Et se meleagant ne se fust lanciez ala terre. Iamef
 5 neust ple debouche. & li hanz princes qui abatu la. hurte auant & enfiert vn autre cheualier de celui glaiue meismes & la bat ala terre. & lors oste son glaiue. Que vos diroie ie pour ces .ij. cox dont furent abatuz les .ij. cheualiers de gorre. Lessent courre trestuit en semble ceuf que meleagant conduisoit. & eussent bien pris & retenu
 10 Galeholt. se ne fust henri li marchis qui lesecourut. & avec lui .CC. & L. cheualiers. Illec fu dure & aspre la meslee. Il na pert pas tournoiement ainz apert mortel bataille en coumenciee entre paiens et crestiens. Illec
 20 fu pris meleagant & leussent mene emprison se ne fust li dus de cambenic. qui le secourut. & avec lui trestouz ses cheualiers. [*fol. 82 recto, col. i.*] Il le fist monter maugre ceus
 25 de lautre partie. & Galeholt qui sespee auoit ostee du fuerre en fesoit merueillef. Il sen aloit par mi le tournoiement & dounoit adestre & a senestre & efrachoit escuz de cox & hiaumes de testes. & fesoit si granz merueillef darmes. que len li dounoit le los & le pris de seur touz les autres. Li counestables Galeholt qui au mestre gonfanon estoit pour garder. quant il
 35 uit que il se combatoient aus espees. il enuoie cele part vn cheualier qui asmonz estoit apelez. Celui asmonz estoit vn des bons cheualiers du monde. & auoit en sa compaignie.
 40 xl. cheualiers qui onques mes ne furent abatuz en leu ou il venissent. Il hurtent leur cheuax & vont cele part esperonnant & leur glaiues mis de seur le fautre. & quant il furent au ferir chascun en abati le sien.

A CELUI point issi hors li hanz princes du tournoiement & se fist des armer & puis regarda la meslee qui moult estoit parigal. & se ne fust
 50 asmonz & ceuf de sa compaignie. Ja fussent chacie hors du champ ceuf de forelois. Et lors sone li cors celui

qui asonner lauoit. A celui point
 remest la meslee & sentretournent
 chascun a son paueillon & ason ostel
 & des arment leur cors que mout
 5 estoient traueilliez. La Reyne & les
 autres dames descendent des loges &
 montent ol pales. & [col. ii.] de l'autre
 part sen ala li hanz princez ason
 paueillon liez & ioianz. que bien
 10 auoit moustre sa proefce voiant ses
 barons. Leue li fu donee & il
 s'asiet au disner avec ses barons. Et
 quant il vit dynadam qui auques auoit
 le uif enfle. il parole & dist. ha! dy-
 15 nadam quest ce cheistes vous de mon
 pales atterre. ou auez vous combatu
 avec mon mestre. que vous auez le
 uif si durement enfle. Testoi set
 dynadam vaffax plains de vers & des
 20 charz. qui menues les viandes en
 contre .iiij. cheualiers. Certes len
 ne te deust donner amengier fors que
 pain & feues. & puis te deust len
 chargier de fust aubois ausi con len
 25 set les fourmiers & conduire ala vile.
 Chetif tu ne pois outrer vn cheualier
 ainz li oteis son cheual pour couuer-
 ture que tu vouloies partir de lui. &
 puis vouloies ton courrouz vengier de
 30 seur moi. dont ie voeil bien que tu
 saches que se ie ne meusse souentes
 foiz pris garde que ton champion ne
 te uenist aidier tu nen fusses de partiz
 se des armez non. mes la pour que ie
 35 auoie de lui. me mena ace que ie
 lessai la bataille. & quant tu me rapelas
 de rechief ala bataille. que ie te re-
 spondi que ce estoit atart. tu ta per-
 ceuz que il venoit. & que tes amis
 40 ten feisoit le semblant veer ne puez.
 Quant les barons oient ce il coumen-
 cierent arire si dure. [fol. 82 verso, col.
 i.] ment que nule gent ne peussent plus
 durement rire. & li hanz princez en
 45 rioit si durement que len nen peust
 acelui point parole trere. mes achief
 de piece il parole & dist. ha! dyna-
 dam tu es traitres & en ta traïson me
 cuidoies tu metre aoutrance. tu auoies
 50 veu apertement la grant bataille que
 auoit este entre moi & le cheualier a
 la damoisele. que il fu veuz aperte-
 ment coument il est garniz de haute
 proefce. Tu cuidoies quant ie me de

parti de lui que ie fusse ace menez que
 en moi neust point de deffense. & pour
 ce venis tu de seur moi que tu me
 cuidas outrer. mes il pert aton visage
 qui est enfle. & ates espales que en- 5
 core en es tu courbes se ie auoie point
 de deffense en moi. Et lors regarde
 dinadam de seur le tailleur d'argent
 qui deuant Galeholt estoit. dont il
 auoit ia mengie les chars qui deuant 10
 Galeholt estoient aportees. Et lors
 respont & dist. chetif len puet aper-
 cevoir erramment se tu deusses auoir
 force ou non. au tailleur qui deuant
 toi fu aportez plains de chars. Certes 15
 len ne puet veoir de seur ton tailleur
 fors que les os. Tu ne menues pas
 ainz deueurs ausi con set li louf.
 Et lors coumence acier ahaute uoiz.
 aportez aportez la char au lou quil 20
 na que de uouer. & pour ce ne se
 tient il que il ne die samauefiez & sa
 noientez. & se ie ne leusse chastie. il
 ne- [col. ii.] ust hui moustre en champ
 ce que il fist darmes. Il sen venia 25
 de seur autrui que ie ne voudroie en
 nule maniere du monde venir deuant
 li louf que il na que de uouer quant
 il a volente de de uouer les bestes. &
 pour ce men issi ie du tournoiement. 30

SE Galeholt & les autres rioient. ce
 ne fet pas ademander. Les
 viandes furent aportees agrant plente
 dont il mengierent & burent tout
 parlesir. & mout fu grant la ioie ilec 35
 du tanciers qui estoit entre Galeholt
 & dynadam. De l'autre part sen ala
 palamedes entre lui & la damoisele
 que il conduist el champ en son ostel.
 & li varlez qui avec lui estoit alez li 40
 aide adefarmer. Apres ce que il
 orent desmontee la damoise. Que
 vous diroie ie les tables estoient dre-
 ciees & leue leur fu donee & lors fa
 sieent au mengier. En dementres 45
 que il menioient entra en celui
 ostel vn cheualier en la compaignie
 de .iiij. varlez. & quant la dame de
 lostel le uit si li queurt alencontre &
 dist. fire bien veignant. dame set li 50
 cheualiers pourrai ie ceenz herbergier.
 Oil fire fet ele & lors se defarme li
 cheualiers. & quant il fu des armez.

Li varlez deleenz li douna de leue. & puis dist. Sire venez en nostre sale. Li varlez sen uet auant & li cheualiers apres. & quant il isu venuz il regarde
 5 la damoisele qui [*fol. 83 recto, col. i.*] menioit. Et lors fescric a haute voiz. ha ! pute tant vous ai quise que or vous ai trouuee. Certes ia vostre lecheteur ne vous garantira que ie ne
 10 vous hounisse du cors. Quant palamedes oice ! il regarde & uoit le cheualier tout courrouciez & pleins de mautalent. Et lors parole & dist danz cheualiers ne soiez courrouciez deuant
 15 disner venez mengier & apres mengier se vous voulez riens ala damoisele par auenture ele trouuera aucun cheualier qui encontre vous la garantira . fi . deable fet li cheualiers avec uous
 20 mengeroie ie. Certes avec celui qui ma apouriez de mon frere ne mengeroie ie pour nule riens. Et lors sentretourne arrieres & sen entra en vn autre ostel. & menia avec lesautres
 25 cheualiers qui ilec estoient herbergiez. & quant il ot mengie il prist ses armes & arma son cors. & puis entra encelui ostel ou la damoisele estoit & dist a palamedes danz traitres ie vous apel
 30 erramment deuant le haut prince que en desloiaute & entraison oceistes mon frere. & lors faut auant palamedes en estant & dist que dece se deffendra il deuant lui maintenant. Il prist ses
 35 armes & arma son cors & monta en son destrier & fuit le cheualier qui deuant le haut prince Galeholt estoit venuz & se pour offroit de la bataille en contre palamedes. Et quant li
 40 hanz prince vit [*col. ii.*] palamedes venir. Il le counut erramment aus armes. Et sachiez que il descendi erramment & dist. Sire veez meci appareillie pour le deffendre. Que
 45 vous diroie ie les sainz furent apportez. Li cheualiers iura seur sainz que palamedes auoit ocis son frere en traïson. & en desloiaute coume celui qui plains est de traïson. A non dieu danz
 50 cheualiers dist palamedes. Je ne vous vi onques mes selonc mon auis. Et lors iura palamedes sa foi & son creant que il ni ot onques point de traïson en lui quant il ocist le cheualier.

QUE vous diroie ie an . ij . furent venuz el champ. & lors lessent courre li vns en contre lautre au ferir des esperons leur glaiues mis de seur le saute. Et sentrefierent si durement
 5 que voient ou non. Li plus foibles estuet cheoir ala terre. palamedes passe outre. & li cheualier chei qui mout fu de brisie du dur cheoir que il fist. Et quant palamedes ot par fourni son
 10 poindre. Il descent de son cheual & prent son escu par les en armes. & oste sespee du fuerre. & sen uient par le cheualier. & il estoit leuez en estant. & auoit gete son escu deuant son vis.
 15 & tenoit sespee empoingnee. Et quant palamedes voit que il ne fesoit [*fol. 83 verso, col. i.*] semblant de grant deffense. Il boute sespee & le sesti au hiaume si le flatist aterre & li errache liaume de
 20 la teste & puis li donne meint cop de seur le chief si dur & si pesant que les eulz li fist an . ij . hors de la teste voler. & puis le lessa ilec tel atournez que
 25 puis ne parla de sa bouche. Quant palamedes ot sabataille vaincue. Il monte & cheuauche ason ostel. & li hanz princes coumande que dilec soit ostez li cheualiers. & len le fist puis
 30 que il le coumanda. & fu enfouiz que 30 il estoit ia morz. Agrant ioie & agrant feste furent les cheualiers en forelois. mes qui que fesoit ioie. Meleagant nen fesoit point. & de touz maus & de
 35 toute honte qui li auenoit. Il sente- noit du tout alancelot. Li rois bandemaguz son pere len chastoit souuent & menu. mes ce estoit pour neent. Mes
 40 atant lessa li contes a parler de celui iour. & vous conterai dune autre auenture qui aint en lautre iour en forelois.

OR dit li contes que alendemain leua li hanz princes auques matin. &ancelot
 45 & li rois bandemaguz de gorre. Endementres que les gressles [*col. ii.*] & les autres instrumenz vouloient sonner. aint que vn cheualier vint deuant le haut prince & dist. Sire vn cheualier sui de vincestre. Li quans
 50 de doyure menuoia ala court le Roy artus. Et li manda certainement que li sene sen viennent aost avincestre.

Que vous diroie ie. quant ie fui deuant le Roy artus & li contai la nouuele. Sachiez que il nen dist ne ce ne coi. ainz beſſa la teſte & ſen ala en ſa
 5 chambre. Et lors vint a moi vns cheualiers forſenez & diſt danz cheualierſ venez mengier & ie menalai olui dont il me fiſt aſcoir a vne table & me fiſt donner amengier agrant
 10 plente. Que vous diroie ie. Li cheualiers auoit daguenet. & ie li demandai ou leſ compaignons de la table roonde eſtoient alez. & il me diſt que il ſe font de partiz de la court & tint
 15 chaſcun fauoie. & que il eſtoit remeſ ſeneſchaus. & bouteilliers & conneſtable. Et ſachiez certainement que il eſt mout courtois combien que il ſoit forſenez. Quant ie me fui diſne &
 20 ieuï que ie nauoi que de mourer en la court. Si montai & menving ceſte part que ie ſai apertement que ſe vous ne nous donnez ſecours. nous ſonmes eſſilieez. & trefſot le reaume de logres
 25 en fera en auenture de voir le ſachiez. Quant li hauz princeſ oi ce. Il coumende aus greſſeours. [*fol. 84 recto, col. i.*] que il ne ſonnent leſ greſſez ne leſ eſtrumenz. & puis diſt aus barons
 30 que ilec eſtoient. Seigneurs que vous ſemble de ceſtui aſeire. Et lorſ parole li rois bandemaguz & diſt. Sire ſe vous en voulez croire mon conſeil. En voiez cele part mon filz meleagant
 35 atoute ſa compaignie. & henri li marchis de ceſte vile ole ſecours que vous ioulez en uoier. puis que vous le me conſeilliez ce dit li hauz princeſ & ie lotroi. Lors mande Galeholt au
 40 marchis henri que il viengne deuant lui. & il ieſt venuz erramment. Sire ſet Galeholt au marchis il vous couuiant aler iuſques avinceſtre entre vous & . M . cheualiers de ma court & ſoiez
 45 tant ilec que ie men aille cele part. Et ſe auenture ramaine leſ ſeſneſ au riuage de la mer. Je vous pri que la vile & li chaſtiaux ſoit bien gardez par vos & par ceuſ qui avec vous ſeront.
 50 Et lors reſpont li marchis. Sire de quel que heure que vous voudrez vez me ci appareilliez pour aler. iuſques a . iij . iourz ce dit li hauz princeſ. ſoiez mis au chemin. & prenez la quel com-

paingnie que vous voulez. & lors ſen ala li marchis & fiſt le coumandement de ſon ſeigneur. quant li marchis ſenſu alez. Lors vint li hauz princeſ
 & manda meleagant que il veniſt de-
 5 uant lui & il i vint. Et quant li hauz princeſ [*col. ii.*] le vit deuant lui. Si li diſt. Meleagant ie vous pri que entre vous & ceuſ qui avec vous vindrent
 ceſte part. vous en ailliez au chaſtel
 10 de doyre. & prenez de magent que arbaleſtierſ que archiers iuſqua Mil. Quant meleagant oi ce. Il regarde lancelot ala trauerſe que bien li fu auif
 qui il euſt prie Galeholt que il len
 15 uoiast cele part. Et nepourquant il li reſpont & diſt. Sire puis que il vous pleſt ie men irai de quel que heure que vous voudrez. & Galeholt li reſpont
 & diſt. Je voeil que vos vous metez
 20 auchemin iuſqua . iij . iourz. & ſi vous pri & coumant que li chaſtiaux ſoit bien gardez iuſqua tant que ie viengne
 cele part. ou ie ien uoierai mon meſage. Et lors apele ſon ſeneſchal
 25 & li coumande que il li doint leſ arbaleſtierſ & les archiers. & cil le ſet erramment. Et quant il furent eſleuz. Il ſapareillent de laler. Et ſachiez certainement que li hauz
 30 princeſ fiſt crier partout ſon pais & mande preſ & loing que tuit ſoient appareillie deſ armes. Et quant il oïrent ce que li hauz princeſ ſen ira
 deſorelois il dient que il le ſuiuront
 35 pour oſtoier. Li cheualierſ qui ilec eſtoit venuz priſt congie au haut prince Galeholt & mout le mercia de ce que il auoit ſet & de ce que il auoit promiſ aſere [*fol. 84 verso, col. 40 i.*] Et il li diſt que il naient doute detreſtout li eſforz de paienimes. Celui cheualier ſe miſt avec ceuſ qui ſen aloient avinceſtre. & cheuauchierent
 tant que il furent venuz au chaſtel de
 45 doyre. Quil furent ſi bien receuz & ſi biau que ſe il iſuſt li empereur de roume. fuſt il aſſez ſoufflant choſe & il & ceuſ qui avec lui iſurent venuz. De lautre part ſemiſt li marchis henri
 50 deſorelois. & avec lui ceus de ſa compaignie de ſeur le riuage de mer. au port de vinceſtre. a grant ioie & agrant feſte furent receuz leſ genz du

haut prince Galeholt & furent ceus de vincestre tant liez. & tant ioieus que nule gent ne pooient estre tant liez de la venue destranges genz. Or font il afeur puis que li hanz princes les doit venir secourre.

DE lautre part li hanz princes Galeholt en voia partout forelois par viles & par chastiaus que maintenant que nouueles leur fussent aporrees que li sefnes eussent passe lamer. que il moustrassent le feu chascun ou fust nuiz ou fust iour. de iourz la fumee & denuiz li feuf clers. & ce fesoit il se li sefne fussent venuz a vincestre. Et ce que il coumande en forelois. fu coumande partout le reame de logres. dont ie vous di apertement que en vn seul iour *[col. ii.]* empooint il fauoir la nouuele par toute lisle de logres. Mes atant lessé li contes parler de ceste auenture & parole du iour apres que li tournoiemenz fu feruz.

CI endroit dit li contes que quant les genz que li hanz princes ot enuoiez a vincestre furent partiz dilec vne matinee au quef par tens. Les gresles coumencent a sonner & les estrumens de toutes parz. Et lors furent les gonfanons conduiz el champ. Les cheualiers furent armez a grant ioie & agrant feste fu li roif bandemaguz pour le departement deson filz. Or est aaise & aleesce. or ne doute il que destourbier li viengne ilec pour lui ne pour sa desloiaute. Et quant il vit que la Reyne fu montee aus loges. & les autres dames avec lui. Et que palamedes estoit venuz & auoit amenee la damoisele. Il se fist armer. & fu venuz au tournoiemement. Que vous diroie ie blamor de Gaunef. le frere blioberis estoit venuz autournoiemement tout nouuelement. & mout li tarδοit que aucun ne se metoit el ranc pour iouster. quant il *[fol. 85 recto, col. i.]* vit palamadef il li fu auis que il fu aucun cheualier de preuue. Et lors demande a vn cheualier pour

coi il bee la avec cele damoisele. & cil li conte lauenture toute. en tel maniere con vous avez oi ca en arrieres. Blamor de Gaunes ne fist autre delaiance fors que il lessé courre cele part son glaiue mis defeur le fautre. Et quant palamedef le uoit venir. Il ne le refuse pas ainz li adresce lateste de son cheual. & hurte des esperons encontre lui. Mes tieuf fu leur auenture au ioindres des glaiues que lun ne lautre ne gaagna rien. Leur glaiue brisent & il passent outre. Et quant il ont parfourni leur poindre. Il pristrent glaiuef de rechief. & sachiez certainement que acelui tournoiemement auoit il assez glaiues que li hanz princes en fesoit porter agrant plente. Que vous diroie ie. Il sentrelessent courre de rechief lun encontre lautre. Il tenoient leur glaiuef abesiez. & sentrefierent si durement en leur venir que il sentrabatent aterre par de feur les croupes des cheuaus. Si felonnessement que il orent assez que soustenir. Blamor brisa sa chanole. & palamedef en coumenca si durement aseignier par mi le nef que il li estuet oster son hiaume hors de sa teste. dont il departirent *[col. ii.]* li vns de lautre sanz plus mesler. De lautre part li Rois bandemaguz qui ilec sefoit. se mist el ranc. Et lors en contre vn Roys qui marfille estoit apelez. Celui marfille auoit agouuer ner vne isle que Galeholt li auoit dounee nouuelement. Cele yse auoit non pometainne. Que vous diroie ie an deulf les roif lessent courre li vns en contre lautre. leur glaiuef mis de feur le fautre. mes quant vint au ioindre des glaiuef. tieuf fu la uenture que li roif marfille failli a lui aerdre. & li roif bandemaguz le fiert si durement que voeille ou non li estuet voidier andeuls les arcons & cheoir alaterre. Et passe li roif bandemaguz outre & en fiert vn autre qui pour vengier le roi estoit ilec venuz. & brisa le glaiue de feur le roy bandemaguz & il le feri que voeille ou non la bat aterre atout son cheual.

PAR ces .ij. cox que li roif bande-
maguz fist qui furent si aspre.
descharge feur lui toute la cheualerie
de pometainne. mes ceus de foreloif
5 ne leur sueffrent pas sanz encontre.
Et lorf se mist encontre euls arouz
.i. quans auques preuz. & auoit
en sa compaignie .v. cheualiers.
mes lorf quant vient alencontrer des
10 glaiues. Sachiez [*fol. 85 verso, col. i.*]
certainnement que toute la vile en
tentissoit. & se la fussiez seigneur cheu-
alier vous peussiez auoir veu cheualiers
abatre lun ca lautre la. que dune part
15 que dautre. Li roif bandemaguz
auoit ostee sespee du fuerre & seroit
adestre & asenestre. & la ou il sadre-
coit tuit fuioient deuant lui. Si vous
di apartement que il en fist tant que
20 bien en fu loee sa proesce. & mieuz
leust il fet assez se ne fust Gaheriet li
neueuz au roi artus. qui toute voies
li venoit en mi le vis. & li dounoit
souuentef foiz granz cox amont de
25 seur le hiaume. Il dounoit alui toute
sa force onques ne sespergnoient de
riens a celui point. Endementres
que il se combatoient tout parigal.
Atant ez vous la cheualerie de clarance.
30 Achalains li dus la conduisoit. Et
quant il vit li tournoiz si meslez. Il
semist el ranc & lorf encontre heliz li
noirs armez de toutes armes. Et
montez de seur vn cheual fort & isnel.
35 Il tenoient an deuls leur glaiues em-
poingniez. Et lessent courre li vns
en contre lautre. mes quant vint au
ioindre des glaiues. tieuf fu leur auen-
ture que lun failli alautre aerdre. &
40 cil quel feri lempaint si durement que
il labat aterre deseur la croupe de son
cheual. Et lorf passe outre celui qui
si bien le fist. ce fu li dus achalains de
[*col. ii.*] clarance qui fu vn des bons
45 cheualiers du monde. pour celui cop
& pour monter heliz de forelois. se
desbuche la cheualerie que il auoit
agarder. Et lorf en contrent ceus de
clarance. si furent ilec si aspres les
50 ioustes que il en fu abatuz aseche
terre plus de la moitie des cheualiers
que dune part que dautre & si furent
il plus de .M. cheualiers.

ACHALAINS li dus qui mout
bien le fist de tant con son
glaiue remest entier. & quant il fu
brisiez il oste sespee du fuerre & fiert
adestre & asenestre & abat cheualiers 5
& cheuaus aus cox de sespee que du
piz de son cheual que du hurter deson
corf meismes & en fesoit si grant
merueilles que nus ne loisoit attendre
en mi le champ. ainz sensuioient tuit 10
deuant lui. Et neporquant ceus de
foreloif se traueillierent tant que il
monterent heliz en mi le tournoi.
Lorf sone le cor dont il nen firent
plus. ainz sen vont des armer. mes de 15
celui iour emporta le los & le pris li
roif bandemaguz qui si bien le fist
aus cox desespee que nus ne latendoit
qui dilec sen alast acheual. Et quant
Gaheriet le counut il sen ala de seur 20
vn autre. La Reyne guenieure des-
cendi des loges & les autres dames &
les damoiseles avec lui. Si vous di
apertement quele retint avec lui pour
disner vne grant partie des puceles. 25
La baesse en fist [*fol. 86 recto, col. i.*]
ioie mout grant. Que vous diroie ie.
Les tables furent mises & leue dounee
si sa sieent au disner. De lautre part
li hanz princes quant il fu aus paueil 30
lons. Les tables estoient mises & leue
fu dounee. Li hanz princes sassist &
avec lui ses barons. Et quant dina-
dam voit le roi bandemaguz. Il li
escrie & dit. ha! viellart estes vous 35
de venuz champion. Len fet par
tout que vous estes nez de forelois. &
la proesce de vo fil meleagant le tes-
moigne apertement. Je cuidoie
auant hier que vous fussiez renduz au 40
moustier saint lorenz. & vous avez
pris sosdee. & estes de uenuz champion
de celui qui riens ne vaut. Dynadam.
Dynadam. ce dit li Rois bandemaguz
tu nas se parole non. Len fet par 45
tout que ie fui tresoriers du Galeholt
le filz ala bele iaiane li fires des loin-
taignes yles. Il na point dargent
ne dor dont ie ne soie gouverneur.
cument pourroie ie estre en contre 50
sa partie. mes tues mauues & pleins de
noientez que tu moques ceus de ta
partie. chetis ies de venuz bien le uoi.
Mes oan ne fus tu si chetis quant tu

te combatis au cheualier deuant Ka-
maalot & que tu loceis deuant le roi
artus. Or? que diroie ie tu uas em-
pirant de ta proefce. mes de ta langue
5 vas tu amendant. Je croi que tu en
aies pluseurs. Treforiers estes de
venuz ce dit dynadam. or fai ie aperte-
[*col. ii.*] ment que li ponz de lespée
sera abatuz. tu ne ne ten prendras def
10 or mes nule garde. que puis ~~que~~ tu as
gete tes mains enfi *grant* trefor con
est celui que Galeholt adefrobe par
mi le monde. nus ne ten pourroit
oster. Mout fen rist li hanz princes
15 de ce que dynadam dist delui. Et
nepourquant il respont en semblance
doume courroucie. & dist ha! dyna-
dam. pour coi me fetes uos honte. Je
ne pas defrobe le reaume destrangorre
20 dont vous devez estre rois couronnez.
Ne place dieuf ce dit dynadam. que
mon pere muire. car tant con tu
feroie en vie. nen prendroie ie pas la
couronne. car tu la mosteroies du
25 chief. A ceste parole coumencent
trestuit arire par leenz.

EN dementres que il tencoient
adynadam. entra dedenz vne
damoisele. & se mist agenoulz deuant
30 Galeholt & dist. Sire a vous menuoie
la Reyne Guenieure. ele *vous* mande
que empres disner venez alui entre
vous & mon seigneur lancelet & dy-
nadam. damoisele ce dit Galeholt
35 dites li uous que nous ironf alui ainfi
con ele le nous mande. Et nepour-
quant enla compaignie de dynadam
ne voudroie ie pas aler. Damoisele
ce dit dynadam dites li de par moi
40 ama dame la reine que ia sanz moi ne
parlera alui que il font si mauues que
il la [*fol. 86 verso, col. i.*] feront re-
tourner amengier les herbetes & les
feues ainfi con . . . ent fet deuant.
45 Et lors fenrient la damoisele & touz
les autres *quant* il orent mengie & beu
agrant plente. Lors se lieuent & li vn
& li autre. De lautre part palamedes
qui ason ostel estoit descenduz. & auec
50 lui la damoisele & estoient assis au
disner. Atant ez vous venir el tref vn
varlet qui apportoit . ij . liaces de
lances de seur ses espales & lors

parole & dist. palamedes a vous
menuoie vn cheualier qui vous mande
que vous praingniez vne def liaces de
ses glaiues. Et apres disner soit entre
vous & lui tant maintenue la iouste 5
que lun ou lautre emporte lenneur.
qui est le cheualier ce dist palamedes
vous le counoistrez mout bien aus
armescedit livarlez. Je ne le refuserai
ce dit palamedes. Et lors en fist 10
prendre vne des liaces. & le varlet
fen ala atout lautre liace. De lautre
part fen ala Galeholt & lancelet &
dynadam. parler ala reyne. & quant
la Reyne les vit venir. ele crie merci 15
a Galeholt que il la praingne en
garde. Jai empris agarder trestout
le reaume & la Reyne len mercia
mout. & puis dist alancelot biaux douz
amis ie vous pri que vous ne ioustez 20
au lignage le Roy artus. Et sachiez
certainnement que ie ne voudroie en
nule maniere du monde que courrouz
montast entre *vous* & euls. & lancelet
respont & dist. dame puis que vous le 25
voulez. [*col. ii.*] Ja ne iousterai anuf
deuls. & vous dynadam. fet ele cou-
ment lauez vous fet. Je ne vous vi
el tournoiment fors seulement vne
foiz. dame fet dynadam. vous me 30
deuez chascun iour bien veoir en
vostre cuer & cele aboesse la. & toutes
les nonnainz de ceenz deussent prier
nostre sire chascun iour pour moi.
que ie vous trouuai trestoutes si foibles 35
coume celes qui ne menioient fors
herbetes & feues. Certes la plus pale
qui estoit ceenz a celui point. est
amende a . C . doubles la vermeille
coulour vous est montee ef ioes. par 40
sainte croiz la char vous amende.

QUANT labeeffe & les nonnains
oient ce. tout fussent eles rely-
gieuses fames si coumencent arire
mout durement. La reyne & li dui 45
compaignon en coumencent ausi
durement arire. Labeeffe qui mout
estoit courtoise & sage dame respont
& dist. dant cheualiers puis vous
voulez que nous prions pour vous dites 50
enquel maniere. & dynadam respont.
mes prieres & mes oroisons ne font
par moi fetef. fors seulement que

dieus me gart de prison de dame ne de damoisele. & tel voeil ie que vous en faciez la priere pour moi. que ceus font emprison qui beent adame
 5 ne adamoisele. Ha : dynadam. fet la Reyne vous nestes pour bataille ne pour conduire damoisele. & por coi ne deuenistes vous prestres. Dame
 dame fet dynadam ie ie [*fol. 87 recto, col. i.*] fuisse prestre acestui point vous mengiffiez en core les feues. Lors
 10 coumencierent trestuit arire. Mout tencierent ilec par gaboïs. Et quant il orent assez parle dun & dautre. Il
 15 pristrent congie & coumenderent la reyne adieu. & toutes les autres & eles leur aourerent bone aventure. & lors dist la reyne a dynadam. dynadam. fetes tant alendemain que ie
 20 uous voie el tournoiement. dame fet il en cor men duel ie de lautre ior.

QUANT Galeholt li hauz priuces ot pris congie ala Reyne Guenieuze entre lui &ancelot & dynadam. & il fu descenduz aus pleins.
 25 lors li fu venuz audeuant vn escuier & dist. Sire en cel champ veulent esprouner leur proefces. ij. cheualiers se il vous plect. Je lotroi ce dist
 30 Galeholt. & ce soit iusques asouper que ie ferai leue corner. Lors senua li escuiers & conte la nouuele a palamedes & puis alautre cheualier. Que vous diroie ie. Il pristrent an
 35. ij. leur armes & monterent en leur cheuaus & sen vont el champ. & leur escuiers portent les liaces des glaiues feur leur espaulles. Quant il furent el champ venuz il pristrent leur glaiues.
 40 & puis lessent courre li vns en contre lautre ausi con se la foudre les chacast quant uient au ioindre des glaiues. tiex fu lauenture que il les brisent li
 45 les cheuaus outre. que angoisse de mort les en chaucent. [*col. ii.*] quant il orent parfourni leur poindre. Il pristrent de rechief chascun vn glaiue. Et lessent courre li vns en contre
 50 lautre si durement con leur cheuaus leur porent rendre & lor sentrefierent de feur leur escuz mout asprement. Lun empaint lautre de grant uertu &

secuident verfer aterre mes leur glaiues ne leur fueffre. ainz volent empieces & il passent autre mout angoisseusement que bien cuidoiert an deuls
 5 cheoir aterre. Quant li cheualier ont parforni leur poindre. Il pristrent chascun vn glaiue. puis hurtent leur cheuaus des esperons. Si durement
 lun en contre lautre & si roidement con il plus peuent. Et lors sentrefierent si durement que voeille ou non.
 10 palamedes estuet cheoir aterre atout son cheual. Et quant lautre cheualier vouloit passer outre tout acheual. Il fiert en lautre cheual & chei aterre
 15 par defus la croupe de son cheual & fu delez palamedes aterre. Et nepourquant il ne furent pas lent. ainz saillent andeuls en estant. & ostent leur espees des fuerres apres ce que il
 20 ont gete leur escuz deuant leur vis. Lors coumencent adouner granz cox lun de feur lautre. & trenchent granz chantiaus de leur hiaumes & de leur escuz. & font ilec vne si grant meslee
 25 que ce fu vne grant merueille que il sont darmes lun [*fol. 87 verso, col. i.*] de feur lautre que bien dient chascun que il ne font pas cheualier qui delegier peussent outrer lun lautre se lun
 30 doune vn grant cop. & lautre li rent autrefi grant ou plus. Lors sentrehurtent souuentes foiz lun ca & lautre la. Que vous diroie ie bien fu ausi au haut prince Galeholt que il seroit
 35 poine gastee datendre tant que lun meist lautre a outrance. Il ne sont pas enfant ainz sont cheualier plains de granz vertuz & acoustumez de celui mestier. Lors fet corner leue
 40 pour aler souper. & quant li cheualier oient ce. il ne furent pas liez que bien cuidoit lun vaincre lautre. Et nepourquant il boutent leur espees des fuerres & se traient lun en fus de
 45 lautre & puis viennent aleur cheuaus & montent & se partirent dilec. mout menacent lun lautre par gaboïs & se aucuns venist auant qui me demandast qui fu le cheualier qui se com-
 50 bati apalamedes ie leur respondrai que ce fu li bon lamourat de gales le filz du roi pelinor qui fu vns des bons cheualiers du monde. dont il en-
 f

bien veue la preuee & ci & aillours. Que vous diroie ie. Lors senuont andeuls a des armer. palamedes estoit mout courrouciez de ce que bien li
5 fu auif que le cheualier emportoit le meilleur de la iouste. quant il fu def-
armez leue li fu dounee dont il fassit au souper. & menia avec la damoisele ainfi
con il en estoit a- [*col. ii.*] coustumez.

10 **D**E lautre part se des arma la mourat. & ifu drianz & agloal. alui des armer. & quant il fu des
armez. Il parole & dist. que onques ne trouua si aspre cheualier aus espees
15 & se il fust si bon dela iouste. Il pourroit entrer en champ en contre
le meilleur cheualier du monde. vous dites voir ce dit agloal que ie men fui
aperceuz. Leue leur fu dounee & il
20 lauerent leur mains & puis sa sieent au souper & mengierent & burent car
assez orent coi. palamedes quant il ot mengie monta de seur vne tour qui
en la meson estoit & se mist a vne
25 fenestre & coumenca aregarder ca & la par mi forelois. Endementres que
il regardoit par mi vne rue de forelois. Il uit venir saphar son frere &
avec lui. iiij. cheualiers que il ne
30 counoissoit de riens. & lors descent palamedes erranment de la tour pour
arrestier son frere que il fot certainement que se il ne se fesoit acounoistre
alui. Il feroient andeuls ala meslee
35 alendemain au tournoiement. que saphar ne li lesseroit la damoisele en
nule maniere du monde. se il la ueut conquerre de seur lui. & ie fai cer-
tainnement que il ne me counoistra
40 en ces armes que ie porte. Quant palamedes fu aual descenduz. Lors
trespassoit saphar deuant lostel & quant il uit palamedes le visage descouuert.
Il descent erranment & li queurt les
45 braz tenduz & dist biau frere vous [*fol. 88 recto, col. i.*] soiez li bien trou-
uez. palamedes lebrace & li biau frere bien veignant. quele auenture
vous aamene ceste part & li li conte
50 coument il apris en conduit ces. iiij. cheualiers qui sont des heritez & qui
les adesheritez fet palamedes biau frere fet saphar vn leur voisin qui Karadoz

est apelez. li fires de la doulereuse tour. mes len me ua tant contant que
il est vn des plus desmesurez cheualiers du monde. Si me fui mis en
queste pour uous trouuer. & puis que
5 trouue vous ai. Je vous pri que vous maidiez de ceste emprise. biau frere
fet palamedes venez alostel que apres le tournoiement irai avec vous en
quel que leu que vous voudroiz. 10

QUE vous diroie ie. Lors entra saphar en lostel & li. iiij. che-
ualier avec lui & osterent leur armes. & lors li fu leue dounee. Lors salfif-
15 trent au souper. La dame de lostel auoit assez viandes appareillies. Et
lors demande palamedes asaphar. biau frere coument le fet nostre pere. &
nostre mere & no frere & trestuit no
20 lignage. Mout bien le font cerespont saphar la dieu merci. mes il ont eu
vne grant guerre au quans de la planche. dont ie lapelai deuant le roi
artus & fu la bataille entre lui & moi
25 si dure & si aspre que ie en fui em-
peril de mort. mes la dieu merci ien portai lenneur. & il en remest mort
deuant le Roy artus. & [*col. ii.*] ie emportai vne si grant plaie de seur
30 mahanche. que bien en fui emperil de mort. mes le sage mire le Roy artus
men gari mout bien. biau frere ce dit saphar nostre mere me dist au de-
partir que ie fis delui que se auenture
35 nous aporloit ensemble. que ie vous priaissse pour amour delui que vous de-
guerpissiez nostre creance daorer les dieus qui nont pooir de parler & si
ont bouche & ont piez & ne pueent
40 aler. prenez biau frere le saint baup-
tesme qui vous conduira asauuete. Lors coumence palamedes arire &
puis respont & dist. Tant en ai ie fet
pour lamour de nostre mere. & pour
45 sapriere que ie ne metieng fors seule-
ment aus dieu des dieus. En celui
ai ie mis toute macreance & mon
espoir. Et encore en ai ie plus fet
que ie bee arecevoir celui bauptesme
50 que vous dites. mes aincois voeil ie
essaier touz les compaignons de la
table roonde. Je voudroie fet saphar
que li iourz fust venuz. Or me dites

fet palamedes me sauez vous conter
 aucunes nouueles de la court le Roy
 artus. Oil fet saphar ainsi con ces .
 iiij. cheualiers le mont conte. Il dient
 5 que il furent deuant le Roy artus na
 pas vn mois & demi. Et il venoit du
 moustier dont il noi point du seruise.
 Il firent la clamour de seur Karados.
 Il les oi mout bien mes du respondre
 10 fu noianz. [*fol. 88 verso, col. i.*] Que
 il ne leur respondi ne pou ne grant
 ainz sen entra en sa chambre. & lors
 vint pour euls vn cheualier forfenez &
 les fist aler en vne sale. Illec leur fist
 15 donner amengier agrant plente & leur
 dist. Seigneur cheualier lessiez de seur
 moi. Karados que ie emprendrai la
 veniance. ainz que demain soit passez.
 de mourez ceenz que li mengiers ne
 20 vous coustera riens. & ces. iiij. cheua-
 liers s'empartirent apres le mengier.
 Certes fet palamedes se li rois artus est
 ahontez ce poise moi se il puet estre
 amendez par mon traual. Il nauoit
 25 en sa court nul compaignon qui plus
 se traueillast selonc le pooir que iai.
 Quant ilorent mengie & beu tout par
 lesir. Il selieuent des tables. & sapu-
 ient aus querniaus de la sale. De
 30 lautre part li haut princes. quant il fu
 assis ausouper entre lui & ses barons.
 Les estrumenz sounent tout en viron
 la sale & ce fu appetite uoiz. Et lors
 fist Galeholt sine que il fussent empes.
 35 & quant les sons des estrumenz furent
 failliz. Lors parole Galeholt a dyna-
 dam. Dynadam fet il moult me mer-
 ueil de toi que len set bien que tues
 bons cheualiers & onques ama grant ne
 40 te feis prifier ne tant ne quant. se tu
 me vouloies croire tu ne seroies si
 anoientez con tues. feson le bien man-
 dons aces. ij. cheualiers qui si bien
 le firent que alendemain viengnent
 45 euls. ij. en contre nous. ij. & la pour-
 rons moustrer se il aen uous [*col. ii.*]
 aucune proefce darmes pour garantir
 noz cors. Galeholt fet dynadam alen-
 demain quant tu seras ieuns te re-
 spondrai ie que tuas orendroit trop

beu. si nen pourroies fagement
 prendre la partie. Et lors coumen-
 cent trestuit arire. A grant ioie &
 agrant feste furent acelui souper &
 mengierent agrant lesir. Mes atant 5
 leise li contes aparler tu tournoient
 que bien ipourra retourner. & vous
 conterai dune auenture qui auint aper-
 ceual le galois¹ que trop me fui de
 lui teuz. 10

[*Fol 91, recto, col. ii., l. 14.*]

O R dit li contes que alende-
 main. apres ce que pala-
 medes & la mourat orent
 esprouue leur proefces la 15
 nuit deuant coumanda li haut princef
 les gresles asonner & les estrumenz. Et
 quant les cheualiers les oirent il furent
 leuez & armerent leur cors & monte-
 rent en leur cheuaus. & lors furent li 20
 gonfanons conduit el champ. que dune
 part que dautre. Et les cheualiers sen
 vont apres. palamedes & son frere
 saphar conduistrent ladamoisele. &
 quant il furent en mi le champ. entre 25
 mon seigneur blioberis & hector des
 mares sen vont cele part. Et quant
 palamedes les voit venir. Il parole
 asaphar son frere & dist. frere [*fol. 91*
verso, col. i.] il vous estuet iouster a vn 30
 de ces. ij. cheualiers qui ca viennent.
 que acertes il ne sont pas enfanz.
 Lessiez que il viengnent ce dit saphar
 que ia neleur faudrons deriens. Et
 lors oste palamedes le hiaume de son 35
 chief & dist. saphar biaux douz amis
 apuiez vous de seur vo glaiue iusqua
 tant que ie viengne a vous. & saphar
 puie tout ainsi con il li dist. Et lors
 senua palamedes a esperon iusques la 40
 ou il voit le haut prince & li dist.
 Sire veez la mon frere & ces. ij. che-
 ualiers sont venuz pour enmener la
 damoisele coume la leur. Se il vous
 plect mon frere fera en maide en 45
 contre ces. ij. cheualiers. & en contre
 les autres se il viennent en tel maniere
 con il sont venuz. Et lors coumence

¹ This adventure of Percival being entirely unconnected with the preceding and following matter, is not reproduced here. It occupies fol. 88 v. l. 16 from top; fol. 89, fol. 90, fol. 91, col. i. and col. ii. to line 13.

Galeholt arire mout durement & dist. Certes mout seroie ie maunef se ie de partoie la compaignie de .ij. freres. dites li de par moi que il setiengne a
 5 vous. Lors sentourne palamedes arriere & dit a son frere que des or mes puet il moustrer. se il a point de deffense en lui. Et conte en quel maniere & ce est se plus dun cheualier
 10 fenuient feur euls. Il sapareillent an .ij. de la iouste. Et lors leffe courre blioberis. son glaiue mis de feur le sautre. mes quant ce uint au ioindre des glaiues il sentrefierent si
 15 durement entrelui & palamedes de feur les escuz que voeil- [*col. ii.*] lent ou non andui. voident les arcons & chairent ala terre par de feur les croupes des cheuaus. Et quant li
 20 cheualier se uirent abatuz. Il se lieuent en estant & prennent leur escuz parles en armes & les gietent deuant leur vis. puis ostent les espees des fuerres. & sentrafaillent li vns lautre.
 25 & fet chascun son pooir lun de feur lautre.

DE lautre part entre saphar & hector des mares leffent courre lun en contre lautre. & fu tieus lauenture
 30 que il brisent leur glaiues lun de sus lautre & il passent outre au ferir des esperons. & prennent glaiues derechief & en firent autretant. Et de lautre part achalains li dus de clarance se
 35 mist el ranc. & lors encontre .i. cheualier de forelois. qui anceis estoit apelez. Il leffent courre li vns en contre lautre au ferir des esperons. & sentrefierent si durement que anceys
 40 chei aterre. & achalains passe outre. Et lors leffent courre les cheualiers dambe .ij. pars & sentrefierent lun lautre & sentrabatent lun lautre par de feur les croupes des cheuaus.
 45 Achalains li dus quant il ot parfourmi son poindre. Il retourne arrieres. & fiert vn cheualier & la bat aterre par de feur la croupe du cheual & lors brise son glaiue. Quant li rois des cent
 50 cheualiers vit que ceus de forelois en auoient le [*fol. 92 recto, col. i.*] poieur parti. Il se mist el ranc & quant la mourat de Galef le uoit. Il li adrefce

la teste de son cheual. & li leffe courre. mes tieus fu lauenture au ioindre des glaiues que li rois des .C. cheualiers
 brise son glaiue de feur la morat. & la morat fiert lui si asprement que il
 5 labat aterre atout son cheual. puis passe la morat outre & enfiert vnautre si durement quil labat aterre. Et lors brise son glaiue & il oste sespee du fuerre & enfiert adestre & asen-
 10 estre. & abat cheualiers & cheuaus ala terre & errachoit escuz de cox & hiaumes de testes & fesoit si grant merueille darmes. que nus ne leueoit qui abon cheualier nele tenist. Si
 15 vous di apertement qui tuit fuient deuant lui les cheualiers la ou il sa drecoit. vals de forelois qui mout estoit bons cheualiers auoit acelui point agarder vne eschiele de cheu-
 20 aliers qui mout estoient pseudomes & bons cheualiers. Il se mist el ranc. Et lors en contre Gaheriet le neuueu le Roy artus. an .ij. sentrefierent li
 25 cheualier de feur les escuz. mes tieus fu lauenture que il sentrabatent ala terre par de sus les croupes de leur cheuaus & lors se desbun chierent
 30 dambe .ij. parz les cheualiers & sentrabatent aterre lun ca lautre la. Et fu ilec vne aspre meslee. Que vous diroie ie. La Reyne nestoit encore montee aus loges ne les autres dames.
 [*col. ii.*] & si vous dirai pour col. Encelui iour li estoient venuef nouueles
 35 de par la dame du lac qui mout li plesoient & ce fu quele li auoit en voices vnes leitres. qui mout la confortoit de sa mescheance. Et droitement acelui point quele monta esloges.
 40 auint que lancetot du lac femist el ranc. Et lors encontre a Gloal de Gales. qui vn des pseudoumes du monde estoit. mes sa proefce ne valut riens a cele foiz. Lors sentrefierent
 45 si durement de feur les escuz que voeille ou non li plus foibles en fu abatuz. Agloal brise son glaiue & lancetot lempaint ala terre de feur la croupe de son cheual & puis hurte
 50 auant & fiert drianz de celui glaiue meismes li la bat aterre atout son cheual. Et lors brise son glaiue. & puis hurte auant & en fiert vn autre

cheualier du troncon si la bat aterre
& ce fu mador de la porte. Et quant
il afet ces trois cox que vous auez oi.
Il fiert de son cors vn autre cheualier
5 & la bat ala terre.

QUANT lancelet afet ces cox il
oste sespee du fuerre. & sa-
dresce cele part ou il voit que les
cheualiers de forelois aloient fuiant
10 deuant lamourat de Gales. Et lors
quant il len contra. Il li donne vn
cop [*fol. 92 verso, col. i.*] amont de
seur le hiaume que il li fist les eulz
estenceler el chief. & puis li donne vn
15 autre cop si la bat alaterre & puis passe
outre & en eust autretant fet de
achalains se ne fust que il guenchist
en autre part. dont ie vous di aperte-
ment que tuit fuient les cheualiers
20 deuant lui. Et lors requereunt ceuf
de forelois qui fuiant fenaloient. &
lors le coumencent si bien a fere que
voeillent ou non se coumencent les
eftranges cheualiers areuser mes quant
25 lancelet en fist son pooir nus ne fu
tant hardiz qui el ranc ofast demourer.
Ainz sen fuient pour la pour dencon-
trer lancelet qui touz les aloit abatant
atterre. De lautrepart entre pala-
30 medes & blioberis de Gaunes se com-
batirent si asprement que se il fussent
anemis mortieus fust il assez souffisant
chose. Se lun donne vn cop & lautre
li rent autresi grant. Et entre saphar
35 & hector des mares ont brisie lun de
seur lautre. ij. liaces de glaiues. Mes
il estoient an. ij. si bons iousteeurs
que lun ne lautre ne chei aterre. Et
lors soune li cors. & quant li cheualiers
40 oirent lauoiz. Il boutent leur espees
es fuerres & senuont aleur ostieus &
aleur paueillons & des arment leur cors
& leue leur fu donnee & il fa sient
auf tables & menient que assez orent
45 de coi. Et la Reyne Guenieure descent
des loges. & [*col. ii.*] avec lui dames &
damoiseles. & la conduistrent au pales.
& ele retint avec lui grant partie des
puceles. Li hanz princes Galeholt
50 sen ala ason paueillon entre lui & les
barons & trouua lancelet son compa-
ingnon qui se desarmoist alaide de
dinadam. & quant il vit dinadam si

li dist. Dinadam moult court loing
vostre renoumee. La crestientez &
la paiennime en tremblent de pour
de vous. Es tu ia venuz ce dit dy-
nadam pour de uouer les chars. 5
Certes se ie fusse fenefchaus de ta cort.
Tu nen mengeroies hui puis que tu ne
las de serui. Lesse mengier celui qui
bien la deferui. Et lors coumencent
trestuit arire. Et nepourquant Gale- 10
holt respont & dist dynadam se tu ne
me donasses amengier pour ma de
ferte. tu nen pourroies par reson meng-
gier. que tu nosas neis regarder le
tournoient. A non dieu fet dy- 15
nadam si feroie pour la feneschanterie
quele le me donroit selonc reson. que
celui est fox & nices qui donne la
partie aus autres & ne retient par soi
toute la meilleur. par sainte croiz ce 20
respont Galeholt. Je nauroie de tel
feneschal mestier. Il te feroit meng-
gier selonc ta de ferte ce dit dynadam.
& selonc le fust que tu aporeroies du
bois de seur tes espaules que tu nief 25
dautre mestier. Et lors li queurt li
hauz princes le poing ferre courrou-
[*fol. 93 recto, col. i.*] ciez & pleins de
mautalent par semblant. & dit que
iames ne fera honte alui ne a autre. 30
Quant dynadam le voit venir il na
talent quil rie. ainz cuide certainne-
ment que Galeholt soit courrouciez
outre mesure. Et lors selance der-
rieres lancelet & dist. Sire pour dieu 35
soiez moi garant que ie me met en vo
conduit que li lous est courrouciez
de seur moi. Il est trop durement
fameilleus. & lors le prist lancelet
son compaignon entre ses braz & 40
dist. Sire ie le praing en conduit &
li hanz princes Galeholt encoumenca
& puis dist. certes dynadam li sans
vous est foiz. Je le voi apertement
vous auez eu pour. & dynadam re- 45
spont puis que trestouz li mondes
apour de toi. Il nest pas merueille
se ie en ai eu pour ala mauueise
cheualerie que tu feis. Quant lancelet
fuf des armez. Lors fu leue donnee 50
par tout. Et quant il orent laue il fa
sient au disner & menient que assez
de coi. Et quant il orent mengie &
beu assez par lesir si selieuent & vn &

autre. Mes atant leſſe li contes *apar-*
ler de ceſte auenture que bien ifaura
retourner.

OR dit li contes que droite-
ment enbaudac ſen ala la
renom- [*col. ii.*] mee de
la bone cheualerie pala-
medes & coument il eſtoit vigueruef
& ſageſ & pleins de courtoisie. & cou-
ment li cheualier du baupteſme le
ſouffrirent entour euls. dont par mi
paiennime en fu portee la nouuele &
pres & loing iuſques en cabros. Que
vous diroie ie. embaudas auoit vn
cheualier preuz & hardiz & puiſſanz
de haut lignage & auoit anon corfa-
brin. Il amoit la fille du Roy de
baudac ſi deſtr[*oite*]*ment¹ que il
nauoit en tref toute paiennime nul
cheu[*alie*]*r qui ſi deſtroitement am-
[*oi*]*t nule damoiſele con il feſoit lui.
mes ele nelamoit pas. ainz le haoit
de mortel haine. Sil euſt ſon pere
dounee aſame a aucun haut prince
du pais ſe celui cheualier ne fuſt. que
maintenant que il fauoit que aucun
haut homme la feſoit requerre au Roy.
Il imetoit deſtourbier & feſoit par
ſes meſages a celui qui la vouloit aſame
quele neſtoit pas damoiſele pour ma-
rier quele auoit perdu le ſens. Que
vous diroie ie tant en fiſt celui cheu-
alier que la damoiſele fu reſufee par
maintes foiz. vn iour a vint que vn
cheualier eſtoit venuz de la grant
bretaigne. & auoit reperie ala court
le Roy artus. au tens que li rois artus
priſt la roche auſ ſefneſ. Il contoit
la proeſce & la cheualerie de mon
ſeigneur lancelet du lac. dont [*fol.*
93 *verso*, *col. i.*] les paiens en furent
mout merueillanz. Et lors parole la
damoiſele & diſt. danz cheualiers ſe
dieus vous ſaut veſtes vous eſclabors
li meſconneuz celui qui fu eſtrait du
lignage de paiennimes. Ne nuf des
enſanz madame dont il font aſſez
preudoumes. mes vn en ia qui pala-
medes eſtoit apelez celui uot de guer
pie noſtre loi & ſi vous en conterai

merueilles de ſa proeſce. Et lors li
prie la damoiſele que il [*ſaſſ*]*ie, &
cil li coumence a conter coument pala-
medes ſen vi[*us*]* vn iour akamaa-
lot & man[*de a*]* u Roy artus que il
li en voiaſt aucun cheualier pour
iouſter. & que il vouloit eſprouuer
ſacheualerie deuant lui. Que vous
diroie ie. Li Rois artus auoit ilec
ſon lignage ſi li en voia vn ſien oncle
qui arda[nz] auoit non. Que vous
diroie ie il a bati arda[nz]. & ſon filz
qui heliz eſtoit apelez. & . iiii . de ſes
neueuz qui apelez eſtoient li vns
Gauuain. & li autre Gaheriet. & Guer-
rehef. & agrauiain. touz ces . vj . abati
il & douna leur cheuaus a vn naim.
Que vous diroie ie li rois artus fu
tant courrouciez con nul plus. & gra[nz]
fu li deuls entre les compaignons
de la table roonde. quant il virent le
lignage du Roy ainſi abatre par vn
cheualier. Et lors ſe miſt auant li rois
[*col. ii.*] & demanda ſes armes. En
dementres que il armoit ſon cors
pour vengier cele honte. Iſſi de la
foreſt vns nouuius cheualiers par
ſemblant & diſt apalamedes ſe tuas
iouſte & ie ne fui pas aaſe. La iouſte
ſera entre vous & moi ſe vous ne la
refuſez. A non dieu ce li diſt pala-
medes ie ne fui pas ici venuz pour
iouſte reſufer. Dont ie vous di a per-
temēt que il iouſterent andeuls iuf-
ques ala nuit dont la terre en fu
couuerte des eſclaz de leur glaives. &
ſachiez que il le firent andui ſi bien
que le meilleur ne fu couneuz fors
que tant que au parfiner quant lanuit
leur ſeur uint que palamedes perdi
andeuls ſes eſtriers. Et nepourquant
pour ce ne chei li pas.

QUANT la nuit fu venue li che-
ualiers qui iſſi de la foreſt ſen
ala dune part & palamedes dautre.
mes aincois en uoai il les cheuaus ala
reyne Guenieure. & qui fu le cheualier
qui iſſi de la foreſt ce dit la damoiſele.
Il fu vns nouuius cheualiers que len
apele la mourat de Gales ce dit le

¹ The brackets marked by asterisks are passages in the MS. where some holes are burnt into the parchment. The italics in the brackets are guesses from the context.

cheualier. Certes fet la damoisele ie
ferai tant pour lamor de palamedes
que ia mon cors ne sera dounez anului
iusquatant que il ne pourra [fol. 94
5 recto, col. i.] Garantir mon panoncel
qui ia li fera en voiez en contre les
paiens. se nus sen ira cele part pour
oster le de ses mains a fine force & le
me baillera. celui aura mon corz sanz
10 contredit. & quant li Roys oice. Il
counmenca a rire mout durement. &
dist. bele fille & qui portera vo pan-
oncel en si lointaing pais con est la
grant breitaingne. Sire fet ele aucun
15 en iaura. que ie voeil bien que il sache
que ie li donrai tant du tresor de ma
chambre. que il ne son lignage ne
seront iames se riches non. Et lors
saut auant vn varlet qui mout auoit
20 reperie en la crestiente & fu agenoulz
deuant la damoisele. & puis dist. Ma
damoisele veez me ci appareillie daler
en vostre besoingne. & la damoisele
respont & dist. Or venez avec moi.
25 & lors fu li varlez en estant. & la
damoisele se mist en sa chambre &
defferma vn sien coffre. & en trest
hors vn panoncel dor ouure afils dor.
dont il iauoit poutret vn cheualier &
30 vne damoisele. tenez fet ele au varlet
& si le dounez de par moi apalamedes
pour les couuenances que ie ai misef.
& fil le puet Garantir en contre les
paiens iusques a vn an. Il me pourra
35 venir prendre asame. dont il empor-
tera couronne du reaume [col. ii.] de
baudac. que mon pere na de touz
ensanz fors moi seulement. Et pour
le loier de vo mesage voeil ie que vo
40 lignage praigne le paage du pont par
ou len uet ala mahonnerie empeleri-
nage. & ce soit iusquatant que vous
soiez retournez. Celui paage dounoit
chascun an derente. x. M. marf dar-
45 gent. & ce auoit este le doaire de
saiole. dont la damoisele en estoit ace-
lui tens en sesinne. Q(uant)*¹ cor-
fabrin oi ce que la (damois)*² ele dist.
il fu tant liez & tant ioieus con nul
50 pluf. (car or uo)*² it il bien aperte-

ment que la damoisele ne li puet
eschaper. Et lors sen uint ala damoi-
sele & li dist. ma damoisele uouf
meismes le mauuez doune defore mes
voeil ie que vous soiez come la 5
moie. Corfabrin fet ele en core en
auez la grant mer apasser. & par mi
le trenchant de lespee palamedes
vous en estuet retourner ceste part.
Se lauenture poez acheuer. bien me 10
pourrez prendre coume la vostre.
Et des lors le comande amahoumet.
& corfabrin sen ala errantment ason
chastel & prist ses armes. & tout ce que
mestiers li fu. & puis semist au chemin 15
qui conduisoit ala mer entre lui & .iiij.
escuiers. & cheuauchierent tant quil
furent venuz alamer. Il semist en vne
nef & passa lamer en la compaignie
[fol. 94 verso, col. i.] de celui varlet 20
qui le panoncel portoit apalamedes. &
quant il furent outre lamer passez. tant
cheuauchierent de iournee en iournee
que il vindrent en forelois que il leur
fu dit que palamedes iseroit. Corfa- 25
brin auoit dit au varlet que il nestoit
meuz de baudac pour autre chose fors
que pour oster le panoncel des mains
palamedes. Que uouf diroie ie quant
il furent venuz en forelois. Assez tost 30
trouuerent qui leur dist nou(ueles)*
de palamedes & que alen(dema)*² in le
pourra veoir el tourno(ie)*ment. Et
lors descendir(ent)*² an .ij. en vn ostel
dont il furent mout aaife. 35

ALENDEMAIN auques par tens
leua mon seigneur Galeholt li
hauz princes deboneure. &ancelot
dulac. & les autres barons. Et lors cou-
mencent les gresles. & les estrumenz 40
asonner & quant les cheualiers loirent.
Il se lieuent de toutes parz. & arment
leur cors. Les gonfanons furent con-
duit el champ. & les cheualiers sen
vont apres. De lautrepart monta la 45
Reyne aus loges entre lui & les dames
& les damoiseles qui acoustumees
estoient de auenir avec lui. Li hauz
princes Galeholt & avec lui ses barons

¹ Here are again holes in the MS.

² The contents of these brackets are restored from Harl. 1629, fol. 63 recto, col. ii., lines 6 and 7 from the top.

estoint venuz pour le veoir. Entre
 palamedes & son frere saphar condu-
 isrent la damoisele el champ. Quant
 corla- [col. ii.] brin vit palamedes &
 5 vit son escu qui pertuissiez & derom-
 puz estoit en menuz leus & vit son
 hiaume qui de trenchiez estoit en
 mains leus. Et son hauberc def-
 mailliez en plusieurs leus. Il le prise
 10 mout. Et nepourquant il li estoit
 auis que il nauroit vers lui duree.
 Ala grant force & ala grant vertu
 que il cuidoit auoir. & que il sauoit
 bien que en trestout le reaume
 15 de baudac nauoit nul cheualier qui
 en vers oïst redrecier son escu. Et
 lors dist au varlet que il li baille le
 panoncel que la fille au Roy de
 baudac li en voie. & que il li die les
 20 couuenances toutes en tel maniere
 con ele li mande. Lors sen uet li
 varlet atout le panoncel mout bien
 ferme en vne lance. Et quant les
 cheualiers virent celui panoncel qui
 25 baloioit au vent il counurent erran-
 nement que il venoit de paiennimes
 ala foutilletez des pourtraitures des
 ymages qui pourtraies estoient afils
 dor. Et des oeuvres sarazinnaises qui
 30 estoient en viron. Li varlez sen ala
 tout droitement la ou palam[ed]es
 estoit. Et quant il i fu venuz. Il parole
 & dist si hautement que bien fu oïz
 tout en uiron. sire fet il se uous estes
 35 palamedes li paiens. Si le me di-¹
 [Harl. 1629, fol. 63 verso, col. ii.,
 line 21 from the bottom.]
 tes. Et palamedes respont & dist val-
 let palamedes sui iou deuoir le sachief
 40 vous. & de la loy sarrazinoise. Puis
 que vous celui estes qui iou sui uenuf
 querre de si lointain pais com est bau-
 dac adont ai jou akieuee ma queste
 cou dist li vallet. Aprés cou que iou
 45 aurai contet por quoi. Jou sui enuoi-
 jes a vous. Sire fait il a vous menuoie
 li plus vaillans damoisele. ke on peust
 trouuer en toute paienime. Ele est
 sage courtoise & de bounaire. Ele est
 50 biele cointe & plaifans. Ele est rice
 & poissans & de par pere & de par

mere. ses ayous est rois de nagaberf.
 & ses peres est rois de baudac. Sire
 il na pas lonc [fol. 64 recto, col. i.]
 tans que cele damoisele oï conter
 au cune cose de vous & de vos
 5 proueces. & pour cou a ele mis son
 cuer enuouf mout durement. Tenef
 car ele vous enuoie cest pegnonciel
 que ele meisme auoit pourtrait desef
 propres mains les oeures. Se uous
 10 estes teuf ke vous encontre paiens le
 puissiez deffendre. dufques a .i. an
 puis le poret aler prendre comme la
 vostre & si emporteres couronne de-
 uoir le facies vous. car li rois de
 15 baudac na detous enfans fors que cele
 damoisele seulement. Quant pala-
 medes oï cou il prist le peignonciel
 non pas pour auoir la damoisele a
 femme mais pour esprouuer sa che-
 20 ualerie. se aucuns paiens venist pour
 le contre dire. car il ne prestif a celui
 tans laroine de tout le monde por
 escange de la roine yseut. car il metoit
 sa biautet en contre chief tout le
 25 monde. Et non pour quant il respont
 au vallet & dist. On ne puet sauoir
 des auentures dou mande a combien
 eles couinent. Et pour cou uoel iou
 que tu dites a la damoisele de par moi
 30 ke se iou ne uieng cele part iusques
 a un an que ele ne ma tenge des ore
 en auant & que ele prenge maris a sa
 volentet. Et dou peignoncel que tu
 mas dounet de par li en ferai iou tout
 35 mon pooir. En dementrierf que pala-
 medes tenoit parlement. a celui vallet.
 Atant es vous corfabrin uenir vierf lui
 armet de [col. ii.] toutes armes &
 montet desour .j. cheual fort & is-
 40 niel. Et quant il fu venuf auques
 prief de palamedes. Il gieta main-
 tenant sa main & prist le pignoncel.
 & le voloit erracier hors des mains
 palamedes. Et quant palamedes uist
 45 cou il traist se main a lui & dist.
 Sire cheualiers vous faites outrage &
 me faitez honte. Et lors parole cor-
 fabrin & dist erramment. sans grant
 honte ne vous poef vous partir de
 50 moi. Estes vous paiens cou dist pala-

¹ Here ends fol. 94 verso, col. ii. of Add. 25,434, and a considerable gap occurs in that MS. The following pages are taken from Harl. 1629.

medes. Paiens sui jou voirement fait
 corsabrinz et nes de baudac. suis sui
 gomer ki viuoit autans que li rois de
 baudac remest orsenins. *Racans* li fors
 5 est mes frere . j cil gouierne la che-
 ualerie de baudac & ot a femme le
 fille leroi deycans & ceste damoisele
 la fille au roi de baudac me vait refu-
 sant. Mes puis que ele a enuoiet
 10 ceste part cestui peignoncel ele ne me
 puet refusser par les couuenences ki
 isunt mises. Dans cheualiers fait pala-
 medes. a cou que vous dites vous estes
 estraiz de haut lignage. & non pour
 15 quant orgueilleusement vous volez ma-
 rier. mais dites moi quel couuenencez
 i mist la damoisele. quant ele enuoia
 ceste part le peignoncel. Et corsa-
 brinz respont & dist ke se auouns paiens
 20 li aporroit cel peignoncel. que il
 aura ga-gaignier de four vous. il le
 pora prendre a femme comme la soie.
 Certes fait palamedes a dont ne [*fol.*
64 verso, col. i.] laures uous pas issi le-
 25 gierement trop feroit mes cors mis a
 honte. se iou le vous quitoie si legiere-
 ment sans iouster & sans mellee. Veef
 la le plus pseudoume del monde. que
 nus n'ose neis son escut redrechier en
 30 contre lui. & cou dist il de lancelet dou
 lac. mais fil estoit en liu de vous sune
 combatroie iou tant alui. qui mi mem-
 bre en seraient auilliet. mais ia mes
 cuers nen auroit honte. que ia par
 35 defaute de mon cuer il n'emporteroit
 le pignoncel. & seil lemporroit mi
 membre enferoient homni. car les grant
 cols que il receuroient ne poroient
 soutenir. Et non pour quant nous
 40 soumes chi deuant le plus haut prince
 dou monde. a sa grant feste dont il
 ne feroit pas couueignable cose. de
 combatre sans congief de lui. Et de
 lautre part ceste bataille voel iou que
 45 soit bien veue de tous chiauf ki chi
 sunt assamble. Et si facies certaine-
 ment que en toute la crestiente. de
 tant comme ele dure ne poroit on trou-
 uer autre tant de pseudoumes comme

vous poez ueoir en ceste plache oren-
 droit. Dont iou uoel que la bataille
 ki doit estre entre vous & moi. soit
 alendemain v chr apries d'isner. venef
 deuant le haut prince ki nous donra 5
 le iour & le terme de la bataille. Pala-
 medes cou dist corsabrinz tu as paour
 iou le voie bien apertement. Mais
 fai le bien doune moi quite le pig-
 noncel & iou te donrai maserour [*col.* 10
ii.] a femme kiest une des beles damoi-
 seles del monde. & si en auraf pour li
 endouayre une cite depaenime dont tu
 emporteras couronne a roi. En non
 dui fait palamedes. puis ke iou sui mis 15
 a chois dauoir lacouronne de baudac.
 mout feroie mauuais se iou leresussoie
 si delegier pour prendre la seignourie
 dune autre cite. Et de cou que tu
 me vas dissant & reprochant que iou 20
 ai paour voel iou que tu saches ke
 anschoif que tu en ailles en baudac en
 sauras tu la uerite. & lors senuont a
 tant deuant le haut prince. & pala-
 medes li dist. Sire entre nous deus 25
 na point de la loy crestienne paien
 sommes & a vostre court sui iou par les
 couuenences que vous meismes saues.
 Vns valles uint a moi & me donna vn
 peignoncel de par la fille leroi de bau- 30
 dac & cestui cheualiers le me veut tolir.
 Commandes fire fil vous plaist. quan
 que il vous em plaist. que iou le des-
 fende encontre lui. Apries mangier
 cou dist Calehauf ensouef andoi em 35
 mi le camp. dont vostre bataille sera
 moult bien esgardee. car orendroit
 feroit cou paine gastee car il nous
 estuet garder emplui fors lui. veef la
 que en mi letent se sunt ia mis. li 40
 cheualiers. pour tourmoier. dont vostre
 bataille ne feroit la bien esgardee.
 Endementriers qui li hauf princes a
 termina la bataille des . ij . paiens.
 Apries se mist el renc dynadans. Et 45
 lors encontra garif desorelois cheualier
 ki mout auoit en lui grande [*end of*
fol. 64 verso, col. ii.].¹

¹ The Harl. MS., which is still more deficient than Add., breaks off here. The catch-word at the bottom of the page is "prouece. & lors laissent core."

SUPPLEMENT TO VOL. II.

A. ADDENDA.

I. SIR THOMAS MALORY.



WHILE engaged on my studies, I came across the following passage on Malory, who is there called Mailorius, in T. Bale's "*Illustrium Maioris Britanniae Scriptorum*," &c. (first edition, London, 1548), fol. 208 verso:

"Thomas Mailorius, Britannicus natione, heroici spiritus homo, ab ipsa adolescentia uariis animi corporisque dotibus insigniter emicuit. Est Mailoria (inquit in antiquarum dictionum syllabo¹ Joannes Lelandus) in finibus Cambriae regio, Deuæ flumini uicina. Quam & alibi a fertilitate atque armorum fabrefactura commendat. Inter multiplices reipublicae curas, non intermisit hic literarum studia, sed succisiuis horis uniuersas dispersae uetustatis reliquias, sedulus perquisiuit. Vnde in historiarum lectione diu uersatus ex uariis autoribus undique selegit, de fortitudine ac uictorii inclytissimi Brytannorum regis Arthuri.

"*Collections Anglicas*, li. i.

"Alia ipsum edidisse non legi, nec in cuiusquam bibliopolae officina uidi. Aptissimum inter historicos hunc ei designauit locum, donec inuenero sub quo claruerit rege. Ab eius opere interim sunt reiiciendae² fabulae quibus abundat ne illis laedatur historiae ueritas."

I first saw the passage in the second edition, and thought Bale had derived his information from Leland, whose MS. of "*Commentarii de Scriptoribus Britannicis*" (printed for the first time in 1709 from the MS. in the Bodleian Library) he used extensively in his second edition, but the absence of all notice of Malory in the "*Commentarii*, &c.," shows that Bale, unless he invented the few indefinite statements, must have derived his information from another source.

¹ John Leland's "*Syllabus et Interpretatis Antiquarum Dictionum*," 1542: fol. f iii. recto (spelled "Meiloria").

² John Leland's "*Assertio Inclytissimi Arturii Regis Britanniae*," 1544. The name Mellorius, *Thomas*, occurs in a list of authors.

II. "THE NINTH YEAR OF THE REIGN OF KING EDWARD IV."

I have stated in my Introduction, vol. ii. p. 1, that the ninth year of the reign of King Edward IV. ("the ix yere of the reygne of kyng edward the fourth," 861*, 8-9) was 1470. This is not exactly correct, as my friend Mr. E. Gordon Duff has found that the ninth year of that monarch's reign corresponds to the time between March 4, 1469, and March 3, 1470, so that really only two months of it belonged to the year 1470. Though it matters little whether Malory's MS. was completed a few months earlier or later, I have thought the point would interest many readers.

III. "THE LAST DAY OF JULY, 1485."

Mr. E. Gordon Duff further points out that, as "the last day of Iuyl the yere of our lord / M / CCCC / lxxxv /" was a Sunday, "Iuyl" is probably misprinted for "Iuyn," it being unlikely that Caxton would have stated that he finished "Le Morte Darthur" on a Sunday. This point, though testifying to its author's research, is of little importance. "Iuyl" may have been printed at the last moment for "Iuyn," but it is not absolutely necessary to explain this occurrence thus. The day on which Caxton says the book was "fynysshed" need not actually be one on which the last hand was laid to it, or the Sunday may have been chosen as being a special festival day.

IV. DOUCE FRAGMENTS No. 10, BODLEIAN LIBRARY, OXFORD.

The Douce Fragments contain as No. 10 two leaves of Wynkyn de Worde's first edition (1498) of "Le Morte Darthur," viz., signatures t_{ij} and t_{ijj} . The first line of t_{ij} recto is—"seneschall / and syr Fergus. And so by"; the last line on t_{ijj} verso—"after hym and make hym to telle me." The contents of the two leaves form, therefore, book ix. chapters xxii.-xxv., and correspond to pp. 371, 35-377, 10 of my edition.

As signatures t_{ij} and t_{ijj} are not lacking in the Althorp copy of this edition (compare my note, Introduction, vol. ii. p. 5), the leaves in the Douce Fragments are the remainder of a second copy.

V. WILLIAM COPLAND'S EDITION OF 1557.¹

The two copies of William Copland's edition of "Le Morte Darthur" in the British Museum are:

1. C. 11. b. 12. This copy is complete except the title-page, which was, however, added in photographic facsimile in 1865, from the only known perfect copy now in the Huth Library.

2. 634. k. 4. This copy lacks the title-page and the last leaf (O₈). Leaves † 2-6, * 1-8, l₄ and s, O₇, O₁₃ and s are supplied from another copy. The contents of O, recto are supplied in MS.; those of O, verso and of the whole of O₈ are entirely missing. In the present binding of the volume, the first ten pages of the Preface and the Table of Contents are inserted at the beginning in modern Gothic type, probably forming an abandoned attempt at reproducing the whole of Copland's edition.

VI. ADDITIONS TO THE "LIST OF NAMES AND PLACES."

Arystause, erle, 790, probably identical with syr Arystaunce, 492.

Carbonek, Carboneck, castle of, 644, 690, 713, 717, identical with Corbyn, castle of, 575, 603; cyte of, 597; pounte (*i.e.*, bridge) of, 571, 576. The difference in the spelling is due to the fact that Malory used different sources.

Dornar, Dornard, syr, 259, 281, 451, identical with Durnore, syr, 791, 792; both being described as one of the sons of King Pellinore.

Petersaynt, 181, for which the Thornton MS. reads Petersande, is Pietrasanta, a town in Tuscany.

Playne de force, syr, 349, evidently identical with Playne de fors, syr, 793.

Pounce, 163, Thornton MS. reads Pawnce, is not, as I conjectured, Pontus, but Ponte, a town in Italy, near Turin, at the confluence of the rivers Orca and Saona.

Tremble, porte of, 181, for which, in the Thornton MS., occurs Pounte Tremble, is the city of Pontremoli, in the province of Massa e Carrara, on the slope of the Apennines.

Urbyne, cyte of, 181, is evidently meant for Urbino, a city in Central Italy, the capital of Pesara and Urbino.

¹ See vol. ii. Introduction, p. 6.

B. CORRIGENDA.

On page 3, line 21 from the top, read "N," for "N_s."
 " " 16, " 7 " " " "1489" " "1498."
 " " 34, " 18 " " " "that which" " "that what."

Page 38, ll. 34-35, "done" is infinitive.

On page 145, line 11 from the top, read "For the" for "For."
 " " 176, " 21 " " " "772" " "792."



EW.